# Differential cohomology in a cohesive $\infty$-topos

Urs Schreiber

21st century

**Abstract**

We formulate differential cohomology and Chern-Weil theory – the theory of connections on fiber bundles and of gauge fields – abstractly in homotopy toposes that we call *cohesive*. Cocycles in this differential cohomology classify higher principal bundles equipped with *cohesive structure* (topological, smooth, complex-analytic, formal, supergeometric, etc.) and equipped with *connections*, hence *higher gauge fields*. Furthermore we formulate differential geometry abstractly in homotopy toposes that we call *differentially cohesive*. The manifolds in this theory are higher étale stacks (orbifolds) equipped with higher Cartan geometry (higher Riemannian-, complex, symplectic, conformal-, geometry) together with partial differential equations on spaces of sections of higher bundles over them, and equipped with higher pre-quantization of the resulting covariant phase spaces. We also formulate super-geometry abstractly in homotopy toposes and lift all these constructions to include fermionic degrees of freedom. Finally we indicate an abstract formulation of non-perturbative quantization of prequantum local field theory by fiber integration in twisted generalized cohomology of spectral linearizations of higher prequantum bundles.

We then construct models of the abstract theory in which traditional differential super-geometry is recovered and promoted to higher (derived) differential super-geometry.

We show that the cohesive and differential refinement of universal characteristic cocycles constitutes a higher Chern-Weil homomorphism refined from secondary characteristic classes to morphisms of higher moduli stacks of higher gauge fields, and at the same time constitutes extended geometric prequantization – in the sense of extended/multi-tiered quantum field theory – of hierarchies of higher dimensional Chern-Simons-type field theories, their higher Wess-Zumino-Witten-type boundary field theories and all further higher codimension defect field theories.

We find that in the Whitehead tower of superpoints in higher supergeometry one finds god given such cocycles on higher supersymmetry-groups, reflecting the completed brane scan of string/M-theory. We show that the induced higher super Cartan geometry is higher dimensional supergravity with super $p$-brane charge corrections included. For the maximal case of 11-dimensional supergravity we find the Einstein equations of motion with cancellation of the classical anomalies of the M-brane sigma-models on these targets. Their higher Noether currents yield higher extensions of super-isometry groups by M2/M5-brane BPS charges in twisted generalized cohomology.

We close with an outlook on the cohomological quantization of these higher boundary prequantum field theories by a kind of cohesive motives.

This document is kept online, with accompanying material, at

ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/differential+cohomology+in+a+cohesive+topos

**General Abstract**


We formulate differential cohomology (e.g. [Bun12]) and Chern-Weil theory (e.g. [BoTo82]) – the theory of connections on fiber bundles and of gauge fields – abstractly in the context of a certain class of $\infty$-toposes ([L-Topos]) that we call *cohesive*. Cocycles in this differential cohomology classify principal $\infty$-bundles equipped with *cohesive structure* (topological, smooth, complex-analytic, formal, supergeometric etc.) and equipped with $\infty$*-connections*, hence *higher gauge fields* (e.g. [Fr00]).

We construct the cohesive $\infty$-topos of smooth $\infty$-groupoids and $\infty$-Lie algebroids and show that in this concrete context the general abstract theory reproduces ordinary differential cohomology (Deligne cohomology/differential characters), ordinary Chern-Weil theory, the traditional notions of smooth principal bundles with connection, abelian and nonabelian gerbes/bundle gerbes with connection, principal 2-bundles with 2-connection, connections on 3-bundles, etc. and generalizes these to higher degree and to base spaces that are orbifolds and generally smooth $\infty$-groupoids, such as smooth realizations of classifying spaces/moduli stacks for principal $\infty$-bundles and configuration spaces of gauge theories.

We exhibit a general abstract $\infty$*-Chern-Weil homomorphism* and observe that it generalizes the Lagrangian of Chern-Simons theory to $\infty$*-Chern-Simons theory*. For every invariant polynomial on an $\infty$-Lie algebroid it sends principal $\infty$-connections to *Chern-Simons circle* $(n+1)$*-bundles* ($n$-gerbes) with connection, whose higher parallel transport is the corresponding higher Chern-Simons Lagrangian. There is a general abstract formulation of the higher holonomy of this parallel transport and this provides the action functional of $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory as a morphism on its cohesive configuration $\infty$-groupoid. Moreover, to each of these higher Chern-Simons Lagrangian is canonically associated a differentially twisted looping, which we identify with the corresponding *higher Wess-Zumino-Witten Lagrangian*.

We show that, when interpreted in smooth $\infty$-groupoids and their variants, these intrinsic constructions reproduce the ordinary Chern-Weil homomorphism, hence ordinary Chern-Simons functionals and ordinary Wess-Zumino-Witten functionals, provide their geometric prequantization in higher codimension (localized down to the point) and generalize this to a fairly extensive list of action functionals of quantum field theories and string theories, some of them new. All of these appear in their refinement from functionals on local differential form data to global functionals defined on the full moduli $\infty$-stacks of field configurations/$\infty$-connections, where they represent higher prequantum line bundles. We show that these moduli $\infty$-stacks naturally encode fermionic $\sigma$-model anomaly cancellation conditions, such as given by higher analogs of Spin-structures and of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structures.

We moreover show that *higher symplectic geometry* is naturally subsumed in higher Chern-Weil theory, such that the passage from the unrefined to the refined Chern-Weil homomorphism induced from higher symplectic forms implements *geometric prequantization* of the above higher Chern-Simons and higher Wess-Zumino-Witten functionals. We study the resulting formulation of *local prequantum field theory*, show how it subsumes traditional classical field theory and how it illuminates the boundary and defect structure of higher Chern-Simons-type field theories, their higher Wess-Zumino-Witten type theories, etc.

We close with an outlook on the "motivic quantization" of such local prequantum field theory of higher moduli stacks of fields to genuine local quantum field theory with boundaries and defects, by pull-push in twisted generalized cohomology of higher stacks and conclude that cohesive $\infty$-toposes provide a "synthetic" axiomatization of local quantum gauge field theories obtained from geometric Lagrangian data [Sc13d].

We think of these results as providing a further ingredient of the recent identification of the mathematical foundations of quantum field and perturbative string theory [SaSc11a]: while the cobordism theorem [L-TFT] identifies topological quantum field theories and their boundary and defect theories with a universal construction in higher monoidal category theory, our results indicate that the geometric pre-qauntum geometry that these arise from under geometric motivic quantization originate in a universal construction in higher topos theory: *cohesion*.

# Global contents

# Outline

**In 1** we motivate our discussion, give an informal introduction to the main concepts involved and survey various of our constructions and applications in a more concrete, more traditional and more expository way than in the sections to follow. This may be all that some readers ever want to see, while other readers may want to skip it entirely.

**In 2** we review relevant aspects of *homotopy-type theory*, the theory of $\infty$-*categories* and $\infty$-*toposes*, in terms of which all of the following is formulated. This serves to introduce context and notation and to provide a list of technical lemmas which we need in the following, some of which are not, or not as explicitly, stated in existing literature.

**In 4, 5** we introduce *cohesive homotopy-type theory*, a general abstract theory of differential geometry, differential cohomology and Chern-Weil theory in terms of universal constructions in $\infty$-topos theory. This is in the spirit of Lawvere's proposals [Law07] for axiomatic characterizations of those *gros toposes* that serve as contexts for abstract *geometry* in general and *differential geometry* in particular: *cohesive toposes*. We claim that the decisive role of these axioms is realized when generalizing from topos theory to $\infty$-topos theory and we discuss a fairly long list of geometric structures that is induced by the axioms in this case. Notably we show that every $\infty$-topos satisfying the immediate analog of Lawvere's axioms – every *cohesive* $\infty$-*topos*– comes with a good intrinsic notion of differential cohomology and Chern-Weil theory.

Then we add a further simple set of axioms to obtain a theory of what we call *differential cohesion*, a refinement of cohesion that axiomatizes the explicit presence of infinitesimal objects. This is closely related to Lawvere's *other* proposal for axiomatizing toposes for differential geometry, called *synthetic differential geometry* [Law97], but here formulated entirely in terms of higher *closure modalities* as for cohesion itself. We find that these axioms also capture the modern synthetic-differential theory of *D-geometry* [L-DGeo]. In particular a differential cohesive $\infty$-topos has an intrinsic notion of (formally) *étale maps*, which makes it an axiomatic geometry in the sense of [L-Geo] and equips it with intrinsic *manifold* theory.

Finally we add axioms for linear homotopy-types that encode structure embodied by parameterized spectrum objects and discuss how this serves to naturally encode secondary integral transforms parameterized by correspondences of cohesive homotopy types. We show that these have the interpretation of cohomological path integrals for topological field theory.

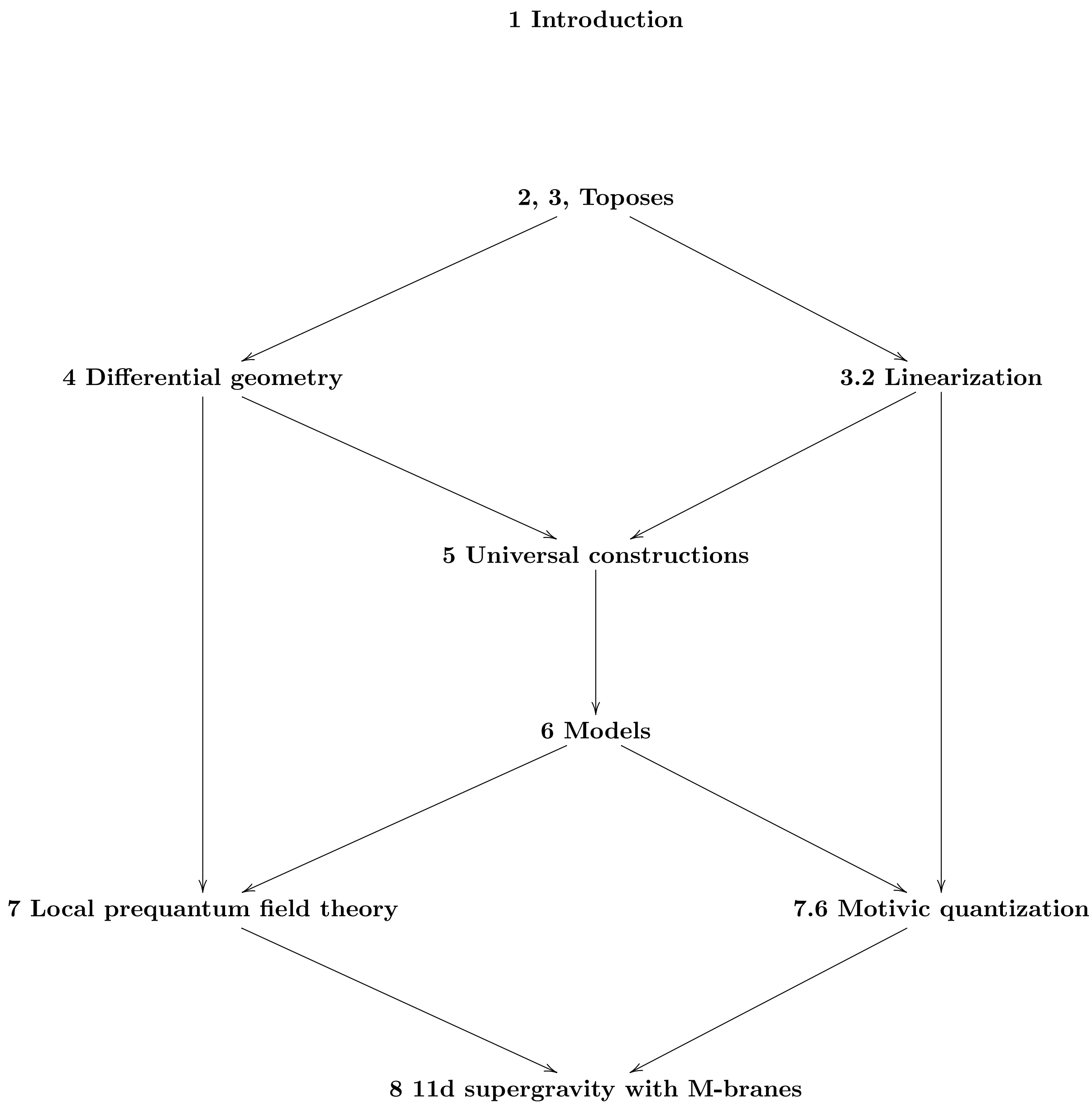
Where cohesive-homotopy theory axiomatizes Lagrangian pre-quantum geometry, linear homotopy-type theory axiomatizes quantization.

**In 6** we discuss models of the axioms, hence $\infty$-toposes of $\infty$-groupoids which are equipped with a geometric structure (topology, smooth structure, supergeometric structure, etc.) in a way that all the abstract differential geometry theory developed in the previous chapter can be realized. The main model of interest for our applications is the cohesive $\infty$-topos Smooth$\infty$Grpd as well as its infinitesimal thickening FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd, which we construct. Then we go step-by-step through the list of general abstract structures in cohesive $\infty$-toposes and unwind what these amount to in this model. We demonstrate that these subsume traditional definitions and constructions and generalize them to higher differential geometry and differential cohomology.

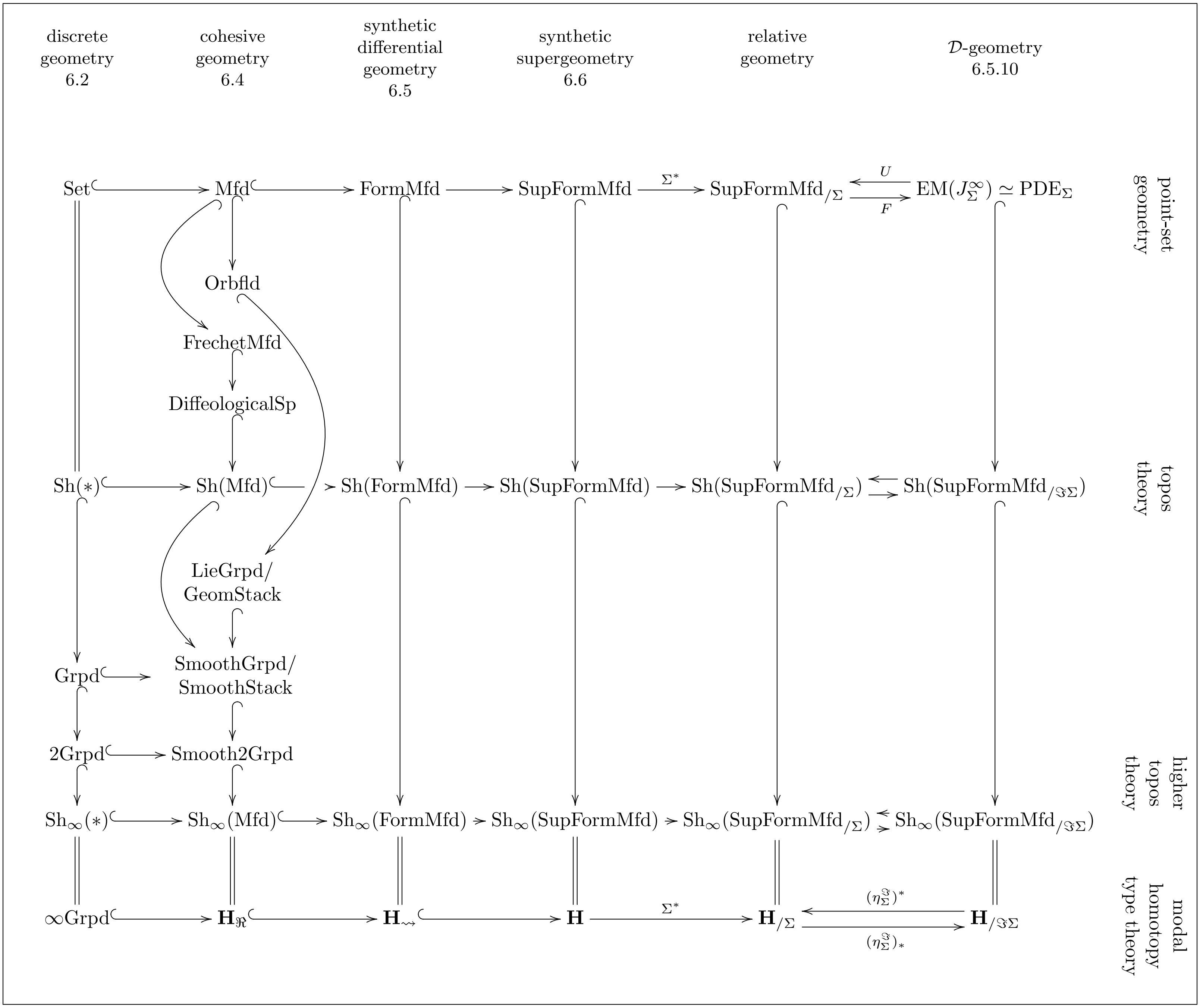
**In 7** we discuss the application of the general theory in the context of smooth $\infty$-groupoids and their synthetic-differential and super-geometric refinements to aspects of higher gauge prequantum field theory. We present a fairly long list of higher Spin- and Spin$^c$-structures, of classes of local action functionals on higher moduli stacks of fields of higher Chern-Simons type and functionals of higher Wess-Zumino-Witten type, that are all naturally induced by higher Chern-Weil theory. We exhibit a higher analog of geometric prequantization that applies to these systems and show that it captures a wealth of structures, such as notably the local boundary and higher codimension defect structure. Apart from the new constructions and results, this shows that large parts of local prequantum gauge field theory are induced by axiomatic cohesive homotopy-theory. **In 7.6** we close this section with an outlook on how the quantization of the local prequantum gauge field theory to genuine local quantum field theory proceeds via higher linear algebra in linear cohesive $\infty$-toposes, namely via duality of cohesive linear homotopy-types.

# Main contents

# Global contents dependency



# The geometries



# The progression of modalities

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | id | $\dashv$ | id | | |
| | | | $\vee$ | | $\vee$ | | |
| | | | $\rightrightarrows$ | $\dashv$ | $\rightsquigarrow$ | | |
| supergeometry<br>4.3, 5.4 | | | $\bot$ | | $\bot$ | | |
| | | | $\rightsquigarrow$ | $\dashv$ | Rh | $\simeq$ | $\mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{R}^{0\vert 1}}$ |
| | | | $\vee$ | | $\vee$ | | |
| | | | $\Re$ | $\dashv$ | $\Im$ | $\simeq$ | $\mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{D}}$ |
| differential<br>geometry<br>4.2, 5.3 | | | $\bot$ | | $\bot$ | | |
| | $\mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{D}}$ | $\simeq$ | $\Im$ | $\dashv$ | & | | |
| | | | $\vee$ | | $\vee$ | | |
| | $\mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{R}^1}$ | $\simeq_{\Re}$ | $\int$ | $\dashv$ | $\flat$ | | |
| cohesive<br>geometry<br>4.1, 5.2 | | | $\bot$ | | $\bot$ | | |
| | | | $\flat$ | $\dashv$ | $\sharp$ | | |
| | | | $\vee$ | | $\vee$ | | |
| discrete<br>geometry | | | $\emptyset$ | $\dashv$ | $*$ | | |

# The Proceß

8.2 11d Supergravity with M2/M5-branes

↑ unravel bouquet of Whitehead towers

8.1 Lorentzian supergeometry

↑ represent rheonomy and form universal cover

6 Higher supergeometry

↑ faithful model

4.3 Solid homotopy theory

↑ resolve finite/infinitesimal

4.2 Elastic homotopy theory

↑ resolve continuous/discrete

4.1 Cohesive homotopy theory

↑ resolve initial opposition

3 Homotopy topos theory

↑ internal self-reflection (univalent universe)

2 Homotopy type theory

↑ first law of thought: $A = A$

Logical substance
type theory

# Contents

**Acknowledgements.**

The program discussed here was initiated around the writing of [SSS09c], following unpublished precursor set of notes [Sc08b, SSSS08], presented at [Sc09], which was motivated in parts by the desire to put the explicit constructions of [SSW05, ScWa07, ScWa08, ScWa08, BCSS07, RoSc08] on a broader conceptual basis. The present text has grown out of and subsumes these and the series of publications [Sc09, ScSk10, FSS10, FSS12a, FSS12b, FSS12c, NSS12a, NSS12b, ScSh12, FSS13a, FRS13a, FRS13b, FSS13b, Nui13]. Notes from a lecture series introducing some of the central ideas with emphasis on applications to string theory are available as [Sc12]. (The basic idea of considering differential cohomology in the $\infty$-topos over smooth manifolds has then also been voiced in [Ho11], together with the statement that this is the context in which the seminal article [HoSi05] on differential cohomology was eventually meant to be considered, then done in [BNV13], see 6.1 below.) A survey of the general project of "Synthetic quantum field theory" in cohesive $\infty$-toposes is in [Sc13d]. The following text aims to provide a comprehensive theory and account of these developments. In as far as it uses paragraphs taken from the above joint publications, these paragraphs have been primarily authored by the present author.

I cordially thank all my coauthors for their input and work and for discussion. Especially I thank Domenico Fiorenza for joining in on working out details of cohesive higher geometry and for improving on my expositions; and Hisham Sati for providing a steady stream of crucial examples and motivations from string theory and M-theory. I am grateful to Richard Williamson for an extra derived left adjoint, to David Carchedi for an extra derived right adjoint and to a talk by Peter Johnstone for making me recognize their 1-categorical shadow in Lawvere's writing, all at an early stage of this work. I am indebted to Mike Shulman and Marc Hoyois for plenty of discussion of and input on higher topos theory and to Mike for discussion of homotopy type theory. I had and have plenty of inspiring conversations with David Corfield on conceptual questions, a good bit of which has influenced the developments presented here. Then I thank Igor Khavkine for discussion of covariant field theory. I thank Uli Bunke, Thomas Nikolaus, and Michael Völkl for discussion of stable cohesion and for finding the "differential cohomology diagram" from just the axioms of stable cohesion. I also thank the participants of the *third String Geometry Network meeting* for discussion of supergeometric cohesion and supergeometric higher WZW models; special thanks to Bas Janssen for being really careful with super Lie algebra cohomology. I am grateful to Charles Rezk for telling me about cohesion in global equivariant homotopy theory and for providing pointers related to stable cohesion. I am grateful to Marc Hoyois for spotting a mistake regarding hypercompletion in an earlier version and for providing the required fix right away. Last but not least I am thankful to Ieke Moerdijk. David Corfield and Geoffrey Cruttwell kindly commented on the text at some stage or through some stages of its development. Further typos were spotted by Igor Khavkine, Fosco Loregian, Zhen Lin Low, Aaron Mazel-Gee, David Roberts, Zoran Škoda.

# 1 Introduction

In

- 1.1 – Motivation

we motivate the formulation of physics within higher differential geometry and informally survey some of our key constructions and results. The sections

- 1.2 – Geometry;
- 1.3 – Physics;

are an introduction to and review of modern differential geometry and mathematical physics, in their traditional formulation but with an eye towards the formulation developed below in the main sections. Section

- 1.4 – Examples and Applications

is an exposition of some motivating examples and applications.

## 1.1 Motivation

In

- 1.1.1 – Prequantum field theory

we highlight the open problem of prequantizing local field theory in a local and gauge invariant way, and we informally survey how a solution to this problem exists in higher differential geometry. In

- 1.1.2 – Examples of prequantum field theories

we survey examples and problems of interest. In

- 1.1.3 – Abstract prequantum field theory

we survey the abstract cohesive homotopy theory that serves to make all this precise and tractable. Combining this cohesive with linear homotopy theory should serve to non-perturbatively quantize higher prequantum geometry, see section 7.6.

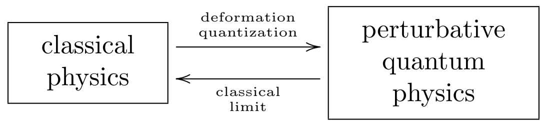
### 1.1.1 Prequantum field theory

The geometry that underlies the physics of Hamilton and Lagrange's classical mechanics and classical field theory has long been identified: this is *symplectic geometry* [Ar89] and *variational calculus on jet bundles* [And89, Ol93]. In these theories, configuration spaces of physical systems are differentiable manifolds, possibly infinite-dimensional, and the physical dynamics is all encoded by way of certain globally defined differential forms on these spaces.

But fundamental physics is of course of quantum nature, to which classical physics is but an approximation that applies at non-microscopic scales. Of what mathematical nature are systems of quantum physics?

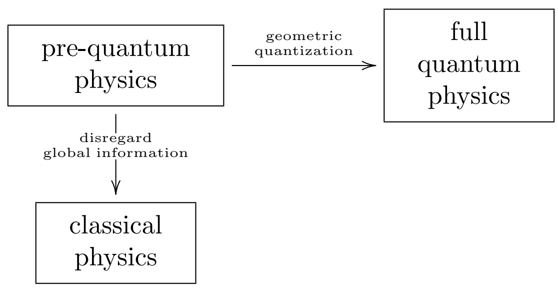
- 1.1.1.1 – The need for prequantum geometry;
- 1.1.1.2 – The principle of extremal action – comonadically;
- 1.1.1.3 – The global action functional – cohomologically;
- 1.1.1.4 – The covariant phase space – transgressively;
- 1.1.1.5 – The local observables – Lie theoretically;
- 1.1.1.6 – The evolution – correspondingly.

**1.1.1.1 The need for higher prequantum geometry** A sensible answer to this question is given by algebraic deformation theory. One considers a deformation of classical physics to quantum physics by deforming a Poisson bracket to the commutator in a non-commutative algebra, or by deforming a classical measure to a quantum BV operator.




However, this tends to work only perturbatively, in the infinitesimal neighbourhood of classical physics, expressed in terms of formal (possibly non-converging) power series in Planck's constant $\hbar$.

There is a genuinely non-perturbative mathematical formalization of quantization, called *geometric quantization* [So70, So74, Ko75, BaWe97]. A key insight of geometric quantization is that before genuine quantization even applies, there is to be a *pre-quantization* step in which the classical geometry is supplemented by *global* coherence data.




For global gauge groups, this coherence data is also known as the cancellation of *classical anomalies* [Ar89, 5.A].

The archetypical example of pre-quantization is *Dirac charge quantization* [Di31], [Fra, 5.5], [Fr00]. The classical mechanics of an electron propagating in an electromagnetic field on a spacetime $X$ is all encoded in a differential 2-form on $X$, called the Faraday tensor $F$, which encodes the classical Lorentz force that the electromagnetic field exerts on the electron. But this data is insufficient for passing to the quantum theory of the electron: locally, on a coordinate chart $U$, what the quantum electron really couples to is the "*vector potential*", a differential 1-form $A_U$ on $U$, such that $dA_U = F|_U$. But globally such a vector potential may not exist. Dirac realized[1] that what it takes to define the quantized electron globally is, in modern language, a lift of the locally defined vector potentials to an $(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})$-principal connection on a $(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})$-principal bundle over spacetime. The first Chern class of this principal bundle is quantized, and this is identified with the quantization of the magnetic charge whose induced force the electron feels. This quantization effect, which needs to be present before the quantization of the dynamics of the electron itself even makes sense globally, is an example of *pre-quantization*.

A variant of this example occupies particle physics these days. As we pass attention from electrons to quarks, these couple to the weak and strong nuclear force, and this coupling is, similarly, locally described by a 1-form $A_U$, but now with values in a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{su}(n)$, from which the strength of the nuclear force field is encoded by the 2-form $F|_U := dA_U + \frac{1}{2}[A_U \wedge A_U]$. For the consistency of the quantization of quarks, notably for the consistent global definition of *Wilson loop observables*, this local data must be lifted to an $\mathrm{SU}(n)$-principal connection on a $\mathrm{SU}(n)$-principal bundle over spacetime. The second Chern class of this

[1] Dirac considered this in the special case where spacetime is the complement in 4-dimensional Minkowski spacetime of the worldline of a magnetic point charge. The homotopy type of this space is the 2-sphere and hence in this case principal connections may be exhibited by what in algebraic topology is called a *clutching construction*, and this is what Dirac described. What the physics literature knows as the "Dirac string" in this context is the ray whose complement gives one of the two hemispheres in the clutching construction.

bundle is quantized, and is physically interpreted as the number of *instantons*[2]. In the physics literature instantons are expressed via Chern-Simons 3-forms, mathematically these constitute the pre-quantization of the 4-form $\mathrm{tr}(F \wedge F)$ to a 2-gerbe with 2-connection, more on this in a moment.

The vacuum which we inhabit is filled with such instantons at a density of the order of one instanton per femtometer in every direction. (The precise quantitative theoretical predictions of this [ScSh98] suffer from an infrared regularization ambiguity, but numerical simulations demonstrate the phenomenon [Gr13].) This "instanton sea" that fills spacetime governs the mass of the $\eta'$-particle [Wi79, Ve79] as well as other non-perturbative chromodynamical phenomena, such as the quark-gluon plasma seen in experiment [Shul01]. It is also at the heart of the standard hypothesis for the mechanism of primordial baryogenesis [Sak67, 'tHo76, RiTr99], the fundamental explanation of a universe filled with matter.

Passing beyond experimentally observed physics, one finds that the qualitative structure of the standard model of particle physics coupled to gravity, namely the structure of Einstein-Maxwell-Yang-Mills-Dirac-Higgs theory, follows naturally if one assumes that the 1-dimensional worldline theories of particles such as electrons and quarks are, at very high energy, accompanied by higher dimensional worldvolume theories of fundamental objects called strings, membranes and generally $p$-branes (e.g. [Duff99]). While these are hypothetical as far as experimental physics goes, they are interesting examples of the mathematical formulation of field theory, and hence their study is part of mathematical physics, just as the study of the Ising model or $\phi^4$-theory. These $p$-branes are subject to a higher analog of the Lorentz force, and this is subject to a higher analog of the Dirac charge quantization condition, again a prequantum effect for the worldvolume theory.

For instance the *strong CP-problem* of the standard model of particle physics has several hypothetical solutions, one is the presence of particles called axions. The discrete shift symmetry (Peccei-Quinn symmetry) that characterizes these may naturally be explained as the result of $\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$-brane charge quantization in the hypothetical case that axions are wrapped membranes [SvWi06, section 6].

More generally, $p$-brane charges are not quantized in ordinary integral cohomology, but in generalized cohomology theories. For instance 1-branes (strings) are by now well-known to carry charges whose quantization is in K-theory (see [Fr00]). While the physical existence of fundamental strings remains hypothetical, since the boundaries of strings are particles this does impact on known physics, for instance on the quantization of phase spaces that are not symplectic but just Poisson [Nui13].

Finally, when we pass from fundamental physics to low energy effective physics such as solid state physics, then prequantum effects control topological phases of matter. Indeed, symmetry protected topological phases are described at low energy by higher dimensional WZW models [CGLW11], of the same kind as those hypothetical fundamental super $p$-brane models.

| **worldvolume field theory** | **prequantum effect** |
|---|---|
| electron | Dirac charge quantization, magnetic flux quantization |
| quark | instantons, baryogenesis |
| $p$-brane | brane charge quantization, axion shift symmetry |

These examples show that pre-quantum geometry is at the heart of the description of fundamental and of effective physical reality. Therefore, before rushing to discuss the mathematics of quantum geometry proper, it behooves us to first carefully consider the mathematics of pre-quantum geometry. This is what we do here.

If the prequantization of the Lorentz force potential 1-form $A$ for the electron is a connection on a $(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})$-principal bundle, what then is the prequantization of the Chern-Simons 3-form counting instantons, or of the higher Lorentz force potential $(p+1)$-form of a $p$-brane for higher $p$?

[2]Strictly speaking, the term "instanton" refers to a principal connection that in addition to having non-trivial topological charge also minimizes Euclidean energy. Here we are just concerned with the nontrivial topological charge, which in particular is insensitive to and independent of any "Wick rotation".

This question has no answer in traditional differential geometry. It is customary to consider it only after transgressing the $(p+1)$-forms down to 1-forms by splitting spacetime/worldvolume as a product $\Sigma = \Sigma_p \times [0,1]$ of $p$-dimensional spacial slices with a time axis, and fiber integrating the $(p+1)$-forms over $\Sigma_p$

| **global in space** | | **local in spacetime** |
|---|---|---|
| 1-form $A_1$ | | $(p+1)$-form $A_{p+1}$ |
| $\int\limits_{[0,1]} A_1$ | $\xlongequal[\text{fiber integration}]{A_1 := \int_{\Sigma_p} A_{p+1}}$ | $\int\limits_{\Sigma_p \times [0,1]} A_{p+1}$ |

This transgression reduces $(p+1)$-dimensional field theory to 1-dimensional field theory, hence to mechanics, on the moduli space of spatial field configurations. That 1-dimensional field theory may be subjected to the traditional theory of prequantum mechanics.

But clearly this space/time decomposition is a brutal step for relativistic field theories. It destroys their inherent symmetry and makes their analysis hard. In physics this is called the "non-covariant" description of field theory, referring to covariance under application of diffeomorphisms.

We need prequantum geometry for spacetime local field theory where $(p+1)$-forms may be prequantized by regarding them as connections on higher degree analogs of principal bundles. Where an ordinary principal bundle is a smooth manifold, hence a smooth set, with certain extra structure, a higher principal bundle needs to be a smooth homotopy type.

| **prequantum bundle** | |
|---|---|
| **global in space** | **local in spacetime** |
| smooth set | smooth homotopy type |

The generalization of geometry to higher geometry, where sets – which may be thought of as homotopy 0-types – are generalized to homotopy $p$-types for higher $p$, had been envisioned in [Gr81] and a precise general framework has eventually been obtained in [L-Topos]. This may be specialized to higher differential geometry, as discussed in this book, which is what we are surveying here.

The description of pre-quantum field theory local in spacetime is related to the description of topological quantum field theory local-to-the-point known as "extended" or "multi-tiered" field theory [L-TFT][Be10].

| | **classical** | **prequantum** |
|---|---|---|
| **global in space** | $\frac{\text{symplectic geometry}}{\text{classical mechanics}}$ | $\frac{\text{prequantum geometry}}{\text{prequantum mechanics}}$ |
| **local in spacetime** | $\frac{\text{diffiety geometry}}{\text{classical field theory}}$ | $\frac{\text{higher prequantum geometry}}{\text{prequantum field theory}}$ |

Once we are in a context of higher geometry where higher prequantum bundles exist, several other subtleties fall into place.

| **ingredient of variational calculus** | **new examples available in higher geometry** |
|---|---|
| spacetime | orbifolds |
| field bundle | instanton sectors of gauge fields, integrated BRST complex |
| prequantum bundle | global Lagrangians for WZW-type models |

A well-kept secret of the traditional formulation of variational calculus on jet bundles is that it does not in fact allow to properly formulate global aspects of local gauge theory. Namely the only way to make the fields of gauge theory be sections of a traditional field bundle is to fix the instanton number (Chern class) of the gauge field configuration. The gauge fields then are taken to be connections on that fixed bundle. One may easily see [Sc14f] that it is impossible to have a description of gauge fields as sections of a field bundle that is both local and respects the gauge principle. However, this *is* possible with a higher field bundle. Indeed, the natural choice of the field bundle for gauge fields has as typical fiber the smooth moduli stack of principal connections. Formulated this way, not only does the space of all field configurations then span all instanton sectors, but it also has the gauge transformations between gauge field configurations built into it. In fact it is then the globalized (integrated) version of what in the physics literature is known as the (off-shell) BRST complex of gauge theory.

Moreover, in a context of higher geometry also spacetime itself is allowed to be a smooth homotopy type. This is relevant at least in some hypothetical models of fundamental physics, which require spacetime to be an *orbifold*. Mathematically, an orbifold is a special kind of Lie groupoid, which in turn is a special kind of smooth homotopy 1-type.

**1.1.1.2 The principle of extremal action – comonadically** Most field theories of relevance in theory and in nature are *local Lagrangian field theories* (and those that are not tend to be holographic boundary theories of those that are). This means that their equations of motion are partial differential equations obtained as Euler-Lagrange equations of a local variational principle. This is the modern incarnation of the time-honoured *principle of least action* (really: of extremal action).

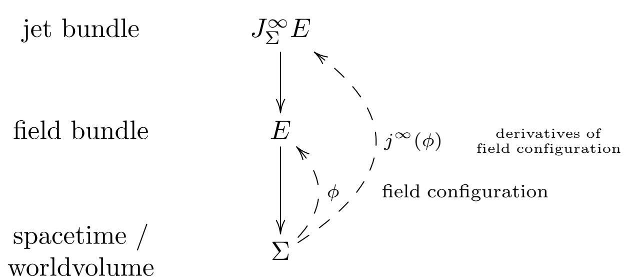
We review how this is formalized, from a category-theoretic point of view that will point the way to prequantum field theory below in section 1.1.1.4.

The kinematics of a field theory is specified by a smooth manifold $\Sigma$ of dimension $(p+1)$ and a smooth bundle $E$ over $\Sigma$. A *field configuration* is a smooth section of $E$. If we think of $\Sigma$ as being spacetime, then typical examples of fields are the electromagnetic field or the field of gravity. But we may also think of $\Sigma$ as being the worldvolume of a particle (such as the electron in the above examples) or of a higher dimensional "brane" that propagates in a fixed background of such spacetime fields, in which case the fields are the maps that encode a given trajectory.

The dynamics of a field theory is specified by an *equation of motion*, a partial differential equation for such sections. Since differential equations are equations among all the derivatives of such sections, we consider the spaces that these form: the *jet bundle* $J^\infty_\Sigma E$ is the bundle over $\Sigma$ whose fiber over a point $\sigma \in \Sigma$ is the space of sections of $E$ over the infinitesimal neighbourhood $\mathbb{D}_\sigma$ of that point:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & & J^\infty_\Sigma E \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & \Sigma \end{array} \right\} \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & & E \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{D}_\sigma & \hookrightarrow & \Sigma \end{array} \right\}$$

Therefore every section $\phi$ of $E$ yields a section $j^\infty(\phi)$ of the jet bundle, given by $\phi$ and all its higher order derivatives.



Accordingly, for $E, F$ any two smooth bundles over $\Sigma$, then a bundle map

$$\begin{array}{ccc} J^\infty E & \xrightarrow{\;\;f\;\;} & F \\ & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & \Sigma & \end{array}$$

encodes a (non-linear) differential operator $D_f : \Gamma_\Sigma(E) \longrightarrow \Gamma_\Sigma(F)$ by sending any section $\phi$ of $E$ to the section $f \circ j^\infty(\phi)$ of $F$. Under this identification, the composition of differential operators $D_g \circ D_f$ corresponds to the *Kleisli-composite* of $f$ and $g$, which is

$$\begin{array}{c} J^\infty E \longrightarrow J^\infty J^\infty E \xrightarrow{J^\infty f} J^\infty F \xrightarrow{\;g\;} G \;. \\ \searrow \quad \searrow \quad \downarrow \quad \swarrow \\ \Sigma \end{array}$$

Here the first map is given by re-shuffling derivatives and gives the jet bundle construction $J^\infty_\Sigma$ the structure of a comonad – the *jet comonad*.

Differential operators are so ubiquitous in the present context that it is convenient to leave them notationally implicit and understand *every* morphism of bundles $E \longrightarrow F$ to designate a differential operator $D : \Gamma_\Sigma(E) \longrightarrow \Gamma_\Sigma(F)$. This is what we will do from now on. Mathematically this means that we are now in the co-Kleisli category $\mathrm{Kl}(J^\infty_\Sigma)$ of the jet comonad

$$\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma \simeq \mathrm{Kl}(J^\infty_\Sigma)\,.$$

For example the de Rham differential is a differential operator from sections of $\wedge^p T^*\Sigma$ to sections of $\wedge^{p+1} T^*\Sigma$ and hence now appears as a morphism of the form

$$d_H : \wedge^p T^*\Sigma \longrightarrow \wedge^{p+1} T^*\Sigma\,.$$

With this notation, a *globally defined local Lagrangian* for fields that are sections of some bundle $E$ over spacetime/worldvolume $\Sigma$ is simply a morphism of the form

$$L : E \longrightarrow \wedge^{p+1} T^*\Sigma\,.$$

Unwinding what this means, this is a function that at each point of $\Sigma$ sends the value of field configurations and all their spacetime/worldvolume derivatives at that point to a $(p+1)$-form on $\Sigma$ at that point. It is this pointwise local (in fact: infinitesimally local) dependence that the term *local* in *local Lagrangian* refers to.

Notice that this means that $\wedge^{p+1} T^*\Sigma$ serves the role of the *moduli space* of horizontal $(p+1)$-forms:

$$\Omega^{p+1}_H(E) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma}(E, \wedge^{p+1} T^*\Sigma)\,.$$

Regarding such $L$ for a moment as just a differential form on $J^\infty_\Sigma(E)$, we may apply the de Rham differential to it. One finds that this uniquely decomposes as a sum of the form

$$dL = \mathrm{EL} - d_H \Theta\,, \tag{1.1}$$

for some $\Theta$ and for EL pointwise the pullback of a vertical 1-form on $E$; such a differential form is called a *source form*:

$$\mathrm{EL} \in \Omega^{p+1,1}_S(E)\,.$$

This particular source form is of paramount importance: the equation

$$\underset{v \in \Gamma(VE)}{\forall} j^\infty(\phi)^* \iota_v \mathrm{EL} = 0$$

on sections $\phi \in \Gamma_\Sigma(E)$ is a partial differential equation, and this is called the *Euler-Lagrange equation of motion* induced by $L$. Differential equations arising this way from a local Lagrangian are called *variational*.

A little reflection reveals that this is indeed a re-statement of the traditional prescription of obtaining the Euler-Lagrange equations by locally varying the integral over the Lagrangian and then applying partial integration to turn all variation of derivatives (i.e. of jets) of fields into variation of the fields themselves. Here we do not consider this under the integral, and hence the boundary terms arising from the would-be partial integration show up as the contribution $\Theta$.

We step back to say this more neatly. In general, a differential equation on sections of a bundle $E$ is what characterizes the kernel of a differential operator. Now such kernels do not in general exist in the Kleisli category $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$ of the jet comonad that we have been using, but (as long as it is non-singular) it does exist in the full Eilenberg-Moore category $\mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma)$ of jet-coalgebras. In fact, that category turns out [Marv86] to be equivalent to the category $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ whose objects are differential equations on sections of bundles, and whose morphisms are solution-preserving differential operators :

$$\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma \simeq \mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma)\,.$$

Our original category of bundles with differential operators between them sits in $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ as the full subcategory on the trivial differential equations, those for which every section is a solution. This inclusion extends to (pre-)sheaves via left Kan extension; so we are now in the sheaf topos

$$\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)\,.$$

And while source forms such as the Euler-Lagrange form EL are not representable in $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$, it is still true that for $f : E \longrightarrow F$ any differential operator then the property of source forms is preserved by precomposition with this map, hence we have the induced pullback operation on source forms: $f^* : \Omega^{p+1,1}_S(F) \longrightarrow \Omega^{p+1,1}_S(E)$. This means that source forms do constitute a presheaf on $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$, hence by left Kan extension an object

$$\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_S \in \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)\,.$$

Therefore now the Yoneda lemma applies to say that $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_S$ is the moduli space for source forms in this context: a source form on $E$ is now just a morphism of the form $E \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_S$. Similarly, the Euler variational derivative is now incarnated as a morphism of moduli spaces of the form $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_H \xrightarrow{\delta_V} \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_S$, and applying the variational differential to a Lagrangian is now incarnated as the composition of the corresponding two modulating morphisms

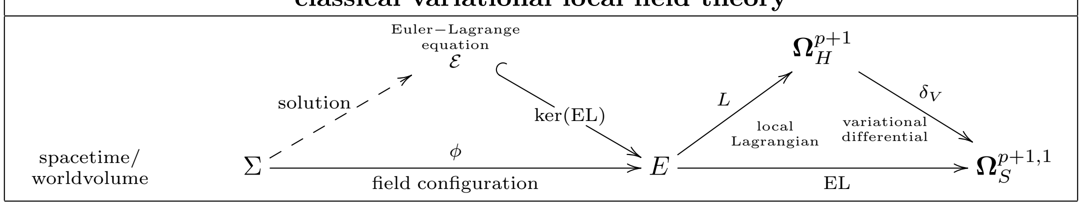
$$\mathrm{EL} := \delta_V L : E \xrightarrow{L} \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_H \xrightarrow{\delta_V} \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_S$$

. Finally, and that is the beauty of it, the Euler-Lagrange differential equation $\mathcal{E}$ induced by the Lagrangian $L$ is now incarnated simply as the kernel of EL:[3]

$$\mathcal{E} \overset{\ker(\mathrm{EL})}{\hookrightarrow} E\,.$$

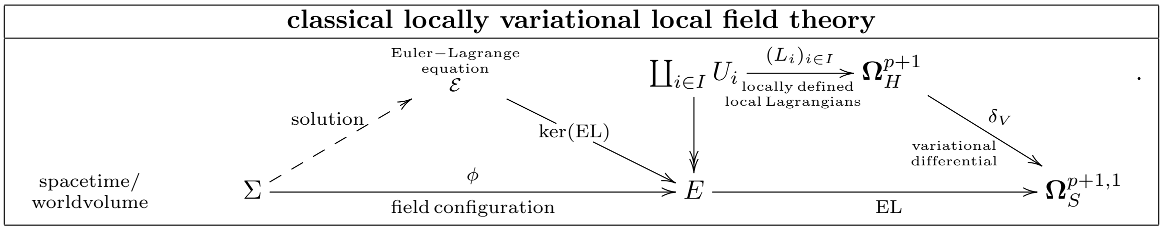
In summary, from the perspective of the topos over partial differential equations, the traditional structure of local Lagrangian variational field theory is captured by the following diagram:

**classical variational local field theory**




[3]That kernel always exists in the topos $\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)$, but it may not be representable by an actual sub*manifold* of $J^\infty_\Sigma E$ if there are singularities. Without any changes to the general discussion one may replace the underlying category of manifolds by one of "derived manifolds" formally dual to "BV-complexes", where algebras of smooth functions are replaced by higher homotopy-theoretic algebras, for instance by graded algebras equipped with a differential $d_{\mathrm{BV}}$.

So far, all this assumes that there is a globally defined Lagrangian form $L$ in the first place, which is not in fact the case for all field theories of interest. Notably it is in general not the case for field theories of higher WZW type. However, as the above diagram makes manifest, for the purpose of identifying the classical equations of motion, it is only the variational Euler differential $\mathrm{EL} := \delta_V L$ that matters. But if that is so, the variation being a local operation, then we should still call equations of motion $\mathcal{E}$ *locally variational* if there is a cover $\{U_i \to E\}$ and Lagrangians on each patch of the cover $L : U_i \to \mathbf{\Omega}_H^{p+1}$, such that there is a globally defined Euler-Lagrange form EL which restricts on each patch $U_i$ to the variational Euler-derivative of $L_i$.




Such *locally variational* classical field theory is discussed in [AnDu80, FPW11].

But when going beyond classical field theory, the Euler-Lagrange equations of motion $\mathcal{E}$ are not the end of the story. As one passes to the quantization of a classical field theory, there are further global structures on $E$ and on $\mathcal{E}$ that are relevant. These are the action functional and the Kostant-Souriau prequantization of the covariant phase space. For these one needs to promote a patchwise system of local Lagrangians to a $p$-gerbe connection. This we turn to now.

**1.1.1.3 The global action functional – cohomologically** For a globally defined Lagrangian $(p+1)$-form $L_{p+1}$ on the jet bundle of a given field bundle, then the value of the action functional on a compactly supported field configuration $\phi$ is simply the integral

$$S(\phi) := \int_\Sigma j^\infty(\phi)^* L_{p+1}$$

of the Lagrangian, evaluated on the field configuration, over the spacetime/worldvolume $\Sigma$.

But when Lagrangian forms are only defined patchwise on a cover $\{U_i \to E\}_i$ as in the locally variational field theories mentioned above in 1.1.1.2, then there is no way to globally make invariant sense of the action functional! As soon as sections pass through several patches, then making invariant sense of such an integral requires more data, in particular it requires more than just a compatibility condition of the locally defined Lagrangian forms on double intersections.

The problem of what exactly it takes to define global integrals of locally defined forms has long found a precise answer in mathematics, in the theory of ordinary differential cohomology. This has several equivalent incarnations, the one closest to classical constructions in differential geometry involves Cech cocycles: one first needs to choose on each intersection $U_{ij}$ of two patches $U_i$ and $U_j$ a differential form $(\kappa_p)_{ij}$ of degree $p$, whose horizontal de Rham differential is the difference between the two Lagrangians restricted to that intersection

$$(L_{p+1})_j - (L_{p+1})_i = d_H(\kappa_p)_{ij} \quad \text{on } U_{ij}\,.$$

Then further one needs to choose on each triple intersection $U_{ijk}$ a horizontal differential form $(\kappa_{p-1})_{ijk}$ of degree $p-1$ whose horizontal differential is the alternating sum of the relevant three previously defined forms:

$$(\kappa_p)_{jk} - (\kappa_p)_{ik} + (\kappa_p)_{ij} = d_H(\kappa_{p-1})_{ijk} \quad \text{on } U_{ijk}\,.$$

And so on. Finally on $(p+2)$-fold intersections one needs to choose smooth functions $(\kappa_0)_{i_0\cdots i_{p+1}}$ whose horizontal differential is the alternating sum of $(p+2)$ of the previously chosen horizontal 1-forms, and, moreover, on $(p+3)$-fold intersections the alternating sum of these functions has to vanish. Such a tuple $(\{U_i\}; \{(L_{p+1})_i\}, \{(\kappa_p)_{ij}\}, \cdots)$ is a horizontal *Cech-de Rham cocycle* in degree $(p+2)$.

Given such, there is then a way to make sense of global integrals: one chooses a triangulation subordinate to the given cover, then integrates the locally defined Lagrangians $(L_{p+1})_i$ over the $(p+1)$-dimensional cells of the triangulation, integrates the gluing forms $(\kappa_p)_{ij}$ over the $p$-dimensional faces of these cells, the higher gluing forms $(\kappa_p)_{ijk}$ over the faces of these faces, etc., and sums all this up. This defines a global action functional, which we may denote by

$$S(\phi) := \int_\Sigma j^\infty(\phi)^*(\{L_i\}, \{(\kappa_p)_{ij}\}, \cdots) \,.$$

This horizontal Cech-de Rham cocycle data is subject to fairly evident coboundary relations (gauge transformations) that themselves are parameterized by systems $(\rho_\bullet)$ of $(p+1)-k$-forms on $k$-fold intersections:

$$\begin{aligned} L_i &\mapsto L_i + d_H(\rho_p)_i \\ (\kappa_p)_{ij} &\mapsto (\kappa_p)_{ij} + d_H(\rho_{p-1})_{ij} + (\rho_p)_j - (\rho_p)_i \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

The definition of the global integral as above is preserved by these gauge transformations. This is the point of the construction: if we had only integrated the $(L_{p+1})_i$ over the cells of the triangulation without the contributions of the gluing forms $(\kappa_\bullet)$, then the resulting sum would not be invariant under the operation of shifting the Lagrangians by horizontally exact terms ("total derivatives") $L_i \mapsto L_i + d_H\rho_i$.

It might seem that this solves the problem. But there is one more subtlety: if the action functional takes values in the real numbers, then the functions assigned to $(p+2)$-fold intersections of patches are real valued, and then one may show that there exists a gauge transformation as above that collapses the whole system of forms back to one globally defined Lagrangian form after all. In other words: requiring a globally well-defined $\mathbb{R}$-valued action functional forces the field theory to be globally variational, and hence rules out all locally variational field theories, such as those of higher WZW-type.

But there is a simple way to relax the assumptions such that this restrictive conclusion is evaded. Namely we may pick a discrete subgroup $\Gamma \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and relax the condition on the functions $(\kappa_0)_{i_0\cdots i_{p+1}}$ on $(p+2)$-fold intersections to the demand that on $(p+3)$-fold intersections their alternating sum vanishes only modulo $\Gamma$. A system of $(p+2)-k$-forms on $k$-fold intersections with functions regarded modulo $\Gamma$ this way is called a (horizontal) $\mathbb{R}/\Gamma$-*Cech-Deligne cocycle* in degree $(p+2)$.

For instance for field theories of WZW-type, as above, we may take $\Gamma$ to be the discrete group of periods of the closed form $\omega$. Then one may show that a lift of $\omega$ to a Cech-Deligne cocycle of local Lagrangians with gluing data always exists. Indeed in general more than one inequivalent lift exists. The choice of these lifts is a choice of prequantization.

However, modding out a discrete subgroup $\Gamma$ this ways also affects the induced global integral: that integral itself is now only defined modulo the subgroup $\Gamma$:

$$S(\phi) = \int_\Sigma j^\infty(\phi)^*(\{(L_{(p+1)})_i\}, \{(\kappa_p)_{ij}\}, \cdots) \quad \in \mathbb{R}/\Gamma \,.$$

Now, there are not that many discrete subgroups of $\mathbb{R}$. There are the subgroups isomorphic to the integers, and then there are dense subgroups, which make the quotient $\mathbb{R}/\Gamma$ ill behaved. Hence we focus on the subgroup of integers.

The space of group inclusions $i : \mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is parameterized by a non-vanishing real number $2\pi\hbar \in \mathbb{R} - \{0\}$, given by $i : n \mapsto 2\pi\hbar n$. The resulting quotient $\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z}$ is isomorphic to the circle group $SO(2) \simeq U(1)$, exhibited by the short exact exponential sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z} \xhookrightarrow{2\pi\hbar(-)} \mathbb{R} \xrightarrow{\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}(-))} U(1) \longrightarrow 0 \qquad (1.2)$$

Hence in the case that we take $\Gamma := \mathbb{Z}$, then we get locally variational field theories whose action functional is well defined modulo $2\pi\hbar$. Equivalently the exponentiated action functional is well defined as a function with values in $U(1)$:

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S(\phi)) \;\in\; U(1) \simeq \mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z} \,.$$

The appearance of Planck's constant $\hbar$ here signifies that requiring a locally variational classical field theory to have a globally well-defined action functional is related to preparing it for quantization. Indeed, if we consider the above discussion for $p = 0$, then the above construction reproduces equivalently Kostant-Souriau's concept of geometric *pre-quantization*. Accordingly we may think of the Cech-Deligne cocycle data $(\{U_i\}; \{(L_{p+1})_i\}, \{(\kappa_p)_{ij}\}, \cdots)$ for general $p$ as encoding *higher pre-quantum geometry*.

Coming back to the formulation of variational calculus in terms of diagrammatics in the sheaf topos $\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)$ as in section 1.1.1.2 above, what we, therefore, are after is a context in which the moduli object $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_H$ of globally defined horizontal $(p+1)$-forms may be promoted to an object which we are going to denote $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ and which modulates horizontal Cech-Deligne cocycles, as above.

Standard facts in homological algebra and sheaf cohomology say that in order to achieve this we are to pass from the category of sheaves on $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ to the "derived category" over $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$. We may take this to be the category of chain complexes of sheaves, regarded as a homotopy theory by understanding that a morphism of sheaves of chain complexes that is locally a quasi-isomorphism counts as a weak equivalence. In fact we may pass a bit further. Using the Dold-Kan correspondence to identify chain complexes in non-negative degree with simplicial abelian groups, hence with group objects in Kan complexes, we think of sheaves of chain complexes as special cases of sheaves of Kan complexes [Br73]:

$$\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma, \mathrm{ChainCplx}) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Dold-Kan}} \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma, \mathrm{KanCplx}) \simeq \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma) \ .$$

In such a homotopy-theoretically enlarged context we find the sheaf of chain complexes that is the $(p+1)$-truncated de Rham complex with the integers included into the 0-forms:

$$\mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} := [\mathbb{Z} \overset{2\pi\hbar}{\hookrightarrow} \mathbf{\Omega}^0_H \overset{d_H}{\to} \mathbf{\Omega}^1_H \overset{d_H}{\to} \cdots \overset{d_H}{\to} \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_H] \, .$$

This chain complex of sheaves is known as the (horizontal) *Deligne complex* in degree $(p+2)$. The horizontal Cech-Deligne cocycles that we saw before are exactly the cocycles in the sheaf hypercohomology with coefficients in the horizontal Deligne complex. Diagrammatically in $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)$ these are simply morphisms $\mathbf{L} : E \to \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})$ from the field bundle to the Deligne moduli:

$$\{(\{U_i\}, \{(L_{p+1})_i\}, \{(\kappa_p)_{ij}\}, \cdots)\} \quad \simeq \quad \left\{ E \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}} \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} \right\} \, .$$

This is such that a smooth homotopy between two maps to the Deligne moduli is equivalently a coboundary of Cech cocycles:

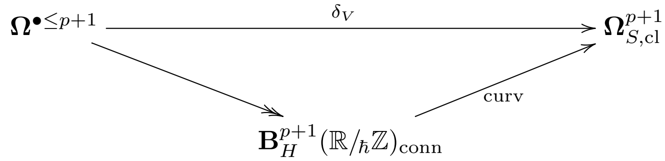
$$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} (\{U_i\}, \{(L_{p+1})_i\}, \{(\kappa_p)_{ij}\}, \cdots) \\ \Big\downarrow {\scriptstyle (\{U_i\}, \{(\rho_p)_i\}, \{(\rho_{p-1})_{ij}\}, \cdots)} \\ (\{U_i\}, \{(L_{p+1})_i + d_h(\rho_p)_i\}, \{(\kappa_p)_{ij} + d_H(\rho_{p-1})_{ij} + (\rho_p)_j - (\rho_p)_i\}, \cdots) \end{array} \right\} \simeq \left\{ E \underset{\mathbf{L}'}{\overset{\mathbf{L}}{\rightrightarrows}} \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z}) \right\}$$

Evidently, the diagrammatics serves as a considerable compression of data. In the following all diagrams we displays are filled with homotopies as on the right above, even if we do not always make them notationally explicit.

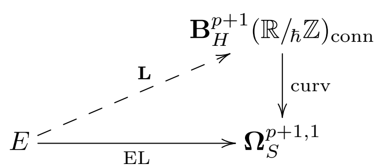
There is an evident morphism $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_H \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ which includes the globally defined horizontal forms into the horizontal Cech-Deligne cocycles (regarding them as Cech-Deligne cocycles with all the gluing data $(\kappa_\bullet)$ vanishing). This morphism turns out to be the analog of a covering map in traditional differential geometry, it is an atlas of smooth stacks:

| **atlas of a smooth manifold** | **atlas of a smooth $\infty$-groupoid** |
|---|---|
| $\coprod_i U_i \twoheadrightarrow E$ | $\mathbf{\Omega}_H^{p+1} \twoheadrightarrow \mathbf{B}_H^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ |

Via this atlas, the Euler variational differential $\delta_V$ on horizontal forms that we have seen in section 1.1.1.2 extends to horizontal Deligne coefficients to induce a curvature map on these coefficients.

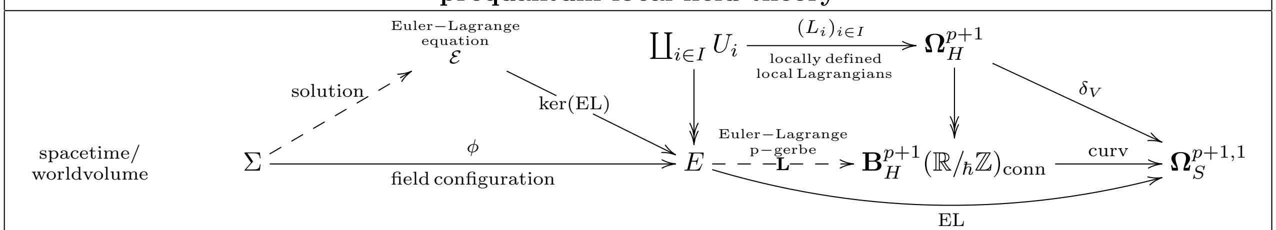



A *prequantization* of a source form EL is a lift through this curvature map, hence a horizontal Cech-Deligne cocycle of locally defined local Lagrangians for EL, equipped with gluing data:

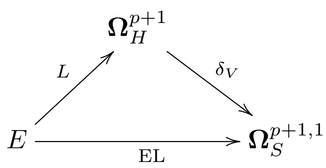
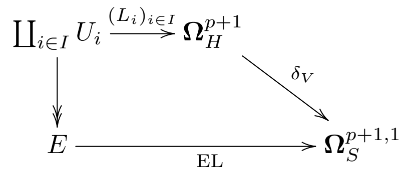
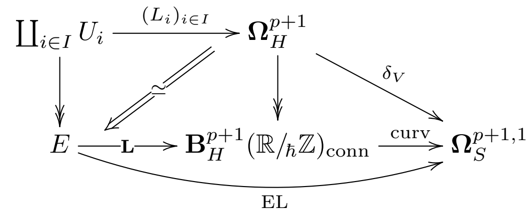



Hence in conclusion we find that in the $\infty$-topos $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)$ the diagrammatic picture of prequantum local field theory is this:

**prequantum local field theory**




In summary, comparing this to the diagrammatics for variational and locally variational classical field theory which we discussed in section 1.1.1.2, we have the following three levels of description of local Lagrangian field theory:

| local Lagrangian field theory | | |
|---|---|---|
| classical | | pre-quantum |
| variational | locally variational | |
|  |  |  |

| | |
|---|---|
| $L$: | Lagrangian horizontal form (integrand in locally defined action functional) |
| $\mathbf{L}$: | Euler-Lagrange horizontal $p$-gerbe connection (integrand in globally defined action functional) |
| $\delta_V$: | Euler variational differential |
| EL: | Euler-Lagrange differential source form |
| $\mathcal{E} := \ker(\mathrm{EL})$: | Euler-Lagrange partial differential equations of motion |

**1.1.1.4 The covariant phase space – transgressively** The Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbes discussed above are singled out as being exactly the right coherent refinement of locally defined local Lagrangians that may be integrated over a $(p+1)$-dimensional spacetime/worldvolume to produce a *function*, the action functional. In a corresponding manner there are further refinements of locally defined Lagrangians by differential cocycles that are adapted to integration over submanifolds of $\Sigma_{p+1}$ of positive codimension. In codimesion $k$ these will yield not functions, but $(p-k)$-gerbes.

We consider this now for codimension 1 and find the covariant phase space of a locally variational field theory equipped with its canonical (pre-)symplectic structure and equipped with a Kostant-Souriau prequantization of that.

First consider the process of transgression in general codimension.

Given a smooth manifold $\Sigma$, then the mapping space $[\Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}]$ into the smooth moduli space of $(p+2)$-forms is the smooth space defined by the property that for any other smooth manifold $U$, there is a natural identification

$$\left\{U \longrightarrow [\Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}]\right\} \;\simeq\; \Omega^{p+2}(U \times \Sigma)$$

of smooth maps into the mapping space with smooth $(p+2)$-forms on the product manifold $U \times \Sigma$.

Now suppose that $\Sigma = \Sigma_d$ is an oriented closed smooth manifold of dimension $d$. Then there is the fiber integration of differential forms on $U \times \Sigma$ over $\Sigma$ (e.g [BoTo82]), which gives a map

$$\int_{(U\times\Sigma_d)/U} : \Omega^{p+2}(U \times \Sigma_d) \longrightarrow \Omega^{p+2-d}(U)\,.$$

This map is natural in $U$, meaning that it is compatible with pullback of differential forms along any smooth function $U_1 \to U_2$. This property is precisely what is summarized by saying that the fiber integration map constitutes a morphism in the sheaf topos of the form

$$\int_\Sigma \;:\; [\Sigma_d, \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}] \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2-d}\,.$$

This provides an elegant means to speak about transgression. Namely given a differential form $\alpha \in \Omega^{p+2}(X)$ (on any smooth space $X$) modulated by a morphism $\alpha : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}$, then its transgression to the mapping space $[\Sigma, X]$ is simply the form in $\Omega^{p+2-d}([\Sigma, X])$ which is modulated by the composite

$$\int_\Sigma [\Sigma, -] \;:\; [\Sigma, X] \overset{[\Sigma,\alpha]}{\longrightarrow} [\Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}] \overset{\int_\Sigma}{\longrightarrow} \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2-d}$$

of the fiber integration map above with the image of $\alpha$ under the functor $[\Sigma, -]$ that forms mapping spaces out of $\Sigma$.

Moreover, this statement has a prequantization [FSS12c, 2.8]: the fiber integration of curvature forms lifts to a morphism of differential cohomology coefficients

$$\int_\Sigma \;:\; [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}] \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1-d}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

and hence the transgression of a $p$-gerbe $\nabla : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ (on any smooth space $X$) to the mapping space $[\Sigma, X]$ is given by the composite $\int_\Sigma \circ [\Sigma, -]$

$$\int_\Sigma [\Sigma, -] \;:\; [\Sigma, X] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma,\nabla]} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} \mathbf{B}^{p+1-d}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}\,.$$

All this works verbatim also in the context of PDEs over $\Sigma$. For instance if $L : E \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_H$ is a local Lagrangian on (the jet bundle of) a field bundle $E$ over $\Sigma_{p+1}$ as before, then the action functional that it induces, as in section 1.1.1.3, is the transgression to $\Sigma_{p+1}$:

$$S : [\Sigma, E]_\Sigma \xrightarrow{[\Sigma, L]_\Sigma} [\Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_H]_\Sigma \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} \mathbf{\Omega}^0\,.$$

But now the point is that we have the analogous construction in higher codimension $k$, where the Lagrangian does not integrate to a function (a differential 0-form) but to a differential $k$-form.

And all this goes along with passing from globally defined differential forms to Cech-Deligne cocycles.

To apply this for codimension $k = 1$, consider now $p$-dimensional submanifolds $\Sigma_p \hookrightarrow \Sigma$ of spacetime/worldvolume. We write $N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p$ for the infinitesimal normal neighbourhood of $\Sigma_p$ in $\Sigma$. In practice one is often, but not necessarily, interested in $\Sigma_p$ being a *Cauchy surface*, which means that the induced restriction map

$$[\Sigma_{p+1}, \mathcal{E}] \longrightarrow [N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]$$

(from field configurations solving the equations of motion on all of $\Sigma$ to normal jets of solutions on $\Sigma_p$) is an equivalence. An element in the solution space $[\Sigma_{p+1}, \mathcal{E}]$ is a *classical state* of the physical system that is being described, a classical trajectory of a field configuration over all of spacetime. Its image in $[\Sigma_{p+1}, \mathcal{E}]$ is the restriction of that field configuration and of all its derivatives to $\Sigma_p$.

In many – but not in all – examples of interest, classical trajectories are fixed once their first order derivatives over a Cauchy surface is known. In these cases the phase space may be identified with the cotangent bundle of the space of field configurations on the Cauchy surface

$$[N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}] \simeq T^*[\Sigma_p, E]\,.$$

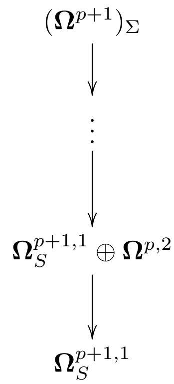
The expression on the right is often taken as the definition of *phase spaces*. But since the equivalence with the left hand side does not hold generally, we will not restrict attention to this simplified case and instead consider the solution space $[\Sigma, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma$ as the phase space. To emphasize this more general point of view, one sometimes speaks of the *covariant phase space*. Here "covariance" refers to invariance under the action of the diffeomorphism group of $\Sigma$, meaning here that no space/time split in the form of a choice of Cauchy surface is made (or necessary) to define the phase space, even if a choice of Cauchy surface is possible and potentially useful for parameterizing phase space in terms of initial value data.

Now it is crucial that the covariant phase space $[\Sigma, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma$ comes equipped with further geometric structure which remembers that this is not just any old space, but the space of solutions of a locally variational differential equation.

To see how this comes about, let us write $(\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_{\mathrm{cl}})_\Sigma$ for the moduli space of all closed $p+1$-forms on PDEs. This is to mean that if $E$ is a bundle over $\Sigma$, and regarded as representing the space of solutions of the trivial PDE on sections of $E$, then morphisms $E \longrightarrow (\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1})_\Sigma$ are equivalent to closed differential $(p+2)$-forms on the jet bundle of $E$.

$$\left\{ E \longrightarrow (\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1})_\Sigma \right\} \;\simeq\; \Omega^{p+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(J^\infty_\Sigma E)\,.$$

The key now is that there is a natural filtration on these differential forms adapted to spacetime codimension. This is part of a bigrading structure on differential forms on jet bundles known as the *variational bicomplex* [And89]. In its low stages it looks as follows [FRS13a]:



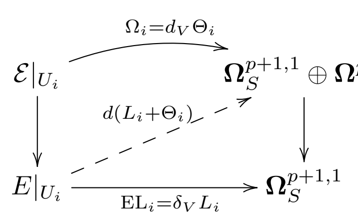

The lowest item here is what had concerned us in section 1.1.1.2 and 1.1.1.3, it is the moduli of $p+2$-forms which have $p+1$ of their legs along spacetime/worldvolume $\Sigma$ and whose remaining vertical leg along the space of local field configurations depends only on the field value itself, not on any of its derivatives. This was precisely the correct recipient of the variational curvature, hence the variational differential of horizontal $(p+1)$-forms representing local Lagrangians.

But now that we are moving up in codimension, this coefficient will disappear, as these forms do not contribute when integrating just over $p$-dimensional hypersurfaces. The correct coefficient for that case is instead clearly $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p,2}$, the moduli space of those $(p+2)$-forms on jet bundles which have $p$ of their legs along spacetime/worldvolume, and the remaining two along the space of local field configurations. (There is a more abstract way to derive this filtration from first principles, and which explains why we have restriction to "source forms" (not differentially depending on the jets), indicated by the subscript, only in the bottom row. But for the moment we just take that little subtlety for granted.)

So $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p,2}$ is precisely the space of those $(p+2)$-forms on the jet bundle that become (pre-)symplectic 2-forms on the space of field configurations once evaluated on a $p$-dimensional spatial slice $\Sigma_p$ of spacetime $\Sigma_{p+1}$. We may think of this as a *current* on spacetime with values in 2-forms on fields.

Indeed, there is a *canonical* such *presymplectic current* for every locally variational field theory [Zu87][Kh14]. To see this, we ask for a lift of the purely horizontal locally defined Lagrangian $L_i$ through the variational bicomplex to a $(p+1)$-form on the jet bundle whose curvature $d(L_i + \Theta_i)$ coincides with the Euler-Lagrange form $\mathrm{EL} = \delta_V L_i$ in vertical degree 1. Such a lift $L_i + \Theta_i$ is known as a *Lepage form* for $L_i$ (e.g. [**?**, 2.1.2]).

Notice that it is precisely the restriction to the shell $\mathcal{E}$ that makes the Euler-Lagrange form $\mathrm{EL}_i$ disappear, by construction, so that only the new curvature component $\Omega_i$ remains as the curvature of the Lepage form on shell:




The condition means that the horizontal differential of $\Theta_i$ has to cancel against the horizontally exact part that appears when decomposing the differential of $L_i$ as in equation 1.1. Hence, up to horizontal derivatives, this $\Theta_i$ is in fact uniquely fixed by $L_i$:

$$\begin{aligned} d(L_i + \Theta_i) &= (\mathrm{EL}_i - d_H(\Theta_i + d_H(\cdots))) + (d_H\Theta_i + d_V\Theta_i) \\ &= \mathrm{EL}_i + d_V\Theta_i \\ &=: \mathrm{EL}_i + \Omega_i \end{aligned} .$$

The new curvature component

$$\Omega \in \Omega^{p,2}(J^\infty_\Sigma E)$$

whose restriction to patches is given this way

$$\Omega|_{U_i} := d_V \Theta_i$$

is known as the *presymplectic current* [Zu87], [Kh14]. Because, by the way we found its existence, this is such that its transgression over a codimension-1 submanifold $\Sigma_p \hookrightarrow \Sigma$ yields a closed 2-form (a "presymplectic 2-form") on the covariant phase space:

$$\omega := \int_{\Sigma_p} [\Sigma_p, \Omega] \in \Omega^2([N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}])\,.$$

Since $\Omega$ is uniquely specified by the local Lagrangians $L_i$, this gives the covariant phase space canonically the structure of a presymplectic space $([\Sigma, \mathcal{E}], \omega)$. This is the reason why phase spaces in classical mechanics are given by (pre-)symplectic geometry as in [Ar89]. 3.

Since $\Omega$ is a conserved current, the canonical presymplectic form $\omega$ is indeed canonical, it does not depend on the choice of (Cauchy-)surface: if $\partial_{\mathrm{in}}\Sigma$ and $\partial_{\mathrm{out}}\Sigma$ are the incoming and outgoing Cauchy surfaces, respectively, in a piece of spacetime $\Sigma$, then the corresponding presymplectic forms agree[4]

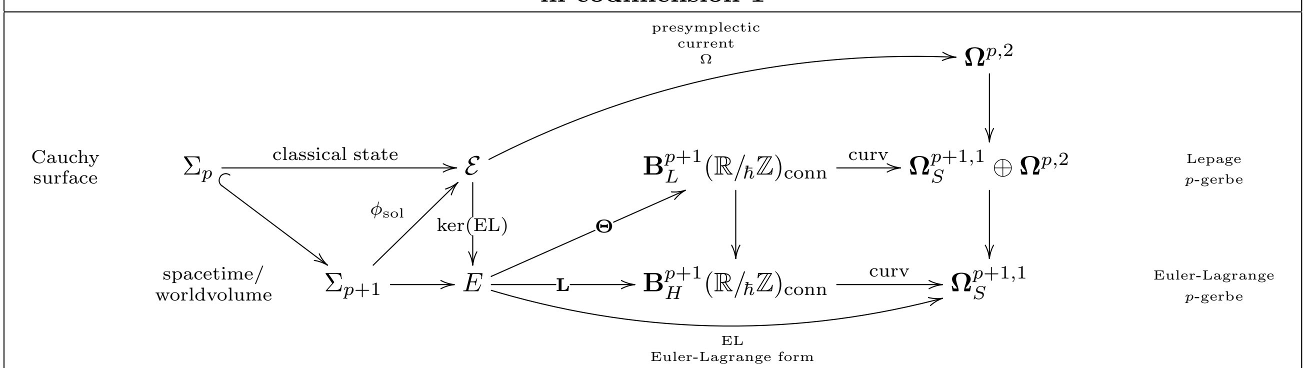
$$\omega_{\mathrm{out}} - \omega_{\mathrm{in}} = 0\,.$$

But by the discussion in 1.1.1.3, we do not just consider a locally variational field classical field theory to start with, but a prequantum field theory. Hence in fact there is more data before transgression than just the new curvature components $d_V \Theta_i$, there is also Cech cocycle coherence data that glues the locally defined $\Theta_i$ to a globally consistent differential cocycle.

We write $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}_L(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})$ for the moduli space for such coefficients (with the subscript for "Lepage"), so that morphisms $E \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_L(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})$ are equivalent to properly prequantized globally defined Lepage lifts of Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbes.

In summary then, the refinement of an Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbe $\mathbf{L}$ to a Lepage-$p$-gerbe $\Theta$ is given by the following diagram

**prequantum field theory**
**in codimension 1**

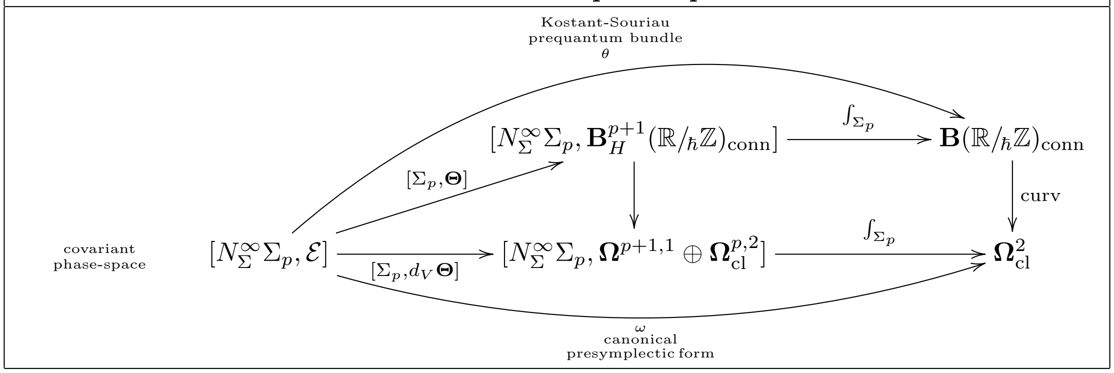



And now higher prequantum geometry bears fruit: since transgression is a natural operation, and since the differential coefficients $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ and $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}_L(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})$ precisely yield the coherence data to make the

[4] If the shell $\mathcal{E}$ is taken to be resolved by a derived manifold/BV-complex as in footnote 3, then any on-shell vanishing condition becomes vanishing up to a $d_{\mathrm{BV}}$-exact term, hence then there is a 2-form $\omega_{\mathrm{BV}}$ of BV-degreee -1 such that $\omega_{\mathrm{out}} - \omega_{\mathrm{in}} = d_{\mathrm{BV}}\omega_{\mathrm{BV}}$. (In [CMR12] this appears as BV-BFV axiom (9).) The Poisson bracket induced from this "shifted symplectic form" $\omega_{\mathrm{BV}}$ is known as the "BV-antibracket" (e.g. [HeTe92]).

local integrals over the locally defined differential forms $L_i$ and $\Theta_i$ be globally well defined, we may now hit this entire diagram with the transgression functor $\int_{\Sigma_p}[N_\Sigma^\infty \Sigma_p, -]$ to obtain this diagram:

**transgression of Lepage $p$-gerbe on the shell**
**to Kostant-Souriau prequantum bundle**
**on the covariant phase space**




This exhibits the transgression

$$\theta := \int_{\Sigma_p} [N_\Sigma^\infty \Sigma_p, \mathbf{\Theta}]$$

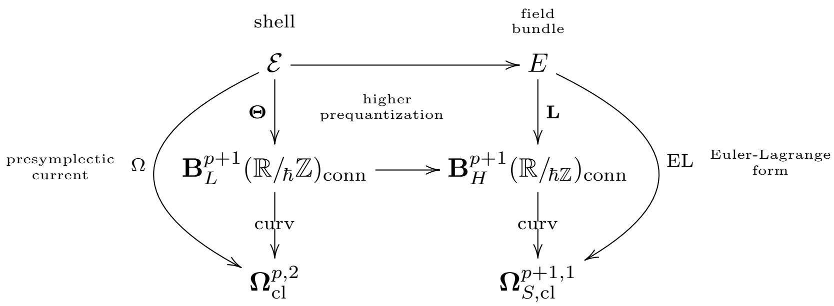
of the Lepage $p$-gerbe $\mathbf{\Theta}$ as a $(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})$-connection whose curvature is the canonical presymplectic form.

But this $([\Sigma, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma, \theta)$ is just the structure that Souriau originally called and demanded as a prequantization of the (pre-)symplectic phase space $([\Sigma, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma, \omega)$ [So70, So74, Ko75]. Conversely, we see that the Lepage $p$-gerbe $\mathbf{\Theta}$ is a "de-transgression" of the Kostant-Souriau prequantization of covariant phase space in codimension-1 to a higher prequantization in full codimension. In particular, the higher prequantization constituted by the Lepage $p$-gerbe constitutes a compatible choice of Kostant-Souriau prequantizations of covariant phase space for *all* choices of codimension-1 hypersurfaces at once. This is a genuine reflection of the fundamental locality of the field theory, even if we look at field configurations globally over all of a (spatial) hypersurface $\Sigma_p$.

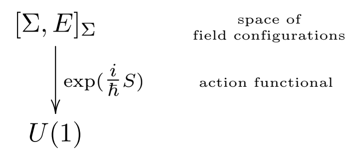
**1.1.1.5 The local observables – Lie theoretically** We discuss now how from the previous considerations naturally follow the concepts of local observables of field theories and of the Poisson bracket on them, as well as the concept of conserved currents and the variational Noether theorem relating them to symmetries. At the same time all these concepts are promoted to prequantum local field theory.

In section 1.1.1.4 we have arrived at a perspective of prequantum local field theory where the input datum is a partial differential equation of motion $\mathcal{E}$ on sections of a bundle $E$ over spacetime/worldvolume $\Sigma$ and equipped with a prequantization exhibited by a factorization of the Euler-Lagrange form $E \xrightarrow{\mathrm{EL}} \mathbf{\Omega}_S^{p+1,1}$ and of the presymplectic current form $\mathcal{E} \xrightarrow{\Omega} \mathbf{\Omega}^{p,2}$ through higher Cech-Deligne cocycles for an Euler-Lagrange

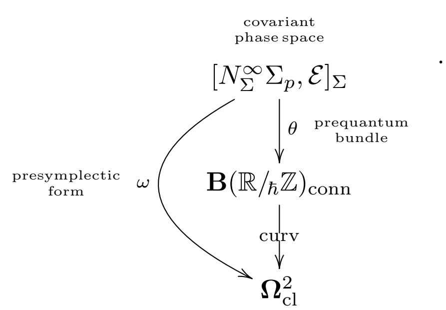
$p$-gerbe $\mathbf{L}$ and for a Lepage $p$-gerbe $\mathbf{\Theta}$:




This local data then transgresses to spaces of field configurations over codimension-k submanifolds of $\Sigma$. Transgressing to codimension-0 yields the globally defined exponentiated action functional



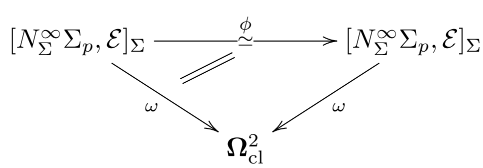

and transgressing to a codimension-1 (Cauchy-)surface $\Sigma_p \hookrightarrow \Sigma$ yields the covariant phase space as a prequantized pre-symplectic manifold



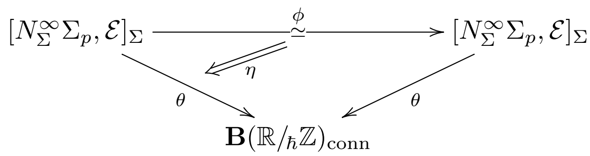

Given any space equipped with a map into some moduli space like this, an automorphism of this structure is a diffeomorphism of the space together with a homotopy which which exhibits the preservation of the given map into the moduli space.

We consider now the automorphisms of the prequantized covariant phase space and of the Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbe that it arises from via transgression, and find that these recover and make globally well-defined the traditional concepts of symmetries and conserved currents, related by the Noether theorem, and of observables equipped with their canonical Poisson bracket.

The correct automorphisms of presymplectic smooth spaces $([\Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma, \omega) \longrightarrow ([\Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma, \omega)$ are of course diffeomorphisms $\phi : [\Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma \longrightarrow [\Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma$ such that the presymplectic form is preserved, $\phi^*\omega = \omega$. In the diagrammatics this means that $\phi$ fits into a triangle of this form:

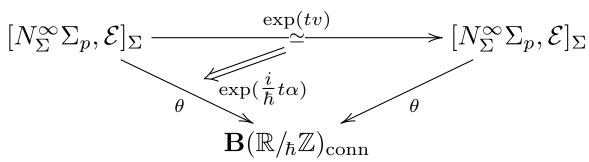


Viewed this way, there is an evident definition of an automorphism of a prequantization $([N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma, \theta)$ of $([N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma, \omega)$. This must be a diagram of the following form




hence a diffeomorphism $\phi$ together with a homotopy $\eta$ that relates the modulating morphism of the translated prequantum bundle back to the original prequantum bundle. By the discussion in section 1.1.1.3 such homotopies are equivalently coboundaries between the Cech-Deligne cocycles that correspond to the maps that the homotopy goes between. Here this means that the homotopy in the above diagram is an isomorphism $\eta : \phi^*\theta \xrightarrow{\simeq} \theta$ of circle bundles with connection. These pairs $(\phi, \eta)$ are what Souriau called the *quantomorphisms*. Via their canonical action on the space of section of the prequantum bundle, these become the quantum operators.

To see what this is in local data, consider the special case that $\theta$ is a globally defined 1-form and suppose that $\phi = \exp(tv)$ is the flow of a vector field $v$ .



,

Then the homotopy filling the previous diagram is given by a smooth function $\exp(it\alpha)$ such that

$$\exp(tv)^*\theta - \theta = td\alpha\,.$$

Infinitesimally, for $t \to 0$, this becomes

$$\mathcal{L}_v\theta = d\alpha\,.$$

Using Cartan's formula for the Lie derivative on the left, and the fact that $d\theta = \omega$, by prequantization, this is equivalent to

$$d\underbrace{(\alpha - \iota_v\theta)}_{H} = \iota_v\omega\,. \tag{1.3}$$

This is the classical formula [Ar89] which says that

$$H := \alpha - \iota_v\theta$$

is a Hamiltonian for the vector field $v$.

There is an evident smooth group structure on the homotopies as above, and one checks that the induced Lie bracket on Hamiltonians $H$ with Hamiltonian vector fields $v$ is the following

$$[(v_1, H_1), (v_2, H_2)] = ([v_1, v_2], \iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1}\omega)\,.$$

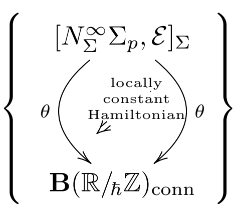
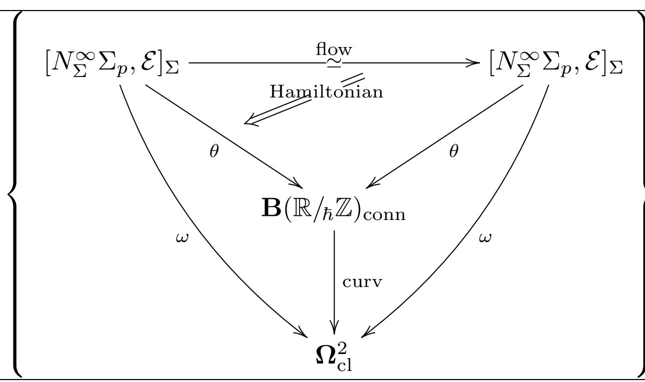
Traditionally this is considered only in the special case that $\omega$ is symplectic, hence equivalently, in the case that equation (1.3) uniquely associates a Hamiltonian vector field $v$ with any Hamiltonian $H$. In that case we may identify a pair $(v, H)$ with just $H$ and then the above Lie bracket becomes the *Poisson bracket* on smooth functions induced by $\omega$. Hence the Poisson bracket Lie algebra is secretly the infinitesimal symmetries of the prequantum line bundle $\theta$. This is noteworthy. For instance in the example of the phase space $(T^*\mathbb{R} = \mathbb{R}^2, \omega = dp \wedge dq)$ and writing $q, p : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$ for the two canonical coordinates ($p$ being called the "canonical momentum"), then the Poisson bracket, as above, between these two is

$$\boxed{[q,p] = i\hbar \quad \in \quad i\hbar\mathbb{R} \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{Pois}(\mathbb{R}^2, dp \wedge dq)}$$

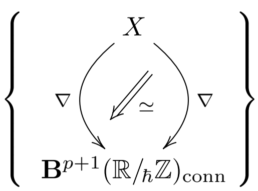
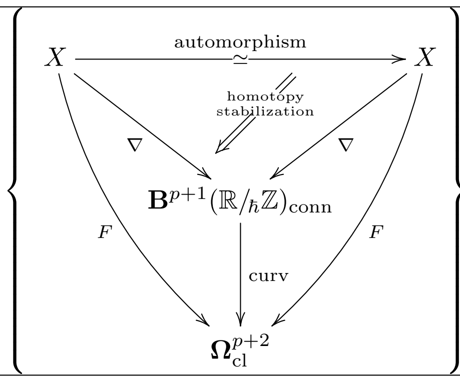
This equation is often regarded as the hallmark of quantum theory. In fact it is a prequantum phenomenon. Notice how the identification of the central term with $i\hbar$ follows here from the first prequantization step back around equation (1.2).

From equation (1.3) it is clear that the Poisson bracket is a Lie extension of the Lie algebra of (Hamiltonian) vector fields by the locally constant Hamiltonians, hence by constant functions in the case that $X$ is connected. The non-trivial Lie integration of this statement is the Kostant-Souriau extension, which says that the quantomorphism group of a connected phase space is a $U(1)$-extension of the diffeological group of Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms.

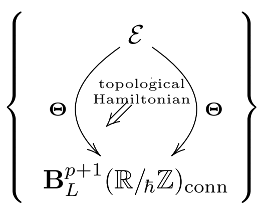
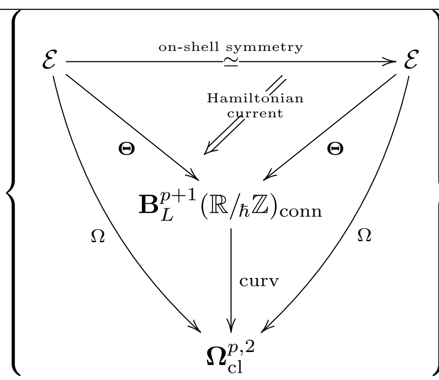
Hence in summary the situation for observables on the covariant phase space in codimension 1 is as follows:

| | **Kostant-Souriau extension** (connected phase space) | | **observables** | | **flows** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| infinitesimally | $i\hbar\mathbb{R}$ | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathfrak{Pois}([N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma,\ \omega)$ Poisson bracket | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathrm{Vect}(X)$ |
| finitely | $U(1)$ | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathbf{QuantMorph}([N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma,\ \theta)$ quantomorphism group | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathbf{Diff}(X)$ |
| abstractly |  | $\longrightarrow$ |  | $\longrightarrow$ | $\left\{ [N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}] \overset{\simeq}{\dashrightarrow} [N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma \right\}$ |

Generally the symmetries of a $p$-gerbe connection $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_{\hbar}\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ form an extension of the symmetry group of the underlying space by the higher group of flat $(p-1)$-gerbe connections [FRS13a]:

| | **higher extension** | | **symmetry of $p$-gerbe $(p+1)$-connection** | | **automorphisms of base space** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| infinitesimally | $\mathrm{Ch}^{\bullet \leq p}_{\mathrm{dR,cl}}(X)$ | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathfrak{sym}_X(F)$ <br> stablizer $L_\infty$-algebra | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathrm{Vect}(X)$ |
| finitely | $\mathbf{Ch}^{\bullet \leq p}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X, U(1))$ | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathbf{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(X)}(\nabla)$ <br> stabilizer $\infty$-group | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$ |
| abstractly |   | $\longrightarrow$ |   | $\longrightarrow$ | $\left\{ V \xrightarrow{\simeq} V \right\}$ |

Specifying this general phenomenon to the Lepage $p$-gerbes, it gives a Poisson bracket $L_\infty$-algebra on higher currents (local observables) [FRS13b] and its higher Lie integration to a higher quantomorphism group constituting a higher Kostant-Souriau extension of the differential automorphisms of the field bundle. This is determined by the (pre-)symplectic current $p+2$-form $\Omega$ in analogy to how the ordinary Poisson bracket is determined by the (pre-)symplectic 2-form $\omega$, hence this is a Poisson $L_\infty$-bracket for what has been called "multisymplectic geometry" (see [Rog10]):

| | **higher Kostant-Souriau extension** | | **symmetry of Lepage $p$-gerbe** | | **differential automorphisms of dynamical shell** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| infinitesimally | $\mathrm{Ch}^{\bullet \leq p}_{\mathrm{dR,cl}}(\mathcal{E})$ | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathfrak{Pois}(\mathcal{E},\ \Omega)$ <br> Poisson bracket $L_\infty$-algebra | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathrm{Vect}(\mathcal{E})$ |
| finitely | $\mathbf{Ch}^{\bullet \leq p}_{\mathrm{cl}}(\mathcal{E}, U(1))$ | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathbf{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(\mathcal{E})}(\mathbf{\Theta})$ <br> quantomorphism $\infty$-group | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathcal{E})$ |
| abstractly |   | $\longrightarrow$ |   | $\longrightarrow$ | $\left\{ \mathcal{E} \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\text{on-shell symmetry}} \mathcal{E} \right\}$ |

So far this concerned the covariant phase space with its prequantization via the Lepage $p$-gerbe. In the same way there are the higher symmetries of the field space with its prequantization via the Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbes $\mathbf{L}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \overset{\phi}{\underset{\simeq}{\longrightarrow}} & E \\ & {}_{\mathbf{L}}\searrow \;\; \overset{\swarrow}{\simeq} \;\; \swarrow_{\mathbf{L}} & \\ & \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_{\hbar}\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} .$$

To see what these are in components, consider again the special case that $\mathbf{L}$ is given by a globally defined horizontal form, and consider a one-parameter flow of such symmetries

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \overset{\exp(tv)}{\underset{\simeq}{\longrightarrow}} & E \\ & {}_{\mathbf{L}}\searrow \;\; \overset{\swarrow}{\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}t\Delta)} \;\; \swarrow_{\mathbf{L}} & \\ & \mathbf{B}_H^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_{\hbar}\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} .$$

In Cech-Deligne cochain components this diagram equivalently exhibits the equation

$$\exp(tv)^* L - L = t\, d_H \Delta$$

on differential forms on the jet bundle of $E$, where $v$ is a vertical vector field. Infinitesimally for $t \to 0$ this becomes

$$\mathcal{L}_v L = d_H \Delta \,.$$

Since $L$ is horizontal while $v$ is vertical, the left hand reduces, by equation 1.1, to

$$\iota_v dL = \iota_v(\mathrm{EL} - d_H \Theta) \,,$$

Therefore the infinitesimal symmetry of $\mathbf{L}$ is equivalent to

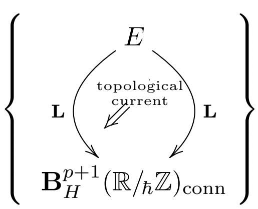
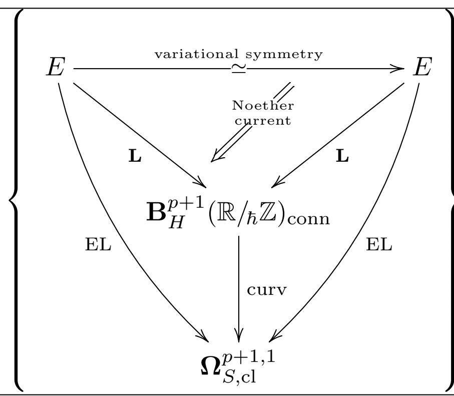
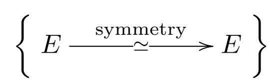
$$d_H \underbrace{(\Delta - \iota_v \Theta)}_{J} = \iota_v \mathrm{EL} \,.$$

This says that associated to the symmetry $v$ is a current

$$J := \Delta - \iota_v \Theta$$

which is conserved (horizontally closed) on shell (on the vanishing locus $\mathcal{E}$ of the Euler-Lagrange form EL). This is precisely the statement of Noether's theorem (the first variational theorem of Noether, to be precise). Indeed, in its modern incarnation [**?**, Kh16], Noether's theorem is understood as stating a Lie algebra extension of the Lie algebra of symmetries by topological currents to the Lie-Dickey bracket on equivalence classes of conserved currents (see [**?**, section 3]).

Hence the $\infty$-group extension of symmetries of the Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbe promotes Noether's theorem to the statement that higher Noether currents form an $L_\infty$-algebra extension of the infinitesimal symmetries by topological currents: [5]

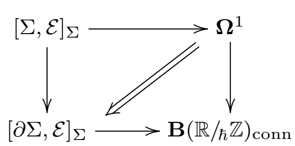
| | **higher topological charge extension** | | **symmetry of Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbe** | | **differential automorphisms of field bundle** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| infinitesimally | $\mathrm{Ch}^{\bullet \leq p}_{\mathrm{dR,cl}}(E)$ | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathfrak{curr}(E,\ \mathrm{EL})$<br>Dickey bracket current $L_\infty$-algebra | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathrm{Vect}(E)$ |
| finitely | $\mathbf{Ch}^{\bullet \leq p}_{\mathrm{cl}}(E, U(1))$ | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathbf{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(E)}(\mathbf{L})$<br>de-transgressed Kac-Moody $\infty$-group | $\longrightarrow$ | $\mathbf{Aut}(E)$ |
| abstractly |  | $\longrightarrow$ |  | $\longrightarrow$ |  |



---

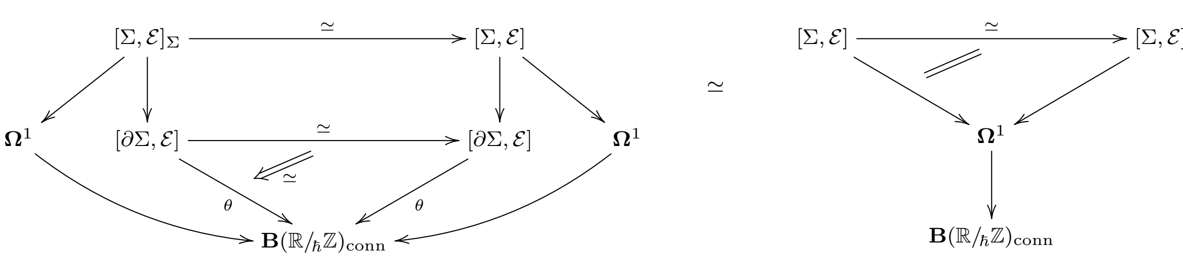
[5] That the currents above are indeed conserved follows purely abstractly as follows.

Let $\Sigma$ have a boundary $\partial\Sigma \hookrightarrow \Sigma$. Transgression with boundary works as follows: in the bulk one obtains a section of the pullback of the boundary transgression. This is exibited by a diagram of the form





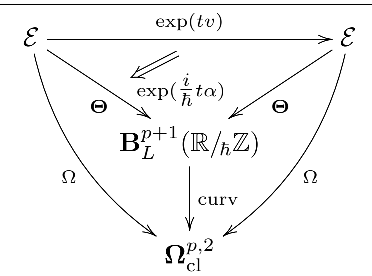
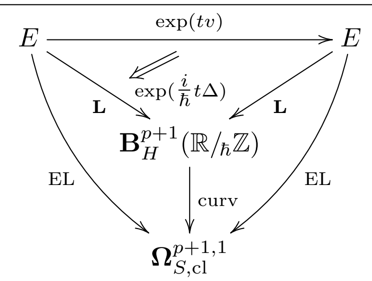
which is natural in $\mathcal{E}$. Using this naturality, every symmetry of $\mathbf{L}$ given by a triangular diagram as above yields a prism diagram when hit with the transgression operation. Cutting that prism open it is an equivalence of the following form:





This says that if $\Sigma = \Sigma_p \times [0,1]$, then the difference between the two incarnations of the conserved observable on the two bounding surfaces, as measured via the identification of the underlying bundles canonically given by transgression, vanishes.

In summary, physical local observables arise from symmetries of higher prequantum geometry as follows.

| **prequantum geometry** | **automorphism** up to **homotopy** | **Lie derivative** up to **differential** | **equivalently** | **physical quantity** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| prequantum shell |  | $\mathcal{L}_v\Theta = d\alpha$ | $d\underbrace{(\alpha - \iota_v\Theta)}_{H} = \iota_v\Omega$ | Hamiltonian |
| prequantum field bundle |  | $\mathcal{L}_v L = d_H\Delta$ | $d_H\underbrace{(\Delta - \iota_v\Theta)}_{J} = \iota_v\mathrm{EL}$ | conserved current |

**1.1.1.6 The evolution – correspondingly** The transgression formula discussed in section 1.1.1.4 generalizes to compact oriented $d$-manifolds $\Sigma$, possibly with boundary $\partial\Sigma \hookrightarrow \Sigma$. Here it becomes transgression *relative* to the boundary transgression.

For curvature forms this is again classical: For $\omega \in \Omega^{p+2}(\Sigma \times U)$ a closed differential form, then $\int_\Sigma \omega \in \Omega^{p+2-d}(U)$ is not in general a closed differential form anymore, but by Stokes' theorem its differential equals the boundary transgression:

$$\begin{aligned} d_U \int_\Sigma \omega &= \int_\Sigma d_U\omega \\ &= -\int_\Sigma d_\Sigma\omega \\ &= -\int_{\partial\Sigma} \omega\,. \end{aligned}$$

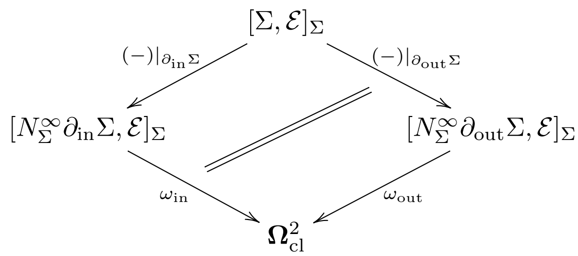
This computation also shows that a sufficient condition for the bulk transgression of $\omega$ to be closed and for the boundary transgression to vanish is that $\omega$ be also *horizontally* closed, i.e. closed with respect to $d_\Sigma$.

Applied to the construction of the canonical presymplectic structure on phase spaces in 1.1.1.4 this has the important implication that the canonical presymplectic form on phase space is indeed canonical.

Namely, by equation (1.1), the presymplectic current $\Omega \in \Omega^{p,2}(E)$ is horizontally closed on shell, hence is indeed a conserved current:

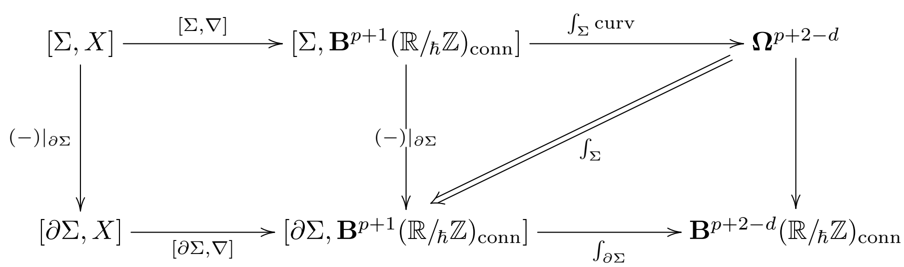
$$\begin{aligned} d_H\Omega &= d_H d_V\Theta \\ &= -d_V d_H\Theta \\ &= -d_V(-d_V L + \mathrm{EL}) \\ &= -d_V\mathrm{EL}\,. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that if $\Sigma$ is a spacetime/worldcolume with, say, two boundary components $\partial\Sigma = \partial_{\mathrm{in}}\Sigma \sqcup \partial_{\mathrm{out}}\Sigma$, then the presymplectic structures $\omega_{\mathrm{in}} := \int_{\partial_{\mathrm{in}}\Sigma}[\partial_{\mathrm{in}}\Sigma, \omega]$ and $\omega_{\mathrm{out}} := \int_{\partial_{\mathrm{out}\Sigma}\Sigma}[\partial_{\mathrm{out}}\Sigma, \omega]$ agree on the covariant phase space:[6]




This diagram may be thought of as expressing an *isotropic correspondence* between the two phase spaces, where $[\Sigma, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma$ is isotropic in the product of the two boundary phase spaces, regarded as equipped with the presymplectic form $\omega_{\mathrm{out}} - \omega_{\mathrm{in}}$. In particular, when both $\partial_{\mathrm{in}}\Sigma$ and $\partial_{\mathrm{out}}\Sigma$ are Cauchy surfaces in $\Sigma$, so that the two boundary restriction maps in the above diagram are in fact equivalences, then this is a *Lagrangian correspondence* in the sense of [We71][We83].

All this needs to have and does have prequantization: The transgression of a $p$-gerbe $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ to the bulk of a $d$-dimensional $\Sigma$ is no longer quite a $p-d$-gerbe itself, but is a section of the pullback of the $p-d+1$-gerbe that is the transgression to the boundary $\partial\Sigma$. Diagrammatically this means that transgression to maps out of $\Sigma$ is a homotopy filling a diagram of the following form




Here the appearance of the differential forms coefficients $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2-d}$ in the top right corner witnesses the fact that the bulk term $\int_\Sigma[\Sigma, \nabla]$ is a trivialization of the pullback of the boundary gerbe $\int_{\partial\Sigma}[\partial\Sigma, \nabla]$ only as a plain gerbe, not necessarily as a gerbe with connection: in general the curvature of the pullback of $\int_{\partial\Sigma}[\partial\Sigma, \nabla]$ will not vanish, but only be exact, as in the above discussion, and the form that it is the de Rham differential of is expressed by the top horizontal morphism in the above diagram.

Hence in the particular case of the transgression of a Lepage $p$-gerbe to covariant phase space, this formula yields a prequantization of the above Lagrangian correspondence, where now the globally defined action functional

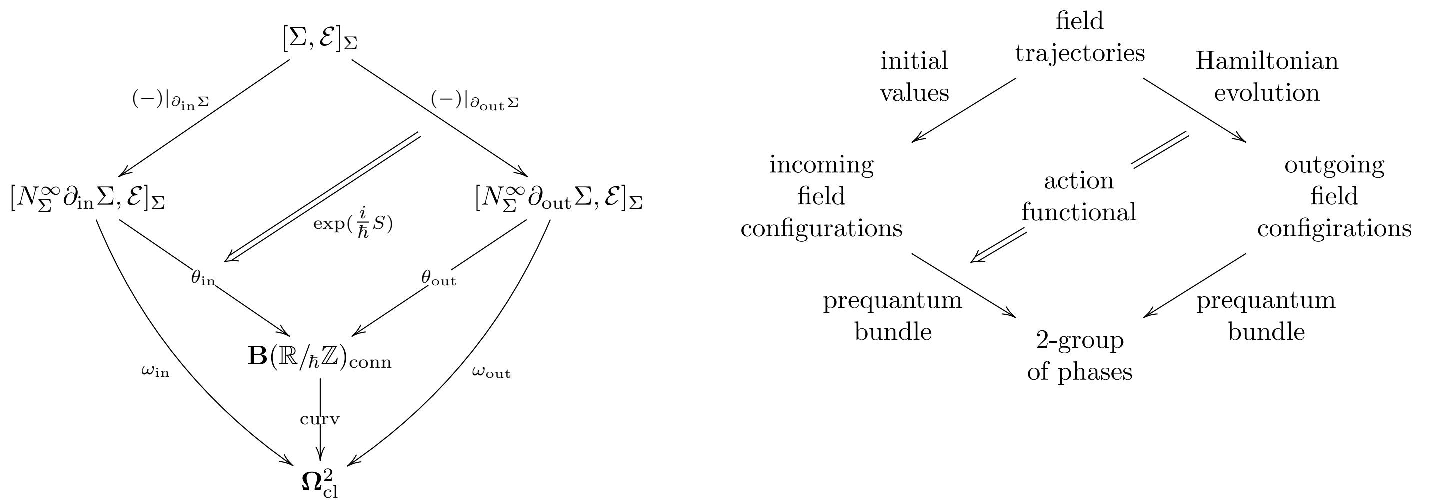
$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S) = \int_\Sigma [\Sigma, \mathbf{\Theta}] = \int_\Sigma [\Sigma, \mathbf{L}]$$

exhibits the the equivalence between the incoming and outgoing prequantum bundles

$$\theta_{\mathrm{in/out}} = \int_{\partial_{\mathrm{in/out}}\Sigma} [\partial_{\mathrm{in/out}}\Sigma, \theta]$$

[6] If one uses a BV-resolution of the covariant phase space, then they agree up to the BVV-differential of a BV (-1)-shifted 2-form, we come back to this in section 1.1.2.2.

on covariant phase space:




This *prequantized Lagrangian correspondence* hence reflects the prequantum evolution from fields on the incoming piece $\partial_{\mathrm{in}}\Sigma$ of spacetime/worldvolume to the outgoing piece $\partial_{\mathrm{out}}\Sigma$ via trajectories of field configurations along $\Sigma$.

### 1.1.2 Examples of prequantum field theory

We survey classes of examples of prequantum field theory in the sense of section 1.1.1.

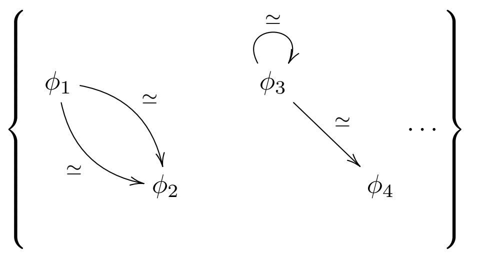
- 1.1.2.1 – Gauge fields;
- 1.1.2.3 – Sigma-model field theories;
- 1.1.2.4 – Chern-Simons-type field theory;
- 1.1.2.5 – Wess-Zumino-Witten-type field theory.

**1.1.2.1 Gauge fields** Modern physics rests on two fundamental principles. One is the *locality principle*; its mathematical incarnation in terms of differential cocycles on PDEs was the content of section 1.1.1. The other is the *gauge principle*.

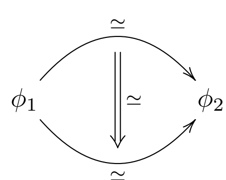
In generality, the gauge principle says that given any two field configurations $\phi_1$ and $\phi_2$ – and everything in nature is some field cofiguration – then it is physically meaningless to ask whether they are *equal*, instead one has to ask whether they are *equivalent* via a *gauge transformation*

$$\phi_1 \xrightarrow[\text{equivalence}]{\overset{\simeq}{\text{gauge}}} \phi_2 \ .$$

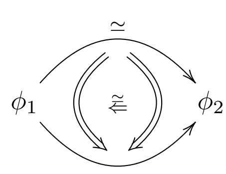
There may be more than one gauge transformation between two field configurations, and hence there may be auto-gauge equivalences that non-trivially re-identify a field configuration with itself. Hence a space of physical field configurations does not really look like a set of points, it looks more like this cartoon:




Moreover, if there are two gauge transformations, it is again physically meaningless to ask whether they are equal, instead one has to ask whether they are equivalent via a *gauge-of-gauge* transformation.




And so on.




In this generality, the gauge principle of physics is the mathematical principle of *homotopy theory*: in general it is meaningless to say that some objects form a set whose elements are either equal or not, instead one has to consider the *groupoid* which they form, whose morphisms are the equivalences between these objects. Moreover, in general it is meaningless to assume that any two such morphisms are equal or not, rather one has to consider the groupoid which these form, which then in total makes a *2-groupoid*. But in general it is also meaningless to ask whether two equivalences of two equivalences are equal or not, and continuing this way one finds that objects in general form an *$\infty$-groupoid*, also called a *homotopy type*.

Of particular interest in physics are smooth gauge transformations that arise by integration of *infinitesimal* gauge transformations. An infinitesimal smooth groupoid is a *Lie algebroid* and an infinitesimal smooth $\infty$-groupoid is an *$L_\infty$-algebroid*. The importance of infinitesimal symmetry transformations in physics, together with the simple fact that they are easier to handle than finite transformations, makes them appear more prominently in the physics literature. In particular, the physics literature is secretly well familiar with smooth $\infty$-groupoids in their infinitesimal incarnation as $L_\infty$-algebroids: these are equivalently what in physics are called *BRST complexes*. What are called *ghosts* in the BRST complex are the cotangents to the space of equivalences between objects, and what are called higher order *ghosts-of-ghosts* are cotangents to spaces of higher order equivalences-of-equivalences. We indicate in a moment how to see this.

While every species of fields in physics is subject to the gauge principle, one speaks specifically of *gauge fields* for those fields which are locally given by differential forms $A$ with values in a Lie algebra (for ordinary gauge fields) or more generally with values in an $L_\infty$-algebroid (for higher gauge fields).

| | **infinitesimal** | | **finite** | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **by itself** | **acting on fields** | **by itself** | **acting on fields** |
| **symmetry** | Lie algebra | Lie algebroid | Lie group | Lie groupoid |
| **symmetries of symmetries** | Lie 2-algebra | Lie 2-algebroid | smooth 2-group | smooth 2-groupoid |
| **higher order symmetries** | $L_\infty$-algebra | $L_\infty$-algebroid | smooth $\infty$-group | smooth $\infty$-groupoid |
| **physics terminology** | FDA (e.g. [CaDAFr91]) | BRST complex (e.g. [HeTe92]) | gauge group | — |

We now indicate how such gauge fields and higher gauge fields come about.

- 1.1.2.1.1 – Ordinary gauge fields;
- 1.1.2.1.2 – Higher gauge fields.

**1.1.2.1.1 Ordinary gauge fields.** To start with, consider a plain group $G$. For the standard applications mentioned in section 1.1.1.1 we would take $G = U(1)$ or $G = \mathrm{SU}(n)$ or products of these, and then the gauge fields we are about to find would be those of electromagnetism and of the nuclear forces, as they appear in the standard model of particle physics.

In order to highlight that we think of $G$ as a *group of symmetries* acting on some (presently unspecified object) $*$, we write

$$G = \left\{ * \xrightarrow{\;g\;} * \right\} .$$

In this vein, the product operation $(-)\cdot(-) : G \times G \to G$ in the group reflects the result of applying two symmetry operations

$$G \times G \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & * & \\ {}^{g_1}\nearrow & & \searrow^{g_2} \\ * & \xrightarrow[g_1 \cdot g_2]{} & * \end{array} \right\} .$$

Similarly, the associativity of the group product operation reflects the result of applying three symmetry operations:

$$G \times G \times G \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} * & \xrightarrow{g_2} & * \\ {\scriptstyle g_1}\uparrow & \nearrow^{g_1 \cdot g_2} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle g_3} \\ * & \xrightarrow[(g_1 \cdot g_2)\cdot g_3]{} & * \end{array} \quad = \quad \begin{array}{ccc} * & \xrightarrow{g_2} & * \\ {\scriptstyle g_1}\uparrow & \searrow^{g_2 \cdot g_3} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle g_3} \\ * & \xrightarrow[g_1 \cdot (g_2 \cdot g_3)]{} & * \end{array} \right\}$$

Here the reader should think of the diagram on the right as a tetrahedron, hence a 3-simplex, that has been cut open only for notational purposes.

Continuing in this way, $k$-tuples of symmetry transformations serve to label $k$-simplices whose edges and faces reflect all the possible ways of consecutively applying the corresonding symmetry operations. This forms a *simplicial set*, called the *simplicial nerve* of $G$, hence a system

$$\mathbf{B}G : k \mapsto G^{\times_k}$$

of sets of $k$-simplices for all $k$, together with compatible maps between these that restrict $k+1$-simplices to their $k$-faces (the face maps) and those that regard $k$-simplices as degenerate $k+1$-simplices (the degeneracy maps). From the above picture, the face maps of $\mathbf{B}G$ in low degree look as follows (where $p_i$ denotes projection onto the $i$th factor in a Cartesian product):

$$\mathbf{B}G := \left[ \quad \cdots\cdots\cdots \; G \times G \times G \; \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{(p_1, p_2)} \\ \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id}, (-)\cdot(-))} \\ \xrightarrow{((-)\cdot(-), \mathrm{id})} \\ \xrightarrow[(p_2, p_3)]{} \end{array} \; G \times G \; \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{p_1} \\ \xrightarrow{(-)\cdot(-)} \\ \xrightarrow[p_2]{} \end{array} \; G \; \begin{array}{c} \longrightarrow \\ \longrightarrow \end{array} \; * \quad \right]$$

It is useful to remember the smooth structure on these spaces of $k$-fold symmetry operation by remembering all possible ways of forming smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of $k$-fold symmetry operations, for any abstract coordinate chart $U = \mathbb{R}^n$. Now a smoothly $U$-parameterized collection of $k$-fold $G$-symmetries is simply a smooth function from $U$ to $G^{\times_k}$, hence equivalently is $k$ smooth functions from $U$ to $G$. Hence the symmetry group $G$ together with its smooth structure is encoded in the system of assignments

$$\mathbf{B}G : (U, k) \mapsto C^\infty(U, G^{\times_k}) = C^\infty(U, G)^{\times_k}$$

which is contravariantly functorial in abstract coordinate charts $U$ (with smooth functions between them) and in abstract $k$-simplices (with cellular maps between them). This is the incarnation of $\mathbf{B}G$ as a *smooth simplicial presheaf.*

Another basic example of a smooth simplicial presheaf is the nerve of an open cover. Let $\Sigma$ be a smooth manifold and let $\{U_i \hookrightarrow \Sigma\}_{i \in I}$ be a cover of $\Sigma$ by coordinate charts $U_i \simeq \mathbb{R}^n$. Write $U_{i_0 \cdots i_k} := U_{i_0} \underset{X}{\times} U_{i_1} \underset{X}{\times} \cdots \underset{X}{\times} U_{i_k}$ for the intersection of $(k+1)$ coordinate charts in $X$. These arrange into a simplicial object like so

$$C(\{U_i\}) = \left[ \quad \cdots\cdots\cdots \; \coprod_{i_0, i_1, i_2} U_{i_0, i_1, i_2} \; \begin{array}{c} \longrightarrow \\ \longrightarrow \\ \longrightarrow \end{array} \; \coprod_{i_0, i_1} U_{i_0, i_1} \; \begin{array}{c} \longrightarrow \\ \longrightarrow \end{array} \; \coprod_{i_0} U_{i_0} \quad \right].$$

A map of simplicial objects

$$C(U_i) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G$$

is in degree 1 a collection of smooth $G$-valued functions $g_{ij} : U_{ij} \longrightarrow G$ and in degree 2 it is the condition that on $U_{ijk}$ these functions satisfy the cocycle condition $g_{ij} \cdot g_{jk} = g_{ik}$. Hence this defines the transition functions for a $G$-principal bundle on $\Sigma$. In physics this may be called the *instanton sector* of a $G$-gauge field. A $G$-gauge field itself is a connection on such a $G$-principal bundle, we come to this in a moment.

We may also think of the manifold $\Sigma$ itself as a simplicial object, one that does not actually depend on the simplicial degree. Then there is a canonical projection map $C(\{U_i\}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Sigma$. When restricted to arbitrarily small open neighbourhoods (stalks) of points in $\Sigma$, then this projection becomes a *weak homotopy equivalence* of simplicial sets. We are to regard smooth simplicial presheaves which are connected by morphisms that are stalkwise weak homotopy equivalences as equivalent. With this understood, a smooth simplicial presheaf is also called a *higher smooth stack*. Hence a $G$-principal bundle on $\Sigma$ is equivalently a morphism of higher smooth stacks of the form

$$\Sigma \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G\,.$$

For analysing smooth symmetries it is useful to focus on infinitesimal symmetries. To that end, consider the (first order) infinitesimal neighbourhood $\mathbb{D}_e(-)$ of the neutral element in the simplicial nerve. Here $\mathbb{D}_e(-)$ is the space around the neutral element that is "so small" that for any smooth function on it which vanishes at $e$, the square of that function is "so very small" as to actually be equal to zero.

We denote the resulting system of $k$-fold infinitesimal $G$-symmetries by $\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}$:

$$\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g} = \left[\ \cdots\cdots\ \mathbb{D}_e(G\times G\times G) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{(p_1,p_2)} \\ \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id},(-)\cdot(-))} \\ \xrightarrow{((-)\cdot(-),\mathrm{id})} \\ \xrightarrow[(p_2,p_3)]{} \end{array} \mathbb{D}_e(G\times G) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{p_1} \\ \xrightarrow{(-)\cdot(-)} \\ \xrightarrow[p_2]{} \end{array} \mathbb{D}_e(G) \begin{array}{c} \longrightarrow \\ \longrightarrow \end{array} * \ \right].$$

The alternating sum of pullbacks along the simplicial face maps shown above defines a differential $d_{\mathrm{CE}}$ on the spaces of functions on these infinitesimal neighbourhoods. The corresponding *normalized chain complex* is the differential-graded algebra on those functions which vanish when at least one of their arguments is the neutral element in $G$. One finds that this is the Chevalley-Eilenberg complex

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) = (\wedge^\bullet \mathfrak{g}^*,\ d_{\mathrm{CE}} = [-,-]^*)\ ,$$

which is the Grassmann algebra on the linear dual of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ of $G$ equipped with the differential whose component $\wedge^1\mathfrak{g}^* \to \wedge^2\mathfrak{g}^*$ is given by the linear dual of the Lie bracket $[-,-]$, and which hence extends to all higher degrees by the graded Leibniz rule.

For example, when we choose $\{t_a\}$ a linear basis for $\mathfrak{g}$, with structure constants of the Lie bracket denoted $[t_a, t_b] = C^c{}_{ab} t_c$, then with a dual basis $\{t^a\}$ of $\mathfrak{g}^*$ we have that

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}} t^a = \tfrac{1}{2} C^a{}_{bc}\, t^b \wedge t^c\,.$$

Given any structure constants for a skew bracket like this, then the condition $(d_{\mathrm{CE}})^2 = 0$ is equivalent to the Jacobi identity, hence to the condition that the skew bracket indeed makes a Lie algebra.

Traditionally, the Chevalley-Eilenberg complex is introduced in order to define and to compute Lie algebra cohomology: a $d_{\mathrm{CE}}$-closed element

$$\mu \in \wedge^{p+1}\mathfrak{g}^* \hookrightarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})$$

is equivalently a Lie algebra $(p+1)$-cocycle. This phenomenon will be crucial further below.

Thinking of $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})$ as the algebra of functions on the infinitesimal neighbourhood of the neutral element inside $\mathbf{B}G$ makes it plausible that this is an equivalent incarnation of the Lie algebra of $G$. This is also easily checked directly: sending finite dimensional Lie algebras to their Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra constitutes a fully faithful inclusion

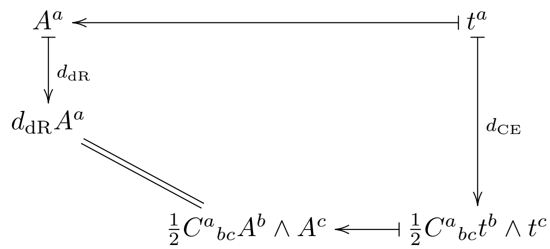
$$\mathrm{CE}\ :\ \mathrm{LieAlg} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{dgcAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

of the category of Lie algebras into the opposite of the category of differential graded-commutative algebras. This perspective turns out to be useful for computations in gauge theory and in higher gauge theory. Therefore it serves to see how various familiar constructions on Lie algebras look when viewed in terms of their Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras.

Most importantly, for $\Sigma$ a smooth manifold and $\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma)$ denoting its de Rham dg-algebra of differential forms, then *flat* $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-forms on $\Sigma$ are equivalent to dg-algebra homomorphisms like so:

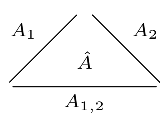
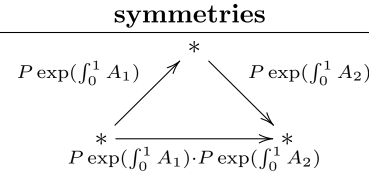
$$\Omega^\bullet_{\text{flat}}(\Sigma, \mathfrak{g}) := \left\{ A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma) \otimes \mathfrak{g} \mid F_A := d_{\text{dR}} A - \tfrac{1}{2}[A \wedge A] = 0 \right\} \simeq \{ \ \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \longleftarrow \text{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \ \} \ .$$

To see this, notice that the underlying homomorphism of graded algebras $\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \longleftarrow \wedge^\bullet \mathfrak{g}^*$ is equivalently a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form, and that the respect for the differential forces it to be flat:




The flat Lie algebra valued forms play a crucial role in recovering a Lie group from its Lie algebra as the group of finite paths of infinitesimal symmetries. To that end, write $\Delta^1 := [0,1]$ for the abstract interval. Then a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential form $A \in \Omega^1_{\text{flat}}(\Delta^1, \mathfrak{g})$ is at each point of $\Delta^1$ an infinitesimal symmetry, hence it encodes the finite symmetry transformation that is given by applying the infinitesimal transformation $A_t$ at each $t \in \Delta^1$ and then "integrating these". This integration is called the *parallel transport* of $A$ and is traditionally denoted by the symbols $P\exp(\int_0^1 A) \in G$. Now of course different paths of infinitesimal transformations may have the same integrated effect. But precisely if $A_1$ and $A_2$ have the same integrated effect, then there is a flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form on the disk which restricts to $A_1$ on the upper semicircle and to $A_2$ on the lower semicircle.

In particular, the composition of two paths of infinitesimal gauge transformations is in general not equal to any given such path with the same integrated effect, but there will always be a flat 1-form $\hat{A}$ on the 2-simplex $\Delta^2$ which interpolates:

| **infinitesimal symmetries** | **integration** | **finite symmetries** |
|---|---|---|
|   | $\mapsto$ |   |

In order to remember how the group obtained this way is a Lie group, we simply need to remember how the above composition works in smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of 1-forms. But a $U$-parameterized collection of 1-forms on $\Delta^k$ is simply a 1-form on $U \times \Delta^k$ which vanishes on vectors tangent to $U$, hence a vertical 1-form on $U \times \Delta^k$, regarded as a simplex bundle over $U$.

All this is captured by saying that there is a simplicial smooth presheaf $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ which assigns to an abstract coordinate chart $U$ and a simplicial degree $k$ the set of flat vertical $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-forms on $U \times \Delta^k$:

$$\begin{aligned} \exp(\mathfrak{g}) := (U, k) \ & \mapsto \Omega^\bullet_{\substack{\text{flat} \\ \text{vert}}}(U \times \Delta^k, \mathfrak{g}) \\ & = \{ \ \Omega^\bullet_{\text{vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) \longleftarrow \text{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \ \} \end{aligned} .$$

By the above discussion, we do not care which of various possible flat 1-forms $\hat{A}$ on 2-simplices are used to exhibit the composition of finite gauge transformation. The technical term for retaining just the information that there is any such 1-form on a 2-simplex at all is to form the *2-coskeleton* $\text{cosk}_2(\exp(\mathfrak{g}))$. And one finds that this indeed recovers the smooth gauge group $G$, in that there is a weak equivalence of simplicial presheaves:

$$\text{cosk}_3(\exp(\mathfrak{g})) \simeq \mathbf{B}G \, .$$

So far this produces the gauge group itself from the infinitesimal symmetries. We now discuss how similarly its action on gauge fields is obtained. To that end, consider the *Weil algebra* of $\mathfrak{g}$, which is obtained from the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra by throwing in another copy of $\mathfrak{g}$, shifted up in degree

$$W(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) := (\wedge^\bullet(\mathfrak{g}^* \oplus \mathfrak{g}^*[1]), d_W = d_{\mathrm{CE}} + \mathbf{d})\ ,$$

where $\mathbf{d} : \wedge^1\mathfrak{g}^* \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathfrak{g}^*[1]$ is the degree shift and we declare $d_{\mathrm{CE}}$ and $\mathbf{d}$ to anticommute. So if $\{t^a\}$ is the dual basis of $\mathfrak{g}^*$ from before, write $\{r^a\}$ for the same elements thought of in one degree higher as a basis of $\mathfrak{g}^*[1]$; then

$$\begin{array}{rcl} d_{\mathrm{W}} : t^a & \mapsto & \frac{1}{2}C^a{}_{bc}t^b \wedge t^c + r^a \\ d_{\mathrm{W}} : r^a & \mapsto & C^a{}_{bc}t^b \wedge r^c \end{array} .$$

A key point of this construction is that dg-algebra homomorphisms out of the Weil algebra into a de Rham algebra are equivalent to unconstrained $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms:

$$\Omega(\Sigma, \mathfrak{g}) := \left\{A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma) \otimes \mathfrak{g}\right\} \ \simeq \ \{\ \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \longleftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})\ \}\ .$$

This is because now the extra generators $r^a$ pick up the failure of the respect for the $d_{\mathrm{CE}}$-differential, that failure is precisely the curvature $F_A$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A^a & \longleftarrow\!\!\shortmid & t^a \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_{\mathrm{W}}} \\ d_{\mathrm{dR}}A^a & = & \\ \frac{1}{2}C^a{}_{bc}A^b \wedge A^c + F_A^a & \longleftarrow\!\!\shortmid & \frac{1}{2}C^a{}_{bc}t^b \wedge t^c + r^a \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} F_A^a & \longleftarrow\!\!\shortmid & r^a \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_{\mathrm{W}}} \\ d_{\mathrm{dR}}F_A^a & = & \\ C^a{}_{bc}A^b \wedge F_A^c & \longleftarrow\!\!\shortmid & C^a{}_{bc}t^b \wedge r^c \end{array} .$$

Notice here that once $t^a \mapsto A^a$ is chosen, then the diagram on the left uniquely specifies that $r^a \mapsto F_A^a$ and then the diagram on the right is already implied: its commutativity is the *Bianchi idenity* $dF_A = [A \wedge F_A]$ that is satisfied by curvature forms.

Traditionally, the Weil algebra is introduced in order to define and compute invariant polynomials on a Lie algebra. A $d_{\mathrm{W}}$-closed element in the shifted generators

$$\langle -, -, \cdots \rangle \in \wedge^k\mathfrak{g}^*[1] \hookrightarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})$$

is equivalently a invariant polynomial of order $k$ on the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$. Therefore write

$$\mathrm{inv}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})$$

for the graded commutative algebra of invariant polynomials, thought of as a dg-algebra with vanishing differential.

(For notational convenience we will later often abbreviate $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ for $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})$, etc. This is unambiguous as long as no algebroids with nontrivial bases spaces appear.)

There is a canonical projection map from the Weil algebra to the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra, given simply by forgetting the shifted generators ($t^a \mapsto t^a$; $r^a \mapsto 0$). And there is the defining inclusion $\mathrm{inv}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})$.

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \\ \uparrow \\ \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \\ \uparrow \\ \mathrm{inv}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \end{array}$$

Cartan had introduced all these dg-algebras as algebraic models of the universal $G$-principal bundle. We had seen above that homomorphisms $\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) \longleftarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})$ constitute the gauge symmetry group $G$ as integration of the paths of infinitesimal symmetries. Here the vertical forms on $U \times \Delta^k$ are themselves part of the sequence of differential forms on the trivial $k$-simplex bundle over the given coordinate chart $U$. Hence consider compatible dg-algebra homomorphisms between these two sequences

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \stackrel{\kappa}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) & \stackrel{A}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet(U) & \underset{\langle F_A \wedge \cdots \wedge F_A \rangle}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{inv}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \end{array}$$

We unwind what this means in components: The middle morphism is an unconstrained Lie algebra valued form $A \in \Omega^1(U \times \Delta^k, \mathfrak{g})$, hence is a sum

$$A = A_U + A_{\Delta^k}$$

of a 1-form $A_U$ along $U$ and 1-form $A_{\Delta^k}$ along $\Delta^k$. The second summand $A_{\Delta^k}$ is the vertical component of $A$. The commutativity of the top square above says that as a vertical differential form, $A_{\Delta^k}$ has to be flat. By the previous discussion this means that $A_{\Delta^k}$ encodes a $k$-tuple of $G$-gauge transformations. Now we will see how these gauge transformations naturally act on the gauge field $A_U$:

Consider this for the case $k = 1$, and write $t$ for the canonical coordinate along $\Delta^1 = [0, 1]$. Then $A_U$ is a smooth $t$-parameterized collection of 1-forms, hence of $\mathfrak{g}$-gauge fields, on $U$; and $A_{\Delta^1} = \kappa\, dt$ for $\kappa$ a smooth Lie algebra valued function, called the *gauge parameter*. Now the equation for the $t$-component of the total curvature $F_A$ of $A$ says how the gauge parameter together with the mixed curvature component causes infinitesimal transformations of the gauge field $A_U$ as $t$ proceeds:

$$\frac{d}{dt} A_U = d_U \kappa - [\kappa, A] + \iota_{\partial_t} F_A \,.$$

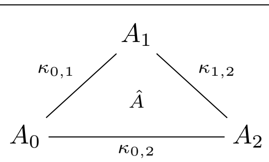
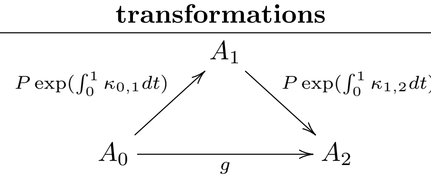
But now the commutativity of the lower square above demands that the curvature forms evaluated in invariant polynomials have vanishing contraction with $\iota_t$. In the case that $\mathfrak{g} = \mathbb{R}$ this means that $\iota_{\partial t} F_A = 0$, while for nonabelian $\mathfrak{g}$ this is still generically the necessary condition. So for vanishing $t$-component of the curvature the above equation says that

$$\frac{d}{dt} A_U = d\kappa - [\kappa, A] \,.$$

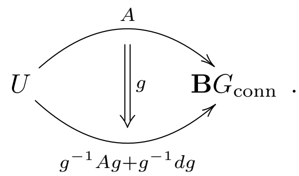
This is the traditional formula for infinitesimal gauge transformations $\kappa$ acting on a gauge field $A_U$. Integrating this up, $\kappa$ integrates to a gauge group element $g := P\exp(\int_0^1 \kappa dt)$ by the previous discussion, and this equation becomes the formula for finite gauge transformations (where we abbreviate now $A_t := A_U(t)$):

$$A_1 = g^{-1} A_0 g + g^{-1} d_{\mathrm{dR}} g \,.$$

This gives the smooth groupoid $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of $\mathfrak{g}$-gauge fields with $G$-gauge transformations between them.

| **infinitesimal gauge transformations** | **integration** | **finite gauge transformations** |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | $\mapsto$ |  |

Hence $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the smooth groupoid such that for $U$ an abstract coordinate chart, the smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of its objects are $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms $A \in \Omega(U, \mathfrak{g})$ of, and whose $U$-parameterized collections of gauge transformations are $G$-valued functions $g$ acting by

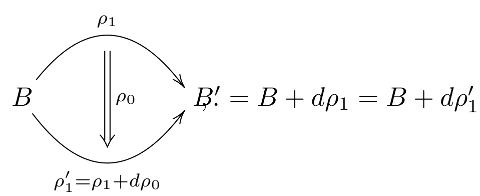



This dg-algebraic picture of gauge fields with gauge transformations between them now immediately generalizes to higher gauge fields with higher gauge transformations between them. Moreover, this picture allows to produce prequantized higher Chern-Simons-type Lagrangians by Lie integration of transgressive $L_\infty$-cocycles.

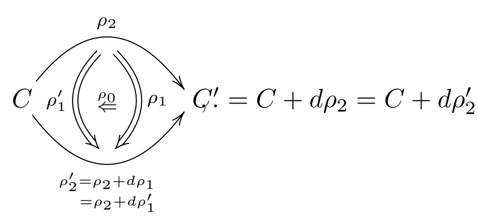
**1.1.2.1.2 Higher gauge fields.** Ordinary gauge fields are characterized by the property that there are no non-trivial gauge-of-gauge transformations, equivalently that their BRST complexes contain no higher order ghosts. Mathematically, it is natural to generalize beyond this case to *higher gauge fields*, which do have non-trivial higher gauge transformations. The simplest example is a "2-form field" ("$B$-field"), generalizing the "vector potential" 1-form $A$ of the electromagnetic field. Where such a 1-form has gauge transformations given by 0-forms (functions) $\kappa$ via

$$A \xrightarrow{\kappa} A' = A + d\kappa \ ,$$

a 2-form $B$ has gauge transformations given by 1-forms $\rho_1$, which themselves then have gauge-of-gauge-transformations given by 0-forms $\rho_0$:




Next a "3-form field" ("$C$-field") has third order gauge transformations:




Similarly "$n$-form fields" have order-$n$ gauge-of-gauge transformations and hence have order-$n$ ghost-of-ghosts in their BRST complexes.

Higher gauge fields have not been experimentally observed, to date, as fundamental fields of nature, but they appear by necessity and ubiquitously in higher dimensional supergravity and in the hypothetical physics of strings and $p$-branes. The higher differential geometry which we develop is to a large extent motivated by making precise and tractable the global structure of higher gauge fields in string and M-theory.

Generally, higher gauge fields are part of mathematical physics just as the Ising model and $\phi^4$-theory are, and as such they do serve to illuminate the structure of experimentally verified physics. For instance the Einstein equations of motion for ordinary (bosonic) general relativity on 11-dimensional spacetimes are equivalent to the full super-torsion constraint in 11-dimensional supergravity with its 3-form higher gauge field [CaLe94]. (We come to this in section 8.2.1.) From this point of view one may regard the the 3-form higher gauge field in supergravity, together with the gravitino, as auxiliary fields that serve to present Einstein's equations for the graviton in a particularly neat mathematical way.

We now use the above dg-algebraic formulation of ordinary gauge fields above in section 1.1.2.1.1 in order to give a quick but accurate idea of the mathematical structure of higher gauge fields.

Above we saw that (finite dimensional) Lie algebras are equivalently the formal duals of those differential graded-commutative algebras whose underlying graded commutative algebra is freely generated from a (finite dimensional) vector space over the ground field. From this perspective, there are two evident generalizations to be considered: we may take the underlying vector space to already have contributions in higher degrees itself, and we may pass from vector spaces, being modules over the ground field $\mathbb{R}$, to (finite rank) projective modules over an algebra of smooth functions on a smooth manifold.

Hence we say that an $L_\infty$*-algebroid* (of finite type) is a smooth manifold $X$ equipped with a $\mathbb{N}$-graded vector bundle (degreewise of finite rank), whose smooth sections hence form an $\mathbb{N}$-graded projective $C^\infty(X)$-module $\mathfrak{a}_\bullet$, and equipped with an $\mathbb{R}$-linear differential $d_{\mathrm{CE}}$ on the Grassmann algebra of the $C^\infty(X)$-dual $\mathfrak{a}^*$ modules

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) := \left(\wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X)}(\mathfrak{a}^*),\ d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})}\right) .$$

Accordingly, a homomorphism of $L_\infty$-algebroids we take to be a dg-algebra homomorphism (over $\mathbb{R}$) of their CE-algebras going the other way around. Hence the category of $L_\infty$-algebroids is the full subcategory of the opposite of that of differential graded-commutative algebras over $\mathbb{R}$ on those whose underlying graded-commutative algebra is free on graded locally free projective $C^\infty(X)$-modules:

$$L_\infty\mathrm{Algbd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{dgcAlg}^{\mathrm{op}} .$$

We say we have a *Lie $n$-algebroid* when $\mathfrak{a}$ is concentrated in the lowest $n$-degrees. Here are some important examples of $L_\infty$-algebroids:

When the base space is the point, $X = *$, and $\mathfrak{a}$ is concentrated in degree 0, then we recover **Lie algebras**, as above. Generally, when the base space is the point, then the $\mathbb{N}$-graded module $\mathfrak{a}$ is just an $\mathbb{N}$-graded vector space $\mathfrak{g}$. We write $\mathfrak{a} = \mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}$ to indicate this, and then $\mathfrak{g}$ is an $L_\infty$**-algebra**. When in addition $\mathfrak{g}$ is concentrated in the lowest $n$ degrees, then these are also called **Lie $n$-algebras**. With no constraint on the grading but assuming that the differential sends single generators always to sums of wedge products of at most two generators, then we get **dg-Lie algebras**.

The Weil algebra of a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ hence exhibits a Lie 2-algebra. We may think of this as the Lie 2-algebra $\mathrm{inn}(\mathfrak{g})$ of inner derivations of $\mathfrak{g}$. By the above discussion, it is suggestive to write $\mathbf{E}\mathfrak{g}$ for this Lie 2-algebra, hence

$$\mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) = \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{BE}\mathfrak{g}) .$$

If $\mathfrak{g} = \mathbb{R}[n]$ is concentrated in degree $p$ on the real line (so that the CE-differential is necessarily trivial), then we speak of the *line Lie $(p+1)$-algebra* $\mathbf{B}^p\mathbb{R}$, which as an $L_\infty$-algebroid over the point is to be denoted

$$\mathbf{B}\mathbf{B}^p\mathbb{R} = \mathbf{B}^{p+1}\mathbb{R} .$$

All this goes through verbatim, up to additional signs, with all vector spaces generalized to super-vector spaces. The Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras of the resulting **super $L_\infty$-algebras** are known in parts of the supergravity literature as **FDA**s [dAFr82].

Passing now to $L_\infty$-algebroids over non-trivial base spaces, first of all every smooth manifold $X$ may be regarded as the $L_\infty$-algebroid over $X$, these are the Lie 0-algebroids. We just write $\mathfrak{a} = X$ when the context is clear.

For the tangent bundle $TX$ over $X$ then the graded algebra of its dual sections is the wedge product algebra of differential forms, $\mathrm{CE}(TX) = \Omega^\bullet(X)$ and hence the de Rham differential makes $\wedge^\bullet\Gamma(T^*X)$ into a dgc-algebra and hence makes $TX$ into a Lie algebroid. This is called the **tangent Lie algebroid** of $X$. We usually write $\mathfrak{a} = TX$ for the tangent Lie algebroid (trusting that context makes it clear that we do not mean the Lie 0-algebroid over the underlying manifold of the tangent bundle itself). In particular this means that for any other $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{a}$ then flat $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential forms on some smooth manifold $\Sigma$ are equivalently homomorphisms of $L_\infty$-algebroids like so:

$$\Omega_{\text{flat}}(\Sigma, \mathfrak{a}) \quad = \quad \{ \, T\Sigma \longrightarrow \mathfrak{a} \, \} \, .$$

In particular ordinary closed differential forms of degree $n$ are equivalently flat $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}$-valued differential forms:

$$\Omega^n_{\text{cl}}(\Sigma) \quad \simeq \quad \{ \, T\Sigma \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} \, \} \, .$$

More generally, for $\mathfrak{a}$ any $L_\infty$-algebroid over some base manifold $X$, then we have its Weil dgc-algebra

$$\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) := \Big( \wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X)}(\mathfrak{a}^* \oplus \Gamma(T^*X) \oplus \mathfrak{a}^*[1]), d_{\mathrm{W}} = d_{\mathrm{CE}} + \mathbf{d} \Big) \, ,$$

where $\mathbf{d}$ acts as the degree shift isomorphism in the components $\wedge^1_{C^\infty(X)}\mathfrak{a}^* \longrightarrow \wedge^1_{C^\infty(X)}\mathfrak{a}^*[1]$ and as the de Rham differential in the components $\wedge^k\Gamma(T^*X) \to \wedge^{k+1}\Gamma(T^*X)$. This defines a new $L_\infty$-algebroid that may be called the **tangent $L_\infty$-algebroid $T\mathfrak{a}$**

$$\mathrm{CE}(T\mathfrak{a}) := \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) \, .$$

We also write $\mathbf{EB}^p\mathbb{R}$ for the $L_\infty$-algebroid with

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{EB}^p\mathbb{R}) := \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}^p\mathbb{R}) \, .$$

In direct analogy with the discussion for Lie algebras, we then say that an unconstrained $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential form $A$ on a manifold $\Sigma$ is a dg-algebra homomorphism from the Weil algebra of $\mathfrak{a}$ to the de Rham dg-algebra on $\Sigma$:

$$\Omega(\Sigma, \mathfrak{a}) := \{ \, \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \longleftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) \, \} \, .$$

For $G$ a Lie group acting on $X$ by diffeomorphisms, then there is the **action Lie algebroid** $X/\mathfrak{g}$ over $X$ with $\mathfrak{a}_0 = \Gamma_X(X \times \mathfrak{g})$ the $\mathfrak{g}$-valued smooth functions over $X$. Write $\rho : \mathfrak{g} \to \mathrm{Vect}$ for the linearized action. With a choice of basis $\{t_a\}$ for $\mathfrak{g}$ as before and assuming that $X = \mathbb{R}^n$ with canonical coordinates $x^i$, then $\rho$ has components $\{\rho^\mu_a\}$ and the CE-differential on $\wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X)}(\Gamma_X(X \times \mathfrak{g}^*))$ is given on generators by

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\mathrm{CE}} &: f \mapsto t^a \rho^\mu_a \partial_\mu f \\ d_{\mathrm{CE}} &: t^a \mapsto \tfrac{1}{2} C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge t^c \end{aligned} \, .$$

In the physics literature this Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(X/\mathfrak{g})$ is known as the **BRST complex** of $X$ for infinitesimal symmetries $\mathfrak{g}$. If $X$ is thought of as a space of fields, then the $t_a$ are called *ghost fields*.[7]

Given any $L_\infty$-algebroid, it induces further $L_\infty$-algebroids via its extension by higher cocycles. A $p+1$-*cocycle* on an $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{a}$ is a closed element

$$\mu \in (\wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X)}\mathfrak{a}^*)_{p+1} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) \, .$$

Notice that now cocycles are *representable* by the higher line $L_\infty$-algebras $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}\mathbb{R}$ from above:

$$\begin{aligned} \{\mu \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})_{p+1} \mid d_{\mathrm{CE}}\mu = 0\} &\simeq \Big\{ \, \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) \xleftarrow{\mu^*} \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}^{p+1}\mathbb{R}) \, \Big\} \\ &= \Big\{ \, \mathfrak{a} \xrightarrow{\mu} \mathbf{B}^{p+1}\mathbb{R} \, \Big\} \end{aligned} \, .$$

[7]More generally the base manifold $X$ may be a derived manifold/BV-complex as in footnote 3. Then $\mathrm{CE}(X/\mathfrak{g})$ is known as the "BV-BRST complex".

It is a traditional fact that $\mathbb{R}$-valued 2-cocycles on a Lie algebra induce central Lie algebra extensions. More generally, higher cocycles $\mu$ on an $L_\infty$-algebroid induce $L_\infty$-extensions $\hat{\mathfrak{a}}$, given by the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{\mathfrak{a}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{E}\mathbf{B}^p\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow & \text{(pb)} & \downarrow \\ \mathfrak{a} & \stackrel{\mu}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}^{p+1}\mathbb{R} \end{array} .$$

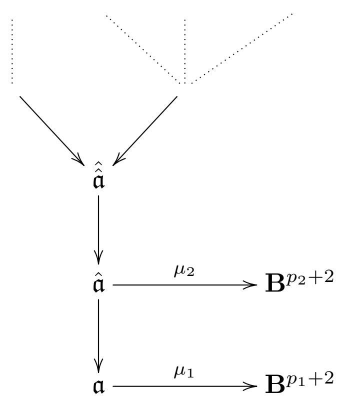
Equivalently this makes $\hat{\mathfrak{a}}$ be the homotopy fiber of $\mu$ in the homotopy theory of $L_\infty$-algebras, and induces a long homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}^p\mathbb{R} & \longrightarrow & \hat{\mathfrak{a}} & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \\ & & \mathfrak{a} & \stackrel{\mu}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}^{p+1}\mathbb{R} \end{array} .$$

In components this means simply that $\mathrm{CE}(\hat{\mathfrak{a}})$ is obtained from $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})$ by adding one generator $c$ in degree $p$ and extending the differential to it by the formula

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}} : c = \mu \, .$$

This construction has a long tradition in the supergravity literature [dAFr82][FSS13b], we come to the examples considered there below in section 1.1.2.5. Iterating this construction, out of every $L_\infty$-algebroid their grows a whole bouquet of further $L_\infty$-algebroids




For example for $\mathfrak{g}$ a semisimple Lie algebra with binary invariant polynomial $\langle -,-\rangle$ (the Killing form), then $\mu_3 = \langle -, [-,-]\rangle$ is a 3-cocycle. The $L_\infty$-extension by this cocycle is a Lie 2-algebra called the *string Lie 2-algebra* $\mathfrak{string}_{\mathfrak{g}}$. If $\{t^a\}$ is a linear basis of $\mathfrak{g}^*$ as before write $k_{ab} := \langle t_a, t_b\rangle$ for the components of the Killing form; the components of the 3-cocycle are $\mu_{abc} = k_{aa'}C^{a'}{}_{bc}$. The CE-algebra of the string Lie 2-algebra then is that of $\mathfrak{g}$ with a generator $b$ added and with CE-differential defined by

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{string})} &: t^a \mapsto \tfrac{1}{2} C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge t^c \\ d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{string})} &: b \mapsto k_{aa'} C^{a'}{}_{cb} t^a \wedge t^b \wedge t^c \, . \end{aligned}$$

Hence a flat $\mathfrak{string}_{\mathfrak{g}}$-valued differential form on some $\Sigma$ is a pair consisting of an ordinary flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form $A$ and of a 2-form $B$ whose differential has to equal the evaluation of $A$ in the 3-cocoycle:

$$\Omega_{\mathrm{flat}}(\Sigma, \mathfrak{string}_{\mathfrak{g}}) \;\simeq\; \big\{ (A,B) \in \Omega^1(\Sigma,\mathfrak{g}) \times \Omega^2(\Sigma) \mid F_A = 0 \,,\;\; dB = \langle A \wedge [A \wedge A]\rangle \big\} \, .$$

Notice that since $A$ is flat, the 3-form $\langle A \wedge [A \wedge A]\rangle$ is its Chern-Simons 3-form. More generally, Chern-Simons forms are such that their differential is the evaluation of the curvature of $A$ in an invariant polynomial.

An invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle$ on an $L_\infty$-algebroid we may take to be a $d_{\mathrm{W}}$-closed element in the shifted generators of its Weil algebra $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})$

$$\langle - \rangle \in \wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X)}(\mathfrak{a}^*[1]) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})\,.$$

When one requires the invariant polynomial to be binary, i.e. in $\wedge^2(\mathfrak{a}^*[1]) \to \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})$ and non-degenerate, then it is also called a *shifted symplectic form* and it makes $\mathfrak{a}$ into a "symplectic Lie $n$-algebroid". For $n = 0$ these are the symplectic manifolds, for $n = 1$ these are called *Poisson Lie algebroids*, for $n = 2$ they are called *Courant Lie 2-algebroids* [Roy02]. There are also plenty of non-binary invariant polynomials, we discuss further examples below in section 1.1.2.4.

Being $d_{\mathrm{W}}$-closed, an invariant polynomial on $\mathfrak{a}$ is represented by a dg-homomorphism:

$$W(\mathfrak{a}) \longleftarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}) : \langle - \rangle$$

This means that given an invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle$ for an $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{a}$, then it assigns to any $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential form $A$ a plain closed $(p+2)$-form $\langle F_A \rangle$ made up of the $\mathfrak{a}$-curvature forms, namely the composite

$$\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \xleftarrow{A} W(\mathfrak{a}) \xleftarrow{\langle - \rangle} \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}) : \langle F_A \rangle\,.$$

In other words, $A$ may be regarded as a nonabelian pre-quantization of $\langle F_A \rangle$.

Therefore we may consider now the $\infty$-groupoid of $\mathfrak{a}$-connections whose gauge transformations preserve the specified invariant polynomial, such as to guarantee that it remains a globally well-defined differential form. The smooth $\infty$-groupoid of $\mathfrak{a}$-valued connections with such gauge transformations between them we write $\exp(\mathfrak{a})_{\mathrm{conn}}$. As a smooth simplicial presheaf, it is hence given by the following assignment:

$$\exp(\mathfrak{a})_{\mathrm{conn}} \;:\; (U,k) \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{\;A\;} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet(U) & \xleftarrow[\langle F_A \rangle]{} & \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{a}) \end{array} \right\}$$

Here on the right we have, for every $U$ and $k$, the set of those $A$ on $U \times \Delta^k$ that induce gauge transformations along the $\Delta^k$-direction (that is the commutativity of the top square) such that the given invariant polynomials evaluated on the curvatures are preserved (that is the commutativity of the bottom square).

This $\exp(\mathfrak{a})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the moduli stack of $\mathfrak{a}$-valued connections with gauge transformations and gauge-of-gauge transformations between them that preserve the chosen invariant polynomials [FSS10][FRS11].

The key example is the moduli stack of $(p+1)$-form gauge fields

$$\exp(\mathbf{B}^{p+1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{conn}}/\mathbb{Z} \simeq \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{R}/_{\hbar}\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

Generically we write

$$\mathbf{A}_{\mathrm{conn}} := \mathrm{cosk}_{n+1}(\exp(\mathfrak{a})_{\mathrm{conn}})$$

for the $n$-truncation of a higher smooth stack of $\mathfrak{a}$-valued gauge field connections obtained this way. If $\mathfrak{a} = \mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}$ then we write $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for this.

Given such, then an $\mathfrak{a}$-gauge field on $\Sigma$ (an $\mathbf{A}$-principal connection) is equivalently a map of smooth higher stacks

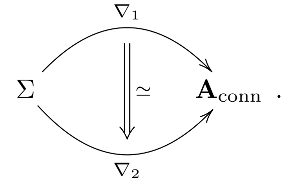
$$\nabla : \Sigma \longrightarrow \mathbf{A}_{\mathrm{conn}}\,.$$

By the above discussion, a simple map like this subsumes all of the following component data:

1. a choice of open cover $\{U_i \to \Sigma\}$;
2. a $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential form $A_i$ on each chart $U_i$;
3. on each intersection $U_{ij}$ of charts a path of infinitesimal gauge symmetries whose integrated finite gauge symmetry $g_{ij}$ takes $A_i$ to $A_j$;
4. on each triple intersection $U_{ijk}$ of charts a path-of-paths of infinitesimal gauge symmetries whose integrated finite gauge-of-gauge symmetry takes the gauge transformation $g_{ij} \cdot g_{jk}$ to the gauge transformation $g_{ik}$
5. and so on.

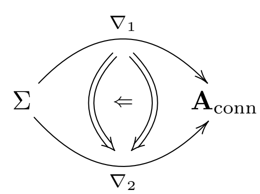
Hence a $\mathfrak{a}$-gauge field is locally $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential form data which are coherently glued together to a global structure by gauge transformations and higher order gauge-of-gauge transformations.

Given two globally defined $\mathfrak{a}$-valued gauge fields this way, then a globally defined gauge transformation them is equivalently a homotopy between maps of smooth higher stacks




Again, this concisely encodes a system of local data: this is on each chart $U_i$ a path of inifinitesimal gauge symmetries whose integrated gauge transformation transforms the local $\mathfrak{a}$-valued forms into each other, together with various higher order gauge transformations and compatibilities on higher order intersections of charts.

Then a gauge-of-gauge transformation is a homotopy of homotopies




and again this encodes a recipe for how to extract the corresponding local differential form data.

**1.1.2.2 The BV-BRST complex** The category of partial differential equations that we referred to so far, as in [Marv86], is modeled on the category of smooth manifolds. Accordingly, it really only contains differential equations that are non-singular enough such as to guarantee that the shell locus $\mathcal{E} \hookrightarrow J^\infty E$ is itself a smooth manifold. This is not the case for all differential equations of interest. For some pairs of differential operators, their equalizer $E \rightrightarrows F$ does not actually exist in smooth bundles modeled on manifolds.

This is no problem when working in the sheaf topos over $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$, where all limits do exist as diffeological bundles. However, even though all limits exist here, some do not interact properly with other constructions of interest. For instance intersection products in cohomology will not properly count non-transversal intersections, even if they do exist as diffeological spaces.

To fix this, we may pass to a category of "derived manifolds". In generalization of how an ordinary smooth manifold is the formal dual to its real algebra of smooth functions, via the faithful embedding

$$C^\infty : \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}} ,$$

so a derived manifold is the formal dual to a differential graded-commutative algebra in non-positive degrees, whose underlying graded algebra is of the form $\wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X)}(\Gamma(V^*))$ for $V$ a $-\mathbb{N}$-graded smooth vector bundle over $X$. In the physics literature these dg-algebras are known as *BV-complexes*.

For example, for $X$ a smooth manifold and $S \in C^\infty(X)$ a smooth function on it, then the vanishing locus of $S$ in $X$ is represented by the derived manifold $\ker_d(S)$ that is formally dual to the dg-algebra denoted $C^\infty(\ker_d(S))$ which is spanned over $C^\infty(X)$ by a single generator $t$ of degree -1 and whose differential (linear over $\mathbb{R}$) is defined by

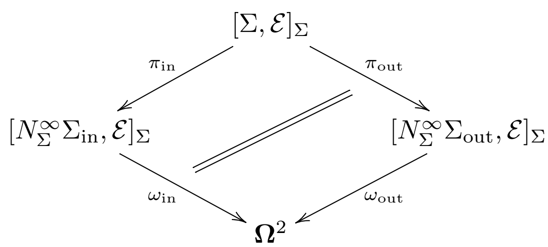
$$d_{\mathrm{BV}} : t \mapsto S\,.$$

For $\Sigma$ an ordinary smooth manifold, then morphisms $\Sigma \longrightarrow \ker_d(\Sigma)$ are equivalently dg-algebra homomorphisms $C^\infty(\Sigma) \longleftarrow C^\infty(\ker_d(\Sigma))$, and these are equivalently algebra homomorphisms $\phi^* : C^\infty(\Sigma) \longleftarrow C^\infty(X)$ such that $\phi^* S = 0$. These, finally, are equivalently smooth functions $\phi : \Sigma \longrightarrow X$ that land everywhere in the 0-locus of $S$. It is in this way that $\ker_d(S)$ is a resolution of the possibly singular vanishing locus by a complex of non-singular smooth bundles.

Notice that even if the kernel of $S$ does exist as a smooth submanifold $\ker(S) \hookrightarrow$ it need not be equivalent to the derived kernel: for instance over $X = \mathbb{R}^1$ with its canonical coordinate function $x$, then $ker(x) = \{0\}$ but $\ker_d(x^2) \simeq \mathbb{D}^{(1)}_0$ is the infinitesimal interval around 0.

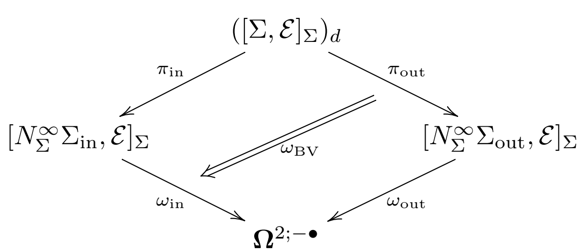
Given a derived manifold $X_d$ this way, then for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$ the differential $k$-forms on $X_d$ also inherit the BV-differential, on top of the de Rham differential. We write $\Omega^{k;-s}(X_d)$ to indicate the differential $k$-forms of BV-degree $-s$. So in particular the 0-forms recover the BV dg-algebra itself $\Omega^{0,-\bullet}(X_d) = C^\infty(X_d)$.

Hence using underived manifolds, then the conservation of the presymplectic current, $d_H\Omega = 0$, implies that over a spacetime/worldvolume $\Sigma$ with two boundary components $\Sigma_{\mathrm{in}} = \partial_{\mathrm{in}}\Sigma$ and $\Sigma_{\mathrm{out}} = \partial_{\mathrm{out}}\Sigma$ then the canonical pre-symplectic forms $\omega_{\mathrm{in}}$ and $\omega_{\mathrm{out}}$ agree




$$\pi^*_{\mathrm{out}}\omega_{\mathrm{out}} - \pi^*_{\mathrm{in}}\omega_{\mathrm{in}} = 0$$

When the covariant phase space is resolved by a derived space $([\Sigma, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma)_d$, then this equation becomes a homotopy which asserts the existence of a 2-form $\omega_{\mathrm{BV}}$ of BV-degree -1 which witnesses the invariance of the canonical presymplectic form:




$$\pi^*_{\mathrm{out}}\omega_{\mathrm{out}} - \pi^*_{\mathrm{in}}\omega_{\mathrm{in}} = d_{\mathrm{BV}}\omega_{\mathrm{BV}}\,.$$

The equation on the right appears in the BV-liteature as [CMR12, equation (9)]).

For the purpose of prequantum field theory, we again wish to de-transgress this phenomenon. Instead of just modelling the covariant phase space by a derived space, we should model the dynamical shell $\mathcal{E} \hookrightarrow J^\infty_\Sigma E$ itself by a derived bundle.

The derived shell $\ker_d(\mathrm{EL})$ is the derived manifold bundle over $\Sigma$ whose underlying manifold is $J^\infty_\Sigma E$ and whose bundle of antifields is the pullback of $V^*E \otimes \wedge^{p+1}T^*\Sigma$ to the jet bundle (along the projection maps to $E$).

If $\phi^i$ are a choice of local vertical coordinates on $E$ (the fields) and $\phi^*_i$ denotes the corresponding local antifield coordinates with respect to any chosen volume form on $\Sigma$, then this BV-differential looks like

$$d_{\mathrm{BV}} = \mathrm{EL}_i \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi^*_i} \quad : \quad \phi^*_i \mapsto \mathrm{EL}_i \, .$$

When regarded as an odd graded vector field, this differential is traditionally denoted by $Q$.

In such coordinates there is then the following canonical differential form

$$\Omega_{\mathrm{BV}} = d\phi^*_i \wedge d\phi^i \quad \in \Omega^{p+1,2;-1}(\ker_d(\mathrm{EL}))$$

which, as indicated, is of BV-degree -1 and otherwise is a $(p+3)$-form with horizontal degree $p+1$ vertical degree 2. More abstractly, this form is characterized by the property that

$$\iota_Q \Omega_{\mathrm{BV}} = \mathrm{EL} \quad \in \Omega^{p+1,1;0}(\ker_d(\mathrm{EL})) \, .$$

As before, we write

$$\omega_{\mathrm{BV}} := \int_\Sigma \Omega_{\mathrm{BV}}$$

for the transgression of this form to the covariant phase space. We now claim that there it satisfies the above relation of witnessing the conservation of the presymplectic current up to BV-exact terms [8] In fact it satisfies the following stronger relation

$$\iota_Q \omega_{\mathrm{BV}} = dS + \pi^* \theta \tag{1.4}$$

which turns out to be the transgressed and BV-theoretic version of the fundamental variational equation 1.1:

$$\begin{aligned} dS &= d \int_\Sigma L \\ &= \int_\Sigma dL \\ &= \int_\Sigma (\mathrm{EL} - d_H \Theta) \\ &= \int_\Sigma (\iota_Q \Omega_{\mathrm{BV}} - d_H \Theta) \\ &= \iota_Q \omega_{\mathrm{BV}} - \pi^* \theta \, . \end{aligned}$$

Equation 1.4 has been postulated as the fundamental compatibility condition for BV-theory on spacetimes $\Sigma$s with boundary in [CMR12, equation (7)]. Applying $d$ to both sides of this equation recovers the previous $d_{\mathrm{BV}} \omega_{\mathrm{BV}} = \pi^* \omega$.

Notice that equation 1.4 may be read as saying that the action functional is a Hamiltonian, not for the ordinary presymplectic structure, but for the BV-symplectic structure.

[8] This was first pointed out by us informally on the $n$Lab in October 2011 `http://ncatlab.org/nlab/revision/diff/phase+space/29`.

| **concept in classical field theory** | **local model in BV-BRST formalism** |
|---|---|
| $[N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma$<br>phase space | $d_{\mathrm{BV}}$<br>BV-complex<br>of anti-fields |
| $\omega_{\mathrm{in}} = \omega_{\mathrm{out}}$<br>independence of presymplectic form<br>from choice of Cauchy surface | $\omega_{\mathrm{in}} \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\omega_{\mathrm{BV}}} \omega_{\mathrm{out}}$<br>coboundary by<br>BV-bracket |
| $[N^\infty_\Sigma \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma \longrightarrow [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$<br>smooth groupoid<br>of gauge fields and gauge transformations | $d_{\mathrm{BRST}}$<br>BRST complex<br>of ghost fields |
| $[\Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}]_\Sigma \longrightarrow [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^k U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$<br>higher smooth groupoid<br>of higher gauge fields<br>and higher gauge transformations | $d_{\mathrm{BRST}}$<br>BRST complex<br>of higher order ghost-of-ghost fields |

**1.1.2.3 Sigma-model field theories** A *sigma-model* is a field theory whose field bundle (as in section 1.1.1) is of the simple form

$$\begin{array}{c} \Sigma \times X \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_1} \\ \Sigma \end{array}$$

for some space $X$. This means that in this case field configurations, which by definition are sections of the field bundle, are equivalently maps of the form

$$\phi : \Sigma \longrightarrow X \, .$$

One naturally thinks of such a map as being a $\Sigma$-shaped trajectory of a $p$-dimensional object (a $p$-brane) on the space $X$. Hence $X$ is called the *target space* of the model. Specifically, if this models $\Sigma$-shaped trajectories of $p$-dimensional relativistic branes, then $X$ is the *target spacetime*. There are also famous examples of sigma-models where $X$ is a more abstract space, usually some moduli space of certain scalar fields of a field theory that is itself defined on spacetime. Historically the first sigma-models were of this kind. In fact in the first examples $X$ was a linear space. For emphasis that this is not assumed one sometimes speaks of *non-linear sigma models* for the sigma-models that we consider here. In fact we consider examples where $X$ is not even a manifold, but a smooth $\infty$-groupoid, a higher moduli stack.

Given a target space $X$, then every $(p+1)$-form $A_{p+1} \in \Omega^{p+1}(X)$ on $X$ induces a local Lagrangian for sigma-model field theories with target $X$: we may simply pull back that form to the jet bundle $J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma \times X)$ and project out its horizontal component. Lagrangians that arise this way are known as *topological terms*.

The archetypical example of a sigma-model with topological term is that for describing the electron propagating in a spacetime and subject to the background forces of gravity and of electromagnetism. In this case $p = 0$ (a point particle, hence a "0-brane"), $\Sigma$ is the interval $[0,1]$ or the circle $S^1$, regarded as the abstract *worldline* of an electron. Target space $X$ is a spacetime manifold equipped with a pseudo-Riemannian metric $g$ (modelling the background field of gravity) and with a vector potential 1-form $A \in \Omega^1(X)$ whose differential is the Faraday tensor $F = dA$ (modelling the electromagnetic background field). The local Lagrangian is

$$L = L_{\mathrm{kin}} + \underbrace{q (A_\Sigma)_H}_{L_{\mathrm{int}}} \; \in \Omega^{p+1}_H(J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma \times X)) \, ,$$

where $L_{\mathrm{kin}}$ is the standard kinetic Lagrangian for (relativistic) point particles, $q$ is some constant, the electric charge of the electron, and $(A_\Sigma)_H$ is the horizontal component of the pullback of $A$ to the jet bundle. The variation of $L_{\mathrm{int}}$ yields the Lorentz force that the charged electron experiences.

Now, as in the the discussion in section 1.1.1, in general the Faraday tensor $F$ is not globally exact, and hence in general there does not exist a globally defined such 1-form on the jet bundle. But via the sigma-model construction, the prequantization of the worldline field theory of the electron on its jet bundle is naturally induced by a Dirac charge quantization of its background electromagnetic field on target spacetime: given

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow[F]{} & \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array}$$

a circle-principal connection on target spacetime for the given field strength Faraday tensor $F$ (hence with local "vector potential" 1-forms $\{A_i\}$ with respect to some cover $\{U_i \to X\}$), then the horizontal projection $(\nabla_\Sigma)_H$ of the pullback of the whole circle-bundle with connection to the jet bundle constitutes a prequantum field theory in the sense of sections 1.1.1.3. Similarly, the background electromagnetic field $\nabla$ also serves to prequantize the covariant phase space of the electron, according to section 1.1.1.4. This is related to the familiar statement that in the presence of a magnetic background field the spatial coordinates of the electron no longer Poisson-commute with each other.

This prequantization of sigma-models via $(p+1)$-form connections on target space works generally: we obtain examples of prequantum field theories of sigma-model type by adding to a globally defined kinetic Lagrangian form a prequantum *topological term* given by the pullback of a $(p+1)$-form connection on target space. The pullback of that target $(p+1)$-form connection to target space serves to prequantize the entire field theory in all codimensions

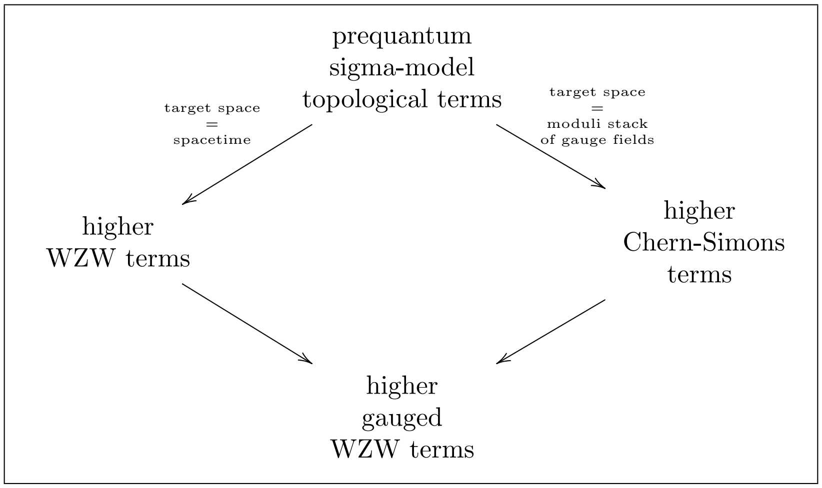
| **prequantum sigma-model topological terms** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| background field | $\nabla :$ | $X$ | $\longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ |
| prequantum Lagrangian | $(\nabla_\Sigma)_H :$ | $\Sigma \times X$ | $\longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ |
| prequantized phase space | $(\nabla_\Sigma)_L :$ | $\mathcal{E}$ | $\longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_L U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ |

While sigma-models with topological terms are just a special class among all variational field theories, in the context of higher differential geometry this class is considerably larger than in traditional differential geometry. Namely we may regard any of the moduli stacks $\mathbf{A}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of gauge fields that we discuss in section 1.1.2.1 as target space, i.e. we may consider higher stacky field bundles of the form

$$\begin{array}{c} \Sigma \times \mathbf{A}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow \\ \Sigma \end{array} .$$

Everything goes through as before, in particular a field configuration now is a map $\Sigma \longrightarrow \mathbf{A}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ from worldvolume/spacetime $\Sigma$ to this moduli stack. But by the discussion above in section 1.1.2.1, such maps now are equivalent to gauge fields on $\Sigma$. These are, of course, the field configurations of *gauge theories*. Hence, in higher differential geometry, the concepts of sigma-model field theories and of gauge field theories are unified.

In particular both concepts may mix. Indeed, we find below that higher dimensional Wess-Zumino-Witten-type models generally are "higher gauged", this means that their field configurations are a pair consisting of a map $\phi : \Sigma \to X$ to some target spacetime $X$, together with a $\phi$-twisted higher gauge field on $\Sigma$.




Examples of a (higher) gauged WZW-type sigma model are the Green-Schwarz-type sigma-models of those super $p$-branes on which other branes may end. This includes the D-branes and the M5-brane. The former are gauged by a 1-form gauge field (the "Chan-Paton gauge field") while the latter is gauged by a 2-form gauge field. We say more about these examples below in 1.1.2.5.

We may construct examples of prequantized topological terms from functoriality of the Lie integration process that already gave the (higher) gauge fields themselves in section 1.1.2.1. There we saw that a $(p+2)$-cocycle on an $L_\infty$-algebroid is a homomorphism of $L_\infty$-algebroids of the form

$$\mu : \mathfrak{a} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}\,.$$

Moreover, the $\exp(-)$-construction which sends $L_\infty$-algebroids to simplicial presheaves representing universal higher moduli stacks of $\mathfrak{a}$-valued gauge fields is clearly functorial, hence it sends this cocycle to a morphism of simplicial presheaves of the form

$$\exp(\mu) : \exp(\mathfrak{a}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}\,.$$

One finds that this descends to the $(p+2)$-coskeleton $\mathbf{A} := \mathrm{cosk}_{p+2}\exp(\mathfrak{a})$ after quotienting out the subgroup $\Gamma \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ of periods of $\mu$ [FSS10] (just as in the prequantization of the global action functional in section 1.1.1.3):

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \exp(\mathfrak{a}) & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)} & \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \eta^{\mathrm{cosk}_{p+2}}} & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{A} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{B}^{p+2}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma) \end{array} .$$

To get a feeling for what the resulting morphism $\mathbf{c}$ is, consider the case that $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B}G$ for some group $G$. There is a geometric realization operation $\pi_\infty$ which sends smooth $\infty$-groupoids to plain homotopy types (homotopy types of topological spaces). Under this operation a map $\mathbf{c}$ as above becomes a map $c$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{B}^{p+2}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \eta^{\pi_\infty}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \eta^{\pi_\infty}} \\ BG & \xrightarrow{c} & K(\mathbb{Z}, p+3) \end{array} ,$$

where $BG$ is the traditional classifying space of a (simplicial) topological group $G$, and where $K(\mathbb{Z}, p+3) = B^{p+3}\mathbb{Z}$ is the Eilenberg-MacLane space that classifies integral cohomology in degree $(p+3)$. What $BG$

classifies are $G$-principal bundles, and hence for each space $\Sigma$ the map $c$ turns into a *characteristic class* of equivalence classes of $G$-principal bundles:

$$c_\Sigma : G\mathrm{Bund}(\Sigma)_\sim \longrightarrow H^{p+3}(\Sigma, \mathbb{Z})\,.$$

Hence $c$ itself is a *universal characteristic class.* Accordingly, $\mathbf{c}$ is a refinement of $c$ that knows about gauge transformations: it sends smooth $G$-bundles with smooth gauge transformations and gauge-of-gauge transformations between these to integral cocycles and coboundaries and coboundaries-between-coboundaries between these.

Equivalently, we may think of $\mathbf{c}$ as classifying a $(p+1)$-gerbe on the universal moduli stack of $G$-principal bundles. This is equivalently its homotopy fiber (in direct analogy with the infinitesimal version of this statement above in section 1.1.2.1.2) fitting into a long homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}) \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\hat{G} & \\ & \downarrow & \\ & \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}^{p+2}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}) \end{array}\,.$$

Yet another equivalent perspective is that this defines an $\infty$-group extension $\hat{G}$ of the $\infty$-group $G$ by the $\infty$-group $\mathbf{B}^p(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})$.

So far all this is without connection data, so far these are just higher instanton sectors without any actual gauge fields inhabiting these instanton sectors. We now add connection data to the situation.
Adding connection data to $\mathbf{c}$ regarded as a higher prequantum bundle on the moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G$ yields

- 1.1.2.4 – Chern-Simons-type prequantum field theory.

Adding instead connection data to $\mathbf{c}$ regarded as a higher group extension yields

- 1.1.2.5 – Wess-Zumino-Witten-type prequantum field theories.

**1.1.2.4 Chern-Simons-type field theories** For $\mathfrak{g}$ a semisimple Lie algebra with Killing form invariant polynomial $\langle -, - \rangle$, classical 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory [Fr95] has as fields the space of $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential 1-forms $A$, and the Lagrangian is the Chern-Simons 3-form

$$L_{\mathrm{CS}}(A) = \mathrm{CS}(A) := \langle A \wedge dA \rangle - \tfrac{1}{3}\langle A \wedge [A \wedge A]\rangle\,.$$

This Chern-Simons form is characterized by two properties: for vanishing curvature it reduces to the value of the 3-cocycle $\langle -, [-, -]\rangle$ on the connection 1-form $A$, and its differential is the value of the invariant polynomial $\langle -, - \rangle$ on the curvature 2-form $F_A$.

There is a slick way to express this in terms of the dg-algebraic description from section 1.1.2.1.2: there is an element $\mathrm{cs} \in \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})$, which in terms of the chosen basis $\{t^a\}$ for $\wedge^1\mathfrak{g}^*$ is given by

$$\mathrm{cs} : k_{ab}(d_W t^a) \wedge t^b - \tfrac{1}{3} k_{aa'} C^{a'}{}_{bc} t^a \wedge t^b \wedge t^c\,.$$

Hence equivalently this is a dg-homomorphism of the form

$$\mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}} \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R})$$

and for $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{g}) = \{\ \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \longleftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})\ \}$ then the Chern-Simons form of $A$ is the composite

$$\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \xleftarrow{A} \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}_3} : \mathrm{CS}(A)\,.$$

Now, the two characterizing properties satisfied by the Chern-Simons equivalently mean in terms of dg-algebra that the map cs makes the following two squares commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\langle -,[-,-]\rangle} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}} & \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \mathrm{inv}(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\langle -,-\rangle} & \mathrm{inv}(\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}) \end{array}$$

This shows how to prequantize 3d Chern-Simons theory in codimension 3: the vertical sequences appearing here are just the Lie algebraic data to which we apply differential Lie integration, as in section 1.1.2.1, to obtain the moduli stacks of $G$-connections and of 3-form connections, resepctively. Moreover, by the discussion at the end of section 1.1.2.3 and using that $\langle -, [-, -]\rangle$ represents an integral cohomology class on $G$ we get a map

$$(\mathbf{c}_2)_{\mathrm{conn}} := \exp(\mathrm{cs}) \;:\; \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}\,.$$

This is the background 3-connection which induces prequantum Chern-Simons field theory by the general procedure indicated in section 1.1.2.3.

Notice that this map is a refinement of the traditional Chern-Weil homomorphism. More on this below in section 1.4.2.3. This allows for instance to prequantize the Green-Schwarz anomaly cancellation condition heterotic strings: the higher moduli stack of GS-anomaly free gauge fields is the homotopy fiber product of the prequantum Chern-Simons Lagrangians for the simple groups Spin and SU [SSS09c].

This higher Lie theoretic formulation of prequantum 3-Chern-Simons theory now immediately generalizes to produce higher (and lower) dimensional prequantum $L_\infty$-algebroid Chern-Simons theories.

For $\mathfrak{a}$ any $L_\infty$-algebroid as in section 1.1.2.1.2, we say that a $(p + 2)$-cocycle $\mu$ on $\mathfrak{a}$ is in transgression with an invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle$ on $\mathfrak{a}$ if there is an element $\mathrm{cs} \in W(\mathfrak{a})$ such that $d_W \mathrm{cs} = \langle - \rangle$ and $\mathrm{cs}|_{\mathrm{CE}} = \mu$. Equivalently this means that cs fits into a diagram of dg-algebras of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) & \xleftarrow{\mu} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}} & \mathrm{W}(\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{a}) & \xleftarrow{\langle - \rangle} & \mathrm{inv}(\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}) \end{array}$$

Applying $\exp(-)$ to this, this induces maps of smooth moduli stacks of the form

$$\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{A}_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+2}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}}\,.$$

This gives a prequantum Chern-Simons-type field theory whose field configurations locally are $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential forms, and whose Lagrangian is locally the Chern-Simons element cs evaluated on these forms.

For instance if $(\mathfrak{a}, \omega)$ is a symplectic Lie $p$-algebroid, then we obtain the prequantization of $(p + 1)$-dimensional AKSZ-type field theories [FRS11]. For $p = 1$ this subsumes the topological string A- and B-model [AKSZ97]. Generally, the prequantum moduli stack of fields for 2-dimensional prequantum AKSZ theory is a differential refinement of the symplectic groupoid of a given Poisson manifold [Bon14]. The Poisson manifold canonically defines a boundary condition for the corresponding prequantum 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons theory, and the higher geometric boundary quantization of this 2d prequantum theory reproduces ordinary Kostant-Souriau geometric quantization of the symplectic leafs [Nui13]. This is a non-perturbative improvement of the perturbative algebraic deformation quantization of the Poisson manifold as the boundary of the perturbative 2d AKSZ field theory due to [CaFe99].

Generally one expects to find non-topological non-perturbative $p$-dimensional quantum field theories arising this way as the higher geometric boundary quantization of $(p+1)$-dimensional prequantum Chern-Simons type field theories [Sc14d, Sc14a].

For instance for $(\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}, \omega)$ the line Lie 3-algebra equipped with its canonical binary invariant polynomial, the corresponding prequantum Chern-Simons type field theory is 7-dimensional abelian cup-product Chern-Simons theory [FSS12c]. This has been argued to induce on its boundary the conformal 6-dimensional field theory of a self-dual 2-form field [Wi96] [HoSi05]. This 7-dimensional Chern-Simons theory is one summand in the Chern-Simons term of 11-dimensional supergravity compactified on a 4-sphere. The $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$ correspondence predicts that this carries on its boundary the refinement of the self-dual 2-form to a 6-dimensional superconformal field theory. There are also nonabelian summands in this 7d Chern-Simons term. For instance for $(\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{string}_{\mathfrak{g}}, \langle -,-,-,- \rangle)$ the string Lie 2-algebra equipped with its canonical degree-4 invariant polynomial, then the resulting prequantum field theory is 7-dimensional Chern-Simons field theory on String 2-connection fields [FSS12b].

For more exposition of prequantum Chern-Simons-type field theories see also [FSS13a].

**1.1.2.5 Wess-Zumino-Witten type field theory** The traditional Wess-Zumino-Witten (WZW) field theory [Ga88, Ga00] for a semisimple, simply-connected compact Lie group $G$ is a 2-dimensional sigma-model with target space $G$, in the sense of section 1.1.2.3, given by a canonical kinetic term, and with topological term that is locally a potential for the left-invariant 3-form $\langle \theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta] \rangle \in \Omega^3(G)_{\substack{\mathrm{cl}\\ \mathrm{li}}}$, where $\theta$ is the Maurer-Cartan form on $G$. This means that for $\{U_i \to G\}$ a cover of $G$ by coordinate charts $U_i \simeq \mathbb{R}^n$, then the classical WZW model is the locally variational classical field theory (in the sense discussed in section 1.1.1.2) whose local Lagrangian $L_i$ is (in the notation introduced above in section 1.1.2.3) $L_i = (L_{\mathrm{kin}})_i + ((B_i)_\Sigma)_H$ for $B_i \in \Omega^2(U_i)$ a 2-form such that $dB_i = \langle \theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta] \rangle|_{U_i}$.

By the discussion in section 1.1.2.3, in order to prequantize this field theory it is sufficient that we construct a $U(1)$-gerbe on $G$ whose curvature 3-form is $\langle \theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta] \rangle$. In fact we may ask for a little more: we ask for the gerbe to be *multiplicative* in that it carries 2-group structure that covers the group structure on $G$, hence that it is given by the 2-group extension classified by the smooth universal class $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$.

An elegant construction of this prequantization, which will set the scene for the general construction of higher WZW models, proceeds by making use of a universal property of the differential coefficients. Namely one finds that for all $p \in \mathbb{Z}$, then the moduli stack $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of $(p+1)$-form connections is the homotopy fiber product of $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})$ with $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}}$ over $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}$.

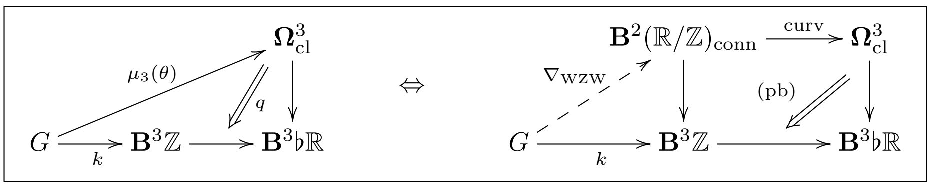
$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} & & \\ & \nearrow & & \searrow & \\ \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} & & \text{(pb)} & & \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\flat\mathbb{R} \\ & \searrow & & \nearrow & \\ & & \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{Z} & & \end{array} .$$

Here "$\flat$" indicates the discrete underlying group, and hence this homotopy pullback says that giving a $(p+1)$-form connection is equivalent to giving an integral $(p+2)$-class and a closed $(p+2)$-form together with a homotopy the identifies the two as cocycles in real cohomology.

In view of this, consider the following classical Lie theoretic data associated with the semisimple Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$.

| | |
|---|---|
| $\mathfrak{g}$ | semisimple Lie algebra |
| $G$ | its simply-connected Lie group |
| $\theta \in \Omega^1(G, \mathfrak{g})$ | Maurer-Cartan form |
| $\langle -, - \rangle$ | Killing metric |
| $\mu_3 = \langle -, [-, -] \rangle$ | Lie algebra 3-cocycle |
| $k \in H^3(G, \mathbb{Z})$ | level |
| $\mu_3(\theta \wedge \theta \wedge \theta) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{q} k_{\mathbb{R}}$ | prequantization condition |

Diagrammatically, this data precisely corresponds to a diagram as shown on the left in the following, and hence the universal property of the homotopy pullback uniquely associates a lift $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ as on the right:



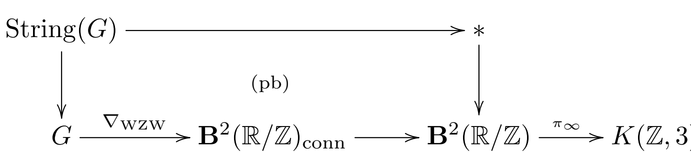

This $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ is the required prequantum topological term for the 2d WZW model. Hence the prequantum 2d WZW sigma-model field theory is the $(p = 2)$-dimensional prequantum field theory with target space the group $G$ and with local prequantum Lagrangian, i.e. with Euler-Lagrange gerbe given by

$$\mathbf{L} := \underbrace{\langle \theta_H \wedge \star\theta_H \rangle}_{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{kin}}} + \underbrace{(\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}})_H}_{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} \;\; : \;\; \Sigma \times G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_{\hbar}\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} \,.$$

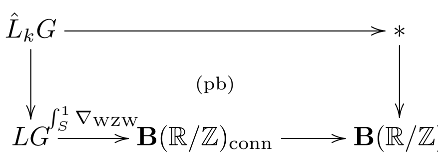
This prequantization is a de-transgression of a famous traditional construction. To see this, write $\hat{\Omega}_k G$ for level-$k$ Kac-Moody loop group extension of $G$. This has an adjoint action by the based path group $P_e G$. Write

$$\mathrm{String}(G) := P_e G // \hat{\Omega}_k G$$

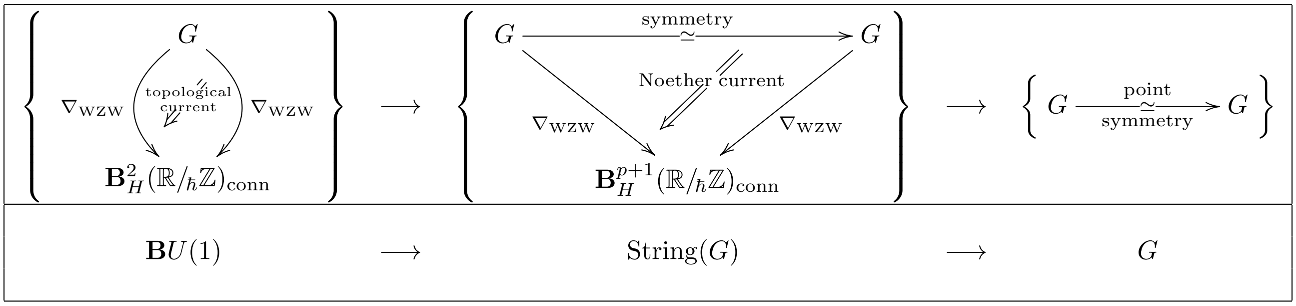
for the homotopy quotient. This is a differentiable group stack, called the *string 2-group* [BCSS07]. It turns out to be the total space of the 2-bundle underlying $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$




and it is a de-transgression of the Kac-Moody loop group extension $\hat{L}_K G$: transgressing to fields over the circle gives:

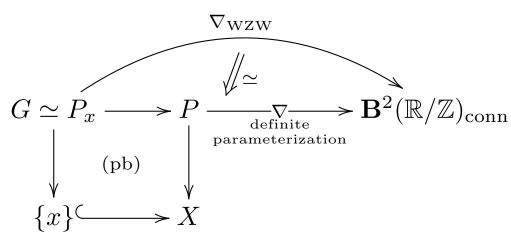



The string 2-group also appears again as the 2-group of Noether symmetries, in the sense of section 1.1.1.5, of the prequantum 2d WZW model. The Noether homotopy fiber sequence for the prequantum 2d WZW model looks as follows




In fact, this extension is classified by the smooth universal characteristic class $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$, whose differential refinement gave 3d Chern-Simons theory in section 1.1.2.4.

Given a $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$, the one may aks for a fiberwise parameterization of $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ over $P$. If such *definite parameterization* $\nabla : P \to \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ exists, then it defines the prequantum topological term for the *parameterized WZW model* with target space $P$.



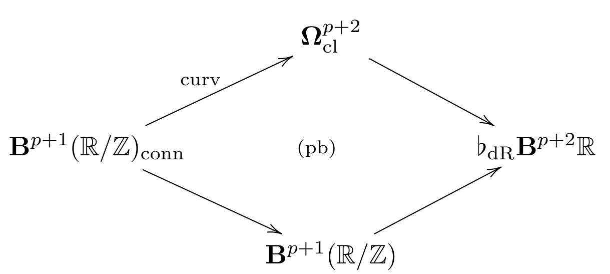

Such a parameterization is equivalent to a lift of a structure group of $P$ through the above extension $\mathrm{String}(G) \longrightarrow G$. Accordingly, the obstruction to parameterizing $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ over $P$ is the universal extension class $\mathbf{c}$ evaluated on $P$. Specifically for the case that $G = \mathrm{Spin} \times \mathrm{SU}$, this is the sum of fractional Pontryagin and second Chern class:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}p_1 - c_2 \in H^4(X, \mathbb{Z})\,.$$

The vanishing of this class is the *Green-Schwarz anomaly cancellation* condition for the 2d field theory describing propagation of the heterotic string on $X$. This perspective on the Green-Schwarz anomaly via parameterized WZW models had been suggested in [DiSh07]. The prequantum field theory we present serves to make this precise and to generalize it to higher dimensional parameterized WZW-type field theories.

Generally, given any $L_\infty$-cocycle $\mu : \mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}$ as in section 1.1.2.1.2 with induced smooth $\infty$-group cocycle $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+2}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$ as in section 1.1.2.3, then there is a higher analog of the universal construction of the WZW-type topological term $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$.

First of all, the homotopy pullback characterization of $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ refines to one that does not just involve the geometrically discrete coefficients $\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{Z}$, but the smooth coefficients $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{R})$.




Here $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}(-)$ denotes the homotopy fiber of the canonical map $\flat(-) \longrightarrow (-)$ embedding the underlying discrete smooth structure of any object into the given smooth object. A key aspect of the theory is that the further homotopy fiber of $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}(-) \longrightarrow \flat(-)$ has the interpretation of being the Maurer-Cartan form $\theta$ on the given smooth $\infty$-groupoid.

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
G & & \\
{\scriptstyle \text{Maurer-Cartan form}}\ \downarrow^{\theta} & & \\
\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G & \longrightarrow & \flat\mathbf{B}G \\
 & & \downarrow \\
 & & \mathbf{B}G
\end{array}
$$

Or rather, one finds that $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G \simeq \mathbf{\Omega}^{1\leq\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g})$ is the coefficient for "hypercohomology" in flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms, hence for $G$ a higher smooth group then its Maurer-Cartan form $\theta$ is not, in general, a globally defined differential form, but instead a system of locally defined forms with higher coherent gluing data.

But one may universally force $\theta$ to become globally defined, so to speak, by pulling it back along the inclusion $\mathbf{\Omega}_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g})$ of the globally defined flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued forms. This defines a differential extension $\tilde{G}$ of $G$ equipped with a globally defined Maurer-Cartan form $\tilde{\theta}$, by the following homotopy pullback diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \mathbf{\Omega}_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}) & & \\
 & \nearrow^{\tilde{\theta}} & & \searrow & \\
\tilde{G} & & (\mathrm{pb}) & & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G \\
 & \searrow & & \nearrow_{\theta} & \\
 & & G & &
\end{array}
.
$$

When $G$ is an ordinary Lie group, then it so happens that $\flat_{\mathrm{dr}}\mathbf{B}G \simeq \mathbf{\Omega}_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g})$, and so in this case $\tilde{G} \simeq G$ and $\tilde{\theta} \simeq \theta$, so that nothing new happens.

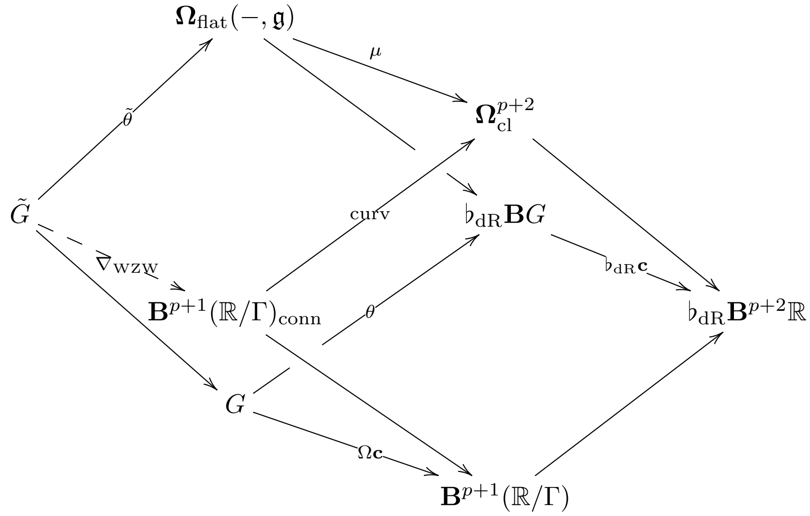
At the other extreme, when $G = \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})$, then $\theta \simeq \mathrm{curv}$ as above, and so in this case one find that $\tilde{G}$ is $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ and that $\tilde{\theta} \simeq F_{(-)}$ is the map that sends an $(p+1)$-form connection to its globally defined curvature $(p+2)$-form.

More generally these two extreme cases mix: when $G$ is a $\mathbf{B}^p(\mathbb{R}/Z)$-extension of an ordinary Lie group, then $\tilde{G}$ is a twisted product of $G$ with $\mathbf{B}^p(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$, hence then a single map

$$(\phi, B) : \Sigma \longrightarrow \tilde{G}$$

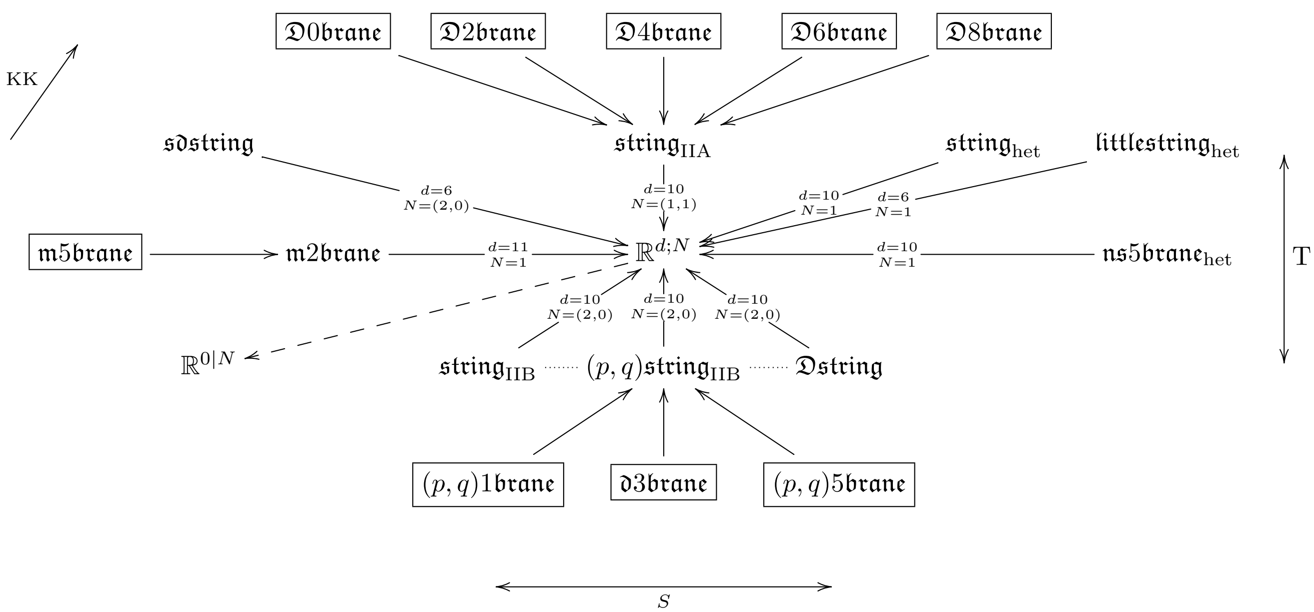
is a pair consisting of an ordinary sigma-model field $\phi$ together with a $\phi$-twisted $p$-form connection on $\Sigma$.

Hence the construction of $\tilde{G}$ is a twisted generalization of the construction of differential coefficients. In particular, given an $L_\infty$-cocycle $\mu : \mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}$ Lie-integrating to an $\infty$-group cocycle $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^{p+2}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$, then it Lie integrates to a prequantum topological term $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}} : \tilde{G} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ via the universal dashed map in the following induced diagram:



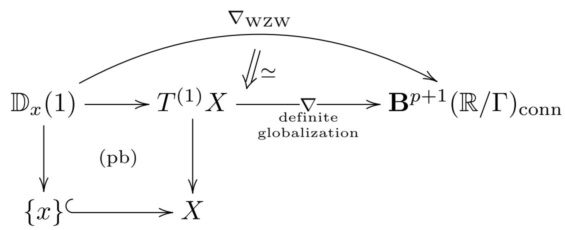

This construction provides a large supply of prequantum Wess-Zumino-Witten type field theories. Indeed, by the discussion in 1.1.2.1.2, from every $L_\infty$-algebroid there emanates a bouquet of $L_\infty$-extensions with $L_\infty$-cocycles on them, hence for every WZW-type sigma model prequantum field theories we find a whole bouquet of prequantum field theories emanating from it.

Therefore it is interesting to consider the simplest non-trivial $L_\infty$-algebroids and see which bouquets of prequantum field theories they induce. The abelian line Lie algebra $\mathbb{R}$ is arguably the simplest non-vanishing $L_\infty$-algebroid, but it is in fact a little too simple for this purpose, the bouquet it induces is not interesting. But all of the above generalizes essentially verbatim to super-algebra and super-geometry, and in super-Lie-algebra we have the odd lines $\mathbb{R}^{0|q}$. The bouquet which emanates from these turns out to be remarkably rich [FSS13b], it gives the entire $p$-brane spectrum of string theory/M-theory.




Each entry in this diagram denotes a super $L_\infty$-algebra extension of some super Minkowski spacetime $\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N}$ (regarded as the corresponding supersymmetry super Lie algebra), and each arrow denotes a super-$L_\infty$-extension classified by a $p+2$ cocycle for some $p$. By the above general construction, this cocycle induces a $(p+1)$-dimensional WZW-type sigma-model prequantum field theory with target space a higher extension of super-Minkowski spacetime [FSS13b], and the names of the super $L_\infty$-algebras in the above diagram correspond to the traditional names of these super $p$-branes.

As for the traditional WZW-models, all of this structure naturally generalizes to its parameterized versions: given any higher extended super Minkowski spacetime $V$ equipped with a prequantum topological term $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}} : V \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for a super $p$-brane sigma model, we may ask for globalizations of $\nabla$ over $V$-manifolds ($V$-étale stacks) $X$, hence for topological term $\nabla$ on all of $X$ that is suitably equivalent on each infinitesimal disk $\mathbb{D}^X_x \simeq \mathbb{D}^V_e$ to $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$.




Such globalizations serve as prequantum topological terms for WZW-type sigma-models describing the propagation of super $p$-branes on $V$-manifolds $X$ (e.g. [Duff99, sections 2,3]). One finds (this is proven with the abstract theory surveyed below in section 1.1.3) that such globalizations equip the higher frame bundle of $X$ with a lift of its structure group through a canonical map $\mathbf{Stab}_{\mathrm{GL}(V)}(\nabla) \longrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V)$ from the homotopy stabilizer group of the WZW term, in direct analogy to the previous examples. Apart from "cancelling the classical anomalies" of making the super $p$-brane WZW-type sigma-model be globally defined on $X$, such a lift induces metric structure on $X$:

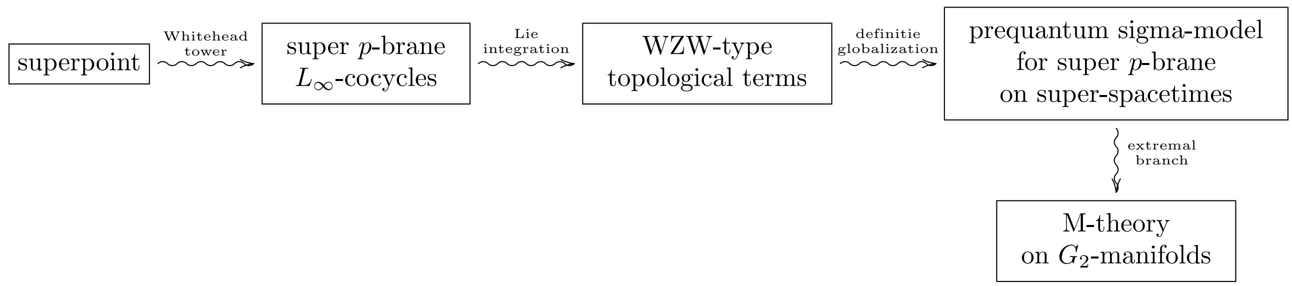
Since the homotopy stabilization of $\nabla$ in particular stabilizes its curvature form, there is a reduction of the structure group of the $V$-manifold in direct analogy to how a globalization of the "associative" 3-form $\alpha$ on $\mathbb{R}^7$ equips a 7-manifold with $G_2$-structure. For the above super $p$-brane models the relevant stabilizer is the spin-cover of the Lorentz group, and hence globalizing the prequantum $p$-brane model over $X$ in particular induces orthogonal structure on $X$, hence equips $X$ with a field configuration of supergravity.

Given such a globalization of a topological term $\nabla$ over a $V$-manifold $X$, it is natural to require it to be infinitesimally integrable. In the present example this comes out to imply that the torsion of the orthogonal structure on $X$ vanishes. This is particularly interesting at the top end of the brane bouquet: for globalization over over an 11-dimensional supermanifold, the vanishing of the torsion is equivalent to $X$ satisfying the equations of motion of 11-dimensional gravity [CaLe94]. The Noether charges of the corresponding WZW-type prequantum field theory are the *supergravity BPS-charges* [SaSc15].

Here the relation to $G_2$-structure is more than an analogy. We may naturally lift the topological term for the M2-brane sigma-model from $\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$-coefficients to $\mathbb{C}/\mathbb{Z}$-coefficients by adding $\alpha : \mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}} \to \mathbb{R}^7 \to \mathbf{\Omega}^3_{\mathrm{cl}}$. Then a globalization of the complex linear combination

$$\nabla_{\mathrm{M2}} + i\alpha : \mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3(\mathbb{C}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

over an 11-dimensional supermanifold $X$ equips $X$ with the structure of a $G_2$-fibration over a 4-dimensional $N = 1$ supergravity spacetime. The volume holonomy of $\nabla_{\mathrm{M2}} + i\alpha$ around supersymmetric 3-cycles are the "M2-instanton contributions". This setup of 11-dimensional supergravity Kaluza-Klein-compactified on $G_2$-manifolds to 4 spacetime dimensions and with the prequantum M2/M5-brane charges and instantons included – known as *M-theory on $G_2$-manifolds* [Ach02, **?**] – comes at least close to capturing the qualitative structure of experimentally observed fundamental physics.




This shows that there is some interesting physics encoded in those prequantum field theories that are canonically induced from a minimum of input data. We continue in section 1.1.3 with indicating that the concept of prequantum field theory itself arises from first principles.

### 1.1.3 Abstract prequantum field theory

Above in section 1.1.1 we have surveyed mathematical structure that captures prequantum local field theory. While the constructions and results proceed smoothly, the whole setup may still look somewhat intricate. One needs a good abstract machinery to be practically able to analyze properties of, say, Euler-Lagrange 5-gerbes on 3-stacky jet super-bundles (as they do arise in the formulation of the M5-brane prequantum sigma-model field theory as in section 1.1.2.5), because it is unfeasible to do so in components. Moreover, if prequantum field theory is part of the fundamental description of nature, one may expect that its mathematical formulation is indeed natural and neat. We now survey results from [**?**] showing that a good abstract formalization of the differential super-geometry and of the differential cohomology and of the PDE-theory necessary for formulating prequantum field theory does exist. For further exposition of the following see also [Sc14b, Sc15a, Sc15b].

- 1.1.3.1 – Modal homotopy theory;
- 1.1.3.2 – Abstract differential cohomology;
- 1.1.3.3 – Abstract differential geometry;
- 1.1.3.4 – Abstract PDE theory.

For further exposition of the following see also [Sc14b, Sc15a, Sc15b].

**1.1.3.1 Modal homotopy theory** The homotopy theory in which all pre-quantum physics that has been considered in section 1.1.2 naturally finds its place is that of super formal smooth higher stacks. We briefly state the definition below. Then we claim that this homotopy theory carries a rich progression of adjoint idempotent $\infty$-(co-)monads. Such idempotent (co-)monads equip the homotopy theory with what in formal logic is known as *modalities*, hence we may speak of *modal homotopy theory*. The particular system of modalities that we find and consider we call (super-)*differential cohesive homotopy theory*. Below in sections 1.1.3.2 and 1.1.3.3 we survey the rich differential cohomology and differential geometry that is implied formally from just this abstract modal homotopy theoretic structure.

**Definition 1.1.1.** The site of *super formal smooth Cartesian spaces*

$$\mathrm{SupFormCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sCAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

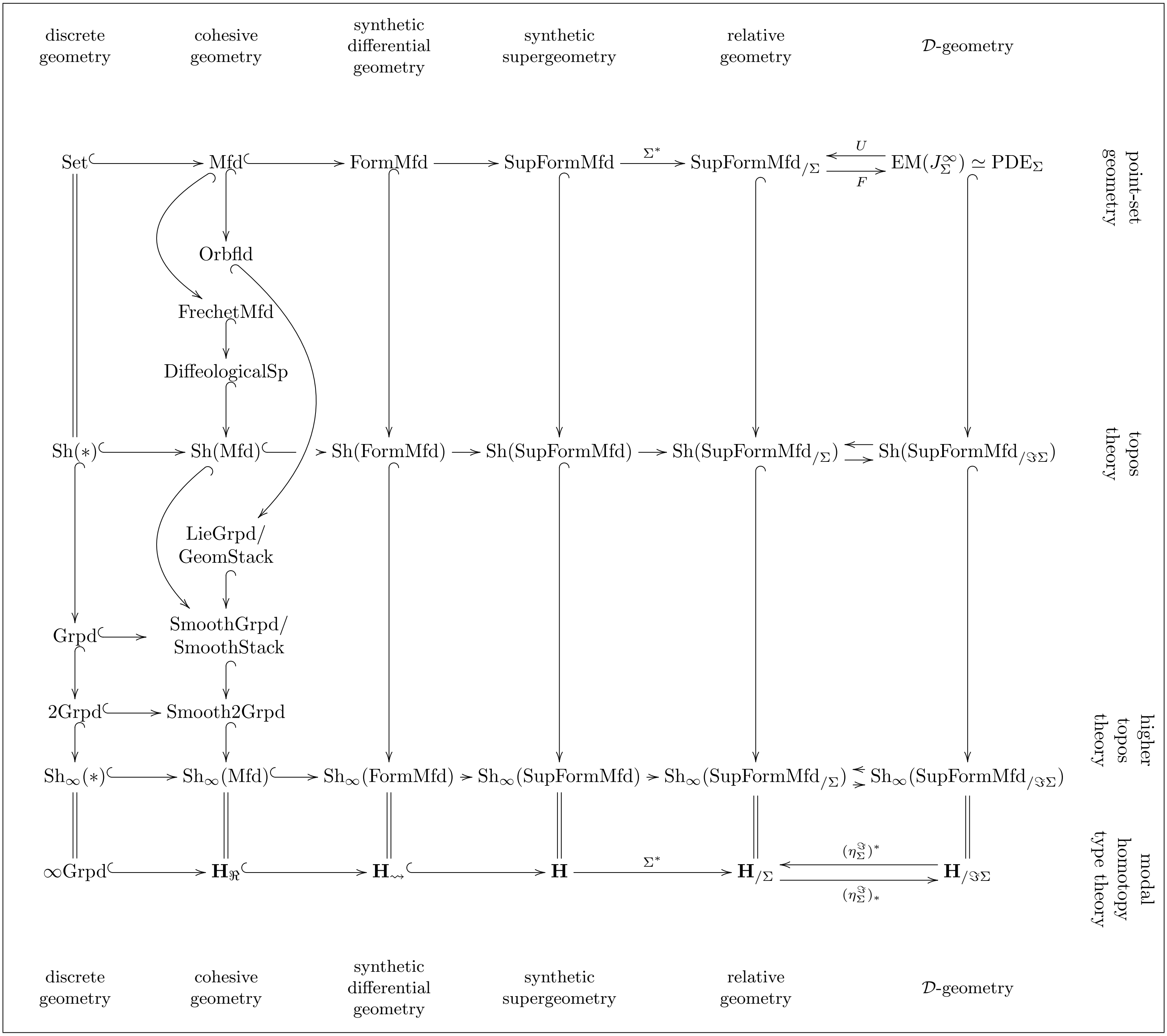
is the full subcategory of that of super-commutative superalgebras over $\mathbb{R}$ on those which are tensor products

$$C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{D}) := C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n) \otimes_{\mathbb{R}} (\mathbb{R} \oplus V)$$

of the algebra of smooth real functions in $n$ variables, for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, with a supercommutative superalgebra $(\mathbb{R} \oplus V)$ for finite dimensional nilpotent $V$. Take this to be a site by equipping it with the coverage whose coverings are of the form $\{U_i \times \mathbb{D} \overset{(\phi_i,\mathrm{id})}{\longrightarrow} X \times \mathbb{D}\}$ for $\{U_i \overset{\phi_i}{\longrightarrow} X\}$ being an open cover of smooth manifolds.

- Mfd is the category of smooth manifolds;
- FormMfd is the category of formal smooth manifolds [Kock80] [Kock06, sections I.17 and I.19];
- DiffeolSp is the category of diffeological spaces [Ig-Z13], which is the category of concrete sheaves on Mfd;
- Sh(FormMfd) is the “Cahiers topos” [Dub79b] that was introduced as a model for the Kock-Lawvere axioms [Kock06, I.12] [Kock10, 1.3] for synthetic differential geometry.

**Proposition 1.1.2.** *The sheaf toposes and $\infty$-sheaf $\infty$-toposes [L-Topos] over the sites in def. 1.1.1 form the following system of full inclusions of categories of geometric spaces.*



The key now is that super formal smooth homotopy theory exhibits the following abstract structure.

**Theorem 1.1.3.** *The homotopy theory* $\mathbf{H} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{SupFormMfd})$ *over the site of def. 1.1.1 carries a system of idempotent* $\infty$*-(co-)monads as follows:*

$$
\begin{array}{lccccccc}
 & & & \mathrm{id} & \dashv & \mathrm{id} & & \\
 & & & \vee & & \vee & & \\
 & & & \rightrightarrows & \dashv & \rightsquigarrow & & \\
\textit{synthetic supergeometry} & & & \bot & & \bot & & \\
 & & & \rightsquigarrow & \dashv & Rh & \simeq & \mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{R}^{0|1}} \\
 & & & \vee & \llcorner & \vee & & \\
 & & & \Re & \dashv & \Im & \simeq & \mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{D}} \\
\textit{synthetic differential geometry} & & & \bot & & \bot & & \\
 & \mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{D}} & \simeq & \Im & \dashv & \& & & \\
 & & & \vee & & \vee & & \\
 & \mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{R}^1} & \simeq_{\Re} & \pi_\infty & \dashv & \flat & & \\
\textit{cohesive geometry} & & & \bot & & \bot & & \\
 & & & \flat & \dashv & \sharp & & \\
 & & & \vee & \llcorner & \vee & & \\
\textit{discrete geometry} & & & \emptyset & \dashv & * & &
\end{array}
$$

*Here*

- *each* $\bigcirc \dashv \Box$ *is an adjunction of idempotent* $\infty$*-(co-)monads arising from an adjoint triple;*
- $\bigcirc_1 < \bigcirc_2$ *means that* $(\bigcirc_1 X \simeq X) \Rightarrow (\bigcirc_2 X \simeq X)$*.*

The existence of a progression of modal operators in theorem 1.1.3 is strong condition on an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$. This suggests that much of the differential geometry available in $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{SupFormMfd})$ may be seen abstractly from reasoning in the internal language of $\infty$-toposes with such a progression of modal operators added. This abstract homotopy theory might be called *super differential cohesive homotopy theory*, or just *cohesive homotopy theory* for short. In [**?**] it is shown that:

**Claim 1.1.4.** *In super differential cohesive homotopy theory, fundamental physics is synthetically*[9] *axiomatized*

1. *naturally – the formalization is elegant and meaningful;*
2. *faithfully – the formalization captures the deep nontrivial phenomena;*
3. *usefully – the formalization yields proofs and constructions that are unfeasible otherwise.*

At the International Congress of Mathematics in Paris, 1900, David Hilbert stated his list of 23 central open questions of mathematics [Hi1900]. Among them, the sixth problem has possibly received the least attention from mathematicians [Cor04], but: "From all the problems in the list, the sixth is the only one that continually engaged [Hilbert's] efforts over a very long period, at least between 1894 and 1932." [Cor06]. Hilbert stated the problem as follows:

**Hilbert's problem 6.** *To treat by means of axioms, those physical sciences in which mathematics plays an important part* [...] *try first by a small number of axioms to include as large a class as possible of physical phenomena, and then by adjoining new axioms to arrive gradually at the more special theories.* [...] *take account not only of those theories coming near to reality, but also, as in geometry, all logically possible theories .*

Since then, various aspects of physics have been given a mathematical formulation. The following table, necessarily incomplete, gives a broad idea of central concepts in theoretical physics and the mathematics that captures them.

| | **physics** | **mathematics** |
|---|---|---|
| | *prequantum physics* | *differential geometry* |
| 18xx-19xx | Lagrangian mechanics | variational calculus |
| 18xx-19xx | Hamiltonian mechanics | symplectic geometry |
| 1910s | gravity | Riemannian geometry |
| 1950s | gauge theory | Chern-Weil theory |
| 2000s | higher gauge theory | differential cohomology |
| | | |
| | *quantum physics* | *noncommutative algebra* |
| 1920s | quantum mechanics | operator algebra |
| 1960s | local observables | co-sheaf theory |
| 1990s-2000s | local field theory | $(\infty, n)$-category theory |

These are traditional solutions to aspects of Hilbert's sixth problem. Two points are noteworthy: on the one hand the items in the list are crown jewels of mathematics; on the other hand their appearance is somewhat unconnected and remains piecemeal.

[9] A synthetic axiomatization specifies intended properties of an object, in contrast to an analytic axiomatization which specifies how to build the intended object from more basic constituents. In synthetic formalization, a duck is what quacks like a duck, whereas in analytic formalization a duck has to be built out of its molecules. Euclid's plane geometry is synthetic, Descartes' plane geometry is analytic.

Towards the end of the 20th century, William Lawvere, the founder of categorical logic [Shu16b], aimed for a more encompassing answer that formulates the axiomatization of physics natively in a well-adapted foundation of mathematics itself. He suggested to

1. rest the foundations of mathematics itself in topos theory [Law65];

2. build the foundations of physics *synthetically* inside topos theory by

   (a) imposing properties on a topos which ensure that the objects have the structure of *differential geometric spaces* [Law98, Kock06];

   (b) formalizing classical mechanics on this basis by universal constructions ("Categorical dynamics" [Law67], "Toposes of laws of motion" [Law97]);

3. use *adjunctions* on the topos to formalize dualities [Law69, Lam81] and in particular used adjoint idempotent (co-)monads (adjoint closure operators) to formalize *qualitative properties* [Law91, Law07].

What makes toposes a good foundation for mathematics is that working inside them is essentially like working inside sets. Technically, elementary toposes are (finitely complete) regular locally cartesian closed categories with a subobject classifier; and the *internal language* of locally cartesian closed categories is *intuitionistic type theory* [See84, ClDy11]. This means essentially that one handles objects as if they were sets, but has to stick to using only *intuitionistic logic* in doing so (avoiding the law of excluded middle).

Moreover, the existence of (co-)monads on the topos means precisely that this intuitionistic logic is equipped with *modal operators* [Mog91, Kob97], hence that the intuitionistic type theory is *modal type theory.*

Hence, following Lawvere, we see *categorical logic* [Shu16b] as the natural formal backdrop on which to approach Hilbert's 6th problem:

**Hilbert's problem 6 (ITT).** *Find synthetic axioms for physics in modal type theory.*

But with hindsight, this needs refinement in two ways:

1. modern mathematics naturally wants foundations not in topos theory, but in *higher topos theory* [L-Topos, L-Alg];

2. modern physics needs to refine classical continuum mechanics to *local quantum gauge field theory* (section 1.1.1).

Hence there is need for refining Lawvere's synthetic approach on Hilbert's sixth problem
from classical physics formalized in synthetic differential geometry axiomatized in topos theory
to high energy physics formalized in higher differential geometry axiomatized in higher topos theory.

The internal language of $\infty$-toposes is thought to be *homotopy type theory* [UFP13, **?**] with univalent universes and higher inductive types (HoTT+UV+HIT):

**Theorem 1.1.5.** *Assuming the initiality theorem [**?**] then*

- *HoTT has semantics in locally presentable locally Cartesian closed $\infty$-categories [Shul12c];*

- *HoTT+UV$_{\mathrm{strict}}$ has semantics in the $\infty$-topos $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ [KLV12];*

- *HoTT+UV$_{\mathrm{strict}}$ has semantics in a few infinite classes of $\infty$-presheaf $\infty$-toposes [Shul13, Shul15a];*

**Remark 1.1.6.**

- HoTT+UV$_{\mathrm{weak}}$ is argued to have semantics in all $\infty$-toposes [Shul14];

- HoTT+UV+Modalities is developed in [LiSh15, Shul15, RSS15].

**Hilbert's problem 6 (HoTT).** *Find synthetic axioms for physics in modal homotopy type theory.*

| | Kock-Lawvere **synthetic diff. geometry** | . **synthetic higher diff. geometry** |
|---|---|---|
| **model** | topos | $\infty$-topos |
| **internal language** | intuitionistic type theory | homotopy type theory |
| **axioms** | KL-axiom scheme forcing internal infinitesimals | progression of adjoint modal operators forcing super-differential cohesion |
| **application** | elementary differential geometry | pre-quantum local gauge field theory |

In the following we will not reason fully formally in cohesive homotopy type theory, but instead proceed in the familiar pseudocode formerly known as mathematics. But all constructions that follow are manifestly such that they lend themselves to full formalization in cohesive homotopy type theory. The formal translation is being worked out elsewhere ([Shul15]).

**1.1.3.2 Abstract differential cohomology** We now survey a list of abstract constuctions and theorems that follow formally for every homotopy theory $\mathbf{H}$ which is equipped with the first stage of adjoint (co-)monads in theorem 1.1.3. These we call *cohesive* homotopy theories.

**Definition 1.1.7.** For $\mathbf{H}$ an $\infty$-topos, write $T\mathbf{H}$ for the $\infty$-category of parameterized spectrum objects in $\mathbf{H}$.

**Proposition 1.1.8** ([Jo08b, section 35]). *$T\mathbf{H}$ is itself an $\infty$-topos. The spectra $\mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H}) \simeq T_*\mathbf{H}$ are precisely the stable (linear) objects.*

**Example 1.1.9.** For $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ then an object $E \in T_*\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is equivalently a spectrum, and for any $X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow T\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ then

$$E^\bullet(X) \simeq [X, E]$$

is the $E$-cohomology spectrum of $X$. More generally, for $\tau \in T_X\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ a bundle of spectra whose fibers are equivalent to $E$, then

$$E^{\bullet+\tau}(X) \simeq [X, \tau]_X$$

is the $\tau$-twisted $E$-cohomology spectrum of $X$ [ABGHR13].

**Example 1.1.10.** For $S$ a site, let $\mathbf{H} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(S)$ be the hypercomplete $\infty$-topos over that site. The stable Dold-Kan correspondence turns a sheaf of chain complexes $A \in \mathrm{Ch}_\bullet(\mathrm{Sh}(S))$ into a spectrum object $HA \in T_*\mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow T\mathbf{H}$. Then

$$HA^\bullet(X) \simeq [X, HA]$$

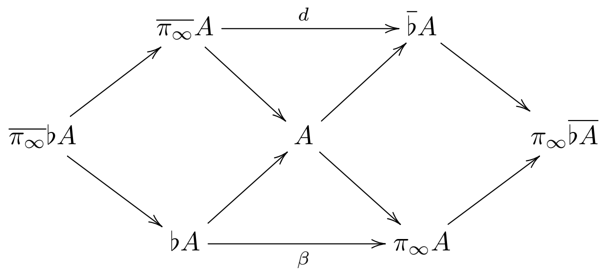
is the sheaf hypercohomology of $X$ with coefficients in $A$ [Br73].

**Proposition 1.1.11.** *For $(\pi_\infty \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp) : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$ a cohesive $\infty$-topos then also its tangent $\infty$-topos is cohesive*

$$(T\pi_\infty \dashv T\flat \dashv T\sharp) : T\mathbf{H} \to T\mathbf{H}\,.$$

**Definition 1.1.12.** For $\bigcirc$ an idempotent $\infty$-(co-)monad on $T\mathbf{H}$, write $\overline{\bigcirc}$ for the homotopy (co-)fiber of its (co-unit).

**Proposition 1.1.13** ([BNV13]). *For $(\pi_\infty \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp) : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$ a cohesive $\infty$-topos, then for every $A \in T_*\mathbf{H}$ the canonical hexagon*




*is homotopy exact, in that in addition to the diagonals being homotopy fiber sequences, also*

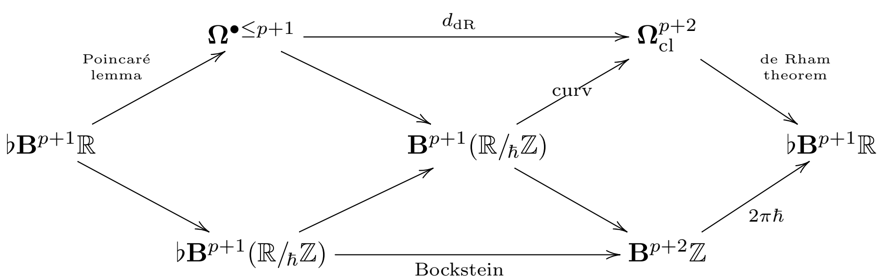
1. *both squares are homotopy cartesian;*
2. *both outer sequences are homotopy fiber sequences.*

Proof. Use that homotopy pullback of stable objects is detected on homotopy fibers. Then use cohesion and idempotency to find that the squares are homotopy cartesian.

**Example 1.1.14.** Let $\mathbf{H}$ be as in theorem 1.1.3. Inside $\mathbf{H}$ the traditional Poincaré lemma is equivalent to the statement that there is an equivalence

$$\flat\mathbb{R} \simeq \mathbf{\Omega}^\bullet \quad \in T_*\mathbf{H}\,.$$

This induces for each $p \in \mathbb{N}$ an instance of the exact hexagon of prop. 1.1.13:




The object appearing the middle is the Deligne complex

$$\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq H[\mathbb{Z} \overset{2\pi\hbar}{\hookrightarrow} \mathbf{\Omega}^0 \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \mathbf{\Omega}^1 \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \cdots \to \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}]\,.$$

For $X \in \mathbf{H} \overset{0}{\hookrightarrow} T_*\mathbf{H}$ then

$$\hat{H}^{p+2}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \pi_0[X, \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})]$$

is known equivalently as

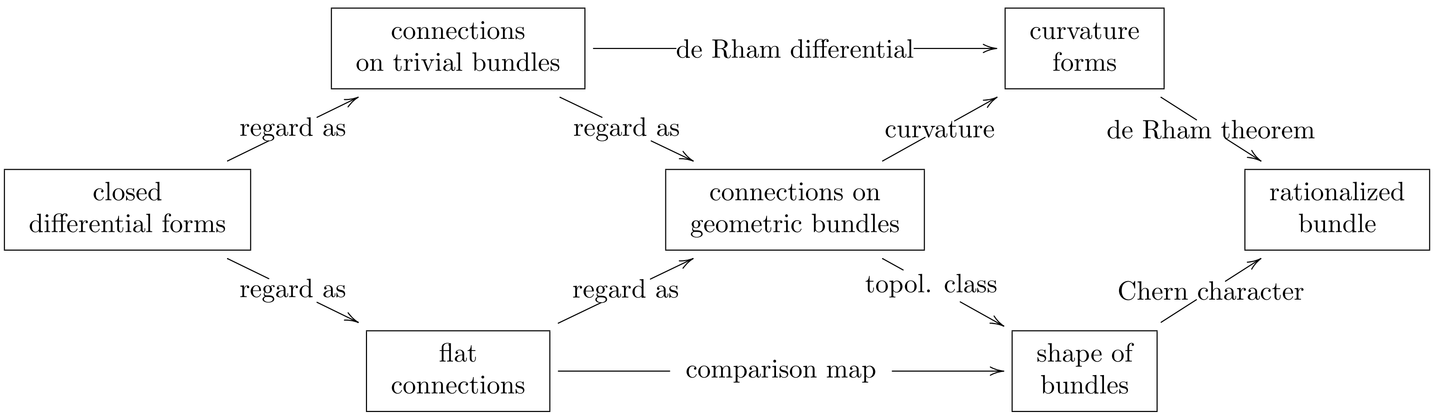
1. the ordinary differential cohomology of $X$ in degree $(p+2)$;
2. the Deligne cohomology of $X$ in degree $(p+2)$;
3. the equivalence classes of $p$-gerbe connections for band $(\mathbb{R}_{/\hbar}\mathbb{Z})$;
4. the equivalence classes of $\mathbf{B}^p(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z}$-principal bundles with connection.

**Remark 1.1.15.** In [**?**] it was observed that the natural hexagon that ordinary differential cohomology sits in already characterizes it. The authors suggested that this may be true for generalized differential cohomology theories. In view of this prop. 1.1.13 may be regarded as the lift of the Brown representability theorem from generalized cohomology theories to generalized differential cohomology theories.

Combining this observation with example 1.1.9, we find that as we vary the slices of the cohesive $\infty$-topos, it knows also about twisted differential cohomology:

| | **cohomology** | **differential cohomology** |
|---|---|---|
| **plain** | $A \in T_*\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ | $\mathbf{A} \in T_*\mathbf{H}$ |
| **twisted** | $\tau \in T_{\mathrm{Pic}(A)}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ | $\tau \in T_{\mathrm{Pic}(\mathbf{A})}\mathbf{H}$ |

Hence the hexagon in prop. 1.1.13 generally has the following interpretation:




**Definition 1.1.16** ([BNV13]). Using that $\pi_\infty \simeq \mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{R}^1}$ the universal property of $\pi_\infty$ induces for each linear cohesive object $A \in T_*\mathbf{H}$ a canonical morphism of the form

$$\int_0^1 \; : \; [\mathbb{R}^1, \bar{\flat} A] \longrightarrow \overline{\pi_\infty} A \,.$$

**Proposition 1.1.17** ([BNV13]). *In the situation of example 1.1.14, the abstracty defined map $\int_0^1$ from def. 1.1.16 is equivalent to traditional fiber integration of differential forms.*

**Proposition 1.1.18** (fundamental theorem of calculus [BNV13]). *For every linear object $A \in T_*\mathbf{H}$ we have*

$$\int_0^1 \circ d \;\; \simeq \;\; (-)|_1 - (-)|_0 \,,$$

*where $d$ is the top morphism in prop. 1.1.13 and where $\int_0^1$ is the morphism from def. 1.1.16.*

**Remark 1.1.19.** The statement of prop. 1.1.18 was long imposed as an extra axiom on differential cohomology theories (see [Bun12]).

In summary, this shows that $(\pi_\infty \dashv \flat)$ synthetically axiomatizes the existence of differential cocycles. The remaining monad $\sharp$ turns out to give the moduli spaces of such cocycles:

**Definition 1.1.20.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, write $\sharp_n$ for the $n$-image factorization of the unit $\mathrm{id} \longrightarrow \sharp$.

**Proposition 1.1.21.** *For $\mathbf{H}$ as in theorem 1.1.3, the diffeological spaces are equivalently the reduced 0-truncated objects which are in addition $\sharp_1$-modal*

$$\mathrm{DiffeologicalSp} \simeq \mathbf{H}_{\tau_0, \Re, \sharp_1} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H} \,.$$

**Example 1.1.22.** For $\mathbf{H}$ as in theorem 1.1.3, and $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1} \in \mathbf{H}$ the sheaf of differential forms and for $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$ any smooth manifold, then the mapping space $[\Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}]$ is not the diffeological space of differential $(p+1)$-forms on $\Sigma$, but $\sharp_1[\Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}]$ is.

For object which are not 0-truncated, concretification depends on a choice of co-filtration:

**Definition 1.1.23.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ equipped with a co-filtration $F^\bullet X$, we say that its *concretification* is the iterated homotopy fiber product

$$\mathrm{Conc}(F^\bullet X) := \sharp_1 F^0 X \underset{\sharp_1 F^1 X}{\times} \sharp_2 F^1 X \underset{\sharp_2 F^2 X}{\times} \cdots ,$$

with $\sharp_k$ from def. 1.1.20 or rather, is the canonical morphism

$$\mathrm{conc} : X \longrightarrow \mathrm{Conc}(F^\bullet X) .$$

**Proposition 1.1.24.** *For $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z}) \in \mathbf{H}$ from prop. 1.1.14 and equipped with its canonical co-filtration induced from the Hodge filtration on $\mathbf{\Omega}^\bullet$, then for $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$ a smooth manifold, the concretification*

$$\mathbf{B}^p(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})\mathbf{Conn}(\Sigma) := \mathrm{Conc}([\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})])$$

*is given by the diffeological $(p+1)$-groupoid of Deligne $(p+2)$-cocycles on $\Sigma$.*

Using this there is an axiomatization of the higher groups of symmetries of $p$-gerbes as they appeared in section 1.1.1.5:

**Proposition 1.1.25.** *For any $X \in \mathbf{H}$ and give $\nabla : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$, then there is a homotopy fiber sequence of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^p(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})\mathbf{FlatConn}(X) \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(X)}(\mathrm{conc}(\nabla)) & \\ & \downarrow & \\ & \mathbf{HamAut}(X,\nabla) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{KS}_\nabla} \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}^p(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})\mathbf{FlatConn}(\Sigma)) \end{array} ,$$

*where $\mathbf{Stab}(...)$ denotes the stabilizer $\infty$-group of $\nabla$ in $\mathbf{B}^p(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})\mathbf{Conn}(\Sigma)$ under the canonical $\infty$-action of the automorphism $\infty$-group of $\Sigma$, and where $\mathbf{HamAut}(X,\nabla)$ is the 1-image of the canonical map from there to $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$.*

**Example 1.1.26.** In the case that $\nabla$ is a $U(1)$-principal connection, $\mathbf{KS}_\nabla$ is the class of the traditioonal Kostant-Souriau quantomorphism extension.

**Proposition 1.1.27.** *With $(X,\nabla)$ as in prop. 1.1.25, given an $X$ fiber bundle $E \to \Sigma$ then definite globalizations of $\nabla$ over $E$ are equivalent to lifts of the structure group of $E$ through $\mathrm{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(X)}(\mathrm{conc}(\nabla)) \to \mathbf{Aut}(X)$. In particular $\mathbf{KS}_\nabla(E)$ is the obstruction class to the existence of such a globalization.*

#### 1.1.3.3 Abstract differential geometry

We now survey a list of abstract constructions and theorems that follow formally for every homotopy theory $\mathbf{H}$ which is equipped with the first and the second stage of adjoint (co-)monads in theorem 1.1.3. These we call *differential cohesive* homotopy theories.

**Proposition 1.1.28.** *In the situation of theorem 1.1.3, for $\Sigma \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ then there is a pullback diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T^\infty\Sigma & \xrightarrow{p_2} & \Sigma \\ {\scriptstyle p_1}\downarrow & \text{(pb)} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \eta^\Im_\Sigma} \\ \Sigma & \xrightarrow[\eta^\Im_\Sigma]{} & \Im\Sigma \end{array}$$

*where $T^\infty\Sigma$ is the formal neighbourhood of the diagonal of $\Sigma$, and $\Im\Sigma$ is the coequalizer of the two projections*

$$T^\infty\Sigma \underset{p_2}{\overset{p_1}{\rightrightarrows}} \Sigma \xrightarrow{\eta^\Im_\Sigma} \Im\Sigma .$$

**Remark 1.1.29.** Hence $\Im\Sigma$ is what elsewhere is called the *de Rham stack* of $\Sigma$, also denoted $X_{\mathrm{dR}}$. Its sheaf cohomology is crystalline cohomology.

**Definition 1.1.30.** For $\mathbf{H}$ a differential cohesive $\infty$-topos, say that a morphism $f : X \to Y$ is *formally étale* if the naturality square of its $\Im$-unit is a homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\Im^{\eta}_{\Sigma}} & \Im X \\ {\scriptstyle f\,\mathrm{et}}\downarrow & (\mathrm{pb}) & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \Im f} \\ Y & \xrightarrow[\Im^{\eta}_{\Sigma}]{} & \Im Y \end{array} .$$

For $V \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ a group object, say that a *$V$-manifold* is an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ equipped with a *$V$-atlas*, namely with a correspondence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & U & & \\ & {\scriptstyle \mathrm{et}}\swarrow & & \searrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{et}} & \\ V & & & & X \end{array}$$

such that both maps are formally étale and such that the right map is in addition a 1-epimorphism.

**Proposition 1.1.31.** *For $\mathbf{H}$ a differential cohesive $\infty$-topos and for $V \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ any group object, then its formal disk bundle $p_1 : T^{\infty}V \longrightarrow V$ is canonically trivialized by left translation. Moreover, for $X$ any $V$-manifold, def. 1.1.30, then the formal disk bundle of $X$ is associated to a uniquely defined $\mathrm{GL}^{\infty}(V)$-principal bundle*

$$\mathrm{Fr}(X) \longrightarrow X\,,$$

*its* frame bundle*, where*

$$\mathrm{GL}^{\infty}(V) := \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbb{D}^V_e)$$

*is the automorphism group of the formal disk around the neutral element in $V$.*

Proposition 1.1.31 allows to abstractly speak of $G$-structure and torsion-free $G$-structure on $V$-manifolds, in any differential cohesive $\infty$-topos, hence to formalize Cartan geometry, which subsumes (pseudo-)Riemannian geometry, complex geometry, symplectic geometry, conformal geometry, etc. Moreover, $G$-structures naturally arise as follows.

**Proposition 1.1.32.** *Given a differential cocycle $\nabla^V : V \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_{\hbar}\mathbb{Z})$ and a $V$-manifold $X$, then there is an $\infty$-functor from definite globalizations of $\nabla^V$ over $X$ to $\mathrm{Stab}_{\mathrm{GL}(V)}(\mathrm{conc}\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V,E})$-structures on the frame bundle of $X$, where $\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V_e}$ is the restriction of $\nabla$ to the infinitesimal neighbourhood of $e$ in $V$. In particular the class $\mathbf{KS}_{\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V_e}}(\mathrm{Fr}(X))$ from prop. 1.1.27 is an obstruction to the existence of such a globalization.*

**1.1.3.4 Abstract PDE theory** We survey more abstract constructions and theorems that follow formally for every differential cohesive homotopy theory, $\mathbf{H}$ i.e. one equipped with the first and second stage of adjoint (co-)monads in theorem 1.1.3.

**Definition 1.1.33.** For any $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$, write

$$\left(T^{\infty}_{\Sigma} \dashv J^{\infty}_{\Sigma}\right) := ((\eta_\Sigma)^* \circ (\eta_\Sigma)_! \dashv (\eta_\Sigma)^* \circ (\eta_\Sigma)_*) : \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$$

for the base change (co-)monad along the unit of the $\Im$-monad.

**Proposition 1.1.34.** *For $\mathbf{H}$ from 1.1.3, then for $E \in \mathrm{FormMfd}_{/\Sigma} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$ the (co-)monads in def. 1.1.33 come out as follows:*

1. *$T^{\infty}_{\Sigma}\Sigma$ is the formal disk bundle of $\Sigma$ [Kock80, above prop. 2.2];*

2. $J^\infty_\Sigma E$ *is the jet bundle of* $E$ *[Kock10, remark 7.3.1].*

**Proposition 1.1.35** ([Marv86],[Marv86, section 1.1])**.** *In the situation of prop. 1.1.34, the Eilenberg-Moore category of jet coalgebras over* $\Sigma$ *is equivalent to Vinogradov's category of partial differential equations with free variables in* $\Sigma$*:*

$$\mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma) \simeq \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma\,.$$

*In particular the co-Kleisli category of the jet comonad is that of bundles over* $\Sigma$ *with differential operators between them as morphisms.*

$$\mathrm{Kl}(J^\infty_\Sigma) \simeq \mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma\,.$$

Since prop. 1.1.33 gives the jet comonad by base change, the $\infty$-Beck monadicity theorem gives in generality that

**Proposition 1.1.36.** *There is an equivalence of* $\infty$*-categories*

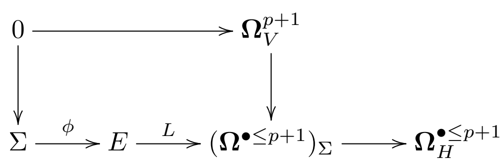
$$\mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma, \mathbf{H}) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\Im\Sigma}\,.$$

Write then

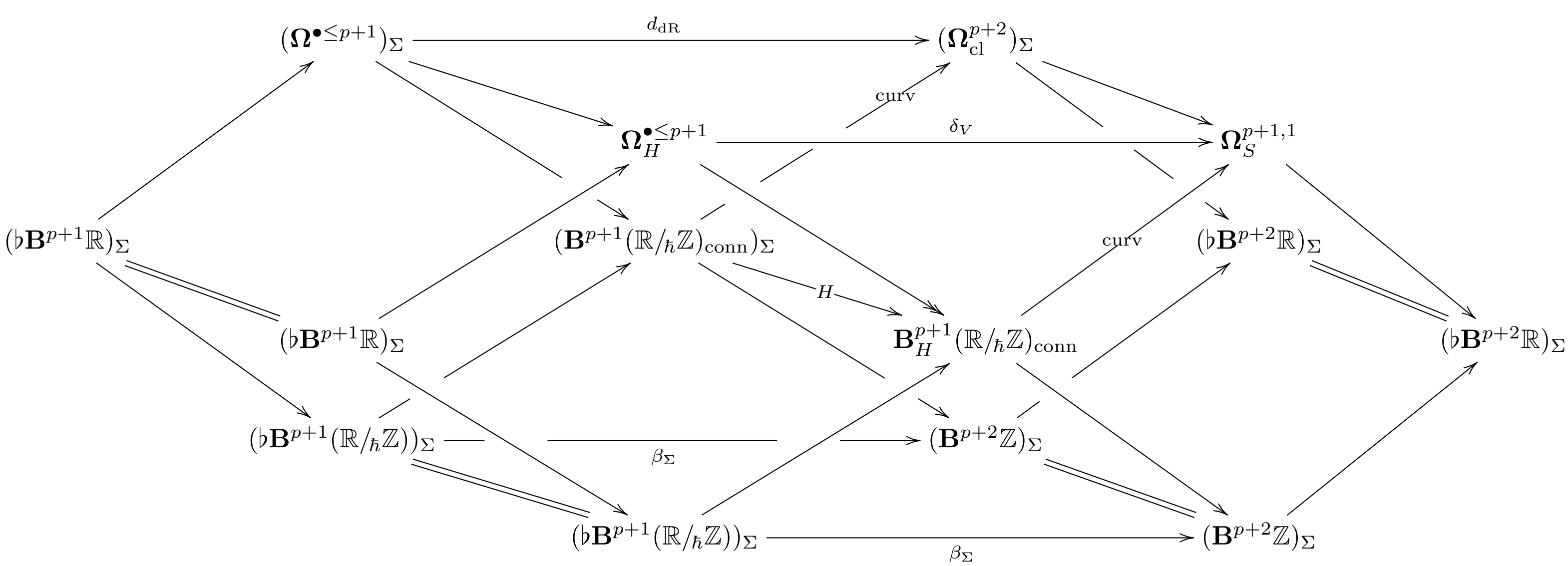
$$\mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\Sigma^*} \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma} \xrightarrow{(\eta^\Im_\Sigma)_*} \mathbf{H}_{/\Im\Sigma}, \qquad (-)_\Sigma : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}_{/\Im\Sigma}$$

for the canonical map that regards objects of the differential cohesive $\infty$-topos as co-free homotopy partial differential equations:

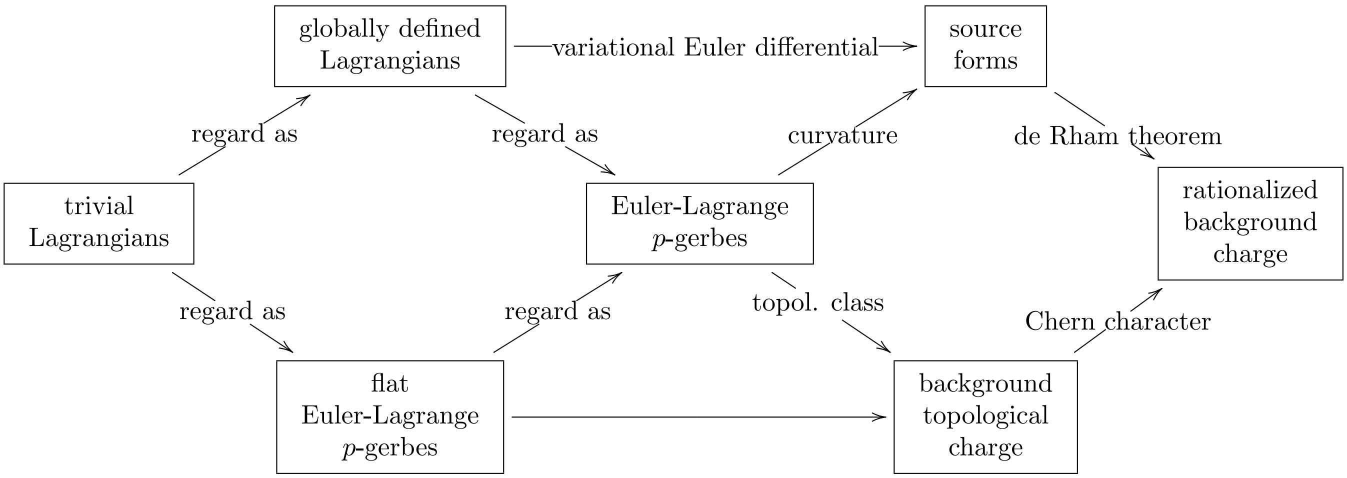
In the situation of example 1.1.14, consider the universal decomposition of the differential forms $(\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+1})_\Sigma$ regarded over $\Im\Sigma$ this way into horizontal and vertical forms.




**Proposition 1.1.37.** *This induces a horizontal projection of the exact hexagon from example 1.1.14:*



This is the abstract characterization of the Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbes of section 1.1.1.3. Hence the front hexagon in prop. 1.1.37 now has the following interpretation.




Similarly there is a further filtration of horizontal projections which induces also the Lepage $p$-gerbes of section 1.1.1.4.

Hence the abstract differential cohomology in cohesive homotopy theory combined with the abstract manifold theory and abstract PDE theory of differential cohesive homotopy theory provides just the right formal language for abstractly speaking about the prequantum field theory surveyed in section 1.1.1.

## 1.2 Geometry

The following is an introduction to and review of some key aspects of differential geometry, connecting to traditional formulations but with an eye towards the further developments below.

To some extent this is classical material, roughly along the lines of a textbook such as [Fra], but we present it from a perspective that serves to motivate and prepare for the more general abstract developments in section 4.

This section and the next has an online counterpart in [Sc13a] with more material and further pointers.



### 1.2.1 Coordinate systems

Every kind of geometry is modeled on a collection of archetypical basic spaces and geometric homomorphisms between them. In differential geometry the archetypical spaces are the abstract standard Cartesian coordinate systems, denoted $\mathbb{R}^n$, in every dimension $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and the geometric homomorphism between them are smooth functions $\mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$, hence smooth (and possibly degenerate) coordinate transformations.

Here we discuss the central aspects of the nature of such abstract coordinate systems in themselves. At this point these are not yet coordinate systems on some other space. That is instead the topic of the next section Smooth spaces.

**1.2.1.1 The continuum real (world-)line** The fundamental premise of differential geometry as a model of geometry in physics is the following.

**Premise.** *The abstract worldline of any particle is modeled by the continuum real line* $\mathbb{R}$.

This comes down to the following sequence of premises.

1. There is a linear ordering of the points on a worldline: in particular if we pick points at some intervals on the worldline we may label these in an order-preserving way by integers
$$\mathbb{Z}\,.$$
2. These intervals may each be subdivided into $n$ smaller intervals, for each natural number $n$. Hence we may label points on the worldline in an order-preserving way by the rational numbers
$$\mathbb{Q}\,.$$

3. This labeling is dense: every point on the worldline is the supremum of an inhabited bounded subset of such labels. This means that a worldline is the *real line*, the continuum of real numbers

$$\mathbb{R}.$$

The adjective"real" in "real number" is a historical shadow of the old idea that real numbers are related to observed reality, hence to physics in this way. The experimental success of this assumption shows that it is valid at least to very good approximation.

Speculations are common that in a fully exact theory of quantum gravity, currently unavailable, this assumption needs to be refined. For instance in p-adic physics one explores the hypothesis that the relevant completion of the rational numbers as above is not the reals, but p-adic numbers $\mathbb{Q}_p$ for some prime number $p \in \mathbb{N}$. Or for example in the study of QFT on non-commutative spacetime one explore the idea that at small scales the smooth continuum is to be replaced by an object in noncommutative geometry. Combining these two ideas leads to the notion of non-commutative analytic space as a potential model for space in physics. And so forth.

For the time being all this remains speculation and differential geometry based on the continuum real line remains the context of all fundamental model building in physics related to observed phenomenology. Often it is argued that these speculations are necessitated by the very nature of quantum theory applied to gravity. But, at least so far, such statements are not actually supported by the standard theory of quantization: we discuss below in Geometric quantization how not just classical physics but also quantum theory, in the best modern version available, is entirely rooted in differential geometry based on the continuum real line.

This is the motivation for studying models of physics in geometry modeled on the continuum real line. On the other hand, in all of what follows our discussion is set up such as to be maximally independent of this specific choice (this is what *topos theory* accomplishes for us). If we do desire to consider another choice of archetypical spaces for the geometry of physics we can simply "change the site", as discussed below and many of the constructions, propositions and theorems in the following will continue to hold. This is notably what we do below in Supergeometric coordinate systems when we generalize the present discussion to a flavor of differential geometry that also formalizes the notion of fermion particles: "differential supergeometry".

#### 1.2.1.2 Cartesian spaces and smooth functions

**Definition 1.2.1.** A function of sets $f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is called a *smooth function* if, coinductively:

1. the derivative $\frac{df}{dx} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ exists;
2. and is itself a smooth function.

**Definition 1.2.2.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the *Cartesian space* $\mathbb{R}^n$ is the set

$$\mathbb{R}^n = \{(x^1, \cdots, x^n) | x^i \in \mathbb{R}\}$$

of $n$-tuples of real numbers. For $1 \leq k \leq n$ write

$$i^k : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}^n$$

for the function such that $i^k(x) = (0, \cdots, 0, x, 0, \cdots, 0)$ is the tuple whose $k$th entry is $x$ and all whose other entries are $0 \in \mathbb{R}$; and write

$$p^k : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$$

for the function such that $p^k(x^1, \cdots, x^n) = x^k$.

A *homomorphism* of Cartesian spaces is a smooth function

$$f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2},$$

hence a function $f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ such that all partial derivatives exist and are continuous.

**Example 1.2.3.** Regarding $\mathbb{R}^n$ as an $\mathbb{R}$-vector space, every linear function $\mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ is in particular a smooth function.

**Remark 1.2.4.** But a homomorphism of Cartesian spaces in def. 1.2.2 is *not* required to be a linear map. We do *not* regard the Cartesian spaces here as vector spaces.

**Definition 1.2.5.** A smooth function $f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ is called a *diffeomorphism* if there exists another smooth function $\mathbb{R}^{n_2} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_1}$ such that the underlying functions of sets are inverse to each other

$$f \circ g = \mathrm{id}$$

and

$$g \circ f = \mathrm{id}\,.$$

**Proposition 1.2.6.** *There exists a diffeomorphism $\mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ precisely if $n_1 = n_2$.*

**Definition 1.2.7.** We will also say equivalently that

1. a Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$ is an *abstract coordinate system*;
2. a smooth function $\mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ is an *abstract coordinate transformation*;
3. the function $p^k : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is the $k$th *coordinate* of the coordinate system $\mathbb{R}^n$. We will also write this function as $x^k : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$.
4. for $f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ a smooth function, and $1 \leq k \leq n_2$ we write
   (a) $f^k := p^k \circ f$
   (b) $(f^1, \cdots, f^n) := f$.

**Remark 1.2.8.** It follows with this notation that

$$\mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{R}^n} = (x^1, \cdots, x^n) : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n\,.$$

Hence an abstract coordinate transformation

$$f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$$

may equivalently be written as the tuple

$$\left(f^1\left(x^1, \cdots, x^{n_1}\right), \cdots, f^{n_2}\left(x^1, \cdots, x^{n_1}\right)\right)\,.$$

**Proposition 1.2.9.** *Abstract coordinate systems form a* category *– to be denoted* CartSp *– whose*

- *objects are the abstract coordinate systems $\mathbb{R}^n$ (the class of objects is the set $\mathbb{N}$ of natural numbers $n$);*
- *morphisms $f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ are the abstract coordinate transformations = smooth functions.*

*Composition of morphisms is given by composition of functions.*

*We have that*

1. *The identity morphisms are precisely the identity functions.*
2. *The isomorphisms are precisely the diffeomorphisms.*

**Definition 1.2.10.** Write $\mathrm{CartSp}^{op}$ for the opposite category of CartSp.

This is the category with the same objects as CartSp, but where a morphism $\mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ in $CartSp^{op}$ is given by a morphism $\mathbb{R}^{n_1} \leftarrow \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ in $CartSp$.

We will be discussing below the idea of exploring smooth spaces by laying out abstract coordinate systems in them in all possible ways. The reader should begin to think of the sets that appear in the following definition as the *set of ways* of laying out a given abstract coordinate systems in a given space. This is the content of definition 1.2.12 below.

**Remark 1.2.11** (The fundamental theorems about smooth functions)**.** The special properties of smooth functions that make them play an important role, different from other classes of functions, are the following:

1. **Milnor's exercise** [KoMiSl93, 35.8-35.10]: the functor that takes smooth manifolds (not necessarily compact!) to their $\mathbb{R}$-algebras of smooth functions is fully faithful
$$\mathrm{SmthMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$
2. **Hadamard's lemma**: the remainder of the first order Taylor expansion of a smooth function $\mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is $x^2 g$, where $g$ is another smooth function.
3. **Borel's theorem**: every formal power series in one variable is the Taylor expansion of some smooth function
4. derivations of $\mathbb{R}$-algebras of smooth functions on a smooth manifold $X$ are equivalently vector fields:
$$\mathrm{Der}_{\mathbb{R}}(C^\infty(X)) \simeq \mathrm{Vect}(X)\,.$$
5. There exist bump functions such that every open cover of a smooth manifold admits a subordinate partition of unity.

"Milnor's exercise" says that smooth manifolds in differential geometry are much like affine schemes in algebraic geometry. (Notice that a crucial difference is that the Kähler differentials of $\mathbb{R}$-algebras of smooth functions do *not* exhaust the smooth differential forms. )

With this, the Hadamard lemma implies that we may enlarge the category of smooth manifolds inside $\mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$ to a category of "infinitesimally thickened smooth manifolds" akin to formal schemes, containing objects such as the first order infinitesimal interval $\mathbb{D}^1(1)$. The fact that derivations of smooth functions are equivalently vector fields then implies that morphisms of the form $\mathbb{D}^1(1) \longrightarrow X$ in this larger category are equivalently vectors on $X$. This is a key point of the standard models for "synthetic differentia geometry" see section 6.5.

In summary this says that smooth functions share some key properties of function algebras in algebraic geometry. The last point above says that in addition, and in stark contrast to function algebras in algebraic geometry, they are still flexible enough to admit bump functions and partitions of unity subordinate to open covers.

### 1.2.2 Smooth 0-types

We now discuss concretely the definition of smooth sets/smooth spaces and of homomorphisms between them, together with basic examples and properties.

**1.2.2.1 Plots of smooth spaces and their gluing** The general kind of "smooth space" that we want to consider is something that can be *probed* by laying out coordinate systems inside it, and that can be obtained by *gluing* all the possible coordinate systems in it together.

At this point we want to impose no further conditions on a "space" than this. In particular we do not assume that we know beforehand a set of points underlying $X$. Instead, we define smooth spaces $X$ entirely *operationally* as something about which we can ask "Which ways are there to lay out $\mathbb{R}^n$ inside $X$?" and such that there is a self-consistent answer to this question. The following definitions make precise what we mean by this.

For brevity we will refer "a way to lay out a coordinate system in $X$" as a *plot* of $X$. The first set of consistency conditions on plots of a space is that they respect *coordinate transformations*. This is what the following definition formalizes.

**Definition 1.2.12.** A *smooth pre-space* $X$ is

1. a collection of sets: for each Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$ (hence for each natural number $n$) a set

$$X(\mathbb{R}^n) \in \mathrm{Set}$$

   – to be thought of as the *set of ways of laying out* $\mathbb{R}^n$ *inside* $X$;

2. for each abstract coordinate transformation, hence for each smooth function $f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ a function between the corresponding sets

$$X(f) : X(\mathbb{R}^{n_2}) \to X(\mathbb{R}^{n_1})$$

   – to be thought of as the function that sends a *plot* of $X$ by $\mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ to the correspondingly transformed plot by $\mathbb{R}^{n_1}$ induced by laying out $\mathbb{R}^{n_1}$ inside $\mathbb{R}^{n_2}$.

such that this is compatible with coordinate transformations:

1. the identity coordinate transformation does not change the plots:

$$X(id_{\mathbb{R}^n}) = id_{X(\mathbb{R}^n)} ,$$

2. changing plots along two consecutive coordinate transformations $f_1 \colon \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ and $f_2 \colon \mathbb{R}^{n_2} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_3}$ is the same as changing them along the composite coordinate transformation $f_2 \circ f_1$:

$$X(f_1) \circ X(f_2) = X(f_2 \circ f_1) .$$

But there is one more consistency condition for a collection of plots to really be probes of some space: it must be true that if we glue small coordinate systems to larger ones, then the plots by the larger ones are the same as the plots by the collection of smaller ones that agree where they overlap. We first formalize this idea of "plots that agree where their coordinate systems overlap".

**Definition 1.2.13.** Let $X$ be a smooth pre-space, def. 1.2.12. For $\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^n\}_{i \in I}$ a differentially good open cover, def. 6.4.2, let

$$\mathrm{GluedPlots}(\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^n\}, X) \in \mathrm{Set}$$

be the set of $I$-tuples of $U_i$-plots of $X$ which coincide on all double intersections

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & U_i \cap U_j & & \\ & {}^{\iota_i}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\iota_j} & \\ U_i & & & & U_J \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\ & & \mathbb{R}^n & & \end{array}$$

(also called the *matching families* of $X$ over the given cover):

$$\mathrm{GluedPlots}(\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^n\}, X) \ := \ \left\{ \ (p_i \in X(U_i))_{i \in I} \ | \ \forall_{i,j \in I} \ : \ X(\iota_i)(p_i) = X(\iota_j)(p_j) \ \right\} .$$

**Remark 1.2.14.** In def. 1.2.13 the equation

$$X(\iota_i)(p_i) = X(\iota_j)(p_j)$$

says in words:

"The plot $p_i$ of $X$ by the coordinate system $U_i$ inside the bigger coordinate system $\mathbb{R}^n$ coincides with the plot $p_j$ of $X$ by the other coordinate system $U_j$ inside $X$ when both are restricted to the intersection $U_i \cap U_j$ of $U_i$ with $U_j$ inside $\mathbb{R}^n$."

**Remark 1.2.15.** For each differentially good open cover $\{U_i \to X\}_{i\in I}$ and each smooth pre-space $X$, def. 1.2.12, there is a canonical function

$$X(\mathbb{R}^n) \to \mathrm{GluedPlots}(\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^n\}, X)$$

from the set of $\mathbb{R}^n$-plots of $X$ to the set of tuples of glued plots, which sends a plot $p \in X(\mathbb{R}^n)$ to its restriction to all the $\phi_i \colon U_i \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$:

$$p \mapsto (X(\phi_i)(p))_{i\in I} .$$

If $X$ is supposed to be consistently probeable by coordinate systems, then it must be true that the set of ways of laying out a coordinate system $\mathbb{R}^n$ inside it coincides with the set of ways of laying out tuples of glued coordinate systems inside it, for each good cover $\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^n\}$ as above. Therefore:

**Definition 1.2.16.** A smooth pre-space $X$, def. 1.2.12 is a *smooth space* if for all differentially good open covers $\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^n\}$, def. 6.4.2, the canonical function of remark 1.2.15 from plots to glued plots is a bijection

$$X(\mathbb{R}^n) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{GluedPlots}(\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^n\}, X) .$$

**Remark 1.2.17.** We may think of a smooth space as being a kind of space whose *local models* (in the general sense discussed at *geometry*) are Cartesian spaces:

While definition 1.2.16 explicitly says that a smooth space is something that is *consistently probeable* by such local models; by a general abstract fact that is sometimes called the *co-Yoneda lemma*, it follows actially that smooth spaces are precisely the objects that are obtained by *gluing coordinate systems* together.

For instance we will see that two open 2-balls $\mathbb{R}^2 \simeq D^2$ along a common rim yields the smooth space version of the sphere $S^2$, a basic example of a smooth manifold. But before we examine such explicit constructions, we discuss here for the moment more general properties of smooth spaces.

**Example 1.2.18.** For $n \in \mathbb{R}^n$, there is a smooth space, def. 1.2.16, whose set of plots over the abstract coordinate systems $\mathbb{R}^k$ is the set

$$\mathrm{CartSp}(\mathbb{R}^k, \mathbb{R}^n) \in \mathrm{Set}$$

of smooth functions from $\mathbb{R}^k$ to $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Clearly this is the rule for plots that characterize $\mathbb{R}^n$ itself as a smooth space, and so we will just denote this smooth space by the same symbols "$\mathbb{R}^n$":

$$\mathbb{R}^n \colon \mathbb{R}^k \mapsto \mathrm{CartSp}(\mathbb{R}^k, \mathbb{R}^n) .$$

In particular the real line $\mathbb{R}$ is this way itself a smooth space. In a moment we find a formal justification for this slight abuse of notation.

Of course this is a special case of the general fact that smooth manifolds are smooth spaces. Further below we find an intrinsic definition of smooth manifolds from withing the theory of smooth spaces, but for readers already familiar with smooth manifolds, we should state the following:

**Example 1.2.19.** For $X \in \mathrm{SmthMfd}$, then it defines a smooth space in the sense of def. 1.2.16, by taking the set of plots over the abstract coordinate chart $\mathbb{R}^k$ to be the set of smooth functions $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k, X)$ between smooth manifolds.

This construction constitutes a fully faithful functor

$$\mathrm{SmthMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$$

embedding the category of smooth manifolds into that of smooth spaces.

Another basic class of examples of smooth spaces are the discrete smooth spaces:

**Definition 1.2.20.** For $S \in \mathrm{Set}$ a set, write

$$\mathrm{Disc}S \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$$

for the smooth space whose set of $U$-plots for every $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ is always $S$.

$$\mathrm{Disc}S \colon U \mapsto S$$

and which sends every coordinate transformation $f\colon \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ to the identity function on $S$.

A smooth space of this form we call a *discrete smooth space*.

More examples of smooth spaces can be built notably by intersecting images of two smooth spaces inside a bigger one. In order to say this we first need a formalization of homomorphism of smooth spaces. This we turn to now.

**1.2.2.2 Homomorphisms of smooth spaces** We discuss "functions" or "maps" between smooth spaces, def. 1.2.16, which preserve the smooth space structure in a suitable sense. As with any notion of function that preserves structure, we refer to them as *homomorphisms*.

The idea of the following definition is to say that whatever a homomorphism $f : X \to Y$ between two smooth spaces is, it has to take the plots of $X$ by $\mathbb{R}^n$ to a corresponding plot of $Y$, such that this respects coordinate transformations.

**Definition 1.2.21.** Let $X$ and $Y$ be two smooth spaces, def. 1.2.16. Then a homomorphism $f\colon X \to Y$ is

- for each abstract coordinate system $\mathbb{R}^n$ (hence for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$) a function $f_{\mathbb{R}^n} : X(\mathbb{R}^n) \to Y(\mathbb{R}^n)$ that sends $\mathbb{R}^n$-plots of $X$ to $\mathbb{R}^n$-plots of $Y$

such that

- for each smooth function $\phi : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ we have

  $$Y(\phi) \circ f_{\mathbb{R}^{n_1}} = f_{\mathbb{R}^{n_2}} \circ X(\phi)\,,$$

  hence a commuting diagram

  $$\begin{array}{ccc} X(\mathbb{R}^{n_1}) & \xrightarrow{f_{\mathbb{R}^{n_1}}} & Y(\mathbb{R}^{n_1}) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle X(\phi)} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle Y(\phi)} \\ X(\mathbb{R}^{n_2}) & \xrightarrow{f_{\mathbb{R}^{n_2}}} & Y(\mathbb{R}^{n_1}) \end{array} .$$

For $f_1 : X \to Y$ and $f_2 : Y \to Z$ two homomorphisms of smooth spaces, their composition $f_2 \circ f_1 \colon X \to Z$ is defined to be the homomorphism whose component over $\mathbb{R}^n$ is the composite of functions of the components of $f_1$ and $f_2$:

$$(f_2 \circ f_1)_{\mathbb{R}^n} := f_{2\mathbb{R}^n} \circ f_{1\mathbb{R}^n}\,.$$

**Definition 1.2.22.** Write Smooth0Type for the category whose objects are smooth spaces, def. 1.2.16, and whose morphisms are homomorphisms of smooth spaces, def. 1.2.21.

At this point it may seem that we have now *two different* notions for how to lay out a coordinate system in a smooth space $X$: on the hand, $X$ comes by definition with a rule for what the set $X(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of its $\mathbb{R}^n$-plots is. On the other hand, we can now regard the abstract coordinate system $\mathbb{R}^n$ itself as a smooth space, by example 1.2.18, and then say that an $\mathbb{R}^n$-plot of $X$ should be a homomorphism of smooth spaces of the form $\mathbb{R}^n \to X$.

The following proposition says that these two superficially different notions actually naturally coincide.

**Proposition 1.2.23.** *Let $X$ be any smooth space, def. 1.2.16, and regard the abstract coordinate system $\mathbb{R}^n$ as a smooth space, by example 1.2.18. There is a natural bijection*

$$X(\mathbb{R}^n) \simeq Hom_{\text{Smooth0Type}}(\mathbb{R}^n, X)$$

*between the* postulated *$\mathbb{R}^n$-plots of $X$ and the* actual *$\mathbb{R}^n$-plots given by homomorphism of smooth spaces $\mathbb{R}^n \to X$.*

Proof. This is a special case of the *Yoneda lemma*. The reader unfamiliar with this should write out the simple proof explicitly: use the defining commuting diagrams in def. 1.2.21 to deduce that a homomorphism $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to X$ is uniquely fixed by the image of the identity element in $\mathbb{R}^n(\mathbb{R}^n) := \text{CartSp}(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^n)$ under the component function $f_{\mathbb{R}^n} : \mathbb{R}^n(\mathbb{R}^n) \to X(\mathbb{R}^n)$. □

**Example 1.2.24.** Let $\mathbb{R} \in \text{Smooth0Type}$ denote the real line, regarded as a smooth space by def. 1.2.18. Then for $X \in \text{Smooth0Type}$ any smooth space, a homomorphism of smooth spaces

$$f \colon X \to \mathbb{R}$$

is a *smooth function on* $X$. Proposition 1.2.23 says here that when $X$ happens to be an abstract coordinate system regarded as a smooth space by def. 1.2.18, then this general notion of smooth functions between smooth spaces reproduces the basic notion of def. 1.2.2.

**Definition 1.2.25.** The 0-dimensional abstract coordinate system $\mathbb{R}^0$ we also call the *point* and regarded as a smooth space we will often write it as

$$* \in \text{Smooth0Type}\,.$$

For any $X \in \text{Smooth0Type}$, we say that a homomorphism

$$x \colon * \to X$$

is a *point of* $X$.

**Remark 1.2.26.** By prop. 1.2.23 the points of a smooth space $X$ are naturally identified with its 0-dimensional plots, hence with the "ways of laying out a 0-dimensional coordinate system" in $X$:

$$Hom(*, X) \simeq X(\mathbb{R}^0)\,.$$

#### 1.2.2.3 Products and fiber products of smooth spaces

**Definition 1.2.27.** Let $X, Y \in \text{Smooth0Type}$ by two smooth spaces. Their *product* is the smooth space $X \times Y \in \text{Smooth0Type}$ whose plots are pairs of plots of $X$ and $Y$:

$$(X \times Y)(\mathbb{R}^n) := X(\mathbb{R}^n) \times Y(\mathbb{R}^n) \quad \in \text{Set}\,.$$

The *projection on the first factor* is the homomorphism

$$p_1 \colon X \times Y \to X$$

which sends $\mathbb{R}^n$-plots of $X \times Y$ to those of $X$ by forming the projection of the cartesian product of sets:

$$p_{1\mathbb{R}^n} \colon X(\mathbb{R}^n) \times Y(\mathbb{R}^n) \stackrel{p_1}{\to} X(\mathbb{R}^n)\,.$$

Analogously for the *projection to the second factor*

$$p_2 \colon X \times Y \to Y\,.$$

**Proposition 1.2.28.** *Let* $* = \mathbb{R}^0$ *be the point, regarded as a smooth space, def. 1.2.25. Then for* $X \in$ Smooth0Type *any smooth space the canonical projection homomorphism*

$$X \times * \to X$$

*is an isomorphism.*

**Definition 1.2.29.** Let $f\colon X \to Z$ and $g\colon Y \to Z$ be two homomorphisms of smooth spaces, def. 1.2.21. There is then a new smooth space to be denoted

$$X \times_Z Y \in \text{Smooth0Type}$$

(with $f$ and $g$ understood), called the *fiber product* of $X$ and $Y$ along $f$ and $g$, and defined as follows:

the set of $\mathbb{R}^n$-plots of $X \times_Z Y$ is the set of pairs of plots of $X$ and $Y$ which become the same plot of $Z$ under $f$ and $g$, respectively:

$$(X \times_Z Y)(\mathbb{R}^n) = \{(p_X \in X(\mathbb{R}^n), p_Y \in Y(\mathbb{R}^n)) \mid f_{\mathbb{R}^n}(p_X) = g_{\mathbb{R}^n}(p_Y)\} \, .$$

#### 1.2.2.4 Smooth mapping spaces and smooth moduli spaces

**Definition 1.2.30.** Let $\Sigma, X \in$ Smooth0Type be two smooth spaces, def. 1.2.16. Then the *smooth mapping space*

$$[\Sigma, X] \in \text{Smooth0Type}$$

is the smooth space defined by saying that its set of $\mathbb{R}^n$-plots is

$$[\Sigma, X](\mathbb{R}^n) := \text{Hom}(\Sigma \times \mathbb{R}^n, X) \, .$$

Here in $\Sigma \times \mathbb{R}^n$ we first regard the abstract coordinate system $\mathbb{R}^n$ as a smooth space by example 1.2.18 and then we form the product smooth space by def. 1.2.27.

**Remark 1.2.31.** This means in words that an $\mathbb{R}^n$-plot of the mapping space $[\Sigma, X]$ is a smooth $\mathbb{R}^n$-parameterized collection of homomorphisms $\Sigma \to X$.

**Proposition 1.2.32.** *There is a natural bijection*

$$\text{Hom}(K, [\Sigma, X]) \simeq \text{Hom}(K \times \Sigma, X)$$

*for every smooth space* $K$*.*

Proof. With a bit of work this is straightforward to check explicitly by unwinding the definitions. It follows however from general abstract results once we realize that $[-,-]$ is of course the *internal hom* of smooth spaces. □

**Remark 1.2.33.** This says in words that a smooth function from any $K$ into the mapping space $[\Sigma, X]$ is equivalently a smooth function from $K \times \Sigma$ to $X$. The latter we may regard as a *$K$-parameterized smooth collections* of smooth functions $\Sigma \to X$. Therefore in view of the previous remark 1.2.31 this says that smooth mapping spaces have a universal property not just over abstract coordinate systems, but over all smooth spaces.

We will therefore also say that $[\Sigma, X]$ is the *smooth moduli space* of smooth functions from $\Sigma \to X$, because it is such that smooth maps $K \to [\Sigma, X]$ into it *modulate*, as we move around on $K$, a family of smooth functions $\Sigma \to X$, depending on $K$.

**Proposition 1.2.34.** *The set of points, def. 1.2.25, of a smooth mapping space* $[\Sigma, X]$ *is the bare set of homomorphisms* $\Sigma \to X$*: there is a natural isomorphism*

$$\text{Hom}(*, [\Sigma, X]) \simeq \text{Hom}(\Sigma, X) \, .$$

Proof. Combine prop. 1.2.32 with prop. 1.2.28. □

**Example 1.2.35.** Given a smooth space $X \in$ Smooth0Type, its smooth *path space* is the smooth mapping space

$$\mathbf{P}X := [\mathbb{R}^1, X] .$$

By prop. 1.2.34 the points of $PX$ are indeed precisely the smooth trajectories $\mathbb{R}^1 \to X$. But $PX$ also knows how to *smoothly vary* such smooth trajectories.

This is central for variational calculus which determines equations of motion in physics.

**Remark 1.2.36.** In physics, if $X$ is a model for spacetime, then $PX$ may notably be interpreted as the smooth space of worldlines *in* $X$, hence as the smooth space of paths or *trajectories* of a particle in $X$.

**Example 1.2.37.** If in the above example 1.2.35 the path is constrained to be a loop in $X$, one obtains the *smooth loop space*

$$\mathbf{L}X := [S^1, X]$$

(where the circle $S^1$ is regarded as a smooth space by example 1.2.19).

#### 1.2.2.5 The smooth moduli space of smooth functions

In example 1.2.24 we saw that a smooth function on a general smooth space $X$ is a homomorphism of smooth spaces, def. 1.2.21

$$f \colon X \to \mathbb{R} .$$

The collection of these forms the hom-set $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Smooth0Type}}(X, \mathbb{R})$. But by the discussion in 1.2.2.4 such hom-sets are naturally refined to smooth spaces themselves.

**Definition 1.2.38.** For $X \in$ Smooth0Type a smooth space, we say that the *moduli space of smooth functions* on $X$ is the smooth mapping space (def. 1.2.30), from $X$ into the standard real line $\mathbb{R}$

$$[X, \mathbb{R}] \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type} .$$

We will also denote this by

$$\mathbf{C}^\infty(X) := [X, \mathbb{R}] ,$$

since in the special case that $X$ is a Cartesian space this is the smooth refinement of the set $C^\infty(X)$ of smooth functions, def. 1.2.1, on $X$.

**Remark 1.2.39.** We call this a *moduli space* because by prop. 1.2.32 above and in the sense of remark 1.2.33 it is such that smooth functions into it *modulate* smooth functions $X \to \mathbb{R}$.

By prop. 1.2.34 a point $* \to [X, \mathbb{R}^1]$ of the moduli space is equivalently a smooth function $X \to \mathbb{R}^1$.

#### 1.2.2.6 Outlook

Later we define/see the following:

- A *smooth manifold* is a smooth space that is *locally equivalent* to a coordinate system;
- A *diffeological space* is a smooth space such that every coordinate labels a point in the space. In other words, a diffeological space is a smooth space that has an underlying set $X_s \in Set$ of points such that the set of $\mathbb{R}^n$-plots is a subset of the set of all functions:

$$X(\mathbb{R}^n) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Functions}(\mathbb{R}^n, S_s) .$$

We discuss below a long sequence of faithful inclusions

{coordinate systems } $\hookrightarrow$ {smooth manifolds} $\hookrightarrow$ {diffeological spaces} $\hookrightarrow$ {smooth spaces} $\hookrightarrow$ {smooth groupoids} $\hookrightarrow \cdots$

### 1.2.3 Differential forms

A fundamental concept in differential geometry is that of *differential forms*. We here introduce this in the spirit of the topos of smooth spaces.

**1.2.3.1 Differential forms on abstract coordinate systems** We introduce the basic concept of a *smooth differential form* on a Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$. Below in 1.2.68 we use this to define differential forms on any smooth space.

**Definition 1.2.40.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ a *smooth differential 1-form* $\omega$ on the Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$ is an $n$-tuple

$$(f_i \in \mathrm{CartSp}\,(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}))_{i=1}^n$$

of smooth functions, which we think of equivalently as the coefficients of a formal linear combination

$$\omega = \sum_{i=1}^n f_i \mathbf{d}x^i$$

on a set $\{\mathbf{d}x^1, \mathbf{d}x^2, \cdots, \mathbf{d}x^n\}$ of cardinality $n$.

Write

$$\Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^k) \simeq \mathrm{CartSp}(\mathbb{R}^k, \mathbb{R})^{\times k} \in \mathrm{Set}$$

for the set of smooth differential 1-forms on $\mathbb{R}^k$.

**Remark 1.2.41.** We think of $\mathbf{d}x^i$ as a measure for infinitesimal displacements along the $x^i$-coordinate of a Cartesian space. This idea is made precise by the notion of *parallel transport*.

If we have a measure of infintesimal displacement on some $\mathbb{R}^t$ and a smooth function $f\colon \mathbb{R}^s \to \mathbb{R}^t$, then this induces a measure for infinitesimal displacement on $\mathbb{R}^s$: We may first send the displacement along $f$ from $\mathbb{R}^s$ to $\mathbb{R}^t$ and then measure it there. This is captured by the following definition.

**Definition 1.2.42.** For $\phi\colon \mathbb{R}^s \to \mathbb{R}^t$ a smooth function, the *pullback of differential 1-forms* along $\phi$ is the function

$$\phi^*\colon \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^t) \to \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^s)$$

between sets of differential 1-forms, def. 1.2.40, which is defined on basis-elements by

$$\phi^* \mathbf{d}x^i := \sum_{j=1}^s \frac{\partial \phi^i}{\partial \tilde{x}^j} \mathbf{d}\tilde{x}^j$$

and then extended linearly by

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi^* \omega &= \phi^* \left( \sum_i \omega_i \mathbf{d}x^i \right) \\
&:= \sum_{i=1}^t (\phi^*\omega)_i \sum_{j=1}^{\tilde{k}} \frac{\partial \phi^i}{\partial \tilde{x}^j} \mathbf{d}\tilde{x}^j \quad . \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^t \sum_{j=1}^{\tilde{k}} (\omega_i \circ \phi) \cdot \frac{\partial \phi^i}{\partial \tilde{x}^j} \mathbf{d}\tilde{x}^j
\end{aligned}$$

**Remark 1.2.43.** The term "pullback" in *pullback of differential forms* is not really related, certainly not historically, to the term *pullback* in category theory. One can relate the pullback of differential forms to categorical pullbacks, but this is not really essential here. The most immediate property that both concepts share is that they take a morphism going in one direction to a map between structures over domain and codomain of that morphism which goes in the other direction, and in this sense one is "pulling back structure along a morphism" in both cases.

Even if in the above definition we speak only about the set $\Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^k)$ of differential 1-forms, this set naturally carries further structure.

**Definition 1.2.44.** The set $\Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^k)$ is naturally an abelian group with addition given by componentwise addition

$$\begin{aligned} \omega + \lambda &= \sum_{i=1}^{k} \omega_i \mathbf{d}x^i + \sum_{j=1}^{k} \lambda_j \mathbf{d}x^j \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{k} (\omega_i + \lambda_i) \mathbf{d}x^j \end{aligned},$$

Moreover, the abelian group $\Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^k)$ is naturally equipped with the structure of a module over the ring $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k, \mathbb{R}) = \mathrm{CartSp}(\mathbb{R}^k, \mathbb{R})$ of smooth functions, where the action $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k, \mathbb{R}) \times \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^k) \to \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^k)$ is given by componentwise multiplication

$$f \cdot \omega = \sum_{i=1}^{k} (f \cdot \omega_i) \mathbf{d}x^i .$$

**Remark 1.2.45.** More abstractly, this just says that $\Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^k)$ is the free module over $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k)$ on the set $\{\mathbf{d}x^i\}_{i=1}^k$.

The following definition captures the idea that if $\mathbf{d}x^i$ is a measure for displacement along the $x^i$-coordinate, and $\mathbf{d}x^j$ a measure for displacement along the $x^j$ coordinate, then there should be a way to get a measure, to be called $\mathbf{d}x^i \wedge \mathbf{d}x^j$, for infinitesimal *surfaces* (squares) in the $x^i$-$x^j$-plane. And this should keep track of the orientation of these squares, with

$$\mathbf{d}x^j \wedge \mathbf{d}x^i = -\mathbf{d}x^i \wedge \mathbf{d}x^j$$

being the same infinitesimal measure with orientation reversed.

**Definition 1.2.46.** For $k \in \mathbb{N}$, the *smooth differential forms* on $\mathbb{R}^k$ is the exterior algebra

$$\Omega^\bullet(\mathbb{R}^k) := \wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k)} \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^k)$$

over the ring $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k)$ of smooth functions of the module $\Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^k)$ of smooth 1-forms, prop. 1.2.44.

For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we write $\Omega^n(\mathbb{R}^k)$ for the sub-module of degree $n$ and call its elements the *smooth differential n-forms*.

**Remark 1.2.47.** Explicitly this means that a differential n-form $\omega \in \Omega^n(\mathbb{R}^k)$ on $\mathbb{R}^k$ is a formal linear combination over $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k)$ of basis elements of the form $\mathbf{d}x^{i_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{d}x^{i_n}$ for $i_1 < i_2 < \cdots < i_n$:

$$\omega = \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \cdots < i_n < k} \omega_{i_1, \cdots, i_n} \mathbf{d}x^{i_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{d}x^{i_n} .$$

**Remark 1.2.48.** The pullback of differential 1-forms of def. 1.2.40 extends as an $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k)$-algebra homomorphism to $\Omega^n(-)$, given for a smooth function $f \colon \mathbb{R}^{\tilde{k}} \to \mathbb{R}^k$ on basis elements by

$$f^* \left( \mathbf{d}x^{i_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{d}x^{i_n} \right) = \left( f^* \mathbf{d}x^{i_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge f^* \mathbf{d}x^{i_n} \right) .$$

**1.2.3.2 Differential forms on smooth spaces** Above we have defined differential $n$-forms on abstract coordinate systems. Here we extend this definition to one of differential $n$-forms on arbitrary smooth spaces. We start by observing that the space of *all* differential $n$-forms on coordinate systems is itself naturally a smooth space.

**Proposition 1.2.49.** *The assignment of differential $n$-forms*

$$\Omega^n(-) \colon \mathbb{R}^k \mapsto \Omega^n(\mathbb{R}^k)$$

*of def. 1.2.46 together with the pullback of differential forms-functions of def. 1.2.48*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{R}^{k_1} & \longmapsto & \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^{k_1}) \\ {\scriptstyle f}\uparrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f^*} \\ \mathbb{R}^{k_2} & \longmapsto & \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^{k_2}) \end{array}$$

*defines a smooth space in the sense of def. 1.2.16:*

$$\Omega^n(-) \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}\,.$$

**Definition 1.2.50.** We call this

$$\mathbf{\Omega}^n \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$$

the *universal smooth moduli space* of differential $n$-forms.

The reason for this terminology is that homomorphisms of smooth spaces into $\Omega^1$ *modulate* differential $n$-forms on their domain, by prop. 1.2.23 (and hence by the Yoneda lemma):

**Example 1.2.51.** For the Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^k$ regarded as a smooth space by example 1.2.18, there is a natural bijection

$$\Omega^n(\mathbb{R}^k) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{R}^k, \mathbf{\Omega}^n)$$

between the set of smooth $n$-forms on $\mathbb{R}^n$ according to def. 1.2.40 and the set of homomorphism of smooth spaces, $\mathbb{R}^k \to \Omega^n$, according to def. 1.2.21.

In view of this we have the following elegant definition of smooth $n$-forms on an arbitrary smooth space.

**Definition 1.2.52.** For $X \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$ a smooth space, def. 1.2.16, a *differential $n$-form* on $X$ is a homomorphism of smooth spaces of the form

$$\omega \colon X \to \Omega^n(-)\,.$$

Accordingly we write

$$\Omega^n(X) := \mathrm{Smooth0Type}(X, \Omega^n)$$

for the set of smooth $n$-forms on $X$.

We may unwind this definition to a very explicit description of differential forms on smooth spaces. This we do in a moment in remark 1.2.56.

Notice the following

**Proposition 1.2.53.** *Differential 0-forms are equivalently smooth $\mathbb{R}$-valued functions:*

$$\Omega^0 \simeq \mathbb{R}\,.$$

**Definition 1.2.54.** For $f \colon X \to Y$ a homomorphism of smooth spaces, def. 1.2.21, the *pullback of differential forms* along $f$ is the function

$$f^* \colon \Omega^n(Y) \to \Omega^n(X)$$

given by the hom-functor into the smooth space $\Omega^n$ of def. 1.2.50:

$$f^* := \mathrm{Hom}(f, \Omega^n) .$$

This means that it sends an $n$-form $\omega \in \Omega^n(Y)$ which is modulated by a homomorphism $Y \to \Omega^n$ to the $n$-form $f^*\omega \in \Omega^n(X)$ which is modulated by the composite $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to \Omega^n$.

By the Yoneda lemma we find:

**Proposition 1.2.55.** *For $X = \mathbb{R}^{\tilde{k}}$ and $Y = \mathbb{R}^k$ definition 1.2.54 reproduces def. 1.2.48.*

**Remark 1.2.56.** Using def. 1.2.54 for unwinding def. 1.2.52 yields the following explicit description:
a differential $n$-form $\omega \in \Omega^n(X)$ on a smooth space $X$ is

1. for each way $\phi \colon \mathbb{R}^k \to X$ of laying out a coordinate system $\mathbb{R}^k$ in $X$ a differential $n$-form

$$\phi^*\omega \in \Omega^n(\mathbb{R}^k)$$

on the abstract coordinate system, as given by def. 1.2.46;

2. for each abstract coordinate transformation $f \colon \mathbb{R}^{k_2} \to \mathbb{R}^{k_1}$ a corresponding compatibility condition between local differential forms $\phi_1 \colon \mathbb{R}^{k_1} \to X$ and $\phi_2 \colon \mathbb{R}^{k_2} \to X$ of the form

$$f^*\phi_1^*\omega = \phi_2^*\omega .$$

Hence a differential form on a smooth space is simply a collection of differential forms on all its coordinate systems such that these glue along all possible coordinate transformations.

The following adds further explanation to the role of $\Omega^n \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$ as a *moduli space*. Notice that since $\Omega^n$ is itself a smooth space, we may speak about differential $n$-forms on $\Omega^n$ itself.

**Definition 1.2.57.** The *universal differential $n$-form* is the differential $n$-form

$$\omega^n_{\mathrm{univ}} \in \Omega^n(\Omega^n)$$

which is modulated by the identity homomorphism $\mathrm{id} \colon \Omega^n \to \Omega^n$.

With this definition we have:

**Proposition 1.2.58.** *For $X \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$ any smooth space, every differential $n$-form on $X$, $\omega \in \Omega^n(X)$ is the pullback of differential forms, def. 1.2.54, of the universal differential $n$-form, def. 1.2.57, along a homomorphism $f$ from $X$ into the moduli space $\Omega^n$ of differential $n$-forms:*

$$\omega = f^*\omega^n_{\mathrm{univ}} .$$

**Remark 1.2.59.** This statement is of course a tautology. Nevertheless it is a very useful tautology to make explicit. The whole concept of differential forms on smooth spaces here may be thought of as simply a variation of the theme of the Yoneda lemma.

**1.2.3.3 Concrete smooth spaces** The smooth universal moduli space of differential forms $\Omega^n(-)$ from def. 1.2.50 is noteworthy in that it has a property not shared by many smooth spaces that one might think of more naively: while evidently being "large" (the space of all differential forms!) it has "very few points" and"very few $k$-dimensional subspaces" for low $k$. In fact

**Proposition 1.2.60.** *For $k < n$ the smooth space $\Omega^n$ (def. 1.2.50) admits only a unique probe by $\mathbb{R}^k$:*

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{R}^k, \Omega^n) \simeq \Omega^n(\mathbb{R}^k) = \{0\}\,.$$

So while $\Omega^n$ is a large smooth space, it is "not supported on probes" in low dimensions in as much as one might expect, from more naive notions of smooth spaces.

We now formalize this. The formal notion of a smooth space which is *supported on its probes* is that of a *concrete object*. There is a universal map that sends any smooth space to its *concretification*. The universal moduli spaces of differential forms turn out to be *non-concrete* in that their concretification is the point.

**Definition 1.2.61.** For $X \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$ a smooth space (definition 1.2.22), write

$$\Gamma(X) \in \mathrm{Set}$$

for its underlying set of points which is equivalently

$$\Gamma(X) := X(\mathbb{R}^0) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Smooth0Type}}(*, X)\,.$$

This extends to a functor

$$\Gamma \;:\; \mathrm{Smooth0Type} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Set}\,.$$

**Remark 1.2.62.** If thinking of the category of smooth spaces as a category of sheaves, then the functor $\Gamma$ in def. 1.2.61 is called its *global section functor*.

**Definition 1.2.63.** Let $X \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$ a smooth space (definition 1.2.22). We write $\sharp X$ for the smooth space whose plots are given by all *maps of underlying sets*

$$\sharp X \;:\; \mathbb{R}^n \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Set}}(\Gamma(\mathbb{R}^n), \Gamma(X))$$

(where $\Gamma$ is the functor from def. 1.2.61). Moreover, we define a natural morphism of smooth spaces

$$\mathrm{DeCoh}_X \;:\; X \longrightarrow \sharp X$$

given on $\mathbb{R}^n$-plots by the function

$$X(\mathbb{R}^n) \overset{\simeq}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Smooth0Type}}(\mathbb{R}^n, X) \overset{\Gamma_{\mathbb{R}^n, X}}{\to} \mathrm{Set}(\Gamma(U), \Gamma(X))\,,$$

where the first function is the bijection from the Yoneda lemma (prop. 1.2.23) and the second function is the components of the functor $\Gamma$ from def. 1.2.61.

**Definition 1.2.64.** Let $X \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$ a smooth space (definition 1.2.22).

1. We call $X$ *concrete* if the morphism

   $$\mathrm{DeCoh}_X \colon X \to \sharp X$$

   (from def. 1.2.63) is a monomorphism.

2. We say the *concretification* $\mathrm{Conc}(X) \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$ of $X$ is the image factorization of $\mathrm{DeCoh}_X$, hence the factorization into an epimorphism followed by a monomorphism

   $$\mathrm{DeCoh}_X : X \longrightarrow \mathrm{Conc}(X) \hookrightarrow \sharp X\,.$$

**Remark 1.2.65.** Hence the concretification $\mathrm{Conc}(X)$ of a smooth space $X$ is itself a concrete smooth space and it is universal with this property.

**Proposition 1.2.66.** *For $n \geq 1$ we have*

$$\mathrm{Conc}(\Omega^n) \simeq *\,.$$

In this sense the smooth moduli space of differential $n$-forms is *maximally non-concrete*.

#### 1.2.3.4 Smooth moduli spaces of differential forms on a smooth space

We discuss the smooth space of differential forms *on a fixed smooth space $X$*.

**Remark 1.2.67.** Let $X \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$ a smooth space (definition 1.2.22). Then the mapping space (def. 1.2.30)

$$[X, \Omega^n] \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$$

is the smooth space whose $\mathbb{R}^k$-plots are differential $n$-forms on the product $X \times \mathbb{R}^k$

$$[X, \Omega^n] \colon \mathbb{R}^k \mapsto \Omega^n(X \times \mathbb{R}^k)\,.$$

This is not *quite* what one usually wants to regard as an $\mathbb{R}^k$-parameterized collection of differential forms on $X$. That is instead usually meant to be a differential form $\omega$ on $X \times \mathbb{R}^k$ which has "no leg along $\mathbb{R}^k$". Another way to say this is that the family of forms on $X$ that is represented by some $\omega$ on $X \times \mathbb{R}^k$ is that which over a point $v \colon * \to \mathbb{R}^k$ has the value $(id_X, v)^*\omega$. Under this pullback of differential forms any components of $\omega$ with "legs along $\mathbb{R}^k$" are identified with the 0 differential form.

This is captured by the following definition.

**Definition 1.2.68.** For $X \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the *smooth space of differential $n$-forms* $\Omega^n(X)$ on $X$ is the concretification, def. 1.2.64, of the smooth mapping space $[X, \Omega^n]$, def. 1.2.30, into the smooth moduli space of differential $n$-forms, def. 1.2.50:

$$\mathbf{\Omega}^n(X) := \mathrm{Conc}([X, \Omega^n])\,.$$

**Proposition 1.2.69.** *The $\mathbb{R}^k$-plots of $\Omega^n(\mathbb{R}^k)$ (def. 1.2.68) are indeed smooth differential $n$-forms on $X \times \mathbb{R}^k$ which are such that their evaluation on vector fields tangent to $\mathbb{R}^k$ vanish.*

Proof. By def. 1.2.64 and prop. 1.2.63 the set of plots of $\Omega^n(X)$ over $\mathbb{R}^k$ is the image of the function

$$\Omega^n(X \times \mathbb{R}^k) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Smooth0Type}}(\mathbb{R}^k, [X, \Omega^n]) \overset{\Gamma_{\mathbb{R}^k, [X,\Omega^n]}}{\to} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Set}}(\Gamma(\mathbb{R}^k), \Gamma[X, \Omega^n]) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Set}}(\mathbb{R}^k_s, \Omega^n(X))\,,$$

where on the right $\mathbb{R}^k_s$ denotes, just for emphasis, the underlying set of $\mathbb{R}^k_s$. This function manifestly sends a smooth differential form $\omega \in \Omega^n(X \times \mathbb{R}^k)$ to the function from points $v$ of $\mathbb{R}^k$ to differential forms on $X$ given by

$$\omega \mapsto (v \mapsto (id_X, v)^*\omega)\ .$$

Under this function all components of differential forms with a "leg along" $\mathbb{R}^k$ are sent to the 0-form. Hence the image of this function is the collection of smooth forms on $X \times \mathbb{R}^k$ with "no leg along $\mathbb{R}^k$". □

**Remark 1.2.70.** For $n = 0$ we have (for any $X \in \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$)

$$\begin{aligned}\Omega^0(X) &:= \mathrm{Conc}[X, \Omega^0] \\ &\simeq \mathrm{Conc}[X, \mathbb{R}] \\ &\simeq [X, \mathbb{R}]\,,\end{aligned}$$

by prop. 1.2.53.

### 1.2.4 Integration

We discuss the traditional concept of fiber integration and of transgression of differential forms, (e.g. [BoTo82]) along the lines of 1.2.3.

**Definition 1.2.71.** Given a closed oriented smooth manifold $\Sigma$ of dimension $k$, and any smooth manifold $U$, write

$$\int_\Sigma (U) \; : \; \Omega^{n+k}(U \times \Sigma) \to \Omega^n(U)$$

for the traditional operation of fiber integration of differential forms over $\Sigma$. For every smooth function $\phi : U_1 \to U_2$ these operations form a commuting square of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^{n+k}(U_1 \times \Sigma) & \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma (U_1)} & \Omega^n(U_1) \\ \uparrow^{(\phi,\mathrm{id})^*} & & \uparrow^{\phi^*} \\ \Omega^{n+k}(U_2 \times \Sigma) & \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma (U_2)} & \Omega^n(U_2) \end{array}$$

In view of the internal hom adjunction $((-) \times \Sigma \dashv [\Sigma, -])$ in Smooth0Type and with the smooth set of differential forms $\Omega^n \in \mathrm{Smooth0}Type$ as in def. 1.2.49, this means equivalently that fiber integration of differential forms over $\Sigma$ for arbitrary base manifolds $U$ is a morphism in Smooth0Type the forms

$$\int_\Sigma \; : \; [\Sigma, \Omega^{n+k}] \longrightarrow \Omega^n \, .$$

**Definition 1.2.72.** With $\Sigma$ a compact oriented smooth manifold, and $X$ any smooth manifold, then the traditional construction of *transgression* of differential forms on $X$ to the smooth mapping space $[\Sigma, X]$ is the composite

$$\int_\Sigma \circ \, \mathrm{ev}^* \; : \; \Omega^{n+k}(X) \longrightarrow \Omega^n([\Sigma, X]) \, ,$$

of pulling back along the canonical evaluation map

$$\mathrm{ev} \; : \; [\Sigma, X] \times \Sigma \longrightarrow X$$

followed by fiber integration over $\Sigma$ (def 1.2.71).

We will have extensive use of the following equivalent re-formulation of this traditional definition:

**Proposition 1.2.73.** *Under the natural identification $\Omega^\bullet(X) \simeq \mathrm{Smooth0Type}(X, \mathbf{\Omega}^\bullet)$ of example 1.2.51, def. 1.2.52, the traditional transgression morphism of def. 1.2.72 is given by sending a differential form modulated by a morphism $A : X \to \mathbf{\Omega}^{n+k}$ to the differential form modulated by the composite*

$$\int_\Sigma [\Sigma, A] \; : \; [\Sigma, X] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma, A]} [\Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{n+k}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} \mathbf{\Omega}^n \; .$$

Proof. We need to check that for all plots $\gamma : U \to [\Sigma, X]$ the pullbacks of the two forms to $U$ coincide. For the traditional formula we have, by def. 1.2.71,

$$\gamma^* \int_\Sigma \mathrm{ev}^* A = \int_\Sigma (\gamma, \mathrm{id}_\Sigma)^* \mathrm{ev}^* A \; \in \Omega^n(U)$$

Here we recognize in the integrand the pullback along the $((-) \times \Sigma \dashv [\Sigma, -])$-adjunct $\tilde{\gamma} : U \times \Sigma \to \Sigma$ of $\gamma$, which is given by applying the left adjoint $(-) \times \Sigma$ and then postcomposing with the adjunction counit ev:

$$U \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{(\gamma, \mathrm{id}_\Sigma)} [\Sigma, X] \times \Sigma \xrightarrow{\mathrm{ev}} X$$

.

Hence the integral is now

$$\cdots = \int_\Sigma \tilde{\gamma}^* A \, .$$

This is the operation of the top horizontal composite in the following naturality square for adjuncts, and so the claim follows by its commutativity:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \tilde{\gamma} \in & \mathbf{H}(U \times \Sigma, X) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(U \times \Sigma, A)} & \mathbf{H}(U \times \Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{n+k}) & \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma(U)} & \Omega^n(U) \\ & \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq \\ \gamma \in & \mathbf{H}(U, [\Sigma, X]) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(U, [\Sigma, A])} & \mathbf{H}(U, [\Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{n+k}]) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(U, \int_\Sigma)} & \mathbf{H}(U, \mathbf{\Omega}^n) \end{array} .$$

□

An application of transgression of differential forms as above is the following operation in def. 1.2.74, which corresponds to a special case of what in physics is called "double dimensional reduction", since it reduces both the dimension of a manifold as well as the degree of the differential forms on it. We discuss double dimensional reduction is more detail and in fully generality in 5.1.15, the following is a concrete special case:

**Definition 1.2.74.** Given a closed oriented smooth manifold $\Sigma$ of dimension $k$, and given any smooth space $X$, then we say that *double dimensional reduction* of smooth differential forms is the map

$$\Omega^{n+k}(X \times \Sigma) \longrightarrow \Omega^n(X)$$

given by sending a differential form

$$A : X \times \Sigma \longrightarrow \Omega^{n+k}$$

to the pullback of its transgression to the mapping space $[\Sigma, X \times \Sigma]$, via prop. 1.2.73, along the canonical smooth function $X \to [\Sigma, X \times \Sigma]$ (the unit of the $(-) \times \Sigma \dashv [\Sigma, -]$)-adjunction.

$$X \longrightarrow [\Sigma, X \times \Sigma] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma, A]} [\Sigma, \mathbf{\Omega}^{n+k}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} \mathbf{\Omega}^n$$

### 1.2.5 Smooth homotopy types

Here we give an introduction to and a survey of the general theory of cohesive differential geometry that is developed in detail in 4 below.

The framework of all our constructions is *topos theory* [Joh02] or rather, more generally, $\infty$-*topos theory* [L-Topos]. In 1.2.5.1 and 1.2.5.2 below we recall and survey basic notions with an eye towards our central example of an $\infty$-topos: that of smooth $\infty$-groupoids. In these sections the reader is assumed to be familiar with basic notions of category theory (such as adjoint functors) and basic notions of homotopy theory (such as weak homotopy equivalences). A brief introduction to relevant basic concepts (such as Kan complexes and homotopy pullbacks) is given in section 1.2.5, which can be read independently of the discussion here.

Then in 1.2.5.3 and 1.2.5.4 we describe, similarly in a leisurely manner, the intrinsic notions of cohomology and geometric homotopy in an $\infty$-topos. Several aspects of the discussion are fairly well-known, we put them in the general perspective of (cohesive) $\infty$-topos theory and then go beyond.

Finally in 1.2.7.2 we indicate how the combination of the intrinsic cohomology and geometric homotopy in a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos yields an intrinsic notion of differential cohomology in an $\infty$-topos.

- 1.2.5.1 – Toposes;
- 1.2.5.2 – $\infty$-Toposes;
- 1.2.5.3 – Cohomology;
- 1.2.5.4 – Homotopy;
- 1.2.7.2 – Differential cohomology.

Each of these topics surveyed here are discussed in technical detail below in 4.

**1.2.5.1 Toposes** There are several different perspectives on the notion of *topos*. One is that a topos is a category that looks like a category of spaces that sit by local homeomorphisms over a given base space: all spaces that are locally modeled on a given base space.

The archetypical class of examples are sheaf toposes over a topological space $X$ denoted $\mathrm{Sh}(X)$. These are equivalently categories of étale spaces over $X$: topological spaces $Y$ that are equipped with a local homeomorphism $Y \to X$. When $X = *$ is the point, this is just the category Set of all sets: spaces that are modeled on the point. This is the archetypical topos itself.

What makes the notion of toposes powerful is the following fact: even though the general topos contains objects that are considerably different from and possibly considerably richer than plain sets and even richer than étale spaces over a topological space, the general abstract category theoretic properties of every topos are essentially the same as those of Set. For instance in every topos all small limits and colimits exist and it is cartesian closed (even locally). This means that a large number of constructions in Set have immediate analogs internal to every topos, and the analogs of the statements about these constructions that are true in Set are true in every topos.

This may be thought of as saying that toposes are *very nice categories of spaces* in that whatever construction on spaces one thinks of – for instance formation of quotients or of intersections or of mapping spaces – the resulting space with the expected general abstract properties will exist in the topos. In this sense toposes are *convenient categories for geometry* – as in: *convenient category of topological spaces*, but even more convenient than that.

On the other hand, we can de-emphasize the role of the objects of the topos and instead treat the topos itself as a generalized space (and in particular, a categorified space). We then consider the sheaf topos $\mathrm{Sh}(X)$ as a representative of $X$ itself, while toposes not of this form are "honestly generalized" spaces. This point of view is supported by the fact that the assignment $X \mapsto \mathrm{Sh}(X)$ is a full embedding of (sufficiently nice) topological spaces into toposes, and that many topological properties of a space $X$ can be detected at the level of $\mathrm{Sh}(X)$.

Here we are mainly concerned with toposes that are far from being akin to sheaves over a topological space, and instead behave like abstract *fat points with geometric structure*. This implies that the objects of these toposes are in turn generalized spaces modeled locally on this geometric structure. Such toposes are called *gros toposes* or *big toposes*. There is a formalization of the properties of a topos that make it behave like a big topos of generalized spaces inside of which there is geometry: this is the notion of *cohesive toposes*.

**1.2.5.1.1 Sheaves** More concretely, the idea of sheaf toposes formalizes the idea that any notion of space is typically modeled on a given collection of simple test spaces. For instance differential geometry is the geometry that is modeled Cartesian spaces $\mathbb{R}^n$, or rather on the category $C = \mathrm{CartSp}$ of Cartesian spaces and smooth functions between them.

A presheaf on such $C$ is a functor $X : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Set}$ from the opposite category of $C$ to the category of sets. We think of this as a rule that assigns to each test space $U \in C$ the set $X(U) =: \mathrm{Maps}(U, X)$ of structure-preserving maps from the test space $U$ into the would-be space $X$ - the *probes* of $X$ by the test space $U$. This assignment defines the generalized space $X$ modeled on $C$. Every category of presheaves over a small category is an example of a topos. But these presheaf toposes, while encoding the *geometry* of generalized spaces by means of probes by test spaces in $C$ fail to correctly encode the *topology* of these spaces. This is captured by restricting to *sheaves* among all presheaves.

Each test space $V \in C$ itself specifies presheaf, by forming the hom-sets $\mathrm{Maps}(U, V) := \mathrm{Hom}_C(U, V)$ in $C$. This is called the *Yoneda embedding* of test spaces into the collection of all generalized spaces modeled on them. Presheaves of this form are the *representable presheaves*. A bit more general than these are the *locally representable presheaves*: for instance on $C = \mathrm{CartSp}$ this are the smooth manifolds $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$, whose presheaf-rule is $\mathrm{Maps}(U, X) := \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{SmoothMfd}}(U, X)$. By definition, a manifold is locally isomorphic to a Cartesian space, hence is locally representable as a presheaf on CartSp.

These examples of presheaves on $C$ are special in that they are in fact *sheaves*: the value of $X$ on a test space $U$ is entirely determined by the restrictions to each $U_i$ in a *cover* $\{U_i \to U\}_{i \in I}$ of the test space $U$ by other test spaces $U_i$. We think of the subcategory of sheaves $\mathrm{Sh}(C) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PSh}(C)$ as consisting of those special presheaves that are those rules of probe-assignments which respect a certain notion of ways in which test spaces $U_i \in C$ may glue into $U \in C$.

One may axiomatize this by declaring that the collections of all covers under consideration forms what is called a *Grothendieck topology* on $C$ that makes $C$ a *site*. But of more intrinsic relevance is the equivalent fact that categories of sheaves are precisely the subtoposes of presheaf toposes

$$\mathrm{Sh}(C) \underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{L}{\leftarrow}} \mathrm{PSh}(C) = [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}] \ ,$$

meaning that the embedding $\mathrm{Sh}(X) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PSh}(X)$ has a left adjoint functor $L$ that preserves finite limits. This may be taken to be the *definition* of Grothendieck toposes. The left adjoint is called the *sheafification functor*. It is determined by and determines a Grothendieck topology on $C$.

For the choice $C = \mathrm{CartSp}$ such is naturally given by the good open cover coverage, which says that a bunch of maps $\{U_i \to U\}$ in $C$ exhibit the test object $U$ as being glued together from the test objects $\{U_i\}$ if these form a good open cover of $U$. With this notion of coverage every smooth manifold is a sheaf on CartSp.

But there are important generalized spaces modeled on CartSp that are not smooth manifolds: topological spaces for which one can consistently define which maps from Cartesian spaces into them count as smooth in a way that makes this assignment a sheaf on CartSp, but which are not necessarily locally isomorphic to a Cartesian space: these are called *diffeological spaces*. A central example of a space that is naturally a diffeological space but not a finite dimensional manifold is a mapping space $[\Sigma, X]$ of smooth functions between smooth manifolds $\Sigma$ and $X$: since the idea is that for $U$ any Cartesian space the smooth $U$-parameterized families of points in $[\Sigma, X]$ are smooth $U$-parameterized families of smooth maps $\Sigma \to X$, we can take the plot-assigning rule to be

$$[\Sigma, X] : U \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{SmoothMfd}}(\Sigma \times U, X) \, .$$

It is useful to relate all these phenomena in the topos $\mathrm{Sh}(C)$ to their image in the archetypical topos Set. This is simply the category of sets, which however we should think of here as the category $\mathrm{Set} \simeq \mathrm{Sh}(*)$ of sheaves on the category $*$ which contains only a single object and no nontrivial morphism: objects in here are generalized spaces *modeled on the point*. All we know about them is how to map the point into them, and as such they are just the sets of all possible such maps from the point.

Every category of sheaves $\mathrm{Sh}(C)$ comes canonically with an essentially unique topos morphism to the topos of sets, given by a pair of adjoint functors

$$\mathrm{Sh}(C) \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{\mathrm{Disc}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{Sh}(*) \simeq \mathrm{Set} \ .$$

Here $\Gamma$ is called the *global sections functor*. If $C$ has a terminal object $*$, then it is given by evaluation on that object: the functor $\Gamma$ sends a plot-assigning rule $X : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Set}$ to the set of plots by the point $\Gamma(X) = X(*)$. For instance in $C = \mathrm{CartSp}$ the terminal object exists and is the ordinary point $* = \mathbb{R}^0$. If $X \in \mathrm{Sh}(C)$ is a smooth manifold or diffeological space as above, then $\Gamma(X) \in \mathrm{Set}$ is simply its underlying set of points. So the functor $\Gamma$ can be thought of as forgetting the *cohesive structure* that is given by the fact that our generalized spaces are modeled on $C$. It remembers only the underlying point-set.

Conversely, its left adjoint functor Disc takes a set $S$ to the sheafification $\mathrm{Disc}(S) = L\mathrm{Const}(S)$ of the constant presheaf $\mathrm{Const} : U \mapsto S$, which asserts that the set of its plots by any test space is always the same set $S$. This is the plot-rule for the *discrete space* modeled on $C$ given by the set $S$: a plot has to be a constant map of the test space $U$ to one of the elements $s \in S$. For the case $C = \mathrm{CartSp}$ this interpretation is literally true in the familiar sense: the generalized smooth space $\mathrm{Disc}(S)$ is the discrete smooth manifold or discrete diffeological space with point set S.

**1.2.5.1.2 Concrete and non-concrete sheaves** The examples for generalized spaces $X$ modeled on $C$ that we considered so far all had the property that the collection of plots $U \to X$ into them was a subset of the set of maps of sets from $U$ to their underlying set $\Gamma(X)$ of points. These are called *concrete sheaves*. Not every sheaf is concrete. The concrete sheaves form a subcategory inside the full topos which is itself almost, but not quite a topos: it is the *quasitopos* of concrete objects.

$$\mathrm{Conc}(C) \underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{\leftarrow}{}} \mathrm{Sh}(C) \ .$$

Non-concrete sheaves over $C$ may be exotic as compared to smooth manifolds, but they are still usefully regarded as generalized spaces modeled on $C$. For instance for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there is the sheaf $\kappa(n, \mathbb{R})$ given by saying that plots by $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ are identified with closed differential $n$-forms on $U$:

$$\kappa(n, \mathbb{R}) : U \mapsto \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(U) \, .$$

This sheaf describes a very non-classical space, which for $n \geq 1$ has only a single point, $\Gamma(\kappa(n, \mathbb{R})) = *$ , only a single curve, a single surface, etc., up to a single $(n-1)$-dimensional probe, but then it has a large number of $n$-dimensional probes. Despite the fact that this sheaf is very far in nature from the test spaces that it is modeled on, it plays a crucial and very natural role: it is in a sense a model for an Eilenberg-MacLane space $K(n, \mathbb{R})$. We shall see in 6.4.14 that these sheaves are part of an incarnation of the $\infty$-Lie-algebra $b^n\mathbb{R}$ and the sense in which it models an Eilenberg-MacLane space is that of Sullivan models in rational homotopy theory. In any case, we want to allow ourselves to regard non-concrete objects such as $\kappa(n, \mathbb{R})$ on the same footing as diffeological spaces and smooth manifolds.

**1.2.5.2 $\infty$-Toposes** While therefore a general object in the sheaf topos $\mathrm{Sh}(C)$ may exhibit a considerable generalization of the objects $U \in C$ that it is modeled on, for many natural applications this is still not quite general enough: if for instance $X$ is a *smooth orbifold* (see for instance [MoPr97]), then there is not just a set, but a *groupoid* of ways of probing it by a Cartesian test space $U$: if a probe $\gamma : U \to X$ is connected by an orbifold transformation to another probe $\gamma' : U \to X$, then this constitutes a morphism in the groupoid $X(U)$ of probes of $X$ by $U$.

Even more generally, there may be a genuine $\infty$-*groupoid* of probes of the generalized space $X$ by the test space $U$: a set of probes with morphisms between different probes, 2-morphisms between these 1-morphisms, and so on.

Such structures are described in $\infty$-*category theory*: where a category has a set of morphisms between any two objects, an $\infty$-category has an $\infty$-groupoid of morphisms, whose compositions are defined up to higher coherent homotopy. The theory of $\infty$-categories is effectively the combination of category theory and homotopy theory. The main fact about it, emphasized originally by André Joyal and then further developed in [L-Topos], is that it behaves formally entirely analogously to category theory: there are notions of $\infty$-functors, $\infty$-limits, adjoint $\infty$-functors etc., that satisfy all the familiar relations from category theory.

**1.2.5.2.1 $\infty$-Groupoids** We first look at bare $\infty$-groupoids and then discuss how to equip these with smooth structure.

An $\infty$-groupoid is first of all supposed to be a structure that has $k$-*morphisms* for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, which for $k \geq 1$ go between $(k-1)$-morphisms. A useful tool for organizing such collections of morphisms is the notion of a *simplicial set*. This is a functor with valiues in sets on the opposite category of the simplex category $\Delta$ (hence a presheaf on $\Delta$), whose objects are the abstract cellular $k$-simplices, denoted $[k]$ or $\Delta[k]$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, and whose morphisms $\Delta[k_1] \to \Delta[k_2]$ are all ways of mapping these into each other. So we think of such a simplicial set given by a functor

$$K : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Set}$$

as specifying

- a set $[0] \mapsto K_0$ of *objects*;
- a set $[1] \mapsto K_1$ of *morphisms*;
- a set $[2] \mapsto K_2$ of *2-morphisms*;

- a set $[3] \mapsto K_3$ of *3-morphisms*;

and generally

- a set $[k] \mapsto K_k$ of *k-morphisms*.

as well as specifying

- functions $([n] \hookrightarrow [n+1]) \mapsto (K_{n+1} \to K_n)$ that send $n+1$-morphisms to their boundary $n$-morphisms;
- functions $([n+1] \to [n]) \mapsto (K_n \to K_{n+1})$ that send $n$-morphisms to identity $(n+1)$-morphisms on them.

The fact that $K$ is supposed to be a functor enforces that these assignments of sets and functions satisfy conditions that make consistent our interpretation of them as sets of $k$-morphisms and source and target maps between these. These are called the *simplicial identities*. But apart from this source-target matching, a generic simplicial set does not yet encode a notion of *composition* of these morphisms.

For instance for $\Lambda^1[2]$ the simplicial set consisting of two attached 1-cells

$$\Lambda^1[2] = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & 1 & \\ \nearrow & & \searrow \\ 0 & & 2 \end{array} \right\}$$

and for $(f,g) : \Lambda^1[2] \to K$ an image of this situation in $K$, hence a pair $x_0 \stackrel{f}{\to} x_1 \stackrel{g}{\to} x_2$ of two *composable* 1-morphisms in $K$, we want to demand that there exists a third 1-morphisms in $K$ that may be thought of as the *composition* $x_0 \stackrel{h}{\to} x_2$ of $f$ and $g$. But since we are working in higher category theory, we want to identify this composite only up to a 2-morphism equivalence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & x_1 & \\ {}^{f}\nearrow & \Downarrow\simeq & \searrow^{g} \\ x_0 & \xrightarrow[h]{} & x_2 \end{array} .$$

From the picture it is clear that this is equivalent to demanding that for $\Lambda^1[2] \hookrightarrow \Delta[2]$ the obvious inclusion of the two abstract composable 1-morphisms into the 2-simplex we have a diagram of morphisms of simplicial sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda^1[2] & \xrightarrow{(f,g)} & K \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{\exists h} & \\ \Delta[2] & & \end{array} .$$

A simplicial set where for all such $(f,g)$ a corresponding such $h$ exists may be thought of as a collection of higher morphisms that is equipped with a notion of composition of adjacent 1-morphisms.

For the purpose of describing groupoidal composition, we now want that this composition operation has all inverses. For that purpose, notice that for

$$\Lambda^2[2] = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & 1 & \\ & & \searrow^{g} \\ 0 & \xrightarrow[h]{} & 2 \end{array} \right\}$$

the simplicial set consisting of two 1-morphisms that touch at their ends, hence for

$$(g,h) : \Lambda^2[2] \to K$$

two such 1-morphisms in $K$, then if $g$ had an inverse $g^{-1}$ we could use the above composition operation to compose that with $h$ and thereby find a morphism $f$ connecting the sources of $h$ and $g$. This being the case is evidently equivalent to the existence of diagrams of morphisms of simplicial sets of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda^2[2] & \xrightarrow{(g,h)} & K \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{\exists f} & \\ \Delta[2] & & \end{array} \; .$$

Demanding that all such diagrams exist is therefore demanding that we have on 1-morphisms a composition operation with inverses in $K$.

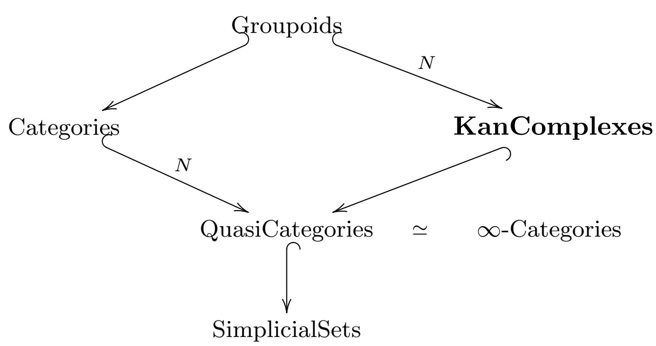
In order for this to qualify as an $\infty$-groupoid, this composition operation needs to satisfy an associativity law up to 2-morphisms, which means that we can find the relevant tetrahedra in $K$. These in turn need to be connected by *pentagonators* and ever so on. It is a nontrivial but true and powerful fact, that all these coherence conditions are captured by generalizing the above conditions to all dimensions in the evident way:

Let $\Lambda^i[n] \hookrightarrow \Delta[n]$ be the simplicial set – called the $i$th $n$-horn – that consists of all cells of the $n$-simplex $\Delta[n]$ except the interior $n$-morphism and the $i$th $(n-1)$-morphism.

Then a simplicial set is called a *Kan complex*, if for all images $f : \Lambda^i[n] \to K$ of such horns in $K$, the missing two cells can be found in $K$ – in that we can always find a *horn filler* $\sigma$ in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda^i[n] & \xrightarrow{f} & K \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{\exists \sigma} & \\ \Delta[n] & & \end{array} \; .$$

The basic example is the *nerve* $N(C) \in \mathrm{sSet}$ of an ordinary groupoid $C$, which is the simplicial set with $N(C)_k$ being the set of sequences of $k$ composable morphisms in $C$. The nerve operation is a full and faithful functor from 1-groupoids into Kan complexes and hence may be thought of as embedding 1-groupoids in the context of general $\infty$-groupoids.




But we need a bit more than just bare $\infty$-groupoids. In generalization of Lie groupoids, hence of smooth 1-groupoids, we need *smooth $\infty$-groupoids*. A useful way to encode that an $\infty$-groupoid has extra structure modeled on geometric test objects that themselves form a category $C$ is to remember the rule which for each test space $U$ in $C$ produces the $\infty$-groupoid (i.e. the Kan complex) of $U$-parameterized families of objects, morphisms and higher morphisms in $K$. For instance for a smooth $\infty$-groupoid we could test with each Cartesian space $U = \mathbb{R}^n$ and find the $\infty$-groupoids $K(U)$ of smooth $n$-parameter families of $k$-morphisms in $K$.

This data of $U$-families arranges itself into a presheaf with values in Kan complexes

$$K : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{KanCplx} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sSet}\,,$$

hence with values in simplicial sets. This is equivalently a simplicial presheaf of sets. The functor category $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ on the opposite category of the category of test objects $C$ serves as a model for the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-groupoids with $C$-structure.

While there are no higher morphisms in this functor 1-category that could for instance witness that two $\infty$-groupoids are not isomorphic, but still equivalent, it turns out that all one needs in order to reconstruct *all* these higher morphisms (up to equivalence!) is just the information of which morphisms of simplicial presheaves would become invertible if we were keeping track of higher morphisms. These would-be invertible morphisms are called *weak equivalences* and denoted $K_1 \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} K_2$.

For common choices of $C$ there is a well-understood way to define the weak equivalences $W \subset \mathrm{Mor}[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, and equipped with this information the category of simplicial presheaves becomes a *category with weak equivalences.* There is a well-developed but somewhat intricate theory of how exactly this 1-categorical data models the full higher category of structured groupoids that we are after, but for our purposes here we essentially only need to work inside the category of *fibrant* objects of a model structure on presheaves, which in practice amounts to the fact that we use the following two basic constructions:

1. **$\infty$-anafunctor** A morphism $X \to Y$ between $\infty$-groupoids with $C$-structure is not just a morphism $X \to Y$ in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, but is a span of such ordinary morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{X} & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array} ,$$

   where the left leg is a weak equivalence. This is sometimes called an $\infty$-*anafunctor* from $X$ to $Y$.

2. **homotopy pullback** – For $A \to B \stackrel{p}{\leftarrow} C$ a diagram, the $\infty$-pullback of it is the ordinary pullback in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ of a replacement diagram $A \to B \stackrel{\hat{p}}{\leftarrow} \hat{C}$, where $\hat{p}$ is a *good replacement* of $p$ in the sense of the following factorization lemma.

**Proposition 1.2.75** (factorization lemma)**.** *For $p : C \to B$ a morphism in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, a* good replacement *$\hat{p} : \hat{C} \to B$ is given by the composite vertical morphism in the ordinary pullback diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{C} & \longrightarrow & C \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle p} \\ B^{\Delta[1]} & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \\ B & & \end{array} ,$$

*where $B^{\Delta[1]}$ is the path object of $B$: the presheaf that is over each $U \in C$ the simplicial path space $B(U)^{\Delta[1]}$.*

**1.2.5.2.2 $\infty$-Sheaves / $\infty$-Stacks** In particular, there is a notion of $\infty$-presheaves on a category (or $\infty$-category) $C$: $\infty$-functors

$$X : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

to the $\infty$-category $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ of $\infty$-groupoids – there is an $\infty$-Yoneda embedding, and so on. Accordingly, $\infty$-topos theory proceeds in its basic notions along the same lines as we sketched above for topos theory: An $\infty$-topos of $\infty$-sheaves is defined to be a reflective sub-$\infty$-category

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{(\infty,1)}(C) \underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{L}{\leftarrow}} \mathrm{PSh}_{(\infty,1)}(C)$$

of an $\infty$-category of $\infty$-presheaves, such that the localization functor $L$ preserves finite $\infty$-limits. As before, such is essentially determined by and determines a Grothendieck topology or coverage on $C$. Since a 2-sheaf with values in groupoids is usually called a *stack*, an $\infty$-sheaf is often also called an $\infty$-*stack*.

In the spirit of the above discussion, the objects of the $\infty$-topos of $\infty$-sheaves on $C = \mathrm{CartSp}$ we shall think of as *smooth* $\infty$-*groupoids*. This is our main running example. We shall write $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{CartSp})$ for the $\infty$-topos of smooth $\infty$-groupoids.

Let

- $C := \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$ be the category of all smooth manifolds (or some other site, here assumed to have enough points);
- $\mathrm{gSh}(C)$ be the category of groupoid-valued sheaves over $C$, for instance $X = \{ X \rightrightarrows X \}, \mathbf{B}G = \{ G \rightrightarrows * \} \in \mathrm{gSh}(C)$;
- $\mathrm{Ho}_{\mathrm{gSh}(C)}$ the *homotopy category* obtained by universally turning the *stalkwise groupoid-equivalences* into isomorphisms.

**Fact:** $H^1(X, G) \simeq \mathrm{Ho}_{\mathrm{gSh}(C)}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$. Let

- $\mathrm{sSet}(C)_{\mathrm{lfib}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}(C, \mathrm{sSet})$ be the stalkwise Kan simplicial sheaves;
- $L_W \mathrm{sSh}(C)_{\mathrm{lfib}}$ the *simplicial localization* obtained by universally turning *stalkwise homotopy equivalences* into *homotopy equivalences*.

**Definition/Theorem.** This is the $\infty$-category theory analog of the sheaf topos over $C$, the $\infty$-*stack* $\infty$-*topos*: $\mathbf{H} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C) \simeq L_W \mathrm{sSh}(C)_{\mathrm{lfib}}$.

**Example.** $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{SmoothMfd})$ is the $\infty$-topos of *smooth* $\infty$-*groupoids*.

**Proposition.** Every object in $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is presented by a simplicial manifold, but not necessarily by a *locally Kan* simplicial manifold (see below).

But a crucial point of developing our theory in the language of $\infty$-toposes is that all constructions work in great generality. By simply passing to another site $C$, all constructions apply to the theory of generalized spaces modeled on the test objects in $C$. Indeed, to really capture all aspects of $\infty$-Lie theory, we should and will adjoin to our running example $C = \mathrm{CartSp}$ that of the slightly larger site $C = \mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}$ of infinitesimally thickened Cartesian spaces. Ordinary sheaves on this site are the generalized spaces considered in *synthetic differential geometry*: these are smooth spaces such as smooth loci that may have infinitesimal extension. For instance the first order jet $D \subset \mathbb{R}$ of the origin in the real line exists as an infinitesimal space in $\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp})$. Accordingly, $\infty$-groupoids modeled on FormalSmoothCartSp are smooth $\infty$-groupoids that may have $k$-morphisms of infinitesimal extension. We will see that a smooth $\infty$-groupoid all whose morphisms has infinitesimal extension is a Lie algebra or Lie algebroid or generally an $\infty$-Lie algebroid.

While $\infty$-category theory provides a good abstract definition and theory of $\infty$-groupoids modeled on test objects in a category $C$ in terms of the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-sheaves on $C$, for concrete manipulations it is often useful to have a presentation of the $\infty$-categories in question in terms of generators and relations in ordinary category theory. Such a generators-and-relations-presentation is provided by the notion of a *model category* structure. Specifically, the $\infty$-toposes of $\infty$-presheaves that we are concerned with are presented in this way by a model structure on simplicial presheaves, i.e. on the functor category $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ from $C$ to the category sSet of simplicial sets. In terms of this model, the corresponding $\infty$-category of $\infty$-sheaves is given by another model structure on $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, called the *left Bousfield localization* at the set of covers in $C$.

These models for $\infty$-stack $\infty$-toposes have been proposed, known and studied since the 1970s and are therefore quite well understood. The full description and proof of their abstract role in $\infty$-category theory was established in [L-Topos].

As before for toposes, there is an archetypical $\infty$-topos, which is $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} = \mathrm{Sh}_{(\infty,1)}(*)$ itself: the collection of generalized $\infty$-groupoids that are modeled on the point. All we know about these generalized spaces is how to map a point into them and what the homotopies and higher homotopies of such maps are, but no further extra structure. So these are bare $\infty$-groupoids without extra structure. Also as before, every $\infty$-topos comes with an essentially unique geometric morphism to this archetypical $\infty$-topos given by a pair of adjoint $\infty$-functors

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{(\infty,1)}(C)\mathrm{Disc}\Gamma \qquad \infty\mathrm{Grpd}\ .$$

Again, if $C$ happens to have a terminal object $*$, then $\Gamma$ is the operation that evaluates an $\infty$-sheaf on the point: it produces the bare $\infty$-groupoid underlying an $\infty$-groupoid modeled on $C$. For instance for $C = \mathrm{CartSp}$ a smooth $\infty$-groupoid $X \in \mathrm{Sh}_{(\infty,1)}(C)$ is sent by $\Gamma$ to to the underlying $\infty$-groupoid that forgets the smooth structure on $X$.

Moreover, still in direct analogy to the 1-categorical case above, the left adjoint Disc is the $\infty$-functor that sends a bare $\infty$-groupoid $S$ to the $\infty$-stackification $\mathrm{Disc}S = L\mathrm{Const}S$ of the constant $\infty$-presheaf on $S$. This models the discretely structured $\infty$-groupoid on $S$. For instance for $C = \mathrm{CartSp}$ we have that $\mathrm{Disc}S$ is a smooth $\infty$-groupoid with discrete smooth structure: all smooth families of points in it are actually constant.

**1.2.5.2.3 Structured $\infty$-Groups** It is clear that we may speak of *group objects* in any topos, (or generally in any category with finite products): objects $G$ equipped with a multiplication $G \times G \to G$ and a neutral element $* \to G$ such that the multiplication is unital, associative and has inverses for each element. In a sheaf topos, such a $G$ is equivalently a *sheaf of groups*. For instance every Lie group canonically becomes a group object in Sh(CartSp).

As we pass to an $\infty$-topos the situation is essentially the same, only that the associativity condition is replaced by *associativity up to coherent homotopy* (also called: up to *strong homotopy*), and similarly for the unitalness and the existence of inverses. One way to formalize this is to say that a group object in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is an $A_\infty$-algebra object $G$ such that its 0-truncation $\tau_0 G$ is a group object in the underlying 1-topos. (This is discussed in [L-Alg].)

For instance in the $\infty$-topos over CartSp a Lie group still naturally is a group object, but also a *Lie 2-group* or *differentiable group stack* is. Moreover, every sheaf of *simplicial groups* presents a group object in the $\infty$-topos, and we will see that all group objects here have a presentation by sheaves of simplicial groups.

A group object in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}$ we will for emphasis call an *$\infty$-group*. In this vein a group object in an $\infty$-topos over a non-trivial site is a *structured $\infty$-group* (for instance a topological $\infty$-group or a smooth $\infty$-group).

A classical source of $\infty$-groups are *loop spaces*, where the group multiplication is given by concatenation of based loops in a given space, the homotopy-coherent associativity is given by reparameterizations of concatenations of loops, and inverses are given by reversing the parameterization of a loop. A classical result of Milnor says, in this language, that every $\infty$-group arises as a loop space this way. This statement generalizes from discrete $\infty$-groups (group objects in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}$) to structured $\infty$-groups.
**Theorem.** (Milnor–Lurie) There is an equivalence

$$\{\text{ groups in } \mathbf{H}\ \} \underset{\text{delooping } \mathbf{B}}{\overset{\text{looping } \Omega}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{\simeq}}}} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{pointed connected} \\ \text{objects in } \mathbf{H} \end{array} \right\}$$

This equivalence is a most convenient tool. In the following we will almost exclusively handle $\infty$-groups $G$ in terms of their pointed connected delooping objects $\mathbf{B}G$. We discuss this in more detail below in 5.1.9. This is all the more useful as the objects $\mathbf{B}G$ happen to be the *moduli $\infty$-stacks* of *$G$-principal $\infty$-bundles*. We come to this in 1.2.6.5.

**1.2.5.3 Cohomology** Where the archetypical topos is the category Set, the archetypical $\infty$-topos is the $\infty$-category $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ of $\infty$-groupoids. This, in turn, is equivalent, by a classical result (see 6.2), to Top, the category of topological spaces of CW-type, regarded as an $\infty$-category by taking the 2-morphisms to be homotopies between continuous maps, 3-morphisms to be homotopies of homotopy, and so forth:

$$\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}\,.$$

In Top it is familiar – from the notion of *classifying spaces* and from the *Brown representability theorem* (the reader in need of a review of such matter might try [May99]) – that the cohomology of a topological space $X$ may be identified as the set of homotopy classes of continuous maps from $X$ to some coefficient space $A$

$$H(X,A) := \pi_0 \mathrm{Top}(X,A)\,.$$

For instance for $A = K(n,\mathbb{Z}) \simeq B^n\mathbb{Z}$ the topological space called the $n$th *Eilenberg-MacLane space* of the additive group of integers, we have that

$$H(X,A) := \pi_0 \mathrm{Top}(X, B^n\mathbb{Z}) \simeq H^n(X,\mathbb{Z})$$

is the ordinary integral (singular) cohomology of $X$. Also *nonabelian cohomology* is famously exhibited this way: for $G$ a (possibly nonabelian) topological group and $A = BG$ its classifying space (we discuss this construction and its generalization in detail in 6.3.5.1) we have that

$$H(X,A) := \pi_0 \mathrm{Top}(X, BG) \simeq H^1(X,G)$$

is the degree-1 nonabelian cohomology of $X$ with coeffients in $G$, which classifies *$G$-principal bundles* over $X$ (more on that in a moment).

Since this only involves forming $\infty$-categorical hom-spaces and since this is an entirely categorical operation, it makes sense to *define* for $X$, $A$ any two objects in an arbitrary $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ the intrinsic cohomology of $X$ with coefficients in $A$ to be

$$H(X,A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X,A)\,,$$

where $\mathbf{H}(X,A)$ denotes the $\infty$-groupoid of morphism from $X$ to $A$ in $\mathbf{H}$. This general identification of cohomology with hom-spaces in $\infty$-toposes is central to our developments here. We indicate now two classes of justification for this definition.

1. Essentially every notion of cohomology already considered in the literature is an example of this definition. Moreover, those that are not are often improved on by fixing them to become an example.

2. The use of a good notion of $G$-cohomology on $X$ should be that it *classifies* "$G$-structures over $X$" and exhibits the *obstruction theory* for extensions or lifts of such structures. We find that it is precisely the context of an ambient $\infty$-topos (precisely: the $\infty$-Giraud axioms that characterize an $\infty$-topos) that makes such a classification and obstruction theory work.

We discuss now a list of examples of $\infty$-toposes $\mathbf{H}$ together with notions of cohomology whose cocycles are given by morphisms $c \in \mathbf{H}(X,A)$ between a domain object $X$ and coefficient object $A$ in this $\infty$-topos. Some of these examples are evident and classical, modulo our emphasis on the $\infty$-topos theoretic perspective, others are original. Even those cases that are classical receive new information from the $\infty$-topos theoretic perspective. Details are below in the relevant parts of section 6..

In view of the unification that we discuss, some of the traditional names for notions of cohomology are a bit suboptimal. For instance the term *generalized cohomology* for theories satisfying the Eilenberg-Steenrod axioms does not well reflect that it is a generalization of ordinary cohomology of topological spaces (only) which is, in a quite precise sense, *orthogonal* to the generalizations given by passage to sheaf cohomology or to nonabelian cohomology, all of which are subsumed by cohomology in an $\infty$-topos. In order to usefully distinguish the crucial aspects here we will use the following terminology

- We speak of *structured cohomology* to indicate that a given notion is realized in an $\infty$-topos other than the archetypical $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}$ (which representes "discrete strcuture" in the precise sense discussed in 6.2). Hence traditional sheaf cohomology is "structured" in this sense, while ordinary cohomology and Eilenberg-Steenrod cohomology is "unstructured".

- We speak of *nonabelian cohomology* when coefficient objects are not *required* to be abelian (groups) or stable (spectra), but may generally be deloopings $A := \mathbf{B}G$ of arbitrary (structured) $\infty$-groups $G$.

  More properly this might be called *not-necessarily abelian cohomology*, but following common practice (as in "noncommutative geometry") we stick with the slightly imprecise but shorter term. One point that we will dwell on (see the discussion of examples in 7.1) is that the traditional notion of *twisted cohomology* (already twisted abelian cohomology) is naturally a special case of nonabelian cohomology.

Notice that the "generalized" in "generalized cohomology" of Eilenberg-Steenrod type refers to allowing coefficient objects which are abelian $\infty$-groups, def. 5.1.157, more general than Eilenberg-MacLane objects. Hence this is in particular subsumed in *nonabelian cohomology*.

In this terminology, the notion of cohomology in $\infty$-toposes that we are concerned with here is *structured nonabelian/twisted generalized cohomology*.

Finally, not only is it natural to allow the coefficient objects $A$ to be general objects in a general $\infty$-topos, but also there is no reason to restrict the nature of the domain objects $X$. For instance traditional sheaf cohomology always takes $X$, in our language, to be the *terminal object* $X = *$ of the ambient $\infty$-topos. This is also called the *(-2)-truncated object* (see 5.1.3 below) of the $\infty$-topos, being the unique member of the lowest class in a hierarchy of *$n$-truncated objects* for $(-2) \leq n \leq \infty$. As we increase $n$ here, we find that the domain object is generalized to

- $n = -1$: subspaces of $X$;
- $n = 0$: étale spaces over $X$;
- $n = 1$: orbifolds / orbispaces / groupoids over $X$;
- $n \geq 2$: higher orbifolds / orbispaces / groupoids

One finds then that cohomology of an $n$-truncated object for $n \geq 1$ reproduces the traditional notion of *equivariant cohomology*. In particular this subsumes *group cohomology*: ordinary group cohomology in the unstructured case (in $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$) and generally structured group cohomology such as *Lie group cohomology*.

Therefore, strictly speaking, we are here concerned with *equivariant structured nonabelian/twisted generalized cohomology*. All this is neatly encapsulated by just the fundamental notion of hom-spaces in $\infty$-toposes.

**Cochain cohomology**

The origin and maybe the most elementary notion of cohomology is that appearing in *homological algebra*: given a *cochain complex* of abelian groups

$$V^\bullet = \left[ \cdots \xleftarrow{d^2} V^2 \xleftarrow{d^1} V^1 \xleftarrow{d^0} V^0 \right],$$

its cohomology group in degree $n$ is defined to be the quotient group

$$H^n(V) := \ker(d^n)/\mathrm{im}(d^{n-1}).$$

To see how this is a special case of cohomology in an $\infty$-topos, consider a fixed abelian group $A$ and suppose that this cochain complex is the $A$-dual of a *chain* complex

$$V_\bullet = \left[ \cdots \longrightarrow V_2 \xrightarrow{\partial_2} V_1 \xrightarrow{\partial_1} V_0 \right],$$

in that $V^\bullet = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ab}}(V_\bullet, A)$. For instance if $A = \mathbb{Z}$ and $V_n$ is the free abelian group on the set of $n$-simplices in some topological space, then $V^n$ is the group of *singular $n$-cochains* on $X$.

Write then $A[n]$ (or $A[-n]$, if preferred) for the chain complex concentrated in degree $n$ on $A$. In terms of this

1. morphisms of chain complexes $c : V_\bullet \to A[n]$ are in natural bijection with *closed* elements in $V^n$, hence with $\ker(d^n)$;

2. chain homotopies $\eta : c_1 \to c_2$ between two such chain morphisms are in natural bijection with elements in $\mathrm{im}(d^{n-1})$.

This way the cohomology group $H^n(V^\bullet)$ is naturally identified with the *homotopy classes* of maps $V_\bullet \to A[n]$.

Consider then again an example as that of singular cochains as above, where $V_\bullet$ is degreewise a free abelian group on a simplicial set $X$. Then this cohomology is the group of connected components of a hom-space in an $\infty$-topos. To see this, one observes that the category of chain complexes in non-negative degree, $\mathrm{Ch}_{\bullet \geq 0}$, is but a convenient presentation for the category of $\infty$-groupoids that are equipped with *strict abelian group structure* in their incarnation as Kan complexes: simplicial abelian groups. This equivalence $\mathrm{Ch}_{\bullet \geq 0} \simeq \mathrm{sAb}$ is known as the *Dold-Kan correspondence*, to be discussed in more detail in 3.1.6. We write $\Xi(V_\bullet)$ for the Kan complex corresponding to a chain complex under this equivalence. Moreover, for chain complexes of the form $A[n]$ we write

$$\mathbf{B}^n A := \Xi(A[n])\,.$$

With this notation, the $\infty$-groupoid of chain maps $V_\bullet \to A[n]$ is equivalently that of $\infty$-functors $X \to \mathbf{B}^n A$ and hence the cochain cohomology of $V^\bullet$ is

$$H^n(V^\bullet) \simeq \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)\,.$$

**Lie group cohomology**

There are some definitions in the literature of cohomology theories that are not special cases of this general concept, but in these cases it seems that the failure is with the traditional definition, not with the above notion. We will be interested in particular in the group cohomology of Lie groups. Originally this was defined using a naive direct generalization of the formula for bare group cohomology as

$$H^n_{\mathrm{naive}}(G, A) = \{\text{smooth maps } G^{\times n} \to A\}/\sim\;.$$

But this definition was eventually found to be too coarse: there are structures that ought to be cocycles on Lie groups but do not show up in this definition. Graeme Segal therefore proposed a refined definition that was later rediscovered by Jean-Luc Brylinski, called *differentiable Lie group cohomology* $H^n_{\mathrm{diffbl}}(G, A)$. This refines the naive Lie group cohomology in that there is a natural morphism $H^n_{\mathrm{naive}}(G, A) \to H^n_{\mathrm{diffbl}}(G, A)$.

But in the $\infty$-topos of smooth $\infty$-groupoids $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{CartSp})$ we have the natural intrinsic definition of Lie group cohomology as

$$H^n_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(G, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}^n A)$$

and one finds that this naturally includes the Segal/Brylinski definition

$$H^n_{\mathrm{naive}}(G, A) \to H^n_{\mathrm{diffrbl}}(G, A) \to H^n_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(G, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}^n A)\,.$$

and at least for $A$ a discrete group, or the group of real numbers or a quotient of these such as $U(1) = \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$, the notions coincide

$$H^n_{\mathrm{diffrbl}}(G, A) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(G, A)\,.$$

Details on this discussion about refined Lie group cohomology are below in 6.4.6.2.

For instance one of the crucial aspects of the notion of cohomology is that a cohomology class on $X$ *classifies* certain structures over $X$.

It is a classical fact that if $G$ is a (discrete) group and $BG$ its delooping in Top, then the structure classified by a cocycle $g : X \to BG$ is the $G$-principal bundle over $X$ obtained as the 1-categorical pullback $P \to X$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & EG \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{g} & BG \end{array}$$

of the universal $G$-principal bundle $EG \to BG$. But one finds that this pullback construction is just a 1-categorical *model* for what intrinsically is something simpler: this is just the *homotopy pullback* in Top of the point

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & \swArrow_{\simeq} & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow[g]{} & BG \end{array}$$

This form of the construction of the $G$-principal bundle classified by a cocycle makes sense in any $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$:

We say that for $G \in \mathbf{H}$ a group object in $\mathbf{H}$ and $\mathbf{B}G$ its delooping and for $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ a cocycle (any morphism in $\mathbf{H}$) that the *$G$-principal $\infty$-bundle* classified by $g$ is the $\infty$-pullback/homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & \swArrow_{\simeq} & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow[g]{} & BG \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. (Beware that usually we will notationally suppress the homotopy filling this square diagram.)

Let $G$ be a Lie group and $X$ a smooth manifold, both regarded naturally as objects in the $\infty$-topos of smooth $\infty$-groupoids. Let $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ be a morphism in $\mathbf{H}$. One finds that in terms of the presentation of Smooth$\infty$Grpd by the model structure on simplicial presheaves this is a Čech 1-cocycle on $X$ with values in $G$. The corresponding $\infty$-pullback $P$ is (up to equivalence or course) the smooth $G$-principal bundle classified in the usual sense by this cocycle.

The analogous proposition holds for $G$ a Lie 2-group and $P$ a $G$-principal 2-bundle.

Generally, we can give a natural definition of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle in any $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ over any $\infty$-group object $G \in \mathbf{H}$. One finds that it is the Giraud axioms that characterize $\infty$-toposes that ensure that these are equivalently classified as the $\infty$-pullbacks of morphisms $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$. Therefore the intrinsic cohomology

$$H(X, G) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, BG)$$

in $\mathbf{H}$ classifies $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles over $X$. Notice that $X$ here may itself be any object in $\mathbf{H}$.

**1.2.5.4 Homotopy** Every $\infty$-sheaf $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ canonically comes equipped with a geometric morphism given by pair of adjoint $\infty$-functors

$$(L\mathrm{Const} \dashv \Gamma) : \mathbf{H} \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{L\mathrm{Const}}{\leftrightarrows}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

relating it to the archeytpical $\infty$-topos of $\infty$-groupoids. Here $\Gamma$ produces the global sections of an $\infty$-sheaf and $L$Const produces the constant $\infty$-sheaf on a given $\infty$-groupoid.

In the cases that we are interested in here $\mathbf{H}$ is a big topos of $\infty$-groupoids equipped with cohesive structure, notably equipped with smooth structure in our motivating example. In this case $\Gamma$ has the interpretation of sending a cohesive $\infty$-groupoid $X \in \mathbf{H}$ to its underlying $\infty$-groupoid, after forgetting the cohesive structure, and $L$Const has the interpretation of forming $\infty$-groupoids equipped with discrete cohesive structure. We shall write Disc $:= L$Const to indicate this.

But in these cases of cohesive $\infty$-toposes there are actually more adjoints to these two functors, and this will be essentially the general abstract definition of cohesiveness. In particular there is a further left adjoint

$$\Pi : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

to Disc: the *fundamental $\infty$-groupoid functor on a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos*. Following the standard terminology of *locally connected toposes* in ordinary topos theory we shall say that $\mathbf{H}$ with such a property is a *locally* $\infty$*-connected* $\infty$*-topos*. This terminology reflects the fact that if $X$ is a locally contractible topological space then $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$ is a locally contractible $\infty$-topos. A classical result of Artin-Mazur implies, that in this case the value of $\Pi$ on $X \in \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$ is, up to equivalence, the *fundamental* $\infty$*-groupoid of* $X$:

$$\Pi : (X \in \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)) \mapsto (\mathrm{Sing}X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd})\,,$$

which is the $\infty$-groupoid whose

- objects are the points of $X$;
- morphisms are the (continuous) paths in $X$;
- 2-morphisms are the continuous homotopies between such paths;
- $k$-morphisms are the higher order homotopies between $(k-1)$-dimensional paths.

This is the object that encodes all the homotopy groups of $X$ in a canonical fashion, without choice of fixed base point.

Also the big $\infty$-topos Smooth$\infty$Grpd $= \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{CartSp})$ turns out to be locally $\infty$-connected

$$(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma) : \ \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{\Pi}{\underset{\xleftarrow{\mathrm{Disc}}}{\to}}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

as a reflection of the fact that every Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ is contractible as a topological space. We find that for $X$ any smooth manifold, regarded as an object of Smooth$\infty$Grpd, again $\Pi(X) \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd is the corresponding fundamental $\infty$-groupoid. More in detail, under the *homotopy-hypothesis*-equivalence $(|-| \dashv \mathrm{Sing}) : \ \mathrm{Top} \underset{\mathrm{Sing}}{\overset{|-|}{\underset{\to}{\xleftarrow{\simeq}}}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ we have that the composite

$$|\Pi(-)| : \mathbf{H} \overset{\Pi}{\to} \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \overset{|-|}{\to} \mathrm{Top}$$

sends a smooth manifold $X$ to its homotopy type: the underlying topological space of $X$, up to weak homotopy equivalence.

Analogously, for a general object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ we may think of $|\Pi(X)|$ as the generalized geometric realization in Top. For instance we find that if $X \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd is presented by a simplicial paracompact smooth manifold, then $|\Pi(X)|$ is the ordinary geometric realization of the underlying simplicial topological space of $X$. This means in particular that for $X \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd a Lie groupoid, $\Pi(X)$ computes its *homotopy groups of a Lie groupoid* as traditionally defined.

The ordinary homotopy groups of $\Pi(X)$ or equivalently of $|\Pi(X)|$ we call the *geometric homotopy groups* of $X \in \mathbf{H}$, because these are based on a notion of homotopy induced by an intrisic notion of geometric paths in objects in $X$. This is to be contrasted with the *categorical homotopy groups* of $X$. These are the homotopy groups of the underlying $\infty$-groupoid $\Gamma(X)$ of $X$. For instance for $X$ a smooth manifold we have that

$$\pi_n(\Gamma(X)) \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{cc} X \in \mathrm{Set} & |n = 0 \\ 0 & |n > 0 \end{array} \right.$$

but

$$\pi_n(\Pi(X)) \simeq \pi_n(X \in \mathrm{Top})\,.$$

This allows us to give a precise sense to what it means to have a *cohesive refinement* (continuous refinement, smooth refinement, etc.) of an object in Top. Notably we are interested in smooth refinements of classifying spaces $BG \in$ Top for topological groups $G$ by deloopings $\mathbf{B}G \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd of $\infty$-Lie groups $G$ and we may interpret this as saying that

$$\Pi(\mathbf{B}G) \simeq BG$$

in Top $\simeq$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

### 1.2.6 Principal bundles

The following is an exposition of the notion of *principal bundles* in higher but low degree.

We assume here that the reader has a working knowledge of groupoids and at least a rough idea of 2-groupoids. For introductions see for instance [BrHiSi11] [Por]

Below in 1.2.6.4 a discussion of the formalization of $\infty$-groupoids in terms of Kan complexes is given and is used to present a systematic way to understand these constructions in all degrees.

**1.2.6.1 Principal 1-bundles** Let $G$ be a Lie group and $X$ a smooth manifold (all our smooth manifolds are assumed to be finite dimensional and paracompact). We give a discussion of smooth $G$-principal bundles on $X$ in a manner that paves the way to a straightforward generalization to a description of principal $\infty$-bundles. From $X$ and $G$ are naturally induced certain Lie groupoids.

From the group $G$ we canonically obtain a groupoid that we write $BG$ and call the *delooping groupoid* of $G$. Formally this groupoid is

$$BG = (\, G \rightrightarrows * \,)$$

with composition induced from the product in $G$. A useful depiction of this groupoid is

$$BG = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccccc} & & * & & \\ & {}^{g_1}\nearrow & \Vert & \searrow^{g_2} & \\ * & & \xrightarrow[g_2 \cdot g_1]{} & & * \end{array} \right\} ,$$

where the $g_i \in G$ are elements in the group, and the bottom morphism is labeled by forming the product in the group. (The order of the factors here is a convention whose choice, once and for all, does not matter up to equivalence.)

But we get a bit more, even. Since $G$ is a Lie group, there is smooth structure on $BG$ that makes it a Lie groupoid, an internal groupoid in the category SmoothMfd of smooth manifolds: its collection of objects (trivially) and of morphisms each form a smooth manifold, and all structure maps (source, target, identity, composition) are smooth functions. We shall write

$$\mathbf{B}G \in \mathrm{LieGrpd}$$

for $BG$ regarded as equipped with this smooth structure. Here and in the following the boldface is to indicate that we have an object equipped with a bit more structure – here: smooth structure – than present on the object denoted by the same symbols, but without the boldface. Eventually we will make this precise by having the boldface symbols denote objects in the $\infty$-topos Smooth$\infty$Grpd which are taken by a suitable functor to objects in $\infty$Grpd denoted by the corresponding non-boldface symbols.

Also the smooth manifold $X$ may be regarded as a Lie groupoid - a groupoid with only identity morphisms. Its depiction is simply

$$X = \{\, x \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Id}} x \,\}$$

for all $x \in X$ But there are other groupoids associated with X: let $\{U_i \to X\}_{i \in I}$ be an open cover of $X$. To this is canonically associated the Čech-groupoid $C(\{U_i\})$. Formally we may write this groupoid as

$$C(\{U_i\}) = \left\{ \coprod_{i,j} U_i \cap U_j \rightrightarrows \coprod_i U_i \right\} .$$

A useful depiction of this groupoid is

$$C(\{U_i\}) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccccc} & & (x,j) & & \\ & \nearrow & \Vert & \searrow & \\ (x,i) & & \longrightarrow & & (x,k) \end{array} \right\} ,$$

This indicates that the objects of this groupoid are pairs $(x, i)$ consisting of a point $x \in X$ and a patch $U_i \subset X$ that contains $x$, and a morphism is a triple $(x, i, j)$ consisting of a point and two patches, that both contain the point, in that $x \in U_i \cap U_j$. The triangle in the above depiction symbolizes the evident way in which these morphisms compose. All this inherits a smooth structure from the fact that the $U_i$ are smooth manifolds and the inclusions $U_i \hookrightarrow X$ are smooth functions. Hence also $C(\{U_i\})$ becomes a Lie groupoid.

There is a canonical projection functor

$$C(\{U_i\}) \to X : (x, i) \mapsto x .$$

This functor is an internal functor in SmoothMfd and moreover it is evidently essentially surjective and full and faithful. However, while essential surjectivity and full-and-faithfulness implies that the underlying bare functor has a homotopy-inverse, that homotopy-inverse never has itself smooth component maps, unless $X$ itself is a Cartesian space and the chosen cover is trivial.

We do however want to think of $C(\{U_i\})$ as being equivalent to $X$ even as a Lie groupoid. One says that a smooth functor whose underlying bare functor is an equivalence of groupoids is a *weak equivalence* of Lie groupoids, which we write as $C(\{U_i\}) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} X$. Moreover, we shall think of $C(\{U_i\})$ as a *good* equivalent replacement of $X$ if it comes from a cover that is in fact a *good open cover* in that all its non-empty finite intersections $U_{i_0, \cdots, i_n} := U_{i_0} \cap \cdots \cap U_{i_n}$ are diffeomorphic to the Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^{\dim X}$.

We shall discuss later in which precise sense this condition makes $C(\{U_i\})$ *good* in the sense that smooth functors out of $C(\{U_i\})$ model the correct notion of morphism out of $X$ in the context of smooth groupoids (namely it will mean that $C(\{U_i\})$ is cofibrant in a suitable model category structure on the category of Lie groupoids). The formalization of this statement is what $\infty$-topos theory is all about, to which we will come. For the moment we shall be content with accepting this as an ad hoc statement.

Observe that a functor

$$g : C(\{U_i\}) \to \mathbf{B}G$$

is given in components precisely by a collection of smooth functions

$$\{g_{ij} : U_{ij} \to G\}_{i,j \in I}$$

such that on each $U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k$ the equality $g_{jk} g_{ij} = g_{ik}$ of functions holds.

It is well known that such collections of functions characterize $G$-principal bundles on $X$. While this is a classical fact, we shall now describe a way to derive it that is true to the Lie-groupoid-context and that will make clear how smooth principal $\infty$-bundles work.

First observe that in total we have discussed so far spans of smooth functors of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(\{U_i\}) & \stackrel{g}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array} .$$

Such spans of functors, whose left leg is a weak equivalence, are sometimes known, essentially equivalently, as *Morita morphisms*, as *generalized morphisms* of Lie groupoids, as *Hilsum-Skandalis morphisms*, or as *groupoid bibundles* or as *anafunctors*. We are to think of these as concrete models for more intrinsically defined direct morphisms $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ in the $\infty$-topos of smooth $\infty$-groupoids.

Now consider yet another Lie groupoid canonically associated with $G$: we shall write $\mathbf{E}G$ for the groupoid – the *smooth universal $G$-bundle* – whose formal description is

$$\mathbf{E}G = \left( G \times G \underset{p_1}{\overset{(-)\cdot(-)}{\rightrightarrows}} G \right)$$

with the evident composition operation. The depiction of this groupoid is

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & g_2 & \\ {}^{g_2 g_1^{-1}}\nearrow & \| & \searrow^{g_3 g_2^{-1}} \\ g_1 & \xrightarrow[g_3 g_1^{-1}]{} & g_3 \end{array} \right\},$$

This again inherits an evident smooth structure from the smooth structure of $G$ and hence becomes a Lie groupoid.

There is an evident forgetful functor

$$\mathbf{E}G \to \mathbf{B}G$$

which sends

$$(g_1 \to g_2) \mapsto (\bullet \stackrel{g_2 g_1^{-1}}{\to} \bullet) \,.$$

Consider then the pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{P} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{E}G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ C(\{U_i\}) & \stackrel{g}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

in the category Grpd(SmoothMfd). The object $\tilde{P}$ is the Lie groupoid whose depiction is

$$\tilde{P} = \left\{ \, (x, i, g_1) \longrightarrow (x, j, g_2 = g_{ij}(x) g_1) \, \right\} \,;$$

where there is a unique morphism as indicated, whenever the group labels match as indicated. Due to this uniqueness, this Lie groupoid is weakly equivalent to one that comes just from a manifold $P$ (it is 0-truncated)

$$\tilde{P} \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} P \,.$$

This $P$ is traditionally written as

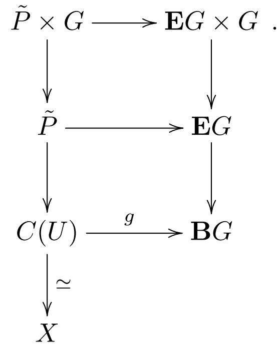
$$P = \left( \coprod_i U_i \times G \right) / \sim \,,$$

where the equivalence relation is precisely that exhibited by the morphisms in $\tilde{P}$. This is the traditional way to construct a $G$-principal bundle from cocycle functions $\{g_{ij}\}$. We may think of $\tilde{P}$ as *being* $P$. It is a particular representative of $P$ in the $\infty$-topos of Lie groupoids.

While it is easy to see in components that the $P$ obtained this way does indeed have a principal $G$-action on it, for later generalizations it is crucial that we can also recover this in a general abstract way. For notice that there is a canonical action

$$(\mathbf{E}G) \times G \to \mathbf{E}G \,,$$

given by the group action on the space of objects. Then consider the pasting diagram of pullbacks



Here the morphism $\tilde{P} \times G \to \tilde{P}$ exhibits the principal $G$-action of $G$ on $\tilde{P}$.

In summary we find the following

**Observation 1.2.76.** For $\{U_i \to X\}$ a good open cover, there is an equivalence of categories

$$\mathrm{SmoothFunc}(C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}G) \simeq G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$$

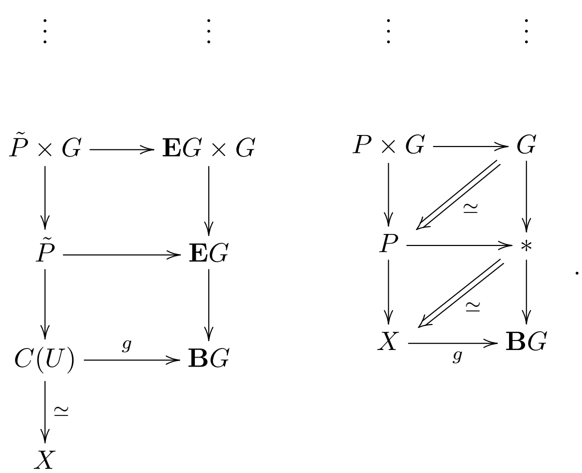
between the functor category of smooth functors and smooth natural transformations, and the groupoid of smooth $G$-principal bundles on $X$.

It is no coincidence that this statement looks akin to the maybe more familiar statement which says that equivalence classes of $G$-principal bundles are classified by homotopy-classes of morphisms of topological spaces

$$\pi_0 \mathrm{Top}(X, BG) \simeq \pi_0 G\mathrm{Bund}(X)\,,$$

where $BG \in \mathrm{Top}$ is the topological classifying space of $G$. What we are seeing here is a first indication of how cohomology of bare $\infty$-groupoids is lifted inside a richer $\infty$-topos to cohomology of $\infty$-groupoids with extra structure.

In fact, all of the statements that we considered so far becomes conceptually simpler in the $\infty$-topos. We had already remarked that the anafunctor span $X \overset{\simeq}{\leftarrow} C(\{U_i\}) \overset{g}{\to} \mathbf{B}G$ is really a model for what is simply a direct morphism $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ in the $\infty$-topos. But more is true: that pullback of $\mathbf{E}G$ which we considered is just a model for the homotopy pullback of just the *point*



in the model category　　　　in the $\infty$-topos

The traditional statement which identifies the classifying topological space $BG$ as the quotient of the contractible $EG$ by the free $G$-action

$$BG \simeq EG/G$$

becomes afte the refinement to smooth groupoids the statement that $\mathbf{B}G$ is the *homotopy quotient* of $G$ acting on the point:

$$\mathbf{B}G \simeq *//G\,.$$

Generally:

**Definition 1.2.77.** For $V$ a smooth manifold equipped with a smooth action by $G$ (not necessarily free), the *action groupoid* $V//G$ is the Lie groupoid whose space of objects is $V$, and whose morphisms are group elements that connect two points (which may coincide) in $V$.

$$V//G = \left\{ v_1 \xrightarrow{g} v_2 \;|v_2 = g(v_1) \right\}.$$

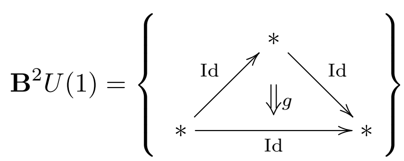
Such an action groupoid is canonically equipped with a morphism to $\mathbf{B}G \simeq *//G$ obtained by sending all objects to the single object and acting as the identity on morphisms. Below in 5.1.14 we discuss that the sequence

$$V \to V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$$

entirely encodes the action of $G$ on $V$. Also we will see in 6.4.10.1 that the morphism $V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the smooth refinement of the $V$-bundle which is *associated to the universal $G$-bundle* via the given action. If $V$ is a vector space acted on linearly, then this is an associated vector bundle. Its pullbacks along anafunctors $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ yield all $V$-vector bundles on $X$.

**1.2.6.2 Principal 2-bundles and twisted 1-bundles** The discussion above of $G$-principal bundles was all based on the Lie groupoids $\mathbf{B}G$ and $\mathbf{E}G$ that are canonically induced by a Lie group $G$. We now discuss the case where $G$ is generalized to a *Lie 2-group*. The above discussion will go through essentially verbatim, only that we pick up 2-morphisms everywhere. This is the first step towards higher Chern-Weil theory. The resulting generalization of the notion of principal bundle is that of *principal 2-bundle*. For historical reasons these are known in the literature often as *gerbes* or as *bundle gerbes*, even though strictly speaking there are some conceptual differences.

Write $U(1) = \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$ for the circle group. We have already seen above the groupoid $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ obtained from this. But since $U(1)$ is an abelian group this groupoid has the special property that it still has itself the structure of a group object. This makes it what is called a *2-group*. Accordingly, we may form its delooping once more to arrive at a Lie 2-groupoid $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$. Its depiction is




for $g \in U(1)$. Both horizontal composition as well as vertical composition of the 2-morphisms is given by the product in $U(1)$.

Let again $X$ be a smooth manifold with good open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$. The corresponding Čech groupoid we may also think of as a Lie 2-groupoid,

$$C(U) = \left( \coprod_{i,j,k} U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k \rightrightarrows\!\!\!\to \coprod_{i,j} U_i \cap U_j \rightrightarrows \coprod_i U_i \right).$$

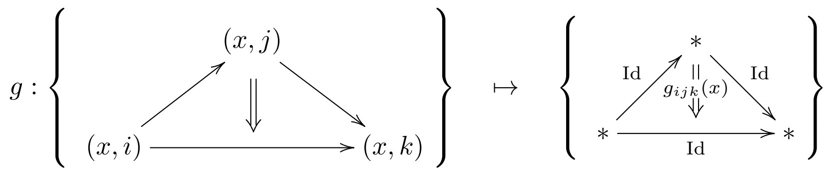
What we see here are the first stages of the full *Čech nerve* of the cover. Eventually we will be looking at this object in its entirety, since for all degrees this is always a *good* replacement of the manifold $X$, as long as $\{U_i \to X\}$ is a good open cover. So we look now at 2-anafunctors given by spans

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

of internal 2-functors. These will model direct morphisms $X \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ in the $\infty$-topos. It is straightforward to read off the following

**Observation 1.2.78.** A smooth 2-functor $g : C(\{U_i\}) \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ is given by the data of a 2-cocycle in the Čech cohomology of $X$ with coefficients in $U(1)$.

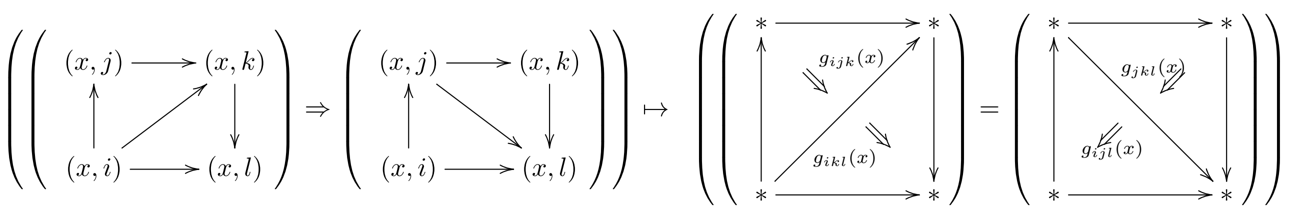
Because on 2-morphisms it specifies an assignment



that is given by a collection of smooth functions

$$(g_{ijk} : U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k \to U(1))\,.$$

On 3-morphisms it gives a constraint on these functions, since there are only identity 3-morphisms in $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$:

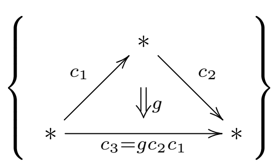


This relation

$$g_{ijk} \cdot g_{ikl} = g_{ijl} \cdot g_{jkl}$$

defines degree-2 cocycles in *Čech cohomology* with coefficients in $U(1)$.

In order to find the circle principal 2-bundle classified by such a cocycle by a pullback operation as before, we need to construct the 2-functor $\mathbf{EB}U(1) \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ that exhibits the universal principal 2-bundle over $U(1)$. The right choice for $\mathbf{EB}U(1)$ – which we justify systematically in 1.2.6.4 – is indicated by

$\mathbf{EB}U(1) =$ 

for $c_1, c_2, c_3, g \in U(1)$, where all possible composition operations are given by forming the product of these labels in $U(1)$. The projection $\mathbf{EB}U(1) \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ is the obvious one that simply forgets the labels $c_i$ of the 1-morphisms and just remembers the labels $g$ of the 2-morphisms.

**Definition 1.2.79.** With $g : C(\{U_i\}) \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ a Čech cocycle as above, the $U(1)$-*principal 2-bundle* or *circle 2-bundle* that it defines is the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{P} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{EB}U(1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \\ \simeq\downarrow & & \\ X & & \end{array} .$$

Unwinding what this means, we see that $\tilde{P}$ is the 2-groupoid whose objects are that of $C(\{U_i\})$, whose morphisms are finite sequences of morphisms in $C(\{U_i\})$, each equipped with a label $c \in U(1)$, and whose 2-morphisms are generated from those that look like

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & (x,j) & & \\ & {}^{c_1}\nearrow & \Downarrow g_{ijk}(x) & \searrow^{c_2} & \\ (x,i) & & \xrightarrow[c_3]{} & & (x,k) \end{array}$$

subject to the condition that

$$c_1 \cdot c_2 = c_3 \cdot g_{ijk}(x)$$

in $U(1)$. As before for principal 1-bundles $P$, where we saw that the analogous pullback 1-groupoid $\tilde{P}$ was equivalent to the 0-groupoid $P$, here we see that this 2-groupoid is equivalent to the 1-groupoid

$$P = \Big( C(U)_1 \times U(1) \rightrightarrows C(U) \Big)$$

with composition law

$$((x,i) \stackrel{c_1}{\to} (x,j) \stackrel{c_2}{\to} (x,k)) = ((x,i) \stackrel{(c_1 \cdot c_2 \cdot g_{ijk}(x))}{\to} (x,k)) \,.$$

This is a groupoid central extension

$$\mathbf{B}U(1) \to P \to C(\{U_i\}) \simeq X \,.$$

Centrally extended groupoids of this kind are known in the literature as *bundle gerbes* (over the surjective submersion $Y = \coprod_i U_i \to X$ ). They may equivalently be thought of as given by a line bundle

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ (C(U)_1 = \coprod_{i,j} U_i \cap U_j) & \longrightarrow & (C(U)_0 = \coprod_i U_i) \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & X \end{array}$$

over the space $C(U)_1$ of morphisms, and a line bundle morphism

$$\mu_g : \pi_1^* L \otimes \pi_2^* L \to \pi_1^* L$$

that satisfies an evident associativity law, equivalent to the cocycle codition on $g$. In summary we find that:

**Observation 1.2.80.** Bundle gerbes are presentations of Lie groupoids that are total spaces of $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-principal 2-bundles, def. 1.2.79.

Notice that, even though there is a close relation, the notion of *bundle gerbe* is different from the original notion of *$U(1)$-gerbe*. This point we discuss in more detail below in 1.2.92 and more abstractly in 6.3.10.

This discussion of *circle 2-bundles* has a generalization to 2-bundles that are principal over more general *2-groups*.

**Definition 1.2.81.**

1. A smooth *crossed module* of Lie groups is a pair of homomorphisms $\partial : G_1 \to G_0$ and $\rho : G_0 \to \mathrm{Aut}(G_1)$ of Lie groups, such that for all $g \in G_0$ and $h, h_1, h_2 \in G_1$ we have $\rho(\partial h_1)(h_2) = h_1 h_2 h_1^{-1}$ and $\partial\rho(g)(h) = g\partial(h)g^{-1}$.
2. For $(G_1 \to G_0)$ a smooth crossed module, the corresponding *strict Lie 2-group* is the smooth groupoid $G_0 \times G_1 \rightrightarrows G_0$, whose source map is given by projection on $G_0$, whose target map is given by applying $\partial$ to the second factor and then multiplying with the first in $G_0$, and whose composition is given by multiplying in $G_1$.

   This groupoid has a strict monoidal structure with strict inverses given by equipping $G_0 \times G_1$ with the semidirect product group structure $G_0 \ltimes G_1$ induced by the action $\rho$ of $G_0$ on $G_1$.
3. The corresponding one-object strict smooth 2-groupoid we write $\mathbf{B}(G_1 \to G_0)$. As a simplicial object (under the Duskin nerve of 2-categories) this is of the form

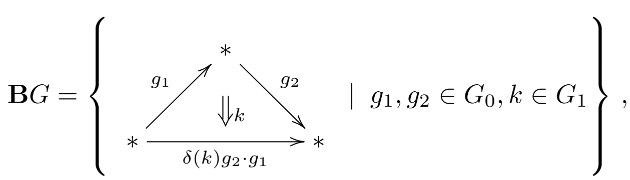
$$\mathbf{B}(G_1 \to G_0) = \mathrm{cosk}_3 \left( G_0^{\times 3} \times G_1^{\times 3} \rightrightarrows\!\!\!\to G_0^{\times 2} \times G_1 \rightrightarrows G_0 \longrightarrow * \right) .$$

The infinitesimal analog of a crossed module of groups is a *differential crossed module*.

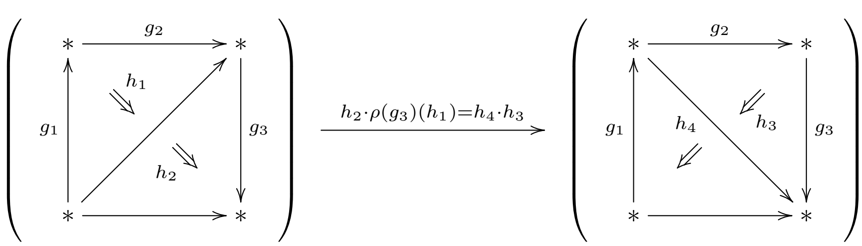
**Definition 1.2.82.** A *differential crossed module* is a chain complex of vector space of length 2 $V_1 \to V_0$ equipped with the structure of a dg-Lie algebra.

**Example 1.2.83.** For $G_1 \to G_0$ a smooth crossed module of Lie groups, differentiation of all structure maps yields a corresponding differential crossed module $\mathfrak{g}_1 \to \mathfrak{g}_0$.

**Observation 1.2.84.** For $G := [G_1 \overset{\delta}{\to} G_0]$ a crossed module, the 2-groupoid delooping a 2-group coming from a crossed module is of the form




where the 3-morphisms – the composition identities – are




**Remark 1.2.85.** All ingredients here are functorial, so that the above statements hold for presheaves over sites, hence in particular for cohesive 2-groups such as smooth 2-groups. Below in corollarly 5.1.172 it is shown that every cohesive 2-group has a presentation by a crossed module this way.

Notice that there are different equivalent conventions possible for how to present $\mathbf{B}G$ in terms of the correspondiung crossed module, given by the choices of order in the group products. Here we are following convention "LB" in [RoSc08].

**Example 1.2.86** (shift of abelian Lie group)**.** For $K$ an abelian Lie group then $\mathbf{B}K$ is the delooping 2-group coming from the crossed module $[K \to 1]$ and $\mathbf{BB}K$ is the 2-group coming from the complex $[K \to 1 \to 1]$.

**Example 1.2.87** (automorphism 2-group)**.** For $H$ any Lie group with automorphism Lie group $\mathrm{Aut}(H)$, the morphism $H \stackrel{\mathrm{Ad}}{\to} \mathrm{Aut}(H)$ that sends group elements to inner automorphisms, together with $\rho = \mathrm{id}$, is a crossed module. We write $\mathrm{AUT}(H) := (H \to \mathrm{Aut}(H))$ and speak of the *automorphism 2-group* of $H$.

**Example 1.2.88.** The inclusion of any normal subgroup $N \hookrightarrow G$ with conjugation action of $G$ on $N$ is a crossed module, with the canonical induced conjugation action of $G$ on $N$.

**Example 1.2.89** (string 2-group)**.** For $G$ a compact, simple and simply connected Lie group, write $PG$ for the smooth group of based paths in $G$ and $\hat{\Omega}G$ for the universal central extension of the smooth group of based loops. Then the evident morphism $(\hat{\Omega}G \to PG)$ equipped with a lift of the adjoint action of paths on loops is a crossed module [BCSS07]. The corresponding strict 2-group is (a presentation of what is) called the *string 2-group* extension of $G$. The string 2-group we discuss in detail in 7.1.10.

It follows immediately that

**Observation 1.2.90.** For $G = (G_1 \to G_0)$ a 2-group coming from a crossed module, a cocycle

$$X \stackrel{\simeq}{\leftarrow} C(U_i) \stackrel{g}{\to} \mathbf{B}G$$

is given by data

$$\{h_{ij} \in C^\infty(U_{ij}, G_0), g_{ijk} \in C^\infty(U_{ijk}, G_1)\}$$

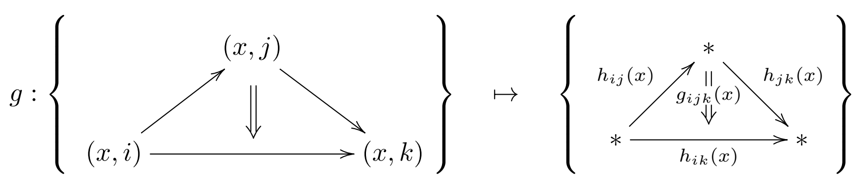
such that on each $U_{ijk}$ we have

$$h_{ik} = \delta(h_{ijk}) h_{jk} h_{ij}$$

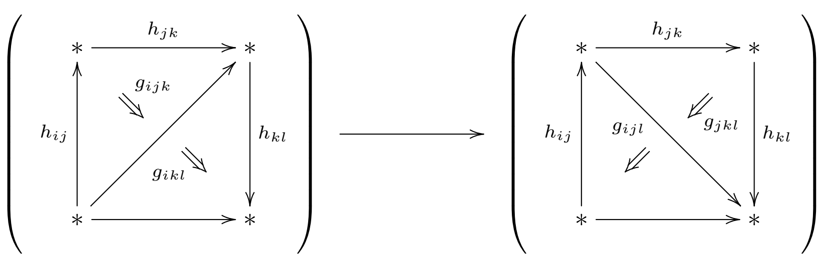
and on each $U_{ijkl}$ we have

$$g_{ikl} \cdot \rho(h_{jk})(g_{ijk}) = g_{ijk} \cdot g_{jkl} \,.$$

Because under the above correspondence between crossed modules and 2-groups, this is the data that encodes assignments




that satisfy




For the case of the crossed module $(U(1) \to 1)$ this recovers the cocycles for circle 2-bundles from observation 1.2.78.

Apart from the notion of *bundle gerbe*, there is also the original notion of *gerbe*. The terminology is somewhat unfortunate, since neither of these concepts is, in general, a special case of the other. But they are of course closely related. We consider here the simple cocycle-characterization of gerbes and the relation of these to cocycles for 2-bundles.

**Definition 1.2.91** ($G$-gerbe)**.** Let $G$ be a smooth group. Then a cocycle for a smooth $G$-*gerbe* over a manifold $X$ is a cocycle for a $\mathrm{AUT}(G)$-principal 2-bundle, where $\mathrm{AUT}(G)$ is the automorphism 2-group from example 1.2.87.

**Observation 1.2.92.** For every 2-group coming from a crossed module $(G_1 \stackrel{\delta}{\to} G_0, \rho)$ there is a canonical morphism of 2-groups

$$(G_1 \to G_0) \to \mathrm{AUT}(G_1)$$

given by the commuting diagram of groups

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G_1 & \xrightarrow{\delta} & G_0 \\ \downarrow^{\mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow^{\rho} \\ G_1 & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Ad}} & \mathrm{Aut}(G_0) \end{array} .$$

Accordingly, every $(G_1 \to G_0)$-principal 2-bundle has an underlying $G_1$-gerbe, def. 1.2.91. But in general the passage to this underlying $G_1$-gerbe discards information.

**Example 1.2.93.** For $G$ a simply connected and compact simple Lie group, let $\mathrm{String} \simeq (\hat{\Omega} G \to PG)$ be the corresopnding String 2-group from example 1.2.89. Then by observation 1.2.92 every String-principal 2-bundle has an underlying $\hat{\Omega} G$-gerbe. But there is more information in the String-2-bundle than in this gerbe underlying it.

**Example 1.2.94.** Let $G = (\mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R})$ be the crossed module that includes the additive group of integers into the additive group of real numbers, with trivial action. The canonical projection morphism

$$\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R}) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}U(1)$$

is a weak equivalence, by the fact that locally every smooth $U(1)$-valued function is the quotient of a smooth $\mathbb{R}$-valued function by a (constant) $\mathbb{Z}$-valued function. This means in particular that up to equivalence, $(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R})$-2-bundles are the same as ordinary circle 1-bundles. But it means a bit more than that:

On a manifold $X$ also $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}$-principal 2-bundles have the same classification as $U(1)$-bundles. But the *morphisms* of $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}$-principal 2-bundles are essentially different from those of $U(1)$-bundles. This means that the 2-groupoid $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ is not, in general equivalent to $U(1)\mathrm{Bund}(X)$. But we do have an equivalence of 2-groupoids

$$(\mathbb{Z} \to U(1))\mathrm{Bund}(X) \simeq U(1)\mathrm{Bund}(X)\,.$$

**Example 1.2.95.** Let $\hat{G} \to G$ be a central extension of Lie groups by an abelian group $A$. This induces the crossed module $(A \to \hat{G})$. There is a canonical 2-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}(A \to \hat{G}) & \xrightarrow{c} & \mathbf{B}(A \to 1) = \mathbf{B}^2 A \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{B}G & & \end{array}$$

from $\mathbf{B}G$ to $\mathbf{B}^2 A$. This can be seen to be the *characteristic class* that classifies the extension (see 1.2.8 below): $\mathbf{B}\hat{G} \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the $A$-principal 2-bundle classified by this cocycle.

Accordingly, the collection of all $(A \to \hat{G})$-principal 2-bundles is, up to equivalence, the same as that of plain $G$-1-bundles. But they exhibit the natural projection to $\mathbf{B}A$-2-bundles. Fixing that projection gives *twisted $G$-1-bundles*.

more in detail: the above 2-anafunctor indiuces a 2-anafunctor on cocycle 2-groupoid

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (A \to \hat{G})\mathrm{Bund}(X) & \xrightarrow{c} & \mathbf{B}A\mathrm{Bund}(X) \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ G\mathrm{Bund}(X) & & \end{array} .$$

If we fix a $\mathbf{B}A$-2-bundle $g$ we can consider the fiber of the characteristic class $c$ over $g$, hence the pullback $G\mathrm{Bund}_{[g]}(X)$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G\mathrm{Bund}_{[g]}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{g} \\ (A \to \hat{G})\mathrm{Bund}(X) & \xrightarrow{c} & \mathbf{B}A\mathrm{Bund}(X) \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ G\mathrm{Bund}(X) & & \end{array} .$$

This is the groupoid of $[g]$*-twisted* $G$*-bundles*. The principal 2-bundle classfied by $g$ is also called the *lifting gerbe* of the $G$-principal bundles underlying the $[g]$-twisted $\hat{G}$-bundle: because this is the obstruction to lifting the former to a genuine $\hat{G}$-principal bundle.

If $g$ is given by a Čech cocycle $\{g_{ijk} \in C^\infty(U_{ijk}, A)\}$ then $[g]$-twisted $G$-bundles are given by data $\{h_{ij} \in C^\infty(U_{ij}, G)\}$ which does not quite satisfy the usual cocycle condition, but instead a modification by $g$:

$$h_{ik} = \delta(g_{ijk}) h_{jk} h_{ij} \, .$$

For instance for the extension $U(1) \to U(n) \to PU(n)$ the corresponding twisted bundles are those that model *twisted K-theory* with $n$-torsion twists (6.4.10).

**1.2.6.3 Principal 3-bundles and twisted 2-bundles** As one passes beyond (smooth) 2-groups and their 2-principal bundles, one needs more sophisticated tools for presenting them. While the crossed modules from def. 1.2.81 have convenient higher analogs – called *crossed complexes* – the higher analog of remark 1.2.85 does not hold for these: not every (smooth) 3-group is presented by them, much less every $n$-group for $n > 3$. Therefore below in 1.2.6.4 we switch to a different tool for the general situation: simplicial groups.

However, it so happens that a wide range of relevant examples of (smooth) 3-groups and generally of smooth $n$-groups does have a presentation by a crossed complex after all, as do the examples which we shall discuss now.

**Definition 1.2.96.** A *crossed complex of groupoids* is a diagram

$$C_\bullet = \left( \begin{array}{ccccccc} \cdots \xrightarrow{\delta} C_3 & \xrightarrow{\delta} & C_2 & \xrightarrow{\delta} & C_1 & \overset{\delta_t}{\underset{\delta_s}{\rightrightarrows}} & C_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\delta_s} & & \downarrow^{=} \\ \cdots \xrightarrow[=]{} C_0 & \xrightarrow[=]{} & C_0 & \xrightarrow[=]{} & C_0 & \xrightarrow[=]{} & C_0 \end{array} \right) ,$$

where $C_1 \overset{\delta_t}{\underset{\delta_s}{\rightrightarrows}} C_0$ is equipped with the structure of a 1-groupoid, and where $C_k \longrightarrow C_0$ , for all $k \geq 2$, are bundles of groups, abelian for $k \geq 2$; and equipped with an action $\rho$ of the groupoid $C_1$, such that

1. the maps $\delta_k$, $k \geq 2$ are morphisms of groupoids over $C_0$ compatible with the action by $C_1$;
2. $\delta_{k-1} \circ \delta_k = 0$; k $\geq 3$;
3. $\mathrm{im}(\delta_2) \subset C_1$ acts by conjugation on $C_2$ and trivially on $C_k$, $k \geq 3$.

Surveys of standard material on crossed complexes of groupoids are in [BrHiSi11][Por]. We discuss sheaves of crossed complexes, hence *cohesive crossed complexes* in more detail below in 3.1.6. As mentioned there, the key aspect of crossed complexes is that they provide an equivalent encoding of precisely those $\infty$-groupoids that are called *strict*.

**Definition 1.2.97.** A *crossed complex of groups* is a crossed complex $C_\bullet$ of groupoids with $C_0 = *$. If the complex of groups is constant on the trivial group beyond $C_n$, we say this is a *strict n-group*.

Explicitly, a *crossed complex of groups* is a complex of groups of the form

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{\delta_2} G_2 \xrightarrow{\delta_1} G_1 \xrightarrow{\delta_0} G_0$$

with $G_{k\geq 2}$ abelian (but $G_1$ and $G_0$ not necessarily abelian), together with an action $\rho_k$ of $G_0$ on $G_k$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, such that

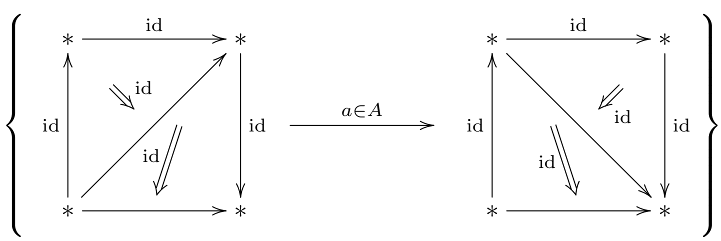
1. $\rho_0$ is the adjoint action of $G_0$ on itself;
2. $\rho_1 \circ \delta_0$ is the adjoint action of $G_1$ on itself;
3. $\rho_k \circ \delta_0$ is the trivial action of $G_1$ on $G_k$ for $k > 1$;
4. all $\delta_k$ respect the actions.

A morphism of crossed complexes of groups is a sequence of morphisms of component groups, respecting all this structure.

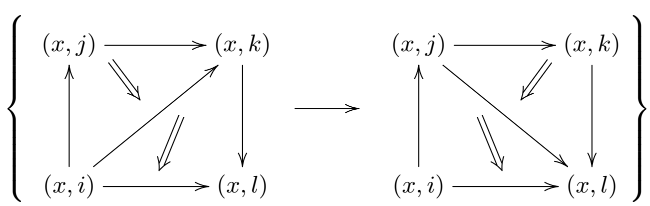
For $n = 2$ this reproduces the notion of *crossed module* and *strict 2-group*, def. 1.2.81. If furthermore $G_1$ and $G_0$ here are abelian and the action of $G_0$ is trivial, then this is an ordinary *complex of abelian groups* as considered in homological algebra. Indeed, all of homological algebra may be thought of as the study of this presentation of abelian ∞-groups, def. 5.1.157. (More on this in 3.1.6 below.)

We consider now examples of strict 3-groups and of the corresponding principal 3-bundles.

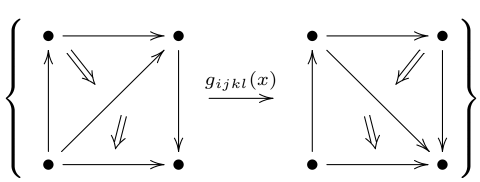
**Example 1.2.98.** For $A$ an abelian group, the delooping of the 3-group given by the complex $(A \to 1 \to 1)$ is the one-object 3-groupoid that looks like

$\mathbf{B}^3A =$ 


Therefore an ∞-anafunctor $X \xleftarrow{\simeq} C(\{U_i\}) \xrightarrow{g} \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ sends 3-simplices in the Čech groupoid

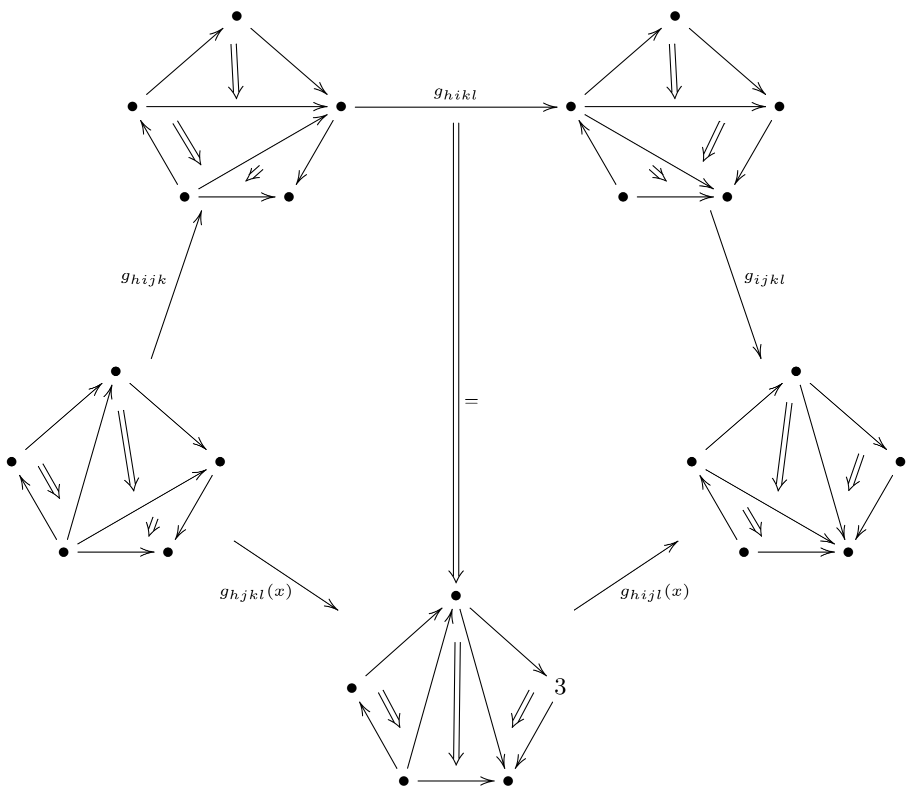



to 3-morphisms in $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ labeled by group elements $g_{ijkl}(x) \in U(1)$




(where all 1-morphisms and 2-morphisms in $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ are necessarily identities).

The 3-functoriality of this assignment is given by the following identity on all Čech 4-simplices (x,(h,i,j,k,l)):




This means that the cocycle data $\{g_{ijkl}(x)\}$ has to satisfy the equations

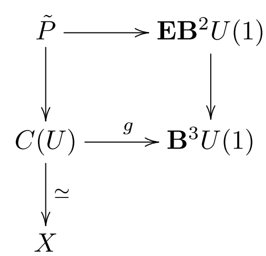
$$g_{hijk}(x)g_{hikl}(x)g_{ijkl}(x) = g_{hjkl}(x)g_{hijl}(x)$$

for all $(h,i,j,k,l)$ and all $x \in U_{hijkl}$. Since $U(1)$ is abelian this can equivalently be rearranged to

$$g_{hijk}(x)g_{hijl}(x)^{-1}g_{hikl}(x)g_{hjkl}(x)^{-1}g_{ijkl}(x) = 1\,.$$

This is the usual form in which a Čech 3-cocycles with coefficients in $U(1)$ are written.

**Definition 1.2.99.** Given a cocycle as above, the total space object $\tilde{P}$ given by the pullback




is the corresponding *circle principal 3-bundle*.

In direct analogy to the argument that leads to observation 1.2.80 we find:

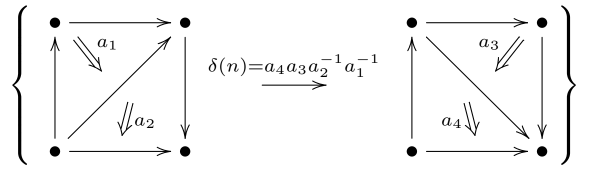
**Observation 1.2.100.** The structures known as *bundle 2-gerbes* [St01] are presentations of the 2-groupoids that are total spaces of circle principal 2-bundles, as above.

Again, notice that, despite a close relation, this is different from the original notion of *2-gerbe*. More discussion of this point is below in 6.3.10.

The next example is still abelian, but captures basics of the central mechanism of twistings of principal 2-bundles by principal 3-bundles.

**Example 1.2.101.** Consider a morphism $\delta : N \to A$ of abelian groups and the corresponding shifted crossed complex $(N \to A \to 1)$. The corresponding delooped 3-group looks like

$$\mathbf{B}(N \to A \to 1) \quad = $$




A cocycle for a $(N \to A \to 1)$-principal 3-bundle is given by data

$$\{a_{ijk} \in C^\infty(U_{ijk}, A),\, n_{ijkl} \in C^\infty(U_{ijkl}, N)\}$$

such that

1. $a_{jkl}a_{ijk}^{-1}a_{ijk}a_{ikl}^{-1} = \delta(n_{ijkl})$
2. $n_{hijk}(x)n_{hikl}(x)n_{ijkl}(x) = n_{hjkl}(x)n_{hijl}(x)\,.$

The first equation on the left is the cocycle for a 2-bundle as in observation 1.2.78. But the extra term $n_{ijkl}$ on the right “twists” the cocycle. This twist itself satisfies a higher order cocycle condition.

Notice that there is a canonical projection

$$\mathbf{B}(N \to A \to 1) \to \mathbf{B}(N \to 1 \to 1) = \mathbf{B}^3 N\,.$$

Therefore we can consider the higher analog of the notion of twisted bundles in example 1.2.95:

**Definition 1.2.102.** Let $N \to A$ be an inclusion and consider a fixed $\mathbf{B}^2N$-principal 3-bundle with cocycle $g$, let $\mathbf{B}(A/N)\mathrm{Bund}_{[g]}(X)$ be the pullback in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}(A/N)\mathrm{Bund}_{[g]}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle g} \\ \mathbf{B}(N \to A)\mathrm{Bund}(X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2 N\mathrm{Bund}(X) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{B}(A/N)\mathrm{Bund}(X) & & \end{array} .$$

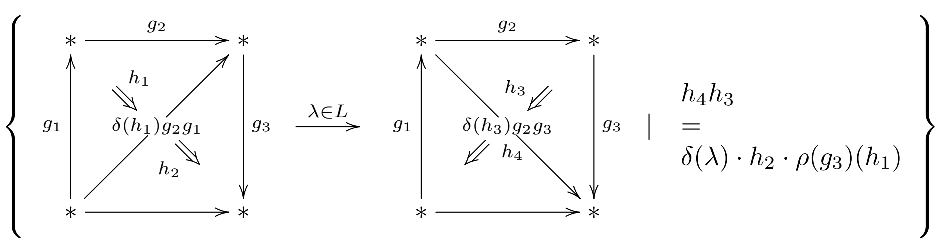
We say an object in this 2-groupoid is a $[g]$-*twisted* $\mathbf{B}(A/N)$-*principal 2-bundle*.

Below in example 1.2.143 we discuss this and its relation to characteristic classes of 2-bundles in more detail.

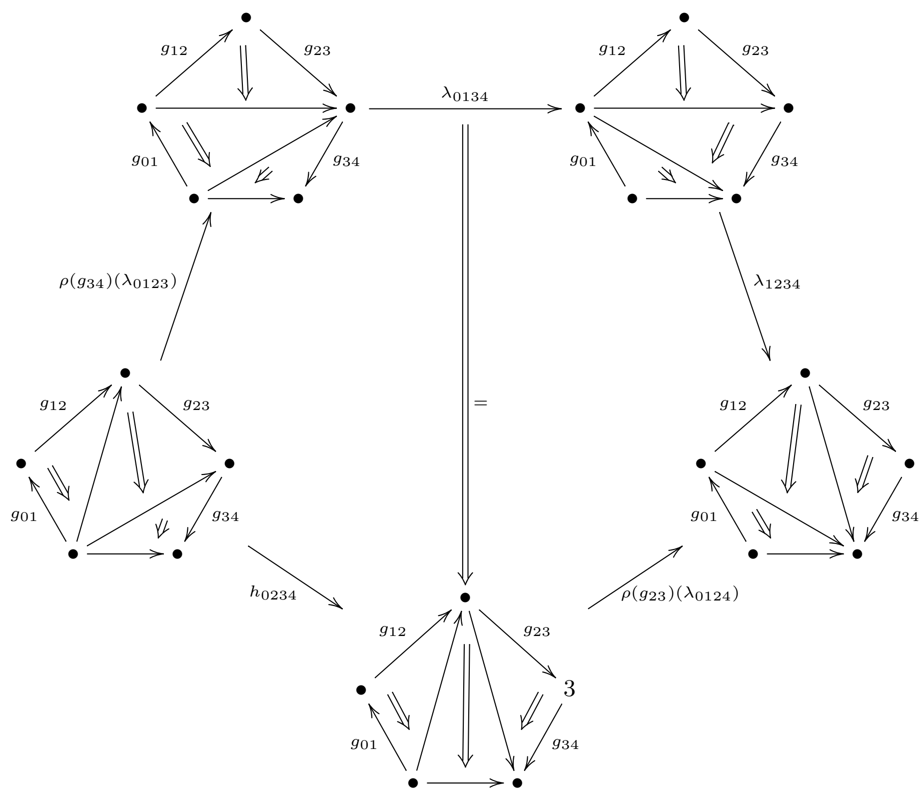
We now turn to the most general 3-group that is presented by a crossed complex.

**Observation 1.2.103.** For $(L \stackrel{\delta}{\to} H \stackrel{\delta}{\to} G)$ an arbitrary strict 3-group, def. 1.2.97, the delooping 3-groupoid looks like

$$\mathbf{B}(L \to H \to G) \quad = $$



with the 4-cells – the composition identities – being




If follows that a cocycle

$$X \overset{\simeq}{\leftarrow} C(U_i) \overset{(\lambda,h,g)}{\to} \mathbf{B}(L \to H \to G)$$

for a $(L \to H \to G)$-principal 3-bundle is a collection of functions

$$\{g_{ij} \in C^\infty(U_{ij}, G),\ h_{ijk} \in C^\infty(U_{ijk}, H),\ \lambda_{ijkl} \in C^\infty(U_{ijkl}, L)\}$$

satisfying the cocycle conditions

$$g_{ik} = \delta(h_{ijk}) g_{jk} g_{ij} \quad \text{on } U_{ijk}$$

$$h_{ijl} h_{jkl} = \delta(\lambda_{ijkl}) \cdot h_{ikl} \cdot \rho(g_3)(h_{ijk}) \quad \text{on } U_{ijkl}$$

$$\lambda_{ijkl} \lambda_{hikl} \rho(g_{kl})(\lambda_{hijk}) = \rho(g_{jk}) \lambda_{hijl} \lambda_{hjkl} \quad \text{on } U_{hijkl}\,.$$

**Definition 1.2.104.** Given such a cocycle, the pullback 3-groupoid $P$ we call the corresponding *principal $(L \to H \to G)$-3-bundle*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{EB}(L \to H \to G) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ C(U_i) & \xrightarrow{(\lambda,h,g)} & \mathbf{B}(L \to H \to G) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

We can now give the next higher analog of the notion of twisted bundles, def. 1.2.95.

**Definition 1.2.105.** Given a 3-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}(L \to H \to G) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(L \to 1 \to 1) & = & \mathbf{B}^3 L \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ \mathbf{B}(H/L \to G) & & & & \end{array}$$

then for $g$ the cocycle for an $\mathbf{B}^2 L$-principal 3-bundle we say that the pullback $(H \to G)\mathrm{Bund}_g(X)$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (H \to G)\mathrm{Bund}_g(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{g} \\ (L \to H \to G)\mathrm{Bund}(X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^3 L\mathrm{Bund}(X) \end{array}$$

is the 3-groupoid of *$g$-twisted $(H \to G)$-principal 2-bundles* on $X$.

**Example 1.2.106.** Let $G$ be a compact and simply connected simple Lie group. By example 1.2.89 we have associated with this the *string 2-group* crossed module $\hat{\Omega} G \to PG$, where

$$U(1) \to \hat{\Omega} G \to \Omega G$$

is the Kac-Moody central extension of level 1 of the based loop group of $G$. Accordingly, there is an evident crossed complex

$$U(1) \to \hat{\Omega} G \to PG\,.$$

The evident projection

$$\mathbf{B}(U(1) \to \hat{\Omega} G \to PG) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}G$$

is a weak equivalence. This means that $(U(1) \to \hat{\Omega} G \to PG)$-principal 3-bundles are equivalent to $G$-1-bundles. For fixed projection $g$ to a $\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)$-3-bundle a $(U(1) \to \hat{\Omega} G \to PG)$-principal 3-bundles may hence be thought of as a $g$-twisted string-principal 2-bundle.

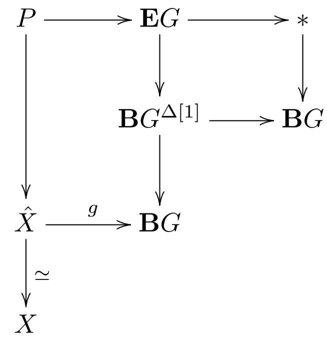
One finds that these serve as a resolution of $G$-1-bundles in attempts to lift to string-2-bundles (discussed below in 7.1.2).

**1.2.6.4 A model for principal $\infty$-bundles** We have seen above that the theory of ordinary smooth principal bundles is naturally situated within the context of Lie groupoids, and then that the theory of smooth principal 2-bundles is naturally situated within the theory of Lie 2-groupoids. This is clearly the beginning of a pattern in higher category theory where in the next step we see smooth 3-groupoids and so on. Finally the general theory of principal $\infty$-bundles deals with smooth $\infty$-groupoids. A comprehensive discussion of such smooth $\infty$-groupoids is given in section 6.4. In this introduction here we will just briefly describe principal $\infty$-bundles in this model.

Recall the discussion of $\infty$-groupoids from 1.2.5.2.1, in terms of Kan simplicial sets. Consider an object $\mathbf{B}G \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ which is an $\infty$-groupoid with a single object, so that we may think of it as the delooping of an $\infty$-group $G$. Let $*$ be the point and $* \to \mathbf{B}G$ the unique inclusion map. The *good replacement* of this inclusion morphism is the *universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle* $\mathbf{E}G \to \mathbf{B}G$ given by the pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{E}G & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ (\mathbf{B}G)^{\Delta[1]} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbf{B}G & & \end{array} .$$

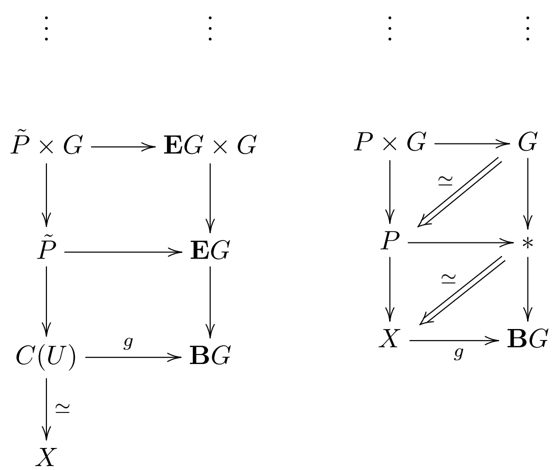
An $\infty$-anafunctor $X \overset{\simeq}{\twoheadleftarrow} \hat{X} \to \mathbf{B}G$ we call a *cocycle* on $X$ with coefficients in $G$, and the $\infty$-pullback $P$ of the point along this cocycle, which by the above discussion is the ordinary limit



we call the principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ *classified* by the cocycle.

**Example 1.2.107.** A detailed description of the 3-groupoid fibration that constitutes the universal principal 2-bundle $\mathbf{E}G$ for $G$ any strict 2-group in given in [RoSc08].

It is now evident that our discussion of ordinary smooth principal bundles above is the special case of this for $\mathbf{B}G$ the nerve of the one-object groupoid associated with the ordinary Lie group $G$. So we find the complete generalization of the situation that we already indicated there, which is summarized in the following diagram:



in the model category in the $\infty$-topos

**1.2.6.5 Higher fiber bundles** We indicate here the natural notion of *principal bundle* in an $\infty$-topos and how it relates to the intrinsic notion of cohomology discussed above.

**1.2.6.5.1 Ordinary principal bundles** For $G$ a group, a *G-principal bundle* over some space $X$ is, roughly, a space $P \to X$ over $X$, which is equipped with a $G$-action over $X$ that is fiberwise free and transitive ("principal"), hence which after a choice of basepoint in a fiber looks there like the canonical action of $G$ on itself. A central reason why the notion of $G$-principal bundles is relevant is that it consistutes a "geometric incarnation" of the degree-1 (nonabelian) cohomology $H^1(X, G)$ of $X$ with coefficients in $G$ (with $G$ regarded as the sheaf of $G$-valued functions on $G$): $G$-principal bundles are *classified* by $H^1(X, G)$. We will see that this classical statement is a special case of a natural and much more general fact, where *principal* $\infty$*-bundles* incarnate cocycles in the intrinsic cohomology of any $\infty$-topos. Before coming to that, here we briefly review aspects of the classical theory to set the scene.

Let $G$ be a topological group and let $X$ be a topological space.

**Definition 1.2.108.** A *topological* $G$*-principal bundle* over $X$ is a continuous map $p : P \to X$ equipped with a continuous fiberwise $G$-action $\rho : P \times G \to G$

$$\begin{array}{c} P \times G \\ {\scriptstyle p_1}\downarrow\downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} \\ P \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle p} \\ X \end{array}$$

which is *locally trivial*: there exists a cover $\phi : U \to X$ and an isomorphism of topological $G$-spaces

$$P|_U \simeq U \times G$$

between the restriction (pullback) of $P$ to $U$ and the trivial bundle $U \times G \to U$ equipped with the canonical $G$-action given by multiplication in $G$.

**Observation 1.2.109.** Let $P \to X$ be a topological $G$-principal bundle. An immediate consequence of the definition is

1. The base space $X$ is isomorphic to the quotient of $P$ by the $G$-action, and, moreover, under this identitfication $P \to X$ is the quotient projection $P \to P/G$.

2. The *principality condition* is satisfied: the *shear map*

$$(p_1, \rho) : P \times G \to P \times_X P$$

is an isomorphism.

**Remark 1.2.110.** Sometimes the quotient property of principal bundles has been taken to be the defining property. For instance [Cart50a, Cart50b] calls every quotient map $P \to P/G$ of a free topological group action a "$G$-principal bundle", *without* requiring it to be locally trivial. This is a strictly weaker definition: there are many examples of such quotient maps which are not locally trivial. To distinguish the notions, [Pa61] refers to the weaker definition as that of a *Cartan principal bundle*. Also for instance the standard textbook [Hus94] takes the definition via quotient maps as fundamental and explicitly adds the adjective "locally trivial" when necessary.

For our purposes the following two points are relevant.

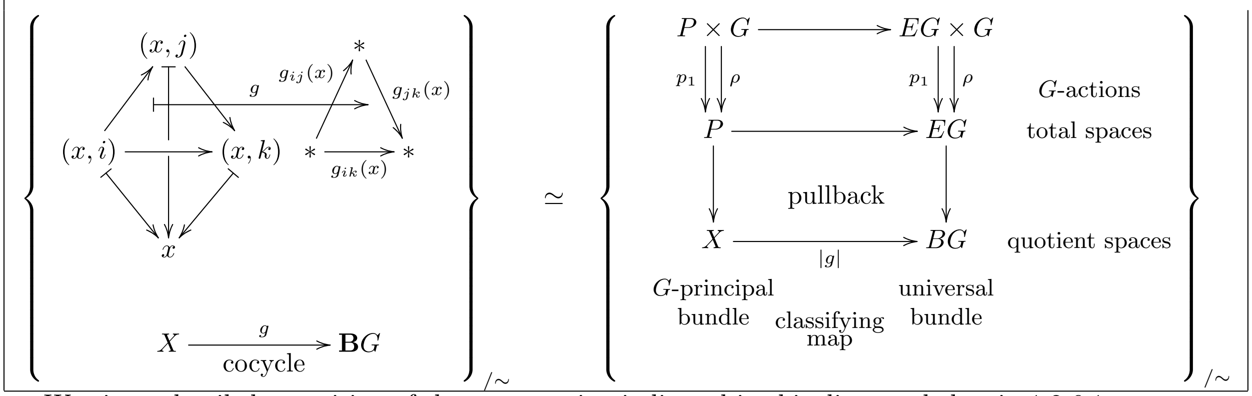
1. Local triviality is crucial for the classification of topological $G$-principal bundles by nonabelian sheaf cohomology to work, and so from this perspective a *Cartan principal bundle* may be pathological.

2. On the other hand, we see below that this problem is an artefact of considering $G$-principal bundles in the ill-suited context of the 1-category of topological spaces or manifolds. We find below that after embedding into an $\infty$-topos (for instance that of Euclidean topological $\infty$-groupoids, discussed in 6.3) both definitions in fact coincide.

   The reason is that the Yoneda embedding into the higher categorical context of an $\infty$-topos "corrects the quotients": those quotients of $G$-actions that are not locally trivial get replaced, while the "good quotients" are being preserved by the embedding. This statement we make precise in 5.1.11.4 below. See also the discussion in 5.1.11.1 below.

It is a classical fact that for $X$ a manifold and $G$ a topological or Lie group, regarded as a sheaf of groups $C(-,G)$ on $X$, there is an equivalence of the following kind

| **algebraic data on $X$** | | **geometric data on $X$** |
|---|---|---|
| $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{degree-1 nonabelian} \\ \text{sheaf cohomology} \end{array} \right\}$ $H^1(X,G)$ | $\simeq$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{isomorphism classes of} \\ \text{G-principal bundles over } X \end{array} \right\}$ $G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ |




We give a detailed exposition of the construction indicated in this diagram below in 1.2.6.1.

**1.2.6.5.2 Principal $\infty$-bundles** Let now $\mathbf{H}$ be an $\infty$-topos, 1.2.5.2, and $G$ a group object in $\mathbf{H}$, 1.2.5.2.3. Up to the technical issue of formulating homotopy coherence, the formulation in $\mathbf{H}$ of the definition of $G$-principal bundles, 1.2.6.5.1, in its version as *Cartan $G$-principal bundle*, remark 1.2.110, is immediate:
**Definition.** A **$G$-principal bundle** over $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is

- a morphism $P \to X$; with an $\infty$-action $\rho : P \times G \to P$;
- such that $P \to X$ is the $\infty$-quotient map $P \to P//G$.

In 5.1.11 below we discuss a precise formulation of this definition and the details of the following central statement about the relation between $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles and the intrinsic cohomology of $\mathbf{H}$ with coefficients in the delooping object $\mathbf{B}G$.

**Theorem.** There is equivalence of $\infty$-groupoids $G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \underset{\underset{\to}{\lim}}{\overset{\text{hofib}}{\underset{\to}{\overset{\leftarrow}{\simeq}}}} \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$ , where

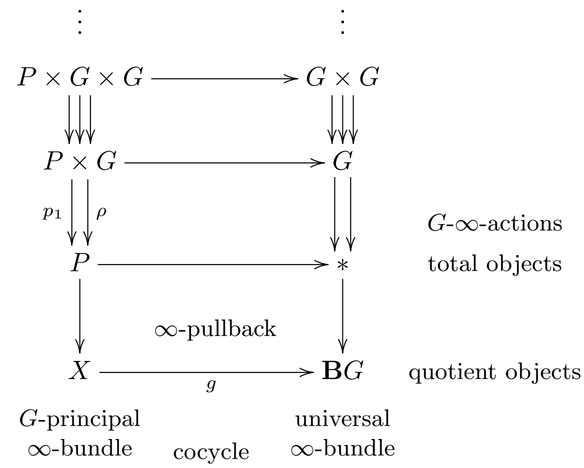
1. hofib sends a cocycle $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ to its homotopy fiber;
2. $\underrightarrow{\lim}$ sends an $\infty$-bundle to the map on $\infty$-quotients $X \simeq P//G \to *//G \simeq \mathbf{B}G$.

In particular, $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles are classified by the intrinsic cohomology of $\mathbf{H}$

$$G\mathrm{Bund}(X)/_{\sim} \simeq H^1(X,G) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \,.$$

Idea of Proof. Repeatedly apply two of the *Giraud-Rezk-Lurie axioms*, prop. 3.1.5, that characterize $\infty$-toposes:

1. every $\infty$-quotient is effective;
2. $\infty$-colimits are preserved by $\infty$-pullbacks. □




This gives a general abstract theory of principal $\infty$-bundles in every $\infty$-topos. We also have the following explicit presentation. **Definition** For $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{sSh}(C))$, and $X \in \mathrm{sSh}(C)_{\mathrm{lfib}}$, a *weakly $G$-principal simplicial bundle* is a $G$-action $\rho$ over $X$ such that the *principality morphism* $(\rho, p_1) : P \times G \to P \times_X P$ is a stalkwise weak equivalence.

Below in 5.1.11.4 we discuss that this construction gives a presentation of the $\infty$-groupoid of $G$-principal bundles as the nerve of the ordinary category of weakly $G$-principal simplicial bundles.

$$\mathrm{Nerve}\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{weakly } G\text{-principal} \\ \text{simplicial bundles} \\ \text{over } X \end{array} \right\} \simeq G\mathrm{Bund}(X)\,.$$

For the special case that $X$ is the terminal object over the site $C$ and when restricted from cocycle $\infty$-groupoids to sets of cohomology classes, this reproduces the statement of [JaLu04]. For our applications in **??**, in particular for applications in twisted cohomology, 5.1.13, it is important to have the general statement, where the base space of a principal $\infty$-bundle may be an arbitrary $\infty$-stack, and where we remember the $\infty$-groupoids of gauge transformations between them, instead of passing to their sets of equivalence classes.

The special case where the site $C$ is trivial, $C = *$, leads to the notion of principal $\infty$-bundles in $\infty$Grp. These are presented by certain bundles of simplicial sets. This we discuss below in 6.2.5.

**1.2.6.5.3 Associated and twisted $\infty$-bundles** The notion of $G$-principal bundle is a very special case of the following natural more general notion. For any $F$, an *$F$-fiber bundle* over some $X$ is a space $E \to X$ over $X$ such that there is a cover $U \to X$ over which it becomes equivalent as a bundle to the trivial $F$-bundle $U \times F \to U$.

Principal bundles themselves form but a small subclass of all possible fiber bundles over some space $X$. Even among $G$-fiber bundles the $G$-principal bundles are special, due to the constraint that the local trivialization has to respect the $G$-action on the fibers. However, every $F$-fiber bundle is *associated* to a $G$-principal bundle.

Given a representation $\rho : F \times G \to F$, the *$\rho$-associated* $F$-fiber bundle is the quotient $P \times_G F$ of the product $P \times F$ by the diagonal $G$-action. Conversely, using that the automorphism group $\mathrm{Aut}(F)$ of $F$ canonically acts on $F$, it is immediate that every $F$-fiber bundle is associated to an $\mathrm{Aut}(F)$-principal bundle (a statement which, of course, crucially uses the local triviality clause).

All of these constructions and statements have their straightforward generalizations to higher bundles, hence to *associated $\infty$-bundles*. Moreover, just as the theory of principal bundles *improves* in the context of $\infty$-toposes, as discussed above, so does the theory of associated bundles.

For notice that by the above classification theorem of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles, every $G$-$\infty$-action $\rho$ :

$V \times G \to G$ has a *classifying map*, which we will denote by the same symbol:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

One may observe now that this map $V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the *universal $\rho$-associated $V$-$\infty$-bundle*: for every $F$-fiber $\infty$-bundle $E \to X$ there is a morphism $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ such that $E \to X$ is the $\infty$-pullback of this map to $X$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} \\ X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

One implication of this is, by the universal property of the $\infty$-pullback, that *sections* $\sigma$ of the associated bundle

$$\begin{array}{c} E \\ {\scriptstyle \sigma}\uparrow\downarrow \\ X \end{array}$$

are equivalently lifts of its classifying map through the universal $\rho$-associated bundle

$$\Gamma_X(P \times_G V) := \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & & V//G \\ & \overset{\sigma}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} \\ X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} \right\} .$$

One observes that by local triviality and by the fact that $V$ is, by the above, the homotopy fiber of $V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$, it follows that locally over a cover $U \to X$ such a section is identified with a $V$-valued map $U \to V$. Conversely, globally a section of a $\rho$-associated bundle may be regarded as a *twisted* $V$-valued function.

While this is an elementary and familiar statement for ordinary associated bundles, this is where the theory of associated $\infty$-bundles becomes considerably richer than that of ordinary $\infty$-bundles: because here $V$ itself may be a higher stack, notably it may be a moduli $\infty$-stack $V = \mathbf{B}A$ for $A$-principal $\infty$-bundles. If so, maps $U \to V$ classify $A$-principal $\infty$-bundles locally over the cover $U$ of $X$, and so conversely the section $\sigma$ itself may globally be regarded as exhibiting a *twisted $A$-principal $\infty$-bundle* over $X$.

We can refine this statement by furthermore observing that the space of all sections as above is itself the hom-space in an $\infty$-topos, namely in the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$. This means that such sections are themselves cocycles in a structured nonabelian cohomology theory:

$$\Gamma_X(P \times_G V) := \mathbf{G}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g, \rho) .$$

This we may call the *$g$-twisted cohomology* of $X$ relative to $\rho$. We discuss below in 7.1 how traditional notions of twisted cohomology are special cases of this general notion, as are many further examples.

Now $\rho$, regarded as an object of the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ is not in general a connected object. This means that it is not in general the moduli object for some principal $\infty$-bundles over the slice. But instead, we find that we can naturally identify geometric incarnations of such cocycles in the form of *twisted $\infty$-bundles*.

**Theorem.** The $g$-twisted cohomology $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g, \rho)$ classifies *$P$-twisted $\infty$-bundles*: twisted $G$-equivariant

$\Omega V$-$\infty$-bundles on $P$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccl} Q & \longrightarrow & * & & & & P\text{-twisted } \Omega V\text{-principal } \infty\text{-bundle} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \\ P & \longrightarrow & V & \longrightarrow & * & & G\text{-principal } \infty\text{-bundle} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ X & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & V//G & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \mathbf{B}G & & \text{section of } \rho\text{-associated } V\text{-}\infty\text{-bundle} \end{array}$$

with $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ the composite.

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{sections of} \\ \rho\text{-associated } V\text{-}\infty\text{-bundle} \end{array} \right\} \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{c} g\text{-twisted } \Omega V\text{-cohomology} \\ \text{relative } \rho \end{array} \right\} \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{c} \Omega V\text{-}\infty\text{-bundles} \\ \text{twisted by } P \end{array} \right\}$$

A survey of classes of examples of twisted $\infty$-bundles classified by twisted cohomology is below in 7.1.1. Among them, in particular the classical notion of nonabelian *gerbe* [Gir71], and *2-gerbe* [Br94] is a special case.

Namely one see that a (nonabelian/Giraud-)*gerbe* on $X$ is nothing but a connected and 1-truncated object in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$. Similarly, a (nonabelian/Breen) *2-gerbe* over $X$ is just a connected and 2-truncated object in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$. Accordingly we may call a general connecte object in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ an *nonabelian $\infty$-gerbe* over $X$. We say that it is a *$G$-$\infty$-gerbe* if it is an $\mathrm{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$-associated $\infty$-bundle. We say its *band* is the underlying $\mathrm{Out}(G)$-principal $\infty$-bundle. For 1-gerbes and 2-gerbes this reproduces the classical notions.

In terms of this, the above says that $G$-$\infty$-gerbes *bound by a band* are classified by ($\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Out}(G)$)-twisted cohomology. This is the generalization of Giraud's original theorem. We discuss all this in detail below in 5.1.19.

### 1.2.7 Principal connections

**1.2.7.1 Parallel $n$-transport for low $n$** With a decent handle on principal $\infty$-bundles as described above, we now turn to the description of *connections on $\infty$-bundles*. It will turn out that the above cocycle-description of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles in terms of $\infty$-anafunctors $X \stackrel{\simeq}{\leftarrow} \hat{X} \stackrel{g}{\to} \mathbf{B}G$ has, under mild conditions, a natural generalization where $\mathbf{B}G$ is replaced by a (non-concrete) simplicial presheaf $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$, which we may think of as the $\infty$-groupoid of $\infty$-Lie algebra valued forms. This comes with a canonical map $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}G$ and an $\infty$-connection $\nabla$ on the $\infty$-bundle classified by $g$ is a lift $\nabla$ of $g$ in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \nearrow^{\nabla} & \downarrow \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array} .$$

In the language of $\infty$-stacks we may think of $\mathbf{B}G$ as the $\infty$-stack (on CartSp) or $\infty$-prestack (on SmoothMfd) $G\mathrm{TrivBund}(-)$ of *trivial* $G$-principal bundles, and of $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ correspondingly as the object $G\mathrm{TrivBund}_{\nabla}(-)$ of trivial $G$-principal bundles with (non-trivial) connection. In this sense the statement that $\infty$-connections are cocycles with coefficients in some $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is a tautology. The real questions are:

1. What is $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in concrete formulas?

2. Why are these formulas what they are? What is the general abstract concept of an $\infty$-connection? What are its defining abstract properties?

A comprehensive answer to the second question is provided by the general abstract concepts discussed in section 4. Here in this introduction we will not go into the full abstract theory, but using classical tools we get pretty close. What we describe is a generalization of the concept of *parallel transport* to *higher parallel transport*. As we shall see, this is naturally expressed in terms of $\infty$-anafunctors out of path $n$-groupoids. This reflects how the full abstract theory arises in the context of an $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos that comes canonically with a notion of fundamental $\infty$-groupoid.

Below we begin the discussion of $\infty$-connections by reviewing the classical theory of connections on a bundle in a way that will make its generalization to higher connections relatively straightforward. In an analogous way we can then describe certain classes of connections on a 2-bundle – subsuming the notion of connection on a bundle gerbe. With that in hand we then revisit the discussion of connections on ordinary bundles. By associating to each bundle with connection its corresponding *curvature 2-bundle with connection* we obtain a more refined description of connections on bundles, one that is naturally adapted to the construction of curvature characteristic forms in the Chern-Weil homomorphism. This turns out to be the kind of formulation of connections on an $\infty$-bundle that drops out of the general abstract theory. In classical terms, its full formulation involves the description of circle $n$-bundles with connection in terms of Deligne cohomology and the description of the $\infty$-groupoid of $\infty$-Lie algebra valued forms in terms of dg-algebra homomorphisms. The combination of these two aspects yields naturally an explicit model for the Chern-Weil homomorphism and its generalization to higher bundles.

Taken together, these constructions allow us to express a good deal of the general $\infty$-Chern-Weil theory with classical tools. As an example, we describe how the classical Čech-Deligne cocycle construction of the refined Chern-Weil homomorphism drops out from these constructions.

**1.2.7.1.1 Connections on a principal bundle** There are different equivalent definitions of the classical notion of a connection. One that is useful for our purposes is that a connection $\nabla$ on a $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$ is a rule $\mathrm{tra}_\nabla$ for *parallel transport* along paths: a rule that assigns to each path $\gamma : [0,1] \to X$ a morphism $tra_\nabla(\gamma) : P_x \to P_y$ between the fibers of the bundle above the endpoints of these paths, in a compatible way:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} P_x & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tra}_\nabla(\gamma)} & P_y & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tra}_\nabla(\gamma')} & P_z \\ & & & & \\ x & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & y & \xrightarrow{\gamma'} & z \end{array} \qquad\qquad \begin{array}{c} P \\ \downarrow \\ X \end{array}$$

In order to formalize this, we introduce a (diffeological) Lie groupoid to be called the *path groupoid* of $X$. (Constructions and results in this section are from [ScWa07].

**Definition 1.2.111.** For $X$ a smooth manifold let $[I, X]$ be the set of smooth functions $I = [0,1] \to X$. For $U$ a Cartesian space, we say that *a $U$-parameterized smooth family of points in* $[I, X]$ is a smooth map $U \times I \to X$. (This makes $[I, X]$ a diffeological space).

Say a path $\gamma \in [I, X]$ has *sitting instants* if it is constant in a neighbourhood of the boundary $\partial I$. Let $[I, P]_{\mathrm{si}} \subset [I, P]$ be the subset of paths with sitting instants.

Let $[I, X]_{\mathrm{si}} \to [I, X]_{\mathrm{si}}^{\mathrm{th}}$ be the projection to the set of equivalence classes where two paths are regarded as equivalent if they are cobounded by a smooth thin homotopy.

Say a $U$-parameterized smooth family of points in $[I, X]_{\mathrm{si}}^{\mathrm{th}}$ is one that comes from a $U$-family of representatives in $[I, X]_{\mathrm{si}}$ under this projection. (This makes also $[I, X]_{\mathrm{si}}^{\mathrm{th}}$ a diffeological space.)

The passage to the subset and quotient $[I, X]_{\mathrm{si}}^{\mathrm{th}}$ of the set of all smooth paths in the above definition is essentially the minimal adjustment to enforce that the concatenation of smooth paths at their endpoints defines the composition operation in a groupoid.

**Definition 1.2.112.** The *path groupoid* $\mathbf{P}_1(X)$ is the groupoid

$$\mathbf{P}_1(X) = ([I,X]^{th}_{\mathrm{si}} \rightrightarrows X)$$

with source and target maps given by endpoint evaluation and composition given by concatenation of classes $[\gamma]$ of paths along any orientation preserving *diffeomorphism* $[0,1] \to [0,2] \simeq [0,1] \coprod_{1,0} [0,1]$ of any of their representatives

$$[\gamma_2] \circ [\gamma_1] : [0,1] \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} [0,1] \coprod_{1,0} [0,1] \stackrel{(\gamma_2,\gamma_1)}{\to} X \,.$$

This becomes an internal groupoid in diffeological spaces with the above $U$-families of smooth paths. We regard it as a groupoid-valued presheaf, an object in $[CartSp^{op}, \mathrm{Grpd}]$:

$$\mathbf{P}_1(X) : U \mapsto (\mathrm{SmoothMfd}(U \times I, X)^{\mathrm{th}}_{\mathrm{si}} \rightrightarrows \mathrm{SmoothMfd}(U,X))\,.$$

Observe now that for $G$ a Lie group and $\mathbf{B}G$ its delooping Lie groupoid discussed above, a smooth functor $\mathrm{tra} : \mathbf{P}_1(X) \to \mathbf{B}G$ sends each (thin-homotopy class of a) path to an element of the group $G$

$$\mathrm{tra} : (x \stackrel{[\gamma]}{\to} y) \mapsto (\bullet \stackrel{\mathrm{tra}(\gamma) \in G}{\to} \bullet)$$

such that composite paths map to products of group elements :

$$\mathrm{tra} : \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & y & \\ {}^{[\gamma]}\nearrow & \| & \searrow^{[\gamma']} \\ x & \xrightarrow{[\gamma'\circ\gamma]} & z \end{array} \right\} \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & * & \\ {}^{\mathrm{tra}(\gamma)}\nearrow & \| & \searrow^{\mathrm{tra}(\gamma')} \\ * & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tra}(\gamma')\mathrm{tra}(\gamma)} & * \end{array} \right\}.$$

and such that $U$-families of smooth paths induce smooth maps $U \to G$ of elements.

There is a classical construction that yields such an assignment: the *parallel transport* of a *Lie-algebra valued 1-form.*

**Definition 1.2.113.** Suppose $A \in \Omega^1(X, \mathfrak{g})$ is a degree-1 differential form on $X$ with values in the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ of $G$. Then its parallel transport is the smooth functor

$$\mathrm{tra}_A : \mathbf{P}_1(X) \to \mathbf{B}G$$

given by

$$[\gamma] \mapsto P\exp(\int_{[0,1]} \gamma^* A) \ \in G\,,$$

where the group element on the right is defined to be the value at 1 of the unique solution $f : [0,1] \to G$ of the differential equation

$$d_{\mathrm{dR}} f + \gamma^* A \wedge f = 0$$

for the boundary condition $f(0) = e$.

**Proposition 1.2.114.** *This construction $A \mapsto \mathrm{tra}_A$ induces an equivalence of categories*

$$[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd}](\mathbf{P}_1(X), \mathbf{B}G) \simeq \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}(X)\,,$$

*where on the left we have the hom-groupoid of groupoid-valued presheaves, and where on the right we have the* groupoid of Lie-algebra valued 1-forms, *whose*

- *objects are 1-forms $A \in \Omega^1(X, \mathfrak{g})$,*
- *morphisms $g : A_1 \to A_2$ are labeled by smooth functions $g \in C^\infty(X,G)$ such that $A_2 = g^{-1} A g + g^{-1} dg$.*

This equivalence is natural in $X$, so that we obtain another smooth groupoid.

**Definition 1.2.115.** Define $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Grpd}$ to be the (generalized) Lie groupoid

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} : U \mapsto [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd}](\mathbf{P}_1(-), \mathbf{B}G)$$

whose $U$-parameterized smooth families of groupoids form the groupoid of Lie-algebra valued 1-forms on $U$.

This equivalence in particular subsumes the classical facts that parallel transport $\gamma \mapsto P\exp(\int_{[0,1]} \gamma^* A)$

- is invariant under orientation preserving reparameterizations of paths;
- sends reversed paths to inverses of group elements.

**Observation 1.2.116.** There is an evident natural smooth functor $X \to \mathbf{P}_1(X)$ that includes points in $X$ as constant paths. This induces a natural morphism $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}G$ that forgets the 1-forms.

**Definition 1.2.117.** Let $P \to X$ be a $G$-principal bundle that corresponds to a cocycle $g : C(U) \to \mathbf{B}G$ under the construction discussed above. Then a *connection* $\nabla$ on $P$ is a lift $\nabla$ of the cocycle through $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}G$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ C(U) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

**Observation 1.2.118.** This is equivalent to the traditional definitions.

A morphism $\nabla : C(U) \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is

- on each $U_i$ a 1-form $A_i \in \Omega^1(U_i, \mathfrak{g})$;
- on each $U_i \cap U_j$ a function $g_{ij} \in C^\infty(U_i \cap U_j, G)$;

such that

- on each $U_i \cap U_j$ we have $A_j = g_{ij}^{-1}(A + d_{\mathrm{dR}})g_{ij}$;
- on each $U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k$ we have $g_{ij} \cdot g_{jk} = g_{ik}$.

**Definition 1.2.119.** Let $[I, X]^{\mathrm{th}}_{\mathrm{si}} \to [I, X]^h$ the projection onto the full quotient by smooth homotopy classes of paths. Write $\int_1(X) = ([I, X]^h \rightrightarrows X)$ for the smooth groupoid defined as $\mathbf{P}_1(X)$, but where instead of thin homotopies, all homotopies are divided out.

**Proposition 1.2.120.** *The above restricts to a natural equivalence*

$$[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd}](\textstyle\int_1(X), \mathbf{B}G) \simeq \flat\mathbf{B}G\,,$$

*where on the left we have the hom-groupoid of groupoid-valued presheaves, and on the right we have the full sub-groupoid* $\flat\mathbf{B}G \subset \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ *on those* $\mathfrak{g}$*-valued differential forms whose curvature 2-form* $F_A = d_{\mathrm{dR}}A + [A \wedge A]$ *vanishes.*

*A connection* $\nabla$ *is* flat *precisely if it factors through the inclusion* $\flat\mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

For the purposes of Chern-Weil theory we want a good way to extract the curvature 2-form in a general abstract way from a cocycle $\nabla : X \stackrel{\simeq}{\leftarrow} C(U) \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$. In order to do that, we first need to discuss connections on 2-bundles.

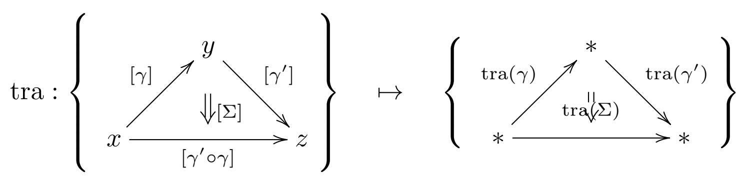
**1.2.7.1.2 Connections on a principal 2-bundle** There is an evident higher dimensional generalization of the definition of connections on 1-bundles in terms of functors out of the path groupoid discussed above. This we discuss now. We will see that, however, the obvious generalization captures not quite all 2-connections. But we will also see a way to recode 1-connections in terms of flat 2-connections. And that recoding then is the right general abstract perspective on connections, which generalizes to principal $\infty$-bundles and in fact which in the full theory follows from first principles.

(Constructions and results in this section are from [ScWa08], [ScWa08].)

**Definition 1.2.121.** The path *path 2-groupoid* $\mathbf{P}_2(X)$ is the smooth strict 2-groupoid analogous to $\mathbf{P}_1(X)$, but with nontrivial 2-morphisms given by thin homotopy-classes of disks $\Delta^2_{Diff} \to X$ with sitting instants.

In analogy to the projection $\mathbf{P}_1(X) \to \int_1(X)$ there is a projection to $\mathbf{P}_2(X) \to \int_2(X)$ to the 2-groupoid obtained by dividing out full homotopy of disks, relative boundary.

We want to consider 2-functors out of the path 2-groupoid into connected 2-groupoids of the form $\mathbf{B}G$, for $G$ a *2-group*, def. 1.2.81. A smooth 2-functor $\int_2(X) \to \mathbf{B}G$ now assigns information also to surfaces




and thus encodes *higher parallel transport*.

**Proposition 1.2.122.** *There is a natural equivalence of 2-groupoids*

$$[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, 2\mathrm{Grpd}](\textstyle\int_2(X), \mathbf{B}G) \simeq \flat\mathbf{B}G$$

*where on the right we have the 2-groupoid of Lie 2-algebra valued forms] whose*

- *objects are pairs $A \in \Omega^1(X, \mathfrak{g}_1)$, $B \in \Omega^2(X, \mathfrak{g}_2)$ such that the 2-form curvature*

$$F_2(A, B) := d_{\mathrm{dR}} A + [A \wedge A] + \delta_* B$$

  *and the 3-form curvature*

$$F_3(A, B) := d_{\mathrm{dR}} B + [A \wedge B]$$

  *vanish.*

- *morphisms $(\lambda, a) : (A, B) \to (A', B')$ are pairs $a \in \Omega^1(X, \mathfrak{g}_2)$, $\lambda \in C^\infty(X, G_1)$ such that $A' = \lambda A \lambda^{-1} + \lambda d \lambda^{-1} + \delta_* a$ and $B' = \lambda(B) + d_{\mathrm{dR}} a + [A \wedge a]$*

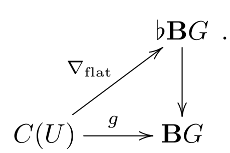
- *The description of 2-morphisms we leave to the reader (see [ScWa08]).*

As before, this is natural in $X$, so that we that we get a presheaf of 2-groupoids

$$\flat\mathbf{B}G : U \mapsto [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, 2\mathrm{Grpd}](\textstyle\int_2(U), \mathbf{B}G)\,.$$

**Proposition 1.2.123.** *If in the above definition we use $\mathbf{P}_2(X)$ instead of $\int_2(X)$, we obtain the same 2-groupoid, except that the 3-form curvature $F_3(A, B)$ is not required to vanish.*

**Definition 1.2.124.** Let $P \to X$ be a $G$-principal 2-bundle classified by a cocycle $C(U) \to \mathbf{B}G$. Then a structure of a *flat connection on a 2-bundle* $\nabla$ on it is a lift



For $G = \mathbf{B}A$, a *connection on a 2-bundle* (not necessarily flat) is a lift

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & [\mathbf{P}_2(-), \mathbf{B}^2 A] \\ & \nearrow^{\nabla_{\mathrm{flat}}} & \downarrow \\ C(U) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

We do not state the last definition for general Lie 2-groups $G$. The reason is that for general $G$ 2-anafunctors out of $\mathbf{P}_2(X)$ do not produce the fully general notion of 2-connections that we are after, but yield a special case in between flatness and non-flatness: the case where precisely the 2-form curvature-components vanish, while the 3-form curvature part is unrestricted. This case is important in itself and discussed in detail below. Only for $G$ of the form $\mathbf{B}A$ does the 2-form curvature necessarily vanish anyway, so that in this case the definition by morphisms out of $\mathbf{P}_2(X)$ happens to already coincide with the proper general one. This serves in the following theorem as an illustration for the toolset that we are exposing, but for the purposes of introducing the full notion of $\infty$-Chern-Weil theory we will rather focus on flat 2-connections, and then show below how using these one does arrive at a functorial definition of 1-connections that does generalize to the fully general definition of $\infty$-connections.

**Proposition 1.2.125.** *Let $\{U_i \to X\}$ be a good open cover, a cocycle $C(U) \to [\mathbf{P}_2(-), \mathbf{B}^2 A]$ is a cocycle in Čech-Deligne cohomology in degree 3.*

*Moreover, we have a natural equivalence of bicategories*

$$[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, 2\mathrm{Grpd}](C(U), [\mathbf{P}_2(-), \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)]) \simeq U(1)\mathrm{Gerb}_{\nabla}(X)\,,$$

*where on the right we have the bicategory of $U(1)$-bundle gerbes with connection [Gaj97].*

*In particular the equivalence classes of cocycles form the degree-3 ordinary differential cohomology of $X$:*

$$H^3_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \pi_0([C(U), [\mathbf{P}_2(-), \mathbf{B}^2 U(1))\,.$$

A cocycle as above naturally corresponds to a 2-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2 U(1) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{P}_2(X) & & \end{array}$$

The value of this on 2-morphisms in $\mathbf{P}_2(X)$ is the higher parallel transport of the connection on the 2-bundle. This appears for instance in the action functional of the sigma model that describes strings charged under a Kalb-Ramond field.

The following example of a flat nonabelian 2-bundle is very degenerate as far as 2-bundles go, but does contain in it the seed of a full understanding of connections on 1-bundles.

**Definition 1.2.126.** For $G$ a Lie group, its inner automorphism 2-group $\mathrm{INN}(G)$ is as a groupoid the universal $G$-bundle $\mathbf{E}G$, but regarded as a 2-group with the group structure coming from the crossed module $[G \stackrel{Id}{\to} G]$.

The depiction of the delooping 2-groupoid $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G)$ is

$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & * & \\ {}^{g_1}\nearrow & \Downarrow k & \searrow^{g_2} \\ * & \xrightarrow[k g_2 g_1]{} & * \end{array} \;\middle|\; g_1, g_2 \in G, k \in G \right\}.$$

This is the Lie 2-group whose Lie 2-algebra $\mathrm{inn}(\mathfrak{g})$ is the one whose Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra is the Weil algebra of $\mathfrak{g}$.

**Example 1.2.127.** By the above theorem we have that there is a bijection of sets

$$\{\textstyle\int_2(X) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G)\} \simeq \Omega^1(X, \mathfrak{g})$$

of flat $\mathrm{INN}(G)$-valued 2-connections and Lie-algebra valued 1-forms. Under the identifications of this theorem this identification works as follows:

- the 1-form component of the 2-connection is $A$;
- the vanishing of the 2-form component of the 2-curvature $F_2(A, B) = F_A + B$ identifies the 2-form component of the 2-connection with the curvature 2-form, $B = -F_A$;
- the vanishing of the 3-form component of the 3-curvature $F_3(A, B) = dB + [A \wedge B] = d_A + [A \wedge F_A]$ is the Bianchi identity satisfied by any curvature 2-form.

This means that 2-connections with values in $\mathrm{INN}(G)$ actually model 1-connections *and* keep track of their curvatures. Using this we see in the next section a general abstract definition of connections on 1-bundles that naturally supports the Chern-Weil homomorphism.

**1.2.7.1.3 Curvature characteristics of 1-bundles** We now describe connections on 1-bundles in terms of their *flat curvature 2-bundles* .

Throughout this section $G$ is a Lie group, $\mathbf{B}G$ its delooping 2-groupoid and $\mathrm{INN}(G)$ its inner automorphism 2-group and $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G)$ the corresponding delooping Lie 2-groupoid.

**Definition 1.2.128.** Define the smooth groupoid $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}} \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd}]$ as the pullback

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}} = \mathbf{B}G \times_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G)} \flat\mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G)\,.$$

This is the groupoid-valued presheaf which assigns to $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the groupoid whose objects are commuting diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int_2(U) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G) \end{array} \quad ,$$

where the vertical morphisms are the canonical inclusions discussed above, and whose morphisms are compatible pairs of natural transformations

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \underset{\Downarrow}{\rightrightarrows} & \mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int_2(U) & \underset{\Downarrow}{\rightrightarrows} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G) \end{array} \quad ,$$

of the horizontal morphisms.

By the above theorems, we have over any $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ that

- an object in $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}(U)$ is a 1-form $A \in \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{g})$;
- amorphism $A_1 \stackrel{(g,a)}{\to} A_2$ is labeled by a function $g \in C^\infty(U, G)$ and a 1-form $a \in \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{g})$ such that

  $$A_2 = g^{-1} A_1 g + g^{-1} dg + a\,.$$

  Notice that this can always be uniquely solved for $a$, so that the genuine information in this morphism is just the data given by $g$.

- ther are *no* nontrivial 2-morphisms, even though $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G)$ is a 2-groupoid: since $\mathbf{B}G$ is just a 1-groupoid this is enforced by the commutativity of the above diagram.

From this it is clear that

**Proposition 1.2.129.** *The projection* $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}} \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}G$ *is a weak equivalence.*

So $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}$ is a resolution of $\mathbf{B}G$. We will see that it is the resoluton that supports 2-anafunctors out of $\mathbf{B}G$ which represent curvature characteristic classes.

**Definition 1.2.130.** For $X \stackrel{\simeq}{\leftarrow} C(U) \to \mathbf{B}U(1)$ a cocycle for a $U(1)$-principal bundle $P \to X$, we call a lift $\nabla_{\mathrm{ps}}$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}} \\ & {}^{\nabla_{\mathrm{ps}}}\nearrow & \downarrow \\ C(U) & \stackrel{g}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

a *pseudo-connection* on $P$.

Pseudo-connections in themselves are not very interesting. But notice that every ordinary connection is in particular a pseudo-connection and we have an inclusion morphism of smooth groupoids

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}\,.$$

This inclusion plays a central role in the theory. The point is that while $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}$ is such a boring extension of $\mathbf{B}G$ that it is actually equivalent to $\mathbf{B}G$, there is no inclusion of $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ into $\mathbf{B}G$, but there is into $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}$. This is the kind of situation that resolutions are needed for.

It is useful to look at some details for the case that $G$ is an abelian group such as the circle group $U(1)$. In this abelian case the 2-groupoids $\mathbf{B}U(1)$, $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$, $\mathbf{B}INN(U(1))$, etc., that so far we noticed are given by crossed complexes are actually given by ordinary chain complexes: we write

$$\Xi : \mathrm{Ch}^+_\bullet \to s\mathrm{Ab} \to \mathrm{KanCplx}$$

for the Dold-Kan correspondence map that identifies chain complexes with simplicial abelian group and then considers their underlying Kan complexes. Using this map we have the following identifications of our 2-groupoid valued presheaves with complexes of group-valued sheaves

$$\mathbf{B}U(1) = \Xi[C^\infty(-,U(1)) \to 0]$$

$$\mathbf{B}^2U(1) = \Xi[C^\infty(-,U(1)) \to 0 \to 0]$$

$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}U(1) = \Xi[C^\infty(-,U(1)) \stackrel{\mathrm{Id}}{\to} C^\infty(-,U(1)) \to 0]\,.$$

**Observation 1.2.131.** For $G = A$ an abelian group, in particular the circle group, there is a canonical morphism $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(U(1)) \to \mathbf{B}\mathbf{B}U(1)$.

On the level of chain complexes this is the evident chain map

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} [C^\infty(-,U(1)) & \stackrel{Id}{\longrightarrow} & C^\infty(-,U(1)) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ [C^\infty(-,U(1)) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0] \end{array}\,.$$

On the level of 2-groupoids this is the map that forgets the labels on the 1-morphisms

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & * & \\ {}^{g_1}\nearrow & \Downarrow k & \searrow^{g_2} \\ * & \xrightarrow{k g_2 g_1} & * \end{array} \right\} \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & * & \\ {}^{\mathrm{Id}}\nearrow & \Downarrow k & \searrow^{\mathrm{Id}} \\ * & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Id}} & * \end{array} \right\}$$

In terms of this map $\mathrm{INN}(U(1))$ serves to interpolate between the single and the double delooping of $U(1)$. In fact the sequence of 2-functors

$$\mathbf{B}U(1) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(U(1)) \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$$

is a model for the universal $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-principal 2-bundle

$$\mathbf{B}U(1) \to \mathbf{E}\mathbf{B}U(1) \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)\,.$$

This happens to be an exact sequence of 2-groupoids. Abstractly, what really matters is rather that it is a fiber sequence, meaning that it is exact in the correct sense inside the $\infty$-category Smooth$\infty$Grpd. For our purposes it is however relevant that this particular model is exact also in the ordinary sense in that we have an ordinary pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}U(1) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(U(1)) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \end{array} ,$$

exhibitng $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ as the kernel of $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(U(1)) \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$.

We shall be interested in the pasting composite of this diagram with the one defining $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}$ over a domain $U$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} U & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}U(1) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int_2(U) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(U(1)) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \end{array} ,$$

The total outer diagram appearing this way is a component of the following (generalized) Lie 2-groupoid.

**Definition 1.2.132.** Set

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1) := * \times_{\mathbf{B}^2U(1)} \flat\mathbf{B}^2U(1)\,.$$

Over any $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ this is the 2-groupoid whose objects are sets of diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int_2(U) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \end{array} .$$

This are equivalently just morphisms $\int_2(U) \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$, which by the above theorems we may identify with closed 2-forms $B \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(U)$.

The morphisms $B_1 \to B_2$ in $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ over $U$ are compatible pseudonatural transformations of the horizontal morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \overset{\longrightarrow}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\Downarrow}} & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int_2(U) & \overset{\longrightarrow}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\Downarrow}} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(G) \end{array} ,$$

which means that they are pseudonatural transformations of the bottom morphism whose components over the points of $U$ vanish. These identify with 1-forms $\lambda \in \Omega^1(U)$ such that $B_2 = B_1 + d_{\mathrm{dR}}\lambda$. Finally the 2-morphisms would be modifications of these, but the commutativity of the above diagram constrais these to be trivial.

In summary this shows that

**Proposition 1.2.133.** *Under the Dold-Kan correspondence $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ is the sheaf of truncated de Rham complexes*

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1) = \Xi[\Omega^1(-) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)]\,.$$

**Corollary 1.2.134.** *Equivalence classes of 2-anafunctors*

$$X \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$$

*are canonically in bijection with the degree 2 de Rham cohomology of $X$.*

Notice that – while every globally defined closed 2-form $B \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$ defines such a 2-anafunctor – not every such 2-anafunctor comes from a globally defined closed 2-form. Some of them assign closed 2-forms $B_i$ to patches $U_1$, that differ by differentials $B_j - B_i = d_{\mathrm{dR}}\lambda_{ij}$ of 1-forms $\lambda_{ij}$ on double overlaps, which themselves satisfy on triple intersections the cocycle condition $\lambda_{ij} + \lambda_{jk} = \lambda_{ik}$. But (using a partition of unity) these non-globally defined forms are always equivalent to globally defined ones.

This simple technical point turns out to play a role in the abstract definition of connections on $\infty$-bundles: generally, for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the cocycles given by globally defined forms in $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^nU(1)$ constitute curvature characteristic forms of *genuine* connections. The non-globally defined forms *also* constitute curvature invariants, but of pseudo-connections. The way the abstract theory finds the genuine connections inside all pseudo-connections is by the fact that we may find for each cocycle in $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^nU(1)$ an equivalent one that does comes from a globally defined form.

**Observation 1.2.135.** There is a canonical 2-anafunctor $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1^{\mathrm{dR}} : \mathbf{B}U(1) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{B}U(1) & & \end{array} \;,$$

where the top morphism is given by forming the -composite with the universal $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-principal 2-bundle, as described above.

For emphasis, notice that this span is governed by a presheaf of diagrams that over $U \in CartSp$ is of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} U & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}U(1) & & \text{transition function}\;. \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ \int_2(U) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(U) & & \text{connection} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ \int_2(U) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) & & \text{curvature} \end{array}$$

The top morphisms are the components of the presheaf $\mathbf{B}U(1)$. The top squares are those of $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}}$. Forming the bottom square is forming the bottom morphism, which necessarily satifies the constraint that makes it a components of $\flat\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$.

The interpretation of the stages is as indicated in the diagram:

1. the top morphism is the transition function of the underlying bundle;

2. the middle morphism is a choice of (pseudo-)connection on that bundle;
3. the bottom morphism picks up the curvature of this connection.

We will see that full $\infty$-Chern-Weil theory is governed by a slight refinement of presheaves of essentially this kind of diagram. We will also see that the three stage process here is really an incarnation of the computation of a connecting homomorphism, reflecting the fact that behind the scenes the notion of *curvature* is exhibited as the obstruction cocycle to lifts from bare bundles to flat bundles.

**Observation 1.2.136.** For $X \stackrel{\simeq}{\leftarrow} C(U) \stackrel{g}{\to} \mathbf{B}U(1)$ the cocycle for a $U(1)$-principal bundle as described above, the composition of 2-anafunctors of $g$ with $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}$ yields a cocycle for a 2-form $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(g)$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & \stackrel{\nabla}{\nearrow} & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \\ C(V) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ C(U) & \stackrel{g}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}U(1) & & \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ X & & & & \end{array} .$$

If we take $\{U_i \to X\}$ to be a good open cover, then we may assume $V = U$. We know we can always find a pseudo-connection $C(V) \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}}$ that is actually a genuine connection on a bundle in that it factors through the inclusion $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}}$ as indicated.

The corresponding total map $c_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(g)$ represented by $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(\nabla)$ is the cocycle for the curvature 2-form of this connection. This represents the first Chern class of the bundle in de Rham cohomology.

For $X, A$ smooth 2-groupoids, write $\mathbf{H}(X, A)$ for the 2-groupoid of 2-anafunctors between them.

**Corollary 1.2.137.** *Let $H^2_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1))$ be a choice of one closed 2-form representative for each degree-2 de Rham cohomology-class of $X$. Then the pullback groupoid $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}U(1))$ in*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, \mathbf{B}U(1)) & \longrightarrow & H^2_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1)) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}U(1)) \simeq U(1)\mathrm{Bund}(X) & & \end{array}$$

*is equivalent to disjoint union of groupoids of $U(1)$-bundles with connection whose curvatures are the chosen 2-form representatives.*

**1.2.7.1.4 Circle $n$-bundles with connection** For $A$ an abelian group there is a straightforward generalization of the above constructions to $(G = \mathbf{B}^{n-1}A)$-principal $n$-bundles with connection for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. We spell out the ingredients of the construction in a way analogous to the above discussion. A first-principles derivation of the objects we consider here below in 6.4.16.

This is content that appeared partly in [SSS09c], [FSS10]. We restrict attention to the circle $n$-group $G = \mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$.

There is a familiar traditional presentation of ordinary differential cohomology in terms of Cech-Deligne cohomology. We briefly recall how this works and then indicate how this presentation can be derived along the above lines as a presentation of circle $n$-bundles with connection.

**Definition 1.2.138.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the *Deligne-Beilinson complex* is the chain complex of sheaves (on CartSp for our purposes here) of abelian groups given as follows

$$\mathbb{Z}(n+1)^\infty_D = \left[ \begin{array}{ccccccccc} C^\infty(-,\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^1(-) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^{n-1}(-) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^n(-) \\ n & & n-1 & & \cdots & & 1 & & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

This definition goes back to [Del71] [Bel85]. The complex is similar to the $n$-fold shifted de Rham complex, up to two important differences.

- In degree $n$ we have the sheaf of $U(1)$-valued functions, not of $\mathbb{R}$-valued functions (= 0-forms). The action of the de Rham differential on this is often written $d\log : C^\infty(-,U(1)) \to \Omega^1(-)$. But if we think of $U(1) \simeq \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$ then it is just the ordinary de Rham differential applied to any representative in $C^\infty(-,\mathbb{R})$ of an element in $C^\infty(-,\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})$.
- In degree 0 we do not have closed differential $n$-forms (as one would have for the de Rham complex shifted into non-negative degree), but all $n$-forms.

As before, we may use of the Dold-Kan correspondence $\Xi : \mathrm{Ch}^+_\bullet \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{sAb} \stackrel{U}{\to} \mathrm{sSet}$ to identify sheaves of chain complexes with simplicial sheaves. We write

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} := \Xi\, \mathbb{Z}(n+1)^\infty_D$$

for the simplicial presheaf corresponding to the Deligne complex.

Then for $\{U_i \to X\}$ a good open cover, the Deligne cohomology of $X$ in degree $(n+1)$ is

$$H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) = \pi_0[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}).$$

Further using the Dold-Kan correspondence, this is equivalently the cohomology of the Čech-Deligne double complex. A cocycle in degre $(n+1)$ then is a tuple

$$(g_{i_0,\cdots,i_n}, \cdots, A_{ijk}, B_{ij}, C_i)$$

with

- $C_i \in \Omega^n(U_i)$;
- $B_{ij} \in \Omega^{n-1}(U_i \cap U_j)$;
- $A_{ijk} \in \Omega^{n-2}(U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k)$
- and so on...
- $g_{i_0,\cdots,i_n} \in C^\infty(U_{i_0} \cap \cdots \cap U_{i_n}, U(1))$

satisfying the cocycle condition

$$(d_{\mathrm{dR}} + (-1)^{deg}\delta)(g_{i_0,\cdots,i_n}, \cdots, A_{ijk}, B_{ij}, C_i) = 0,$$

where $\delta = \sum_i (-1)^i p_i^*$ is the alternating sum of the pullback of forms along the face maps of the Čech nerve.

This is a sequence of conditions of the form

- $C_i - C_j = dB_{ij}$;

- $B_{ij} - B_{ik} + B_{jk} = dA_{ijk}$;
- and so on
- $(\delta g)_{i_0, \cdots, i_{n+1}} = 0$.

For low $n$ we have seen these conditions in the dicussion of line bundles and of line 2-bundles (bundle gerbes) with connection above. Generally, for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, this is Čech-cocycle data for a *circle $n$-bundle* with connection, where

- $C_i$ are the local connection $n$-forms;
- $g_{i_0, \cdots, i_n}$ is the transition function of the circle $n$-bundle.

We now indicate how the Deligne complex may be derived from differential refinement of cocycles for circle $n$-bundles along the lines of the above discussions. To that end, write

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}} := \Xi\, U(1)[n]\,,$$

for the simplicial presheaf given under the Dold-Kan correspondence by the chain complex

$$U(1)[n] = (C^\infty(-, U(1)) \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0)$$

with the sheaf represented by $U(1)$ in degree $n$.

**Proposition 1.2.139.** *For $\{U_i \to X\}$ an open cover of a smooth manifold $X$ and $C(\{U_i\})$ its Čech nerve, $\infty$-anafunctors*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

*are in natural bijection with tuples of smooth functions*

$$g_{i_0 \cdots i_n} : U_{i_0} \cap \cdots \cap U_{i_n} \to \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$$

*satisfying*

$$(\partial g)_{i_0 \cdots i_{n+1}} := \sum_{k=0}^{n} g_{i_0 \cdots i_{k-1} i_k \cdot i_n} = 0\,,$$

*that is, with cocycles in degree-n Čech cohomology on $U$ with values in $U(1)$.*

*Natural transformations*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(\{U_i\}) \cdot \Delta^1 & \xrightarrow{(g \stackrel{\lambda}{\to} g')} & \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\ X \cdot \Delta^1 & & \end{array}$$

*are in natural bijection with tuples of smooth functions*

$$\lambda_{i_0 \cdots i_{n-1}} : U_{i_0} \cap \cdots \cap U_{i_{n-1}} \to \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$$

*such that*

$$g'_{i_0 \cdots i_n} - g_{i_0 \cdots i_n} = (\delta \lambda)_{i_0 \cdots i_n}\,,$$

*that is, with Čech coboundaries.*

The $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ classified by such a cocycle according to 1.2.6.4 we call a *circle $n$-bundle*. For $n = 1$ this reproduces the ordinary $U(1)$-principal bundles that we considered before in 1.2.6.1, for $n = 2$ the bundle gerbes considered in 1.2.6.2 and for $n = 3$ the bundle 2-gerbes discussed in 1.2.6.3.

To equip these circle $n$-bundles with connections, we consider the differential refinements of $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}}$ to be denoted $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}}$, $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ and $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)$.

**Definition 1.2.140.** Write

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}} := \Xi \left( \Omega^1(-) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^2(-) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \cdots \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \right)$$

– the *truncated de Rham complex* – and

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}} = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} (-) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int(-) & \rightarrowtail & \mathbf{B}^n \mathrm{INN}(U(1)) \end{array} \right\} = \Xi \left( \begin{array}{ccccccc} C^\infty(-, \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}) & \rightarrowtail & \Omega^1(-) & \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\longrightarrow} & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \Omega^n(-) \\ \oplus & & \nearrow^{\mathrm{Id}} & & & & \nearrow^{\mathrm{Id}} \\ \Omega^1(-) & \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\longrightarrow} & \cdots & \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\longrightarrow} & \Omega^n(-) & & \end{array} \right)$$

and

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} = \Xi \left( C^\infty(-, \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^1(-) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^2(-) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \cdots \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^n(-) \right)$$

– the *Deligne complex*, def. 1.2.138.

**Observation 1.2.141.** We have a pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}} & \stackrel{\mathrm{curv}}{\longrightarrow} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n-1} U(1) \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{B}^n U(1) & & \end{array}$$

in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{op}, \mathrm{sSet}]$. This models an $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n-1} U(1) \end{array}$$

in the $\infty$-topos Smooth$\infty$Grpd, and hence for each smooth manifold $X$ (in particular) a homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n-1} U(1)) \end{array} .$$

We write

$$H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) := \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$$

for the group of cohomology classes on $X$ with coefficients in $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$. On these cohomology classes the above homotopy pullback diagram reduces to the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ H^{n+1}(X,\mathbb{Z}) & & & & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\ & & H^{n+1}(X,\mathbb{R}) \simeq H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) & & \end{array}$$

that had appeared above in 1.1.2.4. But notice that the homotopy pullback of the cocycle $n$-groupoids contains more information than this projection to cohomology classes.

Objects in $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$ are modeled by $\infty$-anafunctors $X \overset{\simeq}{\twoheadleftarrow} C(\{U_i\}) \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, and these are in natural bijection with tuples

$$\left(C_i, B_{i_0 i_1}, A_{i_0 i_1, i_2}, \cdots Z_{i_0 \cdots i_{n-1}}, g_{i_0 \cdots i_n}\right) ,$$

where $C_i \in \Omega^n(U_i)$, $B_{i_0 i_1} \in \Omega^{n-1}(U_{i_0} \cap U_{i_1})$, etc., such that

$$C_{i_0} - C_{i_1} = dB_{i_0 i_1}$$

and

$$B_{i_0 i_1} - B_{i_0 i_2} + B_{i_1 i_2} = dA_{i_0 i_1 i_2} ,$$

etc. This is a cocycle in Čech-Deligne cohomology. We may think of this as encoding a circle $n$-bundle with connection. The forms $(C_i)$ are the local *connection $n$-forms*.

The definition of $\infty$-connections on $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles for nonabelian $G$ may be reduced to this definition, by *approximating* every $G$-cocylce $X \overset{\simeq}{\twoheadleftarrow} C(\{U_i\}) \to \mathbf{B}G$ by abelian cocycles in all possible ways, by postcomposing with all possible *characteristic classes* $\mathbf{B}G \overset{\simeq}{\twoheadleftarrow} \widehat{\mathbf{B}G} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ to extract a circle $n$-bundle from it. This is what we turn to below in 1.2.8.

**1.2.7.1.5 Holonomy and canonical action functionals** We had started out with motivating differential refinements of bundles and higher bundles by the notion of higher parallel transport. Here we discuss aspects of this for the circle $n$-bundles

Let $\Sigma$ be a compact smooth manifold of dimension $n$. For every smooth function $\Sigma \to X$ there is a corresponding pullback operation

$$H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) \to H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(\Sigma)$$

that sends circle $n$-connections on $X$ to circle $n$-connections on $\Sigma$. But due to its dimension, the curvature $(n+1)$-form of any circle $n$-connection on $\Sigma$ is necessarily trivial. From the definition of homotopy pullback one can show that this implies that every circle $n$-connection on $\Sigma$ is equivalent to one which is given by a Cech-Deligne cocycle that involves a globally defined connection $n$-form $\omega$. The integral of this form over $\Sigma$ produces a real number. One finds that this is well-defined up to integral shifts. This gives an *$n$-volume holonomy* map

$$\int_\Sigma \,:\, \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \to U(1) .$$

For instance for $n = 1$ this is the map that sense an ordinary connection on an ordinary circle bundle over $\Sigma$ to its ordinary parallel transport along $\Sigma$, its line holonomy.

For $G$ any smooth (higher) group, any morphism

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

from the moduli stack of $G$-connections to that of circle $n$-connections therefore induces a canonical functional

$$\exp(iS_{\mathbf{c}}(-)) : \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}})) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(\Sigma,\hat{\mathbf{c}})} \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1)$$

from the $\infty$-groupoid of $G$-connections on $\Sigma$ to $U(1)$.

**1.2.7.2 Differential cohomology** We now indicate how the combination of the *intrinsic cohomology* and the *geometric homotopy* in a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos yields a good notion of *differential cohomology in an $\infty$-topos.*

Using the defining adjoint $\infty$-functors $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma)$ we may reflect the fundamental $\infty$-groupoid $\Pi : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ from Top back into $\mathbf{H}$ by considering the composite endo-edjunction

$$(\int \dashv \flat) := (\mathrm{Disc} \circ \Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \circ \Gamma) : \mathbf{H} \underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{}} \mathbf{H} \,.$$

The $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-unit $X \to \int(X)$ may be thought of as the inclusion of $X$ into its fundamental $\infty$-groupoid as the collection of constant paths in $X$.

As always, the boldface $\int$ is to indicate that we are dealing with a cohesive refinement of the topological structure $\Pi$. The symbol "$\flat$" ("flat") is to be suggestive of the meaning of this construction:

For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ any cohesive object, we may think of $\Pi(X)$ as its cohesive fundamental $\infty$-groupoid. A morphism

$$\nabla : \int(X) \to \mathbf{B}G$$

(hence a $G$-valued cocycle on $\int(X)$) may be interpreted as assigning:

- to each point $x \in X$ the fiber of the corresponding $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle classified by the composite $g : X \to \int(X) \stackrel{\nabla}{\to} \mathbf{B}G$;
- to each path in $X$ an equivalence between the fibers over its endpoints;
- to each homotopy of paths in $X$ an equivalence between these equivalences;
- and so on.

This in turn we may think as being the *flat higher parallel transport* of an $\infty$-connection on the bundle classified by $g : X \to \int(X) \stackrel{\nabla}{\to} \mathbf{B}G$.

The adjunction equivalence allows us to identify $\flat\mathbf{B}G$ as the coefficient object for this flat differential $G$-valued cohomology on $X$:

$$H_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, G) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \flat\mathbf{B}G) \simeq \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\int(X), \mathbf{B}G) \,.$$

In $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ and with $G \in \mathbf{H}$ an ordinary Lie group and $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an ordinary smooth manifold, we have that $H_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, G)$ is the set of equivalence classes of ordinary $G$-principal bundles on $X$ with flat connections.

The $(\mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma)$-counit $\flat\mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}G$ provides the forgetful morphism

$$H_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, G) \to H(X, G)$$

form $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles with flat connection to their underlying principal $\infty$-bundles. Not every $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle admits a flat connection. The failure of this to be true - the obstruction to the existence of flat lifts - is measured by the homotopy fiber of the counit, which we shall denote $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$, defined by the fact that we have a fiber sequence

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G \to \flat\mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}G \,.$$

As the notation suggests, it turns out that $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$ may be thought of as the coefficient object for nonabelian generalized de Rham cohomology. For instance for $G$ an odinary Lie group regarded as an object in $\mathbf{H} =$

Smooth$\infty$Grpd, we have that $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$ is presented by the sheaf $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g})$ of Lie algebra valued differential forms with vanishing curvature 2-form. And for the circle Lie $n$-group $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$ we find that $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ is presented by the complex of sheaves whose abelian sheaf cohomology is de Rham cohomology in degree $n$. (More precisely, this is true for $n \geq 2$. For $n = 1$ we get just the sheaf of closed 1-forms. This is due to the obstruction-theoretic nature of $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}$: as we shall see, in degree 1 it computes 1-form curvatures of groupoid principal bundles, and these are not quotiented by exact 1-forms.) Moreover, in this case our fiber sequence extends not just to the left but also to the right

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \flat\mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \stackrel{\mathrm{curv}}{\to} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)\,.$$

The induced morphism

$$\mathrm{curv}_X : \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1))$$

we may think of as equipping an $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$-principal $n$-bundle (equivalently an $(n-1)$-bundle gerbe) with a connection, and then sending it to the higher curvature class of this connection. The homotopy fibers

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \stackrel{\mathrm{curv}}{\to} \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1))$$

of this map therefore have the interpretation of being the cocycle $\infty$-groupoids of circle $n$-bundles with connection. This is the realization in Smooth$\infty$Grpd of our general definition of ordinary differential cohomology in an $\infty$-topos.

All these definitions make sense in full generality for any locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos. We used nothing but the existence of the triple of adjoint $\infty$-functors $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma) : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. We shall show for the special case that $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ and $X$ an ordinary smooth manifold, that this general abstract definition reproduces ordinary differential cohomology over smooth manifolds as traditionally considered.

The advantage of the general abstract reformulation is that it generalizes the ordinary notion naturally to base objects that may be arbitrary smooth $\infty$-groupoids. This gives in particular the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism in an almost tautological form:

for $G \in \mathbf{H}$ any $\infty$-group object and $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathbf{H}$ its delooping, we may think of a morphism

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$$

as a representative of a characteristic class on $G$, in that this induces a morphism

$$[\mathbf{c}(-)] : H(X, G) \to H^n(X, U(1))$$

from $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles to degree-$n$ cohomology-classes. Since the classification of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles by cocycles is entirely general, we may equivalently think of this as the $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to \mathbf{B}G$ given as the homotopy fiber of $\mathbf{c}$. A famous example is the Chern-Simons circle 3-bundle (bundle 2-gerbe) for $G$ a simply connected Lie group.

By postcomposing further with the canonical morphism $\mathrm{curv} : \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)$ this gives in total a *differential characteristic class*

$$\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{dR}} : \mathbf{B}G \stackrel{\mathbf{c}}{\to} \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \stackrel{\mathrm{curv}}{\to} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)$$

that sends a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle to a class in de Rham cohomology

$$[\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{dR}}] : H(X, G) \to H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)\,.$$

This is the generalization of the plain Chern-Weil homomorphism.associated with the characteristic class $c$. In cases accessible by traditional theory, it is well known that this may be refined to what are called the assignment of *secondary characteristic classes* to $G$-principal bundles with connection, taking values in ordinary differential cohomology

$$[\hat{\mathbf{c}}] : H_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, G) \to H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)\,.$$

We will discuss that in the general formulation this corresponds to finding objects $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ that lift all curvature characteristic classes to their corresponding circle $n$-bundles with connection, in that it fits into the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{H}(-,\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \longrightarrow & \prod_i \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(-,\mathbf{B}^{n_i}U(1)) & \longrightarrow & \prod_i H_{\mathrm{dR}}^{n_i+1}(-) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(-,\mathbf{B}G) & \longrightarrow & \prod_i \mathbf{H}(-,\mathbf{B}^{n_i}U(1)) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \prod_i \mathbf{H}(-,\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n_i+1}U(1)) \end{array}$$

The cocycles in $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{conn}}(X,\mathbf{B}G) := \mathbf{H}(X,\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}})$ we may identify with $\infty$-connections on the underlying principal $\infty$-bundles. Specifically for $G$ an ordinary Lie group this captures the ordinary notion of connection on a bundle, for $G$ Lie 2-group it captures the notion of connection on a 2-bundle/gerbe.

**1.2.7.3 Higher geometric prequantization** **Observation.** There is a canonical $\infty$-action $\gamma$ of $\mathrm{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}}(g)$ on the space of $\infty$-sections $\Gamma_X(P \times_G V)$.
**Claim.** Since $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{SmoothMfd})$ is cohesive, there is a notion of *differential refinement* of the above discussion, yielding *connections* on $\infty$-bundles.
**Example.** Let $\mathbb{C} \to \mathbb{C}//U(1) \to \mathbf{B}U(1)$ be the canonical complex-linear circle action. Then

- $g_{\mathrm{conn}} : X \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ classifies a circle bundle with connection, a *prequantum line bundle* of its curvature 2-form;
- $\Gamma_X(P \times_{U(1)} \mathbb{C})$ is the corresponding space of smooth sections;
- $\gamma$ is the exp(Poisson bracket)-group action of preqantum operators, containing the Heisenberg group action.

**Example.** Let $\mathbf{B}U \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{PU} \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ be the canonical 2-circle action. Then

- $g_{\mathrm{conn}} : X \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ classifies a circle 2-bundle with connection, a *prequantum line 2-bundle* of its curvature 3-form;
- $\Gamma_X(P \times_{\mathbf{B}U(1)} \mathbf{B}U)$ is the corresponding groupoid of smooth sections = twisted bundles;
- $\gamma$ is the exp(2-plectic bracket)-2-group action of 2-plectic geometry, containing the *Heisenberg 2-group* action.

### 1.2.8 Characteristic classes

We discuss explicit presentations of *characteristic classes* of principal $n$-bundles for low values of $n$ and for low degree of the characteristic class.

- General concept
- Examples
  - example 1.2.142 – First Chern class of unitary 1-bundles
  - example 1.2.143 – Dixmier-Douady class of circle 2-bundles (of bundle gerbes)
  - example 1.2.144 – Obstruction class of central extension
  - example 1.2.145 – First Stiefel-Whitney class of an O-principal bundle
  - example 1.2.146 – Second Stiefel-Whitney class of an SO-principal bundle
  - example 1.2.147 – Bockstein homomorphism
  - example 1.2.148 – Third integral Stiefel-Whitney class
  - example 1.2.149 – First Pontryagin class of Spin-1-bundles and twisted string-2-bundles

In the context of higher (smooth) groupoids the notion of characteristic class is conceptually very simple: for $G$ some $n$-group and $\mathbf{B}G$ the corresponding one-object $n$-groupoid, a characteristic class of degree $k \in \mathbb{N}$ with coefficients in some abelian (Lie-)group $A$ is presented simply by a morphism

$$c : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n A$$

of cohesive $\infty$-groupoids. For instance if $A = \mathbb{Z}$ such a morphism represents a *universal integral characteristic class* on $\mathbf{B}G$. Then for

$$g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$$

any morphism of (smooth) $\infty$-groupoids that classifies a given $G$-principal $n$-bundle $P \to X$, as discussed above in 1.2.6, the corresponding characteristic class of $P$ (equivalently of $g$) is the class of the composite

$$c(P) : \; X \xrightarrow{g} \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{c} \mathbf{B}^K A \; ,$$

in the cohomology group $H^k(X, A)$ of the ambient $\infty$-topos.

In other words, in the abstract language of cohesive $\infty$-toposes the notion of characteristic classes of cohesive principal $\infty$-bundles is verbatim that of principal fibrations in ordinary homotopy theory. The crucial difference, though, is in the implementation of this abstract formalism.

Namely, as we have discussed previously, all the abstract morphisms $f : A \to B$ of cohesive $\infty$-groupoids here are presented by $\infty$-*anafunctors*, hence by spans of genuine morphisms of Kan-complex valued presheaves, whose left leg is a weak equivalence that exhibits a resolution of the source object.

This means that the characteristic map itself is presented by a span

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \widehat{\mathbf{B}G} & \xrightarrow{c} & \mathbf{B}^k A \; , \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{B}G & & \end{array}$$

as is of course the cocycle for the principal $n$-bundle

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(U_i) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

and the characteristic class $[c(P)]$ of the corresponding principal $n$-bundle is presented by a (any) span composite

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} C(T_i) & \xrightarrow{\hat{g}} & \widehat{\mathbf{B}G} & \xrightarrow{c} & \mathbf{B}^k A \; , \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\ C(U_i) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G & & \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & & & \\ X & & & & \end{array}$$

where $C(T_i)$ is, if necessary, a refinement of the cover $C(U_i)$ over which the $\mathbf{B}G$-cocycle $g$ lifts to a $\widehat{\mathbf{B}G}$-cocycle as indicated.

Notice the similarity of this situation to that of the discussion of twisted bundles in example 1.2.95. This is not a coincidence: every characteristic class induces a corresponding notion of *twisted $n$-bundles* and, conversely, every notion of twisted $n$-bundles can be understood as arising from the failure of a certain characteristic class to vanish.

We discuss now a list of examples.

**Example 1.2.142** (first Chern class)**.** Let $N \in \mathbb{N}$. Consider the unitary group $U(n)$. By its definition as a matrix Lie group, this comes canonically equipped with the determinant function

$$\det : U(n) \to U(1)$$

and by the standard properties of the determinant, this is in fact a group homomorphism. Therefore this has a delooping to a morphism of Lie groupoids

$$\mathbf{B}\det : \mathbf{B}U(n) \to \mathbf{B}U(1)\,.$$

Under geometric realization this maps to a morphism

$$|\mathbf{B}\det| : BU(n) \to BU(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z}, 2)$$

of topological spaces. This is a characteristic class on the classifying space $BU(n)$: the ordinary *first Chern class*. Hence the morphism $\mathbf{B}\det$ on Lie groupoids is a *smooth refinement* of the ordinary first Chern class.

This smooth refinement acts on smooth $U(n)$-principal bundles as follows. Postcomposition of a Čech cocycle

$$P: \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{(g_{ij})} & \mathbf{B}U(n) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

for a $U(n)$-principal bundle on a smooth manifold $X$ with this characteristic class yields the cocycle

$$\det P: \qquad \begin{array}{ccccc} C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{(g_{ij})} & \mathbf{B}U(n) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{B}\det} & \mathbf{B}U(1) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ X & & & & \end{array}$$

for a circle bundle (or its associated line bundle) with transition functions $(\det(g_{ij}))$: the *determinant line bundle* of $P$.

We may easily pass to the *differential refinement* of the first Chern class along similar lines. By prop. 1.2.114 the differential refinement $\mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}U(n)$ of the moduli stack of $U(n)$-principal bundles is given by the groupoid-valued presheaf which over a test manifold $U$ assigns

$$\mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{conn}} : U \mapsto \left\{ A \xrightarrow{g} A^g \mid A \in \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{u}(n));\ g \in C^\infty(U, U(n)) \right\}\,.$$

One checks that $\mathbf{B}\det$ uniquely extends to a morphism of groupoid-valued presheaves $\mathbf{B}\det_{\mathrm{conn}}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{B}\det_{\mathrm{conn}}} & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}U(n) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{B}\det} & \mathbf{B}U(1) \end{array}$$

by sending $A \mapsto \mathrm{tr}(A)$. Here the trace operation on the matrix Lie algebra $\mathfrak{u}(n)$ is a unary *invariant polynomial* $\langle - \rangle : \mathfrak{u}(n) \to \mathfrak{u}(1) \simeq \mathbb{R}$.

Therefore, over a 1-dimensional compact manifold $\Sigma$ (a disjoint union of circles) the canonical action functional, 1.2.7.1.5, induced by the first Chern class is

$$\exp(iS_{\mathbf{c}_1}) : \ \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}\det_{\mathrm{conn}})} \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1)$$

sending

$$A \mapsto \exp(i \int_\Sigma \mathrm{tr}(A))\,.$$

This is the action functional of 1-dimensional $U(n)$-Chern-Simons theory, discussed below in 7.2.4.

It is a basic fact that the cohomology class of line bundles can be identified within the second *integral cohomology* of $X$. For our purposes here it is instructive to rederive this fact in terms of anafunctors, *lifting gerbes* and twisted bundles.

To that end, consider from example 1.2.94 the equivalence of the 2-group $(\mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R})$ with the ordinary circle group, which supports the 2-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R}) & \xrightarrow{c_1} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to 1) & = & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & & & \\ \mathbf{B}U(1) & & & & \end{array}\,.$$

We see now that this presents an integral characteristic class in degree 2 on $\mathbf{B}U(1)$. Given a cocycle $\{h_{ij} \in C^\infty(U_{ij}, U(1))\}$ for any circle bundle, the postcomposition with this 2-anafunctor amounts to the following:

1. refine the cover, if necessary, to a *good* open cover (where all non-empty $U_{i_0,\cdots,i_k}$ are contractible) – we shall still write $\{U_i\}$ now for this good cover;

2. choose on each $U_{ij}$ a (any) lift of the circle-valued functor $h_{ij} : U_{ij} \to U(1)$ through the quotient map $\mathbb{R} \to U(1)$ to a function $\hat{h}_{ij} : U_{ij} \to \mathbb{R}$ – this is always possible over the contractible $U_{ij}$;

3. compute the failures of the lifts thus chosen to constitute the cocycle for an $\mathbb{R}$-principal bundle: these are the elements
$$\lambda_{ijk} := \hat{h}_{ik}\hat{h}_{ij}^{-1}\hat{h}_{jk}^{-1} \in C^\infty(U_{ijk}, \mathbb{Z})\,,$$
which are indeed $\mathbb{Z}$-valued (hence constant) smooth functions due to the fact that the original $\{h_{ij}\}$ satisfied its cocycle law;

4. notice that by observation 1.2.90 this yields the construction of the cocycle for a $(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R})$-principal 2-bundle
$$\{\hat{h}_{ij} \in C^\infty(U_{ij}, \mathbb{R}), \lambda_{ijk} \in C^\infty(U_{ijk}, \mathbb{Z})\}\,,$$
which by example 1.2.95 we may also read as the cocycle for a twisted $\mathbb{R}$-1-bundle, with respect to the central extension $\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R} \to U(1)$;

5. finally project out the cocycle for the "lifting $\mathbb{Z}$-gerbe" encoded by this, which is the $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}$-principal 2-bundle given by the $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}$ cocycle
$$\{\lambda_{ijk} \in C^\infty(U_{ijk}, \mathbb{Z})\}\,,$$

This last cocycle is manifestly in degree-2 integral Čech cohomology, and hence indeed represents a class in $H^2(X, \mathbb{Z})$. This is the first Chern class of the circle bundle given by $\{h_{ij}\}$. If here $h_{ij} = \det g_{ij}$ is the determinant circle bundle of some unitary bundle, the this is also the first Chern class of that unitary bundle.

**Example 1.2.143** (Dixmier-Douady class)**.** The discussion in example 1.2.142 of the first Chern class of a circle 1-bundle has an immediate generalization to an analogous canonical class of circle 2-bundles, def. 1.2.79, hence, by observation 1.2.80, to bundle gerbes. As before, while this amounts to a standard and basic fact, for our purposes it shall be instructive to spell this out in terms of $\infty$-anafunctors and twisted principal 2-bundles.

To that end, notice that by delooping the equivalence $\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{B}U(1)$ yields

$$\mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)\,.$$

This says that $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-principal 2-bundles/bundle gerbes are equivalent to $\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R})$-principal 3-bundles, def. 1.2.99.

As before, this supports a canonical integral characteristic class, now in degree 3, presented by the $\infty$-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \to 1) & = & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to 1 \to 1) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ \mathbf{B}^2 U(1) & & & & \end{array}\,.$$

The corresponding class in $H^3(\mathbf{B}U(1), \mathbb{Z})$ is the (smooth lift of) the *universal Dixmier-Douady class.*

Explicitly, for $\{g_{ijk} \in C^\infty(U_{ijk}, U(1))\}$ the Čech cocycle for a circle-2-bundle, def. 1.2.79, this class is computed as the composite of spans

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} C(U_i) & \xrightarrow{(\hat g, \lambda)} & \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ C(U_i) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}^2 U(1) & & \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ X & & & & \end{array}\,,$$

where we assume for simplicity of notation that the cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ already has be chosen (possibly after refining another cover) such that all patches and their non-empty intersections are contractible.

Here the lifted cocycle data $\{\hat g_{ijk} : U_{ijk} \to U(1)\}$ is through the quotient map $\mathbb{R} \to U(1)$ to real valued functions. These lifts will, in general, not satisfy the condition of a cocycle for a $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}$-principal 2-bundle. The failure is uniquely picked up by the functions

$$\lambda_{ijkl} := \hat g_{jkl} g_{ijk}^{-1} g_{ijl} g_{ikl}^{-1} \in C^\infty(U_{ijkl}, \mathbb{Z})\,.$$

By example 1.2.101 this data constitutes the cocycle for a $(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R} \to 1)$-principal 3-bundle or, by def. 1.2.102 that of a *twisted* $\mathbf{B}R$*-principal 2-bundle.*

The above composite of spans projects out the integral cocycle

$$\lambda_{ijkl} \in C^\infty(U_{ijkl}, \mathbb{Z})\,,$$

which manifestly gives a class in $H^3(X, \mathbb{Z})$. This is the Dixmier-Douady class of the original circle 3-bundle, the higher analog of the Chern-class of a circle bundle.

**Example 1.2.144** (obstruction class of central extension)**.** For $A \to \hat G \to G$ a central extension of Lie groups, there is a long sequence of (deloopings of) Lie 2-groups

$$\mathbf{B}A \to \mathbf{B}\hat G \to \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}^2 A\,,$$

where the characteristic class $\mathbf{c}$ is presented by the $\infty$-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}(A \to \hat G) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(A \to 1) & = & \mathbf{B}^2 A \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ \mathbf{B}G & & & & \end{array}$$

with $(A \to \hat G)$ the crossed module from example 1.2.88.

The proof of this is discussed below in prop. 6.4.43.

**Example 1.2.145** (first Stiefel-Whitney class)**.** The morphism of groups

$$\mathrm{O}(n) \to \mathbb{Z}_2$$

which sends every element in the connected component of the unit element of $\mathrm{O}(n)$ to the unit element of $\mathbb{Z}_2$ and every other element to the non-trivial element of $\mathbb{Z}_2$ induces a morphism of delooping Lie groupoids

$$\mathbf{w}_1 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(n) \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2 \,.$$

This represents the universal smooth *first Stiefel-Whitney class*.

The relation of $\mathbf{w}_1$ to orientation structure is discussed below in 7.1.2.2.

**Example 1.2.146** (second Stiefel-Whitney class)**.** The exact sequence that characterizes the Spin-group is

$$\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{Spin} \to \mathrm{SO}$$

induces, by example 1.2.144, a long fiber sequence

$$\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \stackrel{\mathbf{w}_2}{\to} \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \,.$$

Here the morphism $\mathbf{w}_2$ is presented by the $\infty$-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{Spin}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to 1) & = & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \;. \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} & & & & \end{array}$$

This is a smooth incarnation of the *universal second Stiefel-Whitney class*. The $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2$-principal 2-bundle associated by $\mathbf{w}_2$ to any $\mathrm{SO}(n)$-principal bundles is dicussed in [MuSi03] in terms of the corresponding bundle gerbe, via. observation 1.2.80.

**Example 1.2.147** (Bockstein homomorphism)**.** The exact sequence

$$\mathbb{Z} \stackrel{\cdot 2}{\to} \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}_2$$

induces, by example 1.2.144, for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ a characteristic class

$$\beta_2 : \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \,.$$

This is the *Bockstein homomorphism*.

**Example 1.2.148** (third integral Stiefel-Whitney class)**.** The composite of the second Stiefel-Whitney class from example 1.2.146 with the Bockstein homomorphism from example 1.2.147 is the *third integral Stiefel-Whitney class*

$$W_3 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \stackrel{\mathbf{w}_2}{\to} \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \stackrel{\beta_2}{\to} \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{Z} \,.$$

This has a refined factorization through the universal Dixmier-Douady class from example 1.2.143:

$$\mathbf{W}_3 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \to \mathbf{B}^2 U(1) \,.$$

This is discussed in lemma 7.1.97 below.

**Example 1.2.149** (first Pontryagin class)**.** Let $G$ be a compact and simply connected simple Lie group. Then the resolution from example 1.2.106 naturally supports a characteristic class presented by the 3-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}(U(1) \to \hat{\Omega} G \to PG) & \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}(U(1) \to 1 \to 1) & = \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) \ . \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \\ \mathbf{B}G & & \end{array}$$

For $G = \mathrm{Spin}$ the spin group, this presents one half of the universal *first Pontryagin class*. This we dicuss in detail in 7.1.2.

Composition with this class sends $G$-principal bundles to circle 2-bundles, 1.2.79, hence by 1.2.100 to bundle 2-gerbes. Our discussion in 7.1.2 shows that these are the *Chern-Simons 2-gerbes*.

The canonical action functional, 1.2.7.1.5, induced by $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$ over a compact 3-dimensional $\Sigma$

$$\exp(i S_{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1}) : \ \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1)} \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1)$$

is the action functional of ordinary 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory, refined to the moduli stack of field configurations. This we discuss in 7.2.5.1.

### 1.2.9 Lie algebras

A Lie algebra is, in a precise sense, the infinitesimal approximation to a Lie group. This statement generalizes to *smooth n-groups* (the strict case of which we had seen in definition 1.2.96); their infinitesimal approximation are *Lie n-algebras* which for arbitrary $n$ are known as *$L_\infty$-algebras*. The statement also generalizes to *Lie groupoids* (discussed in 1.2.6); their infinitesimal approximation are *Lie algeboids*. Both these are special cases of a joint generalization; where smooth $n$-groupoids have *$L_\infty$-algebroids* as their infinitesimal approximation.

The following is an exposition of basic $L_\infty$-algebraic structures, their relation to smooth $n$-groupoids and the notion of connection data with coefficients in $L_\infty$-algebras.

The following discussion proceeds by these topics:

- $L_\infty$-algebroids;
- Lie integration;
- Characteristic cocycles from Lie integration;
- $L_\infty$-algebra valued connections;
- Curvature characteristics and Chern-Simons forms;
- $\infty$-Connections from Lie integration;

**1.2.9.1 $L_\infty$-algebroids** There is a precise sense in which one may think of a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ as the infinitesimal sub-object of the delooping groupoid $\mathbf{B}G$ of the corresponding Lie group $G$. Without here going into the details, which are discussed in detail below in 6.5.2, we want to build certain smooth $\infty$-groupoids from the knowledge of their infinitesimal subobjects: these subobjects are *$L_\infty$-algebroids* and specifically *$L_\infty$-algebras*.

For $\mathfrak{g}$ an $\mathbb{N}$-graded vector space, write $\mathfrak{g}[1]$ for the same underlying vector space with all degrees shifted up by one. (Often this is denoted $\mathfrak{g}[-1]$ instead). Then

$$\wedge^\bullet \mathfrak{g} = \mathrm{Sym}^\bullet(\mathfrak{g}[1])$$

is the *Grassmann algebra* on $\mathfrak{g}$; the free graded-commutative algebra on $\mathfrak{g}[1]$.

**Definition 1.2.150.** An *$L_\infty$-algebra* structure on an $\mathbb{N}$-graded vector space $\mathfrak{g}$ is a family of multilinear maps

$$[-, \cdots, -]_k : \mathrm{Sym}^k(\mathfrak{g}[1]) \to \mathfrak{g}[1]$$

of degree -1, for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, such that the *higher Jacobi identities*

$$\sum_{k+l=n+1} \sum_{\sigma \in \mathrm{UnSh}(l,k-1)} (-1)^\sigma t_{a_1}, \cdots, t_{a_l}], t_{a_{l+1}}, \cdots, t_{a_{k+l-1}}] = 0$$

are satisfied for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and all $\{t_{a_i} \in \mathfrak{g}\}$.

See [SSS09a] for a review and for references.

**Example 1.2.151.** If $\mathfrak{g}$ is concentrated in degree 0, then an $L_\infty$-algebra structure on $\mathfrak{g}$ is the same as an ordinary Lie algebra structure. The only non-trivial bracket is $[-,-]_2 : \mathfrak{g} \otimes \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{g}$ and the higher Jacobi identities reduce to the ordinary Jacobi identity.

We will see many other examples of $L_\infty$-algebras. For identifying these, it turns out to be useful to have the following dual formulation of $L_\infty$-algebras.

**Proposition 1.2.152.** *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be a $\mathbb{N}$-graded vector space that is degreewise finite dimensional. Write $\mathfrak{g}^*$ for the degreewise dual, also $\mathbb{N}$-graded.*

*Then dg-algebra structures on the Grassmann algebra $\wedge^\bullet \mathfrak{g}^* = \mathrm{Sym}^\bullet \mathfrak{g}[1]^*$ are in canonical bijection with $L_\infty$-algebra structures on $\mathfrak{g}$, def. 1.2.150.*

Here the sum is over all $(l, k-1)$*unshuffles*, which means all permutations $\sigma \in \Sigma_{k+l-1}$ that preserves the order within the first $l$ and within the last $k-1$ arguments, respectively, and $(-1)^{\mathrm{sgn}}$ is the Koszul-sign of the permutation: the sign picked up by "unshuffling" $t^{a_1} \wedge \cdots, \wedge t^{a_{k+l-1}}$ according to $\sigma$.

Proof. Let $\{t_a\}$ be a basis of $\mathfrak{g}[1]$. Write $\{t^a\}$ for the dual basis of $\mathfrak{g}[1]^*$, where $t^a$ is taken to be in the same degree as $t_a$.

A derivation $d : \wedge^\bullet \mathfrak{g}^* \to \wedge^\bullet \mathfrak{g}^*$ of the Grassmann algebra is fixed by its value on generators, where it determines and is determined by a sequence of brackets graded-symmetric multilinear maps $\{[-, \cdots, -]_k\}_{k=1}^\infty$ by

$$d : t^a \mapsto -\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!} [t_{a_1}, \cdots, t_{a_k}]^a \, t^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge t^{a_k} \,,$$

where a sum over repeated indices is understood. This derivation is of degree +1 precisely if all the $k$-ary maps are of degree -1. It is straightforward to check that the condition $d \circ d = 0$ is equivalent to the higher Jacobi identities. □

**Definition 1.2.153.** The dg-algebra corresponding to an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ by prop. 1.2.152 we call the *Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra* $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ of $\mathfrak{g}$.

**Example 1.2.154.** For $\mathfrak{g}$ an ordinary Lie algebra, as in example 1.2.151, the notion of Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra from def. 1.2.153 coincides with the traditional notion.

**Examples 1.2.155.**

- A *strict* $L_\infty$-algebra algebra is a dg-Lie algebra $(\mathfrak{g}, \partial, [-,-])$ with $(\mathfrak{g}^*, \partial^*)$ a cochain complex in non-negative degree. With $\mathfrak{g}^*$ denoting the degreewise dual, the corresponding CE-algebra is $CE(\mathfrak{g}) = (\wedge^\bullet \mathfrak{g}^*, d_{CE} = [-,-]^* + \partial^*$.

- We had already seen above the infinitesimal approximation of a Lie 2-group: this is a Lie 2-algebra. If the Lie 2-group is a smooth strict 2-group it is encoded equivalently by a crossed module of ordinary Lie groups, and the corresponding Lie 2-algebra is given by a differential crossed module of ordinary Lie algebras.

- For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 1$, the Lie $n$-algebra $b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$ is the infinitesimal approximation to $\mathbf{B}^n U(\mathbb{R})$ and $\mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}$. Its CE-algebra is the dg-algebra on a single generators in degree $n$, with vanishing differential.

- For any $\infty$-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ there is an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathrm{inn}(\mathfrak{g})$ defined by the fact that its CE-algebra is the Weil algebra of $\mathfrak{g}$:

  $$\mathrm{CE}(\mathrm{inn}(\mathfrak{g})) = \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) = (\wedge^\bullet(\mathfrak{g}^* \oplus \mathfrak{g}^*[1]), d_{\mathrm{W}}|_{\mathfrak{g}^*} = d_{\mathrm{CE}} + \sigma) \,,$$

  where $\sigma : \mathfrak{g}^* \to \mathfrak{g}^*[1]$ is the grading shift isomorphism, extended as a derivation.

**Example 1.2.156.** For $\mathfrak{g}$ an $L_\infty$-algebra, its *automorphism $L_\infty$-algebra* $\mathfrak{der}(\mathfrak{g})$ is the dg-Lie algebra whose elements in degree $k$ are the derivations

$$\iota : \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$$

of degree $-k$, whose differential is given by the graded commutator $[d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})}, -]$ and whose Lie bracket is the commutator bracket of derivations.

In the context of rational homotopy theory, this is discussed on p. 312 of [Su77].

One advantage of describing an $L_\infty$-algebra in terms of its dual Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra is that in this form the correct notion of morphism is manifest.

**Definition 1.2.157.** A morphism of $L_\infty$-algebras $\mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{h}$ is a morphism of dg-algebras $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{h})$.

The category $L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$ of $L_\infty$-algebras is therefore the full subcategory of the opposite category of dg-algebras on those whose underlying graded algebra is free:

$$L_\infty\mathrm{Alg} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{CE}(-)} \mathrm{dgAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}\,.$$

Replacing in this characterization the ground field $\mathbb{R}$ by an algebra of smooth functions on a manifold $\mathfrak{a}_0$, we obtain the notion of an $L_\infty$*-algebroid* $\mathfrak{g}$ over $\mathfrak{a}_0$. Morphisms $\mathfrak{a} \to \mathfrak{b}$ of such $\infty$-Lie algebroids are dually precisely morphisms of dg-algebras $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{b})$.

**Definition 1.2.158.** The category of $L_\infty$*-algebroids* is the opposite category of the full subcategory of dgAlg

$$\infty\mathrm{LieAlgbd} \subset \mathrm{dgAlg}^{op}$$

on graded-commutative cochain dg-algebras in non-negative degree whose underlying graded algebra is an exterior algebra over its degree-0 algebra, and this degree-0 algebra is the algebra of smooth functions on a smooth manifold.

**Remark 1.2.159.** More precisely the above definition is that of *affine* $C^\infty$-$L_\infty$-algebroids. There are various ways to refine this to something more encompassing, but for the purposes of this introductory discussion the above is convenient and sufficient. A more comprehensive discussion is in 6.5.2 below.

**Example 1.2.160.**

- The *tangent Lie algebroid* $TX$ of a smooth manifold $X$ is the infinitesimal approximation to its fundamental $\infty$-groupoid. Its CE-algebra is the de Rham complex

  $\mathrm{CE}(TX) = \Omega^\bullet(X)$.

**1.2.9.2 Lie integration** We discusss *Lie integration*: a construction that sends an $L_\infty$-algebroid to a smooth $\infty$-groupoid of which it is the infinitesimal approximation.

The construction we want to describe may be understood as a generalization of the following proposition. This is classical, even if maybe not reflected in the standard textbook literature to the extent it deserves to be.

**Definition 1.2.161.** For $\mathfrak{g}$ a (finite-dimensional) Lie algebra, let $\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ be the simplicial presheaf given by the assignment

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g}) : U \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^\bullet)_{\mathrm{vert}})\,,$$

in degree $k$ of dg-algebra homomorphisms from the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra of $\mathfrak{g}$ to the dg-algebra of vertical differential forms with respect to the trivial bundle $U \times \Delta^k \to U$.

Shortly we will be considering variations of such assignments that are best thought about when writing out the hom-sets on the right here as sets of arrows; as in

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g}) : (U, [k]) \mapsto \left\{ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \right\}\,.$$

For $\mathfrak{g}$ an ordinary Lie algebra it is an ancient and simple but important observation that dg-algebra morphisms $\Omega^\bullet(\Delta^k) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ are in natural bijection with Lie-algebra valued 1-forms that are *flat* in that their curvature 2-forms vanish: the 1-form itself determines precisely a morphism of the underlying graded algebras, and the respect for the differentials is exactly the flatness condition. It is this elementary but similarly important observation that historically led Eli Cartan to Cartan calculus and the algebraic formulation of Chern-Weil theory.

One finds that it makes good sense to generally, for $\mathfrak{g}$ any $\infty$-Lie algebra or even $\infty$-Lie algebroid, think of $\mathrm{Hom}_{dgAlg}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet(\Delta^k))$ as the set of $\infty$-Lie algebroid valued differential forms whose curvature forms (generally a whole tower of them) vanishes.

**Proposition 1.2.162.** *Let $G$ be the simply-connected Lie group integrating $\mathfrak{g}$ according to Lie's three theorems and $\mathbf{B}G \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd}]$ its delooping Lie groupoid regarded as a groupoid-valued presheaf on* CartSp. *Write $\tau_1(-)$ for the truncation operation that quotients out 2-morphisms in a simplicial presheaf to obtain a presheaf of groupoids.*

*We have an isomorphism*

$$\mathbf{B}G = \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{g}) .$$

To see this, observe that the presheaf $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ has as 1-morphisms $U$-parameterized families of $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-forms $A_{\mathrm{vert}}$ on the interval, and as 2-morphisms $U$-parameterized families of *flat* 1-forms on the disk, interpolating between these. By identifying these 1-forms with the pullback of the Maurer-Cartan form on $G$, we may equivalently think of the 1-morphisms as based smooth paths in $G$ and 2-morphisms smooth homotopies relative endpoints between them. Since $G$ is simply-connected this means that after dividing out 2-morphisms only the endpoints of these paths remain, which identify with the points in $G$.

The following proposition establishes the Lie integration of the shifted 1-dimensional abelian $L_\infty$-algebras $b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$.

**Proposition 1.2.163.** *For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 1$. Write*

$$\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{ch}} := \Xi\mathbb{R}[n]$$

*for the simplicial presheaf on* CartSp *that is the image of the sheaf of chain complexes represented by $\mathbb{R}$ in degree $n$ and 0 in other degrees, under the Dold-Kan correspondence $\Xi : \mathrm{Ch}_\bullet^+ \to \mathrm{sAb} \to \mathrm{sSet}$.*

*Then there is a canonical morphism*

$$\int_{\Delta^\bullet} : \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{ch}$$

*given by fiber integration of differential forms along $U \times \Delta^n \to U$ and this is an equivalence (a global equivalence in the model structure on simplicial presheaves).*

The proof of this statement is discussed in 6.4.14.

This statement will make an appearance repeatedly in the following discussion. Whenever we translate a construction given in terms $\exp(-)$ into a more convenient chain complex representation.

**1.2.9.3 Characteristic cocycles from Lie integration** We now describe characteristic classes and curvature characteristic forms on $G$-bundles in terms of these simplicial presheaves. For that purpose it is useful for a moment to ignore the truncation issue – to come back to it later – and consider these simplicial presheaves untruncated.

To see characteristic classes in this picture, write $\mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$ for the commutative real dg-algebra on a single generator in degree $n$ with vanishing differential. As our notation suggests, this we may think as the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra of a *higher Lie algebra* – the $\infty$-Lie algebra $b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$ – which is an Eilenberg-MacLane object in the homotopy theory of $\infty$-Lie algebras, representing $\infty$-Lie algebra cohomology in degree $n$ with coefficients in $\mathbb{R}$.

Restating this in elementary terms, this just says that dg-algebra homomorphisms

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) : \mu$$

are in natural bijection with elements $\mu \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ of degree $n$, that are closed, $d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})}\mu = 0$. This is the classical description of a cocycle in the Lie algebra cohomology of $\mathfrak{g}$.

**Definition 1.2.164.** Every such $\infty$-Lie algebra cocycle $\mu$ induces a morphism of simplicial presheaves

$$\exp(\mu) : \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \longrightarrow \exp(b^n\mathbb{R})$$

given by postcomposition

$$\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^l) \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\mu} \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R}) .$$

**Example 1.2.165.** Assume $\mathfrak{g}$ to be a semisimple Lie algebra, let $\langle -,- \rangle$ be the Killing form and $\mu = \langle -,[-,-]\rangle$ the corresponding 3-cocycle in Lie algebra cohomology. We may assume without restriction that this cocycle is normalized such that its left-invariant continuation to a 3-form on $G$ has integral periods. Observe that since $\pi_2(G)$ is trivial we have that the 3-coskeleton (see around def. 5.1.53 for details on coskeleta) of $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ is equivalent to $\mathbf{B}G$. By the inegrality of $\mu$, the operation of $\exp(\mu)$ on $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ followed by integration over simplices descends to an $\infty$-anafunctor from $\mathbf{B}G$ to $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)$, as indicated on the right of this diagram in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)} & \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \;. \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int_{\Delta^\bullet}} \\ C(V) & \xrightarrow{\hat{g}} & \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\int_{\Delta^\bullet} \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mu)} & \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\ C(U) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G & & \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & & & \\ X & & & & \end{array}$$

Precomposing this – as indicated on the left of the diagram – with another $\infty$-anafunctor $X \stackrel{\simeq}{\leftarrow} C(U) \stackrel{g}{\to} \mathbf{B}G$ for a $G$-principal bundle, hence a collection of transition functions $\{g_{ij} : U_i \cap U_j \to G\}$ amounts to choosing (possibly on a refinement $V$ of the cover $U$ of $X$)

- on each $V_i \cap V_j$ a lift $\hat{g}_{ij}$ of $g_{ij}$ to a famlily of smooth based paths in $G$ – $\hat{g}_{ij} : (V_i \cap V_j) \times \Delta^1 \to G$ – with endpoints $g_{ij}$;
- on each $V_i \cap V_j \cap V_k$ a smooth family $\hat{g}_{ijk} : (V_i \cap V_j \cap V_k) \times \Delta^2 \to G$ of disks interpolating between these paths;
- on each $V_i \cap V_j \cap V_k \cap V_l$ a a smooth family $\hat{g}_{ijkl} : (V_i \cap V_j \cap V_k \cap V_l) \times \Delta^3 \to G$ of 3-balls interpolating between these disks.

On this data the morphism $\int_{\Delta^\bullet} \exp(\mu)$ acts by sending each 3-cell to the number

$$\hat{g}_{ijkl} \mapsto \int_{\Delta^3} \hat{g}^*_{ijkl}(\mu) \mod \mathbb{Z}\,,$$

where $\mu$ is regarded in this formula as a closed 3-form on $G$.

We say this is *Lie integration of Lie algebra cocycles.*

**Proposition 1.2.166.** *For* $G = \mathrm{Spin}$*, the Čech cohomology cocycle obtained this way is the first fractional* Pontryagin class *of the* $G$*-bundle classified by* $G$*.*

We shall show this below, as part of our $L_\infty$-algebraic reconstruction of the above motivating example. In order to do so, we now add differential refinement to this Lie integration of characteristic classes.

**1.2.9.4 $L_\infty$-algebra valued connections** In 1.2.6 we described ordinary connections on bundles as well as connections on 2-bundles in terms of parallel transport over paths and surfaces, and showed how such is equivalently given by cocycles with coefficients in Lie-algebra valued differential forms and Lie 2-algebra valued differential forms, respectively.

Notably we saw for the case of ordinary $U(1)$-principal bundles, that the connection and curvature data on these is encoded in presheaves of diagrams that over a given test space $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ look like

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
U & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}U(1) & & \text{transition function} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\int(U) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{INN}(U(1)) & & \text{connection} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\int(U) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) & & \text{curvature}
\end{array}$$

together with a constraint on the bottom morphism.

It is in the form of such a kind of diagram that the general notion of connections on $\infty$-bundles may be modeled. In the full theory in 4 this follows from first principles, but for our present introductory purpose we shall be content with taking this simple situation of $U(1)$-bundles together with the notion of Lie integration as sufficient motivation for the constructions considered now.

So we pass now to what is to some extent the reverse construction of the one considered before: we define a notion of $L_\infty$-algebra valued differential forms and show how by a variant of Lie integration these integrate to coefficient objects for connections on $\infty$-bundles.

#### 1.2.9.5 Curvature characteristics and Chern-Simons forms

For $G$ a Lie group, we have described above connections on $G$-principal bundles in terms of cocycles with coefficients in the Lie-groupoid of Lie-algebra valued forms $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \mathbf{B}G_{conn} & & \text{connection} \quad . \\
 & {}^{\nabla}\nearrow & \downarrow & & \\
 & {}^{\nabla_{\mathrm{ps}}}\nearrow & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}} & & \text{pseudo-connection} \\
 & & \downarrow \simeq & & \\
C(U)g & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G & & \text{transition function} \\
\downarrow \simeq & & & & \\
X & & & &
\end{array}$$

In this context we had *derived* Lie-algebra valued forms from the parallel transport description $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} = [\mathbf{P}_1(-), \mathbf{B}G]$. We now turn this around and use Lie integration to construct parallel transport from Lie-algebra valued forms. The construction is such that it generalizes verbatim to $\infty$-Lie algebra valued forms. For that purpose notice that another classical dg-algebra associated with $\mathfrak{g}$ is its *Weil algebra* $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$.

**Proposition 1.2.167.** *The Weil algebra* $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ *is the free dg-algebra on the graded vector space* $\mathfrak{g}^*$*, meaning that there is a natural bijection*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(W(\mathfrak{g}), A) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Vect}_{\mathbb{Z}}}(\mathfrak{g}^*, A)\,,$$

*which is singled out among the isomorphism class of dg-algebras with this property by the fact that the projection of graded vector spaces* $\mathfrak{g}^* \oplus \mathfrak{g}^*[1] \to \mathfrak{g}^*$ *extends to a dg-algebra homomorphism*

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \leftarrow W(\mathfrak{g}) : i^*\,.$$

(Notice that general the dg-algebras that we are dealing with are *semi-free* dg-algebras in that only their underlying graded algebra is free, but not the differential).

The most obvious realization of the free dg-algebra on $\mathfrak{g}^*$ is $\wedge^\bullet(\mathfrak{g}^* \oplus \mathfrak{g}^*[1])$ equipped with the differential that is precisely the degree shift isomorphism $\sigma : \mathfrak{g}^* \to \mathfrak{g}^*[1]$ extended as a derivation. This is not the Weil algebra on the nose, but is of course isomorphic to it. The differential of the Weil algebra on $\wedge^\bullet(\mathfrak{g}^* \oplus \mathfrak{g}^*[1])$ is given on the unshifted generators by the sum of the CE-differential with the shift isomorphism

$$d_{W(\mathfrak{g})}|_{\mathfrak{g}^*} = d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})} + \sigma \,.$$

This uniquely fixes the differential on the shifted generators – a phenomenon known (at least after mapping this to differential forms, as we discuss below) as the *Bianchi identity*.

Using this, we can express also the presheaf $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}$ from above in diagrammatic fashion

**Remark 1.2.168.** For $G$ a simply connected Lie group, the presheaf $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}} \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd}]$ is isomorphic to

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}} = \tau_1 \left( \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} : (U,[k]) \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \end{array} \right\} \right)$$

where on the right we have the 1-truncation of the simplicial presheaf of diagrams as indicated, where the vertical morphisms are the canonical ones.

Here over a given $U$ the bottom morphism in such a diagram is an arbitrary $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form $A$ on $U \times \Delta^k$. This we can decompose as $A = A_U + A_{\mathrm{vert}}$, where $A_U$ vanishes on tangents to $\Delta^k$ and $A_{\mathrm{vert}}$ on tangents to $U$. The commutativity of the diagram asserts that $A_{\mathrm{vert}}$ has to be such that the curvature 2-form $F_{A_{\mathrm{vert}}}$ vanishes when both its arguments are tangent to $\Delta^k$.

On the other hand, there is in the above no further constraint on $A_U$. Accordingly, as we pass to the 1-truncation of $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}}$ we find that morphisms are of the form $(A_U)_1 \xrightarrow{g} (A_U)_2$ with $(A_U)^i$ arbitrary. This is the definition of $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}$.

We see below that it is not a coincidence that this is reminiscent to the first condition on an Ehresmann connection on a $G$-principal bundle, which asserts that restricted to the fibers a connection 1-form on the total space of the bundle has to be flat. Indeed, the simplicial presheaf $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}$ may be thought of as the $\infty$-sheaf of pseudo-connections on *trivial* $\infty$-bundles. Imposing on this also the second Ehresmann condition will force the pseudo-connection to be a genuine connection.

We now want to lift the above construction $\exp(\mu)$ of characteristic classes by Lie integration of Lie algebra cocycles $\mu$ from plain bundles classified by $\mathbf{B}G$ to bundles with (pseudo-)connection classified by $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}}$. By what we just said we therefore need to extend $\exp(\mu)$ from a map on just $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ to a map on $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}}$. This is evidently achieved by completing a square in dgAlg of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})\mu & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}} & \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \end{array}$$

and defining $\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{diff}} : \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} \to \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{diff}}$ to be the operation of forming pasting composites with this.

Here $\mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$ is the Weil algebra of the Lie $n$-algebra $b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$. This is the dg-algebra on two generators $c$ and $k$, respectively, in degree $n$ and $(n+1)$ with the differential given by $d_{\mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})} : c \mapsto k$. The commutativity of this diagram says that the bottom morphism takes the degree-$n$ generator $c$ to an element $\mathrm{cs} \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ whose restriction to the unshifted generators is the given cocycle $\mu$.

As we shall see below, any such choice cs will extend the characteristic cocycle obtained from $\exp(\mu)$ to a characteristic differential cocycle, exhibiting the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism. But only for special nice choices of cs will this take genuine $\infty$-connections to genuine $\infty$-connections – instead of to pseudo-connections. As we discuss in the full $\infty$-Chern-Weil theory, this makes no difference in cohomology. But in practice it is useful to fine-tune the construction such as to produce nice models of the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism given by genuine $\infty$-connections. This is achieved by imposing the following additional constraint on the choice of extension cs of $\mu$:

**Definition 1.2.169.** For $\mu \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ a cocycle and $\mathrm{cs} \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ a lift of $\mu$ through $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$, we say that $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}$ is an invariant polynomial *in transgression* with $\mu$ if $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}$ sits entirely in the shifted generators, in that $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})} \in \wedge^\bullet \mathfrak{g}^*[1] \hookrightarrow W(\mathfrak{g})$.

**Definition 1.2.170.** Write $\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) \subset \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ (or $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{basic}}$) for the sub-dg-algebra on invariant polynomials.

**Example 1.2.171.** We have $\mathrm{inn}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \simeq \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R})$.

Using this, we can now encode the two conditions on the extension cs of the cocycle $\mu$ as the commutativity of this double square diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\mu} & \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & \qquad & \text{cocycle} \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\
\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}} & \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & & \text{Chern-Simons element} \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\
\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\langle - \rangle} & \mathrm{inv}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & & \text{invariant polynomial}
\end{array} .
$$

**Definition 1.2.172.** In such a diagram, we call cs the *Chern-Simons element* that exhibits the transgression between $\mu$ and $\langle - \rangle$.

We shall see below that under the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism, Chern-Simons elements give rise to the familiar Chern-Simons forms – as well as their generalizations – as local connection data of secondary characteristic classes realized as circle $n$n-bundles with connection.

**Remark 1.2.173.** What this diagram encodes is the construction of the connecting homomorphism for the long exact sequence in cohomology that is induced from the short exact sequence

$$
\ker(i^*) \to \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})
$$

subject to the extra constraint of basic elements.

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \langle - \rangle & \longleftarrow\!\!\dashv & \langle - \rangle \\
 & & {\scriptstyle d_{\mathrm{W}}}\uparrow & & \\
\mu & \longleftarrow\!\!\dashv & \mathrm{cs} & & \\
 & & & & \\
\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{i^*} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g})
\end{array} .
$$

To appreciate the construction so far, recall the following classical fact

**Fact 1.2.174.** *For $G$ a compact Lie group, the rationalization $BG \otimes k$ of the classifying space $BG$ is the rational space whose Sullivan model is given by the algebra* $\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g})$ *of invariant polynomials on the Lie algebra* $\mathfrak{g}$.

So we have obtained the following picture:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| delooped $\infty$-group | $\mathbf{B}G$ | $\mathfrak{g}$ | $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ | Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra |
| | $\downarrow$ | $\downarrow$ | $\uparrow$ | |
| delooped groupal universal $\infty$-bundle | $\mathbf{BE}G$ | $\mathrm{inn}(\mathfrak{g})$ | $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) = \mathrm{CE}(\mathrm{inn}(\mathfrak{g}))$ | Weil algebra |
| | $\downarrow$ | $\downarrow$ | $\uparrow$ | |
| rationalized classifying space | $\prod_i \mathbf{B}^{n_i}\mathbb{R}$ | $\prod_i b^{n_i-1}\mathbb{R}$ | $\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g})$ | algebra of invariant polynomials |

$$\xleftarrow{\text{Lie integration}}$$

**Example 1.2.175.** For $\mathfrak{g}$ a semisimple Lie algebra, $\langle -,-\rangle$ the Killing form invariant polynomial, there is a Chern-Simons element $\mathrm{cs} \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ witnessing the transgression to the cocycle $\mu = -\frac{1}{6}\langle -,[-,-]\rangle$. Under a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued form $\Omega^\bullet(X) \leftarrow W(\mathfrak{g}) : A$ this maps to the ordinary degree 3 Chern-Simons form

$$\mathrm{cs}(A) = \langle A \wedge dA\rangle + \frac{1}{3}\langle A \wedge [A \wedge A]\rangle \,.$$

**1.2.9.6 $\infty$-Connections from Lie integration** For $\mathfrak{g}$ an $L_\infty$-algebroid we have seen above the object $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}}$ that represents pseudo-connections on $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$-principal $\infty$-bundles and serves to support the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism. We now discuss the genuine $\infty$-connections among these pseudo-connections. A derivation from first principles of the following construction is given below in 6.4.17.

This construction is due to [SSS09c] and [FSS10].

**Definition 1.2.176.** Let $X$ be a smooth manifold and $\mathfrak{g}$ an $L_\infty$-algebra algebra or more generally an $L_\infty$-algebroid.

An *$L_\infty$-algebroid valued differential form* on $X$ is a morphism of dg-algebras

$$\Omega^\bullet(X) \longleftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) : A$$

from the Weil algebra of $\mathfrak{g}$, examples 1.2.155, to the de Rham complex of $X$. Dually this is a morphism of $L_\infty$-algebroids

$$A : TX \to \mathrm{inn}(\mathfrak{g})$$

from the inner automorphism $\infty$-Lie algebra.

Its *curvature* is the composite of morphisms of graded vector spaces

$$\Omega^\bullet(X) \xleftarrow{A} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{F_{(-)}} \mathfrak{g}^*[1] : F_A \,.$$

Precisely if the curvatures vanish does the morphism factor through the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra

$$(F_A = 0) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \left( \begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \\ & \swarrow^{\exists A_{\mathrm{flat}}} & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet(X) & \xleftarrow{A} & W(\mathfrak{g}) \end{array} \right)$$

in which case we call $A$ *flat*.

**Remark 1.2.177.** For $\{x^a\}$ a coordinate chart of an $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{a}$ and

$$A^a := A(x^a) \in \Omega^{\deg(x^a)}(X)$$

the differential form assigned to the generator $x^a$ by the $\mathfrak{a}$-valued form $A$, we have the curvature components

$$F_A^a = A(\mathbf{d}x^a) \in \Omega^{\deg(x^a)+1}(X)\,.$$

Since $d_{\mathrm{W}} = d_{\mathrm{CE}} + \mathbf{d}$, this can be equivalently written as

$$F_A^a = A(d_{\mathrm{W}}x^a - d_{\mathrm{CE}}x^a)\,,$$

so the *curvature* of $A$ precisely measures the “lack of flatness” of $A$. Also notice that, since $A$ is required to be a dg-algebra homomorphism, we have

$$A(d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})}x^a) = d_{\mathrm{dR}}A^a\,,$$

so that

$$A(d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})}x^a) = d_{\mathrm{dR}}A^a - F_A^a\,.$$

Assume now $A$ is a degree 1 $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential form on the smooth manifold $X$, and that cs is a Chern-Simons element transgressing an invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle$ of $\mathfrak{a}$ to some cocycle $\mu$, by def. 1.2.169. We can then consider the image $A(\mathrm{cs})$ of the Chern-Simons element cs in $\Omega^\bullet(X)$. Equivalently, we can look at cs as a map from degree 1 $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential forms on $X$ to ordinary (real valued) differential forms on $X$.

**Definition 1.2.178.** In the notations above, we write

$$\Omega^\bullet(X) \xleftarrow{A} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}} \mathrm{W}(b^{n+1}\mathbb{R}) \;\; : \mathrm{cs}(A)$$

for the differential form associated by the Chern-Simons element cs to the degree 1 $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential form $A$, and call this the *Chern-Simons differential form* associated with $A$.

Similarly, for $\langle - \rangle$ an invariant polynomial on $\mathfrak{a}$, we write $\langle F_A \rangle$ for the evaluation

$$\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{closed}}(X) \xleftarrow{A} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) \xleftarrow{\langle - \rangle} \mathrm{inv}(b^{n+1}\mathbb{R}) \;\; : \langle F_A \rangle\,.$$

We call this the *curvature characteristic forms* of $A$.

**Definition 1.2.179.** For $U$ a smooth manifold, the $\infty$*-groupoid of* $\mathfrak{g}$*-valued forms* is the Kan complex

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}(U) : [k] \mapsto \left\{ \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) \xleftarrow{A} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \;\middle|\; \forall v \in \Gamma(T\Delta^k) : \iota_v F_A = 0 \right\}$$

whose $k$-morphisms are $\mathfrak{g}$-valued forms $A$ on $U \times \Delta^k$ with sitting instants, and with the property that their curvature vanishes on vertical vectors.

The canonical morphism

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \exp(\mathfrak{g})$$

to the untruncated Lie integration of $\mathfrak{g}$ is given by restriction of $A$ to vertical differential forms (see below).

Here we are thinking of $U \times \Delta^k \to U$ as a trivial bundle.

The *first* Ehresmann condition can be identified with the conditions on lifts $\nabla$ in $\infty$-anafunctors

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \nearrow^{\nabla} & \downarrow \\ C(U) & \xrightarrow{g} & \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

that define connections on $\infty$-bundles.

#### 1.2.9.6.1 Curvature characteristics

**Proposition 1.2.180.** *For $A \in \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}(U, [k])$ a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued form on $U \times \Delta^k$ and for $\langle - \rangle \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ any invariant polynomial, the corresponding curvature characteristic form $\langle F_A \rangle \in \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k)$ descends down to $U$.*

To see this, it is sufficient to show that for all $v \in \Gamma(T\Delta^k)$ we have

1. $\iota_v \langle F_A \rangle = 0$;
2. $\mathcal{L}_v \langle F_A \rangle = 0$.

The first condition is evidently satisfied if already $\iota_v F_A = 0$. The second condition follows with Cartan calculus and using that $d_{\mathrm{dR}} \langle F_A \rangle = 0$:

$$\mathcal{L}_v \langle F_A \rangle = d\iota_v \langle F_A \rangle + \iota_v d \langle F_A \rangle = 0 \,.$$

Notice that for a general $\infty$-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ the curvature forms $F_A$ themselves are not generally closed (rather they satisfy the more Bianchi identity), hence requiring them to have no component along the simplex does not imply that they descend. This is different for abelian $\infty$-Lie algebras: for them the curvature forms themselves are already closed, and hence are themselves already curvature characteristics that do descent.

It is useful to organize the $\mathfrak{g}$-valued form $A$, together with its restriction $A_{\mathrm{vert}}$ to vertical differential forms and with its curvature characteristic forms in the commuting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k)_{\mathrm{vert}} & \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) & & \text{gauge transformation} \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\
\Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) & & \mathfrak{g}\text{-valued form} \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\
\Omega^\bullet(U) & \xleftarrow{\langle F_A \rangle} & \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) & & \text{curvature characteristic forms}
\end{array}$$

in dgAlg. The commutativity of this diagram is implied by $\iota_v F_A = 0$.

**Definition 1.2.181.** Write $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{CW}}(U)$ for the $\infty$-groupoid of $\mathfrak{g}$-valued forms fitting into such diagrams.

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{CW}(U) : [k] \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc}
\Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k)_{\mathrm{vert}} & \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\Omega^\bullet(U) & \xleftarrow{\langle F_A \rangle} & \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g})
\end{array} \right\} .$$

We call this the coefficient for $\mathfrak{g}$-valued $\infty$-*connections*

**1.2.9.6.2 1-Morphisms: integration of infinitesimal gauge transformations** The 1-morphisms in $\exp(\mathfrak{g})(U)$ may be thought of as *gauge transformations* between $\mathfrak{g}$-valued forms. We unwind what these look like concretely.

**Definition 1.2.182.** Given a 1-morphism in $\exp(\mathfrak{g})(X)$, represented by $\mathfrak{g}$-valued forms

$$\Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^1) \longleftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) : A$$

consider the unique decomposition

$$A = A_U + (A_{\mathrm{vert}} := \lambda \wedge dt) \quad ,$$

with $A_U$ the horizonal differential form component and $t : \Delta^1 = [0,1] \to \mathbb{R}$ the canonical coordinate.

We call $\lambda$ the *gauge parameter*. This is a function on $\Delta^1$ with values in 0-forms on $U$ for $\mathfrak{g}$ an ordinary Lie algebra, plus 1-forms on $U$ for $\mathfrak{g}$ a Lie 2-algebra, plus 2-forms for a Lie 3-algebra, and so forth.

We describe now how this encodes a gauge transformation

$$A_0(s=0) \xrightarrow{\lambda} A_U(s=1)\,.$$

**Observation 1.2.183.** By the nature of the Weil algebra we have

$$\frac{d}{ds} A_U = d_U \lambda + [\lambda \wedge A] + [\lambda \wedge A \wedge A] + \cdots + \iota_s F_A\,,$$

where the sum is over all higher brackets of the $\infty$-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$.

In the Cartan calculus for the case that $\mathfrak{g}$ an ordinary one writes the corresponding *second Ehremsnn condition* $\iota_{\partial_s} F_A = 0$ equivalently

$$\mathcal{L}_{\partial_s} A = \mathrm{ad}_\lambda A\,.$$

**Definition 1.2.184.** Define the *covariant derivative of the gauge parameter* to be

$$\nabla \lambda := d\lambda + [A \wedge \lambda] + [A \wedge A \wedge \lambda] + \cdots\,.$$

**Remark 1.2.185.** In this notation we have

- the general identity
$$\frac{d}{ds} A_U = \nabla \lambda + (F_A)_s$$
- the *horizontality* constraint or *second Ehresmann condition* $\iota_{\partial_s} F_A = 0$, the differential equation
$$\frac{d}{ds} A_U = \nabla \lambda\,.$$

This is known as the equation for *infinitesimal gauge transformations* of an $\infty$-Lie algebra valued form.

**Observation 1.2.186.** By Lie integration we have that $A_{\mathrm{vert}}$ – and hence $\lambda$ – defines an element $\exp(\lambda)$ in the $\infty$-Lie group that integrates $\mathfrak{g}$.

The unique solution $A_U(s=1)$ of the above differential equation at $s=1$ for the initial values $A_U(s=0)$ we may think of as the result of acting on $A_U(0)$ with the gauge transformation $\exp(\lambda)$.

**1.2.9.7 Examples of $\infty$-connections** We discuss some examples of $\infty$-groupoids of $\infty$-connections obtained by Lie integration, as discussed in 1.2.9.6 above.

- 1.2.9.7.1 – Connections on ordinary principal bundles
- 1.2.9.7.2 – $\mathfrak{string}$-2-connections

**1.2.9.7.1 Connections on ordinary principal bundles** Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be an ordinary Lie algebra and write $G$ for the simply connected Lie group integrating it. Write $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ the groupoid of Lie algebra-valued forms from prop. 1.2.114.

**Proposition 1.2.187.** *The 1-truncation of the object* $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ *from def. 1.2.179 is equivalent to the coefficient object for $G$-principal connections from prop. 1.2.114. We have an equivalence*

$$\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}} = \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

Proof. To see this, first note that the sheaves of objects on both sides are manifestly isomorphic, both are the sheaf of $\Omega^1(-,\mathfrak{g})$. For morphisms, observe that for a form $\Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^1) \leftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) : A$ which we may decompose into a horizontal and a verical piece as $A = A_U + \lambda \wedge dt$ the condition $\iota_{\partial_t} F_A = 0$ is equivalent to the differential equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} A = d_U \lambda + [\lambda, A] \,.$$

For any initial value $A(0)$ this has the unique solution

$$A(t) = g(t)^{-1}(A + d_U) g(t) \,,$$

where $g : [0,1] \to G$ is the parallel transport of $\lambda$:

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left( g_(t)^{-1}(A + d_U) g(t) \right) \\ =& g(t)^{-1}(A + d_U)\lambda g(t) - g(t)^{-1}\lambda(A + d_U) g(t) \end{aligned}$$

(where for ease of notation we write actions as if $G$ were a matrix Lie group).

In particular this implies that the endpoints of the path of $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-forms are related by the usual cocycle condition in $\mathbf{B}G_{conn}$

$$A(1) = g(1)^{-1}(A + d_U) g(1) \,.$$

In the same fashion one sees that given 2-cell in $\exp(\mathfrak{g})(U)$ and any 1-form on $U$ at one vertex, there is a unique lift to a 2-cell in $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{conn}$, obtained by parallel transporting the form around. The claim then follows from the previous statement of Lie integration that $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{g}) = \mathbf{B}G$. □

**1.2.9.7.2 $\mathfrak{string}$-2-connections** We discuss the $\mathfrak{string}$ Lie 2-algebra and local differential form data for $\mathfrak{string}$-2-connections. A detailed discussion of the corresponding String-principal 2-bundles is below in 7.1.2.4, more discussion of the 2-connections and their twisted generalization is in 7.1.6.3.

Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be a semisimple Lie algebra. Write $\langle -,- \rangle : \mathfrak{g}^{\otimes 2} \to \mathbb{R}$ for its Killing form and

$$\mu = \langle -, [-,-] \rangle : \mathfrak{g}^{\otimes 3} \to \mathbb{R}$$

for the canonical 3-cocycle.

We discuss two very different looking, but nevertheless equivalent Lie 2-algebras.

**Definition 1.2.188** (skeletal version of $\mathfrak{string}$)**.** Write $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$ for the Lie 2-algebra whose underlying graded vector space is

$$\mathfrak{g}_\mu = \mathfrak{g} \oplus \mathbb{R}[-1]\,,$$

and whose nonvanishing brackets are defined as follows.

- The binary bracket is that of $\mathfrak{g}$ when both arguments are from $\mathfrak{g}$ and 0 otherwise.
- The trinary bracket is the 3-cocycle

$$[-,-,-]_{\mathfrak{g}_\mu} := \langle -, [-,-]\rangle : \mathfrak{g}^{\otimes 3} \to \mathbb{R}\,.$$

**Definition 1.2.189** (strict version of $\mathfrak{string}$)**.** Write $(\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{g} \to P_*\mathfrak{g})$ for the Lie 2-algebra coming from the differential crossed module, def. 1.2.82, whose underlying vector space is

$$(\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{g} \to P\mathfrak{g}) = P_*\mathfrak{g} \oplus (\Omega\mathfrak{g} \oplus \mathbb{R})[-1]\,,$$

where $P_*\mathfrak{g}$ is the vector space of smooth maps $\gamma : [0,1] \to \mathfrak{g}$ such that $\gamma(0) = 0$, and where $\Omega\mathfrak{g}$ is the subspace for which also $\gamma(1) = 0$, and whose non-vanishing brackets are defined as follows

- $[-]_1 = \partial := \Omega\mathfrak{g} \oplus \mathbb{R} \to \Omega\mathfrak{g} \hookrightarrow P_*\mathfrak{g}$;
- $[-,-] : P_*\mathfrak{g} \otimes P_*\mathfrak{g} \to P_*\mathfrak{g}$ is given by the pointwise Lie bracket on $\mathfrak{g}$ as

$$[\gamma_1, \gamma_2] = (\sigma \mapsto [\gamma_1(\sigma), \gamma_2(\sigma)])\,;$$

- $[-,-] : P_*\mathfrak{g} \otimes (\Omega\mathfrak{g} \oplus \mathbb{R}) \to \Omega\mathfrak{g} \oplus \mathbb{R}$ is given by pairs

$$[\gamma, (\ell, c)] := \left( [\gamma, \ell],\ 2\int_0^1 \langle \gamma(\sigma), \frac{d\ell}{d\sigma}(\sigma)\rangle d\sigma \right)\,, \tag{1.5}$$

  where the first term is again pointwise the Lie bracket in $\mathfrak{g}$.

**Proposition 1.2.190.** *The linear map*

$$P_*\mathfrak{g} \oplus (\Omega\mathfrak{g} \oplus \mathbb{R})[-1] \to \mathfrak{g} \oplus \mathbb{R}[-1]\,,$$

*which in degree 0 is evaluation at the endpoint*

$$\gamma \mapsto \gamma(1)$$

*and which in degree 1 is projection onto the* $\mathbb{R}$*-summand, induces a weak equivalence of* $L_\infty$ *algebras*

$$\mathfrak{string} \simeq (\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{g} \to P_*\mathfrak{g}) \simeq \mathfrak{g}_\mu$$

Proof. This is theorem 30 in [BCSS07]. □

**Definition 1.2.191.** We write $\mathfrak{string}$ for the *string Lie 2-algebra* if we do not mean to specify a specific presentation such as $\mathrm{so}_\mu$ or $(\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{so} \to P_*\mathfrak{so})$.

In more technical language we would say that $\mathfrak{string}$ is defined to be the homotopy fiber of the morphism of $L_\infty$-algebras $\mu_3 : \mathfrak{so} \to b^2\mathbb{R}$, well defined up to weak equivalence.

**Remark 1.2.192.** Proposition 1.2.190 says that the two Lie 2-algebras $(\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{g} \to P_*\mathfrak{g})$ and $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$, which look quite different, are actually equivalent. Therefore also the local data for a String-2 connection can take two very different looking but nevertheless equivalent forms.

Let $U$ be a smooth manifold. The data of $(\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{g} \to P_*\mathfrak{g})$-valued forms on $X$ is a triple

1. $A \in \Omega^1(U, P\mathfrak{g})$;
2. $B \in \Omega^2(U, \Omega\mathfrak{g})$;
3. $\hat{B} \in \Omega^2(U, \mathbb{R})$ .

consisting of a 1-form with values in the path Lie algebra of $\mathfrak{g}$, a 2-form with values in the loop Lie algebra of $\mathfrak{g}$, and an ordinary real-valued 2-form that contains the central part of $\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{g} = \Omega\mathfrak{g} \oplus \mathbb{R}$. The curvature data of this is

1. $F = dA + \frac{1}{2}[A \wedge A] + B \in \Omega^2(U, P\mathfrak{g})$;
2. $H = d(B + \hat{B}) + [A \wedge (B + \hat{B})] \in \Omega^3(U, \Omega\mathfrak{g} \oplus \mathbb{R})$, ,

where in the last term we have the bracket from (1.5). Notice that if we choose a basis $\{t_a\}$ of $\mathfrak{g}$ such that we have structure constant $[t_b, t_c] = f^a{}_{bc} t_a$, then for instance the first equation is

$$F^a(\sigma) = dA^a(\sigma) + \frac{1}{2} f^a{}_{bc} A^b(\sigma) \wedge A^c(\sigma) + B^a(\sigma)\,.$$

On the other hand, the data of forms on $U$ is a tuple

1. $A \in \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{g})$;
2. $\hat{B} \in \Omega^2(U, \mathbb{R})$,

consisting of a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued form and a real-valued 2-form. The curvature data of this is

1. $F = dA + [A \wedge A] \in \Omega^2(\mathfrak{g})$;
2. $H = d\hat{B} + \langle A \wedge [A \wedge A]\rangle \in \Omega^3(U)$.

While these two sets of data look very different, proposition 1.2.190 implies that under their respective higher gauge transformations they are in fact equivalent.

Notice that in the first case the 2-form is valued in a nonabelian Lie algebra, whereas in the second case the 2-form is abelian, but, to compensate this, a trilinear term appears in the formula for the curvatures. By the discussion in section 1.2.9.6 this means that a $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$-2-connection looks simpler on a single patch than an $(\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{g} \to P_*\mathfrak{g})$-2-connection, it has relatively more complicated behavious on double intersections.

Moreover, notice that in the second case we see that one part of Chern-Simons term for $A$ occurs, namely $\langle A \wedge [A \wedge A]\rangle$ . The rest of the Chern-Simons term appears in this local formula after passing to yet another equivalent version of $\mathfrak{string}$, one which is well-adapted to the discussion of twisted String 2-connections. This we discuss in the next section.

The equivalence of the skeletal and the strict presentation for $\mathfrak{string}$ corresponds under Lie integration to two different but equivalent models of the smooth String-2-group.

**Proposition 1.2.193.** *The degeewise Lie integration of* $\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{so} \to P_*\mathfrak{so}$ *yields the strict Lie 2-group* $(\hat{\Omega}\mathrm{Spin} \to P_*\mathrm{Spin})$, *where* $\hat{\Omega}\mathrm{Spin}$ *is the level-1 Kac-Moody central extension of the smooth loop group of* Spin*.*

Proof. The nontrivial part to check is that the action of $P_*\mathfrak{so}$ on $\hat{\Omega}\mathfrak{so}$ lifts to a compatible action of $P_*\mathrm{Spin}$ on $\hat{\Omega}\mathrm{Spin}$. This is shown in [BCSS07]. □

Below in 7.1.2.4 we show that there is an equivalence of smooth $n$-stacks

$$\mathbf{B}(\hat{\Omega}\mathrm{Spin} \to P_*\mathrm{Spin}) \simeq \tau_2 \exp(\mathfrak{g}_\mu)\,.$$

### 1.2.10 The Chern-Weil homomorphism

We now come to the discussion the Chern-Weil homomorphism and its generalization to the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism.

We have seen in 1.2.6 $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles for general smooth $\infty$-groups $G$ and in particular for abelian groups $G$. Naturally, the abelian case is easier and more powerful statements are known about this case. A general strategy for studying nonabelian $\infty$-bundles therefore is to *approximate* them by abelian bundles. This is achieved by considering characteristic classes. Roughly, a characteristic class is a map that functorially sends $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles to $\mathbf{B}^n K$-principal $\infty$-bundles, for some $n$ and some abelian group $K$. In some cases such an assignment may be obtained by integration of infinitesimal data. If so, then the assignment refines to one of $\infty$-bundles with connection. For $G$ an ordinary Lie group this is then what is called the *Chern-Weil homomorphism*. For general $G$ we call it the $\infty$*-Chern-Weil homomorphism*.

The material of this section is due to [SSS09a] and [FSS10].

**1.2.10.1 Motivating examples** A simple motivating example for characteristic classes and the Chern-Weil homomorphism is the construction of determinant line bundles from example 1.2.142. This construction directly extends to the case where the bundles carry connections. We give an exposition of this *differential refinement* of the *universal first Chern class*, example 1.2.142. A more formal discussion of this situation is below in 7.1.6.1.

For $N \in \mathbb{N}$ We may canonically identify the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{u}(N)$ with the matrix Lie algebra of skew-hermitian matrices on which we have the trace operation

$$\mathrm{tr} : \mathfrak{u}(N) \to \mathfrak{u}(1) = i\mathbb{R}\,.$$

This is the differential version of the determinant in that when regarding the Lie algebra as the infinitesimal neighbourhood of the neutral element in $U(N)$ the determinant becomes the trace under the exponential map

$$\det(1 + \epsilon A) = 1 + \epsilon \mathrm{tr}(A)$$

for $\epsilon^2 = 0$. It follows that for $\mathrm{tra}_\nabla : \mathbf{P}_1(U_i) \to \mathbf{B}U(N)$ the parallel transport of a connection on $P$ locally given by a 1-forms $A \in \Omega^1(U_i, \mathfrak{u}(N))$ by

$$\mathrm{tra}_\nabla(\gamma) = \mathcal{P}\exp \int_{[0,1]} \gamma^* A$$

the determinant parallel transport

$$\det(\mathrm{tra}_\nabla =: \mathbf{P}_1(U_i) \stackrel{\mathrm{tra}_\nabla}{\to} \mathbf{B}U(N) \stackrel{\det}{\to} \mathbf{B}U(1)$$

is locally given by the formula

$$\det(\mathrm{tra}_\nabla(\gamma)) = \mathcal{P}\exp \int_{[0,1]} \gamma^* \mathrm{tr} A\,,$$

which means that the local connection forms on the determinant line bundle are obtained from those of the unitary bundle by tracing.

$$(\det, \mathrm{tr}) : \{(g_{ij}), (A_i)\} \mapsto \{(\det g_{ij}), (\mathrm{tr} A_i)\}\,.$$

This construction extends to a functor

$$(\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1) := (\det, \mathrm{tr}) : U(N)\mathrm{Bund}_{\mathrm{conn}}(X) \to U(1)\mathrm{Bund}_{\mathrm{conn}}(X)$$

natural in $X$, that sends $U(n)$-principal bundles with connection to circle bundles with connection, hence to cocycles in degree-2 ordinary differential cohomology.

This assignment remembers of a unitary bundle one inegral class and its differential refinement:

- the integral class of the determinant bundle is the first Chern class the $U(N)$-principal bundle

$$[\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1(P)] = c_1(P)\,;$$

- the curvature 2-form of its connection is a representative in de Rham cohomology of this class

$$[F_{\nabla_{\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1(P)}}] = c_1(P)_{\mathrm{dR}}\,.$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & H^2_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ H^2(X,\mathbb{Z}) & & & & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccccc} & & \hat{\mathbf{c}}_1(P) & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ c_1(P) & & & & \mathrm{tr}(F_\nabla) \end{array}$$

Equivalently this assignment is given by postcomposition of cocycles with a morphism of smooth $\infty$-groupoids

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1 : \mathbf{B}U(N)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}\,.$$

We say that $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1$ is a *differential characteristic class*, the differential refinement of the first Chern class.

In [BrMc96b] an algorithm is given for contructing differential characteristic classes on Čech cocycles in this fashion for more general Lie algebra cocycles. For instance these authors give the following construction for the diffrential refinement of the first Pontryagin class [BrMc93].

Let $N \in \mathbb{N}$, write $\mathrm{Spin}(N)$ for the Spin group and consider the canonical Lie algebra cohomology 3-cocycle

$$\mu = \langle -, [-,-]\rangle : \mathfrak{so}(N) \to \mathbf{b}^2\mathbb{R}$$

on semisimple Lie algebras, where $\langle -, -\rangle$ is the Killing form invariant polynomial. Let $(P \to X, \nabla)$ be a $\mathrm{Spin}(N)$-principal bundle with connection. Let $A \in \Omega^1(P, \mathfrak{so}(N))$ be the Ehresmann connection 1-form on the total space of the bundle.

Then construct a Čech cocycle for Deligne cohomology in degree 4 as follows:

1. pick an open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ such that there is a choice of local sections $\sigma_i : U_i \to P$. Write

$$(g_{ij}, A_i) := (\sigma_i^{-1}\sigma_j, \sigma_i^* A)$$

   for the induced Čech cocycle.

2. Choose a lift of this cocycle to an assignment

   - of based paths in $\mathrm{Spin}(N)$ to double intersections

$$\hat{g}_{ij} : U_{ij} \times \Delta^1 \to Spin(N)\,,$$

     with $\hat{g}_{ij}(0) = e$ and $\hat{g}_{ij}(1) = g_{ij}$;

   - of based 2-simplices between these paths to triple intersections

$$\hat{g}_{ijk} : U_{ijk} \times \Delta^2 \to \mathrm{Spin}(N)\,;$$

     restricting to these paths in the obvious way;

   - similarly of based 3-simplices between these paths to quadruple intersections

$$\hat{g}_{ijkl} : U_{ijkl} \times \Delta^3 \to \mathrm{Spin}(N)\,.$$

   Such lifts always exists, because the Spin group is connected (because already $\mathrm{SO}(N)$ is), simply connected (because $\mathrm{Spin}(N)$ is the universal cover of $\mathrm{SO}(N)$) and also has $\pi_2(\mathrm{Spin}(N)) = 0$ (because this is the case for every compact Lie group).

3. Define from this a Deligne-cochain by setting

$$\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1(P) := (g_{ijkl}, A_{ijk}, B_{ij}, C_i) := \left( \begin{array}{l} \int_{\Delta^3} (\sigma_i \cdot \hat{g}_{ijkl})^* \mu(A) mod \mathbb{Z}, \\ \int_{\Delta^2} (\sigma_i \cdot \hat{g}_{ijk})^* \mathrm{cs}(A), \\ \int_{\Delta^1} (\sigma_i \cdot \hat{g}_{ij})^* \mathrm{cs}(A), \\ \sigma_i^* \mu(A) \end{array} \right) ,$$

where $\mathrm{cs}(A) = \langle A \wedge F_A \rangle + c \langle A \wedge [A \wedge A] \rangle$ is the Chern-Simons form of the connection form $A$ with respect to the cocyle $\mu(A) = \langle A \wedge [A \wedge A] \rangle$.

They then prove:

1. This is indeed a Deligne cohomology cocycle;
2. it represents the differential refinement of the first fractional Pontryagin class of $P$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) & & & & \frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1(P) & \\ \swarrow & & \searrow & & \swarrow & & \searrow \\ H^4(X, \mathbb{Z}) & & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) & & \frac{1}{2}p_1(P) & & d\mathrm{cs}(A) \end{array} .$$

In the form in which we have (re)stated this result here the second statement amounts, in view of the first statement, to the observation that the curvature 4-form of the Deligne cocycle is proportional to

$$d\mathrm{cs}(A) \propto \langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle \in \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$$

which represents the first Pontryagin class in de Rham cohomology. Therefore the key observation is that we have a Deligne cocycle at all. This can be checked directly, if somewhat tediously, by hand.

But then the question remains: where does this successful *Ansatz* come from? And is it *natural*? For instance: does this construction extend to a morphism of smooth $\infty$-groupoids

$$\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}(N)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

from Spin-principal bundles with connection to circle 3-bundles with connection?

In the following we give a natural presentation of the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism by means of Lie integration of $L_\infty$-algebraic data to simplicial presheaves. Among other things, this construction yields an understanding of why this construction is what it is and does what it does.

The construction proceeds in the following broad steps

1. The infinitesimal analog of a characteristic class $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ is an $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle

$$\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to b^{n-1}\mathbb{R} .$$

2. There is a formal procedure of universal Lie integration which sends this to a morphism of smooth $\infty$-groupoids

$$\exp(\mu) : \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \to \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \simeq \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}$$

presented by a morphism of simplicial presheaves on CartSp.

3. By finding a Chern-Simons element cs that witnesses the transgression of $\mu$ to an invariant polynomial on $\mathfrak{g}$ this construction has a differential refinement to a morphism

$$\exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs}) : \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

that sends $L_\infty$-algebra valued connections to line $n$-bundles with connection.

4. The $n$-truncation $\mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} \exp(\mathfrak{g})$ of the object on the left produces the smooth $\infty$-groups on interest – $\mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \simeq \mathbf{B}G$ – and the corresponding truncation of $\exp((\mu, cs))$ carves out the lattice $\Gamma$ of periods in $G$ of the cocycle $\mu$ inside $\mathbb{R}$. The result is the differential characteristic class

$$\exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs}) : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

Typically we have $\Gamma \simeq \mathbb{Z}$ such that this then reads

$$\exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs}) : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

**1.2.10.2 The $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism** In the full $\infty$-Chern-Weil theory the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism is conceptually very simple: for every $n$ there is canonically a morphism of smooth $\infty$-groupoids $\mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)$ where the object on the right classifies ordinary de Rham cohomology in degree $n+1$. For $G$ any $\infty$-group and any characteristic class $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)$, the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism is the operation that takes a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ to the composite $X \to \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)$.

All the constructions that we consider here in this introduction serve to *model* this abstract operation. The $\infty$-connections that we considered yield resolutions of $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ and $\mathbf{B}G$ in terms of which the abstract morphisms are modeled as $\infty$-anafunctors.

**1.2.10.2.1 $\infty$-Chern-Simons functionals** If we express $G$ by Lie integration of an $\infty$-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, then the basic $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism is modeled by composing an $\infty$-connection $(A_{\mathrm{vert}}, A, \langle F_A \rangle)$ with the transgression of an invariant polynomial $(\mu, \mathrm{cs}, \langle - \rangle)$ as follows

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k)_{\mathrm{vert}} \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) & & \text{Čech cocycle} \\ \uparrow \qquad\qquad \uparrow & & \\ \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) \xleftarrow{A} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) & & \text{connection} \\ \uparrow \qquad\qquad \uparrow & & \\ \Omega^\bullet(U) \xleftarrow{\langle F_A \rangle} \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) & & \begin{array}{c}\text{curvature} \\ \text{characteristic forms}\end{array} \end{array} \right) \circ \left( \begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\mu} \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & & \text{cocycle} \\ \uparrow \qquad\qquad \uparrow & & \\ \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}} \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & & \begin{array}{c}\text{Chern-Simons} \\ \text{element}\end{array} \\ \uparrow \qquad\qquad \uparrow & & \\ \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\langle - \rangle} \mathrm{inv}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & & \begin{array}{c}\text{invariant} \\ \text{polynomial}\end{array} \end{array} \right)$$

$$= \left( \begin{array}{ccccc} \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k)_{\mathrm{vert}} \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\mu} \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & & : \mu(A_{\mathrm{vert}}) & & \text{characteristic class} \\ \uparrow \qquad\qquad \uparrow \qquad\qquad \uparrow & & & & \\ \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) \xleftarrow{A} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}} \mathrm{W}(b^n - 1\mathbb{R}) & & : \mathrm{cs}_\mu(A) & & \text{Chern-Simons form} \\ \uparrow \qquad\qquad \uparrow \qquad\qquad \uparrow & & & & \\ \Omega^\bullet(U) \xleftarrow{\langle F_A \rangle} \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\langle - \rangle} \mathrm{inv}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & & : \langle F_A \rangle_\mu & & \begin{array}{c}\text{curvature} \\ \text{characteristic forms}\end{array} \end{array} \right) .$$

This clearly yields a morphism of simplicial presheaves

$$\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{conn}} : \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

and, upon restriction to the top two horizontal layers, a morphism

$$\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{diff}} : \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} \to \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{diff}} .$$

Projection onto the third horizontal component gives the map to the curvature classes

$$\exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{diff}} \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \exp(b^n\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{simp}} ,$$

In total, this constitutes an $\infty$-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{diff}}} & \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} b^n\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow \simeq & & & & \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & & & & \end{array}$$

Postcomposition with this is the simple $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism: it sends a cocycle

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(U) & \longrightarrow & \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

for an $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$-principal bundle to the curvature form represented by

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} C(V) & \xrightarrow{(g,\nabla)} & \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{diff}}} & \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} b^n\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq & & & & \\ C(U) & \xrightarrow{g} & \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & & & & \\ \downarrow \simeq & & & & & & \\ X & & & & & & \end{array} .$$

**Proposition 1.2.194.** *For $\mathfrak{g}$ an ordinary Lie algebra with simply connected Lie group $G$, the image under $\tau_1(-)$ of this diagram constitutes the ordinary Chern-Weil homomorphism in that:*

*for $g$ the cocycle for a $G$-principal bundle, any ordinary connection on a bundle constitutes a lift $(g, \nabla)$ to the tip of the anafunctor and the morphism represented by that is the Čech-hypercohomology cocycle on $X$ with values in the truncated de Rham complex given by the globally defined curvature characteristic form $\langle F_\nabla \wedge \cdots \wedge F_\nabla \rangle$.*

But evidently we have more information available here. The ordinary Chern-Weil homomorphism refines from a map that assigns curvature characteristic forms, to a map that assigns secondary characteristic classes in the sense that it assigns circle $n$-bundles with connection whose curvature is this curvature characteristic form. The local connection forms of these circle bundles are given by the middle horizontal morphisms. These are the Chern-Simons forms

$$\Omega^\bullet(U) \overset{A}{\leftarrow} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \overset{cs}{\leftarrow} \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) : \mathrm{cs}(A) .$$

**1.2.10.2.2 Secondary characteristic classes** So far we discussed the untruncated coefficient object $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of $\mathfrak{g}$-valued $\infty$-connections. The real object of interest is the $k$-truncated version $\tau_k \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ where $k \in \mathbb{N}$ is such that $\tau_k \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \simeq \mathbf{B}G$ is the delooping of the $\infty$-Lie group in question.

Under such a truncation, the integrated $\infty$-Lie algebra cocycle $exp(\mu) : exp(\mathfrak{g}) \to exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$ will no longer be a simplicial map. Instead, the periods of $\mu$ will cut out a lattice $\Gamma$ in $\mathbb{R}$, and $\exp(\mu)$ does descent to the quotient of $\mathbb{R}$ by that lattice

$$\exp(\mu) : \tau_k \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}/\Gamma \,.$$

We now say this again in more detail.

Suppose $\mathfrak{g}$ is such that the $(n+1)$-coskeleton $\mathbf{cosk}_{n+1}\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}G$ for the desired $G$. Then the periods of $\mu$ over $(n+1)$-balls cut out a lattice $\Gamma \subset \mathbb{R}$ and thus we get an $\infty$-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1}\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}/\Gamma \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} &&&& \\ \mathbf{B}G &&&& \end{array}$$

This is *curvature characteristic class*. We may always restrict to genuine $\infty$-connections and refine

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1}\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_{\mathrm{conn}} && \\ \big\downarrow && \big\downarrow && \\ \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1}\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}/\Gamma \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} &&&& \\ \mathbf{B}G &&&& \end{array}$$

which models the refined $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism with values in ordinary differential cohomology

$$H_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, G) \to \mathbf{H}^{n+1}_{conn}(X, \mathbb{R}/\Gamma) \,.$$

**Example 1.2.195.** Applying this to the discussion of the Chern-Simons circle 3-bundle above, we find a differential refinement

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} && \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}}\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{diff}} \;\; . \\ && \downarrow && \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int_{\Delta^\bullet}} \\ C(V) & \xrightarrow{(\hat g, \hat\nabla)} & \mathbf{cosk}_3\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} && \downarrow && \\ C(U) & \xrightarrow{(g, \nabla)} & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{diff}} && \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} &&&& \\ X &&&& \end{array}$$

Chasing components through this composite one finds that this descibes the cocycle in Deligne cohomology given by

$$(CS(\sigma_i^*\nabla), \; \int_{\Delta^1} CS(\hat g_{ij}^*\nabla), \int_{\Delta^2} CS(\hat g_{ijk}^*\nabla), \int_{\Delta^3} \hat g_{ijkl}^*\mu) \,.$$

This is the cocycle for the circle $n$-bundle with connection.

This is precisely the form of the Čech-Deligne cocycle for the first Pontryagin class given in [BrMc96b], only that here it comes out automatically normalized such as to represent the fractional generator $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$.

By feeding in more general transgressive $\infty$-Lie algebra cocycles through this machine, we obtain cocycles for more general differential characteristic classes. For instance the next one is the second fractional Pontryagin class of String-2-bundles with connection [FSS10]. Moreover, these constructions naturally yield the full cocycle $\infty$-groupoids, not just their cohomology sets. This allows us to form the homotopy fibers of the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism and thus define *differential string structures* etc. and *twisted* differential string structures etc. [SSS09c].

## 1.3 Physics

This section is an introduction to and review of aspects of modern mathematical physics, formulated mostly in traditional terms but with an eye towards the developments below.

- 1.3.1 – Classical local Lagrangian field theory
- 1.3.2 – Hamilton-Jacobi mechanics via Prequantized Hamiltonian correspondences
- 1.3.3 – Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl field theory via Higher correspondences
- 1.3.4 – Higher pre-quantum gauge fields
- 1.3.5 – Higher geometric pre-quantum theory

### 1.3.1 Classical local Lagrangian Field theory

We give here a self-contained account of the basic definitions and facts in modern variational calculus for classical local Lagrangian field theories in terms of jet geometry [Ol93, And89]. While nothing in this section is new, our review puts an emphasis on certain aspects that will be crucial below in section 6.5.11 and that are somewhat hidden in the standard literature. These aspects include:

- the comonadicity of the category of partial differential equations due to [Marv86];
- the functoriality of the Euler-Lagrange complex over the site of differential operators, implicit in [And89].

This section draws from [KhaSc] and owes a lot to Igor Khavkine.

- 1.3.1.1 – Jet bundles, Differential operators and PDEs
- 1.3.1.2 – Horizontal de Rham complex;
- 1.3.1.3 – Variational bicomplex;
- 1.3.34 – Euler-Lagrange complex;
- 1.3.1.5 – Equations of motion and Lagrangians;
- 1.3.1.6 – Action functional and covariant phase space;
- 1.3.1.7 – Symmetries and conserved currents.

#### 1.3.1.1 Jet bundles, Differential operators and PDEs

Throughout, let

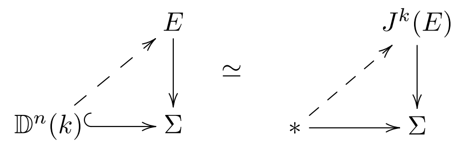
- $p \in \mathbb{N}$;
- $\Sigma$ be a $(p+1)$-dimensional manifold, regarded as the *spacetime/worldvolume* of the field theory,
- $E \to \Sigma$ be a smooth bundle, called the *field bundle*, whose smooth sections $\phi \in \Gamma(E)$ are the *field configurations* of the field theory.

**Definition 1.3.1.** Any smooth bundle may be extended to a sequence of *k-jet bundles* $J^kE \to J^{k-1}E$, each an affine bundle over the preceding one, with $J^0E = E$. The projective limit

$$J^\infty E := \varprojlim J^\bullet E\,,$$

regarded as a bundle over $\Sigma$, is the *$(\infty$-$)$jet bundle* of $E$.

**Remark 1.3.2.** The intuition is that a section of $J^k(E)$ over a point $x \in \Sigma$ is equivalently a section of $E$ over the order-$k$ infinitesimal neighbourhood $\mathbb{D}^n(k)$ of $x$:




This intuition becomes a precise statement [Kock80, section 2] after embedding smooth manifolds into a model for synthetic differential geometry, such as [Dub79b, **?**], where formal manifolds such as $\mathbb{D}^n(k)$ genuinely exist. We come back to this below in section 6.5.10. The synthetic formulation has models also in algebraic geometry, where the construction of jet bundles is known in the language of "crystals of schemes" or "$\mathcal{D}$-geometry," see for instance [**?**].

**Remark 1.3.3.** While $J^\infty E$ is not finite dimensional, it is nearly so, because any smooth function on it must depend only on a finite number of coordinates, with the number bounded at least locally. Technically this means that $J^\infty E$ is defined a projective limit of a tower of affine bundles over $E$. It follows in particular that $J^\infty_\Sigma$ has the same de Rham cohomology as $E$, $H^p(J^\infty E) \cong H^p(E)$.

By remark 1.3.2 it is clear that we have the following (see e.g. [Marv86]):

**Definition 1.3.4.** The jet bundle construction of def. 5.3.8 extends to a functor

$$J^\infty_\Sigma : \mathrm{SmoothMfd}_{\downarrow\Sigma} \longrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothMfd}_{\downarrow\Sigma}\,.$$

Notice the following degenerate case.

**Example 1.3.5.** If we regard $\Sigma \overset{\mathrm{id}}{\to} \Sigma$ canonically as a bundle over itself, then it coincides with its jet bundle: $J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma) \simeq \Sigma$.

Simple as this is, it induces the following key construction.

**Definition 1.3.6.** Given a section $\phi\colon \Sigma \to E$, $\phi \in \Gamma_\Sigma(E)$, its *jet prolongation* is its image under the jet functor, def. 1.3.4, regarded as a section of the jet bundle via the equivalence of example 1.3.5:

$$j^\infty(\phi) := \;\Sigma \xrightarrow{\;\simeq\;} J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{\;J^\infty_\Sigma(\phi)\;} J^\infty_\Sigma(E)\;\;.$$

**Remark 1.3.7.** In terms of remark 1.3.2 the jet extension of def. 1.3.6 is the result of restricting $\phi$ to all order-$k$ infinitesimal neighbourhoods of its domain.

It turns out that the construction of jet bundles has some excellent abstract properties that are useful in the classical theory and indispensable in the prequantum theory which we turn to in [**?**]. Before stating them, we briefly recall the pertinent definitions.

**Proposition 1.3.8** ([Marv86])**.** *The jet bundle endofunctor of def. 1.3.4, together with the canonical projection map* $J^\infty_\Sigma E \to \Sigma$ *as well as with the natural transformation* $\mathrm{Jet}(E) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Jet}(\mathrm{Jet}(E))$ *induced from the jet prolongation operation* $j^\infty$*, def. 5.3.79, is a co-monad.*

**Proposition 1.3.9** ([Marv86, section 1.1])**.** *For* $E_1, E_2 \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}_{/\Sigma}$ *two bundles over* $\Sigma$*, then a* differential operator $D\colon \Gamma_\Sigma(E_1) \longrightarrow \Gamma_\Sigma(E_2)$ *is equivalently a map between their spaces of sections of the form* $\phi \mapsto \tilde{D} \circ j^\infty(\phi)$*, where* $j^\infty$ *is the jet prolongation of def. 1.3.6, and where* $\tilde{D}$ *is a morphism of bundles over* $\Sigma$ *of the form*

$$\tilde{D} : J^\infty_\Sigma(E_1) \longrightarrow E_2 \,.$$

*The composite* $D_2 \circ D_1$ *of two differential operators is given by*

$$\widetilde{D_2 \circ D_1}\colon\ J^\infty_\Sigma(E_1) \xrightarrow{p^\infty(\tilde{D}_1)} J^\infty_\Sigma(E_2) \xrightarrow{\tilde{D}_2} E_3 \ .$$

*In other words, the category* $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$ *of smooth bundles over* $\Sigma$ *with morphisms the differential operators between their sections is equivalently the Kleisli category, def.* **??***, of the jet comonad of prop. 1.3.8.*

**Remark 1.3.10.** Prop. 1.3.9 says in particular that the jet extension of a bundle $E$ itself is the universal differential operator $j^\infty\colon \Gamma_\Sigma(E) \to \Gamma_\Sigma(J^\infty_\Sigma(E))$. with $\widetilde{j^\infty} = \mathrm{id}$.

**Definition 1.3.11.** In the situation of prop. 1.3.9, the composition

$$p^\infty(\tilde{D})\colon\ J^\infty(E_1) \longrightarrow J^\infty(J^\infty(E_1)) \xrightarrow{J^\infty(\tilde{D})} J^\infty(E_2)$$

is called the *prolongation* of the map $\tilde{D}$.

Below in prop. 1.3.16 we give the co-monadic interpretation of $p^\infty$, using the following generalization of prop. 1.3.9.

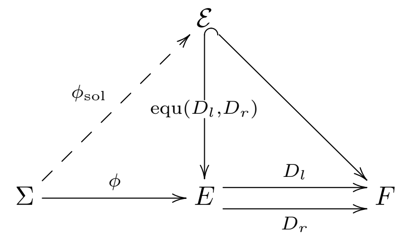
**Theorem 1.3.12** ([Marv86])**.** *The category of co-algebras* $\mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma)$ *(def.* **??***) over the jet comonad over* $\Sigma$ *(prop. 1.3.8) is equivalently the category* $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ *of (non-singular) partial differential equations with free variables ranging in* $\Sigma$*, and with solution-preserving differential operators between these [***?***]:*

$$\mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma) \simeq \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma \,.$$

**Remark 1.3.13.** The identification of objects $\mathcal{E} \in \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ in theorem 1.3.12 with (non-singular) partial differential equations works as follows. First of all, one finds that every $\mathcal{E} \in \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ is the equalizer of a pair of morphisms [10] $D_l, D_r : E \longrightarrow F$ in $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$, hence, by prop. 1.3.9, of two differential operators acting on sections of a bundle $E$ over $\Sigma$. By the universal property of equalizers, this means that the morphisms $\Sigma \xrightarrow{\phi_{\mathrm{sol}}} \mathcal{E}$ in $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ are in bijection with those morphisms $\Sigma \xrightarrow{\phi_{\mathrm{sol}}} E$ such that the two

[10]It is here where the non-singularity condition comes in: If the equalizer of $\tilde{D}_l, \tilde{D}_r : J^\infty E \to F$ is not a smooth submanifold, then de facto it does not exist in $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ as defined here. This is a minor point. To deal with this one passes to an improved category of smooth manifolds where all fiber products exists. This is preferably achieved by a category of "derived" manifolds, whose formal duals are not just plain function algebras, but simplicial function algebras. In the physics literature these are known as BV-complexes. It is fairly straightforward to lift the entire discussion here from smooth manifolds to derived smooth manifolds, and once one does so the non-singular-clauses above may be omitted.

composites $\Sigma \xrightarrow{\phi_{\mathrm{sol}}} E \xrightarrow{D_{l,r}} F$ agree.




$\in \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ .

Now by example 1.3.15 the morphisms $\phi$ here are equivalently sections $\phi \in \Gamma_\Sigma(E)$, and by prop. 1.3.9 these equalize the morphisms $D_l, D_r$ precisely if the action of these as differential operators acting on sections agrees

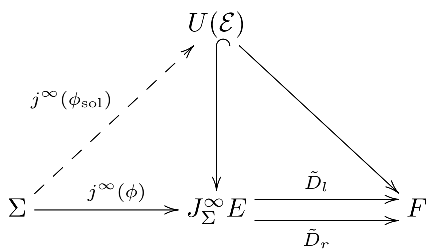
$$D_l(\phi) = D_r(\phi) \, .$$

This is the explicit traditional incarnation of the differential equation embodied by the object $\mathcal{E} \in \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$.

Yet another way to say this is that the monomorphism $\mathcal{E} \hookrightarrow E$ in $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ maps under $U : \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma \to \mathrm{SmoothMfd}_{\downarrow \Sigma}$ to a submanifold inclusion

$$U(\mathcal{E}) \hookrightarrow J^\infty E$$

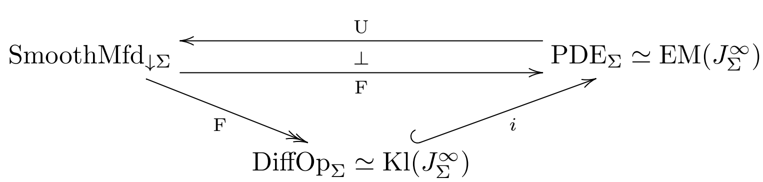
of the jet bundle of $E$, and that the solutions $\phi_{\mathrm{sol}}$ to the differential equation are those sections $\phi \in \Gamma_\Sigma(E)$ whose jet prolongation, def. 5.3.79 factors through this inclusion




$\in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}_{\downarrow \Sigma}$ .

It is common to notationally suppress the underlying-bundle functor $U$ and just write $\mathcal{E} \hookrightarrow J^\infty_\Sigma E$ if the context is clear. One then also says that $\mathcal{E} \subset J^\infty_\Sigma E$ is the dynamical shell of the PDE.

**Remark 1.3.14.** In summary, prop. 1.3.9 and theorem 1.3.12 say, via prop. **??**, that jet geometry constitutes the following comonadic situation:




The category of PDEs over $\Sigma$ (equivalently the Eilenberg-Moore category of $J^\infty_\Sigma$-coalgebras) has a forgetful functor to the category of pro-finite dimensional smooth bundles over $\Sigma$. This functor has a right adjoint, sending any bundle $E$ to the "co-free" differential equation it defines, namely the trivial differential equation on smooth sections of $E$, for which every section is a solution. Even though these are trivial as differential equations, the morphism between bundles when regarded as cofree differential equations are interesting, they are precisely the differential operators. Hence the cofree functor from bundles to PDEs factors through the full inclusion of the category $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$ of bundles with differential operators between them, which is equivalently the Kleisli category, def. **??**, of $J^\infty_\Sigma$. Finally

$$J^\infty_\Sigma \simeq \mathrm{U} \circ \mathrm{F} \, .$$

Due to the nature of the factorization through the Kleisli category, it makes sense and is convenient to leave $F$ notationally implicit.

**Example 1.3.15.** We have

$$\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma(\Sigma, E) \simeq \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma \simeq \Gamma_\Sigma(E)\,.$$

**Proposition 1.3.16.** *Given a morphism $D$ in $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$ represented as a co-Kleisli morphism (remark* **??***) $\tilde{D} : J^\infty_\Sigma E_1 \to E_2$, then its underlying bundle map is the prolongation $p^\infty(\tilde{D})$ according to def. 1.3.11:*

$$\mathrm{U}(D) \simeq p^\infty(\tilde{D})\,.$$

Proof. The morphism $D$ is identified with a morphism in $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ of the form $D : \mathrm{F}(E_1) \to \mathrm{F}(E_2)$. The morphism $\tilde{D}$ is the adjunct of this under $(\mathrm{U} \dashv \mathrm{F})$, and conversely, hence, by the formula prop. **??** for adjuncts ,

$$D : \mathrm{F}(E_1) \overset{\eta_{\mathrm{F}(E_1)}}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{F}(\mathrm{U}(\mathrm{F}(E_1))) \overset{\mathrm{F}(\tilde{D})}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{F}(E_2)\,.$$

Therefore

$$\mathrm{U}(D) : \mathrm{U}(\mathrm{F}(E_1)) \overset{\mathrm{U}(\eta_{\mathrm{F}(E_1)})}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{U}(\mathrm{F}(\mathrm{U}(\mathrm{F}(E_1)))) \overset{\mathrm{U}(\mathrm{F}(\tilde{D}))}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{U}(\mathrm{F}(E_2))\,.$$

Via $J^\infty_\Sigma \simeq \mathrm{U} \circ \mathrm{F}$ (prop. **??**) and the formula for the coproduct via the adjunction counit (prop. **??**) the right hand is indeed the formula for $p^\infty$ from def. 1.3.11.

#### 1.3.1.2 Horizontal de Rham complex

A key fact of variational calculus is that the de Rham complex of a jet bundle naturally splits into a bicomplex of horizontal and vertical differentials, with the latter encoding the Euler-Lagrange variation of fields. In terms of the characterization of differential operators due to prop. 1.3.9, the horizontal subcomplex has the following neat formulation.

**Definition 1.3.17** (e.g. [?, def. 3.27])**.** A *horizontal $n$-form $\alpha$* on a jet bundle $J^\infty_\Sigma(E)$ is a differential operator of the form

$$\alpha\colon E \to \wedge^n T^*\Sigma\,. \tag{1.6}$$

With the de Rham differential $d\colon \Omega^n(\Sigma) \to \Omega^{n+1}(\Sigma)$ on $\Sigma$ regarded as a differential operator

$$d\colon \wedge^n T^*X \to \wedge^{n+1} T^*X\,, \tag{1.7}$$

then the *horizontal differential* of a horizontal $n$-form $\alpha$ is the composite of differential operators

$$d_H\alpha\colon F \overset{\alpha}{\longrightarrow} \wedge^n T^*\Sigma \overset{d}{\longrightarrow} \wedge^{n+1} T^*X\,. \tag{1.8}$$

The resulting cochain complex $(\Omega^\bullet_H(E), d_H)$ is the *horizontal de Rham complex* of the jet bundle of $E$.

**Remark 1.3.18.** By prop. 1.3.9 a horizontal $n$-form as in def. 1.3.17 is equivalently a bundle morphism of the form $\tilde{\alpha}\colon J^\infty_\Sigma(E) \to \wedge^n T^*\Sigma$. Composed with the canonical bundle morphism $\wedge^n T^*\Sigma \to \wedge^n T^* J^\infty_\Sigma(E)$ induced from the bundle projection $J^\infty_\Sigma(E) \to \Sigma$, this becomes an actual $n$-form $\tilde{\alpha} \in \Omega^n(J^\infty_\Sigma(E))$ on the jet bundle, whence the name. On the other hand, composed with a jet prolongation $j^\infty(\phi)\colon \Sigma \to J^\infty_\Sigma(E)$, def. 5.3.79, then

$$j^\infty(\phi)^*\tilde{\alpha} \;:\; \Sigma \xrightarrow{\simeq} J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{J^\infty_\Sigma(\phi)} J^\infty_\Sigma(E) \xrightarrow{\tilde{\alpha}} \wedge^n T^*\Sigma$$

is a horizontal $n$-form on $\Sigma$, hence, by example 1.3.5, just a plain $n$-form on $\Sigma$. We use this interpretation to identify horizontal forms with a subset $\Omega^\bullet_H(E) \subset \Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E))$. Moreover, we can actually extend the action of $d_H$ to arbitrary forms in $\Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E))$ as follows. As a graded commutative algebra, $\Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E))$ is generated by $\Omega^0(J^\infty(E))$ and $d\Omega^0(J^\infty(E))$. The action of $d_H$ on $\Omega^0(J^\infty(E))$, since any 0-form is automatically a horizontal form. Further, let $d_H df = -dd_H f$, for any $f \in \Omega^0(J^\infty(E))$. Having defined $d_H$ on the generators, we extend it to all of $\Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E))$ as a graded differential. Note that this definition implies the identity $d_H d + dd_H$.

The formulation of jet prolongation in def. 5.3.79 and of the horizontal complex in def.1.3.17 in terms of the jet comonad structure of prop. 1.3.8 makes the following key property of the horizontal differential follow from general abstract reasoning that holds in general models of jet geometry as in remark 1.3.2.

**Proposition 1.3.19.** *Pullback of horizontal forms along jet prolongations intertwines the horizontal differential with the de Rham differential on* $\Sigma$*: for* $\phi \in \Gamma_\Sigma(E)$ *and* $\alpha \in \Omega_H(E)$*, we have a natural identification*

$$d_\Sigma(j^\infty(\phi)^*\tilde{\alpha}) = j^\infty(\phi)^*(d_H\tilde{\alpha})\,.$$

Proof. Unwinding the definitions, the right hand is the form given by the composite

$$\Sigma \xrightarrow{\simeq} J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma) \overset{J^\infty_\Sigma(\phi)}{\longrightarrow} J^\infty_\Sigma(E) \to J^\infty_\Sigma(J^\infty_\Sigma(E)) \overset{J^\infty_\Sigma(\tilde{\alpha})}{\longrightarrow} J^\infty_\Sigma(\wedge^n T^*\Sigma) \overset{\tilde{d}_\Sigma}{\longrightarrow} \wedge^{n+1}T^*\Sigma\,.$$

Since the $J^\infty_\Sigma$-coproduct is a natural transformation, we may pass $J^\infty_\Sigma(\phi)$ through the coproduct from the left to the right to obtain the equivalent morphism

$$\Sigma \xrightarrow{\simeq} J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{\simeq} J^\infty_\Sigma(J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma)) \overset{J^\infty_\Sigma(J^\infty_\Sigma(\phi))}{\longrightarrow} J^\infty(J^\infty_\Sigma(E)) \overset{J^\infty_\Sigma(\tilde{\alpha})}{\longrightarrow} J^\infty_\Sigma(\wedge^n T^*\Sigma) \overset{\tilde{d}_\Sigma}{\longrightarrow} \wedge^{n+1}T^*\Sigma\,.$$

By functoriality of $J^\infty_\Sigma$ we may compose this as

$$\Sigma \xrightarrow{\simeq} J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{\simeq} J^\infty_\Sigma(J^\infty_\Sigma(\Sigma)) \overset{J^\infty_\Sigma(\tilde{\alpha}\circ J^\infty_\Sigma(\phi))}{\longrightarrow} J^\infty_\Sigma(\wedge^n T^*\Sigma) \overset{\tilde{d}_\Sigma}{\longrightarrow} \wedge^{n+1}T^*\Sigma\,.$$

This is the co-Kleisli morphism (remark **??**) expressing the left hand side of the equation to be established.

#### 1.3.1.3 Variational bicomplex

**Definition 1.3.20.** Write $\Omega^\bullet_V(E) \hookrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(J^\infty_\Sigma(E))$ for the joint kernel of the pullback maps along jet prolongations, def. 5.3.79

$$j^\infty(\phi)^* : \Omega^\bullet(J^\infty_\Sigma(E)) \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \tag{1.9}$$

along all section $\phi \in \Gamma_\Sigma(E)$. These are called the *vertical differential forms* (sometimes also *contact forms*) on the jet bundle. The vertical forms constitute a differential ideal of $(\Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E)), d)$, known as the *contact* or *Cartan ideal*. The *vertical differential*

$$d_V \colon \Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E)) \to \Omega^\bullet_V(E)$$

is

$$d_V := d - d_H\,.$$

**Proposition 1.3.21.** *The complex of differential forms on the jet bundle is a direct sum of the horizontal forms from def. 1.3.17, remark 1.3.18 with the vertical forms of def. 1.3.20*

$$\Omega^\bullet(J^\infty_\Sigma E) \simeq \Omega^\bullet_H(E) \oplus \Omega^\bullet_V(E)\,. \tag{1.10}$$

*In fact, the quotient of the de Rham complex* $(\Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E)), d)$ *by the differential ideal* $\Omega_V(E)$ *gives precisely the horizontal de Rham complex* $(\Omega^\bullet_H(E), d_H)$*.*

Considering the above decomposition on 1-forms, $\Omega^1(J^\infty(E)) = \Omega^1_H(E) \oplus \Omega^1_V(E)$, we assign to elements of $\Omega^1_H(E)$ *horizontal* degree 1 and *vertical* degree 0, while to elements of $\Omega^1_V(E)$ *horizontal* degree 0 and *vertical* degree 1. Also, we assign both horizontal and vertical degree 0 to elements of $\Omega^0(J^\infty(E))$. Obviously, the sum of the horizontal and vertical degrees is the total form degree. Since all forms are generated as a graded algebra by forms of total degrees 0 and 1, we have just defined a bigrading on the forms on $J^\infty(E)$, which we denote as $\Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E)) = \bigoplus_{h,v} \Omega^{h,v}(E)$, where $h$ stands for the *horizontal* and $v$ for *vertical* degrees.

**Proposition 1.3.22.** *The horizontal-vertical bigrading and the operators $d_H$, $d_V$ turns the de Rham complex on $J^\infty(E)$ into a bicomplex, called the* variational bicomplex $(\Omega^{\bullet,\bullet}(E), d_H, d_V)$*, where $d_H$ is of horizontal degree 1 and vertical degree 0, while $d_V$ is of horizontal degree 0 and vertical degree 1.*

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc}
 & & \Omega^0_H(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^1_H(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^2_H(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^p & \xrightarrow{d_V} & \Omega^{p+1}_H(E) \\
 & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \cdots & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_H} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} \\
0 & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{0,1}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{1,1}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{2,1}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{p,1}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{p+1,1}(E) \\
 & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \cdots & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} \\
0 & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{0,2}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{1,2}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{2,2}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{p,2} & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{p+1,2}(E) \\
 & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \cdots & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_V} \\
 & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & & & \vdots & & \vdots
\end{array}
$$

*Here the horizontal rows $(\Omega^{\bullet,v\geq 1}(E), d_H)$ are exact, except at $\Omega^{p+1,v}(E)$, and also the vertical columns $(\Omega^{h,\bullet}(E), d_V)$ are exact, except at $\Omega^{h,0}(E)$.*

**Proposition 1.3.23.** *The total complex of the variational bicomplex is isomorphic to the de Rham complex $(\Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E)), d)$.*

**Remark 1.3.24.** By the above proposition, the variational bicomplex must fail to be exact in some places whenever its total complex $(\Omega^\bullet(J^\infty(E)), d)$ has non-trivial cohomology, which is isomorphic to $H^\bullet(E)$, since $J^\infty(E)$ is contractible to $E$. In the bicomplex, these de Rham classes are concentrated in the $v = 0$ horizontal row and, in a way to be described below, in the $h = p + 1$ vertical column. In fact, all of these cohomology classes are controlled precisely by $H^n_{\mathrm{dR}}(E)$. This is captured by the *Euler-Lagrange complex*, to which we turn below in def. 1.3.34.

The bigraded forms in the variational bicomplex may naturally be identified with certain differential operators. This is particularly important for the $(p+1, 1)$-forms where the following operation will serve to identify the variational derivative of a Lagrangian with the differential operator that embodies the corresponding Euler-Lagrange equations of motion.

**Definition 1.3.25.** For $n, k \in \mathbb{N}$ write

$$\widetilde{(-)} \colon \Omega^{n,k}(E) \longrightarrow \mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma(\wedge^k_E(VE), \wedge^n T^*\Sigma) \tag{1.11}$$

for the map from $(n, k)$-bigraded differential forms as in prop. 1.3.22, to differential operators, which sends $\beta \in \Omega^{n,k}(E)$ to the differential operator $\tilde{\beta}$ whose value on any $(\phi; u_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge u_k) \in \Gamma(\wedge^k_E(VE))$ is

$$\tilde{\beta}[\phi; u_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge u_k] := (j^\infty\phi)^*(\iota_{p^\infty u_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge p^\infty u_k}\beta)\,, \tag{1.12}$$

where the vector fields $u_i$ have been prolonged to the evolutionary vector fields $p^\infty u_i$, as discussed in Remark **??**.

Notice that the bundle $VE \to E \to \Sigma$, or a tensor power of it, is a vector bundle over $E$, but may not be linear over $\Sigma$ if $E$ itself is not a vector bundle. Write $\mathrm{DiffOp}^{E\text{-lin}}_\Sigma(\wedge^k_E(VE), \wedge^n T^*\Sigma)$ for those differential operators which are linear over $E$.

**Proposition 1.3.26.** *The construction in def. 1.3.25 constitutes a linear isomorphism onto those differential operators that are linear over $E$:*

$$\widetilde{(-)} \colon \Omega^{n,k}(E) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{DiffOp}^{E\text{-lin}}_\Sigma(\wedge^k_E(VE), \wedge^n T^*\Sigma) \tag{1.13}$$

**Definition 1.3.27.** For $k \geq 1$, there is a map (*formal adjoint*)

$$(-)^* \colon \mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma^{E\text{-lin}}(\wedge^k_E(VE), \wedge^{p+1}T^*\Sigma) \longrightarrow \mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma^{E\text{-lin}}(\mathbb{R} \times \wedge^{k-1}_E(VE), \wedge^{p+1}T^*\Sigma \otimes_E V^*E) \tag{1.14}$$

which is uniquely characterized [?, Sec.5.2.3] by the condition that for every differential operator $D \in \mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma^{E\text{-lin}}(\wedge^k_E(VE), \wedge^{p+1}T^*\Sigma)$ there is an

$$\omega_D \in \mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma^{E\text{-lin}}(\mathbb{R} \times \wedge^k_E(VE), \wedge^p T^*\Sigma) \tag{1.15}$$

such that for every $f \in C^\infty(\Sigma)$ and every $(\phi; u_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge u_k) \in \Gamma(\wedge^k_E(VE))$ we have

$$fD[\phi; u_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge u_k] - D^*[\phi; f, u_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge u_{k-1}] \cdot u_k = d_\Sigma \omega_D[\phi; f, u_1 \wedge \cdots u_{k-1}, u_k]\,. \tag{1.16}$$

**1.3.1.4 Euler-Lagrange complex** Recall from prop. 1.3.22 that any 1-form on $J^\infty(E)$ can be uniquely decomposed into its horizontal and vertical parts.

**Definition 1.3.28.** The subspace of *order-0 vertical 1-forms*

$$\Omega^1_{V,0}(E) \subset \Omega^1_V(E)$$

is the image of the projection of the forms $(\pi^0_\infty)^*[\Omega^1(E)]$ onto their vertical parts, where we take the pullback along the natural projection $\pi^0_\infty \colon J^\infty(E) \to E$.

**Definition 1.3.29.** For $k \geq 1$, the subspace of *(k-vertical) source forms* is

$$\Omega^{p+1,k}_S(E) := \Omega^{p+1,k-1}(E) \wedge \Omega^1_{V,0}(E)\,.$$

**Remark 1.3.30.** The 1-vertical source forms of def.1.3.29 are also known as *dynamical form* or *Euler-Lagrange forms*, while 2-vertical source forms are known as *Helmholtz forms* [?].

Source forms are a subspace of $\Omega^{p+1,\bullet}(E)$ forms, but can also be obtained by means of an idempotent projection $\mathcal{I} \colon \Omega^{p+1,\bullet}(E) \to \Omega^{p+1,\bullet}(E)$, called the *interior Euler* operator.

**Definition 1.3.31.** The *interior Euler map* [And89, Sec.2.B] is the map

$$\mathcal{I} \colon \Omega^{p+1,k}(E) \to \Omega^{p+1,k}(E) \tag{1.17}$$

defined on any $\beta$ through the equivalent differential operator representation

$$\widetilde{\mathcal{I}(\beta)}[\phi; u_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge u_k] := \frac{1}{k} \sum_{a=1}^{k} (-)^{k-a} \tilde{\beta}^*[\phi; 1, u_1 \wedge \cdots \widehat{u_a} \cdots \wedge u_k] \cdot u_a. \tag{1.18}$$

(where on the right we have the formal adjoint of def. 1.3.27 applied to the differential operator of def. 1.3.25). The *higher Euler operator* is the composite

$$\delta_V := \mathcal{I} \circ d_V \colon \Omega^{p+1,k}(E) \to \Omega^{p+1,k+1}(E)\,. \tag{1.19}$$

**Remark 1.3.32.** For $k = 0$ then $\delta_V$ is better known as the *Euler-Lagrange derivative* and for $k = 1$ and restricted to source forms, def. 1.3.29, then $\delta_V$ is better known as the *Helmholtz operator*.

**Proposition 1.3.33.** *The higher Euler operator is a projection, $\mathcal{I} \circ \mathcal{I} = \mathcal{I}$. Its image is the space of source forms, def. 1.3.29, and its kernel is the space of horizontally exact forms*

$$\mathrm{im}(\mathcal{I}) \cong \Omega^{p+1,k}_S(E), \tag{1.20}$$

$$\ker(\mathcal{I}) \cong \mathrm{im}(d_H). \tag{1.21}$$

In particular prop. 1.3.33 means that the Euler operators continue the complex of horizontal forms, def. 1.3.17, by source forms, def. 1.3.29:

**Definition 1.3.34.** The *Euler-Lagrange complex* of $E$ is the chain complex

$$\Omega^{\bullet}_{\mathrm{EL}_\Sigma}(E) := 0 \to \Omega^0_H(E) \xrightarrow{d_H} \Omega^1_H(E) \xrightarrow{d_H} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_H} \Omega^{p+1}_H(E) \xrightarrow{\delta_V} \Omega^{p+1,1}_S \xrightarrow{\delta_V} \Omega^{p+1,2}_S \xrightarrow{\delta_V} \cdots \tag{1.22}$$

built from the horizontal derivatives $d_H$ of def. 1.3.17 and the Euler operators $\delta_V$ of def. 1.3.31.

**Proposition 1.3.35.** *For $k \geq 1$ we have an exact sequence*

$$0 \to \Omega^{0,k} \xrightarrow{d_H} \Omega^{1,k} \xrightarrow{d_H} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_H} \Omega^{n,k} \xrightarrow{\mathcal{I}} \Omega^{n,k}_S \to 0 \tag{1.23}$$

*formed by the horizontal differentials $d_H$ of def. 1.3.17 and the interior Euler operator $\mathcal{I}$ of def. 1.3.31. Hence the variational bicomplex in prop. 1.3.22 is augmented to double complex as follows, with exact rows as shown below. The dashed morphisms indicate how the Euler-Lagrange complex (def. 1.3.34) sits in this bicomplex.*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccccc}
 & & \Omega^0_H(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^1_H(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^2_H(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^p_H(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{p+1}_H(E) & & & & \\
 & & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow d_V & \cdots & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow d_V & \overset{\delta_V}{\searrow} & & & \\
0 & \to & \Omega^{0,1}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{1,1}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{2,1}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{p,1}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{p+1,1}(E) & \underset{\hookleftarrow}{\xrightarrow{\mathcal{I}}} & \Omega^{p+1,1}_S(E) & \to & 0 \\
 & & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow d_V & \cdots & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow d_V & \overset{\delta_V}{\searrow} & \downarrow \delta_V & & \\
0 & \to & \Omega^{0,2}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{1,2}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{2,2}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{p,2}(E) & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \Omega^{p+1,2}(E) & \underset{\hookleftarrow}{\xrightarrow{\mathcal{I}}} & \Omega^{p+1,1}_S(E) & \to & 0 \\
 & & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow d_V & \cdots & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow d_V & & \downarrow \delta_V & & \\
 & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & &
\end{array}$$

(For $k = 0$ we instead have theorem 1.3.38 below.)

**Proposition 1.3.36.** *The definition of the variational bicomplex, prop. 1.3.22, and of the Euler-Lagrange complex, prop. 1.3.34 of a jet bundle is contravariantly functorial in differential operators mapping via their prolongation, def. 1.3.11, between jet bundles.*

*For $E, F, F' \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}_{\downarrow\Sigma}$ and $D : E \to F$, $D' : F \to F'$ differential operators, then:*

*(i) [And89, Prop.1.6] The prolongation $p^\infty \tilde{D}\colon J^\infty E \to J^\infty F$ of def. 1.3.11 preserves both the horizontal and vertical forms (Definitions 1.3.17 and 1.3.20, Proposition 1.3.21)*

$$(p^\infty \tilde{D})^* \Omega^\bullet_H(F) \subseteq \Omega^\bullet_H(E) \quad \text{and} \quad (p^\infty \tilde{D})^* \Omega^\bullet_V(F) \subseteq \Omega^\bullet_V(E). \tag{1.24}$$

*(ii) [And89, Thm.3.15] The pullback along the prolongation $p^\infty \tilde{D}\colon J^\infty E \to J^\infty F$ (def. 1.3.11) is a cochain map for the variational bicomplex (Prop. 1.3.22), respecting both degrees and both differentials,*

$$(p^\infty \tilde{D})^*\colon (\Omega^{h,v}(F), d_H, d_V) \longrightarrow (\Omega^{h,v}(E), d_H, d_V). \tag{1.25}$$

*(iii) Considering the differential operators $D$ and $D'$, the composition of the pullbacks along prolongations is equal to the pullback along the composition of the prolongations, which is also equal to the pullback along the prolongation of the composition of the differential operators,*

$$(p^\infty \tilde{D})^* \circ (p^\infty \tilde{D}')^* = (p^\infty \tilde{D}' \circ p^\infty \tilde{D})^* = (p^\infty \widetilde{D' \circ D})^*. \tag{1.26}$$

(iv) *The interior Euler projected pullback along the prolongation $p^\infty \tilde{D}$ maps source forms into source forms (def. 1.3.29),*

$$\mathcal{I} \circ (p^\infty \tilde{D})^* \Omega_S^{p+1,k}(F) \subseteq \Omega_S^{p+1,k}(E). \tag{1.27}$$

(v) *[And89, Thm.3.21] The map between the Euler-Lagrange complexes*

$$\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{EL}_\Sigma}(F) \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{EL}_\Sigma}(E) \tag{1.28}$$

*defined by the pullback $(p^\infty \tilde{D})^*$ on the horizontal forms $\Omega^{\bullet,0}(-)$ and by the interior Euler projected pullback $\mathcal{I} \circ (p^\infty \tilde{D})^*$ on source forms $\Omega_S^{p+1,\bullet}(-)$ is a cochain map, respecting all the gradings and differentials.*

(vi) *The composition of the interior Euler projected pullbacks along the prolongations of the differential operators $D$ and $D'$ is equal to the interior Euler projected pullback along the composition of the differential operators,*

$$\mathcal{I} \circ (p^\infty \tilde{D})^* \circ \mathcal{I} \circ (p^\infty \tilde{D}')^* = \mathcal{I} \circ (p^\infty \widetilde{D' \circ D}). \tag{1.29}$$

Proof. [Sketch of proof] Statement (i) is a fundamental property of horizontal and vertical forms. For horizontal forms, it follows straight from the definitions. For vertical forms, the simplest proof follows from an elementary calculation in local coordinates, which can be found in the cited reference.

Essentially, all other statements follow from (i) and basic properties of pullbacks of forms and of differential operators. For (ii), it suffices to combine with (i) the known property that pullbacks commute with the de Rham differential. For (iii), it suffices to recall the composition property of pullbacks and of prolongations of differential operators (Proposition 1.3.9). For (iv), it suffices to combine (ii) with the fact that source forms are defined as the image of $\mathcal{I}$. For (v), the horizontal part of $\mathrm{EL}^\bullet$ is already taken care of by (ii). Also, since source forms can be thought of as canonical representatives of equivalence classes modulo $d_H$, which by (ii) are preserved by the pullback, the rest of $\mathrm{EL}^\bullet$ is also covered. The same argument based on equivalence classes also covers (vi).

Applying the desired statements to 1-parameter families of differential operators, we can obtain obvious corresponding infinitesimal versions, applicable to vector fields that preserve vertical forms. However, since some of these vector fields do not come from linearizing such 1-parameter families of differential operators, they could also be proven directly by in infinitesimal form, as for example in [And89, Prop.3.17] and [And89, Thm.3.21].

**Remark 1.3.37.** The statements in prop. 1.3.36 have obvious infinitesimal versions that apply to any vector field from $\mathfrak{X}_H(E) + \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{ev}}(X)$ (Definition **??** and the remarks following it).

**Theorem 1.3.38** (e.g. [And89, Thm.5.9]). *For $E$ a bundle over $\Sigma$, there is a chain map, given degreewise by projection on horizontal forms and on vertical source forms, respectively from the Euler-Lagrange complex of $E$, def. 1.3.34, to the de Rham complex of $J^\infty_\Sigma E$:*

$$\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{dR}}(E) \xrightarrow{\simeq_{\mathrm{qi}}} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{dR}}(J^\infty_\Sigma E) \xrightarrow{\simeq_{\mathrm{qi}}} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{EL}_\Sigma}(E)\,.$$

*This is a quasi-isomorphism, i.e. it induces isomorphism on all cohomology groups:*

$$H^\bullet(\Omega_{\mathrm{dR}}(E)) \simeq H^\bullet(\Omega_{\mathrm{EL}_\Sigma}(E)) \tag{1.30}$$

*Moreover, this chain map is a natural transformation with respect to the functoriality in prop. 1.3.36.*

#### 1.3.1.5 Equations of motion and Lagrangians

**Definition 1.3.39.** For $\omega \in \Omega_S^{p+1,1}(E)$ a source form, def. 1.3.29, then the partial differential equation on sections $\phi \in \Gamma_\Sigma(E)$ it induces is

$$\underset{v \in \Gamma(VE)}{\forall} j^\infty(\phi)^* \iota_v \omega = 0\,,$$

saying that for all vertical tangent vectors $v$, the pullback of the contracted form $\iota_v \omega$ along the jet prolongation, def. 5.3.79, of $\phi$ vanishes.

**Proposition 1.3.40.** *As an object of* $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$*, via theorem 1.3.12 and remark 1.3.13. the differential equation in def. 1.3.39 is the equalizer of*

1. *the differential operator*

$$\tilde{\omega} : E \longrightarrow \wedge^{p+1} T^*\Sigma \times_\Sigma V^*E$$

   *that corresponds to* $\omega$ *under the isomorphism of prop. 1.3.26;*

2. *the "0-morphism"*

$$\tilde{0} : E \longrightarrow \wedge^{p+1} T^*\Sigma \times_\Sigma V^*E$$

   *which sends any point* $(\sigma, e, j) \in J^\infty E$ *to the pair consisting of* $0 \in \wedge^{p+1} T^*_\sigma \Sigma$ *and* $0 \in V^*_e E \hookrightarrow (V^*E)_\sigma$.

Proof. By direct comparison of def. 1.3.25 with def. 1.3.39.

**Remark 1.3.41.** Prop. 1.3.40 suggests that the differential equation induced by the source form $\omega$ should be thought of the *kernel* or *fiber* of $\tilde{\omega}$. However, a kernel or fiber of $D$ would be the pullback of a point inclusion into its codomain, and preferably of the zero point in an object with abelian group structure. But this is not the case here. However, when below in section 6.5.11 we broaden the perspective from $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ to the sheaf topos over it, then source forms $\omega$ are given equivalently by maps into an abelian "moduli space" $\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_S$, and then indeed the differential equation in question turns out to be precisely the kernel of these representing maps. This is the content of prop. 6.5.103 below.

**Definition 1.3.42.** Given a $(p+1)$-dimensional smooth manifold $\Sigma$ and a field bundle $E \to \Sigma$, then

1. a *globally defined local Lagrangian* is a horizontal $(p+1)$-form

$$\mathrm{L} \in \Omega^{p+1}_H(E)$$

   according to def. 1.3.17;

2. the *Euler-Lagrange form* of $\mathbf{L}$ is its image under the Euler operator, def. 1.3.31,

$$\mathrm{EL} := \delta_V \mathrm{L} \in \Omega^{p+1,1}_S(E)\,,$$

3. the *Euler-Lagrage equation* $\mathcal{E}$ of L is the differential equation induced by EL via prop. 1.3.40.

(The prequantum-analog of this definition we give in def. 6.5.101 below.)

**Remark 1.3.43.** Unwinding the definitions, the concise concepts in def. 1.3.42 reproduce more common expression found in the literature as follows.

1. The vertical derivative, def. 1.3.20, of the Lagrangian form L, splits uniquely into the sum of a source form EL, def. 1.3.29, and a horizontally exact form

$$\mathrm{d}_V \mathrm{L} = \mathrm{EL} - \mathrm{d}_H \theta\,.$$

   The source form is indeed $\delta_V \mathrm{L} = \mathrm{EL}$, by prop. 1.3.33. This decomposition is known as the *first variation formula* in the geometric literature on the calculus of variations.

   In components, EL is obtained from $d_V \mathbf{L}$ by a formal integration by parts, def. 1.3.27, that removes all the vertical differentials of jet coordinates involving derivatives. The boundary term picked up in this operation is $d_H \theta$. This is the classical recipe for obtaining Euler-Lagrange equations.

   Notice that EL is unaffected by a change to the Lagrangian of the form $\mathrm{L} \mapsto \mathrm{L} + \mathrm{d}_H K$, for any horizontal $p$-form $K$ (though $\theta$ is affected).

2. The submanifold inclusion

$$\mathcal{E} \hookrightarrow J^\infty_\Sigma E$$

that characterizes the Euler-Lagrange equation in def. 1.3.42 via remark 1.3.13 (notationally suppressing the underlying bundle functor $U$) is also called the *dynamical shell* or just *shell* for short.

There exist situations when, even though the equations of motion are given by a globally defined source form $\mathrm{EL} \in \Omega^{p+1,1}_S(E)$, def. 1.3.28, and for any contractible open $U \subset J^\infty F$ there exists a local Lagrangian $\mathrm{L}_U$, according to def. 1.3.42, such that $\delta_V \mathrm{L}_U = \mathrm{EL}|_U$, there may not exist any globally defined local Lagrangian $\mathrm{L} \in \Omega^{n,0}(E)$ such that the same formula holds on all of $J^\infty E$. Examples include the charged point particle in an external non-exact electromagnetic field, also the usual 2-dimensional and higher-dimensional WZW models [[gawedzki?]], and higher dimensional Chern-Simons models [[XXX]]. Such equations are *locally* but not *globally variational*.

To decide whether a source form EL is locally variational, we use the local exactness of the Euler-Lagrange complex (Thm. 1.3.38):

**Definition 1.3.44.** A 1-vertical source form $\mathrm{EL} \in \Omega^{p+1,1}_S(E)$, def. 1.3.28, is called *locally variational* if the identity $\delta_V \mathrm{EL} = 0$ (which is known as the *Helmholtz condition*). The source form EL is called *globally variational* if there exists a local Lagrangian $\mathrm{L} \in \Omega^{p+1,0}(E)$ such that $\mathrm{EL} = \delta_V \mathrm{L}$.

#### 1.3.1.6 Action functional and covariant phase space

We review now the integration of the local Lagrangian form data over submanifolds of $\Sigma$ of codimension $k$. This gives

- $k = 0$ – The action functional, section 1.3.1.6.1;
- $k = 1$ – The covariant phase space, section 1.3.1.6.2.

**Remark 1.3.45.** In the classical theory this looks somewhat unsystematic, as in one case one is integrating the Lagrangian form, in the other case one is fiber integrating the form $\theta$ appearing in its variational derivative. That this actually does follow a unified pattern is revealed by the prequantum theory which we turn to below in section 6.5.11.

##### 1.3.1.6.1 Action functional

**Definition 1.3.46.** Given a smooth bundle $E$ over $\Sigma$, write $\mathbf{\Gamma}_\Sigma(E)$ for its space of smooth sections regarded as a diffeological space.

Then jet prolongation of sections (def. 5.3.79) followed by evaluation of sections gives a smooth function

$$\mathrm{ev}j^\infty : \Sigma \times \Gamma_\Sigma(E) \overset{(\mathrm{id}, j^\infty)}{\longrightarrow} \Sigma \times \mathbf{\Gamma}_\Sigma(J^\infty_\Sigma E) \overset{\mathrm{ev}}{\longrightarrow} J^\infty_\Sigma E\,.$$

Notice that the space $\Sigma \times \Gamma_\Sigma(E)$, being a Cartesian product, has a canonical bicomplex structure on its de Rham complex, coming simply from the de Rham differential along $\Sigma$ and along $\Gamma_\Sigma(E)$, separately.

**Proposition 1.3.47** ([Zu87])**.** *Pullback of differential forms along* $\mathrm{ev}j^\infty$

$$(\mathrm{ev}j^\infty) : \Omega^\bullet(J^\infty_\Sigma E) \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma \times \mathbf{\Gamma}_\Sigma(E))$$

*constitutes an inclusion of bicomplexes*

$$(\mathrm{ev}j^\infty) : \Omega^{\bullet,\bullet}(E) \simeq \Omega^{\bullet,\bullet}_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Sigma \times \mathbf{\Gamma}_\Sigma(E)) \hookrightarrow \Omega^{\bullet,\bullet}(\Sigma \times \mathbf{\Gamma}_\Sigma(E))$$

*from the variational bicomplex, prop. 1.3.22, into the canonical bicomplex on the Cartesian product,*

*The image of the inclusion is the called the bicomplex of* local *differential forms on* $\Sigma \times \Gamma_\Sigma(E)$

This implies that there is a well defined action functional associated with a horizontal $(p+1)$-form:

**Definition 1.3.48.** For compact $\Sigma$ the *action functional* is the smooth function

$$S_{(-)}(-) : \Omega^{p+1}_H(E) \times \Gamma_\Sigma(E) \overset{(\mathrm{ev}j^\infty)^*}{\hookrightarrow} \Omega^{p+1,0}(\Sigma \times \Gamma_\Sigma(E)) \times \Gamma_\Sigma(E) \overset{\mathrm{ev}}{\longrightarrow} \Omega^{p+1}(\Sigma) \overset{\int_\Sigma}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{R}\,.$$

**1.3.1.6.2 Covariant phase space** Given a local Lagrangian $L \in \Omega^{p+1}_H(E)$, a choice of $\theta \in \Omega^{p,1}(E)$ from remark 1.3.43 is called a choice of *presymplectic potential current*. Its vertical derivative

$$\omega := d_V \theta$$

is called the *presymplectic current*.

Given the a choice of compact $p$-dimensional submanifold $\Sigma_p \hookrightarrow \Sigma$, the diffeological space $\Gamma_{\Sigma_p}(E)$ equipped with the differential form 2-form

$$\int_{\Sigma_p} j^\infty(-)^*(\omega) \in \Omega^2(\mathbf{\Gamma}_{\Sigma_p}(E))$$

is the *presymplectic off-shell covariant phase space*. Its restriction to the shell is the on-shell *presymplectic covariant phase space*. A good source is [Zu87].

The quotient of this by the kernel of $\omega$ is the *reduced symlectic covariant phase space*.

Generally $\int_{\Sigma_p} j^\infty(-)^*\theta$ won't pass to this quotient as a globally defined form, but only as a connection on a principal bundle. This is what we get to in section 6.5.11.1.

#### 1.3.1.7 Symmetries and conserved currents

**Definition 1.3.49** ([Marv86, 3.2])**.** Given $\mathcal{E} \in \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$, corresponding under theorem 1.3.12 to a $J^\infty_\Sigma$ coalgebra given by a morphism in $\mathrm{SmoothMfd}_{/\Sigma}$ of the form $e : \mathcal{E} \longrightarrow J^\infty_\Sigma \mathcal{E}$, its *vertical tangent bundle PDE* is the object $V\mathcal{E} \in \mathrm{PDE}_\sigma$ $V\mathcal{E} \in \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ for coalgebra given by the image of $e$ under the vertical tangent bundle functor:

$$Ve : V\mathcal{E} \longrightarrow V J^\infty_\Sigma \mathcal{E} \simeq J^\infty_\Sigma V\mathcal{E}\,.$$

An *infinitesimal symmetry* $v$ on $\mathcal{E}$ is a section

$$\begin{array}{c} V\mathcal{E} \\ {\scriptstyle v}\uparrow\downarrow \\ \mathcal{E} \end{array}$$

in $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ of the canonical projection morphism.

**Definition 1.3.50.** Given a globally defined local Lagrangian $L \in \Omega^{p+1}_H(E)$, def. 1.3.42, then an *infinitesimal variational symmetry* is an infinitesimal symmetry $v$ of $E$, def. 1.3.49, hence just a vertical vector field on the bundle $E$ with its jet extension $j^\infty v$, such that there is $\Delta_v \in \Omega^p_H(E)$ with

$$\mathcal{L}_v L = d_H \Delta_v\,.$$

**Definition 1.3.51.** Given a globally defined local Lagrangian $L \in \Omega^{p+1}_H(E)$, def. 1.3.42, then an *on-shell consered current* for its dynamics is a horizontal $p$-form

$$J \in \Omega^p_H(E)$$

such that it is horizontally closed when restricted to the shell $\mathcal{E} \overset{\ker(\mathrm{EL}(L))}{\hookrightarrow} E$:

$$(d_H J)|_{\mathcal{E}} = 0\,.$$

**Proposition 1.3.52** (Noether's first variational theorem)**.** *Given a variational symmetry as in def. 1.3.50, then*

$$J_v := \iota_v \theta - \Delta_v \quad \in \Omega^p_H(E)$$

*with $\theta$ from remark 1.3.43, is an on-shell conserved current, def. 1.3.51, called a* Noether current *for $v$.*

Proof. By Cartan's formula for Lie derivatives on $J^\infty_\Sigma E$

$$\mathcal{L}_v L = \iota_v dL + \underbrace{d\iota_v L}_{=0} \,,$$

where the second summand vanishes due to $v$ being vertical and $L$ being horizontal. By remark 1.3.43 the first term is

$$\mathcal{L}_v L = \iota_v \mathrm{EL} + d_H \iota_v \theta \,,$$

where we used that the vertical contraction $\iota_v$ anti-commutes with the horizontal differential $d_H$. In summary this gives

$$d_H(\iota_v\theta - \Delta_v) = \iota_v \mathrm{EL} \,.$$

The claim follows since $\mathrm{El}|_{\mathcal{E}} = 0$ by the very definition of $\mathcal{E}$.

### 1.3.2 Hamilton-Jacobi-Lagrange mechanics via prequantized Lagrangian correspondences

Above in section 1.3.1.6.2 we saw how the covariant phase space arises from local Lagrangians. We now show how classical phase space mechanics – Hamiltonian mechanics, Hamilton-Jacobi theory, see e.g. [Ar89] – naturally arises from and is accurately captured by "pre-quantized Lagrangian correspondences". Since field theory is a refinement of classical mechanics, this serves also as a blueprint for the discussion of De Donder-Weyl-style classical field theory by higher correspondences below in 1.3.3, and more generally for the discussion of local prequantum field theory in [FRS13a, Nui13, Sc13b].

The reader unfamiliar with classical mechanics may take the following to be a brief introduction to and indeed a systematic derivation of the central concepts of classical mechanics from the notion of correspondences in slice toposes. Conversely, the reader familiar with classical mechanics may take the translation of classical mechanics into correspondences in slice toposes as the motivating example for the formalization of prequantum field theory in [Sc13b]. The translation is summarized as a diagramatic dictionary below in 1.3.2.11.

The following sections all follow, in their titles, the pattern

*Physical concept* and *mathematical formalization*

and each first recalls a naive physical concept, then motivates its mathematical formalization, then discusses this formalization and how it reflects back on the understanding of the physics.

- 1.3.2.1 – Phase spaces and symplectic manifolds;
- 1.3.2.2 – Coordinate systems and the topos of smooth spaces;
- 1.3.2.3 – Coordinate transformations and symplectomorphisms;
- 1.3.2.4 – Trajectories and Lagrangian correspondences;
- 1.3.2.5 – Observables, symmetries, and the Poisson bracket Lie algebra;
- 1.3.2.6 – Hamiltonian (time evolution) correspondence and Hamiltonian correspondence;
- 1.3.2.7 – Noether symmetries and equivariant structure;
- 1.3.2.8 – Gauge symmetry, smooth groupoids and higher toposes;
- 1.3.3.2 – The kinetic action, prequantization and differential cohomology;
- 1.3.2.10 – The classical action, the Legendre transform and Hamiltonian flows;
- 1.3.2.11 – The classical action functional pre-quantizes Lagrangian correspondences;

- 1.3.2.12 – Quantization, the Heisenberg group and slice automorphism groups;
- 1.3.2.13 – Integrable systems, moment maps, and maps into the Poisson bracket;
- 1.3.2.14 – Classical anomalies and projective symplectic reduction;

**Historical comment.** Much of the discussion here is induced by just the notion of *pre-quantized Lagrangian correspondences*. The notion of plain Lagrangian correspondences (not pre-quantized) has been observed already in the early 1970s to usefully capture central aspects of Fourier transformation theory [Hö71] and of classical mechanics [We71], notably to unify the notion of Lagrangian subspaces of phase spaces with that of "canonical transformations", hence symplectomorphisms, between them. This observation has since been particularly advertized by Weinstein (e.g [We83]), who proposed that some kind of *symplectic category* of symplectic manifolds with Lagrangian correspondences between them should be a good domain for a formalization of *quantization* along the lines of geometric quantization. Several authors have since discussed aspects of this idea. A recent review in the context of field theory is in [CMR12b].

But geometric quantization proper proceeds not from plain symplectic manifolds but from a lift of their symplectic form to a cocycle in differential cohomology, called a *pre-quantization* of the symplectic manifold. Therefore it is to be expected that some notion of pre-quantized Lagrangian correspondences, which put into correspondence these prequantum bundles and not just their underlying symplectic manifolds, is a more natural domain for geometric quantization, hence a more accurate formalization of pre-quantum geometry.

There is an evident such notion of prequantization of Lagrangian correspondences, and this is what we introduce and discuss in the following. While evident, it seems that it has previously found little attention in the literature, certainly not attention comparable to the fame enjoyed by Lagrangian correspondences. But it should. As we show now, classical mechanics globally done right is effectively identified with the study of prequantized Lagrangian correspondences.

**1.3.2.1 Phase spaces and symplectic manifolds** Given a physical system, one says that its *phase space* is the space of its possible ("classical") histories or trajectories. Newton's second law of mechanics says that trajectories of physical systems are (typically) determined by differential equations of *second* order, and therefore these spaces of trajectories are (typically) equivalent to initial value data of 0th and of 1st derivatives. In physics this data (or rather its linear dual) is referred to as the *canonical coordinates* and the *canonical momenta*, respectively, traditionally denoted by the symbols "$q$" and "$p$". Being coordinates, these are actually far from being canonical in the mathematical sense; all that has invariant meaning is, locally, the surface element $\mathbf{d}p \wedge \mathbf{d}q$ spanned by a change of coordinates and momenta.

Made precise, this says that a physical phase space is a sufficiently smooth manifold $X$ which is equipped with a closed and non-degenerate differential 2-form $\omega \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$, hence that phase spaces are *symplectic manifolds* $(X, \omega)$.

**Example 1.3.53.** The simplest nontrivial example is the phase space $\mathbb{R}^2 \simeq T^*\mathbb{R}$ of a single particle propagating on the real line. The standard coordinates on the plane are traditionally written $q, p \;:\; \mathbb{R}^2 \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and the symplectic form is the canonical volume form $\mathbf{d}q \wedge \mathbf{d}p$.

This is a special case of the following general and fundamental definition of *covariant phase spaces* (section 1.3.1.6.2) (whose history is long and convoluted, two original references being [Zu87, CrWi87], see [Kh14] for a review).

**Example 1.3.54** (covariant phase space)**.** Let $F$ be a smooth manifold – to be called the *field fiber* – and write $[\Sigma_1, F]$ for the manifold of smooth maps from the closed interval $\Sigma_1 := [0,1] \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ into $F$ (an infinite-dimensional Fréchet manifold). We think of $F$ as a space of *spatial field configurations* and of $[\Sigma_1, F]$ as the space of *trajectories* or *histories* of spatial field configurations. Specifically, we may think of $[\Sigma_1, F]$ as the space of trajectories of a particle propagating in a space(-time) $F$.

A smooth function

$$L \;:\; [\Sigma_1, F] \longrightarrow \Omega^1(\Sigma_1)$$

to the space of differential 1-forms on $\Sigma_1$ is called a *local Lagrangian* of fields in $F$ if for all $t \in \Sigma_1$ the assignment $\gamma \mapsto L_\gamma(t)$ is a smooth function of $\gamma(t), \dot{\gamma}(t), \ddot{\gamma}(t), \cdots$ (hence of the value of a curve $\gamma : \Sigma_1 \to F$ at $t$ and of the values of all its derivatives at $t$). One traditionally writes

$$L \;:\; \gamma \mapsto L(\gamma, \dot{\gamma}, \ddot{\gamma}, \cdots) \wedge \mathbf{d}t$$

to indicate this. In cases of interest typically only first derivatives appear

$$L \;:\; \gamma \mapsto L(\gamma, \dot{\gamma}) \wedge \mathbf{d}t$$

and we concentrate on this case now for notational simplicity. Given such a local Lagrangian, the induced *local action functional* $S : [\Sigma_1, F] \to \mathbb{R}$ is the smooth function on trajectory space which is given by integrating the local Lagrangian over the interval:

$$S = \int_{\Sigma_1} L \;:\; [\Sigma_1, F] \xrightarrow{L} \Omega^1(\Sigma_1) \xrightarrow{\int_I} \mathbb{R}\,.$$

The *variational derivative* of the local Lagrangian is the smooth differential 2-form

$$\delta L \in \Omega^{1,1}([\Sigma_1, F] \times \Sigma_1)$$

on the product of trajectory space and parameter space, which is given by the expression

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta L_\gamma &= \frac{\partial L}{\partial \gamma} \wedge \mathbf{d}t \wedge \delta\gamma + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\gamma}} \wedge \mathbf{d}t \wedge \frac{d}{dt}\delta\gamma \\
&= \underbrace{\left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial \gamma} - \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\gamma}}\right)}_{=:\mathrm{EL}_\gamma} \mathbf{d}t \wedge \delta\gamma + \frac{d}{dt}\underbrace{\left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\gamma}} \wedge \delta\gamma\right)}_{=:\theta_\gamma} \mathbf{d}t\,.
\end{aligned}$$

One says that $\mathrm{EL}_\gamma = 0$ (for all $t \in I$) is the *Euler-Lagrange equation of motion* induced by the local Lagrangian $L$, and that the 0-locus

$$X := \{\gamma \in [\Sigma_1, F] \mid \mathrm{EL}_\gamma = 0\} \hookrightarrow [\Sigma_1, F]$$

(also called the "shell") equipped with the 2-form

$$\omega := \delta\theta$$

is the *unreduced covariant phase space* $(X, \omega)$ induced by $L$.

See [Kh14] for a review of the concept of *covariant phase space*.

**Example 1.3.55.** Consider the case that $F = \mathbb{R}$ and that the Lagrangian is of the form

$$\begin{aligned}
L &:= L_{\mathrm{kin}} - L_{\mathrm{pot}} \\
&:= \left(\tfrac{1}{2}\dot{\gamma}^2 - V(\gamma)\right) \wedge \mathbf{d}t\,,
\end{aligned}$$

hence is a quadratic form on the first derivatives of the trajectory – called the *kinetic energy density* – plus any smooth function $V$ of the trajectory position itself – called (minus) the *potential energy density*. Then the corresponding phase space is equivalent to $\mathbb{R}^2 \simeq T^*\mathbb{R}$ with the canonical coordinates identified with the initial value data

$$q := \gamma(0) \;\;,\;\; p = \dot{\gamma}$$

and with

$$\theta = p \wedge \mathbf{d}q$$

and hence

$$\omega = \mathbf{d}q \wedge \mathbf{d}p\,.$$

This is the phase space of example 1.3.53. Notice that the symplectic form here is a reflection entirely only of the kinetic action, independent of the potential action. This we come back to below in 1.3.3.2.

**Remark 1.3.56.** The differential 2-form $\omega$ on an unreduced covariant phase space in example 1.3.54 is closed, even exact, but in general far from non-degenerate, hence far from being symplectic. We may say that $(X, \omega)$ is a *pre-symplectic manifold*. This is because this differential form measures the reaction of the Lagrangian/action functional to variations of the fields, but the action functional may be *invariant* under some variation of the fields; one says that it has (*gauge-*)*symmetries*. To obtain a genuine symplectic form one needs to quotient out the flow of these symmetries from unreduced covariant phase space to obtain the *reduced* covariant phase space. This we turn to below in 1.3.2.7.

**Remark 1.3.57.** In the description of the mechanics of just particles, the Lagrangian $L$ above has no further more fundamental description, it is just what it is. But in applications to $n$-dimensional *field* theory the differential 1-forms $L$ and $\theta$ in example 1.3.54 arise themselves from integration of differential $n$-forms over space (Cauchy surfaces), hence from *transgression* of higher-degree data in higher codimension. This we describe in example 1.3.143 below. Since transgression in general loses some information, one should really work locally instead of integrating over Cauchy surfaces, hence work with the de-transgressed data and develop classical field theory for that. This we turn to below in 1.3.3 for classical field theory and then more generally for local prequantum field theory in [Sc13b].

**1.3.2.2 Coordinate systems and the topos of smooth spaces** When dealing with spaces $X$ that are equipped with extra structure, such as a closed differential 2-form $\omega \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$, then it is useful to have a *universal moduli space* for these structures, and this will be central for our developments here. So we need a "smooth space" $\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$ of sorts, characterized by the property that there is a natural bijection between smooth closed differential 2-forms $\omega \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$ and smooth maps $X \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$ . Of course such a universal moduli spaces of closed 2-forms does not exist in the category of smooth manifolds. But it does exist canonically if we slightly generalize the notion of "smooth space" suitably (the following is discussed in more detail below in 1.2.2).

**Definition 1.3.58.** A *smooth space* or *smooth 0-type* $X$ is

1. an assignment to each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ of a set, to be written $X(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and to be called the *set of smooth maps from $\mathbb{R}^n$ into $X$*,
2. an assignment to each ordinary smooth function $f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ between Cartesian spaces of a function of sets $X(f) : X(\mathbb{R}^{n_2}) \to X(\mathbb{R}^{n_1})$, to be called the *pullback of smooth functions into $X$ along $f$*;

such that

1. this assignment respects composition of smooth functions;
2. this assignment respect the covering of Cartesian spaces by open disks: for every good open cover $\{\mathbb{R}^n \simeq U_i \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^n\}_i$, the set $X(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of smooth functions out of $\mathbb{R}^n$ into $X$ is in natural bijection with the set $\left\{(\phi_i)_i \in \prod_i X(U_i) \mid \forall_{i,j}\ \phi_i|_{U_i \cap U_j} = \phi_j|_{U_i \cap U_j}\right\}$ of tuples of smooth functions out of the patches of the cover which agree on all intersections of two patches.

**Remark 1.3.59.** One may think of definition 1.3.58 as a formalization of the common idea in physics that we understand spaces by charting them with coordinate systems. A Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$ is nothing but the standard $n$-dimensional coordinate system and one may think of the set $X(\mathbb{R}^n)$ above as the set of all possible ways (including all degenerate ways) of laying out this coordinate system in the would-be space $X$. Moreover, a function $f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ is nothing but a *coordinate transformation* (possibly degenerate), and hence the corresponding functions $X(f) : X(\mathbb{R}^{n_2}) \longrightarrow X(\mathbb{R}^{n_1})$ describe how the probes of $X$ by coordinate systems change under coordinate transformations. Definition 1.3.58 takes the idea that any space in physics should be probe-able by coordinate systems in this way to the extreme, in that it *defines* a smooth spaces as a collection of probes by coordinate systems equipped with information about all possible coordinate transformations.

The notion of smooth spaces is maybe more familiar with one little axiom added:

**Definition 1.3.60.** A smooth space $X$ is called *concrete* if there exists a set $X_{\mathrm{disc}} \in \mathrm{Set}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the set $X(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of smooth functions from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $X$ is a subset of the set of *all* functions from the underlying set of $\mathbb{R}^n$ to the set $X_{\mathrm{disc}} \in \mathrm{Set}$.

This definition of concrete smooth spaces goes back to [Chen77] in various slight variants, see [St08] for a comparative discussion. A comprehensive textbook account of differential geometry formulated with this definition of smooth spaces (called "diffeological spaces" there) is in [Ig-Z13].

While the formulation of def. 1.3.58 is designed to make transparent its geometric meaning, of course equivalently but more abstractly this says the following:

**Definition 1.3.61.** Write CartSp for the category of Cartesian spaces with smooth functions between them, and consider it equipped with the coverage (Grothendieck pre-topology) of good open covers. A *smooth space* or *smooth 0-type* is a sheaf on this site. The *topos of smooth 0-types* is the sheaf category

$$\mathrm{Smooth0Type} := \mathrm{PSh}(\mathrm{CartSp})[\{\text{covering maps}\}^{-1}]\,.$$

In the following we will abbreviate the notation to

$$\mathbf{H} := \mathrm{Smooth0Type}\,.$$

For the discussion of pre-symplectic manifolds, we need the following two examples.

**Example 1.3.62.** Every smooth manifold $X \in \mathrm{SmoothManifold}$ becomes a smooth 0-type by the assignment

$$X : n \mapsto C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n, X)\,.$$

(This defines in fact a concrete smooth space, def. 1.3.60, the underlying set $X_{\mathrm{disc}}$ being just the underlying set of points of the given manifold.) This construction extends to a full and faithful embedding of smooth manifolds into smooth 0-types

$$\mathrm{SmoothManifold} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}\,.$$

The other main example is in a sense at an opposite extreme in the space of all examples. It is given by smooth moduli space of *differential forms*, see the discussion in 1.2.3.

**Example 1.3.63.** For $p \in \mathbb{N}$, write $\mathbf{\Omega}^p_{\mathrm{cl}}$ for the smooth space given by the assignment

$$\mathbf{\Omega}^p_{\mathrm{cl}} : n \mapsto \Omega^p_{\mathrm{cl}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$$

and by the evident pullback maps of differential forms. These smooth spaces $\mathbf{\Omega}^n_{\mathrm{cl}}$ are *not* concrete, def. 1.3.60. In fact they are maximally non-concrete in that there is only a single smooth map $* \to \mathbf{\Omega}^n_{\mathrm{cl}}$ from the point into them. Hence the underlying point set of the smooth space $\mathbf{\Omega}^n_{\mathrm{cl}}$ looks like a singleton, and yet these smooth spaces are far from being the trivial smooth space: they admit many smooth maps $X \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^n_{\mathrm{cl}}$ from smooth manifolds of dimension at least $n$, as the following prop. 1.3.64 shows.

This solves the moduli problem for closed smooth differential forms:

**Proposition 1.3.64.** *For $p \in \mathbb{N}$ and $X \in \mathrm{SmoothManifold} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth0Type}$, there is a natural bijection*

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{\Omega}^p_{\mathrm{cl}}) \simeq \Omega^p_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)\,.$$

So a pre-symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ is equivalently a map of smooth spaces of the form

$$\omega :\; X \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}\,.$$

#### 1.3.2.3 Canonical transformations and Symplectomorphisms

An equivalence between two phase spaces, hence a re-expression of the "canonical" coordinates and momenta, is called a *canonical transformation* in physics. Mathematically this is a *symplectomorphism*:

**Definition 1.3.65.** Given two (pre-)symplectic manifolds $(X_1, \omega_1)$ and $(X_2, \omega_2)$ a *symplectomorphism*

$$f : (X_1, \omega_1) \longrightarrow (X_2, \omega_2)$$

is a diffeomorphism $f : X_1 \longrightarrow X_2$ of the underlying smooth spaces, which respects the differential forms in that

$$f^* \omega_2 = \omega_1 \, .$$

The formulation above in 1.3.2.2 of pre-symplectic manifolds as maps into a moduli space of closed 2-forms yields the following equivalent re-formulation of symplectomorphisms, which is very simple in itself, but contains in it the seed of an important phenomenon:

**Proposition 1.3.66.** *Given two symplectic manifolds $(X_1, \omega_1)$ and $(X_2, \omega_2)$, a symplectomorphism $\phi : (X_1, \omega_1) \to (X_2, \omega_2)$ is equivalently a commuting diagram of smooth spaces of the following form:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_1 & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X_2 \\ & {\scriptstyle \omega_1}\searrow \quad \swarrow{\scriptstyle \omega_2} & \\ & \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}} & \end{array} \, .$$

Situations like this are naturally interpreted in the *slice topos*:

**Definition 1.3.67.** For $A \in \mathbf{H}$ any smooth space, the *slice topos* $\mathbf{H}_{/A}$ is the category whose objects are objects $X \in \mathbf{H}$ equipped with maps $X \to A$, and whose morphisms are commuting diagrams in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & Y \\ & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & A & \end{array} \, .$$

Hence if we write SymplManifold for the category of smooth pre-symplectic manifolds and symplectomorphisms betwen them, then we have the following.

**Proposition 1.3.68.** *The construction of prop. 1.3.64 constitutes a full embedding*

$$\mathrm{SymplManifold} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}}$$

*of pre-symplectic manifolds with symplectomorphisms between them into the slice topos of smooth spaces over the smooth moduli space of closed differential 2-forms.*

#### 1.3.2.4 Trajectories and Lagrangian correspondences

A symplectomorphism clearly puts two symplectic manifolds "in relation" to each other. It turns out to be useful to say this formally. Recall:

**Definition 1.3.69.** For $X, Y \in \mathrm{Set}$ two sets, a relation $R$ between elements of $X$ and elements of $Y$ is a subset of the Cartesian product set

$$R \hookrightarrow X \times Y \, .$$

More generally, for $X, Y \in \mathbf{H}$ two objects of a topos (such as the topos of smooth spaces), then a relation $R$ between them is a subobject of their Cartesian product

$$R \hookrightarrow X \times Y \, .$$

In particular any function induces the relation "$y$ is the image of $x$":

**Example 1.3.70.** For $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ a function, its *induced relation* is the relation which is exhibited by *graph* of $f$

$$\mathrm{graph}(f) := \{(x, y) \in X \times Y \mid f(x) = y\}$$

canonically regarded as a subobject

$$\mathrm{graph}(f) \hookrightarrow X \times Y \,.$$

Hence in the context of classical mechanics, in particular any symplectomorphism $f : (X_1, \omega_1) \longrightarrow (X_2, \omega_2)$ induces the relation

$$\mathrm{graph}(f) \hookrightarrow X_1 \times X_2 \,.$$

Since we are going to think of $f$ as a kind of"physical process", it is useful to think of the smooth space *graph*$(f)$ here as the *space of trajectories* of that process. To make this clearer, notice that we may equivalently rewrite every relation $R \hookrightarrow X \times Y$ as a diagram of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & R & \\ \swarrow & & \searrow \\ X & & Y \end{array} \quad = \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & R & \\ & \downarrow & \\ & X \times Y & \\ {}^{p_X}\swarrow & & \searrow^{p_Y} \\ X & & Y \end{array}$$

reflecting the fact that every element $(x \sim y) \in R$ defines an element $x = p_X(x \sim y) \in X$ and an element $y = p_Y(x \sim y) \in Y$.

Then if we think of the space $R = \mathrm{graph}(f)$ of example 1.3.70 as being a space of trajectories starting in $X_1$ and ending in $X_2$, then we may read the relation as "there is a trajectory from an incoming configuration $x_1$ to an outgoing configuration $x_2$":

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{graph}(f) & \\ {}^{\text{incoming}}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\text{outgoing}} \\ X_1 & & X_2 \end{array} \,.$$

Notice here that the defining property of a relation as a subset/subobject translates into the property of classical physics that there is *at most one trajectory* from some incoming configuration $x_1$ to some outgoing trajectory $x_2$ (for a fixed and small enough parameter time interval at least, we will formulate this precisely in the next section when we genuinely consider Hamiltonian correspondences).

In a more general context one could consider there to be several such trajectories, and even a whole smooth space of such trajectories between given incoming and outgoing configurations. Each such trajectory would "relate" $x_1$ to $x_2$, but each in a possible different way. We can also say that each trajectory makes $x_1$ *correspond* to $x_2$ in a different way, and that is the mathematical term usually used:

**Definition 1.3.71.** For $X, Y \in \mathbf{H}$ two spaces, a *correspondence* between them is a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

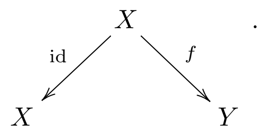
$$\begin{array}{ccc} & Z & \\ \swarrow & & \searrow \\ X & & Y \end{array}$$

with no further restrictions. Here $Z$ is also called the *correspondence space*.

Observe that the graph of a function $f\colon X \to Y$ is, while defined differently, in fact equivalent to just the space $X$, the equivalence being induced by the map $x \mapsto (x, f(x))$

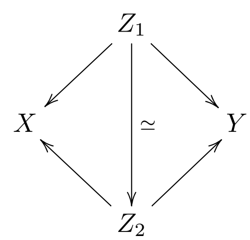
$$X \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{graph}(f)\,.$$

In fact the relation/correspondence which expresses "$y$ is the image of $f$ under $x$" may just as well be exhibited by the diagram

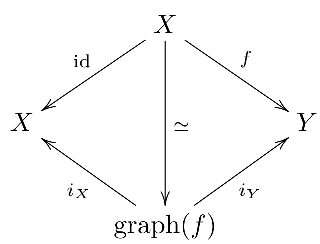



It is clear that this correspondence with correspondence space $X$ should be regarded as being equivalent to the one with correspondence space graph($f$). We may formalize this as follows

**Definition 1.3.72.** Given two correspondences $X \longleftarrow Z_1 \longrightarrow Y$ and $X \longleftarrow Z_2 \longrightarrow Y$ between the same objects in $\mathbf{H}$, then an equivalence between them is an equivalence $Z_1 \xrightarrow{\simeq} Z_2$ in $\mathbf{H}$ which fits into a commuting diagram of the form




**Example 1.3.73.** Given an function $f\colon X \longrightarrow Y$ we have the commuting diagram

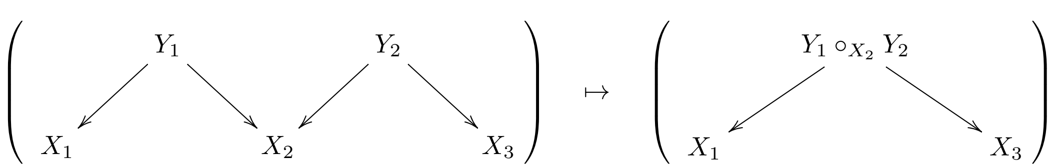



exhibiting an equivalence of the correspondence at the top with that at the bottom.

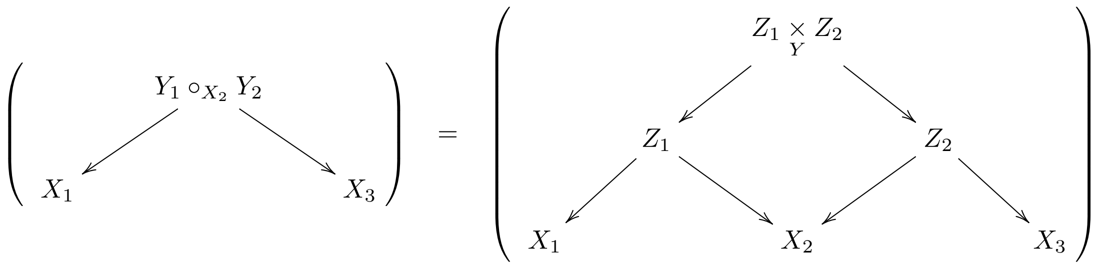
Correspondences between $X$ any $Y$ with such equivalences between them form a *groupoid*. Hence we write

$$\mathrm{Corr}\,(\mathbf{H})\,(X, Y) \in \mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

Moreover, if we think of correspondences as modelling spaces of trajectories, then it is clear that their should be a notion of composition:




Heuristically, the composite space of trajectories $Y_1 \circ_{X_2} Y_2$ should consist precisely of those pairs of trajectories $(f, g) \in Y_1 \times Y_2$ such that the endpoint of $f$ is the starting point of $g$. The space with this property is precisely the *fiber product* of $Y_1$ with $Y_2$ over $X_2$, denoted $Y_1 \underset{X_2}{\times} Y_2$ (also called the *pullback* of $Y_2 \longrightarrow X_2$ along $Y_1 \longrightarrow X_2$:




Hence given a topos $\mathbf{H}$, correspondences between its objects form a category which composition the fiber product operation, where however the collection of morphisms between any two objects is not just a set, but is a groupoid (the groupoid of correspondences between two given objects and equivalences between them).

One says that correspondences form a $(2,1)$-*category*

$$\mathrm{Corr}(\mathbf{H}) \in (2,1)\mathrm{Cat}\,.$$

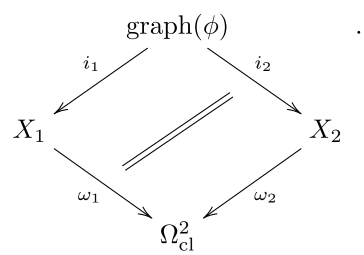
One reason for formalizing this notion of correspondences so much in the present context that it is useful now to apply it not just to the ambient topos $\mathbf{H}$ of smooth spaces, but also to its slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{cl}}$ over the universal moduli space of closed differential 2-forms.

To see how this is useful in the present context, notice the following

**Proposition 1.3.74.** *Let $\phi : (X_1, \omega_1) \to (X_2, \omega_2)$ be a symplectomorphism. Write*

$$(i_1, i_2) : \mathrm{graph}(\phi) \hookrightarrow X_1 \times X_2$$

*for the graph of the underlying diffeomorphsm. This fits into a commuting diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form*




*Conversely, a smooth function $\phi : X_1 \to X_2$ is a symplectomorphism precisely if its graph makes the above diagram commute.*

Traditionally this is formalized as follows.

**Definition 1.3.75.** Given a symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$, a submanifold $L \hookrightarrow X$ is called a *Lagrangian submanifold* if $\omega|_L = 0$ and if $L$ has dimension $dim(L) = dim(X)/2$.

**Definition 1.3.76.** For $(X_1, \omega_1)$ and $(X_2, \omega_2)$ two symplectic manifolds, a correspondence $X_1 \xleftarrow{p_1} Y \xrightarrow{p_2} X_2$ of the underlying manifolds is a *Lagrangian correspondence* if the map $Y \to X_1 \times X_2$ exhibits a Lagrangian submanifold of the symplectic manifold given by $(X_1 \times X_2, p_2^* \omega_2 - p_1^* \omega_1)$.

Given two Lagrangian correspondence which intersect transversally over one adjacent leg, then their *composition* is the correspondence given by the intersection.

But comparison with def. 1.3.67 shows that Lagrangian correspondences are in fact plain correspondences, just not in smooth spaces, but in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}}$ of all smooth spaces over the universal smooth moduli space of closed differential 2-forms:

**Proposition 1.3.77.** *Under the identification of prop. 1.3.68 the construction of the diagrams in prop. 1.3.74 constitutes an injection of Lagrangian correspondence between* $(X_1, \omega_1)$ *and* $(X_2, \omega_2)$ *into the Hom-space* $\mathrm{Corr}\left(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}}\right)((X_1, \omega_1), (X_2, \omega_2))$. *Moreover, composition of Lagrangian correspondence, when defined, coincides under this identification with the composition of the respective correspondences.*

**Remark 1.3.78.** The composition of correspondences in the slice topos is always defined. It may just happen the composite is given by a correspondence space which is a smooth space but not a smooth manifold. Or better, one may replace in the entire discussion the topos of smooth spaces with a topos of "derived" smooth spaces, modeled not on Cartesian spaces but on Cartesian dg-manifolds. This will then automatically make composition of Lagrangian correspondences take care of "transversal perturbations". Here we will not further dwell on this possibility. In fact, the formulation of Lagrangian correspondences and later of prequantum field theory by correspondences in toposes implies a great freedom in the choice of type of geometry in which set up everything. (The bare minimum condition on the topos $\mathbf{H}$ which we need to require is that it be *differentially cohesive*, 4.2).

It is also useful to make the following phenomenon explicit, which is the first incarnation of a recurring theme in the following discussions.

**Proposition 1.3.79.** *The category* $\mathrm{Corr}(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}})$ *is naturally a symmetric monoidal category, where the tensor product is given by*

$$(X_1, \omega_1) \otimes (X_2, \omega_2) = (X_1 \times X_2, \omega_1 + \omega_2)\,.$$

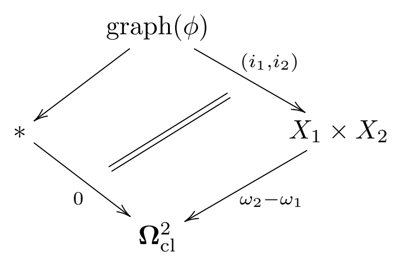
*The tensor unit is* $(*, 0)$. *With respect to this tensor product, every object is dualizable, with dual object given by*

$$(X, \omega)^v = (X, -\omega)\,.$$

**Remark 1.3.80.** Duality induces natural equivalences of the form

$$\mathrm{Corr}\left(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}}\right)((X_1, \omega_1), (X_2, \omega_2),) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{Corr}\left(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}}\right)((*, 0), (X_1 \times X_2, \omega_2 - \omega_1),)\,.$$

Under this equivalence an isotropic (Lagrangian) correspondences which in $\mathbf{H}$ is given by a diagram as in prop. 1.3.74 maps to the diagram of the form




This makes the condition that the pullback of the difference $\omega_2 - \omega_1$ vanishes on the correspondence space more manifest. It is also the blueprint of a phenomenon that is important in the generalization to field theory in the sections to follow, where trajectories map to boundary conditions, and vice versa.

**1.3.2.5 Observables, symmetries and the Poisson bracket Lie algebra** Given a phase space $(X, \omega)$ of some physical system, then a function $O : X \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is an assignment of a value to every possible state (phase of motion) of that system. For instance it might assign to every phase of motion its position (measured in some units with respect to some reference frame), or its momentum, or its energy. The premise of classical physics is that all of these quantitites may in principle be observed in experiment, and therefore functions on phase space are traditionally called *classical observables*. Often this is abbreviated to just *observables* if the context is understood (the notion of observable in quantum mechanics and quantum field theory is more subtle, for a formalization of quantum observables in terms of correspondences in cohesive homotopy types see [Nui13]).

While this is the immediate physics heuristics about what functions on phase space are are, it turns out that a central characteristic of mechanics and of field theory is an intimiate relation between the observables of a mechanical system and its *infinitesimal symmetry transformations*: an infinitesimal symmetry transformation of a phase space characterizes that observable of the system which is invariant under the symmetry transformation. Mathematically this relation is captured by a the structure of a Lie algebra on the vector space of all observables after relating them them to their *Hamiltonian vector fields*.

**Definition 1.3.81.** Given a symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ and a function $H : X \to \mathbb{R}$, its *Hamiltonian vector field* is the unique $v \in \Gamma(TX)$ which satisfies *Hamilton's equation of motion*

$$\mathbf{d}H = \iota_v \omega \,.$$

**Example 1.3.82.** For $(X, \omega) = (\mathbb{R}^2, \mathbf{d}q \wedge \mathbf{d}p)$ the 2-dimensional phase space form example 1.3.53, and for $t \mapsto (q(t), p(t)) \in X$ a curve, it is a Hamiltonian flow line if its tangent vectors $(\dot{q}(t), \dot{p}(t)) \in T_{(q(t),p(t))}\mathbb{R}^2 \simeq \mathbb{R}^2$ satisfy Hamilton's equations in the classical form:

$$\dot{q} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} \;; \quad \dot{p} = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial q} \,.$$

**Proposition 1.3.83.** *Given a symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$, every Hamiltonian vector field $v$ is an* infinitesimal symmetry *of $(X, \omega)$ – an* infinitesimal symplectomorphism *– in that the Lie derivative of the symplectic form along $v$ vanishes*

$$\mathcal{L}_v \omega = 0 \,.$$

Proof. Using Cartan's formula for the Lie derivative

$$\mathcal{L}_v = \mathbf{d} \circ \iota_v + \iota_v \circ \mathbf{d}$$

and the defining condition that the symplectic form is closed and that there is a function $H$ with $\mathbf{d}H = \iota_v \omega$, one finds that the Lie derivative of $\omega$ along $v$ is given by

$$\mathcal{L}_v \omega = \mathbf{d}\iota_v \omega + \iota_v \mathbf{d}\omega = \mathbf{d}^2 H = 0 \,.$$

□

Since infinitesimal symmetries should form a Lie algebra, this motivates the following definition.

**Definition 1.3.84** (Poisson bracket for symplectic manifolds)**.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be a symplectic manifold. Given two functions $f, g \in C^\infty(X)$ with Hamiltonian vector fields $v$ and $w$, def. 1.3.81, respectively, their *Poisson bracket* is the function obtained by evaluating the symplectic form on these two vector fields

$$\{f, g\} := \iota_w \iota_v \omega \,.$$

This operation

$$\{-,-\} : C^\infty(X) \otimes C^\infty(X) \longrightarrow C^\infty(X)$$

is skew symmetric and satisfies the Jacobi identity. Therefore

$$\mathfrak{pois}(X, \omega) := (C^\infty(X), \{-,-\})$$

is a Lie algebra (infinite dimensional in general), called the *Poisson bracket Lie algebra of classical observables* of the symplectic manifold $X$.

**Remark 1.3.85.** Below in 1.3.2.12 we indicate a general abstract characerization of the Poisson bracket Lie algebra (which is discussed in moreo detail below in 5.2.17.5): it is the Lie algebra of "the automorphism group of any prequantization of $(X, \omega)$ in the higher slice topos over the moduli stack of circle-principal connections" [FRS13a]. To state this we first need the notion of *pre-quantization* which we come to below in 1.3.3.2. In the notation introduced there we will discuss in 1.3.2.12 that the Poisson bracket is given as

$$\mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega) = \mathrm{Lie}\left(\mathbf{Aut}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}(\nabla)\right) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X \\ & \Swarrow & \\ {}_{\nabla}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\nabla} \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} \right\},$$

where $\nabla$ denotes a pre-quantization of $(X, \omega)$.

This general abstract construction makes sense also for pre-symplectic manifolds and shows that the following slight generalization of the above traditonal definition is good and useful.

**Definition 1.3.86** (Poisson bracket for pre-symplectic manifolds)**.** For $(X, \omega)$ a pre-symplectic manifold, denote by $\mathfrak{pois}(X, \omega)$ the Lie algebra whose underlying vector space is the space of pairs of Hamiltonians $H$ with a *choice* of Hamiltonian vector field $v$

$$\{(v, H) \in \Gamma(TX) \otimes C^\infty(X) \mid \iota_v \omega = \mathbf{d}H\} ,$$

and whose Lie bracket is given by

$$[(v_1, H_1), (v_2, H_2)] = ([v_1, v_2], \iota_{v_1 \wedge v_2}\omega) .$$

**Remark 1.3.87.** On a smooth manifold $X$ there is a bijection between smooth vector fields and derivations of the algebra $C^\infty(X)$ of smooth functions, given by identifying a vector field $v$ with the operation $v(-)$ of differentiating functions along $v$. Under this identification the Hamiltonian vector field $v$ corresponding to a Hamiltonian $H$ is identified with the derivation given by forming the Poisson bracket with $H$:

$$v(-) = \{H, -\} : C^\infty(X) \longrightarrow C^\infty(X) .$$

In applications in physics, given a phase space $(X, \omega)$ typically one smooth function $H : X \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$, interpreted as the energy observable, is singled out and called *the* Hamiltonian. Its corresponding Hamiltonian vector field is then interpreted as giving the infinitesimal time evolution of the system, and this is where Hamilton's equations in def. 1.3.81 originate.

**Definition 1.3.88.** Given a phase space with Hamiltonian $((X, \omega), H)$, then any other classical $O \in C^\infty(X)$, it is called an *infinitesimal symmetry* of $((X, \omega), H)$ if the Hamiltonian vector field $v_O$ of $O$ preserves not just the symplectic form (as it automatically does by prop. 1.3.83 ) but also the given Hamiltonian, in that $\iota_{v_O}\mathbf{d}H = 0$.

**Proposition 1.3.89** (symplectic Noether theorem)**.** *If a Hamiltonian vector field $v_O$ is an infinitesimal symmetry of a phase space $(X, \omega)$ with time evolution $H$ according to def. 1.3.88, then the corresponding Hamiltonian function $O \in C^\infty(X)$ is a conserved quantity along the time evolution, in that*

$$\iota_{v_H}\mathbf{d}O = 0 .$$

*Conversely, if a function $O \in C^\infty(X)$ is preserved by the time evolution of a Hamiltonian $H$ in this way, then its Hamiltonian vector field $v_O$ is an infinitesimal symmetry of $((X, \omega), H)$.*

Proof. This is immediate from the definition 1.3.81:

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_{v_H} \mathbf{d}O &= \iota_{v_H} \iota_{v_O} \omega \\ &= -\iota_{v_O} \iota_{v_H} \omega \, . \\ &= \iota_{v_O} \mathbf{d}H \end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark 1.3.90.** The utter simplicity of the proof of prop. 1.3.89 is to be taken as a sign of the power of the symplectic formalism in the formalization of physics, not as a sign that the statement itself is shallow. On the contrary, under a Legendre transform and passage from “Hamiltonian mechanics” to “Lagrangian mechanics” that we come to below in 1.3.2.11, the identification of symmetries with preserved observables in prop. 1.3.2.11 becomes the seminal *first Noether theorem*. See for instance [Bu14] for a review of the Lagrangian Noether theorem and its symplectic version in the context of classical mechanics. Below in 1.3.3.3 we observe that the same holds true also in the full context of classical field theory, if only one refines Hamiltonian mechanics to its localization by Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl field theory. The full *n-plectic Noether theorem* (for all field theory dimensions $n$) is prop. 1.3.170 below.

In the next section we pass from infinitesimal Hamiltonian flows to their finite version, the Hamiltonian symplectomorphism.

**1.3.2.6 Hamiltonian (time evolution) trajectories and Hamiltonian correspondences** We have seen so far transformations of phase space given by “canonical transformations”, hence symplectomorphisms. Of central importance in physics are of course those transformations that are part of a smooth evolution group, notably for time evolution. These are the “canonical transformations” coming from a generating function, hence the symplectomorphisms which come from a Hamiltonian function (the energy function, for time evolution), the *Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms*. Below in 1.3.2.10 we see that this notion is implied by prequantizing Lagrangian correspondences, but here it is good to recall the traditional definition.

**Definition 1.3.91.** The flow of a Hamiltonian vector field is called the corresponding *Hamiltonian flow*.

Notice that by prop. 1.3.83 we have

**Proposition 1.3.92.** *Every Hamiltonian flow is a symplectomorphism.*

Those symplectomorphisms arising this way are called the *Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms*. Notice that the Hamiltonian symplectomorphism depends on the Hamiltonian only up to addition of a locally constant function.

Using the Poisson bracket $\{-,-\}$ induced by the symplectic form $\omega$, identifying the derivation $\{H,-\} : C^\infty(X) \longrightarrow C^\infty(X)$ with the corresponding Hamiltonian vector field $v$ by remark 1.3.87 and the exponent notation $\exp(t\{H,-\})$ with the Hamiltonian flow for parameter “time” $t \in \mathbb{R}$, we may write these Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms as

$$\exp(t\{H,-\}) \, : \, (X,\omega) \longrightarrow (X,\omega) \, .$$

It then makes sense to say that

**Definition 1.3.93.** A Lagrangian correspondence, def. 1.3.76, which is induced from a Hamiltonian symplectomorphism is a *Hamiltonian correspondences*

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{graph}\,(\exp\,(t\,\{H,-\})) & \\ {}^{i_1}\swarrow & & \searrow^{i_2} \\ X & & X \end{array} \right) \simeq \left( \begin{array}{ccc} & X & \\ {}^{=}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\exp(t\{H,-\})} \\ X & & X \end{array} \right) .$$

**Remark 1.3.94.** The smooth correspondence space of a Hamiltonian correspondence is naturally identified with the space of *classical trajectories*

$$\mathrm{Fields}^{\mathrm{class}}_{\mathrm{traj}}(t) := \mathrm{graph}\left(\exp(t)\{H,-\}\right)$$

in that

1. every point in the space corresponds uniquely to a trajectory of parameter time length $t$ characterized as satisfying the equations of motion as given by Hamilton's equations for $H$;

2. the two projection maps to $X$ send a trajectory to its initial and to its final configuration, respectively.

group structure is

**Remark 1.3.95.** By construction, Hamiltonian flows form a 1-parameter Lie group. By prop. 1.3.77 this group structure is preserved by the composition of the induced Hamiltonian correspondences.

It is useful to highlight this formally as follows.

**Definition 1.3.96.** Write $\mathrm{Bord}_1^{\mathrm{Riem}}$ for the category of 1-dimensional cobordisms equipped with Riemannian structure (hence with a real, non-negative length which is additive under composition), regarded as a symmetric monoidal category under disjoint union of cobordisms.

Then:

**Proposition 1.3.97.** *The Hamiltonian correspondences induced by a Hamiltonian function $H : X \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are equivalently encoded in a smooth monoidal functor of the form*

$$\exp((-)\{H,-\}) \,:\, \mathrm{Bord}_1^{\mathrm{Riem}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_1(\mathbf{H}_{/\Omega^2})\,,$$

*where on the right we use the monoidal structure on correspondence of prop. 1.3.79.*

Below the general discussion of prequantum field theory, such monoidal functors from cobordisms to correspondences of spaces of field configurations serve as the fundamental means of axiomatization. Whenever one is faced with such a functor, it is of particular interest to consider its value on *closed* cobordisms. Here in the 1-dimensional case this is the circle, and the value of such a functor on the circle would be called its (pre-quantum) *partition function.*

**Proposition 1.3.98.** *Given a phase space symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ and a Hamiltonian $H : X \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$, them the prequantum evolution functor of prop. 1.3.97 sends the circle of circumference $t$, regarded as a cobordism from the empty 0-manifold to itself*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & S^1 & \\ \nearrow & & \nwarrow \\ \emptyset & & \emptyset \end{array}$$

*and equipped with the constant Riemannian metric of 1-volume $t$, to the correspondence*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \{x \in X \,|\, \exp(t\{H,-\})(x) = x\} & \\ \swarrow & & \searrow \\ * & & * \end{array}$$

*which is the smooth space of $H$-Hamiltonian trajectories of (time) length $t$ that are closed, hence that come back to their initial value, regarded canonically as a correspondence form the point to itself.*

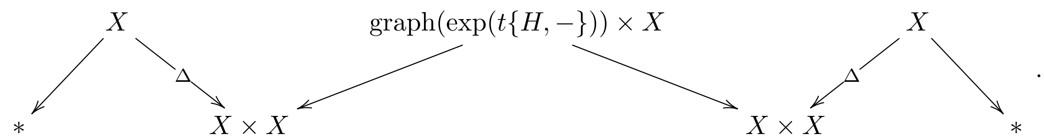
Proof. We can decompose the circle of length $t$ as the compositon of

1. The coevaluation map on the point, regarded as a dualizable object $\mathrm{Bord}_1^{\mathrm{Riem}}$;
2. the interval of length $t$;
3. the evaluation map on the point.

The monoidal functor accordingly takes this to the composition of correspondences of

1. the coevaluation map on $X$, regarded as a dualizable object in $\mathrm{Corr}(\mathbf{H})$;
2. the Hamiltonian correspondence induced by $\exp(t\{H,-\})$;
3. the evaluation map on $X$.

As a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$, this is the following:




By the definition of composition in $\mathrm{Corr}(\mathbf{H})$, the resulting composite correspondence space is the joint fiber product in $\mathbf{H}$ over these maps. This is essentially verbatim the diagrammatic definition of the space of closed trajectories of parameter length $t$. □

**1.3.2.7 Noether symmetries and equivariant structure** So far we have considered smooth spaces equipped with differential forms, and correspondences between these. To find genuine classical mechanics and in particular find the notion of prequantization, we need to bring the notion of *gauge symmetry* into the picture. We introduce here symmetries in classical field theory following Noether's seminal analysis and then point out the crucial notion of *equivariance* of symplectic potentials necessary to give this global meaning. Below in 1.3.2.8 we see how building the *reduced phase space* by taking the symmetries into account makes the first little bit of "higher differential geometry" appear in classical field theory.

**Definition 1.3.99.** Given a local Lagrangian as in example 1.3.54 A *symmetry* of $L$ is a vector field $v \in \Gamma(TPX)$ such that $\iota_v \delta L = 0$. It is called a *Hamiltonian symmetry* if restricted to phase space $v$ is a Hamiltonian vector field, in that the contraction $\iota_v \omega$ is exact.

By definition of $\theta$ and EL in example 1.3.54, it follows that for $v$ a symmetry, the 0-form

$$J_v := \iota_v \theta$$

is closed with respect to the time differential

$$\mathbf{d}_t J_v = 0\,.$$

**Definition 1.3.100.** The function $J_v$ induced by a symmetry $v$ is called the *conserved Noether charge* of $v$.

**Example 1.3.101.** For $Y = \mathbb{R}$ and $L = \frac{1}{2}\dot{\gamma}^2 \mathbf{d}t$ the vector field $v$ tangent to the flow $\gamma \mapsto \gamma((-)+a)$ is a symmetry. This is such that $\iota_v \delta\gamma = \dot{\gamma}$. Hence the conserved quantity is $E := J_v = \dot{\gamma}^2$, the energy of the system. It is also a Hamiltonian symmetry.

Let then $G$ be the group of Hamiltonian symmetries acting on $(\{\mathrm{EL} = 0\}, \omega = \delta\theta)$. Write $\mathfrak{g} = \mathrm{Lie}(G)$ for the Lie algebra of the Lie group. Given $v \in \mathfrak{g} = \mathrm{Lie}(G)$ identify it with the corresponding Hamiltonian vector field. Then it follows that the Lie derivative of $\theta$ is exact, hence that for every $v$ one can find an $h$ such that

$$\mathcal{L}_v \theta = \mathbf{d}h \,.$$

The choice of $h$ here is a choice of identification that relates the phase space potential $\theta$ to itself under a different but equivalent perspective of what the phase space points are. Such choices of "gauge equivalences" are necessary in order to give the (pre-)symplectic form on the unreduced phase space an physical meaning in view of the symmetries of the system. Moreover, what is really necessary for this is a coherent choice of such gauge equivalences also for the "global" or "large" gauge transformations that may not be reached by exponentiating Lie algebra elements of the symmetry group $G$. Such a coherent choice of gauge equivalences on $\theta$ reflecting the symmetry of the physical system is mathematically called a *$G$-equivariant structure*.

**Definition 1.3.102.** Given a smooth space $X$ equipped with the action $\rho : X \times G \longrightarrow X$ of a smooth group, and given a differential 1-form $\theta \in \Omega^1(X)$, and finally given a discrete subgroup $\Gamma \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$, then a *$G$-equivariant structure* on $\theta$ regarded as a $(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$-principal connection is

- for each $g \in G$ an equivalence

$$\eta_g : \theta \xrightarrow{\simeq} \rho(g)^*\theta$$

between $\theta$ and the pullback of $\theta$ along the action of $g$, hence a smooth function $\eta_g \in C^\infty(X, \mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$ with

$$\rho(g)^*\theta - \theta = \mathbf{d}\eta_g$$

such that

1. the assignment $g \mapsto \eta_g$ is smooth;
2. for all pairs $(g_1, g_2) \in G \times G$ there is an equality

$$\eta_{g_2}\eta_{g_1} = \eta_{g_2 g_1} \,.$$

**Remark 1.3.103.** Notice that the condition $\rho(g)^*\theta - \theta = \mathbf{d}\eta_g$ depends on $\eta_g$ only modulo elements in the discrete group $\Gamma \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$, while the second condition $\eta_{g_2}\eta_{g_1} = \eta_{g_2 g_1}$ crucially depends on the actual representatives in $C^\infty(X, \mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$. For $\Gamma$ the trivial group there is no difference, but in general it is unlikely that in this case the second condition may be satisfied. The second condition can in general only be satisfied modulo some subgroup of $\mathbb{R}$. Essentially the only such which yields a regular quotient is $\mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ (or any non-zero rescaling of this), in which case

$$\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z} \simeq U(1)$$

is the circle group. This is the origin of the central role of *circle principal bundles* in field theory ("prequantum bundles"), to which we come below in 1.3.3.2.

The point of $G$-equivariant structure is that it makes the (pre-)symplectic potential $\theta$ "descend" to the quotient of $X$ by $G$ (the "correct quotient", in fact), which is the *reduced phase space*. To say precisely what this means, we now introduce the concept of smooth groupoids in 1.3.2.8.

**Remark 1.3.104.** This equivariance on local Lagrangian is one of the motivations for refining the discussion here to *local prequantum field theory* in [Sc13b]: By remark 1.3.57 for a genuine $n$-dimensional field theory, the Lagrangian 1-form $L$ above is the transgression of an $n$-form Lagrangian on a moduli space of fields. In local prequantum field theory we impose an equivariant structure already on this de-transgressed $n$-form Lagrangian such that under transgression it then induces equivariant structures in codimension 1, and hence consistent phase spaces, in fact consistent prequantized phase spaces.

**1.3.2.8 Gauge theory, smooth groupoids and higher toposes** As we mentioned in **??** *gauge principle* is a deep principle of modern physics, which says that in general two configurations of a physical system may be nominally different and still be identified by a *gauge equivalence* between them. In homotopy type theory precisely this principle is what is captured by *intensional identity types* (see remark 2.1.5). One class of example of such gauge equivalences in physics are the Noether symmetries induced by local Lagrangians which we considered above in 1.3.2.7. Gauge equivalences can be composed (and associatively so) and can be inverted. All physical statements respect this gauge equivalence, but it is wrong to identify gauge equivalent field configurations and pass to their sets of equivalence classes, as some properties depend on non-trivial auto-gauge transformations.

In mathematical terms what this says is precisely that field configurations and gauge transformations between them form what is called a *groupoid* or *homotopy 1-type*.

**Definition 1.3.105.** A *groupoid* $\mathcal{G}_\bullet$ is a set $\mathcal{G}_0$ – to be called its set of of *objects* or *configurations* – and a set $\mathcal{G}_1 = \left\{ \left( x_1 \xrightarrow{f} x_2 \right) | x_1, x_2 \in \mathcal{G}_0 \right\}$ – to be called the set of *morphisms* or *gauge transformations* – between these objects, together with a partial composition operation of morphisms over common objects

$$f_2 \circ f_1 : \; x_1 \xrightarrow{f_1} x_2 \xrightarrow{f_2} x_3$$

which is associative, and for which every object has a unit (the identity morphism $\mathrm{id}_x : x \to x$) and such that every morphism has an inverse.

The two extreme examples are:

**Example 1.3.106.** For $X$ any set, it becomes a groupoid by considering for each object an identity morphism and no other morphisms.

**Example 1.3.107.** For $G$ a group, there is a groupoid which we denote $\mathbf{B}G$ defined to have a single object $*$, one morphism from that object to itself for each element of the group

$$(\mathbf{B}G)_1 = \left\{ * \xrightarrow{g} * \mid g \in G \right\}$$

and where composition is given by the product operation in $G$.

The combination of these two examples which is of central interest here is the following.

**Example 1.3.108.** For $X$ a set and $G$ a group with an action $\rho : X \times G \longrightarrow X$ on $X$, the corresponding *action groupoid* or *homotopy quotient*, denoted $X//G$, is the groupoid whose objects are the elements of $X$, and whose morphisms are of the form

$$x_1 \xrightarrow{g} (x_2 = \rho(g)(x_1))$$

with composition given by the composition in $G$.

**Remark 1.3.109.** The homotopy quotient is a refinement of the actual quotient $X/G$ in which those elements of $X$ which are related by the $G$-action are actually *identified*. In contrast to that, the homotopy quotient makes element which are related by the action of the "gauge" group $G$ be *equivalent without being equal*. Moreover it remember *how* two elements are equivalent, hence which "gauge transformation" relates them. This is most striking in example 1.3.107, which is in fact the special case of the homotopy quotient construction for the case that $G$ acts on a single element:

$$\mathbf{B}G \simeq *//G \,.$$

Therefore given an unreduced phase space $X$ as in 1.3.2.1 and equipped with an action of a gauge symmetry group as in 1.3.2.7, then the corresponding *reduced phase space* should be the homotopy quotient $X//G$, hence the space of fields with gauge equivalences between them. But crucially for physics, this is not just a discrete set of points with a discrete set of morphisms between them, as in the above definition, but in addition to the information about field configurations and gauge equivalences between them carries a *smooth structure*.

We therefore need a definition of *smooth groupoids*, hence of homotopy types which carry *differential geometric* structure. Luckily, the definition in 1.3.2.2 of smooth spaces immediately generalizes to an analogous definition of smooth groupoids.

First we need the following obvious notion.

**Definition 1.3.110.** Given two groupoids $\mathcal{G}_\bullet$ and $\mathcal{K}_\bullet$, a homomorphism $F_\bullet : \mathcal{G}_\bullet \longrightarrow \mathcal{K}_\bullet$ between them (called a *functor*) is a function $F_1 : \mathcal{G}_1 \longrightarrow \mathcal{K}_1$ between the sets of morphisms such that identity-morphisms are sent to identity morphisms and such that composition is respected.

Groupoids themselves are subject to a notion of gauge equivalence:

**Definition 1.3.111.** A functor $F_\bullet$ is called an *equivalence of groupoids* if its image hits every equivalence class of objects in $\mathcal{K}_\bullet$ and if for all $x_1, x_2 \in \mathcal{G}_0$ the map $F_1$ restricts to a bijection between the morphisms from $x_1$ to $x_2$ in $\mathcal{G}_\bullet$ and the morphisms between $F_0(x_1)$ and $F_0(x_2)$ in $\mathcal{K}_\bullet$.

With that notion we can express coordinate transformations between smooth groupoids and arrive at the following generalization of def. 1.3.58.

**Definition 1.3.112.** A *smooth groupoid* or *smooth homotopy 1-type* $X_\bullet$ is

1. an assignment to each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ of a groupoid, to be written $X_\bullet(\mathbb{R}^n)$ and to be called the *groupoid of smooth maps from $\mathbb{R}^n$ into $X$ and gauge transformations between these*,
2. an assignment to each ordinary smooth function $f : \mathbb{R}^{n_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ between Cartesian spaces of a functor of groupoids $X(f) : X_\bullet(\mathbb{R}^{n_2}) \to X_\bullet(\mathbb{R}^{n_1})$, to be called the *pullback of smooth functions into $X$ along $f$*;

such that both the components $X_0$ and $X_1$ form a smooth space according to def 1.3.58.

With this definition in hand we can now form the reduced phase space in a way that reflects both its smooth structure as well as its gauge-theoretic structure:

**Example 1.3.113.** Given a smooth space $X$ and a smooth group $G$ with a smooth action $\rho : X \times G \longrightarrow X$, then the *smooth homotopy quotient* of this action is the smooth groupoid, def. 1.3.112. which on each coordinate chart is the homotopy quotient, def. 6.4.45, of the coordinates of $G$ acting on the coordinates of $X$, hence the assignment

$$X//G : \mathbb{R}^n \mapsto (X(\mathbb{R}^n)) // (G(\mathbb{R}^n)) \, .$$

**Remark 1.3.114.** In most of the physics literature only the infinitesimal approximation to the smooth homotopy quotient $X//G$ is considered, that however is famous: it is the *BRST complex* of gauge theory [HeTe92]. More in detail, to any Lie group $G$ is associated a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, which is its "infinitesiamal approximation" in that it consists of the first order neighbourhood of the neutral element in $G$, equipped with the first linearized group structure, incarnated as the Lie bracket. In direct analogy to this, a smooth grouppoid such as $X//G$ has an infinitesimal approximation given by a *Lie algebroid*, a vector bundle on $X$ whose fibers form the first order neighbourhood of the smooth space of morphisms at the identity morphisms. Moreover, Lie algebroids can equivalently be encoded dually by the algebras of functions on these first order neighbourhoods. These are differential graded-commutative algebras and the dgc-algebra associated this way to the smooth groupoid $X//G$ is what in the physics literature is known as the BRST complex.

To correctly capture the interplay between the differential geometric structure and the homotopy theoretic structure in this definition we have to in addition declare the following

**Definition 1.3.115.** A homomorphism $f_\bullet : X_\bullet \longrightarrow Y_\bullet$ of smooth groupoids is called a *local equivalence* if it is a *stalkwise* equivalence of groupoids, hence if for each Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$ and for each point $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, there is an open neighbourhood $\mathbb{R}^n \simeq U_x \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ such that $F_\bullet$ restricted to this open neighbourhood is an equivalence of groupoids according to def. 1.3.111.

**Definition 1.3.116.** The $(2,1)$-*topos of smooth groupoids* is the homotopy theory obtained from the category Sh(CartSp, Grpd) of smooth groupoids by universally turning the local equivalences into actual equivalences, via theorem 3.1.19.

This refines the construction of the topos of smooth spaces form before, and hence we find it convenient to use the same symbol for it:

$$\mathbf{H} := \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{CartSp}, \mathrm{Grpd})[\{\text{local equivalences}\}^{-1}] .$$

**1.3.2.9 The kinetic action, pre-quantization and differential cohomology** The refinement of gauge transformations of differential 1-forms to coherent $U(1)$-valued functions which we have seen in the construction of the reduced phase space above in 1.3.2.7 also appears in physics from another angle, which is not explicitly gauge theoretic, but related to the global definition of the exponentiated action functional.

Given a pre-symplectic form $\omega \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$, by the Poincaré lemma there is a good cover $\{U_i \hookrightarrow X\}_i$ and smooth 1-forms $\theta_i \in \Omega^1(U_i)$ such that $\mathbf{d}\theta_i = \omega_{|U_i}$. Physically such a 1-form is (up to a factor of 2) a choice of *kinetic energy density* called a *kinetic Lagrangian* $L_{\mathrm{kin}}$:

$$\theta_i = 2L_{\mathrm{kin},i} .$$

**Example 1.3.117.** Consider the phase space $(\mathbb{R}^2,\ \omega = \mathbf{d}q \wedge \mathbf{d}p)$ of example 1.3.53. Since $\mathbb{R}^2$ is a contractible topological space we consider the trivial covering ($\mathbb{R}^2$ covering itself) since this is already a good covering in this case. Then all the $\{g_{ij}\}$ are trivial and the data of a prequantization consists simply of a choice of 1-form $\theta \in \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^2)$ such that

$$\mathbf{d}\theta = \mathbf{d}q \wedge \mathbf{d}p .$$

A standard such choice is

$$\theta = -p \wedge \mathbf{d}q .$$

Then given a trajectory $\gamma\colon [0,1] \longrightarrow X$ which satisfies Hamilton's equation for a standard kinetic energy term, then $(p\mathbf{d}q)(\dot\gamma)$ is this kinetic energy of the particle which traces out this trajectory.

Given a path $\gamma : [0,1] \to X$ in phase space, its *kinetic action* $S_{\mathrm{kin}}$ is supposed to be the integral of $\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{kin}}$ along this trajectory. In order to make sense of this in generality with the above locally defined kinetic Lagrangians $\{\theta_i\}_i$, there are to be transition functions $g_{ij} \in C^\infty(U_i \cap U_j, \mathbb{R})$ such that

$$\theta_j|_{U_j} - \theta_i|_{U_i} = \mathbf{d}g_{ij} .$$

If on triple intersections these functions satisfy

$$g_{ij} + g_{jk} = g_{ik} \quad \text{on } U_i \cap U_j \cap U_K$$

then there is a well defined action functional

$$S_{\mathrm{kin}}(\gamma) \in \mathbb{R}$$

obtained by dividing $\gamma$ into small pieces that each map to a single patch $U_i$, integrating $\theta_i$ along this piece, and adding the contribution of $g_{ij}$ at the point where one switches from using $\theta_i$ to using $\theta_j$.

However, requiring this condition on triple overlaps as an equation between $\mathbb{R}$-valued functions makes the local patch structure trivial: if this holds then one can find a single $\theta \in \Omega^1(X)$ and functions $h_i \in C^\infty(U_i, \mathbb{R})$ such that superficially pleasant effect that the action is $\theta_i = \theta|_{U_i} + \mathbf{d}h_i$. This has the simply the integral against this globally defined 1-form, $S_{\mathrm{kin}} = \int_{[0,1]} \gamma^* L_{\mathrm{kin}}$, but it also means that the pre-symplectic form $\omega$ is exact, which is not the case in many important examples.

On the other hand, what really matters in physics is not the action functional $S_{\mathrm{kin}} \in \mathbb{R}$ itself, but the *exponentiated* action

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar} S\right) \in \mathbb{R}/(2\pi\hbar)\mathbb{Z}\,.$$

For this to be well defined, one only needs that the equation $g_{ij} + g_{jk} = g_{ik}$ holds modulo addtion of an integral multiple of $h = 2\pi\hbar$, which is *Planck's constant*, def. 6.4.156. If this is the case, then one says that the data $(\{\theta_i\}, \{g_{ij}\})$ defines equivalently

- a $U(1)$-principal connection;
- a degree-2 cocycle in ordinary differential cohomology

on $X$, with *curvature* the given symplectic 2-form $\omega$.

Such data is called a *pre-quantization* of the symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$. Since it is the exponentiated action functional $\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar} S)$ that enters the quantization of the given mechanical system (for instance as the integrand of a path integral), the prequantization of a symplectic manifold is indeed precisely the data necessary before quantization.

Therefore, in the spirit of the above discussion of pre-symplectic structures, we would like to refine the smooth moduli space of closed differential 2-forms to a moduli space of prequantized differential 2-forms.

Again this does naturally exist if only we allow for a good notion of "space". An additional phenomenon to be taken care of now is that while pre-symplectic forms are either equal or not, their pre-quantizations can be different and yet be *equivalent*:

because there is still a remaining freedom to change this data without changing the exponentiated action along a *closed* path: we say that a choice of functions $h_i \in C^\infty(U_i, \mathbb{R}/(2\pi\hbar)\mathbb{Z})$ defines an equivalence between $(\{\theta_i\}, \{g_{ij}\})$ and $(\{\tilde{\theta}_i\}, \{\tilde{g}_{ij}\})$ if $\tilde{\theta}_i - \theta_i = \mathbf{d}h_i$ and $\tilde{g}_{ij} - g_{ij} = h_j - h_i$.

This means that the space of prequantizations of $(X, \omega)$ is similar to an *orbifold*: it has points which are connected by gauge equivalences: there is a *groupoid* of pre-quantum structures on a manifold $X$. Otherwise this space of prequantizations is similar to the spaces $\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$ of differential forms, in that for each smooth manifold there is a collection of smooth such data and it may consistently be pullback back along smooth functions of smooth manifolds.

As before for the pre-symplectic differential forms in 1.3.2.2 it will be useful to find a moduli space for such prequantum structures. This certainly cannot exist as a smooth manifold, but due to the gauge transformations between prequantizations it can also not exist as a more general smooth space. However, it does exist as a *smooth groupoid*, def. 1.3.116.

**Definition 1.3.118.** For $X = \mathbb{R}^n$ a Cartesian space, wrrite $\Omega^1(X)$ for the set of smooth differential 1-forms on $X$ and write $C^\infty(X, U(1))$ for the set of smooth circle-group valued function on $X$. There is an action

$$\rho : C^\infty(X, U(1)) \times \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^n) \longrightarrow \Omega^1(X, U(1))$$

of functions on 1-forms $A$ by gauge transformation $g$, given by the formula

$$\rho(g)(A) := A + \mathbf{d}\mathrm{log} g\,.$$

Hence if $g = \exp(i\kappa)$ is given by the exponential of a smooth real valued function (which is always the case on $\mathbb{R}^n$) then this is

$$\rho(g)(A) := A + \mathbf{d}\kappa\,.$$

**Definition 1.3.119.** Write

$$\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \in \mathbf{H}\,,$$

for the smooth groupoid, def. 1.3.112, which for Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$ has as groupoid of coordinate charts the homotopy quotient, def. 6.4.45, of the smooth functions on the coordinate chart acting on the smooth 1-forms on the coordinate chart.

$$\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \;:\; \mathbb{R}^n \;\mapsto\; \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}) /\!/ \mathbb{C}^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n, U(1))\,.$$

Equivalently this is the smooth homotopy quotient, def. 1.3.113, of the smooth group $U(1) \in \mathbf{H}$ acting on the universal smooth moduli space $\mathbf{\Omega}^1$ of smooth differential 1-forms:

$$\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq \mathbf{\Omega}^1 /\!/ U(1)\,.$$

We call this the *universal moduli stack of prequantizations* or *universal moduli stack of $U(1)$-principal connections.*

**Remark 1.3.120.** This smooth groupoid $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq \mathbf{\Omega}^1 /\!/ U(1)$ is equivalently characterized by the following properties.

1. For $X$ any smooth manifold, smooth functions

$$X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

are equivalent to prequantum structures $(\{\theta_i\}, \{g_{ij}\})$ on $X$,

2. a homotopy

$$X \underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longrightarrow}{\Downarrow}} \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

between two such maps is equivalently a gauge transformation $(\{h_i\})$ between these prequantizations.

**Proposition 1.3.121.** *There is then in* $\mathbf{H}$ *a morphism*

$$F:\; \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

*from this universal moduli stack of prequantizations back to the universal smooth moduli space of closed differential 2-form. This is the* universal curvature *map in that for* $\nabla : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ *a prequantization datum* $(\{\theta_i\}, \{g_{ij}\})$*, the composite*

$$F_{(-)} :\; X \xrightarrow{\nabla} \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{F_{(-)}} \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

*is the closed differential 2-form on* $X$ *characterized by* $\omega|_{U_i} = \mathbf{d}\theta_i$*, for every patch* $U_i$*. Again, this property characterizes the map* $F_{(-)}$ *and may be taken as its definition.*

Using this language of the $(2,1)$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ of smooth groupoids, we may then formally capture the above discussion of prequantization as follows:

**Definition 1.3.122.** Given a symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$, regarded by prop. 1.3.68 as an object $(X \xrightarrow{\omega} \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{c}}) \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}}$, then a *prequantization* of $(X, \omega)$ is a lift $\nabla$ in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \overset{\nabla}{\dashrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & {\scriptstyle \omega}\searrow & \downarrow {\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} \\ & & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$, hence is a lift of $(X, \omega)$ through the *base change* functor (see prop. 2.1.2 for this terminology) or *dependent sum* functor (see def. 2.1.3)

$$\sum_{F_{(-)}} \; : \; \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}}$$

that goes from the slice over the universal moduli stack of prequantizations to the slice over the universal smooth moduli space of closed differential 2-forms.

Moreover, in this language of geometric homotopy theory we then also find a conceptual re-statement of the descent of the (pre-)symplectic potential to the reduced phase space, from 1.3.2.7:

**Proposition 1.3.123.** *Given a covariant phase space $X$ with (pre-)symplectic potential $\theta$ and gauge group action $\rho : G \times X \longrightarrow X$, a $G$-equivariant structure on $\theta$, def. 1.3.102, is equivalently an extension $\nabla_{\mathrm{red}}$ of $\theta$ along the map to the smooth homotopy quotient $X//G$ as a $(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$-principal connection, hence a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\theta} & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{\nabla_{\mathrm{red}}} & \\ X//G & & \end{array} .$$

#### 1.3.2.10 The classical action, the Legendre transform and Hamiltonian flows

The reason to consider Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms, prop. 1.3.92 instead of general symplectomorphisms, is really because these give homomorphisms not just between plain symplectic manifolds, but between their prequantizations, def. 1.3.122. To these we turn now.

Consider a morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X \\ & \swarrow\!\!\!\!\swarrow & \\ {\scriptstyle\nabla}\searrow & & \swarrow{\scriptstyle\nabla} \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} ,$$

hence a morphism in the slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{conn}}$. This has been discussed in detail in [FRS13a].

One finds that infinitesimally such morphisms are given by a Hamiltonian and its Legendre transform.

**Proposition 1.3.124.** *Consider the phase space $(\mathbb{R}^2, \; \omega = \mathbf{d}q \wedge \mathbf{d}p)$ of example 1.3.53 equipped with its canonical prequantization by $\theta = p\mathbf{d}q$ from example 1.3.117. Then for $H \colon \mathbb{R}^2 \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ a Hamiltonian, and for $t \in \mathbb{R}$ a parameter ("time"), a lift of the Hamiltonian symplectomorphism $\exp(t\{H,-\})$ from $\mathbf{H}$ to the slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$ is given by*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\exp(t\{H,-\})} & X \\ & \swarrow\!\!\!\!\swarrow_{\exp(iS_t)} & \\ {\scriptstyle\theta}\searrow & & \swarrow{\scriptstyle\theta} \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} ,$$

*where*

- *$S_t \, : \, \mathbb{R}^2 \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is the action functional of the classical trajectories induced by $H$,*
- *which is the integral $S_t = \int_0^t L\,dt$ of the Lagrangian $L\,dt$ induced by $H$,*
- *which is the Legendre transform*

$$L := p\frac{\partial H}{\partial p} - H \; : \; \mathbb{R}^2 \longrightarrow \mathbb{R} .$$

*In particular, this induces a functor*

$$\exp(iS) : \mathrm{Bord}_1^{\mathrm{Riem}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}} .$$

*Conversely, a symplectomorphism, being a morphism in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{cl}}$ is a Hamiltonian symplectomorphism precisely if it admits such a lift to $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{conn}}$.*

This is a special case of the discussion in [FRS13a]. Proof. The canonical prequantization of $(\mathbb{R}^2, \mathbf{d}q \wedge \mathbf{d}p)$ is the globally defined connection on a bundle—connection 1-form

$$\theta := p\, \mathbf{d}q .$$

We have to check that on $graph(\exp(t\{H, -\}))$ we have the equation

$$p_2 \wedge \mathbf{d}q_2 = p_1 \wedge \mathbf{d}q_1 + \mathbf{d}S .$$

Or rather, given the setup, it is more natural to change notation to

$$p_t \wedge \mathbf{d}q_t = p \wedge \mathbf{d}q + \mathbf{d}S .$$

Notice here that by the nature of $\mathrm{graph}(\exp(t\{H, -\}))$ we can identify

$$\mathrm{graph}(\exp(t\{H, -\})) \simeq \mathbb{R}^2$$

and under this identification

$$q_t = \exp(t\{H, -\})q$$

and

$$p_t = \exp(t\{H, -\})p .$$

It is sufficient to check the claim infinitesimally. So let $t = \epsilon$ be an infinitesimal, hence such that $\epsilon^2 = 0$. Then the above is Hamilton's equations and reads equivalently

$$q_\epsilon = q + \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\epsilon$$

and

$$p_\epsilon = p - \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}\epsilon .$$

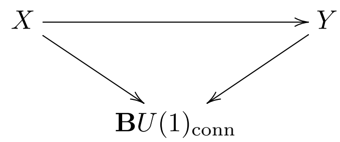
Using this we compute

$$\begin{aligned} \theta_\epsilon - \theta &= p_\epsilon \wedge \mathbf{d}q\epsilon - p \wedge \mathbf{d}q \\ &= \left(p - \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}\epsilon\right) \wedge \mathbf{d}\left(q + \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\epsilon\right) - p \wedge \mathbf{d}q \\ &= \epsilon\left(p \wedge \mathbf{d}\frac{\partial H}{\partial p} - \frac{\partial H}{\partial q} \wedge \mathbf{d}q\right) \\ &= \epsilon\left(\mathbf{d}\left(p\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\right) - \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} \wedge \mathbf{d}p - \frac{\partial H}{\partial q} \wedge \mathbf{d}q\right) \\ &= \epsilon\mathbf{d}\left(p\frac{\partial H}{\partial p} - H\right) \end{aligned} .$$

□

**Remark 1.3.125.** When one speaks of symplectomorphisms as "canonical transformations" (see e.g. [Ar89], p. 206), then the function $S$ in prop. 1.3.124 is also known as the "generating function of the canonical transformation", see [Ar89], chapter 48.

**Remark 1.3.126.** Proposition 1.3.124 says that the slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{conn}}$ unifies classical mechanics in its two incarnations as Hamiltonian mechanics and as Lagrangian mechanics. A morphism here is a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form




and which may be regarded as having two components: the top horizontal 1-morphism as well as the homotopy/2-morphism filling the slice. Given a smooth flow of these, the horizontal morphism is the flow of a Hamiltonian vector field for some Hamiltonian function $H$, and the 2-morphism is a $U(1)$-gauge transformation given (locally) by a $U(1)$-valued function which is the exponentiated action functional that is the integral of the Lagrangian $L$ which is the Legendre transform of $H$.

So in a sense the prequantization lift through the base change/dependent sum along the universal curvature map

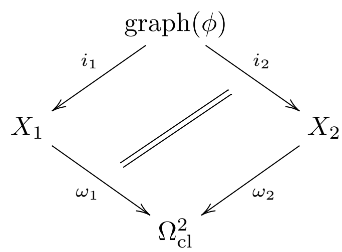
$$\sum_{F_{(-)}} : \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{cl}}$$

is the Legendre transform which connects Hamiltonian mechanics with Lagrangian mechanics.

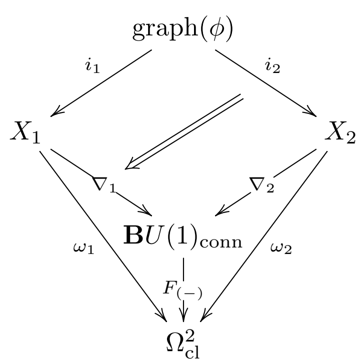
#### 1.3.2.11 The classical action functional pre-quantizes Lagrangian correspondences

We may sum up these observations as follows.

**Definition 1.3.127.** Given a Lagrangian correspondence




as in prop. 1.3.74, a *prequantization* of it is a lift of this diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ to a diagram of the form



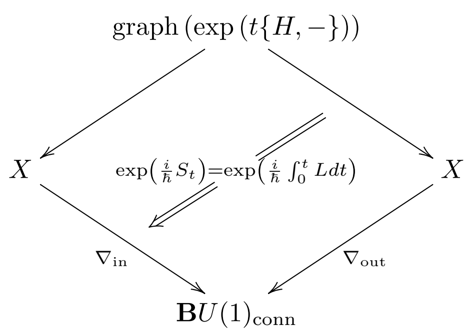

**Remark 1.3.128.** This means that a prequantization of a Lagrangian correspondence is a prequantization of the source and target symplectic manifolds by prequantum circle bundles as in def. 1.3.122, together with a choice of (gauge) equivalence between thes respective pullback of these two bundles to the correspondence space. More abstractly, such a prequantization is a lift through the base change/dependent sum map along

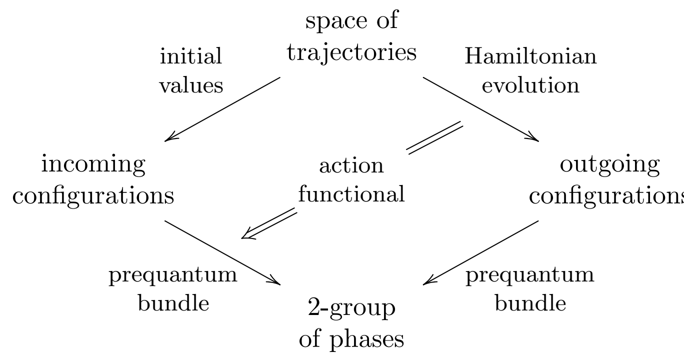
the universal curvature morphism

$$\mathrm{Corr}\left(\sum_{F_{(-)}}\right) : \mathrm{Corr}\left(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}\right) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}\left(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}}\right) .$$

From prop. 1.3.124 and under the equivalence of example 1.3.73 it follows that smooth 1-parameter groups of prequantized Lagrangian correspondences are equivalently Hamiltonian flows, and that the prequantizaton of the underlying Hamiltonian correspondences is given by the classical action funtional.

In summary, the description of classical mechanics here identifies prequantized Lagrangian correspondences schematically as follows:




This picture of classical mechanics as the theory of correspondences in higher slices topos is what allows a seamless generalization to a local discussion of prequantum field theory in [Sc13b].

**1.3.2.12 Quantization, the Heisenberg group, and slice automorphism groups** While we do not discussion genuine quantization here (in a way adapted to the perspective here this is discussed in [Nui13]) it is worthwhile to notice that the perspective of classical mechanics by correspondences in slice toposes seamlessly leads over to *quantization* by recognizing that the slice automorphism groups of the prequantized phase spaces are nothing but the "quantomorphisms groups" containing the famous Heisenberg groups of quantum operators. This has been developed for higher prequantum field theory in [FRS13a], see 5.2.17.5 below. Here we give an exposition, which re-amplifies some of the structures already found above.

Quantization of course was and is motivated by experiment, hence by observation of the observable universe: it just so happens that quantum mechanics and quantum field theory correctly account for experimental observations where classical mechanics and classical field theory gives no answer or incorrect answers (see for instance [Di87]). A historically important example is the phenomenon called the "ultraviolet catastrophe", a paradox predicted by classical statistical mechanics which is *not* observed in nature, and which is corrected by quantum mechanics.

But one may also ask, independently of experimental input, if there are good formal mathematical reasons and motivations to pass from classical mechanics to quantum mechanics. Could one have been led to quantum mechanics by just pondering the mathematical formalism of classical mechanics? (Hence more precisely: is there a natural "Synthetic quantum field theory" [Sc13d]).

The following spells out an argument to this effect.

So to briefly recall, a system of classical mechanics/prequantum field theory—prequantum mechanics is a phase space, formalized as a symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$. A symplectic manifold is in particular a Poisson manifold, which means that the algebra of functions on phase space $X$, hence the algebra of *classical observables*, is canonically equipped with a compatible Lie bracket: the *Poisson bracket*. This Lie bracket is what controls dynamics in classical mechanics. For instance if $H \in C^\infty(X)$ is the function on phase space which is interpreted as assigning to each configuration of the system its energy – the Hamiltonian function

– then the Poisson bracket with $H$ yields the infinitesimal time evolution of the system: the differential equation famous as Hamilton's equations.

Something to take notice of here is the *infinitesimal* nature of the Poisson bracket. Generally, whenever one has a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, then it is to be regarded as the infinitesimal approximation to a globally defined object, the corresponding Lie group (or generally smooth group) $G$. One also says that $G$ is a *Lie integration* of $\mathfrak{g}$ and that $\mathfrak{g}$ is the Lie differentiation of $G$.

Therefore a natural question to ask is: *Since the observables in classical mechanics form a Lie algebra under Poisson bracket, what then is the corresponding Lie group?*

The answer to this is of course "well known" in the literature, in the sense that there are relevant monographs which state the answer. But, maybe surprisingly, the answer to this question is not (at time of this writing) a widely advertized fact that has found its way into the basic educational textbooks. The answer is that this Lie group which integrates the Poisson bracket is the "quantomorphism group", an object that seamlessly leads to the quantum mechanics of the system.

Before we spell this out in more detail, we need a brief technical aside: of course Lie integration is not quite unique. There may be different global Lie group objects with the same Lie algebra.

The simplest example of this is already one of central importance for the issue of quantization, namely, the Lie integration of the abelian line Lie algebra $\mathbb{R}$. This has essentially two different Lie groups associated with it: the simply connected topological space—simply connected translation group, which is just $\mathbb{R}$ itself again, equipped with its canonical additive abelian group structure, and the discrete space—discrete quotient of this by the group of integers, which is the circle group

$$U(1) = \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}\,.$$

Notice that it is the discrete and hence "quantized" nature of the integers that makes the real line become a circle here. This is not entirely a coincidence of terminology, but can be traced back to the heart of what is "quantized" about quantum mechanics.

Namely, one finds that the Poisson bracket Lie algebra $\mathfrak{poiss}(X,\omega)$ of the classical observables on phase space is (for $X$ a connected topological space—connected manifold) a Lie algebra extension of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{ham}(X)$ of Hamiltonian vector fields on $X$ by the line Lie algebra:

$$\mathbb{R} \longrightarrow \mathfrak{poiss}(X,\omega) \longrightarrow \mathfrak{ham}(X)\,.$$

This means that under Lie integration the Poisson bracket turns into an central extension of the group of Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms of $(X,\omega)$. And either it is the fairly trivial non-compact extension by $\mathbb{R}$, or it is the interesting central extension by the circle group $U(1)$. For this non-trivial Lie integration to exist, $(X,\omega)$ needs to satisfy a quantization condition which says that it admits a prequantum line bundle. If so, then this $U(1)$-central extension of the group $Ham(X,\omega)$ of Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms exists and is called... the "quantomorphism group" $\mathrm{QuantMorph}(X,\omega)$:

$$U(1) \longrightarrow \mathrm{QuantMorph}(X,\omega) \longrightarrow \mathrm{HamSympl}(X,\omega)\,.$$

More precisely, this group is just the slice automorphism group:

**Proposition 1.3.129.** *Let $(X,\omega)$ be a symplectic manifold with prequantization $\nabla : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, according to def. 1.3.122, then the smooth automorphism group of $\nabla$ regarded as an object in the higher slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$ is the quantomorphism group* $\mathrm{QuantMorph}(X,\omega)$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{QuantMorph}(X,\omega) &\simeq \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}}(\nabla) \\
&\simeq \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Corr}\left(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}\right)}(\nabla) \\
&\simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\phi} & X \\ & \overset{\simeq}{\Longleftarrow} & \\ {\scriptstyle\nabla}\searrow & & \swarrow \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} \right\}
\end{aligned}$$

*in that*

1. *The Lie algebra of* QuantMorph$(X, \omega)$ *is the Poisson bracket Lie algebra of* $(X, \omega)$*;*
2. *This group constitutes a* $U(1)$*-central extension of the group of Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms.*

While important, for some reason this group is not very well known, which is striking because it contains a small subgroup which is famous in quantum mechanics: the *Heisenberg group*.

More precisely, whenever $(X, \omega)$ itself has a Hamiltonian action—compatible group structure, notably if $(X, \omega)$ is just a symplectic vector space (regarded as a group under addition of vectors), then we may ask for the subgroup of the quantomorphism group which covers the (left) action of phase space $(X, \omega)$ on itself. This is the corresponding Heisenberg group Heis$(X, \omega)$, which in turn is a $U(1)$-central extension of the group $X$ itself:

$$U(1) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Heis}(X, \omega) \longrightarrow X .$$

**Proposition 1.3.130.** *If* $(X, \omega)$ *is a symplectic manifold that at the same time is a group which acts on itself by Hamiltonian diffeomorphisms, then the Heisenberg group of* $(X, \omega)$ *is the pullback* Heis$(X, \omega)$ *of smooth groups in the following diagram in* **H**

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Heis}(X,\omega) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{QuantMorph}(X,\omega) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{HamSympl}(X,\omega) \end{array} .$$

**Remark 1.3.131.** In other words this exhibits QuantMorph$(X, \omega)$ as a universal $U(1)$-central extension characteristic of quantum mechanics from which various other $U(1)$-extension in QM are obtained by pullback/restriction. In particular all *classical anomalies* arise this way, discussed below in 1.3.2.14.

At this point it is worth pausing for a second to note how the hallmark of quantum mechanics has appeared as if out of nowhere simply by applying Lie integration to the Lie algebra—Lie algebraic structures in classical mechanics:

if we think of Lie integration—Lie integrating $\mathbb{R}$ to the interesting circle group $U(1)$ instead of to the uninteresting translation group $\mathbb{R}$, then the name of its canonical basis element $1 \in \mathbb{R}$ is canonically "$i$", the imaginary unit. Therefore one often writes the above central extension instead as follows:

$$i\mathbb{R} \longrightarrow \mathfrak{poiss}(X, \omega) \longrightarrow \mathfrak{ham}(X, \omega)$$

in order to amplify this. But now consider the simple special case where $(X, \omega) = (\mathbb{R}^2, dp \wedge dq)$ is the 2-dimensional symplectic vector space which is for instance the phase space of the particle propagating on the line. Then a canonical set of generators for the corresponding Poisson bracket Lie algebra consists of the linear functions $p$ and $q$ of classical mechanics textbook fame, together with the *constant* function. Under the above Lie theoretic identification, this constant function is the canonical basis element of $i\mathbb{R}$, hence purely Lie theoretically it is to be called "$i$".

With this notation then the Poisson bracket, written in the form that makes its Lie integration manifest, indeed reads

$$[q, p] = i .$$

Since the choice of basis element of $i\mathbb{R}$ is arbitrary, we may rescale here the $i$ by any non-vanishing real number without changing this statement. If we write "$\hbar$" for this element, then the Poisson bracket instead reads

$$[q, p] = i\hbar\,.$$

This is of course the hallmark equation for quantum physics, if we interpret $\hbar$ here indeed as Planck's constant, def. 6.4.156. We see it arises here merely by considering the non-trivial (the interesting, the non-simply connected) Lie integration of the Poisson bracket.

This is only the beginning of the story of quantization, naturally understood and indeed "derived" from applying Lie theory to classical mechanics. From here the story continues. It is called the story of *geometric quantization*. We close this motivation section here by some brief outlook.

The quantomorphism group which is the non-trivial Lie integration of the Poisson bracket is naturally constructed as follows: given the symplectic form $\omega$, it is natural to ask if it is the curvature 2-form of a $U(1)$-principal connection $\nabla$ on complex line bundle $L$ over $X$ (this is directly analogous to Dirac charge quantization when instead of a symplectic form on phase space we consider the the field strength 2-form of electromagnetism on spacetime). If so, such a connection $(L, \nabla)$ is called a *prequantum line bundle* of the phase space $(X, \omega)$. The quantomorphism group is simply the automorphism group of the prequantum line bundle, covering diffeomorphisms of the phase space (the Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms mentioned above).

As such, the quantomorphism group naturally acts on the space of sections of $L$. Such a section is like a wavefunction, except that it depends on all of phase space, instead of just on the "canonical coordinates". For purely abstract mathematical reasons (which we won't discuss here, but see at *motivic quantization* for more) it is indeed natural to choose a "polarization" of phase space into canonical coordinates and canonical momenta and consider only those sections of the prequantum line bundle which depend only on the former. These are the actual *wavefunctions* of quantum mechanics, hence the *quantum states*. And the subgroup of the quantomorphism group which preserves these polarized sections is the group of exponentiated quantum observables. For instance in the simple case mentioned before where $(X, \omega)$ is the 2-dimensional symplectic vector space, this is the Heisenberg group with its famous action by multiplication and differentiation operators on the space of complex-valued functions on the real line.

#### 1.3.2.13 Integrable systems, moment maps and maps into the Poisson bracket

**Remark 1.3.132.** Given a phase space (pre-)symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$, and given $n \in \mathbb{N}$, then Lie algebra homomorphisms

$$\mathbb{R}^n \longrightarrow \mathfrak{pois}(X, \omega)$$

from the abelian Lie algebra on $n$ generators into the Poisson bracket Lie algebra, def. 1.3.86 are equivalently choices of $n$-tuples of Hamiltonians $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$ (and corresponding Hamiltonian vector fields $v_i$) that pairwise commute with each other under the Poisson bracket, $\forall_{i,j}\{H_i, H_j\} = 0$. If the set $\{H_i\}_i$ is maximal with this property and one of the $H_i$ is regarded the time evolution Hamiltonian of a physical system, then one calls this system *integrable*.

By the discussion in 1.3.2.12, the Lie integration of the Lie algebra homomorphism $\mathbb{R}^n \longrightarrow \mathfrak{pois}(X, \omega)$ is a morphism of smooth groupoids

$$\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{R}^n) \longrightarrow \mathbf{BAut}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}(\nabla) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$$

from the smooth delooping groupoid (def. 1.3.107) of $\mathbb{R}^n$, now regarded as the translation group of $n$-dimensional Euclidean space, to the automorphism group of any pre-quantization of the phase space (its quantomoprhism group).

**Remark 1.3.133.** Below in 1.3.3.4 we re-encounter this situation, but in a more refined context. There we find that $n$-dimensional classical field theory is encoded by a homomorphism of the form

$$\mathbb{R}^n \longrightarrow \mathfrak{pois}(X, \omega)\,,$$

where however now $\omega$ is a closed differential form of degree $(n+1)$ and where $\mathfrak{pois}(X, \omega)$ is a homotopy-theoretic refinement of the Poisson bracket Lie algebra (a *Lie $n$-algebra* or $(n-1)$-type in homotopy Lie algebras). In that context such a homomorphism does not encode a set of strictly Poisson-commuting Hamiltonians, but a of Hamiltonian flows in the $n$ spacetime directions of the field theory which commute under an $n$-ary higher bracket only *up to* a specified homotopy. That specified homotopy is the de Donder-Weyl-Hamiltonian of classical field theory.

**Remark 1.3.134.** For $\mathfrak{g}$ any Lie algebra and $(X, \omega)$ a (pre-)symplectic manifold, a Lie algebra homomorphism

$$\mathfrak{g} \longrightarrow \mathfrak{pois}(X, \omega)$$

is called a *moment map*. Equivalently this is an actin of $\mathfrak{g}$ by Hamiltonian vector fields *with* chosen Hamiltonians. The Lie integration of this is a homomorphism of smooth groups

$$G \longrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}} \simeq \mathrm{QuantMorph}(X, \omega)$$

from a Lie group integrating $\mathfrak{g}$ to the quantomorphism group. This is called a *Hamiltonian $G$-action*.

**1.3.2.14 Classical anomalies and projective symplectic reduction** Above in 1.3.2.7 we saw that for a gauge symmetry to act consistently on a phase space, it needs to act by *Hamiltonian diffeomorphisms*, because this is the data necessary to put a gauge-equivariant structure on the symplectic potential (hence on the pre-quantization of the phase space).

Under mild conditions every single infinitesimal gauge transformation comes from a Hamiltonian. But these Hamiltonians may not combine to a genuine Hamiltonian action, remark 1.3.134, but may be specified only up to addition of a locally constant function, and it may happen that these locally constant "gauges" may not be chose globally for the whole gauge group such as to make the whole gauge group act by Hamiltonians. This is the lifting problem of pre-quantization discussed above in 1.3.3.2.

But if the failure of the local Hamiltonians to combine to a global Hamiltonian is sufficiently coherent in that it is given by a *group 2-cocycle*, then one can at least find a Hamiltonian action by a central extension of the gauge group. This phenomenon is known as a *classical anomaly* in field theory:

**Definition 1.3.135.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be a phase space symplectic manifold and let $\rho : G \times X \longrightarrow X$ be a smooth action of a Lie group $G$ on the underlying smooth manifold by Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms, hence a group homomorphism

$$G \longrightarrow \mathrm{HamSympl}(X, \omega) \ .$$

Then we say this system has a *classical anomaly* if this morphism lifts to the quantomorphism group, prop. 5.2.17.5, only up to a central extension $\widehat{G} \longrightarrow G$, hence if it fits into the following diagram of smooth group, without the dashed diagonal morphism existing:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \widehat{G} & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{QuantMorph}(X, \omega) \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ G & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \mathrm{HamSympl}(X, \omega) \end{array} \ .$$

This is the Lie-integrated version of the Lie-algebraic definition in appendix 5 of [Ar89]. For a list of examples of classical anomalies in field theories see [Top01].

**Remark 1.3.136.** Comparison with prop. 5.2.17.5 above shows that for $(X, \omega)$ a symplectic group acting on itself by Hamiltonian symplectomorphism, then its Heisenberg group is the "universal classical anomaly".

### 1.3.3 Hamilton-De Donder-Weyl field theory via Higher correspondences

We now turn attention from just classical *mechanics* (hence of dynamics along a single parameter, such as the Hamiltonian time parameter in 1.3.2.6 above) to, more generally, classical *field theory*, which is dynamics parameterized by higher dimensional manifolds ("spacetimes" or "worldvolumes"). Or rather, we turn attention to the *local* description of classical field theory. See also section 5.2.18 below.

Namely, the situation of example 1.3.54 above, where a trajectory of a physical system is given by a 1-dimensional curve $[0,1] \longrightarrow Y$ in a space $Y$ of fields can – and traditionally is – also be applied to field theory, if only we allow $Y$ to be a smooth space more general than a finite-dimensional manifold. Specifically, for a field theory on a parameter manifold $\Sigma_n$ of some dimension $n$ (to be thought of as spacetime or as the "worldvolume of a brane"), and for **Fields** a smooth moduli space of of fields, a *local* field configuration is a map

$$\phi : \Sigma_n \longrightarrow \mathbf{Fields}\,.$$

If however $\Sigma_d \simeq \Sigma_{d-1} \times \Sigma_1$ is a cylinder with $\Sigma_1 = [0,1]$ over a base manifold $\Sigma_{d-1}$ (a *Cauchy surface* if we think of $\Sigma$ as spacetime), then such a map is equivalently a map out of the interval into the mapping space of $\Sigma_{d-1}$ into **Fields**:

$$\phi_{\Sigma_{d-1}} : \Sigma_1 \longrightarrow [\Sigma_{d-1}, \mathbf{Fields}]\,.$$

This brings the field theory into the form of example 1.3.54, but at the cost of making it "spatially non-local": for instance the energy of the system, as discussed in 1.3.2.6, would at each point of $\Sigma_1$ be the energy contained in the fields over all of $\Sigma_{d-1}$, while the information that this energy arises from integrating contributions localized along $\Sigma_{d-1}$ is lost.

In more mathematical terms this means that by *transgression to codimension 1* classical field theory takes the form of classical mechanics as discussed above in 1.3.2.6. To "localize" the field theory again (make it "extended" or "multi-tiered") we have to undo this process and "de-transgress" classical mechanics to full codimension.

At the level of Hamilton's differential equations, def. 1.3.81, such a localization is "well known", but much less famous than Hamilton's equations: it is the multivariable variational calculus of Carathéodory, de Donder, and Weyl, as reviewed for instance in section 2 of [HHél02]. Below in 1.3.3.4 we show that the de Donder-Weyl equation secretly describes the Lie integration of a higher Poisson bracket Lie algebra in direct but higher analogy to how in 1.3.2.12 we saw that the ordinary Hamilton equations exhibit the Lie integration of the ordinary Poisson bracket Lie algebra.

From this one finds that an $n$-dimensional *local* classical field theory is described not by a symplectic 2-form as a system of classical mechanics is, but by a differential $(n+1)$-form which transgresses to the 2-form after passing to mapping spaces. This point of view has been explored under the name of "covariant mechanics" or "multisymplectic geometry" (see [FoRo05] for a review) and "$n$-plectic geometry", see 6.4.21 below. Here we show, based on the results in [FRS13a], how both of these approaches are unified and "pre-quantized" to a global description of local classical field theory by systems of higher correspondences in higher slices toposes, in higher generalization to the picture which we found in 1.3.2.11 for classical mechanics.

- 1.3.3.1 – Local field theory Lagrangians and $n$-plectic smooth spaces
- 1.3.3.2 – The kinetic action, higher prequantization and higher differential cohomology;
- 1.3.3.3 – Local observables, conserved currents and their higher Poisson brackets
- 1.3.3.4 – Field equations of motion and Higher Poisson-Maurer-Cartan elements
- 1.3.3.5 – Source terms, off-shell Poisson bracket and Poisson holography

**1.3.3.1 Local field theory Lagrangians and $n$-plectic smooth spaces** Traditionally, a classical field over a *spacetime* $\Sigma$ is encoded by a fiber bundle $E \to X$, the *field bundle*. The fields on $X$ are the sections of $E$.

**Example 1.3.137.** Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$ and let $\Sigma = \mathbb{R}^{d-1,1}$ be the $d$-dimensional real vector space, regarded as a pseudo-Riemannian manifold with the Minkowski metric $\eta$ (*Minkowski spacetime*). Let moreover $F$ be a finite dimensional real vector space – the *field fiber* – eqipped with a positive definite bilinear form $k$. Consider the bundle $\Sigma \times F \to \Sigma$, to be called the *field bundle*, and write

$$(X \to \Sigma) := \left(J^1(\Sigma \times F) \to \Sigma\right)$$

for its first jet bundle.

If we denote the canonical coordinates of $\Sigma$ by $\sigma^i : \Sigma \to \mathbb{R}$ for $i \in \{0, \cdots, n-1\}$, and choose a dual basis

$$\phi^a : F \to \mathbb{R}$$

of $F$ (hence with $a \in \{1, \cdots, \dim(V)\}$) then $X$ is the vector space with canonical dual basis elements labeled by

$$\{\sigma^i\}, \{\phi^a\}, \{\phi^a_{,i}\}$$

and equipped with bilinear form $(\eta \oplus k \oplus (\eta \otimes k))$. While all of these are coordinates on $X$, traditionally one says that

1. the functions
$$\sigma^i : X \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$
are the *spacetime coordinates*;
2. the functions
$$\phi^a : X \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$
are are the *canonical coordinates* of the $F$-field
3. the functions
$$p^i_a := \eta^{ij} k_{ab} \phi^b_{,j} : X \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$
are the *canonical momenta* of the *free* $F$-field.

**Definition 1.3.138.** Given a field jet bundle $X = J^1(\Sigma \times F) \to \Sigma$ as in example 1.3.137, the *free field theory local kinetic Lagrangian* is the horizontal differential $n$-form

$$L^{\mathrm{loc}}_{\mathrm{kin}} \in \Omega^{n,0}(X)$$

given by

$$\begin{aligned} L^{\mathrm{loc}}_{\mathrm{kin}} &:= \langle \nabla\phi, \nabla\phi \rangle \wedge \mathrm{vol}_\Sigma \\ &:= \left(\tfrac{1}{2} k_{ab} \eta^{ij} \phi^a_{,i} \phi^b_{,j}\right) \wedge \mathbf{d}\sigma^1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{d}\sigma^d \end{aligned}$$

(where a sum over repeated indices is understood). Here we regard the volume form of $\Sigma$ canonically as a horizontal differential form on the first jet bundle

$$\mathrm{vol}_\Sigma := \mathbf{d}\sigma^1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{d}\sigma^a \quad \in \quad \Omega^{d,0}_\Sigma(X)\,.$$

The localized analog of example 1.3.54 is now the following.

**Definition 1.3.139.** Given a free field bundle as in example 1.3.137 and given a horizontal $n$-form

$$L^{\mathrm{loc}} \in \Omega^{n,0}(X)$$

on its first jet bundle, regarded as a local Lagrangian as in def. 1.3.138, then the associated *Lagrangian current* is the $n$-form

$$\theta^{\mathrm{loc}} \in \Omega^{n-1,1}(X)$$

given by the formula

$$\theta^{\mathrm{loc}} := \iota_{\partial_i}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \phi^a_{,i}} L^{\mathrm{loc}}\right) \wedge \mathbf{d}\phi^a$$

(where again a sum over repeated indices is understood). We say that the corresponding *pre-symplectic current* or *pre-n-plectic form* [FRS13b] is

$$\omega^{\mathrm{loc}} := \mathbf{d}\theta^{\mathrm{loc}}\,.$$

**Remark 1.3.140.** The formula in def. 1.3.139 is effectively that for the pre-symplectic current as it arises in the discussion of *covariant phase spaces* in [Zu87, CrWi87]. In the coordinates of example 1.3.137 the Lagrangian current reads

$$\theta^{\mathrm{loc}} = p^i_a \wedge \mathbf{d}\phi^a \wedge \iota_{\partial_i}\mathrm{vol}_\Sigma$$

and hence the pre-symplectic current reads

$$\omega^{\mathrm{loc}} = \mathbf{d}p^i_a \wedge \mathbf{d}\phi^a \wedge \iota_{\partial_i}\mathrm{vol}_\Sigma$$

In this form this is manifestly the $(n-1,1)$-component of the canonical "multisymplectic form" that is considered in multisymplectic geometry, see for instance section 2 of [HHél02].

This direct relation between the covariant phase space formulation and the multisymplectic description of local classical field theory seems not to have been highlighted much in the literature. It essentially appears in section 3.2 of [FoRo05] and in section 2.1 of [Rom05].

**Example 1.3.141.** Consider the simple case $d = 1$ hence $\Sigma = \mathbb{R}$, and $F = \mathbb{R}$, both equipped with the canonical bilinear form on $\mathbb{R}$ (given by multiplication). Jet prolongation followed by evaluation yields the smooth function

$$\mathrm{ev}_\infty : [\Sigma, F] \times \Sigma \overset{(j_\infty,\mathrm{id})}{\longrightarrow} \Gamma_\Sigma(X) \times \Sigma \overset{\mathrm{ev}}{\longrightarrow} X\,.$$

Then the pullback of the local free field Lagrangian of def. 1.3.138 along this map is the kinetic Lagrangian of example 1.3.55:

$$L_{\mathrm{kin}} = \mathrm{ev}_\infty^* L^{\mathrm{loc}}_{\mathrm{kin}}\,.$$

The pullback of the corresponding Lagrangian current according to def. 1.3.139 is the pre-symplectic potential $\theta$ in example 1.3.54

$$\theta = \mathrm{ev}_\infty^* \theta^{\mathrm{loc}}\,.$$

**Definition 1.3.142.** For $d \in \mathbb{N}$, write $\Sigma = \Sigma_1 \times \Sigma_{d-1}$ for the decomposition of Minkowski spacetime into a time axis $\Sigma_1$ and a spatial slice $\Sigma_{d-1}$, hence with $\Sigma_1 = \mathbb{R}$ the real line. Restrict attention to sections of the field bundle which are periodic in all spatial directions, hence pass to the $(d-1)$-torus $\Sigma_{d-1} := \mathbb{R}^d/\mathbb{Z}^d$ (in order to have a compact spatial slice). Then given a free field local Lagrangian as in def. 1.3.138, say that its *transgression to codimension 1* is the pullback of the local Lagrangian $n$-form along

$$\mathrm{ev}_\infty : [\Sigma_1, [\Sigma_{d-1}, F \times \Sigma_1 \times \Sigma_{d-1}]] \overset{\simeq}{\longrightarrow} [\Sigma, F] \times \Sigma \overset{(j_\infty,\mathrm{id})}{\longrightarrow} \Gamma_\Sigma(X) \times \Sigma \overset{\mathrm{ev}}{\longrightarrow} X$$

followed by fiber integration $\int_{\Sigma_{d-1}}$ over space $\Sigma_{d-1}$, to be denoted

$$L_{\mathrm{kin}} := \int_{\Sigma_{d-1}} \mathrm{ev}_\infty^* L^{\mathrm{loc}}_{\mathrm{kin}}\,.$$

Similarly the transgression to codimension 1 of the Lagrangian current, def. 1.3.139 is

$$\theta := \int_{\Sigma_{d-1}} \mathrm{ev}_\infty^* \theta^{\mathrm{loc}}\,.$$

**Remark 1.3.143.** This is the standard way in which the kinetic Lagrangians in example 1.3.54 arise by transgression of local data.

It is useful to combine this data as follows.

**Definition 1.3.144.** Given a first jet bundle $X := J^1(\Sigma \times F)$ as in example 1.3.137, we write

1. $J^1(\Sigma \times F)^* \to \Sigma \times F$ for its fiberwise linear densitized dual, as a bundle over the field bundle, to be called the *dual first jet bundle*;

2. $J^1(\Sigma \times F)^\vee \to \Sigma \times F$ for the fiberwise affine densitized dual, to be called the *affine dual first jet bundle*.

**Remark 1.3.145.** With respect to the canonical coordinates in example 1.3.137, the canonical coordinates of the dual first jet bundle are $\{\sigma^i, \phi^a, p^i_a\}$ (spacetime coordinates, fields and canonical field momenta) and the canonical coordinates of the affine dual first jet bundle are $\{\sigma^i, \phi^a, p^i_a, e\}$ with one more coordinate $e$.

**Definition 1.3.146.**

1. The *canonical pre-d-plectic form* on the affine dual first jet bundle, def. 1.3.144, is

$$\omega_e := \mathbf{d}\phi^a \wedge \mathbf{d}p^i_a \wedge \iota_{\partial_{\sigma^i}} \mathrm{vol}_\Sigma + \mathbf{d}e \wedge \mathrm{vol}_\Sigma \quad \in \Omega^{d+1}(J^1(\Sigma \times F)^\vee)\,.$$

2. Given a function $H \in C^\infty(J^1(\Sigma \times X)^*)$ on the linear dual first jet bundle, def. 1.3.144, then the corresponding *HDW pre-d-plectic form* is

$$\omega_H := \mathbf{d}\phi^a \wedge \mathbf{d}p^i_a \wedge \iota_{\partial_{\sigma^i}} \mathrm{vol}_\Sigma + \mathbf{d}H \wedge \mathrm{vol}_\Sigma \quad \in \Omega^{d+1}(J^1(\Sigma \times F)^*)$$

and the corresponding *HDW Lagrangian current* is

$$\theta_H := -p^i_a \mathbf{d}\phi^a \wedge \iota_{\partial_{\sigma^i}} \mathrm{vol}_\Sigma + H \wedge \mathrm{vol}_\Sigma \in \Omega^d(J^1(\Sigma \times F)^*)$$

**Remark 1.3.147.** For the case $d = 1$ the form $\theta_H$ of def. 1.3.146 appears as $-\Theta_{PV}$ in [AzIz95, (8.1.20)]. There it is highlighted that with mechanics phrased in this form, every Lagrangian looks like a WZW-term (on the (dual) jet bundle). Here we mean to amplify this perspective further, refining it in two ways: on the one hand we allow $\theta_H$ to be a higher degree differential form for higher dimensional field theory, and secondly we will again pass from just a plain globally defined $d$-form to a pre-quantization by a higher prequantum bundle.

**Definition 1.3.148** (local Legendre transform)**.** Given a local Lagrangian as in def. 1.3.138, hence a horizontal $n$-form $L^{\mathrm{loc}} \in \Omega^{(n,0)}(J^1(E))$ on the jets of the field bundle $E \to X$, its *local Legendre transform* is the function

$$\mathbb{F}L^{\mathrm{loc}} : J^1(X) \longrightarrow (J^1(X))^\vee$$

from jets to the affine dual jet bundle, def. 1.3.144 which is the first order Taylor series of $L^{\mathrm{loc}}$.

This definition was suggested in [FoRo05, section 2.5]. It conceptualizes the traditional notion of local Legendre transform:

**Example 1.3.149.** In the local coordinates of example 1.3.137, the Legendre transform of a local Lagrangian $L^{\mathrm{loc}}$, def. 1.3.148 has affine dual jet bundle coordinates given by

$$p^i_a = \frac{\partial L^{\mathrm{loc}}}{\partial \phi^a_{,i}}$$

and

$$e = L^{\mathrm{loc}} - \frac{\partial L^{\mathrm{loc}}}{\partial \phi^a_{,i}} \phi^a_{,i}\,.$$

The latter expression is what is traditionally taken to be the local Legendre transform of $L^{\mathrm{loc}}$.

The following observation relates the canonical pre-$n$-plectic form $\omega_e$ on the affine dual jet bundle to the central ingredients of the covariant phase space formalism.

**Proposition 1.3.150.** *Given a local Lagrangian $L^{\mathrm{loc}} \in \Omega^{(n,0)}(J^1(E))$, then the pullback of the canonical pre-n-plectic form $\omega_e$, def. 1.3.146, along the local Legendre transform $\mathbb{F}L^{\mathrm{loc}}$ of def. 1.3.148 is the sum of the Euler-Lagrange equation term $\mathrm{EL}_{L^{\mathrm{loc}}} \in \Omega^{(n,1)}(J^1(X))$ and of the canonical pre-n-plectic current $\mathbf{d}_v\theta_{L^{\mathrm{loc}}} \in \Omega^{(n-1,2)}(J^1(X))$ of def. 1.3.139:*

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_{L^{\mathrm{loc}}} &:= (\mathbb{F}L^{\mathrm{loc}})^*\omega_e \\ &= \mathrm{EL}_{L^{\mathrm{loc}}} + \mathbf{d}_v\theta_{\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{loc}}} \end{aligned} .$$

This follows with equation (54) and theorem 1 of [FoRo05].[11] In 1.3.3.4 below we see how using this the equations of motion of the field theory are naturally expressed.

In conclusion, we find that where phase spaces in classical mechanics are given by smooth spaces equipped with a closed 2-form, phase spaces in "de-transgressed" or "covariant" or "localized" classical field theory of dimension $n$ are given by smooth spaces equipped with a closed $(n+1)$-form. To give this a name we say [FRS13a]:

**Definition 1.3.151.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, a *pre-n-plectic smooth space* is a smooth space $X$ and a smooth closed $(n+1)$-forms, prop. 1.2.49,

$$\omega : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} ,$$

hence an object of the slice topos

$$(X, \omega) \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{\Omega}^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}} .$$

**1.3.3.2 The kinetic action, higher prequantization and higher differential cohomology** Now that we have de-transgressed the symplectic 2-forms of 1.3.2.1 to $d$-plectic forms $\omega \in \Omega^{d+1}(X)$ in 1.3.3.1 the same kind of arguments as in 1.3.3.2 show that in general it is too restrictive to assume that there is a globally defined Larangian $d$-form $\theta$ with $\mathbf{d}\theta = \omega$. Instead, given an cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ of $X$ by contractible open charts, then we may find on each chart a $\theta_i \in \Omega^d(U_i)$ with $\mathbf{d}\theta_i = \omega|_{U_i}$. As before, on double intersections of charts $U_i \underset{X}{\times} U_j$ these local Lagrangian forms must be glued together by gauge transformations, but now with $d > 1$ a gauge transformation is given itself by a $(d-1)$-form $\theta_{ij} \in \Omega^{d-1}(U_i \underset{X}{\times} U_j)$, satisfying

$$\theta_j - \theta_i = \mathbf{d}\theta_{ij} \quad \text{on } U_i \underset{X}{\times} U_j .$$

This being the case, the $\{\theta_{ij}\}$ themselves have gauge-of-gauge transformations between them, given now by $(d-2)$-forms $\theta_{ijk} \in \Omega^{d-2}(U_i \underset{X}{\times} U_j \underset{X}{\times} U_k)$, and consistency requires that on triple intersections of charts they glue together by such:

$$\theta_{ik} - \theta_{ij} - \theta_{jk} = \mathbf{d}\theta_{ijk} \quad \text{on } U_i \underset{X}{\times} U_j \underset{X}{\times} U_k .$$

This pattern continues, until we reach $(d-1)$-fold gauge transformations by 1-forms $\theta_{i_1 \cdots i_d} \in \Omega^1(U_{i_1} \underset{X}{\times} \cdots \underset{X}{\times} U_{i_d})$ which are to glue on $(d+1)$-fold intersections of charts by a $d$-fold gauge transformation given by $U(1)$-valued functions $g_{i_1 \cdots i_{d+1}} \in C^\infty(U_{i_1} \underset{X}{\times} \cdots \underset{X}{\times} U_{i_{d+1}}, U(1))$ by

$$\sum_{k=1}^{d} (-1)^k \theta_{i_1 \cdots \widehat{i_k} \cdots i_{d+1}} = \mathbf{d}\mathrm{log} g_{i_1 \cdots i_{d+1}} \quad \text{on } U_{i_1} \underset{X}{\times} \cdots \underset{X}{\times} U_{i_{d+1}} .$$

[11] This statement and its formulation in terms of notions in the variational bicomplex as given here has kindly been amplified to us by Igor Khavkine.

The collection of this data

$$\overline{\theta} := \big\{ \{U_i \to X\}, \{\theta_i\}, \{\theta_{ij}\}, \cdots, \{g_{i_1, \cdots, i_{d+1}}\} \big\}$$

satisfying these compatibility conditions is a *Cech-Deligne cocycle* of degree $d+1$. For $d = 1$ this reduces to the familiar cocycles for $U(1)$-principal 1-form connections. More in detail, given the cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ then the Cech-Deligne complex for Deligne cohomology in degree $d+1$ is the total complex of the double complex

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\bigoplus_i C^\infty(U_i, U(1)) & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \bigoplus_{i,j} C^\infty(U_i \underset{X}{\times} U_j, U(1)) \cdots\cdots \\
\big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{d}_{\mathrm{dR}}\log} & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{d}_{\mathrm{dR}}\log} \\
\bigoplus_i \Omega^1(U_i) & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \bigoplus_{i,j} \Omega^1(U_i \underset{X}{\times} U_j) \cdots\cdots \\
\big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{d}_{\mathrm{dR}}} & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{d}_{\mathrm{dR}}} \\
\bigoplus_i \Omega^2(U_i) & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \bigoplus_{i,j} \Omega^2(U_i \underset{X}{\times} U_j) \cdots\cdots \\
\vdots & & \vdots \\
\bigoplus_i \Omega^d U_i & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \bigoplus_{i,j} \Omega^d(U_i \underset{X}{\times} U_j) \cdots\cdots
\end{array}$$

(where the horizontal differentials form alternating sums of restrictions to higher order intersections of patches, as in the above formulas) and a Cech-Deligne cocycle is a closed element in this total complex.

Under the Dold-Kan correspondence (see below in 3.1.6), the Cech-Deligne complex in degree $(d+1)$ may be thought of as a $d$-groupoid, whose objects are $d$-form connections, whose 1-morphisms are gauge transformations between these, whose 2-morphisms are gauge-of-gauge transformation between those, and so on. Since this $d$-groupoid depends naturally and contravariantly on the the base manifold $X$, it naturally has the structure of a *smooth d-groupoid* or smooth $d$-stack. This we denote as $\mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$. By its very definition, this is characterized simply as being the generalized smooth space such that smooth functions

$$\nabla : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

are equivalently Cech-Deligne cocycles $\overline{\theta}$ of degree $d+1$, such that smooth homotopies between such smooth functions

$$X \underset{\nabla_2}{\overset{\nabla_1}{\rightrightarrows}} \mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \quad (\Downarrow)$$

are gauge transformations between such $d$-form connections, and so forth. (We consider $\mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in detail below in 6.4.16.)

The operation of sending a $d$-form connection $\overline{\theta}$ to its globally defined curvature form $\omega$ is natural and respects pullback along smooth maps, hence defines a morphism of generalized smooth space

$$F_{(-)} : \mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^{d+1} .$$

In terms of this we may then succinctly say that a *higher pre-quantization* of a pre-$d$-plectic form $\omega \in \Omega^d(X)$ is a lift $\nabla$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & & \mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
 & \nearrow^{\nabla} & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} \\
X & \xrightarrow{\omega} & \mathbf{\Omega}^{d+1}
\end{array} .$$

(We will typically write $\nabla$ when considering pre-quantizations in this abstract form, and use notation such as $\overline{\theta}$ to refer to an explicit Cech-Deligne cocycle representing it.)

**Example 1.3.152.** Whenever there happens to be a globally defined $\theta \in \Omega^d(X)$ such that $\mathbf{d}\theta = \omega$, then with respect to the trivial cover (or else after restriction to any given cover) $\theta$ itself defines a Cech-Deligne cocycle. The Deligne cocycles of this form are equivalently those whose underlying $U(1)$-$d$-bundle modulated by the forgetful map

$$X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\text{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^d U(1)$$

is trivial. In this way a general Deligne cocycle $\overline{\theta}$ pre-quantizing $\omega$ is seen to be a generalization of a Lagrangian $d$-form, which is locally given by an actual $d$-form, and is globalized by gluing these local forms together by gauge transformations and higher gauge transformations.

Hence for the following it is hence important to remember that pre-quantum $d$-bundles $\nabla$ are what naively used to be the Lagrangians of field theories. They are the pre-quantized globally correct Lagrangians. (And this need of "globally correcting" traditional classical field theory is the reason for our use of "pre-quantum field theory" instead of "classical field theory".)

**1.3.3.3 Local observables, conserved currents and their higher Poisson brackets** Above in 1.3.2.5 we discussed how functions on a phase space are interpreted as observables of states of the mechanical system, for instance the energy of the system. Now in 1.3.3.1 above we saw that that notably the energy of a $d$-dimensional field theory at some moment in time (over some spatial hyperslice of spacetime) is really the integral over $(d-1)$-dimensional space $\Sigma_{d-1}$ of an *energy density* $(d-1)$-form $H^{\text{loc}}$, hence by def. 1.3.142 the transgression of a $(d-1)$-form on the localized $d$-plectic phase space:

$$H = \int_{\Sigma_{d-1}} \text{ev}_\infty^* H^{\text{loc}} \,.$$

Therefore in analogy with the notion of observables on a symplectic manifold, given a $d$-plectic manifold, def. 1.3.151, its degree-$(d-1)$ differential forms may be called the *local observables* of the system. To motivate from physics how exactly to formalize such local observables (which we do below in def.1.3.158, def. 1.3.159), we first survey how such local observables appear in the physics literature:

**Example 1.3.153** (currents in physics as local observables)**.** In the situation of example 1.3.137, consider a vector field $j \in \Gamma(T\Sigma_d)$ on the $d$-dimensional Minkowski spacetime $\Sigma_d = \mathbb{R}^{d-1,1}$. In physics this represents a quantity which – for an inertial observer characterized by the coordinates chosen in example 1.3.137 – has local density $j^0$ at each point in space and time, of a quantity that flows through space as given by the vector $(j^1, \cdots, j^{d-1})$.

For instance in the description of electric sources distributed in spacetime, the component $j^0$ would be an *electric charge density* and the vector $(j^1, \cdots, j^{d-1})$ would be the *electric current density.* To emphasize that therefore $j$ combines the information of a spatial current with the density of the substance that flows, traditional physics textbooks call $j$ a "$d$-current" – usually a "4-current" when identifying $d$ with the number of macroscopic spacetime dimensions of the observable universe. But once the spacetime context is understood, one just speaks of $j$ as a *current.*

The currents of interest in physics are those which satisfy a *conservation law*, a law which states that the change in coordinate time $\sigma^0$ of the density $j^0$ is equal to the negative of the divergence of the spatial current, hence that the spacetime divergence of $j$ vanishes:

$$\text{div}(j) = \frac{\partial j^0}{\partial \sigma^0} + \sum_{i=1}^{d-1} \frac{\partial j^i}{\partial \sigma_i} = 0 \,.$$

If this is the case, one calls the current $j$ a *conserved current.* (Beware that the "conserved" is so important in applications that it is often taken to be implicit and notationally suppressed.)

In order to formulate the notion of divergence of a vector field intrinsically (as opposed with respect to a chosen coordinate system as above), one needs a specified volume form $\mathrm{vol}_\Sigma \in \Omega^d(\Sigma_d)$ of spacetime. With that given, the divergence $\mathrm{div}(j) \in C^\infty(\Sigma_d)$ of the vector field is defined by the equation

$$\mathrm{div}(j) \wedge \mathrm{vol}_{\Sigma_d} := \mathcal{L}_j \mathrm{vol}_{\Sigma_d} = \mathbf{d}\left(\iota_j \mathrm{vol}_\Sigma\right) \,.$$

In particular, a current $j$ is a conserved current precisely if the degree-$(n-1)$ differential form

$$J := \iota_j \mathrm{vol}_{\Sigma_d}$$

is a closed differential form

$$(j \in \Gamma(T\Sigma_d) \text{ is a conserved current}) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad (\mathbf{d}J = 0) \,.$$

Due to this and related relations, one finds eventually that the degree-$(d-1)$ differential form $J$ itself is the more fundamental mathematical reflection of the physical current. But by the above introduction, this is in turn the same as saying that a current is a local observable. Accordingly, we will often use the terms "current" and "local observable" interchangeably.

If currents are local observables, then by the above discussion their integral over a spatial hyperslice of spacetime is to be the corresponding global observable. In the special case of the electromagnetic current $J_{\mathrm{el}}$, the laws of electromagnetism in the form of *Maxwell's equation*

$$J_{\mathrm{el}} = \mathbf{d} \star F_{\mathrm{em}}$$

say that this integral – assuming now that $J_{\mathrm{el}}$ is spatially compactly supported – is the integral of the Hodge dual electromagnetic field strength $F_{\mathrm{em}}$ over the boundary of a 3-ball $D^3 \hookrightarrow \Sigma_{d-1}$ enclosing the support of the electromagnetic current. This is the *total electric charge* $Q_{\mathrm{el}}$ in space:

$$Q_{\mathrm{el}} = \int_{S^2} *F_{\mathrm{em}} = \int_{D^3} J_{\mathrm{el}} = \int_{\Sigma_{d-1}} J_{\mathrm{el}} \,.$$

Based on this example, in physics one generally speaks of the integral of a spacetime current over space as a *charge*. So charges are the global observables of the local observables, which are currents.

Notice that for a *conserved* current the corresponding charge is also conserved in that it does not change with time or in fact under any isotopy of $\Sigma_{d-1}$ inside $\Sigma_d$, due to Stokes' theorem:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{d}_{\Sigma_1} Q &= \mathbf{d}_{\Sigma_1} \int_{\Sigma_{d-1}} J \\ &= \int_{\Sigma_{d-1}} \mathbf{d}_{\Sigma_d} J \\ &= 0 \end{aligned} \,.$$

Therefore currents in physics are necessarily subject of *higher gauge equivalences*: if $J$ is a conserved current $(d-1)$-form, then for any $(d-2)$-form $\alpha$ the sum $J + \mathbf{d}\alpha$ is also a conserved current, which, by Stokes' theorem, has the same total charge as $J$ in any $(d-1)$-ball in space, and has the same flux as $J$ through the boundary of that $(d-1)$-ball. This means that the conserved currents $J$ and $J + \mathbf{d}\alpha$ are physically equivalent, while nominally different, hence that $\alpha$ exhibits a *gauge equivalence transformation* between currents

$$\alpha : J \xrightarrow{\simeq} (J' = J + \mathbf{d}\alpha) \,.$$

The analogous consideration holds for $\alpha$ itself: for any $(d-3)$-form $\beta$ also $\alpha + \mathbf{d}\beta$ exhibits a gauge transformation between the currents $J$ and $J'$ above. One says this is a *gauge of gauge*-transformation or a *higher gauge transformation* of second order. This phenomenon continues up to the 0-forms (the smooth functions), which therefore are $(d-1)$-fold higher gauge transformations between consderved currents on a $d$-dimensional spacetime.

Finally notice that in a typical application to physics, a current form $J$ is naturally defined also "off shell", hence for all field configurations (say of the electromagnetic field), but its conservation law only holds "on shell", hence when these field configurations satisfy their equations of motion (to which we come below in 1.3.3.4). Since the $d$-plectic localized phase spaces in the discussion in 1.3.3.1 above a priori contain all field configurations, we are not to expect that a local observable $(d-1)$-form $J$ is a conserved current only if its differential strictly vanishes, but already if its differential vanishes at least on those $d$-tuples of vector fields $v_1 \vee \cdots \vee v_d$ which are tangent to jets of those sections of the field bundle that satisfy their equations of motion:

$$(J \text{ is conserved current}) \Leftrightarrow ((v_1 \vee \cdots \vee v_d \text{ satisfies field equations of motion}) \Rightarrow \iota_{v_1 \vee \cdots \vee v_n} \mathbf{d} J = 0) \;.$$

This we formalize below by the "$d$-plectic Noether theorem", prop. 1.3.170. There we will see how such conserved current $(d-1)$-forms arise from vector fields $v$ that consitute infinitesimal symmetries of a Hamiltonian function, by the evident higher degree generalizatin of Hamilton's equations, namely $\mathbf{d}J = \iota_v \omega$.

One traditional example of such higher conserved currents are the *brane charges* of super $p$-brane sigma-models on supergravity backgrounds. This example we discuss below in 1.4.4.

We now consider the system of conserved currents more systematically. To that end, let $X := J^1(\Sigma \times F)^*$ be a dual jet bundle of a field bundle, def. 1.3.144, let $\omega \in \Omega^{d+1}(X)$ be a DHW pre-$d$-plectic form as in def. 1.3.146 and let finally $\nabla$ be a higher pre-quantization of $(X, \omega)$ as discussed in 1.3.3.2.

Then following the discussion in 1.3.2.4 in view of the higher pre-quantum refinement of 1.3.3.2 a symmetry of the local field theory defined by $\nabla$ is a symmetry of the field space

$$X \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\phi} X$$

such that the Lagrangian is invariant up to an exact term under this transformation. Under the globalization as in example 1.3.152 this means that $\nabla$ is invariant up to a gauge transformation

$$\phi^* \nabla \xrightarrow{\simeq} \nabla \,.$$

**Definition 1.3.154.** The *$d$-group of symmetries* of the Lagrangian $\nabla$ is the higher smooth group whose elements are diagrams of the form

$$\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X \\ & \swarrow_{\simeq} & \\ {\scriptstyle \nabla} \searrow & & \swarrow {\scriptstyle \nabla} \\ & \mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} \right\}$$

We consider the precise form of this definition below in 5.2.17.5 and 6.4.21.

**Example 1.3.155.** Consider the special case of example 1.3.152, where the higher pre-quantization as in 1.3.3.2 given by a globally defined $d$-form $\theta \in \Omega^d(X)$. Then a diagram as in def. 1.3.154 expresses equivalenty a differential $(d-1)$-form $\Delta$ such that

$$\phi^* \theta - \theta = \mathbf{d} \Delta \,.$$

In the traditional context of the Noether theorem, this is sometimes called a "weak" symmetry of the Lagrangian $\theta$, a symmetry that leaves the Lagrangian invariant only up to the "divergence" $\mathbf{d}\Delta$.

Lie differentiating this, we find that an infinitesimal element of this $d$-group is given by a vector field $v$ on $X$ (an infinitesimal diffeomorphism) together with a $(d-1)$-form $\Delta_v$ exhibiting an infinitesimal gauge transformation between $\theta$ and its pullback along the infinitesimal diffeomorphism $v$. This means that the Lie derivative $\mathcal{L}_v \theta$ satisfies

$$\mathcal{L}_v \theta = \mathbf{d} \Delta_v \,.$$

By Cartan's magic formula and using that $\theta$ is a pre-quantization of $\omega$, this means equivalently that

$$\iota_v \omega = -\mathbf{d}J$$

with

$$J_v := \iota_v \theta - \Delta_v \,.$$

Below in 1.3.3.4 we see that $\iota_{\cdots}\omega$ vanishes on tangents to field trajectories which solve the equations of motion. Therefore $J_v$ here is hence an on-shell conserved current, induced by the given symmetry. This is a special case of the general $d$-plectic Noether theorem, prop. 1.3.170 below. Following def. 1.3.81 we say:

**Definition 1.3.156.** Given a pre-$d$-plectic manifold $(X, \omega)$, then a vector field $v$ for which there exists a $J$ with $\iota_v \omega = -\mathbf{d}J$ is a *Hamiltonian vector field.*

$$\mathrm{Vec}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X, \omega) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Vect}(X)$$

for the subspace of Hamiltonian vector fields.

Notice that this is a sub-Lie algebra under the canonical Lie bracket of vector fields.

Proceeding in this way, one finds (this is due to [FRS13b, def./prop. 4.2.1], we discuss this in more detail below in 6.4.21) that the Lie bracket on these Hamiltonian pairs $(v, \Delta_v)$ is given by

$$[(v_1, \Delta_{v_1}), (v_2, \Delta_{v_2})] = ([v_1, v_2],\ \mathcal{L}_{v_1}\Delta_{v_2} - \mathcal{L}_{v_2}\Delta_{v_1})\,.$$

**Remark 1.3.157.** Suppose that a potential $\Delta_{[v_1,v_2]}$ for the divergence term has been chosen before hand to define the current $J_{[v_1,v_2]}$, then this means that the Lie bracket of conserved currents is (see prop. 6.4.207)

$$[(v_1, \Delta_{v_1}), (v_2, \Delta_{v_2})] = ([v_1, v_2], \Delta_{[v_1,v_2]}) + (0, \mathcal{L}_{v_1}\Delta_{v_2} - \mathcal{L}_{v_2}\Delta_{v_1} - \Delta_{[v_1,v_2]})$$

and hence that the Lie algebra of these currents is an extension of the Lie algebra of the symmetries which they generate by the correction term as shown on the right. This formula appears in traditional literature for instance as [AGIT89, equations (13), (14)].

But we see here two additional points which seem not to have been explicitly addressed in traditional literature:

1. When $d > 1$ then $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\theta)$ is a higher group, and hence in particular after Lie differentiation then on top of the Lie bracket of conserved currents above, there are higher gauge transformations between these currents. They may be most directly understood from the fact that the choice of $\Delta_v$ above is clearly only unique up to addition of exact terms, whose potentials in turn are themselves only unique up to exact terms, and so forth. As a result, we find not just a Lie algebra, but a dg-Lie algebra of currents, whose differential is the de Rham differential acting on higher order current forms.

2. In full generality the above discussion needs to be performed not just for globally defined $\theta$, but for higher prequantizations $\overline{\theta}$ which are given by Cech-Deligne cocycles with curvature $(d+1)$-form $\omega$.

The resulting dg-Lie algebra has been given in [FRS13b, def./prop. 4.2.1]:

**Definition 1.3.158.** Let $X$ be a smooth manifold, $\omega \in \Omega^{d+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$ a closed differential $(d+1)$-form, with $(X, \omega)$ regarded as a pre-$d$-plectic manifold. Let $\overline{\theta}$ be a higher pre-quantization of $\omega$ given by a Cech-Deligne cocycle with respect to a cover $\mathcal{U}$ of $X$. Then the *Poisson bracket dg-Lie algebra*

$$\mathfrak{Pois}_{\mathrm{dg}}(X, \overline{\theta}) \in \mathrm{dgLieAlg} \hookrightarrow L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$$

is the dg-Lie algebra whose underlying chain complex has

$$\mathfrak{Pois}_{\mathrm{dg}}(X, \overline{\theta})^0 := \left\{ (v, \overline{\Delta}) \in \mathrm{Vect}(X) \oplus \mathrm{Tot}^{d-1}(\mathcal{U}, \Omega^\bullet) | \mathcal{L}_v \overline{\theta} = \mathbf{d}_{\mathrm{Tot}} \overline{\Delta} \right\}$$

and

$$\mathfrak{Pois}_{\mathrm{dg}}(X,\overline{\theta})^{i\geq 1} := \mathrm{Tot}^{d-1-i}(\mathcal{U},\Omega^\bullet)$$

with differential $\mathbf{d}_{\mathrm{Tot}}$, and whose non-vanishing Lie brackets are

$$[(v_1,\overline{\Delta}_1),(v_2,\overline{\Delta}_2)] = \big([v_1,v_2],\ \mathcal{L}_{v_1}\overline{\Delta}_2 - \mathcal{L}_{v_2}\overline{\Delta}_1\big)$$

and

$$[(v,\overline{\Delta}),\overline{\eta}] = -[\overline{\eta},(v,\overline{\Delta})] = \mathcal{L}_v\overline{\eta}$$

.

It turns out that there is a very different looking but equivalent incarnation of this $L_\infty$-algebra, originally considered in [Rog11a, Rog10]:

**Definition 1.3.159** (higher Poisson bracket of local observables)**.** Given a pre-$n$-plectic manifold $(X,\omega)$, its vector space of *local Hamiltonian observables* is

$$\Omega^{n-1}_\omega(X) := \big\{(v,J)\in\Gamma(TX)\oplus\Omega^{n-1}(X)\mid \iota_v\omega = -\mathbf{d}J\big\}\ .$$

We say that the de Rham complex ending in these Hamiltonian observables is the *complex of local observables* of $(X,\omega)$, denoted

$$\Omega^\bullet_\omega(X) := \left(C^\infty(X)\xrightarrow{\mathbf{d}}\Omega^1(X)\xrightarrow{\mathbf{d}}\cdots\xrightarrow{\mathbf{d}}\Omega^{n-2}(X)\xrightarrow{(0,\mathbf{d})}\Omega^{n-1}_\omega(X)\right)\ .$$

The *binary higher Poisson bracket* on local Hamiltonian observables is the linear map

$$\{-,-\}\ :\ \Omega^{n-1}_\omega(X)\otimes\Omega^{n-1}_\omega(X)\longrightarrow\Omega^{n-1}_\omega(X)$$

given by the formula

$$[(v_1,J_1)\,,(v_2,J_1)] := [([v_1,v_2]\,,\,\iota_{v_1\vee v_2}\omega)]\ ;$$

and for $k\geq 3$ the *$k$-ary higher Poisson bracket* is the linear map

$$\{-,\cdots,-\}\ :\ \big(\Omega^{n-1}_\omega(X)\big)^{\otimes^k}\longrightarrow\Omega^{n+1-k}(X)$$

given by the formula

$$[(v_1,J_1)\,,\,\cdots\,,(v_k,J_k)] := (-1)^{\lfloor\frac{k-1}{2}\rfloor}\iota_{v_1\vee\cdots\vee v_k}\omega\ .$$

The chain complex of local observables equipped with these linear maps for all $k$ we call the *higher Poisson bracket homotopy Lie algebra* of $(X,\omega)$, denoted

$$\mathfrak{Pois}_\infty(X,\omega) := (\Omega^\bullet_\omega(X),\{-,-\}\,,\{-,-,-\}\,,\cdots)\ .$$

**Remark 1.3.160.** What we call a *homotopy Lie algebra* in def. 1.3.159 is what originally was called a *strong homotopy Lie algebra* and what these days is mostly called an *$L_\infty$-algebra* or, since the above chain complex is concentrated in the lowest $n$ degrees, a *Lie $n$-algebra*. These are the structures that are to group-like smooth homotopy types as Lie algebras are to smooth groups. The reader can find all further details which we need not dwell on here as well as pointers to the standard literature in [FRS13b].

**Remark 1.3.161.** For $n=2$ definition 1.3.159 indeed reproduces the definition of the ordinary Poisson bracket Lie algebra, def. 1.3.86.

**Proposition 1.3.162.** *There is an equivalence of $L_\infty$-algebras*

$$\mathfrak{Pois}_\infty(X,\omega) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathfrak{Pois}_{\mathrm{dg}}(X,\omega)$$

*between those of def. 1.3.158 and def. 1.3.159 which on the underlying currents is given by*

$$J \mapsto -J|_{\mathcal{U}} + \sum_{i=0}^{d} (-1)^i \iota_v \theta^{d-i}$$

*hence which for the special case of globally defined pre-quantization forms $\theta$ over a trivial cover (as in example 1.3.152) is given by*

$$J \mapsto -J + \iota_v \theta = \Delta \, .$$

This is [FRS13b, theorem 4.2.2].

**Proposition 1.3.163.** *The Poisson bracket Lie $n$-algebra $\mathfrak{Pois}(X,\omega)$ is an extension of the Lie algebra of Hamiltonian vector fields, def. 1.3.156, by the cocycle $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X, \flat\mathbf{B}^{d-1}\mathbb{R})$ of degree $d-1$ real cohomology of $X$, in that there is a homotopy fiber sequence of $L_\infty$-algebras of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}(X,\flat\mathbf{B}^{d-1}\mathbb{R}) & \longrightarrow & \mathfrak{Pois}(X,\omega) & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \\ & & \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X,\omega) & \xrightarrow{\omega[\bullet]} & \mathbf{BH}(X,\flat\mathbf{B}^{d-1}\mathbb{R}) \end{array} ,$$

*where the cocycle $\omega[\bullet]$, when realized explicitly on $\mathfrak{Pois}_\infty(X,\omega)$, def. 1.3.159, is degreewise given by contraction of vector fields with $\omega$.*

This is [FRS13b, theorem 3.3.1].

**Corollary 1.3.164.** *The truncation of $\mathfrak{Pois}(X,\omega)$ to a Lie 1-algebra (by quotienting out exact current forms) is an extension of the Hamiltonian vector fields by $H^{d-1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$, in that there is a short exact sequence of Lie algebras*

$$0 \to H^{d-1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) \longrightarrow \tau_0 \mathfrak{Pois}(X,\omega) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X,\omega) \to 0 \, .$$

A shadow of this extension result appears in traditional literature in [AGIT89, p. 8], where this is considered for the special case of super $p$-brane sigma-models (in which case the elements in $H^{d-1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ are interpreted as the brane charges). This example we turn to below in 1.4.4.

**1.3.3.4 Field equations of motion and Higher Poisson-Maurer-Cartan elements** Where in classical mechanics the equations of motion that determine the physically realized trajectories are Hamilton's equations, def. 1.3.81, in field theory the equations of motion are typically *wave equations* on spacetime. But as we localize from (pre-)symplectic phase spaces to (pre-)$n$-plectic phase spaces as in 1.3.3.1 above, Hamilton's equations also receive a localization to the *Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl* equation. This indeed coincides with the field-theoretic equations of motion. We briefly review the classical idea of de Donder-Weyl formalism and then show how it naturally follows from a higher geometric version of Hamilton's equations in $n$-plectic geometry.

**Definition 1.3.165.** Let $(X,\omega)$ be a pre-$n$-plectic smooth manifold, and let $H \in C^\infty(X)$ be a smooth function, to be called the *de Donder-Weyl Hamiltonian.* Then for $v_i \in \Gamma(TX)$ with $i \in \{1, \cdots, n\}$ an $n$-tuple of vector fields, the *Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl* equation is

$$(\iota_{v_n} \cdots \iota_{v_1})\omega = \mathbf{d}H \, .$$

Generally, for $J \in \Omega^{n-k}(X)$ a smooth differential form for $1 \leq k \leq n$, and for $\{v_i\}$ a $k$-tuple of vector fields, the *extended Hamilton-deDonder-Weyl equation* is

$$\iota_{v_k} \cdots \iota_{v_1} \omega = \mathbf{d}J \, .$$

We now first show how this describes equations of motion of field theories. Then we discuss how this de Donder-Weyl-Hamilton equation is naturally found in higher differential geometry. For simplicity of exposition we stick with the simple local situation of example 1.3.137. The ambitious reader can readily generalize all of the following discussion to non-trivial and non-linear field bundles.

**Definition 1.3.166.** Let $\Sigma \times F \to \Sigma$ be a field bundle as in example 1.3.137. For $\Phi := (\phi^i, p^a_i) : \Sigma \to J^1(\Sigma \times X)^*$ a section of the linear dual jet bundle, def. 1.3.144, write

$$v_i^\Phi = \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma^i} + \frac{\partial \phi^a}{\partial \sigma^i}\frac{\partial}{\partial \phi^a} + \frac{\partial p_a^j}{\partial \sigma^i}\frac{\partial}{\partial p_a^j}$$

for its canonical basis of tangent vector fields. Similarly for $\Phi := (\phi^i, p^a_i, e) : \Sigma \to j^1(\Sigma \times X)^\vee$ a section of the affine dual jet bundle write

$$v_i^\Phi = \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma^i} + \frac{\partial \phi^a}{\partial \sigma^i}\frac{\partial}{\partial \phi^a} + \frac{\partial p_a^j}{\partial \sigma^i}\frac{\partial}{\partial p_a^j} + \frac{\partial e}{\partial \sigma^i}\frac{\partial}{\partial e}$$

for its canonical basis of tangent vector fields.

**Proposition 1.3.167.** *For $(\Sigma \times X) \to \Sigma$ a field bundle as in example 1.3.137, let $H \in C^\infty(J^1(\Sigma \times X)^*)$ be a function on the linear dual (and hence on the affine dual) first jet bundle, def. 1.3.144. Then for a section $\Phi$ of the linear dual jet bundle, def. 1.3.144, the homogeneous ("relativistic") de Donder-Weyl-Hamilton equation, def. 1.3.165, of the HDW pre-n-plectic form, def. 1.3.146,*

$$\left(\iota_{v_n^\Phi} \cdots \iota_{v_1^\Phi}\right)\omega_H = 0$$

*has a unique lift, up to an additive constant, to a solution of the Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl equation on the affine dual field bundle, def. 1.3.144, of the form*

$$\left(\iota_{v_n^\Phi} \cdots \iota_{v_1^\Phi}\right)\omega_e = \mathbf{d}(H + e)\,.$$

*Moreover, both these equations are equivalent to the following system of differential equations*

$$\partial_i \phi^a = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p^i_a} \quad ; \quad \partial_i p^i_a = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial \phi^a}\,.$$

The last system of differential equations is the form in which the de Donder-Weyl-Hamilton equation is traditionally displayed, see for instance [Rom05, theorem 2]. The inhomogeneous version on the affine dual first jet bundle above has been highlighted in [HHél02, around equation (4)].

**Example 1.3.168.** For a field bundle as in example 1.3.137, the standard form of an energy density function for a field theory on $\Sigma$ is

$$H \mathrm{vol}_\Sigma = L_{\mathrm{kin}} + V(\{\phi^a\})\mathrm{vol}_\Sigma\,,$$

where the first summand is the kinetic energy density from example 1.3.138 and where the second is any potential term as in example 1.3.55. More explicitly this means that

$$H = \langle \nabla\phi, \nabla\phi\rangle + V(\{\phi^a\}) = k^{ab}\eta_{ij}p^i_a p^j_b + V(\{\phi^a\})\,.$$

For this case the first component of the Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl equation in the form of prop. 1.3.167 is the equation

$$\partial_i \phi^a = k^{ab}\eta_{ij}p^j_b\,.$$

This identifies the canonical momentum with the actual momentum. More formally, this first equation *enforces the jet prolongation* in that it forces the section of the dual first jet bundle to the field bundle to be the actual dual jet of an actual section of the field bundle.

Using this, the second component of the HDW equation in the form of prop. 1.3.167 is equivalently the *wave equation*

$$\eta^{ij}\partial_i\partial_j\phi^a = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial \phi^a}$$

with inhomogeneity given by the gradient of the potential. These equations are the hallmark of classical field theory.

In full generality we can express the Euler-Lagrange equations of motion of a local Lagrangian in Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl form by prop. 1.3.150.

In order for the Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl equation to qualify as a good "localization" or "de-transgression" of non-covariant classical field theory as in example 1.3.54 it should be true that it reduces to this under transgression. This is indeed the case[12]

**Proposition 1.3.169.** *With $\omega_{L^{\mathrm{loc}}}$ as in prop. 1.3.150, we have that for any Cauchy surface $\Sigma_{n-1}$ that transgression of $\omega_{L^{\mathrm{loc}}}$ yields the covariant phase space pre-symplectic form of example 1.3.54.*

Using the $n$-plectic formulation of the Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl equation, we naturally obtain now the following $n$-plectic formulation of the refinement of the "symplectic Noether theorem", def. 1.3.89, form mechanics to field theory:

**Proposition 1.3.170** ($n$-plectic Noether theorem)**.** *Let $(X,\omega)$ be a pre-$n$-plectic manifold equipped with a function $H \in C^\infty(X)$, to be regarded as a de Donder-Weyl Hamiltonian, def. 1.3.165. If a vector field $v \in \Gamma(TX)$ is a symmetry of $H$ in that*

$$\iota_v \mathbf{d}H = 0\,,$$

*then along any $n$-vector field $v_1 \vee \cdots \vee v_n$ which solves the Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl equation, def. 1.3.165, the corresponding current $J_v := \iota_v\omega$ is conserved, in that*

$$\iota_{(v_1,\cdots,v_n)}\mathbf{d}J_v = 0\,.$$

*Conversely, if a current is conserved on solutions to the Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl equations of motion this way, then it generates a symmetry of the de Donder-Weyl Hamiltonian.*

Proof. By the various definitions and assumptions we have

$$\begin{aligned}\iota_{v_1\vee\cdots\vee v_n}\mathbf{d}Jv &= \iota_{v_1\vee\cdots\vee v_n}\iota_v\omega \\ &= (-)^n\iota_v\iota_{v_1\vee\cdots\vee v_n}\omega \\ &= \iota_v\mathbf{d}H \\ &= 0\end{aligned}\,.$$

□

This shows how the multisymplectic/$n$-plectic analog of the symplectic formulation of Hamilton's equations, def. 1.3.81, serves to encode the equations of motion, the symmetries and the conserved currents of classical field theory. But in 1.3.2.10 and 1.3.2.12 above we had seen that the symplectic formulation of Hamilton's equations in turn is equivalently just an infinitesimal characterization of the automorphisms of a pre-quantized phase space $X \xrightarrow{\nabla} \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in the higher slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$. This suggests that $n$-dimensional Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl flows should characterize $n$-fold homotopies in the higher automorphism group of a higher prequantization, regarded as an object in a higher slice topos to be denoted $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^nU(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$. This we come to below in 5.2.17.5.

Here we now first consider the infinitesimal aspect this statement. To see what this will look like, observe that the statement for $n=1$ is that the Lie algebra of slice automorphisms of $\nabla$ is the Poisson bracket

[12] Again thanks go to Igor Khavkine for discussion of this point.

Lie algebra $\mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)$ whose elements, by def. 1.3.86, are precisely the pairs $(v,H)$ that satisfy Hamilton's equation $\iota_v\omega = H$. To say this more invariantly: Hamilton's equations on $(X,\omega)$ precisely characterize the Lie algebra homomorphisms of the form

$$\mathbb{R} \longrightarrow \mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)\,,$$

where on the left we have the abelian Lie algebra on a single generator. This suggests that for a (pre-)$n$-plectic manifold, we consider homotopy Lie algebra homomorphism of the form

$$\mathbb{R}^n \longrightarrow \mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)\,,$$

where now on the left we have the abelian Lie algebra on $n$ generators, regarded canonically as a homotopy Lie algebra. In comparison with prop. 1.3.97, this may be thought of as characterizing the infinitesimal approximation to an evolution $n$-functor from Riemannian $n$-dimensional cobordisms into the (delooping of) the higher Lie integration of $\mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)$ (recall remark 1.3.132 above).

Such homomorphisms of homotopy Lie algebras are computed as follows.

**Definition 1.3.171.** Given a pre-$n$-plectic smooth space $(X,\omega)$, write

$$\mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)^{(\square^n)} := (\wedge^\bullet \mathbb{R}^n) \otimes \mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)$$

for the homotopy Lie algebra obtained from the Poisson bracket Lie $n$-algebra of def. 1.3.159 by tensoring with the Grassmann algebra on $n$ generators, hence the graded-symmetric algebra on $n$ generators in degree 1.

**Remark 1.3.172.** A basic fact of homotopy Lie algebra theory implies that homomorphisms of the form $\mathbb{R}^n \longrightarrow \mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)$ are equivalent to elements $\mathcal{J} \in \mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)^{\Delta^n}$ of degree 1, which satisfy the *homotopy Maurer-Cartan equation*

$$d\mathcal{J} + \tfrac{1}{2}\{\mathcal{J},\mathcal{J}\} + \tfrac{1}{6}\{\mathcal{J},\mathcal{J},\mathcal{J}\} + \cdots = 0$$

**Example 1.3.173.** Write $\{\mathbf{d}\sigma^i\}_{i=1}^n$ for the generators of $\wedge^\bullet\mathbb{R}^n$. Then a general element of degree 1 in $\mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)^{(\square^n)}$ is of the form

$$\mathcal{J} = \mathbf{d}\sigma^i \otimes (v_i, J_i) + \mathbf{d}\sigma^i \wedge \mathbf{d}\sigma^j \otimes J_{ij} + \mathbf{d}\sigma^i \wedge \mathbf{d}\sigma^j \wedge \mathbf{d}\sigma^k \otimes J_{ijk} + \cdots + (\mathbf{d}\sigma^1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathbf{d}\sigma^n) \otimes H\,,$$

where

1. $v_i \in \Gamma(TX)$ is a vector field and $J_i \in \Omega^n(X)$ is a differential $n$-foms such that $\iota_{v_i}\omega = \mathbf{d}J_i$
2. $J_{i_1\cdots i_k} \in \Omega^{n+1-k}(X)$;
3. $H \in C^\infty(X)$.

From this we deduce the following.

**Proposition 1.3.174.** *Given a pre-$n$-plectic smooth space $(X,\omega)$, the extended Hamilton-de Donder-Weyl equations, def. 1.3.165, characterize, under the identification of example 1.3.173, the homomorphims of homotopy Lie algebras from $\mathbb{R}^n$ into the higher Poisson bracket Lie $n$-algebra of def. 1.3.159:*

$$(\mathcal{J} : \mathbb{R}^n \longrightarrow \mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \iota_{v_n} \cdots \iota_{v_1}\omega = \mathbf{d}H \\ \iota_{v_{ik}} \cdots \iota_{v_{i_2}}\iota_{v_{i_1}}\omega = \mathbf{d}J_{i_1 i_2 \cdots i_k} \quad \forall_k \forall_{i_1,\cdots,i_k} \end{array} \right.$$

**Remark 1.3.175.** The Lie integration of the Lie $n$-algebra $\mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)$ is the smooth $n$-groupoid whose $n$-cells are Maurer-Cartan elements in

$$\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(\Delta^n) \otimes \mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)\,,$$

see [FSS10] for details. The construction in def. 1.3.171 is a locally constant approximation to that. In general there are further $\sigma$-dependent terms.

Due to [FRS13a, FRS13b] we have that the Lie integration of $\mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)$ is the automorphism $n$-group $\mathbf{Aut}_{/\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}(\nabla)$ of any pre-quantization $\nabla$ of $(X,\omega)$, see 5.2.17. This means that the above maps

$$\mathbb{R}^n \longrightarrow \mathfrak{pois}(X,\omega)$$

are infinitesimal approximations to something lie $n$-functors of the form

$$\text{“ } \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{Riem}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}} \text{”}$$

in higher dimensional analogy of prop. 1.3.97. This we come to below.

**1.3.3.5 Source terms, off-shell Poisson bracket and Poisson holography** We connect now the discussion of mechanics in 1.3.2 to that of higher Chern-Simons field theory in by showing that the space of all trajectories of a mechanical system naturally carries a Poisson brakcet structure which is foliated by symplectic leafs that are labled by source terms.[13] The corresponding leaf space is naturally refined to the symplectic groupoid that is the moduli stack of fields of the non-perturbative 2s Poisson-Chern-Simons theory. This yields a precise implementation of the “holographic principle” where the 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons theory in the bulk carries on its boundary a 1d field theory (mechanical system) such that fields in the bulk correspond to sources on the boundary.

Let $(X,\omega)$ be a symplectic manifold. We write

$$\{-,-\} : C^\infty(X) \otimes C^\infty(X) \longrightarrow C^\infty(X)$$

for the Poisson bracket induced by the symplectic form $\omega$, hence by the Poisson bivector $\pi := \omega^{-1}$.

For notational simplicity we will restrict attention to the special case that

$$X = \mathbb{R}^2 \simeq T^*\mathbb{R}$$

with canonical coordinates

$$q, p : \mathbb{R}^2 \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

and symplectic form

$$\omega = \mathbf{d}q \wedge \mathbf{d}p \,.$$

The general case of the following discussion is a straightforward generalization of this, which is just notationally more inconvenient.

Write $I := [0,1]$ for the standard interval regarded as a smooth manifold manifold with boundary—with boundary. The mapping space

$$PX := [I, X]$$

canonically exists as a smooth space, but since $I$ is compact topological space—compact this structure canonically refines to that of a Frchet manifold. This implies that there is a good notion of tangent space $TPX$. The task now is to construct a certain Poisson bivector as a section $\pi \in \Gamma^{\wedge 2}(TPX)$.

Among the smooth functions on $PX$ are the evaluation maps

$$ev : PX \times I = [I, X] \times I \longrightarrow X$$

whose components we denote, as usual, for $t \in I$ by

$$q(t) := q \circ ev_t : PX \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

and

$$p(t) := p \circ ev_t : PX \longrightarrow \mathbb{R} \,.$$

[13] This phenomenon was kindly pointed out to by Igor Khavkine.

Generally for $f \colon X \to \mathbb{R}$ any smooth function, we write $f(t) := f \circ ev_t \in C^\infty(PX)$. This defines an embedding

$$C^\infty(X) \times I \hookrightarrow C^\infty(PX)\,.$$

Similarly we have

$$\dot{q}(t) \,:\, PX \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

and

$$\dot{q}(t) \,:\, PX \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

obtained by differentiation of $t \mapsto q(t)$ and $t \mapsto p(t)$.

Let now

$$H \,:\, X \times I \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

be a smooth function, to be regarded as a time-dependent Hamiltonian. This induces a time-dependent function on trajectory space, which we denote by the same symbol

$$H \,:\, PX \times I \overset{(ev,id)}{\longrightarrow} X \times X \overset{H}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{R}\,.$$

Hence for $t \in I$ we write

$$H(t) \,:\, PX \times \{t\} \overset{(ev,id)}{\longrightarrow} X \times \{t\} \overset{H}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{R}$$

for the function that assigns to a trajectors $(q(-), p(-)) \colon I \longrightarrow X$ its energy at (time) parameter value $t$. Define then the Euler-Lagrange equation—Euler-Lagrange density induced by $H$ to be the functions

$$\mathrm{EL}(t) \,:\, PX \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$$

with components

$$\mathrm{EL}(t) = \left( \begin{array}{c} \dot{q}(t) - \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(t) \\ \dot{p}(t) + \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(t) \end{array} \right)\,.$$

The trajectories $\gamma \colon I \to X$ on which $EL(t)$ vanishes for all $t \in I$ are equivalently those

- for which the tangent vector $\dot{\gamma} \in T_\gamma X$ is a Hamiltonian vector field—Hamiltonian vector for $H$;
- which satisfy Hamilton's equations equations of motion—of motion for $H$.

Since the differential equations $\mathrm{EL} = 0$ have a unique solution for given initial data $(q(0), p(0))$, the evaluation map

$$\{\gamma \in PX | \forall_{t \in I}\; EL_\gamma(t) = 0\} \overset{\gamma \mapsto \gamma(0)}{\longrightarrow} X$$

is an equivalence (an isomorphism of smooth spaces).

Write

$$\mathrm{Poly}(PX) \hookrightarrow C^\infty(PX)$$

for the subalgebra of smooth functions on path space which are polynomials of integrals over $I$, of the smooth functions in the image of $C^\infty(X) \times I \hookrightarrow C^\infty(PX)$ and all their derivatives along $I$.

Define a bilinear function

$$\{-,-\} \,:\, \mathrm{Poly}(PX) \otimes \mathrm{Poly}(PX) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Poly}(PX)$$

as the unique function which is a derivation in both arguments and moreover is a solution to the differential equations

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t_2} \{f(t_1), q(t_2)\} = \left\{ f(t_1), \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(t_2) \right\}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t_2}\{f(t_1), p(t_2)\} = -\left\{f(t_1), \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(t_2)\right\}$$

subject to the initial conditions

$$\{f(t), q(t)\} = \{f, q\}$$
$$\{f(t), p(t)\} = \{f, p\}$$

for all $t \in I$, where on the right we have the original Poisson bracket on $X$.

This bracket directly inherits skew-symmetry and the Jacobi identity from the Poisson bracket of $(X, \omega)$, hence equips the vector space $Poly(PX)$ with the structure of a Lie bracket. Since it is by construction also a derivation of $Poly(PX)$ as an associative algebra, we have that

$$(\mathrm{Poly}\,(PX)\,,\ \{-,-\}) \quad \in P_1 Alg$$

is a Poisson algebra. This is the "off-shell Poisson algebra" on the space of trajectories in $(X, \omega)$.

Observe that by construction of the off-shell Poisson bracket, specifically by the differential equations defining it, the Euler-Lagrange equation—Euler-Lagrange function EL generate a Poisson reduction—Poisson ideal.

For instance

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc} \frac{\partial}{\partial t_2}\{f(t_1), q(t_2)\} & = & \left\{f(t_1), \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(t_2)\right\} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial t_2}\{f(t_1), p(t_2)\} & = & -\left\{f(t_1), \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(t_2)\right\} \end{array}\right) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad (\{f(t_1),\ EL(t)\} = 0)\ .$$

Moreover, since $\{EL(t) = 0\}$ are equations of motion the Poisson reduction defined by this Poisson idea is the subspace of those trajectories which are solutions of Hamilton's equations, hence the "on-shell trajectories".

As remarked above, the initial value map canonically identifies this on-shell trajectory space with the original phase space manifold $X$. Moreover, by the very construction of the off-shell Poisson bracket as being the original Poisson bracket at equal times, hence in particular at time $t = 0$, it follows that restricted to the zero locus $EL = 0$ the off-shell Poisson bracket becomes symplectic manifold—symplectic.

All this clearly remains true with the function $EL$ replaced by the function $EL - J$, for $J \in C^\infty(I)$ any function of the (time) parameter (since $\{J, -\} = 0$). Any such choice of $J$ hence defines a symplectic subspace

$$\{\gamma \in PX \mid \forall_{t \in I}\ EL_\gamma(t) = J\}$$

of the off-shell Poisson structure on trajectory space. Hence $(OX, \{-,-\})$ has a foliation by symplectic leaves with the leaf space being the smooth space $C^\infty(I)$ of smooth functions on the interval.

Notice that changing $\mathrm{EL} \mapsto \mathrm{EL} - J$ corresponds changing the time-dependent Hamiltonian $H$ as

$$H \mapsto H - Jq\,.$$

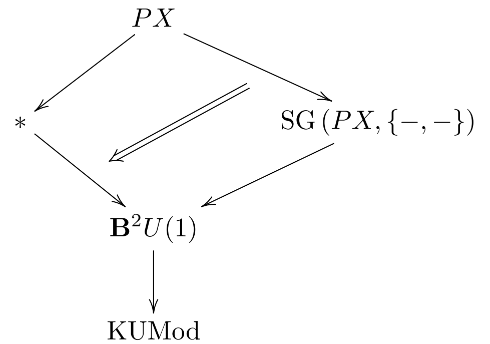
Such a term linear in the canonical coordinates (the field (physics)—fields) is a *source term*. (The action functionals with such source terms added serve as integrands of generating functions for correlators in statistical mechanics and in quantum mechanics.)

Hence in conclusion we find the following statement:

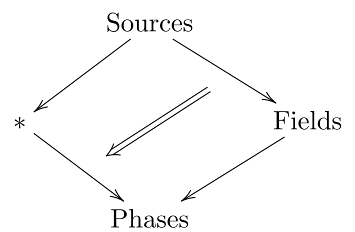
The trajectory space (history space) of a mechanical system carries a natural Poisson manifold—Poisson structure whose symplectic leaves are the subspaces of those trajectories which satisfy the equations of motion with a fixed source term and hence whose symplectic leaf space is the space of possible sources.

Notice what becomes of this statement as we consider the 2d Chern-Simons theory induced by the off-shell Poisson bracket (the non-perturbative field theory—non-pertrbative Poisson sigma-model) whose moduli stack of field (physics)—fields is the symplectic groupoid $SG\,(PX, \{-,-\})$ induced by the Poisson structure.

By the discussion below in 7.6.2.1, the Poisson space $(PX, \{-,-\})$ defines a boundary field theory (in the sense of local prequantum field theory) for this 2d Chern-Simons theory, exhibited by a boundary correspondence of the form




Notice that the symplectic groupoid is a version of the symplectic leaf space of the given Poisson manifold (its 0-truncation is exactly the leaf space). Hence in the case of the off-shell Poisson bracket, the symplectic groupoid is the space of *sources* of a mechanical system. At the same time it is the moduli space of fields of the 2d Chern-Simons theory of which the mechanical system is the boundary field theory. Hence the fields of the bulk field theory are identified with the sources of the boundary field theory. Hence conceptually the above boundary correspondence diagram is of the following form




### 1.3.4 Higher pre-quantum gauge fields

We give an introduction and survey to some aspects of the formulation of higher prequantum field theory in a cohesive $\infty$-topos.

One of the pleasant consequences of formulating the geometry of (quantum) field theory in terms of higher stacks, hence in terms of higher topos theory, is that a wealth of constructions find a natural and unified formulation, which subsumes varied traditional constructions and generalizes them to higher geometry. In this last part here we give an outlook of the scope of field theoretic phenomena that the theory naturally captures or exhibits in the first place.

In the following we write $\mathbf{H}$ for the collection of higher stacks under consideration. The reader may want to think of the special case that was discussed in the previous sections, where $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is the collection of *smooth $\infty$-groupoids*, hence of higher stacks on the site of smooth manifolds, or, equivalently, its dense subsite of Cartesian spaces. But one advantage of speaking in terms of higher topos theory is that essentially every construction considered in the following makes sense much more generally if only $\mathbf{H}$ is any higher topos that satisfies a small set of axioms called (differential) *cohesion*. This allows one to transport all considerations across various kinds of geometries. Notably we can speak of higher *supergeometry*, hence of fermionic quantum fields, simply by refining the site of definition to be that of supermanifolds: also the higher topos $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{SmoothSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is differentially cohesive.

Therefore we speak in the following in generality of *cohesive maps* when we refer to maps with geometric structure, be it topological, smooth, analytic, supergeometric or otherwise. Throughout, this geometric structure is *higher geometric* which we will sometimes highlight by adding the "$\infty$-"-prefix as in *cohesive $\infty$-group*, but which we will often notationally suppress for brevity. Similarly, *all* of the diagrams appearing in the following are filled with homotopies, but only sometimes we explicitly display them (as double arrows) for emphasis or in order to label them.

The special case of *geometrically discrete* cohesion is exhibited by the $\infty$-topos $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ of bare $\infty$-groupoids or *homotopy types*. This is the context of traditional homotopy theory, presented by topological spaces regarded up to weak homotopy equivalences ("whe"s): $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq L_{\mathrm{whe}}\mathrm{Top}$. One of the axioms satisfied by a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is that the inclusion $\mathrm{Disc} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ of bare $\infty$-groupoids as cohesive $\infty$-groupoids equipped with discrete cohesive structure has not only a right adjoint $\infty$-functor $\Gamma : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ – the functor that forgets the cohesive structure and remembers only the underlying bare $\infty$-groupoid – but also a left adjoint $|-| : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. This is the *geometric realization* of cohesive $\infty$-groupoids.

The following discussion is based on and in part reviews previous work such as [SSS09c, FSS12c]. Lecture notes that provide an exposition of this material with an emphasis on fields as twisted (differential) cocycles are in [Sc12].

- 1.3.4.1 – Cocycles: generalized, parameterized, twisted;
- 1.3.4.2 – Fields of gravity: special and generalized geometry;
- 1.3.4.3 – Gauge fields: higher, twisted, non-abelian;
- 1.3.4.4 – Gauge invariance, equivariance and general covariance.

We discuss now how a plethora of species of (quantum) fields are naturally and precisely expressed by constructions in the higher topos $\mathbf{H}$. In fact, it is the *universal moduli stacks* **Fields** of a given species of fields which are naturally expressed: those objects such that maps $\phi : X \to \mathbf{Fields}$ into them are equivalently quantum fields of the given species on $X$. This has three noteworthy effects on the formulation of the corresponding field theory.

First of all it means that every quantum field theory thus expressed is formally analogous to a $\sigma$-model – the "target space" is a higher moduli stack – which brings about a unified treatment of varied types of QFTs.

Second it means that a differential cocycle on **Fields** of degree $(n+1)$ – itself modulated by a map

$$\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

to the moduli stack $n$-form connections – serves as an *extended* Lagrangian of a field theory, in the sense that it expresses a QFT fully locally by Lagrangian data in arbitrary codimenion: for every closed oriented worldvolume $\Sigma_k$ of dimension $k \leq n$ there is a *transgressed* Lagrangian

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k} [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{L}]) : \ \mathbf{Fields}(\Sigma_k) \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_k, \mathbf{L}]} [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{C}_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k}(-))} \mathbf{B}^{n-k}\mathbb{C}^\times_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

which itself is a differential $(n-k)$-form connection on the space of fields on $\Sigma_k$. In particular, when $n = k$ then $\mathbf{B}^0 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq U(1)$ and the transgressed Lagragian in codimension 0 is the (exponentiated) *action functional* of the theory, $\exp(iS(-)) : \mathbf{Fields}(\Sigma_n) \to U(1)$. On the other hand, the $(n-k)$-connections in higher codimension are higher (off-shell) *prequantum bundles* of the theory. This we discuss further below in 1.3.5.

Third, it means that the representation of fields by their higher moduli stacks in a higher topos identifies the notion of quantum field entirely with that of *cocycle* in general *cohomology*. This we turn to now in 1.3.4.1.

**1.3.4.1 Cocycles: generalized, parameterized, twisted** We discuss general aspects of cocycles and cohomology in an $\infty$-topos, as a general blueprint for all of the discussion to follow. The reader eager to see explicit structure genuinely related to (quantum) physics may want, on first reading, to skip ahead to 1.3.4.2 and come back here only as need be.

In higher topos theory the notion of *cocycle* $c$ on some space $X$ with coefficients in some object $A$ and with some *cohomology* class $[c]$ is identified simply with that of a map (a morphism) $c : X \to A$ with equivalence class

$$[c] \in H(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, A) .$$

This is traditionally familiar for the case of discrete geometric structure hence bare homotopy theory $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, where for any Eilenberg-Steenrod-*generalized cohomology theory* the object $E$ is the corresponding spectrum, as given by the Brown representability theorem. That over non-trivial sites the same simple formulation subsumes all of *sheaf cohomology* ("parameterized cohomology") is known since [Br73], but it appears in the literature mostly in a bit of disguise in terms of some explicit model of a *derived global section functor*, computed by means of suitable projective/injective resolutions.)

If here $A = \mathbf{Fields}$ is interpreted as the moduli stack of certain *fields*, then such a cocycle *is* a field configuration on $X$. This is familiar for the case that we think of $A = X$ as the target space of a *$\sigma$-model*. But for instance for $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ a (higher) group and $A := \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ a differential refinement of the universel moduli stack of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles, a map $c : X \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is on the one hand a cocycle in (nonabelian) differential $G$-cohomology on $X$, and on the other hand equivalently a *$G$-gauge field* on $X$. In particular this means that in higher topos theory gauge field theories are unified with $\sigma$-models: an (untwisted) gauge field is a $\sigma$-modelfield whose target space is a universal differential moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

Indeed, the kinds of fields which are identified as $\sigma$-model fields in higher topos theory, hence with cocycles in some geometric cohomology theory, is considerable richer, still. The reason for this is that with $B \in \mathbf{H}$ any object, the *slice* $\mathbf{H}_{/B}$ is itself again a higher topos. This slice topos is the collection of morphisms of $\mathbf{H}$ into $B$, where a map between two such morphisms $f_{1,2} : X_{1,2} \to B$ is

1. a map $\phi : X_1 \to X_2$ in $\mathbf{H}$

2. a homotopy $\eta :\ f_1 \xrightarrow{\simeq} f_2 \circ \phi$ ,

hence a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form $\begin{array}{ccc} X_1 & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X_2 \\ & {\swarrow\!\!\swarrow}_{\eta} & \\ {}_{f_1}\searrow & & \swarrow_{f_2} \\ & B & \end{array}$ . We are particularly interested in the case that $B = \mathbf{B}G$ is a moduli stack of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles (or a differential refinement thereof). The fact that $\mathbf{H}$ is *cohesive* implies in particular that every morphism $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ has a unique global homotopy fiber $P \to X$. This is the *$G$-principal bundle* over $X$ modulated by $g$, sitting in a long homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} G & \longrightarrow & P & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \\ & & X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

In particular this means that there is an action of $G$ on $P$ (precisely: a *homotopy coherent* or $A_\infty$-action) and that

$$P \to P//G \simeq X$$

is the quotient map of this action. Moreover, conversely every action of $G$ on any object $V \in \mathbf{H}$ arises this way and is modulated by a morphism $V//G \xrightarrow{\rho} \mathbf{B}G$ , sitting in a homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

(This and the following facts about $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles in $\infty$-toposes and the representation theory and twisted cohomology of cohesive $\infty$-groups is due to [NSS12a], an account in the present context is in section 3.6 here.) This fiber sequence exhibits $V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$ as the universal $V$-fiber bundle which is $\rho$-associated to the universal $G$-principal bundle over $\mathbf{B}G$. For instance the fiber sequence $G \to * \to \mathbf{B}G$ which defines the delooping of $G$ corresponds to the action of $G$ on itself by right (or left) multiplication; the fiber sequence $V \longrightarrow V \times \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{p_2} \mathbf{B}G$ corresponds to the trivial action on any $V$, and the fiber sequence $G \longrightarrow \mathcal{L}\mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G$ of the free loop space object of $\mathbf{B}G$ corresponds to the adjoint action of $G$ on itself.

Another case of special interest is that where $V \simeq \mathbf{B}A$ and $V///G \simeq \mathbf{B}\hat{G}$ are themselves deloopings of $\infty$-groups. In this case the above fiber sequence reads

$$\mathbf{B}A \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G$$

and exhibits an *extension* $\hat{G}$ of $G$ by $A$. The implied action of $G$ on $\mathbf{B}A$ via $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G) \simeq \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G)//\mathrm{ad}$ is the datum known from traditional *Schreier theory* of general (nonabelian) group extensions. Now the previous discussion implies that if $A$ is equipped with sufficient abelian structure in that also $\mathbf{B}A$ is equipped with $\infty$-group structure (a "braided $\infty$-group") and such that $\mathbf{B}\hat{G} \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the quotient projection of a $\mathbf{B}A$-action, then the extension is classified by an *$\infty$-group cocycle* $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2 A$ in $\infty$-group cohomology $[\mathbf{c}] \in H^2_{\mathrm{grp}}(G, A)$. Notice that this is *cohesive* group cohomology in that it does respect and reflect the geometric structure on $G$ and $A$. Notably in smooth cohesion and for $G$ a Lie group and $A = \mathbf{B}^n K$ the $n$-fold delooping of an abelian Lie group, this reproduces not the naive Lie group cohomology but the refined Segal-Brylinski Lie group cohomology (this is shown in section 4.4.6.2 here). This implies that for $G$ a compact Lie group and $A = \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ we have an equivalence

$$H^n_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G, U(1)) \simeq H^{n+1}(BG, \mathbb{Z})$$

between the refined cohesive group cohomology with coefficients in the circle group and the ordinary integral cohomology of the clasifying space $BG \simeq |\mathbf{B}G|$ in one degree higher. In other words this means that every *universal characteristic class* $c : BG \longrightarrow K(\mathbb{Z}, n+1)$ is cohesively refined essentially uniquely to (the instanton sector of) a higher gauge field: a cohesive circle $n$-bundle (bundle $(n-1)$-gerbe) on the universal moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G$. The "universality" of this higher gauge field is reflected in the fact that this is really the (twisting structure underlying) an *extended action function for higher Chern-Simons theory* controld by the given universal class. This we come back to below in 1.3.4.3.

From this higher bundle theory, higher group theory and higher representation theory, we obtain a finer interpretation of maps in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$. First of all one finds that

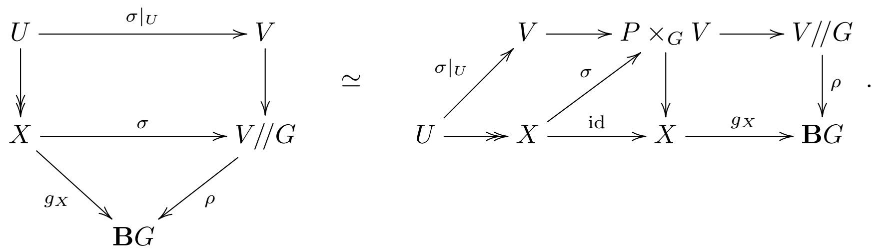
$$\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G} \simeq G\mathbf{Act}$$

is indeed the $\infty$-category of $G$-actions and $G$-action homomorphisms. In particular the base change functors $(\mathbf{G}\phi)_*$ and $(\mathbf{B}\phi)_!$ along maps $\mathbf{B}\phi : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}G'$ corresponds to the (co)induction functors from $G$-representations to $G'$-representations along a group homomorphism $\phi$. Since all this is homotopy-theoretic ("derived") the space of maps in the slice from the trivial representation to any given representation $(V, \rho)$ (hence the *derived invariants* of $(V, \rho)$) is the cocycle $\infty$-groupoid of the *group cohomology* of $G$ *with coefficients* in $V$:

$$H_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G, V) \simeq \pi_0 \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{B}G}, \rho)\,.$$

We are interested in the generalizations of this to the case where the univeral $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle modulated by $\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{B}G}$ is replaced by any $G$-principal bundle modulated by a map $g_X : X \to \mathbf{B}G$. To see what general cocycles in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \rho)$ are like, notice that every $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle over a given $X$ locally trivializes over a cover $U \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\rightarrow X$ (an *effective epimorphism* in $\mathbf{H}$) in that the modulating map becomes null-homotopic on $U$: $g_X|_U \simeq \mathrm{pt}_{\mathbf{B}G}$. But by the universal property of homotopy fibers this means that a cocycle $\sigma : g_X \to \rho$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ is *locally* a cocycle $\sigma|_U : U \to V$ in $\mathbf{H}$ with coefficients in the given $G$-module

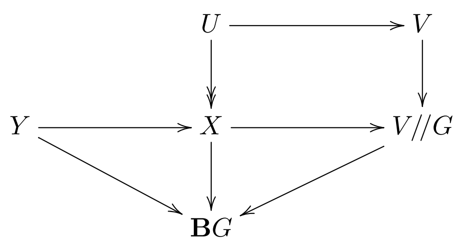
$V$, as shown on the left of the following diagram:

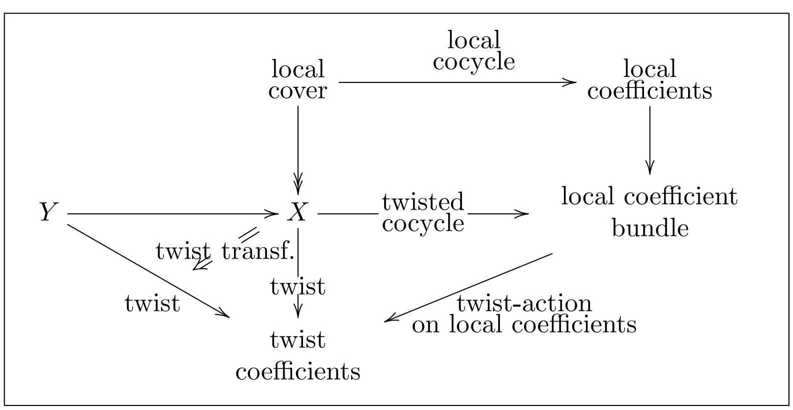


This means that $\sigma$ is a cocycle with *local coefficients* in $V$, which however globally vary as controlled by $g_X$: it is *twisted* by $g_X$. On the right hand of the above diagram the same situation is displayed in an equivalent alternative perspective: since $\rho : V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$ is also the univeral $\rho$-associated $V$-fiber bundle, it follows that the $V$-fiber bundle $P \times_G V \to X$ associated to $P \to X$ is its pullback along $g_X$ and then using again the universal property of the homotopy pullback it follows that $\sigma$ is equivalently a *section* of this associated bundle. This is the traditional perspective of *$g_X$-twisted $V$-cohomology* as familiar notably from twisted $K$-theory, as well as from modern formulations of ordinary cohomology with local coefficients.

The perspective of twisted cohomology as cohomology in slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ makes it manifest that what acts on twisted cocycle spaces are *twist homomorphisms*, hence maps $(\phi, \eta) : g_Y \to g_X$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$. In particular for $g_X$ and given twist its automorphism $\infty$-group $\mathrm{Aut}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X)$ acts on the twisted cohomology $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \rho)$ by precomposition in the slice.

In conclusion we find that cocycles and fields in the slice slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ of a cohesive $\infty$-topos over the delooping of an $\infty$-group are structures with components as summarized in the following diagram:






In the following we list a wide variety of classes of examples of this unified general abstract picture.

**1.3.4.2 Fields of gravity: special and generalized geometry** As special cases of the above general discussion, we now discuss moduli $\infty$-stacks of *fields of gravity* and their generalizations as found in higher dimensional (super)gravity.

For $X \in \mathrm{Mfd}_n \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ a manifold of dimension $n$, we may naturally regard it as an object in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)}$ by way of the canonical map $\tau_X : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)$ that modulates its frame bundle, the principal

GL($n$)-bundle to which the tangent bundle $TX$ is associated. A map $(\phi, \eta) : \tau_X \to \tau_Y$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)}$ between two manifolds $X, Y$ embedded in this way is equivalently a smooth function $\phi : X \to Y$ equipped with an explicit choice $\eta : \phi^*\tau_Y \simeq \tau_X$ of identification of the pullback tangent bundle with that of $X$. In particular every *local diffeomorphism* between manifolds gives a morphism in the slice over $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)$ this way.

The slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)}$ allows us to express physical fields which may not be restricted along arbitrary morphisms of manifolds (or morphisms of whatever kind of test geometries $\mathbf{H}$ is modeled on), but along local diffeomorphism, such as *metric/vielbein* fields or symplectic structures.

For let $\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n : \mathbf{B}O(n) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)$ be the morphism of moduli stacks induced from the canonical inclusion of the orthogonal group into the general linear group, regarded as an object of the slice, $\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)}$. Then a cocycle/field

$$(o_X, e) : \tau_X \to \mathbf{OrthStruc}_n$$

is equivalently

1. an *orthogonal structure* $o_X$ on $X$ (a choice of *Lorentz frame bundle*);

2. a *vielbein* field $e : \mathbf{OrthStruc}_n \circ o_X \longrightarrow \tau_X$ which equips the frame bundle with that orthogonal structure.

Together this is equivalently a *Riemannian metric* field on $X$, hence a field of Euclidean gravity, and $\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_n}$ is the universal moduli stack of Riemannian metrics in dimension $n$. Notice that this defines a notion of Riemannian metric for any object in $\mathbf{H}$ as soon as it is equipped with a GL($n$)-principal bundle. We obtain actual pseudo-Riemannian metrics by considering instead the delooped inclusion of $O(n-1,1)$ into GL($n$) and obtain dS-geometry, AdS-geometry etc. by further varying the signature.

This notion of $\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n$-structure in smooth stacks is of course closely related to the notion of orthogonal structure as considered in traditional homotopy theory. But there is a crucial difference, which we highlight now. First notice that there is a canonical $\infty$-functor

$$|-| \; : \; \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq L_{\mathrm{whe}}\mathrm{Top}$$

which sends every cohesive $\infty$-groupoid/$\infty$-stack to its *geometric realization*. Under certain conditions on the cohesive $\infty$-group $G$, in particular for Lie groups as considered here, this takes the moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G$ to the traditional *classifying space* $BG$. So under this map a choice of vielbein turns into a homotopy lift as shown on the right of

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}O(n) \\ & \overset{o_X}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{\tau_X} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n) \end{array} \quad \overset{|-|}{\longmapsto} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & & BO(n) \\ & \overset{|o_X|}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \simeq \\ X & \xrightarrow{|\tau_X|} & B\mathrm{GL}(n) \end{array} .$$

But since $O(n) \to \mathrm{GL}(n)$ is the inclusion of a maximal compact subgroup, it is a homotopy equivalence of the underlying topological spaces. Hence under $|-|$ a choice of $\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n$-structure is no choice at all, up to equivalence, there is no information encoded in this choice. This is of course the familiar statement that every vector bundle *admits* an orthogonal structure. But only in the context of cohesive stacks is the *choice* of this orthogonal structure actually equivalent to geometric data, to a choice of Riemannian metric.

Also notice that the homotopy fiber of $\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n$ is the cohesive coset GL($n$)/O($n$) (the coset equipped with its smooth manifold structure) in that we have a fiber sequence

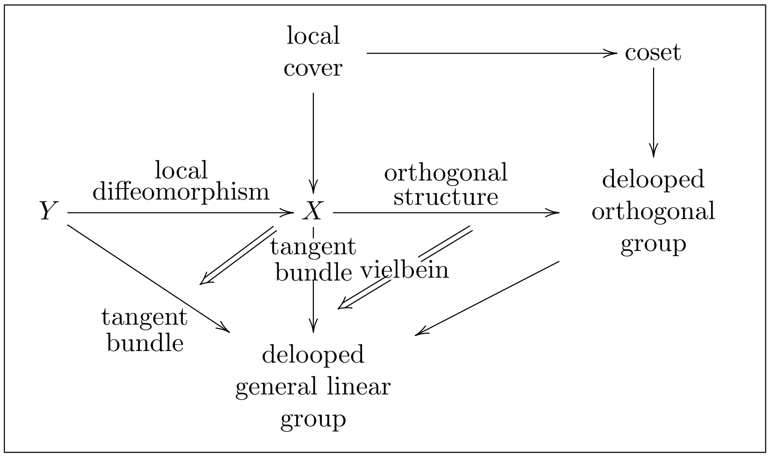
$$\mathrm{GL}(n)/O(n) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(n) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)$$

.

in $\mathbf{H}$, and by the discussion in 1.3.4.1 above a metric field $(o_X, e) : \tau_X \longrightarrow \mathbf{OrthStruc}_n$ is equivalently a $\tau_X$-*twisted* $\mathrm{GL}(n)/O(n)$-*cocycle*. This reproduces the traditional statement that the space of choices of vielbein fields is locally the space of maps into the coset $\mathrm{GL}(n)/O(n)$ and fails to be globally so to the extent that the tangent bundle is non-trivial.

Moreover, by the general discussion in 1.3.4.1 we find that a twist transformation that may act on orthogonal structures is a morphism $\tau_Y \to \tau_X$ in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)}$. This is equivalently a cohesive map $\phi : Y \to X$ in $\mathbf{H}$ equipped with an equivalence $\eta : \phi^*\tau_X \xrightarrow{\simeq} \tau_X$ from the pullback of the tangent bundle on $X$ to that on $Y$. But such an isomorphism witnesses the kind of extra structure provided by *local diffeomorphisms*. Hence local diffeomorphisms act as twist morphisms on tangent bundles regarded as twists for $\mathrm{GL}(n)/O(n)$-structures. This statement of course reproduces the traditional fact that metrics pull back along local diffeomorphisms (but not along general cohesive maps). Abstractly it is reflected in the fact that the moduli stack $\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n$ for metrics in $n$ dimensions is an object not of the base $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, but of the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)}$.

In conclusion, the following diagram summarizes the components of the formulation of metric fields as cocycles in the slice over $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)$, displayed as a special case of the general diagram for twisted cocycles that is discussed in 1.3.4.1.




This discussion of metric structure and vielbein fields of gravity is but a special case of *generalized vielbein fields* obtained from *reduction of structure groups*. If $\mathbf{c} : K \to G$ is any morphism of groups in $\mathbf{H}$ (typically taken to be a subgroup inclusion if one is speaking of structure group *reduction*, but not necessarily so in general, as for instance the example of the *generalized tangent bundle*, discussed in a moment, shows), and if $\tau_X : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the map modulating a given $G$-structure on $X$, then a map $(\phi, \eta) : \tau_X \to \mathbf{c}$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ is a generalized vielbein field on $X$ which exhibits the reduction of the structure group from $G$ to $H$ along $\mathbf{c}$. These $\mathbf{c}$-*geometries* are compatible with pullback along along twist transformations $\eta : \tau_Y \to \tau_X$, namely along maps $\phi : Y \to X$ in $\mathbf{H}$ which are *generalized local diffeomorphisms* in that they are equipped with an equivalence $\eta : \phi^*\mathbf{c} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \tau_X$ .

Of relevance in the T-duality covariant formulation of type II supergravity ("doubled field theory") is the reduction along the inclusion of the maximal compact subgroup into the orthogonal group $O(n,n)$ (where $n = 10$ for full type II supergravity), whose delooping in $\mathbf{H}$ we write

$$\mathbf{typeII} : \mathbf{B}\left(O\left(n\right)\times O\left(n\right)\right) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}O\left(n,n\right) .$$

A spacetime $X$ that is to carry a **typeII**-field accordingly must carry an $O(n,n)$-structure in the first place in that it must be equipped with a lift of its tangent bundle $\tau_X \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)}$ in the slice over $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)$, as discussed above, to an object $\tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}}$ in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}O(n,n)}$. Since there is no suitable homomorphism from $O(n,n)$ to $\mathrm{GL}(n)$, this lift needs to be through a subgroup of $O(n,n)$ that does map to $\mathrm{GL}(n)$. The maximal such group is called the *geometric subgroup* $G_{\mathrm{geom}}(n) \overset{\iota}{\hookrightarrow} \mathrm{GL}(n)$ . We write

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{geom}}(n) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{B}\iota} & \mathbf{B}O(n,n) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{genTan}_n} & & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n) & & \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. Then for $X \in \mathrm{Mfd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ a spacetime, a map $(\tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}}, \eta) : \ \tau_X \longrightarrow \mathbf{genTan}_n$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)}$, hence a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \overset{\tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}}}{\dashrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{geom}}(n) \\ & {\scriptstyle \tau_X} \searrow \ \ \swArrow_{\eta} \ \ \swarrow {\scriptstyle \mathbf{genTan}_n} & \\ & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n) & \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$, is called a choice of *generalized tangent bundle* for $X$. Given such, a map

$$(o_X^{\mathrm{gen}}, e^{\mathrm{gen}}) : \mathbf{B}\iota \circ \tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}} \to \mathbf{typeII}$$

in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}O(n,n)}$ is equivalent to what is called a *generalized vielbein field* for *type II geometry* on $X$. This is a model for the generalized fields of gravity in the T-duality-covariant formulation of type II supergravity backgounds. (See for instance section 2 of [GMPW08] for a review and see section 4 here for discussion in the present context.) So $\mathbf{typeII} \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}O(n,n)}$ is the moduli stack for T-duality covariant *type II gravity* fields.

Similarly, if $X$ is a manifold of even dimension $2n$ equipped with a generalized tangent bundle, then a map $\tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{genComplStruc}$ in the slice with coefficients in the canonical morphism

$$\mathbf{genComplStruc} : \ \mathbf{B}U(n,n) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}O(2n,2n)$$

in a *generalized complex structures* on $\tau_X$. Such **genComplStruc**-fields appear in compactifications of supergravity on *generalized Calabi-Yau manifolds*, such that a global $N = 1$ supersymmetry is preserved.

Notice that the homotopy fiber sequence of the local coefficient bundle **typeII** is

$$O(n)\backslash O(n,n)/O(n) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}O(n) \times O(n) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{typeII}} \mathbf{B}O(n,n)$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. The coset fiber on the left is the familiar local moduli spaces of generalized geometries known from the literature on T-duality and generalized geometry.

Notice also that the theory automatically determines what replaces the notion of *local diffeomorphism* in these generalized type II geometries: the generalized tangent bundles $\tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}}$ now are the twists, and and a twist transformation $(\phi, \eta) : \tau_Y^{\mathrm{gen}} \to \tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}}$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{geom}}(n)}$ is therefore a cohesive map $\phi : Y \to X$ equipped with an equivalence $\eta : \ \phi^* \tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \tau_Y^{\mathrm{gen}}$ in $\mathbf{H}$ between the pullback of the generalized tangent bundle of $Y$ and that of $Y$.

One can consider this setup for moduli objects being arbitrary group homomorphisms $\mathrm{genGeom} : \mathbf{B}K \to \mathbf{B}G$ regarded as objects in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$. For instance the delooped inclusion

$$\mathbf{SuGraCompt}_n : \ \mathbf{B}K_n \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}E_{n(n)}$$

of the maxiomal compact subgroup of the the exceptional Lie groups produces the moduli object for $U$-duality covariant fields of supergravity compactified on an $n$-dimensional fiber. A map $\tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{SuGraCompt}_n$

is a generalized vielbein field in *exceptional generalized geometry* [Hull07]. Another type of exceptional geometry, that we will come back to below in 1.3.5, is that induced by the delooping

$$\mathbf{G_2Struc} : \mathbf{B}G_2 \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(7)$$

of the defining inclusion of the exceptional Lie group $G_2$ as the subgroup of those linear transformations of $\mathbb{R}^7$ which preserves the "associative 3-form" $\langle -, (-) \times (-) \rangle$. For $X$ a manifold of dimension 7, a field $\phi : \tau_X \to \mathbf{G_2Struc}$ is a *$G_2$-structure* on $X$.

So far all the groups in the examples have been ordinary cohesive (Lie) groups, hence *0-truncated* cohesive $\infty$-group objects in $\mathbf{H}$. More generally we have "reduction" of structure groups for general $\infty$-groups exhibited by "higher vielbein fields" which are maps into moduli objects in a slice $\infty$-topos.

One degree higher, the first example comes from central extensions

$$A \longrightarrow \hat{G} \longrightarrow G$$

of ordinary groups. These induce long fiber sequences

$$A \longrightarrow \hat{G} \longrightarrow G \xrightarrow{\Omega \mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}A \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}^2 A$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. Here $\mathbf{c}$ is the (cohesive) group 2-cocycle that classifies the extension, exhibited as a $\mathbf{B}A$-2-bundle $\mathbf{B}\hat{G} \to \mathbf{B}G$. Generally an object $(X, \phi_X) \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}}$ is an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ equipped with a $\mathbf{B}A$-2-bundle (an $A$-bundle gerbe) modulated by a map $\phi_X : X \to \mathbf{B}^2 A$. A field $(\sigma, \eta) : \phi_X \to \mathbf{c}$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^2 A}$ is a choice $\sigma$ of a $G$-principal bundle on $X$ together with an equivalence $\eta : \sigma^* \mathbf{c} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \phi_X$ .

Of particular relevance for physics is of course the example of this which is given by the Spin-extension of the special orthogonal grouop

$$\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2 \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{SpinStruc}} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{w}_2} \mathbf{B}^2 \mathbb{Z}_2 ,$$

which is classified by the universal second Stiefel-Whitney class $\mathbf{w}_2$. (From now on we notationally suppress, for convenience, the dimension $n$ when displaying these groups.) For $o_X : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}$ an orientation structure on a manifold $X$, a map

$$o_X \longrightarrow \mathbf{SpinStruc}$$

in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}}$ is equivalently a choice of Spin-structure on $o_X$. Alternatively, if $\phi : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2 \mathbb{Z}_2$ is the map modulating a given $\mathbb{Z}_2$-2-bundle ($\mathbb{Z}_2$-bundle gerbe) over $X$, then a map $\phi_X \longrightarrow \mathbf{w}_2$ covering $o_X$ is a *$\phi$-twisted spin structure* on $o_X$. An important special case of this is where $\phi = \mathbf{c_1}(E) \bmod 2$ is the mod-2 reduction of the Chern class of a given $U(1)$-principal bundle/complex line bundle on $X$: a $\mathbf{c}_1(E)$-twisted spin structure is equivalently a $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structure on $X$ whose underlying $U(1)$-principal bundle is $E$. More generally, $E$ itself is taken to be part of the field content and so we consider the universal Chern-class

$$\mathbf{c_1} : \mathbf{B}U(1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2 \mathbb{Z}$$

of the universal $U(1)$-principal bundle. There is a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^c & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}U(1) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{Spin^cStruc}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{c}_1 \mathrm{mod} 2} \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{w}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2 \mathbb{Z}_2 \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$ which exhibits the moduli stack of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-principal bundles as the homotopy fiber product of $\mathbf{c}_1$ with $\mathbf{w}_2$. With this, maps

$$o_X \longrightarrow \mathbf{Spin^cStruc}$$

in $\mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}}$ are equivalently $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structures on $X$ (for arbitrary underlying $U(1)$-principal bundle). Notice that the formalism of twist transformations again tells us what the right kind of transformations is along which Spin-structures and $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structures may be pulled back: these are maps $o_Y \longrightarrow o_X$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}}$ and hence in particular those local diffeomorphisms which are *orientation-preserving.*

All of this is just a low-degree step in a whole tower of *higher* Spin-*structures* and *higher* $\mathrm{Spin}^c$*-structure* that appear as fields in the effective higher supergravity theories underlying superstring theory. This tower is the *Whitehead tower* of $\mathbf{B}O$. Its smooth lift through $|-|$ to a tower of higher moduli stacks has been constructed in [FSS10] (an interpreted in physics as discussed now in [SSS09c], reviewed in the broader context of cohesive $\infty$-toposes in section 4 here):

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\vdots & & \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Fivebrane} & & \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{FivebraneStruc}} & & \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2} & \mathbf{B}^7U(1) \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{StringStruc}} & & \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{SpinStruc}} & & \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{w}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{OrientStruc}} & & \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{O} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{w}_1} & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2 \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{OrthStruc}} & & \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL} & &
\end{array}$$

All of these structures can be further twisted. For instance we have the higher analog of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$ given by the delooping 2-group of the homotopy fiver product

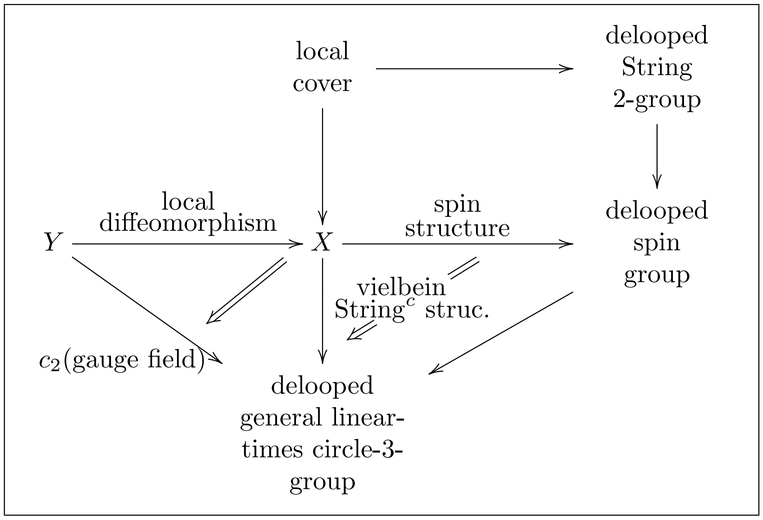
$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}^{c_2} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(\mathrm{E}_8 \times E_8) \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{String}^{c_2}\mathbf{Struc}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{c}_2} \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)
\end{array}$$

of $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$ with the smooth universal second Chern class $\mathbf{c}_2 : \mathbf{B}(E_8 \times E_8) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ . On manifolds $X$ equipped with a Spin-structure $s_X : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}$, a field

$$s_X \longrightarrow \mathbf{String}^{c_2}\mathbf{Struc}$$

in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}}$ is a choice of $\mathrm{String}^{c_2}$-structure, equivalently a choice of $(E_8 \times E_8)$-principal bundle and an equivalence between its Chern-Simons circle 3-bundle and the Chern-Simons circle 3-bundle of the Spin-structure. This is the quantum-anomaly-free instanton sector of a gauge field in the effective heterotic supergravity underlying the heterotic string [SSS09c]. Below in 1.3.4.3 we discuss how the differential refinement of $\mathrm{String}^{c_2}$-structures capture the dynamical field of gravity and the gauge field in heterotic supergravity.

In summary, the specialization of the diagram of 1.3.4.1 to the anomaly-free instanton-sector of heterotic supergravity looks as follows.




There are further variants of all these examples and other further cases of gravity-like fields in physics given by maps in slice toposes. But for the present discussion we leave it at this and now turn to the other fundamental kind of fields in physics besides gravity: gauge fields.

**1.3.4.3 Gauge fields: higher, twisted, non-abelian** The other major kind of (quantum) fields besides the (generalized) fields of gravity that we discussed above are of course *gauge fields*. A seminal result of Dirac's old argument about electric/magnetic *charge quantization* is that a configuration of the plain *electromagnetic field* is mathematically a *connection* on a $U(1)$-principal bundle. Similarly the Yang-Mills field of quantum chromodynamics is mathematically a connection on a $G$-principal bundle, where $G$ is the corresponding gauge group. The connection itself is locally the *gauge potential* traditonally denoted $A$, while the class of the underlying global bundle is the *magnetic background charge* for the case of electromagnetism and is the *instanton sector* for the case of $G = \mathrm{SU}(n)$.

Analogously, it has long been known that the background $B$-field to which the string couples is mathematically a connection on a $U(1)$-principal *2-bundle* (often presented as $U(1)$-bundle gerbe), hence a bundle that is principal under the higher group (2-group) $\mathbf{B}U(1)$. Together with the case of ordinary $U(1)$-principal bundles these are the first two (or three) degrees of what are known as cocycles in *ordinary differential cohomology*, a refinement of cocyles modulated in the coefficient stack $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ by *curvature twists* controled by smooth differential form data. A general formalization of this based on the underlying topological classifying spaces $K(\mathbb{Z}, n+1) \simeq |\mathbf{B}^n U(1)|$, or in fact any infinite loop space $|\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}|$ representing a generalized cohomology theory, has been given in [HoSi05]. Here we refine this construction to the cohesive higher topos case and obtain higher cohesive moduli stacks $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ such that maps $X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ with coefficients in these are differential $\mathbb{G}$-cocycles and hence equivalently (higher) *gauge fields* on $X$ for the (higher, cohesive) gauge group $\mathbb{G}$.

An $\infty$-group $\mathbb{G} \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ is *abelian* or $E_\infty$ if it is equipped with an $n$-fold delooping $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{G} \in \mathbf{H}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. If it is equipped at least with a second delooping $\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$, then we say it is a *braided $\infty$-group*. Equivalently this means that the single delooping object $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$ is itself equipped with the structure of an $\infty$-group. For example the full subcategory of any braided monoidal $\infty$-category on the objects that are invertible under the tensor product is a braided $\infty$-group, hence the name.

For a braided $\infty$-group $\mathbb{G}$ in a cohesive $\infty$-topos, the axioms of cohesion induce a canonical map

$$\mathrm{curv}_{\mathbb{G}} : \ \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$$

to the *de Rham coefficient objects* of the group $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$. On the one hand this may be interpreted as the *Maurer-Cartan form* on th cohesive group $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$. Equivalently, one finds that this is the *universal curvature* *characteristic* of $\mathbb{G}$-principal $\infty$-bundles: the map can be seen to proceed by equipping a $\mathbb{G}$-principal $\infty$-bundle with a *pseudo-connection* and then sending that to the coresponding curvature in the de Rham hypercohomology with coefficients in the $\infty$-Lie algebra of $\mathbb{G}$.

In order to pick among those (higher) pseudo-connections with curvature in hypercohomology those that are genuine (higher) connections characterized by having globally well defined curvature differential form data, let $\Omega_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \in \mathbf{H}$ be a 0-truncated object equipped with a map $\Omega_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$ which has the following property: for every manifold $\Sigma$ the induced map

$$[\Sigma, \Omega_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})] \longrightarrow [\Sigma, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}]$$

is a 1-epimorphism (an effective epimorphism, hence an epimorphism in the sheaf topos under 0-truncation). This expresses the fact that $\Omega_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})$ is a sheaf of flat Lie($\mathbb{G}$)-valued differential forms, in that every de Rham cohomology class over a manifold is represented by such a form.

(More generally one considers a suitable filtration $\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$ , hence a kind of *universal mixed Hodge structure on* $\mathbb{G}$*-cohomology*).

Then the moduli object $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for *differential* $\mathbb{G}$*-cocycles* is the homotopy pullback in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathbb{G}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} \end{array} .$$

For example if $\mathbb{G} \simeq \mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$ in smooth $\infty$-groupoids, then the object $\mathbf{B}^nU(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ defined this way is the $n$-stack which is presented under the Dold-Kan correspondence by the *Deligne-complex* of sheaves. It modulates ordinary differential cohomology.

A configuration of the electromagnetic field on a space $X$ is a map $X \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$. A configuration of the $B$-field background gauge field of the bosonic string is a map $X \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$. (For the superstring the situation is a bit more refined, discussed below.) A configuration of the $C$-field background gauge field of $M$-theory involves (among other data) a map $X \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

**Differential T-duality and $B_n$-geometry**

Above we have seen that the *extended* Lagrangian $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for $G = \mathrm{Spin}, \mathrm{SU}$-Chern-Simons 3d gauge field theory also serves as the twist that defines the moduli stack $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}^{c_2}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of Green-Scharz anomaly-free heterotic background gauge field configurations. In view of this it is natural to ask: does the extended Lagrangian of $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory similarly play a role as part of the background gauge field structure for superstrings? Indeed this turns out to be the case: the extended $U(1)$-Chern-Simons Lagrangian encodes the twist that defines *differential T-duality structures* and $B_n$*-geometry*.

To see this, we observe by direct inspection that what in [KaVa10] is called a *differential* $T$*-duality structure* on a pair of circle-bundles $S^1 \to X_1, X_2 \to Y$ over some base $Y$ and equipped with connections $\nabla_1$ and $\nabla_2$, is a trivialization of the corresponding cup-product circle 3-bundle, hence of the extended Chern-Simons Lagrangian of two-species $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory pulled back along the map that modulates the two circle bundles.

We now say this again in more detail. Let $T^1$ be a circle and $\tilde{T}^1 := \mathrm{Hom}(T^1, U(1))$ the dual circle, with the canonical pairing denoted $\langle -,-\rangle : T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1 \to U(1)$. Then the first spacetime $X_1 \to Y$ is modulated by a map $\mathbf{c}_1 : Y \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}T^1_{\mathrm{conn}}$ , and its T-dual $\tilde{c}_1 : X_2 \to Y$ by a map $\tilde{\mathbf{c}}_1 : Y \to \mathbf{B}\tilde{T}^1_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

Now the pairing and the cup product together form a universal characteristic map of moduli stacks

$$\langle - \cup - \rangle : \mathbf{B}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \ .$$

By the above discussion, this has a differential refinement

$$\langle - \cup - \rangle : \mathbf{B}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

which is the extended Lagrangian of $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory in 3d. If instead we regard the same map as a 3-cocycle, it modulates a higher group extension $\mathrm{String}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1) \to T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1$, sitting in a long fiber sequence of higher moduli stacks of the form

$$\cdots \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(1) \longrightarrow \mathrm{String}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1) \longrightarrow (T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3$$

One sees from this that a *differential T-duality structure* on $(X_1, X_2)$ as considered in def. 2.1 of [KaVa10] is equivalently – when refined to the context of smooth higher geometry – a lift of $(\mathbf{c}_1, \tilde{\mathbf{c}}_1)$ through the left vertical projection in the homotopy pullback square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{4 \leq \bullet \leq 3}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\langle - \cup - \rangle} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array} ,$$

hence is a map in the slice over $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, hence is a *differential* $\mathrm{String}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1)$*-structure* on the given data. Along the lines of the discussion in [FSS10] one finds, as for the twisted differential String-structures discussed above, that such a lift locally corresponds to a choice of 3-form $H$ satisfying

$$d_{\mathrm{dR}} H = \langle F_{A_1} \wedge F_{A_2} \rangle ,$$

where $A_1, A_2$ are the local connection forms of the two circle bundles. This is the local structure that has been referred to as $B_n$*-geometry*, see the corresponding discussion and references given in [FSS12c].

Observe that by the universal property of homotopy fibers, the underlying trivialization of the cup product circle 3-bundle corresponds to a choice of factorization of $(\mathbf{c}_1, \tilde{\mathbf{c}}_1)$ as shown on the bottom of the following diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X_1 \times_Y X_2 & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(T^1 \times \tilde{T}^1) \end{array} .$$

Forming the consecutive homotopy pullback of the point inclusion as given by these two squares, the map $X_1 \times_Y X_2 \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ induced by the universal property of the homotopy pullback modulates a circle 2-bundle ($U(1)$-bundle gerbe) on the correspondence space. This is the bundle gerbe on the correspondence space considered in 2.2, 2.3 of [KaVa10]. Notice that this is just a special case of the general phenomenon of twisted higher bundles, as laid out in [NSS12a].

**1.3.4.4 Gauge invariance, equivariance and general covariance** The notion of *gauge transformation* and *gauge invariance* is built right into higher geometry. Any object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ in general contains not just (local) points, but also gauge equivalences between these, gauge-of-gauge equivalences between those, and so on. A map $\exp(iS(-)) : \mathbf{Fields} \to U(1)$ is automatically a *gauge invariant function* with respect to whatever gauge transformations the species of fields encoded by the moduli object **Fields** encodes.

Specifically, if an $\infty$-group $G$ acts on some $Y$, then a *G-equivariance* structure on a map $Y \to A$ is an extension

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y & \longrightarrow & A \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \\ Y/\!/G & & \end{array}$$

along the canonical quotient projection.

If $A$ here is a 0-truncated object such that $U(1)$, then the existence of such an extension is just a property. But if $A$ has itself gauge equivalences, say if $A = \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for positive $n$-then a choice of such an extension is genuine extra structure. For $n = 1$ this is the familiar structure on an *equivariant bundle*. For higher $n$ it is a suitable higher order generalization of this notion.

Equivariance is preserved by transgression. If $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is an extended Lagrangian, hence equivalently a equivariant $n$-connection on the space of fields, then for $\Sigma_k$ any object the mapping space $[\Sigma_k, \mathbf{Fields}]$ contains the gauge equivalences of the given field species on $\Sigma$ and accordingly the transgressed Lagrangian

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k} [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{L}]) \; : \; [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{Fields}] \to \mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

is gauge invariant (precisely: carries gauge-equivariant structure).

A particular kind of gauge equivalence/equivariance is the *diffeomorphism equivariance* of a *generally covariant field theory*. In such a field theory two fields $\phi_1, \phi_2 : \Sigma \to \mathbf{Fields}$ are to be regarded as gauge equivalent if there is a diffeomorphism, hence an automorphism $\alpha : \Sigma \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Sigma$ in $\mathbf{H}$, such that $\alpha^* \phi_2 \simeq \phi_1$.

Formally this means that for generally covariant field theries the field space $[\Sigma, \mathbf{Fields}]$ over a given worldvolume $\Sigma$ is to be formed in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BAut}}(\Sigma) \simeq \mathbf{Aut}(\Sigma)\mathrm{Act}$, with $\Sigma$ understood as equipped with the defining $\mathbf{Aut}(\Sigma)$-action and with $\mathbf{Fields}$ equipped with the trivial $\mathbf{Aut}(\Sigma)$-action, we write

$$[\Sigma, \mathbf{Fields}]_{/\mathbf{BAut}(\Sigma)} \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BAut}(\Sigma)}$$

for emphasis. To see this one observes that generally for $(V_1, \rho_1), (V_2, \rho_2) \in \mathbf{GAct}$ two objects equipped with $G$-action, their mapping space $[V_1, V_2]_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ formed in the slice is the absolute mapping space $[V_1, V_2]$ formed in $\mathbf{H}$ and equipped with the *conjugation action* of $G$, under which an element $g \in G$ acts on an element $f : V_1 \to V_2$ by sending it to $\rho_2(g)^{-1} \circ f \circ \rho_1(g)$.

Hence the mapping space $[\Sigma, \mathbf{Fields}]_{/\mathbf{BAut}(\Sigma)}$ formed in the slice corresponds in $\mathbf{H}$ to the fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Sigma & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Aut}(\Sigma)\backslash\backslash[\Sigma, \mathbf{Fields}] \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{BAut}(\Sigma) \end{array}$$

and a *generally covariant field theory* for the given species of fields is one whose configuration spaces are $\mathbf{Aut}(\Sigma)\backslash\backslash[\Sigma, \mathbf{Fields}]$, the action groupoids of the $\infty$-groupoid of field configurations on $\Sigma$ by the diffeomorphism action on $\Sigma$.

Ordinary 3d Chern-Simons theory is strictly speaking to be regared as a generally covarnat field theory, but this is often not made explicit, due to a special property of 3d Chern-Simons theory: if two *on-shell* field configurations are related by a diffeomorphism (connected to the identity), then they are already gauge equivalent also by a gauge transformation in $[\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$. This holds in fact also for all higher Chern-Simons theories that come from *binary* invariant polynomials, but it does not hold fully generally. Even when this is the case, supporessing the general covariance is a dubious move, since while the gauge equivalence classes may coincide, $\tau_0[\Sigma, \mathbf{Fields}]_{\mathrm{onshell}} \simeq \tau_0 \mathbf{Aut}(\Sigma)\backslash\backslash[\Sigma, \mathbf{Fields}]_{\mathrm{onshell}}$, the two full homotopy types still need not be equivalent and hence the corresponding quantum field theories may not be equivalent.

### 1.3.5 Higher geometric prequantum theory

We had indicated in section 1.4 how a single extended Lagrangian, given by a map of universal higher moduli stacks $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, induces, by transgression, circle $(n-k)$-bundles with connection

$$\mathrm{hol}_{\Sigma_k} \mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_k, \mathbf{L}) \; : \; \mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

on moduli stacks of field configurations over each closed $k$-manifold $\Sigma_k$. In codimension 1, hence for $k = n-1$, this reproduces the ordinary *prequantum circle bundle* of the $n$-dimensional Chern-Simons type theory, as discussed in section 1.4.1.3. The space of sections of the associated line bundle is the space of *prequantum states* of the theory. This becomes the space of genuine quantum states after choosing a *polarization* (i.e., a decomposition of the moduli space of fields into *canonical coordinates* and *canonical momenta*) and restricting to polarized sections (i.e., those depending only on the canonical coordinates). But moreover, for each $\Sigma_k$ we may regard $\mathrm{hol}_{\Sigma_k}\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_k, \mathbf{L})$ as a *higher prequantum bundle* of the theory in higher codimension and hence consider its prequantum geometry in higher codimension.

We discuss now some generalities of such a higher geometric prequantum theory and then show how this perspective sheds a useful light on the gauge coupling of the open string, as part of the transgression of prequantum 2-states of Chern-Simons theory in codimension 2 to prequantum states in codimension 1.

We indicate now the basic concepts of higher extended prequantum theory and how they reproduce traditional prequantum theory.

Consider a (pre)-$n$-plectic form, given by a map

$$\omega : X \longrightarrow \Omega^{n+1}(-;\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. A *$n$-plectomorphism* of $(X, \omega)$ is an auto-equivalence of $\omega$ regarded as an object in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}}$, hence a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X \\ & {}_{\omega}\searrow \quad \swarrow_{\omega} & \\ & \Omega^{n+1}(-;\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{cl}} & \end{array} .$$

A *prequantization* of $(X, \omega)$ is a choice of prequantum line bundle, hence a choice of lift $\nabla$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & {}^{\nabla}\nearrow & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} \\ X & \xrightarrow{\omega} & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} ,$$

modulating a circle $n$-bundle with connection on $X$. We write $\mathbf{c}(\nabla) : X \xrightarrow{\nabla} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ for the underlying $(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1))$-principal $n$-bundle. An autoequivalence

$$\hat{O} : \nabla \xrightarrow{\simeq} \nabla$$

of the prequantum $n$-bundle regarded as an object in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$, hence a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X \\ & {}_{\nabla}\searrow \;\; \swArrow_{O} \;\; \swarrow_{\nabla} & \\ & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array}$$

is an (exponentiated) *prequantum operator* or *quantomorphism* or *regular contact transformation* of the prequantum geometry $(X, \nabla)$, forming an $\infty$-group in $\mathbf{H}$. The $L_\infty$-algebra of this *quantomorphism $\infty$-group* is the higher *Poisson bracket* Lie algebra of the system. If $X$ is equipped with abelian group structure then the quantomorphisms covering these translations form the *Heisenberg $\infty$-group.* The homotopy labeled $O$ above diagram is the *Hamiltonian* of the prequantum operator. The image of the quantomorphisms in the symplectomorphisms (given by composition the above diagram with the curvature morphism $F_{(-)}$ : $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}$) is the group of *Hamiltonian $n$-plectomorphisms.* A lift of an $\infty$-group action $G \to \mathbf{Aut}(X)$ on $X$ from automorphisms of $X$ (diffeomorphism) to quantomorphisms is a *Hamiltonian action*, infinitesimally (and dually) a *momentum map.*

To define higher prequantum states we fix a representation $(V, \rho)$ of the circle $n$-group $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$. By the general results in [NSS12a] this is equivalent to fixing a homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{V} & \longrightarrow & \underline{V}//\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1) \\ & & \downarrow^{\rho} \\ & & \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. The vertical morphism here is the *universal $\rho$-associated $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundle* and characterizes $\rho$ itself. Given such, a section of the $V$-fiber bundle which is $\rho$-associated to $\mathbf{c}(\nabla)$ is equivalently a map

$$\Psi : \mathbf{c}(\nabla) \longrightarrow \rho$$

in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^n U(1)}$. This is a higher *prequantum state* of the prequantum geometry $(X, \nabla)$. Since every prequantum operator $\hat{O}$ as above in particular is an auto-equivalence of the underlying prequantum bundle $\hat{O} : \mathbf{c}(\nabla) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{c}(\nabla)$ it canonically acts on prequantum states given by maps as above simply by precomposition

$$\Psi \mapsto \hat{O} \circ \Psi \,.$$

Notice also that from the perspective of section 7.1.1 all this has an equivalent interpretation in terms of twisted cohomology: a preqantum state is a cocycle in twisted $V$-cohomology, with the twist being the prequantum bundle. And a prequantum operator/quantomorphism is equivalently a twist automorphism (or "generalized local diffeomorphism").

For instance if $n = 1$ then $\omega$ is an ordinary (pre)symplectic form and $\nabla$ is the connection on a circle bundle. In this case the above notions of prequantum operators, quantomorphism group, Heisenberg group and Poisson bracket Lie algebra reproduce exactly all the traditional notions if $X$ is a smooth manifold, and generalize them to the case that $X$ is for instance an orbifold or even itself a higher moduli stack, as we have seen. The canonical representation of the circle group $U(1)$ on the complex numbers yields a homotopy fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathbb{C}} & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbb{C}}//\underline{U}(1) \\ & & \downarrow^{\rho} \\ & & \mathbf{B}U(1) \end{array} \quad ,$$

where $\underline{\mathbb{C}}//\underline{U}(1)$ is the stack corresponding to the ordinary action groupoid of the action of $U(1)$ on $\mathbb{C}$, and where the vertical map is the canonical functor forgetting the data of the local $\mathbb{C}$-valued functions. This is the *universal complex line bundle* associated to the universal $U(1)$-principal bundle. One readily checks that a prequantum state $\Psi : \mathbf{c}(\nabla) \to \rho$, hence a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\quad\sigma\quad} & \underline{\mathbb{C}}//\underline{U}(1) \\ & {}_{\mathbf{c}(\nabla)}\searrow \quad \swarrow_{\rho} & \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1) & \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$ is indeed equivalently a section of the complex line bundle canonically associated to $\mathbf{c}(\nabla)$ and that under this equivalence the pasting composite

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow[O]{\simeq} & X & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbb{C}}//\underline{U}(1) \\ & {}_{\mathbf{c}(\nabla)}\searrow & \swArrow \ \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}(\nabla)} & \swarrow_{\rho} & \\ & & \mathbf{B}U(1) & & \end{array}$$

is the result of the traditional formula for the action of the prequantum operator $\hat{O}$ on $\Psi$.

Instead of forgetting the connection on the prequantum bundle in the above composite, one can equivalently equip the prequantum state with a differential refinement, namely with its *covariant derivative* and then exhibit the prequantum operator action directly. Explicitly, let $\mathbb{C}//U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ denote the quotient stack $(\underline{\mathbb{C}} \times \Omega^1(-,\mathbb{R}))//\underline{U}(1)$ , with $U(1)$ acting diagonally. This sits in a homotopy fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathbb{C}} & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbb{C}}//\underline{U}(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_{\mathrm{conn}}} \\ & & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array}$$

which may be thought of as the differential refinement of the above fiber sequence $\underline{\mathbb{C}} \to \underline{\mathbb{C}}//\underline{U}(1) \to \mathbf{B}U(1)$. (Compare this to section 1.4.1.5, where we had similarly seen the differential refinement of the fiber sequence $G/\underline{T}_\lambda \to \mathbf{B}T_\lambda \to \mathbf{B}G$, which analogously characterizes the canonical action of $G$ on the coset space $G/T_\lambda$.) Prequantum states are now equivalently maps

$$\widehat{\mathbf{\Psi}} : \nabla \longrightarrow \rho_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$. This formulation realizes a section of an associated line bundle equivalently as a connection on what is sometimes called a groupoid bundle. As such, $\widehat{\mathbf{\Psi}}$ has not just a 2-form curvature (which is that of the prequantum bundle) but also a 1-form curvature: this is the covariant derivative $\nabla\sigma$ of the section.

Such a relation between sections of higher associated bundles and higher covariant derivatives holds more generally. In the next degree for $n = 2$ one finds that the quantomorphism 2-group is the Lie 2-group which integrates the *Poisson bracket Lie 2-algebra* of the underlying 2-plectic geometry as introduced in [Rog11a]. In the next section we look at an example for $n = 2$ in more detail and show how it interplays with the above example under transgression.

The above higher prequantum theory becomes a genuine quantum theory after a suitable higher analog of a choice of *polarization*. In particular, for $\mathbf{L} : X \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ an extended Lagrangian of an $n$-dimensional quantum field theory as discussed in all our examples here, and for $\Sigma_k$ any closed manifold, the polarized prequantum states of the transgressed prequantum bundle $\mathrm{hol}_{\Sigma_k}\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_k, \mathbf{L})$ should form the $(n-k)$-vector spaces of higher quantum states in codimension $k$. These states would be assigned to $\Sigma_k$ by the *extended quantum field theory*, in the sense of [L-TFT], obtained from the extended Lagrangian $\mathbf{L}$ by extended geometric quantization. There is an equivalent reformulation of this last step for $n = 1$ given simply by the push-forward of the prequantum line bundle in K-theory (see section 6.8 of [GGK02]) and so one would expect that accordingly the last step of higher geometric quantization involves similarly a push-forward of the associated $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundles above in some higher generalized cohomology theory. But this remains to be investigated.

## 1.4 Examples and applications

We consider now some more or less traditional examples of pre-quantum field theories, indicating how they are secretly more properly regarded as examples of the higher geometric prequantum field theory discussed above.

### 1.4.1 Prequantum 3d Chern-Simons theory

For $G$ a simply connected compact simple Lie group, the above construction of the refined Chern-Weil homomorphism yields a differential characteristic map of moduli stacks

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

which is the smooth and differential refinement of the universal characteristic class $[c] \in H^4(BG, \mathbb{Z})$.

We discuss now how this serves as the *extended* Lagrangian for 3d Chern-Simons theory in that its *transgression* to mapping stacks out of $k$-dimensional manifolds yields all the "geometric prequantum" data of Chern-Simons theory in the corresponding dimension, in the sense of geometric quantization. For the purpose of this exposition we use terms such as "prequantum $n$-bundle" freely without formal definition. We expect the reader can naturally see at least vaguely the higher prequantum picture alluded to here. A more formal survey of these notions is in section 1.3.4.

The following paragraphs draw from [FSS13a].

If $X$ is a compact oriented manifold without boundary, then there is a fiber integration in differential cohomology lifting fiber integration in integral cohomology [HoSi05]:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{H}^{n+\dim X}(X \times Y; \mathbb{Z}) & \xrightarrow{\int_X} & \hat{H}^n(Y; \mathbb{Z}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ H^{n+\dim X}(X \times Y; \mathbb{Z}) & \xrightarrow{\int_X} & H^n(Y; \mathbb{Z}) \, . \end{array}$$

In [GoTe00] Gomi and Terashima describe an explicit lift of this at the level of Čech-Deligne cocycles. Such a lift has a natural interpretation as a morphism

$$\mathrm{hol}_X : \mathbf{Maps}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+\dim X} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

from the $(n + \dim X)$-stack of moduli of $U(1)$-$(n + \dim X)$-bundles with connection over $X$ to the $n$-stack of $U(1)$-$n$-bundles with connection, 6.4.16. Therefore, if $\Sigma_k$ is a compact oriented manifold of dimension $k$ with $0 \le k \le 3$, we have a composition

$$\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_k, \hat{\mathbf{c}})} \mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{hol}_{\Sigma_k}} \mathbf{B}^{3-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \, .$$

This is the canonical $U(1)$-$(3-k)$-bundle with connection over the moduli space of principal $G$-bundles with connection over $\Sigma_k$ induced by $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$: the *transgression* of $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$ to the mapping space. Composing on the right with the curvature morphism we get the underlying canonical closed $(4 - k)$-form

$$\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \to \Omega^{4-k}(-; \mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

on this moduli space. In other words, the moduli stack of principal $G$-bundles with connection over $\Sigma_k$ carries a canonical *pre-$(3-k)$-plectic structure* (the higher order generalization of a symplectic structure, [Rog11a]) and, moreover, this is equipped with a canonical geometric prequantization: the above $U(1)$-$(3-k)$-bundle with connection.

We now discuss in more detail the cases $k = 0, 1, 2, 3$.

- 1.4.1.1 – $k = 0$: the universal Chern-Simons 3-connection $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$;
- 1.4.1.2 – $k = 1$: the Wess-Zumino-Witten gerbe;
- 1.4.1.3 – $k = 2$: Symplectic structure on the moduli of flat connections;
- 1.4.1.4 – $k = 3$: the Chern-Simons action functional.

**1.4.1.1 $k = 0$: the universal Chern-Simons 3-connection $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$** The connected 0-manifold $\Sigma_0$ is the point and, by definition of **Maps**, one has a canonical identification

$$\mathbf{Maps}(*, \mathbf{S}) \cong \mathbf{S}$$

for any (higher) stack $\mathbf{S}$. Hence the morphism

$$\mathbf{Maps}(*, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{Maps}(*,\hat{\mathbf{c}})} \mathbf{Maps}(*, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$$

is nothing but the universal differential characteristic map $\hat{\mathbf{c}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ that refines the universal characteristic class $c$. This map modulates a circle 3-bundle with connection (bundle 2-gerbe) on the universal moduli stack of $G$-principal connections. For $\nabla : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ any given $G$-principal connection on some $X$, the pullback

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}}(\nabla) : \; X \xrightarrow{\nabla} \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{c}}} \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

is a 3-bundle (bundle 2-gerbe) on $X$ which is sometimes in the literature called the *Chern-Simons 2-gerbe* of the given connection $\nabla$. Accordingly, $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$ modulates the *universal* Chern-Simons bundle 2-gerbe with universal 3-connection. From the point of view of higher geometric quantization, this is the *prequantum 3-bundle* of extended prequantum Chern-Simons theory.

This means that the prequantum $U(1)$-$(3-k)$-bundles associated with $k$-dimensional manifolds are all determined by the prequantum $U(1)$-3-bundle associated with the point, in agreement with the formulation of fully extended topological field theories [FHLT09]. We will denote by the symbol $\omega^{(4)}_{\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}}$ the pre-3-plectic 4-form induced on $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ by the curvature morphism.

**1.4.1.2 $k = 1$: the Wess-Zumino-Witten gerbe** We now come to the transgression of the extended Chern-Simons Lagrangian to the closed connected 1-manifold, the circle $\Sigma_1 = S^1$. Notice that, on the one hand, we can think of the mapping stack $\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \simeq \mathbf{Maps}(S^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}})$ as a kind of moduli stack of $G$-connections on the circle – up to the subtlety of differential concretification discussed in 5.2.13.4. On the other hand, we can think of that mapping stack as the *free loop space* of the universal moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

The subtlety here is related to the differential refinement, so it is instructive to first discard the differential refinement and consider just the smooth characteristic map $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ which underlies the extended Chern-Simons Lagrangian and which modulates the universal circle 3-bundle on $\mathbf{B}G$ (without connection). Now, for every pointed stack $* \to \mathbf{S}$ we have the corresponding (categorical) *loop space* $\Omega\mathbf{S} := * \times_{\mathbf{S}} *$, which is the homotopy pullback of the point inclusion along itself. Applied to the moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G$ this recovers the Lie group $G$, identified with the sheaf (i.e, the 0-stack) of smooth functions with target $G$: $\Omega\mathbf{B}G \simeq G$. This kind of looping/delooping equivalence is familiar from the homotopy theory of classifying spaces; but notice that since we are working with smooth (higher) stacks, the loop space $\Omega\mathbf{B}G$ also knows the smooth structure of the group $G$, i.e. it knows $G$ as a Lie group. Similarly, we have

$$\Omega\mathbf{B}^3U(1) \simeq \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$$

and so forth in higher degrees. Since the looping operation is functorial, we may also apply it to the characteristic map $\mathbf{c}$ itself to obtain a map

$$\Omega\mathbf{c} : G \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$$

which modulates a $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-principal 2-bundle on the Lie group $G$. This is also known as the *WZW-bundle gerbe*; see for instance [ScWa]. The reason, as discussed there and as we will see in a moment, is that this is the 2-bundle that underlies the 2-connection with surface holonomy over a worldsheet given by the Wess-Zumino-Witten action functional. However, notice first that there is more structure implied here: by the discussion in 6.4.5.2, for any pointed stack $\mathbf{S}$ there is a natural equivalence $\Omega\mathbf{S} \simeq \mathbf{Maps}_*(\Pi(S^1), \mathbf{S})$, between the loop space object $\Omega\mathbf{S}$ and the moduli stack of *pointed maps* from the categorical circle $\int(S^1) \simeq \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}$ to $\mathbf{S}$. On the other hand, if we do not fix the base point then we obtain the *free loop space object* $\mathcal{L}\mathbf{S} \simeq \mathbf{Maps}(\int(S^1), \mathbf{S})$. Since a map $\int(\Sigma) \to \mathbf{B}G$ is equivalently a map $\Sigma \to \flat\mathbf{B}G$, i.e., a flat $G$-principal connection on $\Sigma$, the free loop space $\mathcal{L}\mathbf{B}G$ is equivalently the moduli stack of flat $G$-principal connections on $S^1$. We will come back to this perspective in section 5.2.13.4 below. The homotopies that do not fix the base point act by conjugation on loops and hence we have, for any smooth (higher) group, that

$$\mathcal{L}\mathbf{B}G \simeq G//_{\mathrm{Ad}}G$$

is the (homotopy) quotient of the adjoint action of $G$ on itself; see [NSS12a] for details on homotopy actions of smooth higher groups. For $G$ a Lie group this is the familiar adjoint action quotient stack. But the expression holds fully generally. Notably, we also have

$$\mathcal{L}\mathbf{B}^3U(1) \simeq \mathbf{B}^2U(1)//_{\mathrm{Ad}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$$

and so forth in higher degrees. However, in this case, since the smooth 3-group $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ is abelian (it is a groupal $E_\infty$-algebra) the adjoint action splits off in a direct factor and we have a projection

$$\mathcal{L}\mathbf{B}^3U(1) \simeq \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \times (*//\mathbf{B}^2U(1)) \xrightarrow{p_1} \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \ .$$

In summary, this means that the map $\Omega\mathbf{c}$ modulating the WZW 2-bundle over $G$ descends to the adjoint quotient to the map

$$p_1 \circ \mathcal{L}\mathbf{c} : G//_{\mathrm{Ad}}G \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)\,,$$

and this means that the WZW 2-bundle is canonically equipped with the structure of an $\mathrm{ad}_G$-*equivariant* bundle gerbe, a crucial feature of the WZW bundle gerbe.

We emphasize that the derivation here is fully general and holds for any smooth (higher) group $G$ and any smooth characteristic map $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^nU(1)$. Each such pair induces a WZW-type $(n-1)$-bundle on the smooth (higher) group $G$ modulated by $\Omega\mathbf{c}$ and equipped with $G$-equivariant structure exhibited by $p_1 \circ \mathcal{L}\mathbf{c}$. We discuss such higher examples of higher Chern-Simons-type theories with their higher WZW-type functionals further below in section 7.2.2.

We now turn to the differential refinement of this situation. In analogy to the above construction, but taking care of the connection data in the extended Lagrangian $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$, we find a homotopy commutative diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \mathbf{Maps}(S^1; \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{Maps}(S^1, \hat{\mathbf{c}})} & \mathbf{Maps}(S^1; \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) & & \\
 & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{hol}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{hol}} & & \\
G & \longrightarrow & G//_{\mathrm{Ad}}G & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{wzw}} & \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}//_{\mathrm{Ad}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}
\end{array} ,$$

where the vertical maps are obtained by forming holonomies of (higher) connections along the circle. The lower horizontal row is the differential refinement of $\Omega\mathbf{c}$: it modulates the Wess-Zumino-Witten $U(1)$-bundle gerbe with connection

$$\mathbf{wzw} : G \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \ .$$

That **wzw** is indeed the correct differential refinement can be seen, for instance, by interpreting the construction by Carey-Johnson-Murray-Stevenson-Wang in [CJMSW05, section 3] in terms of the above diagram. There is constructed a $G$-principal connection

$$\nabla_{\mathrm{univ}} : G \times S^1 \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

on the manifold $G \times S^1$ with the property that its holonomy around $\{g\} \times S^1$ is $g$. By the Hom-adjunction this is equivalently a morphism

$$\tilde{\nabla}_{\mathrm{univ}} : G \longrightarrow [S^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$$

which makes this diagram commute:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
 & & \mathbf{Maps}(S^1;\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \\
 & \overset{(P_{x_0},\nabla_{x_0})}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{hol}} \\
G & \longrightarrow & G//_{\mathrm{Ad}}G \; ,
\end{array}
$$

Correspondingly, we have a total homotopy commutative diagram of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \mathbf{Maps}(S^1;\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{Maps}(S^1,\hat{\mathbf{c}})} & \mathbf{Maps}(S^1;\mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) & & \\
 & \overset{(P_{x_0},\nabla_{x_0})}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{hol}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{hol}} & \overset{\mathrm{hol}_{S^1}}{\searrow} & \\
G & \longrightarrow & G//_{\mathrm{Ad}}G & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{wzw}} & \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}//_{\mathrm{Ad}}\mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \; .
\end{array}
$$

Then Proposition 3.4 from [CJMSW05] identifies the upper path (and hence also the lower path) from $G$ to $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ with the Wess-Zumino-Witten bundle gerbe.

Passing to equivalence classes of global sections, we see that **wzw** induces, for any smooth manifold $X$, a natural map $C^\infty(X;G) \to \hat{H}^2(X;\mathbb{Z})$. In particular, if $X = \Sigma_2$ is a compact Riemann surface, we can further integrate over $X$ to get

$$
wzw : C^\infty(\Sigma_2;G) \to \hat{H}^2(X;\mathbb{Z}) \xrightarrow{\int_{\Sigma_2}} U(1) \; .
$$

This is the *topological term* in the Wess-Zumino-Witten model; see [Ga88, FrWi99, CJM02]. Notice how the fact that **wzw** factors through $G//_{\mathrm{Ad}}G$ gives the conjugation invariance of the Wess-Zumino-Witten bundle gerbe, and hence of the topological term in the Wess-Zumino-Witten model.

#### 1.4.1.3 $k = 2$: Symplectic structure on the moduli of flat connections

For $\Sigma_2$ a compact Riemann surface, the transgression of the extended Lagrangian $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$ yields a map

$$
\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_2;\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_2,\hat{\mathbf{c}})} \mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_2;\mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{hol}_{\Sigma_2}} \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \, ,
$$

modulating a circle-bundle with connection on the moduli space of gauge fields on $\Sigma_2$. The underlying curvature of this connection is the map obtained by composing this with

$$
\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{F_{(-)}} \Omega^2(-;\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{cl}} \quad ,
$$

which gives the canonical pre-symplectic 2-form

$$
\omega : \; \mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_2;\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \longrightarrow \Omega^2(-;\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{cl}}
$$

on the moduli stack of principal $G$-bundles with connection on $\Sigma_2$. Equivalently, this is the transgression of the invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle \, : \; \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}}$ to the mapping stack out of $\Sigma_2$. The restriction of this 2-form to the moduli stack $G\mathbf{FlatConn}(\Sigma_2)$ of flat $G$-principal connections[14] on $\Sigma_2$ induces a canonical

[14] To see that the form indeed descends to that moduli stack one may use the component presentation from section 1.1.2.4 and compute for each plot $U \to [\Sigma_2, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ the Chern-Simons 3-form of a 1-form on $\Sigma \times U$ as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{CS}(A_U + A_\Sigma)_{U,\Sigma,\Sigma} &= k_{ab} A^a_\Sigma \wedge d_U A^b_\Sigma + k_{ab} A^a_U \wedge d_\Sigma A^b_\Sigma + \underbrace{k_{ab} A^a_\Sigma \wedge d_\Sigma A^b_U}_{\substack{d_\Sigma (k_{ab} A^a_U \wedge A^b_\Sigma) \\ + k_{ab} A^a_U d_\Sigma A^b_\Sigma}} + 1 \cdot C_{abc} A^a_U \wedge A^b_\Sigma \wedge A^c_\Sigma \\
&= k_{ab} A^a_\Sigma \wedge d_U A^b_\Sigma + d_\Sigma (k_{ab} A^a_U \wedge A^b_\Sigma) + 2 k_{ab} A^a_U \underbrace{(d_\Sigma A^b_\Sigma + \tfrac{1}{2} C^b{}_{cd} A^c_\Sigma A^d_\Sigma)}_{(F^b_A)_{\Sigma,\Sigma}}
\end{aligned}
$$

The first term is the symplectic pre-potential that should appear on the moduli stack of flat connections on a surface $\Sigma$. The second term vanishes when integrated over a closed $\Sigma$. The third vanishes exactly when evaluated on flat connections.

symplectic structure on the moduli space

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\pi_1(\Sigma_2), G)/_{\mathrm{Ad}}G$$

of flat $G$-bundles on $\Sigma_2$. Such a symplectic structure was identified as the phase space structure of Chern-Simons theory in [Wi98c].

To see more explicitly what this form $\omega$ is, consider any test manifold $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$. Over this the map of stacks $\omega$ is a function which sends a $G$-principal connection $A \in \Omega^1(U \times \Sigma_2)$ (using that every $G$-principal bundle over $U \times \Sigma_2$ is trivializable) to the 2-form

$$\int_{\Sigma_2} \langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle \in \Omega^2(U)\,.$$

Now if $A$ represents a field in the phase space, hence an element in the concretification of the mapping stack, then it has no "leg" [15] along $U$, and so it is a 1-form on $\Sigma_2$ that depends smoothly on the parameter $U$: it is a $U$-parameterized *variation* of such a 1-form. Accordingly, its curvature 2-form splits as

$$F_A = F_A^{\Sigma_2} + d_U A\,,$$

where $F_A^{\Sigma_2} := d_{\Sigma_2} A + \frac{1}{2}[A \wedge A]$ is the $U$-parameterized collection of curvature forms on $\Sigma_2$. The other term is the *variational differential* of the $U$-collection of forms. Since the fiber integration map $\int_{\Sigma_2} : \Omega^4(U \times \Sigma_2) \to \Omega^2(U)$ picks out the component of $\langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle$ with two legs along $\Sigma_2$ and two along $U$, integrating over the former we have that

$$\omega|_U = \int_{\Sigma_2} \langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle = \int_{\Sigma_2} \langle d_U A \wedge d_U A \rangle \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(U)\,.$$

In particular if we consider, without loss of generality, $(U = \mathbb{R}^2)$-parameterized variations and expand

$$d_U A = (\delta_1 A) du^1 + (\delta_2 A) du^2 \in \Omega^2(\Sigma_2 \times U)\,,$$

then

$$\omega|_U = \int_{\Sigma_2} \langle \delta_1 A, \delta_2 A \rangle\,.$$

In this form the symplectic structure appears, for instance, in prop. 3.17 of part I of [Fr95] (in [Wi96] this corresponds to (3.2)).

In summary, this means that the circle bundle with connection obtained by transgression of the extended Lagrangian $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$ is a *geometric prequantization* of the phase space of 3d Chern-Simons theory. Observe that traditionally prequantization involves an arbitrary *choice*: the choice of prequantum bundle with connection whose curvature is the given symplectic form. Here we see that in *extended* prequantization this choice is eliminated, or at least reduced: while there may be many differential cocycles lifting a given curvature form, only few of them arise by transgression from a higher differential cocycles in top codimension. In other words, the restrictive choice of the single geometric prequantization of the invariant polynomial $\langle -, - \rangle : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}}$ by $\hat{\mathbf{c}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ down in top codimension induces canonical choices of prequantization over all $\Sigma_k$ in all lower codimensions $(n-k)$.

**1.4.1.4** **$k = 3$: the Chern-Simons action functional** Finally, for $\Sigma_3$ a compact oriented 3-manifold without boundary, transgression of the extended Lagrangian $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$ produces the morphism

$$\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_3; \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_3, \hat{\mathbf{c}})} \mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_3; \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{hol}_{\Sigma_3}} \underline{U}(1)\,.$$

Since the morphisms in $\mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_3; \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}})$ are *gauge transformations* between field configurations, while $\underline{U}(1)$ has no non-trivial morphisms, this map necessarily gives a *gauge invariant* $U(1)$-valued function on

[15] That is, when written in local coordinates $(u, \sigma)$ on $U \times \Sigma_2$, then $A = A_i(u,\sigma) du^i + A_j(u,\sigma) d\sigma^j$ reduces to the second summand.

field configurations. Indeed, evaluating over the point and passing to isomorphism classes (and hence to gauge equivalence classes), this induces the *Chern-Simons action functional*

$$S_{\hat{\mathbf{c}}} : \{G\text{-bundles with connection on } \Sigma_3\}/\text{iso} \to U(1)\ .$$

It follows from the description of $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$ that if the principal $G$-bundle $P \to \Sigma_3$ is trivializable then

$$S_{\hat{\mathbf{c}}}(P, \nabla) = \exp 2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_3} \mathrm{CS}_3(A)\ ,$$

where $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma_3, \mathfrak{g})$ is the $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form on $\Sigma_3$ representing the connection $\nabla$ in a chosen trivialization of $P$. This is actually always the case, but notice two things: first, in the stacky description one does not need to know a priori that every principal $G$-bundle on a 3-manifold is trivializable; second, the independence of $S_{\hat{\mathbf{c}}}(P, \nabla)$ on the trivialization chosen is automatic from the fact that $S_{\hat{\mathbf{c}}}$ is a morphism of stacks read at the level of equivalence classes.

Furthermore, if $(P, \nabla)$ can be extended to a principal $G$-bundle with connection $(\tilde{P}, \tilde{\nabla})$ over a compact 4-manifold $\Sigma_4$ bounding $\Sigma_3$, one has

$$S_{\hat{\mathbf{c}}}(P, \nabla) = \exp 2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_4} \tilde{\varphi}^* \omega^{(4)}_{\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}} = \exp 2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_4} \langle F_{\tilde{\nabla}}, F_{\tilde{\nabla}} \rangle\ ,$$

where $\tilde{\varphi} : \Sigma_4 \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the morphism corresponding to the extended bundle $(\tilde{P}, \tilde{\nabla})$. Notice that the right hand side is independent of the extension chosen. Again, this is always the case, so one can actually take the above equation as a definition of the Chern-Simons action functional, see, e.g., [Fr95]. However, notice how in the stacky approach we do not need a priori to know that the oriented cobordism ring is trivial in dimension 3. Even more remarkably, the stacky point of view tells us that there would be a natural and well-defined 3d Chern-Simons action functional even if the oriented cobordism ring were nontrivial in dimension 3 or that not every $G$-principal bundle on a 3-manifold were trivializable. An instance of checking a nontrivial higher cobordism group vanishes can be found in [KS05], allowing for the application of the construction of Hopkins-Singer [HoSi05].

**1.4.1.5 The Chern-Simons action functional with Wilson loops** To conclude our exposition of the examples of 1d and 3d Chern-Simons theory in higher geometry, we now briefly discuss how both unify into the theory of 3d Chern-Simons gauge fields with Wilson line defects. Namely, for every embedded knot

$$\iota : S^1 \hookrightarrow \Sigma_3$$

in the closed 3d worldvolume and every complex linear representation $R : G \to \mathrm{Aut}(V)$ one can consider the *Wilson loop observable* $W_{\iota,R}$ mapping a gauge field $A : \Sigma \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$, to the corresponding "Wilson loop holonomy"

$$W_{\iota,R} : A \mapsto \mathrm{tr}_R(\mathrm{hol}(\iota^* A)) \in \mathbb{C}\ .$$

This is the trace, in the given representation, of the parallel transport defined by the connection $A$ around the loop $\iota$ (for any choice of base point). It is an old observation[16] that this Wilson loop $W(C, A, R)$ is itself the *partition function* of a 1-dimensional topological $\sigma$-model quantum field theory that describes the topological sector of a particle charged under the nonabelian background gauge field $A$. In section 3.3 of [Wi96] it was therefore emphasized that Chern-Simons theory with Wilson loops should really be thought of as given by a single Lagrangian which is the sum of the 3d Chern-Simons Lagrangian for the gauge field as above, plus that for this topologically charged particle.

We now briefly indicate how this picture is naturally captured by higher geometry and refined to a single *extended* Lagrangian for coupled 1d and 3d Chern-Simons theory, given by maps on higher moduli stacks. In doing this, we will also see how the ingredients of Kirillov's orbit method and the Borel-Weil-Bott theorem

[16] This can be traced back to [BBS78]; a nice modern review can be found in section 4 of [Be02].

find a natural rephrasing in the context of smooth differential moduli stacks. The key observation is that for $\langle \lambda, - \rangle$ an integral weight for our simple, connected, simply connected and compact Lie group $G$, the contraction of $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms with $\lambda$ extends to a morphism of smooth moduli stacks of the form

$$\langle \lambda, - \rangle \; : \; \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g}) // \underline{T}_\lambda \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,,$$

where $T_\lambda \hookrightarrow G$ is the maximal torus of $G$ which is the stabilizer subgroup of $\langle \lambda, - \rangle$ under the coadjoint action of $G$ on $\mathfrak{g}^*$. Indeed, this is just the classical statement that exponentiation of $\langle \lambda, - \rangle$ induces an isomorphism between the integral weight lattice $\Gamma_{\mathrm{wt}}(\lambda)$ realtive to the maximal torus $T_\lambda$ and the $\mathbb{Z}$-module $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(T_\lambda, U(1))$ and that under this isomorphism a gauge transformation of a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form $A$ turns into that of the $\mathfrak{u}(1)$-valued 1-form $\langle \lambda, A \rangle$.

This is the extended Lagrangian of a 1-dimensional Chern-Simons theory. In fact it is just a slight variant of the trace-theory discussed there: if we realize $\mathfrak{g}$ as a matrix Lie algebra and write $\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = \mathrm{tr}(\alpha \cdot \beta)$ as the matrix trace, then the above Chern-Simons 1-form is given by the "$\lambda$-shifted trace"

$$\mathrm{CS}_\lambda(A) := \mathrm{tr}(\lambda \cdot A) \in \Omega^1(-; \mathbb{R}) \,.$$

Then, clearly, while the "plain" trace is invariant under the adjoint action of all of $G$, the $\lambda$-shifted trace is invariant only under the subgroup $T_\lambda$ of $G$ that fixes $\lambda$.

Notice that the domain of $\langle \lambda, - \rangle$ naturally sits inside $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ by the canonical map

$$\Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g}) // \underline{T}_\lambda \to \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g}) // G \simeq \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \,.$$

One sees that the homotopy fiber of this map to be the *coadjoint orbit* $\mathcal{O}_\lambda \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{g}^*$ of $\langle \lambda, - \rangle$, equipped with the map of stacks

$$\theta : \mathcal{O}_\lambda \simeq G // \underline{T}_\lambda \to \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g}) // \underline{T}_\lambda$$

which over a test manifold $U$ sends $g \in C^\infty(U, G)$ to the pullback $g^* \theta_G$ of the Maurer-Cartan form. Composing this with the above extended Lagrangian $\langle \lambda, - \rangle$ yields a map

$$\langle \lambda, \theta \rangle : \; \mathcal{O}_\lambda \xrightarrow{\theta} \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g}) // \underline{T}_\lambda \xrightarrow{\langle \lambda, - \rangle} \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

which modulates a canonical $U(1)$-principal bundle with connection on the coadjoint orbit. One finds that this is the canonical prequantum bundle used in the orbit method [Kir04]. In particular its curvature is the canonical symplectic form on the coadjoint orbit.

So far this shows how the ingredients of the orbit method are incarnated in smooth moduli stacks. This now immediately induces Chern-Simons theory with Wilson loops by considering the map $\Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g}) // \underline{T}_\lambda \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ itself as the target[17] for a field theory defined on knot inclusions $\iota : S^1 \hookrightarrow \Sigma_3$. This means that a field configuration is a diagram of smooth stacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^1 & \xrightarrow{(\iota^* A)^g} & \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g}) // \underline{T}_\lambda \\ {\scriptstyle \iota}\downarrow & \swArrow_{g} & \downarrow \\ \Sigma_3 & \xrightarrow[A]{} & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \,, \end{array}$$

i.e., that a field configuration consists of

- a gauge field $A$ in the "bulk" $\Sigma_3$;
- a $G$-valued function $g$ on the embedded knot

[17] This means that here we are secretely moving from the topos of (higher) stacks on smooth manifolds to its *arrow topos*, see section 7.1.1 below.

such that the restriction of the ambient gauge field $A$ to the knot is equivalent, via the gauge transformation $g$, to a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued connection on $S^1$ whose local $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-forms are related each other by local gauge transformations taking values in the torus $T_\lambda$. Moreover, a gauge transformation between two such field configurations $(A, g)$ and $(A', g')$ is a pair $(t_{\Sigma_3}, t_{S^1})$ consisting of a $G$-gauge transformation $t_{\Sigma_3}$ on $\Sigma_3$ and a $T_\lambda$-gauge transformation $t_{S^1}$ on $S^1$, intertwining the gauge transformations $g$ and $g'$. In particular if the bulk gauge field on $\Sigma_3$ is held fixed, i.e., if $A = A'$, then $t_{S^1}$ satisfies the equation $g' = g\, t_{S^1}$. This means that the Wilson-line components of gauge-equivalence classes of field configurations are naturally identified with smooth functions $S^1 \to G/T_\lambda$, i.e., with smooth functions on the Wilson loop with values in the coadjoint orbit. This is essentially a rephrasing of the above statement that $G/T_\lambda$ is the homotopy fiber of the inclusion of the moduli stack of Wilson line field configurations into the moduli stack of bulk field configurations.

We may postcompose the two horizontal maps in this square with our two extended Lagrangians, that for 1d and that for 3d Chern-Simons theory, to get the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} S^1 & \xrightarrow{(\iota^* A)^g} & \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g})//T & \xrightarrow{\langle \lambda, - \rangle} & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ {\scriptstyle \iota}\downarrow & \swArrow_{g} & \downarrow & & \\ \Sigma_3 & \xrightarrow{A} & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{c}}} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,. \end{array}$$

Therefore, writing $\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{CS+W}}\left(S^1 \stackrel{\iota}{\hookrightarrow} \Sigma_3\right)$ for the moduli stack of field configurations for Chern-Simons theory with Wilson lines, we find two action functionals as the composite top and left morphisms in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{CS+W}}\left(S^1 \stackrel{\iota}{\hookrightarrow} \Sigma_3\right) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{hol}_{\Sigma_3} \mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_3, \hat{\mathbf{c}})} & \underline{U}(1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ \mathbf{Maps}(S^1, \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g})//T_\lambda) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Maps}(S^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{con}}) & & \\ \downarrow {\scriptstyle \mathrm{hol}_{S^1} \mathbf{Maps}(S^1, \langle \lambda, - \rangle)} & & & & \\ \underline{U}(1) & & & & \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$, where the top left square is the homotopy pullback that characterizes maps in $\mathbf{H}^{(\Delta^1)}$ in terms of maps in $\mathbf{H}$. The product of these is the action functional

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{CS+W}}\left(S^1 \stackrel{\iota}{\hookrightarrow} \Sigma_3\right) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Maps}(\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \times \mathbf{Maps}(S^1, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \\ & & \underline{U}(1) \times \underline{U}(1) & \xrightarrow{\cdot} & \underline{U}(1) \,. \end{array}$$

where the rightmost arrow is the multiplication in $U(1)$. Evaluated on a field configuration with components $(A, g)$ as just discussed, this is

$$\exp\left(2\pi i \left(\int_{\Sigma_3} \mathrm{CS}_3(A) + \int_{S^1} \langle \lambda, (\iota^* A)^g \rangle \right)\right) \,.$$

This is indeed the action functional for Chern-Simons theory with Wilson loop $\iota$ in the representation $R$ corresppônding to the integral weight $\langle \lambda, - \rangle$ by the Borel-Weil-Bott theorem, as reviewed for instance in Section 4 of [Be02].

Apart from being an elegant and concise repackaging of this well-known action functional and the quantization conditions that go into it, the above reformulation in terms of stacks immediately leads to prequantum line bundles in Chern-Simons theory with Wilson loops. Namely, by considering the codimension 1 case, one finds the the symplectic structure and the canonical prequantization for the moduli stack of field configurations on surfaces with specified singularities at specified punctures [Wi96]. Moreover, this is just the first example in a general mechanism of (extended) action functionals with defect and/or boundary insertions. Another example of the same mechanism is the gauge coupling action functional of the open string. This we discuss in section 1.4.3 below.

### 1.4.2 Prequantum higher Chern-Simons theory

- 1.4.2.1 – Classical Chern-Weil theory and its shortcomings;
- 1.4.2.2 – Higher Chern-Weil theory;
- 1.4.2.3 – Higher Chern-Simons-type Lagrangians;
- 1.4.2.4 – Boundaries and long fiber sequences of characteristic classes;
- 1.4.2.5 – Global effects and anomaly cancellation.

**1.4.2.1 Classical Chern-Weil theory and its shortcomings** Even in the space of all topological local action functionals, those that typically appear in fundamental physics are special. The archetypical example of a TQFT is 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory (see [Fr95] for a detailed review). Its action functional happens to arise from a natural construction in classical *Chern-Weil theory*. We now briefly summarize this process, which already produces a large family of natural topological action functionals on gauge equivalence classes of gauge fields. We then point out deficiencies of this classical theory, which are removed by higher prequantization.

A classical problem in topology is the classification of vector bundles over some topological space $X$. These are continuous maps $E \to X$ such that there is a vector space $V$, and an open cover $\{U_i \hookrightarrow X\}$, and such that over each patch we have fiberwise linear identifications $E|_{U_i} \simeq U_i \times V$. Examples include

- the tangent bundle $TX$ of a smooth manifold $X$;
- the canonical $\mathbb{C}$-line bundle over the 2-sphere, $S^3 \times_{S^1} \mathbb{C} \to S^2$ which is associated to the Hopf fibration.

A classical tool for studying isomorphism classes of vector bundles is to assign to them simpler *characteristic classes* in the ordinary integral cohomology of the base space. For vector bundles over the complex numbers these are the *Chern classes*, which are maps

$$[c_1] : \mathrm{VectBund}_{\mathbb{C}}(X)/_\sim \to H^2(X, \mathbb{Z})$$

$$[c_2] : \mathrm{VectBund}_{\mathbb{C}}(X)/_\sim \to H^4(X, \mathbb{Z})$$

etc. natural in $X$. If two bundles have differing characteristic classes, they must be non-isomorphic. For instance for $\mathbb{C}$-line bundles the first Chern-class $[c_1]$ is an isomorphism, hence provides a complete invariant characterization.

In the context of *differential geometry*, where $X$ and $E$ are taken to be smooth manifolds and the local identifications are taken to be smooth maps, one wishes to obtain *differential* characteristic classes. To that end, one can use the canonical inclusion $\mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ of coefficients to obtain the map $H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \to H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{R})$ from integral to real cohomology, and send any integral characteristic class $[c]$ to its real image $[c]_{\mathbb{R}}$. Due to the de Rham theorem, which identifies the real cohomology of a smooth manifold with the cohomology of its complex of differential forms,

$$H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{R}) \simeq H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)\,,$$

this means that for $[c]_{\mathbb{R}}$ one has representatives given by closed differential $(n+1)$-forms $\omega \in \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$,

$$[c]_{\mathbb{R}} \sim [\omega] \,.$$

But since the passage to real cohomology may lose topological information (all torsion group elements map to zero), one wishes to keep the information both of the topological characteristic class $[c]$ as well as of its "differential refinement" $\omega$. This is accomplished by the notion of *differential cohomology* $H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$ (see [HoSi05] for a review). These are families of cohomology groups equipped with compatible projections both to integral classes as well as to differential forms

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ H^{n+1}(X,\mathbb{Z}) & & & & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\ & & H^{n+1}(X,\mathbb{R}) \simeq H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) & & \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccccc} & & [\hat{c}] & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ [c] & & & & \omega \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\ & & [c]_{\mathbb{R}} \sim [\omega] & & \end{array} \,.$$

Moreover, these differential cohomology groups come equipped with a notion of *volume holonomy*. For $\Sigma_n$ an $n$-dimensional compact manifold, there is a canonical morphism

$$\int_\Sigma : H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(\Sigma) \to U(1)$$

to the circle group.

For instance for $n = 1$, we have that $H^2(X,\mathbb{Z})$ classifies circle bundles / complex line bundles over $X$, $H^2_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$ classifies such bundles *with connection* $\nabla$, and the map $\int_\Sigma : H^2_{\mathrm{diff}}(\Sigma) \to U(1)$ is the *line holonomy* obtained from the *parallel transport* of $\nabla$ over the 1-dimensional manifold $\Sigma$.

With such differential refinements of characteristic classes in hand, it is desirable to have them classify differential refinements of vector bundles. These are known as *vector bundles with connection.* We say a differential refinement of a characteristic class $[c]$ is a map $[\hat{c}]$ fitting into a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{VectBund}_{\mathrm{conn}}(X)/_\sim & \xrightarrow{[\hat{c}]} & H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{VectBund}(X)/_\sim & \xrightarrow{[c]} & H^{n+1}(X,\mathbb{Z}) \end{array} \,,$$

where the vertical maps forget the differential refinement. Such a $[\hat{c}]$ contains information even when $[c] = 0$. Therefore one also calls $[\hat{c}]$ a *secondary characteristic class.*

All of this has a direct interpretation in terms of quantum gauge field theory.

- the elements in $\mathrm{VectBund}_{\mathrm{conn}}(X)/_\sim$ are gauge equivalence classes of *gauge fields* on $X$ (for instance the electromagnetic field, or nuclear force fields);

- the differential class $[\hat{c}]$ defines a canonical *action functional* $S_{[c]}$ on such fields, by composition with the volume holonomy

$$\exp(iS_c(-)) : \mathrm{Conf}(\Sigma)/_\sim := \mathrm{VectBund}_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma)/_\sim \xrightarrow{[\hat{c}]} H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1) \,.$$

The action functionals that arise this way are of *Chern-Simons type.* If we write $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{u}(n))$ for a differential form representing locally the connection on a vector bundle, then we have

- $\int_\Sigma c_1 \;:\; A \mapsto \exp(i \int_\Sigma \mathrm{tr}(A))$;
- $\int_\Sigma c_2 \;:\; A \mapsto \exp(i \int_\Sigma \mathrm{tr}(A \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} A + \frac{2}{3}\mathrm{tr}(A \wedge A \wedge A)))$
- etc.

Here the second expression, coming from the second Chern-class, is the standard action functional for 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory. The first, coming from the first Chern-class, is a 1-dimensional Chern-Simons type theory. Next in the series is an action functional for a 5-dimensional Chern-Simons theory. Later we will see that by generalizing here from vector bundles to *higher bundles* of various kinds, a host of known action functionals for quantum field theories arises this way.

Despite this nice story, this traditional Chern-Weil theory has several shortcomings.

1. It is *not local*, related to the fact that it deals with cohomology classes $[c]$ instead of the cocycles $c$ themselves. This means that there is no good obstruction theory and no information about the locality of the resulting QFTs.

2. It does not apply to *higher topological structures*, hence to *higher gauge fields* that take values in higher covers of Lie groups which are not themselves compact Lie groups anymore.

3. It is *restricted to ordinary differential geometry* and does not apply to variants such as supergeometry, infinitesimal geometry or derived geometry, all of which appear in examples of QFTs of interest.

**1.4.2.2 Higher Chern-Weil theory** We discuss now these problems in slightly more detail, together with their solution in *cohesive homotopy type theory.*

The problem with the locality is that every vector bundle is, by definition, *locally equivalent* to a trivial bundle. Also, locally on contractible patches $U \hookrightarrow X$ every integral cocycle becomes cohomologous to the trivial cocycle. Therefore the restriction of a characteristic class to local patches retains no information at all

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{VectBund}(X)/_\sim & \xrightarrow{[c]} & H^{n+1}(X,\mathbb{Z}) \\ \downarrow^{(-)|_U} & & \downarrow^{(-)|_U} \\ * & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Id}} & * \end{array} .$$

Here we may think of the singleton $*$ as the class of the trivial bundle over $U$. But even though on $U$ every bundle is equivalent to the trivial bundle, this has non-trivial gauge automorphisms

$$* \xrightarrow{g} * \quad g \in C^\infty(U, G := \mathrm{GL}(V))\,.$$

These are not seen by traditional Chern-Weil theory, as they are not visible after passing to equivalence classes and to cohomology.

But by collecting this information over each $U$, it organizes into a *presheaf of gauge groupoids.* We shall write

$$\mathbf{B}G : U \mapsto \left\{ * \xrightarrow{g \in C^\infty(U,G)} * \right\} \quad \in \mathrm{Funct}(\mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd})\,.$$

In order to retain all this information, we may pass to the 2-category

$$\mathbf{H} := L_W\, \mathrm{Func}(\mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd})$$

of such groupoid-valued functors, where we formally invert all those morphisms (natural transformations) in the class $W$ of *stalkwise* equivalences of groupoids. This is called the *2-topos of stacks* on smooth manifolds.

For example we have

- $\mathbf{H}(U, \mathbf{B}G) \simeq \left\{ * \xrightarrow{g \in C^\infty(U,G)} * \right\}$

- $\pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \simeq \mathrm{VectBund}(X)/_\sim$

and hence the object $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathbf{H}$ constitutes a genuine smooth refinement of the classifying space for rank $n$-vector bundles, which sees not just their equivalence classes, but also their local smooth transformations.

The next problem of traditional Chern-Weil theory is that it cannot see beyond groupoids even in cohomology. Namely, under the standard nerve operation, groupoids embed into *simplicial sets* (described in more detail in 1.2.6.4 below)

$$N : \mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sSet}\,.$$

But simplicial sets model *homotopy theory*.

- There is a notion of homotopy groups $\pi_k$ of simplicial sets;
- and there is a notion of *weak homotopy equivalences*, morphisms $f : X \to Y$ which induce isomorphisms on all homotopy groups.

Under the above embedding, groupoids yield only (and precisely) those simplicial sets, up to equivalence, for which only $\pi_0$ and $\pi_1$ are nontrivial. One says that these are *homotopy 1-types*. A general simplicial set presents what is called a *homotopy type* and may contain much more information.

Therefore we are led to refine the above construction and consider the simplicial category

$$\mathbf{H} := L_W \,\mathrm{Func}(\mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet})$$

of functors that send smooth manifolds to simplicial sets, where now we formally invert those morphisms that are stalkwise weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets.

This is called the *$\infty$-topos of $\infty$-stacks* on smooth manifolds.

For instance, there are objects $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ in this context which are smooth refinements of higher integral cohomology, in that

$$\pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \simeq H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{Z})\,.$$

Finally, in this construction it is straightforward to change the geometry by changing the category of geometric test spaces. For instance we many replace smooth manifolds here by supermanifolds or by formal (synthetic) smooth manifolds. In all these cases $\mathbf{H}$ describes *homotopy types with differential geometric structure*. One of our main statements below is the following theorem.

These $\mathbf{H}$ all satisfy a simple set of axioms for "cohesive homotopy types", which were proposed for 0-types by Lawvere. In the fully homotopical context these axioms canonically induce in $\mathbf{H}$

- differential cohomology;
- higher Chern-Weil theory;
- higher Chern-Simons functionals;
- higher geometric prequantization.

This is such that it reproduces the traditional notions where they apply, and otherwise generalizes them beyond the realm of classical applicability.

**1.4.2.3 Higher Chern-Simons-type Lagrangians** It has become a familiar fact, known from examples as those indicated above, that there should be an $n$-dimensional topological quantum field theory $Z_{\mathbf{c}}$ associated to the following data:

1. a *gauge group* $G$: a Lie group such as $U(n)$; or more generally a higher smooth group, such as the smooth *circle $n$-group* $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$ or the *String 2-group* or the smooth *Fivebrane 6-group* [SSS09c, FSS10];
2. a universal characteristic class $[c] \in H^{n+1}(BG, \mathbb{Z})$ and/or its image $\omega$ in real/de Rham cohomology,

where $Z_{\mathbf{c}}$ is a $G$-gauge theory defined naturally over all closed oriented $n$-dimensional smooth manifolds $\Sigma_n$, and such that whenever $\Sigma_n$ happens to be the boundary of some manifold $\Sigma_{n+1}$ the action fuctional on a field configuration $\phi$ is given by the integral of the pullback form $\hat{\phi}^*\omega$ (made precise below) over $\Sigma_{n+1}$, for some extension $\hat{\phi}$ of $\phi$. These are *Chern-Simons type* gauge theories. See [Zan08] for a gentle introduction to the general idea of Chern-Simons theories.

Notably for $G$ a connected and simply connected simple Lie group, for $c \in H^4(BG, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$ any integer – the "level" – and hence for $\omega = \langle -, - \rangle$ the Killing form on the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, this quantum field theory is the original and standard Chern-Simons theory introduced in [Wi89]. See [Fr95] for a comprehensive review. Familiar as this theory is, there is an interesting aspect of it that has not yet found attention, and which is an example of our constructions here.

To motivate this, it is helpful to look at the 3d Chern-Simons action functional as follows: if we write $H(\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}})$ for the set of gauge equivalence classes of $G$-principal connections $\nabla$ on $\Sigma_3$, then the (exponentiated) action functional of 3d Chern-Simons theory over $\Sigma_3$ is a function of sets

$$\exp(iS(-)) : H(\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \to U(1) \,.$$

Of course this function acts by picking a representative of the gauge equivalence class, given by a smooth 1-form $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma_3, \mathfrak{g})$ and sending that to the element $\exp(2\pi i k \int_{\Sigma_3} \mathrm{CS}(A)) \in U(1)$, where $\mathrm{CS}(A) \in \Omega^3(\Sigma_3)$ is the Chern-Simons 3-form of $A$ [ChSi74], that gives the whole theory its name. That this is well defined is the fact that for every gauge transformation $g : A \to A^g$, for $g \in C^\infty(\Sigma_3, G)$, both $A$ as well as its gauge transform $A^g$, are sent to the same element of $U(1)$. A natural formal way to express this is to consider the *groupoid* $\mathbf{H}(\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}})$ whose objects are gauge fields $A$ and whose morphisms are gauge transformations $g$ as above. Then the fact that the Chern-Simons action is defined on individual gauge field configurations while being invariant under gauge transformations is equivalent the statement that it is a *functor*, hence a morphism of groupoids,

$$\exp(iS(-)) : \mathbf{H}(\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \to U(1) \,,$$

where the set underlying $U(1)$ is regarded as a groupoid with only identity morphisms. Hence the fact that $\exp(iS(-))$ has to send every morphism on the left to a morphism on the right is the gauge invariance of the action.

Furthermore, the action functional has the property of being *smooth*. It takes any *smooth family* of gauge fields, over some parameter space $U$, to a corresponding smooth family of elements of $U(1)$ and such that these assignmens are compatible with precomposition of smooth functions $U_1 \to U_2$ between parameter spaces. The formal language that expresses this concept is that of *stacks on the site of smooth manifolds* (discussed in detail in 6.4 below): to say that for every $U$ there is a groupoid, as above, of smooth $U$-families of gauge fields and smooth $U$-families of gauge transformations between them, in a consistent way, is to say that there is a *smooth moduli stack*, denoted $[\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$, of gauge fields on $\Sigma_3$. Finally, the fact that the Chern-Simons action functional is not only gauge invariant but also smooth is the fact that it refines to a morphism of smooth stacks

$$\exp(i\mathbf{S}(-)) : [\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to U(1) \,,$$

where now $U(1)$ is regarded as a smooth stack by declaring that a smooth family of elements is a smooth function with values in $U(1)$.

It is useful to think of a smooth stack simply as being a *smooth groupoid*. Lie groups and Lie groupoids are examples (and are called "differentiable stacks" when regarded as special cases of smooth stacks) but there are important smooth groupoids which are not Lie groupoids in that they have not a smooth *manifold* but a more general smooth space of objects and of morphisms. Just as Lie groups have an infinitesimal approximation given by Lie algebras, so smooth stacks/smooth groupoids have an infinitesimal approximation given by *Lie algebroids*. The smooth moduli stack $[\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ of gauge field configuration on $\Sigma_3$ is best known in the physics literature in the guise of its underlying Lie algebroid: this is the formal dual of the (off-shell) *BRST complex* of the $G$-gauge theory on $\Sigma_3$: in degree 0 this consists of the functions on the space of gauge fields on $\Sigma_3$, and in degree 1 it consists of functions on infinitesimal gauge transformations between these: the "ghost fields".

The smooth structure on the action functional is of course crucial in field theory: in particular it allows one to define the *differential* $d\exp(i\mathbf{S}(-))$ of the action functional and hence its critical locus, characterized by the Euler-Lagrange equations of motion. This is the *phase space* of the theory, which is a substack

$$[\Sigma_2, \flat\mathbf{B}G] \hookrightarrow [\Sigma_2, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$$

equipped with a pre-symplectic 2-form. To formalize this, write $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)$ for the smooth stack of closed 2-forms (without gauge transformations), hence the rule that sends a parameter manifold $U$ to the set $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(U)$ of smooth closed 2-forms on $U$. This may be regarded as the *smooth moduli 0-stack* of closed 2-forms in that for every smooth manifold $X$ the set of morphisms $X \to \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)$ is in natural bijection to the set $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$ of closed 2-forms on $X$. This is an instance of the *Yoneda lemma*. Similarly, a smooth 2-form on the moduli stack of field configurations is a morphism of smooth stacks of the form

$$[\Sigma_2, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)\,.$$

Explicitly, for Chern-Simons theory this morphism sends for each smooth parameter space $U$ a given smooth $U$-family of gauge fields $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma_2 \times U, \mathfrak{g})$ to the 2-form

$$\int_{\Sigma_2} \langle d_U A \wedge d_U A \rangle \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(U)\,.$$

Notice that if we restrict to *genuine* families $A$ which are functions of $U$ but vanish on vectors tangent to $U$ (technically these are elements in the *concretification* of the moduli stack) then this 2-form is the *fiber integral* of the Poincaré 2-form $\langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle$ along the projection $\Sigma_2 \times U \to U$, where $F_A := dA + \frac{1}{2}[A \wedge A]$ is the curvature 2-form of $A$. This is the first sign of a general pattern, which we highlight in a moment.

There is more fundamental smooth moduli stack equipped with a closed 2-form: the moduli stack $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of $U(1)$-gauge fields, hence of smooth circle bundles with connection. This is the rule that sends a smooth parameter manifold $U$ to the groupoid $\mathbf{H}(U, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$ of $U(1)$-gauge fields $\nabla$ on $U$, which we have already seen above. Since the curvature 2-form $F_\nabla \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(U)$ of a $U(1)$-principal connection is gauge invariant, the assignment $\nabla \mapsto F_\nabla$ gives rise to a morphism of smooth stacks of the form

$$F_{(-)} : \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)\;.$$

In terms of this morphism the fact that every $U(1)$-gauge field $\nabla$ on some space $X$ has an underlying field strength 2-form $\omega$ is expressed by the existence of a commuting diagram of smooth stacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{cccc} & & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \quad \text{gauge field / differential cocycle} \\ & {}^{\nabla}\nearrow & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} & \\ X & \xrightarrow{\;\omega\;} & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) & \quad \text{field strength / curvature}\;. \end{array}$$

Conversely, if we regard the bottom morphism $\omega$ as given, and regard this closed 2-form as a (pre)symplectic form, then a *choice of lift* $\nabla$ in this diagram is a choice of refinement of the 2-form by a circle bundle with connection, hence the choice of a *prequantum circle bundle* in the language of geometric quantization (see for instance section II in [Bry00] for a review of geometric quantization).

Applied to the case of Chern-Simons theory this means that a smooth (off-shell) prequantization of the theory is a choice of dashed morphism in a diagram of smooth stacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \nearrow\!\!{\scriptstyle --} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} \\ [\Sigma_2, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] & \xrightarrow[\int_{\Sigma_2}\langle F_{(-)}, F_{(-)}\rangle]{} & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \end{array}\;.$$

Similar statements apply to on-shell geometric (pre)quantization of Chern-Simons theory, which has been so successfully applied in the original article [Wi89]. In summary, this means that in the context of smooth stacks the Chern-Simons action functional and its prequantization are as in the following table:

| **dimension** | | **moduli stack description** |
|---|---|---|
| $k = 3$ | action functional (0-bundle) | $\exp(i\mathbf{S}(-)) : [\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \quad U(1)$ |
| $k = 2$ | prequantum circle 1-bundle | $[\Sigma_2, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ |

There is a precise sense, discussed in section 6.4.16 below, in which a $U(1)$-valued function is a *circle $k$-bundle with connection* for $k = 0$. If we furthermore regard an ordinary $U(1)$-principal bundle as a *circle 1-bundle* then this table says that in dimension $k$ Chern-Simons theory appears as a *circle $(3-k)$-bundle with connection* – at least for $k = 3$ and $k = 2$.

Formulated this way, it should remind one of what is called *extended* or *multi-tiered* topological quantum field theory (formalized and classified in [L-TFT]) which is the full formalization of *locality* in the Schrödinger picture of quantum field theory. This says that *after quantization*, an $n$-dimensional topological field theory should be a rule that to a closed manifold of dimension $k$ assigns an $(n-k)$-categorical analog of a vector space of quantum states. Since ordinary geometric quantization of Chern-Simons theory assigns to a closed $\Sigma_2$ the vector space of *polarized sections* (holomorphic sections) of the line bundle associated to the above circle 1-bundle, this suggests that there should be an *extended* or *multi-tiered* refinement of geometric (pre)quantization of Chern-Simons theory, which to a closed oriented manifold of dimension $0 \leq k \leq n$ assigns a *prequantum circle $(n-k)$-bundle* (bundle $(n-k-1)$-gerbe) on the moduli stack of field configurations over $\Sigma_k$, modulated by a morphism $[\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbf{B}^{(n-k)}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ to a moduli $(n-k)$-stack of circle $(n-k)$-bundles with connection.

In particular for $k = 0$ and $\Sigma_0$ connected, hence $\Sigma_0 = *$ the point, we have that the moduli stack of fields on $\Sigma_0$ is the *universal* moduli stack itself, $[*, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \simeq \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$, and so a *fully extended prequantization* of 3-dimensional $G$-Chern-Simons theory would have to involve a *universal characteristic* morphism

$$\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

of smooth moduli stacks, hence a smooth circle 3-bundle with connection on the universal moduli stack of $G$-gauge fields. This indeed naturally exists: an explicit construction is given in [FSS10]. This morphism of smooth higher stacks is a differential refinement of a smooth refinement of the level itself: forgetting the connections and only remembering the underlying (higher) gauge bundles, we still have a morphism of smooth higher stacks

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)\,.$$

This expression should remind one of the continuous map of topological spaces

$$c : BG \to B^3U(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$$

from the classifying space $BG$ to the Eilenberg-MacLane space $K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$, which represents the level as a class in integral cohomology $H^4(BG, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$. Indeed, there is a canonical *derived functor* or *$\infty$-functor*

$$|-| : \mathbf{H} \to \mathrm{Top}$$

from smooth higher stacks to topological spaces (one of the defining properties of a cohesive $\infty$-topos), derived left adjoint to the operation of forming *locally constant higher stacks*, and under this map we have

$$|\mathbf{c}| \simeq c\,.$$

In this sense $\mathbf{c}$ is a *smooth refinement* of $[c] \in H^4(BG, \mathbb{Z})$ and then $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is a further *differential refinement* of $\mathbf{c}$.

However, more is true. Not only is there an extension of the prequantization of 3d $G$-Chern-Simons theory to the point, but this also induces the extended prequantization in every other dimension by *tracing*: for $0 \leq k \leq n$ and $\Sigma_k$ a closed and oriented smooth manifold, there is a canonical morphism of smooth higher stacks of the form

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k} (-)) : [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} ,$$

which refines the fiber integration of differential forms, that we have seen above, from curvature $(n+1)$-forms to their entire prequantum circle $n$-bundles (we discuss this below in section 7.2.1.1). Since, furthermore, the formation of mapping stacks $[\Sigma_k, -]$ is functorial, this means that from a morphism $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ as above we get for every $\Sigma_k$ a composite morphism as such:

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k} [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]) : \; [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_k, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]} [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k}(-))} \mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

For 3d $G$-Chern-Simons theory and $k = n = 3$ this composite *is* the action functional of the theory (down on the set $H(\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}})$ this is effectively the perspective on ordinary Chern-Simons theory amplified in [CJMSW05]). Therefore, for general $k$ we may speak of this as the *extended action functional*, with values not in $U(1)$ but in $\mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

This way we find that the above table, containing the Chern-Simons action functional together with its prequantum circle 1-bundle, extends to the following table that reaches all the way from dimension 3 down to dimension 0.

| **dim.** | | **prequantum $(3-k)$-bundle** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| $k=0$ | differential fractional first Pontrjagin | $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ | [FSS10] |
| $k=1$ | WZW background B-field | $[S^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[S^1, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]} [S^1, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{S^1}(-))} \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ | |
| $k=2$ | off-shell CS prequantum bundle | $[\Sigma_2, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_2, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]} [\Sigma_2, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_2}(-))} \mathbf{B} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ | |
| $k=3$ | 3d CS action functional | $[\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_3, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]} [\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_3}(-))} U(1)$ | [FSS10] |

For each entry of this table one may compute the *total space* object of the corresponding prequantum $k$-bundle. This is now in general itself a higher moduli stack. In full codimension $k = 0$ one finds that this is the moduli 2-stack of String($G$)-2-connections described in [SSS09c, FSS12b]. This we discuss in section 7.2.5.1 below.

It is clear now that this is just the first example of a general class of theories which we may call *higher extended prequantum Chern-Simons theories* or just $\infty$-*Chern-Simons theories*, for short. These are defined by a choice of

1. a smooth higher group $G$;
2. a smooth universal characteristic map $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$;
3. a differential refinement $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

An example of a 7-dimensional such theory on String-2-form gauge fields is discussed in [FSS12a], given by a differential refinement of the second fractional Pontrjagin class to a morphism of smooth moduli 7-stacks

$$\tfrac{1}{6}(\mathbf{p}_2)_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

We expect that these $\infty$-Chern-Simons theories are part of a general procedure of *extended geometric quantization* (*multi-tiered* geometric quantization) which proceeds in two steps, as indicated in the following table.

| **classical system** | **geometric prequantization** | **quantization** |
|---|---|---|
| char. class $c$ of deg. $(n+1)$ with de Rham image $\omega$: invariant polynomial/ $n$-plectic form | prequantum circle $n$-bundle on moduli $\infty$-stack of fields $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ | extended quantum field theory $Z_{\mathbf{c}} : \Sigma_k \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{polarized sections of} \\ \text{prequantum } (n-k)\text{-bundle} \\ \exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k} [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]) \end{array} \right\}$ |

Here we are concerned with the first step, the discussion of $n$-dimensional Chern-Simons gauge theories (higher gauge theories) in their incarnation as prequantum circle $n$-bundles on their universal moduli $\infty$-stack of fields. A dedicated discussion of higher geometric prequantization, including the discussion of higher Heisenberg groups, higher quantomorphism groups, higher symplectomorphisms and higher Hamiltonian vector fields, and their action on higher prequantum spaces of states by higher Heisenberg operators, is given below. As shown there, plenty of interesting physical information turns out to be captured by extended prequantum $n$-bundles. For instance, if one regards the B-field in type II superstring backgrounds as a prequantum 2-bundle, then its extended prequantization knows all about twisted Chan-Paton bundles, the Freed-Witten anomaly cancellation condition for type II superstrings on D-branes and the associated anomaly line bundle on the string configuration space.

Generally, all higher Chern-Simons theories that arise from extended action functionals this way enjoy a collection of very good formal properties. Effectively, they may be understood as constituting examples of a fairly extensive generalization of the *refined* Chern-Weil homomorphism with coefficients in *secondary characteristic cocycles*. Moreover, we have shown previously that the class of theories arising this way is large and contains not only several familiar theories, some of which are not traditionally recognized to be of this good form, but also contains various new QFTs that turn out to be of interest within known contexts, e.g. [FSS12b, FSS12b]. Here we further enlarge the pool of such examples.

Notably, here we are concerned with examples arising from *cup product* characteristic classes, hence of $\infty$-Chern-Simons theories which are decomposable or non-primitive secondary characteristic cocyles, obtained by cup-ing more elementary characteristic cocycles. The most familiar example of these is again ordinary 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory, but now for the non-simply connected gauge group $U(1)$. In this case a gauge field configuration in $\mathbf{H}(\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$ is not necessarily given by a globally defined 1-form $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma_3)$, instead it may have a non-vanishing "instanton number", the Chern-class of the underlying circle bundle. Only if that happens to vanish is the value of the action functional again given by the simple expression $\exp(2\pi i k \int_{\Sigma_3} A \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} A)$ as before. But in view of the above we are naturally led to ask: which circle 3-bundle (bundle 2-gerbe) with connection over $\Sigma_3$, depending naturally on the $U(1)$-gauge field, has $A \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} A$ as its connection 3-form in this special case, so that the correct action functional in generality is again the *volume holonomy* of this 3-bundle (see section 7.2.3 below)? The answer is that it is the *differential cup square* of the gauge field with itself. As a fully extended action functional this is a natural morphism of higher moduli stacks of the form

$$(-)^{\cup^2_{\mathrm{conn}}} : \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

This morphism of higher stacks is characterized by the fact that under forgetting the differential refinement and then taking geometric realization as before, it is exhibited as a differential refinement of the ordinary cup square on Eilenberg-MacLane spaces

$$(-)^{\cup^2} : K(\mathbb{Z}, 2) \to K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$$

and hence on ordinary integral cohomology. By the above general procedure, we obtain a well-defined action functional for $3d$ $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory by the expression

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_3} [\Sigma_3, (-)^{\cup^2_{\mathrm{conn}}}]) : [\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to U(1)$$

and this is indeed the action functional of the familiar $3d$ $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory, also on non-trivial instanton sectors, see section 7.2.5.2 below.

In terms of this general construction, there is nothing particular to the low degrees here, and we have generally a differential cup square / extended action functional for a $(4k+3)$-dimensional Chern-Simons theory

$$(-)^{\cup^2_{\mathrm{conn}}} : \mathbf{B}^{2k+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^{4k+3}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, which induces an ordinary action functional

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_3} [\Sigma_{4k+3}, (-)^{\cup^2_{\mathrm{conn}}}]) : [\Sigma_{4k+3}, \mathbf{B}^{4k+3}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to U(1)$$

on the moduli $(2k+1)$-stack of $U(1)$-$(2k+1)$-form gauge fields, given by the fiber integration on differential cocycles over the differential cup product of the fields. This is discussed in section 7.2.8.1 below.

Forgetting the smooth structure on $[\Sigma_{4k+3}, \mathbf{B}^{2k+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ and passing to gauge equivalence classes of fields yields the cohomology group $H^{2k+2}_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma_{4k+3})$. This is what is known as *ordinary differential cohomology* and is equivalent to the group of *Cheeger-Simons differential characters*, a review with further pointers is in [HoSi05]. That gauge equivalence classes of higher degree $U(1)$-gauge fields are to be regarded as differential characters and that the $(4k+3)$-dimensional $U(1)$-Chern-Simons action functional on these is given by the fiber integration of the cup product is discussed in detail in [FP89], also mentioned notably in [Wi96, Wi98c] and expanded on in [Fr00]. Effectively this observation led to the general development of differential cohomology in [HoSi05]. Or rather, the main theorem there concerns a shifted version of the functional of $(4k+3)$-dimensional $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory which allows one to further divide it by 2. We have discussed the refinement of this to smooth moduli stacks of fields in [FSS12b]. These developments were largely motivated from the relation of $(4k+3)$-dimensional $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theories as the holographic duals to theories of self-dual forms in dimension $(4k+2)$ (see [BeMo06] for survey and references): a choice of conformal structure on a $\Sigma_{4k+2}$ naturally induces a polarization of the prequantum 1-bundle of the $(4k+3)$-dimensional theory, and for every choice the resulting space of quantum states is naturally identified with the corresponding conformal blocks (correlators) of the $(4k+2)$-dimensional theory.

Therefore we have that regarding the differential cup square on smooth higher moduli stacks as an extended action functional yields the following table of familiar notions under extended geometric prequantization.

| **dim.** | | **prequantum $(4k+3-d)$-bundle** |
|---|---|---|
| $d=0$ | differential cup square | $(-)^{\cup^2_{\mathrm{conn}}} : \mathbf{B}^{2k+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^{4k+3}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ |
| $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ |
| $d=4k+2$ | "pre-conformal blocks" of self-dual $2k$-form field | $[\Sigma_{4k+2}, \mathbf{B}^{2k+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_{4k+2}, (-)^{\cup^2_{\mathrm{conn}}}]} [\Sigma_{4k+2}, \mathbf{B}^{2k+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_{4k+2}}(-))} \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ |
| $d=4k+3$ | CS action functional | $[\Sigma_{4k+3}, \mathbf{B}^{2k+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_{4k+3}, (-)^{\cup^2_{\mathrm{conn}}}]} [\Sigma_{4k+3}, \mathbf{B}^{2k+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_{4k+3}}(-))} U(1)$ |

This fully extended prequantization of $(4k+3)$-dimensional $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory allows for instance to ask for and compute the total space of the prequantum circle $(4k+3)$-bundle. This is now itself a higher smooth moduli stack. For $k = 0$, hence in $3d$-Chern-Simons theory it turns out to be the moduli 2-stack of *differential T-duality structures*.

More generally, as the name suggests, the *differential cup square* is a specialization of a general *differential cup product*. As a morphism of bare homotopy types this is the familiar cup product of Eilenberg-MacLane spaces

$$(-) \cup (-) : K(\mathbb{Z}, p+1) \times K(\mathbb{Z}, q+1) \to K(\mathbb{Z}, p+q+2)$$

for all $p, q \in \mathbb{N}$. Its smooth and then its further differential refinement is a morphism of smooth higher stacks of the form

$$(-) \cup_{\mathrm{conn}} (-) : \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^1 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^{p+q+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

By the above discussion this now defines a higher extended gauge theory in dimension $p+q+1$ of *two different* species of higher $U(1)$-gauge fields. One example of this is the *higher electric-magnetic coupling anomaly* in higher (Euclidean) $U(1)$-Yang-Mills theory, as explained in section 2 of [Fr00]. In this example one considers on an oriented smooth manifold $X$ (here assumed to be closed, for simplicity) an *electric current* $(p+1)$-form $J_{\mathrm{el}} \in \Omega^{p+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$ and a *magnetic current* $(q+1)$-form $J_{\mathrm{mag}} \in \Omega^{q+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$, such that $p+q = \dim(X)$ is the dimension of $X$. A *prequantization* of these current forms in our sense of higher geometric quantization is a lift to differential cocycles

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\widehat{J}_{\mathrm{el}}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} \\ X & \xrightarrow{J_{\mathrm{el}}} & \Omega^{p+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \end{array} , \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\widehat{J}_{\mathrm{mag}}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} \\ X & \xrightarrow{J_{\mathrm{mag}}} & \Omega^{q+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \end{array}$$

and here this amounts to electric and magnetic *charge quantization*, respectively: the electric charge is the universal integral cohomology class of the circle $p$-bundle underlying the electric charge cocycle: its *higher Dixmier-Doudy class* $[\widehat{J}_{\mathrm{el}}] \in H^{p+1}_{\mathrm{cpt}}(X, \mathbb{Z})$ (see section 7.2.3 below); and similarly for the magnetic charge. Accordingly, the higher mapping stack $[X, \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{comm}} \times \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ is the smooth higher moduli stack of charge-quantized electric and magnetic currents on $X$. Recall that this assigns to a smooth test manifold $U$ the higher groupoid whose objects are $U$-families of pairs of charge-quantized electric and magnetic currents, namely such currents on $X \times U$. As [Fr00] explains in terms of such families of fields, the $U(1)$-principal bundle with connection that in the present formulation is the one modulated by the morphism

$$\nabla_{\mathrm{an}} := \exp(2\pi i \int_X [X, (-) \cup_{\mathrm{conn}} (-)]) : [X, \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{comm}} \times \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbf{B} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

is the *anomaly line bundle* of $(p-1)$-form electromagnetism on $X$, in the presence of electric and magnetic currents subject to charge quantization. In the language of $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory as above, this is equivalently the off-shell prequantum 1-bundle of the higher cup product Chern-Simons theories on pairs of $U(1)$-gauge $p$-form and $q$-form fields.

Regarded as an anomaly bundle, one calls its curvature the *local anomaly* and its *holonomy* the "global anomaly". In our contex the holonomy of $\nabla_{\mathrm{an}}$ is (discussed again in section 7.2.3 below) the morphism

$$\mathrm{hol}(\nabla_{\mathrm{an}}) = \exp(2\pi i \int_{S^1} [S^1, \nabla_{\mathrm{an}}]) : [S^1, [X, \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{comm}} \times \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to U(1)$$

from the loop space of the moduli stack of fields to $U(1)$. By the characteristic universal propery of higher mapping stacks, together with the "Fubini-theorem"-property of fiber integration, this is equivalently the morphism

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{X \times S^1} [X \times S^1, (-) \cup_{\mathrm{conn}} (-)]) : [X \times S^1, \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{comm}} \times \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to U(1) .$$

But from the point of view of $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory this is the *action functional* of the higher cup product Chern-Simons field theory induced by $\cup_{\mathrm{conn}}$. The situation is now summarized in the following table.

| **dim.** | | **prequantum** $(\dim(X)+1-k)$**-bundle** |
|---|---|---|
| $k=0$ | differential cup product | $(-)^{\cup^2_{\mathrm{conn}}} : \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^{d+2} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ |
| $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ |
| $k=\dim(X)$ | higher E/M-charge anomaly line bundle | $\exp(2\pi i \int_X [X, (-)\cup_{\mathrm{conn}}(-)]) : [X, \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ |
| $k=\dim(X)+1$ | global anomaly | $\exp(2\pi i \int_{X\times S^1} [X\times S^1, (-)\cup_{\mathrm{conn}}(-)]) : [X\times S^1, \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to U(1)$ |

These higher electric-magnetic anomaly Chern-Simons theories are of particular interest when the higher electric/magnetic currents are themselves induced by other gauge fields. Namely if we have any two $\infty$-Chern-Simons theories given by extended action functionals $\mathbf{c}^1_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G^1_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ and $\mathbf{c}^2_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G^2_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, respectively, then composition of these with the differential cup product yields an extended action functional of the form

$$\mathbf{c}^1_{\mathrm{conn}} \cup_{\mathrm{conn}} \mathbf{c}^2_{\mathrm{conn}} : \; \mathbf{B}(G^1\times G^2)_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{(\mathbf{c}^1_{\mathrm{conn}}, \mathbf{c}^2_{\mathrm{conn}})} \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^1 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{(-)\cup_{\mathrm{conn}}(-)} \mathbf{B}^{p+q+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \;,$$

which describes extended topological field theories in dimension $p+q+1$ on two species of (possibly non-abelian, possibly higher) gauge fields, or equivalently describes the higher electric/magnetic anomaly for higher electric fields induced by $\mathbf{c}^1$ and higher magnetic fields induced by $\mathbf{c}^2$.

For instance for heterotic string backgrounds $\mathbf{c}^2_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the differential refinement of the first fractional Pontrjagin class $\frac{1}{2}p_1 \in H^4(B\mathrm{Spin}, \mathbb{Z})$ [SSS09c, FSS10] of the form

$$\mathbf{c}^2_{\mathrm{conn}} = \widehat{J}^{\mathrm{NS5}}_{\mathrm{mag}} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mathbf{p}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,,$$

formalizing the *magnetic NS5-brane charge* needed to cancel the fermionic anomaly of the heterotic string by way of the Green-Schwarz mechanism. It is curious to observe, going back to the very first example of this introduction, that this $\widehat{J}^{\mathrm{NS5}}_{\mathrm{mag}}$ is at the same time the extended action functional for 3d Spin-Chern-Simons theory.

Still more generally, we may differentially cup in this way more than two factors. Examples for such *higher order cup product theories* appear in 11-dimensional supergravity. Notably plain classical 11d supergravity contains an 11-dimensional cubic Chern-Simons term whose extended action functional in our sense is

$$(-)^{\cup^3_{\mathrm{conn}}} : \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^{11} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,.$$

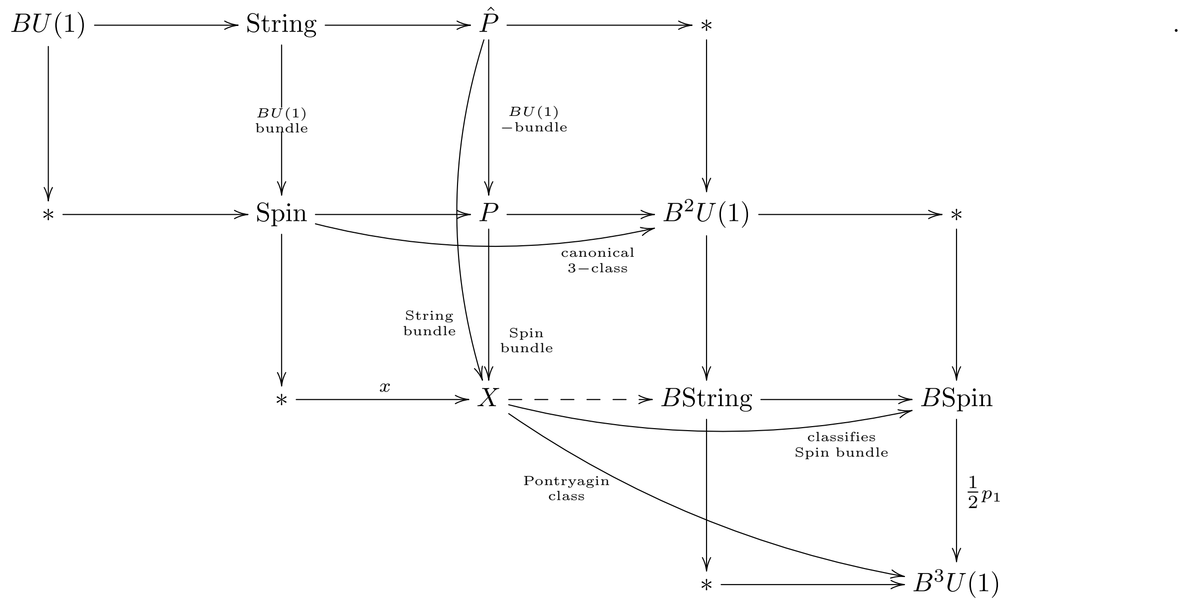
Here for $X$ the 11-dimensional spacetime, a field in $[X, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)]$ is a first approximation to a model for the *supergravity C-field*. If the differential cocycle happens to be given by a globally defined 3-form $C$, then the induced action functional $\exp(2\pi i \int_X [X, (-)^{\cup^3_{\mathrm{conn}}}])$ sends this to element in $U(1)$ given by the familiar expression

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_X [X, (-)^{\cup^3_{\mathrm{conn}}}]) : C \mapsto \exp(2\pi i \int_X C \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} C \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} C) \,.$$

More precisely this model receives quantum corrections from an 11-dimensional Green-Schwarz mechanism. In [FSS12b, FSS12b] we have discussed in detail relevant corrections to the above extended cubic cup-product action functional on the moduli stack of flux-quantized $C$-field configurations.

**1.4.2.4 Boundaries and long fiber sequences of characteristic classes** It is a traditionally familiar fact that short exact sequences of (discrete) groups give rise to long sequences in cohomology with coefficients in these groups. In fact, before passing to cohomology, these long exact sequences are refined by corresponding long fiber sequences of the homotopy types obtained by the higher delooping of these groups: of the higher classifying spaces of these groups.

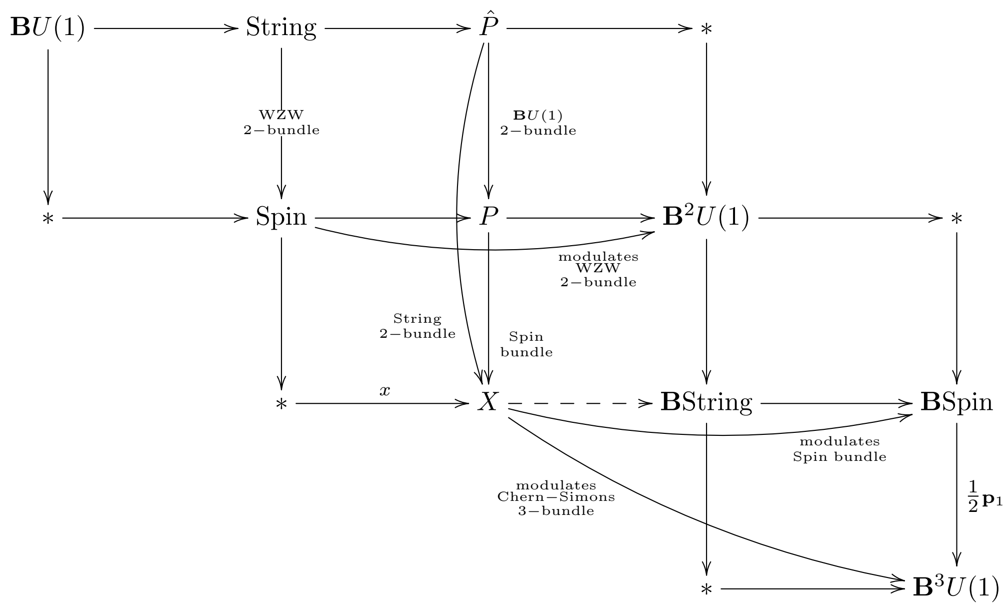
An example for which these long fiber sequences are of interest in the context of quantum field theory is the universal first fractional Pontryagin class $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ on the classifying space of Spin-principal bundles. The following digram displays the first steps in the long fiber sequence that it induces, together with an actual Spin-principal bundle $P \to X$ classified by a map $X \to B\mathrm{Spin}$. All squares are homotopy pullback squares of bare homotopy types.




The topological group String which appears here as the loop space object of the homotopy fiber of $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ is the *String group*. We discuss this in detail below in 7.1.2. It is a $BU(1)$-extension of the Spin-group.

If $X$ happens to be equipped with the structure of a smooth manifold, then it is natural to also equip the Spin-principal bundle $P \to X$ with the structure of a smooth bundle, and hence to lift the classifying map $X \to B\mathrm{Spin}$ to a morphism $X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}$ into the *smooth moduli stack* of smooth Spin-principal bundles (the morphism that not just classifies but "modulates" $P \to X$ as a smooth structure). An evident question then is: can the rest of the diagram be similarly lifted to a smooth context?

This indeed turns out to be the case, if we work in the context of *higher* smooth stacks. For instance there is a smooth moduli 3-stack $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ such that a morphism $\mathrm{Spin} \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ not just classifies a $BU(1)$-bundle over Spin, but "modulates" a smooth *circle 2-bundle* or $U(1)$*-bundle gerbe* over Spin. One then gets the following diagram

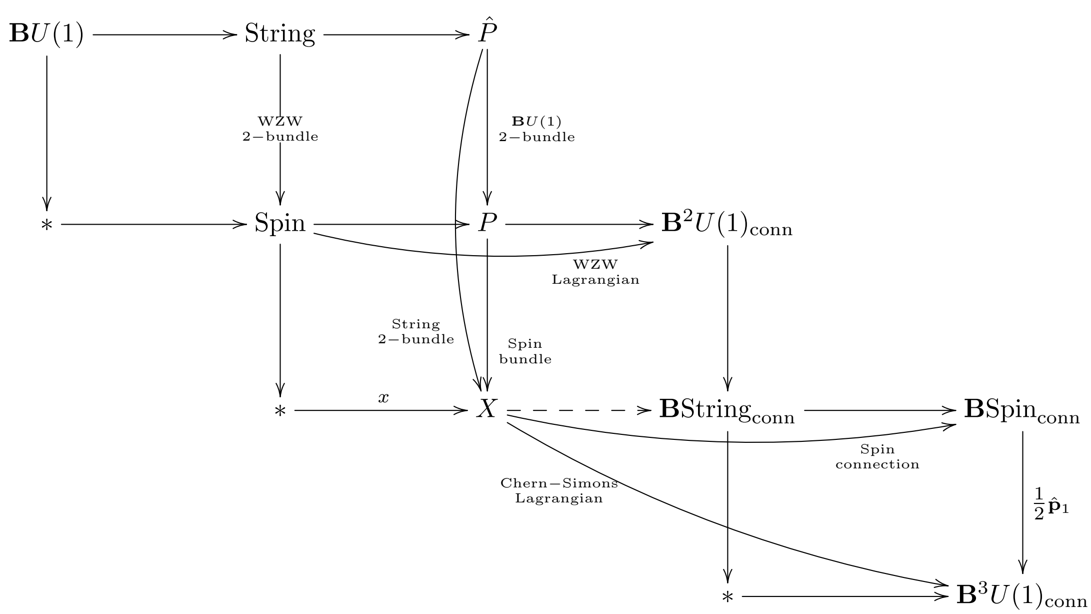



,

where now all squares are homotopy pullbacks of smooth higher stacks.

With this smooth geometirc structure in hand, one can then go further and ask for *differential* refinements: the smooth Spin-principal bundle $P \to X$ might be equipped with a principal connection $\nabla$, and if so, this will be "modulated" by a morphism $X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ into the smooth moduli stack of Spin-connections.

One of our central theorems below in 7.1.2 is that the universal first fractional Pontryagin class can be lifted to this situation to a *differential smooth* universal morphism of higher moduli stacks, which we write $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1$. Inserting this into the above diagram and then forming homotopy pullbacks as before yields further differential refinements. It turns out that these now induce the Lagrangians of 3-dimensional Spin Chern-Simons theory and of the WZW theory on Spin.




.

One way to understand our developments here is as a means to formalize and then analyze this setup and its variants and generalizations.

**1.4.2.5 Global effects and anomaly cancellation** One may wonder to which extent the higher gauge fields of section 1.1.2.1.2 may be motivated within physics. It turns out that an important class of examples is required already by consistency of the quantum mechanics of higher dimensional fermionic ("spinning") quantum objects.

We indicate now how the full description of this *quantum anomaly cancellation* forces one to go beyond classical Chern-Weil theory to a more comprehensive theory of higher differential cohomology.

Consider a smooth manifold $X$. Its tangent bundle $TX$ is a real vector bundle of rank $n = \dim X$. By the classical theorem which identifies isomorphism classes of rank-$n$ real vector bundles with homotopy classes of *continuous* maps to the classifying space $B\mathrm{O}(n)$, for $O(n)$ the orthogonal group,

$$\mathrm{VectBund}(X)/_\sim \simeq [X, BO]\,,$$

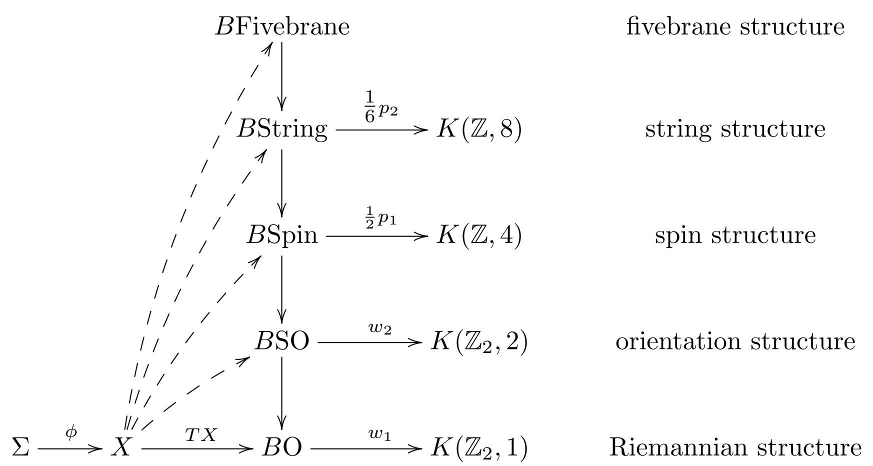
we have that $TX$ is classified by a continuous map which we shall denote by the same symbol

$$TX : X \to B\mathrm{O}(n)\,.$$

Notice that this map takes place after passing from smooth spaces to just topological spaces. A central theme of our discussion later on are first *smooth* and then *differential* refinements of such maps.

A standard question to inquire about $X$ is whether it is orientable. If so, a *choice* of orienation is, in terms of this classifying map, given by a lift through the canonical map $B\mathrm{SO}(n) \to B\mathrm{O}(n)$ from the classifying space of the *special* orthogonal group. Further, we may ask if $X$ admits a Spin-*structure*. If so, a choice of Spin-structure corresponds to a further lift through the canonical map $B\mathrm{Spin}(n) \to B\mathrm{O}(n)$ from the classifying space of the Spin-group, which is the universal simply connected cover of the special orthogonal group. (Details on these basic notions are reviewed at the beginning of **??** below.)

These lifts of structure groups are just the first steps through a whole tower of higher group extensions, called the *Whitehead tower* of $B\mathrm{O}(n)$, as shown in the following picture. Here String is a *topological group* which is the universal 3-connected cover of Spin, and then Fivebrane is the universal 7-connected cover of String.




Here all subdiagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\hat{G} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ BG & \xrightarrow{c} & K(A,n) \end{array}$$

are homotopy fiber sequences. This means that $B\hat{G}$ is the homotopy fiber of the characteristic map $c$ and $\hat{G}$ itself is the homotopy fiber of the looping $\Omega c$ of $c$. By the universal property of the homotopy pullback, this implies the obstruction theory for the existence of these lifts. The first two of these are classical. For instance the orientation structure exists if the *first Stiefel-Whitney class* $[w_1(TX)] \in H^1(X, \mathbb{Z}_2)$ is trivial. Spin-structure exists if moreover the *second Stiefel-Whitney class* $[w_2(TX)] \in H^2(X, \mathbb{Z}_2)$ is trivial.

Analogously, a *string structure* exists on $X$ if moreover the *first fractional Pontryagin class* $[\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX)] \in H^4(X, \mathbb{Z})$ is trivial, and if so, a *fivebrane structure* exists if moreover the *second fractional Pontryagin class* $[\frac{1}{6}p_2(TX)] \in H^8(X, \mathbb{Z})$ is trivial.

The names of these structures indicate their role in quantum physics. Let $\Sigma$ be a $d+1$-dimensional manifold and assume now that also $X$ is smooth. Then a smooth map $\phi : \Sigma \to X$ may be thought of as modelling the trajectory of a $d$-dimensional object propagating through $X$. For instance for $d = 0$ this would be the trajectory of a point particle, for $d = 1$ it would be the worldsheet of a *string*, and for $d = 5$ the 6-dimensional worldvolume of a *5-brane*. The intrinsic "spin" of point particles and their higher dimensional analogs is described by a spinor bundle $S \to \Sigma$ equipped for each $\phi : \Sigma \to X$ with a Dirac operator $D_{\phi^* TX}$ that is twisted by the pullback of the tangent bundle of $X$ along $\phi$. The fermionic part of the *path integral* that gives the quantum dynamics of this setup computes the analog of the determinant of this Dirac operator, which is an element in a complex line called the *Pfaffian line* of $D_{\phi^* TX}$. As $\phi$ varies, these Pfaffian lines arrange into a line bundle on the mapping space

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \{\mathrm{Pfaff}(D_{\phi^* TX})\} & & & & \\ \downarrow & & & & \\ \{\phi : \Sigma \to X\} & = & \mathrm{SmthMaps}(\Sigma, X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tg}_\Sigma(c)} & K(\mathbb{Z}, 2) \end{array} .$$

Since the result of the fermionic part of the path integral is therefore a section of this line bundle, the resulting effective action functional can be a well defined function only if this line bundle is trivializable, hence if its Chern class vanishes. Therefore the Chern class of the Pfaffian line bundle over the bosonic configuration space is called the *global quantum anomaly* of the system. It is an obstruction to the existence of quantum dynamics of $d$-dimensional objects with spin on $X$.

Now, it turns out that this Chern class is the *transgression* $\mathrm{tg}_\Sigma(c)$ of the corresponding class $c$ appearing in the picture of the Whitehead tower above. Therefore the vanishing of these classes implies the vanishing of the quantum anomaly.

For instance a choice of a *spin structure* on $X$ cancels the global quantum anomaly of the quantum spinning particle. Then a choice of *string structure* cancels the global quantum anomaly of the quantum spinning string, and a choice of *fivebrane structure* cancels the global quantum anomaly of the quantum spinning 5-brane.

However, the Pfaffian line bundle turns out to be canonically equipped with more refined differential structure: it carries a *connection*. Moreover, in order to obtain a consistent quantum theory it needs to be trivialized as a bundle with connection.

For the Pfaffian line bundle with connection still to be the transgression of the corresponding obstruction class on $X$, evidently the entire story so far needs to be refined from cohomology to a differentially refined notion of cohomology.

Classical Chern-Weil theory achieves this, in parts, for the first few steps through the Whitehead tower (see [GHV73] for a classical textbook reference and [HoSi05] for the refinement to differential cohomology that we need here). For instance, since maps $X \to B\mathrm{Spin}$ classify Spin-principal bundles on $X$, and since Spin is a Lie group, it is clear that the corresponding differential refinement is given by Spin-principal connections. Write $H^1(X, \mathrm{Spin})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the equivalence classes of these structures on $X$.

For every $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there is a notion of differential refinement of $H^n(X, \mathbb{Z})$ to the *differential cohomology* *group* $H^n(X,\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$. These groups fit into square diagrams as indicated on the right of the following diagram.

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
H^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(X,\mathrm{Spin}) & \xrightarrow{[\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1]} & H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X,\mathbb{Z}) & & \\
& \swarrow^{\text{curvature}} & & \searrow^{\text{top. class}} & \\
\Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) & & & & H^4(X,\mathbb{Z}) \\
& \searrow & & \swarrow & \\
& & H^4_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) \simeq H^4(X,\mathbb{R}) & &
\end{array}
.
$$

As shown there, an element in $H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X,\mathbb{Z})$ involves an underlying ordinary integral class, but also a differential $n$-form on $X$ such that both structures represent the same class in real cohomology (using the de Rham isomorphism between real cohomology and de Rham cohomology). The differential form here is to be thought of as a *higher curvature form* on a higher line bundle corresponding to the given integral cohomology class.

Finally, the refined form of classical Chern-Weil theory provides differential refinements for instance of the first fractional Pontryagin class $[\frac{1}{2}p_1] \in H^4(X,\mathbb{Z})$ to a differential class $[\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1]$ as shown in the above diagram. This is the differential refinement that under transgression produces the differential refinement of our Pfaffian line bundles.

But this classical theory has two problems.

1. Beyond the Spin-group, the topological groups String, Fivebrane etc. do not admit the structure of finite-dimensional Lie groups anymore, hence ordinary Chern-Weil theory fails to apply.

2. Even in the situation where it does apply, ordinary Chern-Weil theory only works on cohomology classes, not on cocycles. Therefore the differential refinements cannot see the homotopy fiber sequences anymore, that crucially characterized the obstruction problem of lifting through the Whitehead tower.

The source of the first problem may be thought to be the evident fact that the category Top of topological spaces does not encode smooth structure. But the problem goes deeper, even. In homotopy theory, Top is not even about topological structure. Rather, it is about homotopies and *discrete* geometric structure.

One way to make this precise is to say that there is a *Quillen equivalence* between the model category structures on topological spaces and on simplicial sets.

$$
\mathrm{Top} \underset{\mathrm{Sing}}{\overset{|-|}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet} \qquad \mathrm{Ho}(\mathrm{Top}) \simeq \mathrm{Ho}(\mathrm{sSet})\,.
$$

Here the *singular simplicial complex functor* Sing sends a topological space to the simplicial set whose $k$-cells are maps from the topological $k$-simplex into $X$.

In more abstract modern language we may restate this as saying that there is an equivalence

$$
\mathrm{Top} \underset{\simeq}{\overset{\Pi}{\longrightarrow}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}
$$

between the homotopy theory of topological spaces and that of $\infty$-*groupoids*, exhibited by forming the *fundamental* $\infty$-*groupoid* of $X$.

To break this down into a more basic statement, let $\mathrm{Top}_{\leq 1}$ be the subcategory of homotopy 1-types, hence of these topological spaces for which only the 0th and the first homotopy groups may be nontrivial. Then the above equivalence restricts to an equivalence

$$
\mathrm{Top}_{\leq 1} \underset{\simeq}{\overset{\Pi}{\longrightarrow}} \mathrm{Grpd}
$$

with ordinary groupoids. Restricting this even further to (pointed) connected 1-types, hence spaces for which only the first homotopy group may be non-trivial, we obtain an equivalence

$$\mathrm{Top}_{1,\mathrm{pt}} \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\pi_1} \mathrm{Grp}$$

with the category of groups. Under this equivalence a connected 1-type topological space is simply identified with its first fundamental group.

Manifestly, the groups on the right here are just bare groups with no geometric structure; or rather with *discrete* geometric structure. Therefore, since the morphism $\Pi$ is an equivalence, also $\mathrm{Top}_1$ is about *discrete* groups, $\mathrm{Top}_{\leq 1}$ is about *discrete* groupoids and Top is about *discrete $\infty$-groupoids.*

There is a natural solution to this problem. This solution and the differential cohomology theory that it supports is the topic of this book.

The solution is to equip discrete $\infty$-groupoids $A$ with *smooth structure* by equipping them with information about what the *smooth families* of $k$-morphisms in it are. In other words, to assign to each smooth parameter space $U$ an $\infty$-groupoid of smoothly $U$-parameterized families of cells in $A$.

If we write $\mathbf{A}$ for $A$ equipped with smooth structure, this means that we have an assignment

$$\mathbf{A} : U \mapsto \mathbf{A}(U) =: \mathrm{Maps}(U, A)_{\mathrm{smooth}} \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

such that $\mathbf{A}(*) = A$.

Notice that here the notion of smooth maps into $A$ is not defined before we declare $\mathbf{A}$, rather it is defined *by* declaring $\mathbf{A}$. A more detailed discussion of this idea is below in 1.2.5.1.

We can then define the homotopy theory of *smooth* $\infty$-groupoids by writing

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := L_W \mathrm{Funct}(\mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}) \,.$$

Here on the right we have the category of contravariant functors on the category of smooth manifolds, such as the $\mathbf{A}$ from above. In order for this to inform this simple construction about the local nature of smoothness, we need to formally invert some of the morphisms between such functors, which is indicated by the symbol $L_W$ on the left. The set of morphisms $W$ that are to be inverted are those natural transformation that are *stalkwise* weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets.

We find that there is a canonical notion of *geometric realization* on smooth $\infty$-groupoids

$$|-| : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xrightarrow{\Pi} \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xrightarrow{|-|} \mathrm{Top} \,,$$

where $\Pi$ is the derived left adjoint to the embedding

$$\mathrm{Disc} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

of bare $\infty$-groupoids as discrete smooth $\infty$-groupoids. We may therefore ask for *smooth refinements* of given topological spaces $X$, by asking for smooth $\infty$-groupoids $\mathbf{X}$ such that $|\mathbf{X}| \simeq X$.

A simple example is obtained from any Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$. Consider the functor $\exp(\mathfrak{g}) : \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{sSet}$ given by the assignment

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g}) : U \mapsto ([k] \mapsto \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat,vert}} U \times \Delta^k, \mathfrak{g}) \,,$$

where on the right we have the set of differential forms on the parameter space times the smooth $k$-simplex which are flat and vertical with respect to the projection $U \times \Delta^k \to U$.

We find that the 1-truncation of this smooth $\infty$-groupoid is the Lie groupoid

$$\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{g}) = \mathbf{B}G$$

that has a single object and whose morphisms form the simply connected Lie group $G$ that integrates $\mathfrak{g}$. We may think of this Lie groupoid also as the *moduli stack* of smooth $G$-principal bundles. In particular, this is a smooth refinement of the classifying space for $G$-principal bundles in that

$$|\mathbf{B}G| \simeq BG \,.$$

So far this is essentially what classical Chern-Weil theory can already see. But smooth $\infty$-groupoids now go much further.

In the next step there is a *Lie 2-algebra* $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{string}$ such that its exponentiation

$$\tau_2 \exp(\mathfrak{string}) = \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}$$

is a smooth 2-groupoid, which we may think of as the *moduli 2-stack of* String-*principal* which is a smooth refinement of the String-classifying space

$$|\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}| \simeq B\mathrm{String}\,.$$

Next there is a Lie 6-algebra $\mathfrak{fivebrane}$ such that

$$\tau_6 \exp(\mathfrak{fivebrane}) = \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Fivebrane}$$

with

$$|\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Fivebrane}| \simeq B\mathrm{Fivebrane}\,.$$

Moreover, the characteristic maps that we have seen now refine first to smooth maps on these moduli stacks, for instance

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)\,,$$

and then further to *differential* refinement of these maps

$$\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}\,,$$

where now on the left we have the moduli stack of smooth Spin-connections, and on the right the moduli 3-stack of *circle $n$-bundles with connection.*

A detailed discussion of these constructions is below in 7.1.2.

In addition to capturing smooth and differential refinements, these constructions have the property that they work not just at the level of cohomology classes, but at the level of the full cocycle $\infty$-groupoids. For instance for $X$ a smooth manifold, postcomposition with $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ may be regarded not only as inducing a function

$$H^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, \mathrm{Spin}) \to H^4_{\mathrm{conn}}(X)$$

on cohomology sets, but a morphism

$$\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}(X) : \mathbf{H}^1(X, \mathrm{Spin}) \to \mathbf{H}^3(X, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$$

from the groupoid of smooth principal Spin-bundles with connection to the 3-groupoid of smooth circle 3-bundles with connection. Here the boldface $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ denotes the ambient $\infty$-topos of smooth $\infty$-groupoids and $\mathbf{H}(-,-)$ its hom-functor.

By this refinement to cocycle $\infty$-groupoids we have access to the homotopy fibers of the morphism $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1$. Before differential refinement the homotopy fiber

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}) \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} \mathbf{H}(X, B^3 U(1))\ ,$$

is the 2-groupoid of smooth String-principal 2-bundles on $X$: smooth *string structures* on $X$. As we pass to the differential refinement, we obtain *differential string structures* on $X$

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1} \mathbf{H}(X, B^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})\ .$$

A cocycle in the 2-groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}})$is naturally identified with a tuple consisting of

- a smooth Spin-principal bundle $P \to X$ with connection $\nabla$;
- the Chern-Simons 2-gerbe with connection $CS(\nabla)$ induced by this;
- a choice of trivialization of this Chern-Simons 2-gerbe and its connection.

We may think of this as a refinement of secondary characteristic classes: the first Pontryagin curvature characteristic form $\langle F_\nabla \wedge F_\nabla \rangle$ itself is constrained to vanish, and so the Chern-Simons form 3-connection itself constitutes cohomological data.

More generally, we have access not only to the homotopy fiber over the 0-cocycle, but may pick one cocycle in each cohomology class to a total morphism $H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$ and consider the collection of all homotopy fibers over all connected components as the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1\mathrm{Struc}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X) & \longrightarrow & H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \end{array} .$$

This yields the 2-groupoid of *twisted differential string structure*. These objects, and their higher analogs given by twisted differential fivebrane structures, appear in background field structure of the heterotic string and its magnetic dual, as discussed in [SSS09c].

These are the kind of structures that $\infty$-Chern-Weil theory studies.

### 1.4.3 The anomaly-free gauge coupling of the open string

As another example of the general phenomena of higher prequantum field theory, we close by briefly indicating how the higher prequantum states of 3d Chern-Simons theory in codimension 2 reproduce the *twisted Chan-Paton gauge bundles* of open string backgrounds, and how their transgression to codimension 1 reproduces the cancellation of the Freed-Witten-Kapustin anomaly of the open string. This section draws from [FSS13a].

By the above, the Wess-Zumino-Witten gerbe $\mathbf{wzw} : G \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ as discussed in section 1.4.1.2 may be regarded as the *prequantum 2-bundle* of Chern-Simons theory in codimension 2 over the circle. Equivalently, if we consider the WZW $\sigma$-model for the string on $G$ and take the limiting TQFT case obtained by sending the kinetic term to 0 while keeping only the gauge coupling term in the action, then it is the extended Lagrangian of the string $\sigma$-model: its transgression to the mapping space out of a *closed* worldvolume $\Sigma_2$ of the string is the topological piece of the exponentiated WZW $\sigma$-model action. For $\Sigma_2$ with boundary the situation is more interesting, and this we discuss now.

The canonical representation of the 2-group $BU(1)$ is on the complex K-theory spectrum, whose smooth (stacky) refinement is given by $\mathbf{B}U := \varinjlim_n \mathbf{B}U(n)$ in $\mathbf{H}$. On any component for fixed $n$ the action of the smooth 2-group $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ is exhibited by the long homotopy fiber sequence

$$U(1) \longrightarrow U(n) \to \mathrm{PU}(n) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(n) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{PU}(n) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{dd}_n} \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$$

in $\mathbf{H}$, in that $\mathbf{dd}_n$ is the universal $(\mathbf{B}U(n))$-fiber 2-bundle which is associated by this action to the universal $(\mathbf{B}U(1))$-2-bundle.[18] Using the general higher representation theory in $\mathbf{H}$ as developed in [NSS12a], a local section of the $(\mathbf{B}U(n))$-fiber prequantum 2-bundle which is $\mathbf{dd}_n$-associated to the prequantum 2-bundle $\mathbf{wzw}$, hence a local prequantum 2-state, is, equivalently, a map

$$\mathbf{\Psi} : \mathbf{wzw}|_Q \longrightarrow \mathbf{dd}_n$$

[18] The notion of $(\mathbf{B}U(n))$-fiber 2-bundle is equivalently that of nonabelian $U(n)$-*gerbes* in the original sense of Giraud, see [NSS12a]. Notice that for $n = 1$ this is more general than then notion of $U(1)$-bundle gerbe: a $G$-gerbe has structure 2-group $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$, but a $U(1)$-bundle gerbe has structure 2-group only in the left inlcusion of the fiber sequence $\mathbf{B}U(1) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}U(1)) \to \mathbb{Z}_2$.

in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)}$, where $\iota_Q : Q \hookrightarrow G$ is some subspace. Equivalently (compare with the general discussion in section 7.1.1), this is a map

$$(\mathbf{\Psi}, \mathbf{wzw}) : \iota_Q \longrightarrow \mathbf{dd}_n$$

in $\mathbf{H}^{(\Delta^1)}$, hence a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{\Psi}} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{PU}(n) \\ {}^{\iota_Q}\downarrow & \swArrow & \downarrow^{\mathbf{dd}_n} \\ G & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{wzw}]{} & \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)\,. \end{array}$$

One finds that this equivalently modulates a unitary bundle on $Q$ which is *twisted* by the restriction of $\mathbf{wzw}$ to $Q$ as in twisted K-theory (such a twisted bundle is also called a *gerbe module* if $\mathbf{wzw}$ is thought of in terms of bundle gerbes [CBMMS02]). So

$$\mathbf{dd}_n \;\in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)}$$

is the moduli stack for twisted rank-$n$ unitary bundles. As with the other moduli stacks before, one finds a differential refinement of this moduli stack, which we write

$$(\mathbf{dd}_n)_{\mathrm{conn}} \;:\; (\mathbf{B}U(n)//\mathbf{B}U(1))_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}\,,$$

and which modulates twisted unitary bundles with twisted connections (bundle gerbe modules with connection). Hence a differentially refined state is a map $\widehat{\mathbf{\Psi}} \;:\; \mathbf{wzw}|_Q \to (\mathbf{dd}_n)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$; and this is precisely a twisted gauge field on a D-brane $Q$ on which open strings in $G$ may end. Hence these are the *prequantum 2-states* of Chern-Simons theory in codimension 2. Precursors of this perspective of Chan-Paton bundles over D-branes as extended prequantum 2-states can be found in [Sc07, Rog11b].

Notice that by the above discussion, together the discussion in section 7.1.1, an equivalence

$$\hat{O} :\; \mathbf{wzw} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{wzw}$$

in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$ has two different, but equivalent, important interpretations:

1. it is an element of the *quantomorphism 2-group* (i.e. the possibly non-linear generalization of the Heisenberg 2-group) of 2-prequantum operators;

2. it is a twist automorphism analogous to the generalized diffeomorphisms for the fields in gravity.

Moreover, such a transformation is locally a structure well familiar from the literature on D-branes: it is locally (on some cover) given by a transformation of the B-field of the form $B \mapsto B + d_{\mathrm{dR}} a$ for a local 1-form $a$ (this is the *Hamiltonian 1-form* in the interpretation of this transformation in higher prequantum geometry) and its prequantum operator action on prequantum 2-states, hence on Chan-Paton gauge fields $\widehat{\mathbf{\Psi}} :\; \mathbf{wzw} \longrightarrow (\mathbf{dd}_n)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ (by precomposition) is given by shifting the connection on a twisted Chan-Paton bundle (locally) by this local 1-form $a$. This local gauge transformation data

$$B \mapsto B + da\,, \qquad\qquad A \mapsto A + a\,,$$

is familiar from string theory and D-brane gauge theory (see e.g. [Po01]). The 2-prequantum operator action $\Psi \mapsto \hat{O}\Psi$ which we see here is the fully globalized refinement of this transformation.

The map $\widehat{\mathbf{\Psi}} : (\iota_Q, \mathbf{wzw}) \to (\mathbf{dd}_n)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ above is the gauge-coupling part of the extended Lagrangian of the *open* string on $G$ in the presence of a D-brane $Q \hookrightarrow G$. We indicate what this means and how it works. Note that for all of the following the target space $G$ and background gauge field $\mathbf{wzw}$ could be replaced by any target space with any circle 2-bundle with connection on it.

The object $\iota_Q$ in $\mathbf{H}^{(\Delta^1)}$ is the target space for the open string. The worldvolume of that string is a smooth compact manifold $\Sigma$ with boundary inclusion $\iota_{\partial\Sigma} : \partial\Sigma \to \Sigma$, also regarded as an object in $\mathbf{H}^{(\Delta^1)}$. A field configuration of the string $\sigma$-model is then a map

$$\phi : \iota_\Sigma \to \iota_Q$$

in $\mathbf{H}^{(\Delta^1)}$, hence a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Sigma & \longrightarrow & Q \\ {\scriptstyle \iota_{\partial\Sigma}} \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow {\scriptstyle \iota_Q} \\ \Sigma & \xrightarrow{\phi} & G \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$, hence a smooth function $\phi : \Sigma \to G$ subject to the constraint that the boundary of $\Sigma$ lands on the D-brane $Q$. Postcomposition with the background gauge field $\widehat{\mathbf{\Psi}}$ yields the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \partial\Sigma & \longrightarrow & Q & \xrightarrow{\widehat{\mathbf{\Psi}}} & (\mathbf{B}U(n)//U(1))_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ {\scriptstyle \iota_{\partial\Sigma}} \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow {\scriptstyle \iota_Q} & & \\ \Sigma & \xrightarrow{\phi} & G & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{wzw}]{} & \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,. \end{array}$$

Comparison with the situation of Chern-Simons theory with Wilson lines in section 1.4.1.5 shows that the total action functional for the open string should be the product of the fiber integration of the top composite morphism with that of the bottom composite morphisms. Hence that functional is the product of the surface parallel transport of the **wzw** $B$-field over $\Sigma$ with the line holonomy of the twisted Chan-Paton bundle over $\partial\Sigma$.

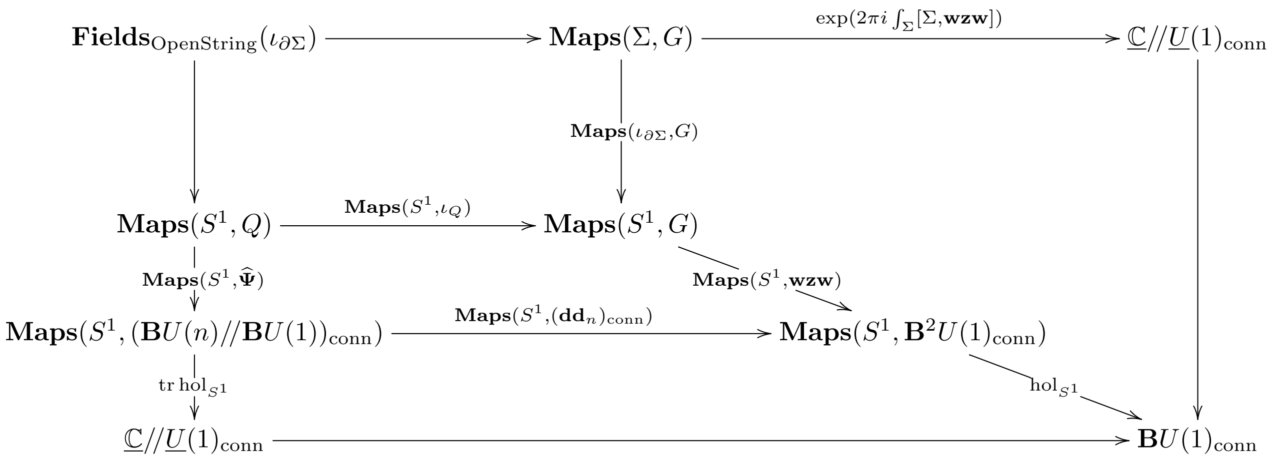
This is indeed again true, but for more subtle reasons this time, since the fiber integrations here are *twisted* (we discuss this in detail below in 6.4.18): since $\Sigma$ has a boundary, parallel transport over $\Sigma$ does not yield a function on the mapping space out of $\Sigma$, but rather a section of the line bundle on the mapping space out of $\partial\Sigma$, pulled back to this larger mapping space.

Furthermore, the connection on a twisted unitary bundle does not quite have a well-defined traced holonomy in $\mathbb{C}$, but rather a well defined traced holonomy up to a coherent twist. More precisely, the transgression of the WZW 2-connection to maps out of the circle as in section 1.4 fits into a diagram of moduli stacks in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Maps}(S^1, (\mathbf{B}U(n)//\mathbf{B}U(1))_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tr}\,\mathrm{hol}_{S^1}} & \underline{\mathbb{C}}//\underline{U}(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ {\scriptstyle \mathbf{Maps}(S^1, (\mathbf{dd}_n)_{\mathrm{conn}})} \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ \mathbf{Maps}(S^1, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{hol}_{S^1}} & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,. \end{array}$$

This is a transgression-compatibility of the form that we have already seen in section 1.4.1.2.

In summary, we obtain the transgression of the extended Lagrangian of the open string in the background of B-field and Chan-Paton bundles as the following pasting diagram of moduli stacks in $\mathbf{H}$ (all squares are filled with homotopy 2-cells, which are notationally suppressed for readability)




Here

- the top left square is the homotopy pullback square that computes the mapping stack $\mathbf{Maps}(\iota_{\partial\Sigma}, \iota_Q)$ in $\mathbf{H}^{(\Delta^1)}$, which here is simply the smooth space of string configurations $\Sigma \to G$ which are such that the string boundary lands on the D-brane $Q$;

- the top right square is the twisted fiber integration of the **wzw** background 2-bundle with connection: this exhibits the parallel transport of the 2-form connection over the worldvolume $\Sigma$ with boundary $S^1$ as a section of the pullback of the transgression line bundle on loop space to the space of maps out of $\Sigma$;

- the bottom square is the above compatibility between the twisted traced holonomy of twisted unitary bundles and the trangression of their twisting 2-bundles.

The total diagram obtained this way exhibits a difference between two section of a single complex line bundle on $\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{OpenString}}(\iota_{\partial\Sigma})$ (at least one of them non-vanishing), hence a map

$$\exp\left(2\pi i \int_\Sigma [\Sigma, \mathbf{wzw}]\right) \cdot \mathrm{tr}\,\mathrm{hol}_{S^1}([S^1, \widehat{\mathbf{\Psi}}]) \;:\; \mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{OpenString}}(\iota_{\partial\Sigma}) \longrightarrow \underline{\mathbb{C}}\,.$$

This is the well-defined action functional of the open string with endpoints on the D-brane $Q \hookrightarrow G$, charged under the background **wzw** B-field and under the twisted Chan-Paton gauge bundle $\widehat{\Psi}$.

Unwinding the definitions, one finds that this phenomenon is precisely the twisted-bundle-part, due to Kapustin [Ka99], of the Freed-Witten anomaly cancellation for open strings on D-branes, hence is the Freed-Witten-Kapustin anomaly cancellation mechanism either for the open bosonic string or else for the open type II superstring on Spin$^c$-branes. Notice how in the traditional discussion the existence of twisted bundles on the D-brane is identified just as *some* construction that happens to cancel the B-field anomaly. Here, in the perspective of extended quantization, we see that this choice follows uniquely from the general theory of extended prequantization, once we recognize that $\mathbf{dd}_n$ above is (the universal associated 2-bundle induced by) the canonical representation of the circle 2-group $\mathbf{B}U(1)$, just as in one codimension up $\mathbb{C}$ is the canonical representation of the circle 1-group $U(1)$.

### 1.4.4 Super $p$-branes propagating on super-spacetimes

We consider aspects of the traditional formulation super $p$-brane sigma models in the light of higher geometric prequantum theory, following [FSS13b] and the classical referecnes given there.

The "old brane scan" (see 1.4.4.2 below) contains all the branes of string/M-theory which do not have tensor-multiplet fields on their worldvolume, equivalently those which may end on other brane, but do not have themselves other branes ending on them. Below in 8.1.2 we consider the refinement of the theory to higher geometry proper and find that here the old brane scan completes to the full "brane boquet" of string/M-theory.

- 1.4.4.1 – Super-Minkowski spacetimes;
- 1.4.4.2 – The old brane scan;
- 1.4.4.3 – Brane charges and Supergravity BPS-states.

**1.4.4.1 Super-Minkowski spacetimes** We set up some basic notation concerning the super-translation- and the super-Poincaré super Lie algebras, following [dAFr82]. For more background see [Fr99, lecture 3] and [Po01, appendix B].

Write $\mathfrak{o}(d-1,1)$ for the Lie algebra of the Lorentz group in dimension $d$. If $\{\omega_a{}^b\}_{a,b}$ is the canonical basis of Lie algebra elements, then the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{o}(d-1,1))$ is generated from elements $\{\omega^a{}_b\}_{a,b}$ in degree $(1, \mathrm{even})$ with the differential given by[19] $d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, \omega^a{}_b := \omega^a{}_c \wedge \omega^c{}_b$. Next, write $\mathfrak{iso}(d-1,1)$ for the Poincaré Lie algebra. Its Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra in turn is generated from the $\{\omega^a{}_b\}$ as before together with further generators $\{e^a\}_a$ in degree $(1, \mathrm{even})$ with differential given by $d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, e^a := \omega^a{}_b \wedge e^b$. Now for $N$ denoting a real spinor representation of $\mathfrak{o}(d-1,1)$, also called the number of supersymmetries (see for instance [Fr99, part 3]), write $\{\Gamma^a\}$ for a representation of the Clifford algebra in this representation and $\{\Psi_\alpha\}_\alpha$ for the corresponding basis elements of the spinor representation. There is then an essentially unique symmetric $\mathrm{Spin}(d-1,1)$-equivariant bilinear map from two spinors to a vector, traditionally written in components as

$$(\psi_1, \psi_2)^a := \tfrac{i}{2}\overline{\psi}\Gamma^a\psi\,.$$

This induces the super Poincaré Lie algebra $\mathfrak{siso}_N(d-1,1)$ whose Chevalley-Eilenberg super-dg-algebra is generated from the generators as above together with generators $\{\psi^\alpha\}$ in degree $(1, \mathrm{odd})$ with the differential now defined as follows

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, \omega^a{}_b &= \omega^a{}_c \wedge \omega^c{}_b\ , \\ d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, e^a &= \omega^a{}_b \wedge e^b + \tfrac{i}{2}\overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^a \psi\ , \\ d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, \psi^\alpha &= \tfrac{1}{4}\omega^a{}_b \wedge \Gamma^a{}_b \psi\ . \end{aligned}$$

Here and in the following $\Gamma^{a_1 \cdots a_p}$ denotes the skew-symmetrized product of the Clifford matrices and in the above matrix multiplication is understood whenever the corresponding indices are not displayed. In summary, the degrees are

$$\deg(e^a) = (1, \mathrm{even}), \quad \deg(\omega^a) = (1, \mathrm{even}), \quad \deg(\psi^\alpha) = (1, \mathrm{odd}), \quad \deg(d_{\mathrm{CE}}) = (1, \mathrm{even})\,.$$

Notice that this means that, for instance, $e^{a_1} \wedge e^{a_2} = -e^{a_1} \wedge e^{a_2}$ and $e^a \wedge \psi^\alpha = -\psi^\alpha \wedge e^a$ but $\psi^{\alpha_1} \wedge \psi^{\alpha_2} = +\psi^{\alpha^2} \wedge \psi^{\alpha_1}$.

**Example 1.4.1.** For $\Sigma$ a supermanifold of dimension $(d; N)$, a flat $\mathfrak{siso}(d-1,1)$-valued differential form $A : \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{siso}(d-1,1) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{dR}}(\Sigma)$, according to Def. 7.3.1 and subject to the constraint that the $\mathbb{R}^{d;N}$-component is induced from the tangent space of $\Sigma$ (this makes it a *Cartan connection*) is

1. a *vielbein* field $E^a := A(e^a)$,
2. with a *Levi-Civita connection* $\Omega^a{}_b := A(\omega^a{}_b)$ (graviton),
3. a spinor-valued 1-form field $\psi^\alpha := A(\psi^\alpha)$ (gravitino),

[19]Here and in all of the following a summation over repeated indices is understood.

subject to the flatness constraints which here say that the torsion of of the Levi-Civita connection is the super-torsion $\tau = \overline{\Psi} \wedge \Gamma^a \Psi \wedge E_a$ and that the Riemann curvature vanishes. This is the gravitational field content (for vanishing field strength here, one can of course also consider non-flat fields) of supergravity on $\Sigma$, formulated in first order formalism. By passing to $L_\infty$-extensions of $\mathfrak{siso}$ this is the fomulation of supergravity fields which seamlessly generalizes to the higher gauge fields that higher supergravities contain, including their correct higher gauge transformations. This is the perspective on supergravity originating around the article [dAFr82] and expanded on in the textbook [CaDAFr91]. Recognizing the "FDA"-language used in this book as secretly being about Lie $n$-algebra homotopy theory (the "FDA"s are really Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras super-$L_\infty$-algebras) allows one to uncover some natural and powerful higher gauge theory and geometric homotopy theory hidden in traditional supergravity literature.

The *super translation Lie algebra* corresponding to the above is the quotient

$$\mathbb{R}^{d;N} := \mathfrak{siso}(d-1,1)/\mathfrak{o}(d-1,1)$$

whose CE-algebra is as above but with the $\{\omega^a{}_b\}$ discarded. We may think of the underlying super vector space of $\mathbb{R}^{d;N}$ as $N$-super Minkowski spacetime of dimension $d$, i.e. with $N$ supersymmetries. Regarded as a supermanifold, it has canonical super-coordinates $\{x^a, \vartheta^\alpha\}$ and the CE-generators $e^a$ and $\psi^\alpha$ above may be identified under the general equivalence $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \simeq \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{L}}(G)$ (for a (super-)Lie group $G$ with (super-)Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$) with the corresponding canonical left-invariant differential forms on this supermanifold:

$$\begin{aligned} e^a &= d_{\mathrm{dR}}\, x^a + \overline{\vartheta}\Gamma^a\, d_{\mathrm{dR}}\, \vartheta\ , \\ \psi^\alpha &= d_{\mathrm{dR}}\, \vartheta^\alpha\ . \end{aligned}$$

This defines a morphism $\theta : \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{d;N}) \to \Omega^{\bullet|\bullet}(\mathbb{R}^{d;N})$ to super-differential forms on super Minkowski space, and via def. 7.3.1 this is the Maurer-Cartan form, example 7.3.7, on the super*group* $\mathbb{R}^{d;N}$ of supergranslations As such $\{e^a, \psi^\alpha\}$ is the canonical *super-vielbein* on super-Minkowski spacetime.

Notice that the only non-trivial piece of the above CE-differential remaining on $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{d;N})$ is

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{d;N})}\, e^a = \overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^a \psi\,.$$

Dually this is the single non-trivial super-Lie bracket on $\mathbb{R}^{d;N}$, the one which pairs two spinors to a vector. All the exceptional cocycles considered in the following exclusively are controled by just this equation and Lorentz invariance.

**1.4.4.2 The old brane scan** As usual, we write $N$ for a choice of number of irreducible real (Majorana) representations of $\mathrm{Spin}(d-1,1)$, and $N = (N_+, N_-)$ if there are two inequivalent chiral minimal representations. For instance, two important cases are

| $d = 10$ | $d = 11$ |
|---|---|
| $N = (1,0) = \mathbf{16}$ | $N = 1 = \mathbf{32}$ |

For $0 \leq p \leq 9$ consider the dual bispinor element

$$\mu_p := e^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge e^{a_p} \wedge (\overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{a_1 \cdots a_p} \psi) \ \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{d;N})\,,$$

where here and in the following the parentheses are just to guide the reader's eye. Observe that the differential of this element is of the form

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, \mu_p \ \propto \ e^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge e^{a_{p-1}} \wedge (\overline{\psi}\Gamma^{a_1 \cdots a_p} \wedge \psi) \wedge (\overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{a_p} \psi)\,.$$

This is zero precisely if after skew-symmetrization of the indices, the spinorial expression

$$\overline{\psi}\Gamma^{[a_1 \cdots a_p} \wedge \psi \wedge \overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{a_p]}\psi = 0$$

vanishes identically (on all spinor components). The spinorial relations which control this are the *Fierz identities*. If this expression vanishes, then $\mu_p$ is a $(p+2)$-cocycle on $\mathbb{R}^{d;N=1}$, Def. 7.3.3, hence a homomorphism of super Lie $n$-algebras of the form

$$\mu_p : \mathbb{R}^{d;N=1} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}[p+1] \ .$$

If this is the case then, by def. 7.3.8, this defines a $\sigma$-model $p$-brane propagating on $\mathbb{R}^{d;N=1}$.

The combinations of $d$ and $p$ for which this is the case had originally been worked out in [AETW87]. The interpretation in terms of super-Lie algebra cohomology was clearly laid out in [AzTo89]. See [Br10a, Br10b, Br13] for a rigorous treatment and comprehensive classification for all $N$. The non-trivial cases (those where $\mu_p$ is closed but not itself a differential) correspond precisely to the non-empty entries in the following table.

| $d\backslash p$ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 11 | | (1) $\mathfrak{m2brane}$ | | | | | | | |
| 10 | (1,0) $\mathfrak{string}_{\text{het}}$ | | | | (1,0) $\mathfrak{ns5brane}_{\text{het}}$ | | | | |
| 9 | | | | (1) | | | | | |
| 8 | | | (1) | | | | | | |
| 7 | | (1) | | | | | | | |
| 6 | (1,0) $\mathfrak{littlestring}$ | | (1,0) | | | | | | |
| 5 | | (1) | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (1) | (1) | | | | | | | |
| 3 | (1) | | | | | | | | |

This table is known as the "old brane scan" for string/M-theory. Each non-empty entry corresponds to a $p$-brane WZW-type $\sigma$-model action functional of Green-Schwarz type. For $(d = 10, p = 1)$ this is the original Green-Schwarz action functional for the superstring [GrSch84] and, therefore, we write $\mathfrak{string}_{\text{het}}$ in the respective entry of the table (similarly there are cocycles for type II strings, discussed in the following sections), which at the same time is to denote the super Lie 2-algebra extension of $\mathbb{R}^{10,N=1}$ that is classified by $\mu_p$ in this dimension, according to Remark 7.3.24:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{string}_{\text{het}} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,0)} & \xrightarrow{\ \mu_1\ } & \mathbb{R}[2] \ . \end{array}$$

This Lie 2-algebra has been highlighted in [BaH10].

Analogously we write $\mathfrak{m2brane}$ for the super Lie 3-algebra extension of $\mathbb{R}^{11;N=1}$ classified by the nontrivial cocycle $\mu_2$ in dimension 11 (this was called the *supergravity Lie 3-algebra* $\mathfrak{sugra}_{11}$ in [SSS09a])

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{m2brane} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbb{R}^{11;N=1} & \xrightarrow{\ \mu_2\ } & \mathbb{R}[3] \ , \end{array}$$

and so on.

**Remark 1.4.2.** While it was a pleasant insight back then that so many of the extended objects of string/M-theory do appear from just super-Lie algebra cohomology this way in the above table, it was perhaps just as curious that not all of them appeared. Later other tabulations of string/M-branes were compiled, based on less mathematically well defined physical principles [Duf08]. These "new brane scans" are what make the above an "old brane scan". But, following [FSS13b], we will discuss below in 8.1.2 that if only we allow ourselves to pass from (super-)Lie algebra theory to the higher homotopy theory of (super-) Lie $n$-algebra theory, then the old brane scan turns out to be part of a brane bouquet that accurately incorporates all the information of the "new brane scan", all the branes of the new brane scan, altogether with their intersection laws, with their tensor multiplet field content and its correct higher gauge transformation laws.

#### 1.4.4.3 Brane charges and Supergravity BPS-states

Let $\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N}$ be a super-Minkowski spacetime and $(d, N, p)$ an item in the brane scan, i.e.

$$\omega_{\mathrm{WZW}} = \psi \wedge E^{\wedge p} \wedge \psi \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N})$$

a cocycle. Let then $X$ be a super-spacetime equipped with a definite globalization $\omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}} \in \Omega^2(X)$ of $\omega_{\mathrm{WZW}}$.

We may regard the pair $(X, \omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})$ as a pre-$(p+1)$-plectic supermanifold. As such it induces the higher Poisson bracket super Lie $(p+1)$-algebra $\mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})$ of def. 1.3.158, def. 1.3.159, prop. 1.3.162.

If $X$ is equipped with super-vielbein field $E$ and with further relevant fields that solve the equations of motion of supergravity in the relevant dimension, then these equations imply the existence of such definite $\omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ [BeSeTo86, BeSeTo87]. This means that isometries of $X$ preserve $\omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}$, hence that their vector fields (the Killing vectors and Killing spinors) are $(p+1)$-plectomorphisms for $\omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}$.

However, and this point is neglected in the literature, except for a brief indication in [Wi86, page 17], definition of the WZW model globally on $X$ requires a choice of prequantization of $\omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}$. This means that the relevant symmetries are those isomeetries that are not just $(p+1)$-plectomorphisms, but Hamiltonian vector fields, in the sense of def. 1.3.156. Write

$$\mathfrak{Isom}(X) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X)$$

for the inclusion of these.

**Definition 1.4.3.** Write $\mathfrak{BPS}(X, \omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})$ for the restriction of the current Lie $(p+1)$-algebra $\mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})$ (def. 1.3.158, def.1.3.159, prop. 1.3.162) of $\omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ to isometries, i.e. for the super $L_\infty$-algebra in the homotopy pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{BPS}(X, \omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}) & \longrightarrow & \mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathfrak{Isom}(X) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) \end{array} .$$

**Proposition 1.4.4.** *The 0-truncation of the super Lie $(p+1)$-algebra $\mathfrak{BPS}(X, \omega)$ to a super-Lie algebra $\tau_0\mathfrak{BPS}(X, \omega)$ is the central extension of the supersymmetry algebra of $X$ by charges of $p$-branes wrapping non-trivial cycles, as in [AGIT89].*

Proof. This follows via remark 1.3.157 by corollary 6.4.205, which gives an extension

$$H^p_{dR}(X) \to \tau_0\mathfrak{BPS}(X, \omega) \to \mathfrak{Isom}(X)$$

classified by $\omega(-,-)$. The elements in $H^p_{dR}(X)$ are the $p$-brane charges as on [AGIT89, p.8]. □

**Remark 1.4.5.** It follows that $X$ is a *supergravity* $1/k$ *BPS-state* (see e.g. [CaSm07]) if the odd dimension of $\tau_0\mathfrak{BPS}(X, \omega)$ is $1/k$ times that of $\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N}$.

This concerns the charges of the branes in the old brane scan, 1.4.4.2. The refinement of this statement to the full brane bouquet needs a more comprehensive formulation in higher differential geometry. We consider this below in 8.1.2.

# 2 Concept

We discuss here aspects of *homotopy-type theory*, the theory of locally cartesian closed $\infty$-*categories* and of $\infty$-*toposes*, that we need in the following. We find it useful to think and speak of this without the hyphen, due to theorem 3.1.9 below.

Much of this is a review of material available in the literature, we just add some facts that we will need and for which we did not find a citation. The reader at least roughly familiar with this theory should skip ahead to our main content, the discussion of *cohesive* $\infty$-*toposes* in 4. We will refer back to these sections here as needed.

- 2.1 – Categories
- 2.2 – The method

## 2.1 Categories

The natural joint generalization of the concept of *category* and of *homotopy type* is that of $\infty$-*category*: a collection of objects, such that between any ordered pair of them there is a homotopy type of morphisms. We briefly survey key definitions and properties in the theory of $\infty$-categories.

- 2.1.1 – Dependent homotopy-types and Locally cartesian closed $\infty$-categories;
- 2.1.2 – Presentation by simplicial sets;
- 2.1.3 – Presentation by simplicially enriched categories.

### 2.1.1 Dependent homotopy-types and Locally cartesian closed $\infty$-categories

For the most basic notions of category theory see the first pages of [MacMoe92] or A.1 in [L-Topos].

**Definition 2.1.1.** A category $\mathcal{C}$ is called *cartesian closed* if it has Cartesian products $X \times Y$ of all objects $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$ and if there is for each $X \in \mathcal{C}$ a mapping space functor $[X, -] : \mathcal{C} \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}$, characterized by the fact that there is a bijection of hom-sets

$$\mathcal{C}(X \times A, Y) \simeq \mathcal{C}(A, [X, Z])$$

natural in the objects $A, X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$. A category $\mathcal{C}$ is called *locally cartesian closed* if for each object $X \in \mathcal{C}$ the slice category $\mathcal{C}_{/X}$ is a cartesian closed category.

The main example of locally cartesian closed categories of interest here are toposes, to which we come below in def. 3.1.3. It is useful to equivalently re-express local cartesian closure in terms of *base change*:

**Proposition 2.1.2.** *If $\mathcal{C}$ is a locally cartesian closed category, def. 2.1.1, then for $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ any morphism in $\mathcal{C}$ there exists an adjoint triple of functors between the slice categories over $X$ and $Y$ (called* base change *functors)*

$$\mathcal{C}_{/\Gamma_1} \underset{f_*}{\overset{\overset{f_!}{\longrightarrow}}{\underset{\longleftarrow}{\overset{f^*}{}}}} \mathcal{C}_{/\Gamma_2} \;,$$

*where $f^*$ is given by pullback along $f$, $f_!$ is its left adjoint and $f_*$ its right adjoint. Conversely, if a category $\mathcal{C}$ has pullbacks and has for every morphism $f$ a left and right adjoint $f_!$ and $f_*$ to the pullback functor $f^*$, then it is locally cartesian closed.*

It turns out that base change may usefully be captured syntactically such as to constitute a flavor of formal logic called *constructive set theory* or *type theory* [ML74]:

**Definition 2.1.3.** Given a locally cartesian closed category $\mathcal{C}$, one says equivalently that

- its internal logic is a *dependent type theory*;
- it provides *categorical semantics* for dependent type theory

as follows:

- the objects of $\mathcal{C}$ are called the *types*;
- the objects in a slice $\mathcal{C}_{/\Gamma}$ are called the types *in context* $\Gamma$ or *dependent on* $\Gamma$, denoted

$$\Gamma \vdash X : \mathrm{Type}$$

- a morphism $* \to X$ (from the terminal object into any object $X$) in a slice $\mathcal{C}_\Gamma$ is called *a term of type* $X$ in context $\Gamma$, and denoted

$$\Gamma \vdash x : X$$

  or more explicitly

$$a : \Gamma \vdash x(a) : X(a);$$

- given a morphism $f : \Gamma_1 \longrightarrow \Gamma_2$ in $\mathcal{C}$ with its induced base change adjoint triple of functors between slice categories from prop. 2.1.2

$$\mathcal{C}_{/\Gamma_1} \underset{f_*}{\overset{f_!}{\underset{\longleftarrow f^* \longrightarrow}{\longrightarrow}}} \mathcal{C}_{/\Gamma_2}$$

  then

  – given a morphism $(* \to X)$ in $\mathcal{C}_{/\Gamma_2}$, hence a term $\Gamma_2 \vdash x : X$, then its pullback by $f^*$ is denoted by *substitution* of variables

$$a : \Gamma_1 \vdash x(f(a)) : X(f(a)) \,,$$

  – given an object $X \in \mathcal{C}_{\Gamma_1}$ its image $f_!(X) \in \mathcal{C}_{/\Gamma_2}$ is called the *dependent sum* of $X$ along $f$ and is denoted as

$$\Gamma_2 \vdash \sum_f X \;:\; \mathrm{Type}\,,$$

  – given an object $X \in \mathcal{C}_{\Gamma_1}$ its image $f_*(X) \in \mathcal{C}_{/\Gamma_2}$ is called the *dependent product* of $X$ along $f$ and is denoted as

$$\Gamma_2 \vdash \prod_f X \;:\; \mathrm{Type}\,,$$

- the universal property of the adjoints $(f_! \dashv f^* \dashv f_*)$ translates to evident rules for introducing and for transforming terms of these dependent sum/product types, called *term introduction* and *term elimination* rules.

We consider bundles and base change in more detail below in 5.1.2.

When this syntactic translation is properly formalized, it yields an equivalent description of locally cartesian closed categories:

**Proposition 2.1.4** ([See84, ClDy11]). *There is an equivalence of 2-categories between locally cartesian closed categories and dependent type theories.*

**Remark 2.1.5.** Given any object $X \in \mathcal{C}_{/\Gamma}$, its diagonal $X \longrightarrow X \times X$ regarded as an object of $\mathcal{C}_{/(\Gamma \times X \times X)}$ serves as the *identity type* of $X$, denoted

$$\Gamma, (x_1, x_2) : X \times X \vdash (x_1 = x_2) : \mathrm{Type}\,.$$

Namely given two terms $x_1, x_2 : X$, then a term $\Gamma \vdash p : (x_1 = x_2)$ is as a morphism in $\mathcal{C}$ an element on the diagonal of $X \times X$ and in the type theory is a *proof of equality* of $x_1$ and $x_2$. If there is such a proof of equality then it is unique, since the diagonal is always a monomorphism.

But consider now the case that $\mathcal{C}$ in addition carries the structure of a *model category* (see A.2 in [L-Topos] for a review). Then there is for each $X$ a path space object $X^I \longrightarrow X \times X$. Using this as the categorical semantics of identity types, instead of the plain diagonal $X \longrightarrow X \times X$, means to make identity behave instead like *higher gauge equivalence* in physics: there are then possibly many equivalences between two terms of a given type, and many equivalences between equivalences, and so on. If $\mathcal{C}$ is moreover right proper as a model category and such that its cofibrations are precisely its monomorphisms, then there exists a variant of the dependent type theory of remark 2.1.3 reflecting these homotopy-theoretic identity types. This is called dependent type theory *with intensional identity types* or, more recently, *homotopy type theory* [UFP13]. At the same time, such a model category is a presentation for the homotopy-theoretic analogy of a locally cartesian closed category: a *locally cartesian closed* $(\infty, 1)$-*category* (see A.3 of [L-Topos]).

The following was maybe first explicitly suggested by [Jo08a] and in its refinement to $\infty$-toposes (see theorem 3.1.9 below) in [Aw10]. A proof of the technical details involved appeared in [CiSh13, Shul12a]. For a survey in our context see [Sc14b].

**Proposition 2.1.6.** *Up to equivalence, the internal type theory of a locally Cartesian closed* $(\infty, 1)$-*category is homotopy type theory (without necessarily univalence) and conversely homotopy type theory (without necessarily univalence) has categorical semantics in locally cartesian closed* $(\infty, 1)$-*categories.*

We now turn to description such $\infty$-categories "externally" in terms of simplicial sets and categories enriched over simplicial sets. We briefly come back to the "inernal" perspective of homotopy type theory below in 4.1.1.2.

### 2.1.2 Presentation by simplicial sets

**Definition 2.1.7.** An *quasi-category* is a simplicial set $C$ such that all horns $\Lambda^i[n] \to C$ that are *inner*, in that $0 < i < n$, have an extension to a simplex $\Delta[n] \to C$.

A vertex $c \in C_0$ is an *object*, an edge $f \in C_1$ is a *morphism* in $C$.

An *morphism of quasi-categories* $f : C \to D$ is a morphism of the underlying simplicial sets.

This definition is due [Jo08a]. Such quasi-categories turn out to have the right homotopy theory to qualify as presentation of $\infty$-categories and we will usually abuse terminology and speak of them as $\infty$-*categories* right away.

**Remark 2.1.8.** For $C$ an $\infty$-category, we think of $C_0$ as its collection of *objects*, and of $C_1$ as its collection of *morphisms* and generally of $C_k$ as the collection of $k$-*morphisms*. The inner horn filling property can be seen to encode the existence of composites of $k$-morphisms, well defined up to coherent $(k+1)$-morphisms. It also implies that for $k > 1$ these $k$-morphisms are invertible, up to higher morphisms. To emphasize this fact one also says that $C$ is an $(\infty, 1)$-*category*. (More generally an $(\infty, n)$-*category* would have $k$ morphisms for all $k$ such that for $k > n$ these are equivalences.)

The power of the notion of $\infty$-categories is that it supports the higher analogs of all the crucial facts of ordinary category theory. This is a useful meta-theorem to keep in mind, originally emphasized by André Joyal and Charles Rezk.

**Fact 2.1.9.** *In general*

- $\infty$-*Category theory parallels category theory;*
- $\infty$-*Topos theory parallels topos theory.*

More precisely, essentially all the standard constructions and theorems have their $\infty$-analogs if only we replace *isomorphism* between objects and equalities between morphisms consistently by *equivalence*s and coherent higher equivalences in an $\infty$-category.

**Proposition 2.1.10.** *For $C$ and $D$ two $\infty$-categories, the internal hom of simplicial sets* $\mathrm{sSet}(C, D) \in \mathrm{sSet}$ *is an $\infty$-category.*

**Definition 2.1.11.** We write $\mathrm{Func}(C, D)$ for this $\infty$-category and speak of the *$\infty$-category of $\infty$-functors* between $C$ and $D$.

**Remark 2.1.12.** The objects of $\mathrm{Func}(C, D)$ are indeed the $\infty$-functors from def. 2.1.7. The morphisms may be called *$\infty$-natural transformations.*

**Definition 2.1.13.** The *opposite* $C^{\mathrm{op}}$ of an $\infty$-category $C$ is the $\infty$-category corresponding to the opposite of the corresponding sSet-category.

**Definition 2.1.14.** Let $\mathrm{KanCplx} \subset \mathrm{sSet}$ be the full subcategory of sSet on the Kan complexes, regarded naturally as an sSet-enriched category, in fact a Kan-complex enriched category. Below in 2.1.3 we recall the *homotopy coherent nerve* construction $N_h$ that sends a Kan-complex enriched category to an $\infty$-category. We say that

$$\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := N_h \mathrm{KanCplx}$$

is the *$\infty$-category of $\infty$-groupoids.*

**Definition 2.1.15.** For $C$ an $\infty$-category, we write

$$\mathrm{PSh}_\infty(C) := \mathrm{Func}(C^{\mathrm{op}}, \infty\mathrm{Grpd})$$

and speak of the *$\infty$-category of $\infty$-presheaves* on $C$.

The following is the $\infty$-category theory analog of the Yoneda lemma.

**Proposition 2.1.16.** *For $C$ an $\infty$-category, $U \in C$ any object, $j(U) \simeq C(-, U) : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ an $\infty$-presheaf represented by $U$ we have for every $\infty$-presheaf $F \in \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(C)$ a natural equivalence of $\infty$-groupoids*

$$\mathrm{PSh}_\infty(C)(j(U), F) \simeq F(U) \, .$$

From this derives a notion of $\infty$-limits and of adjoint $\infty$-functors and they satisfy the expected properties. This we discuss below in 5.1.1.

### 2.1.3 Presentation by simplicially enriched categories

A convenient way of handling $\infty$-categories is via sSet-enriched categories: categories which for each ordered pair of objects has not just a set of morphisms, but a simplicial set of morphisms (see [Ke82] for enriched category theory in general and section A of [L-Topos] for sSet-enriched category theory in the context of $\infty$-category theory in particular):

**Proposition 2.1.17.** *There exists an adjunction between simplicially enriched categories and simplicial sets*

$$(|-| \dashv N_h) : \mathrm{sSetCat} \underset{N_h}{\overset{|-|}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}$$

*such that*

- *if $S \in \mathrm{sSetCat}$ is such that for all objects $X, Y \in S$ the simplicial set $S(X, Y)$ is a Kan complex, then $N_h(S)$ is an $\infty$-category;*
- *the unit of the adjunction is an equivalence of $\infty$-categories (see def. 2.1.19 below).*

This is for instance prop. 1.1.5.10 in [L-Topos].

**Remark 2.1.18.** In particular, for $C$ an ordinary category, regarded as an sSet-category with simplicially constant hom-objects, $N_h C$ is an $\infty$-category. A functor $C \to D$ is precisely an $\infty$-functor $N_h C \to N_h D$. In this and similar cases we shall often notationally suppress the $N_h$-operation. This is justified by the following statements.

**Definition 2.1.19.** For $C$ an $\infty$-category, its *homotopy category* $\mathrm{Ho}(C)$ (or $\mathrm{Ho}_C$) is the ordinary category obtained from $|C|$ by taking connected components of all simplicial hom-sets:

$$\mathrm{Ho}_C(X, Y) = \pi_0(|C|(X, Y)) \,.$$

A morphism $f \in C_1$ is called an *equivalence* if its image in $\mathrm{Ho}(C)$ is an isomorphism. Two objects in $C$ connected by an equivalence are called *equivalent objects*.

**Definition 2.1.20.** An $\infty$-functor $F : C \to D$ is called an *equivalence of $\infty$-categories* if

1. It is *essentially sujective* in that the induced functor $\mathrm{Ho}(f) : \mathrm{Ho}(C) \to \mathrm{Ho}(D)$ is essentially surjective;
2. and it is *full and faithful* in that for all objects $X, Y$ the induced morphism $f_{X,Y} : |C|(X, Y) \to |D|(X, Y)$ is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.

For $C$ an $\infty$-category and $X$, $Y$ two of its objects, we write

$$C(X, Y) := |C|(X, Y)$$

and call this Kan complex the *hom-$\infty$-groupoid* of $C$ from $X$ to $Y$.

The following assertion guarantees that sSet-categories are indeed a faithful presentation of $\infty$-categories.

**Proposition 2.1.21.** *For every $\infty$-category $C$ the unit of the $(|-| \dashv N_h)$-adjunction from prop. 2.1.17 is an equivalence of $\infty$-categories*

$$C \xrightarrow{\simeq} N_h|C| \,.$$

This is for instance theorem 1.1.5.13 together with remark 1.1.5.17 in [L-Topos].

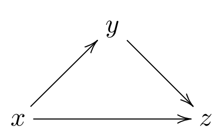
**Definition 2.1.22.** An $\infty$-groupoid is an $\infty$-category in which all morphisms are equivalences.

**Proposition 2.1.23.** *$\infty$-groupoids in this sense are precisely Kan complexes.*

This is due to [Jo02]. See also prop. 1.2.5.1 in [L-Topos].

A convenient way of constructing $\infty$-categories in terms of sSet-categories is via categories with weak equivalences.

**Definition 2.1.24.** A *category with weak equivalences* $(C, W)$ is a category $C$ equipped with a subcategory $W \subset C$ which contains all objects of $C$ and such that $W$ satsifies the *2-out-of-3 property*: for every commuting triangle




in $C$ with two of the three morphisms in $W$, also the third one is in $W$.

**Definition 2.1.25.** The *simplicial localization* of a category with weak equivalences $(C, W)$ is the sSet-category

$$L_W C \in \mathrm{sSetCat}$$

(or $LC$ for short, when $W$ is understood) given as follows: the objects are those of $C$; and for $X, Y \in C$ two objects, the simplicial hom-set $LC(X, Y)$ is the inductive limit over $n \in \mathbb{N}$ of the nerves of the following categories:

- objects are equivalence classes of zig-zags of length $n$ of morphisms

$$X \xleftarrow{\simeq} K_1 \longrightarrow K_2 \xleftarrow{\simeq} \cdots \longrightarrow Y$$

  in $C$, such that the left-pointing morphisms are in $W$;

- morphisms are equivalence classes of transformations of such zig-zags

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & K_1 & \longrightarrow & K_2 & \xleftarrow{\simeq} \cdots & \searrow & \\ & \overset{\simeq}{\swarrow} & & & & & & \\ X & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & & Y \\ & \underset{\simeq}{\nwarrow} & & & & & & \\ & & K_1' & \longrightarrow & K_2' & \xleftarrow{\simeq} \cdots & \nearrow & \end{array},$$

  such that the vertical morphisms are in $W$;

- subject to the equivalence relation that identifies two such (transformations of) zig-zags if one is obtained from the other by discarding identity morphisms and then composing consecutive morphisms.

This simplicial "hammock localization" is due to [DwKa80a].

**Proposition 2.1.26.** *Let $(C, W)$ be a category with weak equivalences and $LC$ be its simplicial localization. Then its homotopy category in the sense of def. 2.1.19 is equivalent to the ordinary homotopy category $\mathrm{Ho}(C, W)$ (the category obtained from $C$ by universally inverting the morphisms in $W$):*

$$\mathrm{Ho}L_W C \simeq \mathrm{Ho}(C, W)\,.$$

A convenient way of controlling simplicial localizations is via $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$-enriched model category structures (see section A.2 of [L-Topos] for a good discussion of all related issues).

**Definition 2.1.27.** A *model category* is a category with weak equivalences $(C, W)$ that has all limits and colimits and is equipped with two further classes of morphisms, $\mathrm{Fib}, \mathrm{Cof} \subset \mathrm{Mor}(C)$ – the *fibrations* and *cofibrations* – such that $(\mathrm{Cof}, \mathrm{Fib} \cap W)$ and $(\mathrm{Cof} \cap W, \mathrm{Fib})$ are two weak factorization systems on $C$. Here the elements in $\mathrm{Fib} \cap W$ are called *acyclic fibrations* and those in $\mathrm{Cof} \cap W$ are called *acyclic cofibrations*. An object $X \in C$ is called *cofibrant* if the canonical morphism $\emptyset \to X$ is a cofibration. It is called *fibrant* if the canonical morphism $X \to *$ is a fibration.

A *Quillen adjunction* between two model categories is a pair of adjoint functors between the underlying categories, such that the right adjoint preserves fibrations and acyclic fibrations, which equivalently means that the left adjoint preserves cofibrations and acyclic cofibrations.

**Remark 2.1.28.** The axioms on model categories directly imply that every object is weakly equivalent to a fibrant object, and to a cofibrant objects and in fact to a fibrant and cofibrant objects.

**Example 2.1.29.** The category of simplicial sets carries a model category structure, here denoted $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$, whose weak equivalences are the weak homotopy equivalences, cofibrations are the monomorphisms, and fibrations and the Kan fibrations.

**Definition 2.1.30.** Let $A, B, C$ be model categories. Then a functor

$$F : A \times B \to C$$

is a *left Quillen bifunctor* if

1. it preserves colimits separately in each argument;

2. for $i : a \to a'$ and $j : b \to b'$ two cofibrations in $A$ and in $B$, respectively, the canonical induced morphism

$$F(a', b) \coprod_{F(a,b)} F(a, b') \to F(a', b')$$

is a cofibration in $C$ and is in addition a weak equivalence if $i$ or $j$ is.

**Remark 2.1.31.** In particular, for $F : A \times B \to C$ a left Quillen bifunctor, if $a \in A$ is cofibrant then

$$F(a, -) : B \to C$$

is an ordinary left Quillen functor if $F$ is a left Quillen bifunctor, as is

$$F(-, b) : A \to C$$

for $b$ cofibrant.

**Definition 2.1.32.** A *monoidal model category* is a category equipped both with the structure of a model category and with the structure of a monoidal category, such that the tensor product functor of the monoidal structure is a left Quillen bifunctor, def. 2.1.30, with respect to the model category structure.

**Example 2.1.33.** The model category $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ is a monoidal model category with respect to its Cartesian monoidal structure.

**Definition 2.1.34.** For $\mathcal{V}$ a monoidal model category, an $\mathcal{V}$*-enriched model category* is a model category equipped with the structure of an $\mathcal{V}$-enriched category which is also $\mathcal{V}$-tensored and -cotensored, such that the $\mathcal{V}$-tensoring functor is a left Quillen bifunctor, def. 2.1.30.

**Remark 2.1.35.** An $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$-enriched model category is often called a *simplicial model category.* Notice that, while entirely standard, this use of terminology is imprecise: first, not every simplicial object in categories is a sSet-enriched category, and second, there are other and inequivalent model category structure on sSet that make it a monoidal model category with respect to its Cartesian monoidal structure.

**Definition 2.1.36.** For $C$ an ($\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$-enriched) model category write

$$C^\circ \in \mathrm{sSetCat}$$

for the full sSet-subcategory on the fibrant and cofibrant objects.

**Proposition 2.1.37.** *Let $C$ be an $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$-enriched model category. Then there is an equivalence of $\infty$-categories*

$$C^\circ \simeq LC\,.$$

This is corollary 4.7 with prop. 4.8 in [DwKa80b].

**Proposition 2.1.38.** *The hom-$\infty$-groupoids $(N_h C^\circ)(X, Y)$ are already correctly given by the hom-objects in $C$ from a cofibrant to a fibrant representative of the weak equivalence class of $X$ and $Y$, respectively.*

In this way $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$-enriched model category structures constitute particularly convenient extra structure on a category with weak equivalences for constructing the corresponding $\infty$-category.

In terms of the presentation of $\infty$-categories by simplicial categories, 2.1.3, adjoint $\infty$-functors are presented by *simplicial Quillen adjunctions*, def. 2.1.27, between simplicial model categories: the restriction of a simplicial Quillen adjunction to fibrant-cofibrant objects is the sSet-enriched functor that presents the $\infty$-derived functor under the model of $\infty$-categories by simplicially enriched categories.

**Proposition 2.1.39.** *Let $C$ and $D$ be simplicial model categories and let*

$$(L \dashv R) : C \underset{R}{\overset{L}{\rightleftarrows}} D$$

*be an* sSet*-enriched adjunction whose underlying ordinary adjunction is a Quillen adjunction. Let $C^\circ$ and $D^\circ$ be the $\infty$-categories presented by $C$ and $D$ (the Kan complex-enriched full* sSet*-subcategories on fibrant-cofibrant objects). Then the Quillen adjunction lifts to a pair of adjoint $\infty$-functors*

$$(\mathbb{L}L \dashv \mathbb{R}R) : C^\circ \rightleftarrows D^\circ$$

*On the decategorified level of the homotopy categories these are the total left and right derived functors, respectively, of $L$ and $R$.*

This is [L-Topos], prop 5.2.4.6.

The following proposition states conditions under which a simplicial Quillen adjunction may be detected already from knowing of the right adjoint only that it preserves fibrant objects (instead of all fibrations).

**Proposition 2.1.40.** *If $C$ and $D$ are simplicial model categories and $D$ is a left proper model category, then for an* sSet*-enriched adjunction*

$$(L \dashv R) : C \rightleftarrows D$$

*to be a Quillen adjunction it is already sufficient that $L$ preserves cofibrations and $R$ preserves fibrant objects.*

This appears as [L-Topos, cor. A.3.7.2].

We will use this for finding simplicial Quillen adjunctions into left Bousfield localizations of left proper model categories: the left Bousfield localization preserves the left properness, and the fibrant objects in the Bousfield localized structure have a good characterization: they are the fibrant objects in the original model structure that are also local objects with respect to the set of morphisms at which one localizes. Therefore for $D$ the left Bousfield localization of a simplicial left proper model category $E$ at a class $S$ of morphisms, for checking the Quillen adjunction property of $(L \dashv R)$ it is sufficient to check that $L$ preserves cofibrations, and that $R$ takes fibrant objects $c$ of $C$ to such fibrant objects of $E$ that have the property that for all $f \in S$ the derived hom-space map $\mathbb{R}\mathrm{Hom}(f, R(c))$ is a weak equivalence.

## 2.2 The method

Based on the archetypical example of an $\infty$-category, the $\infty$-category $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ of $\infty$-groupoids/homotopy types (def. 2.1.14), it makes sense to think of an $\infty$-category generally as a *system of homotopy types* or *type system*, for short.

The concept of type system $\mathbf{H}$ provides a setting for homotopy-types to be, but lacks as yet any determination of further qualities these types may have.

For instance while it is common to think of bare $\infty$-groupoids as being *presented* by topological spaces, (via the famous equivalence $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq L_{\mathrm{whe}}\mathrm{Top}$ which we recall below in 6.2 ) there is not actually any intrinsic continuous topological quality left on objects $X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, whereas in a richer $\infty$-topos such as $\mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{TopMfd})$ there is (this we discuss below in 6.3). In the latter one has differing objects such as on the one hand the topological circle $S^1 \in \mathrm{TopMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ as well as on the other hand the homotopy-theoretic circle $* \underset{* \coprod *}{\coprod} * \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. That the former has a *topological geometric quality* which the latter lacks is reflected by the operation $\int$ of forming the *shape* of a topological space. One has $\int S^1 \simeq \int \left( * \underset{* \coprod *}{\coprod} * \right) \simeq * \underset{* \coprod *}{\coprod} *$, exhibiting that projecting out from $S^1$ all but its *quality of pure shape* makes it equivalent to the homotopy-theoretic circle, which itself is already pure shape. Hence the existence of a nontrivial shape operation on types is what reflects that types may carry a nontrivial topological (or more generally: cohesive) quality in the first place.

We now discuss a general method of axiomatizing determinations of qualities on types along these lines.

- 2.2.1 – Modality;
- 2.2.2 – Moments;
- 2.2.3 – Oppositions;
- 2.2.4 – Determinate negation;
- 2.2.5 – Progression

### 2.2.1 Modality

A central insight of traditional formal logic is, when generalized from propositions to types, that such *modalities* are formalized by monads on the type system [Law70a, Gol81, Mog91, Kob97, Shul12b, LiSh15], traditionally called *modalities* or *modal operators*:

**Definition 2.2.1.** A *modality* $\bigcirc$ on a type system $\mathbf{H}$ is a monad (an $\infty$-monad) $\bigcirc : \mathbf{H} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}$. A *co-modality* $\Box$ is a co-monad ($\infty$-comonad) $\Box : \mathbf{H} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}$. We say a $\bigcirc$*-modal type* (or $\Box$*-co-modal type*) is a type equipped with the structure of a (co-)algebra over this monad.

(In practice we often suppress the "co-" terminologically, as it is determined by the context.)

**Remark 2.2.2.** The general theory of $\infty$-monads on $\infty$-categories is discussed in section 6.2 of [L-Alg] and in [RiVe13]. By the homotopy monadicity theorem (theorem 6.2.2.5 of [L-Alg] and def. 6.1.15 with section 7 of [RiVe13]) every $\infty$-monad $\bigcirc : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$ arises as the endomorphism monad $\bigcirc \simeq R \circ L$ of some $\infty$-adjunction $(L \dashv R) : \mathbf{H} \leftrightarrow \mathcal{D}$ for some $\infty$-category $\mathcal{D}$. By theorem 5.4.14 in [RiVe13] $\infty$-adjunctions have the higher coherence data of their unit (and counit) uniquely (up to a contractible homotopy type of choices) induced from the underlying adjunction in the homotopy 2-categories. Therefore a choice of $\infty$-adjunction $(L \dashv R)$ for $\bigcirc$ re-encodes the coherence data of $\bigcirc$ as a homotopy coherent monoid in the monoidal $\infty$-category $\mathrm{End}(\mathbf{H})$ equivalently as the choice of $\infty$-category $\mathcal{D}$ and the single datum of an $\infty$-adjunction unit, see also remark 6.2.0.7 in [L-Alg]. This allows to present $\infty$-monads as ordinary monads on the homotopical fibration category underlying $\mathbf{H}$, see [Hess10] for homotopy monadicity discussed in homotopical (model) categories this way. All $\infty$-monads that we consider below arise as endomorphism monads of a given $\infty$-adjunction.

The concept of modality originates historically in the desire to equip propositional logic with extra structure that allows to formalize the informal idea of propositions being "possibly true" and being "necessarily true" in all cases ("in all possible worlds"). Using type dependency we may accurately formalize this idea as follows.

**Example 2.2.3.** For $\mathbf{H}$ a locally Cartesian closed $\infty$-category, def. 2.1.1, and for $\omega : W \longrightarrow W_0$ any morphism with induced base change adjoint triple (def. 2.1.3)

$$\mathbf{H}_{/W} \underset{\Pi_\omega}{\overset{\Sigma_\omega}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathbf{H}_{/W_0} \quad (\text{middle arrow } \omega^* : \mathbf{H}_{/W_0} \to \mathbf{H}_{/W})$$

then we say that the induced pair of adjoint (co-)monads

$$\left( \underset{\omega}{\Diamond} \dashv \underset{\omega}{\Box} \right) := \left( \left( \omega^* \sum_\omega \right) \dashv \left( \omega^* \prod_\omega \right) \right)$$

are the modalities of *possibility* and of *necessity*, respectively, with respect to $\omega$.

If here $\omega$ is a 1-epimorphism, def. 5.1.64, then it exhibits an equivalence relation (by theorem 5.1.123), the relation for which $w_1 \sim w_2$ is given by $\omega(w_1) \simeq \omega(w_2)$. In this case we have in the internal language of $\mathbf{H}$ that

- $\underset{\omega}{\lozenge} P$ is inhabited over $w$ precisely if there exists $\tilde{w}$ in the same equivalence class over which it is inhabited;
- $\underset{\omega}{\square} P$ is inhabited over $w$ preciely if it is inhabited for all $\tilde{w}$ in the same equivalence class.

The standard model of this situation in sets is the traditional "possible worlds semantics" of modal logic with relation on the "possible worlds".

**Remark 2.2.4.** Conversely, when considering the system of these adjoint modalities $\underset{\omega}{\lozenge} \dashv \underset{\omega}{\square}$ as $\omega$ ranges over all morphisms in $\mathbf{H}$, then we may think of this as providing a modal perspective on local Cartesian closure. Following [Law91] we might hence speak of locally Cartesian closed $\infty$-categories as "categories of necessity and possibility". Or, if we feel poetic and declare that the union of the opposites of necessity and possibility is *actuality*, then we might speak of "categories of actuality". In 3.2 we adopt this perspective also for dependent linear homotopy-theory.

Another basic example that plays a key role is the following.

**Definition 2.2.5.** Given an $\infty$-category $\mathcal{C}$ with terminal object $*$ and coproducts, then its *maybe-modality* $*/$ is the $\infty$-monad given by

$$*/ : \; X \mapsto X \sqcup * \,.$$

Here our notation reflects the following basic fact.

**Proposition 2.2.6.** *The maybe-modal types, hence the algebras in $\mathcal{C}$ over the maybe-monad, def. 2.2.5, are equivalently the pointed objects; the category of algebras over the maybe monad is the co-slice $\mathcal{C}^{*/}$ under the point.*

Proof. That these algebras are the pointed objects is already equivalent to the statement of the unit axiom for algebras over the maybe-monad. Then action axiom is then automatically satisfied. □

**Proposition 2.2.7.** *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a closed symmetric monoidal category with finite limits and colimits and reflexive coequalizers. Write $* \in \mathcal{C}$ for its terminal object and write $\mathcal{C}^{*/}$ for the category of maybe-modal types, def. 2.2.5, hence by prop. 2.2.6 of pointed objects, prop. 2.2.6, in $\mathcal{C}$. The maybe monad $*/$ is a commutative monoidal monad [Se12] and hence canonically induces the structure of a monoidal category on $\mathcal{C}^{*/}$.*

**Proposition 2.2.8.** *The canonical tensor product induced on the maybe-modal types $\mathcal{C}^{*/}$ is the* smash product *"$\wedge$" of pointed objects. For $E_1, E_2 \in \mathcal{C}^{*/}$ this operation sends these to the following pushout of coproducts and tensor products formed in $\mathcal{C}$*

$$E_1 \wedge E_2 := \; * \coprod_{(E_1 \otimes *) \coprod (* \otimes E_2)} (E_1 \otimes E_2)$$

*and this makes $(\mathcal{C}^{*/}, \wedge, * \coprod *)$ a closed symmetric monoidal category for the internal hom of pointed morphisms.*

Proof. The canonically induced monoidal structure on the category of algebras of a commutative monad is often said to go back to [Kock86], where indeed the closed structure is discussed, from which the tensor may be obtained as the adjunct in suitable circumstances. The monoidal structure appears in print explicitly in [Se12] (section 2.2 and theorem 2.5.5). Inserting the maybe-monad into the coequalizer formula there straightforwardly yields the pushout diagram defining the smash product as it appears for instance in construction 4.19 and proposition 4.20 of [EM07]. □

### 2.2.2 Moments

When a (co-)monad is *idempotent* in that applying it twice is equivalent to applying it just once, hence if it behaves as a projection, then it may be thought of as projecting out from any type some *pure quality* or *moment* that it has. Traditionally this is called a *closure operator*:

**Definition 2.2.9.** A *moment* $\bigcirc$ is an idempotent modality on $\mathbf{H}$, def. 2.2.1, a *co-moment* $\Box$ is an idempotent co-modality. Given a moment $\bigcirc$ or co-moment $\Box$ write $\mathbf{H}_{\bigcirc}, \mathbf{H}_{\Box} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ for the full subcategory of its modal types.

See [Shul12b, Shul15a] and section 7.7. of [UFP13] for modalities (moments) in homotopy type theory. Notice that:

**Proposition 2.2.10.** *For $\Box$ a moment ($\bigcirc$ a co-moment), def. 2.2.9, then its modal types $X$, def.2.2.1, are equivalently those for which the unit $X \to \Box X$ (the co-unit $\bigcirc X \to X$) is an equivalence. Moreover, these (co-)units exhibit the (co-)modal types as forming a reflective subcategory*

$$\mathbf{H}_{\bigcirc} \underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{\leftarrow}{\phantom{xx}}} \mathbf{H} \ ,$$

*resp. co-reflective subcategory*

$$\mathbf{H}_{\Box} \underset{\leftarrow}{\overset{\hookrightarrow}{\phantom{xx}}} \mathbf{H} \ .$$

Such operations on the global type system also induce moments relative to a base type:

**Proposition 2.2.11.** *Let $\bigcirc$ be a moment, def. 2.2.9, which preserves homotopy fiber produces over $\bigcirc$ modal types. Then for $X \in \mathbf{H}$ there is a moment $\bigcirc_X$ on $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ given by sending $(E \overset{p}{\to} X)$ to the left morphism in the pullback diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bigcirc_X E & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc E \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\bigcirc p} \\ X & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc X \end{array} ,$$

*where the bottom morphism is the $\bigcirc$-unit. Moreover, the universal factorization of $p$ through this pullback*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} E & \dashrightarrow & \bigcirc_X(E) & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc E \\ & {\scriptstyle p}\searrow & \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\bigcirc p} \\ & & X & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc X \end{array}$$

*is by a $\bigcirc$-equivalence $E \to \bigcirc_X E$, and this decomposition exhibits an orthogonal factorization system [L-Topos, 5.2.8] ($\bigcirc$-equivalences / $\bigcirc_X$-modal morphisms) in $\mathbf{H}$.*

This is essentially observed in [CJKP97].

Proof. The factorization is as given in the statement. It remains to check orthogonality.

Let therefore

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

be any commuting diagram in $\mathbf{H}$, where the left morphism is a $\bigcirc$-equivalence and the right morphism is $\bigcirc_X$-modal. Then, by assumption, there exists a pullback diagram on the right in

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \longrightarrow & X & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B & \longrightarrow & Y & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc Y \end{array} .$$

By the naturality of the $\bigcirc$-unit, the outer rectangle above is equivalent to the outer rectangle of

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
A & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc A & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc X \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \downarrow \\
B & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc B & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc Y
\end{array}\,,
$$

where now, again by assumption, the middle vertical morphism is an equivalence. Therefore there exists an essentially unique lift in the right square of this diagram. This induces a lift in the outer rectangle. By the universality of the $\int$-unit, such lifts factor essentially uniquely through $\int B$ and hence this lift, too, is essentially unique. Finally by the universal property of the pullback square on the right, this gives the required essentially unique lift on the left of

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
A & \longrightarrow & X & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc X \\
\downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
B & \longrightarrow & Y & \longrightarrow & \bigcirc Y
\end{array}\,.
$$

$\Box$

### 2.2.3 Opposition

One way of further determining a given pure quality is to assert an *opposite* pure quality, to contrast with. A formalization of this is the concept of a reflection and a co-reflection of types of pure quality jointly existing in two different ways, either as an adjoint triple of the form

$$
\mathbf{H}_{\bigcirc} \simeq \mathbf{H}_{\Box} \underset{\Box}{\overset{\bigcirc}{\underset{\longleftarrow}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{\hookrightarrow}}}} \mathbf{H} \qquad (\text{middle: } i_{\Box} \simeq i_{\bigcirc})
$$

or of the form

$$
\mathbf{H}_{\bigcirc} \simeq \mathbf{H}_{\Box} \underset{i_{\bigcirc}}{\overset{i_{\Box}}{\underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{\hookrightarrow}{\longleftarrow}}}} \mathbf{H} \qquad (\text{middle: } \bigcirc \simeq \Box)
$$

This is captured by the following

**Definition 2.2.12.** We say a moment $\bigcirc$ and co-moment $\Box$ are *dual* or *opposite* if they are adjoint

$$
\bigcirc \dashv \Box \qquad \text{or} \qquad \Box \dashv \bigcirc
$$

such that their categories of modal types are canonically equivalent in a manner exhibited by the above adjoint triples.

**Remark 2.2.13.** The perspective of def. 2.2.12 has been highlighted in [Law91], where it is proposed (p. 7) that adjunctions of this form usefully formalize "many instances of the *Unity and Identity of Opposites*" that control Hegelian metaphysics [He1841].

When we give such a duality a name $D$, we write

$$
D : \bigcirc \dashv \Box \qquad \text{or} \qquad D : \Box \dashv \bigcirc
$$

respectively and may call $D$ the *unity* of the two opposites that it related by adjunction.

Given opposite moments $\bigcirc \dashv \Box$ or $\Box \dashv \bigcirc$, every type $X$ sits naturally in a transformation

$$
\Box X \longrightarrow X \longrightarrow \bigcirc X
$$

between its two dual moments. This expresses how $X$ is decomposed into these two moments.

### 2.2.4 Determinate negation

If $\Box X$ is a pure moment found inside $X$, then it makes sense to ask for its *complement* or *negative*.

**Definition 2.2.14.** The *negative* $\overline{\Box}$ of a co-moment $\Box$ is the homotopy cofiber of its comparison morphism

$$\overline{\Box} X := \mathrm{cofib}\,(\Box X \longrightarrow X)\ .$$

The intuitive meaning suggests to ask whether this kind of negation of determinations is faithful in that there is no $\Box$-moment left in the negative $\overline{\Box}$, hence whether

$$\Box \overline{\Box} X \simeq * \,.$$

In general there is no reason for this to be the case. But if $\Box$ also has an opposite in the sense of def. 2.2.12, then one of the two opposite moments is left adjoint, hence preserves cofibers, and then a little more may be said.

Consider the case of an opposition of the form $\bigcirc \dashv \Box$. Then both $\bigcirc$ and $\Box$ express the same pure moment, just opposite ways of projecting onto it. Therefore in this situation it makes sense to alternatively ask that there is no $\bigcirc$-moment left in the $\overline{\Box}$-moment:

**Definition 2.2.15.** Given a unity of opposite moments $\bigcirc \dashv \Box$, def. 2.2.12, we say that it has *determinate negation* if $\Box$ and $\bigcirc$ both restrict to homotopy 0-types (def. 5.1.47) and such that on these

1. $\bigcirc * \simeq *$;
2. $\Box \longrightarrow \bigcirc$ is epi.

**Proposition 2.2.16.** *For opposite moments $\bigcirc \dashv \Box$ with determinate negation, def. 2.2.15, then on homotopy 0-type there is no $\bigcirc$-moment left in the $\overline{\Box}$-moment, in that*

$$\bigcirc \overline{\Box} X \simeq *$$

*naturally for all $X \in \mathbf{H}$.*

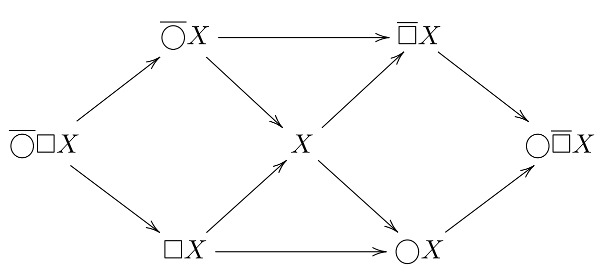
Proof. Given that $\bigcirc$, being a left adjoint, preserves colimits, hence cofibers, the first condition in def. 2.2.15 gives that

$$\bigcirc \overline{\Box} X = \bigcirc \mathrm{cofib}(\Box X \to X) \simeq \mathrm{cofib}(\Box X \to \bigcirc X)\,.$$

Now the second condition and the fact that epiness is preserved by pushout say that this result receives an epimorphism from the terminal object. But this forces it to be the terminal obect itself. $\Box$

This proof of prop. 2.2.16 crucially depends on the restriction to 0-types. At the other extreme, on stable types the intuition that $\bigcirc$-moment is complementary to $\overline{\Box}$-moment is verified in the following sense.

**Proposition 2.2.17.** *Given opposite moments $\bigcirc \dashv \Box$ as in def. 2.2.12, then every type $X$ naturally sits in a hexagonal diagram of the form*




,

*and if $X$ is stable, then this hexagon is homotopy exact in the following sense:*

1. *both squares are homotopy Cartesian, hence are* fracture squares*;*
2. *the boundary sequences are long homotopy fiber sequences.*

This was highlighted in [BNV13]. See below prop. 6.1.26.

**Remark 2.2.18.** Since on stable types Cartesian product is direct sum, we may write the exactness of the right square in prop. 2.2.17 as

$$X \simeq \bigcirc X \underset{\bigcirc \overline{\Box} X}{\oplus} \overline{\Box} X \,,$$

making notationally manifest how $X$ decomposes into its pure $\bigcirc$-moment and its pure $\overline{\Box}$-moment.

### 2.2.5 Progression

The principle of further determining a moment by positing opposite (adjoint) moments may be iterated. Given an opposition $\bigcirc \dashv \Box$ with $\bigcirc$ the left adjoint moment, we may ask that $\bigcirc$ also participates as the right adjoint of another opposition $\Diamond \dashv \bigcirc$, hence that there is a total adjoint tripe

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Diamond & \dashv & \bigcirc \\ \bot & & \bot \\ \bigcirc & \dashv & \Box \end{array} .$$

We might think of this as a higher order opposition, where the unity of the opposite moments at the bottom is itself opposed by the unity of the opposite moments on top.

In principle such progression of moments could be considered indefinitely, but the existence of each opposition is a strong condition and one finds that there are hardly non-degenerate models of longer sequences of oppositions.

But instead of finding further opposite moments directly, it happens that they appear after previous oppositions are being lifted.

**Definition 2.2.19.** A *resolution* of an opposition $\bigcirc_1 \dashv \Box_1$, def. 2.2.12, is another opposition $\bigcirc_2 \dashv \Box_2$ such that the types of pure quality for the first are also types of pure quality for the latter in that there are natural equivalences

$$\bigcirc_2 \bigcirc_1 X \simeq \bigcirc_1 X$$

$$\Box_2 \Box_1 X \simeq \Box_1 X \,;$$

as well as either

$$\bigcirc_2 \Box_1 X \simeq \Box_1 X$$

or

$$\Box_2 \bigcirc_1 X \simeq \bigcirc_1 X \,.$$

We denote such a situation by inclusion signs as

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bigcirc_2 & \dashv & \Box_2 \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \bigcirc_1 & \dashv & \Box_1 \end{array} .$$

Again, this has been suggested by William Lawvere.

**Example 2.2.20.** In a category with initial object $\emptyset$ and terminal object $*$ there exist canonical moments given by the (co-)monads which are constant on these two objects. These are in opposition and this opposition is lifted by the trivial opposition

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{id} & \dashv & \mathrm{id} \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \emptyset & \dashv & * \end{array} .$$

Below in 4 we see how by a sequence of intermediate resolutions and oppositions this develops to a rich progression of modalities that are considerably expressive, 5.

The negative of $\emptyset$, according to def. 2.2.14, is the maybe monad, def. 2.2.5:

$$\overline{\emptyset} \simeq */ .$$

Thus, by prop. 2.2.6, the negated-nothing modal types, according to def. 2.2.1, are the pointed (thus non-empty) objects. Below in 6.1.2 we consider a *generic* pointed object and show, in 6.1.3, that together with the progression of cohesive modalities, 4.1, this induces the theory of twisted differential generalized cohomology.

# 3 Essence

We discuss here those categories, 2.1 which are *reflected in themselves* via a universe object. These are the *homotopy toposes* or $\infty$*-toposes*. This is the essence of all further formalization. Our discussion merely serves to review existing theory and establish our notation.

## 3.1 $\mathrm{id} \dashv \mathrm{id}$ – Reflection and Appearance

The natural context for discussing the geometry of spaces that are locally modeled on test spaces in some category $C$ (and equipped with a notion of coverings) is the category called the *sheaf topos* $\mathrm{Sh}(C)$ over $C$ [Joh02]. Analogously, the natural context for discussing the *higher* geometry of such spaces is the $\infty$-category called the $\infty$*-sheaf topos* $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$.

The theory of $\infty$-toposes has been given a general abstract formulation in [L-Topos], using the $\infty$-category theory introduced by [Jo08a] and building on [Re05] and [ToVe02]. One of the central results proven there is that the old homotopy theory of simplicial presheaves, originating around [Br73] and developed notably in [Jard87] and [Dug01], is indeed a *presentation* of $\infty$-topos theory.

- 3.1.1 – Abstract $\infty$-category theoretic characterization
- 3.1.2 – Homotopy-type theory with type universes
- 3.1.3 – Presentation by simplicial (pre-)sheaves
- 3.1.4 – Presentation by simplicial objects in the site
- 3.1.5 – $\infty$-Sheaves and descent
- 3.1.6 – $\infty$-Sheaves with values in chain complexes

### 3.1.1 Abstract $\infty$-category theoretic characterization

Following [L-Topos], for us "$\infty$-topos" means this:

**Definition 3.1.1.** An $\infty$-topos is an accessible $\infty$-geometric embedding

$$\mathbf{H} \underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{L}{\leftarrow}} \mathrm{Func}(C^{\mathrm{op}}, \infty\mathrm{Grpd})$$

into an $\infty$-category of $\infty$-presheaves, def. 2.1.15 over some small $\infty$-category $C$, hence a full and faithful embedding functor which preserves filtered $\infty$-colimits, and has a left adjoint $\infty$-functor which preserves finite $\infty$-limits.

We say this is an $\infty$*-category of* $\infty$*-sheaves* (as opposed to a hypercompletion of such) if $\mathbf{H}$ is the reflective localization at the covering sieves of a Grothendieck topology on the homotopy category of $C$ (a *topological localization*), and then write $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ with the site structure on $C$ understood.

As we discuss in some detail below, hom-spaces in $\infty$-toposes constitute a unification and generalization of all kinds of cohomoloy theories. Therefore we adopt notation as follows.

**Definition 3.1.2.** For $\mathbf{H}$ an $\infty$-topos we write $\mathbf{H}(X, Y)$ for its hom-$\infty$-groupoid between objects $X$ and $Y$ and write $H(X, Y) = \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, Y)$ for the hom-set in the homotopy category.

One of the aspects of $\infty$-toposes that makes their theory more interesting than that of 1-toposes beyond what one might naively expect is referred to in the following terminology

**Definition 3.1.3.** An $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is *n-localic* if it has a site $\mathcal{C}$, def. 3.1.1, which is an $(n, 1)$-category with finite $\infty$-limits.

See [L-Topos, lemma 6.4.5.6].

**Remark 3.1.4.** Where generally any $\infty$-topos embodies some kind of *higher* geometry, those $\infty$-toposes which are not 1-localic are often referred to as encoding *derived* geometry. The higher differential geometry which we discuss below is axiomatically defined and applies generally also in such "derived" geometry. Just a handful of the statements below will assume the $\infty$-topos to be 1-localic for technical conditions used in the proofs. But I expect that more general proofs not needing these technical assumptions should exist.

More intrinsically, $\infty$-toposes are characterized as follows (we review the ingredients of the following statement in 5.1.1 and 5.1.8 below).

**Proposition 3.1.5** (Giraud-Rezk-Lurie axioms)**.** *An* $\infty$-topos *is a presentable* $\infty$*-category* $\mathbf{H}$ *that satisfies the following properties.*

1. **Coproducts are disjoint.** *For every two objects* $A, B \in \mathbf{H}$*, the intersection of* $A$ *and* $B$ *in their coproduct is the initial object: in other words the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \emptyset & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A & \longrightarrow & A \coprod B \end{array}$$

   *is a pullback.*

2. **Colimits are preserved by pullback.** *For all morphisms* $f \colon X \to B$ *in* $\mathbf{H}$ *and all small diagrams* $A \colon I \to \mathbf{H}_{/B}$*, there is an equivalence*

$$\varinjlim_i f^* A_i \simeq f^*(\varinjlim_i A_i)$$

   *between the pullback of the colimit and the colimit over the pullbacks of its components.*

3. **Quotient maps are effective epimorphisms.** *Every simplicial object* $A_\bullet : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathbf{H}$ *that satisfies the groupoidal Segal property (Definition 5.1.124) is the Čech nerve of its quotient projection:*

$$A_n \simeq A_0 \times_{\varinjlim_n A_n} A_0 \times_{\varinjlim_n A_n} \cdots \times_{\varinjlim_n A_n} A_0 \quad \textit{(n factors)}.$$

This is theorem 6.1.0.6 in [L-Topos].

An ordinary topos is famously characterized by the existence of a classifier object for monomorphisms, the *subobject classifier*. With hindsight, this statement already carries in it the seed of the close relation between topos theory and bundle theory, for we may think of a monomorphism $E \hookrightarrow X$ as being a *bundle of* $(-1)$*-truncated fibers* over $X$. The following axiomatizes the existence of arbitrary universal bundles

**Proposition 3.1.6.** *An* $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ *is a presentable* $\infty$*-category with the following properties.*

1. **Colimits are preserved by pullback.**

2. **There are universal** $\kappa$**-small bundles.** *For every sufficiently large regular cardinal* $\kappa$*, there exists a morphism* $\widehat{\mathrm{Obj}}_\kappa \to \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa$ *in* $\mathbf{H}$ *which* represents the core of the $\kappa$-small codomain fibration *in that for every object* $X$*, there is an equivalence*

$$\mathrm{name} : \mathrm{Core}(\mathbf{H}_{/_\kappa X}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{H}(X, \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa)$$

*between the $\infty$-groupoid of bundles (morphisms) $E \to X$ which are relatively $\kappa$-small over $X$ and the $\infty$-groupoid of morphisms from $X$ into $\mathrm{Obj}_\kappa$, such that there are $\infty$-pullback squares*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \longrightarrow & \widehat{\mathrm{Obj}_\kappa} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{name}(E)} & \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa \end{array} .$$

These two characterizations of $\infty$-toposes, prop. 3.1.5 and prop. 3.1.6 are equivalent; this is due to Rezk and Lurie, appearing as Theorem 6.1.6.8 in [L-Topos]. We find below in prop. 5.1.249 that the second of these axioms gives the equivalence between $V$-fiber bundles and $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$-principal $\infty$-bundles which is crucial for differential geometry.

The theory of cohesive $\infty$-toposes revolves around situations where the following fact has a refinement:

**Proposition 3.1.7.** *For every $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ there is an essentially unique geometric morphism to the $\infty$-topos* $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

$$(\Delta \dashv \Gamma) : \mathbf{H} \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{\Delta}{\leftrightarrows}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

This is prop 6.3.41 in [L-Topos].

**Proposition 3.1.8.** *Here $\Gamma$ forms global sections, in that $\Gamma(-) \simeq \mathbf{H}(*, -)$, and $\Delta$ forms constant $\infty$-sheaves – $\Delta(-) \simeq L\mathrm{Const}(-)$.*

Proof. By prop. 3.1.7 it is sufficient to exhibit an $\infty$-adjunction $(L\mathrm{Const}(-) \dashv \mathbf{H}(*, -))$ such that the left adjoint preserves finite $\infty$-limits. The latter follows since $\mathrm{Const} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(C)$ preserves all limits (for $C$ some $\infty$-site of definition for $\mathbf{H}$) and $L : \mathrm{PSh}(C) \to \mathbf{H}$ by definition preserves finite $\infty$-limits. To show the $\infty$-adjunction we use prop. 5.1.1, which says that every $\infty$-groupoid is the $\infty$-colimit over itself of the $\infty$-functor constant on the point: $S \simeq \varinjlim_S *$. From this we obtain the natural hom-equivalence

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}(L\mathrm{Const}S, X) &\simeq \mathrm{PSh}_C(\mathrm{Const}S, X) \\ &\simeq \mathrm{PSh}(\mathrm{Const}\varinjlim_S *, X) \\ &\simeq \varprojlim_S \mathrm{Psh}(\mathrm{Const}*, X) \\ &\simeq \varprojlim_S \mathbf{H}(L\mathrm{Const}*, X) \\ &\simeq \varprojlim_S \mathbf{H}(*, X) \\ &\simeq \varprojlim_S \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(*, \mathbf{H}(*, X)) \\ &\simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\varinjlim_S *, \mathbf{H}(*, X)) \\ &\simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(S, \mathbf{H}(*, X)) . \end{aligned}$$

Here and in the following "$*$" always denotes the terminal object in the corresponding $\infty$-category. We used that $L\mathrm{Const}$ preserves the terminal object (the empty $\infty$-limit.) □

### 3.1.2 Syntax of homotopy type theory with type universes

Above in 2.1.1 we indicated how locally cartesian closed $\infty$-categories have an internal homotopy type theory. In locally cartesian closed $\infty$-categories which are $\infty$-toposes, the "object of small objects" of prop. 3.1.5 above is internally the *type of types* denoted Type [UFP13].

The following statement was originally conjectured in [Aw10]. For a survey in our context see [Sc14b].

**Theorem 3.1.9.** *Every $\infty$-sheaf $\infty$-topos interprets homotopy type theory with higher inductive types and with a univalent type-universe á laTarski.*

For the underlying dependent type theory with intensional identity types this is the content of sections 3 in [Shul12a], using the coherence result of [LuWa14]. For the higher inductive types this is [ShLu12]. For univalence one observes that this is precisely the universal property of the object classifier of $\infty$-toposes, if the syntax of the type universe is taken to be "á la Tarski", this is summarized in [Shul14].

It is due to this theorem that we are entitled to write "homotopy type theory" in either of its meanings ("homotopy-type theory" and "homotopy type-theory").

In this context the type theoretic judgement "$x : X \vdash E(x) : \mathrm{Type}$" is interpreted in the $\infty$-topos as the *name* morphism $X \overset{\mathrm{name}(E)}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa$ of a morphism $E \to X$ in the $\infty$-topos, according to prop. 3.1.6. If here we declare to abbreviate $(\vdash E) := \mathrm{name}(E)$ then this means we have the following disctionary between the symbols used to talk about objects of slices in $\infty$-toposes and equivalently dependent types in homotopy type theory.

**morphisms to sequents**:

| notation in\for | objects/types | | | elements/terms | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $\infty$-topos theory | $X$ | $\overset{\vdash E}{\longrightarrow}$ | $\mathrm{Obj}_\kappa$ | $X$ | $\overset{t}{\longrightarrow}_X$ | $E$ |
| homotopy type theory | $x : X$ | $\vdash E(x)$ | $: \mathrm{Type}$ | $x : X$ | $\vdash t(x)$ | $: E(x)$ |

### 3.1.3 Presentation by simplicial (pre-)sheaves

For computations it is useful to employ a generators-and-relations presentation of presentable $\infty$-categories in general and of $\infty$-toposes in particular, given by ordinary sSet-enriched categories equipped with the structure of combinatorial simplicial model categories. These may be obtained by left Bousfield localization of a model structure on simplicial presheaves (as reviewed in appendix 2 and 3 of [L-Topos]).

We discuss these presentations and then discuss various constructions in terms of these presentations that will be useful over and over again in the following. Much of this material is standard and our discussion serves to briefly collect the relevant pieces. But we also highlight a few points that are not usually discussed explicitly in the literature, but which we will need later on.

**Definition 3.1.10.** Let $C$ be a small category.

- Write $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ for the category of functors $C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{sSet}$ to the category of simplicial sets. This is naturally equivalent to the category $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}$ of simplicial objects in the category of presheaves on $C$. Therefore one speaks of the *category of simplicial presheaves* over $C$.
- For $\{U_i \to U\}$ a covering family in the site $C$, write

$$C(\{U_i\}) \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] := \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} j(U_{i_0}) \times_{j(U)} \cdots \times_{j(U)} j(U_{i_k})$$

  for the corresponding *Čech nerve* simplicial presheaf. This is in degree $k$ the disjoint union of the $(k+1)$-fold intersections of patches of the cover. It is canonically equipped with a morphism $C(\{U_i\}) \to j(U)$. (Here $j : C \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}]$ is the Yoneda embedding.)
- The category $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is naturally an sSet-enriched category. For any two objects $X, A \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ write $\mathrm{Maps}(X, A) \in \mathrm{sSet}$ for the simplicial hom-set.
- Write $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ for the category of simplicial presheaves equipped with the following choices of classes of morphisms (which are natural transformations between sSet-valued functors):
  - the *fibrations* are those morphisms whose component over each object $U \in C$ is a Kan fibration of simplicial sets;

– the *weak equivalences* are those morphisms whose component over each object is a weak equivalence in the Quillen model structure on simplicial sets;

– the *cofibrations* are the morphisms having the right lifting property against th morphisms that are both fibrations as well as weak equivalences.

This makes $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ into a combinatorial simplicial model category.

- Write $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ for model category structure on simplicial presheaves which is the left Bousfield localization of $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ at the set of morphisms of the form $C(\{U_i\}) \to U$ for all covering families $\{U_i \to U\}$ of $C$.

  This is called the *projective* local model structure on simplicial presheaves [Dug01].

**Definition 3.1.11.** The operation of forming objectwise simplicial homotopy groups extends to a functors

$$\pi_0^{\mathrm{PSh}} : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}]$$

and for $n > 1$

$$\pi_n^{\mathrm{PSh}} : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_* \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}] \,.$$

These presheaves of homotopy groups may be sheafified. We write

$$\pi_0 : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \stackrel{\pi_0^{\mathrm{PSh}}}{\to} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}] \to \mathrm{Sh}(C)$$

and for $n > 1$

$$\pi_n : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_* \stackrel{\pi_n^{\mathrm{PSh}}}{\to} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}] \to \mathrm{Sh}(C) \,.$$

**Proposition 3.1.12.** *For $X \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ fibrant, the homotopy sheaves $\pi_n(X)$ from def. 3.1.11 coincide with the abstractly defined homotopy groups of $X \in \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ from [L-Topos].*

Proof. One may observe that the $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$-powering of $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ does model the abstract $\infty$Grpd-powering of $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$. □

**Definition 3.1.13.** A site $C$ has *enough points* if a morphism $(A \stackrel{f}{\to} B) \in \mathrm{Sh}(C)$ in its sheaf topos is an isomorphism precisely if for every *topos point*, hence for every geometric morphism

$$(x^* \dashv x_*) : \ \mathrm{Set} \underset{x_*}{\overset{x^*}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathrm{Sh}(C)$$

from the topos of sets we have that $x^*(f) : x^* A \to x^* B$ is an isomorphism.

Notice here that, by definition of geometric morphism, the functor $i^*$ is left adjoint to $i_*$ – hence preserves all colimits – and in addition preserves all *finite* limits.

**Example 3.1.14.** The following sites have enough points.

- The categories Mfd (SmoothMfd) of (smooth) finite-dimensional, paracompact manifolds and smooth functions between them;
- the category CartSp of Cartesian spaces $\mathbb{R}^n$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and continuous (smooth) functions between them.

This is discussed in detail below in 6.3.2. We restrict from now on attention to this case.

**Assumption 3.1.15.** The site $C$ has enough points.

**Theorem 3.1.16.** *For $C$ a site with enough points, the weak equivalences in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ are precisely the stalkwise weak equivalences in* $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$

Proof. By [Ja96, theorem 17] and using our assumption 3.1.15 the statement is true for the local injective model structure. The weak equivalences there coincide with those of the local projective model structure. □

**Definition 3.1.17.** We say that a morphism $f : A \to B$ in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is a *local fibration* or a *local weak equivalence* precisely if for all topos points $x$ the morphism $x^* f : x^* A \to x^* B$ is a fibration of weak equivalence, respectively.

**Warning.** While by theorem 3.1.16 the local weak equivalences are indeed the weak equivalences in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, it is not true that the fibrations in this model structure are the local fibrations of def. 3.1.17.

**Proposition 3.1.18.** *Pullbacks in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ along local fibrations preserve local weak equivalences.*

Proof. Let

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \longrightarrow & C & \longleftarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A' & \longrightarrow & C' & \longleftarrow & B' \end{array}$$

be a diagram where the vertical morphisms are local weak equivalences. Since the inverse image $x^*$ of a topos point $x$ preserves finite limits and in particular pullbacks, we have

$$x^*(A \times_C B \stackrel{f}{\to} A' \times_{C'} B') = (x^* A \times_{x^* C} x^* B \stackrel{x^* f}{\to} x^* A' \times_{x^* C'} x^* B')\,.$$

On the right the pullbacks are now by assumption pullbacks of simplicial sets along Kan fibrations. Since $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ is right proper, these are homotopy pullbacks and therefore preserve weak equivalences. So $x^* f$ is a weak equivalence for all $x$ and thus $f$ is a local weak equivalence. □

The following characterization of $\infty$-toposes is one of the central statements of [L-Topos]. For the purposes of our discussion here the reader can take this to be the *definition* of $\infty$-toposes.

**Theorem 3.1.19.** *For $C$ a site with enough points, the $\infty$-topos over $C$ is the simplicial localization, def. 2.1.25,*

$$\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C) \simeq L([C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$$

*of the category of simplicial presheaves on $C$ at the local weak equivalences.*

In view of prop. 3.1.21 this is prop. 6.5.2.14 in [L-Topos].

### 3.1.4 Presentation by simplicial objects in the site

We will have use of the following different presentation of $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$.

**Definition 3.1.20.** Let $C$ be a small site with enough points. Write $\bar{C} \subset [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ for the free coproduct completion.

Let $(\bar{C}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}, W)$ be the category of simplicial objects in $\bar{C}$ equipped with the stalkwise weak equivalences inherited from the canonical embedding

$$i : \bar{C}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \hookrightarrow [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]\,.$$

**Proposition 3.1.21.** *The induced $\infty$-functor*

$$N_h L \bar{C}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \to N_h L[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$$

*is an equivalence of $\infty$-categories.*

This is due to [NSS12b]. We prove this after noticing the following fact.

**Proposition 3.1.22.** *Let $C$ be a category and $\bar{C}$ its free coproduct completion.*

*Every simplicial presheaf over $C$ is equivalent in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ to a simplicial object in $\bar{C}$ (after the degreewise Yoneda embedding $j^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} : \bar{C}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$).*

*If moreover $C$ has pullbacks and sequential colimits, then the simplicial object in $\bar{C}$ can be taken to be globally Kan, hence fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.*

Proof. The first statement is prop. 2.8 in [Dug01], which says that for every $X \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ the canonical morphism from the simplicial presheaf

$$(QX) : [k] \mapsto \coprod_{U_0 \to \cdots \to U_k \to X_k} j(U_0)\,,$$

where the coproduct runs over all sequences of morphisms between representables $U_i$ as indicated and using the evident face and degeneracy maps, is a global weak equivalence

$$QX \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} X\,.$$

The second statement follows by postcomposing with Kan's fibrant replacement functor (see for instance section 3 in [Jard87])

$$\mathrm{Ex}^{\infty} : \mathrm{sSet} \to \mathrm{KanCplx} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sSet}\,.$$

This functor forms new simplices by subdivision, which only involves forming iterated pullbacks over the spaces of the original simplices. □

**Example 3.1.23.** Let $C$ be a category of *connected* topological spaces with given extra structure and properties (for instance smooth manifolds). Then $\bar{C}$ is the category of all such spaces (with arbitrary many connected components).

Then the statement is that every $\infty$-stack over $C$ has a presentation by a simplicial object in $\bar{C}$. This is true with respect to any Grothendieck topology on $C$, since the weak equivalences in the global projective model structure that prop. 3.1.22 refers to remain weak equivalences in any left Bousfield localization.

If moreover $C$ has all pullbacks (for instance for connected topological spaces, but not for smooth manifolds) then every $\infty$-stack over $C$ even has a presentation by a globally Kan simplicial object in $\bar{C}$.

Proof of theorem 3.1.21. Let $Q : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \to \bar{C}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$ be Dugger's replacement functor from the proof of prop. 3.1.22. In [Dug01] it is shown that for all $X$ the simplicial presheaf $QX$ is cofibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ and that the natural morphism $QX \to X$ is a weak equivalence. Since left Bousfield localization does not affect the cofibrations and only enlarges the weak equivalences, the same is still true in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.

Therefore we have a natural transformation

$$i \circ Q \to \mathrm{Id} : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

whose components are weak equivalences. From this the claim follows by prop. 3.5 in [DwKa80a]. □

**Remark 3.1.24.** If the site $C$ is moreover equipped with the structure of a *geometry* as in [L-Geo] then there is canonically the notion of a *$C$-manifold*: a sheaf on $C$ that is *locally* isomorphic to a representable in $C$. Write

$$\bar{C} \hookrightarrow C\mathrm{Mfd} \hookrightarrow [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}]$$

for the full subcategory of presheaves on the $C$-manifolds.

Then the above argument applies verbatim also to the category $C\mathrm{Mfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$ of simplicial $C$-manifolds. Therefore we find that the $\infty$-topos over $C$ is presented by the simplicial localization of simplicial $C$-manifolds at the stalkwise weak equivalences:

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{\infty}(C) \simeq N_h L C\mathrm{Mfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}\,.$$

**Example 3.1.25.** Let $C = \mathrm{SmoothCartSp}$ be the full subcategory of the category SmoothMfd of smooth manifolds on the Cartesian spaces, $\mathbb{R}^n$, for $n \in \mathbb{R}$. Then $\bar{C} \subset \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$ is the full subcatgory on manifolds that are disjoint unions of Cartesian spaces and $C\mathrm{Mfd} \simeq \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$. Therefore we have an equivalence of $\infty$-categories

$$\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{SmoothMfd}) \simeq \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{CartSp}) \simeq L\, \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}\,.$$

### 3.1.5 $\infty$-Sheaves and descent

We discuss some details of the notion of $\infty$-*sheaves* from the point of view of the presentations discussed above in 3.1.3.

By def. 3.1.1 we have, abstractly, that an $\infty$-sheaf over some site $C$ is an $\infty$-presheaf that is in the essential image of a given reflective inclusion $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(C)$. By prop. 3.1.19 this reflective embedding is presented by the Quillen adjunction that exhibits the left Bousfield localization of the model category of simplicial presheaves at the Čech covers

$$\begin{array}{ccc} ([C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}})^\circ & \underset{\mathbb{R}\mathrm{Id}}{\overset{\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Id}}{\leftrightarrows}} & ([C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}})^\circ \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq \\ \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C) & \underset{}{\overset{L}{\hookleftarrow}} & \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(X) \end{array}$$

Since the Quillen adjunction that exhibits left Bousfield localization is given by identity-1-functors, as indicated, the computation of $\infty$-sheafification ($\infty$-stackification) $L$ by deriving the left Quillen functor is all in the cofibrant replacement in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ followed by fibrant replacement in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. Since the collection of cofibrations is preserved by left Bousfield localization, this simply amounts to cofibrant-fibrant replacement in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. Since, finally, the derived hom space $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(U, A)$ is computed in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ already on a fibrant resolution of $A$ out of a cofibrant resolution of $U$, and since every representable is necessarily cofibrant, one may effectively identify the $\infty$-sheaf condition in $\mathrm{PSh}_\infty(C)$ with the fibrancy condition in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.

We discuss aspects of this fibrancy condition.

**Definition 3.1.26.** For $C$ a site, we say a covering family $\{U_i \to U\}$ is a *good cover* if the corresponding Čech nerve

$$C(U_i) := \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} j(U_{i_0}) \times_{j(U)} \cdots \times_{j(U)} j(U_k) \quad \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$$

(where $j : C \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is the Yoneda embedding) is degreewise a coproduct of representables, hence if all non-empty finite intersections of the $U_i$ are again representable:

$$j(U_{i_0,\cdots,i_k}) = U_{i_0} \times_U \cdots \times_U U_{i_k}\,.$$

**Proposition 3.1.27.** *The Čech nerve $C(U_i)$ of a good cover is cofibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ as well as in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.*

Proof. In the terminology of [DHS04] the good-ness condition on a cover makes its Čech nerve a *split hypercover*. By the result of [Dug01] this is cofirant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Since left Bousfield localization preserves cofibrations, it is also cofibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. □

**Definition 3.1.28.** For $A$ a simplicial presheaf with values in Kan complexes and $\{U_i \to U\}$ a good cover in the site $C$, we say that

$$\mathrm{Desc}(\{U_i\}, A) := [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(U_i), A)\,,$$

where on the right we have the sSet-enriched hom of simplicial presheaves, is the *descent object* of $A$ over $\{U_i \to U\}$.

**Remark 3.1.29.** By assumption $A$ is fibrant and $C(U_i)$ is cofibrant (by prop. 3.1.27) in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Since this is a simplicial model category, it follows that $\mathrm{Desc}(\{U_i\}, A)$ is a Kan complex, an $\infty$-groupoid. We may also speak of the *descent $\infty$-groupoid*. Below we show that its objects have the interpretation of *gluing data* or *descent data* for $A$. See [DHS04] for more details.

**Proposition 3.1.30.** *For $C$ a site whose topology is generated from good covers, a simplicial presheaf $A$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ precisely if it takes values in Kan complexes and if for each generating good cover $\{U_i \to U\}$ the canonical morphism*

$$A(U) \to \mathrm{Desc}(\{U_i\}, A)$$

*is a weak equivalence of Kan complexes.*

Proof. By standard results recalled in A.3.7 of [L-Topos] the fibrant objects in the local model structure are precisely those which are fibrant in the global model structure and which are *local* with respect to the morphisms at which one localizes: such that the derived hom out of these morphisms into the given object produces a weak equivalence.

By prop. 3.1.27 we have that $C(U_i)$ is cofibrant for $\{U_i \to U\}$ a good cover. Therefore the derived hom is computed already by the enriched hom as in the above statement. □

**Remark 3.1.31.** The above condition manifestly generalizes the *sheaf* condition on an ordinary sheaf [Joh02]. One finds that

$$(\pi_0^{\mathrm{PSh}}(C(U_i)) \to \pi_0^{\mathrm{PSh}}(U)) = (S(U_i) \hookrightarrow U)$$

is the (subfunctor corresponding to the) *sieve* associated with the cover $\{U_i \to U\}$. Therefore when $A$ is itself just a presheaf of sets (of simplicially constant simplicial sets) the above condition reduces to the statement that

$$A(U) \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}](S(U_i), A)$$

is an isomorphism. This is the standard sheaf condition.

We discuss the descent object, def. 3.1.28, in more detail.

**Definition 3.1.32.** Write

$$\mathrm{coDesc}(\{U_i\}, A) \in \mathrm{sSet}^{\Delta}$$

for the cosimlicial simplicial set that in degree $k$ is given by the value of $A$ on the $k$-fold intersections:

$$\mathrm{coDesc}(\{U_i\}, A)_k = \prod_{i_0, \cdots, i_k} A(U_{i_0, \cdots, i_k}) .$$

**Proposition 3.1.33.** *The descent object from def. 3.1.28 is the* totalization *of the codescent object:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Desc}(\{U_i\}, A) &= \mathrm{tot}(\mathrm{coDesc}(\{U_i\}), A) \\ &:= \int_{[k] \in \Delta} \mathrm{sSet}(\Delta[k], \mathrm{coDesc}(\{U_i\}, A)_k) \end{aligned}$$

Here and in the following equality signs denote isomorphism (such as to distinguish from just weak equivalences of simplicial sets).

Proof. Using sSet-enriched category calculus for the sSet-enriched and sSet-tensored category of simplicial presheaves (for instance [Ke82] around (3.67)) we compute as follow

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{Desc}(\{U_i\}, A) &:= [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(U_i), A) \\
&= [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]\Big(\int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot C(U_i)_k, A\Big) \\
&= \int_{[k]\in\Delta} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\Delta[k]\cdot C(U_i), A) \\
&= \int_{[k\in\Delta]} \mathrm{sSet}(\Delta[k], [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(U_i)_k), A) \\
&= \int_{[k\in\Delta]} \mathrm{sSet}(\Delta[k], A(C(U_i)_k)) \\
&= \mathrm{tot}(A(C(U_i)_\bullet)) \\
&= \mathrm{tot}\left(\mathrm{coDesc}(\{C(U_i)\}, A)\right) .
\end{aligned}$$

Here we used in the first step that every simplicial set $Y$ (hence every simplicial presheaf) is the realization of itself, in that

$$Y = \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot Y_k \,,$$

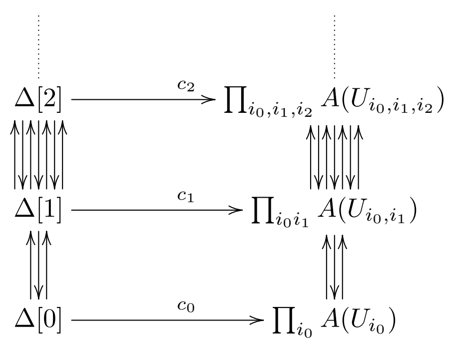
which is effectively a variant of the Yoneda-lemma. □

**Remark 3.1.34.** This provides a fairly explicit description of the objects in $\mathrm{Desc}(\{U_i\}, A)$ by what is called *nonabelian Čech hypercohomology.*

Notice that an element $c$ of the end $\int_{[k]\in\Delta} \mathrm{sSet}(\Delta[k], \mathrm{coDesc}(\{U_i\}, A))$ is by definition of *end*s a collection of morphisms

$$\{c_k : \Delta[k] \to \prod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} A_k(U_{i_0,\cdots,i_k})\}$$

that makes commuting all parallel diagrams in the following:

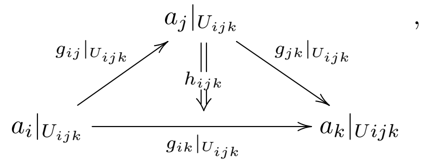



This says in words that $c$ is

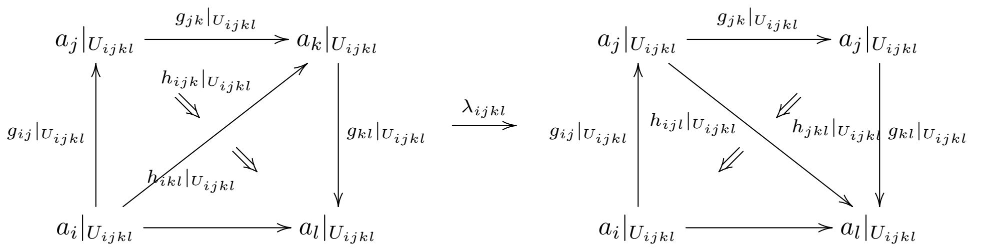
1. a collection of objects $a_i \in A(U_i)$ on each patch;
2. a collection of morphisms $\{g_{ij} \in A_1(U_{ij})\}$ over each double intersection, such that these go between the restrictions of the objects $a_i$ and $a_j$, respectively

$$a_i|_{U_{ij}} \xrightarrow{g_{ij}} a_j|_{U_{ij}}$$

3. a collection of 2-morphisms $\{h_{ijk} \in A_2(U_{ijk})\}$ over triple intersections, which go between the corresponding 1-morphisms:




4. a collection of 3-morphisms $\{\lambda_{ijkl} \in A_3(U_{ijkl})\}$ of the form




5. and so on.

This recovers the cocycle diagrams that we have discussed more informally in 1.2.6 and generalizes them to arbitrary coefficient objects $A$.

### 3.1.6 $\infty$-Sheaves with values in chain complexes

Many simplicial presheaves appearing in practice are (equivalent to) objects in sub-$\infty$-categories of $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ of $\infty$-sheaves with values in abelian or at least in "strict" $\infty$-groupoids. These subcategories typically offer convenient and desireable contexts for formulating and proving statements about special cases of general simplicial presheaves.

One well-known such notion is given by the *Dold-Kan correspondence* (discussed for instance in [GoJa99]). This identifies chain complexes of abelian groups with strict and strictly symmetric monoidal $\infty$-groupoids.

**Proposition 3.1.35.** *Let $\mathrm{Ch}^+_{\mathrm{proj}}$ be the standard projective model structure on chain complexes of abelian groups in non-negative degree and let $\mathrm{sAb}_{\mathrm{proj}}$ be the standard projective model structure on simplicial abelian groups. Let $C$ be any small category. There is a composite Quillen adjunction*

$$((N_\bullet F)_* \dashv \Xi) : \ [C^{\mathrm{op}}, Ch^+_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \underset{\Gamma_*}{\overset{(N_\bullet)_*}{\underset{\simeq}{\rightleftarrows}}} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sAb}_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \underset{U_*}{\overset{F_*}{\leftrightarrows}} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \ ,$$

*where the first is given by postcomposition with the Dold-Puppe-Kan correspondence and the second by postcomposition with the degreewise free-forgetful adjunction for abelian groups over sets.*

We also write $\mathrm{DK} := \Xi$ for this Dold-Kan map. Dropping the condition on symmetric monoidalness we obtain a more general such inclusion, a kind of non-abelian Dold-Kan correspondence: the identification of *crossed complexes*, def. 1.2.96, with strict $\infty$-groupoids (see [BrHiSi11][Por] for details).

**Definition 3.1.36.** A *globular set* $X$ is a collection of sets $\{X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ equipped with functions $\{s_n, t_n : X_{n+1} \to X_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ such that $\forall_{n\in\mathbb{N}}(s_n \circ s_{n+1} = s_n \circ t_{n+1})$ and $\forall_{n\in\mathbb{N}}(t_n \circ s_{n+1} = t_n \circ t_{n+1})$. (These relations ensure that for every pair $k_1 < k_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ there are uniquely defined functions $s, t : X_{k_2} \to X_{k_1}$.) A *strict $\infty$-groupoid* is a globular set $X_\bullet$ equipped for each $k \geq 1$ with the structure of a groupoid on $X_k \underset{t}{\overset{s}{\rightrightarrows}} X_0$ such that for all $k_1 < k_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ this induces the structure of a strict 2-groupoid on

$$X_{k_2} \underset{t}{\overset{s}{\rightrightarrows}} X_{k_1} \underset{t}{\overset{s}{\rightrightarrows}} X_0 \ .$$

**Remark 3.1.37.** We have a sequence of (non-full) inclusions

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{ChainComplex} & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{CrossedComplex} & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{KanComplex} \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq \\ \mathrm{StrAbStr}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Str}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \longrightarrow & \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \end{array}$$

of strict $\infty$-groupoids into all $\infty$-groupoids, where in the top row we list the explicit presentation and in the bottom row the abstract notions.

We state a useful theorem for the computation of descent for presheaves, prop. 3.1.30, with values in strict $\infty$-groupoids.

Suppose that $\mathcal{A} : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Str}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is a presheaf with values in strict $\infty$-groupoids. In the context of strict $\infty$-groupoids the standard $n$-simplex is given by the $n$th *oriental* $O(n)$ [Stre04]. This allows us to perform a construction that looks like a descent object in Str$\infty$Grpd:

**Definition 3.1.38** (Street 04)**.** The descent object for $\mathcal{A} \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Str}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}]$ relative to $Y \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is

$$\mathrm{Desc}_{\mathrm{Street}}(Y, \mathcal{A}) := \int_{[n]\in\Delta} \mathrm{Str}\infty\mathrm{Cat}(O(n), \mathcal{A}(Y_n)) \ \in \mathrm{Str}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,,$$

where the end is taken in Str$\infty$Grpd.

This object had been suggested by Ross Street to be the right descent object for strict $\infty$-category-valued presheaves in [Stre04].

Canonically induced by the orientals is the $\omega$-nerve

$$N : \mathrm{Str}\omega\mathrm{Cat} \to \mathrm{sSet}$$

Applying this to the descent object of prop. 3.1.38 yields the simplicial set $N\mathrm{Desc}(Y, \mathcal{A})$. On the other hand, applying the $\omega$-nerve componentwise to $\mathcal{A}$ yields a simplicial presheaf $N\mathcal{A}$ to which the ordinary simplicial descent from def. 3.1.28 applies. The following theorem asserts that under certain conditions the $\infty$-groupoids presented by both these simplicial sets are equivalent.

**Proposition 3.1.39** (Verity 09)**.** *If $\mathcal{A} : C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Str}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ and $Y : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{sSet}$ are such that $N\mathcal{A}(Y_\bullet) : \Delta \to$ sSet is fibrant in the Reedy model structure $[\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$, then*

$$N\mathrm{Desc}_{\mathrm{Street}}(Y, \mathcal{A}) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{Desc}(Y, N\mathcal{A})$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes.*

This is proven in [Veri09]. In our applications the assumptions of this theorem are usually satisfied:

**Corollary 3.1.40.** *If $Y \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is such that $Y_\bullet : \Delta \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}] \hookrightarrow [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is cofibrant in $[\Delta, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$ then for $\mathcal{A} : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Str}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ we have a weak equivalence*

$$N\mathrm{Desc}(Y, \mathcal{A}) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{Desc}(Y, N\mathcal{A})\,.$$

Proof. If $Y_\bullet$ is Reedy cofibrant, then by definition the canonical morphisms

$$\varinjlim(([n] \stackrel{+}{\to} [k]) \mapsto Y_k) \to Y_n$$

are cofibrations in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Since the latter is an $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$-enriched model category and $N\mathcal{A}$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, it follows that the hom-functor $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](-, N\mathcal{A})$ sends cofibrations to fibrations, so that

$$N\mathcal{A}(Y_n) \to \varprojlim([n] \stackrel{+}{\to} [k] \mapsto N\mathcal{A}(Y_k))$$

is a Kan fibration. But this says that $N\mathcal{A}(Y_\bullet)$ is Reedy fibrant, so that the assumption of prop. 3.1.39 is met. □

## 3.2 $\sum \dashv ()^* \dashv \prod$ – Actuality

Given a cohesive space $X$, then there is also the category $E\mathrm{Mod}(X)$ of $E$-module bundles over $X$. For instance if $X$ is a physical phase space, then the prequantum line bundle is an invertible object in $E\mathrm{Mod}(X)$. It follows that quantization is to take place in *dependent* linear type theory, parameterized over the cartesian types $X$ of the pre-quantum geometry. According to Lawvere's notion of categorical logic embodied in the notion of hyperdoctrines as made precise in [See83], this means, applied to linear logic, the following:

A *dependent linear logic* or *linear hyperdoctrine* is a category of contexts $\Gamma$, a symmetric closed monoidal category $\mathcal{C}_\Gamma$ for each such context and functorially for each morphism of contexts $f : \Gamma_1 \longrightarrow \Gamma_2$ an adjoint triple of functors

$$(\sum_f \dashv f^* \dashv \prod_f) \;:\; \mathcal{C}_{\Gamma_1} \underset{f_*}{\overset{\overset{f_!}{\longrightarrow}}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{f^*}}}} \mathcal{C}_{\Gamma_2}$$

such that $f^*$ is strong monoidal and satisfies Frobenius reciprocity, hence such that $f^*$ is a strong closed monoidal functor. Typically one would also demand that consecutive such adjoint triples satisfy the Beck-Chevalley condition.

The categorical semantics for such dependent linear type theory has been studied in [Shul08, Shul12a]. But it is noteworthy that in just slightly different guise these axioms are much older: they are a version of Grothendieck's "yoga of six functors" [May05], which were recognized as the abstract reason behind Verdier duality. Specifically, an adjoint triple $(f_! \dashv f^* \dashv f_*)$ with $f^*$ strong closed monoidal is called a *Wirthmüller context* in [May05]. (The literature on Grothendieck's six operations often considers (also) the dual *Grothendieck contexts*, e.g. [Pol08].)

This concept of a linear hyperdoctrine is a generalization (obtained by removing the axiom of the tensor product being Cartesian) of the system of base change operations between the slices of an $\infty$-topos in prop. 5.1.26. Accordingly, following example 2.2.3, we may think of the base change here as encoding linear the generalization to linear logic of the modalities of possibility and necessity from example 2.2.3:

$$(\Diamond_f \dashv \Box_f) := ((f^* f_!) \dashv (f^* f_*)) \;.$$

We now state the concept more formally.

**Definition 3.2.1.** For $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{D}$ two closed symmetric monoidal categories, a *Wirthmüller context* $f : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ between them is a strong closed monoidal functor $f^* : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{C}$ such that it has a left adjoint and right adjoint $(f_! \dashv f^* \dashv f_*)$.

Often it is useful to equivalently reformulate closedness of $f^*$ in terms of the following condition.

**Definition 3.2.2.** Given an adjunction $(f_! \dashv f^*)$ between symmetric monoidal categories such that $f^*$ is a strong monoidal functor, then the condition that the canonical natural transformation

$$\overline{\pi} \;:\; f_!((f^* B) \otimes A) \longrightarrow B \otimes f_!(A)$$

is a natural equivalence is called the *projection formula*. The existence of the left adjoint $f_!$ and the validity of the projection formula is also referred to as *Frobenius reciprocity* in representation theory and in categorical logic ("hyperdoctrines"), and often just called *reciprocity*, for short.

A basic fact is that:

**Proposition 3.2.3.** *Given an adjoint pair $(f_! \dashv f^*)$ between closed monoidal categories with $f^*$ a strong monoidal functor, then the condition that $f^*$ is strong closed is equivalent to Frobenius reciprocity, def. 3.2.2, hence to $f_!$ satisfying its projection formula.*

**Remark 3.2.4.** If in a Wirthmüller context, def. 3.2.1, not only $f_!$ but also $f_*$ satisfies its projection formula, then [**?**] speaks of a "transfer context" (def. 4.9 there), because this turns out to be an abstract context in which Becker-Gottlieb transfer exists (prop. 4.14 there). The abstract construction of Becker-Gottlieb transfer is similar to the construction of Umkehr maps via fundamental classes in Wirthmüller contexts which we consider in 5.5.4 below.

The central concept of interest here is now the following.

**Definition 3.2.5.** A *model/semantics for linear homotopy-type theory* is a locally Cartesian closed $\infty$-category $\mathbf{H}$ ("of non-linear homotopy-types") and a Cartesian fibration

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{Mod} \\ \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H} \end{array}$$

("of dependent linear homotopy-types") such that the $\infty$-functor

$$\mathrm{Mod} \; : \; \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Cat}_\infty$$

that classifies the fibration by the Grothendieck-Lurie construction ([L-Topos], section 3.2) takes values in Wirthmüller contexts, def. 3.2.1, hence sends objects $X \in \mathbf{H}$ to closed symmetric monoidal $\infty$-categories $\mathrm{Mod}(X)$ and sends morphism $f : X \to Y$ to $\infty$-functors $f^* : \mathrm{Mod}(Y) \to \mathrm{Mod}(X)$ which are strong monoidal, have a left and right adjoint, and are strong closed, hence, by prop. 3.2.3, satisfy Frobenius reciprocity.

**Remark 3.2.6.** Definition 3.2.5 is the evident $\infty$-categorical version of the *closed monoidal fibrations* considered in [Shul08] (def. 13.1) and [Shul12a] (theorem 2.14). Mike Shulman is working on developing formal *syntax* for linear homotopy-type theory similar to the formal syntax for non-linear homotopy-type theory that is laid out in [UFP13]. This is to be such that def. 3.2.5 provides the corresponding $\infty$-categorical semantics/models.

**Example 3.2.7.** Discussion of various classes of models for dependent linear type theory, def. 3.2.5, is below in 6.1. In 7.6 we discuss how quantization of local prequantum field theory, 5.2.18, is realized in these models.

# 4 Substance

We consider now equipping homotopy toposes, 3.1, with determinations of qualities of their objects, via systems of modal operators as in 2.2. The resulting homotopy toposes behave like an abstract substance exhibiting these qualities. Below in 5 we discuss how to mold out of such substance various structures of relevance in mathematics and physics.

An $\infty$-topos may be viewed both as an $\infty$-category *of* generalized spaces – then also called a "*gros topos*" – or as a generalized space itself – then also called a "*petit topos*". The duality relation between these two perspectives is given by prop. 5.1.29, which says that every $\infty$-topos regarded as a generalized space is equivalent to the $\infty$-category of generalized étale spaces *over* it, while, conversely, every collection of generalized spaces encoded by an $\infty$-topos may be understood as being those generalized spaces equipped with local equivalences to a fixed generalized model space.

From this description it is intuitively clear that the "smaller" an $\infty$-topos is when regarded as a generalized space, the "larger" is the collection of generalized spaces locally modeled on it, and vice versa. If by "size" we mean "dimension", there are two notions of *dimension of an $\infty$-topos* $\mathbf{H}$ that coincide with the ordinary notion of dimension of a manifold $X$ when $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$, but which may be different in general. These are

- homotopy dimension (see def. 5.1.107 below);
- cohomology dimension ([L-Topos], section 7.2.2).

If by "size" we mean "nontriviality of homotopy groups", hence nontriviality of the *shape* of a space, there is the concept of

- shape of an $\infty$-topos ([L-Topos], section 7.1.6);

which coincides with the topological shape of $X$ in the case that $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$, as above. Finally, if by "small size" we just mean *finite dimensional*, then the property of $\infty$-toposes reflecting that is

- hypercompleteness ([L-Topos], section 6.5.2).

For the description of higher geometry and higher differential geometry, we are interested in $\infty$-toposes that are "maximally *gros*" and "minimally *petit*": regarded as generalized spaces they should look like *fat points* or *contractible blobs* being the abstract blob of *geometry* that every object in them is supposed to be locally modeled on, but that otherwise do not make these objects be parameterized over a nontrivial space.

The following concepts of *local $\infty$-topos*, *$\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos*, *cohesive $\infty$-topos*, and *differential cohesive $\infty$-topos* describe extra properties of the global section geometric morphism of an $\infty$-topos that imply that some or all of the measures of "size" of the $\infty$-topos vanish, hence that make the $\infty$-topos be far from being a non-trivial generalized space itself, and instead be genuinely a collection *of* generalized spaces modeled on some notion of local geometry.

All these properties are equivalently encoded in terms of *idempotent $\infty$-(co)monads* on the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$

$$\Box, \Diamond : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H},$$

as discussed in 2.2. Internally, on the homotopy type theory language of $\mathbf{H}$, these are (higher) *closure operators* or *modalities* on the type system (more on this is below in 4.1.1.2). Externally, these structures correspond to adjunctions

$$(L \dashv R) : \mathbf{H} \underset{R}{\overset{L}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathbf{B}$$

such that $L$ or $R$ is a fully faithful $\infty$-functor, by $\Box \simeq L \circ R$ and $\Diamond \simeq R \circ L$, or the other way around.

**Proposition 4.0.8.** *Let* $(L \dashv R) : \mathcal{C} \underset{R}{\overset{L}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{D}$ *be a pair of adjoint $\infty$-functors. Then*

1. *The left adjoint ∞-functor L is fully faithful precisely if the adjunction unit is an equivalence* $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} R \circ L$ .
2. *The right adjoint ∞-functor R is fully faithful precisely if the adjunction counit is an equivalence* $L \circ R \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$ .

Proof. This is [L-Topos], p. 308 or follows directly from it. □

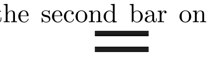
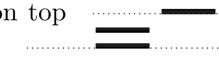
For encoding "gros" geometry in the above sense, here the comonadic $\Box$ is itself to be part of an adjunction with the monadic $\lozenge$, as $\Box \dashv \lozenge$ or $\lozenge \dashv \Box$. Such a situation corresponds externally to adjoint triples of ∞-functors

$$(f_! \dashv f^* \dashv f_*) : \ \mathbf{H} \underset{f_*}{\overset{\overset{f_!}{\longrightarrow}}{\overset{\xleftarrow{f^*}}{\longrightarrow}}} \mathbf{B} \qquad \text{or} \qquad (f^* \dashv f_* \dashv f^!) : \ \mathbf{H} \underset{f^!}{\overset{\overset{f^*}{\longleftarrow}}{\overset{\xrightarrow{f_*}}{\longleftarrow}}} \mathbf{B}$$

such that the middle functor or the two outer functors are fully faithful:

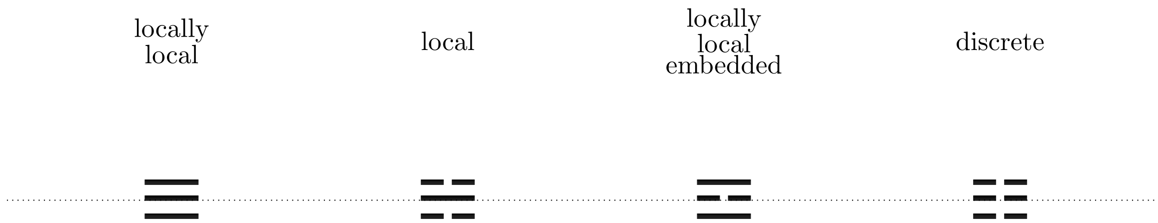
$$(\lozenge \dashv \Box) \simeq (f^* f_! \dashv f^* f_*) \quad \text{or} \quad (\Box \dashv \lozenge) \simeq (f^* f_* \dashv f^! f_*) .$$

All that matters for the nature of the induced modalities is in which direction these functors go and which of them are fully faithful. Moreover, both direction and fully faithfulness are necessarily alternating through the adjoint triple, so what really matters is only which functor we regard as the direct image, the number of adjoints it has to the left and to the right, and whether it is itself fully faithful or its adjoints are. To bring that basic information out more clearly it may be helpful to introduce the following condensed notation:

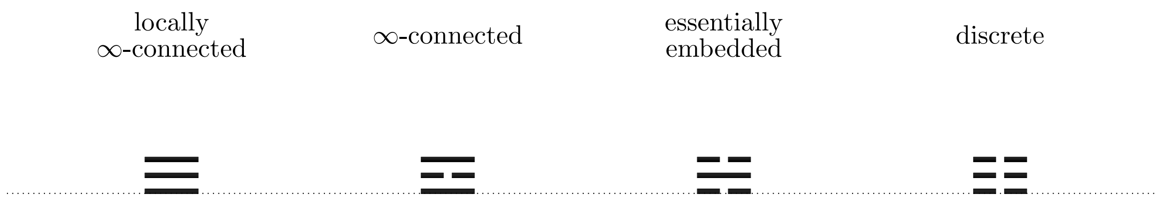
Let  stand for an adjoint pair where the direct image $f_*$ points from $\mathbf{H}$ to $\mathbf{B}$, (this is the bar on the dotted baseline) and such that it has a single left adjoint $f^*$ (the second bar on top). Accordingly, if there is a further left adjoint $f_!$ then we draw a further bar on top  . If there is a further right adjoint $f^!$ then we draw a further bar on the bottom  . And so forth: bars on top are left adjoint to bars below them, and the direction is left-to-right for the bar on the base line and for every second bar next to it, while it is right-to-left for every other bar. Finally, we mark the fully faithful functors by breaking the corresponding bar. For instance the notation  means that the inverse image is fully faithful, hence is shorthand for an adjunction of the form $\mathbf{H} \underset{f_*}{\overset{f^*}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathbf{B}$ , and so forth.

The following table lists, in the above notation, the possibilities for adjoint higher modalities together with the name of the corresponding attribute of **H** as an ∞-topos over the base **B**.

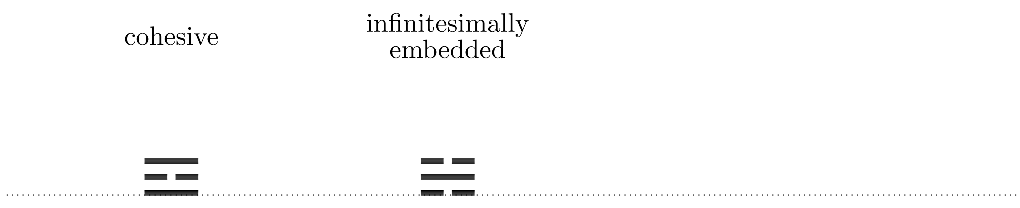
**Locality** ($\flat \dashv \sharp$) (section 4.1).



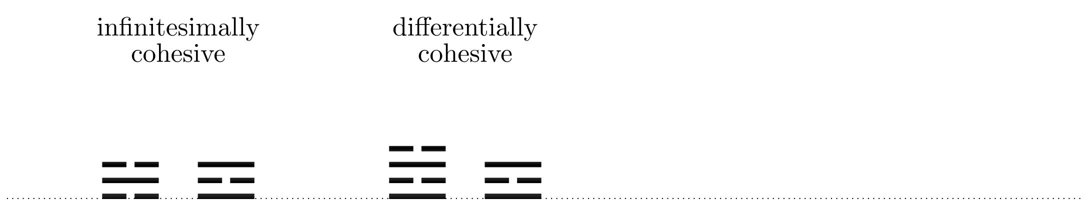

**∞-Connectedness** ($\int \dashv \flat$) (section 4.1).




**Cohesion** ($\int \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp$) (section 4.1).




**Differential cohesion** ($\Re \dashv \Im \dashv \&$) (section 4.2).



## 4.1 $\int \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp$ – Cohesion

We discuss now the definition and some basic properties of cohesive $\infty$-toposes.

### 4.1.1 General abstract

**Definition 4.1.1.** An $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is called *locally local* if the global section geometric morphism has a right adjoint.

$$\mathbf{H} \underset{\text{coDisc}}{\overset{\text{Disc}}{\underset{\longleftarrow}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{\xrightarrow{\Gamma}}}}} \infty\text{Grpd} \ .$$

It is called *local* if that right adjoint is in addition fully faithful.

Definition 4.1.1 is the immediate lift of the concept of *local topos* [JohMo89] from topos theory to $\infty$-topos theory.

**Proposition 4.1.2.** *A local $\infty$-topos*

1. *has homotopy dimension 0 (see def. 5.1.107 below);*
2. *has cohomological dimension 0 ([L-Topos], section 7.2.2).*

Proof. The first statement is cor. 5.1.113 below. The second is a consequence of the first by [L-Topos], cor. 7.2.2.30. □

The following definition is the direct generalization standard notion of a *locally/globally connected topos* [Joh02]: a topos whose terminal geometric morphism has an extra left adjoint that computes geometric connected components, hence a geometric notion of $\pi_0$. We will see in 5.2, that as we pass to $\infty$-toposes, the extra left adjoint provides a good definition of all geometric homotopy groups.

**Definition 4.1.3.** An $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ we call *locally $\infty$-connected* if the (essentially unique) global section $\infty$-geometric morphism from prop. 3.1.7 is an *essential $\infty$-geometric morphism* in that it has a further left adjoint $\Pi$:

$$(\Pi \dashv \Delta \dashv \Gamma) : \mathbf{H} \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{\Pi}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longrightarrow}{\xleftarrow{\Delta}}}}} \infty\text{Grpd} \ .$$

If in addition $\Delta$ is fully faithful, then we say that $\mathbf{H}$ is in addition an *$\infty$-connected* or *globally $\infty$-connected* $\infty$-topos.

**Remark 4.1.4.** Meanwhile, a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos as above has been called an $\infty$-topos *of constant shape* in [L-Alg], section A.1. Some of the following statements now overlap with the discussion there.

**Proposition 4.1.5.** *For $\mathbf{H}$ a locally/globally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos, the underlying 1-topos $\tau_{\leq 0}\mathbf{H}$ of 0-truncated objects (def. 5.1.47) is a* locally/globally connected topos *(as in [Joh02] C1.5, C3.3).*

Proof. By prop. 3.1.8 and by the very definition of truncated objects $\Gamma$ takes 0-truncated objects in $\mathbf{H}$ to 0-truncated objects in $\infty$Grpd, hence the restriction $\Gamma|_{\tau_\leq}$ factors through the inclusion Set $\simeq \tau_{\leq 0}\infty$Grpd $\hookrightarrow$ $\infty$Grpd.

Similarly the restriction $\Delta|_{\leq 0}$ factors through the inclusion $\tau_{\leq 0}\mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$: by definition this is the case if for all $S \in$ Set and all $X \in \mathbf{H}$ the hom-$\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X, \Delta S) \in \infty$Grpd is equivalently a set. But by the defining right-adjointness of $\Delta$ this is equivalently

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \Delta S) \simeq \infty\text{Grpd}(\Pi(X), S) \simeq \text{Set}(\tau_{\leq 0}\Pi(X), S) \in \text{Set} \hookrightarrow \infty\text{Grpd} \,,$$

which is a set by assumption that $S$ is 0-truncated.

By uniqueness of adjoints and the fact that $\tau_{\leq 0} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathrm{Set}$ is left adjoint to the inclusion, this means that $\Delta|_{\leq 0} : \mathrm{Set} \hookrightarrow \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \mathbf{H}$ has a left adjoint

$$\Pi_0 := \tau_{\leq} \circ \Pi \,.$$

Finally $\tau_{\leq 0}$ preserves finite products by [L-Topos], lemma 6.5.1.2. and if $\Pi$ preserves the terminal object then so does $\Pi_0$. □

**Proposition 4.1.6.** *A locally $\infty$-connected topos $(\Pi \dashv \Delta \dashv \Gamma) : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is globally $\infty$-connected precisely if the following equivalent conditions hold.*

1. *The inverse image $\Delta$ is a fully faithful $\infty$-functor.*
2. *The extra left adjoint $\Pi$ preserves the terminal object.*

Proof. This follows verbatim the proof for the familiar statement about connected toposes, since all the required properties have $\infty$-analogs: we have that

- $\Delta$ is fully faithful precisely if the $(\Pi \dashv \Delta)$-adjunction unit is an equivalence, by prop. 4.0.8.
- every $\infty$-groupoid $S$ is the $\infty$-colimit over itself of the $\infty$-functor constant on the point, by prop. 5.1.1:

$$S \simeq \lim_{\longrightarrow_S} * \,.$$

Therefore if $\Delta$ is fully faithful, then

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi(*) &\simeq \Pi\Delta(*) \\ &\simeq * \end{aligned}$$

and hence $\Pi$ preserves the terminal object. Conversely, if $\Pi$ preserves the terminal object then for any $S \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ we have that

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi\Delta S &\simeq \Pi\Delta \lim_{\to S} * \\ &\simeq \lim_{\longrightarrow S} \Pi\Delta * \\ &\simeq \lim_{\longrightarrow S} * \\ &\simeq S \end{aligned} .$$

and hence $\Delta$ is fully faithful. □

**Proposition 4.1.7.** *A locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos*

1. *has the shape of $\Pi(*)$;*
2. *hence has the shape of the point if it is globally $\infty$-connected.*

Proof. By inspection of the definitions. □

We give the definition and basic properties of cohesive $\infty$-toposes first externally, in 4.1.1.1 in terms of properties of the global section geometric morphism, and then internally, in the language of the internal type theory of an $\infty$-topos, in 4.1.1.2.

#### 4.1.1.1 External formulation

**Definition 4.1.8.** A *cohesive $\infty$-topos* $\mathbf{H}$ is

1. a locally and globally $\infty$-connected topos $\mathbf{H}$, def 4.1.3,
2. which in addition is a *local $\infty$-topos*, def. 4.1.1;
3. and such that the extra left adjoint preserves not just the terminal object, but all finite products.

Definition 4.1.8 is the immediate lift of the main axioms in the definition of *topos of cohesion* in [Law07] from topos theory to $\infty$-topos theory.

**Remark 4.1.9.** The conditions in def. 4.1.8 say in summary that an $\infty$-topos is cohesive precisely if it admits quadruple of adjoint $\infty$-functors over the base $\infty$-topos

$$(\Pi \dashv \Delta \dashv \Gamma \dashv \nabla) : \mathbf{H} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\;\Pi\;} \\ \xleftarrow{\;\Delta\;} \\ \xrightarrow{\;\Gamma\;} \\ \xleftarrow[\;\nabla\;]{} \end{array} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

such that $\Delta$ and $\nabla$ are fully faithful and such that $\Pi$ preserves finite products.

We may think of these axioms as encoding properties that characterize those $\infty$-toposes of $\infty$-groupoids that are equipped with extra *cohesive structure* (in generalization of how *geometric stacks* are equipped with geometric structure). In order to reflect this geometric interpretation notationally we will from now on write

$$(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc}) : \mathbf{H} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\;\Pi\;} \\ \xleftarrow{\;\mathrm{Disc}\;} \\ \xrightarrow{\;\Gamma\;} \\ \xleftarrow[\;\mathrm{coDisc}\;]{} \end{array} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

for the defining $\infty$-connected and $\infty$-local geometric morphism and say for $S \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ that

- $\mathrm{Disc}(S) \in \mathbf{H}$ is a *discrete object* of $\mathbf{H}$ or a *discrete cohesive $\infty$-groupoid* obtained by equipping $S$ with *discrete cohesive structure*;
- $\mathrm{coDisc}(S) \in \mathbf{H}$ is a *codiscrete object* of $\mathbf{H}$ or a *codiscrete cohesive $\infty$-groupoid*, obtained by equipping $S$ with *indiscrete cohesive structure*;

and for $X \in \mathbf{H}$ that

- $\Gamma(X) \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is the *underlying $\infty$-groupoid* of $X$;
- $\Pi(X)$ is the *fundamental $\infty$-groupoid* or *geometric path $\infty$-groupoid* of $X$.

A simple but instructive toy example illustrating these interpretations is given by the *Sierpinski $\infty$-topos*, discussed below in example 6.1.2. A detailed discussion of these geometric interpretations in various models is in 6. For emphasis we record the following list of properties of a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ that show that when regarded as a generalized space itself over which its objects are parameterized, then $\mathbf{H}$ looks like one fat point, which we think of as the archetypical cohesive blob.

**Proposition 4.1.10.** *A cohesive $\infty$-topos*

1. *has homotopy dimension 0;*
2. *has cohomological dimension 0;*
3. *has the shape of the point.*

Proof. By prop. 4.1.2 and prop. 4.1.7. □

Often it is useful to speak of cohesion in terms of the following three operations ("modalities") which it induces on $\mathbf{H}$.

**Definition 4.1.11.** Given a cohesive ∞-topos $\mathbf{H}$ define the adjoint triple of idempotent (co-)monads:

$$(\int \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp) : \mathbf{H} \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{\Pi}{\rightleftarrows}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \; \mathbf{H} \; .$$

$$\mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\Pi} \infty\mathrm{Grpd},\quad \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xhookrightarrow{\mathrm{Disc}} \mathbf{H},\quad \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\Gamma} \infty\mathrm{Grpd},\quad \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xhookrightarrow{\mathrm{coDisc}} \mathbf{H}$$

**Remark 4.1.12.** The geometric interpretation of these three functors is discussed below in 5.2.3, 5.2.6 and 5.2.2, respectively:

- $\int$ is the *shape modality*, the *geometric path* or *geometric homotopy* functor or *fundamental ∞-groupoid* functor or *Betti stack* functor;
- $\flat$ is the *flat modality*, for $A \in \mathbf{H}$ we may pronounce $\flat A$ as "flat $A$", it is the coefficient object for *flat cohomology* with coefficients in $A$;
- $\sharp$ is the *sharp modality*, for $A \in \mathbf{H}$ we may pronounce $\sharp A$ as "sharp $A$", it is the classifying object for "sharply varying" $A$-principal ∞-bundles, those that need not be geometric (e.g. not continuous).

In the vein of the discussion in 2.2.5 we will sometimes depict the situation of cohesion in this form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{id} & \dashv & \mathrm{id} \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \int & \dashv & \flat \\ \perp & & \perp \\ \flat & \dashv & \sharp \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \emptyset & \dashv & * \end{array}$$

Notice that the units and counits of the cohesion modalities of def. 4.1.11 are naturally compatible:

**Proposition 4.1.13.** *For $\Pi$ an idempotent monad with right adjoint comonad $\flat$, then the unit $X \to \Pi X$ and counit $\flat A \to A$ give naturally commuting squares*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\bar f} & \flat A \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Pi X & \xrightarrow{f} & A \end{array} \quad \simeq \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} X & \longrightarrow & \flat \Pi X & \xrightarrow{\flat f} & \flat A \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Pi X & = & \Pi X & \xrightarrow{f} & A \end{array}$$

*for all morphisms $f : \Pi X \to A$ and their adjuncts $\bar f : X \to \flat A$.*

Proof. Write $(\Gamma_! \dashv \Gamma^* \dashv \Gamma_*)$ for the corresponding adjoint triple of functors, where $\Gamma_!$ is the reflection onto the subcategory of $\Pi$-modal objects and $\Gamma^*$ is the subcategory inclusion. In terms of this the morphism $f$ is of the form

$$f : \Gamma^* \Gamma_! X \longrightarrow A \,.$$

By the general formula for adjuncts, the $(\Gamma^* \dashv \Gamma_*)$-adjunct of this morphism is the composite of $\Gamma_* f$ with the $(\Gamma^* \dashv \Gamma_*)$-unit on $\Gamma_! X$

$$\Gamma_! X \overset{\eta_{\Gamma_! X}}{\longrightarrow} \Gamma_* \Gamma^* \Gamma_! X \overset{\Gamma_* f}{\longrightarrow} \Gamma_* A \,,$$

Similarly forming in turn the $(\Gamma_! \dashv \Gamma^*)$-adjunct of this result yields the $(\Pi \dashv \flat)$-adjunct of $f$ as the following composite:

$$\bar{f} : X \xrightarrow{\eta^\Pi_X} \Gamma^*\Gamma_! X \xrightarrow{\Gamma^*\eta_{\Gamma_! X}} \Gamma^*\Gamma_*\Gamma^*\Gamma_! X \xrightarrow{\Gamma^*\Gamma_* f} \Gamma^*\Gamma_* A\,.$$

This fits into a pasting composite of commuting squares of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & \overset{\bar f}{\frown\!\!\!\longrightarrow} & & & \\ X & \xrightarrow{\eta^\Pi_X} & \Gamma^*\Gamma_! X & \xrightarrow{\Gamma^*\eta_{\Gamma_! X}} & \Gamma^*\Gamma_*\Gamma^*\Gamma_! X & \xrightarrow{\Gamma^*\Gamma_* f} & \Gamma^*\Gamma_* A \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \eta^\Pi_X} & & \| & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \epsilon_{\Gamma^*\Gamma_! X}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \epsilon_A} \\ \Gamma^*\Gamma_! X & = & \Gamma^*\Gamma_! X & = & \Gamma^*\Gamma_! X & \xrightarrow{f} & A \end{array} .$$

Here the left square commutes trivially, the middle square commutes by the triangle identity for the $(\Gamma^* \dashv \Gamma_*)$-adjunction and the right one by the naturality of the $(\Gamma^* \dashv \Gamma_*)$-counit. Therefore the total outer diagram commutes, and this is the commuting square in question. □

Moreover, there is a canonical comparison map between $\flat$ and $\Pi$:

**Definition 4.1.14.** For $\mathbf{H}$ a cohesive $\infty$-topos with modalities $(\int \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp)$, we say that the composite transformation

$$\left(\flat X \longrightarrow \textstyle\int X\right) := \left(\flat X \longrightarrow X \longrightarrow \textstyle\int X\right)$$

of the $(\mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma)$-counit followed by the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-unit, natural in $X \in \mathbf{H}$, is the *pieces-to-points transform.*

Given the geometric interpretation of $\int$ and $\flat$, this map may be thought of as sending each point of a cohesive space $X$ to the *cohesive piece* that it sits in. This is a central conceptual insight in [Law07].

**Proposition 4.1.15.** *There is a natural equivalence of natural transformations*

$$\left(\flat A \longrightarrow \textstyle\int X\right) \simeq \mathrm{Disc}\left(\Gamma X \longrightarrow \Pi X\right)\,,$$

*where*

$$\left(\Gamma X \longrightarrow \Pi X\right) := \left(\Gamma X \longrightarrow \Gamma\mathrm{Disc}\Pi X \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Pi X\right)$$

*and where on the right we have the composite of the image under $\Gamma$ of the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-unit followed by the $(\mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma)$-counit applied to $\Pi X$. In particular the points-to-pieces transform $\flat \to \int$, def. 4.1.14, is an equivalence on $X \in \mathbf{H}$ precisely if $\Gamma \to \Pi$ is.*

Proof. By the formula for $\infty$-adjuncts and the fully faithfulness of Disc. □

**Definition 4.1.16.** Given an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ of a cohesive $\infty$-topos over $\infty$Grpd, we say that

1. *pieces have points* in $X$ if the points-to-pieces transform, def. 4.1.14, restricts to 0-truncated objects and is an epimorphism on these, def. 5.1.65, $\flat X \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\to \int X$ ;
2. $X$ has *one point per piece* the points-to-pieces transform is an equivalence, $\flat X \xrightarrow{\simeq} \int X$ .

**Example 4.1.17.** For the class of cohesive $\infty$-toposes constructed below in 4.1.2 from $\infty$-cohesive sites, it is true for all their objects that *pieces have points*. A class of (relative) cohesive $\infty$-toposes for which this is not the case is discussed in 6.1.1.

**Remark 4.1.18.** The condition that pieces have points, def. 4.1.16, together with the condition that $\int$ preserves finite products and hence in particular the terminal object, means that $(\flat \dashv \int)$ *has determinate negation* in the sense of def. 2.2.15.

**Example 4.1.19.** The property *one point per piece* in def. 4.1.16 is a characteristic feature of *infinitesimally thickened points* (often called "formal points") and indeed we find examples of this below in Goodwillie-tangent cohesion, 6.1, in formal smooth cohesion, 6.5, and in supergeometric cohesion, 6.6.

**Remark 4.1.20.** The pieces-to-points transformation appears as part of the canonical *stable differential cohomology diagram* (prop. 6.1.26 below) which exists for every object in Goodwillie-tangent cohesive $\infty$-toposes (def. 6.1.17 below). In this diagram it is opposite to the canonical de Rham differential operation on de Rham coefficients of differential cohomology theories.

Therefore it is useful to introduce the following terminology.[20]

**Definition 4.1.21.** Given a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ we call *infinitesimal* if the points-to-pieces transform, def. 4.1.14, is an equivalence on $X$

$$\flat X \xrightarrow{\simeq} \int X \,.$$

If the points-to-pieces transform is a natural equivalence (hence on all objects in $\mathbf{H}$)

$$\flat \xrightarrow{\simeq} \int \,.$$

then we call $\mathbf{H}$ an *infinitesimal cohesive $\infty$-topos*.

**Example 4.1.22.** Below in 4.2 we encounter infinitesimal cohesion as one aspect of the richer context of *differential cohesion*, which pairs cohesion with an axiomatic/synthetic formulation of $\mathcal{D}$-geometry.

**Remark 4.1.23.** Infinitesimal cohesive $\infty$-toposes are typically simple in themselves, but in examples they are relevant as alternative base $\infty$-toposes over which richer $\infty$-toposes are cohesive (e.g. in formal smooth cohesion, 6.5 and in supergeometric cohesion, 6.6).

In these contexts we appeal repeatedly to the following elementary fact.

**Proposition 4.1.24.** *If $\mathcal{C}$ is a small $\infty$-category with a zero-object (an object which is both initial as well as terminal), then the $\infty$-presheaf $\infty$-category $\mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\mathcal{C})$, def. 2.1.15, is infinitesimally cohesive, def. 4.1.21.*

Proof. The constant $\infty$-presheaf $\infty$-functor $\mathrm{Disc} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\mathrm{Grpd})$ has a left adjoint $\Pi$ and a right adjoint $\Gamma$, given by forming $\infty$-limits and $\infty$-colomits of $\infty$-functors on $\mathcal{C}$, respectively. Due to the assumption of a zero object $*$, both of these are given by evaluation on that zero object. This first of all implies that $\Gamma\mathrm{Disc} \simeq \mathrm{id}$, hence that $\Gamma$ is full and faithful, and that $\Pi$ preserves all $\infty$-limits, hence finite $\infty$-products, so that $\mathrm{PSh}_\infty(C)$ is indeed cohesive. Second it implies that the unit $\mathrm{id} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Disc}\Pi$ is given on generators in $\mathcal{C} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\mathcal{C})$ by sending each of them to the zero object, and hence that $\Gamma \to \Gamma\mathrm{Disc}\Pi$ is an equivalence. By prop. 4.1.15 this implies the claim. □

**4.1.1.2 Internal formulation** The above discussion in 4.1.1.1 looks at an $\infty$-topos "from the outside", namely as an object of the $\infty$-category of all $\infty$-toposes, and characterizes its cohesion in terms of additional properties of functors defined *on* it. But in 2.1.1 we saw that an $\infty$-topos also comes with its *internal homotopy-type theory* [UFP13], which describes it "from inside". Mike Shulman has shown how one may formulate the axioms of cohesion in this internal homotopy-type theory, to obtain *cohesive homotopy-type theory*. An exposition of this is in [ScSh12], where pointers to the full details are given, see also [Sc14b].

[20] I am grateful to Mike Shulman for discussion of this concept. In def. 1 of [Law07] essentially this concept is referred to as "quality type".

The crucial insight of Mike Shulman [Shu11] is that to implement cohesion fully formally in homotopy-type theory one is to regard the sharp modality $\sharp$, remark 4.1.12, as the fundamental axiom that serves to exhibit the external base $\infty$-topos as an internal sub-system of homotopy-types. Then the flat modality and the shape modality are axiomatized based on the existence of the sharp modality.

While traditional topos theory (hence: 1-topos theory) had had an emphasis on the internal logic provided by toposes from the very beginning [Law65], the formulation of constructions in higher topos theory in general and of cohesive higher topos theory in particular in terms of the internal language of homotopy-type theory has only just begun to be explored. But it is clear that it can provide considerable advantages. For instance the whole theory of relative Postnikov-Whitehead towers in $\infty$-toposes (see 5.1.4 below), which in [L-Topos] takes a fairly lenghty list of lemmas to establish, follows elegantly with a few simple proofs from homotopy-type theory, see chapter 7 of [UFP13] (some of this goes back to [SpRi12]). Combined with the richness of the formal consequences of the axioms of cohesion, for instance in the derivation of the long fiber sequences in stable differential cohomology in 6.1.3 below, this opens interesting perspectives.

In the following we briefly sketch how one begins going about re-formulating the axioms of cohesion in terms of structure internal to the ambient $\infty$-topos. For more details we refer the reader to [ScSh12] and the pointers given there.

**Theorem 4.1.25.** *Let* $\mathbf{H}$ *be an* $\infty$*-topos. The inclusion of a full sub-*$\infty$*-category*

$$\mathrm{Disc} : \mathbf{B}_{\mathrm{disc}} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$$

*– to be called the* discrete objects *– and of a full sub-*$\infty$*-category*

$$\mathrm{coDisc} : \mathbf{B}_{\mathrm{cod}} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$$

*– to be called the* codiscrete objects *– satisfies* $\mathbf{B}_{\mathrm{disc}} \simeq \mathbf{B}_{\mathrm{cod}}$ *and extends to an adjoint quadruple of the form*

$$\mathbf{H} \; \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\;\;\Pi\;\;} \\ \hookleftarrow{\mathrm{Disc}} \\ \xrightarrow{\;\;\Gamma\;\;} \\ \hookleftarrow{\mathrm{coDisc}} \end{array} \; \mathbf{B}$$

*as in def. 4.1.8 precisely if for every object* $X \in \mathbf{H}$

1. *there exists, with notation from def. 4.1.11,*
   (a) *a morphism* $X \to \int X$ *to a discrete object;*
   (b) *a morphism* $\flat X \to X$ *from a discrete object;*
   (c) *a morphism* $X \to \sharp X$ *to codiscrete object;*
2. *such that for all discrete* $Y$ *and codiscrete* $\tilde{Y}$ *the induced morphisms*
   (a) $\mathbf{H}(\int X, Y) \to \mathbf{H}(X, Y)$;
   (b) $\mathbf{H}(Y, \flat X) \to \mathbf{H}(Y, X)$;
   (c) $\mathbf{H}(\sharp X, \tilde{Y}) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \tilde{Y})$;
   (d) $\sharp(\flat X \to X)$;
   (e) $\flat(X \to \sharp X)$

   *are equivalences.*

*Finally,* $\Pi$ *preserves the terminal object if the morphism* $* \to \int *$ *is an equivalence.*

Proof. Prop. 5.2.7.8 in [L-Topos] asserts that a full sub-$\infty$-category $\mathbf{B} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ is reflectively embedded precisely if for every object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ there is a morphism

$$\mathrm{loc}_X : X \to \mathbf{L}X$$

to an object $\mathbf{L}X \in \mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ such that for all $Y \in \mathbf{B} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ the morphism

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathrm{loc}_X, Y) : \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{L}X, Y) \to \mathbf{H}(X, Y)$$

is an equivalence. In this case $\mathbf{L}$ is the composite of the embedding and its left adjoint. Accordingly, a dual statement holds for coreflective embeddings. This gives the structure and the first three properties of the above assertion. We identify therefore

$$(\textstyle\int \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp) := (\mathrm{Disc}\,\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc}\,\Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc}\,\Gamma)\,.$$

It remains to show that the last two properties say precisely that the sub-$\infty$-categories of discrete and codiscrete objects are equivalent and that under this equivalence their coreflective and reflective embedding, respectively, fits into a single adjoint triple. It is clear that if this is the case then the last two properties hold. We show the converse.

First notice that the two embeddings always combine into an adjunction of the form

$$\mathbf{B}_{\mathrm{disc}} \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{\mathrm{Disc}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathbf{H} \underset{\mathrm{coDisc}}{\overset{\tilde{\Gamma}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathbf{B}_{\mathrm{cod}}\ .$$

The equivalence $\sharp(\flat X \to X)$ applied to $X := \mathrm{coDisc}A$ gives that coDisc applied to the counit of this composite adjunction is an equivalence

$$\mathrm{coDisc}\,\tilde{\Gamma}\,\mathrm{Disc}\,\Gamma\mathrm{coDisc}A \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{coDisc}\,\tilde{\Gamma}\,\mathrm{coDisc}A \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{coDisc}A$$

and since coDisc is full and faithful, so is the composite counit itself. Dually, the equivalence $\flat(X \to \sharp X)$ implies that the unit of this composite adjunction is an equivalence. Hence the adjunction itself is an equivalence, and so $\mathbf{B}_{\mathrm{disc}} \simeq \mathbf{B}_{\mathrm{cod}}$. Using this we obtain a composite equivalence

$$\mathrm{Disc}\,\tilde{\Gamma}X \overset{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{Disc}\,\Gamma\mathrm{coDisc}\,\tilde{\Gamma}X \overset{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{Disc}\,\Gamma X\,,$$

where the left morphism is the image under Disc of the ave composite adjunction on the codiscrete object $\tilde{\Gamma}X$, and where the second is a natural inverse of $\flat(X \to \sharp X)$. Since Disc is full and faithful, this implies that

$$\Gamma \simeq \tilde{\Gamma}\,.$$

□

This formulation of cohesion is not entirely internal yet, since it still refers to the external hom $\infty$-groupoids $\mathbf{H}$. But cohesion also implies that the external $\infty$-groupoids can be re-internalized.

**Proposition 4.1.26.** *The statement of theorem 4.1.25 remains true with items 2. a) - 2. b) replaced by*

*2. (a')* $\sharp[\int X, Y] \to \sharp[X, Y]$*;*

*2. (b')* $\sharp[Y, \flat X] \to \sharp[Y, X]$*;*

*2. (c')* $[\sharp X, \tilde{Y}] \to [X, \tilde{Y}]$*;*

*where* $[-,-]$ *denotes the internal hom in* $\mathbf{H}$*.*

Proof. By prop. 5.2.2 we have for codiscrete $\tilde{Y}$ equivalences $[X, \tilde{Y}] \simeq \mathrm{coDisc}\mathbf{H}(X, \tilde{Y})$. Since coDisc is full and faithful, the morphism $\mathbf{H}(\sharp X, \tilde{Y}) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \tilde{Y})$ is an equivalence precisely if $[\sharp X, \tilde{Y}] \to [X, \tilde{Y}]$ is.

Generally, we have $\Gamma[X, Y] \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, Y)$. With the full and faithfulness of coDisc this similarly gives the remaining statements. □

### 4.1.2 Presentation

We now discuss presentations of cohesive $\infty$-toposes, in the sense of presentation of $\infty$-toposes as discussed in 3.1.3. In 4.1.2.2 we consider sites such that the $\infty$-topos of $\infty$-sheaves over them is cohesive. In 4.1.2.3 we analyze fibrancy and descent over these sites. These considerations serve as the basis for the construction of models of cohesion below in 6.

**4.1.2.1 Presentation over $\infty$-connected sites** We discuss presentations of locally and globally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-toposes, def. 4.1.3, by categories of simplicial presheaves over a suitable site of definition.

**Definition 4.1.27.** We call a site (a small category equipped with a coverage) *locally and globally $\infty$-connected* if

1. it has a terminal object $*$;
2. for every generating covering family $\{U_i \to U\}$ in $C$
   (a) $\{U_i \to U\}$ is a *good covering*, def. 3.1.26: the Čech nerve $C(\{U_i\}) \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is degreewise a coproduct of representables;
   (b) the colimit $\varinjlim : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \to \mathrm{sSet}$ of $C(\{U_i\})$ is weakly contractible

$$\varinjlim C(\{U_i\}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} * \,.$$

**Proposition 4.1.28.** *For $C$ a locally and globally $\infty$-connected site, the $\infty$-topos $Sh_\infty(C)$ is locally and globally $\infty$-connected.*

We prove this after noting two lemmas.

**Lemma 4.1.29.** *For $\{U_i \to U\}$ a covering family in the $\infty$-connected site $C$, the Čech nerve $C(\{U_i\}) \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is a cofibrant resolution of $U$ both in the global projective model structure $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ as well as in the local model structure $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.*

Proof. By assumption on $C$ we have that $C(\{U_i\})$ is a split hypercover [DHS04]. This implies that $C(\{U_i\})$ is cofibrant in the global model structure. By general properties of left Bousfield localization we have that the cofibrations in the local model structure as the same as in the global one. Finally that $C(\{U_i\}) \to U$ is a weak equivalence in the local model structure holds effectively by definition (since we are localizing at these morphisms). □

**Proposition 4.1.30.** *On a locally and globally $\infty$-connected site $C$, the global section $\infty$-geometric morphsm $(\Delta \dashv \Gamma) : \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C) \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is presented under prop. 2.1.39 by the simplical Quillen adjunction*

$$(\mathrm{Const} \dashv \Gamma) : \; [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}} \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{\mathrm{Const}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \;,$$

*where $\Gamma$ is the functor that evaluates on the terminal object, $\Gamma(X) = X(*)$, and where* Const *is the functor that assigns constant presheaves* $\mathrm{Const}S : U \mapsto S$*.*

Proof. That we have a 1-categorical adjunction $(\mathrm{Const} \dashv \Gamma)$ follows by noticing that since $C$ has a terminal object we have that $\Gamma = \varprojlim$ is given by the limit operation.

To see that we have a Quillen adjunction first notice that we have a Quillen adjunction on the global model structure

$$(\mathrm{Const} \dashv \Gamma) : \; [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{\mathrm{Const}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \;,$$

since $\Gamma$ manifestly preserves fibrations and acyclic fibrations there. Because $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ is left proper and has the same cofibrations as the global model structure, it follows with prop. 2.1.40 that for this to descend to a Quillen adjunction on the local model structure it is sufficient that $\Gamma$ preserves locally fibrant objects. But every fibrant object in the local structure is in particular fibrant in the global structure, hence in particular fibrant over the terminal object of $C$.

The left derived functor $\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Const}$ of $\mathrm{Const} : \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ preserves $\infty$-limits (because $\infty$-limits in an $\infty$-category of $\infty$-presheaves are computed objectwise), and moreover $\infty$-stackification, being the left derived functor of $\mathrm{Id} : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, is a left exact $\infty$-functor, therefore the left derived functor of $\mathrm{Const} : \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ preserves finite $\infty$-limits.

This means that our Quillen adjunction does model an $\infty$-geometric morphism $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C) \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. By prop. 3.1.7 this is indeed a representative of the terminal geometric morphism as claimed. □

Proof of theorem 4.1.28. By general abstract facts the sSet-functor $\mathrm{Const} : \mathrm{sSet} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ given on $S \in \mathrm{sSet}$ by $\mathrm{Const}(S) : U \mapsto S$ for all $U \in C$ has an sSet-left adjoint

$$\Pi : X \mapsto \int^U X(U) = \varinjlim X$$

naturally in $X$ and $S$, given by the colimit operation. Notice that since sSet is itself a category of presheaves (on the simplex category), these colimits are degreewise colimits in Set. Also notice that the colimit over a representable functor is the point (by a simple Yoneda lemma-style argument).

Regarded as a functor $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ the functor Const manifestly preserves fibrations and acyclic fibrations and hence

$$(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Const}) : \; [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \underset{\mathrm{Const}}{\overset{\varinjlim}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

is a Quillen adjunction, in particular $\Pi : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \to \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ preserves cofibrations. Since by general properties of left Bousfield localization the cofibrations of $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ are the same, also $\Pi : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}} \to \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ preserves cofibrations.

Since $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ is a left proper model category it follows with prop. 2.1.40 that for

$$(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Const}) : \; [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}} \underset{\mathrm{Const}}{\overset{\varinjlim}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

to be a Quillen adjunction, it suffices now that Const preserves fibrant objects. This means that constant simplicial presheaves satisfy descent along covering families in the $\infty$-cohesive site $C$: for every covering family $\{U_i \to U\}$ in $C$ and every simplicial set $S$ it must be true that

$$[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](U, \mathrm{Const}S) \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathrm{Const}S)$$

is a homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes. (Here we use that $U$, being a representable, is cofibrant, that $C(\{U_i\})$ is cofibrant by the lemma 4.1.29 and that $\mathrm{Const}S$ is fibrant in the projective structure by the assumption that $S$ is fibrant. So the simplicial hom-complexes in the above equaltion really are the correct derived hom-spaces.)

But that this is the case follows by the condition on the $\infty$-connected site $C$ by which $\varinjlim C(\{U_i\}) \simeq *$: using this we have that

$$[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathrm{Const}S) = \mathrm{sSet}(\varinjlim C(\{U_i\}), S) \simeq \mathrm{sSet}(*, S) = S\,.$$

So we have established that $(\varinjlim \dashv \mathrm{Const})$ is also a Quillen adjunction on the local model structure.

It is clear that the left derived functor of $\varinjlim$ preserves the terminal object: since that is representable by assumption on $C$, it is cofibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, hence $\mathbb{L}\varinjlim * \simeq \varinjlim * = *$. □

**4.1.2.2 Presentation over $\infty$-cohesive sites** We discuss a class of sites with the property that the $\infty$-toposes of $\infty$-sheaves over them (3.1.3) are cohesive, def. 4.1.8.

**Definition 4.1.31.** An $\infty$-*cohesive site* is a site such that

1. it has finite products;
2. every object $U \in C$ has at least one point: $C(*, U) \neq \emptyset$;
3. for every covering family $\{U_i \to U\}$ its Čech nerve $C(\{U_i\}) \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is degreewise a coproduct of representables
4. the canonical morphisms $C(\{U_i\}) \to U$ are taken to weak equivalences by both limit and colimit $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \to \mathrm{sSet}$:
$$\begin{aligned} \varinjlim C(\{U_i\}) &\stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \varinjlim U_i \\ \varprojlim C(\{U_i\}) &\stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \varprojlim U_i \end{aligned} .$$

Notice that for the representable $U$ we have $\lim_{\to} U \simeq *$ and that since $C$ is assumed to have finite products and hence in particular a terminal object $\lim_{\leftarrow} U = C(*, U)$.

**Proposition 4.1.32.** *The $\infty$-sheaf $\infty$-topos over an $\infty$-cohesive site is a cohesive $\infty$-topos in which for all objects* pieces have points*, def. 4.1.16.*

Proof. Since an $\infty$-cohesive site is in particular a locally and globally $\infty$-connected site (def. 4.1.27) it follows with theorem 4.1.28 that $\Pi$ exists and preserves the terminal object. Moreover, by the discussion there $\Pi$ acts by sending a fibrant-cofibrant simplicial presheaf $F : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{sSet}$ to its colimit. Since $C$ is assumed to have finite products, $C^{\mathrm{op}}$ has finite coproducts, hence is a sifted category. Therefore taking colimits of functors on $C^{\mathrm{op}}$ commutes with taking products of these functors. Since the $\infty$-product of $\infty$-presheaves is modeled by the ordinary product on fibrant simplicial presheaves, it follows that over an $\infty$-cohesive site $\Pi$ indeed exhibits a strongly $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos.

Using the notation and results of the proof of theorem 4.1.28, we show that the further right adjoint $\Delta$ exists by exhibiting a suitable right Quillen adjoint to $\Gamma : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \to \mathrm{sSet}$, which is given by evaluation on the terminal object. Its sSet-enriched right adjoint is given by

$$\nabla S : U \mapsto \mathrm{sSet}(\Gamma(U), S)$$

as confirmed by the following end/coend computation:

$$\begin{aligned} (X, \nabla(S)) &= \int_{U \in C} \mathrm{sSet}(X(U), \mathrm{sSet}(\Gamma(U), S) \\ &= \int_{U \in C} \mathrm{sSet}(X(U) \times \Gamma(U), S) \\ &= \mathrm{sSet}(\int^{U \in C} X(U) \times \Gamma(U), \quad S) \\ &= \mathrm{sSet}(\int^{U \in C} X(U) \times \mathrm{Hom}_C(*, U), \quad S) \\ &= \mathrm{sSet}(X(*), S) \\ &= \mathrm{sSet}(\Gamma(X), S) \end{aligned} ,$$

We have that

$$(\Gamma \dashv \nabla) : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \underset{\nabla}{\overset{\Gamma}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

is a Quillen adjunction, since $\nabla$ manifestly preserves fibrations and acyclic fibrations. Since $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ is a left proper model category, to see that this descends to a Quillen adjunction on the local model structure it is sufficient by prop. 2.1.40 to check that $\nabla : \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ preserves fibrant objects, in that for $S$ a Kan complex we have that $\nabla S$ satisfies descent along Čech nerves of covering families.

This is implied by the second defining condition on the $\infty$-local site $C$, that $\underleftarrow{\lim} C(\{U_i\}) = \mathrm{Hom}_C(*, C(\{U_i\}) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_C(*, U) = \underleftarrow{\lim} U$ is a weak equivalence. Using this we have for fibrant $S \in \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ the descent weak equivalence

$$\begin{aligned}
[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](U, \nabla S) &= \mathrm{sSet}(\mathrm{Hom}_C(*, U), S) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{sSet}(\mathrm{Hom}_C(*, C(U)), S)\,, \\
&= [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(U), \nabla S)
\end{aligned}$$

where we use in the middle step that $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ is a simplicial model category so that homming the weak equivalence between cofibrant objects into the fibrant object $S$ indeed yields a weak equivalence.

It remains to show that *pieces have points*, def. 4.1.16, in $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$. For the first statement we use the cofibrant replacement theorem from [Dug01] for $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ which says that for $X$ any simplicial presheaf, a functorial projective cofibrant replacement is given by the object

$$QX := \left( \cdots \xrightarrow{\to}{\to}{\to} \coprod_{U_0 \to U_1 \to X_1} U_0 \rightrightarrows \coprod_{U_0 \to X_0} U_0 \right)\,,$$

where the coproducts are over the set of morphisms of presheaves from representables $U_i$ as indicated. By the above discussion, the presentations of $\Gamma$ and $\Pi$ by left Quillen functors $\underleftarrow{\lim}$ and $\underrightarrow{\lim}$ takes this to the morphism $\underleftarrow{\lim} QX \to \underrightarrow{\lim} QX$ induced in components by

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\cdots & \coprod_{U_0 \to U_1 \to X_1} C(*.U_0) & \rightrightarrows & \coprod_{U_0 \to X_0} C(*, U_0) & . \\
& \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\
\cdots & \coprod_{U_0 \to U_1 \to X_1} * & \rightrightarrows & \coprod_{U_0 \to X_0} * &
\end{array}$$

By assumption on $C$ we have that all sets $C(*, U_0)$ are non-empty, so that this is componentwise an epimorphism and hence induces in particular an epimorphism on connected components.

Finally, for $S$ a Kan complex we have by the above that $\mathrm{Disc}S$ is the presheaf constant on $S$. Its homotopy sheaves are the presheaves constant on the homotopy groups of $S$. The inclusion of these into the homotopy sheaves of $\mathrm{coDisc}S$ is over each $U \in C$ the diagonal injection

$$\pi_n(S, x) \hookrightarrow \pi_n(S, x)^{C(*,U)}\,.$$

Therefore also *discrete objects are concrete* in the $\infty$-topos over the $\infty$-cohesive site $C$. □

Below in 6 we discuss in detail the following examples.

**Examples 4.1.33.** The following sites are $\infty$-cohesive.

- The site $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$ of Cartesian spaces, continuous maps between them and good open covers (prop. 6.3.2).
- The site SmoothCartSp of Cartesian spaces, smooth maps between them and good open covers (prop. 6.4.6),
- The site $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{formal}}$ of Cartesian spaces with infinitesimal thickening, smooth maps between the and good open covers that are the identity on the thickening (prop. 6.5.8).

- The site $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{super}}$ of super-Cartesian spaces, morphisms of supermanifolds between them and good open covers.

We record some general properties of $\infty$-toposes over such sites, that will be used below.

The following might be expected to hold quite generally for $\infty$-toposes, but currently we have a proof only over $\infty$-connected sites.

**Theorem 4.1.34** (parameterized $\infty$-Grothendieck construction)**.** *Let* $\mathbf{H}$ *be an* $\infty$*-topos with an* $\infty$*-connected site of definition, def. 4.1.27, and let* $A \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *be any* $\infty$*-groupoid. Then there is an equivalence of* $\infty$*-categories*

$$\mathbf{H}/_{\mathrm{Disc}A} \simeq \mathbf{H}^A$$

*between the slice* $\infty$*-topos of* $\mathbf{H}$ *over the discrete cohesive* $\infty$*-groupoid on* $A$ *and the* $\infty$*-category of* $\infty$*-functors* $A \to \mathbf{H}$.

Proof. For the case that the site of definition is terminal, hence that $\mathbf{H} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, this statement is the $\infty$-*Grothendieck construction* from section 2 of [L-Topos]. There the equivalence of $\infty$-categories

$$\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/A} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}^A$$

which takes a fibration to an $\infty$-functor that assigns its fibers is presented by a Quillen equivalence of model categories

$$\mathrm{sSet}^+/A \rightleftarrows [w(A)^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$$

between a model structure on *marked simplicial sets* $\mathrm{sSet}^+$ over a Kan complex $A$ and the global projective model structure on enriched presheaves on the simplically enriched category $w(A)$ corresponding to $A$ by the discussion in section 1.1.5 of [L-Topos].

Now for $C$ an $\infty$-connected site and $\mathbf{H} \simeq ([C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}})^\circ$ we have by the proof of prop. 4.1.28 that with $A$ a Kan complex, the constant simplicial presheaf $\mathrm{const}A : C^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{sSet}$ is a fibrant presentation in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ of $\mathrm{Disc}A$. Therefore the $\infty$-categorical slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{Disc}A}$ is presented by the induced model structure on the 1-categorical slice category

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{Disc}A} \simeq \left(([C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{/\mathrm{const}A})_{\mathrm{proj,loc}/\mathrm{const}A}\right)^\circ .$$

We have an evident equivalence of 1-categories

$$[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{/\mathrm{const}A} \simeq [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_{/A}]$$

under which the above slice model structure is seen to become the model structure on presheaves with values in the slice model structure $(\mathrm{sSet}_{/A})_{\mathrm{Quillen}/A}$, hence

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{Disc}A} \simeq \left([C^{\mathrm{op}}, (\mathrm{sSet}_{/A})_{\mathrm{Quillen}/A}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}\right)^\circ .$$

Since $A$ is fibrant in the Quillen model structure, the slice model structure here presents the $\infty$-categorical slice of $\infty$-groupoids

$$\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/A} \simeq \left((\mathrm{sSet}_{/A})_{\mathrm{Quillen}/A}\right)^\circ .$$

By the above presentation of the $\infty$-Grothendieck construction by marked simplicial sets, this is equivalently

$$\cdots \simeq \left(\mathrm{sSet}^+/A\right)^\circ \simeq ([w(A)^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}})^\circ .$$

Since all model categories appearing here are combinatorial, it follows with prop. 4.2.4.4 in [L-Topos] that we have an equivalence of $\infty$-categories

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{Disc}A} \simeq ([C^{\mathrm{op}}, [w(A)^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}})^\circ$$

and hence

$$\cdots \simeq ([w(A)^{\mathrm{op}}, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}]_{\mathrm{proj}})^\circ \simeq \mathbf{H}^A .$$

□

**Proposition 4.1.35.** *If* $\mathbf{H}$ *has an* $\infty$*-cohesive site of definition, def. 4.1.31, then the functor* $\Pi : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *preserves* $\infty$*-pullbacks over discrete objects.*

This was pointed out by Mike Shulman.
Proof. By prop. 5.2.5.1 in [L-Topos] the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-adjunction passes for each $A \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ to the slice as

$$(\Pi_{/\mathrm{Disc}A} \dashv \mathrm{Disc}_{/\mathrm{Disc}A}) : \mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{Disc}A} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/A} .$$

Under the parameterized $\infty$-Grothendieck construction, prop. 4.1.34, we have that $\Pi_{/\mathrm{Disc}A}$ becomes

$$\Pi^A : \mathbf{H}^A \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}^A .$$

Since $\infty$-limits of functor $\infty$-categories are computed objectwise, and since $\Pi$ preserves finite products by the axioms of cohesion, $\Pi^A$ preserves finite products and hence so does $\Pi_{/\mathrm{Disc}A}$. Since a binary product in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{Disc}A}$ is an $\infty$-pullback over $\mathrm{Disc}A$ in $\mathbf{H}$, this completes the proof. □

**Remark 4.1.36.** We find below that over some $\infty$-cohesive sites of interest $\Pi$ preserves further $\infty$-pullbacks. See prop. 6.3.47.

#### 4.1.2.3 Fibrancy over $\infty$-cohesive sites

The condition on an object $X \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ to be fibrant models the fact that $X$ is an $\infty$*-presheaf of* $\infty$*-groupoids*. The condition that $X$ is also fibrant as an object in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ models the higher analog of the sheaf condition: it makes $X$ an $\infty$*-sheaf*. For generic sites $C$ fibrancy in the local model structure is a property rather hard to check or establish concretely. But often a given site can be replaced by another site on which the condition is easier to control, without changing the corresponding $\infty$-topos, up to equivalence. Here we discuss for cohesive sites, def. 4.1.31 explicit conditions for a simplicial presheaf over them to be fibrant.

In order to discuss descent over $C$ it is convenient to introduce the following notation for "cohomology over the site $C$". For the moment this is just an auxiliary technical notion. Later we will see how it relates to an intrinsically defined notion of cohomology.

**Definition 4.1.37.** For $C$ an $\infty$-cohesive site, $A \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ fibrant, and $\{U_i \to U\}$ a good cover in $U$, we write

$$H^n_C(\{U_i\}, A) := \pi_0 \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A) .$$

Moreover, if $A$ is equipped with (abelian) group structure we write

$$H^n_C(\{U_i\}, A) := \pi_0 \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), \overline{W}^n A) .$$

**Definition 4.1.38.** An object $A \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is called $C$*-acyclic* if

1. it is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$;
2. for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the homotopy group presheaves $\pi_n^{\mathrm{PSh}}$ from def. 3.1.11 are already sheaves $\pi_n(A) \in \mathrm{Sh}(C)$;
3. for $n = 1$ and $k = 1$ as well as $n \geq 2$ and $k \geq 1$ we have $H^k_C(\{U_i\}, \pi_n(A)) \simeq *$ for all good covers $\{U_i \to U\}$.

**Remark 4.1.39.** This definition can be formulated and the following statements about it are true over any site whatsoever. However, on generic sites $C$ the $C$-acyclic objects are not very interesting. On $\infty$-cohesive sites on the other hand they are of central importance.

**Observation 4.1.40.** If $A$ is $C$-acyclic then for every point $x : * \to A$ also $\Omega_x A$ is $C$-acyclic (for any model of the loop space object in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$).

Proof. The standard statement in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$

$$\pi_n \Omega X \simeq \pi_{n+1} X$$

directly prolongs to $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. □

**Theorem 4.1.41.** *Let $C$ be an $\infty$-cohesive site. Sufficient conditions for an object $A \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ to be fibrant in the local model structure $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ are*

- *$A$ is 0-truncated and $C$-acyclic;*
- *$A$ is connected and $C$-acyclic;*
- *$A$ is a group object and $C$-acyclic.*

Here and in the following "truncated" and "connected" are as simplicial presheaves (not after sheafification of homotopy presheaves).

We demonstrate this statement in several stages.

**Proposition 4.1.42.** *A 0-truncated object is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ precisely if it is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ and weakly equivalent to a sheaf: to an object in the image of the canonical inclusion*

$$\mathrm{Sh}_C \hookrightarrow [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}] \hookrightarrow [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \,.$$

Proof. From general facts of left Bousfield localization we have that the fibrant objects in the local model structure are necessarily fibrant also in the global structure.

Since moreover $A \to \pi_0(A)$ is a weak equivalence in the global model structure by assumption, we have for every covering $\{U_i \to U\}$ in $C$ a sequence of weak equivalences

$$\mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), \pi_0(A)) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{Maps}(\pi_0 C(\{U_i\}), \pi_0(A)) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{Sh}_C(S(\{U_i\}), \pi_0(A)) \,,$$

where $S(\{U_i\}) \hookrightarrow U$ is the sieve corresponding to the cover. Therefore the descent condition

$$\mathrm{Maps}(U, A) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A)$$

is precisely the sheaf condition for $\pi_0(A)$. □

**Proposition 4.1.43.** *A connected fibrant object $A \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ if for all objects $U \in C$*

1. *$H_C(U, A) \simeq *$;*
2. *$\Omega A$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$,*

*where $\Omega A$ is any fibrant object in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ representing the looping of $A$.*

Proof. For $\{U_i \to U\}$ a covering we need to show that the canonical morphism

$$\mathrm{Maps}(U, A) \to \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence. This is equivalent to the two morphisms

1. $\pi_0 \mathrm{Maps}(U, A) \to \pi_0 \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A)$
2. $\Omega \mathrm{Maps}(U, A) \to \Omega \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A)$

being weak equivalences. Since $A$ is connected the first of these says that there is a weak equivalence $* \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} H_C(U, A)$. The second condition is equivalent to $\mathrm{Maps}(U, \Omega A) \to \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), \Omega A)$, being a weak equivalence, hence to the descent of $\Omega A$. □

**Proposition 4.1.44.** *An object $A$ which is connected, 1-truncated and $C$-acyclic is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.*

Proof. Observe that for a connected and 1-truncated objects we have a weak equivalence $A \simeq \overline{W}\pi_1(A)$ in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. The first condition of prop. 4.1.43 is then implied by $C$-connectedness. The second condition there is that $\pi_1(A)$ satisfies descent. By $C$-acyclicity this is a sheaf and it is 0-truncated by assumption, therefore it satisfies descent by prop 4.1.42. □

**Proposition 4.1.45.** *Every connected and $C$-acyclic object $A \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.*

Proof. We first show the statement for truncated $A$ and afterwards for the general case.

The $k$-truncated case in turn we consider by induction over $k$. If $A$ is 1-truncated the proposition holds by prop. 4.1.44. Assuming then that the statement has been shown for $k$-truncated $A$, we need to show it for $(k+1)$-truncated $A$.

This we do by decomposing $A$ into its canonical Postnikov tower def. 5.1.50: For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ let

$$A(n) := A/_{\sim_n}$$

be the quotient simplicial presheaf where two cells

$$\alpha, \beta : \Delta^n \times U \to A$$

are identified, $\alpha \sim_n \beta$, precisely if they agree on their $n$-skeleton:

$$\mathrm{sk}_n\alpha = \mathrm{sk}_n\beta : \mathrm{sk}_n\Delta \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \to A(U)\,.$$

It is a standard fact (shown in [GoJa99], theorem VI 3.5 for simplicial sets, which generalizes immediately to the global model structure $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ ) that for all $n > 1$ we have sequences

$$K(n) \to A(n) \to A(n-1)\,,$$

where $A(n-1)$ is $(n-1)$-truncated with homotopy groups in degree $\leq n-1$ those of $A$, and where the right morphism is a Kan fibration and the left morphism is its kernel, such that

$$A = \varprojlim_n A(n)\,.$$

Moreover, there are canonical weak homotopy equivalences

$$K(n) \to \Xi((\pi_{n-1}A)[n])$$

to the Eilenberg-MacLane object on the $n$th homotopy group in degree $n$.

Since $A(n-1)$ is $(n-1)$-truncated and connected, the induction assumption implies that it is fibrant in the local model structure.

Moreover we see that $K(n)$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$: the first condition of 4.1.43 holds by the assumption that $A$ is $C$-connected. The second condition is implied again by the induction hypothesis, since $\Omega K(n)$ is $(n-1)$-truncated, connected and still $C$-acyclic, by observation 4.1.40.

Therefore in the diagram (where $\mathrm{Maps}(-,-)$ denotes the simplicial hom complex)

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathrm{Maps}(U, K(n)) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Maps}(U, A(n)) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Maps}(U, A(n-1)) \\
\downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \simeq \\
\mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), K(n)) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A(n)) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A(n-1))
\end{array}$$

for $\{U_i \to U\}$ any good cover in $C$ the top and bottom rows are fiber sequences (notice that all simplicial sets in the top row are connected because $A$ is connected) and the left and right vertical morphisms are weak equivalences in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ (the right one since $A(n-1)$ is fibrant in the local model structure by induction hypothesis, as remarked before, and the left one by $C$-acyclicity of $A$). It follows that also the middle morphism is a weak equivalence. This shows that $A(n)$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. By completing the induction the same then follows for the object $A$ itself.

This establishes the claim for truncated $A$. To demonstrate the claim for general $A$ notice that the limit over a sequence of fibrations between fibrant objects is a homotopy limit (by example 5.1.12). Therefore we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Maps}(U, A) & \simeq & \underleftarrow{\lim}_n \mathrm{Maps}(U, A(n)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \simeq \\ \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A) & \simeq & \underleftarrow{\lim}_n \mathrm{Maps}(C(\{U_i\}), A(n)) \end{array},$$

where the right vertical morphism is a morphism between homotopy limits in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ induced by a weak equivalence of diagrams, hence is itself a weak equivalence. Therefore $A$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. □

**Lemma 4.1.46.** *For $G \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ a group object, the canonical sequence*

$$G_0 \to G \to G/G_0$$

*is a homotopy fiber sequence in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.*

Proof. Since homotopy pullbacks of presheaves are computed objectwise, it is sufficient to show this for $C = *$, hence in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$. One checks that generally, for $X$ a Kan complex and $G$ a simplicial group acting on $X$, the quotient morphism $X \to X/G$ is a Kan fibration. Therefore the homotopy fiber of $G \to G/G_0$ is presented by the ordinary fiber in sSet. Since the action of $G_0$ on $G$ is free, this is indeed $G_0 \to G$. □

**Proposition 4.1.47.** *Every $C$-acyclic group object $G \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ for which $G_0$ is a sheaf is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.*

Proof. By lemma 4.1.46 we have a fibration sequence

$$G_0 \to G \to G/G_0 \,.$$

Since $G_0$ is assumed to be a sheaf it is fibrant in the local model structure by prop. 4.1.42. Since $G/G_0$ is evidently connected and $C$-acyclic it is fibrant in the local model structure by prop. 4.1.45. As before in the proof there this implies that also $G$ is fibrant in the local model structure. □

We discuss some examples.

**Proposition 4.1.48.** *Let $(\delta : G_1 \to G_0)$ be a crossed module, def. 1.2.81, of sheaves over an $\infty$-cohesive site $C$. Then the simplicial delooping $\bar{W}(G_1 \to G_0)$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ if the image factorization of $G_0 \times G_1 \to G_0 \times G_0$ has sections over each $U \in C$ and if the presheaf $\ker\delta$ is a sheaf.*

Proof. The existence of the lift ensures that the homotopy presheaf $\pi_1^{\mathrm{PSh}} \bar{W} G$ is a sheaf. Notice that $\pi_2^{\mathrm{PSh}} \bar{W} G = \ker(\delta)$. Since moreover $\bar{W} G$ is manifestly connected, the claim follows with theorem 4.1.41. □

## 4.2 $\Re \dashv \Im \dashv \&$ – Elasticity

We discuss extra structure on a cohesive $\infty$-topos that encodes a refinement of the corresponding notion of cohesion to a notion of what may be called *infinitesimal cohesion* or *differential cohesion*. With respect to such it makes sense to ask if an object in the topos is *infinitesimal*. Where cohesion encodes the presence of fundamental path $\infty$-groupoids and differential cohomology, we find that differential cohesion is what allows to formulate infinitesimal path $\infty$-groupoids, manifold theory and Cartan geometry, such as Riemannian and Lorentzian geometry. Following a common imagery of differential manifolds in general and manifolds with (pseudo-)Riemannian structure in particular exhibiting a kind of (rigid) elasticity ("hearing the shape of a drum") we also speak of an $\infty$-topos with differential cohesion as abstract *elastic substance*.

A basic class of examples of objects with infinitesimal extension are *infinitesimal intervals* $\mathbb{D}$ that arise, in the presence of infinitesimal cohesion, from *line objects* $\mathbb{A}$ as the subobjects $\mathbb{D} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{A}$ of elements that square to 0 (in the internal logic of the topos)

$$\mathbb{D} = \{x \in \mathbb{A} | x \cdot x = 0\} \,.$$

These objects co-represent tangent spaces, in that for any other object $X$ the internal hom object $TX := [\mathbb{D}, X]$ plays the role of the *tangent bundle* of $X$.

A well-known proposal for an axiomatic characterization of infinitesimal objects in a 1-topos goes by the name *synthetic differential geometry* [Law97], where infinitesimal extension is characterized by algebraic properties of dual function algebras, as above. From the point of view and in the presence of cohesion in an $\infty$-topos, however, there is a more immediate geometric characterization: an object $\mathbb{D}$ in a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ behaves like a possibly infinitesimally thickened point if

1. it is geometrically contractible, $\Pi(\mathbb{D}) \simeq *$;

2. it has a single global point, $\Gamma(\mathbb{D}) \simeq *$.

In particular this implies that the points-to-pieces transform, def. 4.1.14, is an equivalence on $D$. More generally, a disjoint union of such infinitesimally thickened points is an object $X$ for which the pieces-to-points transform is an equivalence

$$\flat(X) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Pi(X)$$

as in the definition of infinitesimal cohesion, def. 4.1.21.

This axiomatization we discuss in the following. We observe that this formalizes a modern refinement of infinitesimal calculus called *$\mathcal{D}$-geometry* [BeDr04] [L-DGeo].

More precisely, we consider geometric inclusions $\mathbf{H}_{\Re} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ of cohesive $\infty$-toposes that exhibit the objects of $\mathbf{H}$ as infinitesimal cohesive neighbourhoods of objects in $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}$. Equivalently, if the cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}$ is itself regarded as a fat point by prop. 4.1.10, then $\mathbf{H}$ is a further infinitesimal thickening of that fat point itself. Below in 5.3.6 we furthermore consider the $\infty$-cofiber $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{inf}}$ of this inclusion

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{\Re} & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{H} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{inf}} \end{array} .$$

This cofiber is interpreted accordingly as the respective infinitesimal thickening of the absolute point. We observe in 6.5.2.5 that the sub-$\infty$-category of globally trivial objects of $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{inf}}$ is equivalent to that of $L_\infty$-algebras, by the theory of "formal moduli problems" of [L-Lie]. Moreover, the reflection along

$$\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H}) \simeq \mathbf{H}^{*/}_{\geq 1} \longrightarrow (\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{inf}})^{*/}_{\geq 1}$$

is Lie differentiation, sending a cohesive $\infty$-group to the $L_\infty$-algebra that approximates it infinitesimally.

Below in 5.3 we discuss a list of structures that are canonically present in infinitesimal cohesive neighbourhoods.

Further below in 6.5 we discuss a model for these axioms by *formall smooth ∞-groupoids* which is an ∞-categorical generalization of a topos that is a model for *synthetic differential geometry*. In this model the above ∞-cofiber sequence of cohesive ∞-toposes reads

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{Inf}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \;,$$

where on the right we have "infinitesimal ∞-groupoids" (essentially the "formal moduli problems" of [L-Lie]), which are infinitesimally cohesive. This is prop. 6.5.15 below.

A similar model, differing by the existence of a grading on the infinitesimals, is that of supergeometric ∞-groupoids, discussed below in in 6.6. There the ∞-cofiber sequence of cohesive ∞-toposes reads

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \;,$$

where on the right we have bare but "super" ∞-groupoids, an infinitesimally cohesive ∞-topos whose internal algebra is superalgebra. This is prop. 6.6.18 below.

### 4.2.1 General abstract

**Definition 4.2.1.** Given an ∞-topos $\mathbf{H}$, then *differential structure* or *elastic structure* on $\mathbf{H}$ turning it into a *differential ∞-topos* or *elastic substance* is a sub-∞-topos $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}$ which is included (co-)reflectively via an adjoint quadruple of ∞-functors of the form

$$(i_! \dashv i^* \dashv i_* \dashv i^!) : \; \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \underset{i^!}{\overset{i_!}{\substack{\hookrightarrow \\ \xleftarrow{i^*} \\ \xhookrightarrow{i_*} \\ \leftarrow}}} \mathbf{H}$$

such that $i_!$ preserves finite products. We call $i_!$ the inclusion of the *reduced objects* and $i_*$ the inclusion of the *co-reduced objects*.

If the differential ∞-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is cohesive over the given base ∞-topos (in which case also $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}$ is cohesive) then we also say for short that it carries *differential cohesion*. The adjoint triple of idempotent (co-)monads corresponding to this adjoint quadrupuple we write

$$\Re \dashv \Im \dashv \& : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$$

(see def. 5.3.1 below for more details) and pronounce them as

- $\Re$ – *infinitesimal reduction modality*;
- $\Im$ – *infinitesimal shape modality*;
- $\&$ – *infinitesimal flat modality.*

**Remark 4.2.2.** Definition 4.2.1 captures the characterization of infinitesimal objects as having a single global point surrounded by an infinitesimal neighbourhood: as we discuss in detail below in 5.3.1, the ∞-functor $i^*$ may be thought of as contracting away any infinitesimal extension of an object. Thus $X$ being an infinitesimal object amounts to $i^*X \simeq *$, and the ∞-adjunction $(i_! \dashv i^*)$ then implies that $X$ has only a single global point, since

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}(*, X) &\simeq \mathbf{H}(i_!*, X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(*, i^*X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(*, *) \\ &\simeq * \end{aligned} .$$

**Proposition 4.2.3.** *The inclusion into the infinitesimal neighbourhood is necessarily a morphism of $\infty$-toposes over* $\infty$Grpd*.*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{\Re} & \xrightarrow{(i^* \dashv i_*)} & \mathbf{H} \\ & {\scriptstyle \Gamma_{\mathbf{H}_{\Re}}} \searrow \quad \swarrow {\scriptstyle \Gamma_{\mathbf{H}}} & \\ & \infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \end{array}$$

*as is the induced $\infty$-geometric morphism $(i_* \dashv i^!) : \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{th}} \to \mathbf{H}$:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H} & \xrightarrow{(i_* \dashv i^!)} & \mathbf{H} \\ & {\scriptstyle \Gamma_{\mathbf{H}}} \searrow \quad \swarrow {\scriptstyle \Gamma_{\mathbf{H}_{\Re}}} & \\ & \infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \end{array} .$$

Proof. By essential uniqueness of the terminal global section geometric morphism, prop. 3.1.7. In both cases the direct image functor has as left adjoint that preserves the terminal object. Therefore we compute in the first case

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{\mathbf{H}}(i_* X) &\simeq \mathbf{H}(*, i_* X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{\Re}(i^* *, X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{\Re}(*, X) \\ &\simeq \Gamma_{\mathbf{H}_{\Re}}(X) \end{aligned}$$

and analogously in the second. $\square$

**Definition 4.2.4.** For $(i_! \dashv i^* \dashv i_* \dashv i^!) : \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \to \mathbf{H}$ an differential structure, def. 4.2.1, on a cohesive $\infty$-topos, we write

$$(\Pi_{\mathrm{inf}} \dashv \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{inf}} \dashv \Gamma_{\mathrm{inf}}) := (i^* \dashv i_* \dashv i^!) \,,$$

so that the locally connected terminal geometric morphism of $\mathbf{H}$ factors as

$$(\Pi_{\mathbf{H}} \dashv \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathbf{H}} \dashv \flat_{\mathbf{H}}) : \; \mathbf{H} \underset{\xrightarrow{\;\Gamma_{\mathrm{inf}}\;}}{\overset{\xleftarrow{\;i_!\;}}{\overset{\xrightarrow{\;\Pi_{\mathrm{inf}}\;}}{\xleftarrow{\;\mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{inf}}\;}}}} \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \underset{\xleftarrow{\;\mathrm{coDisc}_{\mathbf{H}_{\Re}}\;}}{\underset{\xrightarrow{\;\Gamma_{\mathbf{H}_{\Re}}\;}}{\overset{\xrightarrow{\;\Pi_{\mathbf{H}_{\Re}}\;}}{\xleftarrow{\;\mathrm{Disc}_{\mathbf{H}_{\Re}}\;}}}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \;.$$

See the schematics surveyed in 2.2 and 4.

**Remark 4.2.5.** Organizing the adjoints as in def. 4.2.4 and using that by prop. 3.1.7 the geometric morphism to the base $\infty$Grpd is essentially unique, shows that the moments ($\Im \dashv \&$ of differential cohesion in def. 4.2.1 factor the moments ($\int \dashv \flat$) of cohesion. Hence in the vein of the discussion in 2.2.5 and continuing remark 4.1.12, the situation in def. 4.2.4 may be depicted as follows:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathrm{id} & \dashv & \mathrm{id} \\
\vee & & \vee \\
\Re & \dashv & \Im \\
\bot & & \bot \\
\Im & \dashv & \& \\
\vee & & \vee \\
\int & \dashv & \flat \\
\bot & & \bot \\
\flat & \dashv & \sharp \\
\vee & & \vee \\
\emptyset & \dashv & *
\end{array}
$$

The interrelation between overlapping adjoint triples here is discussed in more detail below in 5.3.1.

As a simple class of examples we record right away:

**Proposition 4.2.6.** *If* $\mathbf{H}$ *is an infinitesimally cohesive* $\infty$*-topos over* $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *def. 4.1.24, then it is also enjoys differential cohesion relative to* $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$*.*

Proof. By the properties of infinitesimal cohesion the composite

$$
\infty\mathrm{Grpd}
\begin{array}{c}
\hookrightarrow \\
\longleftarrow \\
\hookrightarrow \\
\longleftarrow
\end{array}
\mathbf{H}
\begin{array}{c}
\longrightarrow \\
\hookleftarrow \\
\hookleftarrow \\
\longrightarrow
\end{array}
\infty\mathrm{Grpd}
$$

is the identity adjoint quadruple, which is the one that exhibits the discrete cohesion of $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ over itself. □

More generally, one may encode infinitesimals of various fixed order of infinitesimally.

**Definition 4.2.7.** Given a sequence of differential inclusions, def. 4.2.1,

$$
\mathbf{H}_{\Re} = \mathbf{H}_{\Re_{(0)}}
\begin{array}{c} \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \end{array}
\mathbf{H}_{\Re_{(1)}}
\begin{array}{c} \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \end{array}
\mathbf{H}_{\Re_{(2)}}
\begin{array}{c} \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \end{array}
\cdots
\begin{array}{c} \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \end{array}
\mathbf{H}_{\Re_{(\infty)}}
\begin{array}{c} \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \end{array}
\mathbf{H}
$$

we speak of a *sequence of orders of differential structures* and we write

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{id} & \vdash & \mathrm{id} \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \Im_{(\infty)} & \vdash & \Re_{(\infty)} \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \Im_{(2)} & \vdash & \Re_{(2)} \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \Im_{(1)} & \vdash & \Re_{(1)} \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \Im_{(0)} & \vdash & \Re_{(0)} \\ \| & & \| \\ \Im & \vdash & \Re \end{array}$$

for the induced tower of moments. We call $\Im_{(k)}X$ the *order $k$ infinitesimal path $\infty$-groupoid* of $X$, etc.

### 4.2.2 Presentations

We establish a presentation of differential cohesive $\infty$-toposes, def. 4.2.1, in terms of categories of simplicial presheaves over suitable neighbourhoods of $\infty$-cohesive sites.

**Definition 4.2.8.** Let $C$ be an $\infty$-cohesive site, def. 4.1.31. We say a site $C_{\mathrm{th}}$

- equipped with a co-reflective embedding

$$(i \dashv p) : \; C \underset{p}{\overset{i}{\hookrightarrow\!\!\leftarrow}} C_{\mathrm{th}}$$

- such that
  1. $i$ preserves finite products;
  2. $i$ preserves pullbacks along morphisms in covering families;
  3. both $i$ and $p$ send covering families to covering families;
  4. for all $\mathbf{U} \in C_{\mathrm{th}}$ and for all covering families $\{U_i \to p(\mathbf{U})\}$ in $C$ there is a lift through $p$ to a covering family $\{\mathbf{U}_i \to \mathbf{U}\}$ in $C_{\mathrm{th}}$

is an *infinitesimal neighbourhood site* of $C$.

**Proposition 4.2.9.** *Let $C$ be an $\infty$-cohesive site and let $(i \dashv p) : C \underset{p}{\overset{i}{\hookrightarrow\!\!\leftarrow}} C_{\mathrm{th}}$ be an infinitesimal neighbourhood site, def. 4.2.2. Then the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-sheaves on $C_{\mathrm{th}}$ is a cohesive $\infty$-topos and the restriction $i^*$ along $i$ exhibits it as an infinitesimal neighbourhood of the cohesive $\infty$-topos over $C$.*

$$(i_! \dashv i^* \dashv i_* \dashv i^!) : \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C) \to \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C_{\mathrm{th}}) \,.$$

*Moreover, $i_!$ restricts on representables to the $\infty$-Yoneda embedding factoring through $i$:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C) \\ \downarrow^{i} & & \downarrow^{i_!} \\ C_{\mathrm{th}} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C_{\mathrm{th}}) \end{array} .$$

Proof. We demonstrate this in the model category presentation of $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C_{\mathrm{th}})$ as in the proof of prop. 4.1.32.

Consider the right Kan extension $\mathrm{Ran}_i : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \to [C_{\mathrm{th}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ of simplicial presheaves along the functor $i$. On an object $\mathbf{K} \in C_{\mathrm{th}}$ it is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Ran}_i F : \mathbf{K} \mapsto & \int_{U \in C} \mathrm{sSet}(C_{\mathrm{th}}(i(U), \mathbf{K}), F(U)) \\ \simeq & \int_{U \in C} \mathrm{sSet}(C(U, p(\mathbf{K})), F(U)) \\ \simeq & F(p(\mathbf{K}) \end{aligned} ,$$

where in the last step we use the Yoneda reduction-form of the Yoneda lemma.

This shows that the right adjoint to $(-) \circ i$ is itself given by precomposition with a functor, and hence has itself a further right adjoint, which gives us a total of four adjoint functors

$$[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \underset{\underset{\mathrm{Ran}_p}{\longleftarrow}}{\overset{\overset{\mathrm{Lan}_i}{\longrightarrow}}{\underset{\xrightarrow{(-)\circ p}}{\xleftarrow{(-)\circ i}}}} [C_{\mathrm{th}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] .$$

From this are induced the corresponding simplicial Quillen adjunctions on the global projective and injective model structure on simplicial presheaves

$$(\mathrm{Lan}_i \dashv (-) \circ i) : \; [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \underset{(-)\circ i}{\overset{\mathrm{Lan}_i}{\rightleftarrows}} [C_{\mathrm{th}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \; ;$$

$$((-) \circ i \dashv (-) \circ p) : \; [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \underset{(-)\circ p}{\overset{(-)\circ i}{\leftrightarrows}} [C_{\mathrm{th}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \; ;$$

$$((-) \circ p \dashv \mathrm{Ran}_p) : \; [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}} \underset{\mathrm{Ran}_p}{\overset{(-)\circ p}{\rightleftarrows}} [C_{\mathrm{th}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}} \; .$$

By prop. 2.1.40, for these Quillen adjunctions to descend to the Čech-local model structure on simplicial presheaves it suffices that the right adjoints preserve locally fibrant objects.

We first check that $(-) \circ i$ sends locally fibrant objects to locally fibrant objects. To that end, let $\{U_i \to U\}$ be a covering family in $C$. Write $\int^{[k] \in \Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \coprod_{i_0, \cdots, i_k} (j(U_{i_0}) \times_{j(U)} j(U_{i_1}) \times_{j(U)} \cdots \times_{j(U)} j(U_k))$ for its Čech nerve, where $j$ denotes the Yoneda embedding. Recall by the definition of the $\infty$-cohesive site $C$ that all the fiber products of representable presheaves here are again themselves representable, hence $\cdots = \int^{[k] \in \Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \coprod_{i_0, \cdots, i_k} (j(U_{i_0} \times_U U_{i_1} \times_U \cdots \times_U U_k))$. Using that the left adjoint $\mathrm{Lan}_i$ preserves the coend and tensoring, that it restricts on representables to $i$ and by the assumption that $i$ preserves pullbacks along covers we have that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{Lan}_i C(\{U_i \to U\}) &\simeq \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} \mathrm{Lan}_i(j(U_{i_0}\times_U U_{i_1}\times_U \cdots \times_U U_k)) \\
&\simeq \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} j(i(U_{i_0}\times_U U_{i_1}\times_U \cdots \times_U U_k)) \\
&\simeq \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} j(i(U_{i_0})\times_{i(U)} i(U_{i_1})\times_{i(U)} \cdots \times_{i(U)} i(U_k))
\end{aligned}
.
$$

By the assumption that $i$ preserves covers, this is the Čech nerve of a covering family in $C_{\mathrm{th}}$. Therefore for $F \in [C_{\mathrm{th}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ fibrant we have for all coverings $\{U_i \to U\}$ in $C$ that the descent morphism

$$
i^*F(U) = F(i(U)) \xrightarrow{\simeq} [C_{\mathrm{th}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{i(U_i)\}), F) = [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), i^*F)
$$

is a weak equivalence.

To see that $(-)\circ p$ preserves locally fibrant objects, we apply the analogous reasoning after observing that its left adjoint $(-)\circ i$ preserves all limits and colimits of simplicial presheaves (as these are computed objectwise) and by observing that for $\{\mathbf{U}_I \xrightarrow{p_i} \mathbf{U}\}$ a covering family in $C_{\mathrm{th}}$ we have that its image under $(-)\circ i$ is its image under $p$, by the Yoneda lemma:

$$
\begin{aligned}
[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](K, ((-)\circ i)(\mathbf{U})) &\simeq C_{\mathrm{th}}(i(K), \mathbf{U}) \\
&\simeq C(K, p(\mathbf{U}))
\end{aligned}
$$

and using that $p$ preserves covers by assumption.

Therefore $(-)\circ i$ is a left and right local Quillen functor with left local Quillen adjoint $\mathrm{Lan}_i$ and right local Quillen adjoint $(-)\circ p$.

Finally to see by the above reasoning that also $\mathrm{Ran}_p$ preserves locally fibant objects notice that for every covering family $\{U_i \to U\}$ in $C$ and every morphism $\mathbf{K} \to p^*U$ in $C_{\mathrm{th}}$ we may find a covering $\{\mathbf{K}_j \to \mathbf{K}\}$ such that we have commuting diagrams as on the left of

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{K}_j & \longrightarrow & p^*U_{i(j)} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{K} & \longrightarrow & p^*U
\end{array}
\quad \leftrightarrow \quad
\begin{array}{ccccc}
p(\mathbf{K}_j) & = & i^*(\mathbf{K}_j) & \longrightarrow & U_{i(j)} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
p(\mathbf{K}) & = & i^*(\mathbf{K}) & \longrightarrow & U
\end{array}
,
$$

because by the $(i^* \dashv p^*)$ adjunction established above these correspond to the diagrams as indicated on the right, which exist by definition of coverage and the fact that, by definition, in $C_{\mathrm{th}}$ covers lift through $p$.

This implies that $\{p^*U_i \to p^*U\}$ is a *generalized cover* in the terminology of [DHS04], which by the discussion there implies that the corresponding Čech nerve projection $C(\{p^*U_i\}) \to p^*U$ is a weak equivalence in $[C_{\mathrm{th}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.

This establishes the quadruple of adjoint $\infty$-functors as claimed.

To see that $\mathrm{Lan}_i$ preserves products, use that, by the local formula for the left Kan extension, it is sufficient that for each $K \in C_{\mathrm{th}}$ the functor

$$
X \mapsto \lim_{\to}(p^{\mathrm{op}}/K \to C^{\mathrm{op}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathrm{sSet})
$$

preserves finite products. By a standard fact this is the case precisely if the slice category $p^{\mathrm{op}}/K$ is sifted. A sufficient condition for this is that it has coproducts. This is equivalent to $K/p$ having products, and this is finally true due to the assumption that $p$ preserves products.

It remains to see that $i_!$ is a full and faithful $\infty$-functor. For that notice the general fact that left Kan extension along a full and faithful functor $i$ satisfies $\mathrm{Lan}_i \circ i \simeq \mathrm{id}$. It only remains to observe that since $(-)\circ i$

is not only right but also left Quillen by the above, we have that $i^* \circ \mathrm{Lan}_i$ applied to a cofibrant object is already the derived functor of the composite. □

## 4.3 $\rightrightarrows \dashv \rightsquigarrow \dashv$ Rh – Solidity

**Definition 4.3.1.** We say that an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ which is equipped with a progression of opposite moments, def.2.2.12, of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{id} & \dashv & \mathrm{id} \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \rightrightarrows & \dashv & \rightsquigarrow \\ \bot & & \bot \\ \rightsquigarrow & \dashv & \mathrm{Rh} \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \Re & \dashv & \Im \\ \bot & & \bot \\ \Im & \dashv & \& \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \int & \dashv & \flat \\ \bot & & \bot \\ \flat & \dashv & \sharp \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \emptyset & \dashv & * \end{array}$$

such that

1. the first stage at the bottom exhibits it as cohesive substance 4.1;
2. the middle stages exhibits it as elastic substance 4.2 (see remark 4.2.5);
3. the third stage resolves the second, def. 2.2.19, in the form $\rightsquigarrow \Im \simeq \Im$ and such that $\rightsquigarrow$ sends the $\Im$-unit on $\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X}$ to itself, up to equivalence

is a *solid $\infty$-topos* or is *solid substance*.

We consider an example below in 6.6.3. We consider a list of structures that may be formulated inside a solid $\infty$-topos below in 5.4.

# 5 The Idea

We discuss a list of structures that may be defined using the operations in 4.

- 5.1 – Structures in bare substance;
- 5.2 – Structures in cohesive substance;
- 5.3 – Structures in elastic substance;
- 5.4 – Structures in solid substance;
- 5.5 – Structures in actual substance.

## 5.1 $\emptyset \dashv *$ – Structures in bare substance

We discuss here a list of fundamental homotopical and cohomological structures that exist in every $\infty$-topos but are particularly expressive in a *local* $\infty$-topos, def. 4.1.1, or rather: over a base $\infty$-topos that is local. As we discuss below in 5.1.7, every local $\infty$-topos has the *homotopy dimension* of the point and hence *all gerbes are delooped groups*. This means that group objects in a local $\infty$-topos, discussed in 5.1.9 below, behave as *absolute structured groups* rather than as $\infty$-sheaves of groups that vary over a fixed nontrivial space. This is the first central property of the *gros* toposes $\mathbf{H}$ that we are interested in here. For every object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/X} \to \mathbf{H}$ is an $\infty$-topos relative to its local base $\mathbf{H}$, but is itself in general not local. Group objects in the slice are groups parameterized over $X$ and pointed connected objects in the slice are the $\infty$-*gerbes* over $X$. This we discuss below in 5.1.19.

Structures entirely specific to local $\infty$-toposes we discuss below in 5.2. Additional structures that are present if we assume that $\mathbf{H}$ is locally $\infty$-connected are discussed below in 5.2, and those in an actual cohesive $\infty$-topos below in 5.2.

- 5.1.1 – Limits
- 5.1.2 – Bundles
- 5.1.3 – Truncated objects and Postnikov towers
- 5.1.4 – Epi-/mono-morphisms and relative Postnikov systems
- 5.1.5 – Compact objects
- 5.1.6 – Homotopy
- 5.1.7 – Connected objects
- 5.1.8 – Groupoids
- 5.1.9 – Groups
- 5.1.10 – Cohomology
- 5.1.11 – Principal bundles
- 5.1.12 – Associated fiber bundles
- 5.1.13 – Sections and twisted cohomology
- 5.1.14 – Actions and Representations
- 5.1.15 – Double dimensional reduction

- 5.1.16 – Group cohomology
- 5.1.17 – Stabilizer groups
- 5.1.18 – Extensions, Obstructions, and Twisted bundles
- 5.1.19 – Gerbes
- 5.1.20 – Relative cohomology

### 5.1.1 Limits

We discuss some basic abstract properties and some presentations of universal constructions in $\infty$-category theory that we will refer to in the main text.

**5.1.1.1 General abstract** The following proposition says that every $\infty$-groupoid is the $\infty$-colimit over itself, regarded as a diagram, of the $\infty$-functor constant on the point in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

**Proposition 5.1.1.** *For $S \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, the $\infty$-colimit of the $\infty$-functor $S \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ constant on the terminal object is equivalent to $S$:*

$$\varinjlim_S * \simeq S\,.$$

This is essentially corollary 4.4.4.9 in [L-Topos].

We will have have ample application for the following immediate $\infty$-category theoretic generalization of a basic 1-categorical fact.

**Proposition 5.1.2** (pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks)**.** *Let*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} a & \longrightarrow & b & \longrightarrow & c \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ d & \longrightarrow & e & \longrightarrow & f \end{array}$$

*be a diagram in an $\infty$-category and suppose that the right square is an $\infty$-pullback. Then the left square is an $\infty$-pullback precisely if the outer rectangle is.*

This appears as [L-Topos], lemma 4.4.2.1. Notice that here and in the following we do not explicitly display the 2-morphisms/homotopies that do fill these diagrams in the given $\infty$-category.

**Proposition 5.1.3.** *A retract of an $\infty$-limiting cone is itself $\infty$-limiting.*

Proof. We invoke the presentation of $\infty$-limits by *derivators* (thanks to Mike Shulman for this argument): we have

1. $\infty$-limits in $\mathbf{H}$ are computed by homotopy limits in any presentation by a model category $K := [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{loc}}$ 2.1.3;
2. for $j : J \to J^{\triangleleft}$ the inclusion of a diagram into its cone (the join with an initial element), the homotopy limit over $C$ is given by forming the right Kan extension $j_* : \mathrm{Ho}(K^J(W^J)^{-1}) \to \mathrm{Ho}(K^{J^{\triangleleft}}(W^{J^{\triangleleft}})^{-1})$,
3. a $J^{\triangleleft}$-diagram $F$ is a homotopy limiting cone precisely if the unit

   $$F \to j_* j^* F$$

   us an isomorphism.

□

#### 5.1.1.2 Presentations

We discuss presentations of various classes of $\infty$-limits and $\infty$-colimits in an $\infty$-category by *homotopy limits* and *homotopy colimits* in categories with weak equivalences presenting them.

##### 5.1.1.2.1 $\infty$-Pullbacks

We discuss here tools for computing $\infty$-pullbacks in an $\infty$-category $\mathbf{H}$ in terms of homotopy pullbacks in a homotopical 1-category presenting it.

**Proposition 5.1.4.** *Let $A \to C \leftarrow B$ be a cospan diagram in a model category, def. 2.1.27. Sufficient conditions for the ordinary pullback $A \times_C B$ to be a homotopy pullback are*

- *one of the two morphisms is a fibration and all three objects are fibrant;*
- *one of the two morphisms is a fibration and the model structure is right proper.*

This appears for instance as prop. A.2.4.4 in [L-Topos].

It remains to have good algorithms for identifying fibrations and for resolving morphisms by fibrations. A standard recipe for constructing fibration resolutions is

**Proposition 5.1.5** (factorization lemma)**.** *Let $B \to C$ be a morphism between fibrant objects in a model category and let $C \xrightarrow{\simeq} C^I \twoheadrightarrow C \times C$ be a path object for $B$. Then the composite vertical morphism in*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C^I \times_C B & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ C^I & \longrightarrow & C \\ \downarrow & & \\ C & & \end{array}$$

*is a fibrantion replacement of $B \to C$.*

This appears for instance on p. 4 of [Br73].

**Corollary 5.1.6.** *For $A \to C \leftarrow B$ a diagram of fibrant objects in a model category, its homotopy pullback is presented by the ordinary limit $A \times^h_C B$ in*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A \times^h_C B & \longrightarrow & C^I \times_C B & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ & & C^I & \longrightarrow & C \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ A & \longrightarrow & C & & \end{array} ,$$

*which is, up to isomorphism, the same as the ordinary pullback in*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times^h_C B & \longrightarrow & C^I \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A \times B & \longrightarrow & C \times C \end{array} .$$

**Remark 5.1.7.** For the special case of "abelian" objects another useful way of constructing fibrations is via the *Dold-Kan correspondence*, wich we discuss in 3.1.6. As described there, a morphism between simplicial presheaves that arise from presheaves of chain complexes is a fibration (in the projective model structure on simplicial presheaves) if it arises from a degreewise surjection of chain complexes.

**5.1.1.2.2 Finite ∞-limits of ∞-sheaves** We discuss presentations for finite ∞-limits specifically in ∞-toposes.

**Proposition 5.1.8.** *Let $C$ be a site with enough points, def. 3.1.13. Write $\mathbf{H} \simeq (\mathrm{Sh}(C)^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}, W)$ for the hypercomplete ∞-topos over $C$, where $W$ is the class of local weak equivalences, theorem 3.1.16.*

*Then pullbacks in $\mathrm{Sh}(C)^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$ along local fibrations, def. 3.1.17, are homotopy pullbacks, hence present ∞-pullbacks in $\mathbf{H}$.*

Proof. Let $A \overset{\mathrm{loc}}{\twoheadrightarrow} C \longleftarrow B$ be a cospan with the left leg a local fibration. By the existence of the projective local model structure $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ there exists a morphism of diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \overset{\mathrm{loc}}{\twoheadrightarrow} & C & \longleftarrow & B \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \downarrow{\simeq} & & \downarrow{\simeq} \\ A' & \twoheadrightarrow & C' & \longleftarrow & B' \end{array} ,$$

where the bottom cospan is a fibrant diagram with respect to the projective local model structure, hence a cospan of genuine fibrations between fibrant objects, so that the ordinary pullback $A' \times_{C'} B'$ is a presentation of the homotopy pullback of the original diagram. Here the vertical morphisms are weak equivalences, and by theorem 3.1.16 this means that they are stalkwise weak equivalences of simplicial sets. Moreover, by the nature of left Bousfield localization, the genuine fibrations are in particular global projective fibrations, hence in particular are stalkwise fibrations.

Now for $p : \mathrm{Set} \to \mathrm{Sh}(C)$ any topos point, the stalk functor $p^*$ preserves finite limits and hence preserves (the sheafification of) the above pullbacks. So by the asumption that $A \to C$ is a local fibration, the simplicial set $p^*(A \times_C B)$ is a pullback of simplicial sets along a Kan fibration, hence, by the right properness of $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$, and using prop. 5.1.4, is a homotopy pullback there. Moreover, the induced morphism $p^*(A \times_C B) \to p^*(A' \times_{C'} B')$ is therefore a morphism of homotopy pullbacks along a weak equivalence of diagrams. This means that it is itself a weak equivalence. Since this is true for all topos points, it follows that $A \times_C B \to A' \times_{C'} B'$ is a stalkwise weak equivalence, hence a weak equivalence, hence that $A \times_C B$ is itself already a model for the homotopy pullback. □

The following proposition establishes the model category analog of the statement that by left exactness of ∞-sheafification, finite ∞-limits of ∞-sheafified ∞-presheaves may be computed as the ∞-sheafification of the finite ∞-limit of the ∞-presheaves.

**Proposition 5.1.9.** *Let $C$ be a site and $F : D \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ be a finite diagram.*

*Write $\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{glob}} \lim\limits_{\leftarrow} F \in [C^{op}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ for (any representative of) the homotopy limit over $F$ computed in the global model structure $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, well defined up to isomorphism in the homotopy category.*

*Then $\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{glob}} \lim\limits_{\leftarrow} F \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ presents also the homotopy limit of $F$ in the local model structure $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.*

Proof. By [L-Topos], theorem 4.2.4.1, we have that the homotopy limit $\mathbb{R} \lim\limits_{\leftarrow}$ computes the corresponding ∞-limit. Since ∞-sheafification $L$ is by definition a left exact ∞-functor it preserves these finite ∞-limits:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} ([D, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}]_{\mathrm{inj}})^\circ & \overset{L_*}{\longleftarrow} & ([D, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{inj}})^\circ \\ \downarrow{\mathbb{R} \lim\limits_{\leftarrow}} & & \downarrow{\mathbb{R} \lim\limits_{\leftarrow}} \\ ([C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}})^\circ & \overset{L \simeq \mathbb{L}\mathrm{Id}}{\longleftarrow} & ([C^{op}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}})^\circ \end{array} .$$

Here $L \simeq \mathbb{L}\mathrm{Id}$ is the left derived functor of the identity for the left Bousfield localization. Therefore for $F$ a finit diagram in simplicial presheaves, its homotopy limit in the local model structure $\mathbb{R} \lim_{\leftarrow} L_* F$ is equivalently computed by $\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Id} \mathbb{R} \lim_{\rightarrow} F$, with $\mathbb{R} \lim_{\leftarrow} F$ the homotopy limit in the global model structure. □

Together with 5.1.1.2.1, this provides an efficient algorithm for computing presentations of $\infty$-pullbacks in a model structure on simplicial presheaves.

**Remark 5.1.10.** Taken together, prop. 5.1.9, prop. 5.1.4 and definition 3.1.10 imply that we may compute $\infty$-pullbacks in an $\infty$-topos by the following algorithm:

1. Present the $\infty$-topos by a local *projective* model structure on simplicial presheaves;
2. find a presentation of the morphisms to be pulled back such that one of them is over each object of the site a Kan fibration of simplicial sets;
3. then form the ordinary pullback of simplicial presheaves, which in turn is over each object the ordinary pullback of simplicial sets.

The resulting object presents the $\infty$-pullback of $\infty$-sheaves.

**5.1.1.2.3 $\infty$-Colimits** We collect some standard facts and tools concerning the computation of homotopy colimits.

**Proposition 5.1.11.** *Let $C$ be a combinatorial model category and let $J$ be a small category. Then the colimit over $J$-diagrams in $C$ is a left Quillen functor for the projective model structure on functors on $J$:*

$$\varinjlim : [J, C]_{\mathrm{proj}} \to C\,.$$

Proof. For $C$ combinatorial, the projective model structure exists by [L-Topos] prop. A.2.8.2. The right adjoint to the colimit

$$\mathrm{const} : C \to [J, C]_{\mathrm{proj}}$$

is manifestly right Quillen for the projective model structure. □

**Example 5.1.12.** Write

$$(\mathbb{N}, \leq) := \{\, 0 \longrightarrow 1 \longrightarrow 2 \longrightarrow \cdots \,\}$$

for the *cotower category.* A cotower $X_0 \to X_1 \to A_2 \to \cdots$ in a model category $C$ is projectively cofibrant precisely if

1. every morphism $X_i \to X_{i+1}$ is a cofibration in $C$;
2. the first object $X_0$, and hence all objects $X_i$, are cofibrant in $C$.

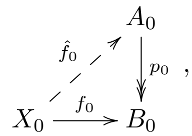
Therefore a sequential $\infty$-colimit over a cotower is presented by the ordinary colimit of a presentation of this cotower where all morphisms are cofibrations and all objects are cofibrant.

This is a simple example, but since we will need details of this at various places, we spell out the proof for the record.

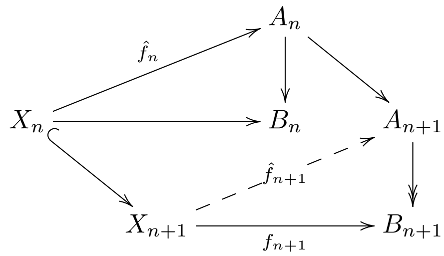
Proof. Given a cotower $X_\bullet$ with properties as stated, we need to check that for $p_\bullet : A_\bullet \to B_\bullet$ a morphism of cotowers such that for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the morphism $p_n : A_n \to B_n$ is an acyclic fibration in $C$, and for $f_\bullet : X_\bullet \to B_\bullet$ any morphism, there is a lift $\hat{f}_\bullet$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & A_\bullet \\ & {\scriptstyle \hat{f}_\bullet}\nearrow & \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_\bullet} \\ X_\bullet & \xrightarrow{f_\bullet} & B_\bullet \end{array}\,.$$

This lift we can construct by induction on $n$. For $n = 0$ we only need a lift in

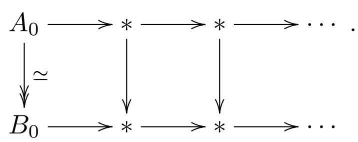



which exists by assumption that $X_0$ is cofibrant. Assume then that a lift has been for $f_{\leq n}$. Then the next lift $\hat{f}_{n+1}$ needs to make the diagram

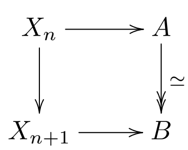



commute. Such a lift exists now by assumption that $X_n \to X_{n+1}$ is a cofibration.

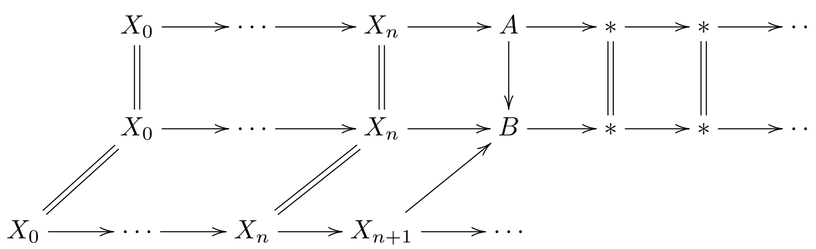
Conversely, assume that $X_\bullet$ is projectively cofibrant. Then first of all it has the left lifting property against all cotower morphisms of the form




Such a lift is equivalent to a lift of $X_0$ against $A_0 \xrightarrow{\simeq} B_0$ and hence $X_0$ is cofibrant in $C$. To see that every morphism $X_n \to X_{n+1}$ is a cofibration, notice that for every lifting problem in $C$ of the form




the cotower lifting problem of the form




is equivalent. □

For less trivial diagram categories it quickly becomes hard to obtain projective cofibrant resolutions. In these cases it is often it is useful to compute the (homotopy) colimit instead as a special case of a (homotopy) coend.

**Proposition 5.1.13.** *Let $F : A \times B \to C$ be a Quillen bifunctor, def. 2.1.30, and let $J$ be a Reedy category, then the coend over $F$ (see [Ke82])*

$$\int^S F(-,-) : [J, A]_{\mathrm{Reedy}} \times [J^{\mathrm{op}}, B]_{\mathrm{Reedy}} \to C$$

*is a Quillen bifunctor from the product of the Reedy model categories on functors with values in $A$ and $B$, respectively, to $C$.*

*Similarly, if $A$ and $B$ are combinatorial model categories and $J$ is any small category, then the coend*

$$\int^S F(-,-) : [J, A]_{\mathrm{proj}} \times [J^{\mathrm{op}}, B]_{\mathrm{inj}} \to C$$

*is a Quillen bifunctor.*

This appears in [L-Topos] as prop. A.2.9.26 and remark A.2.9.27.

**Proposition 5.1.14.** *If $\mathcal{V}$ is a closed monoidal model category, $C$ is a $\mathcal{V}$-enriched model category, and $J$ is a small category which is Reedy, then the homotopy colimit of $J$-shaped diagrams in $C$ is presented by the left derived functor of*

$$\int^J (-) \cdot Q_{\mathrm{Reedy}}(I) : [J, C]_{\mathrm{Reedy}} \to C\,,$$

*where $Q_{\mathrm{Reedy}}(I)$ is a cofibrant replacement of the functor constant in the tensor unit in $[J^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathcal{V}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$, and where*

$$(-) \cdot (-) : C \times \mathcal{V} \to C$$

*is the given $\mathcal{V}$-tensoring of $C$. Similarly, if $J$ is not necessarily Reedy, but $\mathcal{V}$ and $C$ are combinatorial, then the homotopy colimit is also given by the left derived functor of*

$$\int^J (-) \cdot Q_{\mathrm{proj}}(I) : [J, C]_{\mathrm{inj}} \to C\,,$$

*where now $Q_{\mathrm{proj}}(I)$ is a cofibrant resolution of the tensor unit in $[J^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathcal{V}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.*

This is nicely discussed in [Gam10].

Proof. By definition of enriched category, the $\mathcal{V}$-tensoring operation is a left Quillen bifunctor. With this the statement follows from prop. 5.1.13. □

Various classical facts of model category theory are special cases of these formulas.

#### 5.1.1.2.4 ∞-Colimits over simplicial diagrams

We discuss here a standard presentation of *homotopy colimits over simplical diagrams* given by the *diagonal simplicial set* or the *total simplicial set* associated with a bisimplicial set.

**Proposition 5.1.15.** *Write* $[\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}]$ *for the category of cosimplicial simplicial sets. For* sSet *equipped with its cartesian monoidal structure, the tensor unit is the terminal object $*$.*

- *The* simplex functor

  $$\Delta : [n] \mapsto \Delta[n] := \Delta(-, [n])$$

  *is a cofibrant resolution of $*$ in $[\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$;*

- *the* fat simplex functor

  $$\mathbf{\Delta} : [n] \mapsto N(\Delta/[n])$$

  *is a cofibrant resolution of $*$ in $[\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.*

**Proposition 5.1.16.** *Let $C$ be a simplicial model category and $F : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to C$ a simplicial diagram*

1. *If every monomorphism in $C$ is a cofibration, then the homotopy colimit over $F$ is given by the realization*
$$\mathbb{L}\lim_{\to} F \simeq \int^{[n]\in\Delta} F([n]) \cdot \Delta[n]\,.$$
2. *If $F$ takes values in cofibrant objects, then the homotopy colimit over $F$ is given by the fat realization*
$$\mathbb{L}\lim_{\to} F \simeq \int^{[n]\in\Delta} F([n]) \cdot \mathbf{\Delta}[n]\,.$$
3. *If $F$ is Reedy cofibrant, then the canonical morphism*
$$\int^{[n]\in\Delta} F([n]) \cdot \mathbf{\Delta}[n] \to \int^{[n]\in\Delta} F([n]) \cdot \Delta[n]$$
*(the* Bousfield-Kan map*) is a weak equivalence.*

Proof. If every monomorphism is a cofibration, then $F$ is necessarily cofibrant in $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, C]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$. The first statement then follows from prop. 5.1.14 and the first item in prop. 5.1.15. On the other hand, if $F$ takes values in cofibrant objects, then it is cofibrant in $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, C]_{\mathrm{inj}}$, and so the second statement follows from prop. 5.1.14 and the second item in prop. 5.1.15.

Notice that projective cofibrancy implies Reedy cofibrancy, so that $\mathbf{\Delta}$ is also Reedy cofibrant. Therefore the morphism in the last item of the proposition is, by remark 2.1.31, the image under a left Quillen functor of a weak equivalence between cofibrant objects and therefore itself a weak equivalence. □

An important example of this general situation is the following.

**Proposition 5.1.17.** *Every simplicial set, and more generally every simplicial presheaf is the homotopy colimit over its simplicial diagram of cells. Precisely, let $C$ be a small site, and let $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{inj,loc}}$ be the corresponding local injective model structure on simplicial presheaves. Then for any $X \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, with*
$$X_\bullet : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}] \hookrightarrow [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]$$
*its simplicial diagram of components, we have*
$$X \simeq \mathbb{L}\lim_{\longrightarrow} X_\bullet\,.$$

Proof. By prop. 5.1.16 the homotopy colimit is given by the coend
$$\mathbb{L}\lim_{\longrightarrow} X_\bullet \simeq \int^{[n]\in\Delta} X_n \times \Delta[n]\,.$$
By basic properties of the coend, this is isomorphic to $X$. □

**Proposition 5.1.18.** *The homotopy colimit of a simplicial diagram in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$, or more generally of a simplicial diagram of simplicial presheaves, is given by the diagonal of the corresponding bisimplicial set / bisimplicial presheaf. Precisely, for*
$$F : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{inj,log}}$$
*a simplicial diagram, its homotopy colimit is given by*
$$\mathbb{L}\lim_{\longrightarrow} F_\bullet \simeq dF : ([n] \mapsto (F_n)_n)\,.$$

Proof. By prop. 5.1.16 the homotopy colimit is given by the coend

$$\mathbb{L}\varinjlim F_\bullet \simeq \int^{[n]\in\Delta} F_n \cdot \Delta[n] \,.$$

By a standard fact (e.g. exercise 1.6 in [GoJa99]), this coend is in fact isomorphic to the diagonal. □

**Definition 5.1.19.** Write $\Delta_a$ for the *augmented simplex category*, which is the simplex category with an initial object adjoined, denoted $[-1]$.

This is a symmetric monoidal category with tensor product being the *ordinal sum* operation

$$[k],[l] \mapsto [k+l+1]\,.$$

Write

$$\sigma : \Delta \times \Delta \to \Delta$$

for the restriction of this tensor product along the canonical inclusion $\Delta \hookrightarrow \Delta_a$. Write

$$\sigma^* : \mathrm{sSet} \to [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

for the operation of precomposition with this functor. By right Kan extension this induces an adjoint pair of functors

$$(\mathrm{Dec} \dashv T) : \; [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \underset{\sigma_*}{\overset{\sigma^*}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet} \;.$$

- $\mathrm{Dec} := \sigma^*$ is called the *total décalage* functor;
- $T := \sigma_*$ is called the *total simplicial set* functor.

The total simplicial set functor was introduced in [ArMa66]. Details are in [St11].

**Remark 5.1.20.** By definition, for $X \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, its total décalage is the bisimplicial set given by

$$(\mathrm{Dec}X)_{k,l} = X_{k+l+1}\,.$$

**Remark 5.1.21.** For $X \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, the simplicial set $TX$ is in each degree given by an equalizer of maps between finite products of components of $X$. Hence forming $T$ is compatible with sheafification and other processes that preserve finite limits.

See [St11], equation (2).

**Proposition 5.1.22.** *For every* $X \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$

- *the canonical morphism*
$$dX \to TX$$
*from the diagonal to the total simplicial set is a weak equivalence in* $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$*;*
- *the adjunction unit*
$$X \to T\mathrm{Dec}X$$
*is a weak equivalence in* $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$*.*

*For every* $X \in \mathrm{sSet}$

- *there is a natural isomorphism* $T\mathrm{const}X \simeq X$*.*

This is due to [CeRe05][St11].

**Corollary 5.1.23.** *For*

$$F : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{inj,loc}}$$

*a simplicial object in simplicial presheaves, its homotopy colimit is given by applying objectwise over each $U \in C$ the total simplicial set functor*

$$\mathbb{L}\varinjlim F \simeq (U \mapsto TF(U)) .$$

Proof. By prop. 5.1.22 this follows from prop. 5.1.18. □

**Remark 5.1.24.** The use of the total simplicial set instead of the diagonal simplicial set in the presentation of simplicial homotopy colimits is useful and reduces to various traditional notions in particular in the context of group objects and action groupoid objects. This we discuss below in 5.1.9.2 and 5.1.11.3.

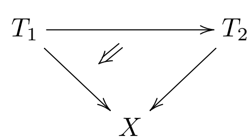
### 5.1.2 Bundles

We discuss the general notion of *bundles* or *objects in a slice* in an $\infty$-topos. In the following sections this general notion is specialized to *principal bundles*, 5.1.11, and *associated fiber bundles*, 5.1.12.

**5.1.2.1 General abstract** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object, a *bundle* over $X$ is, in full generality, nothing but a morphism

$$\begin{array}{c} T \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle p} \\ X \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$ with codomain $X$, and a *homomorphism of bundles* over $X$ is a diagram of the form

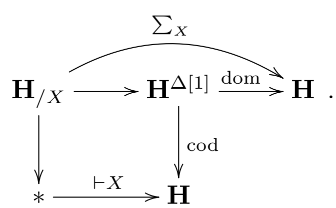


in $\mathbf{H}$. The full $\infty$-category of bundles over $X$ in $\mathbf{H}$ is also called the *slice* of $\mathbf{H}$ over $X$:

**Definition 5.1.25.** For $\mathbf{H}$ an $\infty$-category and for $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object, the *slice $\infty$-category* $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\mathbf{H}_{/X} := \mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]} \underset{\mathbf{H}}{\times} \{X\}$$

in the diagram of $\infty$-categories



**Proposition 5.1.26.** *For $\mathbf{H}$ an $\infty$-topos and $X \in \mathbf{H}$, also the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$, def. 5.1.25, is an $\infty$-topos. Moreover, the forgetful $\infty$-functor $\sum_X$ in def. 5.1.25 is the extra left adjoint in an essential geometric morphism of $\infty$-toposes*

$$\left(\sum_X \dashv X^* \dashv \prod_X\right) : \mathbf{H}_{/X} \underset{\xrightarrow{\prod_X}}{\overset{\xrightarrow{\sum_X}}{\xleftarrow{X \times (-)}}} \mathbf{H}$$

*called the* étale geometric morphism *of* $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$.

*Here* $\prod_X$ *is also called the* dependent product *over* $X$ *and* $\sum_X$ *is also called the* dependent sum *over* $X$*, see 2.1.1 above.*

*Finally ,* $X \times (-)$ *is a cartesian closed* $\infty$*-functor, which equivalently means that it satisfies* Frobenius reciprocity*: for* $U \in \mathbf{H}$ *and* $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ *there is a natural equivalence*

$$\sum_X (E \times_X (X \times U)) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \left(\sum_X E\right) \times U$$

*exhibited by the canonical morphism.*

This is prop. 6.3.5.1 in [L-Topos].

**Proposition 5.1.27.** *For* $T : I \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_X$ *a small diagram in a slice, then its* $\infty$*-colimit is the* $\infty$*-colimit of the underlying diagram* $I \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/X} \xrightarrow{\sum_X} \mathbf{H}$ *regarded as an object in the slice via the canonical projection map out of the colimit*

$$\varinjlim_i E_i \begin{bmatrix} E_i \\ \downarrow \\ X \end{bmatrix} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \varinjlim_i E_i \\ \downarrow \\ X \end{bmatrix}$$

This is [L-Topos, prop. 1.2.13.8].

More generally we have base change along arbitrary morphisms.

**Proposition 5.1.28.** *For* $\mathbf{H}$ *an* $\infty$*-topos and for* $f : X \to Y$ *a morphism in* $\mathbf{H}$*, the functor*

$$\sum_f := f \circ (-) : \mathbf{H}_{/X} \to \mathbf{H}_{/Y}$$

*between the slices over the domain and codomain given by postcomposition with* $f$ *is the extra left adjoint in an essential geometric morphism*

$$(\sum_f \dashv f^* \dashv \prod_f) : \mathbf{H}_{/X} \underset{\prod_f}{\overset{\sum_f}{\underset{\longleftarrow f^* \longleftarrow}{\longrightarrow}}} \mathbf{H} ,$$

*called the* base change *geometric morphism. Here* $f^*$ *is given by forming the* $\infty$*-pullback in* $\mathbf{H}$ *along* $f$*. As before* $\sum_f$ *is called the* dependent sum *along* $f$ *and* $\prod_f$ *the* dependent product *along* $f$*.*

This is prop. 6.3.5.1, remark 6.3.5.10 of [L-Topos].

**Proposition 5.1.29.** *For* $\mathbf{H}$ *an* $\infty$*-topos, the* $\infty$*-functor*

$$\mathbf{H}_{/(-)} : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Topos}^{\mathrm{et}}/_{\mathbf{H}}$$

*given by prop. 5.1.28, constitutes an equivalence of* $\infty$*-categories between* $\mathbf{H}$ *and the full sub-*$\infty$*-category of the slice of* $\infty$*-toposes and geometric morphisms over* $\mathbf{H}$ *on the étale geometric morphisms.*

This is [L-Topos], remark 6.3.5.10.

The internal hom in the slice is closely related to the dependent product:

**Proposition 5.1.30.** *For* $\mathbf{H}$ *an* $\infty$*-topos and* $X \in \mathbf{H}$ *an object, let* $E_1, E_2 \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ *be two object in the slice, corresponding to morphisms* $f_i : \sum_X E_i \to X$ *in* $\mathbf{H}$*. Then there is a natural equivalence*

$$[E_1, E_2] \simeq \prod_{f_1} f_1^* E_2 .$$

Proof. The product in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ is given by the fiber product in $\mathbf{H}$ over $X$. Hence for $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ the product functor is

$$(-) \times E \simeq \sum_f f^* .$$

Since the internal hom is right adjoint to this functor, the statement follows by the defining adjoint triple $(\prod_f \dashv f^* \dashv \sum_f)$. □

**Example 5.1.31.** The terminal object of the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ is given by the identity morphism on $X$ in $\mathbf{H}$.

**Remark 5.1.32.** The interpretation of these base change functors is as follows: an object in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ corresponds to a morphism into $X$ in $\mathbf{H}$. The functor $\sum_X$ picks out the domain of these morphisms: it forms the "sum (union) of all the fibers". Therefore an object $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ in the slice corresponds to a morphism of the form

$$\begin{array}{c} \sum_X E \\ \downarrow \\ X \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. More generally, a morphism $f : E_1 \to E_2$ in the slice corresponds to a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \sum_X E_1 & \xrightarrow{\sum_X f} & \sum_X E_2 \\ & \swArrow_f & \\ \searrow & & \swarrow \\ & X & \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$.

On the other hand, the right adjoint $\prod_X$ forms internal spaces of *sections* of these morphisms. With $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ as above we have

$$\prod_X E \;\simeq\; \left[X, \sum_X E\right] \underset{[X,X]}{\times} \{\mathrm{id}\} ,$$

which says that $\prod_X E$ is the homotopy fiber of the projection $[X, \sum_X E] \to [X, X]$ from the internal hom space of maps from the base $X$ to the domain $\sum_X E$, picking those morphisms in there which go to the identity on $X$, up to homotopy, when postcomposed with $E$, regarded as a morphism in $\mathbf{H}$.

This kind of relation also holds externally:

**Proposition 5.1.33.** *For $E_1, E_2 \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ two objects in a slice $\infty$-topos over $X \in \mathbf{H}$, the hom $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}_{/X}(E_1, E_2)$ between them is characterized as the homotopy fiber product*

$$\mathbf{H}_{/X}(E_1, E_2) \simeq \mathbf{H}\left(\sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2\right) \underset{\mathbf{H}(\sum_X E_1, X)}{\times} \{E_1\}$$

*of hom-$\infty$-groupoids in $\mathbf{H}$, sitting in the $\infty$-pullback diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{/X}(E_1, E_2) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\vdash E_1} \\ \mathbf{H}(\sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2) & \xrightarrow{E_2 \circ (-)} & \mathbf{H}(\sum_X E_1, X) \end{array} .$$

This appears as prop. 5.5.5.12 in [L-Topos].

Therefore the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ may be regarded not only as living over the canonical base $\infty$-topos $\infty$Grpd, but also as living over $\mathbf{H}$. As such its $\mathbf{H}$-valued hom is the dependent product of its interal hom:

**Definition 5.1.34.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ and $E_1, E_2 \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ we write

$$[E_1, E_2]_{\mathbf{H}} := \prod_X [E_1, E_2]$$

and speak of the $\mathbf{H}$-*valued hom* between $E_1$ and $E_2$ in the slice.

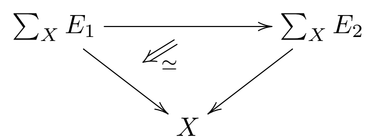
Similarly there is a Grp($\mathbf{H}$)-valued automorphism group construction in the slice:

**Definition 5.1.35.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ and $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ we say that the $\mathbf{H}$-*valued automorphism group* of $E$ is the dependent product, def 5.1.26,

$$\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(E) := \prod_X \mathbf{Aut}(E)$$

of the automorphism group of $E$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$, def. 5.1.155.

**Remark 5.1.36.** A global element of $\prod_X [E_1, E_2]$ corresponds again to a diagram of the form




in $\mathbf{H}$. The morphism of prop. 5.1.38 below sends such a global element to the top horizontal morphism $\sum_X E_1 \to \sum_X E_2$, regarded as a global element of $[\sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2]$.

**Proposition 5.1.37.** *The $\infty$-groupoid of global points of $[E_1, E_2]_{\mathbf{H}}$ is the slice hom $\mathbf{H}_{/X}(E_1, E_2)$:*

$$\mathbf{H}_{/X}(E_1, E_2) \simeq \Gamma\left([E_1, E_2]_{\mathbf{H}}\right) \simeq \mathbf{H}\left(*, [E_1, E_2]_{\mathbf{H}}\right) .$$

Proof. We compute

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}\left(*, [E_1, E_2]_{\mathbf{H}}\right) &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/X}\left((* \times X), [E_1, E_2]\right) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/X}\left(X \times_X E_1, E_2\right) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/X}\left(E_1, E_2\right) \end{aligned} .$$

Here the first equivalence is that of the defining $\left((-) \times_X E_1 \dashv \prod_X\right)$-adjunction of the dependent product, def. 5.1.26, the second is that of the $((-) \times_X E_1 \dashv [E_1, -])$-adjunction and the last one finally uses that $X$ is the terminal object in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$. □

We may compare the internal hom in the slice with that in the base by the following comparison morphism.

**Proposition 5.1.38.** *For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ and $E_1, E_2 \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$, there is a natural morphism*

$$p_X : \prod_X [E_1, E_2] \longrightarrow \left[\sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2\right]$$

*given objectwise by dependent sum.*

Proof. Let $U \in \mathbf{H}$ be any object. Consider then the morphism of $\infty$-groupoids given by the composite

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{H}\left(U, \prod_X [E_1, E_2]\right) &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/X}\left(X^*U, [E_1, E_2]\right) \\
&\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/X}\left(X^*U \times E_1, E_2\right) \\
&\to \mathbf{H}\left(\sum_X \left(X^*U \times E_1\right), \sum_X E_2\right) \\
&\simeq \mathbf{H}\left(U \times \sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2\right) \\
&\simeq \mathbf{H}\left(U, \left[\sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2\right]\right)
\end{aligned}.$$

Here the first and last equivalences are the adjunction properties, the morphism in the middle is the relevant component of the dependent sum $\infty$-functor $\sum_X : \mathbf{H}_{/X} \to \mathbf{H}$ and the step after that uses the Frobenius reciprocity property of the dependent sum (reflecting that $X^*$ is a cartesian closed morphism, prop. 5.1.26). Since this morphism of $\infty$-groupoids is natural in $U$, the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma asserts that it is given by homming $U$ into a morphism $\prod_X [E_1, E_2] \to [\sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2]$ in $\mathbf{H}$. □

**Proposition 5.1.39.** *For $E_1, E_2 \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$, there is an $\infty$-pullback diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
[E_1, E_2]_{\mathbf{H}} & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow^{p_X} & & \downarrow^{\vdash E_1} \\
\left[\sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2\right] & \xrightarrow{E_2 \circ (-)} & \left[\sum_X E_1, X\right]
\end{array},$$

*where the left vertical projection is the morphism of prop. 5.1.38, the bottom morphism is postcomposition with $E_2 : \sum_X E_2 \to X$ and the right vertical morphism is the global point given by $E_1$.*

Proof. We may check this on a set $U \in \mathbf{H}$ of generators of $\mathbf{H}$ (for instance the objects in a small $\infty$-site of definition). Since $\mathbf{H}(U, -)$ preserves $\infty$-limits and detects them as $U$ ranges over the set of generators, applying it to the above diagram (and using the definition (def. 5.1.34) $[E_1, E_2]_{\mathbf{H}} := \prod\limits_X [E_1, E_2]$) yields the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{H}_{/X}(U \times X, [E_1, E_2]) & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow^{\mathbf{H}(U, p_X)} & & \downarrow^{\vdash (U \times X) \times_X E_1} \\
\mathbf{H}\left(U \times \sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2\right) & \xrightarrow{E_2 \circ (-)} & \mathbf{H}\left(U \times \sum_X E_1, X\right)
\end{array}.$$

By the proof of prop 5.1.38 the left vertical morphism is equivalent to the hom-component of the dependent sum $\infty$-functor, and so this diagram is equivalent to

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{/X}((U \times X) \underset{X}{\times} E_1, E_2) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \sum_X} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \vdash (U\times X)\times_X E_1} \\ \mathbf{H}\left(U \times \sum\limits_X E_1, \sum\limits_X E_2\right) & \xrightarrow{E_2 \circ (-)} & \mathbf{H}\left(U \times \sum\limits_X E_1, X\right) \end{array} .$$

This is an $\infty$-pullback diagram by prop. 5.1.33. □

**Proposition 5.1.40.** *For $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ the object $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(E) \in \mathbf{H}$ of def. 5.1.35 sits in an $\infty$-pullback diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(E) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_X} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \vdash E} \\ \mathbf{Aut}\left(\sum\limits_X E\right) & \xrightarrow{E \circ (-)} & \left[\sum\limits_X E, X\right] \end{array} .$$

Proof. In view of remark 5.1.36 the inclusion $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(E) \hookrightarrow [E, E]_{\mathbf{H}}$ fits into an $\infty$-pullback square as on the left of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(E) & \hookrightarrow & [E,E]_{\mathbf{H}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_X} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \vdash E} \\ \mathbf{Aut}\left(\sum\limits_X E\right) & \hookrightarrow & \left[\sum\limits_X E, \sum\limits_X E\right] & \xrightarrow{E\circ(-)} & \left[\sum\limits_X E, X\right] \end{array}$$

where the square on the right is the $\infty$-pullback of prop. 5.1.39. Hence the claim follows by the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2. □

**Proposition 5.1.41.** *For $\mathbf{H}$ an $\infty$-topos, $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object and $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ a slice, the $\infty$-fiber of the morphism $p_X$ from def. 5.1.38 over the identity $* \xrightarrow{\vdash \mathrm{id}_{\sum_X E}} [\sum_X E, \sum_X E]$ is $\Omega_E[\sum_X E, X]$: there is a fiber sequence of the form*

$$\Omega_E[\textstyle\sum_X E, X] \hookrightarrow \prod_X [E,E] \xrightarrow{p_X} [\sum_X E, \sum_X E] \; .$$

Proof. This follows directly from prop. 5.1.39 for the special case that $E_1 = E_2 = E$. By the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, this gives the outer homotopy pullback in

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \Omega_E[\sum_X E, X] & \longrightarrow & [E,E]_{\mathbf{H}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_X} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \vdash E} \\ * & \xrightarrow{\vdash \mathrm{id}} & \left[\sum\limits_X E, \sum\limits_X E\right] & \xrightarrow{E\circ(-)} & \left[\sum\limits_X E, X\right] \end{array} ,$$

with the bottom composite $* \to \left[\sum\limits_X E, X\right]$ labeled $E$.

More explicitly, by the proof of prop. 5.1.38 the morphism $p_X$ is for any $U \in \mathbf{H}$ characterized, up to equivalence, as being the forgetful morphism

$$\mathbf{H}(U,p):\ \mathbf{H}_{/X}(U\times E, E) \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}(U\times \textstyle\sum_X E, \sum_X E)$$

that sends a morphism in the slice over $X$ to the morphism obtained by forgetting the maps to $X$. Since $\mathbf{H}(U,-)$ preserves $\infty$-limits, it is sufficient to show that the homotopy fiber of this morphism (in $\infty$Grpd) is $\mathbf{H}(U,\Omega_E[\sum_X E, X])$, naturally for each $U$. To that end, notice that $\mathbf{H}(U,p_X)$ is the middle vertical morphism in the following diagram, where the right square is the $\infty$-pullback diagram that exhibits the hom space in the slice by prop. 5.1.33:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathbf{H}(U,\Omega_E[\sum_X E, X]) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{/X}(U\times E, E) & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{H}(U,p_X)} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \vdash (U\times X)\times_X E} \\
* & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(U\times \sum_X E, \sum_X E) & \xrightarrow{E\circ(-)} & \mathbf{H}(U\times \sum_X E, X)
\end{array} .$$

With the left square now denoting the $\infty$-pullback in question, we obtain the fiber in the top left by the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks, which says that also the total rectangle here is an $\infty$-pullback. But this total pullback rectangle is by example 5.1.148 the one that characterizes the loop space object and hence identifies the top left item in the above diagram as claimed. □

#### 5.1.2.2 Presentations

We discuss presentations of slice $\infty$-categories, def. 5.1.25, by simplicial model categories, remark 2.1.35.

**Proposition 5.1.42.** *For $C$ a model category and $X \in C$ an object, the slice category (overcategory) $C_{/X}$ as well as the co-slice category (undercategory) $C^{X/}$ inherit model category structures whose fibrations, cofibrations and weak equivalences are precisely those of $C$ under the canonical forgetful functors $C_{/X} \to C$ and $C^{X/} \to C$, respectively.*

**Proposition 5.1.43.** *If the model category $C$ is*

- *cofibrantly generated;*
- *or proper;*
- *or cellular*

*then so are the (co)-slice model structures of prop. 5.1.42, for every object $X \in C$.*

This is shown in [H].

**Proposition 5.1.44.** *If the model category $C$ is combinatorial, then so is the slice model structure $C_{/X}$, for every object $X \in C$.*

Proof. With prop. 5.1.43 this follows form the fact that the slice of a locally presentable category is again locally presentable, (e.g. remark 3 in [CRV]). □

**Proposition 5.1.45.** *If $C$ is a simplicial model category, then so is its slice $C_{/X}$, for every object $X \in C$.*

**Proposition 5.1.46.** *Let $C$ be a simplicial model category and write $\mathcal{C}$ for the $\infty$-category that it presents. If $X$ is fibrant in $C$, then the slice model structure $C_{/X}$ is a presentation of the $\infty$-categorical slicing $\mathcal{C}_{/X}$. If $X$ is cofibrant in $C$, then the co-slice model structure $C^{X/}$ is a presentation of the $\infty$-categorical co-slicing $\mathcal{C}^{X/}$.*

Proof. We discuss the first case. The other one is dual. We need to check that the derived hom-spaces are the correct $\infty$-categorical hom-spaces. Let $A \xrightarrow{a} X$ and $B \xrightarrow{b} X$ be two objects of $\mathcal{C}_{/X}$. By prop. 5.1.33 the hom $\mathcal{C}_{/X}(a,b)$ is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\mathcal{C}_{/X}(a,b) \simeq \mathcal{C}(A,B) \times_{\mathcal{C}(A,X)} \{a\}$$

in $\infty$Grpd. Now write $a$ for a cofibrant representative of this object in $C_{/X}$ and $b$ for a fibrant representative. The sSet-hom object in $C_{/X}$ is the ordinary pullback

$$C_{/X}(a,b) \simeq C(A,B) \times_{C(A,X)} \{a\}$$

in sSet. One finds that $a$ being cofibrant in $C_{/X}$ means that $A$ is cofibrant in $C$ and $b$ being fibrant in $C_{/X}$ means that it is a fibration in $C$. Since by assumption $X$ is fibrant in $C$, it follows that also $B$ is fibrant in $C$. By the fact that $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ is itself a simplicial model category, it follows with prop. 2.1.38 that the simplicial hom-objects appearing in the above pullback are the correct hom-spaces, and that the pullback is along a fibration. Together this means by prop. 5.1.4 that the ordinary pullback is indeed a model for the above $\infty$-pullback. □

### 5.1.3 Truncated objects and Postnikov towers

We discuss general notions and presentations of truncated objects and Postnikov towers in an $\infty$-topos.

#### 5.1.3.1 General abstract

**Definition 5.1.47.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ an $\infty$-groupoid $X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is called *$n$-truncated* or a *homotopy $n$-type* if all its homotopy groups in degree $> n$ are trivial. It is called *$(-1)$-truncated* if it is either empty or contractible. It is called *$(-2)$-truncated* if it is non-empty and contractible.

For $\mathbf{H}$ an $\infty$-topos, and object $A \in \mathbf{H}$ is called *$n$-truncated* for $-2 \leq n \leq \infty$ if for all $X \in \mathbf{H}$ the hom $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X,A)$ is $n$-truncated.

An $\infty$-functor between $\infty$-groupoids is called *$k$-truncated* for $-2 \leq k \leq \infty$ if all its homotopy fibers are $k$-truncated. A morphism $f : A \to B$ in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is $k$-truncated if for all objects $X \in \mathbf{H}$ the induced $\infty$-functor $\mathbf{H}(X,f) : \mathbf{H}(X,A) \to \mathbf{H}(X,B)$ is $k$-truncated.

This appears as [Re05] 7.1 and [L-Topos] def. 5.5.6.8.

**Remark 5.1.48.**

- A morphism is $(-2)$-truncated precisely if it is an equivalence.
- A morphism between $\infty$-groupoids that is $(-1)$-truncated is a *full and faithful $\infty$-functor*. A general morphism that is $(-1)$-truncated is an *$\infty$-monomorphism*.

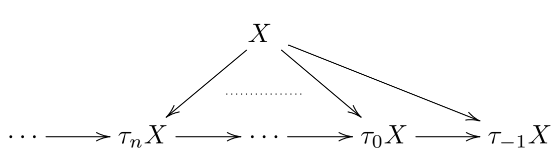
**Proposition 5.1.49.** *For all $(-2) \leq n \leq \infty$ the full sub-$\infty$-category $\mathbf{H}_{\leq n}$ of $\mathbf{H}$ on the $n$-truncated objects is reflective in $\mathbf{H}$ in that the inclusion functor has a left adjoint $\infty$-functor $\tau_n$*

$$\mathbf{H}_{\leq n} \underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{\tau_n}{\leftarrow}} \mathbf{H} \,.$$

*Moreover, $\tau_n$ preserves finite products*

This is [L-Topos, prop. 5.5.6.18, lemma 6.5.1.2].

**Definition 5.1.50.** For an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ in an $\infty$-topos, we say that the canonical sequence



induced from the reflectors of prop. 5.1.49 is the *Postnikov tower* of $X$.

We say that the Postnikov tower *converges* if the above diagram exhibits $X$ as the $\infty$-limit over its Postnikov tower

$$X \simeq \varprojlim_n \tau_n X\,.$$

This is [L-Topos, def. 5.5.6.23].

**Remark 5.1.51.** Postnikov towers (def. 5.1.50) are a special cases of towers of higher *images*. This we discuss further below in 5.1.4.

**5.1.3.2 Presentations** We discuss presentations in model categories of simplicial presheaves of the general concept of Postnikov towers from 5.1.3.1.

**Proposition 5.1.52.** *Let $C$ be a small site of definition of an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, so that*

$$\mathbf{H} \simeq L_W[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$$

*according to theorem 3.1.19. Let $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc,\leq n}}$ be the left Bousfield localization of the local projective model structure on simplicial presheaves at the set of morphisms*

$$\{\partial\Delta[k+1] \hookrightarrow U \to \Delta[k+1]\cdot U \mid U \in C; k > n\}\,.$$

*This is a presentation of the sub-$\infty$-category of $n$-truncated objects*

$$\mathbf{H}_{\leq n} \simeq ([C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc},\leq n})^\circ$$

*and the canonical Quillen adjunction*

$$[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}} \underset{\mathrm{id}}{\overset{\mathrm{id}}{\rightleftarrows}} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc},\leq n}$$

*presents the reflection, $\tau_n \simeq \mathbb{L}\mathrm{id}$.*

This appears in the proof of [Re05, prop. 7.5].

We now discuss an explicit presentation for $n$-truncation and Postnikov decompositions, def. 5.1.50, in terms of the projective model structure on simplicial presheaves. First recall the following classical notions, reviewed for instance in [GoJa99].

**Definition 5.1.53.** Let $\iota_{n+1} : \Delta_{\leq n+1} \hookrightarrow \Delta$ be the full subcategory of the simplex category on the objects $[k]$ for $k \leq n+1$. Write $\mathrm{sSet}_{\leq n+1} := \mathrm{Func}(\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}_{\leq n+1}, \mathrm{Set})$ for the category of $(n+1)$-stage simplicial sets.

Finally, write

$$\mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} :\ \mathrm{sSet} \xrightarrow{\iota^*_{n+1}} \mathrm{sSet}_{\leq n+1} \xhookrightarrow{\mathrm{cosk}_{n+1}} \mathrm{sSet}$$

for the composite of the pullback along $\iota_{n+1}$ with its *right adjoint* $\mathrm{cosk}_{n+1}$.

For $X \in \mathrm{sSet}$ we say that $\mathbf{cosk}_{n+1}X$ is it $(n+1)$-*coskeleton*.

All of these constructions prolong to simplicial presheaves.

**Theorem 5.1.54.** *For $X \in \mathrm{sSet}$ a Kan complex, the tower of* **cosk**-*units*

$$\cdots \to \mathbf{cosk}_3 X \to \mathbf{cosk}_2 X \to \mathbf{cosk}_1 X$$

*presents the Postnikov decomposition of $X$, def. 5.1.50, in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.*

This is a classical result due to [DwKa84b].

**Proposition 5.1.55.** *For $C$ the site of definition of a hypercomplete $\infty$-topos, let $X \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ be a fibrant simplicial presheaf. Then the tower of* **cosk***-units*

$$\cdots \to \mathbf{cosk}_3 X \to \mathbf{cosk}_2 X \to \mathbf{cosk}_1 X$$

*presents the Postnikov decomposition of $X$ in* $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$.

Proof. It is sufficient to show that $X \to \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} X$ presents the $n$-truncation $X \to \tau_n X$ in $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$. For this, in turn, it is sufficient to observe that this morphism exhibits a fibrant resolution in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc},\leq n}$. By standard facts about left Bousfield localizations, $\mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} X$ is indeed fibrant in that model structure, since it is fibrant in the original structure by assumption and is local with respect to higher sphere inclusions by the nature of the coskeleton construction.

So it remains to see that the morphism $X \to \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} X$ is a weak equivalence in the localized model structure. We notice that by assumption of hypercompleteness, the homotopy category is also computed by the derived hom in the truncation-localization of the Jardine model structure [Jard87]. By the nature of **cosk**, the morphism induces an isomorphism on all homotopy sheaves in degree $\leq n$ (since the homotopy presheaves of $X$ and $\mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} X$ in these degrees are manifestly equal and $X \to \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1}$ is the identity on cells in these degrees). Since by prop. 5.1.52 also the localized Jardine structure presents the full sub-$\infty$-category on $n$-truncated objects, the morphisms which are isos on homotpy groups in degree $\leq n$ are already equivalences here. □

### 5.1.4 Epi-/mono-morphisms and relative Postnikov systems

In an $\infty$-topos there is an infinite tower of notions of epimorphisms and monomorphisms: the $(n-2)$-connected and $(n-2)$-truncated morphisms for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ [Re05, L-Topos]. Accordingly, factorization through these induces a notion of $n$-images of morphisms in an $\infty$-topos, for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$. The case when $n = -1$ is in some sense the most direct generalization of the 1-categorical notion.

#### 5.1.4.1 General abstract

**Definition 5.1.56.** For $f : X \to Y$ a morphism in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ and for $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the *$(n-2)$-connected/$(n-2)$-truncated factorization* of $f$ is the $(n-2)$-truncation of $f$, def. 5.1.47, as an object in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/Y}$, def. 5.1.25:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & \sum_Y \tau_{n-2} f \\ & {}_{f}\searrow & \swarrow_{\tau_{n-2} f} \\ & Y & \end{array} .$$

We write

$$\mathrm{im}_n(f) := \sum_Y \tau_{n-2} f$$

and call this the *$n$-image* of $f$. We also say that

$$\mathrm{im}_\infty(f) := X$$

is the *1-image* of $f$.

**Proposition 5.1.57.** *The $n$-image operations of def. 5.1.56 preserves products in that for any two morphisms $f_i : X_i \to Y_i$ we have*

$$\mathrm{im}_n\left(X_1 \times X_2 \stackrel{(f_1, f_2)}{\longrightarrow} Y_1 \times Y_2\right) \simeq (\mathrm{im}_n(f_1) \times \mathrm{im}_n(f_2) \longrightarrow Y_1 \times Y_2)$$

Proof. Observe that the morphism $(f, g)$ is the product of $(f, \mathrm{id})$ with $(\mathrm{id}, f)$ in the slice $\infty$-topos over $Y_1 \times Y_2$. By [L-Topos, lemma 6.5.1.2] $n$-truncation in $\infty$-toposes preserves products. $\square$

**Definition 5.1.58.** A morphism $f : X \to Y$ is called

- an *$n$-epimorphism* if its $n$-image injection $\mathrm{im}_n(f) \to Y$ is an equivalence;
- an *$n$-monomorphism* if its $n$-image projection $X \to \mathrm{im}_n(f)$ is an equivalence.

**Proposition 5.1.59.** *For all $n$, the classes $(\mathrm{Epi}_n(\mathbf{H}), \mathrm{Mono}_n(\mathbf{H}))$ constitute an orthogonal factorization system.*

This is Proposition 8.5 in [Re05] and Example 5.2.8.16 in [L-Topos]. As a direct corollary:

**Proposition 5.1.60.** *The class of $n$-monomorphisms is stable under pullback, for all $n$.*

This follows with prop. 5.2.8.6 in [L-Topos]. Moreover:

**Proposition 5.1.61.** *The factorization systems of prop. 5.1.59 are* stable*: for all $n$, also the class of $n$-epimorphisms is preserved by $\infty$-pullback.*

This is [L-Topos], prop. 6.1.5.16(6).

**Remark 5.1.62.** By prop. 5.1.69 also 1-epimorphisms are preserved by $\infty$-pullback (as are 0-epimorphisms = equivalences), but the class of $n$-epimorphisms for $n > 1$ is in general not preserved by $\infty$-pullback.

**Proposition 5.1.63.** *A morphism $f : X \to Y$ is an $n$-monomorphism, precisely if its diagonal $X \to X \underset{Y}{\times} X$ is an $(n-1)$-monomorphism.*

This is [L-Topos], lemma 5.5.6.15.
Of particular interest are 1-epimorphisms/1-monomorphisms.

**Definition 5.1.64.** For $f : X \to Y$ a morphism in $\mathbf{H}$, we write its 1-epi/1-mono factorization given by Proposition 5.1.59 as

$$f : \; X \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{im}_1(f) \hookrightarrow Y$$

and we call $\mathrm{im}_1(f) \hookrightarrow Y$ the *1-image* (or just *image*, for short) of $f$.

Equivalently the 1-image is the $(-1)$-truncation of $f : X \to Y$ regarded as an object in the slice $\infty$-topos.

**Definition 5.1.65.** Let $\mathbf{H}$ be an $\infty$-topos. For $X \to Y$ any morphism in $\mathbf{H}$, there is a simplicial object $\check{C}(X \to Y)$ in $\mathbf{H}$ (the *Čech nerve* of $f\colon X \to Y$) which in degree $n$ is the $(n+1)$-fold $\infty$-fiber product of $X$ over $Y$ with itself

$$\check{C}(X \to Y) : [n] \mapsto X^{\times_Y^{n+1}}$$

A morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathbf{H}$ is an *effective epimorphism* if it is the colimiting cocone under its own Čech nerve:

$$f : X \to \varinjlim \check{C}(X \to Y)\,.$$

Write $\mathrm{Epi}(\mathbf{H}) \subset \mathbf{H}^I$ for the collection of effective epimorphisms.

See [L-Topos, below cor. 6.2.3.5].

**Remark 5.1.66.** In view of the discussion of groupoid objects below in 5.1.8 (see remark 5.1.127 there) we also speak of an effective epimorphism $U \twoheadrightarrow X$ as being an *atlas*, or, more explicitly, as *exhibiting $U$ as an atlas of $X$*.

**Proposition 5.1.67.** *A morphism $f : X \to Y$ in the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is an effective epimorphism precisely if its 0-truncation $\tau_0 f : \tau_0 X \to \tau_0 Y$ is an epimorphism (necessarily effective) in the 1-topos $\tau_{\leq 0}\mathbf{H}$.*

This is [L-Topos, prop. 7.2.1.14].

**Example 5.1.68.** A morphism in $\infty$Grpd is effective epi precisely if it induces an epimorphism $\pi_0(X) \to \pi_0(Y)$ of sets of connected components.

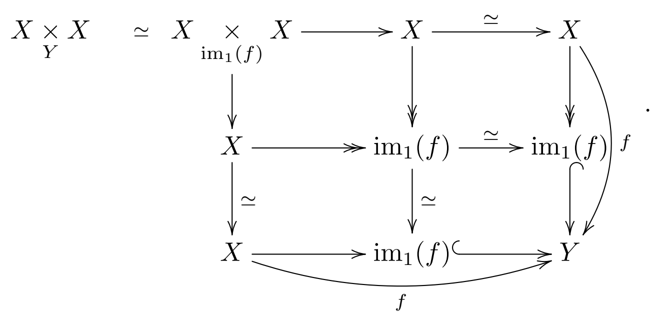
**Proposition 5.1.69.** *Effective epimorphisms are preserved by $\infty$-pullback.*

This is [L-Topos, prop. 6.2.3.15].

**Proposition 5.1.70.** *The effective epimorphisms of def. 5.1.65 are equivalently the 1-epimorphisms of def. 5.1.56. In particular, for $f : X \to Y$ any morphism, its 1-image, def. 5.1.64, is given by the $\infty$-colimit over its Čech nerve, def. 5.1.65:*

$$\mathrm{im}_1(f) \simeq \varinjlim_n \left( X^{\times_Y^{n+1}} \right) .$$

Proof. Let $f : X \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{im}_1(f) \longrightarrow Y$ be the essentially unique 1-image factorization. Then by prop. 5.1.63 the diagram exhibiting the $\infty$-fiber product of this morphism with itself decomposes into a pasting diagram of $\infty$-pullbacks of the form



By the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2 this identifis the $\infty$-fiber product of $f$ with itself over $Y$ with its product over $\mathrm{im}_1(f)$, as indicated, and hence the Čech nerve of $f$ is equivalently that of its image projection $X \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{im}_1(f)$ . Finally be the Giraud-Rezk-Lurie axiom, prop. 3.1.5, satisfied by the ambient $\infty$-topos, the $\infty$-colimit over the Čech nerve of $X \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{im}_1(f)$ is that morphism itself. □

The following is a simple consequence of prop. 5.1.70 which we will need.

**Proposition 5.1.71.** *For*

$$\iota : A \hookrightarrow B$$

*a 1-monomorphism in $\mathbf{H}$ and for $X \in \mathbf{H}$ any object, the image of $\phi$ under the internal hom $[X, -] : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$ is again a 1-monomorphism.*

$$[X, \iota] : [X, A] \hookrightarrow [X, B]$$

Proof. By prop. 5.1.63 a morphism is a 1-monomorphism precisely if the $\infty$-fiber product with itself reproduces its domain. Since $[X, -]$ preserves $\infty$-limits, this implies the claim. □

**Proposition 5.1.72.** *For $\iota : X \hookrightarrow *$ a 1-monomorphism (exhibiting $X$ as a* subterminal object*), and for $E_1, E_2 \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ two objects in the slice, the canonical map*

$$p_X : \prod_X [E_1, E_2] \to \left[ \sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_2 \right]$$

*of prop. 5.1.38 is an equivalence.*

Proof. By the proof of prop. 5.1.38 it suffices to show that the analogous statement holds for the external hom, hence that we have that the canonical map

$$\mathbf{H}_{/X}(E_1, E_2) \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}(\sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_1)$$

of prop. 5.1.33 is an equivalence. That morphism sits in the $\infty$-pullback on the left of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{H}_{/X}(E_1, E_2) & \longrightarrow & * & & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\vdash E_1} & \searrow & \\ \mathbf{H}(\sum_X E_1, \sum_X E_1) & \xrightarrow{E_2 \circ (-)} & \mathbf{H}(\sum_X E_1, X) & \underset{\mathbf{H}(X,\iota)}{\hookrightarrow} & * \end{array}$$

in $\infty$Grpd. Here $\mathbf{H}(\sum_X E_1, X)$ is subterminal and inhabited, hence is terminal. Therefore the right vertical morphism is an equivalence and hence so is the left vertical morphism. □

By taking $\mathbf{H}$ in prop. 5.1.72 itself to be a slice of another $\infty$-topos, the statement implies the following seemingly more general statement:

**Proposition 5.1.73.** *for $f : X \hookrightarrow Y$ a 1-monomorphism in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ and for $E_1, E_2 \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ two objects in the slice over $X$, the canonical morphism*

$$\prod_Y p_f : [E_1, E_2]_{\mathbf{H}} \to \left[\sum_f E_1, \sum_f E_2\right]_{\mathbf{H}}$$

*between the $\mathbf{H}$-valued slice homs of def. 5.1.34 is an equivalence.*

The following is another simple fact that we will need.

**Proposition 5.1.74.** *For $f : X \to Y$ any morphism in $\mathbf{H}$ its homotopy fiber over any global point of $Y$ in the image of $f$ is equivalent to the homotopy fiber over the corresponding point in $\mathrm{im}_1(f)$.*

Proof. By the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2 the homotopy fiber sits in a pasting diagram of $\infty$-pullbacks.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{fib}_y(f) & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{y} & \mathrm{im}_1(f) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{y} & \mathrm{Y} \end{array} .$$

That $y$ is in the image of $f$ precisely says that we have the bottom square and the fact that that the bottom right morphism is a 1-monomorphism says that the bottom square is an $\infty$-pullback. This identifies the middle row of the digram as indicated. (For instance one can check this by applying $\mathbf{H}(U, -)$ to the diagram where $U$ ranges over a set of generators and then using that the only suobobjects in $\infty$Grpd of $* \simeq \mathbf{H}(U, *)$ are $\emptyset$ and $*$ itself). □

Now we turn to discussion of the *towers* of $n$-image factorizations as $n$ ranges, which are the *relative Postnikov towers* in an $\infty$-topos.

**Remark 5.1.75.** For $f : X \to *$ a terminal morphism, then its $n$-image (def. 5.1.56) coincides with the $(n-2)$-truncation of $X$ (def. 5.1.47):

$$\tau_{n-2} X \simeq \mathrm{im}_n(X \to *) .$$

**Definition 5.1.76.** Given a morphism $f : X \to Y$ in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, its $n$-images (def. 5.1.56) for all $n$ form a tower

$$X \xrightarrow{=} \mathrm{im}_\infty(f) \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \mathrm{im}_2(f) \longrightarrow \mathrm{im}_1(f) \longrightarrow \mathrm{im}_0(f) \xrightarrow{\simeq} Y \ , \qquad (X \xrightarrow{f} Y)$$

also called the *relative Postnikov tower* of $f$. For $Y \simeq *$ the terminal object, then this is the (absolute) *Postnikov tower* of the object $X$ according to def. 5.1.50, by remark 5.1.75. For $X \simeq *$ the terminal object, this is called the *Whitehead tower* of $Y$. Conversely, the relative Postnikov tower of $f$ in $\mathbf{H}$ is equivalently the absolute Postnikov tower according to def. 5.1.50 of $f$ regarded as an object of the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/Y}$.

**Proposition 5.1.77.** *Let $f : X \to Y$ be a morphism in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ and let $x : * \to X$ be a base point. Then for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, forming $n$-images commutes with forming loop space objects up to a shift in image-degree, in that there is a natural equivalence*

$$\Omega\left(\mathrm{im}_n(f)\right) \simeq \mathrm{im}_{n-1}(\Omega f)\,.$$

Proof. The corresponding statement in homotopy-type theory is shown in [SpRi12]. The above statement is the categorical semantics of that. □

#### 5.1.4.2 Presentations

We discuss aspects of presentation of the general abstract theory of epi-/monomorphisms and relative Postnikov towers of 5.1.4.1.

##### 5.1.4.2.1 Effective epimorphisms

We discuss apsects of the presentation of effective epimorphisms, def. 5.1.65, with respect to presentations of the ambient $\infty$-topos by categories of simplicial presheaves, 3.1.3.

**Remark 5.1.78.** If the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is presented by a category of simplicial presheaves, 3.1.3, then for $X$ a simplicial presheaf the canonical morphism of simplicial presheaves $\mathrm{const}X_0 \to X$ that includes the presheaf of 0-cells as a simplicially constant simplicial presheaf presents an effective epimorphism in $\mathbf{H}$.

Proof. By prop. 5.1.67. □

**Remark 5.1.79.** In practice the presentation of an $\infty$-stack by a simplicial presheaf is often taken to be understood, and then remark 5.1.78 induces also a canonical atlas.

We now discuss a fibration resolution of the canonical atlas. Let $\sigma : \Delta \times \Delta \to \Delta$ the functor from def. 5.1.19, defining *total décalage*.

**Definition 5.1.80.** Write

$$\mathrm{Dec}_0 : \mathrm{sSet} \to \mathrm{sSet}$$

for the functor given by precomposition with $\sigma(-,[0]) : \Delta \to \Delta$, and

$$\mathrm{Dec}^0 : \mathrm{sSet} \to \mathrm{sSet}$$

for the functor given by precomposition with $\sigma([0],-) : \Delta \to \Delta$. This is called the plain *décalage functor* or *shifting functor*.

This functor was introduced in [Il72]. A discussion in the present context is in section 2.2 of [St11].

**Proposition 5.1.81.** *The décalage of $X$ is isomorphic to the simplicial set*

$$\mathrm{Dec}_0 X = \mathrm{Hom}(\Delta^\bullet \star \Delta[0], X)\,,$$

*where $(-)\star(-) : \mathrm{sSet}\times\mathrm{sSet}\to\mathrm{sSet}$ is the join of simplicial sets. The canonical inclusions $\Delta[n], \Delta[0] \to \Delta[n]\star\Delta[0]$ induce two canonical morphisms*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Dec}_0 X & \twoheadrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ \mathrm{const} X_0 & & \end{array}\,,$$

*where*

- *the horizontal morphism is given in degree $n$ by $d_{n+1} : X_{n+1} \to X_n$;*
- *the horizontal morphism is a Kan fibration;*
- *the vertical morphism is a weak homotopy equivalence;*
- *a weak homotopy inverse is given by the morphism that is degreewise given by the degeneracy morphisms in $X$.*

Proof. The relation to the join of simplicial sets is nicely discussed around page 7 of [RoSt12]. The weak homotopy equivalence is classical, see for instance [St11].

To see that $\mathrm{Dec}_0 X \to X$ is a Kan fibration, notice that for all $n\in\mathbb{N}$ we have $(\mathrm{Dec}_0 X)_n = \mathrm{Hom}(\Delta[c]\star\Delta[0], X)$, where $(-)\star(-) : \mathrm{sSet}\times\mathrm{sSet}\to\mathrm{sSet}$ is the join of simplicial sets. Therefore the lifting problem

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda^i[n] & \to & \mathrm{Dec}_0 X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta[n] & \to & X \end{array}$$

is equivalently the lifting problem

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\Lambda^i[n]\star\Delta[n]) \coprod_{\Lambda^i[n]} \Delta[n] & \to & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta[n]\star\Delta[0] & \to & * \end{array}\,.$$

Here the left moprhism is a anodyne morphism, in fact is an $(n+1)$-horn inclusion. Hence a lift exists if $X$ is a Kan complex. (Alternatively, notice that $\mathrm{Dec}_0 X$ is the disjoint union of slices $X_{/x}$ for $x\in X_0$. By cor. 2.1.2.2 in [L-Topos] the projection $X_{/x}\to X$ is a left fibration if $X$ is Kan fibrant, and by prop. 2.1.3.3 there this implies that it is a Kan fibration). □

**Corollary 5.1.82.** *For $X$ in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ fibrant, a fibration resolution of the canonical effective epimorphism $\mathrm{const}X_0 \to X$ from remark 5.1.78 is given by the décalage morphism $\mathrm{Dec}_0 X \to X$, def. 5.1.80.*

Proof. It only remains to observe that we have a commuting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{const}X_0 & \xrightarrow{s} & \mathrm{Dec}_0 X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{=} & X \end{array}\,,$$

where the top morphism, given degreewise by the degeneracy maps in $X$, is a weak homotopy equivalence by classical results. □

**5.1.4.2.2 $n$-Images and Relative Postnikov towers** We discuss presentations of $n$-images in $\infty$-toposes by constructions on simplicial presheaves.

In $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, the general notion of relative Postnikov towers, def. 5.1.76, reproduces the traditional one.

**Definition 5.1.83.** Let $f : X \to Y$ be a morphism of simplicial sets. Then a *relative Postnikov tower of simplicial sets* for $f$ is a diagram of simplicial sets of the form

$$X \xrightarrow{=} \mathrm{im}_\infty(f) \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \mathrm{im}_2(f) \longrightarrow \mathrm{im}_1(f) \longrightarrow \mathrm{im}_0(f) \xrightarrow{\simeq} Y, \qquad (X \xrightarrow{f} Y)$$

such that for all $n$

1. the morphism $X \to \mathrm{im}_n(f)$
   (a) induces an epimorphism on homotopy groups in degree $n-1$;
   (b) induces an isomorphism on homotopy groups in degree $< n-1$;
2. the morphism $\mathrm{im}_n(f) \to Y$
   (a) induces a monomorphism on homotopy groups in degree $n-1$;
   (b) induces an isomorphism on homotopy groups in degree $> n-1$.

This appears for instance as [GoJa99, VI def. 2.9].

Here is an explicit construction:

**Definition 5.1.84.** For $X, Y \in \mathrm{sSet}$ two simplicial sets, let $f : X \to Y$ be a Kan fibration. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ define an equivalence relation $\sim_n$ on $X_\bullet$ by declaring that two $k$-simplices $\sigma_1, \sigma_2 : \Delta^k \to X$ of $X$ are equivalent if

1. they have the same $n$-skeleton $\mathrm{sk}_n \Delta^k \longrightarrow \Delta^k \xrightarrow{\sigma_1, \sigma_2} X$
2. and $f(\sigma_1) = f(\sigma_2)$.

Write then

$$\mathrm{im}_{n+1}(f) := X / \sim_n$$

for the quotient simplicial set. This comes equipped with canonical morphisms of simplicial sets

$$X \longrightarrow \mathrm{im}_{n+1}(f) \longrightarrow Y \quad (X \xrightarrow{f} Y).$$

This is [GoJa99, VI def. 2.10].

**Proposition 5.1.85.** *The construction in def. 5.1.84 is a relative Postnikov tower of simplicial sets in the sense of def. 5.1.83.*

This is [GoJa99, VI theorem 2.11]

**Proposition 5.1.86.** *Under the equivalence $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq L_{\mathrm{whe}}\mathrm{sSet}$, any relative Postnikov tower of simplicial sets in the sense of def. 5.1.83 is a presentation of the relative Postnikov tower, def. 5.1.76, in $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.*

Proof. Applying the defining properties in def. 5.1.83 in the long exact sequence of simplicial homtoopy groups for $f$ shows that each factorizatioon $X \to \mathrm{im}_n(f) \to Y$ is an ($n$-epi/$n$-mono)-factorization. □

For maps between low truncated objects, we have the following simple identification of their $n$-images.

**Proposition 5.1.87.** *A 1-functor between 1-groupoids*

1. *is $n$-truncated as a morphism of $\infty$-groupoids precisely if*
   (a) *for $n = -2$ it is an equivalence of categories;*
   (b) *for $n = -1$ it is a full and faithful functor;*
   (c) *for $n = 0$ it is a faithful functor.*
2. *is $n$-connected as a morphism of $\infty$-groupoids precisely if*
   (a) *for $n = -2$ it is an equivalence of categories;*
   (b) *for $n = -1$ it is essentially surjective;*
   (c) *for $n = 0$ it is essentially surjective and full.*

*In particular*

1. *the 1-image factorization of a functor $f : X \to Y$ of groupoids is given by factoring it through an essentially surjective functor followed by a fully faithful functor (sometimes called the* (eso,ff)-factorization*). Up to equivalence the groupoid $\mathrm{im}_1(f)$ is given as follows: its set of objects is the image of the set of objects of the groupoid $X$ under $f$, its set of morphisms is all the morphisms of $X$ on these objects.*
2. *the 2-image fatorization of a functor $f : X \to Y$ of groupoids is given by factoring it through an essentially surjective and full functor followed by a faithful fuunctor (sometimes called the* (eso+full,faithful)-factorization*). Up to equivalence the groupoid $\mathrm{im}_2(f)$ is given as follows: its set of objects is that of $X$, while its set of morphisms is the image of the set of morphisms of $X$ under $f$.*

Proof.

It is immediately checked that with these definitions then the defining properties in def. 5.1.83 are satisfied. Hence the statement follows with proposition 5.1.86.

lternatively one may analyze the homotopy fibers. We consider the case $n = 0$:

A functor $f : X \to Y$ between groupoids being faithful is equivalent to the induced morphisms on first homotopy groups being monomorphisms. Therefore for $F \to X \to Y$ the homotopy fiber over any point of $Y$, the long exact sequence of homotopy groups yields

$$\cdots \to \pi_1(F) \to \pi_1(X) \stackrel{f_*}{\hookrightarrow} \pi_1(Y) \to \cdots$$

and hence realizes $\pi_1(F)$ as the kernel of an injective map. Therefore $\pi(F) \simeq *$ and hence $F$ is 0-truncated for every basepoint. This is the defining condition for $f$ being 0-truncated. □

**Proposition 5.1.88.** *Let $C$ be a site and let $f : X \to Y$ be a morphism of presheaves of groupoids on $C$ which, under the nerve, are fibrant objects in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. If $f$ is objectwise a) an equivalence, b) full and faithful or c) faithful, then the morphism presented by $f$ in $\mathbf{H} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$ is a) -2-truncated, b) (-1)-truncated, c) 0-truncated, respectively.*

Proof. We need to compute for every $A \in \mathbf{H}$ the homotopy fibers of $\mathbf{H}(A, f)$. Since by assumption $X$ and $Y$ are fibrant presentations, we may pick any cofibrant presentation of $A$ and obtain this morphism as $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](A, f)$. This is the nerve of a functor of groupoids which is a) an equivalence, b) full and faithful or c) faithful, respectively. The statement then follows with proposition 5.1.87. □

More generally, we obtain a similarly simple and concrete presentation of $n$-image factorization of morphisms in the case that they are presented by homomorphisms of *strict* $\infty$-groupoids, def. 3.1.36.

**Proposition 5.1.89.** *Let $f : X \to Y$ be a morphism in* $\infty$Grpd *which is in the essential image of the inclusion*

$$\mathrm{Str}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{KanCplx} \to L_{\mathrm{whe}}\mathrm{sSet} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

*of a morphism strict $\infty$-groupoids, given by an underlying morphism of globular sets $f_\bullet : X_\bullet, Y_\bullet$. Then for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the $n$-image factorization def. 5.1.56 of $f$ is presented under this inclusion by the strict $\infty$-groupoid* $\mathrm{im}_n(f)$ *whose underlying globular set is*

$$(\mathrm{im}_n(f))_k := \begin{cases} X_k & \forall k < n-1 \\ \mathrm{im}(X_{n-1}) \subset Y_{n-1} & \forall k = n-1 \\ Y_k & \forall k \geq n \end{cases}$$

*equipped with the evident composition operations induced from those on $X_\bullet$ and $Y_\bullet$, and with the evident morphisms*

$$X_\bullet \longrightarrow \mathrm{im}_n(f)_\bullet \longrightarrow Y_\bullet \ ,$$

*the left one being the identity in degree $k < n-1$, the quotent projection in degree $n-1$ and $f$ in degree $k \geq n$, and the right one being $f$ in degree $k < n-1$, the image inclusion in degree $n-1$ and the identity in degree $k \geq n$.*

For the case $Y = *$ this is discussed in [BFGM].

Proof. The homotopy groups of a strict globular $\infty$-groupoid in any degree $k$ are simply given by the groups of $k$-automorphisms of the identity $(k-1)$-morphism on a given baspoint modulo $(k+1)$-morphisms (hence the homology of the corresponding crossed complex, def. 1.2.96 in that degree). Therefore it is clear from the construction of $im_n(f)$ above that $X \to im_n(f)$ is surjective on $\pi_0$ and an isomorphism on $\pi_{k<n-1}$, and that $im_n(f)$ is a monomorphism on $\pi_{n-1}$ and an isomorphism on $\pi_{k\geq n}$. □

### 5.1.5 Compact objects

Traditionally there are two notions referred to as *compactness* of a space, which are closely related but subtly different.

1. On the one hand a space is called compact if regarded as an object of a certain *site* each of its covering families has a finite subfamily that is still covering.

2. On the other hand, an object in a category with colimits is called compact if the hom-functor out of that object commutes with all filtered colimits. Or more generally in the context of $\infty$-categories: if the hom-$\infty$-functor out of the objects commutes with all filtered $\infty$-colimits ([L-Topos, section 5.3]).

For instance in the site of topological spaces or of smooth manifolds, equipped with the usual open-cover coverage, the first definition reproduces the traditional definition of *compact topological space* and of *compact smooth manifold*, respectively. But the notion of compact object in the category of topological spaces in the sense of the second definition is not quite equivalent. For instance the two-element set equipped with the indiscrete topology is compact in the first sense, but not in the second.

The cause of this mismatch, as we will discuss in detail below, becomes clearer once we generalize beyond 1-category theory to $\infty$-topos theory: in that context it is familiar that locality of morphisms out of an object $X$ into an $n$-truncated object $A$ (an $n$-stack) is no longer controled by just the notion of *covers* of $X$, but by the notion of *hypercover of height $n$*, which reduces to the ordinary notion of cover for $n = 0$. Accordingly it is clear that the ordinary condition on a compact topological space to admit finite refinement of any cover is just the first step in a tower of conditions: we may say an object is *compact of height $n$* if every hypercover of height $n$ over the object is refined by a “finite hypercover” in a suitable sense.

Indeed, the condition on a *compact object* in a 1-category to distribute over filtered colimits turns out to be a compactness condition of *height 1*, which conceptually explains why it is stronger than the existence of finite refinements of covers. This state of affairs in the first two height levels has been known, in different terms, in topos theory, where one distinguishes between a topos being *compact* and being *strongly compact* [MoVe00]:

**Definition 5.1.90.** A 1-topos $(\Delta \dashv \Gamma) : \mathcal{X} \underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{}} \mathrm{Set}$ is called

1. a *compact topos* if the global section functor $\Gamma$ preserves filtered colimits of subterminal objects (= (-1)-truncated objects);
2. a *strongly compact topos* if $\Gamma$ preserves all filtered colimits (hence of all 0-truncated objects).

Clearly these are the first two stages in a tower of notions which continues as follows.

**Definition 5.1.91.** For $(-1) \leq n \leq \infty$, an $\infty$-topos $(\Delta \dashv \Gamma) : \mathcal{X} \underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is called *compact of height $n$* if $\Gamma$ preserves filtered $\infty$-colimits of $n$-truncated objects.

Since therefore the traditional terminology concerning "compactness" is not quite consistent across fields, with the category-theoretic "compact object" corresponding, as shown below, to the topos theoretic "strongly compact", we introduce for definiteness the following terminology.

**Definition 5.1.92.** For $C$ a subcanonical site, call an object $X \in C \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}(C) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ *representably compact* if every covering family $\{U_\alpha \to X\}_{i \in I}$ has a finite subfamily $\{U_j \to X\}_{j \in J \subset I}$ which is still covering.

The relation to the traditional notion of compact spaces and compact objects is given by the following

**Proposition 5.1.93.** *Let $\mathbf{H}$ be a 1-topos and $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object. Then*

1. *if $X$ is representably compact, def. 5.1.92, with respect to the canonical topology, then the slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$, def. 5.1.25 is a compact topos;*
2. *the slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ is strongly compact precisely if $X$ is a compact object.*

Proof. Use that the global section functor $\Gamma$ on the slice topos is given by

$$\Gamma([E \to X]) = \mathbf{H}(X, E) \times_{\mathbf{H}(X,X)} \{\mathrm{id}_X\}$$

and that colimits in the slice are computed as colimits in $\mathbf{H}$:

$$\varinjlim_i [E_i \to X] \simeq [(\varinjlim_i E_i) \to X] \,.$$

For the first statement, observe that the subterminal objects of $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ are the monomorphisms in $\mathbf{H}$. Therefore $\Gamma$ sends all subterminals to the empty set except the terminal object itself, which is sent to the singleton set. Accordingly, if $U_\bullet : I \to \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ is a filtered colimit of subterminals then

- either the $\{U_\alpha\}$ do not cover, hence in particular none of the $U_\alpha$ is $X$ itself, and hence both $\Gamma(\varinjlim_i U_\alpha)$ as well as $\varinjlim_i \Gamma(U_\alpha)$ are the empty set;
- or the $\{U_\alpha\}_{i \in I}$ do cover. Then by assumption on $X$ there is a finite subcover $J \subset I$, and then by assumption that $U_\bullet$ is filtered the cover contains the finite union $\varinjlim_{i \in J} U_\alpha = X$ and hence both $\Gamma(\varinjlim_i U_\alpha)$ as well as $\varinjlim_i \Gamma(U_\alpha)$ are the singleton set.

For the second statement, assume first that $X$ is a compact object. Then using that colimits in a topos are preserved by pullbacks, it follows for all filtered diagrams $[E_\bullet \to X]$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ that

$$\begin{aligned}\Gamma(\varinjlim_i [E_i \to X]) &\simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \varinjlim_i E_i) \times_{\mathbf{H}(X,X)} \{\mathrm{id}\} \\ &\simeq (\varinjlim_i \mathbf{H}(X, E_i)) \times_{\mathbf{H}(X,X)} \{\mathrm{id}\} \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_i (\mathbf{H}(X, E_i) \times_{\mathbf{H}(X,X)} \{\mathrm{id}\}) \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_i \Gamma[E_i \to X]\end{aligned},$$

and hence $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ is strongly compact.

Conversely, assume that $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ is strongly compact. Observe that for every object $F \in \mathbf{H}$ we have a natural isomorphism $\mathbf{H}(X, F) \simeq \Gamma([X \times F \to X])$. Using this, we obtain for every filtered diagram $F_\bullet$ in $\mathbf{H}$ that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{H}(X, \varinjlim_i F_i) &\simeq \Gamma([X \times (\varinjlim_i F_i) \to X]) \\ &\simeq \Gamma(\varinjlim_i [X \times F_i \to X]) \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_i \Gamma([X \times F_i \to X]) \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_i \mathbf{H}(X, F_i)\end{aligned}$$

and hence $X$ is a compact object. ∎

Notice that a diagram of subterminal objects necessarily consists only of monomorphisms. We show now that a representably compact object generally distributes over such *monofiltered colimits.*

**Definition 5.1.94.** Call a filtered diagram $A : I \to D$ in a category $D$ *mono-filtered* if for all morphisms $i_1 \to i_2$ in the diagram category $I$ the morphism $A(i_1 \to i_2)$ is a monomorphism in $D$.

**Lemma 5.1.95.** *For $C$ a site and $A : I \to \mathrm{Sh}(C) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PSh}(C)$ a monofiltered diagram of sheaves, its colimit $\varinjlim_i A_i \in \mathrm{PSh}(C)$ is a separated presheaf.*

Proof. For $\{U_\alpha \to X\}$ any covering family in $C$ with $S(\{U_\alpha\}) \in \mathrm{PSh}(C)$ the corresponding sieve, we need to show that

$$\varinjlim_i A_i(X) \to \mathrm{PSh}_C(S(\{U_\alpha\}), \varinjlim_i A_i)$$

is a monomorphism. An element on the left is represented by a pair $(i \in I, a \in A_i(X))$. Given any other such element, we may assume by filteredness that they are both represented over the same index $i$. So let $(i, a)$ and $(i, a')$ be two such elements. Under the above function, $(i, a)$ is mapped to the collection $\{i, a|_{U_\alpha}\}_\alpha$ and $(i, a')$ to $\{i, a'|_{U_\alpha}\}_\alpha$. If $a$ is different from $a'$, then these families differ at stage $i$, hence at least one pair $a|_{U_\alpha}$, $a'|_{U_\alpha}$ is different at stage $i$. Then by mono-filteredness, this pair differs also at all later stages, hence the corresponding families $\{U_\alpha \to \varinjlim_i A_i\}_\alpha$ differ. ∎

**Proposition 5.1.96.** *For $X \in \mathrm{C} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}(C)$ a representably compact object, def. 5.1.92,* $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Sh}(C)}(X, -)$ *commutes with all mono-filtered colimits.*

Proof. Let $A : I \to \mathrm{Sh}(C) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PSh}(C)$ be a mono-filtered diagram of sheaves, regarded as a diagram of presheaves. Write $\varinjlim_i A_i$ for its colimit. So with $L : \mathrm{PSh}(C) \to \mathrm{Sh}(C)$ denoting sheafification, $L \varinjlim_i A_i$ is the colimit of sheaves in question. By the Yoneda lemma and since colimits of presheaves are computed objectwise, it is sufficient to show that for $X$ a representably compact object, the value of the sheafified colimit is the colimit of the values of the sheaves on $X$

$$(L \varinjlim_i A_i)(X) \simeq (\varinjlim_i A_i)(X) = \varinjlim_i A_i(X)\,.$$

To see this, we evaluate the sheafification by the plus construction. By lemma 5.1.95, the presheaf $\varinjlim_i A_i$ is already separated, so we obtain its sheafification by applying the plus-construction just *once*.

We observe now that *over a representably compact object* $X$ the single plus-construction acts as the identity on the presheaf $\varinjlim_i A_i$. Namely the single plus-construction over $X$ takes the colimit of the value of the presheaf on sieves

$$S(\{U_\alpha\}) := \varinjlim( \coprod_{\alpha,\beta} U_{\alpha,\beta} \rightrightarrows \coprod_\alpha U_\alpha )$$

over the opposite of the category of covers $\{U_\alpha \to X\}$ of $X$. By the very definition of compactness, the inclusion of (the opposite category of) the category of finite covers of $X$ into that of all covers is a final functor. Therefore we may compute the plus-construction over $X$ by the colimit over just the collection of finite covers. On a finite cover we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{PSh}(S(\{U_\alpha\}), \varinjlim_i A_i) &:= \mathrm{PSh}(\varinjlim( \coprod_{\alpha,\beta} U_{\alpha\beta} \rightrightarrows \coprod_\alpha U_\alpha ), \varinjlim_i A_i) \\ &\simeq \varprojlim( \prod_\alpha \varinjlim_i A_i(U_\alpha) \rightrightarrows \prod_{\alpha,\beta} \varinjlim_i A_i(U_{\alpha,\beta}) ) \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_i \varprojlim( \prod_\alpha A_i(U_\alpha) \rightrightarrows \prod_{\alpha,\beta} A_i(U_{\alpha,\beta}) ) \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_i A_i(X) \end{aligned},$$

where in the second but last step we used that filtered colimits commute with finite limits, and in the last step we used that each $A_i$ is a sheaf.

So in conclusion, for $X$ a representably compact object and $A : I \to \mathrm{Sh}(C)$ a monofiltered diagram, we have found that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Sh}(C)}(X, L \varinjlim_i A_i) &\simeq (\varinjlim_i A_i)^+(X) \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_i A_i(X) \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_i \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Sh}(C)}(X, A_i) \end{aligned}$$

□

The discussion so far suggests that there should be conditions for "representably higher compactness" on objects in a site that imply that the Yoneda-embedding of these objects into the $\infty$-topos over the site distribute over larger classes of filtered $\infty$-colimits.

**Definition 5.1.97.** For $C$ a site, say that an object $X \in C$ is *representably paracompact* if each bounded hypercover over $X$ can be refined by the Čech nerve of an ordinary cover.

The motivating example is

**Proposition 5.1.98.** *Over a paracompact topological space, every bounded hypercover is refined by the Čech nerve of an ordinary open cover.*

Proof. Let $Y \to X$ be a bounded hypercover. By lemma 7.2.3.5 in [L-Topos] we may find for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$ a refinement of the cover given by $Y_0$ such that the non-trivial $(k+1)$-fold intersections of this cover factor through $Y_{k+1}$. Let then $n \in \mathbb{N}$ be a bound for the height of $Y$ and form the intersection of the covers obtained by this lemma for $0 \leq k \leq n$. Then the resulting Čech nerve projection factors through $Y \to X$. □

**Proposition 5.1.99.** *Let $X \in C \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C) =: \mathbf{H}$ be an object which is*

1. *representably paracompact, def. 5.1.97;*
2. *representably compact, def. 5.1.92,*

*then it distributes over sequential $\infty$-colimits $A_\bullet : I \to \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ of $n$-truncated objects for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$.*

Proof. Let $A_\bullet : I \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ be a presentation of a given sequential diagram in $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{Mfd})$, such that it is fibrant and cofibrant in $[I, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Note for later use that this implies in particular that

- The ordinary colimit $\lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is a homotopy colimit.
- Every $A_i$ is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ and hence also in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.
- Every morphism $A_i \to A_j$ is (by example 5.1.12) a cofibration in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, hence in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, hence in particular in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}}$, hence is over each $U \in C$ a monomorphism.

Observe that $\lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i$ is still fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$: since the colimit is taken in presheaves, it is computed objectwise, and since it is filtered, we may find the lift against horn inclusions (which are inclusions of degreewise finite simplicial sets) at some stage in the colimit, where it exists by assumption that $A_\bullet$ is projectively fibrant, so that each $A_i$ is projectively fibrant in the local and hence in particular in the global model structure.

Since $X$, being representable, is cofibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, it also follows by this reasoning that the diagram

$$\mathbf{H}(X, A_\bullet) : I \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

is presented by

$$A_\bullet(X) : I \to \mathrm{sSet}\,.$$

Since the functors

$$[I, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} [I, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} [I, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} [I, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$$

all preserve cofibrant objects, it follows that $A_\bullet(X)$ is cofibrant in $[I, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Therefore also its ordinary colimit presents the corresponding $\infty$-colimit.

This means that the equivalence which we have to establish can be written in the form

$$\mathbb{R}\mathrm{Hom}(X, \lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i) \simeq \lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i(X)\,.$$

If here $\lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i$ were fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, then the derived hom on the left would be given by the simplicial mapping space and the equivalence would hold trivially. So the remaining issue is now to deal with the fibrant replacement: the $\infty$-sheafification of $\lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i$.

We want to appeal to theorem 7.6 c) in [DHS04] to compute the derived hom into this $\infty$-stackification by a colimit over hypercovers of the ordinary simplicial homs out of these hypercovers into $\lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i$ itself. To do so, we now argue that by the assumptions on $X$, we may in fact replace the hypercovers here with finite Čech covers.

So consider the colimit

$$\lim_{\{U_\alpha \to X\}_{\mathrm{finite}}} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\check{C}(\{U_\alpha\}), \lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i)$$

over all finite covers of $X$. Since by representable compactness of $X$ these are cofinal in all covers of $X$, this is isomorphic to the colimit over all Čech covers

$$\cdots = \lim_{\{U_\alpha \to X\}} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\check{C}(\{U_\alpha\}), \lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i)\,.$$

Next, by representable paracomopactness of $X$, the Čech covers in turn are cofinal in all bounded hypercovers $Y \to X$, so that, furthermore, this is isomorphic to the colimit over all bounded hypercovers

$$\cdots = \lim_{Y \to X} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](Y, \lim_{\longrightarrow_i} A_i)\,.$$

Finally, by the assumption that the $A_i$ are $n$-truncated, the colimit here may equivalently be taken over all hypercovers.

We now claim that the canonical morphism

$$\lim_{\{U_\alpha \to X\}_{\text{finite}}} [C^{\text{op}}, \text{sSet}](\check{C}(\{U_\alpha\}), \varinjlim_i A_i) \to \mathbb{R}\text{Hom}(X, \varinjlim_i A_i)$$

is a weak equivalence. Since the category of covers is filtered, we may first compute homotopy groups and then take the colimit. With the above isomorphisms, the statement is then given by theorem 7.6 c) in [DHS04].

Now to conclude: since maps out of the finite Cech nerves pass through the filtered colimit, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{R}\text{Hom}(X, \varinjlim_i A_i) &\simeq \lim_{\{U_\alpha \to X\}_{\text{finite}}} [C^{\text{op}}, \text{sSet}](\check{C}(\{U_\alpha\}), \varinjlim_i A_i) \\
&\simeq \lim_{\{U_\alpha \to X\}_{\text{finite}}} \varinjlim_i [C^{\text{op}}, \text{sSet}](\check{C}(\{U_\alpha\}), A_i) \\
&\simeq \varinjlim_i \lim_{\{U_\alpha \to X\}_{\text{finite}}} [C^{\text{op}}, \text{sSet}](\check{C}(\{U_\alpha\}), A_i) \\
&\simeq \varinjlim_i A_i(X)
\end{aligned}.$$

Here in the last step we used that each single $A_i$ is fibrant in $[C^{\text{op}}, \text{sSet}]_{\text{proj,loc}}$, so that for each $i \in I$

$$[C^{\text{op}}, \text{sSet}](X, A_i) \to [C^{\text{op}}, \text{sSet}](\check{C}(\{U_\alpha\}), A_i)$$

is a weak equivalence. Moreover, the diagram $[C^{\text{op}}, \text{sSet}](\check{C}(\{U_\alpha\}), A_\bullet)$ in sSet is still projectively cofibrant, by example 5.1.12, since all morphisms are cofibrations in $\text{sSet}_{\text{Quillen}}$, and so the colimit in the second but last line is still a homotopy colimit and thus preserves these weak equivalences. □

### 5.1.6 Homotopy

For reference, we recall the basic concepts of homotopy groups of objects in an $\infty$-topos from [L-Topos].

**Definition 5.1.100.** Let $\mathbf{H}$ an $\infty$-topos and $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ write

$$(X^{(* \to \partial\Delta[n+1])} : X^{\Delta[n]} \to X) \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$$

for the cotensoring of $X$ by the point inclusion into the simplicial $n$-sphere, regarded as an object in the slice of $\mathbf{H}$ over $X$, def. 5.1.25. The *nth homotopy group* of $X$ is the image of this under 0-truncation, prop. 5.1.49

$$\pi_n(X) := \tau_0(X^{* \to \partial\Delta[n+1]}) \in \tau_0(\mathbf{H}_{/X}).$$

This appears as [L-Topos, def. 6.5.1.1].

**Remark 5.1.101.** Since truncation preserves finite products by prop. 5.1.49 we have that $\pi_n(X)$ is indeed a group object in the 1-topos $\tau_0(\mathbf{H})$ for $n \geq 1$ and is an abelian group object for $n \geq 2$.

**Example 5.1.102.** For $\mathbf{H} = \infty\text{Grpd} \simeq \text{Top}$ and $x : * \to X \in \infty\text{Grpd}$ a pointed object, we have for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ that

$$\pi_n(X, x) := x^* \pi_n(X) \in \tau_0 \infty\text{Grpd}_{/*} \simeq \text{Set}$$

is the $n$th homotopy group of $X$ at $x$ as traditionally defined.

In [L-Topos] this is remark 6.5.1.6.

**Remark 5.1.103.** Once we pass to cohesive $\infty$-toposes in 5.2, all objects $X$ in $\mathbf{H}$ are equipped with cohesive structure as witnessed by their shape $\int X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$. There are then (at least) two different concepts that both tend to be called "the" homotopy groups of $X$: on the one hand the homotopy groups in the sense of def. 5.1.100 of $X$ itself, and on the other the homotopy groups in the sense of def. 5.1.100 of its shape $\int X$. In order to distinguish these we will say for emphasis that

- $\pi_\bullet X$ are the *categorical homotopy groups* of $X$;
- $\pi_\bullet \int X$ are the *geometric homotopy groups* of $X$.

See also definition 5.2.13 below. For instance for $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ the $\infty$-topos of smooth $\infty$-groupoids constructed in 6.4 below, and for $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ a smooth manifold, then its categorical homotopy groups in positive degree are all trivial, while its geometric homotopy groups are the homotopy groups of its underlying topological space in the usual sense of algebraic topology. If on the other hand $X \in \mathbf{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is an orbifold, then its first categorical homotopy groups are the orbifold isotropy groups, while its geometric homotopy groups are the homotopy groups of the topological space which is the geometric realization of the orbifold.

### 5.1.7 Connected objects

We discuss objects in an $\infty$-topos which are connected or higher connected in that their first non-trivial homotopy group, 5.1.6, is in some positive degree.

In a local $\infty$-topos and hence in particular in a cohesive $\infty$-topos, these are precisely the *deloopings* of *group objects*, discussed below in 5.1.9. In a more general $\infty$-topos, such as a slice of a cohesive $\infty$-topos, these are the (nonabelian/Giraud-)*gerbes*, discussed below in 5.1.19.

#### 5.1.7.1 General abstract

**Definition 5.1.104.** Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, with $-1 \leq n$. An object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is called *$n$-connected* if

1. the terminal morphism $X \to *$ is an effective epimorphism, def. 5.1.65;
2. all categorical homotopy groups $\pi_k(X)$, def. 5.1.100, remark 5.1.103, for $k \leq n$ are trivial.

One also says

- *inhabited* or *well-supported* for (-1)-connected;
- *connected* for 0-connected;
- *simply connected* for 1-connected;
- $(n+1)$-*connective* for $n$-connected.

A morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathbf{H}$ is called $n$-connected if it is $n$-connected regarded as an object of $\mathbf{H}_{/Y}$.

This is def. 6.5.1.10 in [L-Topos].

**Example 5.1.105.** An object $X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}$ is $n$-connected precisely if it is $n$-connected in the traditional sense of higher connectedness of topological spaces. (A morphism in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is effective epi precisely if it induces an epimorphism on sets of connected components.)

**Example 5.1.106.** For $C$ an $\infty$-site, a connected object in $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ may also be called an ("nonabelian" or "Giraud"-) $\infty$-*gerbe* over $C$. This we discuss below in 5.1.19.

**Definition 5.1.107.** An $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ has *homotopy dimension* $n \in \mathbb{N}$ if $n$ is the smallest number such that every $(n-1)$-connected object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ admits a morphism $* \to X$ from the terminal object

**Remark 5.1.108.** A morphism $* \to X$ is a *section* of the terminal geometric morphism. So in an $\infty$-topos of homotopy dimension $n$ every $(n-1)$-connected object $X$ has a section. For such $X$ the terminal geometric morphism is therefore in fact a *split epimorphism*.

**Example 5.1.109.** The trivial $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H} = *$ is, up to equivalence, the unique $\infty$-topos of homotopy dimension 0.

This is example 7.2.1.2 in [L-Topos].

**Proposition 5.1.110.** *An $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ has homotopy dimension $\leq n$ precisely if the global section geometric morphism $\Gamma : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, def. 3.1.7, sends $(n-1)$-connected morphisms to $(-1)$-connected morphisms (effective epimorphisms).*

Proof. This is essentially lemma 7.2.1.7 in [L-Topos]. The proof there shows a bit more, even. □

**Proposition 5.1.111.** *A local $\infty$-topos, def. 4.1.1, has homotopy dimension 0.*

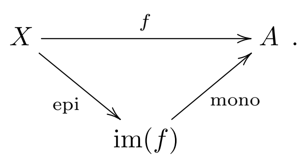
Proof. By prop. 5.1.110 it is sufficient to show that effective epimorphisms are sent to effective epimorphisms. Since for a local $\infty$-topos the global section functor is a left adjoint, it preserves not only the $\infty$-limits involved in the characterization of effective epimorphisms, def. 5.1.65, but also the $\infty$-colimits. □

**Remark 5.1.112.** In particular an $\infty$-presheaf $\infty$-topos over an $\infty$-site with a terminal object is local. For this special case the statement of prop. 5.1.111 is example. 7.2.1.2 in [L-Topos], the argument above being effectively the same as the one given there.

**Corollary 5.1.113.** *A cohesive $\infty$-topos, def. 4.1.8, has homotopy dimension 0.*

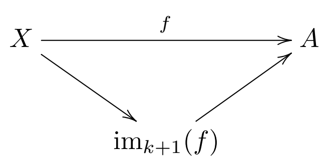
Proof. By definition, a cohesive $\infty$-topos is in particular a local $\infty$-topos. □

In an ordinary topos every morphism has a unique factorization into an epimorphism followed by a monomorphism, the *image factorization*.




In an $\infty$-topos this notion generalizes to a tower of factorizations.

**Proposition 5.1.114.** *In an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ for any $-2 \leq k \leq \infty$, every morphism $f : X \to Y$ admits a factorization*




*into a $k$-connected morphism, def. 5.1.104 followed by a $k$-truncated morphism, def. 5.1.47, and the space of choices of such factorizations is contractible.*

This is [L-Topos], example 5.2.8.18.

**Remark 5.1.115.** For $k = -1$ this is the immediate generalization of the (epi,mono) factorization system in ordinary toposes. In particular, the 0-image factorization of a morphism between 0-truncated objects is the ordinary image factorization.

For $k = 1$ this is the generalization of the (essentially surhective and full, faithful) factorization system for functors between groupoids.

#### 5.1.7.2 Presentations

We discuss presentations of connected and *pointed* connected objects in an $\infty$-topos by presheaves of pointed or reduced simplicial sets.

**Observation 5.1.116.** Under the presentation $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq (\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}})^\circ$, a Kan complex $X \in \mathrm{sSet}$ presents an $n$-connected $\infty$-groupoid precisely if

1. $X$ is inhabited (not empty);

2. all simplicial homotopy groups of $X$ in degree $k \leq n$ are trivial.

**Definition 5.1.117.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ a simplicial set $X \in \mathrm{sSet}$ is *$n$-reduced* if it has a single $k$-simplex for all $k \leq n$, hence if its $n$-skeleton is the point

$$\mathrm{sk}_n X = * .$$

For *0-reduced* we also just say *reduced*. Write

$$\mathrm{sSet}_n \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sSet}$$

for the full subcategory of $n$-reduced simplicial sets.

**Proposition 5.1.118.** *The $n$-reduced simplicial sets form a reflective subcategory*

$$\mathrm{sSet}_n \underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{\mathrm{red}_n}{\longleftarrow}} \mathrm{sSet}$$

*of that of simplicial sets, where the reflector* $\mathrm{red}_n$ *identifies all the $n$-vertices of a given simplicial set, in other words* $\mathrm{red}_n(X) = X/\mathrm{sk}_n X$ *for $X$ a simplicial set.*

*The inclusion* $\mathrm{sSet}_n \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sSet}$ *uniquely factors through the forgetful functor* $\mathrm{sSet}^{*/} \to \mathrm{sSet}$ *from pointed simplicial sets, and that factorization is co-reflective*

$$\mathrm{sSet}_n \underset{E_{n+1}}{\overset{\hookrightarrow}{\longleftarrow}} \mathrm{sSet}^{*/} \; .$$

*Here the coreflector $E_{n+1}$ sends a pointed simplicial set $* \stackrel{x}{\to} X$ to the sub-object $E_{n+1}(X,x)$ – the $(n+1)$-*Eilenberg subcomplex *(e.g. def. 8.3 in [May67]) – of cells whose $n$-faces coincide with the base point, hence to the fiber*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E_{n+1}(X,x) & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{*\} & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{cosk}_n X \end{array}$$

*of the projection to the $n$-coskeleton.*

*For $(* \to X) \in \mathrm{sSet}^{*/}$ such that $X \in \mathrm{sSet}$ is Kan fibrant and $n$-connected, the counit $E_{n+1}(X,*) \to X$ is a homotopy equivalence.*

The last statement appears for instance as part of theorem 8.4 in [May67].

**Proposition 5.1.119.** *Let $C$ be a site with a terminal object and let $\mathbf{H} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$. Then under the presentation $\mathbf{H} \simeq ([C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}})^\circ$ every pointed $n$-connected object in $\mathbf{H}$ is presented by a presheaf of $n$-reduced simplicial sets, under the canonical inclusion $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_n] \hookrightarrow [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$.*

Proof. Let $X \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ be a simplicial presheaf presenting the given object. Then its objectwise Kan fibrant replacement $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty X$ is still a presentation, fibrant in the global projective model structure. Since the terminal object in $\mathbf{H}$ is presented by the terminal simplicial presheaf and since by assumption on $C$ this is representable and hence cofibrant in the projective model structure, the point inclusion is presented by a morphism of simplicial presheaves $* \to \mathrm{Ex}^\infty X$, hence by a presheaf of pointed simplicial sets $(* \to \mathrm{Ex}^\infty X) \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}^{*/}]$. So with observation 5.1.118 we obtain the presheaf of $n$-reduced simplicial sets

$$E_{n+1}(\mathrm{Ex}^\infty X, *) \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_n] \hookrightarrow [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

and the inclusion $E_{n+1}(\mathrm{Ex}^\infty X, *) \to \mathrm{Ex}^\infty X$ is a global weak equivalence, hence a local weak equivalence, hence exhibits $E_{n+1}(\mathrm{Ex}^\infty X, *)$ as another presentation of the object in question. □

**Proposition 5.1.120.** *The category* $\mathrm{sSet}_0$ *of reduced simplicial sets carries a left proper combinatorial model category structure whose weak equivalences and cofibrations are those in* $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ *under the inclusion* $\mathrm{sSet}_0 \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sSet}$.

Proof. The existence of the model structure itself is prop. V.6.2 in [GoJa99]. That this is left proper combinatorial follows for instance from prop. A.2.6.13 in [L-Topos], taking the set $C_0$ there to be

$$C_0 := \{\mathrm{red}(\Lambda^k[n] \to \Delta[n])\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}, 0\leq k\leq n}\,,$$

the image under of the horn inclusions (the generating cofibrations in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$) under the left adjoint, from observation 5.1.118, to the inclusion functor. □

**Lemma 5.1.121.** *Under the inclusion* $\mathrm{sSet}_0 \to \mathrm{sSet}$ *a fibration with respect to the model structure from prop. 5.1.120 maps to a fibration in* $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ *precisely if it has the right lifting property against the morphism* $(* \to S^1) := \mathrm{red}(\Delta[0] \to \Delta[1])$.

*In particular it maps fibrant objects to fibrant objects.*

The first statement appears as lemma 6.6. in [GoJa99]. The second (an immediate consequence) as corollary 6.8.

**Proposition 5.1.122.** *The adjunction*

$$\mathrm{sSet}_0 \underset{E_1}{\overset{i}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}^{*/}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

*from observation 5.1.7.2 is a Quillen adjunction between the model structure form prop. 5.1.120 and the co-slice model structure, prop. 5.1.42, of* $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ *under the point. This presents the full inclusion*

$$\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}_{\geq 1} \hookrightarrow \infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}$$

*of connected pointed* $\infty$*-groupoids into all pointed* $\infty$*-groupoids.*

Proof. It is clear that the inclusion preserves cofibrations and acyclic cofibrations, in fact all weak equivalences. Since the point is necessarily cofibrant in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$, the model structure on the right is by prop. 5.1.46 indeed a presentation of $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}$.

We claim now that the derived $\infty$-adjunction of this Quillen adjunction presents a homotopy full and faithful inclusion whose essential image consists of the connected pointed objects. For homotopy full- and faithfulness it is sufficient to show that for the derived functors there is a natural weak equivalence

$$\mathrm{id} \simeq \mathbb{R}E_1 \circ \mathbb{L}i\,.$$

This is the case, because by prop. 5.1.121 the composite derived functors are computed by the composite ordinary functors precomposed with a fibrant replacement functor $P$, so that we have a natural morphism

$$X \xrightarrow{\simeq} PX = E_1 \circ i(PX) \simeq (\mathbb{R}E_1) \circ (\mathbb{L}i)(X)\,.$$

Hence $\mathbb{L}i$ is homotopy full-and faithful and by prop. 5.1.119 its essential image consists of the connected pointed objects. □

### 5.1.8 Groupoids

In any $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ we may consider groupoids *internal* to $\mathbf{H}$, in the sense of internal category theory (as exposed for instance in the introduction of [L-Cat]).

Such a *groupoid object* $\mathcal{G}$ in $\mathbf{H}$ is an $\mathbf{H}$-object $\mathcal{G}_0$ "of $\mathcal{G}$-objects" together with an $\mathbf{H}$-object $\mathcal{G}_1$ "of $\mathcal{G}$-morphisms" equipped with source and target assigning morphisms $s, t : \mathcal{G}_1 \to \mathcal{G}_0$, an identity-assigning morphism $i : \mathcal{G}_0 \to \mathcal{G}_1$ and a composition morphism $\mathcal{G}_1 \times_{\mathcal{G}_0} \mathcal{G}_1 \to \mathcal{G}_1$ that all satisfy the axioms of a groupoid (unitalness, associativity, existence of inverses) up to coherent homotopy in $\mathbf{H}$. One way to formalize what it means for these axioms to hold up to coherent homotopy is the following.

One notes that ordinary groupoids, i.e. groupoid objects internal to Set, are characterized by the fact that their nerves are simplicial objects $\mathcal{G}_\bullet : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Set}$ in Set such that all groupoidal Segal maps (see def. 5.1.124 below) are isomorphisms. This turns out to be a characterization that makes sense generally internal to higher categories: a groupoid object in $\mathbf{H}$ is an $\infty$-functor $\mathcal{G} : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathbf{H}$ such that all groupoidal Segal morphisms are equivalences in $\mathbf{H}$. This defines an $\infty$-category $\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H})$ of groupoid objects in $\mathbf{H}$.

Here a subtlety arises that is the source of a lot of interesting structure in higher topos theory: by the discussion in 3.1 the very objects of $\mathbf{H}$ are already to be regarded as "structured $\infty$-groupoids" themselves. Indeed, there is a full embedding $\mathrm{const} : \mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H})$ that forms constant simplicial objects and thus regards every object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ as a groupoid object which, even though it has a trivial object of morphisms, already has a structured $\infty$-groupoid of objects. This embedding is in fact reflective, with the reflector given by forming the $\infty$-colimit over a simplicial diagram

$$\mathbf{H} \underset{\mathrm{const}}{\overset{\varinjlim}{\hookleftarrow\!\!\longrightarrow}} \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H}) \; .$$

For $\mathcal{G}$ a groupoid object in $\mathbf{H}$, the object $\varinjlim \mathcal{G}_\bullet$ in $\mathbf{H}$ may be thought of as the $\infty$-groupoid obtained from "gluing together the object of objects of $\mathcal{G}$ along the object of morphisms of $\mathcal{G}$". This idea that groupoid objects in an $\infty$-topos are like structured $\infty$-groupoids together with gluing information is formalized by the theorem that groupoid objects in $\mathbf{H}$ are equivalent to the *effective epimorphisms* $Y \twoheadrightarrow X$ in $\mathbf{H}$, the intrinsic notion of *cover* (of $X$ by $Y$) in $\mathbf{H}$. The effective epimorphism / cover corresponding to a groupoid object $\mathcal{G}$ is the colimiting cocone $\mathcal{G}_0 \twoheadrightarrow \varinjlim \mathcal{G}_\bullet$ . This state of affairs is a fundamental property of $\infty$-toposes, and as such part of the $\infty$-*Giraud axioms* prop. 3.1.5.

The following statement refines the third $\infty$-Giraud axiom, prop. 3.1.5.

**Theorem 5.1.123.** *There is a natural equivalence of $\infty$-categories*

$$\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H}) \simeq (\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]})_{\mathrm{eff}} \, ,$$

*where $(\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]})_{\mathrm{eff}}$ is the full sub-$\infty$-category of the arrow category $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]}$ of $\mathbf{H}$ on the effective epimorphisms, Definition 5.1.65.*

This appears below Corollary 6.2.3.5 in [L-Topos].

**5.1.8.1 General abstract** We briefly recall the notion of *groupoid objects* in an $\infty$-topos from [L-Topos] with a note on how this notion axiomatizes that of $\infty$-groupoids with geometric structure and *equipped with an atlas* (a choice of *object of objects*) in 5.1.8.1.1. Then we discuss the notion of the $\infty$-group of *bisections* associated to such a choice of atlas in 5.1.8.1.2 and how these arrange to *Lie-Rinehart pairs* describing $\infty$-groupoids with atlases. Finally, by the 1-image factorization every morphism in an $\infty$-topos induces an atlas on its 1-image $\infty$-groupoid. This universal construction we identify as a generalization of the traditional notion of Atiyah groupoids, which we discuss in 5.1.8.1.3.

- 5.1.8.1.1 – Atlases;
- 5.1.8.1.2 – Group of bisections;
- 5.1.8.1.3 – Atiyah groupoids.

**5.1.8.1.1 Atlases** On the one hand, *every* object in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ may be thought of as being an $\infty$-groupoid equipped with certain structure, notably with geometric or cohesive structure. On the other hand, traditional notions of geometric groupoids, such as *Lie groupoids* (discussed in detail in 6.4.4 below), typically involve (often implicitly) more data: the additional choice of an *atlas*, def. 5.1.66. An extreme example is the *pair groupoid* on some space $X$, which we discuss as example 5.1.129 below. As just an object of $\mathbf{H}$ every pair groupoid is trivial: it is equivalent to the point; but what traditonal literature really means (often implicitly) by the pair groupoid is the groupoid-with-atlas $X \to *$ with $X$ regarded as an atlas of the point.

Abstractly, an atlas on an $\infty$-groupoid in $\mathbf{H}$ is just a 1-epimorphism in $\mathbf{H}$. Here we discuss this notion of $\infty$-*groupoids with atlas*. This gives us occasion to put one of the Giraud-Rezk-Lurie axioms, prop. 3.1.5, into a higher geometric context and to establish some perspetive on $\infty$-groupoids which is crucial in the succeeding discussion.

**Definition 5.1.124.** A *groupoid object* in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is a simplicial object

$$\mathcal{G} : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathbf{H}$$

such that all its groupoidal Segal maps are equivalences: for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and every partition $[k] \cup [k'] \to [n]$ into two subsets with exactly one joint element $\{*\} = [k] \cap [k']$, the canonical diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{G}[n] & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{G}[k] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{G}[k'] & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{G}[*] \end{array}$$

is an $\infty$-pullback diagram.

Write

$$\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H}) \subset \mathrm{Func}(\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathbf{H})$$

for the full subcategory of the $\infty$-category of simplicial objects in $\mathbf{H}$ on the groupoid objects.

This is def. 6.1.2.7 of [L-Topos], using prop. 6.1.2.6.

**Example 5.1.125.** For $Y \to X$ any morphism in $\mathbf{H}$, there is a groupoid object $\check{C}(Y \to X)$ which in degree $n$ is the $(n+1)$-fold $\infty$-fiber product of $Y$ over $X$ with itself

$$\check{C}(Y \to X) : [n] \mapsto Y^{\times_X^{n+1}}$$

This appears in [L-Topos] as prop. 6.1.2.11. The following statement strengthens the third $\infty$-Giraud axiom of prop. 3.1.5.

**Theorem 5.1.126.** *In an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ we have*

1. *Every groupoid object in $\mathbf{H}$ is* effective*: the canonical morphism $\mathcal{G}_0 \to \varinjlim \mathcal{G}_\bullet$ is an effective epimorphism, and $\mathcal{G}$ is equivalent to the Čech nerve of this effective epimorphism.*

   *Moreover, this extends to a natural equivalence of $\infty$-categories*

   $$\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H}) \simeq (\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]})_{\mathrm{eff}} \,,$$

   *where on the right we have the full sub-$\infty$-category of the arrow category of $\mathbf{H}$ on the effective epimorphisms.*

2. *The $\infty$-pullback along any morphism preserves $\infty$-colimits*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \lim_{\to i} f^* P_i & \simeq & f^* \lim_{\to i} P_i & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\to i} P_i \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ & & Y & \xrightarrow{f} & X \end{array}$$

This are two of the *Giraud-Rezk-Lurie axioms*, prop. 3.1.5, that characterize $\infty$-toposes. (The equivalence of $\infty$-categories in the first point follows with the remark below corollary 6.2.3.5 of [L-Topos].)

**Remark 5.1.127.** If geometric structure is understood (as in a cohesive $\infty$-topos), there is a slight ambiguity in the word *groupoid* as usually used: in one sense every object of an $\infty$-topos itself is already a *parameterized $\infty$-groupoid* (an $\infty$-sheaf of $\infty$-groupoids, def. 3.1.1). However, for instance the literature on *Lie groupoid* theory often (and often implicitly) takes a choice of *object of objects* as part of the data of a Lie groupoid. For instance the notion of *group of bisection* of a Lie groupoid $X$ or of its associated *Lie algebroid* both require that the inclusion of a manifold of objects is specified, a morphism $X_0 \to X$. This choice is genuine extra structure on $X$, as it is not in general preserved by equivalences on $X$. The main technical requirement on this choice is that it indeed captures "all objects" of the groupoid, up to equivalence. One often says that the inclusion has to be an *atlas* of $X$. In the general abstract terms of $\infty$-topos theory this means simply that $X_0 \to X$ is a *1-epimorphism*, remark 5.1.66.

In view of this we interpret theorem 5.1.126: if we follow remark 5.1.66 and call a 1-epimorphism in an $\infty$-topos an *atlas* of its codomain parameterized $\infty$-groupoid, then the *groupoid objects* of def. 5.1.124 are really the "parameterized $\infty$-groupoids equipped with a choice of atlas". (In traditional geometric groupoid theory the atlas (the domain object) is usually required to be 0-truncated, and this is often the choice of interest, also in applications of higher geometry, but in general every 1-epimorphism qualifies as an *atlas* in this sense.)

With this understood, the following definitions axiomatize and generalize standard constructions in traditional geometric groupoid theory. That they indeed reduce to these traditional notions is shown below in 6.4.4.

**Example 5.1.128.** For $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ an $\infty$-group, 5.1.9, its delooping $\mathbf{B}G$ is essentially uniquely pointed, and this point inclusion $* \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\to \mathbf{B}G$ is a 1-epimorphism (for instance by prop. 5.1.67). Hence this is the canonical incarnation of the delooping of $G$ as an $\infty$-groupoid with atlas. In terms of this we may read theorem 5.1.151 as saying that *$\infty$-groups are equivalent to their delooping $\infty$-groupoids with canonical atlases.*

**Example 5.1.129.** By def. 5.1.104 an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is called *inhabited* if the canonical morphism to the terminal object is a 1-epimorphism. Therefore for $X$ inhabited the map $X \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\to *$ may be regarded as an $\infty$-groupoid with atlas. To see what this means consider its Čech nerve, which is of course of the form

$$\left( \cdots \mathrel{\substack{\longrightarrow\\\longrightarrow\\\longrightarrow}} X \times X \underset{p_2}{\overset{p_1}{\rightrightarrows}} X \right) \in \mathbf{H}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}.$$

This is a groupoid object whose objects are the points of $X$, whose morphisms are ordered pairs of points in $X$, and where composition is given in the evident way. This is what in the literature is known as the *pair groupoid* of $X$.

$$\mathrm{Pair}(X) := \left( X \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\to * \right) \in (\mathbf{H}^{\Delta^1})_{\mathrm{eff}} \simeq \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H}).$$

Almost trivial as it may seem, the pair groupoid plays an important role for instance in the theory of Atiyah groupoids, discussed below in 5.1.8.1.3.

As these examples show, often it is more convenient to work with the atlas than with the groupoid object that it equivalently corresponds to. The following propositions shows how to compute $\infty$-limits in this perspective.

**Proposition 5.1.130.** *An $\infty$-limit of a diagram in in $(\mathbf{H}^{\Delta^1})_{\mathrm{eff}}$ is given by the (-1)-truncation projection of the $\infty$-limit of the underlying diagram in $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta^1}$. Hence if $A : J \to (\mathbf{H}^{\Delta^1})_{\mathrm{eff}}$ is a diagram with underlying diagrams $X := \partial_1 \circ A$ and $Y := \partial_2 \circ A$ in $\mathbf{H}$, then*

$$\varprojlim_j A_j \simeq \left( \varprojlim_j X_j \to \mathrm{im}_1 \left( \varprojlim_j X_j \longrightarrow \varprojlim_j Y_j \right) \right) .$$

Proof. One checks the defining universal property by the orthogonal factorization system of prop. 5.1.59. □

**5.1.8.1.2 Group of Bisections** We discuss here the description of $\infty$-groupoids $X \in \mathbf{H}$ equipped with *atlases* $X_0 \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\rightarrow X$ in terms of their $\infty$-groups $\mathbf{Aut}_X(X_0)$ of autoequivalences of $X_0$ over $X$. In the case that $\mathbf{H}$ is the $\infty$-topos of smooth cohesion described below in 6.4 and for the example that $X$ is presented by a traditional *Lie groupoid* this is the group which is traditionally known as the *group of bisections* of $X$, this we discuss in 6.4.4.1 below. Since this is a good descriptive term also in the general case, we here generally speak of $\mathbf{Aut}_X(X_0)$ as the $\infty$-*group of bisections*.

Due to their special construction, groups of bisections have special properties. In the traditional literature these are best known after Lie differentiation: again for $X$ a Lie groupoid, the pair $(C^\infty(X_0), \mathrm{Lie}(\mathbf{Aut}_X(X_0)))$ consisting of the associative algebra of smooth functions on $X_0$ and the Lie algebra of the group of bisections is known as the *Lie-Rinehart algebra pair* associated with the groupoid. It enjoys the special property that each of the two algebras is equipped with an action of the other algebra in a compatible way. This is an equivalent way of encoding the *Lie algebroid* associated with the Lie groupoid $X$.

**Definition 5.1.131.** For $X_\bullet \in \mathbf{H}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$ a groupoid object in an $\infty$-topos, def. 5.1.124, with $\phi_X : X_0 \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\rightarrow X$ the corresponding 1-epimorphism by theorem 5.1.126 (the *atlas* by remark 5.1.127), we say that the *group of bisections* $\mathbf{BisSect}(\phi_X) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ of $X_\bullet$ (also written $\mathbf{BiSect}_X(X_0)$ if the morphism $p_X$ is understood) is the relative automorphism group, def. 5.1.35, of $X_0$ over $X$:

$$\mathbf{BiSect}_X(X_0) := \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(p_X) := \prod_X \mathbf{Aut}(p_X) .$$

**Remark 5.1.132.** We discuss how this general abstract notion reduces to that of the group of bisections of a Lie groupoid as traditionally defined below in prop. 6.4.23.

**Definition 5.1.133.** The *atlas automorphisms* $\mathbf{AtlasAut}_X(X_0)$ of the atlas $\phi_X : X_0 \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\rightarrow X$ is the 1-image of the morphism $p_X$ of def. 5.1.38, hence the factorization of $p_X$ as

$$\mathbf{BiSect}_X(X_0) \overset{p}{\longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\rightarrow} \mathbf{AtlasAut}_X(X_0) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X) .$$

**Proposition 5.1.134.** *For $X_\bullet \in \mathbf{H}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$ a groupoid object in an $\infty$-topos, def. 5.1.124, with $\phi_X : X_0 \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\rightarrow X$ the corresponding 1-epimorphism by theorem 5.1.126, we have a fiber sequence*

$$\Omega_{\phi_X}[X_0, X] \hookrightarrow \mathbf{BiSect}_X(X_0) \overset{p}{\longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\rightarrow} \mathbf{AtlasAut}_X(X_0)$$

*in* $\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ *which exhibits* $\mathbf{BiSect}_X(X_0)$ *as an $\infty$-group extension of* $\mathbf{AtlasAut}_X(X_0)$ *by the automorphism $\infty$-group of the atlas $X_0$ inside $X$.*

Proof. Since $\mathbf{AtlasAut}_X(X_0)$ is by definition the 1-image of the morphism $p : \mathbf{BiSect}_X(X_0) \to \mathbf{Aut}(X)$ the statement is equivalent to the diagram

$$\Omega_\nabla[X,X] \hookrightarrow \mathbf{BisSect}_X(X_0) \overset{p}{\twoheadrightarrow} \mathbf{Aut}(X)$$

being a fiber sequence, since, by the pasting law, with the bottom square in the following diagram being an $\infty$-pullback, the top square is precisely so if the outer rectangle is.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega_\nabla[X_0, X] & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{BiSect}_X(X_0) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{p} \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{AtlasAut}_X(X_0) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Aut}(X) \end{array}$$

That the outer rectangle is an $\infty$-pullback is the statement of prop. 5.1.41. □

**Remark 5.1.135.** The sequence of prop. 5.1.134 is actually the sequence of bisection groups induced by a fiber sequence of $\infty$-groupoids with atlases: the generalized *Atiyah sequence*. This we discuss below in 5.1.8.1.3.

**Example 5.1.136.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ inhabited, the group of bisections of the pair groupoid $\mathrm{Pair}(X)$, example 5.1.129, is canonically equivalent to $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$:

$$\mathbf{BiSect}(\mathrm{Pair}(X)) \simeq \mathbf{Aut}(X)\,.$$

**Example 5.1.137.** For $X \in \mathbf{H} \overset{\mathrm{const}}{\hookrightarrow} \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H})$ the constant groupoid object on $X$, its group of bisections is the trivial group

$$\mathbf{BiSect}(\mathrm{const}X) \simeq *\,.$$

Proof. By example 5.1.31 the identity morphism on $X$ is the terminal object in the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$. □

**5.1.8.1.3 Atiyah groupoids** By the 1-image factorization, def. 5.1.56, every morphism in an $\infty$-topos induces an atlas for an $\infty$-groupoid, in the sense discussed above in 5.1.8.1.1. If the codomain is a pointed connected object, hence of the form $\mathbf{B}G$ for some $\infty$-group $G$, then we may equivalently think of this $\infty$-groupoid with atlas as associated to the corresponding $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle over the domain, discussed below in 5.1.11. One finds that this construction generalizes the traditional notion of the Lie groupoid which Lie integrates the *Atiyah Lie algebroid* of a smooth principal bundle (this traditional example we discuss in 6.4.4.2 below). Therefore we generally speak of *Atiyah $\infty$-groupoids*.

A special case this construction relevant for codomains that are moduli $\infty$-stacks specifically for *differential* cocycles are *Courant groupoids* which we discuss below in 5.2.17.6.

**Note.** This section partly refers to definitions and results in the theory of principal $\infty$-bundles which we discuss only below in 5.1.11. We nevertheless group the discussion of Atiyah groupoids here since one of the key aspects of their general definition in $\infty$-toposes is that they apply much more generally than just to principal $\infty$-bundles.

A fundamental construction in the traditional theory of $G$-principal bundles $P \to X$ is that of the corresponding *Atiyah Lie algebroid* and that of the Lie groupoid which integrates it, which we will call the *Atiyah groupoid* $\mathrm{At}(P)$. In words this is the Lie groupoid whose manifold of objects is $X$, and whose morphisms between two points are the $G$-equivariant maps between the fibers of $P$ over these points. Observing that a $G$-equivariant map between two $G$-torsors over the point is fixed by its image on any one point, this groupoid is usually written as on the left of

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{At}(P) & \to & \mathrm{Pair}(X) \\ = & & = \\ \left( \begin{array}{c} (P \times P)/_{\mathrm{diag}} G \\ \downarrow\uparrow\downarrow \\ X \end{array} \right) & & \left( \begin{array}{c} X \times X \\ \downarrow\uparrow\downarrow \\ X \end{array} \right) \end{array} .$$

There is a conceptual simplification to this construction when expressed in terms of the smooth moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G$ of $G$-principal bundles (in the smooth model for cohesion, discussed below in 6.4): if $\nabla^0 : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the map which modulates $P \to X$, then

**Proposition 5.1.138.** *The space of morphisms of* $\mathrm{At}(P)$ *is naturally identified with the* homotopy fiber product *of* $\nabla^0$ *with itself:*

$$(P \times P)/_{\mathrm{diag}} G \simeq X \underset{\mathbf{B}G}{\times} X .$$

*Moreover, the canonical* atlas *of the Atiyah groupoid, given by the canonical inclusion* $p_{\mathrm{At}(P)} : X \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{At}(P)$ , *is equivalently the homotopy-colimiting cocone under the full Čech nerve of the classifying map* $\nabla^0$*:*

$$\cdots\cdots X \underset{\mathbf{B}G}{\times} X \underset{\mathbf{B}G}{\times} X \;\substack{\longrightarrow\\ \longleftarrow\\ \longrightarrow\\ \longleftarrow\\ \longrightarrow}\; X \underset{\mathbf{B}G}{\times} X \;\substack{\longrightarrow\\ \longleftarrow\\ \longrightarrow}\; X \xrightarrow{p_{\mathrm{At}(P)}} \left( \varinjlim_n X^{\times^{n+1}_{\mathbf{B}G}} \right) \simeq \mathrm{At}(P) \; .$$

This is by direct verification, the details of this example are discussed below in 6.4.4.2. In terms of groups of bisections the above proposition 5.1.138 becomes:

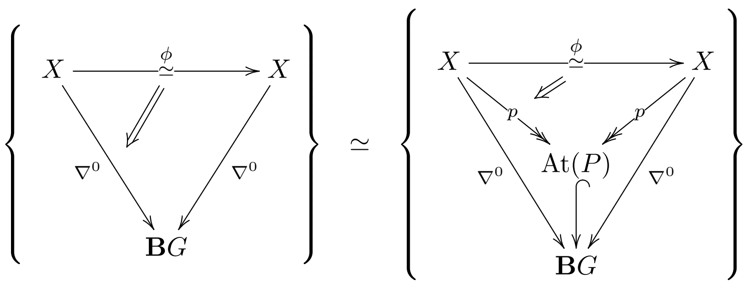
**Proposition 5.1.139.** *The Atiyah groupoid* $\mathrm{At}(P)$ *of a smooth $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$ is the Lie groupoid which is universal with the property that its group of bisections is naturally equivalent to the group of automorphisms of the modulating map* $\nabla^0$ *of $P \to X$ in the slice:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{BiSect}(\mathrm{At}(P)) & \simeq & \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla^0) \\ = & & = \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\phi} & X \\ & {\scriptstyle p_{\mathrm{At}(P)}} \searrow \;\swArrow\; \swarrow {\scriptstyle p_{\mathrm{At}(P)}} & \\ & \mathrm{At}(P) & \end{array} \right\} & & \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\phi} & X \\ & {\scriptstyle \nabla^0} \searrow \;\swArrow\; \swarrow {\scriptstyle \nabla^0} & \\ & \mathbf{B}G & \end{array} \right\} \end{array} .$$

In terms of 1-image factorizations we may naturally understand proposition 5.1.138 as saying that (the atlas of) the Atiyah groupoid provides the essentially unique factorization

$$\nabla^0 : \; X \xrightarrow{p_{\mathrm{At}(P)}} \mathrm{At}(P) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{B}G$$

of the modulating map $\nabla^0$ of $P \to X$ by a 1-epimorphism of stacks followed by a 1-monomorphism, namely the *first relative Postnikov stage* of $\nabla^0$, in the context of smooth stacks. As for traditional relative Postnikov theory in traditional homotopy theory, this characterizes $\mathrm{At}(P)$ uniquely as receiving an epimorphism on smooth connected components from $X$ (the atlas $p_{\mathrm{At}(P)}$), while at the same time having a *fully faithful embedding* into $\mathbf{B}G$. This being fully faithful directly implies that the components of any natural transformation from $\nabla^0$ to itself necessarily factor through this fully faithful inclusion:



This relation translates to a proof of prop. 5.1.139.

This discussion of Atiyah groupoids of traditional $G$-principal bundles generalizes directly now to bundles in an $\infty$-topos.

**Definition 5.1.140.** Let $\phi : X \to \mathbf{F}$ a morphism in $\mathbf{H}$. We say that its 1-image projection, def. 5.1.56,

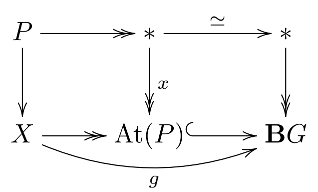
$$X \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{im}_1(\phi) \ ,$$

regarded as an $\infty$-groupoid $\mathrm{im}_1(\phi)$ with atlas $X$ by remark 5.1.66, is the *Atiyah groupoid* $At(\phi) \in \mathrm{Epi}_1(\mathbf{H})$ of $\phi$.

Here for the direct generalization of the traditional notion of Atiyah groupoids we set $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{B}G$ the delooping of some $\infty$-group. But the definition and many of its uses does not depend on this restriction. An exception os the following fact, which generalizes a standard theorem about Atiyah groupoids known from textbooks on differential geometry.

**Proposition 5.1.141.** *For $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ an $\infty$-group, every $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ in $\mathbf{H}$, def. 5.1.192, over an inhabited object $X$, def. 5.1.104, is equivalently the source-fiber of a transitive higher groupoid $\mathcal{G} \in \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H})$ with vertex $\infty$-group $G$. Here in particular we can set $\mathcal{G} = \mathrm{At}(P)$.*

Proof. For $P \to X$ a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle, write $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ for the map that modulates it by theorem 5.1.207. Then the outer rectangle of



is an $\infty$-pullback by that theorem 5.1.207. Also the right sub-square is an $\infty$-pullback (for any global point $x \in X$) because by $\infty$-pullback stability of 1-epimorphisms (prop. 5.1.69, prop. 5.1.61) and 1-monomorphisms (prop. 5.1.60), the top right morphism is a 1-monomorphism from an inhabited object to the terminal object, hence is not just a 1-mono but also a 1-epi and hence is an equivalence. Now by the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks, prop. 5.1.2, also the left sub-square is an $\infty$-pullback and this exhibits $P$ as the source fiber of $\mathrm{At}(P)$ over $x \in X$. □

**Proposition 5.1.142.** *For $\phi : X \to \mathbf{F}$ a morphism, there is a canonical equivalence*

$$\mathbf{BiSect}(\mathrm{At}(\phi)) \simeq \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\phi)$$

*between the $\infty$-group of bisections, def. 5.1.131, of the higher Atiyah groupoid of $\phi$, def. 5.1.140, and the $\mathbf{H}$-valued automorphism $\infty$-group of $\phi$*

*Moreover, the $\infty$-group of bisections of the higher Atiyah $\infty$-groupoid sits in a homotopy fiber sequence of $\infty$-groups of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \Omega_\phi[X, \mathbf{F}] & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{BiSect}(\mathbf{At}(\phi)) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Aut}(X) \;, \\ & & \simeq & & \\ & & \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\phi) & & \end{array}$$

*where on the right we have the canonical forgetful map.*

Proof. This is the restriction of the statement of prop. 5.1.73 to those endomorphisms that are equivalences. □

**Definition 5.1.143** (Atiyah sequence)**.** For $\phi : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ a cocycle, write

$$\mathrm{At}(\phi) \xrightarrow{p} \mathrm{Pair}(X)$$

for the morphism of groupoid objects to the *pair groupoid* of $X$, example 5.1.129, given by the canonical map of atlases

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{im}_1(\phi) & \longrightarrow & * \end{array} .$$

We say that the $\infty$-fiber sequence of this morphism over $X$

$$\mathrm{ad}(\phi) \longrightarrow \mathrm{At}(\phi) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Pair}(X) \;,$$

is the *Atiyah sequence* of $\phi$, hence the sequence given by the $\infty$-pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{ad}(\phi) & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{At}(\phi) & \xrightarrow{p} & \mathrm{Pair}(X) \end{array} .$$

**Proposition 5.1.144.** *Given $\phi : X \to \mathbf{B}G$, the induced sequence of groups of bisections, def. 5.1.131, is the sequence of prop. 5.1.134.*

Proof. By prop. 5.1.136 and prop. 5.1.142 the morphism of groupoid objects $\mathrm{At}(\phi) \to \mathrm{Pair}(X)$ induces the morphism of groups of bisections $\mathbf{Aut}(\phi) \to \mathbf{Aut}(X)$. Therefore it remains to show that $\mathrm{ad}(\phi) \to \mathrm{At}(\phi)$ is as claimed.

By prop. 5.1.130 we obtain $\mathrm{ad}(\phi)$ as the 1-image factorization of the limit in $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta^1}$ over

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & X & \longleftarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}} \\ \mathrm{im}_1(\phi) & \longrightarrow & * & \longleftarrow & X \end{array} ,$$

hence the 1-image factorization of the diagonal $X \twoheadrightarrow X \times \mathrm{im}_1(\phi)$ . Moreover by prop. 5.1.142 the group of bisections of this image factorization is equivalently that of the morphism itself. Now a bisection of the diagonal, hence a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X \\ & \swArrow & \\ & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & X \times \mathrm{im}_1(\phi) & \end{array}$$

is equivalently a pair of a diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow[\simeq]{f} & X \\ & \swArrow & \\ {}_{\mathrm{id}}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\mathrm{id}} \\ & X & \end{array} \quad , \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow[\simeq]{f} & X \\ & \swArrow & \\ \searrow & & \swarrow \\ & \mathrm{im}_1(\phi) & \end{array}$$

that share the top horizontal morphism, as indicated. By example 5.1.137 the $\infty$-groupoid of diagrams as on the left is contractible, hence up to essentially unique equivalence we have $f = \mathrm{id}$. This reduces the diagram on the right to an automorphism of $\phi$, as claimed. □

The Atiyah groupoid acts on sections of the corresponding bundle and its associated bundles:

**Definition 5.1.145.** For $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ an $\infty$-group, for $P \to X$ a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle modulated by a map $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$, and for $\rho : V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$ an action of $G$ on some $V \in \mathbf{H}$, write

$$(P \times_G V)//\mathrm{At}(P) \to \mathrm{At}(P)$$

for the $\infty$-pullback of $\rho$ along the defining 1-monomorphism from the Atiyah groupoid of $P$. Then by the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, and by the characterization of the universal $\rho$-associated bundle, prop. 5.1.246, we have an $\infty$-pullback square as on the left of the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} P \times_G V & \longrightarrow & (P \times_G V)//\mathrm{At}(P) & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\rho} \\ X & \twoheadrightarrow & \mathrm{At}(P) & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} \; .$$

This exhibits $(P \times_G V)//\mathrm{At}(P)$ as a groupoid action of $\mathrm{At}(P)$ on the associated $V$-fiber bundle $P \times_G V \to X$. This we call the *canonical Atiyah-groupoid action on sections.*

### 5.1.9 Groups

Every $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ comes with a notion of $\infty$-*group objects* that generalizes the ordinary notion of group objects in a topos as well as that of grouplike $A_\infty$-spaces in $\mathrm{Top} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ [Sta63b]. Operations of *looping* and *delooping* identify $\infty$-group objects with pointed connected objects. If moreover $\mathbf{H}$ is cohesive then it follows that every connected object is canonically pointed, and hence every connected object uniquely corresponds to an $\infty$-group object.

This section to a large extent collects and reviews general facts about $\infty$-group objects in $\infty$-toposes from [L-Topos] and [L-Alg]. We add some observations that we need later on.

#### 5.1.9.1 General abstract

**Definition 5.1.146.** Write

- $\mathbf{H}^{*/}$ for the $\infty$-category of pointed objects in $\mathbf{H}$;
- $\mathbf{H}_{\geq 1}$ for for the full sub-$\infty$-category of $\mathbf{H}$ on the connected objects;
- $\mathbf{H}^{*/}_{\geq 1}$ for the full sub-$\infty$-category of the pointed and connected objects.

**Definition 5.1.147.** For $f : Y \to Z$ any morphism in $\mathbf{H}$ and $z : * \to Z$ a point, the $\infty$-*fiber* or *homotopy fiber* of $f$ over this point is the $\infty$-pullback $X := * \times_Z Y$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array} .$$

**Definition 5.1.148.** Write

$$\Omega : \mathbf{H}^{*/} \to \mathbf{H}$$

for the $\infty$-functor that sends a pointed object $* \to X$ to its *loop space object*: the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega X & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & X \end{array} .$$

**Remark 5.1.149.** Suppose that also $Y$ is pointed and $f$ is a morphism of pointed objects. Then the $\infty$-fiber of an $\infty$-fiber is the loop object of the base. This means that we have a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \Omega_z Z & \longrightarrow & X & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & Y & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array} .$$

where the outer rectangle is an $\infty$-pullback if the left square is an $\infty$-pullback. This follows from the pasting law prop. 5.1.2.

**Definition 5.1.150.** An $\infty$-*group* in $\mathbf{H}$ is an $A_\infty$-algebra $G$ in $\mathbf{H}$ such that $\pi_0(G)$ is a group object. Write $\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ for the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-groups in $\mathbf{H}$.

This is def. 5.1.3.2 in [L-Alg], together with remark 5.1.3.3.

**Theorem 5.1.151.** *Every loop space object canonically has the structure of an $\infty$-group, and this construction extends to an $\infty$-functor*

$$\Omega : \mathbf{H}^{*/} \to \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H}) .$$

*This constitutes an equivalence of $\infty$-categories*

$$(\Omega \dashv \mathbf{B}) : \ \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H}) \underset{\mathbf{B}}{\overset{\Omega}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{\simeq}}}} \mathbf{H}^{*/}_{\geq 1}$$

*of $\infty$-groups with connected pointed objects in* $\mathbf{H}$.

This is lemma 7.2.2.1 in [L-Topos]. (See also theorem 5.1.3.6 of [L-Alg] where this is the equivalence denoted $\phi_0$ in the proof.)

**Definition 5.1.152.** We call the inverse $\mathbf{B} : \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H}) \to \mathbf{H}^{*/}_{\geq 1}$ the *delooping* functor of $\mathbf{H}$. By convenient abuse of notation we write $\mathbf{B}$ also for the composite $\mathbf{B} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H}) \to \mathbf{H}^{*/}_{\geq 1} \to \mathbf{H}$ with the functor that forgets the basepoint and the connectedness.

**Example 5.1.153.** Given a map from the point $x\colon * \to X$, then its 1-image, def. 5.1.56, is the delooping, def. 5.1.152, of its loop space object, def. 5.1.148

$$x : \; * \twoheadrightarrow \mathbf{B}\Omega_x X \hookrightarrow X \; .$$

**Remark 5.1.154.** While by prop. 4.1.10 every connected object in a cohesive $\infty$-topos has a unique point, nevertheless the homotopy-type of the full hom-$\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}^{*/}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}H)$ of pointed objects in general differs from the hom $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}H)$ of the underlying unpointed objects.

For instance let $\mathbf{H} := \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ and let $G$ be an ordinary group, regarded as a group object in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. Then $\mathbf{H}^{*/}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}G) \simeq \mathrm{Aut}(G)$ is the ordinary automorphism group of $G$, but $\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}G) = \mathrm{AUT}(G)$ is the automorphism 2-group, example 1.2.87.

The following is a key class of examples.

**Definition 5.1.155.** Let $V \in \mathbf{H}$ be a $\kappa$-compact object, for some regular cardinal $\kappa$. By the characterization of prop. 3.1.6, there exists an $\infty$-pullback square in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & \widehat{\mathrm{Obj}}_\kappa \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{\vdash V} & \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa \end{array}$$

Write

$$\mathbf{BAut}(V) := \mathrm{im}(\vdash V)$$

for the 1-image, def. 5.1.64, of the classifying morphism $\vdash V$ of $V$. By definition this comes with an effective epimorphism

$$* \twoheadrightarrow \mathbf{BAut}(V) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa \; ,$$

and hence, by Proposition 5.1.158, it is the delooping of an $\infty$-group

$$\mathbf{Aut}(V) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$$

as indicated. According to example 5.1.153, we call this the *internal automorphism $\infty$-group* of $V$.

In 5.1.9.2.2 we consider presentations of internal automorphism $\infty$-groups, in example 5.1.275 we consider the canonical action of $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$ on $V$.

The more deloopings an $\infty$-group admits, the "more abelian" it is:

**Definition 5.1.156.** A *braided* $\infty$-group in $\mathbf{H}$ is an $\infty$-group $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ equipped with the following equivalent additional structures:

1. a lift of the groupal $A_\infty \simeq E_1$-algebra structure to an $E_2$-algebra structure;
2. the structure of an $\infty$-group on the delooping $\mathbf{B}G$;
3. a choice of double delooping $\mathbf{B}^2 G$.

**Definition 5.1.157.** An *abelian* $\infty$-group in $\mathbf{H}$ is an $\infty$-group $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ equipped with the following equivalent additional structures:

1. a lift of the groupal $A_\infty \simeq E_1$-algebra structure to an $E_\infty$-algebra structure;
2. coinductively: a choice of abelian $\infty$-group structure on its delooping $\mathbf{B}G$.

**Proposition 5.1.158.** *$\infty$-groups $G$ in $\mathbf{H}$ are equivalently those groupoid objects, def. 5.1.124, $\mathcal{G}$ in $\mathbf{H}$ for which $\mathcal{G}_0 \simeq *$.*

This is the statement of the compound equivalence $\phi_3\phi_2\phi_1$ in the proof of theorem 5.1.3.6 in [L-Alg].

**Remark 5.1.159.** This means that for $G$ an $\infty$-group object the Čech nerve extension of its delooping fiber sequence $G \to * \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the simplicial object

$$\cdots \; \overset{\longrightarrow}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longrightarrow}{\longrightarrow}}} \; G \times G \; \overset{\longrightarrow}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\longrightarrow}} \; G \; \rightrightarrows \; * \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\rightarrow \mathbf{B}G$$

that exhibits $G$ as a groupoid object over $*$. In particular it means that for $G$ an $\infty$-group, the essentially unique morphism $* \to \mathbf{B}G$ is an effective epimorphism.

The following simple lemma will have some important applications. Let $\mathbf{H}$ be an $\infty$-topos and let $G \in \mathbf{H}$ be an object equipped with $\infty$-group structure, def. 5.1.150 (or in fact just with group structure in the homotopy category of $\mathbf{H}$). Write

$$G \times G \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id},(-)^{-1})} G \times G \xrightarrow{\cdot} G, \qquad \text{composite: } (-)\cdot(-)^{-1} : G \times G \to G$$

for the morphism in $\mathbf{H}$ given by inversion in one argument following by the group product operation.

**Lemma 5.1.160.** *For $\phi : D \to G$ any morphism in the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, there is a homotopy pullback diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G \times D & \longrightarrow & D \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \phi} \\ G \times G & \xrightarrow[(-)\cdot(-)^{-1}]{} & G \end{array} ,$$

*where the left vertical morphism is in components given by $(g, d) \mapsto (g, g \cdot \phi(d))$. In particular for $\phi = e : * \to G$ the canonical point inclusion, then the left vertical morphism is the diagonal.*

Proof. We check this, below, for the case that $\mathbf{H}$ is 1-localic (def. 3.1.3), by considering a presentation by simplicial presheaves. This includes in particular the case $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. From this the statement follows generally by choosing any defining lex reflection according to def. 3.1.1,

$$\mathbf{H} \overset{\leftarrow}{\hookrightarrow} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \infty\mathrm{Grpd}]$$

and using that both embedding and reflection preserves finite $\infty$-limits.

Now for the special case that $\mathbf{H}$ has a 1-site $C$ of definition (notably $C = *$ for $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$). Then prop. 5.1.170 says that the $\infty$-group object $G$ is represented by a presheaf of simplicial groups (which we denote by the same symbol) $G \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sGrp}] \to [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$. In terms of this the morphism $(-) \cdot (-)^{-1} : G \times G \to G$ is, objectwise over $U \in C$, presented by the simplicial morphism $-_U : G(U) \times G(U) \to G(U)$ that sends $k$-cells $(a, b) : \Delta[k] \to G(U) \times G(U)$ to $a \cdot b^{-1}$, using the degreewise group structure.

We observe first that this morphism is objectwise a Kan fibration and hence a fibration in $[S^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. To see this, let

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda[k]_i & \xrightarrow{(ha,hb)} & G(U) \times G(U) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle j} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle -} \\ \Delta[k] & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & G(U) \end{array}$$

be a lifting problem. Since $G(U)$, being the simplicial set underlying a simplicial group, is a Kan complex, there is a filler $b : \Delta[k] \to G(U)$ of the horn $hb$. Define then a $k$-cell

$$a := \sigma \cdot b\,.$$

This is a filler of $ha$, since the face maps are group homomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_l a &= \delta_l(\sigma \cdot b)\\ &= \delta_l(\sigma)\cdot\delta_l(b)\\ &= \delta_l(\sigma)\cdot(hb)_l\\ &= (ha)_l\end{aligned}.$$

So we have a filler

$$\begin{array}{ccc}\Lambda[k]_i & \xrightarrow{(ha,hb)} & G(U)\times G(U)\\ \downarrow^{j} & \nearrow^{(a,b)} & \downarrow^{-}\\ \Delta[k] & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & G(U)\end{array}\,.$$

and hence $(-)\cdot(-)^{-1} : G\times G \to G$ is represented by a fibration of simplicial presheaves.

Observe then that for any presheaf presentation of $\phi : D \to G$ (which again we denote by the same symbols) there is a pullback diagram of simplicial presheaves

$$\begin{array}{ccc}G & \longrightarrow & D\\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\phi}\\ G\times G & \xrightarrow{-} & G\end{array}\,,$$

where the left vertical morphism is degreewise given by

$$(g,d) \mapsto (g, g\cdot\phi(d))$$

Since, by the above, the bottom morphism is a fibration, this presents a homotopy pullback of simplicial presheaves, hence by prop. 5.1.9 also a homotopy pullback in $\mathbf{H}$. □

#### 5.1.9.2 Presentations

We discuss presentations of the notion of $\infty$-groups, 5.1.9.1, by simplicial groups in a category with weak equivalences.

- 5.1.9.2.2 – Presentation of $\infty$-groups by presheaves of simplicial groups;
- 5.1.9.2.2 – Presentation of automorphism groups

##### 5.1.9.2.1 Presentation of $\infty$-groups by presheaves of simplicial groups

**Definition 5.1.161.** One writes $\overline{W}$ for the composite functor from simplicial groups to simplicial sets given by

$$\overline{W} :\ [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd}] \xrightarrow{[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}},\mathbf{B}]} [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd}] \xrightarrow{[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}},N]} [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \xrightarrow{T} \mathrm{sSet}\ ,$$

where

- $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathbf{B}] : [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grp}] \to [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Grpd}]$ is the functor from simplicial groups to simplicial groupoids that sends degreewise a group to the corresponding one-object groupoid;

- $T : [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \to \mathrm{sSet}$ is the total simplicial set functor, def. 5.1.19.

This simplicial delooping $\overline{W}$ was originally introduced in components in [EM53], now a classical construction. The above formulation is due to [Dus75], see lemma 15 in [St11].

**Remark 5.1.162.** This functor takes values in *reduced* simplicial sets $\mathrm{sSet}_{\geq 1} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sSet}$, those with precisely one vertex.

**Remark 5.1.163.** For $G$ a simplicial group, the simplicial set $\overline{W}G$ is, by corollary 5.1.23, the homotopy colimit over a simplicial diagram in simplicial sets. Below in 5.1.11.4 we see that this simplicial diagram is that presenting the groupoid object $*//G$ which is the action groupoid of $G$ acting trivially on the point.

**Proposition 5.1.164.** *The category* sGrpd *of simplicial groups carries a cofibrantly generated model structure for which the fibrations and the weak equivalences are those of* $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ *under the forgetful functor* $\mathrm{sGrpd} \to \mathrm{sSet}$*.*

Proof. This is theorem 2.3 in [GoJa99]. Since model structure is therefore transferred along the forgetful functor, it inherits generating (acyclic) cofibrations from those of $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$. □

**Theorem 5.1.165.** *The functor* $\overline{W}$ *is the right adjoint of a Quillen equivalence*

$$(L \dashv \overline{W}) : \mathrm{sGrp} \underset{\overline{W}}{\overset{L}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}_{\geq 1} \ ,$$

*with respect to the model structures of prop. 5.1.164 and prop. 5.1.120. In particular*

- *the adjunction unit is a weak equivalence*

$$Y \xrightarrow{\simeq} \overline{W}LY$$

  *for every* $Y \in \mathrm{sSet}_0 \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$

- $\overline{W}LY$ *is always a Kan complex.*

This is discussed for instance in chapter V of [GoJa99]. A new proof is given in [St11].

**Definition 5.1.166.** For $G$ a simplicial group, write

$$WG \to \overline{W}G$$

for the décalage, def. 5.1.80, on $\overline{W}G$.

This characterization by décalage of the object going by the classical name $WG$ is made fairly explicit on p. 85 of [Dus75]. The fully explicit statement is in [RoSt12].

**Proposition 5.1.167.** *The morphism* $WG \to \overline{W}G$ *is a Kan fibration resolution of the point inclusion* $* \to \overline{W}G$*.*

Proof. This follows directly from the characterization of $WG \to \overline{W}G$ by décalage. □

Pieces of this statement appear in [May67]: lemma 18.2 there gives the fibration property, prop. 21.5 the contractibility of $WG$.

**Corollary 5.1.168.** *For* $G$ *a simplicial group, the sequence of simplicial sets*

$$G \longrightarrow WG \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\rightarrow \overline{W}G$$

*is a presentation in* $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ *by a pullback of a Kan fibration of the looping fiber sequence, theorem. 5.1.151,*

$$G \to * \to \mathbf{B}G$$

*in* $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$*.*

Proof. One finds that $G$ is the 1-categorical fiber of $WG \to \overline{W}G$. The statement then follows using prop. 5.1.167 in prop. 5.1.4. □

The explicit statement that the sequence $G \to WG \to \overline{W}G$ is a model for the looping fiber sequence appears on p. 239 of [Por]. The universality of $WG \to \overline{W}G$ for $G$-principal simplicial bundles is the topic of section 21 in [May67], where however it is not made explicit that the "twisted cartesian products" considered there are precisely the models for the pullbacks as above. This is made explicit for instance on page 148 of [Por].

**Corollary 5.1.169.** *The Quillen equivalence $(L \dashv \overline{W})$ from theorem 5.1.165 is a presentation of the looping/delooping equivalence, theorem 5.1.151.*

We now lift all these statements from simplicial sets to simplicial presheaves.

**Proposition 5.1.170.** *If the cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ has site of definition $C$ with a terminal object, then*

- *every $\infty$-group object has a presentation by a presheaf of simplicial groups*

$$G \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sGrp}] \stackrel{U}{\to} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

  *which is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$;*

- *the corresponding delooping object is presented by the presheaf*

$$\overline{W}G \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_0] \hookrightarrow [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

  *which is given over each $U \in C$ by $\overline{W}(G(U))$ .*

Proof. By theorem 5.1.151 every $\infty$-group is the loop space object of a pointed connected object. By prop. 5.1.119 every such is presented by a presheaf $X$ of reduced simplicial sets. By the simplicial looping/delooping Quillen equivalence, theorem 5.1.165, the presheaf

$$\overline{W}LX \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$$

is weakly equivalent to the simplicial presheaf $X$. From this the statement follows with corollary 5.1.168, combined with prop. 5.1.9, which together say that the presheaf $LX$ of simplicial groups presents the given $\infty$-group. □

**Remark 5.1.171.** We may read this as saying that every $\infty$-group may be *strictified*.

**Example 5.1.172.** Every 2-group in $\mathbf{H}$ (1-truncated group object) has a presentation by a crossed module, def. 1.2.81, in simplicial presheaves.

#### 5.1.9.2.2 Presentation of automorphism groups

**Remark 5.1.173.** Let $V$ be a $\kappa$-compact object. By example 5.1.153 the internal automorphism group $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$ of def. 5.1.155 is $\Omega_V(\mathrm{Obj}_\kappa)$. By the nature of the subobject classifier $\mathrm{Obj}_\kappa$, this means that over an $\infty$-site of definition the value of $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$ over an object $U$ of the site is the $\infty$-groupoid

$$\mathbf{Aut}(V) : U \mapsto \mathbf{H}_{/U}(U \times V, U \times V)_\sim$$

of auto-equivalences of $U \times V$ over $U$.

### 5.1.10 Cohomology

There is an intrinsic notion of *cohomology* in every $\infty$-topos. It is the joint generalization of the definition of cohomology in Top in terms of maps into classifying spaces and of *sheaf cohomology* over any site of definition of the $\infty$-topos.

For the case of abelian coefficients, as discussed in 3.1.6, this perspective of (sheaf) cohomology as the cohomology intrinsic to an $\infty$-topos is essentially made explicit already in [Br73]. In more modern language analogous discussion is in section 7.2.2 of [L-Topos].

Here we review central concepts and discuss further aspects that will be needed later on.

#### 5.1.10.1 General abstract

**Definition 5.1.174.** For $X, A \in \mathbf{H}$ two objects, we say that

$$H(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, A)$$

is the *cohomology set* of $X$ with coefficients in $A$. If $A = G$ is an $\infty$-group we write

$$H^1(X, G) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$$

for cohomology with coefficients in its delooping. Generally, if $K \in \mathbf{H}$ has a $p$-fold delooping for some $p \in \mathbb{N}$, we write

$$H^p(X, K) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^p K) .$$

In the context of cohomology on $X$ wth coefficients in $A$ we we say that

- the hom-space $\mathbf{H}(X, A)$ is the *cocycle $\infty$-groupoid*;
- a morphism $g : X \to A$ is a *cocycle*;
- a 2-morphism : $g \Rightarrow h$ is a *coboundary* between cocycles.
- a morphism $c : A \to B$ represents the *characteristic class*

$$[c] : H(-, A) \to H(-, B) .$$

**Remark 5.1.175.** Traditionally attention is often concentrated on the case that $K \in \tau_0\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ is an abelian 0-truncated group object and $A := \mathbf{B}^p K$ is the Eilenber-MacLane object with $K$ in degree $p$. The corresponding cohomology $H^p(-, K) \simeq \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(-, \mathbf{B}^p K)$ is sometimes called *ordinary cohomology* with coefficients in $K$, to distinguish it from the generalizations obtained by allowing more general $K$, which traditionally go by the term *hypercohomology* (if $K$ is not necessarily concentrated in a single degree but is still an abelian $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.157) and more generally *nobabelian cohomology* (if $A$ is allowed to be any homotopy-type).

Below in 5.1.11 we discuss the notion of an *$\infty$-group $G$ acting on a space $X$* and the corresponding (homotopy) quotient $X//G$. Then we say

**Definition 5.1.176.** The cohomology of $X//G$ is the *$G$-equivariant cohomology* of $X$ with respect to the given action. .

**Remark 5.1.177.** There is also a notion of cohomology in the *petit* $\infty$-topos of $X \in \mathbf{H}$, the slice of $\mathbf{H}$ over $X$

$$\mathcal{X} := \mathbf{H}_{/X} .$$

This is canonically equipped with the étale geometric morphism, prop. 5.1.28

$$(X_! \dashv X^* \dashv X_*) : \mathbf{H}/X \underset{X_*}{\overset{X_!}{\underset{\longleftarrow X^* -}{\longrightarrow}}} \mathbf{H} ,$$

where $X_!$ simply forgets the morphism to $X$ and where $X^* = X \times (-)$ forms the product with $X$. Accordingly $X^*(*_{\mathbf{H}}) \simeq *_{\mathcal{X}} =: X$ and $X_!(*_{\mathcal{X}}) = X \in \mathbf{H}$. Therefore cohomology over $X$ with coefficients of the form $X^* A$ is equivalently the cohomology in $\mathbf{H}$ of $X$ with coefficients in $A$:

$$\mathcal{X}(X, X^* A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, A) .$$

For a general coeffcient object $A \in \mathcal{X}$ the $A$-cohomology over $X$ in $\mathcal{X}$ is a *twisted* cohomology of $X$ in $\mathbf{H}$, discussed below in 5.1.13.

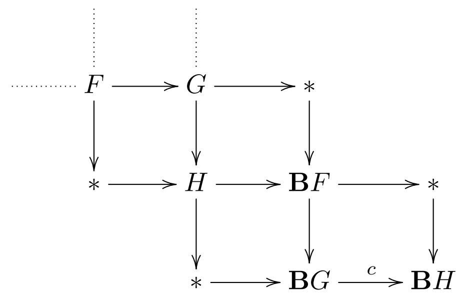
Typically one thinks of a morphism $A \to B$ in $\mathbf{H}$ as presenting a *characteristic class* of $A$ if $B$ is "simpler" than $A$, notably if $B$ is an Eilenberg-MacLane object $B = \mathbf{B}^n K$ for $K$ a 0-truncated abelian group in $\mathbf{H}$. In this case the characteristic class may be regarded as being in the degree-$n$ $K$-cohomology of $A$

$$[c] \in H^n(A, K)\,.$$

**Definition 5.1.178.** For every morphism $c : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}H \in \mathbf{H}$ define the *long fiber sequence to the left*

$$\cdots \to \Omega G \to \Omega H \to F \to G \to H \to \mathbf{B}F \to \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{c} \mathbf{B}H$$

to be given by the consecutive pasting diagrams of $\infty$-pullbacks



**Proposition 5.1.179.** *This is well-defined, in that the objects in the fiber sequence are indeed as indicated.*

Proof. Repeatedly apply the pasting law 5.1.2 and definition 5.1.148. □

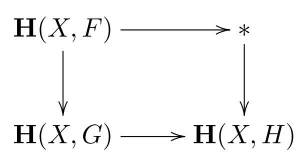
**Proposition 5.1.180.** *1. In the long fiber sequence to the left of $c : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}H$ after $n$ iterations all terms are equivalent to the point if $H$ and $G$ are $n$-truncated.*

*2. For every object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ we have a long exact sequence of pointed cohomology sets*

$$\cdots \to H^0(X, G) \to H^0(X, H) \to H^1(X, F) \to H^1(X, G) \to H^1(X, H)\,.$$

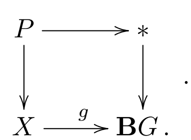
Proof. The first statement follows from the observation that a loop space object $\Omega_x A$ is a fiber of the free loop space object $\mathcal{L}A$ and that this may equivalently be computed by the $\infty$-powering $A^{S^1}$, where $S^1 \in \mathrm{Top} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is the circle.

The second statement follows by observing that the $\infty$-hom-functor $\mathbf{H}(X, -)$ preserves all $\infty$-limits, so that we have $\infty$-pullbacks



etc. in $\infty$Grpd at each stage of the fiber sequence. The statement then follows with the familiar long exact sequence for homotopy groups in Top $\simeq \infty$Grpd. □

**Remark 5.1.181.** To every cocycle $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ is canonically associated its homotopy fiber $P \to X$, the $\infty$-pullback



We discuss below in 5.1.11 that such $P$ canonically has the structure of a *$G$-principal $\infty$-bundle* and that $\mathbf{B}G$ is the fine moduli space – the moduli $\infty$-stack – for $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles.

The following higher topos-theoretic version of the classical Mayer-Vietoris fiber sequences [EckHi64] further generalizes the homotopy-theoretic perspective highlighted in [DyRo80].

**Proposition 5.1.182** (Mayer-Vietoris fiber sequence)**.** *Let $\mathbf{H}$ be an $\infty$-topos and let $G$ be an object equipped with $\infty$-group structure, def. 5.1.150 (or in fact just with group structure in the homotopy category of $\mathbf{H}$). Then for any two morphisms $f : X \to G$ and $g : Y \to G$ the $\infty$-fiber product $X \times_G Y$ is equivalently the $\infty$-pullback*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times_G Y & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f \cdot g^{-1}} & G \end{array} ,$$

*where the bottom morphism is the composite*

$$f \cdot g^{-1} : \; X \times Y \xrightarrow{(f,g)} B \times B \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id}, (-)^{-1})} G \times G \xrightarrow{\cdot} G$$

* of the pair $(f,g)$ with the morphism that inverts the second factor and the morphism that exhibits the group product on $G$. Hence we have a long Mayer-Vietoris-type homotopy fiber sequence, def. 5.1.178, that starts out as*

$$\cdots \longrightarrow \Omega G \longrightarrow X \times_G Y \longrightarrow X \times Y \xrightarrow{f \cdot g^{-1}} G \; .$$

Proof. By (for instance) the factorization lemma, lemma 5.1.5, the homotopy fiber product of $f$ with $g$ is equivalently given by the following homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times_G Y & \longrightarrow & G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\Delta} \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{(f,g)} & G \times G \end{array} ,$$

where the right morphism is the diagonal. By lemma 5.1.160 this is itself the homotopy fiber of the operation $(-) \cdot (-)^{-1}$ of inversion following by multiplication, so that we have a pasting of two homotopy pullback squares

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X \times_G Y & \longrightarrow & G & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\Delta} & & \downarrow^{e} \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{(f,g)} & G \times G & \xrightarrow{(-)\cdot(-)^{-1}} & G \end{array} ,$$

. Now the statement follows by the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2. □

#### 5.1.10.2 Presentations

We discuss explicit presentations of cocycles, cohomology classes and fiber sequences in an $\infty$-topos.

- 5.1.10.2.1 – Cocycle $\infty$-Groupoids and cohomology classes;
- 5.1.10.2.2 – Fiber sequences.

**5.1.10.2.1 Cocycle $\infty$-groupoids and cohomology classes** We discuss a useful presentation of cocycle $\infty$-groupoids and of cohomology classes by a construction that exists when the ambient $\infty$-topos is presented by a category with weak equivalences that is equipped with the structure of a *category of fibrant objects* [Br73].

**Definition 5.1.183** (Brown)**.** A *category of fibrant objects* is a category equipped with two distinguished classes of morphisms, called *fibrations* and *weak equivalences*, such that

1. the category has a terminal object $*$ and finite products;
2. fibrations and weak equivalences form subcategories that contain all isomorphisms; weak equivalences moreover satisfy the 2-out-of-3 property;
3. for any object $B$ the map $B \to *$ is a fibration;
4. the classes of fibrations and of *acyclic fibrations* (the fibration that are also weak equivalences) are stable under pullback. That means: given a diagram $A \stackrel{g}{\to} C \stackrel{f}{\leftarrow} B$ where $f$ is a (acyclic) fibration then the pullback $A \times_C B$ exists and the morphism $A \times_C B \to A$ is again a (acyclic) fibration.
5. For every object $B$ there is a path object $B^I$, i.e. a factorization of the diagonal $\Delta\colon B \to B \times B$ into

$$B \xrightarrow{\simeq} B^I \twoheadrightarrow B \times B$$

   such that left map is weak equivalence and the right map a fibration. We assume here moreover for simplicity that this $B^I$ can be chosen functorial in $B$.

Given a category of fibrant objects, we will denote the class of weak equivalence by $W$ and the class of fibrations by $F$.

**Examples 5.1.184.** We have the following well known examples of categories of fibrant objects.

- For any model category (with functorial factorization) the full subcategory of fibrant objects is a category of fibrant objects.
- The category of stalkwise Kan simplicial presheaves on any site with enough points. In this case the fibrations are the stalkwise fibrations and the weak equivalences are the stalkwise weak equivalences.

**Remark 5.1.185.** Notice that (over a non-trivial site) the second example above is *not* a special case of the first: while there are model structures on categories of simplicial presheaves whose weak equivalences are the stalkwise weak equivalences, their fibrations (even between fibrant objects) are much more restricted than just being stalkwise fibrations.

**Theorem 5.1.186.** *Let the $\infty$-category $\mathbf{H}$ be presented by a category with weak equivalences $(\mathcal{C}, W)$ that carries a compatible structure of a category of fibrant objects, def. 5.1.183.*

*Then for $X, A$ and two objects in $\mathcal{C}$, presenting two objects in $\mathbf{H}$, the $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X, A)$ is presented in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ by the nerve of the category whose*

- *objects are spans (cocycles / $\infty$-anafunctors)*

$$X \overset{\simeq}{\twoheadleftarrow} \hat{X} \xrightarrow{g} A$$

  *in $\mathcal{C}$;*

- *morphisms $f : (\hat{X}, g) \to (\hat{X}', g')$ are given by morphisms $f : \hat{X} \to \hat{X}'$ in $\mathcal{C}$ such that the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \hat{X} & & \\ & \overset{\simeq}{\swarrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f} & \overset{g}{\searrow} & \\ X & & & & A \\ & \underset{\simeq}{\nwarrow} & & \underset{g'}{\nearrow} & \\ & & \hat{X}' & & \end{array}$$

  *commutes.*

This appears for instance as prop. 3.23 in [Ci10]. Another proof is in [NSS12b].

**Example 5.1.187.** By the discussion in 3.1.3, if $\mathbf{H}$ has a 1-site of definition $C$ with enough 1-topos points, then it is presented by the category $\mathrm{Sh}(C)^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$ of simplicial sheaves on $C$ with weak equivalences the stalkwise weak equivalences of simplicial sets, and equivalently by its full subcategory of stalkwise Kan fibrant simplicial sheaves. With the local fibrations, def. 3.1.17 as fibrations, this is a category of fibrant objects. So in this case the cocycle $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X, A)$ is presented by the Kan fibrant replacement of the category whose objects are spans

$$X \overset{\simeq}{\twoheadleftarrow} \hat{X} \xrightarrow{g} A$$

for $\hat{X} \to X$ a stalkwise acyclic Kan fibration, and whose morphisms are as above.

**5.1.10.2.2 Fiber sequences** We discuss explicit presentations of certain fiber sequences, def. 5.1.178, in an $\infty$-topos.

**Proposition 5.1.188.** *Let $A \to \hat{G} \to G$ be a central extension of (ordinary) groups. Then there is a long fiber sequence in* $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *of the form*

$$A \longrightarrow \hat{G} \longrightarrow G \xrightarrow{\Omega \mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}A \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}^2 A \ ,$$

*where the connecting homomorphism is presented by the correspondence of crossed modules, def. 1.2.81, given by*

$$(1 \to G) \overset{\simeq}{\longleftarrow} (A \to \hat{G}) \longrightarrow (A \to 1) \ .$$

*Here in the middle appears the crossed module defined by the central extension, def. 1.2.88.*

### 5.1.11 Principal bundles

For $G$ an $\infty$-group object in a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ and $\mathbf{B}G$ its delooping in $\mathbf{H}$, as discussed in 5.1.9, the cohomology over an object $X$ with coefficients in $\mathbf{B}G$, as in 5.1.10, classifies maps $P \to X$ that are equipped with a $G$-action that is *principal*. We discuss here these *$G$-principal $\infty$-bundles.*

**5.1.11.1 Introduction and survey** We give an exposition of some central ideas and phenomena of higher principal bundles, discussed in detail below.

This section draws from [NSS12a].

Let $G$ be a topological group, or Lie group or some similar such object. The traditional definition of *$G$-principal bundle* is the following: there is a map

$$P \to X := P/G$$

which is the quotient projection induced by a *free* action

$$\rho : P \times G \to P$$

of $G$ on a space (or manifold, depending on context) $P$, such that there is a cover $U \to X$ over which the quotient projection is isomorphic to the trivial one $U \times G \to U$.

In higher geometry, if $G$ is a topological or smooth $\infty$-group, the quotient projection must be replaced by the $\infty$-quotient (homotopy quotient) projection

$$P \to X := P//G$$

for the action of $G$ on a topological or smooth $\infty$-groupoid (or $\infty$-stack) $P$. It is a remarkable fact that this single condition on the map $P \to X$ already implies that $G$ acts freely on $P$ and that $P \to X$ is locally trivial, when the latter notions are understood in the context of higher geometry. We will therefore define a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle to be such a map $P \to X$.

As motivation for this, notice that if a Lie group $G$ acts properly, but not freely, then the quotient $P \to X := P/G$ differs from the homotopy quotient. Specifically, if precisely the subgroup $G_{\mathrm{stab}} \hookrightarrow G$ acts trivially, then the homotopy quotient is instead the *quotient stack* $X//G_{\mathrm{stab}}$ (sometimes written $[X//G_{\mathrm{stab}}]$, which is an orbifold if $G_{\mathrm{stab}}$ is finite). The ordinary quotient coincides with the homotopy quotient if and only if the stabilizer subgroup $G_{\mathrm{stab}}$ is trivial, and hence if and only if the action of $G$ is free.

Conversely this means that in the context of higher geometry a non-free action may also be principal: with respect not to a base space, but with respect to a base groupoid/stack. In the example just discussed, we have that the projection $P \to X//G_{\mathrm{stab}}$ exhibits $P$ as a $G$-principal bundle over the action groupoid $P//G \simeq X//G_{\mathrm{stab}}$. For instance if $P = V$ is a vector space equipped with a $G$-representation, then $V \to V//G$ is a $G$-principal bundle over a groupoid/stack. In other words, the traditional requirement of freeness in a principal action is not so much a characterization of principality as such, as rather a condition that ensures that the base of a principal action is a 0-truncated object in higher geometry.

Beyond this specific class of 0-truncated examples, this means that we have the following noteworthy general statement: in higher geometry *every* $\infty$-action is principal with respect to *some* base, namely with respect to its $\infty$-quotient. In this sense the notion of principal bundles is (even) more fundamental to higher geometry than it is to ordinary geometry. Also, several constructions in ordinary geometry that are traditionally thought of as conceptually different from the notion of principality turn out to be special cases of principality in higher geometry. For instance a central extension of groups $A \to \hat{G} \to G$ turns out to be equivalently a higher principal bundle, namely a $\mathbf{B}A$-principal 2-bundle of moduli stacks $\mathbf{B}\hat{G} \to \mathbf{B}G$. Following this through, one finds that the topics of principal $\infty$-bundles, of $\infty$-group extensions (5.1.18), of $\infty$-representations (5.1.14), and of $\infty$-group cohomology are all different aspects of just one single concept in higher geometry.

More is true: in the context of an $\infty$-topos every $\infty$-quotient projection of an $\infty$-group action is locally trivial, with respect to the canonical intrinsic notion of cover, hence of locality. Therefore also the condition of local triviality in the classical definition of principality becomes automatic. This is a direct consequence of the third $\infty$-Giraud axiom, prop. 3.1.5 that "all $\infty$-quotients are effective". This means that the projection map $P \to P//G$ is always a cover (an *effective epimorphism*) and so, since every $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle trivializes over itself, it exhibits a local trivialization of itself; even without explicitly requiring it to be locally trivial.

As before, this means that the local triviality clause appearing in the traditional definition of principal bundles is not so much a characteristic of principality as such, as rather a condition that ensures that a given quotient taken in a category of geometric spaces coincides with the "correct" quotient obtained when regarding the situation in the ambient $\infty$-topos.

Another direct consequence of the $\infty$-Giraud axioms is the equivalence of the definition of principal bundles as quotient maps, which we discussed so far, with the other main definition of principality: the condition that the "shear map" $(\mathrm{id}, \rho) : P \times G \to P \times_X P$ is an equivalence. It is immediate to verify in traditional 1-categorical contexts that this is equivalent to the action being properly free and exhibiting $X$ as its quotient (we discuss this in detail in [NSS12c]). Simple as this is, one may observe, in view of the above discussion, that the shear map being an equivalence is much more fundamental even: notice that $P \times G$ is the first stage of the *action groupoid object* $P//G$, and that $P \times_X P$ is the first stage of the *Čech nerve groupoid object* $\check{C}(P \to X)$ of the corresponding quotient map. Accordingly, the shear map equivalence is the first stage in the equivalence of groupoid objects in the $\infty$-topos

$$P//G \simeq \check{C}(P \to X)\,.$$

This equivalence is just the explicit statement of the fact mentioned before: the groupoid object $P//G$ is effective – as is any groupoid object in an $\infty$-topos – and, equivalently, its principal $\infty$-bundle map $P \to X$ is an effective epimorphism.

Fairly directly from this fact, finally, springs the classification theorem of principal $\infty$-bundles. For we have a canonical morphism of groupoid objects $P//G \to *//G$ induced by the terminal map $P \to *$. By the

$\infty$-Giraud theorem the $\infty$-colimit over this sequence of morphisms of groupoid objects is a $G$-cocycle on $X$ (Definition 5.1.174) canonically induced by $P$:

$$\varinjlim \left( \check{C}(P \to X)_\bullet \simeq (P//G)_\bullet \to (*//G)_\bullet \right) = (X \to \mathbf{B}G) \quad \in \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \,.$$

Conversely, from any such $G$-cocycle one finds that one obtains a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle simply by forming its $\infty$-fiber: the $\infty$-pullback of the point inclusion $* \to \mathbf{B}G$. We show in [NSS12b] that in presentations of the $\infty$-topos theory by 1-categorical tools, the computation of this homotopy fiber is *presented* by the ordinary pullback of a big resolution of the point, which turns out to be nothing but the universal $G$-principal bundle. This appearance of the universal $\infty$-bundle as just a resolution of the point inclusion may be understood in light of the above discussion as follows. The classical characterization of the universal $G$-principal bundle $\mathbf{E}G$ is as a space that is homotopy equivalent to the point and equipped with a *free* $G$-action. But by the above, freeness of the action is an artefact of 0-truncation and not a characteristic of principality in higher geometry. Accordingly, in higher geometry the universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle for any $\infty$-group $G$ may be taken to *be* the point, equipped with the trivial (maximally non-free) $G$-action. As such, it is a bundle not over the classifying *space* $BG$ of $G$, but over the full moduli $\infty$-stack $\mathbf{B}G$.

This way we have natural assignments of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles to cocycles in $G$-nonabelian cohomology, and vice versa. We find (see Theorem 5.1.207 below) that precisely the second $\infty$-Giraud axiom of prop. 3.1.5, namely the fact that in an $\infty$-topos $\infty$-colimits are preserved by $\infty$-pullback, implies that these constructions constitute an equivalence of $\infty$-groupoids, hence that $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles are classified by $G$-cohomology.

The following table summarizes the relation between $\infty$-bundle theory and the $\infty$-Giraud axioms as indicated above, and as proven in the following section.

| **$\infty$-Giraud axioms** | **principal $\infty$-bundle theory** |
|---|---|
| quotients are effective | every $\infty$-quotient $P \to X := P//G$ is principal |
| colimits are preserved by pullback | $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles are classified by $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$ |

**5.1.11.2 Definition and classification** We discuss the general definition and the central classification theorem of principal $\infty$-bundles.

This section draws from [NSS12a].

**Definition 5.1.189.** For $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ a group object, we say a *$G$-action* on an object $P \in \mathbf{H}$ is a groupoid object $P//G$ (Definition 5.1.124) of the form

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{\;\;} P \times G \times G \xrightarrow{\;\;} P \times G \underset{d_1}{\overset{\rho := d_0}{\rightrightarrows}} P$$

such that $d_1 : P \times G \to P$ is the projection, and such that the degreewise projections $P \times G^n \to G^n$ constitute a morphism of groupoid objects

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cdots & \to & P \times G \times G & \rightrightarrows & P \times G & \rightrightarrows & P \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \cdots & \to & G \times G & \rightrightarrows & G & \rightrightarrows & * \end{array}$$

where the lower simplicial object exhibits $G$ as a groupoid object over $*$.

With convenient abuse of notation we also write

$$P//G := \varinjlim(P \times G^{\times^\bullet}) \quad \in \mathbf{H}$$

for the corresponding $\infty$-colimit object, the $\infty$-*quotient* of this action.

Write

$$G\mathrm{Action}(\mathbf{H}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H})_{/(*//G)}$$

for the full sub-$\infty$-category of groupoid objects over $*//G$ on those that are $G$-actions.

**Remark 5.1.190.** The remaining face map $d_0$

$$\rho := d_0 : P \times G \to P$$

is the action itself.

**Remark 5.1.191.** Using this notation in Proposition 5.1.158 we have

$$\mathbf{B}G \simeq *//G\,.$$

We list examples of $\infty$-actions below in 5.1.14.2. This is most conveniently done after establishing the theory of principal $\infty$-actions, to which we now turn.

**Definition 5.1.192.** Let $G \in \infty\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ be an $\infty$-group and let $X$ be an object of $\mathbf{H}$. A *$G$-principal $\infty$-bundle* over $X$ (or *$G$-torsor over $X$*) is

1. a morphism $P \to X$ in $\mathbf{H}$;

2. together with a $G$-action on $P$;

such that $P \to X$ is the colimiting cocone exhibiting the quotient map $X \simeq P//G$ (Definition 5.1.189).

A *morphism* of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles over $X$ is a morphism of $G$-actions that fixes $X$; the $\infty$-category of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles over $X$ is the homotopy fiber of $\infty$-categories

$$G\mathrm{Bund}(X) := G\mathrm{Action}(\mathbf{H}) \times_{\mathbf{H}} \{X\}$$

over $X$ of the quotient map

$$G\mathrm{Action}(\mathbf{H}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H})_{/(*//G)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H}) \xrightarrow{\varinjlim} \mathbf{H}\,.$$

**Remark 5.1.193.** By the third $\infty$-Giraud axiom (prop. 3.1.5) this means in particular that a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ is an effective epimorphism in $\mathbf{H}$.

**Remark 5.1.194.** Even though $G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ is by definition a priori an $\infty$-category, Proposition 5.1.206 below says that in fact it happens to be $\infty$-groupoid: all its morphisms are invertible.

**Proposition 5.1.195.** *A $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ satisfies the* principality condition*: the canonical morphism*

$$(\rho, p_1) : \; P \times G \xrightarrow{\simeq} P \times_X P$$

*is an equivalence, where $\rho$ is the $G$-action.*

Proof. By the third $\infty$-Giraud axiom (prop. 3.1.5) the groupoid object $P//G$ is effective, which means that it is equivalent to the Čech nerve of $P \to X$. In first degree this implies a canonical equivalence $P \times G \to P \times_X P$. Since the two face maps $d_0, d_1 : P \times_X P \to P$ in the Čech nerve are simply the projections out of the fiber product, it follows that the two components of this canonical equivalence are the two face maps $d_0, d_1 : P \times G \to P$ of $P//G$. By definition, these are the projection onto the first factor and the action itself. □

**Proposition 5.1.196.** *For $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ any morphism, its homotopy fiber $P \to X$ canonically carries the structure of a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle over $X$.*

*Proof.* That $P \to X$ is the fiber of $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ means that we have an $\infty$-pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G. \end{array}$$

By the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks, Proposition 5.1.2, this induces a compound diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} \cdots & \substack{\rightarrow\\\rightarrow\\\rightarrow\\\rightarrow} & P \times G \times G & \substack{\rightarrow\\\rightarrow\\\rightarrow} & P \times G & \rightrightarrows & P & \twoheadrightarrow & X \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle g} \\ \cdots & \substack{\rightarrow\\\rightarrow\\\rightarrow\\\rightarrow} & G \times G & \substack{\rightarrow\\\rightarrow\\\rightarrow} & G & \rightrightarrows & * & \twoheadrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

where each square and each composite rectangle is an $\infty$-pullback. This exhibits the $G$-action on $P$. Since $* \to \mathbf{B}G$ is an effective epimorphism, so is its $\infty$-pullback $P \to X$. Since, by the $\infty$-Giraud theorem, $\infty$-colimits are preserved by $\infty$-pullbacks we have that $P \to X$ exhibits the $\infty$-colimit $X \simeq P//G$. □

**Lemma 5.1.197.** *For $P \to X$ a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle obtained as in Proposition 5.1.196, and for $x : * \to X$ any point of $X$, we have a canonical equivalence*

$$x^* P \xrightarrow{\simeq} G$$

*between the fiber $x^* P$ and the $\infty$-group object $G$.*

*Proof.* This follows from the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks, which gives the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} G & \longrightarrow & P & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{x} & X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

in which both squares as well as the total rectangle are $\infty$-pullbacks. □

**Definition 5.1.198.** The *trivial* $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $(P \to X) \simeq (X \times G \to X)$ is, up to equivalence, the one obtained via Proposition 5.1.196 from the morphism $X \to * \to \mathbf{B}G$.

**Observation 5.1.199.** For $P \to X$ a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle and $Y \to X$ any morphism, the $\infty$-pullback $Y \times_X P$ naturally inherits the structure of a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle.

*Proof.* This uses the same kind of argument as in Proposition 5.1.196 (which is the special case of the pullback of what we will see is the universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $* \to \mathbf{B}G$ below in Proposition 5.1.203). □

**Definition 5.1.200.** A $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ is called *locally trivial* if there exists an effective epimorphism $U \twoheadrightarrow X$ and an equivalence of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles

$$U \times_X P \simeq U \times G$$

from the pullback of $P$ (Observation 5.1.199) to the trivial $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle over $U$ (Definition 5.1.198).

**Proposition 5.1.201.** *Every $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle is locally trivial.*

*Proof.* For $P \to X$ a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle, it is, by Remark 5.1.193, itself an effective epimorphism. The pullback of the $G$-bundle to its own total space along this morphism is trivial, by the principality condition (Proposition 5.1.195). Hence setting $U := P$ proves the claim. □

**Remark 5.1.202.** This means that every $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle is in particular a $G$-fiber $\infty$-bundle (in the evident sense of Definition 5.1.241 below). But not every $G$-fiber bundle is $G$-principal, since the local trivialization of a fiber bundle need not respect the $G$-action.

**Proposition 5.1.203.** *For every $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ the square*

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & P & \longrightarrow & * & & \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
X & \simeq & \varinjlim_n (P \times G^{\times_n}) & \longrightarrow & \varinjlim_n G^{\times_n} & \simeq & \mathbf{B}G
\end{array}
$$

*is an $\infty$-pullback diagram.*

*Proof.* Let $U \to X$ be an effective epimorphism such that $P \to X$ pulled back to $U$ becomes the trivial $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle. By Proposition 5.1.201 this exists. By definition of morphism of $G$-actions and by functoriality of the $\infty$-colimit, this induces a morphism in $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]}{}_{/(* \to \mathbf{B}G)}$ corresponding to the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
U \times G & \twoheadrightarrow & P & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{pt}} \\
U & \twoheadrightarrow & X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G
\end{array}
\quad \simeq \quad
\begin{array}{ccccc}
U \times G & & \twoheadrightarrow & & * \\
\downarrow & & & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{pt}} \\
U & \longrightarrow & * & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{pt}} & \mathbf{B}G
\end{array}
$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. By assumption, in this diagram the outer rectangles and the square on the very left are $\infty$-pullbacks. We need to show that the right square on the left is also an $\infty$-pullback.

Since $U \to X$ is an effective epimorphism by assumption, and since these are stable under $\infty$-pullback, $U \times G \to P$ is also an effective epimorphism, as indicated. This means that

$$
P \simeq \varinjlim_n (U \times G)^{\times_P^{n+1}} .
$$

We claim that for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the fiber products in the colimit on the right are naturally equivalent to $(U^{\times_X^{n+1}}) \times G$. For $n = 0$ this is clearly true. Assume then by induction that it holds for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Then with the pasting law (Proposition 5.1.2) we find an $\infty$-pullback diagram of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
(U^{\times_X^{n+1}}) \times G & \simeq & (U \times G)^{\times_P^{n+1}} & \longrightarrow & (U \times G)^{\times_P^{n}} & \simeq & (U^{\times_X^{n}}) \times G \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
 & & U \times G & \longrightarrow & P & & \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
 & & U & \longrightarrow & X. & &
\end{array}
$$

This completes the induction. With this the above expression for $P$ becomes

$$
\begin{aligned}
P &\simeq \varinjlim_n (U^{\times_X^{n+1}}) \times G \\
&\simeq \varinjlim_n \mathrm{pt}^* (U^{\times_X^{n+1}}) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{pt}^* \varinjlim_n (U^{\times_X^{n+1}}) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{pt}^* X,
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have used that by the second $\infty$-Giraud axiom (prop. 3.1.5) we may take the $\infty$-pullback out of the $\infty$-colimit and where in the last step we used again the assumption that $U \to X$ is an effective epimorphism. □

**Example 5.1.204.** The fiber sequence

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
G & \longrightarrow & * \\
 & & \downarrow \\
 & & \mathbf{B}G
\end{array}
$$

which exhibits the delooping $\mathbf{B}G$ of $G$ according to Theorem 5.1.151 is a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle over $\mathbf{B}G$, with *trivial* $G$-action on its total space $*$. Proposition 5.1.203 says that this is the *universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle* in that every other one arises as an $\infty$-pullback of this one. In particular, $\mathbf{B}G$ is a classifying object for $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles.

Below in Theorem 5.1.314 this relation is strengthened: every *automorphism* of a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle, and in fact its full automorphism $\infty$-group arises from pullback of the above universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle: $\mathbf{B}G$ is the fine *moduli $\infty$-stack* of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles.

The traditional definition of universal $G$-principal bundles in terms of contractible objects equipped with a free $G$-action has no intrinsic meaning in higher topos theory. Instead this appears in *presentations* of the general theory in model categories (or categories of fibrant objects) as *fibrant representatives* $\mathbf{E}G \to \mathbf{B}G$ of the above point inclusion. This we discuss in [NSS12b].

The main classification Theorem 5.1.207 below implies in particular that every morphism in $G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ is an equivalence. For emphasis we note how this also follows directly:

**Lemma 5.1.205.** *Let $\mathbf{H}$ be an $\infty$-topos and let $X$ be an object of $\mathbf{H}$. A morphism $f\colon A \to B$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ is an equivalence if and only if $p^* f$ is an equivalence in $\mathbf{H}_{/Y}$ for any effective epimorphism $p\colon Y \to X$ in $\mathbf{H}$.*

Proof. It is clear, by functoriality, that $p^* f$ is a weak equivalence if $f$ is. Conversely, assume that $p^* f$ is a weak equivalence. Since effective epimorphisms as well as equivalences are preserved by pullback we get a simplicial diagram of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\cdots \Rrightarrow & p^*A \times_A p^*A & \rightrightarrows & p^*A & \twoheadrightarrow & A \\
 & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle f} \\
\cdots \Rrightarrow & p^*B \times_B p^*B & \rightrightarrows & p^*B & \twoheadrightarrow & B
\end{array}
$$

where the rightmost horizontal morphisms are effective epimorphisms, as indicated. By definition of effective epimorphisms this exhibits $f$ as an $\infty$-colimit over equivalences, hence as an equivalence. □

**Proposition 5.1.206.** *Every morphism between $G$-actions over $X$ that are $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles over $X$ is an equivalence.*

Proof. Since a morphism of $G$-principal bundles $P_1 \to P_2$ is a morphism of Čech nerves that fixes their $\infty$-colimit $X$, up to equivalence, and since $* \to \mathbf{B}G$ is an effective epimorphism, we are, by Proposition 5.1.203, in the situation of Lemma 5.1.205. $\square$

**Theorem 5.1.207.** *For all $X, \mathbf{B}G \in \mathbf{H}$ there is a natural equivalence of $\infty$-groupoids*

$$G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$$

*which on vertices is the construction of Definition 5.1.196: a bundle $P \to X$ is mapped to a morphism $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ such that $P \to X \to \mathbf{B}G$ is a fiber sequence.*

We therefore say

- $\mathbf{B}G$ is the *classifying object* or *moduli $\infty$-stack* for $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles;
- a morphism $c : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ is a *cocycle* for the corresponding $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle and its class $[c] \in \mathrm{H}^1(X, G)$ is its *characteristic class.*

Proof. By Definitions 5.1.189 and 5.1.192 and using the refined statement of the third $\infty$-Giraud axiom (Theorem 5.1.123), the $\infty$-groupoid of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles over $X$ is equivalent to the fiber over $X$ of the sub-$\infty$-category of the slice of the arrow $\infty$-topos on those squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

that exhibit $P \to X$ as a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle. By Proposition 5.1.196 and Proposition 5.1.203 these are the $\infty$-pullback squares $\mathrm{Cart}(\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]}{}_{/(* \to \mathbf{B}G)}) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]}{}_{/(* \to \mathbf{B}G)}$, hence

$$G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \simeq \mathrm{Cart}(\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]}{}_{/(* \to \mathbf{B}G)}) \times_{\mathbf{H}} \{X\}\,.$$

By the universality of the $\infty$-pullback the morphisms between these are fully determined by their value on $X$, so that the above is equivalent to

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G} \times_{\mathbf{H}} \{X\}\,.$$

(For instance in terms of model categories: choose a model structure for $\mathbf{H}$ in which all objects are cofibrant, choose a fibrant representative for $\mathbf{B}G$ and a fibration resolution $\mathbf{E}G \to \mathbf{B}G$ of the universal $G$-bundle. Then the slice model structure of the arrow model structure over this presents the slice in question and the statement follows from the analogous 1-categorical statement.) This finally is equivalent to

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)\,.$$

(For instance in terms of quasi-categories: the projection $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BG}} \to \mathbf{H}$ is a fibration by Proposition 2.1.2.1 and 4.2.1.6 in [L-Topos], hence the homotopy fiber $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BG}} \times_{\mathbf{X}} \{X\}$ is the ordinary fiber of quasi-categories. This is manifestly the $\mathrm{Hom}^R_{\mathbf{H}}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$ from Proposition 1.2.2.3 of [L-Topos]. Finally, by Proposition 2.2.4.1 there, this is equivalent to $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$.) $\square$

**Corollary 5.1.208.** *Equivalence classes of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles over $X$ are in natural bijection with the degree-1 $G$-cohomology of $X$:*

$$G\mathrm{Bund}(X)_{/\sim} \simeq H^1(X, G)\,.$$

Proof. By Definition 5.1.174 this is the restriction of the equivalence $G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$ to connected components. $\square$

#### 5.1.11.3 Universal principal $\infty$-bundles and the Borel construction

By prop. 5.1.170 every $\infty$-group in an $\infty$-topos over an $\infty$-cohesive site is presented by a (pre-)sheaf of simplicial groups, hence by a strict group object $G$ in a 1-category of simplicial (pre-)sheaves. We have seen in 5.1.9.2 that for such a presentation the delooping $\mathbf{B}G$ is presented by $\bar{W}G$. By the above discussion in 5.1.11.2 the theory of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles is essentially that of homotopy fibers of morphisms into $\mathbf{B}G$, hence into $\bar{W}G$. By prop. 5.1.4 such homotopy fibers are computed as ordinary pullbacks of fibration resolutions of the point inclusion into $\bar{W}G$. Here we discuss these fibration resolutions. They turn out to be the classical *universal simplicial principal bundles* $WG \to \bar{W}G$.

This section draws from [NSS12b].

By prop. 5.1.170 every $\infty$-group in an $\infty$-topos over an $\infty$-cohesive site is presented by a (pre-)sheaf of simplicial groups, hence by a strict group object $G$ in a 1-category of simplicial (pre-)sheaves. We have seen in 5.1.9.2 that for such a presentation the delooping $\mathbf{B}G$ is presented by $\bar{W}G$. By the above discussion in 5.1.11.2 the theory of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles is essentially that of homotopy fibers of morphisms into $\mathbf{B}G$, hence into $\bar{W}G$. By prop. 5.1.4 such homotopy fibers are computed as ordinary pullbacks of fibration resolutions of the point inclusion into $\bar{W}G$. Here we discuss these fibration resolutions. They turn out to be the classical *universal simplicial principal bundles* $WG \to \bar{W}G$.

Let $C$ be some site. We consider group objects in the category of simplicial presheaves $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$. Since sheafification preserves finite limits, all of the following statements hold verbatim also in the category $\mathrm{Sh}(C)^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$ of simplicial sheaves over $C$.

**Definition 5.1.209.** For $G$ be a group object in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ and for $\rho : P \times G \to P$ a $G$-action, its *action groupoid object* is the simplicial object

$$P//G \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}$$

whose value in degree $n$ is

$$(P//G)_n := P \times G^{\times^n} \quad \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]\,,$$

whose face maps are given by

$$d_i(p, g_1, \ldots, g_n) = \begin{cases} (pg_1, g_2, \ldots, g_n) & \text{if } i = 0, \\ (p, g_1, \ldots, g_i g_{i+1}, \ldots, g_n) & \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq n-1, \\ (p, g_1, \ldots, g_{n-1}) & \text{if } i = n, \end{cases}$$

and whose degeneracy maps are given by

$$s_i(p, g_1, \ldots, g_n) = (p, g_1, \ldots, g_{i-1}, 1, g_i, \ldots, g_n)\,.$$

**Definition 5.1.210.** For $\rho : P \times G \to P$ an action, write

$$P/_h G := T(P//G) \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

for the corresponding total simplicial object, def. 5.1.19.

**Remark 5.1.211.** According to corollary 5.1.23 the object $P/_h G$ presents the homotopy colimit over the simplicial object $P//G$. We say that $P/_h G$ is the *homotopy quotient* of $P$ by the action of $G$.

**Example 5.1.212.** The unique trivial action of a group object $G$ on the terminal object $*$ gives rise to a canonical action groupoid $*//G$. According to def. 5.1.161 we have

$$*/_h G = \overline{W}G\,.$$

The multiplication morphism $\cdot : G \times G \to G$ regarded as an action of $G$ on itself gives rise to a canonical action groupoid $G//G$. The terminal morphism $G \to *$ induces a morphism of simplicial objects

$$G//G \to *//G\,.$$

Defined this way $G//G$ carries a *left* $G$-action relative to this morphism. To stay with our convention that actions on bundles are from the right, we consider in the following instead the right action of $G$ on itself given by

$$G \times G \xrightarrow{\sigma} G \times G \xrightarrow{((-)^{-1}, \mathrm{id})} G \times G \xrightarrow{\cdot} G \ ,$$

where $\sigma$ exchanges the two cartesian factors

$$(h, g) \mapsto g^{-1} h \,.$$

With respect to this action, the action groupoid object $G//G$ is canonically equipped with the right $G$-action by multiplication from the right. Whenever in the following we write

$$G//G \to *//G$$

we are referring to this latter definition.

**Definition 5.1.213.** Given a group object in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, write

$$(WG \to \bar{W}G) := (G/_h G \to */_h G) \quad \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

for the morphism induced on homotopy quotients, def. 5.1.210, by the morphism of canonical action groupoid objects of example 5.1.212.

We will call this the *universal weakly $G$-principal bundle.*

This term will be justified by prop. 5.1.218, remark 5.1.219 and theorem 5.1.238 below. We now discuss some basic properties of this morphism.

**Definition 5.1.214.** For $\rho : P \times G \to P$ a $G$-action in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, we write

$$P \times_G WG := (P \times WG)/G \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

for the quotient by the diagonal $G$-action with respect to the given right $G$ action on $P$ and the canonical right $G$-action on $WG$ from prop. 5.1.218. We call this quotient the *Borel construction* of the $G$-action on $P$.

**Proposition 5.1.215.** *For $P \times G \to P$ an action in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, there is an isomorphism*

$$P/_h G \simeq P \times_G WG \,,$$

*between the homotopy quotient, def. 5.1.210, and the Borel construction. In particular, for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there are ismorphisms*

$$(P/_h G)_n \simeq P_n \times G_{n-1} \times \cdots \times G_0 \,.$$

Proof. This follows by a straightforward computation.

**Lemma 5.1.216.** *Let $P$ be a Kan complex, $G$ a simplicial group and $\rho : P \times G \to P$ an action. The following holds.*

1. *The qotient map $P \to P/G$ is a Kan fibration.*

2. *If the action is free, then $P/G$ is a Kan complex.*

The second statement is for instance lemma V3.7 in [GoJa99].

**Lemma 5.1.217.** *For $P$ a Kan complex and $P \times G \to P$ an action by a group object, the homotopy quotient $P/_h G$, def. 5.1.210, is itself a Kan complex.*

Proof. By prop. 5.1.215 the homotopy quotient is isomorphic to the Borel construction. Since $G$ acts freely on $WG$ it acts freely on $P \times WG$. The statement then follows with lemma 5.1.216. □

**Proposition 5.1.218.** *For $G$ a group object in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, the morphism $WG \to \overline{W}G$ from def. 5.1.213 has the following properties.*

1. *It is isomorphic to the traditional morphism denoted by these symbols, e.g. [May67].*
2. *It is isomorphic to the décalage morphism $\mathrm{Dec}_0 \overline{W}G \to \overline{W}G$, def. 5.1.80.*
3. *It is canonically equipped with a right $G$-action over $\overline{W}G$ that makes it a weakly $G$-princial bundle (in fact the shear map is an isomorphism).*
4. *It is an objectwise Kan fibration replacement of the point inclusion $* \to \bar{W}G$.*

This is lemma 10 in [RoSt12].

**Remark 5.1.219.** Let $\hat{X} \to \bar{W}G$ be a morphism in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, presenting, by prop. 5.1.170, a morphism $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ in the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$. By prop. 5.1.203 every $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle over $X$ arises as the homotopy fiber of such a morphism. By using prop. 5.1.218 in prop. 5.1.4 it follows that the principal $\infty$-bundle classified by $\hat{X} \to \bar{W}G$ is presented by the ordinary pullback of $WG \to \bar{W}G$. This is the defining property of the universal principal bundle.

In 5.1.11.4 below we show how this observation leads to a complete presentation of the theory of principal $\infty$-bundles by simplical weakly principal bundles.

**5.1.11.4 Presentation in locally fibrant simplicial sheaves** We discuss a presentation of the general notion of principal $\infty$-bundles, 5.1.11.2 by weakly principal bundles in a 1-category of simplicial sheaves.

Let $\mathbf{H}$ be a hypercomplete $\infty$-topos (for instance a cohesive $\infty$-topos), such that it admits a 1-site $C$ with enough points.

**Observation 5.1.220.** By prop. 3.1.16 a category with weak equivalences that presents $\mathbf{H}$ under simplicial localization, def. 2.1.25, is the category of simplicial 1-sheaves on $C$, $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$, with the weak equivalences $W \subset \mathrm{Mor}(\mathrm{sSh}(C))$ being the stalkwise weak equivalences:

$$\mathbf{H} \simeq L_W \mathrm{sSh}(C)\,.$$

Also the full subcategory

$$\mathrm{sSh}(C)_{\mathrm{lfib}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sSh}(C)$$

on the locally fibrant objects is a presentation.

**Corollary 5.1.221.** *Regard $\mathrm{sSh}(C)_{\mathrm{lfib}}$ as a category of fibrant objects, def. 5.1.183, with weak equivalences and fibrations the stalkwise weak equivalences and firations in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$, respectively, as in example 5.1.184.*

*Then for any two objects $X, A \in \mathbf{H}$ there are simplicial sheaves, to be denoted by the same symbols, such that the hom $\infty$-groupoid in $\mathbf{H}$ from $X$ to $A$ is presented in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ by the Kan complex of cocycles 5.1.10.2.*

Proof. By theorem 5.1.186. □

We now discuss for the general theory of principal $\infty$-bundles in $\mathbf{H}$ from 5.1.11.2 a corresponding realization in the presentation for $\mathbf{H}$ given by $(\mathrm{sSh}(C), W)$.

By prop. 5.1.170 every $\infty$-group in $\mathbf{H}$ is presented by an ordinary group in $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$. It is too much to ask that also every $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle is presented by a principal bundle in $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$. But something close is true: every principal $\infty$-bundle is presented by a *weakly principal* bundle in $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$.

**Definition 5.1.222.** Let $X \in \mathrm{sSh}(C)$ be any object, and let $G \in \mathrm{sSh}(C)$ be equipped with the structure of a group object. A *weakly G-principal bundle* is

- an object $P \in \mathrm{sSh}(C)$ (the *total space*);
- a local fibration $\pi\colon P \to X$ (the *bundle projection*);
- a right action

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P \times G & \xrightarrow{\rho} & P \\ & \searrow \qquad \swarrow & \\ & X & \end{array}$$

  of $G$ on $P$ over $X$

such that

- the action of $G$ is *weakly principal* in that the *shear map*

$$(p_1, \rho) : P \times G \to P \times_X P \qquad (p, g) \mapsto (p, pg)$$

  is a local weak equivalence.

**Remark 5.1.223.** We do not ask the $G$-action to be degreewise free as in [JaLu04], where a similar notion is considered. However we show in Corollary 5.1.240 below that each weakly $G$-principal bundle is equivalent to one with free $G$-action.

**Definition 5.1.224.** A morphism of weakly $G$-principal bundles $(\pi, \rho) \to (\pi', \rho')$ over $X$ is a morphism $f : P \to P'$ in $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$ that is $G$-equivariant and commutes with the bundle projections, hence such that it makes this diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P \times G & \xrightarrow{(f,\mathrm{id})} & P' \times G \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho'} \\ P & \xrightarrow{f} & P' \\ & {\scriptstyle \pi}\searrow \qquad \swarrow{\scriptstyle \pi'} & \\ & X & \end{array} .$$

Write

$$\mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \in \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

for the nerve of the category of weakly $G$-principal bundles and morphisms as above. The $\infty$-groupoid that this presents under $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq (\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}})^\circ$ we call the *$\infty$-groupoid of weakly $G$-principal bundles over $X$*.

**Lemma 5.1.225.** *Let $\pi : P \to X$ be a weakly $G$-principal bundle. Then the following statements are true:*

1. *For any point $p : * \to P$ the action of $G$ induces a weak equivalence*

$$G \longrightarrow P_x$$

   *where $x = \pi p$ and where $P_x$ is the fiber of $P \to X$ over $x$.*

2. *For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the multi-shear maps*

$$P \times G^n \to P^{\times_X^{n+1}} \qquad (p, g_1, ..., g_n) \mapsto (p, pg_1, ..., pg_n)$$

   *are weak equivalences.*

Proof. We consider the first statement. Regard the weak equivalence $P \times G \xrightarrow{\sim} P \times_X P$ as a morphism over $P$ where in both cases the map to $P$ is given by projection onto the first factor. By basic properties of categories of fibrant objects, both of these morphisms are fibrations. Therefore, by prop. 5.1.8 the pullback of the shear map along $p$ is still a weak equivalence. But this pullback is just the map $G \to P_x$, which proves the claim.

For the second statement, we use induction on $n$. Suppose that $P \times G^n \to P^{\times_X^{n+1}}$ is a weak equivalence. By prop. 5.1.8, the pullback $P^{\times_X^n} \times_X (P \times G) \to P^{\times_X^{n+2}}$ of the shear map itself along $P^{\times_X^n} \to X$ is again a weak equivalence, as is the product $P \times G^n \times G \to P^{\times_X^{n+1}} \times G$ of the $n$-fold shear map with $G$. The composite of these two weak equivalences is the multi-shear map $P \times G^{n+1} \to P^{\times_X^{n+2}}$, which is hence a also weak equivalence.

**Proposition 5.1.226.** *Let $P \to X$ be a weakly $G$-principal bundle and let $f : Y \to X$ be an arbitrary morphism. Then the pullback $f^*P \to Y$ exists and is also canonically a weakly $G$-principal bundle. This operation extends to define a pullback morphism*

$$f^* : \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \to \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(Y)\,.$$

Proof. By basic properties of a category of fibrant objects:

The pullback $f^*P$ exists and the morphism $f^*P \to Y$ is again a local fibration. Thus it only remains to show that $f^*P$ is weakly principal, i.e. that the morphism $f^*P \times G \to f^*P \times_Y f^*P$ is a weak equivalence. This follows from prop. 5.1.8.

**Remark 5.1.227.** The functor $f^*$ associated to the map $f\colon Y \to X$ above is the restriction of a functor $f^*\colon \mathrm{sSh}(C)/X \to \mathrm{sSh}(C)/Y$ mapping from simplicial sheaves over $X$ to simplicial sheaves over $Y$. This functor $f^*$ has a left adjoint $f_!\colon \mathrm{sSh}(C)/Y \to \mathrm{Sh}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}/X$ given by composition along $f$, in other words

$$f_!(E \to Y) = E \to Y \xrightarrow{f} X.$$

Note that the functor $f_!$ does not usually restrict to a functor $f_!\colon \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(Y) \to \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$. But when it does, we say that principal $\infty$-bundles *satisfy descent along* $f$. In this situation, if $P$ is a weakly $G$-principal bundle on $Y$, then $P$ is weakly equivalent to the pulled-back principal $\infty$-bundle $f^*f_!P$ on $Y$, in other words $P$ 'descends' to $f_!P$.

The next result says that weakly $G$-principal bundles satisfy descent along local acyclic fibrations (hypercovers).

**Proposition 5.1.228.** *Let $p : Y \to X$ be a local acyclic fibration in* $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$. *Then the functor $p_!$ defined above restricts to a functor $p_!\colon \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(Y) \to \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$, left adjoint to $p^*\colon \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \to \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(Y)$, hence to a homotopy equivalence in* $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$.

Proof. Given a weakly $G$-principal bundle $P \to Y$, the first thing we have to check is that the map $P \times G \to P \times_X P$ is a weak equivalence. This map can be factored as $P \times G \to P \times_Y P \to P \times_X P$. Hence it suffices to show that the map $P \times_Y P \to P \times_X P$ is a weak equivalence. But this follows by prop. 5.1.8, since both pullbacks are along local fibrations and $Y \to X$ is a local weak equivalence by assumption.

This establishes the existence of the functor $p_!$. It is easy to see that it is left adjoint to $p^*$. This implies that it induces a homotopy equivalence in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$.

**Corollary 5.1.229.** *For $f : Y \to X$ a local weak equivalence, the induced functor $f^* : \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \to \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(Y)$ is a homotopy equivalence.*

Proof. By lemma 5.1.5 we can factor the weak equivalence $f$ into a composite of a local acyclic fibration and a left inverse to a local acyclic fibration. Therefore, by prop. 5.1.228, $f^*$ may be factored as the composite of two homotopy equivalences, hence is itself a homotopy equivalence.

We discuss now how weakly $G$-principal bundles arise from the universal $G$-principal bundle, def. 5.1.213 by pullback, and how this establishes their equivalence with $G$-ccoycles.

**Proposition 5.1.230.** *For $G$ a group object in* $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$*, the map $WG \to \overline{W}G$ from def. 5.1.213 equipped with the $G$-action of prop. 5.1.218 is a weakly $G$-principal bundle.*

Indeed, it is a strictly $G$-principal bundle. This is a classical fact, for instance around lemma V4.1 in [GoJa99].In terms of the total simplicial set functor it is observed in section 4 of [RoSt12].
Proof. By inspection one finds that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (G//G) \times G & \longrightarrow & G//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ G//G & \longrightarrow & *//G \end{array}$$

is a pullback diagram in $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSh}(C)]$. Since the total simplicial object functor $T$ of def. 5.1.19 is right adjoint it preserves this pullback. This shows the principality of the shear map.

**Definition 5.1.231.** For $Y \to X$ a morphism in $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$, write

$$\check{C}(Y) \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSh}(C)]$$

for its *Čech nerve*, given in degree $n$ by the $n$-fold fiber product of $Y$ over $X$

$$\check{C}(Y)_n := Y^{\times_X^{n+1}} .$$

**Observation 5.1.232.** The canonical morphism of simplicial objects $\check{C}(Y) \to X$, with $X$ regarded as a constant simplicial object induces under totalization, def. 5.1.19, and by prop. 5.1.22 a canonical morphism

$$T\check{C}(Y) \to X \quad \in \mathrm{sSh}(C) .$$

**Lemma 5.1.233.** *For $p : Y \to X$ a local acyclic fibration, the morphism $T\check{C}(Y) \to X$ from observation 5.1.232 is a local weak equivalence.*

Proof. By pullback stability of local acylic fibrations, for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the morphism $Y^{\times_X^n} \to X$ is a local weak equivalence. By remark. 5.1.21 and prop. 5.1.22 this degreewise local weak equivalence is preserved by the functor $T$.

The main statement now is the following.

**Theorem 5.1.234.** *For $P \to X$ a weakly $G$-principal bundle in* $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$*, the canonical morphism*

$$P/_hG \longrightarrow X$$

*is a local acyclic fibration.*

Proof. To see that the morphism is a local weak equivalence, factor $P//G \to X$ in $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSh}(C)]$ via the multi-shear maps from lemma 5.1.225 through the Čech nerve, def. 5.1.231, as

$$P//G \to \check{C}(P) \to X .$$

Applying to this the total simplicial object functor $T$, def. 5.1.19, yields a factorization

$$P/_hG \to T\check{C}(P) \to X .$$

The left morphism is a weak equivalence because, by lemma 5.1.225, the multi-shear maps are weak equivalences and by corollary 5.1.23 $T$ preserves sends degreewise weak equivalences to weak equivalences. The right map is a weak equivalence by lemma 5.1.233.

We now prove that $P/_h G \to X$ is a local fibration. We need to show that for each topos point $p$ of $\mathrm{Sh}(C)$ the morphism of stalks $p(P/_h G) \to p(X)$ is a Kan fibration of simplicial sets. By prop. 5.1.215 this means equivalently that the morphism

$$p(P \times_G WG) \to p(X)$$

is a Kan fibration. By definition of topos point, $p$ commutes with all the finite products and colimits involved here. Therefore equivalently we need to show that

$$p(P) \times_{p(G)} Wp(G) \to p(X)$$

is a Kan fibration for all topos points $p$.

Observe that this morphism factors the projection $p(P) \times W(p(G)) \to p(X)$ as

$$p(P) \times W(p(G)) \to p(P) \times_{p(G)} W(p(G)) \to p(X)$$

in sSet. Here the first morphism is a Kan fibration by lemma 5.1.216, which in particular is also surjective on vertices. Also the total composite morphism is a Kan fibration, since $W(p(G))$ is Kan fibrant. From this the desired result follows with the next lemma 5.1.235.

**Lemma 5.1.235.** *Suppose that $X \xrightarrow{p} Y \xrightarrow{q} Z$ is a diagram of simplicial sets such that $p$ is a Kan fibration surjective on vertices and $qp$ is a Kan fibration. Then $q$ is also a Kan fibration.*

Proof. Consider a lifting problem of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda^k[n] & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{q} \\ \Delta[n] & \longrightarrow & Z. \end{array}$$

Choose a 0-simplex of $X$ which projects to the 0-simplex of $Y$ corresponding to the image of the vertex 0 under the map $\Lambda^k[n] \to Y$. Since $\Delta[0] \to \Lambda^k[n]$ is an acyclic cofibration, we may choose a map $\Lambda^k[n] \to X$ such that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta[0] & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow^{p} \\ \Lambda^k[n] & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

commutes. This map gives rise to a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda^k[n] & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{qp} \\ \Delta[n] & \longrightarrow & Z \end{array}$$

and any diagonal filler in this diagram gives a solution of the original lifting problem.

We now discuss the equivalence between weakly $G$-principal bundles and $G$-cocycles. For $X, A \in \mathrm{sSh}(C)$, write $\mathrm{Cocycle}(X, A)$ for the category of cocycles from $X$ to $A$, according to 5.1.10.2.

**Definition 5.1.236.** Let $X, G \in \mathrm{sSh}(C)$ with $G$ equipped with the structure of a group object (hence necessarily locally fibrant) and also with $X$ being locally fibrant.

Define a functor

$$\mathrm{Extr} : \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \to \mathrm{Cocycle}(X, \overline{W}G)$$

("extracting" a cocycle) on objects by sending a weakly $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$ to the cocycle

$$X \overset{\sim}{\twoheadleftarrow} P/_h G \longrightarrow \overline{W}G \ ,$$

where the left morphism is the local acyclic fibration from theorem 5.1.234, and where the right morphism is the image under the total simplicial object functor, def. 5.1.19, of the canonical morphism $P//G \to *//G$ of simplicial objects.

Define also a functor

$$\mathrm{Rec} : \mathrm{Cocycle}(X, \overline{W}G) \to \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$$

("reconstruction" of the bundle) which on objects takes a cocycle $X \overset{\pi}{\leftarrow} Y \overset{g}{\to} \overline{W}G$ to the weakly $G$-principal bundle

$$g^* WG \to Y \overset{\pi}{\to} X \,,$$

which is the pullback of the universal $G$-principal bundle, def. 5.1.213, along $g$, and which on morphisms takes a coboundary to the morphism between pullbacks induced from the corresponding morphism of pullback diagrams.

**Observation 5.1.237.** The functor Extr sends the universal $G$-principal bundle $WG \to \overline{W}G$ to the cocycle

$$\overline{W}G \simeq * \times_G WG \overset{\simeq}{\leftarrow} WG \times_G WG \overset{\simeq}{\to} WG \times_G * \simeq \overline{W}G \,.$$

Write

$$q : \mathrm{Cocycle}(X, \overline{W}G) \to \mathrm{Cocycle}(X, \overline{W}G)$$

for the functor given by postcomposition with this universal cocycle. This has an evident left and right adjoint $\bar{q}$. Therefore under the simplicial nerve these functors induce homotopy equivalences in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$.

**Theorem 5.1.238.** *The functors* Extr *and* Rec *from def. 5.1.236 induce weak equivalences*

$$N\mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \simeq N\mathrm{Cocycle}(X, \overline{W}G) \quad \in \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

*between the simplicial nerves of the category of weakly $G$-principal bundles and of cocycles, respectively.*

Proof. We construct natural transformations

$$\mathrm{Extr} \circ \mathrm{Rec} \Rightarrow q$$

and

$$\mathrm{Rec} \circ \mathrm{Extr} \Rightarrow \mathrm{id} \,,$$

where $q$ is the homotopy equivalence from observation 5.1.237.

For

$$X \overset{\pi}{\leftarrow} Y \overset{f}{\to} \overline{W}G.$$

a cocycle, its image under $\mathrm{Extr} \circ \mathrm{Rec}$ is

$$X \leftarrow (f^* WG)/_h G \to \overline{W}G \,.$$

The morphism $(f^* WG)/_h G$ factors through $Y$ by construction, so that the left triangle in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & (f^* WG)/_h G & & \\ & \overset{\sim}{\swarrow} & \downarrow & \searrow & \\ X & & & & \overline{W}G \\ & \underset{\sim}{\nwarrow} & & \nearrow_{q(f)} & \\ & & Y & & \end{array}$$

commutes. The top right morphism is by definition the image under the total simplicial set functor, def. 5.1.19, of $(f^*WG)//G \to *//G$. This factors the top horizontal morphism in

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (f^*WG)//G & \longrightarrow & (WG)//G & \longrightarrow & *//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ Y & \xrightarrow{f} & \overline{W}G & & \end{array} .$$

Applying the total simplicial object functor to this diagram gives the above commuting triangle on the right. Clearly this construction is natural and hence provides a natural transformation Extr Rec $\Rightarrow q$.

For the other natural trasformation, let now $P \to X$ be a weakly $G$-principal bundle. This induces the following commutative diagram of simplicial objects (with $P$ and $X$ regarded as constant simplicial objects)

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} P & \longleftarrow & P \times_X (P//G) & \overset{\phi}{\underset{\sim}{\longleftarrow}} & (P \times G)//G & \longrightarrow & G//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longleftarrow & P//G & = & P//G & \longrightarrow & *//G \end{array} ,$$

where the left and the right square are pullbacks, and where the top horizontal morphism $\phi$ is the degreewise local weak equivalence which is degreewise induced by the shear map, composed with exchange of the two factors.

Explicitly, in degree 0 the morphism $\phi$ is given on generalized elements by

$$(p', g) \overset{\phi_0}{\longleftarrow\!\shortmid} (p'g, p')$$

and in degree 1 by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (p'g, (p', h)) & \overset{\phi_1}{\longleftarrow\!\shortmid} & ((p', g), h) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_0} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle d_0} \\ (p'g, p'h) & \overset{\phi_0}{\longleftarrow\!\shortmid} & ((p'h, h^{-1}g) \end{array} ,$$

etc. Here the top horizontal morphisms also respect the right $G$-actions $\rho$ induced from the weakly $G$-principal bundle structure on $P \to X$ and on $G//G \to *//G$. For instance the respect of the right $G$-action of $\phi$ in degree 0 is on elements verified by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} ((p'g, p'), k) & \overset{\phi_0}{\longleftarrow\!\shortmid} & ((p', g), k) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} \\ (p'gk, p') & \overset{\phi_0}{\longleftarrow\!\shortmid} & ((p', gk) \end{array} .$$

The image of the above diagram under the total simplicial object functor, which preserves all the pullbacks and weak equivalences involved, is

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} P & \overset{\sim}{\twoheadleftarrow} & P \times_X P/_hG & \overset{\sim}{\longleftarrow} & (P \times G)/_hG & \longrightarrow & WG \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \overset{\sim}{\twoheadleftarrow} & P/_hG & = & P/_hG & \longrightarrow & \overline{W}G \end{array} .$$

Here the total bottom span is the cocycle Extr$(P)$, and so the object $(P \times G)/_hG$ over $X$ is Rec(Extr$(P)$). Therefore this exhibits a natural morphism Rec Extr$P \to P$.

**Remark 5.1.239.** By theorem 5.1.186 the simplicial set $N\mathrm{Cocycle}(X, \overline{W}G)$ is a presentation of the intrinsic cocycle $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$ of the hypercomplete $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}^{\mathrm{hc}}_{\infty}(C)$. Therefore the equivalence of theorem 5.1.238 is a presentation of that of theorem 5.1.207,

$$G\mathrm{Bund}_{\infty}(X) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$$

between the $\infty$-groupoid of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles in $\mathbf{H}$ and the intrinsic cocycle $\infty$-groupoid of $\mathbf{H}$.

**Corollary 5.1.240.** *For each weakly $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$ there is a weakly $G$-principal bundle $P^f$ with a levelwise free $G$-action and a weak equivalence $P^f \xrightarrow{\simeq} P$ of weakly $G$-principal bundles over $X$. In fact, the assignment $P \mapsto P^f$ is an homotopy inverse to the full inclusion of weakly $G$-principal bundles with free action into all weakly $G$-principal bundles.*

Proof. Note that the universal bundle $WG \to \overline{W}G$ carries a free $G$-action, in the sense that the levelwise action of $G_n$ on $(WG)_n$ is free. This means that the functor Rec from the proof of theorem 5.1.238 indeed takes values in weakly $G$-principal budles with free action. Hence we can set

$$P^f := \mathrm{Rec}(\mathrm{Extr}(P)) = (P \times G)/_h G\,.$$

By the discussion there we have a natural morphism $P^f \to P$ and one checks that this exhibits the homomotopy inverse.

### 5.1.12 Associated fiber bundles

We discuss the notion of representations/actions/modules of $\infty$-groups in an $\infty$-topos and the structures directly induced by this: the corresponding twisted cohomology is cohomology with coefficients in *modules* (the generalization of group cohomology with coefficients in a module) and the corresponding notion of *associated $\infty$-bundles.*

**5.1.12.1 General abstract** This section draws from [NSS12a].

Let $\mathbf{H}$ be an $\infty$-topos, $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ an $\infty$-group. Fix an action $\rho : V \times G \to V$ (Definition 5.1.189) on an object $V \in \mathbf{H}$. We discuss the induced notion of *$\rho$-associated $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundles.* We show that there is a *universal* $\rho$-associated $V$-fiber bundle over $\mathbf{B}G$ and observe that under Theorem 5.1.207 this is effectively identified with the action itself. Accordingly, we also further discuss $\infty$-actions as such.

**Definition 5.1.241.** For $V, X \in \mathbf{H}$ any two objects, a *$V$-fiber $\infty$-bundle* over $X$ is a morphism $E \to X$, such that there is an effective epimorphism $U \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\rightarrow X$ and an $\infty$-pullback of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U \times V & \longrightarrow & E \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ U & \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\rightarrow & X\,. \end{array}$$

We say that $E \to X$ locally trivializes with respect to $U$. As usual, we often say *$V$-bundle* for short.

**Definition 5.1.242.** For $P \to X$ a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle, we write

$$P \times_G V := (P \times V)/\!/G$$

for the $\infty$-quotient of the diagonal $\infty$-action of $G$ on $P \times V$. Equipped with the canonical morphism $P \times_G V \to X$ we call this the $\infty$-bundle *$\rho$-associated* to $P$.

**Remark 5.1.243.** The diagonal $G$-action on $P \times V$ is the product in $G\mathrm{Action}(\mathbf{H})$ of the given actions on $P$ and on $V$. Since $G\mathrm{Action}(\mathbf{H})$ is a full sub-$\infty$-category of a slice category of a functor category, the product is given by a degreewise pullback in $\mathbf{H}$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P \times V \times G^{\times_n} & \longrightarrow & V \times G^{\times_n} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ P \times G^{\times_n} & \longrightarrow & G^{\times_n}\,. \end{array}$$

and so

$$P \times_G V \simeq \varinjlim_n (P \times V \times G^{\times_n})\,.$$

The canonical bundle morphism of the corresponding $\rho$-associated $\infty$-bundle is the realization of the left morphism of this diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P \times_G V & := & \varinjlim_n (P \times V \times G^{\times_n}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \simeq & \varinjlim_n (P \times G^{\times_n})\,. \end{array}$$

**Example 5.1.244.** By Theorem 5.1.207 every $\infty$-group action $\rho : V \times G \to V$ has a classifying morphism $\mathbf{c}$ defined on its homotopy quotient, which fits into a fiber sequence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{c}} \\ & & \mathbf{B}G\,. \end{array}$$

Regarded as an $\infty$-bundle, this is $\rho$-associated to the universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $* \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G$ from Example 5.1.204:

$$V//G \simeq * \times_G V\,.$$

**Lemma 5.1.245.** *The realization functor* $\varinjlim : \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H}) \to \mathbf{H}$ *preserves the* $\infty$*-pullback of Remark 5.1.243:*

$$P \times_G V \simeq \varinjlim_n (P \times V \times G^{\times_n}) \simeq (\varinjlim_n P \times G^{\times_n}) \times_{(\varinjlim_n G^{\times_n})} (\varinjlim_n V \times G^{\times_n})\,.$$

Proof. Generally, let $X \to Y \leftarrow Z \in \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H})$ be a diagram of groupoid objects, such that in the induced diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 & \longleftarrow & Z_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \varinjlim_n X_n & \longrightarrow & \varinjlim_n Y_n & \longleftarrow & \varinjlim_n Z_n \end{array}$$

the left square is an $\infty$-pullback. By the third $\infty$-Giraud axiom (prop. 3.1.5) the vertical morphisms are effective epi, as indicated. By assumption we have a pasting of $\infty$-pullbacks as shown on the left of the following diagram, and by the pasting law (Proposition 5.1.2) this is equivalent to the pasting shown on the right:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_0 \times_{Y_0} Z_0 & \longrightarrow & Z_0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\varinjlim_n X_n & \longrightarrow & \varinjlim_n Y_n
\end{array}
\quad \simeq \quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_0 \times_{Y_0} Z_0 & \longrightarrow & Z_0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
(\varinjlim_n X_n) \times_{(\varinjlim_n Y_n)} (\varinjlim_n Z_n) & \longrightarrow & \varinjlim_n Z_n \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\varinjlim_n X_n & \longrightarrow & \varinjlim_n Y_n .
\end{array}
$$

Since effective epimorphisms are stable under $\infty$-pullback, this identifies the canonical morphism

$$X_0 \times_{Y_0} Z_0 \to (\varinjlim_n X_n) \times_{(\varinjlim_n Y_n)} (\varinjlim_n Z_n)$$

as an effective epimorphism, as indicated.

Since $\infty$-limits commute over each other, the Čech nerve of this morphism is the groupoid object $[n] \mapsto X_n \times_{Y_n} Z_n$. Therefore the third $\infty$-Giraud axiom now says that $\varinjlim$ preserves the $\infty$-pullback of groupoid objects:

$$\varinjlim (X \times_Y Z) \simeq \varinjlim_n (X_n \times_{Y_n} Z_n) \simeq (\varinjlim_n X_n) \times_{(\varinjlim_n Y_n)} (\varinjlim_n Z_n)\,.$$

Consider this now in the special case that $X \to Y \leftarrow Z$ is $(P \times G^{\times \bullet}) \to G^{\times \bullet} \leftarrow (V \times G^{\times \bullet})$. Theorem 5.1.207 implies that the initial assumption above is met, in that $P \simeq (P//G) \times_{*//G} * \simeq X \times_{\mathbf{B}G} *$, and so the claim follows. □

**Proposition 5.1.246.** *For $g_X : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ a morphism and $P \to X$ the corresponding $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle according to Theorem 5.1.207, there is a natural equivalence*

$$g_X^*(V//G) \simeq P \times_G V$$

*over $X$, between the pullback of the $\rho$-associated $\infty$-bundle $V//G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}G$ of Example 5.1.244 and the $\infty$-bundle $\rho$-associated to $P$ by Definition 5.1.242.*

Proof. By Remark 5.1.243 the product action is given by the pullback

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
P \times V \times G^{\times \bullet} & \longrightarrow & V \times G^{\times \bullet} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
P \times G^{\times \bullet} & \longrightarrow & G^{\times \bullet}
\end{array}
$$

in $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$. By Lemma 5.1.245 the realization functor preserves this $\infty$-pullback. By Remark 5.1.243 it sends the left morphism to the associated bundle, and by Theorem 5.1.207 it sends the bottom morphism to $g_X$. Therefore it produces an $\infty$-pullback diagram of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
V \times_G P & \longrightarrow & V//G \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{c}} \\
X & \xrightarrow{g_X} & \mathbf{B}G\,.
\end{array}
$$

□

**Remark 5.1.247.** This says that $V//G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}G$ is both, the $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundle $\rho$-associated to the universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle, Observation 5.1.244, as well as the universal $\infty$-bundle for $\rho$-associated $\infty$-bundles.

**Proposition 5.1.248.** *Every $\rho$-associated $\infty$-bundle is a $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundle, Definition 5.1.241.*

Proof. Let $P \times_G V \to X$ be a $\rho$-associated $\infty$-bundle. By the previous Proposition 5.1.246 it is the pullback $g_X^*(V//G)$ of the universal $\rho$-associated bundle. By Proposition 5.1.201 there exists an effective epimorphism $U \twoheadrightarrow X$ over which $P$ trivializes, hence such that $g_X|_U$ factors through the point, up to equivalence. In summary and by the pasting law, Proposition 5.1.2, this gives a pasting of $\infty$-pullbacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} U \times V & \longrightarrow & P \times_G V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ U & \twoheadrightarrow & X & \xrightarrow{g_X} & \mathbf{B}G \\ & \searrow & \ast & \nearrow & \end{array}$$

which exhibits $P \times_G V \to X$ as a $V$-fiber bundle by a local trivialization over $U$. □

So far this shows that every $\rho$-associated $\infty$-bundle is a $V$-fiber bundle. We want to show that, conversely, every $V$-fiber bundle is associated to a principal $\infty$-bundle.

**Proposition 5.1.249.** *Every $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundle is $\rho_{\mathbf{Aut}(V)}$-associated to an $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$-principal $\infty$-bundle.*

Proof. Let $E \to V$ be a $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundle. By Definition 5.1.241 there exists an effective epimorphism $U \twoheadrightarrow X$ along which the bundle trivializes locally. It follows by the second Axiom in prop. 3.1.6 that on $U$ the morphism $X \xrightarrow{\vdash E} \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa$ which classifies $E \to X$ factors through the point

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} U \times V & \longrightarrow & E & \longrightarrow & \widehat{\mathrm{Obj}}_\kappa \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ U & \twoheadrightarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\vdash E} & \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa . \\ & \searrow & \ast & \nearrow_{\vdash V} & \end{array}$$

Since the point inclusion, in turn, factors through its 1-image $\mathbf{BAut}(V)$, def. 5.1.155, this yields the outer commuting diagram of the following form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} U & \longrightarrow & \ast & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{BAut}(V) \\ \downarrow & & & \nearrow_{g} & \downarrow \\ X & & \xrightarrow{\vdash E} & & \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa \end{array}$$

By the epi/mono factorization system of Proposition 5.1.59 there is a diagonal lift $g$ as indicated. Using again the pasting law and definition 5.1.155 with example 5.1.275 this factorization induces a pasting of $\infty$-pullbacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} E & \longrightarrow & V//\mathbf{Aut}(V) & \longrightarrow & \widehat{\mathrm{Obj}}_\kappa \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}_V} & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{BAut}(V) & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa \end{array}$$

Finally, by Proposition 5.1.246, this exhibits $E \to X$ as being $\rho_{\mathbf{Aut}(V)}$-associated to the $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$-principal $\infty$-bundle with class $[g] \in H^1(X, G)$. □

**Theorem 5.1.250.** *$V$-fiber $\infty$-bundles over $X \in \mathbf{H}$ are classified by $H^1(X, \mathbf{Aut}(V))$.*

Under this classification, the $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundle corresponding to $[g] \in H^1(X, \mathbf{Aut}(V))$ is identified, up to equivalence, with the $\rho_{\mathbf{Aut}(V)}$-associated $\infty$-bundle (Definition 5.1.242) to the $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$-principal $\infty$-bundle corresponding to $[g]$ by Theorem 5.1.207.

Proof. By Proposition 5.1.249 every morphism $X \xrightarrow{\vdash E} \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa$ that classifies a small $\infty$-bundle $E \to X$ which happens to be a $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundle factors via some $g$ through the moduli for $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$-principal $\infty$-bundles

$$X \xrightarrow{g} \mathbf{BAut}(V) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa \,, \qquad (\text{composite } \vdash E).$$

Therefore it only remains to show that also every homotopy $(\vdash E_1) \Rightarrow (\vdash E_2)$ factors through a homotopy $g_1 \Rightarrow g_2$. This follows by applying the epi/mono lifting property of Proposition 5.1.59 to the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \coprod X & \xrightarrow{(g_1,g_2)} & \mathbf{BAut}(V) \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa \end{array}$$

The outer diagram exhibits the original homotopy. The left morphism is an effective epi (for instance immediately by Proposition 5.1.67), the right morphism is a monomorphism by construction. Therefore the dashed lift exists as indicated and so the top left triangular diagram exhibits the desired factorizing homotopy. □

**Remark 5.1.251.** In the special case that $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Grpd}_\infty$, the classification Theorem 5.1.250 is classical [St63a, May67], traditionally stated in (what in modern terminology is) the presentation of $\mathrm{Grpd}_\infty$ by simplicial sets or by topological spaces. Recent discussions include [BlCh12]. For $\mathbf{H}$ a general 1-localic $\infty$-topos (def. 3.1.3), the statement of theorem 5.1.250 appears in [We11], formulated there in terms of the presentation of $\mathbf{H}$ by simplicial presheaves. (We discuss the relation of these presentations to the above general abstract result in [NSS12b].) Finally, one finds that the classification of *G-gerbes* [Gir71] and *G-2-gerbes* in [Br94] is the special case of the general statement, for $V = \mathbf{B}G$ and $G$ a 1-truncated $\infty$-group. This we discuss below in Section 5.1.19.

#### 5.1.12.2 Presentation in locally fibrant simplicial sheaves

We discuss associated $\infty$-bundles in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ in terms of the presentation of $\mathbf{H}$ by locally fibrant simplicial sheaves, corresponding to the respective presentation of principal $\infty$-bundles from 5.1.11.4.

This section draws from [NSS12b].

Let $C$ be a site with terminal object.

By prop. 5.1.170 every $\infty$-group over $C$ has a presentation by a sheaf of simplicial groups $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{sSh}(C)_{\mathrm{lfib}})$. Moreover, by theorem 5.1.238 every $\infty$-action of $G$ on an object $V$, def. 5.1.189, is exhibited by a weakly principal simplicial bundle

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & V/_h G \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} \\ & & \overline{W}G \end{array} .$$

By example 5.1.246 this is a presentation for the *universal $\rho$-associated $V$-bundle.*

We now spell out what this means in the presentation.

**Lemma 5.1.252.** *The morphism $V/_hG \to \overline{W}G$ is a local fibration.*

Proof. By the same argument as in the proof of theorem 5.1.234. □

**Proposition 5.1.253.** *Let $P \to X$ in $\mathrm{sSh}(C)_{\mathrm{lfib}}$ be a weakly $G$-principal bundle with classifying cocycle $X \overset{\simeq}{\twoheadleftarrow} \hat{X} \overset{g}{\to} \overline{W}G$. Then the corresponding $\rho$-associated $\infty$-bundle, def. 5.1.246, is presented by the ordinary $V$-associated bundle $P \times_G V$ formed in $\mathrm{sSh}(C)_{\mathrm{lfib}}$.*

Proof. By def. 5.1.246 the associated $\infty$-bundle is the $\infty$-pullback of $V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$ along $g$. Using lemma 5.1.252 in prop. 5.1.8 we find that this is presented already by the ordinary pullback of $V/_hG \to \overline{W}G$ along $g$. By prop. 5.1.215 this in turn is isomorphic to the pullback of $V \times_G WG \to \overline{W}G$. Since $\mathrm{sSh}(C)$ is a 1-topos, pullbacks preserve quotients, and so this pullback finally is

$$g^*(WG \times_G V) \simeq (g^*WG) \times_G V \simeq P \times_G WG\,.$$

□

### 5.1.13 Sections and twisted cohomology

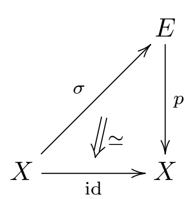
We discuss here how the general notion of cohomology in an $\infty$-topos considered above in 5.1.10, already subsumes the notion of *twisted cohomology* and we discuss the corresponding geometric structure classified by twisted cohomology: *twisted $\infty$-bundles.*

Where ordinary cohomology is given by a derived hom-$\infty$-groupoid, twisted cohomology is given by the $\infty$-groupoid of *sections of a local coefficient bundle* in an $\infty$-topos. This is a geometric and unstable variant of the picture of twisted cohomology developed in [ABG10a] [MaSi06]. It is fairly immediate that given a *universal coefficient bundle*, the induced twisted cohomology is equivalently the ordinary cohomology in the corresponding slice $\infty$-topos. This identification provides a clean formulation of the contravariance of twisted cocycles. Finally, we observe that twisted cohomology in an $\infty$-topos equivalently classifies extensions of structure groups of principal $\infty$-bundles.

This section draws from [NSS12a] and [NSS12b].

#### 5.1.13.1 General abstract

**Definition 5.1.254.** Let $p : E \to X$ be any morphism in $\mathbf{H}$, to be regarded as an $\infty$-bundle over $X$. A *section* of $E$ is a diagram




(where for emphasis we display the presence of the homotopy filling the diagram). The *$\infty$-groupoid of sections* of $E \overset{p}{\to} X$ is the homotopy fiber

$$\Gamma_X(E) := \mathbf{H}(X, E) \times_{\mathbf{H}(X,X)} \{\mathrm{id}_X\}$$

of the space of all morphisms $X \to E$ on those that cover the identity on $X$.

We record two elementary but important observations about spaces of sections.

**Observation 5.1.255.** There is a canonical identification

$$\Gamma_X(E) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/X}(\mathrm{id}_X, p)$$

of the space of sections of $E \to X$ with the hom-$\infty$-groupoid in the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ between the identity on $X$ and the bundle map $p$.

Proof. By prop. 5.1.33. □

**Lemma 5.1.256.** *Let*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E_1 & \longrightarrow & E_2 \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_1} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_2} \\ B_1 & \xrightarrow{f} & B_2 \end{array}$$

*be an $\infty$-pullback diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ and let $X \xrightarrow{g_X} B_1$ be any morphism. Then post-composition with $f$ induces a natural equivalence of hom-$\infty$-groupoids*

$$\mathbf{H}_{/B_1}(g_X, p_1) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/B_2}(f \circ g_X, p_2)\,.$$

Proof. By Proposition 5.1.33, the left hand side is given by the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{/B_1}(g_X, p_1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, E_1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{H}(X,p_1)} \\ \{g_X\} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, B_1)\,. \end{array}$$

Since the hom-$\infty$-functor $\mathbf{H}(X, -) : \mathbf{H} \to \mathrm{Grpd}_\infty$ preserves the $\infty$-pullback $E_1 \simeq f^* E_2$, this extends to a pasting of $\infty$-pullbacks, which by the pasting law (Proposition 5.1.2) is

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{H}_{/B_1}(g_X, p_1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, E_1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, E_2) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{H}(X,p_1)} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{H}(X,p_2)} \\ \{g_X\} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, B_1) & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{H}(X,f)]{} & \mathbf{H}(X, B_2) \end{array} \quad \simeq \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{/B_2}(f \circ g_X, p_2) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, E_2) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{H}(X,p_2)} \\ \{f \circ g_X\} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, B_2). \end{array}$$

□

Fix now an $\infty$-group $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ and an $\infty$-action $\rho : V \times G \to V$. Write

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{c}} \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

for the corresponding *universal $\rho$-associated $\infty$-bundle* as discussed in Section 5.1.14.

**Proposition 5.1.257.** *For $g_X : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ a cocycle and $P \to X$ the corresponding $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle according to Theorem 5.1.207, there is a natural equivalence*

$$\Gamma_X(P \times_G V) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \mathbf{c})$$

*between the space of sections of the corresponding $\rho$-associated $V$-bundle (Definition 5.1.242) and the hom-$\infty$-groupoid of the slice $\infty$-topos of $\mathbf{H}$ over $\mathbf{B}G$, between $g_X$ and $\mathbf{c}$. Schematically:*

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & & E \\ & {}^{\sigma}\nearrow \;\; \swArrow\simeq & \downarrow^{p} \\ X & \xrightarrow[\mathrm{id}]{} & X \end{array} \right\} \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & & V//G \\ & {}^{\sigma}\nearrow \;\; \swArrow\simeq & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}} \\ X & \xrightarrow[g_X]{} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} \right\}$$

Proof. By Observation 5.1.255 and Lemma 5.1.256. □

**Observation 5.1.258.** If in the above the cocycle $g_X$ is trivializable, in the sense that it factors through the point $* \to \mathbf{B}G$ (equivalently if its class $[g_X] \in H^1(X, G)$ is trivial) then there is an equivalence

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \mathbf{c}) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, V) .$$

Proof. In this case the homotopy pullback on the right in the proof of Proposition 5.1.257 is

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \mathbf{c}) & \simeq & \mathbf{H}(X, V) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, V//G) \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{H}(X,\mathbf{c})} \\ \{g_X\} & \simeq & \mathbf{H}(X, *) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \end{array}$$

using that $V \to V//G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}G$ is a fiber sequence by definition, and that $\mathbf{H}(X, -)$ preserves this fiber sequence.
□

**Remark 5.1.259.** Since by Proposition 5.1.201 every cocycle $g_X$ trivializes locally over some cover $U \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\to X$ and equivalently, by Proposition 5.1.248, every $\infty$-bundle $P \times_G V$ trivializes locally, Observation 5.1.258 says that elements $\sigma \in \Gamma_X(P \times_G V) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \mathbf{c})$ *locally* are morphisms $\sigma|_U : U \to V$ with values in $V$. They fail to be so *globally* to the extent that $[g_X] \in H^1(X, G)$ is non-trivial, hence to the extent that $P \times_G V \to X$ is non-trivial.

This motivates the following definition.

**Definition 5.1.260.** We say that the $\infty$-groupoid $\Gamma_X(P \times_G V) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \mathbf{c})$ from Proposition 5.1.257 is the $\infty$-groupoid of $[g_X]$-*twisted cocycles* with values in $V$, with respect to the *local coefficient* $\infty$*-bundle* $V//G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}G$.

Accordingly, its set of connected components we call the $[g_X]$-*twisted* $V$*-cohomology* with respect to the local coefficient bundle $\mathbf{c}$ and write:

$$H^{[g_X]}(X, V) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \mathbf{c}) .$$

**Remark 5.1.261.** The perspective that twisted cohomology is the theory of sections of associated bundles whose fibers are classifying spaces is maybe most famous for the case of twisted K-theory, where it was described in this form in [Ros89]. But already the old theory of *ordinary cohomology with local coefficients* is of this form, as is made manifest in [BFG] (we discuss this in detail in [NSS12c]).

A proposal for a comprehensive theory in terms of bundles of topological spaces is in [MaSi06] and a systematic formulation in $\infty$-category theory and for the case of multiplicative generalized cohomology theories is in [ABG10a]. The formulation above refines this, unstably, to geometric cohomology theories/(nonabelian) sheaf hypercohomology, hence from bundles of classifying spaces to $\infty$-bundles of moduli $\infty$-stacks.

A wealth of examples and applications of such geometric nonabelian twisted cohomology of relevance in quantum field theory and in string theory is discussed in 5.2.14.

**Remark 5.1.262.** Of special interest is the case where $V$ is pointed connected, hence (by Theorem 5.1.151) of the form $V = \mathbf{B}A$ for some $\infty$-group $A$, and so (by Definition 5.1.174) the coefficient for degree-1 $A$-cohomology, and hence itself (by Theorem 5.1.207) the moduli $\infty$-stack for $A$-principal $\infty$-bundles. In this case $H^{[g_X]}(X, \mathbf{B}A)$ is *degree-1 twisted A-cohomology*. Generally, if $V = \mathbf{B}^n A$ it is *degree-n twisted A-cohomology*. In analogy with Definition 5.1.174 this is sometimes written

$$H^{n+[g_X]}(X, A) := H^{[g_X]}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \,.$$

Moreover, in this case $V//G$ is itself pointed connected, hence of the form $\mathbf{B}\hat{G}$ for some $\infty$-group $\hat{G}$, and so the universal local coefficient bundle

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}A & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \\ & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}} \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

exhibits $\hat{G}$ as an *extension of $\infty$-groups* of $G$ by $A$. This case we discuss below in Section 5.1.18.

In this notation the local coefficient bundle $\mathbf{c}$ is left implicit. This convenient abuse of notation is justifed to some extent by the fact that there is a *universal local coefficient bundle*:

**Example 5.1.263.** The classifying morphism of the $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$-action on some $V \in \mathbf{H}$ from Definition 5.1.155 according to Theorem 5.1.207 yields a local coefficient $\infty$-bundle of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & V//\mathbf{Aut}(V) \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{BAut}(V) \end{array}$$

which we may call the *universal local $V$-coefficient bundle*. In the case that $V$ is pointed connected and hence of the form $V = \mathbf{B}G$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}G & \longrightarrow & (\mathbf{B}G)//\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G) \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{BAut}(\mathbf{B}G) \end{array}$$

the universal twists of the corresponding twisted $G$-cohomology are the *$G$-$\infty$-gerbes*. These we discuss below in section 5.1.19.

We now internalize the formulation of spaces of sections, to obtain objects of sections in the ambient $\infty$-topos.

**Definition 5.1.264.** For $p : E \to X$ a $\rho$-associated $V$-fiber bundle, its object of sections is the dependent product, def. 5.1.26:

$$\mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E) \simeq \prod_X p \,.$$

**Proposition 5.1.265.** *For $p : E \to X$ a $\rho$-associated $V$-fiber bundle, its object of sections is equivalently given by*

$$\mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E) \simeq \prod_{\mathbf{B}G} [g, \rho] \,,$$

*where $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the modulus of the $G$-principal bundle to which $E$ is associated.*

*Proof.* By functoriality we have

$$\begin{aligned} \prod_X g^* \rho &\simeq \prod_{\mathbf{B}G} \prod_g g^* \rho \\ &\simeq \prod_{\mathbf{B}G} [g, \rho] \end{aligned} \,,$$

where the second step is prop. 5.1.30. □

#### 5.1.13.2 Presentations

**Remark 5.1.266.** When the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is presented by a model structure on simplicial presheaves as in 3.1.3 and presentations for $X$ and $C$ have been chosen, then the cocycle $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X, C)$ is presented by an explicit simplicial set $\mathbf{H}(X, C)_{\mathrm{simp}} \in \mathrm{sSet}$. Once these choices are made, there is therefore the inclusion of simplicial presheaves

$$\mathrm{const}(\mathbf{H}(X, C)_{\mathrm{simp}})_0 \to \mathbf{H}(X, C)_{\mathrm{simp}} \,,$$

where on the left we have the simplicially constant object on the vertices of $\mathbf{H}(X, C)_{\mathrm{simp}}$. This morphism, in turn, presents a morphism in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ that in general contains a multitude of copies of the components of any $H(X, C) \to \mathbf{H}(X, C)$, a multitude of representatives of twists for each cohomology class of twists. Since the twisted cohomology does not depend, up to equivalence, on the choice of representative of the twist, the corresponding $\infty$-pullback yields in general a larger coproduct of $\infty$-groupoids as the corresponding twisted cohomology. This however just contains copies of the homotopy-types already present in $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X, A)$ as defined above and therefore constitutes no additional information.

However, the choice of effective epimorphism $H(X, C) \to \mathbf{H}(X, C)$, while unique up to equivalence, can usually not be made functorially in $X$. Therefore twisted cohomology can have a *representing object* only if one does consider multiple twist representatives in a suitable way. An example of this situation appears in the discussion of differential cohomology below in 5.2.13.

### 5.1.14 Actions and Representations

We further discuss the concept of actions/representations/modules of $\infty$-groups in an $\infty$-topos and the related concepts of invariants and coinvariants (quotients).

**5.1.14.1 General abstract** Let $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ be a group object, according to 5.1.9.1. By the discussion in 5.1.12 we may identify the slice $\infty$-topos over its delooping with the $\infty$-category of $G$-actions:

**Proposition 5.1.267.** *We have an equivalence of $\infty$-categories*

$$G\mathrm{Act} \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G} \,,$$

*under which an action of $G$ on some $V \in \mathbf{H}$ is identified with a morphism $V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$, regarded as an object in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$, whose $\infty$-fiber is $V$:*

$$V \longrightarrow V//G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G \,.$$

*Proof.* This follows from theorem 5.1.207. □

**Definition 5.1.268.** Given an action $\rho$ of a group $G$ on some $V$ as in prop. 5.1.267, and given a global element $x\colon * \to V$ of $V$, then we write

$$\rho(x,-) : G \longrightarrow V$$

for the morphism which fits into a homotopy pullback diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho(x,-)} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \vdash x} \\ V & \longrightarrow & V//G \end{array} ,$$

where we are using prop. 5.1.267 and the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2 to indeed identify the top left object as $G$.

We observe now that under this equivalence, the canonical base change

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G} \underset{\longrightarrow \prod_{\mathbf{B}G} \longrightarrow}{\overset{\longrightarrow \sum_{\mathbf{B}G} \longrightarrow}{\longleftarrow (\mathbf{B}G)^* \longrightarrow}} \mathbf{H} ,$$

via prop. 5.1.28, along the terminal morphism $\mathbf{B}G \to *$, translates into fundamental operations of representation theory.

**Definition 5.1.269.** For $\rho \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ a $G$-action on some $V \in \mathbf{H}$, we say that

1. its dependent product $\prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}G} \rho \in \mathbf{H}$ is the *object of invariants* (homotopy invariants) of the action;
2. its dependent sum $\sum\limits_{\mathbf{B}G} \rho \in \mathbf{H}$ is the *object of coinvariants* (homotopy coinvariants) or *quotient object* (homotopy quotient) of the action.

Moreover, for $V \in \mathbf{H}$ any object, we say that $(\mathbf{B}G)^* V \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ is the *trivial action* of $G$ on $V$. .

**Proposition 5.1.270.** *1. The quotient object in the sense of def. 5.1.269 coincides with the quotient in the sense of def. 5.1.242:*

$$\sum_{\mathbf{B}G} \rho \simeq V//G .$$

*2. The object of invariants coincides with the object of sections of the universal $V$-associated bundle, def. 5.1.257:*

$$\prod_{\mathbf{B}G} \rho \simeq \mathbf{\Gamma}_{\mathbf{B}G}(V//G) .$$

**Definition 5.1.271.** For $G_1, G_2 \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ two groups and $f : G_1 \to G_2$ a group homomorphism, hence $\mathbf{B}f : \mathbf{B}G_1 \to \mathbf{B}G_2$ a morphism in $\mathbf{H}$ we say that

1. the base change

$$(\mathbf{B}f)^* : \; G_2\mathrm{Act} \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G_2} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G_1} \simeq G_1\mathrm{Act}$$

   is the *pullback representation* functor (or *restricted representation* functor if $f$ is a monomorphism);

2. the dependent sum

$$\sum_{\mathbf{B}f} : \; G_1\mathrm{Act} \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G_1} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G_2} \simeq G_2\mathrm{Act}$$

   is the *induced representation* functor.

3. the dependent product
$$\prod_{\mathbf{B}f} : \; G_1\mathrm{Act} \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G_1} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G_2} \simeq G_2\mathrm{Act}$$
is the *coinduced representation* functor.

**Remark 5.1.272.** For the case of permutation representations of discrete groups, this identification of dependent sum/dependent product along contexts of pointed connected discrete groupoids has been mentioned on p. 14 of [Law06].

**5.1.14.2 Examples** We consider a list of fundamental types of examples of $\infty$-group $\infty$-actions via prop. 5.1.267.

**Example 5.1.273.** For every $V \in \mathbf{H}$, the fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id}_V, \mathrm{pt}_{\mathbf{B}G})} & V \times \mathbf{B}G \\ & & \downarrow^{p_2} \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

exhibits the *trivial $\infty$-action* of $G$ on $V$.

**Example 5.1.274.** For every $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$, the fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & * \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

which defines $\mathbf{B}G$ by theorem 5.1.151 induces the *right action of $G$ on itself*

$$* \simeq G//G \, .$$

At the same time this sequence, but now regarded as a bundle over $\mathbf{B}G$, is the universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle, remark 5.1.204.

**Example 5.1.275.** Let $V$ be any $\kappa$-compact object, and consider its internal automorphism group $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$ according to def. 5.1.155. By the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, the image factorization (prop. 5.1.59) gives a pasting of $\infty$-pullback diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} V & \longrightarrow & V//\mathbf{Aut}(V) & \longrightarrow & \widehat{\mathrm{Obj}}_\kappa \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}_V} & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{\vdash V} & \mathbf{B}\mathbf{Aut}(V) & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{Obj}_\kappa \end{array}$$

By Theorem 5.1.207 this defines a canonical $\infty$-action

$$\rho_{\mathbf{Aut}(V)} : V \times \mathbf{Aut}(V) \to V$$

of $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$ on $V$ with homotopy quotient $V//\mathbf{Aut}(V)$ as indicated.

**Example 5.1.276.** For every $\infty$-group homomorphism $H \to G$, hence, by prop. 5.1.152, for every morphism $\mathbf{B}H \to \mathbf{B}G$, the homotopy fiber of this morphism is $G//H$ (by the long homotopy fiber sequence and theorem 5.1.207). This exhibits

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G/H & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}H \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

a canonical action of $G$ on $G//H$.

This example we discuss further in the context of Klein geometry below in 5.1.17.

**Example 5.1.277.** For every object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ write

$$\mathcal{L}X := X \times_{X \times X} X$$

for its *free loop space* object, the $\infty$-fiber product of the diagonal on $X$ along itself

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{L}X & \longrightarrow & X \\ {\scriptstyle \mathrm{ev}_*}\downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & X \times X \end{array}$$

For every $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ there is a fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{L}\mathbf{B}G \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{ev}_*} \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

This exhibits the *adjoint action of $G$ on itself*

$$\mathcal{L}\mathbf{B}G \simeq G//_{\mathrm{ad}}G\,.$$

**Definition 5.1.278.** For $\rho_1, \rho_2 \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ two $G$-actions on objects $V_1, V_2 \in \mathbf{H}$, respectively, write $[\rho_1, \rho_2] \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ for their internal hom in the slice. This we call the *conjugation action* of $G$ on morphisms $V_1 \to V_2$. We say its object of invariants, def. 5.1.269, is the object of *$G$-action homomorphisms* between $V_1$ and $V_2$ (the "intertwiner space") and write

$$\mathbf{Hom}_G(\rho_1, \rho_2) := \prod_{\mathbf{B}G} [\rho_1, \rho_2] \ \in \mathbf{H}\,.$$

**Proposition 5.1.279.** *The conjugation action $[\rho_1, \rho_2]$, def. 5.1.278, is a $G$-action on the internal hom object $[V_1, V_2] \in \mathbf{H}$, i.e.*

$$\sum_{\mathbf{B}G} [\rho_1, \rho_2] \simeq [V_1, V_2]//G\,.$$

Proof. By def. 5.1.242 we need to show that the internal hom $[\rho_1, \rho_2]$ in the slice sits in a homotopy fiber sequence in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [V_1, V_2] & \longrightarrow & \sum_{\mathbf{B}G} [\rho_1, \rho_2] \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}\ .$$

Observe that forming the homotopy fiber is applying the inverse image of base change along the point inclusion $\mathrm{pt}_{\mathbf{B}G} : * \to \mathbf{B}G$ and that base change inverse images are (cartesian-)closed functors, by prop. 5.1.26, hence preserve internal homs. This yields

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{hfib}\left(\sum_{\mathbf{B}G}[\rho_1,\rho_2] \to \mathbf{B}G\right) &\simeq (\mathrm{pt}_{\mathbf{B}G})^*[\rho_1,\rho_2] \\ &\simeq [(\mathrm{pt}_{\mathbf{B}G})^*\rho_1, (\mathrm{pt}_{\mathbf{B}G})^*\rho_2] \\ &\simeq [V_1, V_2] \end{aligned} .$$

□

**Example 5.1.280.** Combining example 5.1.275 with def. 5.1.278: For $X, Y \in \mathbf{H}$ two objects, the automorphism group $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$ of $X$, def. 5.1.155 has a canonical action $\rho_{\mathrm{prec}}$ by *precomposition* on the internal hom $[X, Y] \in \mathbf{H}$, given itself by the internal hom

$$\rho_{\mathrm{prec}} := \left[\rho_{\mathrm{aut}(X)}, \mathbf{BAut}(X)^* Y\right]$$

in $(\mathbf{Aut}(X))\mathrm{Act}$, hence by the congugation action, def. 5.1.278, on morphisms from $X$ to $Y$ with $Y$ regarded as equipped with the trivial $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$-action; we have a fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [X,Y] & \longrightarrow & [X,Y]/\!/\mathbf{Aut}(X) \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_{\mathrm{prec}}} \\ & & \mathbf{BAut}(X) \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$.

**Remark 5.1.281.** Given a morphism $f : X \to Y$ regarded as a global element $\vdash f : * \to [X, Y]$, then the morphism expressing the $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$-translation of this morphism under the action of example 5.1.280, via 5.1.268, is naturally denoted as

$$f \circ (-) : \mathbf{Aut}(X) \longrightarrow [X, Y] .$$

**Proposition 5.1.282.** *Any morphism $Y_1 \longrightarrow Y_2$ canonically induces a homomorphism $[X, Y_1] \longrightarrow [X, Y_2]$ of the $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$-actions of example 5.1.280.*

Proof. By the construction in example 5.1.280, this is just the functoriality of the internal hom in the slice over $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Aut}(X)$. □

**Proposition 5.1.283.** *Let $E \to X$ be an $F$-fiber bundle associated to an $\mathbf{Aut}(F)$-principal bundle $P \to X$ according to 5.1.12. Then $A$-valued functions on $E$ are naturally equivalent to sections of the $[F, A]$-fiber bundle canonically associated to $P$ via the precomposition action of example 5.1.280:*

$$\mathbf{H}(E, A) \simeq \Gamma_X\left(P \underset{\mathbf{Aut}(F)}{\times} [F, A]\right) .$$

*Moreover, pulled back to a cover $U \twoheadrightarrow X$ over which $P$ (hence $E$) trivializes, this equivalence restricts to the (product $\dashv$ hom)-adjunction equivalence:*

$$\mathbf{H}(U \times F, A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(U, [F, A]) .$$

Proof. Write $X \to \mathbf{BAut}(F)$ for the map that modulates $E \to X$ according to the discussion in 5.1.12. By prop. 5.1.257 the space of sections in question is equivalently the space

$$\Gamma_X \left( P \underset{\mathbf{Aut}(F)}{\times} [F, A] \right) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BAut}(F)}(X, [F, A]//\mathbf{Aut}(F))$$

of dashed lifts in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & [F, A]//\mathbf{Aut}(F) \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{BAut}(F) \end{array}$$

where the right vertical morphism is the one exhibiting the precomposition action according to example 5.1.280. By def. 5.1.278, prop. 5.1.279 we have that the homotopy quotient here is the internal hom taken in the slice over $\mathbf{BAut}(F)$

$$[F, A]//\mathbf{Aut}(F) \simeq [F//\mathbf{Aut}(F), A \times \mathbf{BAut}(F)]_{\mathbf{BAut}(F)} .$$

Hence by the (product $\dashv$ hom)-adjunction in the slice and using again the characterization of associated bundles from 5.1.12, this means that we have a sequence of natural equivalences as follows

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_X \left( P \underset{\mathbf{Aut}(F)}{\times} [F, A] \right) &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BAut}(F)}(X, [F, A]//\mathbf{Aut}(F)) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BAut}(F)}(X, [F//\mathbf{Aut}(F), A \times \mathbf{BAut}(F)]_{\mathbf{BAut}(F)}) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BAut}(F)}(X \underset{\mathbf{BAut}(F)}{\times} F//\mathbf{Aut}(F), A \times \mathbf{BAut}(F)) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BAut}(F)}(P \underset{\mathbf{Aut}(F)}{\times} F, A \times \mathbf{BAut}(F)) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{BAut}(F)}(E, A \times \mathbf{BAut}(F)) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(E, A) . \end{aligned}$$

This establishes the first part of the statement.

For the second part, notice that $U \to X$ being trivializing means that the composite $U \to X \to \mathbf{BAut}(F)$ is equivalent to a morphism of the form $U \to * \to \mathbf{BAut}(F)$. With this the second part of the statement follows via the compatibility of Frobenius reciprocity with closure of pullback and the (product $\dashv$ hom)-adunctions in the slice (as spelled out in section 2 of [May05]).

### 5.1.15 Double dimensional reduction

In physics one speaks of "double dimensional reduction" when $(p + 1)$-branes on the total space of a fiber bundle with typical fiber a compact $n$-manifold are regarded as $(p + 1 - n)$-branes on the base space by "wrapping" their worldvolume on the $n$-dimensional fibers. For example the situation of a string with worldvolume $\Sigma_2$ some abstract 2-manifold and propagating in some target manifold $X$ via a smooth function $phi_2 : \Sigma_2 \to X$ may be the double dimensional reduction of a membrane with worldvolume $\Sigma_3 := \Sigma_2 \times S^1$ and propagating on the total space of the trivial circle bundle $Y := X \times S^1$ via the map $\phi_2 \times \mathrm{id}_{S^1} : \Sigma_3 \to Y$.

If this membrane couples to a differential 3-form $\omega_3 \in \Omega^3(Y)$ in that part of its action functional is the integral $\phi \mapsto \exp(\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{\Sigma_3} \phi^* \omega_3)$, then the string that corresponds to the membrane under this double dimensional reduction similarly couples to the 2-form $\omega_2 := \int_{S^1} \omega_3$, hence to the fiber integration of the 3-form.

On the other hand, if the membrane propagates in $Y$ via a map $\phi_2 \times \phi_1 : \Sigma_2 \times S^1 \to Y$ which does not "wrap" a cycle in $Y$ (in that $(\phi_1)_*(S^1)$ is a trivial cycle in $Y$), then it should still couple to the original 3-form.

Hence a formalization of the concept of double dimensional reduction should be an operation that establishes a correspondence between cocycles on total spaces of fiber bundles with cocycles on the base space of the fiber bundle, but with modified coefficients. We now consider such a formalization in full generality.

**Proposition 5.1.284.** *Let* $\mathbf{H}$ *be an* $\infty$*-topos and let* $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ *be an* $\infty$*-group in* $\mathbf{H}$ *(def. 5.1.150). Then there is a pair of adjoint* $\infty$*-functors of the form*

$$\mathbf{H} \underset{[G,-]/G}{\overset{\mathrm{hofib}}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{\bot}}}} \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G} \ ,$$

*where*

- hofib *is the* $\infty$*-functor that takes a morphism of the form* $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ *to its homotopy fiber, hence (by theorem 5.1.207) to the total space of the* $G$*-pincipal* $\infty$*-bundle* $P \to X$ *that it classifies;*
- $[G,-]/G$ *denotes the* $\infty$*-functor which takes an object* $X \in \mathbf{H}$ *to the homotopy quotient of the internal hom* $[G,X]$ *by the* $G$*-action given by precomposition with the action of* $G$ *on itself by left multiplication, according to example 5.1.280 and example 5.1.274.*

Proof. By example 5.1.278 the precomposition action on $[G,X]$ is the internal hom in $\mathrm{Act}_G(\mathbf{H})$, from the canonical $G$-action on $G$ to the trivial $G$-action on $X$. By the equivalence of $\infty$-categories $\mathrm{Act}_G(\mathbf{H}) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ from prop. 5.1.267 and via example 5.1.280 and example 5.1.273 this is

$$[G,X]/G \simeq [*, X \times \mathbf{B}G]_{\mathbf{B}G} \qquad \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G} \, ,$$

where we are notationally suppressing the morphisms to $\mathbf{B}G$. Now since the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ is itself cartesian closed, via

$$E \times_{\mathbf{B}G} (-) \quad \dashv \quad [E,-]_{\mathbf{B}G}$$

it is immediate that there is the following sequence of natural equivalences:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(Y, [G,X]/G) &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(Y, [*, X \times \mathbf{B}G]_{\mathbf{B}G}) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(Y \times_{\mathbf{B}G} *, \underbrace{X \times \mathbf{B}G}_{(\mathbf{B}G)^* X}) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(\underbrace{\sum_{\mathbf{B}G} (Y \times_{\mathbf{B}G} *)}_{\mathrm{hofib}(Y)}, X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(\mathrm{hofib}(Y), X) \end{aligned} \, .$$

□

### 5.1.16 Group cohomology

We discuss the concept of group cohomology with coefficients in a module realized in any $\infty$-topos.

#### 5.1.16.1 General abstract

**Definition 5.1.285.** For $G$ an $\infty$-group, let $(V,\rho) \in G\mathrm{Act}\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$ be $G$-action on some $V$, according to prop. 5.1.267.

We say that

$$\mathbf{Hom}_G(*, V) = \prod_{\mathbf{B}G} [\mathbf{B}G, \rho] \in \mathbf{H}$$

is the *cocycle ∞-groupoid* of $G$-group cohomology with coefficients in $V$. We say that

$$H_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G, V) := \pi_0 \mathbf{Hom}_G(*, V)$$

is the *group cohomology* of $G$ with coefficients in $V$.

**Remark 5.1.286.** By def. 5.1.278 and since the action on $*$ is trivial, this says in words that group cohomology with coefficients in $V$ is the collection of equivalence classes of homotopy invariants of the $G$-representation $V$.

#### 5.1.16.2 Presentations.

**Remark 5.1.287.** In the case that $V \in \mathbf{H}$ is presented by a chain complex under the Dold-Kan correspondence, def. 3.1.35 and that $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ is a 0-truncated group, def. 5.1.285 of group cohomology of $G$ with coefficients in $V$ manifestly reduces to the traditional definition of group cohomology in homological algebra, given by the derived functor of the invariants functor of $G$-modules.

### 5.1.17 Stabilizer groups and Klein geometry

We consider here a formalization of the traditional concept of stabilizer groups and Klein geometry generalized to ∞-group ∞-actions in an ∞-topos. We discuss how lifts of structure groups of fiber bundles to stabilizer groups encode the central obstruction theory for globalization of functions ("fields") from local model spaces to global geometries.

Following def. 5.1.269 we say:

**Definition 5.1.288.** Given a $G$-action on any $V$ (as in 5.1.14), exhibited via prop. 5.1.267 by a homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$V \longrightarrow V//G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G$$

and given a point $x\colon * \to V$, then we say that the action *stabilizes* the point, or that the point is an *invariant* of the action, if there is a section $x//G$ in a homotopy commutative diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} * & \xrightarrow{x} & V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ & \searrow & & \nearrow^{x//G} & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{BG} & = & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

**Definition 5.1.289.** Given a $G$-action on any $V$, def. 5.1.14, and given a point $x\colon * \to V$, then the *stabilizer ∞-group* $\mathrm{Stab}_G(x)$ of that point under that action , is the loop space object, def. 5.1.148, of the 1-image factorization, def. 5.1.56, of the map $* \xrightarrow{x} V \to V//G$:

$$\mathrm{Stab}_G(x) := \; * \twoheadrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Stab}_G(X) \hookrightarrow V//G \quad (\text{composite } * \xrightarrow{x} V//G)$$

**Remark 5.1.290.** Examples connecting this definition to the traditional concepts that go by these names we discuss below in 6.2.8.

**Remark 5.1.291.** By example 5.1.153 this means euivalently that the stabilizer group, def. 5.1.289, is the loop space object

$$\mathrm{Stab}_G(x) \simeq \Omega_x(V//G)$$

of the homotopy quotient $V//G$ at $x$. Moreover, this sits in a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} * & \xrightarrow{\;\;x\;\;} & V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ \downarrow & & & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Stab}_G(x) & = & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Stab}_G(x) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} ,$$

where the left vertical morphism is a 1-epimorphism and the diagonal morphism is a 1-monomorphism (def. 5.1.58).

**Proposition 5.1.292.** *A $G$-action on some $V$ stabilizes a point $x : * \to V$ in the sense of def. 5.1.288 precisely if it factors through the stabilizer group* $\mathrm{Stab}_G(x)$*, def. 5.1.289, in that the canonical morphism* $\mathrm{Stab}_G(x) \to G$ *of remark 5.1.291 has a section $\sigma$.*

Proof. If we have a section $\sigma$, then it clearly provides the morphism $x//G$ by forming composites.
Conversely, given $x//G$ we get the outer square diagram in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Stab}_G(x) \\ \downarrow & \overset{\sigma}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{x//G} & V//G \\ & \searrow^{=} & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

Since the left vertical morphism is a 1-epimorpism by remark 5.1.159 and the right vertical morphism is a 1-monomorphism by def. 5.1.289 the (1-epi,1-mono)-factorization system of prop. 5.1.59 implies the section $\sigma$ as indicated. □

The following equivalent reformulation of stabilizer groups is useful (for instance in the discussion of higher Kostant-Souriau extensions below in 5.2.17.5).

**Proposition 5.1.293.** *Given an action $\rho$ of a group $G$ on some $V$, then the stabilizer group, def. 5.1.289, is equivalently the homotopy pullback in*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Stab}_G(x) & \longrightarrow & G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\rho(x,-)} \\ * & \xrightarrow{\vdash x} & V \end{array} ,$$

*where the right morphism is from def. 5.1.268.*

Proof. This follows by the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, applied to the following pasting diagram of homotopy pullbacks

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{Stab}(x) & \longrightarrow & G & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\rho(x,-)} & & \downarrow^{x} \\ * & \xrightarrow{\vdash x} & V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ & & * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

□

**Example 5.1.294.** Given a function $f : X \to A$, then its stabilizer group, def. 5.1.289, under the precomposition action of $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$ on $[X, A]$, example 5.1.280, is equivalent to its $\mathbf{H}$-valued automorphism group as an object $f \in \mathbf{H}_{/A}$, def. 5.1.35:

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(X)}(f) \simeq \mathbf{Aut}_A(X) := \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(f)\,.$$

Proof. By example **??** used in prop. 5.1.293, we have an $\infty$-pullback of the form

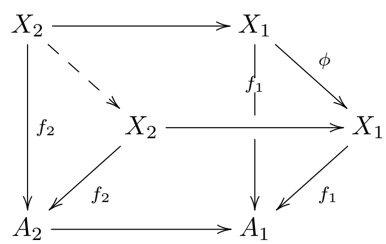
$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(X)}(f) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Aut}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{f\circ(-)} \\ * & \longrightarrow & [X, A] \end{array}\,.$$

From this the identification follows by prop. 5.1.40. ∎

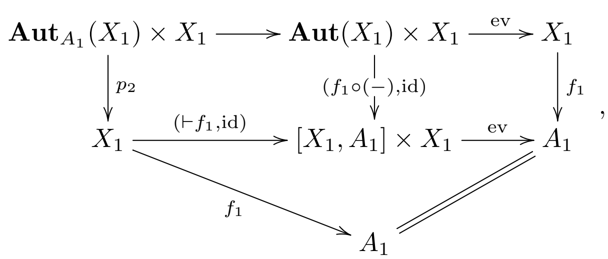
**Example 5.1.295.** The statement of example 5.1.294 is useful for the following construction. Consider a homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_2 & \longrightarrow & X_1 \\ \downarrow^{f_2} & & \downarrow^{f_1} \\ A_2 & \longrightarrow & A_1 \end{array}\,.$$

Externally it is immediate that an automorphism $\phi$ of $X_1$ over $A_1$ extends to an automorphism of $X_2$ over $A_2$, given by the dashed morphism in this diagram




which is induced by the universal property of the homotopy pullback. The internalization of this construction should be a homomorphism $\mathbf{Aut}_{A_1}(X_1) \to \mathbf{Aut}_{A_2}(X_2)$. To construct this observe the following pasting composite:




where the left square is the image under $(-)\times X_1$ of the homotopy pullback square which exhibits $\mathbf{Aut}_{A_1}(X_1)$ as a homotopy fiber by example 5.1.294. Now the base change of this diagram by pullback along $A_2 \to A_1$ is of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Aut}_{A_1}(X_1) \times X_2 & \longrightarrow & X_2 \\ \downarrow^{p_2} & & \downarrow^{f_2} \\ X_2 & \xrightarrow{f_2} & A_2 \end{array}\,.$$

This is equivalently a morphism

$$(A_2^*\mathbf{Aut}_{A_1}(X_1)) \times_{A_2} f_2 \longrightarrow f_2$$

in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/A_2}$, def. 5.1.25, hence by the Hom-adjunction in the slice is equivalently a morphism

$$A_2^*\mathbf{Aut}_{A_1}(X_1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(f_2) \to [f_2, f_2]_{A_2}\,.$$

The $(A_2^* \dashv \prod_{A_2})$-adjunct of this (via prop. 5.1.28) is the morphism in question

$$\mathbf{Aut}_{A_1}(X_1) \longrightarrow \prod_{A_2} \mathbf{Aut}(f_2) = \mathbf{Aut}_{A_2}(X_2)\,.$$

**Example 5.1.296.** For $G$ a group object, hence, by theorem 5.1.151, equivalently $\mathrm{pt} : * \to \mathbf{B}G$ a pointed connected object, then the stabilizer of pt in $[*, \mathbf{B}G] \simeq \mathbf{B}G$ under the right composition action of $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$ has, again by theorem 5.1.151, the interpretation of being the object $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G) = \mathbf{Aut}^{*/}(\mathbf{B}G)$ of invertible group homomorphisms. By prop. 5.1.293 this sits in the homotopy fiber sequence

$$\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G) \xrightarrow{\phi} \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G) \xrightarrow{(-)\circ \mathrm{pt}} [*, \mathbf{B}G] \overset{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}G\,.$$

From this one gets a canonical forgetful morphism

$$\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(V) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(V)$$

to the plain automorphism group of $V$ by forming the Hom-adjunct of the result of applying the homotopy limit construction to the morphism of cospan diagrams as shown on the right here:

$$\left( \begin{array}{c} \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G) \times G \\ \downarrow \\ G \end{array} \right) \;=\; \lim \left( \begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G) & \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id},\mathrm{pt})} & \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G) \times \mathbf{B}G & \xleftarrow{(\mathrm{id},\mathrm{pt})} & \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{ev}\circ(\phi,\mathrm{id})} & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{pt}} & \mathbf{B}G & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{pt}} & * \end{array} \right),$$

where the squares on the right are obtained from factoring the defining homotopy pullback square of $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G) \simeq \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G) \underset{\mathbf{B}G}{\times} *$ through the canonical evaluation action of $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G) & \xrightarrow{\phi} & \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle (\mathrm{id},\mathrm{pt})} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle (\mathrm{id},\mathrm{pt})} \\ \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G) \times \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{(\phi,\mathrm{id})} & \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G) \times \mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{ev}} \\ * & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{pt}} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

The following two examples show how higher stabilizer groups yield a higher analog of model spaces in the sense of Klein's Erlangen program (see remark 5.1.299 below).

**Example 5.1.297.** Given any homomorphism $H \to G$ of $\infty$-groups, then the canonical $G$-action for which $H$ is the stabilizer group of any point is that on $G/H$.

This is because, by example 5.1.276, this action is exhibited by the homotopy fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G/H & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}H \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

and hence for any $x : * \to G/H$ we have

$$\mathrm{Stab}(x) = \Omega_* \mathbf{B}H \simeq H .$$

**Example 5.1.298** (stabilizer of Kleinian figures)**.** For a $G$-$\infty$-action on any $X$, and for any other object $S$, there is canonically the $G$-action on the mapping space $[S, X]$, given by the conjugation action, def. 5.1.278, with $S$ regarded as equipped with the trivial $G$-action.

A point in $[S, X]$ is of course a morphism $\phi : S \to X$. In particular if this is a 1-monomorphism, def. 5.1.58, then we may think of this as defining a "figure in $X$ of shape $S$". Accordingly, the stabilizer group $\mathrm{Stab}_G(\phi)$ is then that of $G$-actions on $X$ which preserve this "figure". The quotient $G/\mathrm{Stab}_G(\phi)$ (example 5.1.297) has the interpretation of all congruent configurations of the figure $\phi$ across the space $X$.

**Remark 5.1.299.** Examples 5.1.297 and 5.1.298 show that we may think of the homotopy fibers

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} G/\mathrm{Stab}_G(\phi) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Stab}_G(\phi) & \hookrightarrow & [S, X]_{\mathbf{B}G} \\ & & \downarrow & \swarrow & \\ & & \mathbf{B}G & & \end{array}$$

of the canonical maps from stabilizer $\infty$-groups as being the analogs in higher geometry of *Klein geometries* of figures $S$ in spaces $X$ as in Felix Klein's *Erlanger program* [Klein1872, end of section 5] (called "Körper" there in the original German version, and "body" in the English translation from 1872). See for instance [Sha97, section 4] for modern review of traditional Klein geometry.

Of course Klein's program considered (or rather: catalyzed the development of) groups $G$ equipped with differential geometric structures, later to be named Lie groups. More generally, we consider here $\infty$-groups equipped with differential cohesive structure, simply by implementing the above constructions in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ which is differentially cohesive.

**Example 5.1.300** (stabilizers of co-shapes)**.** Example 5.1.298 has an evident dual version, whose traditional analog has not been considered by Klein, but which turns out to be at least as interesting. Here one considers stabilizers of maps $\phi : X \to A$ out of $X$ (instead of into $X$) in $[X, A]$ under the precomposition actio of example 5.1.280. Such a "co-figure of co-shape $A$" may be thought of as a field on $X$, in the sense of prequantum field theory discussed below in 5.2.18. The stabilizer group of such co-figures hence serves as a group of automorpisms (e.g. diffeomorphisms) which leave a given background field invariant up to specified (higher) gauge transformation.

Specifically if $A$ here is a differential coefficient as in 5.2.13, then one may think of $\phi : X \to A$ as a *higher prequantum bundle*, as in 5.2.17.2. In this case the stabilizer of $\phi$ in the differential concretification (see 5.2.13.4) is a *higher quantomorphism group*, discussed below in 5.2.17.5.

**Remark 5.1.301.** We find below in in prop. 5.1.317 that lifts of structure groups to stabilizer groups obstruct the existence of locally constant sections, and secifically, below in theorem 5.1.321, that lifts to "stabilizers of co-shapes" as in example 5.1.300 obstruct the existence of parameterized extensions of cocycles.

### 5.1.18 Extensions, Obstructions and Twisted bundles

We discuss the notion of *extensions* of $\infty$-groups (see Section 5.1.9), generalizing the traditional notion of group extensions. This is in fact a special case of the notion of principal $\infty$-bundle, Definition 5.1.192, for base space objects that are themselves deloopings of $\infty$-groups. For every extension of $\infty$-groups, there is the corresponding concept of *lifts of structure $\infty$-groups* of principal $\infty$-bundles. These are classified equivalently by trivializations of an *obstruction class* and by the twisted cohomology with coefficients in the extension itself, regarded as a local coefficient $\infty$-bundle.

Moreover, we show that principal $\infty$-bundles with an extended structure $\infty$-group are equivalent to principal $\infty$-bundles with unextended structure $\infty$-group but carrying a principal $\infty$-bundle for the *extending* $\infty$-group on their total space, which on fibers restricts to the given $\infty$-group extension. We formalize these *twisted (principal) $\infty$-bundles* and observe that they are classified by twisted cohomology, def. 5.1.260.

#### 5.1.18.1 General abstract

**Definition 5.1.302.** We say a sequence of homomorphisms of $\infty$-groups, def. 5.1.150

$$A \to \hat{G} \to G$$

*exhibits $\hat{G}$ as an extension of $G$ by $A$* if the delooping (def. 5.1.152)

$$\mathbf{B}A \to \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \to \mathbf{B}G$$

is a homotopy fiber sequence in $\mathbf{H}$, def. 5.1.178.

**Remark 5.1.303.** By continuing the fiber sequence to the left via def. 5.1.178,

$$A \to \hat{G} \to G \to \mathbf{B}A \to \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \to \mathbf{B}G$$

this implies by theorem 5.1.207 that $\hat{G} \to G$ is an $A$-principal bundle and that

$$G \simeq \hat{G}//A$$

is the quotient of the canonical $A$-action on $\hat{G}$.

**Definition 5.1.304.** For $A$ a braided $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, a *central extension* $\hat{G}$ of $G$ by $A$ is an extension $A \to \hat{G} \to G$, such that the defining delooping extends one step further to the right:

$$\mathbf{B}A \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p}} \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}^2 A\,.$$

We also write

$$\hat{G} = G \rtimes A$$

in this case, and we write

$$\mathrm{Ext}(G, A) := \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}^2 A) \simeq (\mathbf{B}A)\mathrm{Bund}(\mathbf{B}G)$$

for the $\infty$-*groupoid of extensions* of $G$ by $A$.

**Definition 5.1.305.** Given an $\infty$-group extension $A \longrightarrow \hat{G} \xrightarrow{\Omega\mathbf{c}} G$ and given a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ in $\mathbf{H}$, we say that a *lift* $\hat{P}$ of $P$ to a $\hat{G}$-principal $\infty$-bundle is a lift $\hat{g}_X$ of its classifying cocycle $g_X : X \to \mathbf{B}G$, under the equivalence of Theorem 5.1.207, through the extension:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \\ & \overset{\hat{g}_X}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{p}} \\ X & \xrightarrow[g_X]{} & \mathbf{B}G. \end{array}$$

Accordingly, the $\infty$-*groupoid of lifts* of $P$ with respect to $\mathbf{p}$ is

$$\mathrm{Lift}(P, \mathbf{p}) := \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \mathbf{p})\,.$$

**Remark 5.1.306.** Of particular interest in applications are such lifts for $g_X$ a map that modulates a frame bundle of an étale $\infty$-groupoid. This we consider below in def. 5.3.104 after introduction of the relevant differential cohesive structure for formulating étaleness.

**Remark 5.1.307.** By the universal property of the $\infty$-pullback, a lift exists precisely if the cohomology class

$$[\mathbf{c}(g_X)] := [\mathbf{c} \circ g_X] \in H^2(X, A)$$

is trivial. Therefore we call $[\mathbf{c}(g_X)]$ the *obstruction* to the lift.

This is implied by Theorem 5.1.309, to which we turn after introducing the following terminology.

**Definition 5.1.308.** In the above situation, we call $[\mathbf{c}(g_X)]$ the *obstruction class* to the extension; and we call $[\mathbf{c}] \in H^2(\mathbf{B}G, A)$ the *universal obstruction class* of extensions through $\mathbf{p}$.

We say that a *trivialization* of the obstruction cocycle $\mathbf{c}(g_X)$ is a morphism $\mathbf{c}(g_X) \to *_X$ in $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^2 A)$, where $*_X : X \to * \to \mathbf{B}^2 A$ is the trivial cocycle. Accordingly, the *∞-groupoid of trivializations of the obstruction* is

$$\mathrm{Triv}(\mathbf{c}(g_X)) := \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^2 A}(\mathbf{c} \circ g_X, *_X)\,.$$

We give now three different characterizations of spaces of extensions of ∞-bundles. The first two, by spaces of twisted cocycles and by spaces of trivializations of the obstruction class, are immediate consequences of the previous discussion:

**Theorem 5.1.309.** *Let $P \to X$ be a $G$-principal ∞-bundle corresponding by Theorem 5.1.207 to a cocycle $g_X : X \to \mathbf{B}G$.*

1. *There is a natural equivalence*
$$\mathrm{Lift}(P, \mathbf{p}) \simeq \mathrm{Triv}(\mathbf{c}(g_X))$$
*between the ∞-groupoid of lifts of $P$ through $\mathbf{p}$, Definition 5.1.305, and the ∞-groupoid of trivializations of the obstruction class, Definition 5.1.308.*

2. *There is a natural equivalence $\mathrm{Lift}(P, \mathbf{p}) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \mathbf{p})$ between the ∞-groupoid of lifts and the ∞-groupoid of $g_X$-twisted cocycles relative to $\mathbf{p}$, Definition 5.1.260, hence a classification*
$$\pi_0 \mathrm{Lift}(P, \mathbf{P}) \simeq H^{1+[g_X]}(X, A)$$
*of equivalence classs of lifts by the $[g_X]$-twisted $A$-cohomology of $X$ relative to the local coefficient bundle*
$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}A & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{p}} \\ & & \mathbf{B}G\,. \end{array}$$

Proof. The first statement is the special case of Lemma 5.1.256 where the ∞-pullback $E_1 \simeq f^* E_2$ in the notation there is identified with $\mathbf{B}\hat{G} \simeq \mathbf{c}^* *$. The second is evident after unwinding the definitions. □

**Remark 5.1.310.** For the special case that $A$ is 0-truncated, we may, by the discussion in [NW11a, NSS12c], identify $\mathbf{B}A$-principal ∞-bundles with *A-bundle gerbes*, [Mur96]. Under this identification the ∞-bundle classified by the obstruction class $[\mathbf{c}(g_X)]$ above is what is called the *lifting bundle gerbe* of the lifting problem, see for instance [CBMMS02] for a review. In this case the first item of Theorem 5.1.309 reduces to Theorem 2.1 in [Wal09] and Theorem A (5.2.3) in [NW11b]. The reduction of this statement to connected components, hence the special case of Observation 5.1.307, was shown in [Br90].

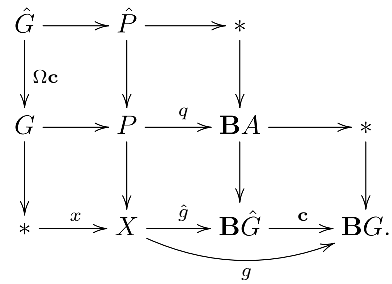
While, therefore, the discussion of extensions of ∞-groups and of lifts of structure ∞-groups is just a special case of the discussion in the previous sections, this special case admits geometric representatives of cocycles in the corresponding twisted cohomology by twisted principal ∞-bundles. This we turn to now.

**Definition 5.1.311.** Given an extension of ∞-groups $A \to \hat{G} \xrightarrow{\Omega \mathbf{c}} G$ and given a $G$-principal ∞-bundle $P \to X$, with class $[g_X] \in H^1(X, G)$, a *$[g_X]$-twisted $A$-principal ∞-bundle* on $X$ is an $A$-principal ∞-bundle $\hat{P} \to P$ such that the cocycle $q : P \to \mathbf{B}A$ corresponding to it under Theorem 5.1.207 is a morphism of $G$-∞-actions.

The *∞-groupoid of $[g_X]$-twisted $A$-principal ∞-bundles on $X$* is

$$A\mathrm{Bund}^{[g_X]}(X) := G\mathrm{Action}(P, \mathbf{B}A) \subset \mathbf{H}(P, \mathbf{B}A)\,.$$

**Proposition 5.1.312.** *Given an $\infty$-group extension $A \to \hat{G} \stackrel{\Omega\mathbf{c}}{\to} G$, an extension of a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ to a $\hat{G}$-principal $\infty$-bundle, def. 5.1.305, induces an $A$-principal $\infty$-bundle $\hat{P} \to P$ fitting into a pasting diagram of $\infty$-pullbacks of the form*




*In particular, it has the following properties:*

1. *$\hat{P} \to P$ is a $[g_X]$-twisted $A$-principal bundle, Definition 5.1.311;*
2. *for all points $x : * \to X$ the restriction of $\hat{P} \to P$ to the fiber $P_x$ is equivalent to the $\infty$-group extension $\hat{G} \to G$.*

Proof. This follows from repeated application of the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks, Proposition 5.1.2.

The bottom composite $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ is a cocycle for the given $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$ and it factors through $\hat{g} : X \to \mathbf{B}\hat{G}$ by assumption of the existence of the extension $\hat{P} \to P$.

Since also the bottom right square is an $\infty$-pullback by the given $\infty$-group extension, the pasting law asserts that the square over $\hat{g}$ is also an $\infty$-pullback, and then that so is the square over $q$. This exhibits $\hat{P}$ as an $A$-principal $\infty$-bundle over $P$ classified by the cocycle $q$ on $P$. By Proposition 5.1.314 this $\hat{P} \to P$ is twisted $G$-equivariant.

Now choose any point $x : * \to X$ of the base space as on the left of the diagram. Pulling this back upwards through the diagram and using the pasting law and the definition of loop space objects $G \simeq \Omega\mathbf{B}G \simeq * \times_{\mathbf{B}G} *$ the diagram completes by $\infty$-pullback squares on the left as indicated, which proves the claim. □

**Remark 5.1.313.** This is a generalization of the traditional theory of projective representations, see example 6.3.50 below.

**Theorem 5.1.314.** *The construction of prop. 5.1.312 extends to an equivalence of $\infty$-groupoids*

$$A\mathrm{Bund}^{[g_X]}(X) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g_X, \mathbf{c})$$

*between that of $[g_X]$-twisted $A$-principal bundles on $X$, Definition 5.1.311, and the cocycle $\infty$-groupoid of degree-1 $[g_X]$-twisted $A$-cohomology, Definition 5.1.260.*

*In particular the classification of $[g_X]$-twisted $A$-principal bundles is*

$$A\mathrm{Bund}^{[g_X]}(X)_{/\sim} \simeq H^{1+[g_X]}(X, A)\,.$$

Proof. For $G = *$ the trivial group, the statement reduces to Theorem 5.1.207. The general proof works along the same lines as the proof of that theorem. The key step is the generalization of the proof of Proposition 5.1.203. This proceeds verbatim as there, only with $\mathrm{pt} : * \to \mathbf{B}G$ generalized to $i : \mathbf{B}A \to \mathbf{B}\hat{G}$. The morphism of $G$-actions $P \to \mathbf{B}A$ and a choice of effective epimorphism $U \to X$ over which $P \to X$

trivializes gives rise to a morphism in $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]}_{/(* \to \mathbf{B}G)}$ which involves the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
U \times G & \twoheadrightarrow & P & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}A \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow^{i} \\
U & \twoheadrightarrow & X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\hat{G}
\end{array}
\quad \simeq \quad
\begin{array}{ccccc}
U \times G & & \longrightarrow & & \mathbf{B}A \\
\downarrow & & & & \downarrow^{i} \\
U & \longrightarrow & * & \stackrel{\mathrm{pt}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}\hat{G}
\end{array}
$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. (We are using that for the 0-connected object $\mathbf{B}\hat{G}$ every morphism $* \to \mathbf{B}G$ factors through $\mathbf{B}\hat{G} \to \mathbf{B}G$.) Here the total rectangle and the left square on the left are $\infty$-pullbacks, and we need to show that the right square on the left is then also an $\infty$-pullback. Notice that by the pasting law the rectangle on the right is indeed equivalent to the pasting of $\infty$-pullbacks

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
U \times G & \longrightarrow & G & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}A \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow^{i} \\
U & \longrightarrow & * & \stackrel{\mathrm{pt}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}\hat{G}
\end{array}
$$

so that the relation

$$U^{\times_X^{n+1}} \times G \simeq i^*(U^{\times_X^{n+1}})$$

holds. With this the proof finishes as in the proof of Proposition 5.1.203, with $\mathrm{pt}^*$ generalized to $i^*$. □

**5.1.18.2 Examples** We discuss examples of the general abstract theory 5.1.18.1 of extensions, obstructions and twisted bundles .

First of all to record the relation of our general theory to some existing results:

**Example 5.1.315.** Various aspects of special cases of theorem 5.1.314 may be identified in the literature:

For the special case of ordinary extensions of ordinary Lie groups, the equivalence of the corresponding extensions of a principal bundle with certain equivariant structures on its total space is essentially the content of [Mac88, An04]. In particular the twisted unitary bundles or *gerbe modules* of twisted K-theory [CBMMS02] are equivalent to such structures.

For the case of $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-extensions of Lie groups, such as the String-2-group, the equivalence of the corresponding String-principal 2-bundles, by the above theorem, to certain bundle gerbes on the total spaces of principal bundles underlies constructions such as in [Redd06]. Similarly, the bundle gerbes on double covers considered in [SSW05] are $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-principal 2-bundles on $\mathbb{Z}_2$-principal bundles arising by the above theorem from the extension $\mathbf{B}U(1) \to \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}U(1)) \to \mathbb{Z}_2$, a special case of the extensions that we consider in the next Section 5.1.19.

Now we turn to the obstruction theory embodied by lifts of structure $\infty$-groups specifically through the stabilizer $\infty$-groups of 5.1.17.

**Definition 5.1.316.** Let $E \to X$ be an $F$-fiber bundle, def. 5.1.241. Then a *definite section* of the bundle is a section $\sigma$ – which by prop. 5.1.257 is a lift of the modulating map of $E$ of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
 & & F//\mathbf{Aut}(F) \\
 & \stackrel{\sigma}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\
X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathbf{Aut}(F)
\end{array}
,
$$

where the vertical map exhibits the automorphism action, example 5.1.275 – such that there exists a cover, i.e. a 1-epimorphism $U \to X$, def. 5.1.58, on which the section becomes constant on a global point $x : * \to F$, up to equivalence:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & * \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow^{x} \\ U & \swarrow_{\simeq} & F \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & F//\mathbf{Aut}(F) \end{array} ,$$

Given $x$, we call such a section $\sigma$ *definite on* $x$.

**Proposition 5.1.317.** *Let $E \to X$ be an $F$-fiber bundle, def. 5.1.241 and let $x \colon * \to F$ be a global point of $F$. The following are equivalent:*

1. *there exists a section definite on $x$, def. 5.1.316;*
2. *there exists a lift of the structure group of $E$ to the stabilizer group* $\mathrm{Stab}(x) := \mathrm{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(F)}(x)$*, def. 5.1.289 (through the canonical homomorphism* $\mathrm{Stab}(x) \to \mathbf{Aut}(F)$ *of remark 5.1.291).*

Proof. Write $X \to \mathbf{BAut}(F)$ for the map that modulates $E$ via prop. 5.1.249. By def. 5.1.316 and via the factorization of def. 5.1.289 a definite section gives the solid diagram in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & * \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow^{x} \\ U & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Stab}(x) \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & F//\mathbf{Aut}(F) \\ & \searrow & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{BAut}(F) \end{array} ,$$

where we display the factorization of the point inclusion through the delooped stabilizer group according to remark 5.1.291. The (1-epi, 1-mono)-factorization of prop. 5.1.59 then gives dashed lift of the structure group.

Conversely, given a dashed lift of the structure group in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Stab}(x) \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{BAut}(F) \end{array}$$

then it defines a section $\sigma$ by the above factorization, and by the proof of prop. 5.1.201 we may take $U \twoheadrightarrow X$ to be the total space of the $\mathrm{Stab}(x)$-principal $\infty$-bundle that is classified by the lift, to find that this section is definite on $x$. □

**Definition 5.1.318.** Let $E \to X$ be an $F$-fiber bundle, def. 5.1.241. We say that a function $E \to A$ is *definite* if the section corresponding to it via prop. 5.1.283 is a definite section according to prop. 5.1.316.

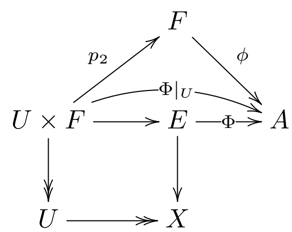
More generally, the same proof as of prop. 5.1.317 with the automorphism group action replaced by the action of any other group $G$ shows that:

**Proposition 5.1.319.** *Given a $G$-action on $F$ 5.1.14, let $E := P \times_G F$ be the $F$-fiber bundle associated to a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$, def. 5.1.242 and let $x \colon * \to F$ be a global point of $F$-*

*The following are equivalent:*

1. *there exists a section definite on $x$, def. 5.1.316;*
2. *there exists a lift of the structure group $G$ of $E$ to the stabilizer group $\mathrm{Stab}_G(x)$, def. 5.1.289, through the canonical homomorphism $\mathrm{Stab}_G(x) \to \mathbf{Aut}(F)$ (of remark 5.1.291).*

**Definition 5.1.320** (parameterized extension)**.** For $\phi : F \to A$ any morphism in an $\infty$-topos and for $E \to X$ an $F$-fiber $\infty$-bundle def. 5.1.241, say that a morphism $\Phi : E \to A$ is a *parameterized extension* of $\phi$ if there exists a cover (1-epimorphism 5.1.58) $U \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\to X$ over which $E$ trivializes, such that $\Phi|_U : E|_U \simeq U \times F \to A$ is equivalent to the projection on $F$ followed by $\phi$.




**Theorem 5.1.321** (obstruction theorem for parameterized extensions)**.** *Let $\phi : F \to A$ be a function, and let $E \to X$ be an $F$-fiber bundle. Then an extension of $\phi$ from $F$ to $E$, in the sense of def. 5.1.320, exists precisely if $E$ admits a lift of its structure group to the stabilizer group (def. 5.1.289) $\mathrm{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(F)}(\phi)$ of $\phi$ under the action (example 5.1.280) of the automorphism group of $F$ on the function space $[F, A]$ (i.e. to a stabilizer group of co-shapes, as in example 5.1.300).*

Proof. By the first clause of prop. 5.1.283 a function $\Phi : E \to A$ is equivalently a section $\tilde{\Phi}$ of the bundle $P \times_{\mathbf{Aut}(F)} [F, A]$. By the second clause of that proposition, $\Phi$ is an extension of $\phi$ precisely if the section $\tilde{\Phi}$ is locally constant on $\phi$. From this the statement follows by prop. 5.1.317. □

**Example 5.1.322.** Specialized to differential coefficients $A$ as in example 5.1.300, we find below in 7.5.1 that theorem 5.1.321 subsumes Green-Schwarz anomaly cancellation in the geometric form via parameterized WZW models considered in [DiSh07].

### 5.1.19 Gerbes

We discuss the general concept of (nonabelian) *gerbes* and higher gerbes in an $\infty$-topos.

This section draws from [NSS12a].

Remark 5.1.262 above indicates that of special relevance are those $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundles $E \to X$ in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ whose typical fiber $V$ is pointed connected, and hence is the moduli $\infty$-stack $V = \mathbf{B}G$ of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles for some $\infty$-group $G$. Due to their local triviality, when regarded as objects in the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$, these $\mathbf{B}G$-fiber $\infty$-bundles are themselves *connected objects*. Generally, for $\mathcal{X}$ an $\infty$-topos regarded as an $\infty$-topos of $\infty$-stacks over a given space $X$, it makes sense to consider its connected objects as $\infty$-bundles over $X$. Here we discuss these $\infty$-*gerbes*.

In the following discussion it is useful to consider two $\infty$-toposes:

1. an “ambient” $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ as before, to be thought of as an $\infty$-topos “of all geometric homotopy-types” for a given notion of geometry, in which $\infty$-bundles are given by *morphisms* and the terminal object plays the role of the geometric point $*$;

2. an $\infty$-topos $\mathcal{X}$, to be thought of as the topos-theoretic incarnation of a single geometric homotopy-type (space) $X$, hence as an $\infty$-topos of “geometric homotopy-types étale over $X$”, in which an $\infty$-bundle over $X$ is given by an *object* and the terminal object plays the role of the base space $X$.

   In practice, $\mathcal{X}$ is the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ of the previous ambient $\infty$-topos over $X \in \mathbf{H}$, or the smaller $\infty$-topos $\mathcal{X} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$ of (internal) $\infty$-stacks over $X$.

In topos-theory literature the role of $\mathbf{H}$ above is sometimes referred to as that of a *gros* topos and then the role of $\mathcal{X}$ is referred to as that of a *petit* topos. The reader should beware that much of the classical literature on gerbes is written from the point of view of only the *petit* topos $\mathcal{X}$.

The original definition of a *gerbe* on $X$ [Gir71] is: a stack $E$ (i.e. a 1-truncated $\infty$-stack) over $X$ that is 1. *locally non-empty* and 2. *locally connected*. In the more intrinsic language of higher topos theory, these two conditions simply say that $E$ is a *connected object* (Definition 6.5.1.10 in [L-Topos]): 1. the terminal morphism $E \to *$ is an effective epimorphism and 2. the 0th homotopy sheaf is trivial, $\pi_0(E) \simeq *$. This reformulation is made explicit in the literature for instance in Section 5 of [JaLu04] and in Section 7.2.2 of [L-Topos]. Therefore:

**Definition 5.1.323.** For $\mathcal{X}$ an $\infty$-topos, a *gerbe* in $\mathcal{X}$ is an object $E \in \mathcal{X}$ which is

1. connected;

2. 1-truncated.

For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object, a *gerbe $E$ over $X$* is a gerbe in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$. This is an object $E \in \mathbf{H}$ together with an effective epimorphism $E \to X$ such that $\pi_i(E) = X$ for all $i \neq 1$.

**Remark 5.1.324.** Notice that conceptually this is different from the notion of *bundle gerbe* introduced in [Mur96] (see [NW11a] for a review). We discuss in [NSS12c] that bundle gerbes are presentations of *principal* $\infty$-bundles (Definition 5.1.192). But gerbes – at least the *$G$-gerbes* considered in a moment in Definition 5.1.330 – are $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundles (Definition 5.1.241) hence *associated* to principal $\infty$-bundles (Proposition 5.1.249) with the special property of having pointed connected fibers. By Theorem 5.1.250 $V$-fiber $\infty$-bundles may be identified with their underlying $\mathbf{Aut}(V)$-principal $\infty$-bundles and so one may identify $G$-gerbes with nonabelian $\mathrm{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$-bundle gerbes (see also around Proposition 5.1.333 below), but considered generally, neither of these two notions is a special case of the other. Therefore the terminology is slightly unfortunate, but it is standard.

Definition 5.1.323 has various obvious generalizations. The following is considered in [L-Topos].

**Definition 5.1.325.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, an *EM $n$-gerbe* is an object $E \in \mathcal{X}$ which is

1. $(n-1)$-connected;

2. $n$-truncated.

**Remark 5.1.326.** This is almost the definition of an *Eilenberg-Mac Lane object* in $\mathcal{X}$, only that the condition requiring a global section $* \to E$ (hence $X \to E$) is missing. Indeed, the Eilenberg-Mac Lane objects of degree $n$ in $\mathcal{X}$ are precisely the EM $n$-gerbes of *trivial class*, according to Proposition 5.1.333 below.

There is also an earlier established definition of *2-gerbes* in the literature [Br94], which is more general than EM 2-gerbes. Stated in the above fashion it reads as follows.

**Definition 5.1.327** (Breen [Br94])**.** A *2-gerbe* in $\mathcal{X}$ is an object $E \in \mathcal{X}$ which is

1. connected;
2. 2-truncated.

This definition has an evident generalization to arbitrary degree, which we adopt here.

**Definition 5.1.328.** An *$n$-gerbe* in $\mathcal{X}$ is an object $E \in \mathcal{X}$ which is

1. connected;
2. $n$-truncated.

In particular an *$\infty$-gerbe* is a connected object.

The real interest is in those $\infty$-gerbes which have a prescribed typical fiber:

**Remark 5.1.329.** By the above, $\infty$-gerbes (and hence EM $n$-gerbes and 2-gerbes and hence gerbes) are much like deloopings of $\infty$-groups (Theorem 5.1.151) only that there is no requirement that there exists a global section. An $\infty$-gerbe for which there exists a global section $X \to E$ is called *trivializable*. By Theorem 5.1.151 trivializable $\infty$-gerbes are equivalent to $\infty$-group objects in $\mathcal{X}$ (and the $\infty$-groupoids of all of these are equivalent when transformations are required to preserve the canonical global section).

But *locally* every $\infty$-gerbe $E$ is of this form. For let

$$(x^* \dashv x_*) : \mathrm{Grpd}_\infty \underset{x_*}{\overset{x^*}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{X}$$

be a topos point. Then the stalk $x^*E \in \mathrm{Grpd}_\infty$ of the $\infty$-gerbe is connected: because inverse images preserve the finite $\infty$-limits involved in the definition of homotopy sheaves, and preserve the terminal object. Therefore

$$\pi_0 \, x^*E \simeq x^*\pi_0 E \simeq x^* * \simeq * \, .$$

Hence for every point $x$ we have a stalk $\infty$-group $G_x$ and an equivalence

$$x^*E \simeq BG_x \, .$$

Therefore one is interested in the following notion.

**Definition 5.1.330.** For $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})$ an $\infty$-group object, a *$G$-$\infty$-gerbe* is an $\infty$-gerbe $E$ such that there exists

1. an effective epimorphism $U \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\rightarrow X$ ;
2. an equivalence $E|_U \simeq \mathbf{B}G|_U$.

Equivalently: a $G$-$\infty$-gerbe is a $\mathbf{B}G$-fiber $\infty$-bundle, according to Definition 5.1.241.

In words this says that a $G$-$\infty$-gerbe is one that locally looks like the moduli $\infty$-stack of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles.

**Example 5.1.331.** For $X$ a topological space and $\mathcal{X} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$ the $\infty$-topos of $\infty$-sheaves over it, these notions reduce to the following.

- a 0-group object $G \in \tau_0\mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X}) \subset \mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})$ is a sheaf of groups on $X$ (here $\tau_0\mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})$ denotes the 0-truncation of $\mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})$);
- for $\{U_i \to X\}$ any open cover, the canonical morphism $\coprod_i U_i \to X$ is an effective epimorphism to the terminal object;
- $(\mathbf{B}G)|_{U_i}$ is the stack of $G|_{U_i}$-principal bundles ($G|_{U_i}$-torsors).

It is clear that one way to construct a $G$-$\infty$-gerbe should be to start with an $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$-principal $\infty$-bundle, Remark 5.1.263, and then canonically *associate* a fiber $\infty$-bundle to it.

**Example 5.1.332.** For $G \in \tau_0\mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Grpd}_\infty)$ an ordinary group, $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$ is usually called the *automorphism 2-group* of $G$. Its underlying groupoid is equivalent to

$$\mathbf{Aut}(G) \times G \rightrightarrows \mathbf{Aut}(G),$$

the action groupoid for the action of $G$ on $\mathbf{Aut}(G)$ via the homomorphism $\mathrm{Ad}\colon G \to \mathbf{Aut}(G)$.

**Corollary 5.1.333.** *Let $\mathcal{X}$ be a 1-localic $\infty$-topos, def. 3.1.3. Then for $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})$ any $\infty$-group object, $G$-$\infty$-gerbes are classified by $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$-cohomology:*

$$\pi_0 G\mathrm{Gerbe} \simeq \pi_0\mathcal{X}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)) =: H^1_{\mathcal{X}}(X, \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)) \,.$$

Proof. This is the special case of Theorem 5.1.250 for $V = \mathbf{B}G$. □

For the case that $G$ is 0-truncated (an ordinary group object) this is the content of Theorem 23 in [JaLu04].

**Example 5.1.334.** For $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X}) \subset \tau_{\leq 0}\mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})$ an ordinary 1-group object, this reproduces the classical result of [Gir71], which originally motivated the whole subject: by Example 5.1.332 in this case $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$ is the traditional automorphism 2-group and $H^1_{\mathcal{X}}(X, \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G))$ is Giraud's nonabelian $G$-cohomology that classifies $G$-gerbes (for arbitrary *band*, see Definition 5.1.340 below).

For $G \in \tau_{\leq 1}\mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X}) \subset \mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})$ a 2-group, we recover the classification of 2-gerbes as in [Br94, Br06].

**Remark 5.1.335.** In Section 7.2.2 of [L-Topos] the special case that here we called *EM-n-gerbes* is considered. Beware that there are further differences: for instance the notion of morphisms between $n$-gerbes as defined in [L-Topos] is more restrictive than the notion considered here. For instance with our definition (and hence also that in [Br94]) each group automorphism of an abelian group object $A$ induces an automorphism of the trivial $A$-2-gerbe $\mathbf{B}^2 A$. But, except for the identity, this is not admitted in [L-Topos] (manifestly so by the diagram above Lemma 7.2.2.24 there). Accordingly, the classification result in [L-Topos] is different: it involves the cohomology group $H^{n+1}_{\mathcal{X}}(X, A)$. Notice that there is a canonical morphism

$$H^{n+1}_{\mathcal{X}}(X, A) \to H^1_{\mathcal{X}}(X, \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}^n A))$$

induced from the morphism $\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A \to \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}^n A)$.

We now discuss how the $\infty$-group extensions, Definition 5.1.302, given by the Postnikov stages of $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$ induces the notion of *band* of a gerbe, and how the corresponding twisted cohomology, according to Remark 5.1.309, reproduces the original definition of nonabelian cohomology in [Gir71] and generalizes it to higher degree.

**Definition 5.1.336.** Fix $k \in \mathbb{N}$. For $G \in \infty\mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})$ a $k$-truncated $\infty$-group object (a $(k+1)$-group), write

$$\mathbf{Out}(G) := \tau_k \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$$

for the $k$-truncation of $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$. (Notice that this is still an $\infty$-group, since by Lemma 6.5.1.2 in [L-Topos] $\tau_n$ preserves all $\infty$-colimits and additionally all products.) We call this the *outer automorphism n-group* of $G$.

In other words, we write

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G) \to \mathbf{B}\mathbf{Out}(G)$$

for the top Postnikov stage of $\mathbf{B}\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$.

**Example 5.1.337.** Let $G \in \tau_0\mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Grpd}_\infty)$ be a 0-truncated group object, an ordinary group,. Then by Example 5.1.332, $\mathbf{Out}(G) = \mathbf{Out}(G)$ is the coimage of $\mathrm{Ad} : G \to \mathrm{Aut}(G)$, which is the traditional group of outer automorphisms of $G$.

**Definition 5.1.338.** Write $\mathbf{B}^2\mathbf{Z}(G)$ for the $\infty$-fiber of the morphism $\mathbf{c}$ from Definition 5.1.336, fitting into a fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^2\mathbf{Z}(G) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{BAut}(\mathbf{B}G) \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{c}} \\ & & \mathbf{BOut}(G) \end{array} .$$

We call $\mathbf{Z}(G)$ the *center* of the $\infty$-group $G$.

**Example 5.1.339.** For $G$ an ordinary group, so that $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G)$ is the automorphism 2-group from Example 5.1.332, $\mathbf{Z}(G)$ is the center of $G$ in the traditional sense.

By theorem 5.1.333 there is an induced morphism

$$\mathrm{Band} : \pi_0 G\mathrm{Gerbe} \to H^1(X, \mathbf{Out}(G)) .$$

**Definition 5.1.340.** For $E \in G\mathrm{Gerbe}$ we call $\mathrm{Band}(E)$ the *band* of $E$.

By using Definition 5.1.338 in Definition 5.1.260, given a band $[\phi_X] \in H^1(X, \mathbf{Out}(G))$, we may regard it as a twist for twisted $\mathbf{Z}(G)$-cohomology, classifying $G$-gerbes with this band:

$$\pi_0 G\mathrm{Gerbe}^{[\phi_X]}(X) \simeq H^{2+[\phi_X]}(X, \mathbf{Z}(G)) .$$

**Remark 5.1.341.** The original definition of *gerbe with band* in [Gir71] is slightly more general than that of *$G$-gerbe* (with band) in [Br94]: in the former the local sheaf of groups whose delooping is locally equivalent to the gerbe need not descend to the base. These more general Giraud gerbes are 1-gerbes in the sense of Definition 5.1.328, but only the slightly more restrictive $G$-gerbes of Breen have the good property of being connected fiber $\infty$-bundles. From our perspective this is the decisive property of gerbes, and the notion of band is relevant only in this case.

**Example 5.1.342.** For $G$ a 0-group this reduces to the notion of band as introduced in [Gir71], for the case of $G$-gerbes as in [Br94].

### 5.1.20 Relative cohomology

We discuss the notion of *relative cohomology* internal to any $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$.

**Definition 5.1.343.** Let $i : Y \to X$ and $f : B \to A$ be two morphisms in $\mathbf{H}$. We say that the $\infty$-groupoid of *relative cocycles* on $i$ with coefficients in $f$ is the hom $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{H}^I(i, f)$, where $\mathbf{H}^I := \mathrm{Funct}(\Delta[1], \mathbf{H})$. The corresponding set of equivalence classes / homotopy classes we call the *relative cohomology*

$$H_Y^B(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}^I(i, f) .$$

When $A$ is understood to be a pointed object, $B = *$ is the terminal object and $f : B \simeq * \to A$ is the point inclusion, we speak for short of the *cohomology of $X$ with coefficients in $A$ relative to $Y$* and write

$$H_Y(X, A) := H_Y^*(X, A) .$$

**Proposition 5.1.344.** *The $\infty$-groupoid of relative cocycles fits into an $\infty$-pullback diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}^I(i, f) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle i^*} \\ \mathbf{H}(Y, B) & \xrightarrow{f_*} & \mathbf{H}(Y, A) \end{array} .$$

Proof. Let $C$ be an $\infty$-site of definition of $\mathbf{H}$ and

$$\mathbf{H} \simeq ([C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}})^{\circ}$$

be a presentatin by simplicial presheaves as in 3.1.3. Then $\mathbf{H}^I$ is presented by the, say, Reedy model structure on simplicial functors from $\Delta[1]$ to simplicial presheaves

$$\mathbf{H}^I \simeq ([\Delta[1],\, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}})^{\circ}\,.$$

We may find for $i : Y \to X$ in $\mathbf{H}$ a presentation by a cofibration between cofibrant objects in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, and similarly for $f : B \to A$ a presentation by a fibration between fibrant objects. Let these same symbols now denote these presentations. Then $i$ is also cofibrant in the above presentation for $\mathbf{H}^I$ and similarly $f$ is fibrant there.

This implies that the $\infty$-categorical hom space in question is given by the hom-simplicial set

$$\mathbf{H}^I(i, f) \simeq [\Delta[1],\, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}(i, f)\,.$$

This in turn is computed as the 1-categorical pullback of simplicial sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [\Delta[1],\, [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}(i, f) & \longrightarrow & [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](X, A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle i^*} \\ [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](Y, A) & \xrightarrow{f_*} & [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](Y, A) \end{array}\,.$$

Since $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is a simplicial model category, and by assumption on our presentations for $i$ and $f$, here the bottom and the right morphism are Kan fibrations. Therefore by prop. 5.1.4 this presents a homotopy pullback diagram, which proves the claim. □

**Remark 5.1.345.** This says in words that a cocycle relative to $Y \to X$ with coefficients in $B \to A$ is an $A$-cocycle on $X$ whose pullback to $Y$ is equipped with a coboundary to a $B$-cocycle. In particular, in the case that $B \simeq *$ it is an $A$-cocycle on $X$ equipped with a trivialization of its pullback to $Y$.

In the case that $B$ is not trivial, this definition of relative cohomology is a generalization of the twisted cohomology discussed in 5.1.13.

**Observation 5.1.346.** Let $\mathbf{c} : X \to A$ be a fixed $A$-cocycle on $X$. Then the fiber of the $\infty$-groupoid of $(i, f)$-relative cocycles over $\mathbf{c}$ is equivalently the $\infty$-groupoid of $[i^*\mathbf{c}]$-twisted cohomology on $Y$, according to def. 5.1.260.

Proof. By the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2 the relative cocycles over $\mathbf{c}$ sitting in the top $\infty$-pullback square of

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}^I(i, f)|_{\mathbf{c}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{c}} \\ \mathbf{H}^I(i, f) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle i^*} \\ \mathbf{H}(Y, B) & \xrightarrow{f_*} & \mathbf{H}(Y, A) \end{array}$$

also form the $\infty$-pullback of the total rectangle, which is the $\infty$-groupoid of $[i^*\mathbf{c}]$-twisted cocycles on $Y$. □

**Remark 5.1.347.** In the special case that the coefficients $B$ and $A$ have a presentation by sheaves of chain complexes in the image of the Dold-Kan correspondence, prop. 3.1.35, the morphism $i^* : \mathbf{H}(X, A) \to \mathbf{H}(Y, A)$ has a presentation by a morphism of cochain complexes and the above $\infty$-pullback may be computed in terms of the dual mapping cone on this morphism. Specicially in the case that $B \simeq *$ the homotopy pullback is presented by that dual mapping cone itself, and hence the relative cohomology is the cochain cohomology of the mapping cone on $i^*$. In this form relative cohomology is traditionally defined in the literature.

## 5.2 $\int \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp$ – Structures in cohesive substance

We discuss differential geometric and differential cohomological structures that exist in any *cohesive ∞-topos*, def. 4.1.8.

We start with structures present in any *local ∞-topos*, def. 4.1.1.

- 5.2.1 – Codiscrete objects;
- 5.2.2 – Concrete objects.

Then we consider structures present in any locally ∞-connected topos def. 4.1.3.

- 5.2.3 – Geometric homotopy and Étale homotopy
- 5.2.4 – Concordance
- 5.2.5 – Universal coverings and geometric Whitehead towers
- 5.2.6 – Flat connections and local systems
- 5.2.7 – Galois theory

Finally we consider genuinely differential geometric structures present in a cohesive ∞-topos.

- 5.2.8 – $\mathbb{A}^1$-Homotopy and The Continuum
- 5.2.9 – Manifolds (unseparated)
- 5.2.10 – de Rham cohomology
- 5.2.11 – Exponentiated Lie algebras
- 5.2.12 – Maurer-Cartan forms and Curvature characteristic forms
- 5.2.13 – Differential cohomology
- 5.2.14 – Chern-Weil homomorphism and Chern-Simons Lagrangians
- 5.2.15 – Wess-Zumino-Witten terms
- 5.2.16 – Holonomy
- 5.2.17 – Prequantum geometry
- 5.2.18 – Local prequantum field theory

### 5.2.1 Codiscrete objects

**Observation 5.2.1.** The cartesian internal hom $[-,-] : \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$ is related to the external hom $\mathbf{H}(-,-) : \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ by

$$\mathbf{H}(-,-) \simeq \Gamma[-,-] \,..$$

Proof. The $\infty$-Yoneda lemma implies, by the same argument as for 1-categorical sheaf toposes, that the internal hom is the $\infty$-stack given on any test object $U$ by

$$[X, A](U) \simeq \mathbf{H}(U, [X, A]) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X \times U, A).$$

By prop. 3.1.8 the global section functor $\Gamma$ is given by evaluation on the point, so that

$$\Gamma([X, A]) \simeq \mathbf{H}(*, [X, A]) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X \times *, A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, A)\,.$$

□

**Proposition 5.2.2.** *The codiscrete objects in a local $\infty$-topos, hence in a cohesive $\infty$-topos,* $\mathbf{H}$ *are stable under internal exponentiation: for all $X \in \mathbf{H}$ and $A \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ we have*

$$[X, \mathrm{coDisc}A] \in \mathbf{H}$$

*is codiscrete. Specifically, the internal hom into a codiscrete object is the codiscretificartion of the external hom*

$$[X, \mathrm{coDisc}A] \simeq \mathrm{coDisc}\mathbf{H}(X, \mathrm{coDisc}A)\,.$$

Proof. The internal hom is the $\infty$-stack given by the assignment

$$[X, \mathrm{coDisc}A] : U \mapsto \mathbf{H}(X \times U, \mathrm{coDisc}A)\,.$$

By the $(\Gamma \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-adjunction the right hand is

$$\simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Gamma(X \times U), A)\,.$$

Since $\Gamma$ is also a right adjoint it preserves the product, so that

$$\cdots \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Gamma(X) \times \Gamma(U), A)\,.$$

Using the cartesian closure of $\infty$Grpd this is

$$\cdots \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Gamma(U), [\Gamma(X), A])\,.$$

Using again the $(\Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc})$-adjunction this is

$$\cdots \simeq \mathbf{H}(U, \mathrm{coDisc}[\Gamma(X), A]).$$

Since all of these equivalence are natural, with the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma it finally follows that

$$[X, \mathrm{coDisc}A] \simeq \mathrm{coDisc}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Gamma(X), A) \simeq \mathrm{coDisc}\mathbf{H}(X, \mathrm{coDisc}A)\,.$$

□

### 5.2.2 Concrete objects

The cohesive structure on an object in a cohesive $\infty$-topos need not be supported by points. We discuss a general abstract characterization of objects that do have an interpretation as bare $n$-groupoids equipped with cohesive structure. Further refinements of these constructions are discussed further below in 5.2.13.4 for objects that serve as moduli of differential cocycles.

This section profited from discussion with David Carchedi at an early stage.

#### 5.2.2.1 General abstract

**Proposition 5.2.3.** *On a cohesive $\infty$-topos* $\mathbf{H}$ *both* Disc *and* coDisc *are full and faithful $\infty$-functors and* coDisc *exhibits* $\infty$Grpd *as a sub-$\infty$-topos of* $\mathbf{H}$ *by an $\infty$-geometric embedding*

$$\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \underset{\mathrm{coDisc}}{\overset{\Gamma}{\hookleftarrow\!\!\rightarrow}} \mathbf{H} \,.$$

Proof. The full and faithfulness of Disc was shown in prop. 4.1.6 and that for coDisc follows from the same kind of argument. Since $\Gamma$ is also a right adjoint it preserves in particular finite $\infty$-limits, so that $(\Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc})$ is indeed an $\infty$-geometric morphism. □

Recall that we write

$$\sharp := \mathrm{coDisc} \circ \Gamma$$

for the sharp modality, def. 4.1.12.

**Corollary 5.2.4.** *The $\infty$-topos* $\infty$Grpd *is equivalent to the full sub-$\infty$-category of* $\mathbf{H}$ *on those objects* $X \in \mathbf{H}$ *for which the canonical morphism* $X \to \sharp X$ *is an equivalence.*

Proof. This follows by general facts about reflective sub-$\infty$-categories ([L-Topos], section 5.5.4). □

**Proposition 5.2.5.** *Let* $\mathbf{H}$ *be the $\infty$-topos over an $\infty$-cohesive site $C$, def. 4.1.31. For a 0-truncated object $X$ in* $\mathbf{H}$ *the morphism*

$$X \to \sharp X$$

*is a monomorphism precisely if $X$ is a* concrete sheaf *in the traditional sense of [Dub79].*

Proof. Monomorphisms of sheaves are detected objectwise. So by the Yoneda lemma and using the $(\Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc})$-adjunction we have that $X \to \mathrm{coDisc}\,\Gamma\,X$ is a monomorphism precisely if for all $U \in C$ the morphism

$$X(U) \simeq \mathbf{H}(U, X) \to \mathbf{H}(U, \mathrm{coDisc}\,\Gamma\,X) \simeq \mathbf{H}(\Gamma(U), \Gamma(X))$$

is a monomorphism. This is the traditional definition. □

**Definition 5.2.6.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$, write

$$X =: \sharp_\infty X \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \sharp_2 X \longrightarrow \sharp_1 X \longrightarrow \sharp_0 X := \sharp X$$

for the tower of $n$-image factorizations, def. 5.1.56, of the unit $X \to \sharp X$ of the sharp modality, hence with

$$\sharp_n X := \mathrm{im}_n(X \to \sharp X)$$

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

**Proposition 5.2.7.** *The operations $\sharp_n$ in def. 5.2.6 preserves products.*

Proof. By prop. 5.1.57. □

**Definition 5.2.8.** For $X$ a cohesive object equipped with a co-filtration $F^\bullet X$, we say that its *concretification* is the iterated homotopy fiber product

$$\mathrm{Conc}(F^\bullet X) := \sharp_1 F^0 X \underset{\sharp_1 F^1 X}{\times} \sharp_2 F^1 X \underset{\sharp_2 F^2 X}{\times} \cdots \,,$$

where $\sharp_n$ and the natural morphisms in the fiber product are as in def. 5.2.6, or rather, is the canonical morphism

$$X \longrightarrow \mathrm{Conc}(F^\bullet X) \,.$$

We say that $X$ with its co-filtration $F^\bullet X$ is *concrete* if this morphism is an equivalence.

**Example 5.2.9.** If the co-filtration $F^\bullet X$ is constant, i.e. with each $F^n X \to F^{n+1} X$ an equivalence, then all the left factors in the iterated fiber product of def. 5.2.8 are equivalences, and hence in this case the iterated fiber product converges to

$$\mathrm{Conc}(F^\bullet X) \simeq \sharp_\infty X \simeq X \,.$$

**Example 5.2.10.** If the co-filtration $F^\bullet X$ truncates after the first term

$$F^\bullet = (X \to * \to * \to \cdots)$$

then all the right factors in def. 5.2.8 are equivalences, and hence in this case the iterated fiber product converges to

$$\mathrm{Conc}(F^\bullet X) \simeq \sharp_1 X \,.$$

If in addition $X$ is 0-truncated and the cohesive topos has a 1-site of definition, then, by prop. 5.2.5, $X$ being concrete in the sense of def. 5.2.8 with respect to this cofiltration is equivalent to it being a concrete sheaf in the traditional sense.

**Proposition 5.2.11.** *When $X$ equipped with an $\infty$-action by an $\infty$-group $G$, def. 5.1.267, and when the cofiltration $F^\bullet X$ is by $G$-actions and $G$-action homomorphisms, then there is an induced $G$-action on the concretification* $\mathrm{Conc}(F^\bullet X)$*, def. 5.2.8, such that the concretification morphism $X \to \mathrm{Conc}(F^\bullet X)$ is an action homomorphism.*

Proof. First observe that if an $\infty$-group $G$ acts on any $X$, then $\sharp_n G$ canonically acts on $\sharp_n X$, since $\sharp_n$ preserves products, by prop. 5.2.7, and hence the simplicial objects that exhibit the action. Hence there is a natural system of homotopy fiber sequences of the form

$$\sharp_n F^p X \longrightarrow (\sharp_n F^p X)//(\sharp_n G) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\sharp_n X$$

as $n$ and $p$ vary. Consider then in all three places of this fiber sequence the iterated homotopy fiber product of the shape which defines concretification in def. 5.2.8, where we take the co-filtration on $\mathbf{B}G$ to be trivial. By def. 5.2.8 and by example 5.2.9, using that $\infty$-limits commute over each other and finally using prop. 5.1.267, the result is a homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\mathrm{Conc}(X) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Conc}(X)//G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G$$

which exhibits the desired $\infty$-action. By construction and by the assumptions, the concretification map $X \to \mathrm{Conc}(X)$ is the universal map into an $\infty$-limit all whose components are $G$-homomorphisms, hence it is itself a homomorphism. □

#### 5.2.2.2 Presentations

We discuss presentations of $n$-concrete objects for low $n$.

**Proposition 5.2.12.** *Let $C$ be an $\infty$-cohesive site, 4.1.2.2, and let $A \in \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ be a 1-truncated object that has a presentation by a groupoid-valued presheaf on $C$ which is fibrant as a simplicial presheaf. Then $A \xrightarrow{\simeq} \sharp_1 A$ if in degree 1 $A$ is a concrete sheaf. Moreover $\sharp_1 A$ has a presentation by a presheaf of groupoids which in degree 1 is a concrete sheaf.*

Proof. Any functor $f : X \to Y$ between groupoids has a factorization $X \to \mathrm{im}_1 f \to Y$, where the groupoid $\mathrm{im}_1 f$ has the same objects as $X$ and has as morphisms equivalence classes $[\xi]$ of morphisms $\xi$ in $X$ under the relation $[\xi_1] = [\xi_2]$ precisely if $f(\xi_1) = f(\xi)_2$. The evident functor $\mathrm{im}_1 f \to Y$ is manifestly faithful and this factorization is natural. Therefore if now $f$ is a morphism of presheaves of groupoids, it, too, has a factorization wich is objectwise of this form.

By the discussion in 4.1.2.2, over an $\infty$-cohesive site the units $\eta_X : X \to \sharp X$ of the $(\Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc})$-$\infty$-adjunction are presented for fibrant simplicial presheaf representatives $X$ by morphisms of simplicial presheaves that object- and degreewise send the value set of a presheaf to the set of concrete values. By the previous paragraph and prop. 5.1.88 it follows that the 1-image factorization $X \to \mathrm{im}_1\eta_X \to \sharp X$ is in the second morphism objectwise a faithful functor. This means that the hom-presheaf $(\mathrm{im}_1\eta_X)_1$ is a concrete sheaf on $C$. □

### 5.2.3 Geometric homotopy and Étale homotopy

We discuss internal realizations of the notions of *geometric realization*, and *geometric homotopy* in any locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$.

**Definition 5.2.13.** For $\mathbf{H}$ a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos and $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object, we call $\Pi(X) \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, hence $\int X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$, the *fundamental $\infty$-groupoid* of $X$.

The ordinary homotopy groups of $\Pi(X)$, def. 5.1.100, example 5.1.102, we call the *geometric homotopy groups* of $X$ (as in remark 5.1.103)

$$\pi_\bullet^{\mathrm{geom}}(X \in \mathbf{H}) := \pi_\bullet(\Pi(X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}))\,.$$

**Definition 5.2.14.** For $|-| : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \overset{\simeq}{\to} \mathrm{Top}$ the canonical equivalence of $\infty$-toposes, we write

$$|X| := |\Pi X| \in \mathrm{Top}$$

and call this the *geometric realization* of $X$.

**Remark 5.2.15.** In presentations of $\mathbf{H}$ by simplicial presheaves, as in prop. 4.1.32, aspects of this abstract notion are more or less implicit in the literature. See for instance around remark 2.22 of [SiTe]. The key insight is already in [ArMa69], if somewhat implicitly. This we discuss in detail in 6.3.5.

In some applications we need the following characterization of geometric homotopies in a cohesive $\infty$-topos.

**Definition 5.2.16.** We say a *geometric homotopy* between two morphisms $f, g : X \to Y$ in $\mathbf{H}$ is a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & & \\ {\scriptstyle (\mathrm{Id},i)}\downarrow & \searrow^{f} & \\ X \times I & \xrightarrow{\eta} & Y \\ {\scriptstyle (\mathrm{Id},o)}\uparrow & \nearrow_{g} & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

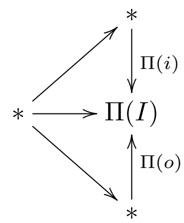
such that $I$ is geometrically connected, $\pi_0^{geom}(I) = *$.

**Proposition 5.2.17.** *If two morphism $f, g : X \to Y$ in a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ are geometrically homotopic then their images $\Pi(f), \Pi(g)$ are equivalent in $\infty$Grpd.*

Proof. By the condition that $\Pi$ preserves products in a strongly $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos we have that the image of the geometric homotopy in $\infty$Grpd is a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Pi(X) & & \\ {\scriptstyle (\mathrm{Id},\Pi(i))}\downarrow & \searrow^{\Pi(f)} & \\ \Pi(X) \times \Pi(I) & \xrightarrow{\Pi(\eta)} & \Pi(Y) \\ {\scriptstyle (\mathrm{Id},\Pi(o))}\uparrow & \nearrow_{\Pi(g)} & \\ \Pi(X) & & \end{array}$$

Since $\Pi(I)$ is connected by assumption, there is a diagram




in $\infty$Grpd (filled with homotopies, which we do not display, as usual, that connect the three points in $\Pi(I)$). Taking the product of this diagram with $\Pi(X)$ and pasting the result to the above image $\Pi(\eta)$ of the geometric homotopy constructs the equivalence $\Pi(f) \Rightarrow \Pi(g)$ in $\infty$Grpd. □

We consider a refinement of these kinds of considerations below in 5.2.8.

**Proposition 5.2.18.** *For* $\mathbf{H}$ *a locally* $\infty$*-connected* $\infty$*-topos, also all its objects* $X \in \mathbf{H}$ *are locally* $\infty$*-connected, in the sense that their over-*$\infty$*-toposes* $\mathbf{H}/X$ *are locally* $\infty$*-connected* $(\Pi_X \dashv \Delta_X \dashv \Gamma_X) : \mathbf{H}/X \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

*The two notions of fundamental* $\infty$*-groupoids of any object* $X$ *induced this way do agree, in that there is a natural equivalence*

$$\Pi_X(X \in \mathbf{H}/X) \simeq \Pi(X \in \mathbf{H}) .$$

Proof. By the general properties of over-$\infty$-toposes ([L-Topos], prop 6.3.5.1) we have a a composite essential $\infty$-geometric morphism

$$(\Pi_X \dashv \Delta_X \dashv \Gamma_X) : \ \mathbf{H}/X \underset{X_*}{\overset{X_!}{\underset{\xleftarrow{X^*}}{\to}}} \mathbf{H} \underset{\Gamma}{\overset{\Pi}{\underset{\xleftarrow{\Delta}}{\to}}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

and $X_!$ is given by sending $(Y \to X) \in \mathbf{H}/X$ to $Y \in \mathbf{H}$. □

The fundamental $\infty$-groupoid $\Pi X$ of objects $X$ in $\mathbf{H}$ may be reflected back into $\mathbf{H}$, where it gives a notion of *geometric homotopy path* $n$*-groupoids* and a geometric notion of Postnikov towers of objects in $\mathbf{H}$.

Recall from def. 4.1.11 the pair of adjoint endofunctors

$$(\textstyle\int \dashv \flat) : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$$

on any locally connected $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$.

We say for any $X, A \in \mathbf{H}$

- $\int(X)$ is the *path* $\infty$*-groupoid* of $X$ – the reflection of the fundamental $\infty$-groupoid from 5.2.3 back into the cohesive context of $\mathbf{H}$;
- $\flat A$ ("flat $A$") is the coefficient object for *flat differential* $A$*-cohomology* or for $A$*-local systems* (discussed below in 5.2.6).

Write

$$(\tau_n \dashv i_n) : \mathbf{H}_{\leq n} \underset{i}{\overset{\tau_n}{\underset{\leftarrow}{\hookrightarrow}}} \mathbf{H}$$

for the reflective sub-$\infty$-category of $n$-truncated objects ([L-Topos], section 5.5.6) and

$$\tau_n : \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\tau_n} \mathbf{H}_{\leq n} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$$

for the localization funtor. We say

$$\int_n : \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\int} \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\tau_n} \mathbf{H}$$

is the *homotopy path n-groupoid* functor. The (truncated) components of the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-unit

$$X \to \int_n(X)$$

we call the *constant path inclusion*. Dually we have canonical morphisms

$$\flat A \to A$$

natural in $A \in \mathbf{H}$.

**Definition 5.2.19.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ we say that the *geometric Postnikov tower* of $X$ is the categorical Postnikov tower ([L-Topos] def. 5.5.6.23) of $\int(X) \in \mathbf{H}$ :

$$\int(X) \to \cdots \to \int_2(X) \to \int_1(X) \to \int_0(X) \,.$$

The main purpose of geometric Postnikov towers for us is the notion of *geometric Whitehead towers* that they induce, discussed in the next section.

### 5.2.4 Concordance

We formulate the notion of *concordance* (of bundles or cocycles) abstractly internal to a cohesive $\infty$-topos.

**Definition 5.2.20.** For $\mathbf{H}$ a cohesive $\infty$-topos and $X, A \in \mathbf{H}$ two objects, we say that the $\infty$-groupoid of *concordances* from $X$ to $A$ is

$$\mathrm{Concord}(X, A) := \Pi[X, A] \,,$$

where $[-,-] : \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$ is the internal hom.

**Observation 5.2.21.** For $X, A, B \in \mathbf{H}$ three objects, there is a canonical composition $\infty$-functor of concordances between them

$$\mathrm{Concord}(X, A) \times \mathrm{Concord}(A, B) \to \mathrm{Concord}(X, B) \,.$$

Using that, by the axioms of cohesion, $\Pi$ preserves products, this is the image under $\Pi$ of the composition on internal homs

$$[X, A] \times [A, B] \to [X, B] \,.$$

### 5.2.5 Universal coverings and geometric Whitehead towers

We discuss an intrinsic notion of Whitehead towers in a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$.

**Definition 5.2.22.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ a pointed object, the *geometric Whitehead tower* of $X$ is the sequence of objects

$$X^{(\infty)} \to \cdots \to X^{(\mathbf{2})} \to X^{(\mathbf{1})} \to X^{(\mathbf{0})} \simeq X$$

in $\mathbf{H}$, where for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the object $X^{(n+1)}$ is the homotopy fiber of the canonical morphism $X \to \int_{n+1} X$ to the path $(n+1)$-groupoid of $X$ (5.2.3). We call $X^{(\mathbf{n+1})}$ the $(n+1)$-fold *universal covering space* of $X$. We write $X^{(\infty)}$ for the homotopy fiber of the untruncated constant path inclusion.

$$X^{(\infty)} \to X \to \int(X) \,.$$

Here the morphisms $X^{(\mathbf{n})} \to X^{\mathbf{n-1}}$ are those induced from this pasting diagram of $\infty$-pullbacks

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
X^{(\mathbf{n})} & \longrightarrow & * & & \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
X^{(\mathbf{n-1})} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n \int_n(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X & \longrightarrow & \int_n(X) & \xrightarrow{\tau_{\leq(n-1)}} & \int_{(n-1)}(X)
\end{array}
,
$$

where the object $\mathbf{B}^n \int_n(X)$ is defined as the homotopy fiber of the bottom right morphism.

**Proposition 5.2.23.** *Every object $X$ in a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is covered by objects of the form $X^{(\infty)}$ for different choices of base points in $X$, in the sense that every $X$ is the $\infty$-colimit over a diagram whose vertices are of this form.*

Proof. Consider the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\varinjlim_{s \in \Pi(X)} (i^* *_s) & \longrightarrow & \varinjlim_{s \in \Pi(X)} *_s \\
\downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq \\
X & \xrightarrow{i} & \int(X)
\end{array}
.
$$

The bottom morphism is the constant path inclusion, the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-unit. The right morphism is the equivalence that is the image under Disc of the decomposition $\varinjlim_S * \xrightarrow{\simeq} S$ of every $\infty$-groupoid as the $\infty$-colimit over itself of the $\infty$-functor constant on the point. The left morphism is the $\infty$-pullback along $i$ of this equivalence, hence itself an equivalence. By universality of $\infty$-colimits in the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, the top left object is the $\infty$-colimit over the single homotopy fibers $i^* *_s$ of the form $X^{(\infty)}$ as indicated. □

We would like to claim that moreover each of the patches $i^* * \simeq X^{(\infty)}$ of the object $X$ in a cohesive $\infty$-topos is geometrically contractible, thus exhibiting a generic cover of any object by contractibles. Without further assumption, we have the following slightly weaker statement.

**Proposition 5.2.24.** *The inclusion $\Pi(i^* *) \to \Pi(X)$ of the fundamental $\infty$-groupoid $\Pi(i^* *)$ of each of these patches into $\Pi(X)$ is homotopic to the point.*

Proof. We apply $\Pi(-)$ to the above diagram over a single vertex $s$ and attach the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-counit to get

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
\Pi(i^* *) & \longrightarrow & & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
\Pi(X) & \xrightarrow{\Pi(i)} & \Pi\,\mathrm{Disc}\,\Pi(X) & \longrightarrow & \Pi(X)
\end{array}
.
$$

Then the bottom morphism is an equivalence by the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-zig-zag-identity. □

But with an assumption that is verified in most of the models of interest, the full statement follows:

**Proposition 5.2.25.** *If $\mathbf{H}$ has an $\infty$-cohesive site of definition, def. 4.1.31, then*

- *the objects $X^{(\infty)}$ of def. 5.2.22 are geometrically contractible;*
- *every object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is the $\infty$-colimit of geometrically contractible objects.*

Proof. The first statement follows by applying prop. 4.1.35 to the defining homotopy pullback of $X^{(\infty)}$ in def. 5.2.22. The second follows from this by prop. 5.2.23. □

### 5.2.6 Flat connections and local systems

We describe for a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ a canonical intrinsic notion of *flat connections on $\infty$-bundles*, *flat higher parallel transport* and *$\infty$-local systems*.

Let $\int : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$ be the path $\infty$-groupoid functor from def. 4.1.11, discussed in 5.2.3.

**Definition 5.2.26.** For $X, A \in \mathbf{H}$ we write

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A) := \mathbf{H}(\textstyle\int X, A)$$

and call $H_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A)$ the *flat (nonabelian) differential cohomology* of $X$ with coefficients in $A$. We say a morphism $\nabla : \int(X) \to A$ is a *flat $\infty$-connnection* on the principal $\infty$-bundle corresponding to $X \to \int(X) \stackrel{\nabla}{\to} A$, or an *$A$-local system* on $X$.

The induced morphism

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A) \to \mathbf{H}(X, A)$$

we say is the forgetful functor that *forgets flat connections*.

The object $\int(X)$ has the interpretation of the path $\infty$-groupoid of $X$: it is a cohesive $\infty$-groupoid whose $k$-morphisms may be thought of as generated from the $k$-morphisms in $X$ and $k$-dimensional cohesive paths in $X$. Accordingly a mophism $\int(X) \to A$ may be thought of as assigning

- to each point of $X$ a fiber in $A$;
- to each path in $X$ an equivalence between these fibers;
- to each disk in $X$ a 2-equivalalence between these equivaleces associated to its boundary
- and so on.

This we think of as encoding a flat *higher parallel transport* on $X$, coming from some flat $\infty$-connection and *defining* this flat $\infty$-connection.

**Observation 5.2.27.** By the $(\int \dashv \flat)$-adjunction we have a natural equivalence

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \flat A)\,.$$

A cocycle $g : X \to A$ for a principal $\infty$-bundle on $X$ is in the image of

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A) \to \mathbf{H}(X, A)$$

precisely if there is a lift $\nabla$ in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \flat A \\ & \nearrow^{\nabla} & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{g} & A \end{array}\,.$$

We call $\flat A$ the *coefficient object for flat $A$-connections.*

**Proposition 5.2.28.** *For $G := \mathrm{Disc}(G_0) \in \mathbf{H}$ discrete $\infty$-group (5.1.9) the canonical morphism $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$ is an equivalence.*

Proof. This follows by definition 4.1.11 $\flat = \mathrm{Disc}\,\Gamma$ and using that Disc is full and faithful. $\square$

This says that for discrete structure $\infty$-groups $G$ there is an essentially unique flat $\infty$-connection on any $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle. Moreover, the further equivalence

$$\mathbf{H}(\textstyle\int(X), \mathbf{B}G) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$$

may be read as saying that the $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle for discrete $G$ is entirely characterized by the flat higher parallel transport of this unique $\infty$-connection.

Below in 5.2.7 we discuss in more detail the total spaces classified by $\infty$-local systems.

For later use we record:

**Lemma 5.2.29.** *Over an $\infty$-cohesive site, def. 4.1.31, The flat modality $\flat$ commutes with $n$-truncation, def. 5.1.49: for $A \in \mathbf{H}$ and any $n$ then*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tau_n \flat A & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & \flat \tau_n A \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \tau_n A & = & \tau_n A \end{array}$$

*where the vertical morphisms are given by the counit of $\flat$ on $\tau_n A$ and by the image under $\tau_n$ of the $\flat$-unit on $A$, respectively.*

Proof. By prop. 4.1.32 $\flat(-)$ is represented on simplicial presheaves over the $\infty$-cohesive site by sending a presheaf $A$ to the presheaf $\mathrm{const}(A(*))$ which is constant on its point evaluation. By prop. 5.1.55 the $n$-truncation operation is represented on Kan complexes by the $(n+1)$-coskeleton operation and on fibrant simplicial presheaves by the objectwise prolongation of this operation. With this the claim follows immediately.

### 5.2.7 Galois theory

We discuss a canonical internal realization of *locally constant $\infty$-stacks* and their classification by *Galois theory* inside any cohesive $\infty$-topos.

*Classical Galois theory* is the classification of certain extensions of a field $K$. Viewing the formal dual $\mathrm{Spec}(K)$ as a space, this generalizes to *Galois theory of schemes*, which classifies $\kappa$-compact étale morphisms $E \to X$ over a connected scheme $X$ by functors

$$\Pi_1(X) \simeq \mathbf{B}\pi_1(X) \to \mathrm{Set}_\kappa$$

from the classifying groupoid of the fundamental group of $X$ (defined thereby) to the category of $\kappa$-small sets. See for instance [Len85] for an account.

From the point of view of topos theory over the étale site, $\kappa$-compact étale morphisms are equivalently sheaves (namely the sheaves of local sections of the étale morphism) that are locally constant on $\kappa$-small sets. The notion of locally constant sheaves of course exists over any site and in any topos whatsoever, and hence *topos theoretic Galois theory* more generally classifies locally constant sheaves. A general abstract category theoretic discussion of such generalized Galois theory is given by Janelidze, whose construction in the form of [CJKP97] we generalize below to locally connected $\infty$-toposes.

A generalization of Galois theory from topos theory to $\infty$-topos theory as a classification of *locally constant $\infty$-stacks* was envisioned by Grothendieck and, for the special case over topological spaces, first formalized in [Toë00], where it is shown that the homotopy-type of a connected locally contractible topological space $X$ is the automorphism $\infty$-group of the fiber functor on locally constant $\infty$-stacks over $X$. Similar discussion appeared later in [PoWa05] and [Shu07].

We show below that this central statement of *higher Galois theory* holds generally in every $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos.

For $\kappa$ an uncountable regular cardinal, write

$$\mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

for the $\infty$-groupoid of $\kappa$-small $\infty$-groupoids, def. 6.2.19.

**Definition 5.2.30.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ write

$$\mathrm{LConst}(X) := \mathbf{H}(X, \mathrm{Disc}(\mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa))$$

for the cocycle $\infty$-groupoid on $X$ with coefficients in the discretely cohesive $\infty$-groupoid on the $\infty$-groupoid of $\kappa$-small $\infty$-groupoids. We call this the $\infty$-groupoid of *locally constant $\infty$-stacks* on $X$.

**Observation 5.2.31.** Since Disc is left adjoint and right adjoint, it commutes with coproducts and with delooping, def. 5.1.152, so that by remark 6.2.20 we have

$$\mathrm{Disc}(\mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa) \simeq \coprod_i \mathbf{B}\,\mathrm{Disc}(\mathrm{Aut}(F_i))\,.$$

Therefore, by the discussion in 5.1.11, a locally constant $\infty$-stack $P \in \mathrm{LConst}(X)$ may be identified on each geometric connected component of $X$ with the total space of a $\mathrm{Disc}\,\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)$-principal $\infty$-bundle $P \to X$.

Moreover, by the discussion in 5.1.14, to each such $\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)$-principal $\infty$-bundle is canonically associated a $\mathrm{Disc}(F_i)$-fiber $\infty$-bundle $E \to X$. This is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Disc}(F_i)//\mathrm{Disc}(\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Disc}(\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)) \end{array}\,.$$

Since by corollary 6.2.25 every discrete $\infty$-bundle with $\kappa$-small fibers over connected $X$ arises this way, essentially uniquely, we may canonically identify the morphism $E \to X$ with an object $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ in the little topos over $X$, which interprets as the $\infty$-topos of $\infty$-stacks over $X$, as discussed at the beginning of 5.1.19. This way the objects of $\mathrm{LConst}(X)$ are indeed identified with $\infty$-stacks over $X$.

The following proposition says that the central statement of Galois theory holds for the notion of locally constant $\infty$-stacks in a cohesive $\infty$-topos.

**Proposition 5.2.32.** *For $\mathbf{H}$ locally and globally $\infty$-connected, we have*

1. *a natural equivalence*
$$\mathrm{LConst}(X) \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi(X), \infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa)$$
*of locally constant $\infty$-stacks on $X$ with $\infty$-permutation representations of the fundamental $\infty$-groupoid of $X$ (*local systems *on $X$);*

2. *for every point $x : * \to X$ a natural equivalence of the endomorphisms of the fiber functor*
$$x^* : \mathrm{LConst}(X) \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa$$
*and the loop space of $\Pi(X)$ at $x$*
$$\mathrm{End}(x^*) \simeq \Omega_x \Pi(X)\,.$$

Proof. The first statement is essentially the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-adjunction :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{LConst}(X) &:= \mathbf{H}(X, \mathrm{Disc}(\mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa)) \\ &\simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi(X), \mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa)\,. \\ &\simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi(X), \infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa) \end{aligned}$$

Using this and that $\Pi$ preserves the terminal object, so that the adjunct of $(* \to X \to \mathrm{Disc}\,\mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa)$ is $(* \to \Pi(X) \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa)$, the second statement follows with an iterated application of the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma:

The fiber functor $x^* : \mathrm{Func}_\infty(\Pi(X), \infty\mathrm{Grpd}) \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ evaluates an $\infty$-presheaf on $\Pi(X)^{\mathrm{op}}$ at $x \in \Pi(X)$. By the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma this is the same as homming out of $j(x)$, where $j : \Pi(X)^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Func}(\Pi(X), \infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ is the $\infty$-Yoneda embedding:

$$x^* \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{PSh}(\Pi(X)^{op})}(j(x), -)\,.$$

This means that $x^*$ itself is a representable object in $\mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\Pi(X)^{\mathrm{op}})^{\mathrm{op}})$. If we denote by $\tilde{j} : \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\Pi(X)^{\mathrm{op}})^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\Pi(X)^{\mathrm{op}})^{\mathrm{op}})$ the corresponding Yoneda embedding, then

$$x^* \simeq \tilde{j}(j(x))\,.$$

With this, we compute the endomorphisms of $x^*$ by applying the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma two more times:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{End}(x^*) &\simeq \mathrm{End}_{\mathrm{PSh}(\mathrm{PSh}(\Pi(X)^{\mathrm{op}})^{\mathrm{op}})}(\tilde{j}(j(x))) \\ &\simeq \mathrm{End}(\mathrm{PSh}(\Pi(X))^{\mathrm{op}})(j(x)) \\ &\simeq \mathrm{End}_{\Pi(X)^{\mathrm{op}}}(x,x) \\ &\simeq \mathrm{Aut}_x \Pi(X) \\ &=: \Omega_x \Pi(X) \end{aligned} \quad .$$

□

Next we discuss how this intrinsic Galois theory in a cohesive $\infty$-topos is in line with the *categorical Galois theory* of Janelidze, as treated in [CJKP97]. This revolves around factorization systems associated with the path functor $\int$ from 5.2.3.

**Definition 5.2.33.** For $f : X \to Y$ a morphism in $\mathbf{H}$, write

$$c_{\int} f := Y \times_{\int Y} \int(X) \to Y$$

for the $\infty$-pullback in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} c_{\int} f & \longrightarrow & \int X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\int f} \\ Y & \longrightarrow & \int Y \end{array} ,$$

where the bottom morphism is the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-unit. We say that $c_{\int} f$ is the *$\int$-closure* of $f$, and that $f$ is *$\int$-closed* if $X \simeq c_{\int} f$.

**Remark 5.2.34.** In the discussion of *differential* cohesion below in 4.2 we see that the *infinitesimal* analog of $\int$-closesness is *formal étaleness*, see def. 5.3.19 below. There is a close conceptual relation: as we now discuss (prop. 5.2.42 below) morphisms $X \xrightarrow{f} Y$ that are $\int$-closed may be identified with the total space projections of *locally constant $\infty$-stacks over $Y$*. Accordingly in a context of differential cohesion, $\Im$-closed such morphisms may be interpreted as projections out of total spaces of general $\infty$-stacks over $Y$.

**Definition 5.2.35.** Call a morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathbf{H}$ a $\Pi$-*equivalence* if $\Pi(f)$ is an equivalence in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

**Remark 5.2.36.** Since $\mathrm{Disc} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathbf{H}$ is full and faithful, we may equivalently speak of *$\int$-equivalences.*

**Proposition 5.2.37.** *If $\mathbf{H}$ has an $\infty$-connected site of definition, then every morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathbf{H}$ factors as*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\quad f \quad} & Y \\ & {}_{f'}\searrow \quad \nearrow & \\ & c_{\int f} & \end{array} ,$$

*where $f'$ is a $\int$-equivalence.*

Proof. This is a special case of prop. 2.2.11. The naturality of the adjunction unit together with the universality of the $\infty$-pullback that defines $c_{\int} f$ gives the factorization

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \overset{f'}{\dashrightarrow} & Y \times_{\int Y} \int X & \longrightarrow & \int X \\ & \searrow^{f} & \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\int f} \\ & & Y & \longrightarrow & \int Y \end{array} .$$

By prop. 4.1.35 the functor $\Pi$ preserves the above $\infty$-pullback. Since $\Pi(X \to \int X)$ is an equivalence, it follows that $\int X$ is also a pullback of the $\int$-image of the diagram, and hence $\int(f')$ is an equivalence. $\square$

**Proposition 5.2.38.** *For* $\mathbf{H}$ *with an* $\infty$*-cohesive site of definition, the pair of classes of morphisms*

$$(\int\text{-equivalences}, \int\text{-closed morphisms}) \subset \mathrm{Mor}(\mathbf{H}) \times \mathrm{Mor}(\mathbf{H})$$

*constitutes an orthogonal factorization system.*

Proof. By prop. 2.2.11. $\square$

We now identifiy the $\int$-closed morphisms with covering spaces, hence with total spaces of locally constant $\infty$-stacks.

**Observation 5.2.39.** For $f : X \to Y$ a $\int$-closed morphism, its fibers $X_y$ over global points $y : * \to Y$ are discrete objects.

Proof. By assumption and using the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, it follows that the fibers of $f$ are the fibers of $\int f$. Since the terminal object is discrete and since Disc preserves $\infty$-pullbacks, these are the images under Disc of fibers of $\Pi f$, and hence are discrete. $\square$

Conversely we have:

**Example 5.2.40.** Let $X \in \mathbf{H}$ be any object, and let $A \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be any discrete $\infty$-groupoid. Then the projection morphism $p : X \times \mathrm{Disc}(A) \to X$ out of the product is $\int$-closed.

Proof. Since $\int$ preserves products, by the axioms of cohesion, and Disc preserves products as a right adjoint and is moreover full and faithful, we have that $\int(p)$ is the projection

$$\int(p) : \int(X) \times \mathrm{Disc}(A) \to \int(X)\,.$$

Since $\infty$-limits commute with $\infty$-limits, it follows that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times \mathrm{Disc}(A) & \longrightarrow & \int(X) \times \mathrm{Disc}(A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \int(X) \end{array}$$

is an $\infty$-pullback. $\square$

**Remark 5.2.41.** Morphisms of the form $X \times \mathrm{Disc}(A) \to X$ fit into pasting diagrams of $\infty$-pullbacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X \times \mathrm{Disc}(A) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Disc}(A) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Disc}(A//\mathrm{Aut}(A)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Disc}(\mathrm{Aut}(A)) \end{array} ,$$

where the square on the right is the universal discrete $A$-bundle, by the discussion in 5.1.14. According to def. 5.2.30 the composite morphism on the bottom classifies the *trivial* locally constant $\infty$-stack with fiber $A$ over $X$, hence the *constant* $\infty$-stack with fiber $A$ over $X$. Therefore the above $\infty$-pullback exhibits $X \times \mathrm{Disc}(A) \to X$ as the total space incarnation of that constant $\infty$-stack on $X$.

The following proposition generalizes this statement to all locally constant $\infty$-stacks over $X$.

**Proposition 5.2.42.** *Let $\mathbf{H}$ have an $\infty$-cohesive site of definition, 4.1.2.2. Then for any $X \in \mathbf{H}$ the locally constant $\infty$-stacks $E \in \mathrm{LConst}(X)$, regarded as $\infty$-bundle morphisms $p : E \to X$ by observation 5.2.31, are precisely the $\int$-closed morphisms into $X$.*

Proof. We may without restriction of generality assume that $X$ has a single geometric connected component. Then $E \to X$ is given by an $\infty$-pullback of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Disc}(F_i//\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)) \\ \downarrow^{p} & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Disc}\mathrm{Aut}(F_i) \end{array} .$$

By prop. 4.1.35 the functor $\Pi$ preserves this $\infty$-pullback, so that also

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \int E & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Disc}(F_i//\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int X & \xrightarrow{\int g} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Disc}\,\mathrm{Aut}(F_i) \end{array}$$

is an $\infty$-pullback, where we used that, by the axioms of cohesion, $\int$ sends discrete objects to themselves.

By def. 5.2.33 the factorization in question is given by forming the $\infty$-pullback on the left of

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X \times_{\int X} \int E & \longrightarrow & \int E & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Disc}(F_i//\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \int X & \xrightarrow{\int g} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Disc}\mathrm{Aut}(F_i) \end{array} .$$

By the universal property of the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-reflection, the bottom composite is again equivalent to $g$, hence by the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, it follows that the pullback on the left is equivalent to $E \to X$.

Conversely, if the $\infty$-pullback diagram on the left is given, it follows with prop. 6.2.23 and using, by definition of cohesion, that Disc is full and faithful, that an $\infty$-pullback square as on the right exists. Again by the pasting law, this implies that the morphism on the left is the total space projection of a locally constant $\infty$-stack over $X$. □

**Remark 5.2.43.** In the "1-categorical Galois theory" of [CJKP97] only the trivial discrete $\infty$-bundles arise as pullbacks this way, and much of the theory deals with getting around this restriction. In our language, this is because in the context of 1-categorical cohesion, as in [Law07], the $\infty$-functor $\int$ reduces to the 1-functor $\int_0 \simeq \tau_0 \circ \int$, discussed in 5.2.3, on a locally connected and connected 1-topos, which assigns only the set of connected components, instead of the full path $\infty$-groupoid.

Clearly, the pullback over an object of the form $\int_0 K$ is indeed a locally constant $\infty$-stack that is trivial as a discretely fibered $\infty$-bundle. But this restriction is lifted by passing from cohesive 1-toposes to cohesive $\infty$-toposes.

We now characterize locally constant $\infty$-stacks over $X$ as precisely the "relatively discrete" objects over $X$. To that end, recall, by prop. 5.2.18, that for $\mathbf{H}$ a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos also all the slice $\infty$-toposes $\mathcal{X} := \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ for all objects $X \in \mathbf{H}$ are locally $\infty$-connected.

**Definition 5.2.44.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object in a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ and

$$\mathbf{H}_{/X} \underset{p_*}{\overset{p_!}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longrightarrow}{\xleftarrow{p^*}}}}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

the corresponding locally $\infty$-connected terminal geometric morphism, write

$$\mathbf{H}_{/X} \underset{\xleftarrow{p^*/X}}{\xrightarrow{p_!/X}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/\Pi(X)}$$

for the induced $\infty$-adjunction on the slices, by prop. 5.2.5.1 in [L-Topos], where the left adjoint $p_!/X$ sends $(E \to X)$ to $(\Pi(E) \to \Pi(X))$.

**Proposition 5.2.45.** *Let the cohesive $\infty$-topos $H$ have an $\infty$-cohesive site of definition, def. 4.1.31 and let $X \in \mathbf{H}$ be any object.*

*The full sub-$\infty$-category of $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ on the $\int$-closed morphisms into $X$, def. 5.2.33, hence on the locally constant $\infty$-stacks over $X$, prop. 5.2.42, is equivalent to the image of the moprhism $p^*/X : \infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/\Pi(X)} \to \mathbf{H}_{/X}$.*

Proof. By prop 5.2.5.1 in [L-Topos], the $\infty$-functor $p^*/X$ is the composite

$$p^*/X : \infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/\Pi(X)} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Disc}} \mathbf{H}_{/\int} \xrightarrow{X \times_{\int(X)} (-)} \mathbf{H}_{/X} \; .$$

This sends a morphism $Q \to \Pi(X)$ to the pullback on the left of the pullback square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Disc}(Q) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \int(X) \end{array} \; .$$

Since $\Pi$ preserves this $\infty$-pullback, by prop. 4.1.35, and sends $X \to \int(X)$ to an equivalence, it follows that $\Pi(E \to X)$ is equivalent to $Q \to \Pi(X)$ and hence the above pullback diagram looks like

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \longrightarrow & \int(E) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \int(X) \end{array} \; .$$

The naturality of the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-unit and the universality of the pullback imply that the top horizontal morphism here is indeed the $E$-component of the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$ unit.

This shows that, up to equivalence, precisely the $\int$-closed morphism $E \to X$ arise this way. □

**Remark 5.2.46.** A definition of locally constant objects in general $\infty$-toposes is given in section A.1 of [L-Alg]. The above prop. 5.2.45 together with theorem A.1.15 in [L-Topos] shows that restricted to the slices $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ it coincides with the definition discussed here.

### 5.2.8 $\mathbb{A}^1$-Homotopy and The Continuum

We formalize in a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ the notion of *the continuum* in the sense in which the standard real line $\mathbb{R}$ is traditionally called *the continuum*. Abstractly this is an object $\mathbb{A}^1 \in \mathbf{H}$ which, when regarded as a *line object*, *induces* the geometric homotopy in $\mathbf{H}$ as discussed in 5.2.3. Explicitly this means that $\int : \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\Pi} \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ exhibits the *localization* of $\mathbf{H}$ which inverts all those morphisms that are products of an object with the terminal morphism $\mathbb{A}^1 \to *$. Since by cohesion $\int(*) \simeq *$, this means in particular that such an $\mathbb{A}^1$ is a geometrically contractible object in that $\int(\mathbb{A}^1) \simeq *$. Together this are the characterizing property of the archetypical "continuum" $\mathbb{R}$. Below in 5.2.9 we discuss how a continuum line object induces a notion of *manifold* objects in $\mathbf{H}$.

**Remark 5.2.47.** The $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, being in particular a presentable $\infty$-category, admits a choice of a small set $\{c_i \in \mathbf{H}\}_i$ of generating objects, and every small set of morphisms in $\mathbf{H}$ induces a full reflective sub-$\infty$-category of objects that are *local* with respect to these morphisms.

This is [L-Topos], section 5.

**Definition 5.2.48.** For $\mathbf{H}$ a cohesive $\infty$-topos, we say an object $\mathbb{A} \in \mathbf{H}$ is an *continuum line object exhibiting the cohesion* of $\mathbf{H}$ if the reflective inclusion of the discrete objects

$$(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc}) : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \underset{\mathrm{Disc}}{\overset{\Pi}{\hookleftarrow\!\!\!\longrightarrow}} \mathbf{H}$$

is induced by the localization at the set of morphisms

$$S := \{c_i \times (\mathbb{A} \to *)\}_i, \,,$$

for $\{c_i\}_i$ some small set of generators of $\mathbf{H}$, hence

**Remark 5.2.49.** In this situation, for $X \in \mathbf{H}$ we may think of $\Pi(X)$ also as the $\mathbb{A}$-*localization* of $X$.

**Remark 5.2.50.** A supergeometric version of def. 5.2.48 may be considered in solid $\infty$-toposes, this we discuss below in def. 6.6.17.

A class of examples of this situation is the following.

**Proposition 5.2.51.** *Let $C$ be an $\infty$-cohesive site, def. 4.1.31, which moreover is the syntactic category of a Lawvere algebraic theory (see chapter 3, volume 2 of [Borc94]), in that it has finite products and there is an object*

$$\mathbb{A}^1 \in C$$

*such that every other object is isomorphic to an n-fold cartesian product $\mathbb{A}^n = (\mathbb{A}^1)^n$.*

*Then $\mathbb{A}^1 \in C \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ is a geometric interval exhibiting the cohesion, def. 5.2.48, of the $\infty$-topos over $C$.*

Proof. A set of generating objects of $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(C)$ is given by the set of isomorphism classes of objects of $C$, hence, by assumption, by $\{\mathbb{A}^n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$. The set of localizing morphisms is therefore

$$S := \{\mathbb{A}^{n+1} \to \mathbb{A}^n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}\,.$$

By prop. 4.1.32, $\mathbf{H}$ is presented by the model category $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. By the proof of [L-Topos] cor. A.3.7.10 the localization of $\mathbf{H}$ at $S$ is presented by the left Bousfield localization of this model category at $S$, given by a Quillen adjunction to be denoted

$$(L_{\mathbb{A}^1} \dashv R_{\mathbb{A}^1}) : [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc},\mathbb{A}^1} \underset{\mathrm{id}}{\overset{\mathrm{id}}{\rightleftarrows}} [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}\,.$$

Observe that we also have a Quillen adjunction

$$(\mathrm{const} \dashv (-)_*) : \ [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc},\mathbb{A}^1} \underset{(-)_*}{\overset{\mathrm{const}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \ ,$$

where the right adjoint evaluates at the terminal object $\mathbb{A}^0$, and where the left adjoint produces constant simplicial presheaves. This is because the two functors are clearly a Quillen adjunction before localization (on $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$) and so by [L-Topos, cor. A.3.7.2] it is sufficient to observe that on the local structure the right adjoint still preserves fibrant objects, which it does because the fibrant objects in the localization are in particular fibrant in the unlocalized structure.

Moreover, we claim that $(\mathrm{const} \dashv (-)_*)$ is in fact a Quillen equivalence, by observing that the derived adjunction unit and counit are equivalences. For the derived adjunction unit, notice that by the proof of prop. 4.1.32 a constant Kan-simplicial presheaf is fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, and so it is clearly fibrant in $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc},\mathbb{A}^1}$. Therefore the plain adjunction unit, which is the identity, is already the derived adjunction unit. For the derived counit, let $X \in [C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc},\mathbb{A}1}$ be fibrant. Then also the adjunction counit

$$\eta : \mathrm{const}(X(\mathbb{A}^0)) \to X$$

is already the derived counit (since $X(\mathbb{A}^0) \in \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ is necessarily cofibrant). At every $\mathbb{A}^n \in C$ it is isomorphic to the sequence of morphisms

$$\eta(\mathbb{A}^n); X(\mathbb{A}^0) \to X(\mathbb{A}^1) \to \cdots \to X(\mathbb{A}^n) \, ,$$

each of which is a weak equivalence by the $\mathbb{A}^1$-locality of $X$.

Now observe that we have an equivalence of $\infty$-functors

$$\mathrm{Disc} \simeq \mathbb{R}R_{\mathbb{A}^1} \circ \mathbb{L}\mathrm{const} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathbf{H} \, .$$

Because for $A \in \mathrm{sSet}$ fibrant, $\mathbb{L}\mathrm{const}(A) \simeq A$ is still fibrant, by the proof of prop. 4.1.32, and so $(\mathbb{R}R_{\mathbb{A}^1})((\mathbb{L}\mathrm{const})(A)) \simeq \mathrm{const}A$ is presented simply by the constant simplicial presheaf on $A$, which indeed is a presentation for $\mathrm{Disc}A$, again by the proof of prop. 4.1.32.

Finally, since by the above $\mathbb{L}\mathrm{const}$ is in fact an equivalence, by essential uniqueness of $\infty$-adjoints it follows now that $\mathbb{L}L_{\mathbb{A}^1}$ is left adjoint to the $\infty$-functor Disc, and this proves the claim. □

**Remark 5.2.52.** Below in 6.3.6 we show that in the models of Euclidean-topological cohesion and of smooth cohesion the standard real line is indeed the continuum line object in the above abstract sense.

### 5.2.9 Manifolds (unseparated)

We discuss a general abstract realization of the notion of *unseparated manifolds* internal to a cohesive $\infty$-topos. In order to formalize separated manifolds (Hausdorff manifolds) we need the extra axioms of differential cohesion. This is discussed below in 5.3.10.

**Remark 5.2.53.** The theory of principal $\infty$-bundles in 5.1.11 extensively used two of the three Giraud-Rezk-Lurie axioms characterizing $\infty$-toposes, prop. 3.1.5 (universal coproducts and effective groupoid objects). Here we now use the third one, that *coproducts are disjoint*.

**Proposition 5.2.54.** *If $A \in \mathbf{H}$ is 0-truncated (def. 5.1.47) is geometrically connected in that $\Pi(A) \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is connected, then morphisms $A \to X \coprod Y$ into a coproduct of 0-truncated objects in $\mathbf{H}$ factor through one of the two inclusions $X \hookrightarrow X \coprod Y$ or $Y \hookrightarrow X \coprod Y$.*

Proof. The 1-topos $\tau_{\leq 0}\mathbf{H}$ of 0-truncated objects of a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos is a locally connected 1-topos by prop. 4.1.5. Under this identification, $A \in \tau_0\mathbf{H}$ as above is a connected object, and hence is in particular not a coproduct of two non-initial objects. Since moreover coproducts in $\mathbf{H}$ and in $\tau_{\leq 0}\mathbf{H}$ are disjoint and since truncation (being a left adjoint) preserves them, the statement reduces to a standard fact in topos theory (for instance [Joh02], p. 34). □

Let now $\mathbb{A}^1 \in \mathbf{H}$ be a continuum line object that *exhibits the cohesion of* $\mathbf{H}$ in the sense of def. 5.2.48. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, write

$$\mathbb{A}^n := \underbrace{\mathbb{A}^1 \times \cdots \times \mathbb{A}^1}_{n \text{ factors}} .$$

**Proposition 5.2.55.** *For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the objects $\mathbb{A}^n \in \mathbf{H}$ are geometrically connected.*

Proof. By cohesion, $\Pi : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ preserves finite products and so the statement reduces to the fact that the product of two connected $\infty$-groupoids is itself a connected $\infty$-groupoid. □

**Definition 5.2.56.** Given an object $\mathbb{A}^1 \in \mathbf{H}$ exhibiting the cohesion (def. 5.2.48) of the cohesive topos $\mathbf{H}$, an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is an *unseparated* $\mathbb{A}$*-manifold* of *dimension* $n \in \mathbb{N}$ if there exists a small set of monomorphisms of the form

$$\{\mathbb{A}^n \overset{\phi_j}{\hookrightarrow} X\}_j$$

such that for the corresponding

$$\phi : \coprod_j \mathbb{A}^n \xrightarrow{(\phi_j)_j} X$$

we have

1. $\phi$ is an effective epimorphism, def. 5.1.65;
2. the nerve simplicial object $C_\bullet(\phi)$ of $\phi$ is degreewise a coproduct of copies of $\mathbb{A}^n$.

**Remark 5.2.57.** Since monomorphisms are stable under pullback and since by the Giraud-Rezk-Lurie axioms coproducts are preserved under pullback, it follows that the simplicial object in def. 5.2.56 is such that all components $\mathbb{A}^n \to \mathbb{A}^n$ of all face maps (given by prop. 5.2.54 and prop. 5.2.55) are monomorphisms.

**Remark 5.2.58.** Below in 6.3.7 and **??** is discussed that in the standard model of Euclidean-topological and of smooth cohesion this abstract definition reproduces the traditional definition of topological and of smooth manifolds, respectively.

Below in 5.3.10 we use the additional axioms of *differential* cohesion, 4.2, to give an accurate axiomatization of separated manifolds and étale groupoid objects.

### 5.2.10 de Rham cohomology

We discuss how in every locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ there is an intrinsic notion of *nonabelian de Rham cohomology*.

We have already seen the notions of *Principal bundles*, 5.1.11, and of flat $\infty$-connections on principal $\infty$-bundles, 5.2.6, in any locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos. In traditional differential geometry, flat connection on the *trivial* principal bundle may be canonically identified with flat differential 1-forms on the base space. In the following we take this idea to be the *definition* of flat $\infty$-group/$\infty$-Lie algebra valued forms: flat $\infty$-connections on trivial principal $\infty$-bundles.

**Definition 5.2.59.** Let $\mathbf{H}$ be a locally $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos.

1. For $\mathrm{pt}_A : * \to A$ any pointed object in $\mathbf{H}$, write $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} A := * \prod_A \flat A$ for the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} A & \longrightarrow & \flat A \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & A \end{array} .$$

   We call this the *de Rham coefficient object* of $\mathrm{pt}_A : * \to A$.

2. For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object, write $\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X := * \coprod_X \int X$ for the $\infty$-pushout

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int(X) & \longrightarrow & \int_{\mathrm{dR}} X \end{array} .$$

   We call this the *cohesive de Rham homotopy-type* of $X$ (see remark 5.2.69 below).

The cohomology
$$H_{\mathrm{dR}}(-, A) := H(-, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} A) = \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(-, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} A)$$
we call the *de Rham cohomology* with coefficients in $A$.

**Remark 5.2.60.** By prop. 5.1.267 the homotopy fiber sequence in definition 5.2.59 exhibits an action of $G$ on $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B} G$ whose homotopy quotient is $\flat \mathbf{B} G$:

$$\flat \mathbf{B} G \simeq (\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B} G) // G .$$

**Example 5.2.61.** Below in prop. 6.4.67 and remark 6.4.68 we see that in the model of smooth cohesion and for $G$ a Lie group, then the $G$-action of remark 5.2.60 is given by the traditional formula for gauge transformations of Lie-algebra valued differential 1-forms

$$A \mapsto g^{-1} A g + g^{-1} d g .$$

We record the following simple but important property:

**Proposition 5.2.62.** *For all $X \in \mathbf{H}$ the object $\int_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ is geometrically contractible: $\int(\Pi_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)) \simeq *$ Dually $\flat \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} X \simeq *$.*

Proof. Since on the locally $\infty$-connected and $\infty$-connected $\mathbf{H}$ the functor $\Pi$ preserves $\infty$-colimits and the terminal object, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi \textstyle\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X := & \Pi(*) \coprod_{\Pi X} \Pi \textstyle\int X \\ & \simeq * \coprod_{\Pi X} \Pi \mathrm{Disc} \Pi X \\ & \simeq * \coprod_{\Pi X} \Pi X \qquad \simeq * \end{aligned} ,$$

where we used that on the $\infty$-connected $\mathbf{H}$ the functor Disc is full and faithful. The argument for $\flat \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}$ is formally dual. $\square$

**Proposition 5.2.63.** *The construction in def. 5.2.59 yields a pair of adjoint ∞-functors*

$$(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} \dashv \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}) : \; */\mathbf{H} \underset{\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\overset{\int_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathbf{H} \; .$$

Proof. We check the defining natural hom-equivalence

$$*/\mathbf{H}(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X, A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} A) \, .$$

The hom-space in the under-∞-category $*/\mathbf{H}$ is computed by prop. 5.1.33 as the ∞-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} */\mathbf{H}(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X, A) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X, A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{pt}_A} & \mathbf{H}(*, A) \end{array} \; .$$

By the fact that the hom-functor $\mathbf{H}(-,-) : \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ preserves ∞-limits in both arguments we have a natural equivalence

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X, A) &:= \mathbf{H}(* \coprod_X \int(X), A) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(*, A) \prod_{\mathbf{H}(X,A)} \mathbf{H}(\int(X), A) \end{aligned} .$$

We paste this pullback to the above pullback diagram to obtain

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} */\mathbf{H}(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X, A) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X, A) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(\int(X), A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{pt}_A} & \mathbf{H}(*, A) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, A) \end{array} \; .$$

By the pasting law for ∞-pullbacks, prop. 5.1.2, the outer diagram is still a pullback. We may evidently rewrite the bottom composite as in

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} */\mathbf{H}(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X, A) & & \longrightarrow & & \mathbf{H}(\int(X), A) \\ \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & \mathbf{H}(X, *) & \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{pt}_A)_*} & \mathbf{H}(X, A) \end{array} \; .$$

This exhibits the hom-space as the pullback

$$*/\mathbf{H}(\int_{\mathrm{dR}}(X), A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, *) \prod_{\mathbf{H}(X,A)} \mathbf{H}(X, \flat A) ,$$

where we used the $(\int \dashv \flat)$-adjunction. Now using again that $\mathbf{H}(X, -)$ preserves pullbacks, this is

$$\cdots \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, * \prod_A \flat A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} A) \, .$$

□

**Observation 5.2.64.** If $\mathbf{H}$ is also local, then there is a further right adjoint $\mathbf{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{dR}}$

$$(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} \dashv \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \dashv \mathbf{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{dR}}) : \ \mathbf{H} \underset{\mathbf{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\overset{\overset{\int_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\longrightarrow}}{\underset{\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\longleftarrow}}} */\mathbf{H}$$

given by

$$\mathbf{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{dR}} X := * \coprod_X \mathbf{\Gamma}(X) \,.$$

**Definition 5.2.65.** For $X, A \in \mathbf{H}$ we write

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X,A) := \mathbf{H}(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X, A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} A) \,.$$

A cocycle $\omega : X \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} A$ we call a *flat A-valued differential form* on $X$.

We say that $H_{\mathrm{dR}}(X,A) {:=} \pi_0 \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X,A)$ is the *de Rham cohomology* of $X$ with coefficients in $A$.

**Observation 5.2.66.** A cocycle in de Rham cohomology

$$\omega : \int_{\mathrm{dR}} X \to A$$

is precisely a flat $\infty$-connection on a *trivializable* $A$-principal $\infty$-bundle. More precisely, $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X,A)$ is the homotopy fiber of the forgetful functor from $\infty$-bundles with flat $\infty$-connection to $\infty$-bundles: we have an $\infty$-pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X,A) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X,A) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X,A) \end{array} \quad .$$

Proof. This follows by the fact that the hom-functor $\mathbf{H}(X,-)$ preserves the defining $\infty$-pullback for $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} A$. □

Just for emphasis, notice the dual description of this situation: by the universal property of the $\infty$-colimit that defines $\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X$ we have that $\omega$ corresponds to a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int(X) & \xrightarrow{\omega} & A \end{array} \; .$$

The bottom horizontal morphism is a flat connection on the $\infty$-bundle which in turn is given by the composite cocycle $X \to \int(X) \stackrel{\omega}{\to} A$. The diagram says that this is equivalent to the trivial bundle given by the trivial cocycle $X \to * \to A$.

**Proposition 5.2.67.** *The de Rham cohomology with coefficients in discrete objects is trivial: for all* $S \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *we have*

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathrm{Disc} S \simeq * \,.$$

Proof. Using that in a $\infty$-connected $\infty$-topos the functor Disc is a full and faithful $\infty$-functor so that unit $\mathrm{Id} \to \Gamma \mathrm{Disc}$ is an equivalence and using that by the zig-zag identity the counit component $\flat \mathrm{Disc} S := \mathrm{Disc} \Gamma \mathrm{Disc} S \to \mathrm{Disc} S$ is also an equivalence, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathrm{Disc} S &:= * \coprod_{\mathrm{Disc} S} \flat \mathrm{Disc} S \\ &\simeq * \coprod_{\mathrm{Disc} S} \mathrm{Disc} S \ , \\ &\simeq * \end{aligned}$$

since the pullback of an equivalence is an equivalence. □

**Proposition 5.2.68.** *For every $X$ in a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, the object $\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X$ is globally connected in that $\pi_0 \mathbf{H}(*, \int_{\mathrm{dR}} X) = *$.*

*If $X$ has at least one point ($\pi_0(\Gamma X) \neq \emptyset$) and is geometrically connected ($\pi_0(\Pi X) = *$) then $\int_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ is also locally connected: $\tau_0 \int_{\mathrm{dR}} \simeq * \in \mathbf{H}$.*

Proof. Since $\Gamma$ preserves $\infty$-colimits in a cohesive $\infty$-topos we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}(*, \textstyle\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X) &\simeq \Gamma \textstyle\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X \\ &\simeq * \coprod_{\Gamma X} \mathbf{\Gamma} \textstyle\int \mathbf{X} \\ &\simeq * \coprod_{\Gamma X} \mathbf{\Pi X} \end{aligned},$$

where in the last step we used that Disc is full and faithful, so that there is an equivalence $\Gamma \int X := \Gamma \mathrm{Disc} \Pi X \simeq \Pi X$.

To analyse this $\infty$-pushout we present it by a homotopy pushout in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$. Denoting by $\Gamma X$ and $\Pi X$ any represetatives in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ of the objects of the same name in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, this may be computed by the ordinary pushout of simplicial sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Gamma X & \longrightarrow & (\Gamma X) \times \Delta[1] \coprod_{\Gamma X} * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Pi X & \longrightarrow & Q \end{array},$$

where on the right we have inserted the cone on $\Gamma X$ in order to turn the top morphism into a cofibration. From this ordinary pushout it is clear that the connected components of $Q$ are obtained from those of $\Pi X$ by identifying all those in the image of a connected component of $\Gamma X$. So if the left morphism is surjective on $\pi_0$ then $\pi_0(Q) = *$. This is precisely the condition that *pieces have points* in $\mathbf{H}$.

For the local analysis we consider the same setup objectwise in the injective model structure $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj,loc}}$. For any $U \in C$ we then have the pushout $Q_U$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X(U) & \longrightarrow & (X(U)) \times \Delta[1] \coprod_{X(U)} * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{sSet}(\Gamma(U), \Pi X) & \longrightarrow & Q_U \end{array},$$

as a model for the value of the simplicial presheaf presenting $\int_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$. If $X$ is geometrically connected then $\pi_0 \mathrm{sSet}(\Gamma(U), \Pi(X)) = *$ and hence for the left morphism to be surjective on $\pi_0$ it suffices that the top left object is not empty. Since the simplicial set $X(U)$ contains at least the vertices $U \to * \to X$ of which there is by assumption at least one, this is the case. □

**Remark 5.2.69.** In summary we see that in any cohesive $\infty$-topos the objects $\int_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ of def. 5.2.59 have the essential abstract properties of pointed *geometric de Rham homotopy-types* ([Toë06], section 3.5.1). In section 6 we will see that, indeed, the intrinsic de Rham cohomology of the cohesive $\infty$ -topos $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$

$$H_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\textstyle\int_{\mathrm{dR}} X, A)$$

reproduces ordinary de Rham cohomology in degree $d > 1$.

In degree 0 the intrinsic de Rham cohomology is necessarily trivial, while in degree 1 we find that it reproduces closed 1-forms, not divided out by exact forms. This difference to ordinary de Rham cohomology in the lowest two degrees may be understood in terms of the obstruction-theoretic meaning of de Rham cohomology by which we essentially characterized it above: we have that the intrinsic $H^n_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, K)$ is the home for the obstructions to flatness of $\mathbf{B}^{n-2}K$-principal $\infty$-bundles. For $n = 1$ this are groupoid-principal bundles over the *groupoid* with $K$ as its space of objects. But the 1-form curvatures of groupoid bundles are not to be regarded modulo exact forms.

We turn now to identifying certain de Rham cocycles that are adapted to intrinsic manifolds, as discussed in 5.2.9. In general a cocycle $\omega : X \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}A$ is to be thought of as what traditionally is called a cocycle in de Rham *hypercohomology*. The following definition models the idea of picking in de Rham hypercohomology over a manifold those cocycles that are given by globally defined differential forms.

Fix a line object $\mathbb{A}^1 \in \mathbf{H}$ which *exhibits the cohesion* of $\mathbf{H}$ in the sense of def. 5.2.48.

**Definition 5.2.70.** For $A \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ an $\infty$-group, a choice of *$A$-valued differential forms* is a morphism

$$\Omega_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, A) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}A$$

in $\mathbf{H}$, which is an *atlas over manifolds* of $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}A$, in that:

1. $\Omega_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, A)$ is 0-truncated;
2. for each intrinsic $\mathbb{A}^1$-manifold $\Sigma$, def. 5.2.56, the morphism $[\Sigma, \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, A)] \to [\Sigma, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n A]$ is an effective epimorphism, def. 5.1.65.

**Remark 5.2.71.** We discuss below in 6.4.76 how in the standard model of smooth cohesion this notion reproduces the traditional notion of smooth differential forms.

### 5.2.11 Exponentiated Lie algebras

In standard Lie theory, finite Lie algebras may be identified with the simply connected Lie groups that Lie-integrate them. In the context of homotopy theory, being simply connected is the first two stages in the infinite hierarchy of connectedness whose limiting case is geometric $\infty$-connectedness. Indeed, we find below in prop. 6.4.82, that the explicit Lie integration as in [FSS10] of strong homotopy Lie algebras – $L_\infty$-algebras – in the model of smooth cohesion 6.4 lands in geometrically $\infty$-connected (contractible) cohesive $\infty$-groups. Therefore we axiomatize:

**Definition 5.2.72.** Given a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, then an *exponentiated $\infty$-Lie algebra* – which we suggestively denote $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ – is a pointed connected cohesive homotopy-type $* \to \mathbf{B}\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ in $\mathbf{H}$ that is *geometrically contractible* (5.2.3)

$$\Pi(\mathbf{B}\exp(\mathfrak{g})) \simeq * \,.$$

By theorem 5.1.151 this is equivalently the loop space object

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g}) := \Omega_* \mathbf{B}\exp(\mathfrak{g})$$

equipped with its group-like $A_\infty$-structure.

**Remark 5.2.73.** When passing from the axioms of plain cohesion to those of differential cohesion 4.2 then one may axiomatize a further restriction of the concept of exponentiated $\infty$-Lie algebras, namely that of formal $\infty$-groups. This we discuss below in 5.3.6.

We now observe that the de Rham coefficient modalities of 5.2.10 provide a basic Lie theory for exponentiated $\infty$-Lie algebras

**Definition 5.2.74.** Write

$$\exp\mathrm{Lie} := \textstyle\int_{\mathrm{dR}} \circ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} : */\mathbf{H} \to */\mathbf{H} \,.$$

**Remark 5.2.75.** If $\mathbf{H}$ is cohesive, then $\exp\mathrm{Lie}$ is a left adjoint (by the construction in def. 4.1.11).

**Proposition 5.2.76.** *For every pointed cohesive homotopy-type* $(* \to A) \in */\mathbf{H}$ *the homotopy-type* $\exp\mathrm{Lie}A$ *is an exponentiated* $\infty$*-Lie algebra the sense of def. 5.3.47.*

Proof. By prop. 5.2.62 □

We shall write $\mathbf{B}\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ for $\exp\mathrm{Lie}\mathbf{B}G$, when the context is clear. The following basic fact shows that $\exp\mathrm{Lie}\mathbf{B}G$ behaves as its geoemtric interpretation implies in that $G$-valued differential forms indeed factor through $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms.

**Proposition 5.2.77.** *Every de Rham cocycle (5.2.10)* $\omega : \int_{\mathrm{dR}} X \to \mathbf{B}G$ *factors through the Lie integrated* $\infty$*-Lie algebra of* $G$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ \int_{\mathrm{dR}} X & \xrightarrow{\omega} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

Proof. By the universality of the $(\int_{\mathrm{dR}} \dashv \flat_{\mathrm{dR}})$-counit we have that $\omega$ factors through the counit $\epsilon : \exp\mathrm{Lie}\mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}G$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \int_{\mathrm{dR}} X & \\ {}^{\int_{\mathrm{dR}}\tilde{\omega}}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\omega} \\ \int_{\mathrm{dR}}\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\epsilon} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} ,$$

where $\tilde{\omega} : X \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$ is the adjunct of $\omega$. □

Therefore instead of speaking of a $G$-valued de Rham cocycle, it is less redundant to speak of an $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$-valued de Rham cocycle. In particular we have the following.

**Corollary 5.2.78.** *Every morphism* $\mathbf{B}\exp(\mathfrak{h}) := \exp\mathrm{Lie}\mathbf{B}H \to \mathbf{B}G$ *from a Lie integrated* $\infty$*-Lie algebra to an* $\infty$*-group factors through the Lie integrated* $\infty$*-Lie algebra of that* $\infty$*-group*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\exp(\mathfrak{h}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \\ & \searrow & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

### 5.2.12 Maurer-Cartan forms and Curvature characteristic forms

In the intrinsic de Rham cohomology of the cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ there exist canonical cocycles that we may identify with *Maurer-Cartan forms* and with universal *curvature characteristic forms.*

**Definition 5.2.79.** For $G \in \mathrm{Group}(\mathbf{H})$ an $\infty$-group in the cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, write

$$\theta : G \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$$

for the $G$-valued de Rham cocycle on $G$ induced by this pasting of $\infty$-pullbacks

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & * \\ {\scriptstyle\theta}\downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G & \longrightarrow & \flat\mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

using prop. 5.2.77.

We call $\theta$ the *Maurer-Cartan form* on $G$.

**Remark 5.2.80.** For any object $X$, postcomposition the Maurer-Cartan form sends $G$-valued functions on $X$ to $\mathfrak{g}$-valued forms on $X$

$$[\theta_*] : H^0(X, G) \to H^1_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, G)\,.$$

**Remark 5.2.81.** For $G = \mathbf{B}^n A$ an Eilenberg-MacLane object, we also write

$$\mathrm{curv} : \mathbf{B}^n A \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A$$

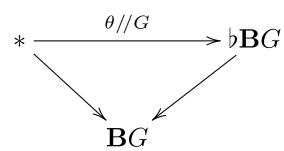
for its intrinsic Maurer-Cartan form and call this the intrinsic *universal curvature characteristic form* on $\mathbf{B}^n A$.

These curvature characteristic forms serve to define differential cohomology in the next section.

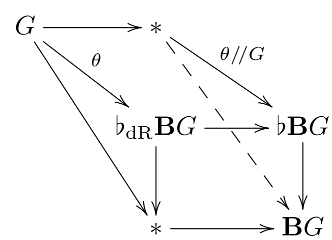
**Remark 5.2.82.** For $G$ an $\infty$-group, then domain and codomain of the Maurer-Cartan form of def. 5.2.79 both carry a canonical $G$-$\infty$-action (via prop. 5.1.267): the domain $G$ carries its right action according to example 5.1.274 and the codomain $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$ carries the gauge transformation action of remark 5.2.60.

**Proposition 5.2.83.** *For $G$ an $\infty$-group, the Maurer-Cartan form $\theta : G \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$ of def. 5.2.79 is essentially uniquely equipped with $G$-equivariant structure, hence with the structure intertwining the $G$-$\infty$-action on its domain and codomain.*

Proof. By prop. 5.1.267 a $G$-equivariant structure on $\theta$ is a morphism $\theta//G$ fitting into the diagram

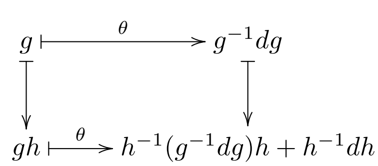


such that its homotopy fiber is $\theta$. That this morphism is essentially unique is clear. To see that its homotopy fiber is indeed $\theta$ consider the diagram



where the bottom square and the rectangle in the back are homotopy pullbacks by construction. The morphism denoted $\theta$ is the one induced from the universal property of the bottom homotopy pullback and is the homotopy fiber of $\theta//G$. That it is indeed the Maurer-Cartan form now follows with the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, and def. 5.2.79. □

**Example 5.2.84.** In view of example 5.2.61, this $G$-equivariance of the Maurer-Cartan form comes down in the model of smooth cohesion and for $G$ an ordinary Lie group to the following traditional formulas, for $g, h$ any to $G$-valued smooth functions:



.

### 5.2.13 Differential cohomology

We discuss an intrinsic realization of *differential cohomology* (see for instance [Bun12]) with coefficients in braided $\infty$-groups in any cohesive $\infty$-topos.

We first give a general discussion in 5.2.13.1 and then consider a special class of cases in 5.2.13.2. Finally we discuss issues of constructing differential moduli objects in 5.2.13.4.

In the case that the homotopy-type is not just braided, hence twice deloopable, but is in fact stable (a spectrum object), then there is a strengthening of the theory of differential cohomology to differential stable cohomology, which enjoys very good properties. This we come to below in the discussion of the models of Goodwillie-tangent cohesion 6.1.3.

Notice that for many of the applications in **??** it is crucial to have available also generally the non-stable differential cohomology discussed here. This is necessary specifically for the discussion of Wess-Zumino-Witten-type prequantum field theory in 7.3.

#### 5.2.13.1 General

**Definition 5.2.85.** For $\mathbb{G}$ a braided $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, write

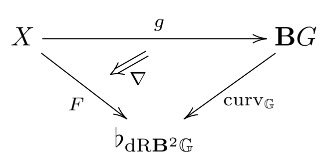
$$\mathrm{curv}_{\mathbb{G}} := \theta_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} : \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$$

for the Maurer-Cartan form, def. 5.2.79, on its delooping $\infty$-group $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$. We call this the *universal curvature characteristic* of $\mathbb{G}$.

We say that the cohomology in the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}}$ with coefficients in $\mathrm{curv}_{\mathbb{G}}$ is the *differential cohomology* with coefficients in $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$.

**Remark 5.2.86.** A domain object $(X, F) \in \mathbf{H}_{/\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}}$ is an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ equipped with a de Rham cocycle $F : X \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$, to be thought of as a prescribed *curvature differential form*.

A differential cocycle $\nabla \in \mathbf{H}_{/\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}}((X, F), \mathrm{curv}_G)$ on such a pair is a diagram of the form

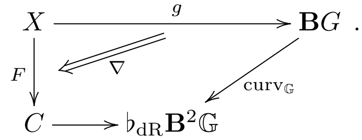



in $\mathbf{H}$. This is

1. a cocycle $g : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$ in $\mathbf{H}$ for a $\mathbb{G}$-principal $\infty$-bundle over $X$;
2. a choice of equivalence
$$g^*\mathrm{curv}_{\mathbb{G}} \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\nabla} F$$
between the pullback of the universal $\mathbb{G}$-curvature characteristic, def. 5.2.85 and the prescribed curvature differential form.

This choice of equivalence is to be interpreted as a *connection* on the $\mathbb{G}$-principal bundle modulated by $g$.

Often one is of interested in demanding that the curvature $F : X \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$ in the above factors through a prescribed morphism $C \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$, notably through an inclusion of differential forms as in def. 5.2.70. This means that one is interested in cocycles as in remark 5.2.86 above which factor as diagrams



This in turn means equivalently that the cocycle is given by a morphism $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ into the $\infty$-pullback $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq C \times_{\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}} \mathbf{B}G$. This object we may then regard as a *moduli stack for differential cohomology* with coefficients in $A$ and curvatures in $C$.

This we now discuss in 5.2.13.2 below.

**5.2.13.2 Global curvature forms** We consider the subcase of the general notion of differential cohomology as in 5.2.13.1 above, where now the curvatures are required to be globally defined differential forms according to def. 5.2.70. The resulting definition essentially reproduces that of differential cohomology in terms of homotopy pullbacks as discussed in [HoSi05], but is formulated entirely internal to a cohesive $\infty$-topos. Therefore it refines the construction of [HoSi05] in two ways[21]:

1. The coefficient object may be a cohesive $\infty$-groupoid, where in [HoSi05] it is just a topological space, hence, as explained below in 6.2, a *discrete* $\infty$-groupoid.
2. The domain object may also be a cohesive $\infty$-groupoid, where in [HoSi05] it is restricted to be a manifold. In particular it can be an orbifold, or itself a moduli stack.

We give below an intrinsic characterization of domain objects that are manifolds in the sense of def. 5.2.56. On more general objects our definition subsumes also a notion of *equivariant* differential cohomology.

**Definition 5.2.87.** For $\mathbb{G}$ a braided $\infty$-group in $\mathbf{H}$, def. 5.1.156, the *moduli of closed 2-forms* with values in $\mathbb{G}$ is a morphism

$$\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$$

characterized as follows:

1. $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \in \mathbf{H}$ is 0-truncated;
2. for every $\mathbb{A}^1$-manifold $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$, def. 5.1.156, we have that

   $$[\Sigma,\iota] : \; [\Sigma, \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})] \longrightarrow [\Sigma, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}]$$

   is an epimorphism
3. $\iota$ is universal with the above two properties.

A morphism $\omega X : \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})$ we call a *closed* Lie($\mathbb{G}$)*-valued differential 2-form* on $X$, or a *pre-symplectic structure* on $X$, with values in Lie($\mathbb{G}$).

**Definition 5.2.88.** For $\mathbb{G}$ a braided $\infty$-group, we write

$$\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} := \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \underset{\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}}{\times} \Omega^2(-,\mathbb{G})$$

for the $\infty$-fiber product in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{F_{(-)}} & \Omega^2(-,\mathbb{G}) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle U} & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathbb{G}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} \end{array} .$$

We say that

1. $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the *moduli object* for *differential cocycles with coefficients in* $\mathbb{G}$ or equivalently for $\mathbb{G}$*-principal connections*;

[21] After we had proposed this refinement, in [Ho11] it says that this is the context to which the article [HoSi05] was intended to be refined.

2. For $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ we say that

   (a) $F_\nabla : X \to \Omega^2(-, \mathbb{G})$ is the *curvature form* of $\nabla$

   (b) that $U(\nabla) : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$ is (the morphism modulation) the *underlying* $\mathbb{G}$-principal bundle of $\nabla$.

**Proposition 5.2.89.** *For $\mathbb{G} \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ a braided $\infty$-group, the loop space object, def. 5.1.148, of $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is equivalent to the flat coefficient object $\flat G$*

$$\Omega \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq \flat \mathbb{G}\,.$$

Proof. Using that $\Omega_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, \mathbb{G})$ is 0-truncated by definition, using that $\flat$ is right adjoint and hence commutes with $\infty$-pullbacks and repeatedly using the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, we find a pasting diagram of $\infty$-pullbacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\flat\mathbb{G} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{G} & \longrightarrow & * & & \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
* & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & \longrightarrow & \flat\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
* & \longrightarrow & \cdot & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \Omega_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}
\end{array}\,.$$

□

**5.2.13.3 Ordinary differential cohomology** We now spell out the constructions of 5.2.13.2 in more detail for the special case that $\mathbb{G}$ is an Eilenberg-MacLane object, hence for the case there is a 0-truncated abelian group object $A \in \mathrm{Grp}(\tau_{\leq 0}\mathbf{H}) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that

$$\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \simeq \mathbf{B}^n A\,.$$

This is the case of *ordinary differential cohomology* that refines what the *ordinary cohomology* with coefficients in $A$, according to remark 5.1.175. The explicit realization of this construction in smooth cohesion is discussed below in 6.4.16.

By the discussion in 5.1.9 we have for all $n \in \mathbf{N}$ the corresponding Eilenberg-MacLane object $\mathbf{B}^n A$. By the discussion in 5.1.11 this classifies $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}A$-principal $\infty$-bundles in that for any $X \in \mathbf{H}$ we have an equivalence of $n$-groupoids

$$\mathbf{B}^{n-1}A\mathrm{Bund}(X) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$$

whose objects are $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}A$-principal $\infty$-bundles on $X$, whose morphisms are gauge transformations between these, and so on. The following definition refines this by equipping these $\infty$-bundles with the structure of a *connection*.

Let $\mathbb{A}^1 \in \mathbf{H}$ be a line object *exhibiting the cohesion* of $\mathbf{H}$ in the sense of def. 5.2.48. Let then furthermore for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$

$$\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, A) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n A$$

be a choice of differential form objects, according to def. 5.2.70.

**Definition 5.2.90.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ any object and $n \geq 1$ write

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) := \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \coprod_{\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)} H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)$$

for the cocycle $\infty$-groupoid of *twisted cohomology*, 5.1.13, of $X$ with coefficients in $A$ relative to the canonical curvature characteristic morphism $\mathrm{curv} : \mathbf{B}^n A \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A$ (5.2.12). By prop. 5.1.256 this is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \xrightarrow{[F]} & H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A) \\ \downarrow^{c} & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_*} & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A) \end{array},$$

where the right vertical morphism $\pi_0 \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A) \to \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A)$ is the unique, up to equivalence, effective epimorphism out of a 0-truncated object: a choice of cocycle representative in each cohomology class, equivalently a choice of point in every connected component.

We call

$$H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$$

the degree-$n$ *differential cohomology* of $X$ with coefficient in $A$.

For $\nabla \in \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$ a cocycle, we call

- $[c(\nabla)] \in H^n(X, A)$ the *characteristic class* of the *underlying* $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}A$*-principal* $\infty$*-bundle*;
- $[F](\nabla) \in H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)$ the *curvature* class of $c$ (this is the *twist*).

We also say that $\nabla$ is an $\infty$*-connection* on the principal $\infty$-bundle $\eta(\nabla)$.

**Observation 5.2.91.** The differential cohomology $H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A)$ does not depend on the choice of morphism $H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A) \to \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A)$ (as long as it is an isomorphism on $\pi_0$, as required). In fact, for different choices the corresponding cocycle $\infty$-groupoids $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$ are equivalent.

Proof. The set

$$H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A) = \coprod_{H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)} *$$

is, as a 0-truncated $\infty$-groupoid, an $\infty$-coproduct of the terminal object $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. By universal colimits in this $\infty$-topos we have that $\infty$-colimits are preserved by $\infty$-pullbacks, so that $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$ is the coproduct

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \simeq \coprod_{H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)} \left( \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \underset{\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}} \times (X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A)}{*} \right)$$

of the homotopy fibers of $\mathrm{curv}_*$ over each of the chosen points $* \to \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A)$. These homotopy fibers only depend, up to equivalence, on the connected component over which they are taken. □

**Proposition 5.2.92.** *When restricted to vanishing curvature, differential cohomology coincides with flat differential cohomology, 5.2.6,*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A)|_{[F]=0} \simeq H_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) .$$

*Moreover this is true at the level of cocycle* $\infty$*-groupoids*

$$\left( \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \underset{H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)}{\times} \{[F] = 0\} \right) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) ,$$

*hence there is a canonical embedding by a full and faithful morphism*

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$$

Proof. By the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks, prop. 5.1.2, the claim is equivalently that we have a pasting of $\infty$-pullback diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{[F]=0} \\ \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \xrightarrow{[F]} & H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A) \\ \downarrow^{\eta} & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_*} & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A) \end{array} .$$

By definition of flat cohomology, def. 5.2.26 and of intrinsic de Rham cohomology, def. 5.2.65, in $\mathbf{H}$, the outer rectangle is

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}(X, \flat \mathbf{B}^n A) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_*} & \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A) \end{array} .$$

Since the hom-functor $\mathbf{H}(X, -)$ preserves $\infty$-limits this is a pullback if

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \flat \mathbf{B}^n A & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}^n A & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A \end{array}$$

is. Indeed, this is one step in the fiber sequence

$$\cdots \to \flat \mathbf{B}^n A \to \mathbf{B}^n A \stackrel{\mathrm{curv}}{\to} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A \to \flat \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A \to \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A$$

that defines curv (using that $\flat$ preserves limits and hence looping and delooping).

Finally, $* \xrightarrow{[F]=0} H^{n-1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)$ is, trivially, a monomorphism of sets, hence a full and faithfull morphism of $\infty$-groupoids, and since these are stable under $\infty$-pullback, it follows that the canonical inclusion of flat $\infty$-connections into all $\infty$-connections is also full and faithful. □

The following establishes the characteristic short exact sequences that characterizes intrinsic differential cohomology as an extension of curvature forms by flat $\infty$-bundles and of bare $\infty$-bundles by connection forms.

**Proposition 5.2.93.** *Let* $\mathrm{im} F \subset H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)$ *be the image of the curvatures. Then the differential cohomology group* $H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A)$ *fits into a short exact sequence*

$$0 \to H^n_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A) \to H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A) \to \mathrm{im} F \to 0$$

Proof. Form the long exact sequence in homotopy groups of the fiber sequence

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \to \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \stackrel{[F]}{\to} H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)$$

of prop. 5.2.92 and use that $H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)$ is, as a set – a homotopy 0-type – to get the short exact sequence on the bottom of this diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \pi_1(H_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)) & \longrightarrow & \pi_0(\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)) & \longrightarrow & \pi_0(\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)) & \xrightarrow{[F]} & \pi_0(H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)) \\ \| & & \| & & \| & & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & H^n_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A) & \longrightarrow & H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{im}[F] \end{array} .$$

□

**Proposition 5.2.94.** *The differential cohomology group $H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A)$ fits into a short exact sequence of abelian groups*

$$0 \to H^n_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)/H^{n-1}(X, A) \to H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A) \stackrel{c}{\to} H^n(X, A) \to 0\,.$$

Proof. We claim that for all $n \geq 1$ we have a fiber sequence

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n-1}A) \to \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \to \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$$

in $\infty$Grpd. This implies the short exact sequence using that by construction the last morphism is surjective on connected components (because in the defining $\infty$-pullback for $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}$ the right vertical morphism is by assumption surjective on connected components).

To see that we do have the fiber sequence as claimed, consider the pasting composite of $\infty$-pullbacks

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n-1}A) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \longrightarrow & H_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1}A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1}A) \end{array}\,.$$

The square on the right is a pullback by def. 5.2.90. Since also the square on the left is assumed to be an $\infty$-pullback it follows by the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks, prop. 5.1.2, that the top left object is the $\infty$-pullback of the total rectangle diagram. That total diagram is

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega\mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A) & \longrightarrow & H(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A) \end{array}\,,$$

because, as before, this $\infty$-pullback is the coproduct of the homotopy fibers, and they are empty over the connected components not in the image of the bottom morphism and are the loop space object over the single connected component that is in the image.

Finally using that

$$\Omega\mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \Omega\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A)$$

and

$$\Omega\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A \simeq \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\Omega\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A$$

since both $\mathbf{H}(X, -)$ as well as $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}$ preserve $\infty$-limits and hence formation of loop space objects, the claim follows. □

Often it is desireable to restrict attention to differential cohomology over domains on which the twisting cocycles can be chosen functorially. This we consider now.

**Definition 5.2.95.** For any $n \in \mathbb{N}$ write $\mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}^n A & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$.

For $X$ an $A$-dR-projective object we write

$$H^n_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}})$$

for the cohomology group on $X$ with coefficients in $\mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

The objects $\mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}}$ represent differential cohomology in the following sense.

**Observation 5.2.96.** For every $A$-dR-projective object $X$ there is a full and faithful morphism

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}}) ,$$

hence in particular an inclusion

$$H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A) \hookrightarrow H^n_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, A) .$$

Proof. Since $\Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X, A) \to H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A)$ is a surjection by definition, there exists a factorization

$$H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A) \hookrightarrow \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X, A) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A)$$

of the canonical effective epimorphism (well defined up to homotopy), where the first morphism is an injection of sets, hence a monomorphism of $\infty$-groupoids. Since these are stable under $\infty$-pullback, it follows that also the top left morphism in the pasting diagram of $\infty$-pullbacks

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \longrightarrow & H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X, A) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A)
\end{array}$$

is a monomorphism.

Notice that here the bottom square is indeed an $\infty$-pullback, by def. 5.2.95 combined with the fact that the hom-functor $\mathbf{H}(X, -) : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ preserves $\infty$-pullbacks, and that with the top square defined to be an $\infty$-pullback the total outer rectangle is an $\infty$-pullback by prop. 5.1.2. This identifies the top left object as $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$ by def. 5.2.90. □

The reason that prop. 5.2.96 gives in inclusion is that $H^n_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, A)$ contains connections for all possible curvature forms, while $H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, A)$ contains only connections for one curvature representative in each de Rham cohomology class. This is made precise by the following refinement of the exact sequences from prop. 5.2.93 and prop. 5.2.94.

**Definition 5.2.97.** Write

$$\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(-, A) \hookrightarrow \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, A)$$

for the image factorization of the canonical morphism $\mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, A)$ from def. 5.2.95.

**Proposition 5.2.98.** *For $X$ an $A$-dR-projective object we have a short exact sequence of groups*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A) \longrightarrow H^n_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, A) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(X, A) \; .$$

Proof. As in the proof of prop. 5.2.92 we have a pasting diagram of $\infty$-pullbacks

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
* & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \flat \mathbf{B}^n A) & \longrightarrow & * & & \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle 0} & & \\
* & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(X, A) & \hookrightarrow & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X, A) \\
 & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
 & & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & & \xrightarrow{\qquad \mathrm{curv} \qquad} & & \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A)
\end{array} .$$

After passing to connected components, this implies the claim. □

Details on how traditional ordinary differential cohomology is recovered by implementing the above in the context of smooth cohesion are discussed in 6.4.16.

**5.2.13.4 Differential moduli** We discuss issues related to the formulation of *moduli objects* in a cohesive $\infty$-topos for differential cocycles as discussed above, over a fixed base object.

To motivate this consider the following. Given a coefficient object $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \in \mathbf{H}$ for differential cohomology as discussed above, and given any object $X \in \mathbf{H}$, the mapping space object $[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}] \in \mathbf{H}$ is a kind of moduli object for $\mathbb{G}$-differential cocycles on $X$, in that its global points are precisely such cocycles. However, for any $U \in \mathbf{H}$ a $U$-plot of $[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{conn}]$ may be more general than just a cohesively parameterized $U$-collection of such cocycles on $X$, because it is actually a differential cocycle on $U \times X$ and hence may contain nontrivial differential/connection data along $U$, not just along $X$.

In some applications this behaviour of $[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ is exactly what is needed. This is notably the case for the construction of extended Chern-Simons action functionals in all codimensions, discussed below in 5.2.14. But in other applications, such as the construction of the extended phase spaces of Chern-Simons functionals, one rather needs to have an object of genuine *differential moduli*, which is such that its $U$-plots are genuine $U$-parameterized collections of differential cocycles (and their gauge transformations) just on $X$. This issue is discussed in more detail with illustrative examples in the model of smooth cohesion below in 6.4.16.3.

Here we discuss how such differential moduli objects are obtained general abstractly in a cohesive $\infty$-topos from a *degreewise concretification* of the mapping space objects $[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ in the sense of 5.2.2.

**Definition 5.2.99.** Let $\mathbb{G} \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ be a braided $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, which is exactly $n-1$-truncated, def. 5.1.47. A $\mathbb{G}$-*Hodge filtration* is a choice of filtration of $\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\cdots \to & F^{p+1}\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} & \longrightarrow & F^{p}\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} & \longrightarrow & F^{p-1}\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} & \to \cdots \\
& \searrow & & \downarrow & & \swarrow & \\
& & & \flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} & & &
\end{array}
$$

such that

1. each $F^p\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$ is connected (has an essentially unique point);
2. the first stage $F^1\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} \longrightarrow F^0\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$ is equivalent to the canonical morphism $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \longrightarrow \flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$ from def. 5.2.59.

We write

$$\mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, \mathbb{G}) := F^{n+1}\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$$

for the object that is to be thought of as the moduli of "closed differential 2-forms" with coefficients in $\mathbb{G}$, with respect to this choice of Hodge filtation.

**Definition 5.2.100.** Let $\mathbb{G} \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ be a braided $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, which is exactly $n-1$-truncated, def. 5.1.47, and let $F^\bullet\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$ be a choice of Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.99. Then for $p \leq n+1 \in \mathbb{N}$ write $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^p}$ for the $\infty$-pullback in

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^p} & \longrightarrow & F^{p+1}\flat\mathbb{B}^2\mathbb{G} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & \xrightarrow{\theta_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}
\end{array}
$$

**Definition 5.2.101.** With $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ as in def. 5.2.100, then a morphism $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ we call a $\mathbb{G}$-*principal connection* on the underlying $\mathbb{G}$-principal bundle modulated, via theorem 5.1.207, by the composite $X \xrightarrow{\nabla} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$. A morphism to an intermediate stage of the filtration $X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^k}$ we also call a $\mathbb{G}$-*principal pseudo-connection.*

**Remark 5.2.102.** Hence we have a tower of homotopy pullbacks

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\flat \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & \longrightarrow & * & & \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & F^{n+1}\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} & \simeq & \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \\
\vdots & & \vdots & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^2} & \longrightarrow & F^3\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} & & \downarrow \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^1} & \longrightarrow & F^2\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} & & \downarrow \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & \xrightarrow{\theta_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}}} & F^1\flat\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} & \simeq & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}
\end{array}$$

providing a cofiltration on $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

Of particular interest is the following special case.

**Definition 5.2.103.** Given a 0-truncated object $A \in \mathbf{H}$, def. 5.1.47, equipped with abelian group structure, hence given canonical deloopings $\mathbf{B}^k A$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, then we say an *abelian Hodge filtration* for the group object $\mathbb{G} := \mathbf{B}^n A$ is a compatible system of Hodge filtrations, def. 5.2.99, on all the $\mathbf{B}^k A$ for $0 \leq k \leq n$ such that there are natural equivalences

$$\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^k} \simeq \mathbf{B}^{n-k}(\mathbf{B}((\mathbf{B}^{k-1}A)_{\mathrm{conn}}))\,.$$

where we set

$$\mathbf{B}((\mathbf{B}^{-1}A)_{\mathrm{conn}}) := A$$

**Remark 5.2.104.** For $A$ a 0-truncated abelian group and $\mathbb{G} \simeq \mathbf{B}A$, the objects $\mathbf{B}^2 A_{\mathrm{conn}^1}$ of def. 5.2.100 modulate what in the literature is often known as a *bundle gerbe with connective data but without curving.* In this context then the structures modulated by $\mathbf{B}^2_{\mathrm{conn}^2} \simeq \mathbf{B}^2 A_{\mathrm{conn}}$ would be called *bundles gerbes with connective data and with curving.* We discuss this in more detail in 6.4.16 below.

**Definition 5.2.105.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 1$, $\mathbb{G} \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ a braided $\infty$-group which is precisely $(n-1)$-truncated and given a choice of $\mathbb{G}$-Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.99, then the *moduli of $\mathbb{G}$-principal connections* on $X$ is the concretification, def. 5.2.8, of $[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}]$, def. 5.2.100, with respect to the induced co-filtration of remark 5.2.102;

$$\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X) := \mathrm{Conc}([X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^\bullet}])\,.$$

The canonical morphism

$$[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}] \longrightarrow \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)$$

we call *differential concretification.*

**Remark 5.2.106.** Unwinding the definitions, def. 5.2.105 describes the iterated $\infty$-fiber product

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X) &:= \mathrm{Conc}([X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^\bullet}]) \\ &= \sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^n}] \underset{\sharp_1[X,\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-1}}]}{\times} \sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-1}}] \underset{\sharp_2[X,\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-2}}]}{\times} \cdots \underset{\sharp_n[X,\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^0}]}{\times} [X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^0}],\end{aligned}$$

of the morphisms

$$\sharp_k[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-k+1}}] \longrightarrow \sharp_k[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-k}}]$$

which are the image under $\sharp_k$, def. 5.2.6, of the image under the internal hom $[X, -]$ of the canonical projections of remark 5.2.102, and of the morphisms

$$\sharp_{k+1}[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-k}}] \longrightarrow \sharp_k[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-k}}]$$

of def. 5.2.6. By the universal property of the $\infty$-pullback, the commuting naturality diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \sharp_{k_2}[X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}^{n_2}}] & \longrightarrow & \sharp_{k_2}[X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}^{n_1}}] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \sharp_{k_1}[X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}^{n_2}}] & \longrightarrow & \sharp_{k_1}[X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}^{n_1}}] \end{array}$$

induce the differential concretification map

$$\mathrm{conc} : [X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \longrightarrow G\mathbf{Conn}(X)$$

**Proposition 5.2.107.** *The canonical* $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$*-action on* $[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ *of example 5.1.280 passes to an action on the differential moduli* $\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)$*, def. 5.2.105, such that the differential concretification map* $[X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Conn}(X)] \xrightarrow{\mathrm{conc}} \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)$ *carries the structure of a homomorphism of* $\infty$*-actions, i.e., by prop. 5.1.267, it is the homotopy fiber of a diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}]//\mathbf{Aut}(X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{conc}//\mathbf{Aut}(X)} & \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)//\mathbf{Aut}(X) \\ & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & \mathbf{BAut}(X) & \end{array}$$

Proof. By using prop. 5.1.282 in prop. 5.2.11. □

We need the analogous construction also for the $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^k}$ regarded as coefficient objects themselves. The following straightforwardly generalizes def. 5.2.105 from $k = n$ to arbitrary $k \leq n$.

**Definition 5.2.108.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 1$, $0 \leq k \leq n$, $\mathbb{G} \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ a braided $\infty$-group which is precisely $(n-1)$-truncated, then the *moduli of* $\mathbb{G}$*-principal* $k$*-connections* on $X$ is the iterated $\infty$-fiber product

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}_k(X) \\ &:= \sharp_{n-k+1}[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^k}] \underset{\sharp_{n-k+1}[X,\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^{k-1}}]}{\times} \sharp_{n-k+2}[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^{k-1}}] \underset{\sharp_{n-k+2}[X,\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^{k-2}}]}{\times} \cdots \underset{\sharp_n[X,\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^0}]}{\times} [X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}^0}].\end{aligned}$$

**Remark 5.2.109.** The projection maps out of the iterated $\infty$-pullbacks induce a canonical sequence of projections

$$\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X) \simeq \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}_n(X) \longrightarrow \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}_{n-1}(X) \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}_1(X) \longrightarrow \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}_0(X) \simeq \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \ .$$

We now turn to defining moduli for *flat* differential cocycles.

**Definition 5.2.110.** For $A$ a 0-truncated abelian group and $\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A$ equipped with an abelian Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.103, we call

$$(\mathbf{B}^n A)\mathbf{FlatConn}(X) := \sharp[X, \flat\mathbf{B}^n A] \underset{\sharp[X,\mathbf{B}^n A_{\mathrm{conn}}]}{\times} (\mathbf{B}^n A)\mathbf{Conn}(X)$$

the *moduli object for flat* $\mathbb{G}$*-connections on* $X$.

**Proposition 5.2.111.** *For* $A$ *a 0-truncated abelian group and* $\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A$ *equipped with an abelian Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.103, we have for* $n \geq 1$ *a natural equivalence*

$$\Omega_0\left((\mathbf{B}^n A)\,\mathbf{Conn}\,(X)\right) \simeq (\mathbf{B}^{n-1})\mathbf{FlatConn}\,(X)$$

*between the looping of the moduli of* $(\mathbf{B}^n)$*-principal connections, def. 5.2.105, and that of flat* $(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}A)$*-connections, def. 5.2.110.*

*For* $n = 0$*, if* $\mathbf{H}$ *has a set of generators being concrete objects (in particular if it has an* $\infty$*-cohesive site of definition, def. 4.1.31)*

$$\Omega_0\left(A\mathbf{Conn}(X)\right) \simeq A\,.$$

Proof. Since forming loops is an $\infty$-pullback operation, it commutes with the iterated $\infty$-fiber product. Moreover, by prop. 5.1.77 it passes through the $\sharp_k$, while lowering their degree by one. Finally by prop. 5.2.89 we have

$$\Omega_0\left(\mathbf{B}^2 G_{\mathrm{conn}}\right) \simeq \flat\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}\,.$$

This gives the first claim. For the second, observe that with the same reasoning we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\Omega\left(\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)\right) &\simeq \Omega\left(\sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}] \underset{\sharp_1[X,\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}]}{\times} [X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}]\right) \\ &\simeq \sharp[X, \flat\mathbb{G}] \underset{\sharp[X,\mathbb{G}]}{\times} [X, \mathbb{G}]\end{aligned}\,.$$

Hence for any concrete $U \in \mathbf{H}$ we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{H}(U, \Omega(\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X))) &\simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Gamma(U), \mathbf{H}(X, \flat\mathbb{G})) \underset{\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Gamma(U),\mathbf{H}(X,\mathbb{G}))}{\times} \mathbf{H}(U \times X, \mathbb{G}) \\ &\simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Gamma(U) \times \Pi(X), \Gamma(\mathbb{G})) \underset{\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Gamma(U),\mathbf{H}(X,\mathbb{G}))}{\times} \mathbf{H}(U \times X, \mathbb{G}) \\ &\simeq \mathrm{Set}(\tau_0\Gamma(U), \Gamma(\mathbb{G})) \underset{\mathrm{Set}(\tau_0\Gamma(U),\mathbf{H}(X,\mathbb{G}))}{\times} \mathbf{H}(U \times X, \mathbb{G}) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(U, \mathbb{G})\end{aligned}\,.$$

Here we used the defining adjunctions of cohesion and that $\mathbb{G}$ is 0-truncated by assumption, so that $\mathbf{H}(-, \mathbb{G})$ takes values in sets. In the last step we used that $U$ is concrete so that maps out of it are determined by their value on all global points of $U$. So the second but last row says in words "those maps out of $U \times X$ which for every point of $U$ are independent of $X$" and the last equivalence identifies that with the maps out of just $U$. Since these equivalences are all natural in $U$ the claim follows by the assumption that the $U$s range over a set of generators (hence with the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma, prop. 2.1.16, if the $U$s range over the objects of a site of definition). □

### 5.2.14 Chern-Weil homomorphism and Chern-Simons Lagrangian

We discuss an intrinsic realization in cohesive homotopy theory of the Chern-Weil homomorphism [GHV73] and of its differential refinement, which we identify with local Chern-Simons Lagrangians.

Throughout, let $\mathbb{G}$ be a braided cohesive $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, equipped with a Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.99, and write $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the corresponding differential coefficient object, def. 5.2.100.

**Definition 5.2.112.** For $G$ a cohesive $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.150 and

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$$

a representative of a characteristic class $[\mathbf{c}] \in H^1(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbb{G})$ we say that its composite with the universal curvature class of def. 5.2.85,

$$\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{dR}} : \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathbb{G}}} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$$

represents the *curvature characteristic class* $[\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{dR}}] \in H^2_{\mathrm{dR}}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbb{G})$ in de Rham cohomology, def. 5.2.59. The induced map on cohomology

$$(\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{dR}})_* : H^1(-, G) \longrightarrow H^2_{\mathrm{dR}}(-, \mathbb{G})$$

we call the (unrefined) *Chern-Weil homomorphism* induced by $\mathbf{c}$.

Given an unrefined Chern-Weil homomorphism as in def. 5.2.112, the natural question to ask is how it lifts through the chosen Hodge filtration on its coefficients, def. 5.2.99, hence, by the universal property of the homotopy pullback in def. 5.2.100, how it lifts from taking values in de Rham cohomology to taking values in differential cohomology lifting the de Rham cohomology.

**Definition 5.2.113.** Let $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$ be a characteristic map. Then we write $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for an object that fits into a factorization

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\flat\mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\flat\mathbf{c}} & \flat\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} & \overset{\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}}{\dashrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}
\end{array}$$

of the naturality diagram of the $\flat$-counit.

The induced morphism on cohomology

$$H^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(-, G) := \pi_0\mathbf{H}(-, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \longrightarrow \pi_0\mathbf{H}(-, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}) = H^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(-, \mathbb{G})$$

we call the corresponding *differentially refined Chern-Weil homomorphism.*

**Remark 5.2.114.** The object $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ here is far from being uniquely determined by one such diagram. Typically one will require it to lift a whole tower of characteristic classes- But for the moment we find it convenient not to indicate this in the notation but have it be implied by the context.

**Remark 5.2.115.** According to prop. 5.1.267 the morphism $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}G$ exhibits a $G$-$\infty$-action on its homotopy fiber. We typically write $\Omega(-, \mathfrak{g})$ for this homotopy fiber

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\Omega(-, \mathfrak{g}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
 & & \downarrow \\
 & & \mathbf{B}G
\end{array}$$

and hence have that

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq \Omega(-, \mathfrak{g})//G$$

is the homotopy quotient of $\Omega(-, \mathfrak{g})$ by the $\infty$-action of $G$ "by gauge transformations".

Combining the refined $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism, def. 5.2.113, with the higher holonomy, 5.2.16, of the resulting $\infty$-connections produces a notion of higher *Chern-Simons functionals* internal to any cohesive $\infty$-topos. For a review of standard Chern-Simons functionals see [Fr95].

**Definition 5.2.116.** Let $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$ be of cohomological dimension $\dim\Sigma = n \in \mathbb{N}$ and let $\mathbf{c} : X \to \mathbf{B}^n A$ a representative of a characteristic class $[\mathbf{c}] \in H^n(X, A)$ for some object $X$. We say that the composite

$$\exp(S_{\mathbf{c}}(-)) : \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, X) \stackrel{\hat{\mathbf{c}}}{\to} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n A) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n A) \stackrel{\int_\Sigma}{\to} \tau_{\leq 0}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi(\Sigma), \Pi\mathbf{B}^n A)$$

is the $\infty$-*Chern-Simons functional* induced by $\mathbf{c}$ on $\Sigma$.

Here $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$ denotes the refined Chern-Weil homomorphism, 5.2.14, induced by $\mathbf{c}$, and $\int_\Sigma$ is the holonomy over $\Sigma$, 5.2.16, of the resulting $n$-bundle with connection.

**Remark 5.2.117.** In the language of $\sigma$-model quantum field theory the ingredients of this definition have the following interpretation

- $\Sigma$ is the *worldvolume of a fundamental* $(\dim\Sigma - 1)$*-brane* ;
- $X$ is the *target space*;
- $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$ is the *background gauge field* on $X$;
- the external hom $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma, X)$ is the *space of worldvolume field configurations* $\phi : \Sigma \to X$ or *trajectories* of the brane in $X$;
- $\exp(S_{\mathbf{c}}(\phi)) = \int_\Sigma \phi^* \hat{\mathbf{c}}$ is the value of the action functional on the field configuration $\phi$.

Traditionally, $\sigma$-models have been considered for $X$ an ordinary (Riemannian) manifold, or at most an orbifold, see for instance [DeMo99]. The observation that it makes sense to allow target objects $X$ to be more generally a gerbe, 5.1.19, is explored in [PaSh05] [HeSh10]. Here we see that once we pass to fully general (higher) stacks, then also all (higher) gauge theories are subsumed as $\sigma$-models.

For if there is an $\infty$-group $G$ such that the target space object $X$ is the moduli $\infty$-stack of $G$-$\infty$-connections, def. 5.2.113, $X \simeq \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$, then a "trajectory" $\Sigma \to X \simeq \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is in fact a $G$-gauge field on $\Sigma$. Hence in the context of $\infty$-stacks, the notions of gauge theories and of $\sigma$-models unify.

More in detail, assume that $\mathbf{H}$ has a canonical line object $\mathbb{A}^1$ and a natural numbers object $\mathbb{Z}$. Then the action functional $\exp(iS(-))$ may lift to the internal hom with respect to the canonical cartesian closed monoidal structure on any $\infty$-topos to a morphism of the form

$$\exp(iS_{\mathbf{c}}(-)) : [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbf{B}^{n-\dim\Sigma}\mathbb{A}^1/\mathbb{Z}\,.$$

We call the internal hom $[\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ the *moduli* $\infty$*-stack* of field configurations on $\Sigma$ of the $\infty$-*Chern-Simons theory* defined by $\mathbf{c}$ and $\exp(iS_{\mathbf{c}}(-))$ the action functional in codimension $(n - \dim\Sigma)$ defined on it.

A list of examples of Chern-Simons action functionals defined on moduli stacks obtained this way is given in 6.4.19.

We discuss the differential refinement of *twisted cohomology*, def. 5.1.13. Following [SSS09c] we speak of *twisted differential* $\mathbf{c}$*-structures*.

**Definition 5.2.118.** For $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n A$ a characteristic map in a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, define for any $X \in \mathbf{H}$ the $\infty$-groupoid $\mathbf{c}\mathrm{Struc}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X)$ to be the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{c}\mathrm{Struc}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tw}} & H^n(X, A) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \end{array} ,$$

where the vertical morphism on the right is the essentially unique effective epimorphism that picks on point in every connected component.

Let now $\mathbf{H}$ be a cohesive $\infty$-topos that canonically contains the circle group $A = U(1)$, such as Smooth$\infty$Grpd and its variants. Then by 6.4.16 the intrinsic differential cohomology with $U(1)$-coefficients reproduces traditional ordinary differential cohomology and by 6.4.17 we have models for the $\infty$-connection coefficients $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$. Using this we consider the differential refinement of def. 5.2.118 as follows.

**Definition 5.2.119.** For $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ a characteristic map as above, and for $\hat{\mathbf{c}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ a differential refinement, we write $\hat{\mathbf{c}}\mathrm{Struc}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X)$ for the corresponding twisted cohomology, def. 5.1.260,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{\mathbf{c}}\mathrm{Struc}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tw}} & H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, U(1)) \\ \downarrow^{\chi} & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{c}}} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \end{array} ,$$

We say $\hat{\mathbf{c}}\mathrm{Struc}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X)$ is the $\infty$-groupoid of *twisted differential* $\mathbf{c}$*-structures* on $X$.

### 5.2.15 Wess-Zumino-Witten terms

We discuss axiomatization in cohesive homotopy theory of local Lagrangians of Wess-Zumino-Witten type. For a review of traditional WZW functionals see for instance [Ga00], for more see below in 7.3.

Throughout, let $\mathbb{G}$ be a sylleptic cohesive $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, equipped with a Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.99, and write $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the corresponding differential coefficient object, def. 5.2.100.

**Definition 5.2.120.** Given a cohesive $\infty$-group $G$ equipped with a cocycle

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$$

then a refinement of the chosen stage $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, \mathbb{G}) \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$ of the Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.99, for $\mathbb{G}$ along this cocycle is a connected object $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, G)$ and completion to a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, G) & \overset{\mu}{\dashrightarrow} & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, \mathbb{G}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{c}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} \end{array} .$$

Write $\tilde{G}$ for the pullback of this refinement to $G$ along the Maurer-Cartan form $\theta_G$, def. 5.2.79,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{G} & \xrightarrow{\theta_{\tilde{G}}} & \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, G) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ G & \xrightarrow{\theta_G} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

**Remark 5.2.121.** For every global point $g_0 : * \to G$, there is an essentially unique lift through the differential refinement $\tilde{G} \to G$ of def. 5.2.120 (by the condition that $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, G)$ be connected, def. 5.2.120).

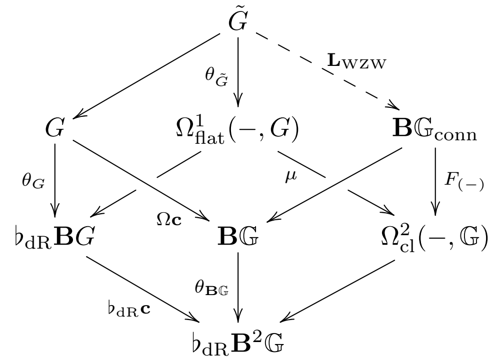
We discuss canonical examples of this construction below in 6.4.20.

**Proposition 5.2.122.** *In the situation of def. 5.2.120 there is is an essentially unique pre-quantization* $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$*, def. 5.2.130, of the closed differential form*

$$\mu(\theta_{\tilde{G}}) : \tilde{G} \xrightarrow{\theta_{\tilde{G}}} \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, G) \xrightarrow{\mu} \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, \mathbb{G}) ,$$

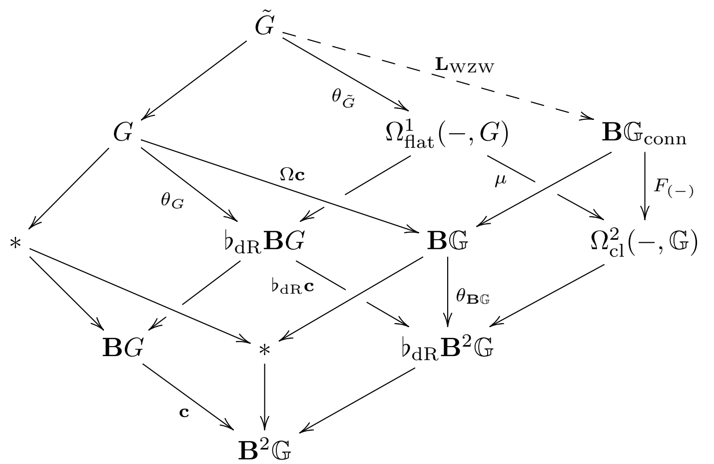
*whose underlying* $\mathbb{G}$*-principal bundle is modulated, via theorem 5.1.207, by the looping* $\Omega\mathbf{c}$*, def. 5.1.148, of the cocycle* $\mathbf{c}$*. This we call the* WZW term *associated with* $\mathbf{c}$ *and* $\mu$*.*

Proof. By the naturality of the Maurer-Cartan form, by construction of $\mu$ and $\theta_{\tilde{G}}$, and by definition of $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ we have the solid part of the following diagram

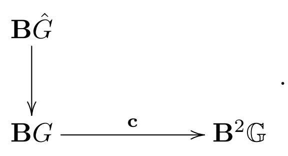



The desired dashed morphism hence exists essentially uniquely by the universal property of the homotopy pullback defining $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$. □

**Remark 5.2.123.** A WZW term according to prop. 5.2.122 is hence a differential refinement of a group cocycle $\mathbf{c}$, compatible with the given differential cohomology refinement of the given coefficients.




By the discussion in 5.1.18 then given any cocycle $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$ one is led to regard its homotopy fiber, which is the delooping of the group extension $\hat{G}$ that it classifies.




Now with a WZW term, prop. 5.2.122, being a kind of differential refinement of the cocycle, we are led to refininging this extension accordingly.

**Definition 5.2.124.** Given a group cocycle $\mathbf{c}_1$, def. 5.1.285 and a further cocycle $\mathbf{c}_2$ on the group extension

$G_2 \to G_1$, def. 5.1.302, that $\mathbf{c}_1$ classifies

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}G_2 & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}_2 \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbf{B}G_1 & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}_1} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}_1 \end{array} .$$

Then a *compatibility* between refinements $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, G_1)$ and $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, G_2)$ of the corresponding Hodge filtrations, according to def. 5.2.120, is the choice of a 0-truncated object $\Omega^1(-, \mathbb{G}_1)$ equipped with a morphism $\Omega^1(-, \mathbb{G}_1) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{d}} \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, \mathbb{G}_1)$ fitting into a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, G_2) & \longrightarrow & \Omega^1(-, \mathbb{G}_1) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{d}} & & \downarrow \\ \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, G_1) & \xrightarrow{\mu_1} & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, \mathbb{G}_1) & \longrightarrow & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}_1 \end{array}$$

such that the left square is a pullback. Write

$$\iota : \Omega^1(-, \mathbb{G}_1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

for the morphism induced by this diagram via the homotopy pullback of def. 5.2.100.

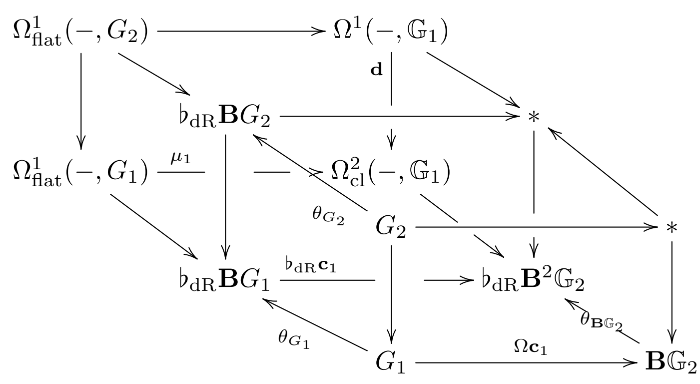
This definition is such as to give:

**Proposition 5.2.125.** *Given compatible differential refinements of Hodge filtrations as in def. 5.2.124, then there is a homotopy pullback diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{G}_2 & \longrightarrow & \Omega^1(-, \mathbb{G}_1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\iota} \\ \tilde{G}_1 & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array}$$

*where the bottom morphism is the WZW term of prop. 5.2.122.*

Proof. The four corners of the diagram are, by def. 5.2.100, def. 5.2.120 and by def. 5.2.124, each the homotopy limit over the four diagonal edges, respectively, of the following cube.




The front and the middle face of this cube are homotopy pullbacks by definition of $\mathbf{B}G_2$ as the homotopy fiber of $\mathbf{c}_1$ and the fact that both $\Omega$ and $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}$ preserve homotopy limits; the rear face is a pullback by def. 5.2.124. Therefore the statement follows by the fact that homotopy limits commute over each other. □

**Example 5.2.126.** A class of examples of WZW terms and compatibilities is obtained from differential Lie integration of $L_\infty$-algebra cocycles below in 6.4.20.

### 5.2.16 Holonomy

The notion of $\infty$-connections in a cohesive $\infty$-topos induces a notion of *higher holonomoy*.

**Definition 5.2.127.** We say an object $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$ has *cohomological dimension* $\leq n \in \mathbb{N}$ if for all 0-truncated abelian group objects $A$ the cohomology of $\Sigma$ with coefficients in $A$, def. 5.1.174, vanishes in degrees greater than $n$

$$H^{\bullet > n}(\Sigma, A) \simeq * \,.$$

We write $\dim(\Sigma)$ be the maximum $n$ for which this is true.

**Remark 5.2.128.** If $\Sigma$ has cohomological dimension $\leq n$ then also its de Rham cohomology, def. 5.2.65, (with coefficients in 0-truncated abelian groups $A$) vanishes in degrees greater than $n$:

$$H^{\bullet > n}_{\mathrm{dR}}(\Sigma, A) \simeq * \,.$$

Proof. Since $\flat$ is a right adjoint it preserves delooping and hence $\flat \mathbf{B}^k A \simeq \mathbf{B}^k \flat A$. It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} H^k_{\mathrm{dR}}(\Sigma, A) &:= \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^k A) \\ &\simeq \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, * \prod_{\mathbf{B}^k A} \mathbf{B}^k \flat A) \\ &\simeq \pi_0 \left( \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, *) \prod_{\mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^k A)} \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^k \flat A) \right) \\ &\simeq \pi_0(*) \end{aligned} \,.$$

□

**Definition 5.2.129.** Let $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$, $n \in \mathbf{N}$ with cohomological dimension $\dim_A(\Sigma) \leq n$. We say that the composite

$$\int_\Sigma : \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n A) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \infty\mathrm{Gprd}(\Pi(\Sigma), \Pi(\mathbf{B}^n A)) \xrightarrow{\tau_{\leq n - \dim(\Sigma)}} \tau_{n - \dim(\Sigma)} \infty\mathrm{Gprd}(\Pi(\Sigma), \Pi(\mathbf{B}^n A))$$

of the adjunction equivalence followed by truncation as indicated, prop. 5.1.49, is the *flat holonomy* operation on flat $\infty$-connections.

More generally, let

- $\nabla \in \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$ be a differential coycle on some $X \in \mathbf{H}$
- $\phi : \Sigma \to X$ a morphism.

Write

$$\phi^* : \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) \to \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n A)$$

(using prop. 5.2.92) for the morphism on $\infty$-pullbacks induced by the morphism of diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A) & \longleftarrow & H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, A) \\ \downarrow^{\phi^*} & & \downarrow^{\phi^*} & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n A) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} A) & \longleftarrow & * \end{array}$$

The *holonomomy* of $\nabla$ over $\sigma$ is the flat holonomy of $\phi^* \nabla$:

$$\int_\phi \nabla := \int_\Sigma \phi^* \nabla \,.$$

### 5.2.17 Prequantum geometry

Traditional *prequantum geometry* (see for instance [EMRV98] for a standard account) is the differential geometry of smooth manifolds which are "twisted" by circle-principal bundles and circle-principal connections – thought of as "prequantum bundles" – or equivalently is the *contact geometry* [Et03] of the total spaces of these bundles thought of as *regular contact manifolds* [BoWa58]. Prequantum geometry studies the automorphisms of prequantum bundles covering diffeomorphisms of the base – the *prequantum operators* – and the action of these on the space of sections of the associated line bundle – the *prequantum states*. This is an intermediate step in the genuine *geometric quantization* of the curvature 2-form of these bundles, which is obtained by dividing the above data in half, important for instance in the *orbit method*. But prequantum geometry is of interest already in its own right. For instance the above automorphism group naturally provides the Lie integration of the *Poisson Lie algebra* of the underlying symplectic manifold. Moreover, it is canonically included into the group of bisections of the Lie integration of the Atiyah Lie algebroid of the given circle bundle.

We now formulate *geometric prequantum theory* internally to any cohesive $\infty$-topos to obtain *higher prequantum geometry*.

This section draws from [FRS13a].

- 5.2.17.1 – Introduction and Survey
- 5.2.17.2 – Prequantization;
- 5.2.17.3 – Symplectomorphism group;
- 5.2.17.4 – Contactomorphism group;
- 5.2.17.5 – Quantomorphism group and Heisenberg group;
- 5.2.17.6 – Courant Lie algebroid;
- 5.2.17.8 – Prequantum states;
- 5.2.17.9 – Prequantum operators.

**5.2.17.1 Introduction and survey** Traditional prequantum geometry is the differential geometry of smooth manifolds which are equipped with a twist in the form of a $U(1)$-principal bundle with a $U(1)$-principal connection. (See section II of [Br93] for a modern account.) In the context of geometric quantization [So97] of symplectic manifolds these arise as *prequantizations* (whence the name): lifts of the symplectic form from de Rham cocycles to differential cohomology. Equivalently, prequantum geometry is the *contact geometry* of the total spaces of these bundles, equipped with their Ehresmann connection 1-form [BoWa58]. Prequantum geometry studies the automorphisms of prequantum bundles covering diffeomorphisms of the base – the prequantum operators or contactomorphisms – and the action of these on the space of sections of the associated line bundle – the prequantum states. This is an intermediate step in the genuine geometric quantization of symplectic manifolds, which is obtained by "dividing the above data in half" by a choice of polarization. While polarizations do play central role in geometric quantum theory, for instance in the orbit method in geometric representation theory [Kir04], to name just one example, geometic prequantum theory is of interest in its own right. For instance the quantomorphism group naturally provides a non-simply connected Lie integration of the Poisson bracket Lie algebra of the underlying symplectic manifold and the pullback of this extension along Hamiltonian actions induces central extensions of infinite-dimensional Lie groups (see for instance [RaSch81, Vi11]). Moreover, the quantomorphism group comes equipped with a canonical injection into the group of bisections of the groupoid which integrates the Atiyah Lie algebroid associated with the given principal bundle (this we discuss below in 5.2.17.6). These are fundamental objects in the study of principal bundles over manifolds.

We observe now that all this has a simple natural reformulation in terms of the maps into the smooth moduli stacks that classify – better: modulate – principal bundles and principal connections. This reformulation exhibits an abstract characterization of prequantum geometry which immediately generalizes to higher geometric contexts richer than traditional differential geometry.

To start with, if we write $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$ for the sheaf of smooth closed differential 2-forms (on the site of all smooth manifolds), then by the Yoneda lemma a closed (for instance symplectic) 2-form $\omega$ on a smooth manifold $X$ is equivalently a map of sheaves $\omega : X \longrightarrow \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$. It is useful to think of this as a simple first instance of moduli stacks: $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$ is the universal moduli stack of smooth closed 2-forms.

Similarly but more interestingly, there is a smooth moduli stack of circle-principal connections, def. 6.4.108. This we denote by $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in order to indicate that it is a differential refinement of the universal moduli stack $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ of just $U(1)$-principal connections, which in turn is a smooth refinement of the traditional classifiying space $BU(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z}, 2)$ of just equivalence classes of such bundles. Hence $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the "smooth homotopy 1-type" which is uniquely characterized by the fact that maps $X \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ from a smooth manifold $X$ are equivalently circle-principal connections on $X$, and that homotopies between such maps are equivalently smooth gauge transformations between such connections. This is a refinement of $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$: the map which sends a circle-principal connection to its curvature 2-form constitutes a map of universal moduli stacks $F_{(-)} : \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$, hence a universal invariant 2-form on $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$. This universal curvature form characterizes traditional prequantization: for $\omega \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$ a (pre-)symplectic form as above, a *prequantization* of $(X, \omega)$ is equivalently a lift $\nabla$ in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \overset{\nabla}{\dashrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & {\scriptstyle\omega}\searrow \quad \swarrow{\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} & \\ & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}} & \end{array},$$

where the commutativity of the diagram expresses the traditional prequantization condition $\omega = F_\nabla$.

A triangular diagram as above may naturally be interpreted as exhibiting a map *from* $\omega$ *to* $F_{(-)}$ *in the slice topos over* $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$. This means that the map $F_{(-)}$ is itself a universal moduli stack – the universal moduli stack of prequantizations. As such, $F_{(-)}$ lives not in the topos over all smooth manifolds, but in its slice over $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$, which is the topos of smooth stacks equipped with a map into $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$.

Now given a prequantization $\nabla$, then a *quantomorphism* or *integrated prequantum operator* is traditionally defined to be a pair $(\phi, \eta)$, consisting of a diffeomorphism $\phi : X \xrightarrow{\simeq} X$ together with an equivalence of prequantum connections $\eta : \phi^*\nabla \xrightarrow{\simeq} \nabla$. A moment of reflection shows that such a pair is equivalently again a triangular diagram, now as on the right of

$$\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \phi \in \mathrm{Diff}(X)\,, \\ \eta : \phi^*\nabla \overset{\simeq}{\to} \nabla \end{array} \right\} \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \overset{\phi}{\underset{\simeq}{\longrightarrow}} & X \\ & {\scriptstyle\nabla}\searrow \;\overset{\eta}{\Swarrow}\; \swarrow{\scriptstyle\nabla} & \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} \right\}.$$

This also makes the group structure on these pairs manifest – the *quantomorphism group*: it is given by the evident pasting of triangular diagrams. In this form, the quantomorphism group is realized as an example of a very general construction that directly makes sense also in higher geometry: it is the automorphism group of a modulating morphism regarded as an object in the slice topos over the corresponding moduli stack – a relative automorphism group. Also in this form the central property of the quantomorphism group – the fact that over a connected manifold it is a $U(1)$-extension of the group of Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms – is revealed to be just a special case of a very general extension phenomenon, expressed by the schematic diagrams below:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
U(1) & \to & \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) & \to & \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla) \\
\left\{ \begin{array}{c} X \\ \nabla \left( \Leftarrow \right) \nabla \\ \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array} \right\} & \to & \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X \\ & {}_{\nabla}\searrow \;\; \swarrow\!\!\!\!\!= \;\; \swarrow_{\nabla} & \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} \right\} & \to & \left\{ X \xrightarrow{\simeq} X \right\}
\end{array}
.
$$

Our main theorems in 5.2.17.5 below are a general account of canonical extensions induced by (higher) automorphism groups in slices over (higher, differential) moduli stacks in this fashion.

This $U(1)$-extension is the hallmark of quantization: under Lie differentiation the above sequence of (infinite-dimensional) Lie groups turns into the extension of Lie algebras

$$i\mathbb{R} \;\;\to\;\; \mathfrak{Poisson}(X,\omega) \;\;\to\;\; \mathcal{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X,\omega)$$

that exhibits the Poisson bracket Lie algebra of the symplectic manifold as an $i\mathbb{R} \simeq \mathrm{Lie}(U(1))$-extension of the Lie algebra of Hamiltonian vector fields on $X$ – the *Kostant-Souriau extension* (e.g section 2.3 of [Br93]). If we write $\hbar \in \mathbb{R}$ for the canonical basis element ("Planck's constant") then this expresses the quantum deformation of "classical commutators" in $\mathcal{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X,\omega)$ by the central term $i\hbar$.

More widely known than the quantomorphism groups of all prequantum operators are a class of small subgroups of them, the *Heisenberg groups* of translational prequantum operators: if $(X,\omega)$ is a symplectic vector space of dimension $2n$, regarded as a symplectic manifold, then the translation group $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ canonically acts on it by Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms, hence by a group homomorphism $\mathbb{R}^{2n} \to \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla)$. The pullback of the above quantomorphism group extension along this map yields a $U(1)$-extension of $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$, and this is the traditional Heisenberg group $H(n,\mathbb{R})$. More generally, for $(X,\omega)$ any (prequantized) symplectic manifold and $G$ any Lie group, one considers *Hamiltonian $G$-actions*: smooth group homomorphisms $\phi : G \to \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla)$. Pulling back the quantomorphism group extension now yields a $U(1)$-extension of $G$ and this we may call, more generally, the Heisenberg group extension induced by the Hamiltonian $G$-action:

$$U(1) \;\;\to\;\; \mathbf{Heis}_{\phi}(\nabla) \;\;\to\;\; G \;\; .$$

The crucial property of the quantomorphism group and any of its Heisenberg subgroups, at least for the purposes of geometric quantization, is that these are canonically equipped with an action on the space of prequantum states (the space of sections of the complex line bundle which is associated to the prequantum bundle), this is the action of the *exponentiated prequantum operators*. Under an *integrated moment map*, – a group homomorphism $G \to \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla)$ covering a Hamiltonian $G$-action – this induces a representation of $G$ on the space of prequantum states. After a choice of polarization this is the construction that makes geometric quantization a valuable tool in geometric representation theory.

This action of prequantum operators on prequantum states is naturally interpreted in terms of slicing, too: A prequantum operator is traditionally defined to be a function $H \in C^\infty(X)$ with action on prequantum states $\psi$ traditionally given by the fomula

$$O_H : \psi \mapsto i\nabla_{v_H}\psi + H \cdot \psi \, ,$$

where the first term is the covariant derivative of the prequantum connection along the Hamiltonian vector field corresponding to $H$. To see how this formula together with its Lie integration, falls out naturally from the perspective of the slice over the moduli stack, write $\mathbb{C}/\!/U(1)$ for the quotient stack of the canonical 1-dimensional complex representation of the circle group, and observe that this comes equipped with a canonical map $\rho : \mathbb{C}/\!/U(1) \longrightarrow */\!/U(1) \simeq \mathbf{B}U(1)$ to the moduli stack of circle-principal bundles. This is the universal complex line bundle over the moduli stack of $U(1)$-principal bundles, and it has a differential refinement compatible with that of its base stack to a map $\rho_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbb{C}/\!/U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ . Now one can work out that maps $\psi : \nabla \to \rho_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in the slice over $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ are equivalently sections of the complex line bundle $P \times_{U(1)} \mathbb{C}$ which is $\rho$-associated to the $U(1)$-principal prequantum bundle:

$$\Gamma_X\left(P \times_{U(1)} \mathbb{C}\right) \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\psi} & \mathbb{C}/\!/U(1) \\ & \swArrow & \\ {\scriptstyle\nabla}\searrow & & \swarrow{\scriptstyle\rho_{\mathrm{conn}}} \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} \right\} .$$

With this identification, the action of quantomorphisms on prequantum states

$$(O_h, \psi) \mapsto O_h(\psi)$$

is simply the precomposition action in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)}$, hence the action by pasting of triangular diagrams in $\mathbf{H}$:

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X \\ & \swArrow_{O_h} & \\ {\scriptstyle\nabla}\searrow & & \swarrow{\scriptstyle\nabla} \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} \;,\; \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\psi} & \mathbb{C}/\!/U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \swArrow & \\ {\scriptstyle\nabla}\searrow & & \swarrow{\scriptstyle\rho_{\mathrm{conn}}} \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} \right) \mapsto \begin{array}{ccccc} X & \underset{\simeq}{\xrightarrow{\phi}} & X & \xrightarrow{\psi} & \mathbb{C}/\!/U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \swArrow & \downarrow{\scriptstyle\nabla} & \swArrow & \\ & {\scriptstyle\nabla}\searrow & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \swarrow{\scriptstyle\rho_{\mathrm{conn}}} & \end{array}$$

Once formulated this way as the geometry of stacks in the higher slice topos over the smooth moduli stack of principal connections, it is clear that there is a natural generalization of traditional prequantum geometry, hence of regular contact geometry, obtained by interpreting these diagrams in higher differential geometry with smooth moduli stacks of principal bundles and principal connections refined to higher smooth moduli stacks. Morever, by carefully abstracting the minimum number of axioms on the ambient toposes actually needed in order to express the relevant constructions (this we discuss in 5.2.17) one obtains generalizations to various other flavors of higher/derived geometry, such as higher/derived supergeometry.

Just as traditional prequantum geometry and contact geometry is of interest in itself, this natural refinement to higher geometry is of interest in itself, and is one motivation for studying higher prequantum geometry. For instance in 7.5 we indicate how various higher central extensions of interest in string geometry can be constructed as higher Heisenberg-group extensions in higher prequantum geometry.

But the strongest motivation for studying traditional prequantum geometry is, as the name indicates, as a means in quantum mechanics and quantum field theory. This we come to below in 7.6.

| $\infty$-geometric quantization | cohesive homotopy-type theory | twisted hyper-sheaf cohomology |
|---|---|---|
| pre-$n$-plectic cohesive $\infty$-groupoid | $\omega : X \to \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})$ (e.g. $\mathbb{G} = \mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$ or $= \mathbf{B}^{n-1}\mathbb{C}^\times$) | twisting cocycle in de Rham cohomology |
| symplectomorphisms | $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\omega) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X \\ & {}_{\omega}\searrow \quad \swarrow_{\omega} & \\ & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) & \end{array} \right\}$ | twist automorphism $\infty$-group |
| prequantum bundle | $\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & {}^{\nabla}\nearrow & \downarrow^{F_{(-)}} \\ X & \xrightarrow{\omega} & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \end{array}$ | twisting cocycle in differential cohomology |
| Planck's constant $\hbar$ | $\frac{1}{\hbar}\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ | divisibility of twist class |
| quantomorphism group $\supset$ Heisenberg group | $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X \\ & {}_{\nabla}\searrow \;\swarrow\!\!\!\swarrow_{\simeq}\; \swarrow_{\nabla} & \\ & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array} \right\}$ | twist automorphism $\infty$-group |
| Hamiltonian $G$-action | $\mu : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla)$ | $G$-$\infty$-action on the twisting cocycle |
| gauge reduction | $\nabla//G \;:\; X//G \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ | $G$-$\infty$-quotient of the twisting cocycle |
| Hamiltonian observables with Poisson bracket | $\mathrm{Lie}(\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla))$ | infinitesimal twist automorphisms |
| Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms | $\mathrm{image}\left( \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X) \right)$ | twists in de Rham cohomology that lift to differential cohomology |
| $\mathbb{G}$-representation | $\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & V//\mathbb{G} \\ & & \downarrow^{\rho} \\ & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \end{array}$ | local coefficient $\infty$-bundle |
| prequantum space of states | $\mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & V//\mathbb{G} \\ & {}_{\mathbf{c}}\searrow \;\swarrow\!\!\!\swarrow_{\simeq}\; \swarrow_{\rho} & \\ & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & \end{array} \right\}$ | cocycles in $[\mathbf{c}]$-twisted cohomology |
| prequantum operator action | $\widehat{(-)} : \mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E) \times \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}} \to \mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E)$ | $\infty$-action of twist automorphisms on twisted cocycles |
| transgression | composition with: $\begin{array}{ccc} [S^1, V//\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}] & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tr\,hol}_{S^1}} & V//\Omega\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow^{\rho^V_{\mathrm{conn}}} & & \downarrow^{\rho^V_{\mathrm{conn}}} \\ \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{S^1}(-))} & \mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array}$ | fiber integration in (nonabelian) differential cohomology |

**5.2.17.2 Prequantization** Let $X \in \mathbf{H}$ be a cohesive homotopy-type. Let $\mathbb{G} \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ be a braided cohesive group, def. 5.1.156. In the present context we say

**Definition 5.2.130.** 1. A morphism (def. 5.2.87)

$$\omega : \; X \longrightarrow \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})$$

is a *pre-symplectic structure* on $X$.

2. Given a pre-symplectic structure, a lift $\nabla$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla}{\nearrow} & \downarrow^{F_{(-)}} \\ X & \underset{\omega}{\longrightarrow} & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \end{array}$$

is a *prequantization* of $(X,\omega)$.

**5.2.17.3 Symplectomorphisms** Let $X \in \mathbf{H}$ be a cohesive homotopy-type. Let $\mathbb{G} \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ be a braided cohesive group, def. 5.1.156. Let

$$\omega : \; X \longrightarrow \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) \; .$$

be a pre-symplectic structure, def. 5.2.87.

**Definition 5.2.131.** The *symplectomorphism group* $\mathbf{Sympl}(\omega)$ of the pre-symplectic geometry $(X,\omega)$ is the $\mathbf{H}$-valued automorphism group, def. 5.1.35, of $\omega \in \mathbf{H}_{/\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})}$:

$$\mathbf{Sympl}(\omega) := \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\omega) := \prod_{\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})} \mathbf{Aut}(\omega)\,.$$

**Remark 5.2.132.** According to remark 5.1.36 a global element of $\mathbf{Sympl}(\omega)$ corresponds to a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \overset{\phi}{\underset{\simeq}{\longrightarrow}} & X \\ & {}_{\omega}\searrow \quad \swarrow_{\omega} & \\ & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G}) & \end{array} \; .$$

This is a diffeomorphism $\phi$ of $X$ which preserves the pre-symplectic structure in that

$$\phi^*\omega = \omega\,.$$

**Definition 5.2.133.** Write

$$p_{\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})} : \; \mathbf{Sympl}(\omega) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X)$$

for the canonical morphism induced by restriction of the morphism of prop. 5.1.38.

**Proposition 5.2.134.** *The morphism $p_{\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})}$ of def. 5.2.133 is a monomorphism*

Proof. By direct generalization of the proof of prop. 5.1.41 we find that for each $U \in \mathbf{H}$ the fibers of $p_{\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})}$ are path space objects of $[X, \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})]$. But since $\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})$ is 0-truncated by def. 5.2.87, also $[X, \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-,\mathbb{G})]$ is 0-truncated, and so its path spaces are either contractible or empty. $\square$

#### 5.2.17.4 Contactomorphisms

**Definition 5.2.135.** Given two $\mathbb{G}$-principal connections $\nabla_1 : X_1 \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ and $\nabla_2 : X_2 \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$, a (strict) *contactomorphism between regular contact spaces* from $\nabla_1$ to $\nabla_2$ is a morphism between them in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}}$. The $\infty$*-groupoid of contactomorphisms* betwen $\nabla_1$ and $\nabla_2$ is

$$\mathrm{ContactMorph}(\nabla_1, \nabla_2) := \Gamma\left([\nabla_1, \nabla_2]_{\mathbf{H}}\right) := \Gamma \prod_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}} [\nabla_1, \nabla_2]\,,$$

**Remark 5.2.136.** This means that a single contactomorphism from $\nabla_1$ to $\nabla_2$ is given by a diagram

$$\xymatrix{ X \ar[rr]^{\simeq} \ar[dr]_{\nabla_1} & \swArrow & X \ar[dl]^{\nabla_2} \\ & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} & }$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. However, in order to obtain the correct cohesive structure on the collection of all contactomorphisms we need to *concretify* the object $[\nabla_1, \nabla_2]_{\mathbf{H}}$, as in the discussion at 5.2.13.4.

**5.2.17.5 Quantomorphism group and Heisenberg group** We discuss the formalization of the traditional concept of *quantomorphism groups* inside cohesive homotopy theory. The terminology "quantomorphism group" has been introduced by Souriau to the theory of geometric quantization already in the 1960s. Under Lie differentiation the quantomorphism group becomes the *Poisson bracket* Lie algebra, and under restriction to translations it becomes the *Heisenberg group*. Both the Poisson bracket and the Heisenberg group are famous hallmarks of quantum theory. Both are just shadows of the quantomorphism group.

Let $\mathbb{G}$ be a braided cohesive $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, equipped with a Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.99, and write $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the corresponding differential coefficient object, def. 5.2.100.

Given a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection

$$\nabla : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}\,,$$

def. 5.2.101, regarded as a pre-quantization, def. 5.2.130, of its curvature form $F_\nabla : X \xrightarrow{\nabla} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{F_{(-)}} \Omega^2(-, \mathbb{G})$, def. 5.2.99, then the coresponding quantomorphism group is supposed to be the group of automorphisms $\phi$ (e.g. diffeomorphisms) of $X$ equipped with a choice of equivalence $\eta : \phi^* \nabla \xrightarrow{\simeq} \nabla$ identifying the pullback of $\nabla$ along $\phi$ with $\nabla$ itself.

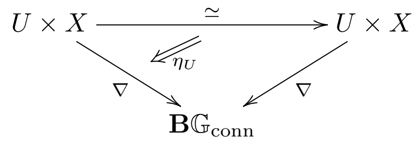
Hence informally the quantomorphism group looks like this:

$$\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) = \left\{ \xymatrix{ X \ar[rr]^{\phi} \ar[dr]_{\nabla} & \swArrow_{\eta} & X \ar[dl]^{\nabla} \\ & A & } \right\}$$

More background discussion on this idea is in 1.3.2 and 1.3.3.3.

While the above diagram gives the right idea of the global elements of the quantomorphism group, care has to be exercised in constructing the correct cohesive structure. Comparison with remark 5.1.36 might suggest to define $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla)$ as $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla)$ as in def. 5.1.35, with $\nabla = \left[ \begin{array}{c} X \\ \downarrow^{\nabla} \\ \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array} \right] \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}}$

regarded as an object in the slice over its codomain. However, a map $U \to \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla)$ is equivalently a diagram of the form




and this is a bit more general than it should be for the quantomorphism group. Namely here the gauge transformation $\eta_U$ may have differention form components along $U$, whereas for the quantomorphism group we need this to be a genuine $U$-parameterized collection of gauge transformation just on $X$, hence we need to require that $\eta_U$ has no differential form components along $U$.

This is a restriction of the kind accomplished by the operation of *differential concretification* in def. 5.2.105. Therefore we consider the following definition:

**Remark 5.2.137.** By prop. 5.2.11 the canonical action of $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$ on $[X, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}]$, example 5.1.280, passes to the differential concretification $\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)$ along the map in def. 5.2.105. Therefore we have an operation

$$\nabla \circ (-) : \mathbf{Aut}(X) \longrightarrow \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)$$

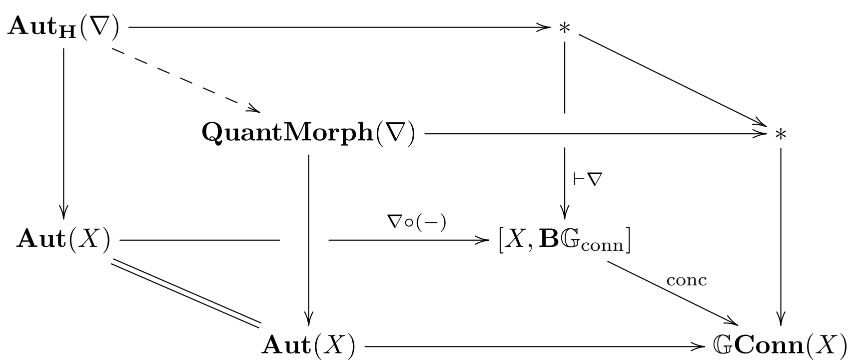
constructed by def. 5.1.268, with notation following remark 5.1.281.

**Definition 5.2.138.** The *quantomorphism group* of a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$, def. 5.2.101, is the homotopy fiber $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ of the morphism $\nabla \circ (-)$ of remark 5.2.137, over $\nabla$: in

$$\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X) \xrightarrow{\nabla \circ (-)} \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)$$

.

**Remark 5.2.139.** By prop. 5.1.40 there is a canonical morphism $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla) \longrightarrow \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla)$, given by the universal property of the homotopy pullback in the following diagram




In this sense the quantomorphism group of $\nabla$ is the differential concretification of $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla)$.

This serves to motivate the abstract definition of the quantomorphism group in def. 5.2.138 from the traditional concept. Indeed, corollary 6.4.192 shows that the traditional quantomorphism group is a special case of this abstract definition. The following proposition however gives a more intrinsic and fundamental characterization of this definition.

**Proposition 5.2.140.** *Given a $G$-principal connection $\nabla \colon X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$, def. 5.2.101 its quantomorphism group* $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla)$ *of def. 5.2.138 is equivalently the stabilizer group, def. 5.1.289, of the canonical* $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$*-action on* $\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)$*, remark 5.2.137:*

$$\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \simeq \mathrm{Stab}_{\mathbf{Aut}(X)}(\nabla)\,.$$

Proof. This follows by using definition 5.2.138 in prop. 5.1.293 and using that the further homotopy pullbacks in that proposition commute over the iterated homotopy fiber products in def. 5.2.105. □

**Definition 5.2.141.** Let $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ be a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection, regarded as a prequantum $\infty$-bundle. Then

1. the *Hamiltonian symplectomorphism group* $\mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ is the sub-$\infty$-group of the automorphisms of $X$ which is the 1-image, def. 5.1.56, of the quantomorphisms:

$$\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \twoheadrightarrow \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X)$$

2. for $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ an $\infty$-group, a *Hamiltonian $G$-action* on $X$ is an $\infty$-group homomorphim

$$G \xrightarrow{\phi} \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X) \ ;$$

3. an *integrated $G$-momentum map* is an action by quantomorphisms

$$G \xrightarrow{\hat{\phi}} \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X) \ ;$$

4. given a Hamiltonian $G$-action $\phi$, the corresponding *Heisenberg $\infty$-group* $\mathbf{Heis}_\phi(\nabla)$ is the homotopy fiber product in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Heis}_\phi(\nabla) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ G & \xrightarrow{\phi} & \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla) \end{array} .$$

**Remark 5.2.142.** The name *Heisenberg group* in def. 5.2.141 derives from the special traditional case where $G$ is a symplectic vector space, regarded as a translation group acting on itself by Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms, this we discuss in 6.4.21.6 below.

Often we find it convenient to generalize this terminology even further and write $\mathbf{Heis}_G(\nabla)$ for the homotopy pullback as above but with $\phi : G \to \mathbf{Aut}(X)$ not necessarily factoring through $\mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla)$. This notational abuse is mild, as by the pasting law and the pullback stability of the 1-image factorization, such $\mathbf{Heis}_G(\nabla)$ is $\mathbf{Heis}_{\tilde{G}}(\nabla)$ in the sense of def. 5.2.141, for $\tilde{G} \hookrightarrow G$ the restriction along which $\phi$ does restrict to taking values in Hamiltonian automorphisms.

Then we have the following characterization of the corresponding quantomorphism $\infty$-group of def. 5.2.138.

**Theorem 5.2.143.** *For $A$ a 0-truncated abelian group and $\mathbb{G} := \mathbf{B}^n A$ equipped with an abelian Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.103, then there is a long homotopy fiber sequence, def. 5.1.178, in* $\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ *of the form*

- *for $n = 0$*

$$\mathbb{G}\mathbf{LocConstFunct}(X) \longrightarrow \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \longrightarrow \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla) \xrightarrow{\nabla\circ(-)} \mathbf{B}\left(\mathbb{G}\mathbf{LocConstFunct}(X)\right)$$

- *for $n \geq 1$:*

$$(\Omega\mathbb{G})\mathbf{FlatConn}(X) \longrightarrow \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \longrightarrow \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla) \xrightarrow{\nabla\circ(-)} \mathbf{B}\left((\Omega\mathbb{G})\,\mathbf{FlatConn}(\nabla)\right) \ ,$$

*which hence exhibits the quantomorphism group* $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ *as an* $\infty$*-group extension, 5.1.18 of the* $\infty$*-group of Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms, def. 5.2.141, by the differential moduli of flat* $\Omega\mathbb{G}$*-principal connections on* $X$*, def. 5.2.110, classified by an* $\infty$*-group cocycle which is given by postcomposition with* $\nabla$ *itself.*

Proof. Consider the natural 1-image factorization of the horizontal maps in the defining $\infty$-pullback of def. 5.2.138:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) & \twoheadrightarrow & \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla) & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{Aut}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\nabla\circ(-)} & & \downarrow^{\nabla\circ(-)} \\ * & \twoheadrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\left(\Omega_{\nabla}\left(\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)\right)\right) & \hookrightarrow & \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X) \end{array} .$$

By homotopy pullback stability of both 1-epimorphisms and 1-monomorphisms, prop. 5.1.69, prop. 5.1.60, and by essential uniqueness of 1-image factorizations, prop. 5.1.59, this is a pasting diagram of homotopy pullback squares. The claim then follows with prop. 5.2.111. ☐

By the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, the analogous statement also holds for Heisenberg $\infty$-groups:

**Corollary 5.2.144.** *If* $\phi : G \to \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(X)$ *is any Hamiltonian* $G$*-action, def. 5.2.141, then the corresponding Heisenberg* $\infty$*-group sits in the* $\infty$*-fiber sequence*

$$(\Omega\mathbb{G})\mathbf{FlatConn}(X) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Heis}_{\phi}(\nabla) \longrightarrow G \xrightarrow{\nabla\circ(-)} \mathbf{B}\left((\Omega\mathbb{G})\,\mathbf{FlatConn}(\nabla)\right) ,$$

**Definition 5.2.145.** Given a $\mathbb{G}$-principal $\infty$-connection $\nabla$, def. 5.2.101, write

$$\mathbf{P}_{\nabla} : \mathbf{BHamSympl}(\nabla) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2((\Omega\mathbb{G})\mathbf{FlatConn}(\nabla))$$

for the universal characteristic class which is the delooping, def. 5.1.152, of the homomorphism $\nabla \circ (-)$ in theorem 5.2.143. By remark 5.1.307 this is the universal obstruction, def. 5.1.308, to lifts of structure groups, def. 5.1.305, through the quantomorphism group extension.

**Remark 5.2.146.** The universal characteristic class $\mathbf{P}_{\nabla}$ in def. 5.2.145 is a generalization of the *Kostant-Souriau-cocycle*, in that when realized in the topos of smooth cohesion, constructed in 6.4, and specialized to $\mathbb{G} = U(1)$ the circle Lie group, then it reproduces this traditional cocycle, see 6.4.21.4. Further specialized to a prequantum bundle $\nabla$ on a symplectic vector space, then this is reduces to the *Heisenberg cocycle*, see 6.4.21.5.

**5.2.17.6 Courant groupoids** Given a $\mathbb{G}$-principal $\infty$-connection

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & {}^{\nabla}\nearrow & \downarrow^{u_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}}} \\ X & \xrightarrow{\nabla^0} & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \end{array}$$

we have considered in 5.1.8.1.3 the corresponding higher Atiyah groupoid $\mathrm{At}(\nabla^0)_\bullet$ and in 5.2.17.5 the higher quantomorphism groupoid $\mathrm{At}(\nabla)$ equipped with a canonical map $\mathrm{At}(\nabla)_\bullet \longrightarrow \mathrm{At}(\nabla^0)_\bullet$ . But in view of the towers of differential coefficients discussed in 5.2.13 this has a natural generalization to towers of higher groupoids interpolating between the higher Atiyah groupoid and the higher quantomorphism groupoid.

In particular, let $\mathbb{G} \in \mathrm{Grp}_3(\mathbf{H})$ a sylleptic $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, with compatibly chosen factorization of differential form coefficients and induced factorization of differential coefficients

$$\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G} .$$

**Definition 5.2.147.** For $\nabla^{n-1} : X \to \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}})$ a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection without top-degree connection data as in def. 6.4.96, we say that the corresponding *higher Courant groupoid* is the corresponding higher Atiyah groupoid $\mathrm{At}(\nabla^{n-1})_\bullet \in \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{H})$, hence the groupoid object which by prop. 5.1.123 is equivalent to the $\infty$-groupoid with atlas given by the 1-image factorization of $\nabla^{n-1}$

$$X \twoheadrightarrow \mathrm{At}(\nabla^{n-1}) := \mathrm{im}_1(\nabla^{n-1}) \ .$$

**Example 5.2.148.** If $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is the $\infty$-topos of smooth $\infty$-groupoids and $\mathbb{G} = \mathbf{B}U(1) \in \mathrm{Grp}_\infty(\mathbf{H})$ is the smooth circle 2-group and if finally $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is a smooth manifold, then by def. 6.4.116 a map $\nabla^1 : X \to \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$ is equivalently a "$U(1)$-bundle gerbe with connective structure but without curving" on $X$.

In this case the higher Courant groupoid according to def. 5.2.147 is a smooth 2-groupoid and its $\infty$-group of bisections $\mathbf{BiSect}(\mathrm{At}(\nabla^1)_\bullet)$ is a smooth 2-group. The points of this 2-group are equivalently pairs $(\phi, \eta)$ consisting of a diffeomorphism $\phi : X \xrightarrow{\simeq} X$ and an equivalence of bundle gerbes with connective structure but without curving of the form $\eta : \phi^*\nabla^{n-1} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \nabla^{n-1}$. A homotopy of bisections between two such pairs $(\phi_1, \eta_1) \to (\phi_2, \eta_2)$ exists if $\phi_1 = \phi_2$ and is then given by a higher gauge equivalence $\kappa$ $\kappa : \eta_1 \xrightarrow{\simeq} \eta_2$. Moreover, with prop. 5.2.13.4 the smooth structure on the differentially concretified 2-group of such bisections is the expected one, where $U$-plots are smooth $U$-parameterized collections of diffeomorphisms and of bundle gerbe gauge transformations.

Precisely these smooth 2-groups have been studied in [Col11]. There it was shown that the Lie 2-algebras that correspond to them under Lie differentiation are the Lie 2-algebras of sections of the *Courant Lie 2-algebroid* which is traditionally associated with a bundle gerbe with connective structure. (See the citations in [Col11] for literature on Courant Lie 2-algebroids.) Therefore the abstractly defined smooth higher Courant groupoid $\mathrm{At}(\nabla^{n-1})$ according to def. 5.2.147 indeed is a Lie integration of the traditional Courant Lie 2-algebroid assigned to $\nabla^{n-1}$, hence is the *smooth Courant 2-groupoid.*

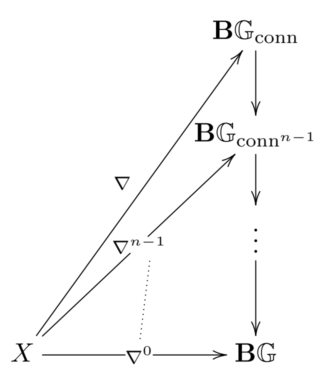
**Example 5.2.149.** More generally, in the situation of example 5.2.148 consider now for some $n \geq 1$ the smooth circle $n$-group $\mathbb{G} = \mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$. Then a map

$$\nabla^{n-1} : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$$

is equivalently a Deligne cocycle on $X$ in degree $(n+1)$ without $n$-form data.

To see what the corresponding smooth higher Courant groupoid $\mathrm{At}(\nabla^{n-1})$ is like, consider first the local case in which $\nabla^{n-1}$ is trivial. In this case a bisection of $\mathrm{At}(\nabla^{n-1})$ is readily seen to be a pair consisting of a diffeomorphism $\phi \in \mathrm{Diff}(X)$ together with an $(n-1)$-form $H \in \Omega^{n-1}(X)$, satisfying no further compatibility condition. This means that there is an $L_\infty$-algebra representing the Lie differentiation of the higher Courant groupoid $\mathrm{At}(\nabla^{n-1})_\bullet$ which in lowest degree is the space of sections of a bundle on $X$ which is locally the sum $TX \oplus \wedge^{n-1}T^*X$ of the tangent bundle with the $(n-1)$-form bundle. This is precisely what the sections of higher Courant Lie $n$-algebroids are supposed to be like, see for instance [Zam10].

Finally, if we are given a tower of differential refinements of $\mathbb{G}$-principal bundles as discussed in 5.2.13



then there is correspondingly a tower of higher gauge groupoids:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| higher Quantomorphism groupoid | higher Courant groupoid | $\cdots$ | intermediate differential higher Atiyah groupoid | $\cdots$ | higher Atiyah groupoid . |

$$\mathrm{At}(\nabla)_\bullet \longrightarrow \mathrm{At}(\nabla^{n-1})_\bullet \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \mathrm{At}(\nabla^k) \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \mathrm{At}(\nabla^0)$$

The further intermediate stages appearing here seem not to correspond to anything that has already been given a name in traditional literature. We might call them *intermediate higher differential gauge groupoids*. These structures are an integral part of higher prequantum geometry.

**5.2.17.7 Poisson and Heisenberg Lie algebra** We consider now the $\infty$-Lie algebras of these $\infty$-groups in prequantum geometry.

**Definition 5.2.150.**

- The $\infty$-Lie algebra

$$\mathfrak{poisson}(X, \hat{\omega}) := \mathrm{Lie}(\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla))$$

  of the quantomorphism group we call the *Poisson $\infty$-Lie algebra* of the prequantum geometry $(X, \nabla)$.

- The $\infty$-Lie algebra of the Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms

$$\mathcal{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X, \hat{\omega}) := \mathrm{Lie}(\mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla))$$

  we call the $\infty$-Lie algebra of *Hamiltonian vector fields* of the prequantum geometry.

**Remark 5.2.151.** If $X$ has a linear structure (the structure of a vector space) and $\omega$ is constant on $X$, then we can consider the sub $\infty$-Lie algebra of $\mathfrak{poisson}(X, \hat{\omega})$ on the constant and linear elements. We discuss realizations of this below in 6.4.21.6. This sub $\infty$-Lie algebra we call the *Heisenberg $\infty$-Lie algebra*

$$\mathfrak{heis}(\nabla) \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{poisson}(\nabla)\,.$$

The corresponding sub-$\infty$-group we call the *Heisenberg $\infty$-group*

$$\mathbf{Heis}(\nabla) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla)\,.$$

**5.2.17.8 Prequantum states** Given a prequantum geometry

$$X \xrightarrow{\nabla} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{F_{(-)}} \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, \mathbb{G})$$

as above, choose now finally a representation, def. 5.1.189, of $\mathbb{G}$, hence a fiber sequence in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$V \longrightarrow V/\!/\mathbb{G} \xrightarrow{\rho} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}\ .$$

For $U_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} : \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$ the forgetful morphism, we obtain from the prequantum connection $\nabla \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}}$ the underlying modulus

$$\sum_{U_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}}} \nabla \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}}$$

of the prequantum bundle proper.

**Definition 5.2.152.** The $\rho$-associated $V$-fiber bundle

$$E := \left(\sum_{U_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}}} \nabla\right)^* \rho \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$$

to $\sum_{U_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}}} \nabla$, def. 5.1.246, we call the *prequantum $V$-bundle* (or just *prequantum line bundle* if $V$ is equipped compatibly with a ring structure).

**Remark 5.2.153.** If we write $P \to X$ for the total space projection of the prequantum bundle, sitting in the $\infty$-pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{\sum_{U_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}}} \nabla} & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \end{array} ,$$

then by prop. 5.1.246 the total space projection of the prequantum line bundle is the left morphism in the $\infty$-pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P \times_{\mathbb{G}} V & \longrightarrow & V//\mathbb{G} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\rho} \\ X & \xrightarrow{\sum_{U_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}}} \nabla} & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} \end{array} .$$

**Definition 5.2.154.** The space of sections, def. 5.1.255, of the prequantum line bundle

$$\mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E) \in \mathbf{H}$$

we call the *prequantum space of states*.

**Remark 5.2.155.** By prop. 5.1.265 the prequantum space of states is equivalently expressed as

$$\mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E) \simeq \prod_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} \left[\sum_U \nabla, \rho\right] .$$

#### 5.2.17.9 Prequantum operators

**Definition 5.2.156.** The *prequantum operator action* of the quantomorphism group $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla)$, def. 5.2.17.5, on the space of prequantum states $\mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E)$, def. 5.2.154, is the action, def. 5.1.189,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E)//\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) \\ & & \downarrow^{\rho_{\mathrm{prequant}}} \\ & & \mathbf{BQuantMorph}(\nabla) \end{array}$$

given by the canonical precomposition action, example 5.1.280, of $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\sum_U \nabla)$ on $\mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E) \simeq \prod_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} \left[\sum_U \nabla, \rho\right]_{\mathbf{H}}$ (remark 5.2.155) restricted to a $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla) := \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla)$-action, def. 5.1.271, along the canonical morphism $p_U : \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla) \to \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\sum_U \nabla)$.

**Remark 5.2.157.** The prequantum operator action of def. 5.2.156 is exhibited by the following pasting diagram of $\infty$-pullback squares.

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathbf{\Gamma}_X(E) \simeq \prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} [\sum\limits_U \nabla, \rho] & \longrightarrow & \prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} \left( \left[ \sum\limits_U \nabla, \rho \right] // \prod\limits_U \mathbf{Aut}(\nabla) \right) & \longrightarrow & \prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} \left( \left[ \sum\limits_U \nabla, \rho \right] // \mathbf{Aut}(\sum\limits_U \nabla) \right) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & \mathbf{B} \prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} \left( \prod\limits_U \mathbf{Aut}\,(\nabla) \right) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{B} \prod_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} (p_U)} & \mathbf{B} \prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}} \left( \mathbf{Aut} \left( \sum\limits_U \nabla \right) \right) \\
 & & \| & & \| \\
* & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\,(\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\nabla)) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B} \left( \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\sum\limits_U \nabla) \right) \\
\| & & \| & & \\
* & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\,(\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla)) & &
\end{array}
.
$$

This uses that the dependent product is right adjoint and hence preserves $\infty$-pullbacks (as well as group structure).

**Remark 5.2.158.** A prequantum state is given by a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{\psi} & V//\mathbb{G} \\
& \swArrow & \\
{\scriptstyle \sum_U \nabla} \searrow & & \swarrow {\scriptstyle \rho} \\
& \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} &
\end{array}
$$

and a prequantum operator by a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X \\
& \swArrow_{O} & \\
{\scriptstyle \nabla} \searrow & & \swarrow {\scriptstyle \rho} \\
& \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} &
\end{array}
.
$$

Then the result of the action is the new prequantum state $O(\psi)$ given by the pasting diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
X & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X & \xrightarrow{\psi} & V//\mathbb{G} \\
 & {\scriptstyle \nabla} \searrow & \downarrow {\scriptstyle \nabla} & & \\
{\scriptstyle \sum_U \nabla} & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} & & {\scriptstyle \rho} \\
 & \searrow & \downarrow {\scriptstyle U} & \swarrow & \\
 & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & &
\end{array}
$$

(where all the 2-cells are notationally suppressed, for readability).

### 5.2.18 Local prequantum field theory

We discuss now a formalization *local prequantum field theory* (see 1.3.2 and 1.3.3 in the introduction) in cohesive $\infty$-toposes.

The contents of this section draw from discussion with Domenico Fiorenza. An unpublished precursor of the following discussion is [Sc08b]. The discussion here is inspired by the sketch in section 3 of [FHLT09] which indicates prequantum theory for geometrically *discrete* topological field theories such as Dijkgraaf-Witten theory.

After an

- 5.2.18.1 – Introduction

to the general idea of local prequantum field theory, we start in

- 5.2.18.2 – Local worldvolumes

by recalling aspects of $(\infty, n)$-categories of cobordisms (i.e. of "worldvolumes" from the point of view of the physics of field theory) from [L-TFT] and then discussing higher extensions of diffeomorphism groups and mapping class groups.

Then we consider pre-quantum field theories on these worldvolumes. First just their assignment of *physical bulk fields* in

- 5.2.18.3 – Local bulk fields

then the assignment of local action functionals to local bulk fields in

- 5.2.18.4 – Local action functionals
- 5.2.18.5 – Anomaly cancellation

and then we discuss boundaries, corners and defects of such prequantum field theories in

- 5.2.18.6 – Boundary field theory
- 5.2.18.7 – Corner field theory
- 5.2.18.8 – Defect field theory

**5.2.18.1 Introduction** The quantum field theories (QFTs) of interest, both in nature as well as theoretically, are typically not generic examples of the axioms of quantum field theory (see [SaSc11b] for a survey of modern formalizations of QFT) but rather are special in two respects:

1. they arise from geometric data – the Lagrangian and action functional – via some process of quantization, and notably from *higher geometric data* such as Lagrangian densities, pre-symplectic currents and higher gauge fields, subject to gauge equivalences, and higher order gauge of gauge transformations;
2. they are *local* in that the spaces of configurations (states) which they assign to a piece of worldvolume/spacetime are determined from gluing the data assigned to pieces of any decomposition of the worldvolume/spacetime.

While quantized field theories (topological QFTs as well as non-topological boundary quantum field theories) are axiomatically characterized by the cobordism theorem [L-TFT] (see [Be10] for a brief survey), here we are after understanding the axiomatization the local higher geometric *pre-quantum* data of those quantum field theories that arise from quantization. This also proceeds by the cobordism theorem, but with the "linear" $n$-categorical coefficients appropriate for quantum field theories replaced by non-linear geometric $n$-categorical coefficients. Since the natural context for higher geometry are higher toposes [L-Topos] and specifically cohesive higher toposes and since, as we will discuss, local action functionals are naturally objects in slices of such higher toposes over differential coefficient objects, the $n$-categorical coefficients that we consider are higher correspondences in such higher slice toposes.

For the case that the ambient higher topos encodes *discrete geometry* (suitable for the discussion of finite gauge theories such as Dijkgraaf-Witten theory) the definition of local prequantum field theory that we consider is that indicated in section 3 of [FHLT09].

One goal here is to show that by allowing the ambient higher topos to be more general and in particular by choosing differentially cohesive higher toposes, the genuine differential geometric data familiar from general field theories is naturally captured and usefully analyzed.

**5.2.18.1.1 Action functionals and correspondences** Traditionally in physics one considers (smooth) spaces of trajectories of physical fields ("spaces of histories"), which we will denote by $\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{traj}}$, and considers smooth functions on these spaces valued in the circle group, called the *exponentiated action functionals* or the *phases*

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S\right) \;:\; \mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{traj}} \longrightarrow U(1)\,,$$

where $2\pi\hbar \in \mathbb{R}$ denotes the choice of isomorphism

$$U(1) \simeq \mathbb{R}/2\pi\hbar\mathbb{Z}\,,$$

of the circle group with the quotient of the additive group of real numbers by a copy of the integers, which physically is "Planck's constant", see def. 6.4.156 below. By the *principle of extremal action* the critical locus of such functionals encodes those trajectories which are realized in macroscopic physics (classical physics), while integrals over trajectory space ("path integrals") of such functionals are to produce the integral kernels that enocde the microscopic dynamics (quantum mechanics).

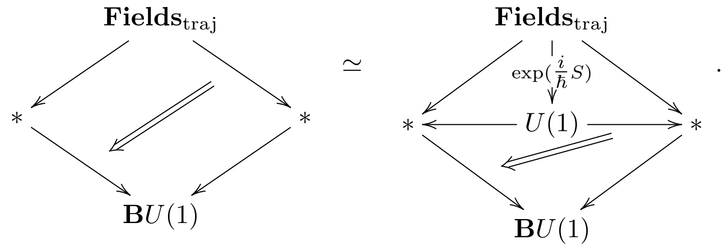
For example for $X$ a smooth manifold to be thought of as spacetime, and for $\nabla$ a circle-principal connection on $X$, to be thought of as an electromagnetic field, then the Lorentz force inter-action between a charged particle that travels around loops $S^1 \longrightarrow X$ in spacetime and the background electromagnetic field is encoded by the holonomy functional

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S^{\nabla}_{\mathrm{Lor}}\right) := \mathrm{hol}_{\nabla} : [S^1, X] \longrightarrow U(1)\,,$$

where $[S^1, X]$ denotes the loop space of $X$ regarded as a smooth space (for instance as a Fréchet manifold or as a diffeological space) and where $\mathrm{hol}_{\nabla}$ is the function that sends a curve in $X$ to its holonomy under $\nabla$.

More generally, action functionals are in fact not $U(1)$-valued functions, but are sections of $U(1)$-principal bundles. To say this more formally, we introduce the notation $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ for the universal moduli stack of smooth $U(1)$-principal bundles. This is characterized as being the object such that for $X$ any smooth manifold then homomorphisms $X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(1)$ are equivalent to smooth $U(1)$-principal bundles on $X$ and homotopies between such are equivalently to smooth isomorphisms/gauge transformations between those. For an introduction into the language of smooth (moduli) stacks that we are using here see [FSS13a].

As the notation suggests, the characteristic feature of $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ is that it is the *delooping* of the group $U(1)$, and the boldface $\mathbf{B}$ is to indicate that we consider this with everything equipped with its smooth geometric structure. This means that $U(1)$ as a smooth Lie group is the homotopy fiber product of the point with itself inside $\mathbf{B}U(1)$. By the universal property of the homotopy fiber construction this in turn means that an exponentiated action functional as above is equivalently a homotopy from the pullback of the trivial $U(1)$-principal bundle to itself, as follows:



Indeed, in the above example of the electromagnetic interaction, if instead of closed particle trajectories of the shape of a circle we consider trajectories of the shape of the interval $I := [0,1]$, regarded as a smooth manifold with boundary $\partial I = * \coprod *$, then the inter-action functional is not given by the holonomy but more generally by the *parallel transport* of the connection $\nabla$ along paths, which is not a function but is a section of the oriented pullback of the background bundle along the path endpoint evaluation map, in that it is a homotopy diagram like this:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & [I,X] & & \\
 & {}^{(-)|_0}\swarrow & & \searrow^{(-)|_1} & \\
X & & \overset{\mathrm{tra}_\nabla}{\Swarrow} & & X \\
 & {}_{\chi(\nabla)}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\chi(\nabla)} & \\
 & & \mathbf{B}U(1) & &
\end{array}
.
$$

Here $\chi(\nabla)$ is the class (or rather the *modulus/cocycle*) of the $U(1)$-principal bundle underlying the $U(1)$-principal connection $\nabla$. We discuss this and its higher dimensional generalization below in 6.4.18.

This diagram is a *correspondence* from the background field $\chi(\nabla)$ to itself, regarded as an object in the *slice topos* over $\mathbf{B}U(1)$. Since $U(1)$ is the "group of phases" in traditional formulations of physics, $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ here plays the role of a *higher group of phases*. Below we see that such correspondences in slices over higher groups of phases serve to encode local pre-quantum field theory quite generally.

Another archetypical example for such correspondences – which is *almost* familiar from traditional literature – are pre-quantizations of *Lagrangian correspondences* in symplectic geometry [We71, We83]. In this context, consider $(X,\omega)$ a symplectic manifold, to be thought of as the phase space of some physical system. In the spirit of the above discussion we stick to representing all extra structure on spaces in terms of maps into moduli stacks of these structures, and hence we think of the symplectic differential 2-form $\omega \in \Omega^2(X)$ here a morphism

$$\omega : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{cl}$$

to the smooth moduli space of closed differential 2-forms (technically this is simply the sheaf of closed 2-forms on the site of all smooth manifolds). In terms of such maps we have for instance that a diffeomorphism $\phi : X \longrightarrow X$ is a *symplectomorphism* precisely if it makes the following diagram of smooth spaces commute:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
X & & \xrightarrow{\ \phi\ } & & X \\
 & {}_{\omega}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\omega} & \\
 & & \mathbf{\Omega}^2 & &
\end{array}
.
$$

Equivalently, if we write $(\mathrm{id}, \phi) : \mathrm{graph}(\phi) \hookrightarrow X \times X$ for the graph of the function $\phi$, then $\phi$ is a symplectomorphism precisely if it induces a correspondence from $\omega$ to itself regarded as an object in the slice topos over $\mathbf{\Omega}^2$ as follows:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \mathrm{graph}(\phi) & & \\
 & {}^{p_1}\swarrow & & \searrow^{p_2} & \\
X & & & & X \\
 & {}_{\omega}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\omega} & \\
 & & \mathbf{\Omega}^2 & &
\end{array}
.
$$

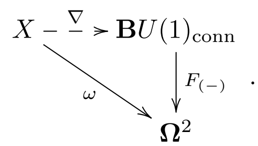
While such *Lagrangian correspondence* have long been studied and have been proposed as a foundation for geometric quantization [We83], it is well known that a symplectic manifold is too crude a model for a physical phase space, and that more accurately a physical phase space is a "pre-quantization" of a symplectic manifold, namely a choice of $U(1)$-principal connection $\nabla$ whose curvature 2-form coincides with the symplectic form

$F_\nabla = \omega$. (See the introduction of [FRS13a] for a review of geometric prequantization and for further pointers to the literature.)

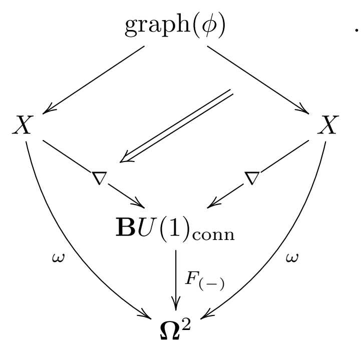
In order to see the effect of this refinement on the above discussion, observe that sending a $U(1)$-principal connection $\nabla$ to its curvature 2-form $F_\nabla$ is a natural operation, compatible with gauge equivalences, and hence is given by a universal morphism of stacks

$$F_{(-)} \ : \ \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

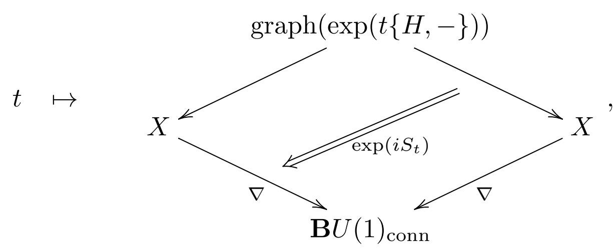
from the universal moduli stack $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of $U(1)$-principal connections to the univseral smooth space of closed differential 2-forms. In terms of this a prequantization of a symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ is a lift $\nabla$ in the diagram




In view of this it is clear what a *pre-qauntized Lagrangian correspondence* should be: this is a lift of the above Lagrangian correspondence through the universal curvature homomorphism to a correspondence in the slice over $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of the form

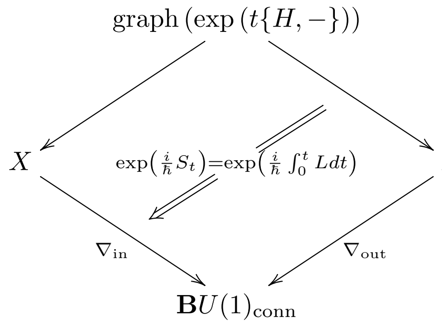


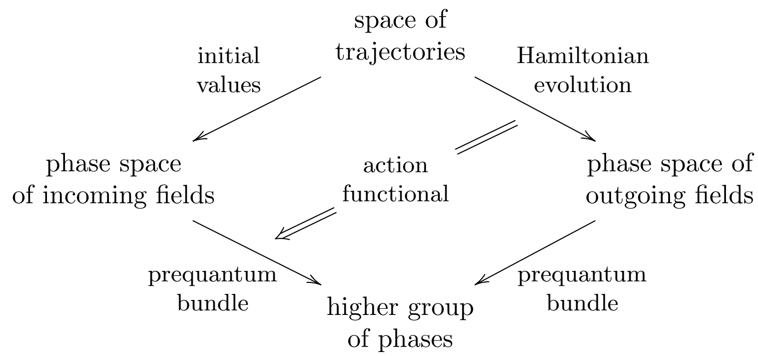

While this is an obvious refinement of the traditional notion of Lagrangian correspondence, it does not seem to have found due attention in the existing literature. Its relevance may be seen from the following observation [FRS13a] which we discuss in more detail below in 1.3.2: Smooth 1-parameter flows of prequantized Lagrangian correspondences as above are given precisely by choices of smooth functions $H \in C^\infty(X)$, where such a function induces the flow that sends $t \in \mathbb{R}$ to the correspondence




where $\exp(t\{H, -\})$ is the *Hamiltonian flow* induced by $H$ and $S_t = \int_0^t L dt$ is its *Hamilton-Jacobi action*, namely the integral of the *Lagrangian* $L$ which is the Legendre transform of $H$. Hence the notion of flows of Lagrangian correspondences unifies a fair bit of traditional classical mechanics [Ar89]. We survey in 1.3.2 how when this is lifted to Lagrangian correspondences between prequantum $n$-bundles for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ as in [FRS13a], then $n$-dimensional flows in $n$-fold correspondences encode the equations of motion of local Lagrangians on jet spaces in deDonder-Weyl-Hamiltonian ("multisymplectic") formulation.

In summary, the description of classical mechanics here identifies prequantized Lagrangian correspondences schematically as follows:




This state of affairs turns out to be essentially a blueprint for the formulation of local prequantum field theory that we obtain below in 5.2.18, via maps from cobordisms to $n$-fold correspondences in higher slices toposes.

**5.2.18.1.2 Local Lagrangians and higher differential cocycles** To see the need for passing from traditional symplectic geometric and prequantum bundles to prequantum $n$-bundles, first observe the traditional formulation of higher dimensional field theory along the above lines. Let **Fields** be a moduli space/moduli stack of fields of some field theory – for instance $\mathbf{Fields} = \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ the universal moduli stack of $G$-principal connections of some Lie group $G$, for the case of $G$-gauge theory. Then over a closed manifold $\Sigma_{n-1}$ of dimension $(n-1)$, to be thought of as a spatial slice of spacetime, the space of field configurations on $\Sigma_{n-1}$ is the mapping stack $\mathbf{Field}(\Sigma_{n-1}) = [\Sigma_{n-1}, \mathbf{Fields}]$ (or some slight variant of this, such as its "differential concretification" [FRS13a], see the examples below in **??** for more). Now the evolution of fields on $\Sigma_{n-1}$ in time is a trajectory given by a map

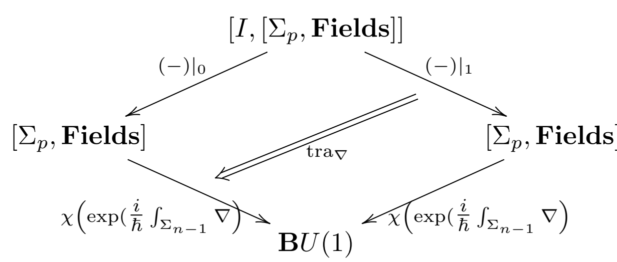
$$I \longrightarrow [\Sigma_{n-1}, \mathbf{Fields}]$$

which by the internal hom-adjunction is equivalently a field configuration

$$\phi \in [\Sigma_{n-1} \times I, \mathbf{Fields}]$$

on the cylinder over $\Sigma_{n-1}$. Hence the $n$-dimensional field theory *transgressed* to maps out of $\Sigma_{n-1}$ looks like a mechanical system with space of fields being the mapping space $[\Sigma_{n-1}, \mathbf{Fields}]$.

For instance if the field theory is the $(n = p+1)$-dimensional worldvolume theory of a $p$-brane which is charged under a $(p+1)$-form connection $\nabla$, then the action functional over such cylinders is of the same general form as that for electrically charged particles above




,

where now $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{\Sigma_p} \nabla\right)$ is an ordinary 1-form connection on the mapping space $[\Sigma_p, \mathbf{Fields}]$, obtained by *transgression* of the given $(p+1)$-form connection $\nabla$ on the moduli space of fields itself.

While in this fashion all $n$-dimensional field theories may be thought of in terms of mechanics (1-dimensional field theory) on the space of fields over $(n-1)$-dimensional spatial slices, restricting to this perspective alone loses the manifest *locality* of the theory: the data for codimension-1 manifolds $\Sigma_{n-1}$ is not necessarily represented as obtained by gluing data on smaller patches. In physics terminology, essentially this problem is known as the problem of the *non-covariance of canonical quantization*, referring to the explicit and non-natural choice of $(n-1)$-dimensional spatial slices $\Sigma_{n-1}$ of spacetime.

Imposing locality then amounts to requiring that all the data of the $n$-dimensional theory can be reconstructed by the data for codimension-$n$ manifolds, hence for collections of just points. To continue the pattern of phases $U(1)$ and higher phases $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ that we have seen emerging in codimension-0 and 1, one sees that the natural codimension-$k$ datum for a $n$-dimensional prequantum theory is that of a morphism of stacks of the form

$$[\Sigma_{n-k}, \mathbf{Fields}] \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{n-k}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \; ,$$

where on the right we have the $(n-k)$-stack of $(n-k)$-form connections on higher $(n-k)$-circle bundles (bundle $(n-k-1)$-gerbes with connection). An introduction to this perspective is in [FSS13a].

Going down to codimension $n$ and observing that if $*$ denotes the 1-point manifold then $[*, \mathbf{Fields}] \cong \mathbf{Fields}$, we see that imposing locality on a prequantum theory means that the whole theory, in any codimension, is determined by a single datum: a morphism of higher stacks of the form

$$\mathbf{L} \;:\; \mathbf{Fields} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \, .$$

Notice that such an $n$-connection on the moduli stack of fields is locally given by a differential $n$-form. Moreover, this being an $n$-form on a stack means that for each test manifold $\Sigma$ this is an $n$-form (locally) on $\Sigma$, depending on the field configurations on $\Sigma$. Such a form is familiar in, and central to, traditional prequantum field theory. It is the *Lagrangian* of the theory; whence the choice of symbol "$\mathbf{L}$".

Indeed, once such an $\mathbf{L}$ is given, all the codimension-$k$ prequantum $(n-k)$-$U(1)$-bundles with connections on the moduli stacks $[\Sigma_{n-k}, \mathbf{Fields}]$ are naturally obtained by transgression of $n$-bundles (fiber integration/push-forward on cocycles in differential cohomology):

$$\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int\limits_{\Sigma_{n-k}} \mathbf{L}\right) : [\Sigma_{n-k}, \mathbf{Fields}] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_{n-k}, \mathbf{L}]} [\Sigma_{n-k}, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{\Sigma_{n-k}} (-)\right)} \mathbf{B}^{n-k}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \, .$$

The rightmost map here is fiber integration in Deligne cohomology, seen as morphism of smooth stacks, this we describe below in 6.4.18. In particular, for $k=0$ one recovers the action functional as

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar} S_{\Sigma_n}\right) = \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{\Sigma_n} \mathbf{L}\right) \;:\; [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{Fields}] \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^0 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq U(1) \, .$$

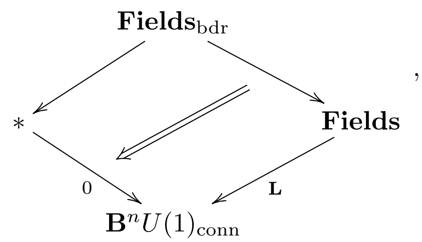
The universal curvature morphisms

$$\mathrm{curv} \;:\; \mathbf{B}^{n-k}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^{n-k+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

endow the moduli spaces of field configurations with canonical closed degree $n-k+1$ differential forms. In the traditional case, if **Fields** here is the jet bundle to a field bundle, then this is the *pre-symplectic current density* known from the "covariant phase space" formulation of classical field theory [Zu87, CrWi87]. The pre-quantum theory of such "multisymplectic" or "$n$-plectic" structure has been described systematically in [FRS13a]. For $k=1$ this is the traditional pre-symplectic structure on $[\Sigma_{n-1}, \mathbf{Fields}]$, so the "local prequantization" can be seen as a *de-transgression* of this pre-symplectic structure to a pre-$n$-plectic structure on the stack of fields.

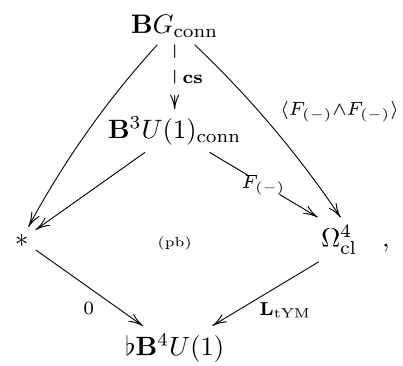
In this fashion we consider here differential $n$-cocycles $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ on higher moduli stacks as pre-quantized local Lagrangians for $n$-dimensional field theories. More precisely, these define "bulk" field theories on $n$-dimensional worldvolumes/spacetimes without physical boundaries or other singularities ("defects").

**5.2.18.1.3 Boundary field theory and twisted relative cohomology** We observe in 5.2.18.6 below that by the full cobordism theorem in the presence of boundaries and singularities, a codimension-1 boundary condition for a local prequantum field theory $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ as above is equivalently the data of a correspondence of the form




hence a choice of boundary fields $\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{bdr}}$, a choice of map from boundary fields into bulk fields, and a choice of trivialization of the pre-quantized bulk field Lagrangian after restriction to the boundary fields.

The prototypical example of this is the relation between 3d *Chern-Simons theory* and 4d "univresal topological Yang-Mills theory", which we discuss below in 7.4.2. That 3d Chern-Simons theory is a theory which ultimately deals with boundaries of 4-manifolds is something coming from the very origin of the theory [ChSi74]. In the language of smooth moduli stacks [FRS13a] this is completely formalized and summarized in the following (homotopy) commutative diagram




where $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the stack of principal $G$-bundles with connection for a compact simple and simply connected Lie group $G$,

$$\langle F_{(-)} \wedge F_{(-)} \rangle : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

is the *Chern-Weil* 4-form representing the fundamental degree four characteristic class of $G$, and

$$\mathbf{cs} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

is the Chern-Simons action functional lifted to a morphism of stacks from $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ to the 3-stack of $U(1)$-3-bundles with connection (see [FSS13a] for details). In the lower part of the diagram,

$$\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{tYM}} \; : \; \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \longrightarrow \flat \mathbf{B}^4 U(1)$$

is the canonical embedding of closed 4-forms into the stack of flat $U(1)$-4-bundles with connection. Here we are denoting it by the symbol $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{tYM}}$) since we are physically interpreting it as the the Lagrangian of *topological 4d Yang-Mills theory*. The lower part of the diagram is what exhibits 3d Chern-Simons as a boundary theory for 4d topological Yang-Mills. More precisely, since the lower part of the diagram is a homotopy pullback, it exhibits $\mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ as the *universal* boundary condition for 4d topological Yang-Mills. we will come back to this in detail in Section 7.4.2.2.

Finally, in a fully extended field theory, going from the bulk to the boundary is only the first step: one can go in higher codimension to boundaries of boundaries (or corners) or consider high codimension submanifolds of the bulk. For instance, in 4d topological Yang-Mills, this is the way Wess-Zumino-Witten theory and and Wilson loop actions appears as a codimension-2 corner theory and as codimension-3 defects, respectively. We will recover these as examples of more general corner and defect theories in Section 7.3.

A list of examples of twisted boundary fields is discussed in detail below in 7.1.

**5.2.18.2 Local worldvolumes** We discuss aspects of $(\infty, n)$-categories of cobordisms [L-TFT]. From the point of view of the local prequantum field theory which we consider, these cobordisms are "worldvolumes of branes" and the fact that they are regarded as higher morphisms in an $(\infty, n)$-category expresses the "locality" embodied in the fact that these may be decomposed and glued together. Therefore here it makes sense to think of these as "local worldvolumes". Hence we recall the basic definitions from [L-TFT] and add observations which seem not to have been stated in the literature elsewhere.

Following section 4.3 [L-TFT] we write:

**Definition 5.2.159.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and for $\chi : G \to O(n)$ a homomorphism of topological groups, write $(\mathrm{Bord}_n^G)^{\sqcup}$ for the symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-category of $n$-dimensional cobordism with $G$-structure. For $G = 1$ we write

$$\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{fr}} := \mathrm{Bord}_n^1$$

for the $(\infty, n)$-category of framed cobordims, for $\chi$ the inclusion of $SO(n)$ we write

$$\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{or}} := \mathrm{Bord}_n^{SO(n)}$$

for the $(\infty, n)$-category of oriented cobordisms, and for $\chi$ the identity we write

$$\mathrm{Bord}_n := \mathrm{Bord}_n^{O(n)}$$

for the $(\infty, n)$-category of unoriented cobordisms.

**Definition 5.2.160.** For $\mathcal{C}^{\otimes}$ a symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-category, a *local G-topological field theory* of dimension $n$ with coefficients in $\mathcal{C}$ is a monoidal $(\infty, n)$-functor

$$Z : (\mathrm{Bord}_n^G)^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\otimes} .$$

**Remark 5.2.161.** Depending on the nature of the coefficient $\mathcal{C}^{\otimes}$, local topological field theories have different interpretation. If $\mathcal{C}^{\otimes}$ is a "linear" $(\infty, n)$-category "of $n$-vector spaces" of sorts or more generally of "linear types", then $Z : (\mathrm{Bord}_n^G)^{\sqcup} \to \mathcal{C}^{\otimes}$ may be thought of as a local topological *quantum* field theory, whose value on a closed manifold of codimension 1 is interpreted as the *linear space of quantum states* over that manifold.

In contrast, here we are instead interested in *prequantum field theory*, with "prequantum" understood in the traditional sense of *geometric pre-quantization* (see [Bon14] for a review) and lifted higher dimensional local field theories as in [FRS13a]. This is a structure that is supposed to assign to a closed manifold the higher *moduli stack of fields* on that manifold, equipped with a *local Lagrangian/higher prequantum bundle* or the corresponding *action functional* that assigns to each field configuration a quantity – a *phase* – measuring its contribution to the genuine quantum states.

Often prequantum field theory data (i.e., field configurations and Lagrangian/action functional data) is called *classical* field theory data. However, strictly speaking in classical field theory phases spaces are just equipped with differential form data (pre-symplectic forms), whereas for the purposes of full (non-perturbative) quantization it is crucial that thes differential form data is lifted to line bundles with connection, which are traditionally called the *pre-quantum* line bundles. This may be thought of as a refinement of classical field theory, taking into account global phenomena such as "classical anomalies", but it is not yet *quantum*. Therefore we speak of *pre-quantum* field theory.

**Remark 5.2.162.** Since the difference matters to us, we explicitly distinguish notationally between

- the orthogonal group $O(n) \in \mathrm{Grp}(E\mathrm{Top}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ regarded as a topological group (or as a Lie group);
- the $\infty$-group $\Pi(O(n)) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ of the underlying homotopy type (represented for instance by the simplicial group structure on the singular simplicial complex of the topological space $O(n)$).

Moreover, sticking with writing $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathbf{H}$ for the internal delooping of an $\infty$-group object $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ and writing $BG \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ for the traditional classifying space of a topological group $G$, we have

$$BO(n) \simeq \mathbf{B}\Pi(O(n)) \simeq \Pi(\mathbf{B}O(n)) \simeq \Pi(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)) .$$

For $\Sigma$ a (topological or smooth) manifold, then its tangent bundle as a topological or smooth bundle is modulated by a morphism of stacks $\tau_\Sigma : \Sigma \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)$. Under $\Pi$ this becomes a map

$$\Pi(\tau_\Sigma) : \Pi(\Sigma) \longrightarrow BO(n) .$$

**Theorem 5.2.163.** *For $\mathcal{C}$ a symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-category, then the $(\infty, n-1)$-category of local framed-topological field theories, def. 5.2.160, i.e. of monoidal $(\infty, n)$-functors*

$$Z : (\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{fr}})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\otimes}$$

*is equivalent to the $\infty$-groupoid $\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{fd}}_{\sim}$ of fully dualizable objects in $\mathcal{C}$, the equivalence being exhibited by the evaluations on the point equipped with any of its $n$-framings*

$$Z \mapsto Z(\mathrm{pt}) .$$

*Via this equivalence, the $O(n)$-action on the space of $n$-framings of the point induces a $\Pi(O(n))$-$\infty$-action on $\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{fd}}$.*

This is [L-TFT, theorem 2.4.6, corollary 2.4.10]. In other words, this theorem says that local framed-topological field theories are entirely reflected in the "higher dimensional traces" on a "space of states" assigned to a point:

**Definition 5.2.164.** For $Z_V$ a framed-topological local field theory corresponding to a fully dualizable object $V \in \mathcal{C}$ by theorem 5.2.163, then for $\Sigma$ a closed $k$-dimensional manifold, we write

$$\dim_\Sigma(V) := \mathrm{tr}_\Sigma(\mathrm{id}_V) := Z(\Sigma) \in \Omega^k \mathcal{C}$$

for the image of $\Sigma$, regarded as a $k$-dimensional cobordisms, under $Z$. We say this is the "higher dimensional trace of shape $\Sigma$ of the identity on $V$".

**Example 5.2.165.** The canonical action on the abelian $\infty$-groups $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{Z}$, regarded as symmetric monoidal $(\infty, 0)$-categoris, is discussed below in prop. 7.2.10.

For our purposes it is useful to state the classification of structured-topological field theories in terms of $\infty$-actions as in 5.1.14:

**Definition 5.2.166.** For $F \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ equipped with a $\Pi(O(n))$-$\infty$-action $\rho$, then a $\rho$-structure on a manifold $\Sigma$ of dimension $k \leq n$ is a lift

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Pi(\Sigma) & \dashrightarrow & F//\Pi(O(n)) \\ & {\scriptstyle \Pi(\tau_\Sigma)\oplus\mathbb{R}^{n-k}} \searrow \quad \swarrow {\scriptstyle \rho} & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array} ,$$

where the left morphism is the composite

$$\Pi(\Sigma) \stackrel{\Pi(\tau_\Sigma)}{\longrightarrow} BO(k) \hookrightarrow BO(n)$$

of the morphism from remark 5.2.162 with the canonical inclusion, and where the right morphism is the one that exhibits the $\infty$-action by 5.1.267. Hence the $\infty$-groupoid of $\rho$-structures on $\tau_\Sigma$ is, in the notation of 5.1.2.1

$$\rho\mathrm{Struc}(\Sigma) := \prod_{BO(n)} [\Pi(\tau_\Sigma), \rho]\,.$$

**Example 5.2.167.** An important class of examples of $\Pi(O(n))$-$\infty$-actions are those determined by a cohomology class $[c] \in H^{q+1}(BO(n), A)$ as sitting in the homotopy fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} B^q A & \longrightarrow & (B^q A)//\Pi(O(n)) & & \\ & & \downarrow^{\rho_c} & & \\ & & BO(n) & \stackrel{c}{\longrightarrow} & B^{q+1}A \end{array} .$$

In this case we usually write

$$c\mathrm{Struc}(\Sigma) := \rho_c\mathrm{Struc}(\Sigma)$$

for short.

**Remark 5.2.168.** More generally one may consider structures as in def. 5.2.166 but defined in the ambient $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ instead of just in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$. Such "geometric" structures we discuss in detail below in 7.1. They include for instance Riemannian metric structure, given by lifts of maps of smooth stacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Sigma & \dashrightarrow & \mathbf{B}O(k) \\ & {}_{\tau_\Sigma}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(k) & \end{array}$$

In view of this, the structures in def. 5.2.166 might better be called "bare homotopy theoretic structures" for emphasis. Tradtionally they are sometimes referred to as "topological structures". These are the structures that we consider, following [L-TFT], as structures with which cobordisms may be equipped when forming an $(\infty, n)$-category of cobordisms. However, around prop. 5.2.203 below we see that such structures may equivalently be traded in for *fields*, and fields with moduli spaces in cohesive $\infty$-toposes $\mathbf{H}$ we consider in detail.

We consider now the extensions of the diffeomorphism group of a manifold $\Sigma$ for diffeomorphisms that preserve given $\rho$-structure, def. 5.2.167. More specifically, we first consider the *higher* extension (def. 5.1.302) of the diffeomorphism group by the homotopy-theoretic data that exhibits the choices of homotopies between a given $\rho$-structure and its pullback along a diffeomorphism.

**Definition 5.2.169.** Given a smooth manifold $\Sigma$ of dimension $k \leq n$ and equipped with a $\rho$-structure $\sigma \in (\mathbf{H}_{/BO(n)})_{/\rho}$ as in def. 5.2.166, then the *$\rho$-diffeomorphism group* of $(\Sigma, \sigma)$ is the homotopy fiber product

$$\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma, \sigma) := \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma) \underset{\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\iota\tau_\Sigma)}{\times} \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\sigma) \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

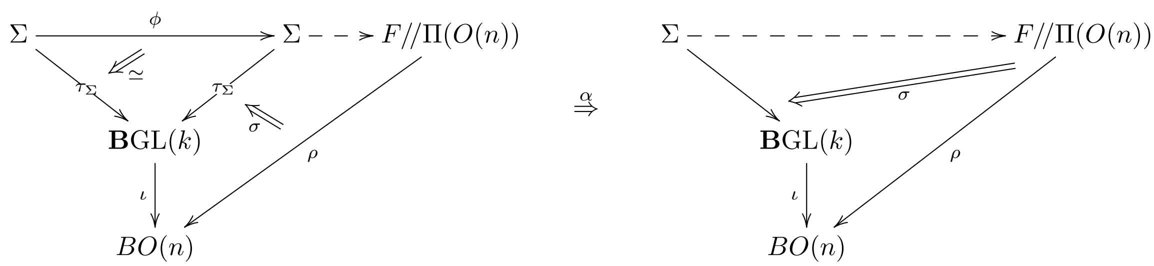
in $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ fitting into

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma, \sigma) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\sigma) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{p_\rho} \\ \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma) & \underset{\sum_\iota \circ \tau_{(-)}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\iota\tau_\Sigma) \end{array} ,$$

where $\iota : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(k) \to \Pi(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(k)) \simeq BO(k) \hookrightarrow BO(n)$ is the canonical morphism, where $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(-)$ denotes the $\mathbf{H}$-valued slice automorphism group construction of def. 5.1.35, where the right vertical morphism is from def. 5.1.38 and where $\tau_{(-)}$ is from def. 5.3.101.

**Remark 5.2.170.** The $\rho$-diffeomorphism group $\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma, \sigma)$ in def. 5.2.169 is a slight variant of the isometry group $\mathbf{Iso}(\Sigma, \sigma)$, def. 5.3.131, the difference being that in the latter case homotopies take values in the smooth stack $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)$ whereas here we have them take values in the classifying space $BO(n)$ under the canonical map $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n) \to BO(n)$.

**Remark 5.2.171.** The top right entry in the pullback in def. 5.2.169 is the automorphisms in the slice over $\rho$ of, in turn, the slice over $BO(n)$ of Smooth∞Grpd. Hence $\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma, \sigma)$ is the smooth ∞-group whose objects are diffeomorphisms $\phi : \Sigma \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Sigma$ equipped with an equivalence $\alpha : \sigma \xrightarrow{\simeq} \phi^* \sigma$, i.e.




and whose morphisms are homotopies between such $\alpha$, and so forth.

**Proposition 5.2.172.** *The $\rho$-diffeomorphism group, def. 5.2.169, is a higher extension (def. 5.1.302) of the smooth diffeomorphism group by the (geometrically discrete) ∞-group $\Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{\mathbf{H}}$*

Proof. This follows from prop. 5.1.41 in the same way as the analogous statement for the isometry ∞-groups in the proof of prop. 5.3.132. □

**Proposition 5.2.173.** *The 0-truncation $\tau_0(\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma, \sigma)) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ of the $\rho$-diffeomorphism group, def. 5.2.169 is a smooth group extension of the plain diffeomorphism group $\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)$ by*

$$\pi_0 \Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} \in \mathrm{Grp}(\infty\mathrm{Grpd}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})\,,$$

*in that there is a short exact sequence (of sheaves of groups)*

$$1 \to \pi_0 \Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{\mathbf{H}} \longrightarrow \tau_0 \mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\sigma) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma) \to 1\,.$$

Proof. Consider the maps $p : \mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma, \sigma) \to \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)$ and $i : * \to \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)$ and $z : \Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} \to * \to \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)$ as objects in the slice $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)}$. In the slice the homotopy fiber sequence of prop 5.2.172 translates to

$$z \simeq i \times p\,.$$

By lemma 6.5.1.2 in [L-Topos] this is preserved by 0-truncation to yield

$$\tau_0(z) \simeq \tau_0(i) \times \tau_0(p)$$

in the slice. But since $\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)$ is 0-truncated in Smooth∞Grpd, we have that

$$\tau_0(p) \simeq [\tau_0(\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma, \sigma)) \to \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)]$$

and

$$\tau_0(i) \simeq i$$

and

$$\tau_0(z) \simeq \left[\pi_0(\Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}}) \times \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma) \to \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)\right] .$$

Therefore translating $\tau_0(z) \simeq \tau_0(i) \times \tau_0(p)$ back from the slice to the global Smooth$\infty$Grpd gives the homotopy fiber sequence of 0-truncated objects

$$\pi_0\Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} \to \tau_0\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma) \to \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma) .$$

Here the right morphism is evidently surjective and hence this yields a short exact sequence. □

**Proposition 5.2.174.** *Also the bare homotopy type $\Pi(\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma))$ of the untruncated $\rho$-diffeomorphism group, def. 5.2.169, is a higher extension (def. 5.1.302) of the bare homotopy type $\Pi(\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma))$ of the plain diffeomorphism group by $\mathbf{Aut}_{/mathbfH}(\sigma)$, i.e. applying $\Pi$ to the sequence in prop. 5.2.172 yields a homotopy fiber sequence of $\infty$-groups*

$$\Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} \longrightarrow \Pi(\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma)) \longrightarrow \Pi(\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma))$$

*and hence of classifying spaces*

$$B\Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} \longrightarrow B\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma) \longrightarrow B\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma) .$$

Proof. By prop. 5.1.39 the pullback pasting diagram in the proof of prop. 5.2.172 extends one square further to the right:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Aut}_{/\mathbf{H}}(\sigma) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \Sigma_\rho} & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma) & \xrightarrow{\Sigma_\iota} & \mathbf{Aut}_{/BO(n)}(\iota\tau_\Sigma) & \longrightarrow & [\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} \end{array}$$

But since $F//\Pi(O(n))$ is geometrically discrete, so is $[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{\mathbf{H}}$. Now, by prop. 4.1.35, $\Pi$ preserves homotopy pullbacks over geometrically discrete objects. Hence applying $\Pi$ to the total rectangle, gives the homotopy fiber sequence in question. □

**Definition 5.2.175.** The *mapping class group* of a smooth manifold $\Sigma$ is the group of connected components of the bare homotopy type of its smooth diffeomorphism group:

$$\mathrm{MCG}(\Sigma) := \pi_0(\Pi(\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma))) .$$

The *$\rho$-mapping class group* of a smooth manifold $\Sigma$ with $\rho$-structure $\sigma$ is the group of connected components of the bare homotopy type of its $\rho$-diffeomorphism group (def. 5.2.169):

$$\mathrm{MCG}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma) := \pi_0(\Pi(\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma))) .$$

**Proposition 5.2.176.** *If the bare homotopy type of the diffeomorphism group of $\Sigma$ is simply connected, then the $\rho$-mapping class group, def. 5.2.175, is an extension of the plain mapping class group by $\pi_0\Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}}$,*

$$\pi_0\Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{MCG}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MCG}(\Sigma)$$

*Proof.* By prop. 5.2.174 we have a homotopy fiber sequence in $\infty$Grpd of the form

$$\Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} \to \Pi(\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma)) \to \Pi(\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma))\,.$$

The long exact sequence of homotopy groups induced by this starts out as

$$\cdots \to \pi_1\Pi(\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)) \to \pi_0\Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/\mathbf{H}} \to \mathrm{MCG}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma) \to \mathrm{MCG}(\Sigma)\,.$$

The claim hence follows from the assumption that $\pi_1\Pi(\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma))$ is trivial. $\square$

**Example 5.2.177.** Consider $c$-structure as in example 5.2.167, where $c : BO(n) \longrightarrow B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$ with $n \geq 1$ is an integral cocycle. Then the $c$-class of, in particular, an $(n-1)$-dimensional manifold $\Sigma$

$$c(\Sigma) : \Pi(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{\Pi(\tau_\Sigma)} BO(n-1) \hookrightarrow BO(n) \xrightarrow{c} B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$$

is trivializable, i.e. equivalent to the map that factors through the point. This implies, by the pasting law prop. 5.1.2, that a $c$-structure on $\Sigma$ is equivalently a map $\sigma : \Sigma \to B^n\mathbb{Z}$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \Sigma & \overset{\sigma}{\dashrightarrow} & (B^n\mathbb{Z})//\Pi(O(n)) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_c} & & \downarrow \\ \Pi(\Sigma) & \xrightarrow{\Pi(\tau_\Sigma)\oplus\mathbb{R}} & BO(n) & \xrightarrow{c} & B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \end{array} \quad \simeq \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} \Sigma & \overset{\sigma}{\dashrightarrow} & B^n\mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Pi(\Sigma) & \longrightarrow & * & \longrightarrow & B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \end{array}$$

Using that $[\Sigma, B^n\mathbb{Z}]$ has the structure of a group object, it follows (via multiplication with the inverse of $\sigma$ under this group structure) that

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega_\sigma[\iota\tau_\Sigma, F//\Pi(O(n))]_{/BO(n)} &\simeq \Omega_\sigma[\Sigma, B^n\mathbb{Z}] \\ &\simeq \Omega_0[\Sigma, B^n\mathbb{Z}] \\ &\simeq [\Sigma, B^{n-1}\mathbb{Z}] \end{aligned}$$

and hence in this case the $\rho$-diffeomorphism group is, by prop. 5.2.172, an extension of $\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)$ by $[X, B^{n-1}\mathbb{Z}]$. The 0-truncation of this $\infty$-groupoid is the degree-$(n-1)$ integral cohomology of $\Sigma$, and by assumption that $\Sigma$ is a manifold of dimension $n-1$ and further assuming that $\Sigma$ is orientable (there is an evident generalization of the discussion to the non-orientanle case), this is the group of integers

$$\pi_0[X, B^{n-1}\mathbb{Z}] \simeq \mathbb{Z}\,.$$

It follows by prop. 5.2.173 that in this example the 0-truncation of the $\rho$-diffeomorphism group is a $\mathbb{Z}$-extension of the diffeomorphism group:

$$\mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow \tau_0\mathrm{Diff}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma)\,.$$

Moverover if $\Pi(\mathrm{Diff}(\Sigma))$ is simply connected (for instance if $n = 3$ and $\Sigma$ any closed Riemann surface of genus $\geq 2$) then prop. 5.2.176 says that also the $\rho$-mapping class group, def. 5.2.175, is a $\mathbb{Z}$-extension

$$\mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow \mathrm{MCG}_\rho(\Sigma,\sigma) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MCG}(\Sigma)\,.$$

For $n = 3$ and $c = p_1$ the first Pontryagin class, these extensions have been considered in [Seg04] (around p. 46). We come back to this example below in 7.2.27.

**Theorem 5.2.178.** *The $(\infty, n-1)$-category of $\rho$-structured-topological local field theories, def. 5.2.160,*

$$Z : (\mathrm{Bord}_n^\rho)^\sqcup \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}^\otimes$$

*is equivalent to the $\infty$-groupoid $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/BO(n)}(F, \mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{fd}}_\sim)$ of morphisms inside diagrams of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F//\Pi(O(n)) & \dashrightarrow & \mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{fd}}_\sim//\Pi(O(n)) \\ & {}_{\rho}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array}$$

*where the left morphism is that of def. 5.2.166, while the right morphism is that corresponding to the canonical $\Pi(O(n))$-$\infty$-action of theorem 5.2.163 via prop. 5.1.267.*

This is theorem 2.4.18 in [L-TFT]. As a special of this:

**Theorem 5.2.179.** *The $(\infty, n-1)$-category of unoriented-topological local field theories*

$$Z : \mathrm{Bord}_n^\sqcup \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}^\otimes$$

*is equivalent to the $\infty$-groupoid $\prod_{BO(n)} \left(\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{fd}}_\sim//\Pi(O(n))\right)$ of $\Pi(O(n))$-homotopy fixed points, def. 5.1.269, of the $\Pi(O(n))$-$\infty$-action on the $\infty$-groupoid of fully dualizable objects in $\mathcal{C}$, from theorem 5.2.163.*

This is theorem 2.4.26 in [L-TFT].

**5.2.18.3 Local bulk fields** The following definition is alluded to in [Sc08b], is sketched in section 3.2 of [L-TFT] and is spelled out in detail in section 3 of [Hau14].

**Definition 5.2.180.** Write

$$\mathrm{Corr}_1 := \left\{ i \longleftarrow c \longrightarrow o \right\}$$

for the *category free on a single correspondence*, i.e. consisting of three objects and two non-identity morphisms from one to the other two. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ write

$$\mathrm{Corr}_n := (\mathrm{Corr}_1)^{\times^n}$$

for the $n$-fold cartesian product of this category with itself. Given an $\infty$-category $\mathcal{H}$ with finite $\infty$-limits, set

$$\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathcal{H}) := \mathrm{Func}_\infty(\mathrm{Corr}_n, \mathcal{H})$$

Under composition of correspondences by fiber products of maps to a common face, $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathcal{H})$ is naturally an an $(\infty, n)$-category. Moreover, from the cartesian product in $\mathcal{H}$ the $(\infty, n)$-category $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathcal{H})$ inherits a natural structure of symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-category, which we will denote $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathcal{H})^\otimes$.

Often we take $\mathcal{H}$ here to be an $\infty$-topos and then write $\mathbf{H}$ for it.

**Example 5.2.181.** An object in $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ is just an object in $\mathbf{H}$. A 1-morphism in $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ is a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$A_i \longleftarrow A_c \longrightarrow A_o \ .$$

In the application to prequantum field theory such a diagram is typically interpreted as follows: $A_i$ is a moduli stack of fields on an *i*ncoming piece of worldvolume and $A_o$ that of field on an *o*utgoing piece. The object $A_c$ is that of fields on a piece of worldvolume *c*onnecting these two pieces, putting them in *c*orrespondence, hence $A_c$ is the collection of *trajectories* of field configurations from the incoming to the outgoing piece.

The left map sends such a trajectory to its initial configuration, the right one to its final configuration. A 2-morphism in $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ is a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A_{ii} & \longleftarrow & A_{ic} & \longrightarrow & A_{io} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ A_{ci} & \longleftarrow & A_{cc} & \longrightarrow & A_{co} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A_{oi} & \longleftarrow & A_{oc} & \longrightarrow & A_{oo} \end{array},$$

and so on. Composition of morphisms is via homotopy fiber products in $\mathbf{H}$. For instance, the composition of the two 1-morphisms

$$X \longleftarrow Y \longrightarrow Z \quad \text{and} \quad Z \longleftarrow S \longrightarrow T$$

is the 1-morphism

$$X \longleftarrow Y \times_Z S \longrightarrow T \ .$$

In the above interpretation of these correspondences in prequantum field theory, this operation corresponds to gluing or concatenating trajectories of field configurations whenever they match over their outgoing/ingoing pieces of worldvolume, respectively. The compositions of higher morphisms are defined analogously.

The following proposition is announced as remark 3.2.3 in [L-TFT]. A formal statement and proof is in section 6 of [Hau14]. We spell of some details of the structures involved.

**Proposition 5.2.182.** *For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, every object $X \in \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes}$ is fully dualizable and is in fact its own dual. The k-dimensional spherical trace of the identity on $X$ in $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes}$ is its free k-sphere space object*

$$\dim_{S^k}(X) = \mathrm{tr}_{S^k}(\mathrm{id}_X) \simeq [\Pi(S^k), X] \,,$$

*(as in 6.4.5.2), seen as a k-fold correspondence from the terminal object to itself.*

Proof. Let $X \in \mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ be any object. We repeatedly apply lemma 6.4 in [Hau14].

The first step is to exhibit $X$ as the ordinary dual of itself. For this, the co-evaluation and evaluation morphisms $\epsilon : \mathbb{I} \to X \times X$ and $\eta : X \times X \to \mathbb{I}$ are given by the "⊂" and by the "⊃", i.e. in $\mathbf{H}$ by the correspondences

$$* \longleftarrow X \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} X \times X \qquad \text{and} \qquad X \times X \xleftarrow{\Delta_X} X \longrightarrow * \ ,$$

where $\Delta_X$ denotes the diagonal map for $X$. Notice that, by example 6.4.31, this diagonal map is equivalent to the evaluation at the two endpoints of the interval (1-disk) $\Pi(D^1)$ in the mapping space $[\Pi(D^1), X]$, so that $\epsilon$ is equivalent to

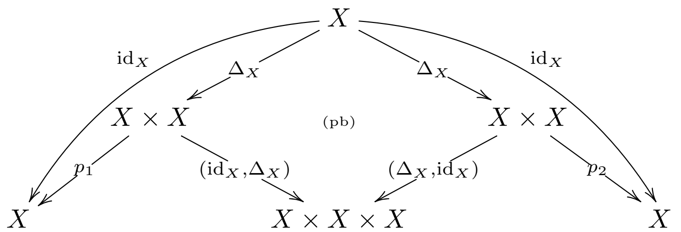
$$* \longleftarrow [\Pi(D^1), X] \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{ev}_0, \mathrm{ev}_1)} X \times X \ ,$$

and similarly for $\eta$.

For $\epsilon$ and $\eta$ to exhibit a self-duality, the zig-zig-identities

$$\mathrm{id}_X : X \xrightarrow{X \times \epsilon} X \times X \times X \xrightarrow{\eta \times X} X \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{id}_X : X \xrightarrow{\epsilon \times X} X \times X \times X \xrightarrow{\eta \times X} X$$

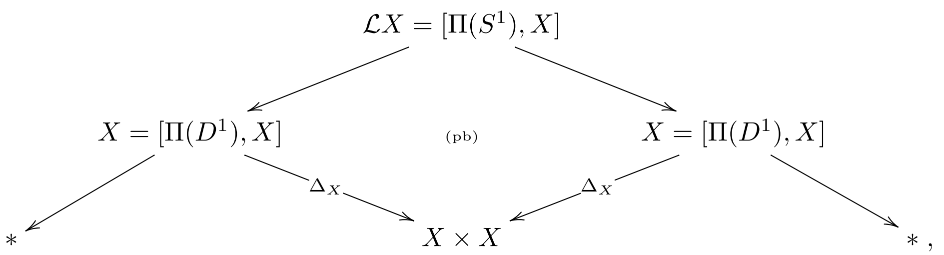
have to hold as diagram in $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$. Indeed, as a composite of correspondences this is given in **H** by




and similarly for the other composite. As a consequence, the trace of the identity of $X$

$$\mathrm{tr}(\mathrm{id}_X) := \mathbb{I} \xrightarrow{\epsilon} X \times X \xrightarrow{\eta} \mathbb{I}$$

is given by the correspondence

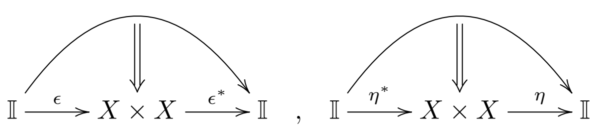



Hence

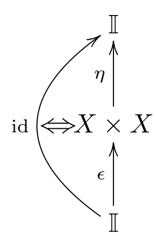
$$\dim_1(X) \simeq \mathcal{L}X \simeq [\Pi(S^1), X] ,$$

which amounts to the pictorial identity $\supset \circ \subset \cong \bigcirc$.

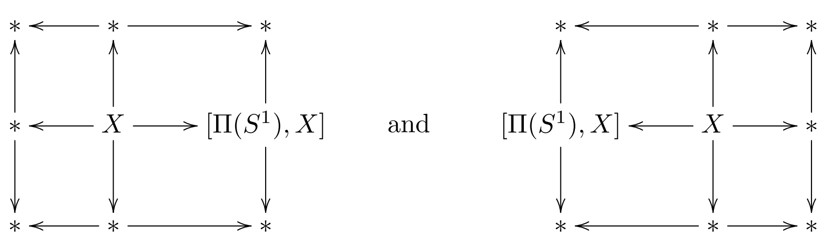
Next, to exhibit the self-duality $(\epsilon, \eta)$ on $X$ as a full duality, we need to produce full adjoints $\epsilon^*$ and $\eta^*$ of $\epsilon$ and of $\eta$, respectively with units




and similar co-units. Here we may choose $\eta^* := \epsilon$ and $\epsilon^* := \eta$ and we take their unit and its dual




to be the given by the 2-fold correspondences in **H** which exhibit the "appearance of a circle" and the "disappearance of a circle":

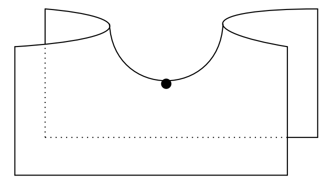


and take the co-unit and its dual

$$\begin{array}{c} X\times X \xrightarrow{\eta} \mathbb{I} \xrightarrow{\epsilon} X\times X \\ \Updownarrow \\ \underset{\mathrm{id}}{\curvearrowright} \end{array}$$

to be given by the "saddle" correspondence[22],

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
X\times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta_X\circ p_1} & X\times X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X\circ p_2} & X\times X \\
\uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \Delta_X} & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} \\
X\times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta_X} & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X\times X \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \Delta_X} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} \\
X\times X & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} & X\times X & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} & X\times X
\end{array}$$



.

Notice that here the top row of the diagram arises from the fiber product composition of correspondences given by

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
 & & & & X\times X & & & & \\
 & & & {\scriptstyle p_1}\swarrow & & \searrow{\scriptstyle p_2} & & & \\
X\times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta} & X & \longrightarrow & * & \longleftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & X\times X\,.
\end{array}$$

The zig-zag identity for these

$$\left( \mathbb{I} \xrightarrow{\epsilon} X\times X \xrightarrow{\eta} \mathbb{I} \xrightarrow{\epsilon} X\times X \right) \simeq \left( \mathbb{I} \underset{\epsilon}{\overset{\epsilon}{\rightrightarrows}} X\times X ,\ \Downarrow \mathrm{id} \right)$$

in indeed satisfied, as exhibited by the equivalence of following diagram in **H**, formed from pasting the above diagrams,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc}
* & \leftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X\times X & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} & X\times X & & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} & & X\times X \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_X} & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \Delta_X} & & & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} \\
* & \leftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X\times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta_X} & X & & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & & X\times X \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_X} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \Delta_X} & & & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} \\
* & \leftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X\times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta_X\circ p_1} & X\times X & & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X\circ p_2} & & X\times X \\
\Vert & & \Vert & & {\scriptstyle (\mathrm{pb})} & & \Vert & & & & \Vert \\
* & \leftarrow & X & \longleftarrow & [\Pi(S^1), X]\times X & \longrightarrow & X\times X & \xrightarrow{p_2} & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X\times X \\
\uparrow & & & & \uparrow & & & & \uparrow & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} \\
* & & \longleftarrow & & X\times X & & \xrightarrow{p_2} & & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X\times X \\
\downarrow & & & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_2} & & & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_X} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} \\
* & & \longleftarrow & & X & & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_X} & & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X\times X
\end{array}$$

[22]The picture of the saddle here has been grabbed from Aaron Lauda's repository.

with the “vertical identity” 2-correspondence

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
* & \longleftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X \times X \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_X} & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} \\
* & \longleftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X \times X \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_X} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_{X\times X}} \\
* & \longleftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X \times X
\end{array}
\,,
$$

by the universal property of the homotopy pullback enjoyed by $[\Pi(S^1), X]$. Checking of the other zig-zag identities is completely analogous.

In this fashion we proceed by induction. The $k$-fold units and their adjoints are given in $\mathbf{H}$ by $k$-fold correspondences of correspondences whose tips are, by the discussion in 6.4.5.2, given by

$$
* \longleftarrow X \longrightarrow [\Pi(S^k), X] \qquad \text{and} \qquad [\Pi(S^k), X] \longleftarrow X \longrightarrow * \,.
$$

By proposition 6.4.33 the $k$-fold trace on the identity then is indeed

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & & [\Pi(S^{k+1}), X] & & & \\
 & & \swarrow & & \searrow & & \\
 & X & & & & X & \\
 \swarrow & & \searrow & & \swarrow & & \searrow \\
* & & & [\Pi(S^k), X] & & & * \,.
\end{array}
$$

□

By the classification of local topological field theories in theorem 5.2.163, prop. 5.2.182 implies

**Proposition 5.2.183.** *Local framed-topological field theories with coefficients in* $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ *are equivalent to objects* $\mathbf{Fields} \in \mathbf{H}$

$$
Z_{\mathbf{Fields}} : (\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{fr}})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes} \,,
$$

*via* $Z_{\mathbf{Fields}}(*) \cong \mathbf{Fields}$.

Therefore we will mostly just write this for short as

$$
\mathbf{Fields} : (\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{fr}})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes} \,.
$$

We want to deduce now what the local framed-topological field theory defined by $\mathbf{Fields} \in \mathbf{H}$ this way assigns to an arbitrary cobordism.

**Lemma 5.2.184.** *The point*

$$
* \in \mathrm{Corr}_n(\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{\mathrm{op}})^{\otimes}
$$

*defines a local framed-topological field theory*

$$
\Pi : (\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{fr}})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{\mathrm{op}})^{\otimes}
$$

*such that a closed $k$-dimensional manifold $\Sigma$, regarded as a cobordism, is sent to its homotopy type* $\Pi(\Sigma) \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$*, regarded as a $k$-fold correspondence with all boundaries trivial. More generally a $k$-dimensional manifold $\Sigma$ with boundary $\partial\Sigma \overset{\iota}{\hookrightarrow} \Sigma$ is sent to the $k$-fold correspondence which in dimension $k$ is the correspondence*

$$
* \longrightarrow \Pi(\Sigma) \xleftarrow{\Pi(\iota)} \Pi(\partial\Sigma)
$$

*in* $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{\mathrm{op}}$ *which is induced by the boundary inclusion.*

Proof. Exactly as in the proof of prop. 5.2.182 above, following section 6 of [Hau14], one finds that the claim is true for $\Sigma$ a $k$-sphere. But by the inductive proof of the framed cobordism hypothesis in section 3.1 of [L-TFT], a $(k+1)$-dimensional local framed-topological field theory is defined from its $k$-dimensional sub-theory by specification of the $(k+1)$-sphere attachment. $\square$

This implies the following:

**Proposition 5.2.185.** *The local framed-topological field theory of 5.2.183 defined by* $\mathbf{Fields} \in \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes}$ *sends a closed $k$-dimensional manifold $\Sigma$, regarded as a cobordism, to the mapping stack*

$$[\Pi(\Sigma_k), \mathbf{Fields}] \in \mathbf{H}$$

*seen as a $k$-fold correspondence with trivial boundaries in* $\mathbf{H}$. *Generally, a $k$-dimensional cobordism $\Sigma$ with incoming boundary $\Sigma_{\mathrm{in}}$ and outgoing boundary $\Sigma_{\mathrm{out}}$ is sent to the $k$-fold correspondence whose dimension-$k$ part is the correspondence*

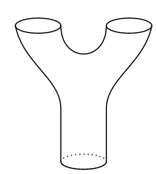
$$(\Sigma_{\mathrm{in}} \hookrightarrow \Sigma \hookleftarrow \Sigma_{\mathrm{out}}) \quad \longmapsto \quad \left( \begin{array}{ccc} & [\Pi(\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}] & \\ {}^{(-)|_{\mathrm{in}}}\swarrow & & \searrow^{(-)|_{\mathrm{out}}} \\ [\Pi(\Sigma_{\mathrm{in}}), \mathbf{Fields}] & & [\Pi(\Sigma_{\mathrm{out}}), \mathbf{Fields}] \end{array} \right)$$

*in* $\mathbf{H}$, *given by applying* $[\Pi(-), \mathbf{Fields}]$ *to the boundary inclusion.*

**Example 5.2.186.** The higher trace of shape the three-holed-sphere (pair-of-pants, trinion) on $X \in \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes}$ is given by taking the saddle-diagram from the proof of prop. 5.2.182 and tracing out two of the sides. This yields the composition of the following pasting diagram of 2-dimensional correspondences:[23]

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc} * & \longleftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X \times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta_X \circ p_1} & X \times X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X \circ p_2} & X \times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta_X} & X & \longrightarrow & * \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow^{\mathrm{id}_X} & & \uparrow^{\mathrm{id}_{X \times X}} & & \uparrow^{\Delta_X} & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{id}_{X \times X}} & & \uparrow^{\mathrm{id}_X} & & \uparrow \\ * & \longleftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X \times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta_X} & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X \times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta_X} & X & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{id}_X} & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{id}_{X \times X}} & & \downarrow^{\Delta_X} & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{id}_{X \times X}} & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{id}_X} & & \downarrow \\ * & \longleftarrow & X & \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} & X \times X & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{id}_{X \times X}} & X \times X & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_{X \times X}} & X \times X & \xleftarrow{\Delta_X} & X & \longrightarrow & * \end{array}$$

$$=: \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} * & \longleftarrow & [\Pi(S^1), X] \times [\Pi(S^1), X] & \longrightarrow & * \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ * & \longleftarrow & [\Pi(\mathrm{Fig8}), X] & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longleftarrow & [\Pi(S^1), X] & \longrightarrow & * \end{array}$$



It follows that the higher trace of shape the two-punctured-torus evaluated on $X$ is the composite of this

[23]The picture of the trinion here has been grabbed from Aaron Lauda's repository.

with its adjoint (the same diagram, reflected about the horizontal axis),

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
* & \longleftarrow & [\Pi(S^1), X] & \longrightarrow & * \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\
* & \longleftarrow & [\Pi(\mathrm{Fig8}), X] & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
* & \longleftarrow & [\Pi(S^1), X] \times [\Pi(S^1), X] & \longrightarrow & * \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\
* & \longleftarrow & [\Pi(\mathrm{Fig8}), X] & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
* & \longleftarrow & [\Pi(S^1), X] & \longrightarrow & *
\end{array}
$$

Composing this with itself $g$ times and then composing the remaining two nontrivial boundaries with the appearance-of-a-circle and the vanishing-of-a-circle yields the diagram exhibiting the action of the closed genus-$g$ surface on $X$.

**Example 5.2.187.** Let $\mathbf{H}$ be a cohesive $\infty$-topos and let $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ be a group object with delooping $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathbf{H}$. Then for $\Sigma$ any closed manifold, the mapping stack

$$
\mathbf{Loc}_G(\Sigma) := [\Pi(\Sigma), \mathbf{B}G]
$$

is the moduli stack of flat $G$-principal $\infty$-connections on $\Sigma$ (sometimes called the moduli stack of "$G$-local systems").

We now consider the "anomaly cancellation" for local framed-topological field theories as in prop. 5.2.183, i.e. their extensions to local topological field theories on cobordisms with $G$-structure.

In section 3.2 of [L-TFT] the following is stated as a fact.

**Proposition 5.2.188.** *The $O(n)$-$\infty$-action induced on $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ via prop. 5.2.183 is trivial.*

Hence theorem 5.2.179 gives:

**Proposition 5.2.189.** *Assuming proposition 5.2.188, then for all homomorphisms $\chi : G \to O(n)$, monoidal $(\infty, n)$-functors*

$$
Z_{\mathbf{Fields}} : (\mathrm{Bord}_n^G)^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes}
$$

*are equivalent to objects of $\mathbf{H}$ equipped with $G$-$\infty$-action, hence to $(\infty, 1)$-functors*

$$
BO(n) \longrightarrow \mathbf{H} .
$$

**Remark 5.2.190.** By prop. 5.1.267, an $\infty$-action of $\Pi(O(n))$ on an object $\mathbf{Fields} \in \mathbf{H}$ is equivalently incarnated in the homotopy fiber sequence

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{Fields} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)) \\
 & & \downarrow \\
 & & \mathbf{B}\Pi(O(n))
\end{array}
$$

that exhibits the homotopy quotient of the action (prop. 5.1.267). Here we assume that $\mathbf{H}$ is cohesive and write explicitly $\Pi(O(n))$ for the underlying $\infty$-group and to distinguish from the topological or Lie group $O(n)$, which may also exist as a group object in $\mathbf{H}$.

By generalizing the discussion below claim 3.2.4 in [L-TFT] from $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ to general $\mathbf{H}$, the local unoriented topological field theory

$$\mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)) \;:\; \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$$

defined by such an action via remark 5.2.190 sends a closed $k$-dimensional cobordism $\Sigma$ with $n$-stable tangent bundle classified by $T\Sigma \oplus \mathbb{R}^{n-k} : \Sigma \to BO(n)$ to the $k$-fold correspondence with trivial boundary whose tip is

$$\Sigma \mapsto [\Pi(\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n))]_{/BO(n)}\,,$$

where on the right we have the internal hom whose global points are maps over $BO(n)$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Pi(\Sigma) & \dashrightarrow & \mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)) \\ & {\scriptstyle T\Sigma\oplus\mathbb{R}^{n-k}}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array}$$

**Example 5.2.191.** Consider the homotopy fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Met} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}O(n) \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho} \\ & & BO(n) \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, where the vertical morphism is the canonical one from the smooth moduli stack of the orthogonal group, regarded as a Lie group, to its homotopy type:

$$\rho : \mathbf{B}O(n) \longrightarrow \Pi(\mathbf{B}O(n)) \simeq BO(n) \simeq B\mathrm{GL}(n)\,.$$

By the discussion in 5.1.14 this exhibits $\mathbf{Met}$ as equipped with an $\Pi(O(n))$-$\infty$-action. Regarding $\mathbf{Met}$ as a moduli stack of fields in $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ as in remark 5.2.190, one finds that this is the moduli stack of Riemannian metrics, in that lifts

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Sigma & \dashrightarrow & \mathbf{B}O(n) \\ & {\scriptstyle \iota\tau_\Sigma}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array}$$

are equivalently choices of vielbein fields on $\Sigma$. On the other hand, what appears in the field theory are just

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Pi(\Sigma) & \dashrightarrow & \mathbf{B}O(n) \\ & {\scriptstyle \Pi(\tau_\Sigma)}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array}\,.$$

**Example 5.2.192.** Let $\mathbf{Fields} = B^n\mathbb{Z}$ and let $p$ be an integral cohomology class of $BO(n)$ in degree $n+1$. Then this induces a $\Pi(O(n))$-$\infty$-action on $B^n\mathbb{Z}$ exhibited via prop. 5.1.267 by the long homotopy fiber sequence of $p$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} B^n\mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & (B^n\mathbb{Z})//\Pi(O(n)) & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \\ & & BO(n) & \stackrel{p}{\longrightarrow} & B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \end{array}\,.$$

What the corresponding local unoriented-topological field theory

$$(B^n\mathbb{Z})//O(n) \;:\; \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$$

assigns to $\Sigma$ is the space

$$\Sigma \mapsto p\mathrm{Struc}(\Sigma)$$

of $p$-structures on (the $n$-stabilized tangent bundle) of $\Sigma$, def. 5.2.166 and remark 5.2.167, hence the space of trivializations of $p(T\Sigma \oplus \mathbb{R}^{n-k})$. This is because, by the universal property of the homotopy pullback, there is an equivalence

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \Sigma & \dashrightarrow & B^n\mathbb{Z}//\Pi(O(n)) \\ & {}_{T\Sigma\oplus\mathbb{R}^{n-k}}\searrow & \downarrow \\ & & BO(n) \end{array} \right\} \simeq \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \Sigma & \longrightarrow & * \\ {\scriptstyle T\Sigma\oplus\mathbb{R}^{n-k}}\downarrow & \swarrow\!\!\!\!= & \downarrow \\ BO(n) & \underset{p}{\longrightarrow} & B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \end{array} \right\}$$

**5.2.18.4 Local action functionals** In addition to field configurations, prequantum field theory encodes the local *action functionals* or *Lagrangians* on these. This involves equipping all the objects described above with maps to a given space "of phases", a suitable higher version of the group $U(1)$ in which traditional action functionals take values. For instance, in the introduction we considered Lagrangians of the form $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, in which the space of phases was the $n$-stack of $U(1)$ $n$-bundles with connection. More generally, we will choose the space of phases to be a commutative group object **Phases** in $\mathbf{H}$. Clearly, since we are working in a higher categorical setting, "commutative" here means "commutative up to coherent homotopies", and the same consideration applies to the group structure of the space of phases. That is **Phases** is an $E_\infty$-group object in $\mathbf{H}$, hence a connective spectrum object in $\mathbf{H}$.

**Remark 5.2.193.** The fact that here we consider **Phases** to be group object in $\mathbf{H}$ instead of in a more general stack of symmetric monodical $(\infty, n)$-categories is related to the fact that here we are considering pre-quantum field theory as opposed to quantum field theory. For the latter one chooses a representation $\mathbf{Phases} \to \mathcal{C}$ of the space of phases on a genuine $(\infty, n)$-category and postcomposes the Lagrangian with this, see [Nui13].

The general mechanism to describe local action functionals is based on the following simple observation.

**Definition 5.2.194.** The commutative group structure on **Phases** endows the slice topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}}$ with a natural tensor product lifting the cartesian product of $\mathbf{H}$ by

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{Fields}_1 \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{L}_1} \\ \mathbf{Phases} \end{array}\right] \otimes \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{Fields}_2 \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{L}_2} \\ \mathbf{Phases} \end{array}\right] := \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{Fields}_1 \times \mathbf{Fields}_2 \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_1^*\mathbf{L}_1 + p_2^*\mathbf{L}_2} \\ \mathbf{Phases} \end{array}\right] := \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{Fields}_1 \times \mathbf{Fields}_2 \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle (p_1^*\mathbf{L}_1, p_2^*\mathbf{L}_2)} \\ \mathbf{Phases} \times \mathbf{Phases} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle +} \\ \mathbf{Phases} \end{array}\right],$$

where on the right we use the group structure on **Phases**. Here $p_1$ and $p_2$ are the corresponding projections. We call this the *phased tensor product* and write $(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$ for the resulting symmetric monoidal $\infty$-category.

**Remark 5.2.195.** The tensor unit of the phased tensor product in def. 5.2.194 is the unit inclusion:

$$\mathbb{I} = \left[\begin{array}{c} * \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle 0} \\ \mathbf{Phases} \end{array}\right].$$

Applying the inverse operation on **Phases** to a phased object

$$\left[\begin{array}{c}\mathbf{Fields}\\ \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle -\mathbf{L}}\\ \mathbf{Phases}\end{array}\right] \quad := \quad \left[\begin{array}{c}\mathbf{Fields}\\ \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{L}}\\ \mathbf{Phases}\\ \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle -}\\ \mathbf{Phases}\end{array}\right]$$

is *not* an inverse or dual operation in $(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$ in general (unless $\mathbf{Fields} \simeq *$). It is however going to be the dualization operation in *correspondences* in $(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$, this is the statement of prop. 5.2.198 below.

We may therefore lift Definition 5.2.180 from fields to fields equipped with action functionals as follows.

**Definition 5.2.196.** The symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-category $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$ is the $(\infty, n)$-category of $n$-fold correspondences in the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}}$ as in def. 5.2.180 but equipped with the symmetric monoidal product induced by the phased tensor product $\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}$ of $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}}$ of def. 5.2.194.

This is a special case of def. 4.6 with cor. 7.5 in [Hau14].

**Remark 5.2.197.** The forgetful morphism $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}} \to \mathbf{H}$, which forgets the map to the space of phases, induces a natural forgetful monoidal contravariant functor

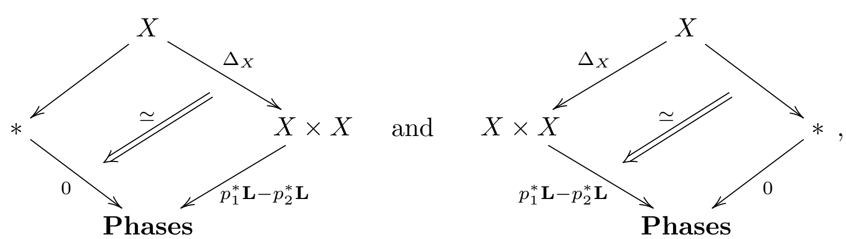
$$\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes} .$$

Thanks to the commutative group structure on the space of phases, we have the following generalization of Proposition 5.2.182.

**Proposition 5.2.198.** *Every object* $\mathbf{L} \in \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$ *is fully dualizable, its full dual being* $-\mathbf{L}$ *(as in remark 5.2.195).*

Proof. This is proven in section 7 of [Hau14]. We indicate some of the higher duals.

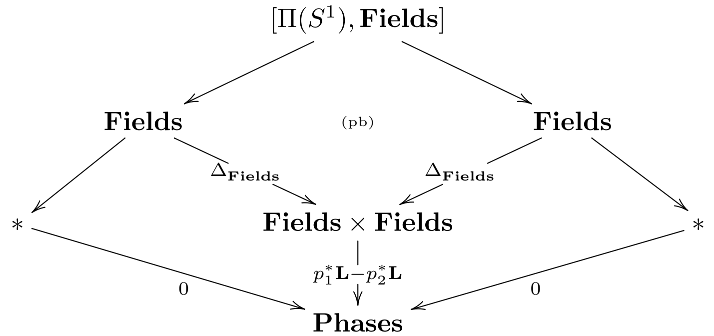
First, that the dual of $\mathbf{L}$ is $-\mathbf{L}$, is implied by the proof of corollary 7.8 in [Hau14]. Then it follows with prop. 7.6 in [Hau14] (for $A = *$ and $B = *$) that the co-evaluation map $\mathbb{I} \to \mathbf{L} \otimes (-\mathbf{L})$ and evaluation map $\mathbf{L} \otimes (-\mathbf{L}) \to \mathbb{I}$ are given by the canonical diagrams




in $\mathbf{H}$, respectively. Here $p_1$ and $p_2$ denote projection to the first and second factors, respectively, and the squares are filled by the canonical equivalence $p_1 \circ \Delta_X \cong p_2 \circ \Delta_X$. For convenience we will speak of this equivalence in the following as an identity (as in any non-contrived component presentation of the situation it is an actual identity).

By theorem 7.7 in [Hau14] all the higher duals, i.e. all the adjoints of morphisms, are given by reversion of correspondences. Hence the adjointness property of $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$ is that of $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes}$ (with the tensor product induced by the Cartesian product on the slice $\infty$-topos), the only difference is in their duality of objects.

Hence it follows that the higher duality structure on any $\mathbf{L}$ is obtained as in the proof of prop. 5.2.182. In particular to the circle $S^1$, regarded as a 1-morphism in $\mathrm{Bord}_n$, is assigned the following correspondence in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}}$



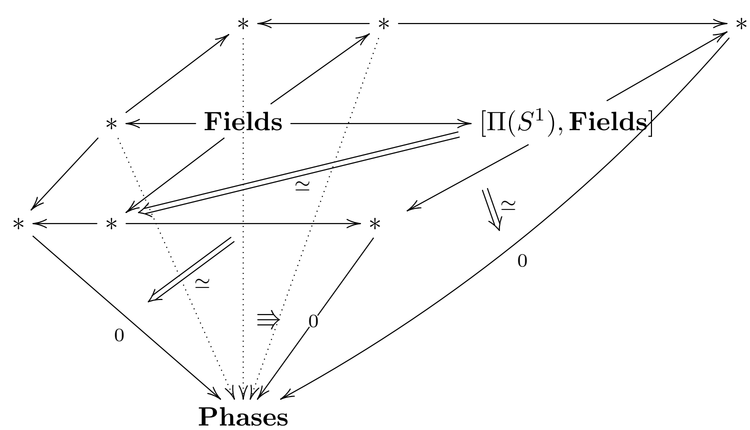

where the top two morphisms are restrictions to the left and right semicircles (hemispheres) of $S^1$ which are both homotopic to the point. By the universal property of the pullback, this induces a morphism

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}\int_{S^1}[\Pi(\Sigma),\mathbf{L}]\right) : [\Pi(S^1),\mathbf{Fields}] \longrightarrow \Omega\mathbf{Phases},$$

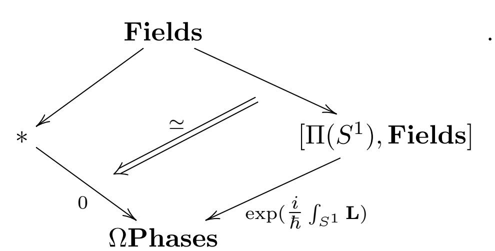
into the loop space object of the stack **Phases** of higher phases. Notice that since **Phases** is an abelian group object in $\mathbf{H}$ then so is $\Omega$**Phases**.

Unwinding this in components shows that the displayed homotopy in the middle exhibits the circle by two semi-circles that start and end at the same point. The whiskering with the vertical map evaluates the action functional on the first semi-circle and minus the action functional on the second, hence evaluates the action functional itself on one full copy of the circle. So this is the transgression of the Lagrangian to an action functional on the loop space.

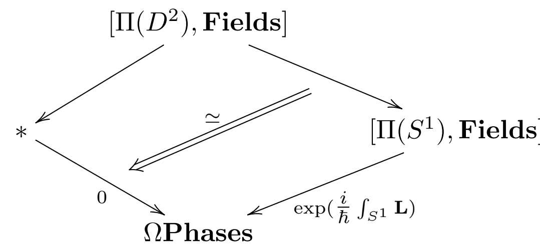
Next, the "left hemi-2-sphere" is the 3-morphism (second order homotopy)




which in turn is equivalently the first order homotopy

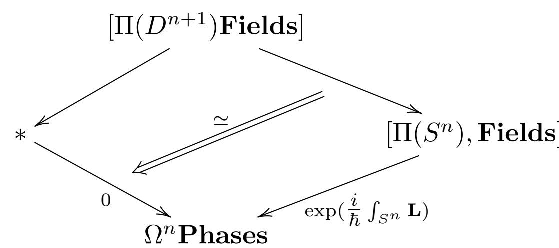


which by prop. 7.6 in [Hau14] is the unit of the adjunction that exhibits the identity as adjoint to itself, hence this is itself again an identity (the canonical equivalence). But notice that for further composing this with, in turn, its own adjoint, it is convenient to replace the tip here under the equivalence **Fields** $\simeq [\Pi(D^2), \mathbf{Fields}]$. Doing so yields




where the homotopy filling this is now the contracting homotopy that takes a disk in **Fields** to the homotopy in $\Omega$**Phases** contracting the images under **L** of its boundary disk in **Fields**. Following the above discussion, we may think of this as being the parallel transport of **L** across this disk.

The analogous statement holds for all the higher semi-$n$-spheres, which are given by the homotopy




given by parallel transport over $(n+1)$-disks. In particular, forming the $(n+1)$-sphere by gluing to such hemispheres, one finds that it is sent to

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}\int_{S^{n+1}} \mathbf{L}\right) : [S^n, \mathbf{Fields}] \longrightarrow \Omega^n \mathbf{Phases}\,.$$

Notice that this implies immediately that for $\Sigma = S^{n_1} \times S^{n_2}$ the product of two spheres, then applying the previous argument with **L** replaced by $\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{S^{n_2}} \mathbf{L})$ one finds that $\Sigma$ is sent to

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}\int\limits_{S^{n_1}\times S^{n_2}} \mathbf{L}\right) : [S^{n_1} \times S^{n_2}, \mathbf{Fields}] \simeq [S^{n_1}, [S^{n_2}, \mathbf{Fields}]] \longrightarrow \Omega^{n_1+n_2}\mathbf{Phases}\,.$$

□

Therefore we have the following analogue of Proposition 5.2.183.

**Proposition 5.2.199.** *A morphism* $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \longrightarrow \mathbf{Phases}$ *in* **H** *equivalently determines a local framed-topological field theory with coefficients in* $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$,

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right) \;:\; (\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{fr}})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}\,,$$

*characterized by the condition* $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)(*) \simeq \mathbf{L}$.

**Remark 5.2.200.** In view of the local topological field theories it defines, we may call a morphism $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{Phases}$ a *local action functional* or *local Lagrangian* for the field theory with **Fields** its universal moduli stack of fields. Notice how the concept of local action and local Lagrangian unify here: the local Lagrangian is the value of the local (extended) action functional on the point.

**Remark 5.2.201.** Since fully extended topological field theories are completely determined by their value on the point, a local action functional on a prescribed moduli stack of fields **Fields** is equivalent to the datum of a symmetric monoidal lift

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}}) \\ & \overset{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{fr}} & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{Fields}]{} & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}) \end{array} ,$$

This is the perspective in section 3 of [FHLT09], generalized here from field theories with geometrically discrete to those with cohesively geometric moduli stacks of fields, as envisioned in [Sc08b].

**Example 5.2.202.** For $G, A \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ group objects, with $A$ an abelian group object, a map

$$\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n A$$

is a geometric $\infty$-group cocycle $\mathbf{L} \in H^n_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G, A)$. Regarded as a local Lagrangian as in prop. 5.2.199, then by example 5.2.187 the local prequantum field theory that this induces sends a closed $(n-1)$-dimensional manifold $\Sigma$ to the transgression of $\mathbf{L}$ to an $A$-line bundle

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}\int_\Sigma [\Sigma, \mathbf{L}]) \; : \; \mathbf{Loc}_G(\Sigma) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}A$$

on the moduli stack of $G$-local systems on $\Sigma$ (regarded as an $(n-1)$-fold correspondence with trivial boundary over $\mathbf{B}^n A$).

**5.2.18.5 Anomaly cancellation** We now discuss the anomaly cancellation for the field theories given by prop. 5.2.199. We begin with field theories with fields spaces in $\infty$Grpd and then generalize to field stacks in more general $\infty$-toposes $\mathbf{H}$.

**Theorem 5.2.203.** *For* $\mathrm{Phases}^{\otimes}$ *a symmetric monoidal* $(\infty, n)$*-category, then the* $\infty$*-groupoid of local unoriented-topological field theories of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/\mathrm{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}} \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\sqcup} & \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Fields}//\Pi(O(n))]{} & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes} \end{array}$$

*lifting an unoriented bulk field theory* $\mathrm{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)) \xrightarrow{\rho} BO(n)$ *as in remark 5.2.190, is equivalent to to that of* $\rho$*-structured-topological field theories (def.5.2.166) of the form*

$$(\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\rho})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Phases}^{\otimes}$$

This is prop. 3.2.8 in [L-TFT].

**Remark 5.2.204.** In terms of quantum field theory jargon, theorem 5.2.203 may be read as saying that "Background structures are fields.": a field theory on cobordisms with $\rho$-structure is equivalently a field theory on cobordisms with no structure, but with field content whose moduli space is the homotopy fiber of $\rho$. This may be thought of as formalizing the idea of what in physics is known as *general covariance*.

Now we generalize this to fields with richer geometric moduli stacks.

**Proposition 5.2.205.** *Let* $\mathbf{H}$ *be a cohesive* $\infty$*-topos that admits a site of definition* $\mathcal{S}$ *all whose objects* $U \in \mathcal{S}$ *are geometrically contractible,* $\Pi(U) \simeq *$.[24] *Let* $\mathbf{Phases} = \mathrm{Phases} \in \infty Grpd \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ *be a discrete object.*

*Then the* $\infty$*-groupoid of local unoriented-topological field theories of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}} \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\sqcup} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n))} & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes} \end{array}$$

*lifting an unoriented bulk field theory* $\mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n))$ *as in remark 5.2.190, is equivalent to that of* $\Pi(O(n))$*-equivariant local Lagrangians, hence (by prop. 5.1.267), to diagrams in* $\mathbf{H}$ *of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}//\Pi(O(n))} & \mathrm{Phases}//\Pi(O(n)) \\ & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array},$$

*where the left map exhibits the given* $\Pi(O(n))$*-*$\infty$*-action on* $\mathbf{Fields}$ *while the right map exhibits the canonical* $\Pi(O(n))$*-*$\infty$*-action on* Phases*, regarded as an* $(\infty, n)$*-category with duals, via prop. 5.2.183.*

*Moreover, the analogous statement is true for local oriented-topological field theories and* $SO(n)$*-*$\infty$*-actions.*

Proof. First consider the case $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. In that case, prop. 5.2.203 says that the first datum in the above statement is equivalent to local $\rho$-structured topological field theories of the form

$$(\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\rho})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Phases}^{\otimes},$$

where a $\rho$-structure on a $k$-dimensional $\Sigma$ is (def. 5.2.166) a lift

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Pi(\Sigma) & \dashrightarrow & \mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)) \\ & {}_{T\Sigma \oplus \mathbb{R}^{n-k}}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array}.$$

From this the statement for $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ follows with the equivalence in theorem 5.2.178.

Now notice that by the proof of prop. 3.2.8 in [L-TFT], this equivalence in the case of $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is a *natural* equivalence, natural in the choice of the unoriented bulk field theory $\mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n))$.

Let then

$$\mathbf{H} \underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{L}{\leftarrow}} \mathrm{Func}(\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}, \infty\mathrm{Grpd})$$

be the reflection exhibiting $\mathcal{S}$ as an $\infty$-site of definition. The right adjoint is homotopy full and faithful and the left adjoint $L$ preserves finite $\infty$-limits (in addition to preserving all $\infty$-colimits, being a left adjoint).

For each $U \in \mathcal{S}$, write

$$\mathbf{Fields}_U := \mathbf{H}(U, \mathbf{Fields})$$

Observe, in view of prop. 5.1.267, that setting

$$\mathbf{Fields}_U//\Pi(O(n)) := \mathbf{H}(U, \mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)))$$

[24] This includes all $\mathbf{H}$ with an $\infty$-cohesive site of definition, hence all examples of interest here.

exhibits an $\Pi(O(n))$-$\infty$-action on $\mathbf{Fields}_U$ since $\mathbf{H}(U,-)$ preserves $\infty$-limits and since by assumption on the site $\mathcal{S}$ we have $\mathbf{H}(U, BO(n)) \simeq BO(n)$, so that the defining homotopy fiber sequence

$$\mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)) \to BO(n)$$

naturally induces a system of homotopy fiber sequences

$$\mathbf{Fields}_U \to \mathbf{Fields}_U//\Pi(O(n)) \to BO(n)\,.$$

It follows that a local unoriented-topological field theory with field spaces in $\mathbf{H}$ as in the statemet of the proposition may equivalently be regarded as an $(\infty,n)$-sheaf of local unoriented-topological field theories in $\infty$Grpd:

$$U \quad \mapsto \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/\mathrm{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}} \\ & \nearrow^{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{L}_U//\Pi(O(n))\right)} & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\sqcup} & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{Fields}_U//\Pi(O(n))]{} & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\infty\mathrm{Grpd})^{\otimes} \end{array} \right\}.$$

Now the statement of the proposition for $\mathbf{H} = \infty$Grpd applies objectwise for each $U$, and since it is *natural* in $U$ this gives that the above is equivalent to the $\infty$-sheaf of diagrams

$$U \quad \mapsto \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Fields}_U//\Pi(O(n)) & \overset{\mathbf{L}_U//\Pi(O(n))}{\dashrightarrow} & \mathrm{Phases}//\Pi(O(n)) \\ & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array} \right\}$$

in $\infty$Grpd. This being an $\infty$-sheaf, it is equivalent to the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)) & \overset{\mathbf{L}//\Pi(O(n))}{\dashrightarrow} & \mathrm{Phases}//\Pi(O(n)) \\ & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$.

Finally, that the analogous statement also holds for oriented-topological field theories and $SO(n)$-$\infty$-actions follows by the evident variant of prop. 3.2.8 in [L-TFT] by applying prop. 3.2.7 of [L-TFT] with $\mathcal{B} = \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{or}}$. □

**Example 5.2.206.** For $\mathbf{Fields} = *$, prop. 5.2.205 says that the possible unoriented-topological refinements of the framed field theory defined by the local Lagrangian

$$\mathbf{L} : * \longrightarrow \mathbf{Phases}$$

(which is hence just a point of **Phases**) are equivalent to $\Pi(O(n))$-homotopy fixed points in **Phases**.

A partial generalization of example 5.2.206 is essentially conjecture 1.4 in [Hau14], which says that the canonical $O(n)$-$\infty$-action on $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$ is induced from just that on $\mathbf{Phases}^{\otimes}$.

**5.2.18.6 Boundary field theory** We now turn to the discussion of boundary data for a local prequantum field theory.

Notice that the cobordism theorem in the version of theorem 2.4.6 in [L-TFT] essentially says that $\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\otimes}$ is the symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-category with fully dualizable objects which is freely generated from a single object:

$$\mathrm{Bord}_n \simeq \mathrm{FreeSMD}(\{*\})\,.$$

Under this equivalence that single object is indeed identified with the manifold $\mathbb{R}^0$, which in the above discussion is what locally supports a *bulk field theory.* But theorem 4.3.11 in [L-TFT] provides a considerable generalization of this situation. This theorem essentially says that for any collection of $(\infty, n)$-categorical generating cells, there is a notion of smooth manifolds *with singularities* such that the $(\infty, n)$-category $\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{sing}\otimes}$ of $n$-dimensional cobordisms of manifolds with such singularities is the symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-category with fully dualizable objects which is free on the given collection of cells.

We consider this now for a singularity that corresponds to a 1-morphism of the form

$$\emptyset \longrightarrow *\,,$$

hence a morphism from the tensor unit to a generating object. Regarded as a cobordism, this is going to be interpreted as a cobordism that is much like the edge $[0,1] : * \longrightarrow *$, only that to the left it is not possible to sew further edges to this. Hence under the cobordism theorem for manifolds with singularities, the above 1-cell is interpreted as a cobordism of the form

$$\vdash\!\!\!\longrightarrow * \;,$$

hence by a 1-dimensional cobordism that has a constrained boundary on the left.

**Definition 5.2.207.** Write

$$\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\partial\otimes} := \mathrm{FreeSMD}(\{\emptyset \to *\})$$

for the symmetric monoidal $\infty$-category of cobordisms of manifolds with codimension-1 boundaries, correspoding to the 1-cell datum $\{\emptyset \to *\}$ under theorem 4.3.11 in [L-TFT].

Notice that by free-ness and by construction, there is a canonical inclusion

$$\mathrm{Bord}_n{}^{\otimes} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\partial\otimes}$$

**Definition 5.2.208.** Let $\mathbf{Fields} : \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\otimes} \to \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ be a choice of bulk fields according to prop. 5.2.183, then a choice of *boundary fields* for these bulk fields is a choice of extension $\mathbf{Fields}^{\partial}$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Bord}_n{}^{\otimes} & \xrightarrow{Z_{\mathbf{Fields}}} & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{Z_{\mathbf{Fields}_\partial}} & \\ \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\partial\otimes} & & \end{array}\,.$$

The following immediate consequence is worth recording.

**Proposition 5.2.209.** *A choice of boundary fields for* **Fields** *is equivalently a choice of moduli stack* $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \in \mathbf{H}$ *together with a choice of of morphism*

$$\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathbf{Fields}$$

*in* $\mathbf{H}$.

Proof. Since $\mathrm{Bord}_n^\partial$ is free symmetric monoidal with duals on a single morphism out of the unit object, a symmetric monoidal functor $\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\partial\otimes} \to \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ is equivalent to the datum of a 1-morphism in $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ out of $*$. Requiring this to be an extension of the bulk fields amounts to asking that this 1-morphism in $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})$ has target **Fields**, and so it is a correspondence in **H** of the form

$$* \longleftarrow \mathbf{Fields}_\partial \longrightarrow \mathbf{Fields} \;.$$

Since $*$ is the terminal object in **H**, this is equivalent to the datum of the morphism $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathbf{Fields}$. □

**Remark 5.2.210.** Therefore we will write $(\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathbf{Fields})$ for $Z_{\mathbf{Fields}_\partial}$. Notice that hence the $\infty$-*category of boundary fields* for given bulk **Fields** is the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Fields}}$.

The boundary field theory version of remark 5.2.185 about the bulk field theory is now the following (this was pointed out by Domenico Fiorenza).

**Proposition 5.2.211.** *A boundary field assignment*

$$(\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathbf{Fields}) \;:\; (\mathrm{Bord}_n^\partial)^\otimes \to \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^\otimes$$

*sends cobordisms* $(\partial\Sigma \hookrightarrow \Sigma) \in \mathrm{Bord}_n^\partial$ *with marked boundary* $\partial\Sigma$ *to*

$$(\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathbf{Fields}) \;:\; (\partial\Sigma \hookrightarrow \Sigma) \;\mapsto\; [\Pi(\partial\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}_\partial] \underset{[\Pi(\partial\Sigma),\mathbf{Fields}]}{\times} [\Pi(\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}]\,,$$

*hence to the stack of diagrams in* **H** *of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Pi(\partial\Sigma) & \xrightarrow{\phi_\partial} & \mathbf{Fields}_\partial \;. \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ \Pi(\Sigma) & \xrightarrow{\phi} & \mathbf{Fields}\;. \end{array}$$

Proof. Every cobordism $\Sigma$ with marked boundary component $\partial\Sigma$ decomposes as the gluing of the cylinder $(\;\vdash\!\!\longrightarrow\!*\;) \times \partial\Sigma$ with $\Sigma$ regarded as a manifold with unmarked boundary. Since $\vdash\!\!\longrightarrow\!*$ is mapped to the corespondence

$$* \longleftarrow \mathbf{Fields}_\partial \longrightarrow \mathbf{Fields}$$

in **H**, we find that $(\;\vdash\!\!\longrightarrow\!*\;) \times \partial\Sigma$ is mapped to

$$* \longleftarrow [\Pi(\partial\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}_\partial] \longrightarrow [\Pi(\partial\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}] \;.$$

On the other hand, on the "piece" given by $\Sigma$ with unmarked boundary $\partial\Sigma$ the field theory reduces to the one associated with the stack **Fields**, and we know from Remark 5.2.185 that $\partial\Sigma \hookrightarrow \Sigma$ is mapped by **Fields** to

$$[\Pi(\partial\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}] \longleftarrow [\Pi(\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}] \longrightarrow * \;.$$

The composite of these two contributions is

$$* \longleftarrow [\Pi(\partial\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}_\partial] \underset{[\Pi(\partial\Sigma),\mathbf{Fields}]}{\times} [\Pi(\Sigma), \mathbf{Fields}] \longrightarrow * \;,$$

as claimed. □

**Remark 5.2.212** (twisted relative cohomology)**.** In words this says that for the boundary field theory $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathbf{Fields}$, a field configurations on a manifold $\Sigma$ with constrained boundary $\partial\Sigma$ is a bulk field configuration on $\Sigma$ together with a boundary field configuration on $\partial\Sigma$ and an equivalence of the boundary field configuration with the restriction of the bulk field configuration to the boundary. These data are equivalently those of a *twisted cocycle* with local coefficient bundle $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathbf{Fields}$, *relative* to the boundary inclusion. In particular, when $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \simeq *$ then these are equivalently cocycles in *relative cohomology* with coefficients in **Fields**.

We now add local action functionals with boundary conditions to the boundary fields.

**Definition 5.2.213.** Let $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S\right) : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{Phases}$ be a local action functional for a bulk prequantum field theory according to prop. 5.2.199, then a *boundary condition* (or *boundary extension*) for $\mathbf{L}$ is an extension

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\otimes} & \xrightarrow{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)} & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S^{\partial}_{\mathbf{L}}\right)} & \\ \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\partial\otimes} & & \end{array} ,$$

**Proposition 5.2.214.** *A boundary condition for a local Lagrangian* $\mathbf{L}$ *with respect to boundary fields* $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathbf{Fields}$ *is equivalently a choice of homotopy in*

$$\left( \vdash\!\!\longrightarrow * \right) \quad \mapsto \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathbf{Fields}_\partial & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ * & & \swArrow & & \mathbf{Fields} \\ & {}_{0}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)} & \\ & & \mathbf{Phases} & & \end{array} .$$

*in* $\mathbf{H}$*, which in turn is equivalently a choice of morphism*

$$\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathrm{fib}(\mathbf{L})$$

*in* $\mathbf{H}$*, where* $\mathrm{fib}(\mathbf{L})$ *is the homotopy fiber of* $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{Phases}$ *on the zero element of the commutative group stack of phases.*

Proof. Since $\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\partial}$ is free symmetric monoidal with duals on a single morphism out of the unit object, a symmetric monoidal functor $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S^{\partial}_{\mathbf{L}}\right)$ is equivalent to the datum of a 1-morphism in $\mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})$ out of $* \xrightarrow{0} \mathbf{Phases}$. □

Therefore we set:

**Definition 5.2.215.** The $\infty$-*category of boundary conditions* for $\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{Phases}$ is the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{fib}(\mathbf{L})}$. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right) \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}}$, we call

$$\mathrm{Bdr}\left(\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)\right) := \mathrm{Corr}_1\left(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}}\right)\left(0, \exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)\right)$$

the $\infty$-*category of boundary conditions* of the local action functional $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)$.

**Definition 5.2.216.** For $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)$ a local bulk prequantum field theory, by prop. 5.2.199, we say that its *universal boundary condition* is that which is given via remark 5.2.214 by the square exhibiting the homotopy fiber of $S$ in $\mathbf{H}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{fib}\left(\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S\right)\right) & \\ \swarrow & & \searrow \\ * & \swArrow & \mathbf{Fields} \\ {}_{0}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S\right)} \\ & \flat\mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \end{array} .$$

The following immediate consequence is relevant.

**Proposition 5.2.217.** *The universal boundary condition is the terminal object in the $\infty$-category* $\mathrm{Bdr}\left(\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)\right)$ *of boundary conditions, def. 5.2.215. A general boundary condition with moduli stack* $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial$ *is equivalently a morphism* $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathrm{fib}(\exp(iS))$*: there is a natural equivalence*

$$\mathrm{Bdr}\left(\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S\right)\right) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{fib}\left(\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S\right)\right)}$$

*between the $\infty$-category of boundary conditions for* $\exp(iS)$ *and the slice $\infty$-topos of* $\mathbf{H}$ *over* $\mathrm{fib}(\exp(iS))$*.*

Proof. The $\infty$-category $\mathrm{Bdr}\left(\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)\right)$ is equivalently the $\infty$-category of cones over the diagram ${}_0\vee_{\exp(iS)} : \mathrm{cosp} \to \mathbf{H}$ from the free cospan category which exhibits the diagram

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} * & & \mathbf{Fields} \\ {}_{0}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\exp(iS)} \\ & \flat\mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \end{array} \right\} .$$

In the notation of section 1.2.9 [L-Topos] this means

$$\mathrm{Bdr}\left(\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)\right) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\left({}_0\vee_{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)}\right)} .$$

Let then $* \hookrightarrow \square \hookleftarrow \mathrm{cosp}$ be the inclusion of the point as the initial object of the box-shaped diagram $\infty$-category

$$\square = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & 01 \\ \downarrow & \swArrow & \downarrow \\ 10 & \longrightarrow & 11 \end{array} \right\} ,$$

and the inclusion of the underlying cospan, respectively. Let then ${}_0\widehat{\vee_{\exp(iS)}} : \square \to \mathbf{H}$ be the homotopy pullback diagram that exhibits the homotopy fiber $\mathrm{fib}(\exp(iS))$ and write ${}_0\vee_{\exp(iS)} : \mathrm{cosp} \to \mathbf{H}$ for its restriction to the underlying cospan, as in remark 5.2.217. This induces a diagram of $\infty$-functors

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\mathrm{fib}(\exp(iS))} \xleftarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{H}_{/{}_0\widehat{\vee_{\exp(iS)}}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{H}_{/{}_0\vee_{\exp(iS)}} \simeq \mathrm{Bdr}(\exp(iS)) .$$

The equivalence on the far right is that of remark 5.2.217. The functor in the middle is an equivalence by finality of the $\infty$-limiting cones, as for instance in the proof of prop. 1.2.13.8 in [L-Topos]. And finally – since the inclusion of an initial object is an op-final $\infty$-functor by prop. 4.1.3.1 in [L-Topos] – also the left functor, being the restriction of slices along an op-final functor, is an equivalence, by prop. 4.1.1.8 in [L-Topos]. $\square$

**5.2.18.7 Corner field theory** We now consider singularities of codimension 2 at which two boundaries of codimension 1 meet, a *corner* singularity.

**Definition 5.2.218.** Write

$$\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\partial_1\partial_2 *} := \mathrm{FreeSMD}\left( ( \vdash\!\!\longrightarrow * ) \times \begin{pmatrix} - \\ | \\ * \end{pmatrix} : \begin{array}{ccc} \emptyset & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & \emptyset \\ {\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}}\downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \emptyset & \longrightarrow & * . \end{array} \right)$$

for the symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-category with fully dualizable objects which is free on a 2-cell as show on the right, considered as the $(\infty, n)$-category of cobordisms with two types of marked codimension-1 boundaries and one kind of corner between these, by theorem 4.3.11 in [L-TFT].

As an immediate consequence, we have:

**Proposition 5.2.219.** *A symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-functor*

$$Z_{\mathbf{Fields}_{\partial_1\partial_2}} \;:\; (\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\partial_1\partial_2})^{\otimes} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes}$$

*is equivalently the datum of*

1. *a moduli stack* $\mathbf{Fields} \in \mathbf{H}$ *of* bulk fields*;*
2. *two moduli stacks* $\mathbf{Fields}_{\partial_1}, \mathbf{Fields}_{\partial_1}$ *of* boundary fields*;*
3. *a moduli stack* $\mathbf{Fields}_{\partial_1\partial_2}$ *of* corner fields *or* defect fields*;*
4. *a homotopy diagram*

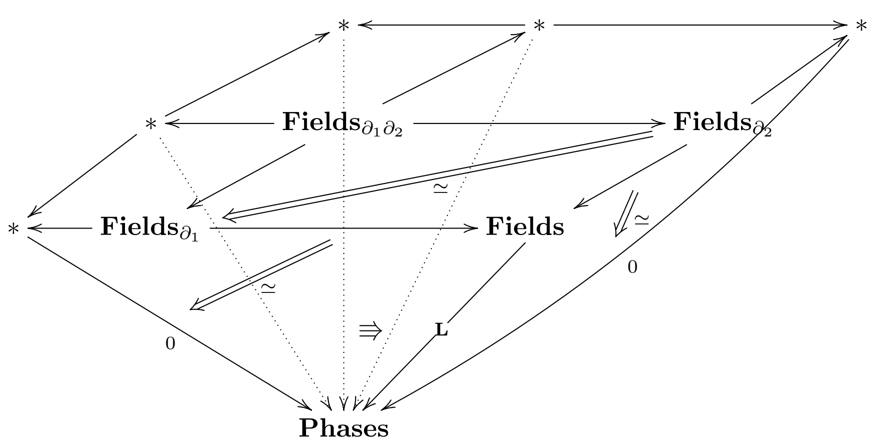
$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Fields}_{\partial_1\partial_2} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Fields}_{\partial_1} \\ \downarrow & \swArrow_{\simeq} & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{Fields}_{\partial_2} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Fields} \end{array}$$

*in* $\mathbf{H}$.

*A lift of that to correspondences in the slice*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\partial_1\partial_2})^{\otimes} & \xrightarrow{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}}\right)} & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes} \\ & \searrow^{Z_{\mathbf{Fields}_{\partial_1\partial_2}}} & \downarrow \\ & & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes} \end{array}$$

*is a choice of extension of the above homotopy commutative diagram in* $\mathbf{H}$ *as*



**Remark 5.2.220.** This means that for two boundary conditions which are given by relative boundary trivializations of their local action functionals as in the previous section, a corner defect condition for them is a further homotopy between the pullback of these two trivializations to the moduli stack of corner field configurations.

**5.2.18.8 Defect field theory** Finally, let us sketch a few lines on general pre-quantum defect field theory (see for instance [DKR11] for general considerations about extended defect field theory). These correspond to adding another piece to the picture of framed cobordism, namely that of a punctured $k$-disk, seen as a morphism from the vacuum to the $(k-1)$-sphere. In more formal terms, since a $k$-disk is homotopically trivial, this amounts to the following.

**Definition 5.2.221.** Given a bulk field **Fields** in **H**, a codimension-$k$ defect datum is a $k$-fold correspondence of the form

$$\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{ins}} \longleftarrow \mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{def}} \longrightarrow [\Pi(S^{k-1}), \mathbf{Fields}] \ .$$

Examples of such defects and further comments on how to think of them appear as Example 7.4.20 and Example 7.4.25 below.

## 5.3 $\Re \dashv \Im \dashv \&$ – Structures in elastic substance

We discuss a list of differential geometric conscept that may be formulated within the axiomatics for differential cohesion, 4.2. These complement the structures that are present already by virtue of the underlying cohesion as discussed in 5.2.

- 5.3.1 – Infinitesimal path $\infty$-groupoid and de Rham spaces;
- 5.3.2 – Crystalline cohomology;
- 5.3.3 – Local diffeomorphisms;
- 5.3.4 – Étale toposes and Structure sheaves;
- 5.3.5 – Infinitesimal extensions and Modules;
- 5.3.6 – Infinitesimal neighbourhoods and Lie differentiation;

$(T^k \dashv J^k)$

- 5.3.7 – Infinitesimal disk bundles;
- 5.3.8 – Jets and differential operators;

- 5.3.10 – Manifolds and Étale groupoids;
- 5.3.11 – Frame bundles;
- 5.3.12 – $G$-Structures and Cartan geometry;
- 5.3.13 – Definite forms;
- 5.3.14 – Generalized geometry;
- 5.3.15 – Isometries;
- 5.3.16 – BPS Currents.

### 5.3.1 Infinitesimal path $\infty$-groupoid and de Rham spaces

We discuss the infinitesimal analog of the *path $\infty$-groupoid*, 5.2.3, which exists in a context of differential cohesion, def. 4.2.1.

Let $(i_! \dashv i^* \dashv i_* \dashv i^1) : \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \to \mathbf{H}$ be an infinitesimal neighbourhood of a cohesive $\infty$-topos.

**Definition 5.3.1.** Write

$$(\Re \dashv \Im \dashv \flat_{\text{inf}}) : (i_! i^* \dashv i_* i^* \dashv i_* i^!) : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$$

for the adjoint triple induced by the adjoint quadruple that defines the differential cohesion. For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ we say that

- $\Im(X)$ is the *infinitesimal path $\infty$-groupoid* of $X$;

  The $(i^* \dashv i_*)$-unit

  $$X \to \Im(X)$$

  we call the *constant infinitesimal path inclusion.*

- $\Re(X)$ is the *reduced cohesive $\infty$-groupoid* underlying $X$.

  The $(i_* \dashv i^*)$-counit

$$\Re X \to X$$

  we call the *inclusion of the reduced part* of $X$.

**Remark 5.3.2.** This is an abstraction of the setup considered in [SiTe]. In traditional contexts as considered there, the object $\Im(X)$ is called the *de Rham space* of $X$ or the *de Rham stack* of $X$. Here we may tend to avoid this terminology, since by 5.2.10 we have a good notion of intrinsic de Rham cohomology in every cohesive $\infty$-topos already without equipping it with differential cohesion, which, over some $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is co-represented by the object $\int_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$, the cohesive de Rham homotopy-type of remark 5.2.69. On the other hand, $\Im$ co-represents instead what is called *crystalline cohomology*, 5.3.2 below.

**Proposition 5.3.3.** *In the notation of def. 4.2.4, there is a canonical natural transformation*

$$\Im(X) \to \int(X)$$

*that factors the finite path inclusion through the infinitesimal path inclusion*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \Im(X) \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow^{i_X} \\ X & \longrightarrow & \int(X) \end{array} .$$

*Moreover, $\int$ sends all three of these morphisms to equivalences, in particular*

$$\int(\Im(X)) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\int(i_X)} \int(X) \ .$$

*Dually there is a canonical natural transformation*

$$\flat A \to \&A$$

*that factors the $\flat$-counits*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \flat A & & \\ \downarrow & \searrow & \\ \&A & \longrightarrow & A \end{array}$$

*and $\flat$ sends all three morphisms to equivalences.*

Proof. Via def. 4.2.4

$$(\int_{\mathbf{H}} \dashv \flat_{\mathbf{H}}) : \ \mathbf{H} \underset{\mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{inf}}}{\overset{\Pi_{\mathrm{inf}}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \underset{\mathrm{Disc}_{\mathbf{H}}}{\overset{\Pi_{\mathbf{H}}}{\rightleftarrows}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \ ,$$

the factorization is given by the unit of $(\Pi_{\mathbf{H}} \dashv \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathbf{H}})$ "conjugated" by the unit of $(\Pi_{\mathrm{inf}} \dashv \&)$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{inf}} \circ \Pi_{\mathrm{inf}}(X) \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{inf}} \circ \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathbf{H}} \circ \Pi_{\mathbf{H}} \circ \Pi_{\mathrm{inf}}(X) \end{array} .$$

From this the fact that all morphisms here are $\int$-equivalences is immediate. The case for $\flat$ is formally dual. □

**Remark 5.3.4.** The geometric interpretation of the factorization in proposition 5.3.3 is the successive inclusion

$$\{\text{constant paths}\} \subset \{\text{infinitesimal paths}\} \subset \{\text{paths}\}\,.$$

We record some further relations between the various modalities of differential cohesion.

**Proposition 5.3.5.** *In differential cohesion* $\begin{pmatrix} \Re \dashv & \Im & \dashv \& & \\ & \int & \dashv \flat & \dashv \sharp \end{pmatrix}$ *the following relations hold between the cohesive and the differential structures.*

1. *The* $\Re$*-counit is a* $\int$*-equivalence* $\int(\Re(X)) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{} \int(X)$ *;*

2. *The* $\int$*-unit is an* $\Re$*-equivalence* $\Re(X) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{} \Re(\int(X))$ *;*

3. *The* $\Re$*-counit is a* $\flat$*-equivalence* $\flat(\Re(X)) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{} \flat(X)$ *;*

4. *The* $\Im$*-unit is a* $\flat$*-equivalence* $\flat(X) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{} \flat(\Im(X))$ *.*

Proof. Write $i : \mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{\text{th}}$ for the geometric inclusion which exhibits the differential structure on the cogesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$. We freely use the notation introduced in def. 4.2.4.

Regarding items 1 and 2: Unwinding the decomposition into the morphisms of the two adjoint quadruples we have $\int \simeq \text{Disc}_{\text{inf}}\text{Disc}_{\mathbf{H}}\Pi_{\mathbf{H}}\Pi_{\text{inf}}$ and $\Re \simeq i_! \Pi_{\text{inf}}$. By idempotency the $\Re$-counit is a $\Pi_{\text{inf}}$-equivalence, hence a $\int$-equivalence, and conversely.

Regarding items 3 and 4: Since $\flat$ is the faithful embedding of the global section direct image of the differentially cohesive $\infty$-topos, the statement is equivalent to the $(i_! \dashv i^*)$-counit and the $(i^* \dashv i_*)$-unit being $\mathbf{H}_{\text{th}}(*, -)$-equivalences. Since $\Re$ preserves the terminal object by the axioms of differential structure, this is equivalent to being $\mathbf{H}_{\text{th}}(\Re(*), -)$-equivalences, hence $\mathbf{H}_{\text{th}}(i_! i^*(*), -)$-equivalences. By adjointness a sufficient condition for this is that the counit and unit are $i^*$-equivalences, which they are by idempotency. □

**Remark 5.3.6.** The formal statements in prop. 5.3.5 all have an immediate meaning under the geometric interpretation of differential cohesion. For instance item 1 says that infinitesimal reduction does not change the geometric homotopy type and item 3 says that it also does not change the underlying bare homotopy type. These statements are familiar meta-theorems in particular in the context of super-graded infinitesimals (which we show to constitute a model for differential cohesion below in 6.6), where the slogan is that "fermions do not affect the topology".

### 5.3.2 Crystalline cohomology

We discuss now the infinitesimal analog of intrinsic flat cohomology, 5.2.6.

**Definition 5.3.7.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object, we call the cohomology, def. 5.1.174 of $\Im(X)$ the *crystalline cohomology* of $X$. More specificaly, for $A \in \mathbf{H}$ we say that

$$H_{\text{infflat}}(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\Im(X), A) \simeq \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \flat_{\text{inf}} A)$$

is the *infinitesimal flat cohomology* of $X$ with coefficient in $A$.

**Remark 5.3.8.** That traditional crystalline cohomology is the cohomology of the "de Rham stack", see remark 5.3.2 above with coefficients in a suitable stack is discussed in [L-DGeo, above theorem 0.4]. The relation to de Rham cohomology in traditional contexts is discussed for instance in [SiTe].

**Remark 5.3.9.** By observation 5.3.3 we have canonical natural morphisms

$$\mathbf{H}_{\text{flat}}(X, A) \to \mathbf{H}_{\text{infflat}}(X, A) \to \mathbf{H}(X, A)$$

The objects on the left are principal $\infty$-bundles equipped with flat $\infty$-connection. The first morphism forgets their higher parallel transport along finite volumes and just remembers the parallel transport along infinitesimal volumes. The last morphism finally forgets also this connection information.

**Definition 5.3.10.** For $A \in \mathbf{H}$ a 0-truncated abelian $\infty$-group object we say that the *de Rham theorem* for $A$-coefficients holds in $\mathbf{H}$ if for all $X \in \mathbf{H}$ the infinitesimal path inclusion of observation 5.3.3

$$\Im(X) \to \int(X)$$

is an equivalence in $A$-cohomology, hence if for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have that

$$\pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\int(X), \mathbf{B}^n A) \to \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\Im(X), \mathbf{B}^n A)$$

is an isomorphism.

If we follow the notation of remark 5.3.8 and moreover write $|X| = |\Pi X|$ for the intrinsic geometric realization, def. 5.2.14, then this becomes

$$H^\bullet_{\text{dR,th}}(X, A) \simeq H^\bullet(|X|, A_{\text{disc}}),$$

where on the right we have ordinary cohomology in Top (for instance realized as singular cohomology) with coefficients in the discrete group $A_{\text{disc}} := \Gamma A$ underlying the cohesive group $A$.

In certain contexts of infinitesimal neighbourhoods of cohesive $\infty$-toposes the de Rham theorem in this form has been considered in [SiTe]. We discuss a realization below in 6.5.3.

### 5.3.3 Local diffeomorphisms

We discuss the formalization in higher differential cohesive geometry of *local diffeomorphisms*. This proceeds via an axiomatization of*infinitesimal étale morphisms* or *formal étale morphisms* (depending on the order of infinitesimality encoded by the reduction modality).

We first discuss formal étaleness in $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}$. Below in def. 5.3.19 we discuss the notion more generally in $\mathbf{H}$.

**Definition 5.3.11.** We say an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is *formally smooth* if the constant infinitesimal path inclusion, def. 5.3.1,

$$X \to \Im(X)$$

is an effective epimorphism, def. 5.1.65.

**Remark 5.3.12.** In this form this is the direct $\infty$-categorical analog of the characterization of formal smoothness in [SiTe]. The following equivalent reformulation corresponds in turn to the discussion in section 4.1 of [RoKo04].

**Definition 5.3.13.** Write

$$\phi : i_! \to i_*$$

for the canonical natural transformation given as the composite

$$i_! \xrightarrow{\eta i_!} \Im i_! \xrightarrow{:=} i_* i^* i_! \xrightarrow{\simeq} i_* .$$

Since the last composite on the right here is an equivalence due to $i_!$ being fully faithful we have:

**Proposition 5.3.14.** *An object $X \in \mathbf{H} \overset{i_!}{\hookrightarrow} \mathbf{H}$ is formally smooth according to def. 5.3.11 precisely if the canonical morphism*

$$\phi : i_! X \to i_* X$$

*is an effective epimorphism.*

**Remark 5.3.15.** In this form this characterization of formal smoothness is the evident generalization of the condition given in section 4.1 of [RoKo04]. (Notice that the notation there is related to the one used here by $u^* = i_!$, $u_* = i^*$ and $u^! = i_*$.)

Therefore with [RoKo04] we have the following more general definitions.

**Definition 5.3.16.** For $f : X \to Y$ a morphism in $\mathbf{H}$, we say that

1. $f$ is a *formally smooth morphism* if the canonical morphism

$$i_! X \to i_! Y \prod_{i_* Y} i_* Y$$

   is an effective epimorphism;

2. $f$ is a *formally étale morphism* if this morphism is an equivalence, equivalently if the naturality square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} i_! X & \xrightarrow{i_! f} & i_! Y \\ \downarrow^{\phi_X} & & \downarrow^{\phi_Y} \\ i_* X & \xrightarrow{i_* f} & i_* Y \end{array}$$

   is an $\infty$-pullback square.

3. $f$ is a *formally unramified morphism* if this is a (-1)-truncated morphism. More generally, $f$ is an *order-$k$ formally unramified morphisms* for $(-2) \leq k \leq \infty$ if this is a $k$-truncated morphism ([L-Topos], 5.5.6).

**Remark 5.3.17.** An order-$(-2)$ formally unramified morphism is equivalently a formally étale morphism. Only for 0-truncated $X$ does formal smoothness together with formal unramifiedness imply formal étaleness.

**Remark 5.3.18.** The idea of characterizing étale morphisms with respect to a notion of *infinitesimal extension* as those making certain naturality squares into pullback squares goes back to lectures by André Joyal in the 1970s, as is recalled in the introduction of [Dub00]. Notice that in sections 3 and 4 there the analog of our functor $i_!$ is assumed to be the inverse image of a geometric morphism, whereas here we only require it to be a left adjoint and to preserve finite products, as opposed to all finite limits. Indeed, it will fail to preserve general pullbacks in most models for infinitesimal cohesion of interest, such as the one discussed below in 6.5. In [JoyMo94] a different kind of axiomatization, by way of closure properties. This we discuss further below, see remark 5.3.31.

The characterization of formal étaleness by cartesian naturality squares induced specifically by adjoint triples of functors, as in our def. 5.3.11, appears around prop. 5.3.1.1 of [RoKo04].

But in view of prop. 5.3.11, which applies to objects in $\mathbf{H}$ not necessarily in the image of the inclusion $i_!$, and in view of def. 5.3.13 it is natural to generalize further:

**Definition 5.3.19.** A morphism $f : X \to Y$ in the differential cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ is a *local diffeomorphism* (or *infinitesimally étale morphism* or *formally étale morphism*) if the naturality diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & \Im(X) \\ \downarrow^{f} & & \downarrow^{\Im(f)} \\ Y & \longrightarrow & \Im(Y) \end{array}$$

of the unit of the infinitesimal shape modality, def. 5.3.1, is an $\infty$-pullback.

**Remark 5.3.20.** Def. 5.3.19 is compatible with def. 5.3.16 in that a morphism $f \in \mathbf{H}$ is formally étale in the sense of the former precisely if $i_! f \in \mathbf{H}$ is formally étale in the sense of the latter.

**Remark 5.3.21.** The condition in def. 5.3.19 is the immediate infinitesimal analog of the concept of $\int$-*closure* in def. 5.2.33: we may say equivalently that a morphism $f \in \mathbf{H}$ is a local diffeomorphism if it is $\Im$-*closed*. Moreover, by the discussion in 5.2.7 the $\int$-closed morphisms into some $X$ are interpreted as the total space projections of *locally constant* $\infty$-*stacks* over $X$ by general abstract Galois theory. Accordingly here we may think of $\Im$-closed morphisms into $X$ as total space projections of more general $\infty$-stacks over $X$ by what we may call general abstract *infinitesimal Galois theory*. This perspective we develop below in 5.3.4.

Further along the lines of the discussion in 5.2.7, the $\Im$-closed morphisms form an orthogonal factorization system with the $\Im$-equivalences

$$(\Im\text{-equivalences, formally étale morphisms}) \ .$$

The $\Im$-equivalences we turn to below in 5.3.5.

In particular, we have the following immediate infinitesimal analogs of properties of $\int$-closure.

**Definition 5.3.22.** Call a morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathbf{H}$ a $\Im$-*equivalence* if $\Im(f)$ is an equivalence.

**Proposition 5.3.23.** *For $i : \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ a differentially cohesive $\infty$-topos, the pair of classes of morphisms*

$$(\Im\text{-}\textit{equivalences}, \ \textit{local diffeomorphisms}) \subset \mathrm{Mor}(\mathbf{H}) \times \mathrm{Mor}(\mathbf{H})$$

*constitutes an orthogonal factorization system.*

Proof. Since $\Im$ has the left adjoint $\Re$ it preserves all $\infty$-pullbacks and hence in particular those over objects of the form $\Im(X)$. Therefore factorization follows as in the proof of prop. 5.2.37. Accordingly, orthogonality follows as in the proof of prop. 5.2.38. □

This and the fact that $\Im$ preserves $\infty$-limits implies a wealth of stability properties of local diffeomorphisms.

**Corollary 5.3.24.** *Local diffeomorphism in $\mathbf{H}$, def. 5.3.19, satisfy the following stability properties*

1. *Every equivalence is a local diffeomorphism.*
2. *The composite of two local diffeomorphisms is itself a local diffeomorphism.*
3. *If*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Y & & \\ & \overset{f}{\nearrow} & & \overset{g}{\searrow} & \\ X & & \xrightarrow{\quad h \quad} & & Z \end{array}$$

*is a diagram such that $g$ and $h$ are local diffeomorphisms, then also $f$ is.*

4. *Any retract of a local diffeomorphism is itself a local diffeomorphism.*
5. *The $\infty$-pullback of a local diffeomorphism is a local diffeomorphism.*

But since the embedding functor $i_!$ does not preserve $\infty$-limits in general, closure under pullback in $\mathbf{H}$ requires a condition on the codomain:

**Proposition 5.3.25.** *The collection of formally étale morphisms in $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}$, def. 5.3.16, is closed under the following operations.*

1. *Every equivalence is formally étale.*

2. *The composite of two formally étale morphisms is itself formally étale.*
3. *If*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & Y & \\ {}^{f}\nearrow & & \searrow^{g} \\ X & \xrightarrow{h} & Z \end{array}$$

*is a diagram such that $g$ and $h$ are formally étale, then also $f$ is formally étale.*

4. *Any retract of a formally étale morphisms is itself formally étale.*
5. *The $\infty$-pullback of a formally étale morphisms is formally étale if the pullback is preserved by $i_!$.*

**Remark 5.3.26.** The statements about closure under composition and pullback appears as prop. 5.4, prop. 5.6 in [RoKo04]. The extra assumption that $i_!$ preserves the pullback is implicit in their setup.

Proof. The first statement follows trivially because $\infty$-pullbacks are well defined up to equivalence. The second two statements follow by the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks, prop. 5.1.2: let $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Y \to Z$ be two morphisms and consider the pasting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} i_! X & \xrightarrow{i_! f} & i_! Y & \xrightarrow{i_! g} & i_! Z \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ i_* X & \xrightarrow{i_* f} & i_* Y & \xrightarrow{i_* g} & i_* Z \end{array} .$$

If $f$ and $g$ are local diffeomoprhisms then both small squares are pullback squares. Then the pasting law says that so is the outer rectangle and hence $g \circ f$ is a local diffeomorphism. Similarly, if $g$ and $g \circ f$ are local diffeomorphisms then the right square and the total reactangle are pullbacks, so the pasting law says that also the left square is a pullback and so also $f$ is a local diffeomorphism.

For the fourth claim, let $\mathrm{Id} \simeq (g \to f \to g)$ be a retract in the arrow $\infty$-category $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}^{I}$. By applying the natural transformation $\phi : i_! \to i_*$ this becomes a retract

$$\mathrm{Id} \simeq ((i_! g \to i_* g) \to (i_! f \to i_* f) \to (i_! g \to i_* g))$$

in the category of squares $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}^{\square}$. By assumption the middle square is an $\infty$-pullback square and we need to show that the also the outer square is. This follows generally by lemma 5.1.3. Therefore we have a retract in $[\Delta[1], [\square, K]]$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (i_! g \to i_! g) & \longrightarrow & (i_! f \to i_! f) & \longrightarrow & (i_! g \to i_! g) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ j^* j_* (i_! g \to i_! g) & \longrightarrow & j^* j_* (i_! f \to i_! f) & \longrightarrow & j^* j_* (i_! g \to i_! g) \end{array} ,$$

where the middle morphism is an isomorphism. Hence so is the outer morphism and therefore also $g$ is formally étale.

For the last claim, consider an $\infty$-pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A \times_Y X & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow^{p} & & \downarrow^{f} \\ A & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

where $f$ is formally étale. Applying the natural transformation $\phi : i_! \to i_*$ to this yields a square of squares. Two sides of this are the pasting composite

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
i_! A \times_Y X & \longrightarrow & i_! X & \xrightarrow{\phi_X} & i_* X \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle i_! p} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle i_! f} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle i_* f} \\
i_! A & \longrightarrow & i_! Y & \xrightarrow{\phi_Y} & i_* Y
\end{array}
$$

and the other two sides are the pasting composite

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
i_! A \times_Y X & \xrightarrow{\phi_{A \times_Y X}} & i_* A \times_Y A & \longrightarrow & i_* X \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle i_! p} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle i_* p} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle i_* f} \\
i_! A & \xrightarrow{\phi_A} & i_* A & \longrightarrow & i_* Y
\end{array} .
$$

Counting left to right and top to bottom, we have that

- the first square is a pullback by assumption that $i_!$ preserves the given pullback;
- the second square is a pullback, since $f$ is formally étale.
- the total top rectangle is therefore a pullback, by the pasting law;
- the fourth square is a pullback since $i_*$ is right adjoint and so also preserves pullbacks;
- also the total bottom rectangle is a pullback, since it is equal to the top total rectangle;
- therefore finally the third square is a pullback, by the other clause of the pasting law. Hence $p$ is formally étale.

□

We consider now types of $\infty$-pullbacks that are preserved by $i_!$.

**Proposition 5.3.27.** *If $U \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\rightarrow X$ is an effective epimorphism in $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}$ that it is addition formally étale, def. 5.3.16, then also its image $i_! U \to i_! X$ in $\mathbf{H}$ is an effective epimorphism.*

Proof. Because $i_*$ is left and right adjoint it preserves all small $\infty$-limits and $\infty$-colimits and therefore preserves effective epimorphisms. Since these are stable under $\infty$-pullback, it follows by definition of formal étaleness that with $i_* U \to i_* X$ also $i_! U \to i_! X$ is an effective epimorphism. □

**Proposition 5.3.28.** *If in a differentially cohesive $\infty$-topos $i : \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ both $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}$ as well as $\mathbf{H}$ have an $\infty$-cohesive site of definition, def. 4.1.31, then the functor $i_!$ preserves pullbacks over discrete objects.*

Proof. Since it preserves finite products by assumption, the claim follows as in the proof of prop. 4.1.35. □

**Proposition 5.3.29.** *If in a differentially cohesive $\infty$-topos $i : \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ both $\mathbf{H}_{\Re}$ as well as $\mathbf{H}$ have an $\infty$-cohesive site of definition, then the morphism $E \to X$ in $\mathbf{H}$ out of the total space of a locally constant $\infty$-stack over $X$, 5.2.7, is formally étale.*

Proof. First observe that every discrete morphism $\mathrm{Disc}(A \xrightarrow{f} B)$ is formally étale: since every discrete $\infty$-groupoid is an $\infty$-colimit over the $\infty$-functor constant on the point, $\phi_* : i_! * \to i_* *$ is an equivalence, and $i_! \to i_*$ preserves $\infty$-colimits, so we have that $\phi_{\mathrm{Dic}(A)}$ and $\phi_{\mathrm{Disc}(B)}$ are equivalences. Therefore the relevant diagram is an $\infty$-pullback.

Next, by definition, $E \to X$ is a pullback of a discrete morphism. By prop. 5.3.28 this pullback is preserved by $i_!$ and so by prop. 5.3.25 also $E \to X$ is locally étale. □

Then there are coliming operations that preserve local diffeomorphisms

**Proposition 5.3.30.** *Let $Y : I \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ be a small diagram of objects over $X$ such that each component map is a local diffeomorphism $Y_i \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} X$ , def. 5.3.19. Then also the canonical projection out of the $\infty$-colimit over the diagram is a local diffeomorphsim*

$$\left(\varinjlim_i Y_i\right) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} X \ .$$

Proof. We need to show that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \varinjlim_i Y_i & \longrightarrow & \Im(\varinjlim_i Y_i) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \Im X \end{array}$$

is an $\infty$-pullback. Since $\Im$ is a left adjoint, it may be taken into the colimit, and so we need to show that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \varinjlim_i Y_i & \longrightarrow & \varinjlim_i \Im Y_i \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \Im X \end{array}$$

is an $\infty$-pullback. This follows with prop. 3.1.5 and the assumption that on all component maps the diagram is a pullback. □

**Remark 5.3.31.** The properties listed in prop. 5.3.24 imply in particular that étale morphisms in $\mathbf{H}$ are "admissible maps" modelling a notion of *local homeomorphism* in a *geometry for structured $\infty$-toposes* according to def. 1.2.1 of [L-Geo]. In the terminology used there this means that $\mathbf{H}$ equipped with its canonical topology and with this notion of admissible maps is a *geometry*, see remark 5.3.39 below.

Another proposal for an axiomatization of *open maps* and étale maps has been made in [JoyMo94], and the above list of properties covers most, but not necessarily all of these axioms.

In order to interpret the notion of formal smoothness, we close by further discussion of infinitesimal reduction.

**Observation 5.3.32.** The operation $\Re$ is an idempotent projection of $\mathbf{H}$ onto the image of $\mathbf{H}_\Re$ under $i_!$:

$$\Re\Re \simeq \Re \, .$$

Accordingly also

$$\Im\Im \simeq \Im$$

and

$$\flat_{\mathrm{inf}}\flat_{\mathrm{inf}} \simeq \flat_{\mathrm{inf}} \, .$$

*Proof.* By definition of infinitesimal neighbourhood we have that $i_!$ is a full and faithful $\infty$-functor. It follows that $i^* i_! \simeq \mathrm{id}$ and hence

$$\begin{aligned} \Re\Re &\simeq i_! i^* i_! i^* \\ &\simeq i_! i^* \\ &\simeq \Re \end{aligned} .$$

□

**Observation 5.3.33.** For every $X \in \mathbf{H}$, we have that $\Im(X)$ is formally smooth according to def. 5.3.11.

*Proof.* By prop. 5.3.32 we have that

$$\Im(X) \to \Im\Im(X)$$

is an equivalence. As such it is in particular an effective epimorphism. □

### 5.3.4 Étale toposes and Structure sheaves

For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object in a differential cohesive $\infty$-topos, we formulate

- the $\infty$-topos $\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathbf{H}}(\mathcal{X})$ of *$\infty$-sheaves over $X$*, or rather of *formally étale maps into $X$*;
- the *structure sheaf* $\mathcal{O}_X$ of $X$.

The resulting pair $(\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathbf{H}}, \mathcal{O}_X)$ is essentially a $\mathbf{H}$-*structured $\infty$-topos* in the sense of [L-Geo].

One way to motivate the following construction, is to notice that for $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ a differential cohesive $\infty$-group with de Rham coefficient object $\flat_{dR}\mathbf{B}G$ and for $X \in \mathbf{H}$, def. 5.2.59 any differential homotopy-type, the product projection

$$X \times \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G \to X$$

regarded as an object of the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ *almost* qualifies as a "bundle of flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms" over $X$: for $U \to X$ a cover (a 1-epimorphism) regarded in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$, a $U$-plot of this product projection is a $U$-plot of $X$ together with a flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued de Rham cocycle on $X$.

This is indeed what the sections of a corresponding bundle of differential forms over $X$ are supposed to look like – but only *if* $U \to X$ is sufficiently "spread out" over $X$, hence sufficiently étale. Because, on the extreme, if $X$ is the point (the terminal object), then there should be no non-trivial section of differential forms relative to $U$ over $X$, but the above product projection instead reproduces all the sections of $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$.

In order to obtain the correct cotangent-like bundle from the product with the de Rham coefficient object, it needs to be *restricted* to plots out of sufficiently étale maps into $X$. In order to correctly test differential form data, "suitable" here should be "formally", namely infinitesimally. Hence the restriction should be along the full inclusion

$$\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/X}$$

of the formally étale maps into $X$. Since on formally étale covers the sections should be those given by $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$, one finds that the corresponding *sheaf of flat forms* $\mathcal{O}_X(\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G)$ must be the *coreflection* of the given projection along this map.

**Definition 5.3.34.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object, write

$$\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/X}$$

for the full sub-$\infty$-category of the slice over $X$, def. 5.1.25, on the formally étale morphisms into $X$, def. 5.3.19.

**Proposition 5.3.35.** *The inclusion of def. 5.3.34 is both reflective as well as coreflective: we have a left and a right adjoint*

$$\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X} \underset{\mathrm{Et}}{\overset{\longleftarrow}{\underset{\longleftarrow}{\hookrightarrow}}} \mathbf{H}_{/X} \ .$$

Proof. The reflection is given by the factorization of prop. 5.3.23. This exhibits $\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X}$ as a presentable $\infty$-category and hence, by the adjoint $\infty$-functor theorem, the coreflection exists precisely if the inclusion preserves all small $\infty$-colomits. Since the inclusion is full, for this it is sufficient to show that an $\infty$-colimit in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ of a diagram $A$ that factors through the inclusion,

$$A : I \to \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/X} \,,$$

is again in the inclusion. Since moreover $\infty$-colimits in a slice are preserved and detected by the dependent sum, prop. 5.1.26, we are, by def. 5.3.19, reduced to showing that for the above diagram the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \varinjlim_{i \in I} A_i & \longrightarrow & \Im \varinjlim_{i \in I} A_i \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \Im(X) \end{array}$$

is an $\infty$-pullback square in $\mathbf{H}$. Since $\Im$ is a left adjoint by def. 5.3.1, this square is equivalent to

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \varinjlim_{i \in I} A_i & \longrightarrow & \varinjlim_{i \in I} \Im A_i \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \Im(X) \end{array} \ .$$

Now that this square is an $\infty$-pullback follows since $\infty$-colimits are preserved by $\infty$-pullback in the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, prop. 3.1.5, and the fact that every component square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_i & \longrightarrow & \Im A_i \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \Im(X) \end{array}$$

is an $\infty$-pullback by the assumption that the diagram factored through the inclusion of the étale morphisms into the slice. □

**Proposition 5.3.36.** *For $X \in \mathbf{H}$, the $\infty$-category $\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X}$ of def. 5.3.34 is an $\infty$-topos, and the defining inclusion into the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ is a geometric embedding.*

Proof. By prop. 5.3.35 the $\infty$-category $\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X}$ is the sub-slice induced by a reflective factorization system. This is a stable factorization system (in that the left class of $\Im$-equivalences is stable under $\infty$-pullback) and reflective factorization systems are stable precisely if the corresponding reflector preserves finite $\infty$-limits. Hence the embedding is a geometric embedding of a sub-$\infty$-topos. □

**Definition 5.3.37.** For $\mathbf{H}$ a differential cohesive $\infty$-topos and $X \in \mathbf{H}$, we call the $\infty$-topos

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathbf{H}}(X) := \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X}$$

of prop. 5.3.36 the *petit* $\infty$*-topos* of $X \in \mathbf{H}$. An object of $\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathbf{H}}(X)$ we also call an $\infty$*-sheaf over* $X$. The composite functor

$$\mathcal{O}_X : \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{(-)\times X} \mathbf{H}_{/X} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Et}} \mathbf{H}_{/X} =: \mathrm{Sh}_{\mathbf{H}}(X) \ ,$$

with Et the right adjoint of prop. 5.3.35, we call the *structure* $\infty$*-sheaf* of $X$. For $A \in \mathbf{H}$ we say that

$$\mathcal{O}_X(A) \in \mathrm{Sh}_{\mathbf{H}}(X)$$

is the $\infty$*-sheaf of* $A$*-valued functions on* $X$.

**Proposition 5.3.38.** *The functor* $\mathcal{O}_X$ *is right adjoint to the forgetful functor*

$$\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathbf{H}}(X) := \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/X} \xrightarrow{\sum_X} \mathbf{H} \ .$$

*In particular it preserves all small* $\infty$*-limits.*

Proof. By essential uniqueness of $\infty$-adjoints, it is sufficient to observe that the the component maps are pairwise adjoint. For the first this is prop. 5.1.26, for the second it is prop. 5.3.35. □

**Remark 5.3.39.** The triple $(\mathbf{H}, \mathrm{can}, \mathrm{fet})$ of the differential cohesive $\infty$-topos equipped with

1. its *canonical topology* (a collection $\{U_i \to X\}_i$ of morphisms in $\mathbf{H}$ is covering precisely if $\coprod_i U_i \to X$ is a 1-epimorphism, def. 5.1.65);
2. its class of formally étale morphisms, def. 5.3.19.

is a (large) *geometry* in the sense of [L-Geo]. For $X \in \mathbf{H}$, the pair $(\mathrm{Sh}_{\mathbf{H}}(X), \mathcal{O}_X)$ of def. 5.3.37 is a *structured* $\infty$*-topos* with respect to this geometry in the sense of [L-Geo]. In fact, it is essentially the structured $\infty$-topos associated to $X$ in the geometry $\mathbf{H}$ by def. 2.2.9 there.

We close this section by making explicit the special case of $\infty$-sheaves of *flat de Rham coefficients* over $X$.

**Definition 5.3.40.** For $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ a differential cohesive $\infty$-group and for $X \in \mathbf{H}$ any object, we say that the $\infty$*-sheaf of flat* $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$*-valued differential forms* over $X$ is

$$\mathcal{O}_X(\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G) \in \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{fet}}_{/X} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/X} \ ,$$

where $\mathcal{O}_X$ is given by def. 5.3.37 and where $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$ is given by def. 5.2.59.

**Definition 5.3.41.** The canonical point $0 : * \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$ induces a section

$$(\mathrm{id}_X, 0) : X \to X \times \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$$

of the projection map. The image of this section under the coreflection of prop. 5.3.35

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathcal{O}_X(\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G) \\ & {}^{0:=\mathrm{Et}(\mathrm{id},0)}\nearrow & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{=} & X \end{array}$$

we call the *0-section* of the $\infty$-sheaf of flat differential forms.

### 5.3.5 Infinitesimal extensions and Modules

**Definition 5.3.42.** For $X$ a homotopy-type in differential cohesion, an *infinitesimal extension* or *formal extension* of $X$ is an object $(E \to X) \in \mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$, such that the underlying morphism in $\mathbf{H}$ is a $\Im$-equivalence. Write

$$\mathrm{InfExt}(X) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$$

for the opposite of the full subcategory on these objects.

**Remark 5.3.43.** By the discussion in 5.3.4 and in view of remark 5.3.21, there is a precise sense in which $\mathrm{Mod}(X)$ is dual to the étale topos $\mathrm{Sh}(X)$ 5.3.4.

**Lemma 5.3.44.** *The inclusions* $\mathrm{InfExt}(X) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$ *of def. 5.3.42 preserve limits and colimits.*

Proof. Limits in an undercategory are computed in the ambient category, and limits in an overcategory are computed as the limits of the diagram with a terminal object adjoined in the ambient category. Dually for colimits. We have to show that if the diagram in the under-overcategory is in the inclusion of the infinitesimal extensions, then so is its (co-)limit. Since $\Im$ preserves all these and by assumption on infinitesimal extension, applying $\Im$ to the diagrams with terminal (initial object) adjoined make them be diagrams of the shape an $\infty$-groupoid with a terminal object, hence of a contractible $\infty$-groupoid, hence be essentially constant on $\Im(X)$. This shows that the limit of $\Im$-equivalences in the slice is itself a $\Im$-equivalence. □

**Example 5.3.45.** In the model of formal smooth cohesion discussed below in 6.5, infinitesimal extensoions of smooth manifolds are equivalently modules over their algebras of smooth functions. This is discussed below in 6.5.7.

**Remark 5.3.46.** As the base $X$ varies, the infinitesimal extensions form a model for dependent linear homotopy type theory, see prop. 6.1.12.

### 5.3.6 Infinitesimal neighbourhoods and Lie differentiation

We discuss here how the axioms of differential cohesion, def. 4.2.1, induce a reflection and coreflection onto infinitesimal homotopy-types, def. 4.1.21. The pointed infinitesimal homotopy-types have the interpretation of strong homotopy Lie algebras ($L_\infty$-algebras) and the coreflection onto them has the interpretation of Lie differentiation.

First we consider a slight refinement of the concept of infinitesimal homotopy-type:

**Definition 5.3.47.** Given differential cohesion $\begin{pmatrix} \Re \dashv \Im \dashv \& \\ \quad\ \int \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp \end{pmatrix}$, then

1. the *points-to-infinitesimal-pieces transform* is the natural transformation

$$\flat \longrightarrow \Im$$

which is the composite of the $\flat$-counit with the $\Im$-unit;

2. a differentially cohesive homotopy-type $X$ we call *properly infinitesimal* if the points-to-infinitesimal-pieces transform is a natural equivalence

$$\flat X \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Im X\,;$$

3. a group object $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$, def. 5.1.150, whose underlying homotopy-type $G$ is properly infinitesimal and has a single global point, $\flat G \simeq *$, we call a *formal group* or $\infty$-*Lie algebra* (depending on whether $\Re$ encodes finite or infinite order infinitesimals).

**Remark 5.3.48.** The idea of understanding Lie algebras as first-order infinitesimal Lie groups appears in [Kock06], in the context of synthetic differential geometry, and with more details in [Kock10, section 6]. Of course a higher-order infinitesimal Lie group is traditionally called a *formal Lie group*. The lift of this idea to geometric homotopy theory, that a formal $\infty$-stack which satisfies a suitable first-order condition (independently called "infinitesimal cohesion" in [L-Rep]) is equivalently a strong homotopy Lie algebra/$L_\infty$-algebra originates in [Hin] and was substantiated in [Pr10] and [L-Lie].

**Proposition 5.3.49.** *A properly infinitesimal object, def. 5.3.47, is in particular an infinitesimal object in the sense of def. 4.1.21.*

Proof. For a properly infinitesimal object $X$ by definition $\Im X$ is discrete, and therefore the relative unit $\Im(X) \to \int(X)$, according to prop. 5.3.3, is an equivalence, hence so is the composite points-to-pieces transform

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \flat X & \longrightarrow & \Im(X) \\ & \searrow & \downarrow \\ & & \int(X) \end{array}$$

□

**Definition 5.3.50.** Given an object $X$ and a point $x : * \to X$, then the *infinitesimal neighbourhood* or *infinitesimal disk* or *formal neighbourhood* at that point is the homotopy fiber product

$$\mathbb{D}^X_x := * \underset{\Im(X)}{\times} X$$

in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{D}^X_x & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{x} & \Im(X) \end{array}$$

More generally, for a sequence of orders of infinitesimals as in def. 4.2.7, then the *order-k infinitesimal disk* is

$$\mathbb{D}(k)^X_x := * \underset{\Im(X)}{\times} \Im_{(k)} X$$

**Remark 5.3.51.** The degree of the infinitesimal extension of the infinitesimal disk is implicit in the given differential cohesion. In the models it may be any finite order of infinitesimals, or arbitrary order, in which case one should speak of *formal disks* and *formal neighbourhoods*.

**Proposition 5.3.52.** *Given a point $x : * \to X$, then its factorization*

$$x : \; * \longrightarrow \mathbb{D}^X_x \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} X$$

*through the infinitesimal disk, according to def. 5.3.50, is the factorization of the ($\Im$-equivalences, local diffeomorphisms)-system of remark 5.3.21.*

Proof. By inspection of the definitions and using that $\Im(*) \simeq *$. □

**Example 5.3.53.** Let $G$ be an $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.150, and let $e : * \to G$ be its canonical point. Since the infinitesimal shape modality $\Im$, def. 5.3.1, preserves $\infty$-limits, it also preserves group structure, i.e. the infinitesimal disk of $\mathbf{B}G$ is a pointed connected object of the form $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{D}^G_e$ and hence, via theorem 5.1.151, exhibits group structure on $\mathbb{D}^G_e$. This is really the *Lie algebra* of $G$ and we will by default write

$$\mathfrak{g} := \mathbb{D}^G_e$$

for the infinitesimal disk of a group object $G$ at its canonical point (and $\mathfrak{h} := \mathbb{D}^H_e$, etc.)

Similarly, for $H \to G$ a homomorphism of group objects, then the the canonical $G$-action of $G$ on $G/H$ of example 5.1.276, via its defining homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G/H & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}H \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

is sent under forming infinitesimal disks to the sequence exhibiting the homotopy fiber of $\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{h} \to \mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}$, which we accordingly denote by $\mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathfrak{h} \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g} \end{array} .$$

**Definition 5.3.54.** Given a group object $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$, def. 5.1.150, and given an action of $G$ on some $F$, according to prop. 5.1.267, then a *linearization* of the action is a point $0 : * \to F$ and a compatible $G$-action on the infinitesimal disk $\mathbb{D}^F_0$, def. 5.3.50, around that point, hence, by prop. 5.1.267, a pasting diagram of homotopy pullbacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{D}^F_0 & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{D}^F_0//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ F & \longrightarrow & F//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

where the bottom square is the one exhibiting the given $G$-action on $F$.

**Remark 5.3.55.** A linearized action, def. 5.3.54, is equivalently encoded by a group homomorphism

$$G \longrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbb{D}^F_0)$$

to the automorphism $\infty$-group, example 5.1.275.

**Proposition 5.3.56** (linearization of actions)**.** *If a $G$-action on some $F$ stabilizes a point $0 : * \to F$ according to def. 5.1.288, then it restricts to an action on the infinitesimal disk $\mathbb{D}^F_0$ of that point and hence induces its linearization according to def. 5.3.55.*

Proof. That the action stabilizes the point 0 is, by prop. 5.1.292, equivalent to a factorization of the identity on $\mathbf{B}G$ through the delooping of the stabilizer group of the point

$$\mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\sigma} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Stab}_G(x) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{B}G \quad (\text{composite} = \mathrm{id}) .$$

Therefore by the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, we have that the top square in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} * & \longrightarrow & *//G \\ \downarrow^{0} & & \downarrow^{\sigma} \\ V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

is a homotopy pullback. This means (since the infinitesimal shape modality $\Im$ preserves this pullback and using again the pasting law) that as we apply the factorization of the top vertical morphisms through ($\Im$-equivalences, local diffeomorphisms), via remark 5.3.21, we get

$$\begin{array}{ccc} * & \longrightarrow & *//G \\ \downarrow^{0} & & \downarrow^{\sigma} \\ \mathbb{D}^F_0 & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{D}^F_0//G \\ \downarrow^{\mathrm{et}} & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{et}} \\ V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

such that all squares are homotopy pullbacks. Hence the subdiagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{D}^F_0 & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{D}^F_0//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

exhibits the linearized action in question. □

**Example 5.3.57.** Let $H \to G$ be a homomorphism of $\infty$-groups, def. 5.1.150. Consider the canonical $G$-action on $G//H$ of example 5.1.276. By example 5.1.297. its pullback/restriction, def. 5.1.271, to an $H$-action on $G/H$ stabilizes the canonical point

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} * & \xrightarrow{e/H} & G/H & \longrightarrow & H\backslash G/H \\ & \searrow & & \nearrow & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}G & = & \mathbf{B}H \end{array} .$$

Hence by example 5.3.53 and prop. 5.3.56 there is an induced linearized action of $H$ on $\mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h} = \mathbb{D}^{G/H}_{e/H}$, exhibited by a homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h} & \longrightarrow & H\backslash \mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h} \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}H \end{array}$$

In particular this means that there is a canonical homomorphism

$$H \longrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(\mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h})$$

from $H$ to the general linear group, def. 5.3.95, $\mathrm{GL}(\mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h}) = \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbb{D}^{G/H}_{e/H})$.

The following establishes canonical (co-)modalities characterizing the properly infinitesimal homotopy-types and subsuming all these infinitesimal disks.

**Definition 5.3.58.** Given differential cohesion $\begin{pmatrix} \Re \dashv \Im \dashv \& \\ \quad \int \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp \end{pmatrix}$ define operations $\int^{\mathrm{rel}}$ and $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}$ by

$$\int^{\mathrm{rel}} X := (\textstyle\int X) \coprod_{\Re X} X$$

and

$$\flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X := (\flat X) \underset{\Im X}{\times} X \,.$$

Hence $\int^{\mathrm{rel}} X$ makes a homotopy pushout square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Re X & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Im X & \longrightarrow & \int^{\mathrm{rel}} X \end{array}$$

and $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}$ makes a homotopy pullback square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \flat X & \longrightarrow & \Im X \end{array} ,$$

where the bottom morphism is the points-to-infinitesimal-pieces transform.

**Remark 5.3.59.** For differential cohesion over $\infty$Grpd, $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}(X)$ is the collection of all infinitesimal disks $\mathbb{D}^X_x$, def. 5.3.50, inside $X$, around all its global points $x : \flat X$. This follows via prop. 5.1.1 and prop. 3.1.5:

$$\begin{aligned} \flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X &:= \flat X \underset{\Im(X)}{\times} X \\ &\simeq \left( \varinjlim_{x:\flat X} * \right) \underset{\Im(X)}{\times} X \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_{x:\flat X} \left( * \underset{\Im(X)}{\times} X \right) \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_{x:\flat X} \mathbb{D}^X_x \end{aligned}$$

Applied to pointed connected objects, then $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}$ has the interpretation of *Lie differentiation*, see 6.5.2.5. Below in 5.3.66 we refine this to the cohesive (as opposed to geometrically discrete) collection of all these infinitesimal disks.

**Proposition 5.3.60.** *The operations in def. 5.3.58*

1. *form an adjoint pair* $(\int^{\mathrm{rel}} \dashv \flat^{\mathrm{ref}})$ *of modalities (idempotent (co-)monads);*

2. *whose (co-)modal homotopy-types are precisely the properly infinitesimal homotopy-types, def. 5.3.47;*

3. $\int^{\mathrm{rel}}$ *preserves the terminal object.*

Proof. By lemma 4.1.13 the adjunctions between the (co-)monads $(\int \dashv \flat)$ and $(\Re \dashv \Im)$ intertwine their respective units and counits as

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{H}(\int X, A) & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & \mathbf{H}(X, \flat A) \\
& \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\
& \mathbf{H}(X, A) &
\end{array}
\qquad
\begin{array}{ccc}
& \mathbf{H}(X, A) & \\
& \swarrow \quad \searrow & \\
\mathbf{H}(\Re X, A) & \xrightarrow[\simeq]{} & \mathbf{H}(X, \Im A)
\end{array}
\,.
$$

Together with the respect of $\mathbf{H}(-,-)$ for (co-)limits this implies the following natural equivalences

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{H}(\textstyle\int^{\mathrm{rel}} X, A) &\simeq \mathbf{H}(\textstyle\int X, A) \underset{\mathbf{H}(\Re X, A)}{\times} \mathbf{H}(X, A) \\
&\simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \flat A) \underset{\mathbf{H}(X, \Im A)}{\times} \mathbf{H}(X, A) \\
&\simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \flat^{\mathrm{rel}} A)
\end{aligned}
\,.
$$

This establishes the adjunction $(\int^{\mathrm{rel}} \dashv \flat^{\mathrm{rel}})$ of $\infty$-functors. Now observe that

1. $\Im(\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}(X)) \simeq \flat(X)$, because $\Im$ preserves homotopy fiber products (since it has the left adjoint $\Re$) and hence preserves the defining pullback, sends the $\Im$-unit to an equivalence (by idempotency) and preserves $\flat(X) \simeq \mathscr{E}(\flat(X))$ (by idempotency);

2. $\flat(\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}(X)) \simeq \flat(X)$, since also $\flat$ preserves homotopy fiber products (since it has the left adjoint $\int$) and sends the $\Im$-unit to an equivalence (by prop. 5.3.5, item 4) and preserves $\flat X$ (by idempotency).

This implies first of all that these equivalences exhibit the points-to-infinitesimal pieces transform on $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}(X)$ as an equivalence

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\flat(\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}(X)) & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & \Im(\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}(X)) \\
& {\scriptstyle\simeq}\searrow \quad \swarrow{\scriptstyle\simeq} & \\
& \flat(X) &
\end{array}
$$

(by inspection of the corresponding morphism of cospan diagrams in view of the above two points and by 2-out-of-3 for equivalences ).

This in turn implies that $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}$ is idempotent, since being a right adjoint we may take it into its own defining homotopy pullback of its points-to-infinitesimal-pieces transform, which by the above trivializes. More generally, this means that for any properly infinitesimal $X$, def. 5.3.47, the canonical map $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X \to X$ is an equivalence (being the pullback of an equivalence).

In summary this shows that $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}$ is an idempotent comonad whose modal homotopy-types are precisely the properly infinitesimal homotopy-types. By adjointness the corresponding statements follow for $\int^{\mathrm{rel}}$. That this also preserves the terminal object is immediate from the fact that by the axioms of differential cohesion $\Re$ and $\int$ do. □

**Definition 5.3.61.** Given a differential cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{\Re} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$, write $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{inf}} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ for the full sub-$\infty$-category of the properly infinitesimal homotopy types of $\mathbf{H}$, def. 5.3.47.

**Proposition 5.3.62.** *If in an differential cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{\Re} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ the operation $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}$ from def. 5.3.58 has a right adjoint, to be denoted $\sharp^{\mathrm{rel}}$, then,*

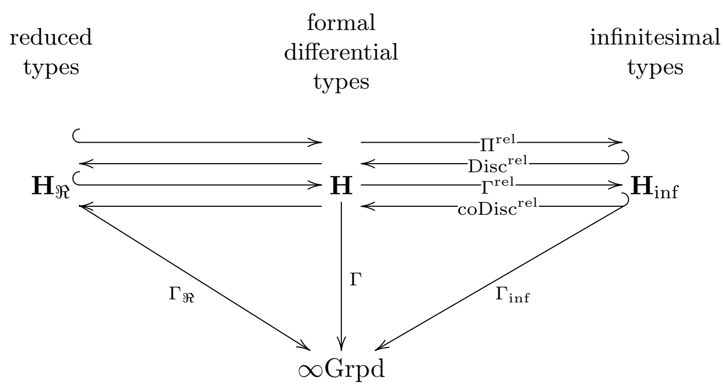
1. *the subcategory* $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{inf}}$ *of def. 5.3.61 is an* $\infty$*-topos and it is infinitesimally cohesive, def. 4.1.21;*

2. $\mathbf{H}$ *is cohesive, def. 4.1.8, over* $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{inf}}$.

Proof. By prop. 5.3.60. □

**Remark 5.3.63.** In the situation of prop. 5.3.62 the adjoint triple $\int^{\mathrm{rel}} \dashv \flat^{\mathrm{rel}} \dashv \sharp^{\mathrm{rel}}$ is pronounced, in line with the terminology in remark 4.1.12, the "relative shape modality" $\dashv$ "relative flat modality" $\dashv$ "relative sharp modality". Just like the cohesive triple $\int \dashv \flat \dashv \sharp$ exhibits an underlying cohesive point structure of homotopy types, so this relative analog exhibits underlying cohesive structure of infinitesimally thickened points (infinitesimal neighbourhoods/disks around the actual points).

In this situation we have in total a system of reflections as follows:




where the vertical morphisms exhibit cohesion of all three $\infty$-toposes over the base $\infty$-topos $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$; themselves fitting into adjoint quadruples, which we do not display; such that all $2 \times 4$ induces triangles of $\infty$-functors commute.

**Example 5.3.64.** We discuss realizations of relative cohesion, def. 5.3.62, in the context of formal smooth cohesion below in prop. 6.5.16.

A direct consequence worth recording:

**Proposition 5.3.65.** *The counit* $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X \longrightarrow X$ *of the relative flat modality, def. 5.3.58, is a formally étale morphism, def. 5.3.19, for all objects* $X$.

Proof. Using that the infinitesimal shape modality $\Im$ is idempotent and preserves homotopy pullbacks, one finds from def. 5.3.19 that its unit on $\flat^{rel} X$ is equivalent to the canonical $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X \to \flat X$. This way the defining homotopy pullback in def.5.3.19 is equivalent to

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Im \flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X & \longrightarrow & \Im X \end{array}$$

and hence exhibits the top morphism as being formally étale. □

### 5.3.7 Infinitesimal disk bundles

The discrete collections $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X$ of infinitesimal disks, def. 5.3.50 in an object $X$ (as in remark 5.3.50) naturally refine to cohesive collections forming a bundle of infinitesimal disks over $X$. Here we discuss the elementary formalization and some basic properties of these. In the context of synthetic differential geometry these infinitesimal disk bundles are sometimes known as [Kock80] *bundles of monads* (where "monad" is in some Leibnizian sense of indivisible fundamental entities). More commonly known in traditional theory are, on the one hand, the principal bundles to which these infinitesimal disk bundles are associated, these are the *frame bundles* discussed in 5.3.11, and, on the other hand, the right adjoint to the construction of infinitesimal disk bundles, these are the *jet bundles* discussed in 5.3.8.

Given a sequence of orders of infinitesimals as in def. 4.2.7, consider the following definitions for any $k \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$.

**Definition 5.3.66.** For $X$ any object in differential cohesion, its order-$k$ *infinitesimal disk bundle* $T^k X \to X$ is the homotopy pullback $p$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T^k X & \xrightarrow{\text{ev}} & X \\ \downarrow^{p} & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \Im_{(k)} X \end{array}$$

of the unit of its infinitesimal shape modality, def. 5.3.1, along itself.

**Remark 5.3.67.** With the base change geometric morphisms, prop. 2.1.2, along the infinitesimal path inclusion $i : X \to \Im_{(k)} X$, def. 5.3.1, denoted by

$$\mathbf{H}_{/X} \underset{i_*}{\overset{\overset{i_!}{\longrightarrow}}{\underset{i^*}{\longleftarrow}}} \mathbf{H}_{/\Im_{(k)} X}$$

and with $X$ naturally regarded as an object (the terminal object) of $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$, then its infinitesimal disk bundle $T^k X \to X$ of def. 5.3.66, also regarded as an object of $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$, is equivalently

$$T^k X \simeq i^* i_! X \,.$$

Therefore we set more generally:

**Definition 5.3.68.** Write

$$T^k := i^* i_! : \mathbf{H}_{/X} \to \mathbf{H}_{/X}$$

for the monad induced by the base change in remark 5.3.67.

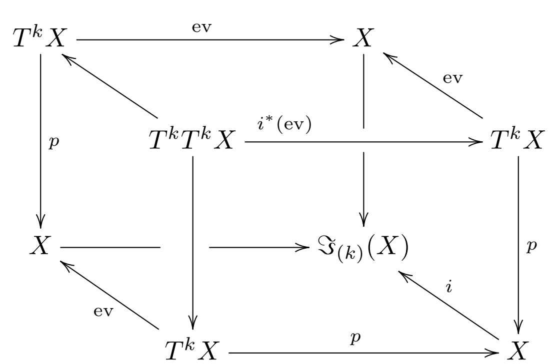
**Remark 5.3.69.** The morphism denoted ev in def. 5.3.66, regarded as a morphism over $\Im_{(k)} X$, is the $i_! X$-component of the counit of the $(i_! \dashv i^*)$-adjunction

$$\text{ev} : i_! i^* i_! X \longrightarrow i_! X \,.$$

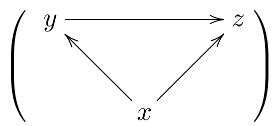
Hence its further image under $i^*$ is the product operation

$$i^*(\text{ev}) : T^k T^k \longrightarrow T^k$$

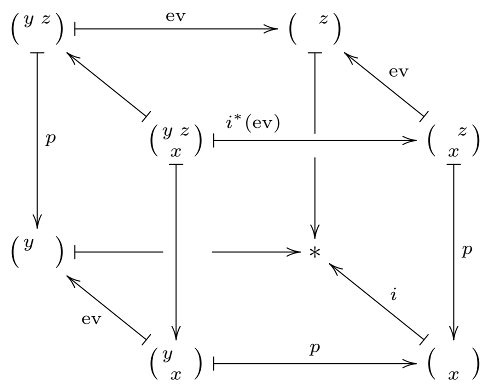
of the $T^k$-monad of def. 5.3.68. In the cubical diagram



the bottom, left and right faces are homotopy pullbacks by construction, and hence by the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, so is the top face. This exhibits a generalized point in $T^k T^k X$ as consisting of tuples of three infinitesimal neighbour points ${}^{y\,z}_{\;x}$ in $X$, hence a sequence of infinitesimal paths,



and exhibits the three maps out of it as being the three possible projections on any pair of two of these neighbours, where $p$ takes the basepoint of an infinitesimal path, and ev the endpoint:



**Remark 5.3.70.** It follows by adjunction that for $E \to X$ any bundle then $i^* i_* E$ is the bundle whose local sections over any cover $U \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\rightarrow X$ are equivalently bundle morphisms out of $T^k X$ to the original bundle $E$:

$$\frac{U \longrightarrow i^* i_* E}{i^* i_! U \longrightarrow E}\,.$$

Here $i^* i_* E =: J^k(E)$ is the jet bundle of $E$, def. 5.3.74, hence we have an adjunction

$$T^k \dashv J^k\,.$$

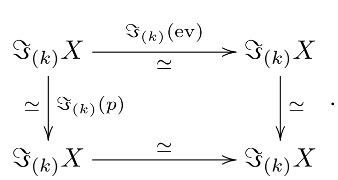
Indeed, the very concept of jets is such that a jet of $E$ is equivalently a section of $E$ over an infinitesimal disk. Under this equivalence, precomposition with ev gives a map from sections of $E$ to sections of $J^k(E)$, the jet prolongation. In the context of synthetic differential geometry, the adjunction between infinitesimal disk bundles and jet bundles is [Kock80].

We record a few basic properties of infinitesimal disk bundles.

**Proposition 5.3.71.** *The two maps out of the infinitesimal disk bundle in def. 5.3.66 become equivalences under infinitesimal reduction $\Re_{(k)}$, def. 5.3.1:*

$$\Re_{(k)}(T^k X \longrightarrow X) \simeq (\Re_{(k)} X \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Re_{(k)} X)\,.$$

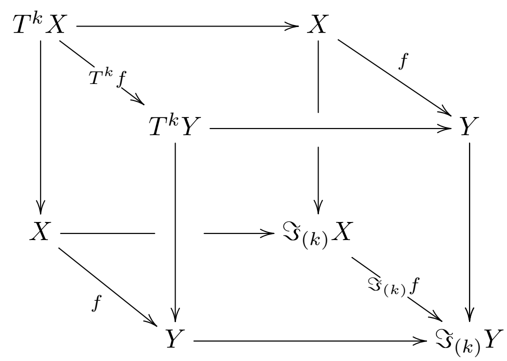
Proof. By idempotency we have $\Re_{(k)} \simeq \Re_{(k)} \Im_{(k)}$ and again by idempotency and using that $\Im_{(k)}$ preserves homotopy pullbacks it follows that $\Im_{(k)}$ sends the diagram in def. 5.3.66 to the homotopy pullback



□

**Proposition 5.3.72.** *For $f : X \xrightarrow{\text{et}} Y$ a local diffeomorphism, def. 5.3.19, then also the induced morphism of infinitesimal disk bundles, def. 5.3.66, is a local diffeomorphism $T^k f : T^k X \xrightarrow{\text{et}} T^k Y$ .*

Proof. We are looking at the cube




The front and the rear face are homotopy pullbacks by definition of $T^k$. Also the bottom face is a homotopy pullback, by assumption that $f$ is a local diffeomorphism (as is hence the right face). Hence the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, gives that also the top square is a homotopy pullback, and thus that the pasting of the top and right square is a homotopy pullback. But by idempotency of $\Im_{(k)}$ and the fact that $\Im_{(k)}$ preserves homotopy pullbacks, this top and right pasting is equivalently the naturality squre of the $\Im_{(k)}$-unit on $T^k f$. This is hence a homotopy pullback, which is the defining property for $T^k f$ to be a local diffeomorphism. □

**Proposition 5.3.73.** *For $\iota \colon U \xrightarrow{\text{et}} X$ a local diffeomorphism, def. 5.3.19, then pullback along i preserves infinitesimal disk bundles, def. 5.3.66:*

$$\iota^* T^k X \simeq T^k U .$$

Proof. By the definition of local diffeomorphisms and using the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, we have an equivalence of pasting diagrams of homotopy pullbacks of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \iota^* T^k X & \longrightarrow & T^k X & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ U & \longrightarrow & X & \longrightarrow & \Im_{(k)} X \end{array} \quad \simeq \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} T^k U & \longrightarrow & U & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ U & \longrightarrow & \Im_{(k)} U & \longrightarrow & \Im_{(k)} X \end{array} .$$

□

### 5.3.8 Jets and differential operators

We discuss elementary formalization in differential cohesion of the concepts of jet bundles, differential equations and differential operators (possibly non-linear).

Given a sequence of orders of infinitesimals as in def. 4.2.7, consider the following definitions for any $k \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$.

**Definition 5.3.74.** For any object $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$ with $i : \Sigma \to \Im_{(k)}\Sigma$ its constant order-$k$ infinitesimal path inclusion, def. 5.3.1, and

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma} \underset{i_*}{\overset{i^*}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathbf{H}_{/\Im_{(k)}(\Sigma)}$$

the corresponding base change geometric morphism, prop. 5.1.28, we say that the induced co-monad

$$J^k_\Sigma := i^* i_* : \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$$

is the *Jet bundle operator* or *Jet comonad* over $\Sigma$. If $\Sigma$ is understood we abbreviate the notation to $J^k$.

For $(E \to \Sigma) \in \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$ a bundle, we call $(J^k(\Sigma) \to \Sigma)$ its order-$k$ *jet bundle*.

**Remark 5.3.75.** In the context of differential geometry and for $k = \infty$, the observation that the Jet bundle operation is a comonad is due to [Marv86]. In the context over an algebraic site with jet bundles incarnated via *crystals of schemes* or *D-schemes* as in section 2.3.2 of [BeDr04] (see [Paug11] for a review) the base change origin of the jet bundle comonad was highlighted in [L-DGeo].

**Remark 5.3.76.** The jet comonad is right adjoint to forming infinitesimal disk bundles, def. 5.3.68,

$$(T^k \dashv J^k)\,,$$

see 5.3.11, remark 5.3.70.

Hence $J^k$ preserves all $\infty$-limits and in particular the terminal object $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}_\Sigma$. We record the following simple but important implication

**Example 5.3.77.** There is an essentially unique morphism

$$J^k_\Sigma(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Sigma$$

in $\mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$, and this is an equivalence.

Another degenerate class of examples of relevance for the general theory is this:

**Example 5.3.78.** If $\Sigma = *$ is the terminal object, then $\mathrm{Jet}_\Sigma(E) \xrightarrow{\simeq} E$ for all $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/*} \simeq \mathbf{H}$.

**Definition 5.3.79.** Given a bundle $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$ We write

$$j^k : \Gamma_\Sigma(E) \longrightarrow \Gamma_\Sigma(J^k(E))$$

for the functor which is given by the jet functor itself, def. 5.3.74, regarded via example 5.3.77 as taking sections to sections:

$$j^k : (\Sigma \xrightarrow{\phi} E) \mapsto (\Sigma \xrightarrow{\simeq} J^k(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{J^k(\phi)} J^k(\Sigma))\,.$$

We call $j^k(\phi)$ the order-$k$ *jet prolongation* of $\phi$.

**Proposition 5.3.80.** *Jet bundles are preserved by pullback along local diffeomorphism, def. 5.3.19, i.e. for $f : X \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} Y$ a local diffeomorphism and $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/Y}$ a bundle, then*

$$f^* J^\infty_Y E \simeq J^\infty_X f^* E\,.$$

Proof. The defining homotopy pullback in def. 5.3.19 induces a square of base change operations

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{H}_{/N^\infty_Y X} & \underset{(i_X)_*}{\overset{(i_X)^*}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathbf{H}_{/\Im X} \\
{\scriptstyle f_*}\downarrow\uparrow{\scriptstyle f^*} & & {\scriptstyle (\Im f)_*}\downarrow\uparrow{\scriptstyle (\Im f)^*} \\
\mathbf{H}_{/Y} & \underset{(i_Y)_*}{\overset{(i^Y)^*}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathbf{H}_{/\Im Y}
\end{array}\,.$$

By Beck-Chevalley this implies that

$$(\Im f)^*(i_Y)_* \simeq (i_X)_* f^* .$$

Using this we find

$$\begin{aligned} f^* J^\infty_Y E &:= f^*(i_Y)^*(i_Y)_* E \\ &\simeq (i_X)^*(\Im f)^*(i_Y)_* E \\ &\simeq (i_X)^*(i_X)_* f^* E \\ &=: J^\infty_Y f^* E . \end{aligned}$$

### 5.3.9 Partial differential equations

**Definition 5.3.81.** Given $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$, write

$$\mathrm{PDE}(\mathbf{H})_\Sigma := \mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma)$$

for the Eilenberg-Moore $\infty$-category of coalgebras over the Jet comonad of 5.3.74 (see [RiVe13]).

**Remark 5.3.82.** That in traditional differential geometry this definition yields Vinogradov's category of differential equations was shown in [Marv86].

**Proposition 5.3.83.** *The $\infty$-category of def. 5.3.81 is an $\infty$-topos and the co-free/forgetful adjunction is a geometric morphism:*

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma} \underset{\text{free}}{\overset{\text{forget}}{\leftrightarrows}} \mathrm{PDE}(\mathbf{H})_\Sigma$$

Proof. The analog statement in 1-category theory is in [MacMoe92, V. 8]. The argument that lifts this to $\infty$-category theory has kindly been compiled by Marc Hoyois[25]. □

**Definition 5.3.84.** Given $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$ then the $\infty$-category of bundles over $\Sigma$ with (not necessarily linear)*differential operators* between them is the co-Kleisli category of the jet bundle co-monad of def. 5.3.74, the full sub-category of $\mathrm{PDE}(\mathbf{H})_\Sigma$, def. 5.3.81, on the essential image of the free functor of prop. 5.3.83. Hence for $(E_i \to X) \in \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ bundles (see 5.1.2.1) then

- a differential operator from sections of $E_1$ to sections of $E_2$, denoted $D : \Gamma_X(E_1) \to \Gamma_X(E_2)$, is a morphism $\tilde{D} : J^k(E_1) \to E_2$ in $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$;
- the composition of two differential operators, denoted $D_2 \circ D_1$, is the composite morphism

$$J^k(E_1) \longrightarrow J^k(J^k(E_1)) \xrightarrow{J^k(\tilde{D}_1)} J^k(E_2) \xrightarrow{\tilde{D}_1} E_3 \ ,$$

  where the first is the co-product of the $J^k$-comonad.

**Remark 5.3.85.** In the context of traditional differential geometry the co-Kleisli characterization of differential operator was observed in [Marv86].

[25] `http://mathoverflow.net/a/206695/381`

### 5.3.10 Manifolds and Étale groupoids

We discuss an axiomatization in differential cohesion of *separated manifolds* and (formally) *étale groupoids* . In typical models, for instance that discussed below in 6.5, formal étaleness automatically implies global étaleness, and so the following formulation captures the notion of *étale groupoid* objects.

A classical texts on étale 1-groupoids is [MoMr03]. An discussion close in spirit to our discussion is [Carc12].

Recall from 5.1.8 that groupoid objects $\mathcal{G}$ in an $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ are equivalent to 1-epimorphisms, def. 5.1.65, $U \xrightarrow{p} X$ in $\mathbf{H}$, which we think of as being an *atlas* for $X \in \mathbf{H}$.

**Definition 5.3.86.** For $\mathbf{H}_{\Re} \overset{i}{\hookrightarrow} \mathbf{H}$ a differential cohesive $\infty$-topos, def. 4.2.1, we say that a groupoid object in $\mathbf{H}$ is *formally étale* if the corresponding atlas $U \longrightarrow X$ is a formally étale morphism, def. 5.3.16. We denote this by $U \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} X$

**Remark 5.3.87.** When $\mathbf{H}$ is presented by a category of simplicial (pre)sheaves, as in 3.1.3, then for any simplicial presheaf $X$ there is, by remark 5.1.78, a canonical atlas, given by the inclusion $\mathrm{const} X_0 \to X$. If the presentation of $X$ and the induced canonical atlas is understood explicitly, we often speak just of $X$ itself being a formally étale groupoid or a *formally étale $\infty$-stack*.

Fix now $V$ any homotopy-type. We discuss étale groupoids locally modeled on $V$. While for the basic definition $V$ is arbitrary, typical choices of interest for $V$ include the following

1. If $\mathbb{A}^1 \in \mathbf{H}$ be a line object exhibiting the cohesion of $\mathbf{H}$ according to def. 5.2.48, then $\mathbb{A}^1$ play the role of "the continuum", the real line, and so taking $V = \mathbb{A}^n := (\mathbb{A}^1)^{\times_n}$ plays the role of the $n$-dimensional Cartesian space.

2. For a good theory of tangent bundles and frame bundles (5.3.11 below) $V$ is to have trivializable infinitesimal disk bundle.

3. For applications to $G$-structures (5.3.12 below) and Cartan geometry (5.3.12 below) $V$ is to carry group structure, def. 5.1.150 (and typically abelian $\infty$-group structure, def. 5.1.157).

**Definition 5.3.88.** For $V \in \mathbf{H}$, a *$V$-manifold* or *$V$-étale stack* is an object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ such that there exists a *$V$-cover* or *$V$-atlas* of $X$: a correspondence from $V$ to $X$ via a coproduct

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \coprod_i U_i & \\ {}^{\mathrm{et}}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\mathrm{et}} \\ V & & X \end{array}$$

such that

1. the component morphisms are all formally étale, def. 5.3.16, and those to $V$ are in addition 1-monomorphisms, def. 5.1.58,
$$\begin{array}{ccc} & U_i & \\ {}^{\mathrm{et}}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\mathrm{et}} \\ V & & X \end{array} ;$$

2. the total morphism $\coprod_i U_i \longrightarrow X$ is a 1-epimorphism, def. 5.1.65.

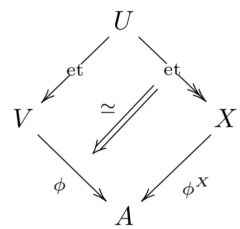
Hence a $V$-manifold/$V$-étale stack is an object which admits an atlas that makes it a formally étale groupoid, def. 5.3.86, with additional conditions on the atlas.

**Remark 5.3.89.** The condition in def. 5.3.88 that all the component maps are formally étale implies that also the two maps out of the coproduct are formally étale, by prop. 6.5.55.

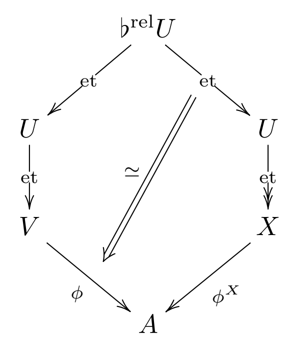
**Example 5.3.90.** Every object $V \in \mathbf{H}$ is canonically a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88, via the identity correspondence on $V$.

The following simple definition captures a wealth of types of structures on manifolds that are of interest, such as generalizations of symplectic structures.

**Definition 5.3.91.** Let $\phi : V \to A$ any morphism and for $X$ a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88, then a *globalization* of $\phi$ over $X$ is a morphism $\phi^X : X \to A$ such that there exists a $V$-cover $V \leftarrow U \to X$ which extends to a correspondence in the slice over $A$:




Moreover, an *infinitesimal neighbourhood-wise globalization* is (just) such a correspondence after restricting to the collection $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}} U$ of infinitesimal disks in $U$ along the counit $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}} U \to U$ of the relative flat modality, def. 5.3.58,




**Remark 5.3.92.** When the object $A$ in def. 5.3.91 is thought of as a moduli stack of fields, then such a globalization is equivalently a correspondence phased by a local action functional as in local prequantum field theory discussed in 5.2.18. In particular when $A$ is a differential coefficient as in 5.2.13 then a globalization is a *prequantization* of a $V$-cover in the sense of the prequantized Lagrangian correspondences discussed in 1.3.2.

A central question is: given $\phi$ and $X$, what are the obstructions to a globalization, def. 5.3.91, to exist? This we turn to below in 5.3.12.

### 5.3.11 Frame bundles

We discuss how for framed $V$ each $V$-manifold $X$ in differential cohesion, as in def. 5.3.88, carries a frame bundle which is a $\mathrm{GL}(n)$-principal $\infty$-bundle for $\mathrm{GL}(V) := \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbb{D}^V)$ the automorphism $\infty$-group of the typical infinitesimal disk in $X$.

**Definition 5.3.93.** A *framing* of an object $V \in \mathbf{H}$ is a trivialization of its infinitesimal disk bundle, def. 5.3.66, hence an object $\mathbb{D}^V(k)$ (the typical infinitesimal disk, def. 5.3.50, in $V$) and a chosen equivalence

$$T^k V \simeq V \times \mathbb{D}^V(k) \,.$$

The following gives a key class of examples of framed objects.

**Proposition 5.3.94.** *Every object $G$ in a differential cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ equipped with $\infty$-group structure, def. 5.1.150, (or in fact just equipped with group structure in the homotopy category of $\mathbf{H}$) is canonically framed, def. 5.3.93, such that the horizontal morphism in def. 5.3.66*

$$\mathrm{ev} : T^k G \simeq G \times \mathbb{D}^G_e(k) \overset{\cdot}{\longrightarrow} G$$

*is the restriction, in its second argument, of the group product operation $G \times G \to G$ to the infinitesimal disk, def. 5.3.50, around the canonical point (the neutral element) of $G$, hence is the left translation operation on $\mathbb{D}^G_e(k)$.*

Proof. Since $G$ has group structure, and since the infinitesimal shape modality $\Im$, def. 5.3.1, preserves $\infty$-group structure (since it even preserves all $\infty$-(co-)limits) we may use the higher topos-theoretic Mayer-Vietoris sequence of prop. 5.1.182 to characterize $T^k G$ equivalently as the homotopy pullback in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T^k G & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle (p,\mathrm{ev})} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle e} \\ G \times G \longrightarrow (\Im_{(k)} G) \times (\Im_{(k)} G) & \xrightarrow[(-)\cdot(-)^{-1}]{} & \Im_{(k)} G \end{array} .$$

Since in particular the $\Im$-unit on $G$ is an $\infty$-group homomorphism, the bottom morphism here is equivalent to first forming the product and then applying the projection. Therefore by the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, this exhibits $T^k G$ equivalently as the homotopy pullback on the left of

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} T^k G & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{D}^G_e(k) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle (p,\mathrm{ev})} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle e} \\ G \times G & \xrightarrow[(-)\cdot(-)^{-1}]{} & G & \longrightarrow & \Im_{(k)} G \end{array} ,$$

where in the right square we have used def. 5.3.50. By lemma 5.1.160 the left square is equivalent to

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G \times \mathbb{D}^G_e(k) & \xrightarrow{p_2} & \mathbb{D}^G_e(k) \\ {\scriptstyle (p_1,\cdot)}\downarrow & & \downarrow \\ G \times G & \xrightarrow[(-)\cdot(-)^{-1}]{} & G \end{array} .$$

□

**Definition 5.3.95.** Given $V$ a framed object, def. 5.3.93, write

$$\mathrm{GL}(V) := \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbb{D}^V(k))$$

for the automorphism $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.155, of its typical infinitesimal disk – the *general linear group.*

**Remark 5.3.96.** Given a sequence of orders of infinitesimals as in def. 4.2.7, then $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbb{D}(1)^V)$ plays the role of the general linear group proper, while $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbb{D}(k)^V)$ is rather a *jet group* [KoMiSl93, section 13], sometimes denoted "$\mathrm{GL}^k(V)$", or similar, in the literature.

By prop. 5.3.73 it follows that:

**Proposition 5.3.97.** *Let $V$ be a framed object, def. 5.3.93. For $X$ a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88, then its infinitesimal disk bundle, def. 5.3.66, canonically trivializes over its cover, i.e. there is a homotopy pullback of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U \times \mathbb{D}^V(k) & \longrightarrow & T^k X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ U & \xrightarrow{\text{et}} & X \end{array} .$$

*This exhibits the infinitesimal disk bundle $T^k X \to X$ as a $\mathbb{D}^V(k)$-fiber $\infty$-bundle, def. 5.1.241, and hence, by prop. 5.1.249, as associated to a* $\mathrm{GL}(V)$*-principal $\infty$-bundle (def. 5.3.95) via an essentially unique morphism*

$$\tau_X : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V) .$$

**Example 5.3.98.** Let $H \to G$ be a homomorphism of differentially cohesive $\infty$-groups, def. 5.1.150, and consider the induced Klein geometry $G/H$ of example 5.1.297. Even though $G$ and $H$ are each canonically framed by example 5.3.94, the quotient $G/H$ need not be framed itself.

The structure of a $V$-manifold on $G/H$, def. 5.3.88, for a framed object $V$, exhibits $G/H$ as being still *locally* framed. With the notation $\mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h} := D^{G/H}_{eH}$ from def. 5.3.53, a $V$-cover exhibits such a $V$-manifold structure on $G/H$ and gives an equivalence

$$\mathrm{GL}(V) \simeq \mathrm{GL}(\mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h}) .$$

**Definition 5.3.99.** Let $V$ be a framed object, def. 5.3.93. For $X$ a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88, then the $\mathrm{GL}(V)$-principal bundle modulated via theorem 5.1.207 by $\tau_X$ in prop. 5.3.97 we call the *frame bundle* of $X$.

**Remark 5.3.100.** In the presence of a sequence of orders of infinitesimals as in def. 4.2.7 and following remark 5.3.96, for first order infinitesimal disks $\mathbb{D}(1)^V$ then def. 5.3.99 captures the frame bundle proper, while when $\mathbb{D}^V$ is instead a higher order infinitesimal neighbourhood, or even the whole formal neighbourhood, then $\mathrm{Fr}(X)$ is rather a *higher order frame bundle* or *formal frame bundle* [KoMiSl93, section 12.12], often denoted "$\mathrm{Fr}^k(X)$" or similar. We nevertheless stick with the notation "$\mathrm{Fr}(X)$" here.

**Proposition 5.3.101.** *Let $V$ be a framed object, def. 5.3.93. The operation that sends $V$-manifold $X$, def. 5.3.88 to frame bundle, def. 5.3.99, extends to a functor*

$$\tau_{(-)} : V\mathrm{Mfd}^{\mathrm{et}}_{\mathbf{H}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}$$

*from $V$-manifolds with local diffeomorphisms between them, def. 5.3.19.*

Proof. This follows with prop. 5.3.73 and the proof of prop. 5.1.249. □

In particular:

**Example 5.3.102.** For $V$ a framed object and $X$ a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88, then every $V$-cover $V \xleftarrow{\text{et}} U \xrightarrow{\text{et}} X$ extends to a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & U & & \\ & {}^{\text{et}}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\text{et}} & \\ V & & \Downarrow \simeq & & X \\ & {}_{\tau_V}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\tau_X} & \\ & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V) & & \end{array}$$

**Remark 5.3.103.** It is desireable to have an internal refinement of the functor in prop. 5.3.101 (for instance for the definition of cohesive isometry groups in def. 5.3.131), i.e. for any $V$ manifold $X$ a moprhism

$$\tau^X_{(-)} : \mathbf{Aut}(X) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\tau_X)$$

which on global points (in view of remark 5.1.36) restricts to the functor in prop. 5.3.101. This should have a general abstract construction, but for the moment I only see how to construct this in concrete models. Therefore let's say that $\tau^X_{(-)}$ *is internalizable* if this works for given $X$.

### 5.3.12 $G$-Structures and Cartan geometry

We discuss formalization of (integrable) *$G$-structure* on $V$-manifolds in differential cohesion. See below in 6.4.11 for the traditional such concept.

The following is the specialization of the general concept of lifts of structure groups of def. 5.1.305 to lifts of the structure group of the frame bundle.

**Definition 5.3.104.** Let $V$ be a framed object, def. 5.3.93 and let $X$ be a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88. For $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ an $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.150, equipped with a group homomorphism $G \to \mathrm{GL}(V)$ to the general linear group from def. 5.3.95, hence with a morphism between deloopings

$$G\mathbf{Struc} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)\,,$$

then a *$G$-structure* on the $V$-manifold $X$ is a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \\ & {}_{\tau_X}\searrow \;\; \swArrow_{\simeq} \;\; \swarrow_{G\mathbf{Struc}} & \\ & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V) & \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$, hence is a morphism

$$\mathbf{g} : \tau_X \longrightarrow G\mathbf{Struc}$$

in the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}$ (5.1.2.1), where $\tau_X$ modulates the frame bundle of $X$, according to def. 5.3.99. Accordingly a morphism between $G$-structures is a 2-morphism in the slice $\infty$-topos. Hence $G\mathbf{Struc} \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}$ is the *moduli stack of $G$-structures* for the given map $G \to \mathrm{GL}(V)$.

**Remark 5.3.105.** In traditional theory, the group homomorphism in def. 5.3.104 is required to be a *monomorphism* and one also speaks of a *reduction of the structure group.* If, at the other extreme, the prescribed group homomorphism is an epimorphism then traditionally one speaks instead of a *lift of the structure group.* However, since in homotopy theory the traditional (epi,mono)-factorization system dissolves into the infinite tower of ($n$-epi, $n$-mono)-factorization systems for all $n$, prop. 5.1.59, and since the theory may just as well be formulated for any homomorphism, we stick with the neutral term *$G$-structure.* This is all the more justified since in the homotopy-theoretic context factorizations through prescribed morphisms are in general not just a property of but structure on the given morphism.

**Example 5.3.106.** For $V$ a framed object, def. 5.3.93, canonically regarded as a $V$-manifold via example 5.3.90, then the given trivialization fr of its frame bundle, def. 5.3.99, induces a canonical $G$-structure on $V$ given by the pasting composite:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} V & \longrightarrow & * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \;. \\ & {}_{\tau_V}\searrow \;\; \swArrow_{\mathrm{fr}} & \downarrow & \swarrow_{G\mathbf{Struc}} & \\ & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d) & & \end{array}$$

We call this the *trivial* or *flat* or *framing* $G$-structure and denote it by

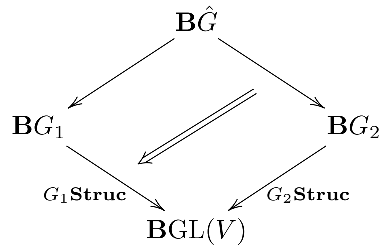
$$\mathbf{g}_{\mathrm{fr}} : \tau_V \longrightarrow G\mathbf{Struc}.$$

When $V$ is a group object equipped with the canonical left-invariant framing of prop. 5.3.94, then we also speak of the *left-invariant* $G$-structure and write

$$\mathbf{g}_{\mathrm{LI}} : \tau_V \longrightarrow G\mathbf{Struc}.$$

for emphasis.

**Example 5.3.107.** Since in geometric homotopy theory $G$-structures need not be with respect to group inclusions (remark 5.3.105) there are in general non-trivial ways to have two different structures at the same time: let $G_1, G_2$ be two groups equipped with two group homomorphisms $\mathbf{B}G_i \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)$. Then a pair consisting of a $G_1$-structure $\mathbf{g}_1$ and of a $G_2$-structure $\mathbf{g}_2$, according to def. 5.3.104, is equivalently one single $\hat{G}$-structure, for $\mathbf{B}\hat{G}$ the homotopy fiber product in



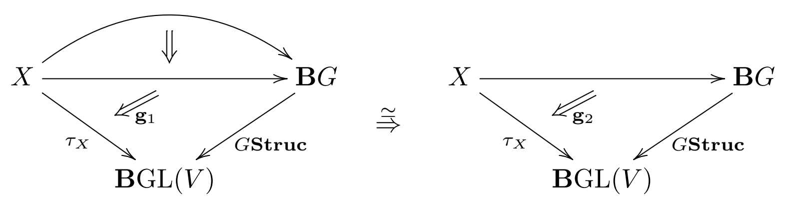

,

i.e.

$$\hat{G}\mathbf{Struc} \simeq G_1\mathbf{Struc} \times G_2\mathbf{Struc}$$

with the product taken in the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}$, prop. 5.1.26.

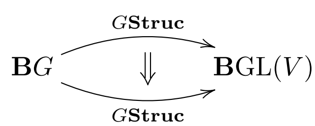
By def. 5.3.104 a homomorphism between two $G$-structures on a homotopy of homotopies in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form



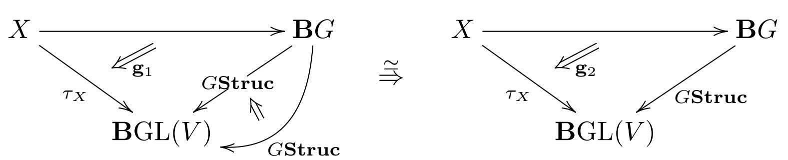

.

On the other hand, one may also consider homotopies between the morphisms $G\mathbf{Struct} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)$ that encode the local model geometry of the $G$-structure.

**Definition 5.3.108.** For $V$ a group and $G\mathbf{Struc} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)$, then an automorphism of this morphism




is called a *homothety.* Given to $G$-structures $\mathbf{g}_1, \mathbf{g}_2 : \tau_X \to G\mathbf{Struc}$, def. 5.3.104, then a *homothety from* $\mathbf{g}_1$ *to* $\mathbf{g}_2$ is a homotopy of the form




.

**Definition 5.3.109.** Let $V$ be a framed object, def. 5.3.93 and let $X$ be a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88. A $G$-structure $\mathbf{g} : \tau_X \to G\mathbf{Struc}$ on $X$ as in def. 5.3.104 is called *integrable* if there exists a $V$-cover, def. 5.3.88,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & U & \\ {}^{\mathrm{et}}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\mathrm{et}} \\ V & & X \end{array}$$

such that the correspondence of frame bundles induced by it via prop. 5.3.101

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \tau_U & \\ \swarrow & & \searrow \\ \tau_V & & \tau_X \end{array}$$

extends to a correspondence of $G$-structures from the canonical one of example 5.3.106 to the given one, hence to a diagram in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \tau_U & \\ \swarrow & & \searrow \\ \tau_V & \swArrow_{\simeq} & \tau_X \\ {}_{\mathbf{g}_{\mathrm{fr}}}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\mathbf{g}} \\ & \mathbf{GStruc} & \end{array} .$$

**Remark 5.3.110.** Hence forgetting the map to $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)$, an integrable $G$-structure is in particular a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & U & \\ {}^{\mathrm{et}}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\mathrm{et}} \\ V & \swArrow & X \\ \searrow & & \swarrow \\ & \mathbf{B}G & \end{array}$$

This is an example of an integrable globalization over $X$, as in def. 5.3.124, of the trivial $G$-principal bundle on $V$.

By restricting the correspondence in def. 5.3.109 to just infinitesimal disks in the atlas, we obtain the infinitesimal version of integrability:

**Definition 5.3.111.** Let $V$ be a framed object, def. 5.3.93 and let $X$ be a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88. A $G$-structure $\mathbf{g} : \tau_X \to G\mathbf{Struc}$ on $X$ as in def. 5.3.104 is *infinitesimally integrable* if there exists a $V$-cover, def. 5.3.88,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \flat^{\mathrm{rel}} U & \\ & \downarrow & \\ & U & \\ {}^{\mathrm{et}}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\mathrm{et}} \\ V & & X \end{array}$$

such that the correspondence of frame bundles induced by it via prop. 5.3.101, after restriction to the collection of all infinitesimal disks along the counit of the relative flat modality, def 5.3.58

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \tau_{\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}U} & & \\
 & & \downarrow & & \\
 & & \tau_U & & \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\
\tau_V & & & & \tau_X
\end{array}
$$

(using, by prop. 5.3.65, that the $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}$-counit is formally étale) extends to a correspondence of $G$-structures from the canonical one of example 5.3.106 to the given one, hence to a diagram in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}$ of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \tau_{\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}U} & & \\
 & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\
\tau_V & & \swarrow_{\simeq} & & \tau_X \\
 & {}_{\mathbf{g}_{\mathrm{fr}}}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\mathbf{g}} & \\
 & & \mathbf{GStruc} & &
\end{array}
\,.
$$

**Remark 5.3.112.** As in previous cases, depending on which order of infinitesimally is encoded by differential cohesion, def. 5.3.111 gives different orders of infinitesimal integrality. For first-order infinitesimal integrability one traditionally also speaks of *torsion free* $G$-structure. This however refers to the canonical background $G$-structure $\mathbf{g}_{\mathrm{fr}}$ being globally torsion free, which is hower not generally what is needed in many examples, in particular it is generically not the case for the left-invariant $G$-structures of example 5.3.106. A first-order integrable $G$-structure relative to a torsion-full local model $V$ might be called "relatively torsion-free".

The condition in def. 5.3.111 for infinitesimal integrability is intuitively a differential equation imposed on the collection of all $G$-structures. The following construction makes this precise with respect to the formalization of differential equations according to def. 5.3.81.

**Definition 5.3.113.** Consider a differential cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{\Re} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ such that $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}$ from def. 5.3.58 has a right adjoint $\sharp^{\mathrm{rel}}$ as in prop. 5.3.61. For $V$ a framed object in $\mathbf{H}$ and $X \in \mathbf{H}$ a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88 exhibited by a $V$-cover $V \xleftarrow{\mathrm{et}} U \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} X$ , and for $G\mathbf{Struc} : G \longrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V)$ a group homomorphism into the general linear group of $V$, def. 5.3.95, let

$$\phi \colon \flat^{\mathrm{rel}}U \longrightarrow X \underset{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}{\times} \mathbf{B}G$$

be the universal morphism induced by the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \flat^{\mathrm{rel}}U & & \\
 & \swarrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\
\mathbf{B}G & \xleftarrow{\mathbf{g}_{\mathrm{fr}}} & V & \Leftarrow & X \\
 & {}_{G\mathbf{Struc}}\searrow & \downarrow{}^{\tau_V} & \swarrow_{\tau_X} & \\
 & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V) & &
\end{array}
\,,
$$

where the homotopy on the right is that from example 5.3.102, restricted along $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}U \to U$, and where the homotopy on the left is the canonical framing $G$-structure of example 5.3.106. Write $\tilde{\phi}$ for the $(\flat^{\mathrm{rel}} \dashv \sharp^{\mathrm{rel}})$-adjunct of $\phi$.

Now the differential equation for infinitesimal integrability of $G$-structure on $X$ is the left vertical composite in

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{InfInt}G\mathbf{Struc}(X) & \longrightarrow & \sharp^{\mathrm{rel}} U \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow^{\sharp^{\mathrm{rel}}\tilde{\phi}} \\
X \underset{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}{\times} \mathbf{B}G & \longrightarrow & \sharp^{\mathrm{rel}}\left(X \underset{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}{\times} \mathbf{B}G\right) \\
\downarrow & & \\
X & & \\
\downarrow & & \\
\Im X & &
\end{array}
$$

where the top is a homotopy pullback square.

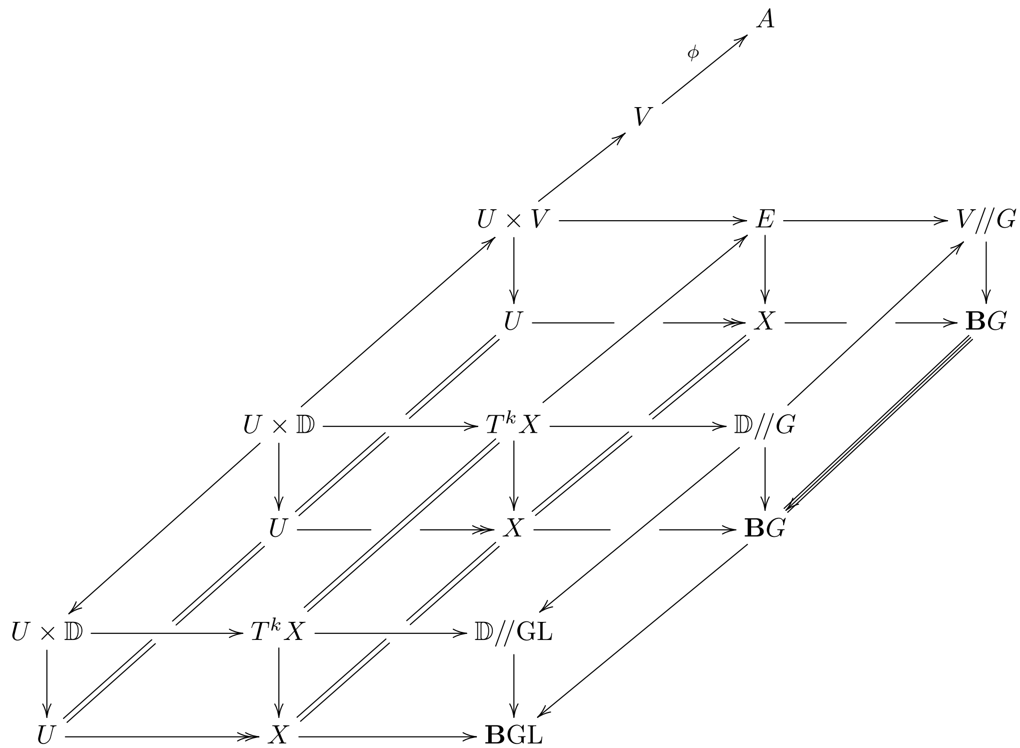
The following shows how integrable $G$-structures serve to *solder* structure on $G$-associated fiber bundles to the infinitesimal disk bundle, def. 5.3.66, of the underlying $V$-manifold.

**Proposition 5.3.114.** *Given*

1. *$V$ a framed object, def. 5.3.93;*
2. *a $G$-action $\rho$ on $V$, via prop. 5.1.1;*
3. *a $V$-manifold $X$, def. 5.3.88 with typical infinitesimal disk $\mathbb{D} := \mathbb{D}^V$;*
4. *a linearization, def. 5.3.54, of the $G$-action $\rho$ to one on $\mathbb{D}$;*

*then a choice of integrable $G$-structure on $X$, def. 5.3.109 (with respect to the group homomorphism $G \to$ $\mathbf{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ induced by the linearized action via remark 5.3.55) serves to turn any parameterized extension, def. 5.1.320, of a function $\phi : V \to A$ over the associated $V$-fiber bundle to a parameterized extension of the linearized restriction $\phi_{\mathrm{lin}} : \mathbb{D} \to V \xrightarrow{\phi} A$ over the infinitesimal disk bundle $T^k X$, def. 5.3.66.*

Proof. The integrable $G$-structure gives the lower bottom part of the following diagram. The rest of the diagram is by assumption or by pullback.




□

**Definition 5.3.115.** Let $H \to G$ be a homomorphism of differentially cohesive $\infty$-groups, def. 5.1.150, and let $V$ be a framed object, def. 5.3.93, such that the induced Klein geometry $G/H$ of example 5.1.297 has $V$-manifold structure, def. 5.3.88. As in example 5.3.98 this induces an equivalence of general linear groups $\mathrm{GL}(V) \simeq \mathrm{GL}(\mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h})$.

An $(H \to G)$-*Cartan geometry* is

1. a $V$-manifold $X$, def. 5.3.88,
2. an $H$-structure on $X$, via the induced $H \to \mathrm{GL}(\mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h}) \simeq \mathrm{GL}(V)$, def. 5.3.104.

The Cartan geometry is called *(infinitesimally) integrable* if its $H$-structure is (infinitesimally) integrable in the sense of def. 5.3.109

See below in 6.5.8 for the classical concept of Cartan connections.

**Example 5.3.116.** In the special case that $V := G//H$ carries the structure of a braided $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, such that $G \simeq H \rtimes V$, def. 5.1.304, then with respect to the canonical $V$-manifold structure on $V$ (integrable) $(H \to G)$-Cartan geometry structures are equivalently just (integrable) $H$-structures on $V$-manifolds.

### 5.3.13 Definite forms

We discuss formalization of the concept of *definite forms* in the sense in which they traditionally appear for instance in $G_2$-structure, but pre-quantized to WZW-terms.

Throughout, let $\mathbb{G}$ be a braided cohesive $\infty$-group, def. 5.1.156, equipped with a Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.99, and write $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the corresponding differential coefficient object, def. 5.2.100.

**Definition 5.3.117.** Given

1. a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection $\nabla^F : F \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$, def. 5.2.101;
2. an $F$-fiber bundle $E \to X$, def. 5.1.241;

then a *definite parameterization* of $\nabla$ by $E$ is a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection on the total space of the fiber bundle

$$\nabla^E : E \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \,,$$

such that the equivariant differential concretification $\mathrm{conc}//\mathbf{Aut}(F) \circ \sigma(\nabla^E)$, prop. 5.2.107, of the section $\sigma(\nabla^E)$ corresponding to $\nabla^E$ under prop. 5.1.283

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & [F, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}]//\mathbf{Aut}(F) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{conc}//\mathbf{Aut}(F)} & \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(F)//\mathbf{Aut}(F) \\ & {}^{\sigma(\nabla^E)}\nearrow & & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ X & & \longrightarrow & & \mathbf{BAut}(F) \end{array}$$

is definite, def. 5.1.316, on $* \xrightarrow{\vdash \nabla^F} [F, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\mathrm{conc}} \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(X)$.

**Proposition 5.3.118.** *There is a canonical $\infty$-functor from definite parameterizations of $\nabla^F$ over $E \to X$, def. 5.3.117, to lifts, def. 5.1.305, of the structure group of $E$ (via prop. 5.1.249) through the quantomorphism $\infty$-group extension, def. 5.2.138*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{BQuantMorph}(\nabla^F) \\ & {}^{\mathbf{g}}\nearrow & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{BAut}(F) \end{array} \,.$$

*Specifically if the structure $\infty$-group of $E$ has already been reduced along some $G \to \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla^F)$, then there is a canonical $\infty$-functor from definite parameterizations to lifts to $\mathbf{Heis}_G(\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}})$-structures*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{BHeis}_G(\nabla^F) \\ & {}^{\mathbf{g}}\nearrow & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{BAut}(F) \end{array} \,.$$

*In particular for a definite parameterization on $E \to X$ to exist it is necessary that $E$ admits a lift to $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla^F)$-structure.*

Proof. By prop. 5.1.317 and prop. 5.2.140. $\square$

**Corollary 5.3.119** (obstruction to definite parameterizations)**.** *With $E \to X$ and $\nabla^F$ as in def. 5.3.118, assume that the structure group of $E$ is reduced along $\mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla^F) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(F)$, def. 5.2.141. Then an obstruction for a definite parameterization, def. 5.3.117, of $\nabla^F$ over $E \to X$ to exist is the obstruction class $[\mathbf{P}_\nabla(E)]$ of def. 5.2.145.*

We now consider definite parmeterizations of WZW terms over infinitesimal disk bundles, which are induced from WZW terms on the base space.

**Definition 5.3.120.** Let $V$ be a framed object, def. 5.3.93 and $\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V} : \mathbb{D}^V \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection, def. 5.2.101 on its infinitesimal disk, def. 5.3.50. Then for $X$ a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88, a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection $\nabla^X : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ on $X$ is a *definite globalization* of $\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V}$ over $X$ if its pullback $\nabla^{T^kX}$ to the infinitesimal disk bundle along the horizontal map in def. 5.3.66

$$\nabla^{T^kX} : T^kX \xrightarrow{\mathrm{ev}} X \xrightarrow{\nabla^X} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

is a definite parameterization of $\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V}$ over $T^kX$ in the sense of def. 5.3.117.

**Proposition 5.3.121.** *There is a canonical functor from definite globalizations of* $\nabla$ *over* $X$*, def. 5.3.120, to* $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V})$*-structures on* $X$*, i.e. to* $G$*-structures on* $X$*, def. 5.3.104, for* $G$ *the quantomorphism group of* $\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V}$*, def. 5.2.138.*

Proof. The defining construction $\nabla^X \mapsto \nabla^{T^kX}$ is clearly functorial, being given by precomposition. Then prop. 5.3.118 gives a functor sending the $\nabla^{T^kX}$ further to $\mathbf{Stab}_{\mathrm{GL}(V)}(\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V})$-structures on $X$. By prop. 5.2.140 these are equivalently $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V})$-structures. □

**Corollary 5.3.122** (obstruction to definite globalization)**.** *An obstruction for a definite globalization of* $\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V}$ *over* $X$ *to exist is the obstruction class*

$$\mathbf{P}_{\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V}}(X) := \mathbf{P}_{\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V}}(T^kX)$$

*of def. 5.2.145.*

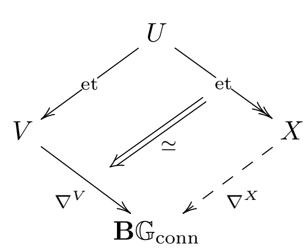
Proof. By prop. 5.3.121 and corollary 5.3.119. □

**Definition 5.3.123.** We call a definite globalization as in def. 5.3.120, *infinitesimally integrable* if the $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V})$-structure corresponding to it under prop. 5.3.121 is infinitesimally integrable according to def. 5.3.111.

So far the obstructions in corollary 5.3.119 and corollary 5.2.145 are such that their vanishing is necessary but possibly not sufficient for the existence of a definite globalization. This is because, by construction, they obstruct precisely the existence of the differential concretification of the section corresponding to a global principal connection, but not necessarily the existence of that section itself, before differential concretification. That is to say, when these obstructions vanish then a definite and diffentially concrete section of the $\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(\mathbb{D}^V)$-fiber bundle associated to the frame bundle is guarateed to exist, but the above results do not guarantee yet, that this concrete section comes from an un-concrete section obtained by restricting a global $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection to all infinitesimal disks. We need to refine the obstruction information in order to guarantee this.

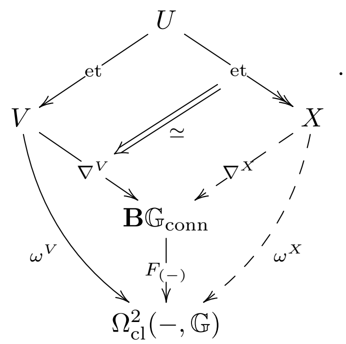
To this end, we now consider fully integrable definite globalization, i.e. such that do not only coincide with the prescribed prequantum geometry on infinitesimal disks as in def. 5.3.123, but do so on an entire $V$-cover, def. 5.3.88.

**Definition 5.3.124.** Given a $V$-manifold with $V$-cover $V \leftarrow U \rightarrow X$ and given a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection $\nabla^V : V \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$, def. 5.2.101, an *integrable definite globalization* of $\nabla^V$ over $X$ is a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection on $X$ $\nabla^X : X \dashrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ such that there is a homotopy




.

**Remark 5.3.125.** The notion in def. 5.3.124 is the pre-quantization, def. 5.2.130, of the integrable globalization of just the curvature $\omega^V$ of the connection:



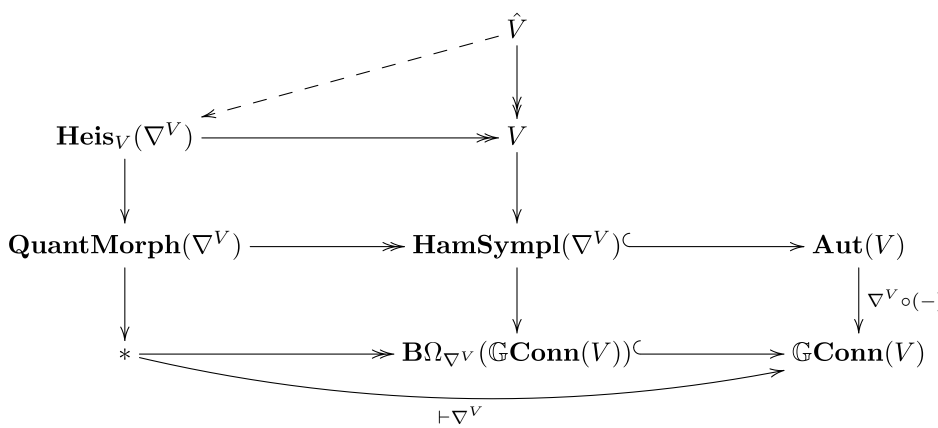

**Example 5.3.126.** Given an integrable globalization as in def. 5.3.124, forget the connection and consider just the maps modulating the underlying $\mathbb{G}$-principal bundles $P^V \to V$ and $P^X \to X$, respectively. Then base-chaning the correspondence diagram along the point inclusion $* \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$ and using that both local diffeomorphisms as well as 1-epimorphisms are stable under pullback, it follows that $P^X$ is a $P^V$-manifold.

**Definition 5.3.127.** Let $V$ be an object equipped with the structure of a differential cohesive group, def. 5.1.150. We say that a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection, def. 5.2.101 $\nabla^V : V \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is *equivariant* if the left $\infty$-action of $V$ on itself, def. 5.1.274, is Hamiltonian in that it factors

$$V \longrightarrow \mathbf{HamSympl}(\nabla^V) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Aut}(V)$$

through the object underlying the Hamiltonian symplectomorphism $\infty$-group, def. 5.2.141, of $\nabla^V$.

**Remark 5.3.128.** The condition in def. 5.3.127 means that there exists a cover $\hat{V}$ of $V$ over which the left $V$-action on itself factors through the Heisenberg group, def. 5.2.141, of $\nabla^V$, hence that we have the dashed morphism in the following diagram (from the proof of theorem 5.2.143):




Notice that we do not require the dashed morphism to respect group structure.

For instance for $\nabla^V$ the canonical prequantum bundle on a symplectic vector space $(V, \omega)$, then, by the discussion in 6.4.21.6, $\mathbf{Heis}_V(\nabla^V)$ is the traditional Heisenberg group extension $U(1) \to \mathrm{Heis}(V, \omega) \to V$. While as a group extension this does not split, as a map of underlying spaces is the trivial $U(1)$-principal bundle over $V$ and hence does split and admit a dashed section as above, even with $\hat{V} = V$.

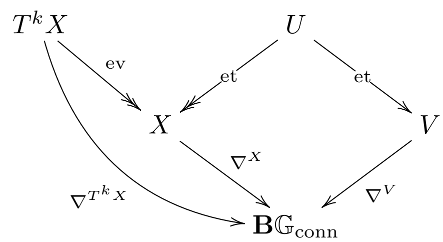
Now the total left part of the diagram says that restricted along $\hat{V} \to V$ the operation $V \xrightarrow{\nabla^V \circ (-)} \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(V)$ of (left-)translating the connection over $V$ is cohesively gauge equivalent to the trivial action, hence that the translation may be gauged away. This is the refinement of the curvature form $\omega^V$ being genuinely left invariant over all of $V$.

**Theorem 5.3.129.** *Given a differentially cohesive group $V$, given a $V$-manifold $X$, def. 5.3.88, given an equivariant connection $\nabla^V$, def. 5.3.127, then a necessary condition for the existence of an integrable definite globalization $\nabla^X$, of $\nabla^V$ over $X$, def. 5.3.124, is the existence of a $G$-structure on $X$, def. 5.3.104, for $G = \mathbf{QuantMorph}(\mathbf{L}_{\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V}})$ the quantomorphism group, def. 5.2.138, of the restriction*

$$\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V} : \mathbb{D}^V \to V \xrightarrow{\nabla^V} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

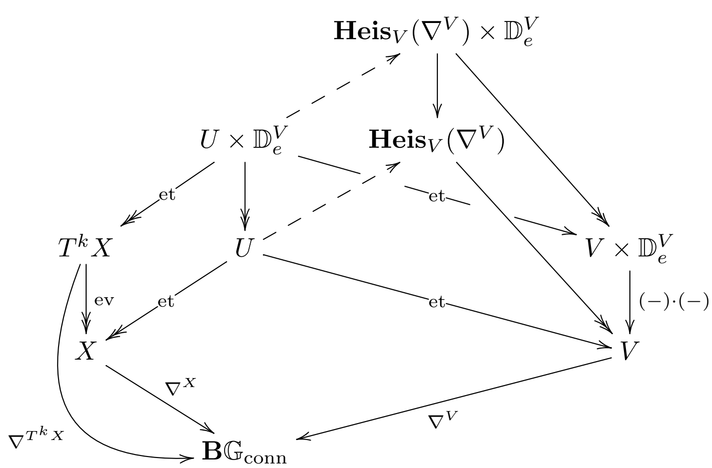
*of $\nabla^V$ to the infinitesimal disk, def. 5.3.50, of $V$, such that moreover this $G$-structure is integrable, def. 5.3.109, relative to the left-invariant $G$-structure $\mathbf{g}_{\mathrm{LI}}$ of $V$, example 5.3.106.*

Proof. Assuming $\nabla^X$ exists, consider its pullback to the infinitesimal disk bundle via the horizontal map ev in the defining pullback in def. 5.3.66:




We now find a necessary conditions for $\nabla^{T^k X}$ to exist, which is hence also a necessary condition for $\nabla^X$ to exist.

First observe that by prop. 5.3.73 the infinitesimal disk bundle of $U$ is both the pullback of that on $X$ as well as of that on $V$. By prop. 5.3.94 the latter is canonically trivialized via left translation such that the map ev restricts over the $V$-cover to the left action of $V$ on its infinitesimal disk $\mathbb{D}^V_e$ at the neutral element. This means that the above diagram completes to a pasting composite as shown by solid arrows in the following diagram.




Moreover, by the assumptions in def. 5.3.127 the connection $\nabla^V$ is locally invariant under left translation, up to gauge transformation, as discussed in remark 5.3.128, (possibly after further refining the cover $U$ via the cover $\hat{V}$ of $V$, which we suppress notationally) so that we get the dashed lifts in the above diagram.

By prop. 5.1.317, $\nabla^{T^k X}$ is equivalently a section $\sigma$ of the associated $[\mathbb{D}^V_e, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}]$-fiber bundle, such that $\sigma$ is locally on $U$ equivalent to the $((- \times \mathbb{D}^V_e) \dashv [\mathbb{D}^V_e, -]))$-adjunct of

$$U \times \mathbb{D}^V_e \xrightarrow{\mathrm{ev}|_U} U \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} V \xrightarrow{\nabla^V} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \ .$$

Under differential concretification $[\mathbb{D}^V_e, \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(\mathbb{D}^V_e)$ (def. 5.2.105) this implies, via prop. 5.2.140, a section $\sigma_{\mathrm{conc}}$ of the associated $\mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(\mathbb{D}^V_e)$-bundle.

But by the above diagram, the section $\sigma$ is locally equivalently the adjunct of

$$U \times \mathbb{D}^V_e \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} V \times \mathbb{D}^V_e \xrightarrow{(-)\cdot(-)} V \xrightarrow{\nabla^V} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \ ,$$

which in turn is equivalently the adjunct of

$$U \times \mathbb{D}^V_e \dashrightarrow \mathbf{Heis}_V(\nabla^V) \times \mathbb{D}^V_e \longrightarrow V \times \mathbb{D}^V_e \xrightarrow{(-)\cdot(-)} V \xrightarrow{\nabla^V} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \ ,$$

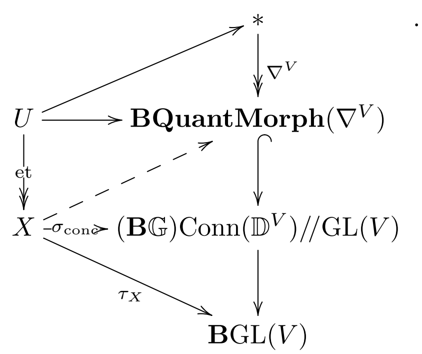
and so $\sigma_{\mathrm{conc}}$ is of the form

$$U \longrightarrow \mathbf{Heis}_V(\nabla^V) \longrightarrow \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(\mathbb{D}^V_e) \ .$$

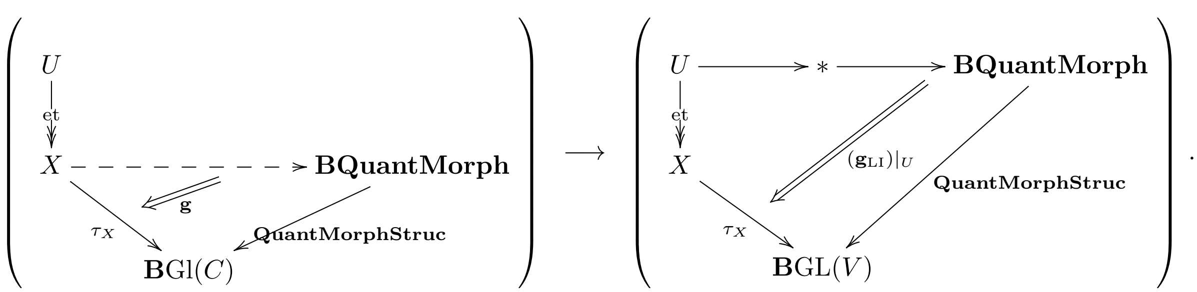
But by the diagram in remark 5.3.128 this means that $\sigma_{\mathrm{conc}}$ is locally constant, up to equivalence.

Therefore by prop. 5.1.317 and prop. 5.2.140 the existence of $\sigma_{\mathrm{conc}}$ is equivalent to a $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V})$-structure (def. 5.3.104) on $X$.

Finally, to see that this structure is integrable, def. 5.3.109, notice from the proof of prop. 5.1.317 that this $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V})$-structure is given by the dashed diagonal lift in




with the left morphism being formally étale by the above construction. Taking this pasting diagram apart, it may be viewed as giving a morphism in the double slice $(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)})_{/\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\nabla^{T^k X})\mathbf{Struc}}$




Here the codomain, given by the total pasting diagram, exhibits the constancy of the concretified section $\sigma_{\mathrm{conc}}$ as obtained above. This was obtained from left translation over $V$ with respect to the left invariant framing, prop. 5.3.94, of $V$, hence the homotopy shown on the right is that exhibits the left invariant $G$-structure $\mathbf{g}_{\mathrm{LI}}$ of example 5.3.106.

The domain is the structure $\mathbf{g}$ that we constructed by way of the section $\sigma_{\mathrm{conc}}$ and the dashed lift obtained from the homotopy which exhibits this section as constant on $U$ relative to the given trivialization of the frame bundle of $U$. Finally the morphism itself is the pasting of the diagram for $\mathbf{g}$, pulled back to $U$, with the top diagonal rectangular part of the original pasting diagram, yielding the diagram for $\mathbf{g}_{\mathrm{LI}}$. Hence this diagram exhibits the integrability according to def. 5.3.109. □

### 5.3.14 Generalized geometry

The definition of definite globalizations of principal connections above in 5.3.13 constrains both the curvature as well as the connection data to be locall equivalent to that of a fixed reference connection. More generally one may ask only the curvature to be definite, and leave the connection data less constrained, hence allow more general pre-quantization of a given closed form data. The extra choices involved in such a globalization turn out to subsume in special case structure that in the literature is known as *generalized geometry* [Hi11, Hull07].

Let $\mathbf{H}$ be an $\infty$-topos equipped with differential cohesion. Throughout, let $\mathbb{G}$ be a braided cohesive $\infty$-group in $\mathbf{H}$, def. 5.1.156, equipped with a Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.99, and write $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the corresponding differential coefficient object, def. 5.2.100.

The following definition accordingly relaxes def. 5.3.120.

**Definition 5.3.130.** Let

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{V} & \xrightarrow{\hat{\nabla}} & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle p} & & \\ V & & \end{array}$$

be a group extension $p$, def. 5.1.302, equipped with a a $\mathbb{G}$-principal $\infty$-connection $\hat{\nabla}$.

Then for $X$ a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88, a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection $\nabla^X : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ on $X$ is a *$p$-definite globalization* of $\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^V}$ over $X$ if its pullback $\nabla^{T^k X}$ to the infinitesimal disk bundle along the horizontal map in def. 5.3.66

$$\nabla^{T^k X} : T^k X \xrightarrow{\mathrm{ev}} X \xrightarrow{\nabla^X} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

is a $p$-definite parameterization of $\nabla^{\mathbb{D}^{\hat{V}}}$ over $T^k X$ in that for the corresponding section

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(\mathbb{D}^V)/\mathrm{GL}(V) \\ & {\scriptstyle \tau_X}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V) & \end{array}$$

there exists a cover $U \twoheadrightarrow X$ , a map $\hat{g} : U \longrightarrow \Gamma_{\mathbb{D}^V}(\mathbb{D}^{\hat{V}})$ and a homotopy filling the following diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
U & \xrightarrow{\hat{g}} & \Gamma_{\mathbb{D}^V}(\mathbb{D}^{\hat{V}})/\mathrm{GL}(V) \\
\downarrow & \swarrow\!\!\!\!\swarrow & \downarrow{\simeq} \\
 & & (\Gamma_{\mathbb{D}^V}(\mathbb{D}^{\hat{V}}) \times *)/\mathrm{GL}(V) \\
 & & \downarrow{(\mathrm{id}, \hat{\nabla}^{\mathbb{D}^{\hat{V}}})/\mathrm{GL}(V)} \\
 & & (\Gamma_{\mathbb{D}^V}(\mathbb{D}^{\hat{V}}) \times \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(\mathbb{D}^{\hat{V}}))/\mathrm{GL}(V) \\
 & & \downarrow{\mathrm{ev}} \\
X & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{G}\mathbf{Conn}(\mathbb{D}^V)/\mathrm{GL}(V) \\
 & {}_{\tau_X}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\
 & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V) &
\end{array}
\,.
$$

One choice of such data we say is a $(p, \hat{\nabla})$-*generalized geometry* on $X$.

### 5.3.15 Isometries

**Definition 5.3.131.** Let $X$ be a $V$-manifold, def. 5.3.88, equipped with a $G$-structure $(\tau_X \xrightarrow{\mathbf{g}} G\mathbf{Struc}) \in (\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)})_{/G\mathbf{Struc}}$, def. 5.3.104 and assume that the frame bundle functor $\tau_{(-)}$ of $X$ is internalizable, according to remark 5.3.103 . Then a *$G$-isometry* of $(X, \mathbf{g})$ is an automorphism of $\mathbf{g}$ in $(\mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)})_{G\mathbf{Struc}}$, that extends an automorphism $\phi : X \xrightarrow{\phi} X$ of $X$ under the functor $\tau_{(-)}$ of def. 5.3.101, hence is a diagram in $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}$ of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\tau_X & \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\tau_\phi} & \tau_X \\
 & \swarrow\!\!\!\!\swarrow_{\simeq} & \\
\searrow & & \swarrow \\
 & G\mathbf{Struc} &
\end{array}
\,.
$$

The cohesive *$\infty$-group of isometries* of $(X, \mathbf{g})$ is the homotopy fiber product $\mathbf{Iso}(X, \mathbf{g})$ of $\infty$-groups in

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{Iso}(X, \mathbf{g}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\mathbf{g}) \\
\downarrow{p} & & \downarrow{\prod_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} p_{G\mathbf{Struc}}} \\
\mathbf{Aut}(X) & \xrightarrow{\tau_{(-)}} & \mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(\tau_X)
\end{array}
$$

where $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$ is the automorphism $\infty$-group of $X \in \mathbf{H}$ according to def. 5.1.155, while $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}}(-)$ denotes the $\mathbf{H}$-valued slice automorphism group construction of def. 5.1.35, and where the right vertical morphism is the image under base change, prop. 5.1.28, of the morphism $p_{G\mathbf{Struc}}$ from def. 5.1.38.

**Proposition 5.3.132.** *The isometry group* $\mathbf{Iso}(X, \mathbf{g})$ *of def. 5.3.131 sits in a homotopy fiber sequence of the form*

$$
\Omega_{\mathbf{g}}[\tau_X, G\mathbf{Struc}]_{\mathbf{H}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{Iso}(X, \mathbf{g}) \xrightarrow{p} \mathbf{Aut}(X)\,,
$$

*where* $[\tau_X, G\mathbf{Struc}]_{\mathbf{H}}$ *is the* $\mathbf{H}$*-valued slice hom of def. 5.1.34, and where* $\Omega_{\mathbf{g}}(...)$ *forms its loop space object, def. 5.1.148, based at the given map* $\mathbf{g}$.

Proof. Unwinding definitions, the homotopy fiber in questions is given by the following pasting composite of homotopy pullbacks:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
\prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} \Omega_{\mathbf{g}}\left([\tau_X, G\mathbf{Struc}]_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}\right) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Iso}(X,\mathbf{g}) & \longrightarrow & \prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} \prod\limits_{G\mathbf{Struc}} \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbf{g}) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow {\scriptstyle \prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} p_{G\mathbf{Struc}}} \\
* & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Aut}(X) & \longrightarrow & \prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} \mathbf{Aut}(\tau_X) \\
\downarrow \simeq & & & & \Vert \\
\prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} \{\mathrm{id}_X\}//\mathrm{GL}(V) & & \xrightarrow[\prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} (\vdash \mathrm{id}_X)]{} & & \prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} \mathbf{Aut}(\tau_X)
\end{array}
$$

This identifies the homotopy fiber in the top left as indicated by applying prop. 5.1.41 to the outermost diagram with the base change removed $\prod\limits_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}$, and then using that applying the base change preserves homotopy pullbacks. Since in particular it preserves looping, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\prod_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} \Omega_{\mathbf{g}}\left([\tau_X, G\mathbf{Struc}]_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}\right) &\simeq \Omega_{\mathbf{g}}\left(\prod_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)} [\tau_X, G\mathbf{Struc}]_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V)}\right) \\
&= \Omega_{\mathbf{g}}[\tau_X, G\mathbf{Struc}]_{\mathbf{H}}\,.
\end{aligned}
$$

□

### 5.3.16 BPS Currents

In the context of supergravity, central extensions of super-isometry algebras $\mathbf{Iso}(X,\mathbf{g})$ of super-spacetimes $(X,\mathbf{g})$ induced by super $p$-branes are called *BPS charges*. By our discussion in 1.4.4.3 these extensions are equivalently the quantomorphism/Heisenberg group extensions

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{Heis}_{\mathbf{Iso}(X,\mathbf{g})}(\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}) \\
\downarrow \\
\mathbf{Iso}(X,\mathbf{g})
\end{array}
$$

arising by asking the isometries to act as symmetries also of the WZW terms $\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}} : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of the respective super $p$-brane sigma-models with target space $X$. This concept of extension of isometry groups by symmetries of WZW terms makes sense generally, and for lack of an established term for the more general concept we here generally refer to these extensions as *BPS charges.*

Or rather, so far this concept captures BPS charges of super $p$-brane sigma models that carry no gauge fields on their worldvolume (no "higher tensor multiplet fields") such as the M2-brane but not the M5-brane. But we find in 8.1.2, following [FSS13b], that the latter are given by WZW terms not on the original spacetime $X$, but on the extension $\widetilde{\hat{X}}$ of that classified by a homotopy fiber of the previous WZW term, yielding a stage in a globalized *brane bouquet* [FSS13b] of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\widetilde{\hat{X}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}^{\tilde{\hat{X}}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_2)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\downarrow & & \\
X & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}]{} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}}
\end{array}
$$

Since the isometries of $(X, \mathbf{g})$ canonically act also on the extension $\tilde{\hat{X}}$, in this situation one is to ask for them to act as symmetries of both these WZW terms. Applied to supergravity this yields the BPS charge extensions including charges for branes with tensor multiplet fields, hence we will more generally refer to these extensions of isometry groups by symmetries of two or more consecutive WZW terms as *BPS charge extensions*.

When the $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection $\nabla$ in def. 5.3.120 is a WZW term, 5.2.15, then its domain $\tilde{V}$ carries the structure of a differential refinement of a group and this group structure is reflected in the WZW term, in that the WZW term is a differential refinement of a group cocycle. Hence in this case it is natural to require that a definite globalization, def. 5.3.120, of the WZW term over a $V$-manifold respects this extra group structure.

**Definition 5.3.133.** Given a group cocycle $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}V \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}$, def. 5.1.285, on a 0-truncated group $V$ (def. 5.1.47) with compatible Hodge filtration, def. 5.2.120 such that $\tilde{V} \simeq V$, def. 5.2.120, then a *definite globalization* of the WZW term $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}} : V \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$, which is induced by this data via prop. 5.2.122, over a $V$-manifold $X$, def. 5.3.88, is

1. an $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(\mathbb{D}^V)$-structure $\mathbf{g}$, def. 5.3.104, on $X$ (with respect to the canonical forgetful morphism $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(\mathbb{D}^V) \to \mathbf{Aut}(\mathbb{D}^V)$ from example 5.1.296);

2. a $V$-cover $V \xleftarrow{\mathrm{et}} U \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} X$ lifted to a correspondence between the underlying $\mathbb{G}$-principal bundle $\hat{V} \to V$, modulated by $\Omega\mathbf{c} \simeq \chi(\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}})$, of the WZW term and the underlying bundle $\chi(\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})$ of its globalization

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & U & & \\ & \swarrow^{\mathrm{et}} & & \searrow^{\mathrm{et}} & \\ V & & \swArrow_{\simeq} & & X \\ & {}_{\chi(\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}})}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\chi(\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})} & \\ & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & & \end{array}$$

3. a definite globalization $\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}} : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$, relative to the above $V$-cover, of $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ over $X$ as a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection via def. 5.3.120.

such that

- the $\mathrm{Heis}_{\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(\mathbb{D}^V)}(\mathbf{L}^{\mathbb{D}^V}_{\mathrm{WZW}})$-structure resulting from this via prop. 5.3.121, example 5.3.107 and def. 5.2.141 is infinitesimally integrable, def. 5.3.109.

The restriction of the quantomorphism group $\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})$, def. 5.2.138, of such a definitely globalized WZW term to the isometry group $\mathbf{Iso}(X, \mathbf{g})$, def. 5.3.131, hence by def. 5.2.141 the Heisenberg group extension

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{Heis}_{\mathbf{Iso}(X,\mathbf{g})}(\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}) \\ \downarrow \\ \mathbf{Iso}(X, \mathbf{g}) \end{array}$$

we call the group of *BPS charges* of $(X, \mathbf{g}, \mathbf{L}^X_{WZW})$ and write for short

$$\mathbf{Iso}(X, \mathbf{g}, \mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}) := \mathbf{Heis}_{\mathbf{Iso}(X,\mathbf{g})}(\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}})\,.$$

**Remark 5.3.134.** In applications $V$ is typically geometrically contractible, $\int V \simeq *$, and $\mathbb{G}$ is such that the class of $\mathbb{G}$-principal bundles on $V$ is detected by the underlying map to $B\mathbb{G} := \int \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$. In this case $\hat{V} \to V$ is trivial as a $\mathbb{G}$-principal bundle (but not necessarily as a group extension) so that in this case the condition on the cover in def. 5.3.133 reduces to saying that $U \to X$ is a trivializing cover for $\chi(\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})$.

**Remark 5.3.135.** By prop. 5.3.121 the definite globalization of $\mathbf{L}_{\text{WZW}}$ demanded in the third item of def. 5.3.133 already induces a $\mathbf{QuantMorph}_{\text{GL}(V)}(\mathbf{L}^{\mathbb{D}^V}_{\text{WZW}})$-structure on the $V$-manifold $X$. As in example 5.3.107 this implies that the choice of $\mathbf{Aut}_{\text{Grp}}(\mathbb{D}^V)$-structure demanded in the first item is equivalently a choice of $\mathbf{Heis}_{\mathbf{Aut}_{\text{Grp}}(\mathbb{D}^V)}(\mathbf{L}^{\mathbb{D}^V}_{\text{WZW}})$-structure on the $V$-manifold $X$.

**Proposition 5.3.136.** *Given a definite globalization of a WZW term over a $V$-manifold $X$ as in def. 5.3.133, write $\hat{X} \to X$ for the total space of the $\mathbb{G}$-principal bundle underlying the globalized WZW regared as a $\mathbb{G}$-principal connection. Then $\hat{X}$ is a $\hat{V}$-manifold, def. 5.3.88.*

Proof. Since 1-epimorphisms are preserved by pullback, by prop. 5.1.69, as are local diffeomorphisms, by prop. 5.3.24, the base change $\text{pt}^*$, prop. 5.1.28, of the correspondence

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & U & & \\
 & \swarrow^{\text{et}} & & \searrow^{\text{et}} & \\
V & & \swArrow \simeq & & X \\
 & {}_{\chi(\mathbf{L}_{\text{WZW}})}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\chi(\mathbf{L}^X_{\text{WZW}})} & \\
 & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G} & &
\end{array}
$$

along the canonical point inclusion $\text{pt} : * \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}$ is, using theorem 5.1.207, of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \text{pt}^*U & & \\
 & \swarrow^{\text{et}} & & \searrow^{\text{et}} & \\
\hat{V} & & \swArrow \simeq & & \hat{X} \\
 & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\
 & & * & &
\end{array}
$$

and hence exhibits $\text{pt}^*U$ as a $\hat{V}$-cover of $\hat{X}$. □

In view of this fact that each definite globalization of a WZW term induces an extension $\hat{X} \to X$ of the base geometry, more generally we consider a tower of two (or more) compatible WZW terms, one on each stage of the extension. In order to generalize def. 5.3.133 to this case, first consider the following construction.

**Definition 5.3.137.** Given

1. a group $V$, def. 5.1.150, which is 0-truncated, def. 5.1.47,
2. a group cocycle $\mathbf{c}_1$, def. 5.1.285 on $V$ and a further cocycle $\mathbf{c}_2$ on the group extension $\hat{V} \to V$, def. 5.1.302, that $\mathbf{c}_1$ classifies
$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{B}\hat{V} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}_2 \\
\downarrow & & \\
\mathbf{B}V & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}_1} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{G}_1
\end{array}
,
$$
3. corresponding refinements of Hodge filtrations, def. 5.2.120, such that $\tilde{V} \simeq V$,

4. with compatibility, def. 5.2.124, such that, by prop. 5.2.125, the WZW term on $V$, by prop. 5.2.122, sits in a homotopy fiber product of the form

$$\begin{CD} \tilde{\hat{V}} @>>> \Omega^1(-,\mathbb{G}_1) \\ @VVV @VV{\iota}V \\ V @>{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}}>> \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{CD}$$

5. a $V$-manifold $X$, def. 5.3.88,

6. a definite globalization $(X, \mathbf{g}, \mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})$ of $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ over $X$, according to def. 5.3.133,

then we write $\tilde{\hat{X}} \to X$ for the corresponding differentially twisted extension of $X$, being the homotopy pullback in

$$\begin{CD} \tilde{\hat{X}} @>>> \Omega^1(-,\mathbb{G}_1) \\ @VVV @VV{\iota}V \\ X @>{\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}}>> \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{CD} \; .$$

**Remark 5.3.138.** In the terminology of [SSS09c] the object $\tilde{\hat{X}}$ in def. 5.3.137 is the modui stack of $\Omega^1(-,\mathbb{G}_1)$-*twisted differential* $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$*-structures* on $X$, see also 7.1.1.

**Proposition 5.3.139.** *For all global points $* \to \tilde{\hat{X}}$ in the differential extension of the base space in def. 5.3.137, the infinitesimal disk around that point, def. 5.3.50, is equivalent to the infinitesimal disk over the neutral element in the differential extension $\tilde{\hat{V}}$ of the model space $V$ associated via prop. 5.2.125*

Proof. By the characterization of prop. 5.2.125 of $\tilde{\hat{V}}$ as a homotopy pullback and by the fact that both $\Omega^1(-,\mathbb{G}_1)$ as well as $\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ are connected and hence have an essentially unique global point (by the nature of $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_1$, of $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}\mathbb{G}_1$ and by the condition that the objects of forms are connected) there is an essentially unique global point in $\tilde{\hat{X}}$ over each global point of $X$. By the commutativity of homotopy limits over each other, the infinitesimal disk around that point is the homotopy limit over the diagram

$$\begin{CD} X @>{\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}}>> \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}} @<<< \Omega^1(-,\mathbb{G}_1) \\ @VVV @VVV @VVV \\ \Im X @>{\Im\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}}>> \Im\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}} @<<< \Im\Omega^1(-,\mathbb{G}_1) \\ @A{x}AA @AAA @AAA \\ * @>>> * @<<< * \end{CD}$$

Now since $X$ is a $V$-manifold, by prop. 5.3.97 the homotopy limit over the left vertical cospan is equivalently the infinitesimal disk $\mathbb{D}^X_x \simeq \mathbb{D}^V_e$ in $V$. Finally, by the condition that $\mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ is definite on $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$, def. 5.3.120, its precomposition with the inclusion of this infinitesimal disk is equivalent to the precomposition of $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}} : V \to \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ with this infinitesimal disk. Therefore the homotopy limit over the above diagram is equivalently that over the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
V & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longleftarrow & \Omega^1(-,\mathbb{G}_1) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\Im V & \xrightarrow{\Im \mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} & \Im \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longleftarrow & \Im \Omega^1(-,\mathbb{G}_1) \\
\uparrow^{e} & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\
* & \longrightarrow & * & \longleftarrow & *
\end{array}$$

and this gives the infinitesimal disk over the neutral element in $\tilde{\hat{V}}$. □

**Proposition 5.3.140.** *In the situation of def. 5.2.122 assume that the differential concretification morphism* $[X, \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbb{G}_1\mathbf{Conn}(X)$ *of def. 5.2.105 admits a section. Then there is a canonical action of* $\mathbf{Isom}(X, \mathbf{g}, \mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}})$ *on* $X$ *which lifts to an action on* $\tilde{\hat{X}}$.

Proof. Unwinding the definitions and by the assumption of the section, the BPS charge group acts on $X$ via $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}(X)$ as in example 5.1.294. The statement then follows from using the homotopy pullback in the last item of def. 5.3.137 in the construction of example 5.1.295. □
With this we get the following extended variant of def. 5.3.133:

**Definition 5.3.141.** In the situation of def. 5.3.137 and prop. 5.3.140, consider in addition a globalization $\mathbf{L}^{\tilde{\hat{X}}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ also of the second WZW term $\mathbf{L}^{\tilde{V}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ over the extension $\tilde{\hat{X}} \to X$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\widetilde{\hat{X}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}^{\tilde{\hat{X}}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_2)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\downarrow & & \\
X & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{L}^{X}_{\mathrm{WZW}}]{} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{G}_1)_{\mathrm{conn}}
\end{array},$$

which makes sense by prop.5.3.139. Then the *BPS charge group* of this situation is the Heisenberg group, def. 5.2.141, of the second WZW term $\mathbf{L}^{\tilde{\hat{X}}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ on the extended base space modulated by the first WZW, with respect to the isometries of base space, def. 5.3.131, acting on the extended space via prop. 5.3.140

$$\mathbf{Iso}(X, \mathbf{g}, \mathbf{L}^X_{\mathrm{WZW}}, \mathbf{L}^{\tilde{\hat{X}}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}) := \mathbf{Heis}_{\mathbf{Iso}(X,\mathbf{g})}(\mathbf{L}^{\tilde{\hat{X}}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}) \quad .$$

**Example 5.3.142.** For $\mathbf{H}$ = SuperFormalSmooth∞Grpd the supergeometric ∞-topos constructed in 6.6 and for $V = \mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}$ the 11-dimensional super-Minkowski spacetime discussed in 8.1.1, then by applying prop. 6.4.168 to the Lie algebraic data discussed in 8.1.2 there is a compatible pair of WZW terms which are the topologically nontrivial pieces of the action functionals for the M2-brane and the M5-brane sigma-model (see 1.4.4).

## 5.4 $\rightrightarrows \dashv \rightsquigarrow \dashv$ Rh – Structures in solid substance

We discuss a list of structures that may be formulated in a solid $\infty$-topos, def. 4.3.1.

- 5.4.1 – $\mathbb{A}^{0|1}$-Homotopy theory;
- 5.4.2 – Manifolds

### 5.4.1 $\mathbb{A}^{0|1}$-Homotopy theory

In a solid $\infty$-topos there is the following fermionic analog of a *continuum* as axiomatized, def. 5.2.48, in a cohesive $\infty$-topos.

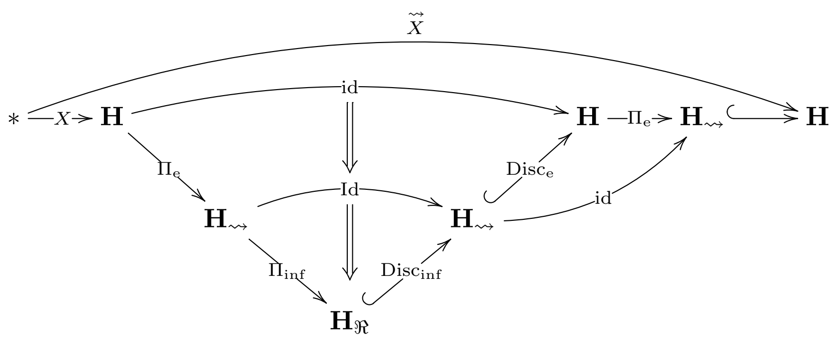
**Definition 5.4.1.** For $\mathbf{H}$ a solid $\infty$-topos, def. 4.3.1, with bosonic modality $\rightsquigarrow$, then we say that an object $\mathbb{A}^{0|1} \in \mathbf{H}$ *exhibits the solidity* of $\mathbf{H}$ or is an *odd continuum* if the $\mathbb{A}^{0|1}$ localization of $\mathbf{H}$ (hence the localization at a set of morphisms $\{(\mathbb{A}^{0|1} \to *) \times c\}_c$ for $c$ running over a set of generators of $\mathbf{H}$) is equivalent to Rh.

### 5.4.2 Manifolds

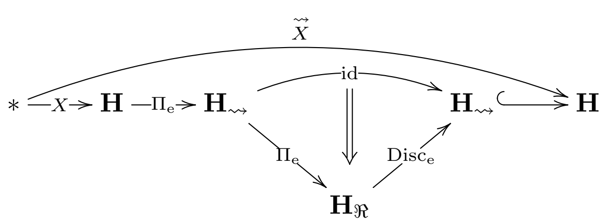
We discuss aspects of the theory of manifolds, 5.3.88, that exists in every elastic $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ in the special case that $\mathbf{H}$ is actually solid.

**Lemma 5.4.2.** *In a solid $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, the image under $\rightsquigarrow$ of the $\Im$-unit on some object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is naturally equivalent to the $\Im$-unit on $\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X}$.*

Proof. The image under $\rightsquigarrow$ of the $\Im$-unit on some $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is the component of the following natural transformation




where unlabeled 2-cells are canonical equivalences and where the unlabeled inclusion in the top right is the *other* inclusion, not $\mathrm{Disc_e}$. Now the zig-zag identity of the $(\Pi_{\mathrm{e}} \dashv \mathrm{Disc_e})$-adjunction cancels out the pasting composite of the two 2-cells in the middle of the diagram, identifying the two 1-morphisms labeled $\Pi_{\mathrm{e}}$. This serves to move the bottom 2-cell to the right to make the above diagram equivalent to



which in turn is equivalent to

$$
\ast \xrightarrow{X} \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\Pi_{\mathrm{e}}} \mathbf{H}_{\rightsquigarrow} \xhookrightarrow{\mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{e}}} \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\Pi_{\mathrm{e}}} \underset{\mathbf{H}_{\Re}}{\overset{\mathrm{id}}{\underset{\Pi_{\mathrm{e}} \searrow \quad \nearrow \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{e}}}{\Downarrow}}} \mathbf{H}_{\rightsquigarrow} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}
\qquad \left(\ast \xrightarrow{\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X}} \mathbf{H}\right)
$$

by idempotency $\Pi_{\mathrm{e}}\mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{e}} \simeq \mathrm{id}$. Now we use again the zig-zag identity to re-introduce the two 2-cells which we removed at the beginning, only that now they act on $\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X}$. It is then the strong Aufhebung condition on a solid $\infty$-topos which says that in the resulting diagram

$$
\ast \xrightarrow{\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X}} \mathbf{H} \underset{\Pi_{\mathrm{e}} \searrow \; \mathbf{H}_{\rightsquigarrow} \underset{\Pi_{\mathrm{inf}} \searrow \; \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \; \nearrow \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{inf}}}{\overset{\mathrm{Id}}{\Downarrow}} \mathbf{H}_{\rightsquigarrow} \; \nearrow \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{e}}}{\overset{\mathrm{id}}{\Downarrow}} \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\Pi_{\mathrm{e}}} \mathbf{H}_{\rightsquigarrow} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}
$$

we may cancel the two 1-morphisms on the right. □

**Proposition 5.4.3.** *For $f : X \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} Y$ a local diffeomorphism, def. 5.3.19, then also its bosonic part is a local diffeomorphis $\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{f} \colon \overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} \overset{\rightsquigarrow}{Y}$ .*

Proof. By definition the $\Im$-unit of $f$ makes a homotopy pullback diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \longrightarrow & \Im X \\
\downarrow^{f} & & \downarrow^{\Im f} \\
Y & \longrightarrow & \Im Y
\end{array} .
$$

Applying $\rightsquigarrow$ to this diagram, using that $\rightsquigarrow$, being a right adjoint, preserves homotopy pullbacks, using that $\rightsquigarrow \Im \simeq \Im$ by the Aufhebung required in solidity and that $\Im \rightsquigarrow \Im$ anyway, yields a homotopy pullback diagram of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X} & \longrightarrow & \Im \overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X} \\
\downarrow^{f} & & \downarrow^{\Im \overset{\rightsquigarrow}{f}} \\
\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{Y} & \longrightarrow & \Im \overset{\rightsquigarrow}{Y}
\end{array} .
$$

By lemma 5.4.2 this is indeed the naturality square of the $\Im$-unit on $\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{f}$. □
As a corollary we get:

**Proposition 5.4.4.** *Given a $V$-manifold $X$, def. 5.3.88 in a solid $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, then its bosonic part $\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X}$ is a $\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{V}$-manifold.*

Proof. Let $V \xleftarrow{\mathrm{et}} U \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} X$ be a $V$-cover. Since $\rightsquigarrow$, being both a left and a right adjoint, preserves $\infty$-limits and $\infty$-colimits, it preserves the property of the right morphism being a 1-epimorphism, by prop. 5.1.70. By prop. 5.4.3 $\rightsquigarrow$ also preserves the property of both morphisms being local diffeomorphisms, hence $\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{V} \xleftarrow{\mathrm{et}} \overset{\rightsquigarrow}{U} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{et}} \overset{\rightsquigarrow}{X}$ is a $\overset{\rightsquigarrow}{V}$-cover.

## 5.5 $\sum \dashv ()^* \dashv \prod$ – Structures in actual substance

Here we discuss a list of structures that may be realized within (i.e. using the axiomatics of) linear homotopy-type theory as defined above in 3.2.

- 5.5.1 – Dependent linear De Morgan duality
- 5.5.2 – Primary integral transforms
- 5.5.3 – Exponential modality, Linear spaces of states and Fock space
- 5.5.4 – Fundamental classes and measures
- 5.5.5 – Secondary integral transforms and Path integrals
- 5.5.6 – Quantum operations
- 5.5.7 – Quantum states
- 5.5.8 – Anomaly cancellation of the path integral measure

### 5.5.1 Dependent linear De Morgan duality

In general linear logic there is no notion of negation, but its role is played by duality. Just as negation intertwines ordinary logical conjunction and disjunction, a basic fact called *de Morgan duality*, so duality in linear logic intertwines linear dependent sum with linear dependent product. This is prop. 5.5.3 below. Since it is useful to freely pass back and forth along this linear de Morgan duality, we here collect some basic constructions and facts.

**Definition 5.5.1.** For $(\mathcal{C}, \otimes, [-,-], 1)$ a closed symmetric monoidal category, write

$$\mathbb{D} := [-,1] : \mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}} \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

for the weak dualization functor.

**Remark 5.5.2.** As usual, we say an object $X \in \mathcal{C}$ is dualizable if it has a ("strong") dual with respect to the tensor product $\otimes$, and we say $X$ is *invertible* if the unit and counit of the duality map are equivalences. Generally $\mathbb{D}X$ is usually called the *weak* dual of $X$. There is a canonical natural morphism

$$X \longrightarrow \mathbb{D}\mathbb{D}X$$

which exhibits the unit of the modality (monad) $\mathbb{D}^2(-)$, also called the *continuation monad* [Mel08].

**Proposition 5.5.3.** *For $f$ a Wirthmüller morphism, def. 3.2.1, the left and right adjoints are intertwined by weak duality in that there is a natural equivalence*

$$f_* \circ \mathbb{D} \simeq \mathbb{D} \circ f_! \,.$$

*hence*

$$\prod_f \circ \mathbb{D} \simeq \mathbb{D} \circ \sum_f \,.$$

This is a special case of a more general consequence of the axioms of Wirthmüller morphisms which appears in [May05] as prop. 2.8, prop. 2.11. (In fact the "sixth operation", the internal hom $[-,-]$, for us here only ever appears in its specialization to weak duality $\mathbb{D} = [-,1]$.)

**Remark 5.5.4.** Prop. 5.5.3 is an incarnation of *de Morgan duality* in linear logic. This involves in particular that if $A \in \mathcal{D}$ is dualizable, then the $(f^* \dashv f_*)$-unit $\eta^{f_*}$ on $A$ is the dual of the $(f_! \dashv f^*)$-counit $\epsilon^{f_!}$ on the dual of $A$.

$$\eta_A^{f_*} \simeq \mathbb{D}(\epsilon_{\mathbb{D}A}^{f_!}) \,.$$

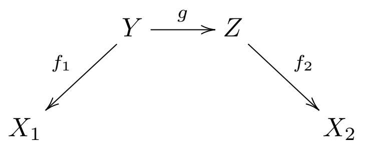
### 5.5.2 Primary integral transforms

A central notion in type-semantics is the following:

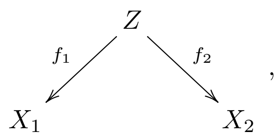
**Definition 5.5.5.** Given a model of linear homotopy-type theory $\mathrm{Mod} \to \mathbf{H}$, def. 3.2.5, then a *multivariate polynomial functor* $P : \mathrm{Mod}(X_1) \to \mathrm{Mod}(X_2)$ is a functor of the form

$$P \simeq \sum_{f_2} \prod_{g} f_1^*$$

for a given diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ the form




If here $g \simeq \mathrm{id}$, hence if the diagram is a *correspondence*



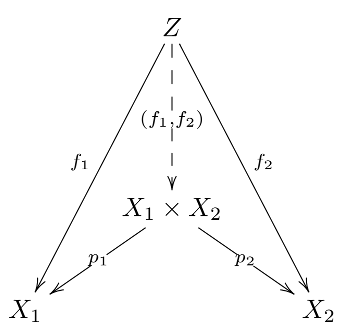

then its polynomial functor $\sum\limits_{f_2} f_1^*$ is called a *linear polynomial endofunctor.*

**Remark 5.5.6.** In the existing type-theoretic literature the focus is on polynomial *endo*functors, since the initial algebras over such endofunctors embody a useful notion of inductive types ("W-types"). Polynomial endofunctors in non-linear homotopy-type theory have been considered in [Ko12, vdBMo13].

**Remark 5.5.7.** In the existing representation-theoretic literature, linear polynomial functors are known as *categorified integral transforms*, as for instance in "Fourier-Mukai transform", "Penrose transform", "Harish-Chandra transform", see e.g. [**?**, **?**]. Here we will call these *primary* integral transforms for emphasis, since below in 5.5.5 our focus is on another concept of "secondary" integral transform that will turn out to be "boundaries" for the primary transforms.

Categorified integral transforms are often understood to have as correspondence space the product space (fiber-product in the relative case) and given there not just by pull-push but by pull-tensor-push. This relates to the above via the following basic fact (see for instance also p. 10 of [**?**]).

**Proposition 5.5.8.** *Given a correspondence and its universal factorization through the product-space correspondence*



*then pull-push through the given correspondence is equivalent pull-tensor-push through the product-correspondence, for integral kernel given by* $K := \sum_{(f_1,f_2)} 1_Z$*:*

$$\sum_{f_2} \circ f_1^* \;\; \simeq \;\; \sum_{p_2} \circ (K \otimes (-)) \circ p_1^* \,.$$

Proof. By Frobenius reciprocity, def. 3.2.2:

$$\begin{aligned} (f_2)_!(f_1)^* A &\simeq (p_2)_!(f_1,f_2)_!(f_1,f_2)^* p_1^* A \\ &\simeq (p_2)_!(f_1,f_2)_!(((f_1,f_2)^*(p_1^* A)) \otimes 1_Z) \\ &\simeq (p_2)_!(p_1^* A \otimes ((f_1,f_2)_! 1_Z)) \\ &=: (p_2)_!(p_1^* A \otimes K) \,. \end{aligned}$$

□

The terminology "polynomial functor" in def. 5.5.5 is motivated from the following basic example.

**Example 5.5.9.** Consider **H** the topos of sets and $\mathrm{Set}^{\Delta^1} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{cod}} \mathrm{Set}$ the associated dependent type structure. If we think of finite sets under their cardinality as representing natural numbers, then a polynomial functor with $X \simeq *$ the singleton acts indeed as a polynomial function under cardinality, summing up powers as given by the cardinalities of the fibers of $g$. In the other extreme, for general $X$ but with $g = \mathrm{id}$ then a polynomial functor is analogously given by multiplication by a matrix with entries in natural numbers.

Similarly for $\mathrm{Vect}(-) \to \mathrm{Set}$ the linear type theory of vector spaces over sets, example 6.2.30, then for finite dimensional vector spaces over finite sets, a polynomial functor acts as a polynomial function on the *dimensions* of these vector spaces.

**Remark 5.5.10.** Example 5.5.9 shows that the concept of polynomial functor is a *categorification* of that of polynomial function, hence a kind of "higher dimensional" polynomial function.

In parallel to this, below in 5.5.8 we find that linear polynomial functors in linear homotopy-type theory constitute the propagators of $(d+1)$-dimensional topological quantum field theories between "categorified" spaces of states, and that they encode (the quantum anomaly cancellation of) $d$-dimensional topological quantum field theories with propagators acting between uncategorified spaces of states.

### 5.5.3 Exponential modality, Linear spaces of states and Fock space

The secondary integral transforms that we discuss below in 5.5.5 act on what in the typical model of linear homotopy-type theory are linear spaces of sections of bundles of modules. In the application to quantization these are going to be thought of as spaces of quantum states. Here we discuss how the concept of forming spaces of sections is naturally captured by the *exponential modality* of linear logic, lifted to linear homotopy-type theory.

The full set of axioms for linear logic as introduced in [Gir87] contains – on top of the "multiplicative fragment" discussed above in 3.2 which is interpreted in ($*$-autonomous/closed) symmetric monoidal categories – a co-modality (def. 2.2.1) denoted "!" and called the *exponential modality.* The axioms on ! are roughly meant to be such that if $A$ is a linear type, then $!A$ is the linear type obtained from it by universally equipping it with properties of a non-linear type. More precisely, by the general categorical semantics of (co-)modalities recalled above in def. 2.2.1, the exponential co-modality is to be interpreted as a some co-monad on the type system [BBHdP92], and the axioms on ! are such as to make its co-Kleisli category of co-free co-algebras be cartesian monoidal [See89] (see around prop. 17 of [Bi95] for more discussion).

Based on this in [Be95, Bi95] it is observed that generally the exponential modality is naturally interpreted as a comonad induced specifically from a strong monoidal adjunction between the given symmetric monoidal category Mod(∗) of linear types and some given cartesian closed monoidal category $\mathbf{H}$ (representing a non-linear type system):

$$(L \dashv R) \;:\; \mathrm{Mod}(*)^{\otimes} \underset{R}{\overset{L}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathbf{H}^{\times} \qquad ! := L \circ R\,.$$

(If only a strong monoidal functor $L$ like this exists without necessarily a strong monoidal right adjoint, then [Bar97] speaks of the "structural fragment" of linear logic.)

Finally in [PoSh12] (4.3) it is observed that if Mod(∗) here is the fiber over the point of a linear type system Mod dependent over $\mathbf{H}$, then, as our notation already suggests, there is a canonical choice for $L$ induced from the dependent type structure, namely the map that sends $Y \in \mathbf{H}$ to the $Y$-dependent sum of the unit linear type $1_Y \in \mathrm{Mod}(Y)$:

$$L : Y \mapsto \sum_{Y} 1_Y\,.$$

(On morphisms this $L$ is given by the adjunction counit, we see this below in example 5.5.29 as a special case of the general secondary integral transform formula). More generally, the dependent linear homotopy-type theory induces for each $X \in \mathbf{H}$ a functor

$$L_X \;:\; \mathbf{H}_{/X} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mod}(X)$$

given by summing the unit linear type along the fibers of $f$:

$$L_X \;:\; (Y \overset{f}{\to} X) \mapsto \sum_{f} 1_Y\,.$$

In this dependent form one recognizes this as the linear version of the operation considered in section 2 (p. 12) of [Law70b]. There the condition that these functors have right adjoints $R_X$ is found to be the categorical semantics of the foundational *axiom of comprehension* (*axiom of separation*). Therefore one may say that dependent linear type theory carries a canonical !-modality precisely if it satisfies the linear version of the comprehension axiom. Since the comprehension axiom in foundations is typically taken for granted, this shows that the existence of the exponential modality is a rather fundamental phenomenon.

In [BPS94] it had been found that in familiar models of (multiplicative) linear type theory such as in the category of vector spaces, the exponential sends a vector space to its *Fock space*, the vector space underlying the free symmetric algebra on the given space. This construction is manifestly a categorified exponential. Now in the simplistic 1-categorical model given by vector spaces over sets, example 6.2.30, the left adjoint $L = \sum 1_{(-)}$ canonically induced as above from the dependent type structure sends a set to the vector space it spans, $R$ sends a vector space to its underlying set of vectors, and $! = L \circ R$ hence sends a vector space not quite to its Fock space, but to the space freely spanned by all the original vectors. (Another adjunction for vector spaces that does make ! produce exactly the Fock space is discussed in [Vi07].)

More interestingly;

**Example 5.5.11.** In the genuinely homotopy-theoretic model of linear homotopy-type theory given by $E$-module spectra over ∞-groupoids, example 6.2.28, then $L = E \wedge \Sigma^{\infty}_{+}$ sends a homotopy-type to its suspension spectrum, and $R = \Omega^{\infty}$ sends a spectrum to its underlying infinite-loop space.

There is a deep sense in which stable homotopy theory is analogous to linear algebra, namely Goodwillie's calculus of functors (see section 7 of [L-Alg]), and it has been argued in [**?**] that from this point of view at least $\Omega^{\infty} \circ \Sigma^{\infty}_{+}$ is indeed the analogue of the exponential function.[26]

In conclusion we find that the exponential modality ! in linear type theory, when implemented in linear homotopy-type theory naturally decomposes into an adjunction who left adjoint is the process of forming spaces of sections, hence quantum states (and whose induced comonad encodes free second quantization).

[26] I am grateful to Mike Shulman and to David Corfield for highlighting this point and in fact for driving it home with some patience.

Below in 5.5.5 we find that the process of quantization of an action functional $\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}S)$ subject to a consistent (anomaly free) choice of path integral measure $d\mu$ is given by a twisted variant of the canonical left adjoint $L$ as above: we find there that a choice of action functional comes with a choice of an assignment of invertible linear homotopy-types $A_X \in \mathrm{Mod}(X)$ (thought of as "dual prequantum line bundles") to homotopy-types $X \in \mathbf{H}$, and the quantization process sends these to their space of dual sections:

$$X \mapsto A_X \mapsto \sum_X A_X \in \mathrm{Mod}(*)\,.$$

For later reference we note at this point that

**Remark 5.5.12.** If we think of $A_X$ as a linear bundle over $X$ (via example 6.5.61) then its $X$-dependent product is to be thought of as its linear space of sections

$$\Gamma_X(A) := \prod_X A\,.$$

If $A$ here is dualizable with dual $\mathbf{L} := \mathbb{D}A$, then by dependent linear de Morgan duality, prop. 5.5.3 this is equivalently the linear dual

$$\Gamma_X(\mathbf{L}) \simeq \mathbb{D}\sum_X \mathbf{L}\,.$$

In the standard models of linear homotopy-type theory such as that of definition 6.2.28, the dependent sum $\sum_X \mathbf{L}$ has the interpretation of the *compactly supported* sections of $\mathbf{L}$ (this is of course the default interpretation of $\sum$ in the traditional yoga of six functors, see the citations in [May05]). Therefore the linear dual $\mathbb{D}\sum_X \mathbf{L}$ is interpreted as the space of distributional sections. In a general Verdier-Grothendieck context of six functors these may be different from the genuine sections (of the dual bundle), but here in the Wirthmüller context they coincide.

In the terminology of [Law86] the type of states $\prod_X \mathbf{L}$ would be "intensive", while $\sum_X \mathbf{L}$ would be "extensive".

We now turn to the definition of fundamental classes that allow to integrate such sections against a measure and then we use this to define secondary integral transforms acting on spaces of sections.

### 5.5.4 Fundamental classes and Measures

We discuss here how to axiomatize basic measure theory in dependent homotopy-type theory, such as to define integrals of sections of linear types (remark 5.5.12) along maps of contexts that are equipped with a measure. In terms of linear logic and linear type theory the construction here is a variant and generalization of the duality structure reflected by the orthocomplementarity in the original BvN quantum logic [BvN36] and more generally in "dagger-structure" in linear type theory. We postpone discussion of this to 5.5.6. Let throughout

$$\begin{array}{c}\mathrm{Mod}(-)\\ \downarrow\\ \mathbf{H}\end{array}$$

be a model for linear homotopy-type theory, def. 3.2.5.

**Definition 5.5.13.** A *fiberwise twisted fundamental class* on a morphism $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ in $\mathbf{H}$ is (if it exists) a choice of dualizable object $\tau \in \mathrm{Mod}(Y)$ (the twist) such that $f_! f^* \mathbb{D}\tau$ is dualizable, together with a choice of equivalence of the form

$$f_! f^*(1_Y) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{D}(f_! f^*(\mathbb{D}\tau)) \simeq f_* f^*(\tau)\,.$$

**Remark 5.5.14.** This is a specialization of the assumption in (4.3) of [May05]. There it is emphasized that for many constructions the assumption that $f_! f^* 1_X$ be dualizable is, while typically verified in applications, not necessary. However, it is necessary for the definition of secondary integral transforms in def. 5.5.28 below, and therefore we do require it.

**Remark 5.5.15.** If here $Y \simeq *$ is the terminal object, so that $f : X \to *$ is the essentially unique terminal morphism, then we usually denote a fundamental class on this morphism by $[X]$.

**Proposition 5.5.16** (Wirthmüller isomorphism)**.** *Given a fiberwise fundamental class, def. 5.5.13, on a morphism $f : X \to Y$, then for dualizable $A \in \mathrm{Mod}(Y)$ there is a canonical natural equivalence*

$$f_* f^* \mathbb{D}A \simeq \mathbb{D}(f_! f^* A) \xrightarrow{\simeq} f_! f^*((\mathbb{D}A) \otimes (\mathbb{D}\tau))$$

*and hence a canonical natural transformation*

$$f_! f^* A \longrightarrow \mathbb{D}(f_! f^*((\mathbb{D}A) \otimes (\mathbb{D}\tau))) \simeq f_* f^* \mathbb{D}((\mathbb{D}A) \otimes (\mathbb{D}\tau)))$$

*which is an equivalence if $f_! f^* A$ is dualizable.*

Proof. The canonical map itself is the composite

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
f_* f^* \mathbb{D}A & & & & \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & & & \\
(f_* f^* \mathbb{D}A) \otimes (\mathbb{D}1_Y) & \longrightarrow & (f_* f^* \mathbb{D}A) \otimes (\mathbb{D} f_! f^* 1_Y) & & \\
 & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\
 & & (f_* f^* \mathbb{D}A) \otimes (f_! f^* \mathbb{D}\tau) & & \\
 & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\
 & & f_!((f^* f_* f^* \mathbb{D}A) \otimes (f^* \mathbb{D}\tau)) & \longrightarrow & f_!((f^* \mathbb{D}A) \otimes (f^* \mathbb{D}\tau)) \\
 & & & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} \\
 & & & & f_! f^*(\mathbb{D}A \otimes \mathbb{D}\tau)
\end{array} ,$$

where the first is the unit equivalence for $1_Y \simeq \mathbb{D}1_Y$, the second is tensoring with the dual of the $(f_! \dashv f^*)$-counit, the third is tensoring with the dual of the defining equivalence of a fundamental class, the fourth is the projection formula of Frobenius reciprocity, def. 3.2.2, the fifth comes from the $(f^* \dashv f_*)$-counit and the last one finally is the strong monoidalness of $f^*$.

That this total composite is an equivalence is prop. 4.13 in [May05], specialised to twists of the form as in def. 5.5.13, following remark 5.5.14. □

**Remark 5.5.17.** If the twist in prop. 5.5.16 vanishes (is the tensor unit) then a Wirthmüller isomorphism means that $f_!$ coincides with $f_*$ on objects in the image of $f^*$. Since $f_!$ is the left adjoint and $f_*$ the right adjoint of $f^*$, this means that in this situation $f^*$ has a two-sided adjoint, hence an "ambidextrous" adjoint. The condition $f_! \simeq f_*$ together with a further coherence condition is called "ambidexterity" in Construction 4.1.8 of [HoLu14].

The central construction obtained from a Wirthmüller-type six-operations context that we need below is now the following.[27] Let $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ be a morphism of contexts in a linear homotopy-type theory with associated base change Wirthmüller morphism $(f_! \dashv f^* \dashv f_*) = (\sum_X \dashv f^* \dashv \prod_X)$, def. 3.2.1,

[27] While this text was being composed, essentially def. 5.5.18 for the special case of vanishing twist and in the specific model of $\infty$-module bundles over homotopy types appeared as Construction 4.0.7 and Notation 4.1.6 of [HoLu14].

**Definition 5.5.18.** Given a fiberwise fundamental class, def. 5.5.13, on $f$ and given $A \in \mathrm{Mod}(Y)$ a dualizable object such that also $f_! f^* A$ is dualizable, write

$$[f] : (-) \otimes \tau \longrightarrow f_! f^*(-)$$

for the natural transformation given as the composite

$$[f]_A \ : \ A \otimes \tau \xrightarrow{\mathbb{D}(\epsilon_{\mathbb{D}(A\otimes\tau)})} \mathbb{D} f_! f^*(\mathbb{D}(A \otimes \tau)) \xrightarrow{\simeq} f_! f^* A \ ,$$

where the first morphism is the dual of the $(f_! \dashv f^*)$-counit on $\mathbb{D}(A \otimes \tau)$, and where the second morphism is the equivalence of prop. 5.5.16.

We will usually also refer to $[f]$ as the fundamental class, whence the notation.

The dual of the $Y$-dependent sum of the fundamental class we call the induced *measure* on $f$ and write

$$d\mu_f(A) := \mathbb{D}\left(\sum_Y [f]_A\right) \ : \ \mathbb{D}\left(\sum_Y f_! f^* A\right) \longrightarrow \mathbb{D}\left(\sum_Y A \otimes \tau\right) .$$

**Remark 5.5.19.** By remark 5.5.4 the fundamental class in def. 5.5.18 is equivalently the composite

$$[f]_A \ : \ A \otimes \tau \xrightarrow{\eta_{A\otimes\tau}} f_* f^*(A \otimes \tau) \xrightarrow{\simeq} f_! f^* A \ .$$

In this form the fundamental class here is manifestly related to what appears in remark 4.1.7 of [HoLu14].

**Remark 5.5.20.** The fundamental class morphism in def. 5.5.18 is reverse to the $(f_! \dashv f^*)$-counit. We may think of it as the "Umkehr map" of the counit and find in the following that this naturally induces Umkehr maps for other morphisms.

**Remark 5.5.21.** A measure on a map $f : X \to Y$ in def. 5.5.18 is to be thought of as a $Y$-parameterized collection of measures on all of the (homotopy-)fibers of the map. This is explicitly so in the internal linear logic, in which the fundamental class reads

$$y : Y,\ A(y) : \mathrm{Type} \ \vdash \ [f](y) : A(y) \otimes \tau(y) \to \sum_{x \in f^{-1}(y)} A(f(x)) \, .$$

Externally this fiberwise property is directly visible in the model of dependent homotopy type theory given by bundles of spectra over $\infty$-groupoids, this is prop. 4.3.5 in [HoLu14].

### 5.5.5 Secondary integral transforms

We discuss now how a correspondence of contexts in linear homotopy-type theory which is equipped with a fiberwise fundamental class on its right leg and with a linear map between linear homotopy-types pulled back to its corrrespondence space (a secondary integral kernel) naturally induces a secondary integral transform.

Examples include ordinary matrices in linear algebra, example 6.2.30, pull-push in twisted generalized cohomology by twisted Pontryagin-Thom Umkehr maps, example 6.2.31 and in particular the "ambidexterity" in stable homotopy theory of [HoLu14], example 6.2.32.

Throughout, let Mod be a linear homotopy-type theory. A secondary linear integral transform is supposed to be a linear function between linear spaces of sections, remark 5.5.12, which is induced from an integral kernel or matrix given by a linear map between linear bundles $L$ over some correspondence space.

**Definition 5.5.22.** Given a dependent linear homotopy-type theory Mod, then a *prequantum integral kernel* is a correspondence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & Z & \\ {}^{i_1}\swarrow & & \searrow^{i_2} \\ X_1 & & X_2 \end{array}$$

of contexts – the *arity* – together with linear types $A_1 \in \mathrm{Mod}(X_1)$ and $A_2 \in \mathrm{Mod}(X_2)$ – the *coefficients* – and a linear function of the form

$$\xi \;:\; i_1^* A_1 \longleftarrow i_2^* A_2 \,,$$

the *integral kernel* itself. A *quantum integral kernel* or *amplimorphism* is a correspondence and linear types as above and a morphism

$$\Xi \;:\; \sum_Z i_1^* A_1 \longleftarrow \sum_Z i_2^* A_2 \,.$$

**Remark 5.5.23.** So if $\xi$ is a pre-quantum integral kernel then $\Xi := \sum_Z \xi$ is the corresponding quantum integral kernel.

Further below in prop. 5.5.55 we find a more abstract, more conceptual origin of prequantum integral kernels. For the moment we are content with pointing out that a typical source of prequantum integral kernels are correspondences dependent on a context of moduli for certain linear types [**?**, Nui13]:

**Example 5.5.24.** Let $B$ be some base context and $V \in \mathrm{Mod}(B)$ a $B$-dependent linear type. Then every correspondence in $\mathbf{H}_{/B}$ canonically induces an invertible prequantum integral kernel, def. 5.5.22 as follows. In $\mathbf{H}$ (under dependent sum) the correspondence in $\mathbf{H}_{/B}$ is a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & Y & \\ {}^{i_1}\swarrow & & \searrow^{i_2} \\ X_1 & \overset{\xi}{\swarrow\!\!\!\swarrow} & X_2 \\ {}_{\chi_1}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\chi_2} \\ & B & \end{array} \,.$$

Hence putting

$$A_i := \chi_i^* V$$

gives the prequantum integral kernel

$$\xi : (i_1)^* A_1 \overset{\simeq}{\longleftarrow} (i_2)^* A_2 \,.$$

**Example 5.5.25.** For

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & Z & \\ {}^{i_1}\swarrow & & \searrow^{i_2} \\ X_1 & & X_2 \end{array}$$

a correspondence in $\mathbf{H}$ and $A_2 \in \mathrm{Mod}(X_1)$ any linear type, then setting

$$A_1 := \sum_{i_1} (i_2)^* A_1$$

yields a non-invertible prequantum integral kernel, where

$$\xi = \eta_{(i_2)^* A_1} \; : \; (i_1)^* \sum_{i_1} (i_2)^* A_1 \longleftarrow (i_2)^* A_1$$

is the unit of the $(\sum_{i_2} \dashv (i_2)^*)$-adjunction. This we may call the universal (non-invertible) pre-quantization of the original correspondence and the given $A_1$.

**Example 5.5.26.** In the model of linear homotopy-type theory given by an $E_\infty$-ring $E$ as in example 6.2.28

$$\begin{array}{c} E\mathrm{Mod}(-) \\ \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Grpd}_\infty \end{array}$$

a function between two linear types is a cocycle in bivariant generalized $E$-cohomology. Therefore in this case a prequantum integral kernel as in def. 5.5.22 is a correspondence equipped with a cocycle on its correspondence space. This is, broadly, the structure of *motives*. Indeed, we see below in **??** that the secondary integral transform in $E$Mod for $E = \mathrm{KU}$ may be given by KK-theory classes which were argued by Alain Connes to be the K-theoretic analog of motives, a point of view that has been made precise in [Mah13].

In order to apply an integral kernel as a linear map to the spaces of sections of its coefficient bundles, the idea is to "pull" these sections up along one of the two legs of the correspondence, apply there the map that defines the integral kernel, and then "push" the result down along the other leg. Notice that:

**Remark 5.5.27.** For $\mathbb{S} \in \mathrm{CRing}_\infty$ the sphere spectrum regarded as an $E_\infty$-ring let $\mathbb{S}\mathrm{Mod}(-)$ be the corresponding model of linear homotopy-type theory from example 6.2.28. Given $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ a morphism in $\infty$Grpd then forming the suspension spectra yields a morphism of the form

$$\Sigma^\infty_+ f : \Sigma^\infty_+ X \longrightarrow \Sigma_+ Y\,.$$

As in example 5.5.11 we have that

$$\Sigma^\infty_+ X \simeq \sum_X 1_X\,,$$

where now $1_X$ is the trivial spherical fibration (trivial $\mathbb{S}$-line bundle) over $X$. Under this identification the above morphism is given by the $(\sum_X \dashv X^*)$-counit $\epsilon$:

$$\Sigma^\infty_+ X \simeq \sum_X 1_X \simeq \sum_Y \sum_f f^* 1_Y \overset{\sum_Y \epsilon_{1_Y}}{\longrightarrow} \sum_Y 1_Y \simeq \Sigma^\infty_+ Y\,.$$

Generally for $E \in \mathrm{CRing}_\infty$ any $E_\infty$-ring, then this construction yields the map that is called "pushforward in generalized $E$-homology" along $f$

$$E_\bullet(X) \longrightarrow E_\bullet(Y)\,.$$

The image of this under dualization $\mathbb{D}$ is the "pullback in generalized $E$-cohomology" along $f$

$$E^\bullet(Y) \longrightarrow E^\bullet(X)\,.$$

Beware that these operations are often denoted by "$f_*$" and "$f^*$", respectively, but that for us these symbols denote push/pull not of sections but of the $E$-module bundles themselves, and that sections are pull/pushed instead via the (dual of) the counit, as above.

Our central notion is now the following, which generalizes the above to general linear homotopy-type theory, general twists and combines it with Umkehr maps in order to produce a secondary "pull-tensor-push integral transform" on cohomology. [28]

**Definition 5.5.28.** Given a prequantum integral kernel $\xi$ or quantum kernel $\Xi$ as in def. 5.5.22 and a fiberwise fundamental class, def. 5.5.13, on the right leg $i_2$, with induced fundamental class $[i_2]$, def. 5.5.18, then we say that the morphism

$$\mathbb{D}\int_Z \Xi\, d\mu_{i_2} \;:\; \sum_{X_1} A_1 \xleftarrow{\sum_{X_1}\epsilon_{A_1}} \sum_{X_1}(i_1)_!(i_1)^* A_1 \xleftarrow{\simeq} \sum_Z (i_1)^* A_1 \xleftarrow{\Xi} \sum_Z (i_2)^* A_2 \xleftarrow{\simeq} \sum_{X_2}(i_2)_!(i_2)^* A_2 \xleftarrow{\sum_{X_2}[i_2]_{A_2}} \sum_{X_2} A_2 \otimes \tau$$

is the induced *dual secondary integral transform.* The dual morphism

$$\int_Z \Xi\, d\mu_{i_2} \;:\; \mathbb{D}\sum_{X_1} A_1 \longrightarrow \mathbb{D}\sum_{X_2}(A_2 \otimes \tau)$$

we call the corresponding *secondary integral transform.*

**Example 5.5.29.** Consider the simple case of a prequantum integral kernel whose underlying correspondence has as right leg an identity

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & X & & \\ & {}^{f}\swarrow & & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}} & \\ Y & & & & X \end{array} ,$$

where the linear types on the base spaces are the unit types and the integral kernel itself is the identity $\xi = \mathrm{id} : \mathrm{id}^* 1_X = 1_X \to 1_X = f^* 1_Y$. Then the right leg $\mathrm{id}_X$ is trivially oriented with vanishing twist and with this choice the secondary integral transform formula in def. 5.5.28 reduces to to being map

$$\mathbb{D}\int_X d\mu_{\mathrm{id}} \;:\; \sum_Y 1_Y \xleftarrow{\sum_Y \epsilon} \sum_Y f_! f^* 1_X \xleftarrow{\simeq} \sum_X 1_X \,.$$

This we recognize as the operation considered in (4.3) of [PoSh12]. We had discussed the meaning of this operation in 5.5.3 above.

**Remark 5.5.30.** If the coefficients $A_1$ and $A_2$ in def. 5.5.28 are dualizable with duals $L_1$ and $L_2$, respectively, then by linear de Morgan duality, prop. 5.5.3, and by remark 5.5.12, the secondary integral transform of def. 5.5.28 is a linear function between the linear spaces of sections of the dual coefficients:

$$\int_Z \Xi\, d\mu_{i_2} \;:\; \Gamma_X(L_1) \longrightarrow \Gamma_Y(L_2 \otimes \mathbb{D}\tau)\,.$$

Example 6.2.30 below shows how basic linear algebra is a special case of def. 5.5.28. This is elementary in itself, but turns out to be directly the blueprint for the more sophisticated example 6.2.31 to follow, which in turn is the context in which one finds genuine quantum physics by example **??**. In view of these examples, we make the following observation on the conceptual interpretation of the construction in def. 5.5.28, which the reader with no tolerance for more philosophical considerations is urged to skip and ignore.

**Remark 5.5.31** (logical interpretation of the secondary integral transform)**.** These examples show that we may think of $X$ and $Y$ in def. 5.5.28 as phase spaces and, if $A_1$ and $A_2$ are dualizable, think of the linear types $L_1$ and $L_2$ as pre-quantum line bundles on these (see also section 1.2.10 in [**?**], surveyed in [**?**]). Hence by the BHK correspondence (as reviewed in **??**), in the underlying linear logic $L_1$ represents a proposition

[28] While this text was being composed, essentially def. 5.5.28 for the special case of vanishing twist and in the specific model of $\infty$-module bundles over homotopy types appeared as Notation 4.1.6 of [HoLu14].

about elements of $X$ (and $L_2$ about elements of $Y$): $L_1$ may be thought of as the linear proposition that the given system is in state $x \in X$ of its phase space. For a proposition in classical logic the fiber of $L_1$ over some $x \in X$ would be either empty or inhabited, indicating that the system either is in that state or not. Now in linear logic this fiber is a linear space, namely what in physics is a space of *phases*. In this vein we have the following stages of interpreting the expression $\sum\limits_X L_1$:

1. in logic this expression is the existential quantification $\underset{x \in X}{\exists} L_1(x)$ asserting that "there is a state $x$ occupied by the physical system";
2. in type theory this expression denotes the collection (type) of all states that the system can be in;
3. in homotopy-type theory this expression denotes the homotopy-type of all such states, hence properly taking their gauge equivalences and higher gauge equivalences into account;
4. finally in linear homotopy-type theory this expression is the *linear* space of all states (with gauge equivalence taken into account) obtained not by disjointly collecting them all but by linearly adding up their phases.

An analogous comment applies to the middle terms in the composite function in 5.5.28, $\Xi = \sum\limits_Z \xi$. Here now the correspondence space $Z$ is to be interpreted as a space of paths (trajectories) from $X$ and $Y$, with $z \in Z$ being a path going from $p_1(z) \in X$ to $p_2(z) \in Y$. Hence in analogy to the above we have that $\sum\limits_Z \xi$ has the following interpretations:

1. in logic it means "that there is a path";
2. in type theory it means "the collection of all paths";
3. in homotopy-type theory it means "the collection of all paths with gauge transformations accounted for";
4. finally in linear homotopy-type theory it means "the sum of the phases of all possible paths".

#### 5.5.6 Quantum operations

Above in **??** we discussed how quantum logic is linear logic, the logic of closed symmetric monoidal categories. For core constructions in quantum physics and quantum computation, one considers an additional structure on these categories, namely what is called a *strongly compact* [AbCo04] or *dagger-compact* (†-compact) structure [Sel07]. Here we discuss how the concept of fundamental classes in dependent linear type theory that we introduced in 5.5.4 naturally induces †-structure in the special case where the twist vanishes. Conversely, we may hence regard the concept of fundamental classes in def. 5.5.13 as a generalization of †-structure.

**Remark 5.5.32.** In the special case that the twist $\tau$ in a fiberwise fundamental class on $f$, def. 5.5.13 vanishes, in that $\tau \simeq 1_{\mathcal{D}}$, then this is then equivalent to an identification of the linear type

$$V_f := f_! f^*(1_{\mathcal{D}})$$

with its dual

$$V_f \xrightarrow{\simeq} V_f^* \,.$$

This way an untwisted fiberwise fundamental class on $f$ is equivalently a non-degenerate inner product

$$\langle -, - \rangle \;:\; V_f \otimes V_f \longrightarrow 1_{\mathcal{D}} \,.$$

In this spirit we say that:

**Definition 5.5.33.** For $A \in \mathrm{Mod}(X)$ dualizable, a choice of *fiberwise inner product* is a choice of equivalence

$$A \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{D}A\,.$$

If this is the inverse of its dual morphism, we say the inner product is *symmetric* (axiom (T5) in [Sel10]).

The corresponding pairing we write

$$\langle -,-\rangle_A \;:\; A \otimes A \xrightarrow{\simeq} A \otimes \mathbb{D}A \xrightarrow{\mathrm{ev}} 1_X$$

and often we find it convenient to use "$\langle -,-\rangle_A$" also for the original equivalence itself. In this notation the symmetry condition is that $\langle -,-\rangle_A \simeq \mathbb{D}\langle -,-\rangle_A^{-1}$.

If $X \simeq *$ we may call a fiberwise inner product over $X$ just an "inner product" or "global inner product", for emphasis. The following examples show how a fiberwise inner product induces a global one.

**Example 5.5.34.** If $A \in \mathrm{Mod}(X)$ is equipped with a fiberwise inner product $\langle -,-\rangle_A$, def. 5.5.33, and if $X$ (hence the terminal morphism $X \to *$) is equipped with an untwisted fundamental class $[X]$, def. 5.5.13, then $\sum\limits_X A \in \mathrm{Mod}(*)$ is naturally equipped with the inner product given by the composite

$$\langle -,-\rangle_{\sum\limits_X A} : \sum_X A \overset{\sum\limits_X \langle -,-\rangle_A}{\longrightarrow} \sum_X \mathbb{D}A \xrightarrow{\simeq} \prod_X \mathbb{D}A \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{D}\sum_X A\,,$$

where the second equivalence is the Wirthmüller isomorphism induced by the fundamental class (by the second clause in prop. 4.13 of [May05], using that $\sum\limits_X 1_X$ is dualizable by our assumption on fundamental classes, see remark 5.5.14) and the last one is parameterized linear De Morgan duality, prop. 5.5.3.

**Example 5.5.35.** If $A \in \mathrm{Mod}(X)$ is equipped with a fiberwise inner product, def. 5.5.33, and $f : Y \to X$ is equipped with an untwisted fiberwise fundamental class, def. 5.5.13, then this induces on $f_! f^* A$ a fiberwise inner product given as the composite

$$\langle -,-\rangle_{f_! f^* A} \;:\; f_! f^* A \xrightarrow[\simeq]{} \mathbb{D} f_! f^* \mathbb{D}A \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\mathbb{D} f_! f^* \langle -,-\rangle_A^{-1}} \mathbb{D} f_! f^* A$$

of the induced Wirthmüller isomorphism, prop. 5.5.16, and the image of the fiberwise fundamental class under $\mathbb{D} f_! f^*(-)$.

A simple but fundamental fact is that between objects that are equipped with (fiberwise) inner products, every morphism has a canonical reversal:

**Definition 5.5.36.** Given a morphism $f : A \longrightarrow B$ between linear types equipped with fiberwise inner product, def. 5.5.33, then we say its *transpose* $f^\dagger$ is the composite

$$f^\dagger \;:\; B \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\langle -,-\rangle_B} \mathbb{D}B \xrightarrow{\mathbb{D}f} \mathbb{D}A \xrightarrow[\simeq]{\langle -,-\rangle_A^{-1}} A\;.$$

Some comments on this basic abstract construction of †-structure are in section 4 of [Sel10].

We may now relate the choice of a fiberwise fundamental class to the transpose of the pushforward along the map.

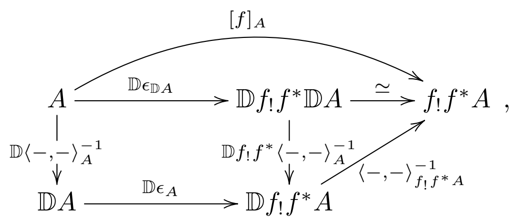
**Proposition 5.5.37.** *Let $A \in \mathrm{Mod}(X)$ be dualizable and equipped with a fiberwise symmetric inner product $\langle -,-\rangle_A$, def. 5.5.33, and let $f : Y \longrightarrow X$ be a morphism of contexts equipped with an untwisted fiberwise fundamental class, def. 5.5.13. Then the respective morphism $[f]$, def. 5.5.18, is the transpose, def. 5.5.36, of the $(\sum_f \dashv f^*)$-counit:*

$$[f] \simeq \epsilon_f^\dagger\,,$$

*hence, by remark 5.5.19*

$$\epsilon_f^\dagger \simeq \eta_f \,.$$

Proof. By naturality of the counit we have



where the square on the left is the image under $\mathbb{D}$ of the naturality square of the $(f_! \dashv f^*)$-counit on the fiberwise inner product $\langle -,-\rangle_A^{-1} : \mathbb{D}A \overset{\simeq}{\to} A$, and where the diagonal equivalence on the right is the inverse of the map in example 5.5.35. By symmetry of the fiberwise inner product on $X$ the left vertical map is equivalent to $\langle -,-\rangle_A$ and hence the bottom composite of the diagram exhibits $[f]_A$ as the transpose of $\mathbb{D}\epsilon_A$. □

**Corollary 5.5.38.** *If $X$ itself (hence $X \to *$) is equipped with an untwisted fundamental class $[X]$ then*

$$\sum_X [f] \simeq \left(\sum_X \epsilon\right)^\dagger$$

Proof. Combining example 5.5.34 and prop. 5.5.37. □

Therefore:

**Remark 5.5.39.** If $A \in \mathrm{Mod}(X)$ is equipped with a fiberwise symmetric inner product $\langle -,-\rangle_A$ and $f : Y \longrightarrow X$ is equipped with untwisted fiberwise fundamental classes, def. 5.5.13, then the formula for the secondary integral transform $\mathbb{D}\int_Z \Xi d\mu$ in def. 5.5.28 of a prequantum integral kernel on a correspondence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & Z & \\ {}^{i_1}\swarrow & & \searrow^{i_2} \\ X_1 & & X_2 \end{array}$$

becomes

$$\mathbb{D}\int_Z \Xi d\mu \;\simeq\; \sum_X \epsilon^{i_1}_{A_1} \circ \Xi \circ \sum_X (\epsilon^{i_2}_{A_2})^\dagger \,.$$

If moreover $X$ itself is equipped with a fundamental class then this becomes

$$\mathbb{D}\int_Z \Xi d\mu \;\simeq\; \left(\sum_X \epsilon^{i_1}_{A_1}\right) \circ \Xi \circ \left(\sum_X \epsilon^{i_2}_{A_2}\right)^\dagger \,.$$

This kind of operation plays a special role both in abstract quantum physics as well as in generalized cohomology theory:

**Remark 5.5.40.** In particular for the case that $i_1 = i_2$ and $A_1 = A_2$ (so that in example 6.2.30 the integral kernel is a square matrix) then the map

$$\Xi \mapsto \mathbb{D}\int_Z \Xi d\mu \simeq \left(\sum_X \epsilon_A\right) \circ \Xi \circ \left(\sum_X \epsilon_A\right)^\dagger$$

(which we identify as the path integral quantization map for the integral kernel $\Xi$) is what is called a (completely positive) "quantum operation", see [Sel07].

**Remark 5.5.41.** In the model of linear homotopy-type theory by generalized cohomology theory, def. 6.2.28, the self-duality of 5.5.33 is *Poincaré duality* (in general with a twist) and the induced transpose maps in def. 5.5.36 are the "Umkehr maps" or "wrong way maps" in generalized cohomology.

Specifically the literature on KK-theory knows that forming Umkehr maps in K-theory is given by forming transpose morphisms of the "right way"-morphisms in the symmetric monoidal category KK, see [BMRS07]. Definition 2.1 in [BMRS07] defines (somewhat implicitly) a fundamental class to be a choice of self-duality in KK (Poincaré duality in KK) and section 3.3 there defines construction of Umkehr maps as the corresponding construction of transposes, hence of the dagger-operation as in def. 5.5.36. Under this identification the re-formulation of secondary integral transforms via dagger operations in remark 5.5.39 corresponds to formula (5.6) in [BMRS07].

### 5.5.7 Quantum states

Consider a model

$$\begin{array}{c}\mathrm{Mod}\\ \downarrow\\ \mathbf{H}\end{array}$$

for linear homotopy-type theory, def. 3.2.5. We observe that this naturally comes equipped with a higher directed notion of linear types, too.

**Definition 5.5.42.** For every type $X \in \mathbf{H}$ the symmetric monoidal category $\mathrm{Mod}(X)$ is canonically a module category over the symmetric monoidal category $\mathrm{Mod}(*)$, via the action

$$\mathrm{Mod}(*) \times \mathrm{Mod}(X) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mod}(X)$$

given by

$$(\tau, A) \mapsto (X^*\tau) \otimes A\,.$$

A functor $F : \mathrm{Mod}(X) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mod}(Y)$ is called $\mathrm{Mod}(*)$-*linear* if it respects this action.

**Remark 5.5.43.** That def. 5.5.42 indeed defines an action is equivalent to the fact that

$$X^* \;:\; \mathrm{Mod}(*) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mod}(X)$$

is a strong monoidal functor, by the axioms of linear homotopy-type theory, def. 3.2.5.

**Proposition 5.5.44.** *For $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ any map in $\mathbf{H}$, then pullback*

$$f^* : \mathrm{Mod}(X) \longleftarrow \mathrm{Mod}(Y)$$

*is a $\mathrm{Mod}(*)$-linear functor, def. 5.5.42, as is the sum along the fibers of $f$*

$$\sum_f \;:\; \mathrm{Mod}(X) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mod}(Y)\,.$$

Proof. For $A \in \mathrm{Mod}(Y)$ and $\tau \in \mathrm{Mod}(*)$ we naturally have

$$\begin{aligned} f^*(\tau \cdot A) &= f^*((Y^*\tau) \otimes A) \\ &\simeq (f^*Y^*\tau) \otimes f^*A \\ &\simeq (Y^*\tau) \otimes f^*A \\ &= \tau \cdot f^*A \end{aligned},$$

where we used that $f^*$ is strong monoidal. For $A \in \mathrm{Mod}(X)$ and $\tau \in \mathrm{Mod}(*)$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_f (\tau \cdot A) &= \sum_f ((X^*\tau) \otimes A) \\ &\simeq \sum_f ((f^*Y^*\tau) \otimes A) \\ &\simeq (Y^*\tau) \otimes \sum_f A \\ &= \tau \cdot \sum_f A \,. \end{aligned},$$

where the last equivalence is Frobenius reciprocity. □

To reflect this we may say:

**Definition 5.5.45.** Write

$$\mathrm{Mod}_2 \in (\infty, 2)\mathrm{Cat}$$

for the $(\infty, 2)$-category of $\mathrm{Mod}(*)$-linear $\infty$-categories of the form $\mathrm{Mod}(X)$ for some $X \in \mathbf{H}$, and $\mathrm{Mod}(*)$-linear functors between them.

In 5.5.8 we consider a kind of quantum field theory that does have directed spaces of quantum states given by 2-modules of the form $\mathrm{Mod}(X)$. For this to satisfy the axioms of a TQFT, we will need to require two extra properties on the ambient model for linear homotopy-type theory.

**Definition 5.5.46.** Given a model $\mathrm{Mod}(-) \to \mathbf{H}$ for linear homotopy-type theory, def. 3.2.5, one says that it satisfies the *Beck-Chevalley condition* if for all $\infty$-pullback squares in $\mathbf{H}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & Z & \\ {}^{h}\swarrow & & \searrow^{f} \\ X_1 & & X_2 \\ {}_{k}\searrow & & \swarrow_{g} \\ & Y & \end{array}$$

the composition

$$f_! h^* \longrightarrow f_1 h^* k^* k_! \xrightarrow{\simeq} f_! f^* g^* k_! \longrightarrow g^* k_!$$

is an equivalence (between pull-push $\mathrm{Mod}(X_1) \to \mathrm{Mod}(X_2)$ along the upper half and push-pull along the lower half).

**Example 5.5.47.** The models for linear homotopy-type theory $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta^1} \overset{\mathrm{cod}}{\to} \mathbf{H}$, example 6.1.4, and $E\mathrm{Mod}(-) \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, example 6.2.28, satisfy the Beck-Chevalley condition, def. 5.5.46.

Proof. The first statement is equivalently the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks in $\mathbf{H}$. The second appears as prop. 4.3.3 in [HoLu14]. □

**Definition 5.5.48.** We say a model $\mathrm{Mod}(-) \to \mathbf{H}$ for linear homotopy-type theory, def. 3.2.5, is *2-monoidal* if for all $X, Y \in \mathbf{H}$ we have

$$\mathrm{Mod}(X \times Y) \simeq \mathrm{Mod}(X) \otimes_{\mathrm{Mod}(*)} \mathrm{Mod}(Y)$$

**Example 5.5.49.** For $E \in \mathrm{CRing}_\infty$ any $E_\infty$-ring, then the model of linear homotopy-type theory $E\mathrm{Mod}(-) \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is 2-monoidal, def. 5.5.48.

Proof. Since $X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow (\infty,1)\mathrm{Cat}$ is small and $E\mathrm{Mod}(*) \in (\infty,1)\mathrm{Cat}$ is locally presentable, this follows from basic properties of the symmetric monoidal $\infty$-category of locally presentable $\infty$-categories [**?**].[29] □

**Proposition 5.5.50.** *In a model* $\mathrm{Mod}(-) \to \mathbf{H}$ *for linear homotopy-type theory, def. 3.2.5, consider* $f_1 : X_1 \to Y_1$ *and* $f_2 : X_2 \to Y_2$ *in* $\mathbf{H}$ *and* $A_i \in \mathrm{Mod}(X_i)$ *and* $B_i \in \mathrm{Mod}(Y_i)$. *Then*

$$(f_1 \times f_2)^*(p_1^* B_1) \otimes (p_2^* B_2) \simeq (p_1^* f_1^* B_1) \otimes (p_2^* f_2^* B_2)\,.$$

*If the Beck-Chevalley condition, def. 5.5.46, holds then also*

$$\sum_{f_1 \times f_2} (p_1^* A_1) \otimes (p_2^* A_2) \simeq (p_1^* \sum_{f_1} A_1) \otimes (p_2^* \sum_{f_2} A_2)\,.$$

Proof. The first one follows immediately from the fact that pullback is required to be strong monoidal. The second one follows using Frobenius reciprocity and the Beck-Chevalley, as is shown in lemma 3.2 of [PoSh12]. □

**Corollary 5.5.51.** *If the given model for linear homotopy-type theory, def. 6.1.4, satisfies the Beck-Chevalley condition, def. 5.5.46 and is 2-monoidal, def. 5.5.48, then the* $(\infty,2)$*-functor*

$$\mathrm{TQFT}_{d+1} : \mathrm{Corr}_1(\mathbf{H}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mod}_2$$

*given by sending correspondence to their linear polynomial functors, def. 5.5.5, is monoidal.*

### 5.5.8 Anomaly cancellation of the path integral measure

Given a correspondence

$$X_1 \xleftarrow{i_1} Z \xrightarrow{i_2} X_2$$

we defined in def. 5.5.28 an integral kernel based on this corrrespondence to be data of the form

$$\xi : i_1^* A_1 \longleftarrow i_2^* A_2\,.$$

One may ask where this form of data comes from. In example 5.5.24 and then more specifically in example **??** we gave a class of constructions that occur naturally in practice which do yield this kind of data. But here we want to go one step further and understand this data as being in turn the boundary field theory data of a TQFT of yet one more dimension higher.

Moreover, so far the $\mathrm{TQFT}_d^\tau$ which we obtained correspondence-wise by quantization via secondary integral transforms may be "anomalous" in that its correspondence-wise construction does not actually extend to a monoidal functor

$$\mathrm{TQFT}_d^\tau :\ \mathrm{Bord}_n \xrightarrow{\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}S)d\mu} \mathrm{Corr}(\mathbf{H}) \xrightarrow{\int(-)d\mu} \mathrm{Mod}(*)\ .$$

[29] Thanks to Thomas Nikolaus for discussion of this point.

Here we show that the condition that $\mathrm{TQFT}_d^\tau$ is quantum anomaly free means that it is itself the boundary field theory of yet another $\mathrm{TQFT}_{d+1}$.[30]

**Definition 5.5.52.** For $\mathrm{Mod}(-) \to \mathbf{H}$ a model for linear homotopy-type theory, which satisfies Beck-Chevalley, def. 5.5.46, and is 2-monoidal, def. 5.5.48, write

$$\mathrm{TQFT}_{d+1} \;:\; \mathrm{Corr}_1(\mathbf{H}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mod}_2$$

for the $(\infty,1)$-functor from the $(\infty,1)$-category of correspondences in $\mathbf{H}$ to the $(\infty,2)$-category of 2-modules, def.5.5.45, given by sending homotopy-types $X$ to their $\infty$-categories $\mathrm{Mod}(X)$ of linear homotopy-types dependent on them, and sending correspondences $X_1 \overset{i_1}{\leftarrow} Z \overset{i_2}{\to} X_2$ as above to their *linear polynomial functors*

$$\mathrm{Mod}(X_1) \xleftarrow{\sum_{i_1} \circ i_2^*} \mathrm{Mod}(X_2)$$

as in def. 5.5.5.

**Remark 5.5.53.** That def. 5.5.52 indeed gives a monoidal $(\infty,2)$-functor is the content of cor. 5.5.51.

**Proposition 5.5.54.** *In a linear homotopy-type theory which satisfies Beck-Chevalley, def. 5.5.46, and is 2-monoidal, def. 5.5.48, then the functor* $\mathrm{TQFT}_{d+1}$ *in def. 5.5.52 is monoidal.*

Proof. By assumption of 2-monoidalness it suffices to see that for $X_1 \overset{i_1}{\leftarrow} Z \overset{i_2}{\to} X_2$ and $\tilde X_1 \overset{\tilde i_1}{\leftarrow} \tilde Z \overset{\tilde i_2}{\to} \tilde X_2$ two correspondences in $\mathbf{H}$, and $(p_1^* A) \otimes (p_2^* \tilde A) \in \mathrm{Mod}(X_2 \times \tilde X_2)$, then

$$\sum_{i_1 \times \tilde i_1} (i_2 \times \tilde i_2)^* \left( (p_1^* A) \otimes (p_2^* \tilde A) \right) \simeq \left( p_1^* \sum_{i_1} i_2^* A_1 \right) \otimes \left( p_2^* \sum_{i_1} \tilde i_2^* \tilde A \right) .$$

Given the assumption of Beck-Chevalley, this is the statement of prop.5.5.50. □

We now consider boundary conditions for $\mathrm{TQFT}_{d+1}$. For that purpose write

$$1_{d+1} \;:\; \mathrm{Corr}(\mathbf{H}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mod}_2 \,,$$

for the $(\infty,2)$-functor which sends every correspondence to the identity functor on $\mathrm{Mod}(*)$.

**Proposition 5.5.55.** *A* $\mathrm{Mod}(*)$*-linear natural transformation*

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar} S) \;:\; 1_{d+1} \longrightarrow \mathrm{TQFT}_{d+1}$$

*is over each correspondence* $X_1 \leftarrow Z \to X_2$ *equivalently a prequantum integral kernel, def. 5.5.22.*

Proof. Consider the naturality square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Mod}(*) & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{id}} & \mathrm{Mod}(*) \\ {\scriptstyle 1_* \mapsto A_1}\downarrow & \swArrow_{\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}S)} & \downarrow {\scriptstyle 1_* \mapsto A_2} \\ \mathrm{Mod}(X_1) & \xleftarrow[\sum_{i_1} \circ i_2^*]{} & \mathrm{Mod}(X_2) \end{array} .$$

Here by $\mathrm{Mod}(*)$-linearity the vertical functors are fixed by their image of the tensor unit, which we denote by $A_1$, $A_2$ respectively. Therefore the unit component of this natural transformation on this $A_2$ has to be a morphism in $\mathrm{Mod}(X_1)$ of the form

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar} S)_{A_2} : \sum_{i_1} i_2^* A_2 \longrightarrow A_1 \,.$$

[30] The result here is joint with Joost Nuiten.

On a general object $\tau \in \mathrm{Mod}(*)$ the component of the transformation has to be of the form

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S)_{A_2 \otimes \tau} : \sum_{i_1} (i_2^* A_2 \otimes Z^* \tau) \simeq \sum_{i_1} (i_2^* A_2 \otimes i_1^* X_1^* \tau) \longrightarrow A_1 \otimes X_1^* \tau$$

which by Frobenius reciprocity, def. 3.2.2, is equivalently of the form

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S)_{A_2 \otimes \tau} : (\sum_{i_1} i_2^* A_2) \otimes X_1^* \tau \longrightarrow A_1 \otimes X_1^* \tau \,.$$

By linearity this is fixed to be $\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S)_{A_2 \otimes \tau} \simeq \exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S)_{A_2} \otimes \mathrm{id}_\tau$ and hence the transformation is equivalent to the data consisting of $A_1$, $A_2$ and $\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S)_{A_2}$. Finally observe that by the $(\sum_{i_1} \dashv i_1^*)$-adjunction the datum $\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S)_{A_2}$ is equivalently given by its adjunct $\xi : i_2^* A_2 \longrightarrow i_1^* A_1$ , which is the integral kernel in question. □

**Definition 5.5.56.** Given a choice of untwisted fiberwise fundamental class on $i_2$, def. 5.5.13, consider the transformation

$$\mathbb{D} \int (-) d\mu \;:\; \mathrm{TQFT}_{d+1} \longrightarrow 1_{d+1}$$

restricted to the given correspondence $X_1 \overset{i_1}{\leftarrow} Z \overset{i_2}{\rightarrow} X_2$ whose component there is

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Mod}(X_1) & \xleftarrow{\sum_{i_1} \circ i_2^*} & \mathrm{Mod}(X_2) \\ {\scriptstyle \sum_{X_1}}\downarrow & \Leftarrow_{\sum_{X_2}[i_2]} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \sum_{X_2}} \\ \mathrm{Mod}(*) & \xleftarrow[\mathrm{id}]{} & \mathrm{Mod}(*) \end{array} \,,$$

where the transformation filling this diagram is the $X_2$-dependent sum of the given fundamental class $[i_2]$ on $i_2$, def. 5.5.18.

Combining this we obtain a twisted

$$\mathrm{TQFT}_d^\tau := \mathbb{D} \int \exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S)\, d\mu \;:\; \mathrm{Corr}(\mathbf{H}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mod}(*)$$

as the unit component of the composite of these two transformations, hence as a defect from the trivial $(d{+}1)$-dimensional theory to itself. It sends a correspondence to the unit component of the pasting composite of natural transformations as follows

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Mod}(*) & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{id}} & \mathrm{Mod}(*) \\ {\scriptstyle 1_* \mapsto A_1}\downarrow & \Leftarrow_{\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}S)} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle 1_* \mapsto A_2} \\ \mathrm{Mod}(X_1) & \xleftarrow{\sum_{i_1} \circ i_2^*} & \mathrm{Mod}(X_2) \\ {\scriptstyle \sum_{X_1}}\downarrow & \Leftarrow_{\sum_{X_2}[i_2]} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \sum_{X_2}} \\ \mathrm{Mod}(*) & \xleftarrow[\mathrm{id}]{} & \mathrm{Mod}(*) \end{array} \,.$$

**Proposition 5.5.57.** *The unit component of this pasting composite*

$$\mathbb{D} \int \exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S) d\mu \;:\; 1_{d+1} \overset{\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}S)}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{FQFT}_{d+1} \overset{\mathbb{D}\int(-)d\mu_{i_2}}{\longrightarrow} 1_{d+1}$$

*is the dual secondary integral transform*

$$\mathbb{D}\int_Z \xi d\mu_{i_2} : \sum_{X_1} A_1 \longleftarrow \sum_{X_2} A_2$$

*which is associated by def. 5.5.28 to the integral kernel* $\xi$ *corresponding to* $\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}S)$ *via the proof of prop. 5.5.55.*

Proof. The pasting natural transformation here has as unit component the map

$$\sum_{X_1} A_1 \overset{\sum\limits_{X_1}\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}S)}{\longleftarrow} \sum_{X_1}\sum_{i_1} i_2^* A_2 \overset{\sum\limits_{X_2}[i_2]}{\longleftarrow} \sum_{X_2} A_2$$

By the general formula for adjuncts we have that $\xi$ and $\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}S)$ are related by

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S) : A_1 \overset{\epsilon}{\longleftarrow} \sum_{i_1} i_1^* A_1 \overset{\sum\limits_{i_1}\xi}{\longleftarrow} \sum_{i_1} i_2^* A_2 \,.$$

Inserting this into the first expression manifestly yields the secondary integral transform formula of def. 5.5.28, up to canonical equivalence. □

**Remark 5.5.58.** (consistent orientations and quantum anomalies) Proposition 5.5.57 provides a succinct formulation of what it takes to choose fiberwise fundamental classes, def. 5.5.13, on a system of correspondences *consistently*, namely such that the operation of secondary integral transforms is functorial in the correspondences: the condition is that $\int(-)d\mu : \mathrm{FQFT}_{d+t} \longrightarrow 1_{d+1}$ is indeed a natural transformation, hence indeed a boundary condition for the tautological $(d+1)$-dimensional theory. The existence of such consistent orientations is the central obstruction to the existence of the quantization process, and such obstructions to quantization are known in the physics literature as *quantum anomalies*. A clean account of quantum anomalies as traditionally considered is in [Fre86]; for quantum anomalies from the perspective as considered here see also [Fr00]. Therefore finding consistent orientations is *quantum anomaly cancellation*. The problem of finding consistent orientations for integral transforms given by pull-push had previously been highlighted in [FHT07] for the special case of pull-push in equivariant K-theory.

# 6 Externalization

In this section we consider *representations*, hence *models* of the abstract axiomatic theory developed in 4 and of the structures 5 implied by these. Hence we construct specific cohesive $\infty$-toposes, 4.1, and differential cohesive $\infty$-toposes, 4.2, and discuss the incarnation of the general abstract structures 5.1, 5.2, 5.2, 5.3 in these representations.

We start with a generic class of models

- 6.1 – parameterized homotopy-types;

which give towers of new cohesive $\infty$-toposes

$$\mathbf{H}^{\Delta^1} \to \cdots \to T^{(n)}\mathbf{H} \to \cdots \to \mathbf{H}T\mathbf{H}$$

over given one $\mathbf{H}$, the *Goodwillie-jet $\infty$-toposes* of $\mathbf{H}$. Where a generic $\mathbf{H}$ is a cohesive version of homotopy theory and *non-abelian* cohomology, its tangent (1-jet) $\infty$-topos $T\mathbf{H}$ extends $\mathbf{H}$ by its stabilization given by stable cohesive homotopy-types (cohesive spectrum objects) and hence also accommodates the cohesive *stable homotopy theory* and stable (meaning: generalized Eilenberg-Steenrod-type) cohesive cohomology. This construction can be considered in particular for all of the specific models to follow, which are:

- 6.2 – discrete homotopy types;
- 6.3 – Euclidean-topological homotopy types;
- 6.4 – smooth homotopy types;
- 6.5 – formal smooth homotopy types;
- 6.6 – supergeometric homotopy types;
- 6.7 – further models.

These cohesive $\infty$-toposes fit into a diagram of geometric morphisms of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc}
 & \textbf{cohesion} & & \textbf{differential cohesion} & & \begin{array}{c}\textbf{base}\\ \infty\textbf{-topos}\end{array} \\
 & & & & & . \\
\textbf{supergeometry} & \mathrm{SmoothSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{FormalSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \\
 & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\textbf{differential geometry} & \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \longrightarrow & \infty\mathrm{Grpd}
\end{array}$$

In the bottom right we have plain $\infty$-groupoids, modelling *discrete* cohesion, 6.2. The bottom left is the cohesive $\infty$-topos of *smooth $\infty$-groupoids*, 6.4 and the middle entry on the bottom is the cohesive $\infty$-topos *formal smooth cohesion*, 6.5. The total bottom row exhibits the latter as a model for *differential cohesion* in the sense of 4.2. This we regard as the standard model for *higher differential geometry*. The top row shows the supergeometric refinement of this situation. See below in 6.6 for more discussion of the top row of this diagram.

Finally we indicate further models of the axioms which we do not discuss here in more detail at the moment

- – complex-analytic cohesion;
- – pointed arithmetic cohesion.

## 6.1 Parameterized homotopy types

We discuss here, given any cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, new $\infty$-toposes of objects parameterized over those of $\mathbf{H}$, which are cohesive over $\mathbf{H}$.

- 6.1.1 – Bundles of homotopy-types;
- 6.1.2 – Bundles of pointed homotopy-types;
- 6.1.3 – Bundles of stable homotopy-types

The first of these is just the arrow category $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]}$ of $\mathbf{H}$. While simple in itself, this is conceptually noteworthy as the $\infty$-topos whose intrinsic cohomology is *twisted nonabelian cohomology* in $\mathbf{H}$ according to the discussion in 5.1.13, and because it serves an illustrative purpose: it is a simple but non-trivial model of cohesion that illuminates the central notions, such as cohesive homotopy-types, by elementary combinatorial reasoning.

The second is the variant of the first where all bundles are equipped with a global section. The intrinsic cohomology is still twisted cohomology, but now for pointed coefficient bundles.

The third is the "fiberwise stabilization" of the second, the tangent $\infty$-topos $T\mathbf{H}$ of *parameterized spectrum objects* in $\mathbf{H}$. This is the class of cohesive $\infty$-toposes whose intrinsic intrinsic differential cohomology accommodates the *stable* (hence: generalized Eilenberg-Steenrod-type) differential cohomology in $\mathbf{H}$ in the sense of [HoSi05] and generally is the *twisted differential stable cohomology* developed in [BNV13].

There is in fact a whole tower of $\infty$-toposes interpolating between these two examples

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} \mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & T^{(n)}\mathbf{H} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & T\mathbf{H} \;, \\ &&&&&&&& \downarrow \\ &&&&&&&& \mathbf{H} \end{array}$$

where $T^{(n)}\mathbf{H} \simeq \mathrm{Exc}^n(\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}, \mathbf{H})$ is the $\infty$-category of $n$-excisive $\infty$-endofunctors. (This goes back to [Jo08b, section 35], it follows with theorem 1.8 in [Go03] and more explicitly with theorem 6.1.1.10, remark 6.1.1.11 in [L-Alg], which in turn were communicated by Charles Rezk.[31]) In terms of intrinsic cohomology this chain interpolates stagewise between general non-abelian twisted differential cohomology in $\mathbf{H}$ on the left and twisted stable (generalized Eilenberg-Steenrod-type) differential cohomology in $\mathbf{H}$ on the right. Since the higher Chern-Weil theory discussed here may be regarded as approximating the former by the latter, one may think of the intermediate stages here as the home of a tower of intermediate higher Chern-Weil theory. But for the moment we do not explore this further.

### 6.1.1 Bundles of homotopy-types

We discuss a class of examples of cohesive $\infty$-toposes that are obtained from a given cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ by passing to the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}^D$ of interval-shaped diagrams in it. The cohesive interpretation of an object in $\mathbf{H}^D$ is as a bundle of $\mathbf{H}$-cohesive $\infty$-groupoids all whose fibers are regarded as being geometrically contractible.

**Proposition 6.1.1.** *Let $\mathbf{H}$ be a cohesive $\infty$-topos. Let $D$ be a small category with initial object $\bot$ and terminal object $\top$.*

*There is an adjoint triple of $\infty$-functors*

$$D \underset{\top}{\overset{\bot}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\overset{\longrightarrow}{\xleftarrow{\;p\;}}}}} *$$

*obtained from the inclusion of the terminal and the initial object.*

[31] Thanks to Charles Rezk for discussion of this point.

*The $\infty$-functor $\infty$-category $\mathbf{H}^D$ ($D$-shaped diagrams in $\mathbf{H}$) is a cohesive $\infty$-topos, exhibited by the composite adjoint quadruple*

$$(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc}) \;:\; \mathbf{H}^D \underoverset{\underset{\bot_*}{\hookleftarrow}}{\overset{\top^*}{\longrightarrow}}{\underset{\bot^*}{\overset{p^*}{\leftrightarrows}}} \mathbf{H} \underoverset{\underset{\mathrm{coDisc}_{\mathbf{H}}}{\hookleftarrow}}{\overset{\Pi_{\mathbf{H}}}{\longrightarrow}}{\underset{\Gamma_{\mathbf{H}}}{\overset{\mathrm{Disc}_{\mathbf{H}}}{\leftrightarrows}}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

Proof. Each of the first three functors induces an adjoint triple $(p_! \dashv p^* \dashv p_*)$, etc., where $p^*$ is given by precomposition, $p_!$ by left $\infty$-Kan extension and $p_*$ by right $\infty$-Kan extension (use for instance [L-Topos], A.2.8). In particular therefore $\top^*$ preserves finite products (together with all small $\infty$-limits). The adjointness $(\bot \dashv p \dashv \top)$ implies that $p_! \simeq \top^*$ and $\bot_! \simeq p^*$. This yields the adjoint quadruple as indicated. Finally it is clear that $\top^* p^* \simeq \mathrm{id}$, which means that $p^*$ is full and faithful, and by adjointness so is $\bot_*$. □

The following simple example not only illustrates the above proposition, but also serves as a useful toy example for the notion of cohesion itself.

**Example 6.1.2.** For $\mathbf{H}$ any cohesive $\infty$-topos, also its arrow category $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta[1]}$ is cohesive.

In particular, for $\mathbf{H} = \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ (see 6.2 for a discussion of $\infty$Grpd as a cohesive $\infty$-topos), the arrow $\infty$-category $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{\Delta[1]}$ is cohesive. This is equivalently the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-presheaves on the interval $\Delta[1]$, which in turn is equivalent to the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-sheaves on the topological spaces called the *Sierpinski space*

$$\mathrm{Sierp} = (\{0,1\}, \mathrm{Opens} = (\emptyset \hookrightarrow \{1\} \hookrightarrow \{0,1\}))$$

(see for instance [Joh02], B.3.2.11):

$$\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{\Delta[1]} \simeq \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\Delta[1]) \simeq \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{Sierp})\,.$$

We call this the *Sierpinski $\infty$-topos*.

Notice that the Sierpinski space, as a topological space,

1. is contractible;
2. is locally contractible;
3. has a focal point (a point whose only open neighbourhood is the entire space).

The Sierpinski $\infty$-topos is 0-localic (def.3.1.3), being the image of the Sierpinski space under the embedding of topological spaces into $\infty$-toposes. Accordingly the cohesion of $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{Sierp})$ may be traced back to these three properties, which imply, in this order, that $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{Sierp})$ is, as an $\infty$-topos,

1. $\infty$-connected;
2. locally $\infty$-connected;
3. local.

So the Sierpinski space is the "abstract cohesive blob" on which the cohesion of $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{Sierp})$ is modeled: it is the abstract "point with an open neighbourhood".

While the cohesion encoded by the Sierpinski $\infty$-topos is very simple, it may be instructive to make the geometric interpretation fully explicit (the reader may want to compare the following with the more detailed discussions of the meaning of the functor $\Pi$ on a cohesive $\infty$-topos below in 5.2.3):

an object of $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{Sierp})$ is a morphism $[P \to X]$ in $\infty$Grpd. The functor $\Pi$ sends this to its domain

$$\Pi([P \to X]) \simeq X\,.$$

In particular

$$\Pi([P \to *]) \simeq *\,.$$

Therefore $\Pi$ sees $[P \to *]$ as being cohesively/geometrically contractible and sees a bundle $[P \to X]$ as having cohesively/geometrically contractible fibers. At the same time, for $X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, we have

$$\mathrm{Disc}(X) \simeq [X \stackrel{id}{\to} X]\,,$$

which says that the base of such a bundle is regarded by the cohesion of the Sierpinski $\infty$-topos as being discrete. Accordingly, we may interpret $[P \to X]$ as describing a discrete $\infty$-groupoid $X$ to which are attached cohesively contractible blobs, being the fibers of the morphism $P \to X$.

Even though they are geometrically contractible, these fibers have inner structure: this is seen by $\Gamma$, which takes the underlying $\infty$-groupoid to be the total space of the bundle

$$\Gamma([P \to X]) \simeq P\,.$$

Finally a codiscrete object is one of the form

$$\mathrm{coDisc}(Q) \simeq [Q \to *]\,,$$

which is entirely cohesively contractible, for any inner structure.

The following simple fact is worth recording:

**Proposition 6.1.3.** *Let $\mathbf{H}$ be a cohesive $\infty$-topos and regard the Sierpinski $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}^I$, example 6.1.2, as a cohesive $\infty$-topos over $\mathbf{H}$. Then*

1. *the full sub-$\infty$-category of $\mathbf{H}^I$ on those objects for which* pieces have points*, def. 4.1.16, is canonically identified with the $\infty$-category of effective epimorphisms in $\mathbf{H}$, hence with the $\infty$-category of groupoid objects in $\mathbf{H}$, def. 5.1.124;*
2. *the full sub-$\infty$-category of $\mathbf{H}^I$ on those objects which have* one point per piece*, def. 4.1.16, is canonically identified with $\mathbf{H}$ itself.*

**Proposition 6.1.4.** *Via the codomain fibration [L-Topos, 2.4.7], the Sierpinski $\infty$-topos over any $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, from example 6.1.2,*

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{H}^{\Delta^1} \\ \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{cod}} \\ \mathbf{H} \end{array}$$

*is a model for linear homotopy-type theory, according to def. 3.2.5.*

Proof. We have to show that for $f \;:\; X_1 \longrightarrow X_2$ any morphism in $\mathbf{H}$, the induced étale geometric morphism on slice toposes is a cartesian Wirthmüller context, def. 3.2.1, between the slice toposes:

$$(\sum_f \dashv f^* \dashv \prod_f) \;:\; (\mathbf{H}_{/X_1},\, \times_{X_1},\, X_1) \longrightarrow (\mathbf{H}_{/X_2},\, \times_{X_2},\, X_2)\,.$$

The left adjoint $f_! = \sum_f$ (dependent sum) sends slice objects $(A \to X_1)$ to the composite $(A \to X_1 \stackrel{f}{\to} X_2)$. Therefore by prop 3.2.3 it is sufficient to exhibit Frobenius reciprocity in the form

$$A \times_{X_1} f^* B \simeq A \times_{X_2} B\,.$$

But this is equivalently the pasting law for pullbacks in $\mathbf{H}$:

$$A \times_{X_2} B \simeq \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} A \times_{X_1} f^*B & \longrightarrow & f^*B & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A & \longrightarrow & X_1 & \stackrel{f}{\longrightarrow} & X_2 \end{array}$$

□

**Remark 6.1.5.** The dependent linear homotopy-type theory in prop. 6.1.4 is degenerate, in that the tensor product of the "linear" types is in fact Cartesian. This changes as we make the parameterized types pointed, below in 6.1.2.

### 6.1.2 Bundles of pointed homotopy-types

We now consider bundles of homotopy types equipped with a global section.

**Definition 6.1.6.** Write

$$\mathrm{sec} := \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & e & \\ \nearrow & & \searrow \\ x & \xrightarrow[\mathrm{id}]{} & x \end{array} \right\}$$

for the category containing two objects and two nontrivial morphisms between them, as indicated, whose composite is the identity. For $\mathbf{H}$ an $\infty$-topos, write

$$\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{sec}} := [\mathrm{sec}, \mathbf{H}]$$

for the $\infty$-presheaf $\infty$-topos on sec over $\mathbf{H}$, i.e. the $\infty$-category of bundles with global sections in $\mathbf{H}$, also called *ex-objects* [MaSi06] in $\mathbf{H}$. Evaluation at $x \in \mathrm{sec}$ induces a morphism

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{sec}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{cod}} \\ \mathbf{H} \end{array} .$$

**Remark 6.1.7.** By prop. 6.1.1, $\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{sec}}$ is cohesive over $\mathbf{H}$. For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ an object, then the fiber of the fibration in def. 6.1.6 over $X$ is the $\infty$-category of pointed objects, prop. 2.2.6, in the slice topos over $X$:

$$\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{sec}}_x \simeq \mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X} \simeq (\mathbf{H}_X)^{*/} .$$

An object in $\mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$ may be interpreted a bundle over $X$ which is equipped with a global section.

**Proposition 6.1.8.** *The fibration in def. 6.1.6 equipped with fiberwise smash product (prop. 2.2.8 via remark 6.1.7) exhibits* $\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{sec}}$ *as a model for linear homotopy-type theory, in the sense of def. 3.2.5.*

For 1-categories this statement appears as [Shul08, examples 12.13 and13.7] and in [Shul12c, example 2.33]. The argument for $\infty$-categories is directly analogous.

Proof. For $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ any morphism in $\mathbf{H}$ then the base change inverse image $f^* : \mathbf{H}_{/Y} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/X}$ preserves pointedness, and the pushout functor $f_! : \mathbf{H}^{X/} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}^{Y/}$ preserves co-pointedness. These two functors hence form an adjoint pair $(f_! \dashv f^*) : \mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}^{Y/}_{/Y}$.

By prop. 2.2.8, the fibers from remark 6.1.7 are closed symmetric monoidal $\infty$-categories $(\mathbf{H}^{/X}_{/X}, \wedge_X, X \coprod X)$ under the smash product $\wedge_X$. Since colimits in the under-over category $\mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$ are computed as colimits in $\mathbf{H}$ of diagrams with an initial object adjoined, and since by the Giraud axioms in the topos $\mathbf{H}$ pullback preserves these colimits, it follows that $f^* : \mathbf{H}^{Y/}_{/Y} \to \mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$ preserves colimits. Since by prop. 2.2.6 $\mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$ is presentably monadic over $\mathbf{H}_{/X}$ (via the maybe-monad $* \coprod (-)$, def. 2.2.5) we have, by [AR94, 2.78], that $\mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$ and $\mathbf{H}^{Y/}_{/Y}$ are locally presentable categories, so that by the adjoint functor theorem it follows that $f^*$ has also a right adjoint $f_* \colon \mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X} \to \mathbf{H}^{Y/}_{/Y}$.

To see that $f^*$ is a strong monoidal functor observe that the smash product is, by prop. 2.2.8, given by a pushout over coproducts and products in the slice topos. Due to the above, these are all preserved by $f^*$. To see that $f^*$ is also a strong closed functor, observe that the internal hom on pointed objects is a fiber product of cartesian internal homs. These are preserved according to example 6.1.4, and the fiber product is preserved since $f^*$ preserves all limits. Hence $f^*$ preserves also the internal homs of pointed objects.

This means that for each $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathbf{H}$ we do have a Wirthmüller context, def. 3.2.1,

$$(\sum_f \dashv f^* \dashv \prod_f) \;:\; (\mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}, \wedge_X, X \coprod X) \longrightarrow (\mathbf{H}^{Y/}_{/Y}, \wedge_Y, Y \coprod Y)\,.$$

□

**Definition 6.1.9.** Write $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{\mathrm{fin}}$ for the $\infty$-category of finite $\infty$-groupoids, those that are obtained from the point by finite $\infty$-colimits. Write $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}_{\mathrm{inf}}$ for the $\infty$-category of pointed finite $\infty$-groupoids. Finally, for $\mathbf{H}$ an $\infty$-topos, write

$$\mathbf{H}[X_*] := [\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}_{\mathrm{fin}}, \mathbf{H}]$$

for the $\infty$-topos of $\infty$-presheaves on $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}_{\mathrm{fin}}$ with values in $\mathbf{H}$.

**Remark 6.1.10.** The $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}[X_*]$ from def. 6.1.9 regarded as an $\infty$-topos over $\mathbf{H}$, is the classifying $\infty$-topos for pointed objects, prop. 2.2.6, hence may be thought of as obtained from $\mathbf{H}$ by adjoining a generic pointed object, see example 2.2.20.

**Definition 6.1.11.** Write

$$i : \mathrm{sec} \longrightarrow \infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}_{\mathrm{fin}}$$

for the $\infty$-functor between the $\infty$-categories of def. 6.1.6 and def. 6.1.9 which picks the 0-sphere $S^0$, regarded as a bundle with global section over $*$.

Since this is a full inclusion, it induces, via Kan extension, two full inclusions of $\infty$-toposes:

$$\mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{sec}} \underset{\hookleftarrow}{\overset{\hookrightarrow}{\underset{\leftarrow}{\to}}} \mathbf{H}[X_*]\ .$$

If $\mathbf{H}$ is differentially cohesive, 4.2, then inside each category of sectioned bundles $\mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$ we find the full subcategory $\mathrm{InfExt}(X) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X}$ of infinitesimal extensions of $X$, according to def. 5.3.42.

**Proposition 6.1.12.** *Given a differentially cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, then the assignment (def. 5.3.42)*

$$X \mapsto \mathrm{InfExt}(X)$$

*of the non-unital symmetric monoidal $\infty$-category of infinitesimal extensions, def. 5.3.5, to any object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is a model for non-unital linear homotopy-type theory in the sense of 3.2 inside the model of prop. 6.1.8*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{InfExt}(X) & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{sec}} \\ & \searrow & \swarrow_{\mathrm{cod}} \\ & \mathbf{H} & \end{array}\ .$$

Proof. We need to check that the base change functors in the proof of prop. 6.1.8 restrict to infinitesimal extensions. By lemma 5.3.44 it follows that $f_!$ and $f^*$ preserve infinitesimal extensions and that the restriction of $f^*$ to $\mathrm{InfExt}(X)$ still preserves colimits. Therefore to see that $f_*$ restricts it is sufficient to see that $\mathrm{InfExt}(X)$ is locally presentable. Since it is the essential fiber of $\Im_X : \mathbf{H}^{X/}_{/X} \to \mathbf{H}_{/\Im(X)}$ over the singleton subcategory on $\mathrm{id}_{\Im(X)}$ this statement follows by corollary A.2.6.5 in [L-Topos]. □

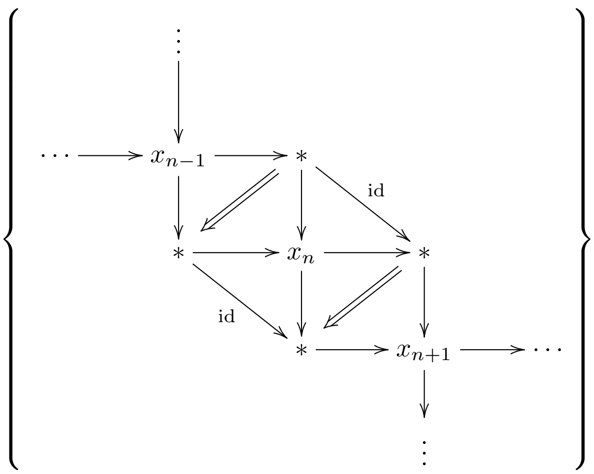
### 6.1.3 Bundles of stable homotopy-types

We discuss here how given a cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, there is its *tangent $\infty$-topos* $T\mathbf{H}$ which is itself cohesive over $T\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ and which is an extension of $\mathbf{H}$ by the stabilization $\mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H})$ of $\mathbf{H}$, hence by the $\infty$-category of spectrum objects in $\mathbf{H}$ [L-Alg]. We observe that this is the class of $\infty$-toposes whose intrinsic cohomology is *twisted stable cohomology* and that the *stable* homotopy-types inside $T\mathbf{H}$ *all* canoninically sit in the system of homotopy fiber sequences characteristic of (stable) differential cohomology (an observation due to [BNV13]).

The following goes back to theorem 1.8 in [Go03], see section 7.1.1 and section 8.3 in [L-Alg]. We present it in the fashion of section 35 of [Jo08b].

**Definition 6.1.13.** Let seq be the diagram $\infty$-category of the form

seq :=




,

where $n$ ranges over $\mathbb{Z}$. For $\mathcal{C}$ an $\infty$-category, write

$$\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{seq}} := \mathrm{Func}(\mathrm{seq}, \mathcal{C})$$

for the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-functors from seq.

**Remark 6.1.14.** For $\mathcal{C}$ an $\infty$-category with finite $\infty$-limits, an $\infty$-functor $E_\bullet : \mathrm{seq} \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}$ is equivalently

1. a choice of object $B \in \mathcal{C}$ (the image of the zero-object of seq);
2. a collection $\{E_n \in \mathcal{C}_{/B}\}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ of objects in the slice of $\mathcal{C}$ over $B$, def. 5.1.25 (the images of the $x_n \in \mathrm{seq}$);
3. for each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ a choice of homotopy from the zero-map $0_n : E_n \longrightarrow E_{n+1}$ to itself, which by the universal property of the $\infty$-fiber product is equivalently a map

   $$E_n \longrightarrow \Omega_B E_{n+1}$$

   into the loop space object, def. 5.1.148, of $E_{n+1} \in \mathcal{C}_{/C}$.

One might call such a collection of data a *spectrum object* over $B$, but better to call it a *pre-spectrum object* over $B$.

**Definition 6.1.15.** For $\mathcal{C}$ an $\infty$-category with finite $\infty$-limits, an object $E_\bullet \in \mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{seq}}$, def. 6.1.13, over $B \in \mathcal{C}$ for which the morphisms of remark 6.1.14 are equivalences

$$E_n \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Omega_B E_{n+1} \quad , \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

we call an *$\Omega$-spectrum object* over $B$ or just *spectrum object* over $B$. We write

$$T\mathcal{C} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{seq}}$$

for the full sub-$\infty$-category of $\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{seq}}$, def. 6.1.13, on the $\Omega$-spectrum objects and call this the *Goodwillie-tangent $\infty$-category* of $\mathcal{C}$, or just *tangent $\infty$-category*, for short.

The following observation is originally due to Georg Biedermann, see section 35 of [Jo08b].

**Proposition 6.1.16.** *For* $\mathbf{H}$ *an* $\infty$*-topos, the inclusion* $T\mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{seq}}$ *is left exact reflective, hence it has a left adjoint* $\infty$*-functor ("spectrification") which preserves finite* $\infty$*-limits*

$$T\mathbf{H} \underset{\hookrightarrow}{\overset{\xleftarrow{\text{lex}}}{}} \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{seq}} \,.$$

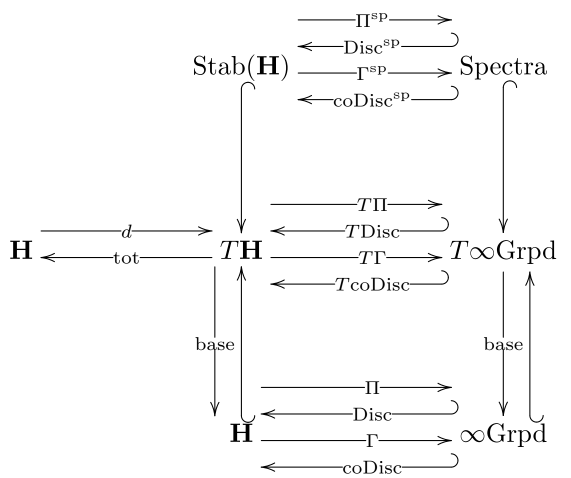
Proof. By a small object argument in the presentable $\infty$-category $\mathbf{H}$, one finds that the left adjoint exists and is given by a sufficiently long transfinite composite of looping maps $\mathrm{id} \longrightarrow \Omega$. This transfinite composition is an example of a filtered $\infty$-colimit and in an $\infty$-topos these preserve finite $\infty$-limits, for instance by example 7.1.1.8 in [L-Alg]. □

It therefore follows that

**Proposition 6.1.17.** *For* $\mathbf{H}$ *an* $\infty$*-topos also its tangent* $\infty$*-category* $T\mathbf{H}$*, def. 6.1.17, is an* $\infty$*-topos, to be called its* tangent $\infty$-topos.

Proof. By prop. 6.1.16 $T\mathbf{H}$ is a left exact reflective sub-$\infty$-category of an $\infty$-topos, and so by the very definition 3.1.1 is itself an $\infty$-topos. □

**Proposition 6.1.18.** *If* $\mathbf{H}$ *is an* $\infty$*-topos which is cohesive, def. 4.1.8, then its tangent* $\infty$*-topos* $T\mathbf{H}$*, prop. 6.1.17, is cohesive over* $T\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *and infinitesimally cohesive def. 4.1.21, over* $\mathbf{H}$*. Moreover, the cohesive structure maps fit into a diagram of the form*




*where*

- $\mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H})$ *is the stabilization of* $\mathbf{H}$*, the stable* $\infty$*-category of spectrum object in* $\mathbf{H}$ *[L-Alg];*
- $\mathrm{Spectra} = \mathrm{Stab}(\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ *is the stable* $\infty$*-category of spectra;*
- base *is the* $\infty$*-functor that sends a bundle of spectra to its base homotopy-type, exhibiting the infinitesimal cohesion of* $T\mathbf{H}$ *over* $\mathbf{H}$*;*
- *its left and also right adjoint is the* $\infty$*-functor that assigns the 0-bundle of spectra to a given base homotopy-type;*
- tot *is the* $\infty$*-functor which sends a bundle* $E_\bullet$ *of spectra in a slice of* $\mathbf{H}$ *to* $\Omega^\infty E_\bullet = E_0$*:*

- *$d$ is its left adjoint*

Proof. To see that $T\mathbf{H}$ is cohesive over $\mathbf{H}$ observe that the prolongation of the right adjoints (Disc $\dashv$ $\Gamma \dashv$ coDisc) to presheaves over seq, as in the proof of prop. 6.1.17, immediately descent to $T\mathbf{H}$, since they preserve $\infty$-limits and hence the loop space objects involved in the definition of spectrum objects. The prolongation of $\Pi$ may fail to preserve these but by the lex reflection of spetrum objects inside pre-spectrum objects it follows that the composition of the prolongation of $\Pi$ with spectrification is left adjoint to the prolongation of Disc and does preserve finite $\infty$-limits and hence finite $\infty$-products. This establishes the cohesion ($T\Pi \dashv T\mathrm{Disc} \dashv T\Gamma \dashv T\mathrm{coDisc}$).

That $T\mathbf{H}$ is infinitesimal cohesive over $\mathbf{H}$ follows from the fact that spectrum objects contain a zero-object.

Finally the left adjoint $d$ to tot is due to section 7.3 of [L-Alg]. □

**Remark 6.1.19.** In [L-Alg, section 7.3] the left adjoint $d : \mathcal{C} \to \mathbf{T}\mathcal{C}$ of the total space $\infty$-functor is identified as the *co-tangent complex $\infty$-functor* if the objects of the $\infty$-category $\mathcal{C}$ are interpreted as *algebras* of some kind. But in our case the objects of $\mathbf{H}$ are instead to be interpreted as *spaces* of some kind, while it would be the objects of the opposite category $\mathcal{C} = \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{op}}$ that behave like generalized algebras. Therefore in the above $d$ should instead be thought of as a *tangent complex* $\infty$-functor.

To capture the fact that tangent cohesion involves stable homotopy theory, it is useful to introduce the following terminology (following Joyal)

**Definition 6.1.20.** Given an $\infty$-topos $\mathcal{E}$, then an object $X \in \mathcal{E}$ is called a *stable homotopy-type* or just *stable* if the canonical morphism

$$X \longrightarrow \Omega\Sigma X$$

into the loop space objects, def. 5.1.148, of its suspension object $\Sigma X := * \coprod_X *$ is an equivalence.

**Example 6.1.21.** In $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}[\{\text{weak hom. equiv.}^{-1}\}]$ the only stable homotopy-type is the point.

**Example 6.1.22.** In a tangent $\infty$-topos $T\mathbf{H}$ all the objects in the inclusion $\mathrm{Stab} \hookrightarrow T\mathbf{H}$ are stable homotopy-types.

We now discuss the various general abstract structures induced by cohesion, 5.2, realized in Goodwillie-tangent cohesion.

- 6.1.3.1 – Cohomology
- 6.1.3.2 – Differential cohomology

**6.1.3.1 Cohomology** We discuss the notion of intrinsic cohomology, 5.1.10, realized in parameterized stable cohesive homotopy-types.

The following proposition says that the intrinsic cohomology of tangent $\infty$-toposes, as discussed generally in 5.1.10, is *twisted stable cohomology*, the stable version of the twisted cohomology discussed in 5.1.13.

**Proposition 6.1.23.** *For $T\mathbf{H}$ a tangent $\infty$-topos, prop. 6.1.17, and for*

- *$X \in \mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow T\mathbf{H}$ a homotopy-type*
- *$E \in \mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H}) \hookrightarrow T\mathbf{H}$ a stable homotopy type*

*then the internal hom*

$$[X, E]_{T\mathbf{H}} \in T\mathbf{H}$$

*is equivalent to the mapping spectrum*

$$[X, E]_{T\mathbf{H}} \simeq [\Sigma^\infty X, E]_{\mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H})} \in \mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H}) \hookrightarrow T\mathbf{H} \,.$$

Proof. With $T\mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{seq}}$ as in the proof of prop. 6.1.17, $X \in \mathbf{T}H$ is the constant seq-diagram on $X \in \mathbf{H}$, while $E$ is a diagram with base point the terminal object. From this the statement follows from the general formula for internal homs of diagram $\infty$-categories and the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma. □

More generally, one is interested in *local coefficients* of spectra, def. 5.1.260, as follows.

**Example 6.1.24.** Let $E \in \mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H})$ be equipped with the structure of an $E_\infty$-ring [L-Alg], and write $\mathrm{GL}_1(E) \in \mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H})$ for the abelian $\infty$-group (connective spectrum) of units of $E$ [ABGHR08]. Then there is the universal associated bundle of stable homotopy-types, as discussed in 5.1.12,

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} E//\mathrm{GL}_1(E) \\ \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_1(E) \end{array}\right] \in \mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_1(E)}) \hookrightarrow T\mathbf{H} \,.$$

This is the *universal $E$-line $\infty$-bundle* [ABG10a].

**Proposition 6.1.25.** *For $X \in \mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow T\mathbf{H}$ a cohesive homotopy-type and for $E//\mathrm{GL}_1(E) \in T\mathbf{H}$ a universal $E$-line $\infty$-bundle as in prop. 6.1.24, then the internal mapping space*

$$[X, E//\mathrm{GL}_1(E)]_{T\mathbf{H}} \in T\mathbf{H}$$

*is the bundle of spectra in $\mathbf{H}$ whose base homotopy-type is the space $[X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_1(E)]_{\mathbf{H}}$ of twists of $E$-cohomology on $X$ (as discussed in 5.1.13) and whose total space is the collection of all twisted $E$-cohomology spectra $E^\bullet(X)$ of $X$ where the fiber over a twist $\chi \in [X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_1(E)]$ is $E^\chi(X)$:*

$$[X, E//\mathrm{GL}_1(E)]_{T\mathbf{H}} \simeq \left[\begin{array}{c} E^\bullet(X) \\ \downarrow \\ [X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_1(E)] \end{array}\right]$$

Proof. This follows with a variation of the argument in the proof of prop. 6.1.23. An elegant formal homotopy-type-theoretic proof has been written out by Mike Shulman in [nLab:tangent cohesion]. □

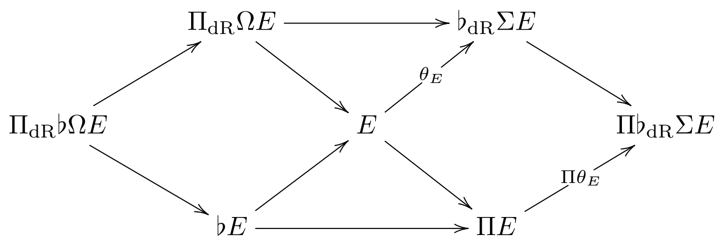
**6.1.3.2 DifferentialCohomology** We discuss the realization of the general abstract notion of differential cohomology, def. 5.2.13, realized in tangent cohesive $\infty$-toposes.

The following is the central formal observation of [BNV13], there considered in $\mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H})$ for $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ as in 6.4 below.

**Proposition 6.1.26.** *For $\mathbf{H}$ a cohesive $\infty$-topos, stable homotopy-type (def. 6.1.22)*

$$E \in \mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H}) \hookrightarrow T\mathbf{H}$$

*in $T\mathbf{H}$ sits in a diagram of the form*





*where*

- $\Pi$ *and* $\flat$ *are the cohesion modalities of* $T\mathbf{H}$ *and* $\Pi_{\mathrm{dR}}$ *and* $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}$ *are the de Rham modalities of* $T\mathbf{H}$ *as defined in 5.2.10;*
- *the diagonals are the homotopy fiber sequences of the Maurer-Cartan form on* $E$*, 5.2.12, (using that* $E$ *is a stable homotopy-type by example 6.1.22);*
- *the two squares are* $\infty$*-pullback squares;*
- *the bottom morphism is the points-to-pieces transform, def. 4.1.14.*

Proof. This is a special case of prop. 2.2.17. The diagram exists as a homotopy-commutative diagram by the naturality of the $\Pi$-unit and the $\flat$-counit. To see that the right square, the $\Pi$-naturality square of the Maurer-Cartan form of $E$, is an $\infty$-pullback, observe that it extends to a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \flat E & \longrightarrow & E & \xrightarrow{\theta_E} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\Sigma E \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Pi(\flat E) & \longrightarrow & \Pi E & \xrightarrow{\Pi\theta_E} & \Pi(\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\Sigma E) \end{array} ,$$

where, by stability of $\mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H})$ and using that $\Pi$ preserves $\infty$-colimits, both rows are homotopy fiber sequences def. 5.1.178. But by cohesion the morphism $\flat E \longrightarrow \Pi\flat E$ is an equivalence, and hence by the homotopy-fiber characterization of homotopy pullbacks exhibits the naturality square on the right as a homotopy pullback. The argument for the other square is dual this reasoning. □

**Remark 6.1.27.** By the discussion of higher Galois theory in 5.2.7, we find that the right diagram in prop. 6.1.26 says equivalently that the Maurer-Cartan form, 5.2.12, exhibits every stable cohesive homotopy-type as a locally constant $\infty$-stack over its de Rham coefficient homotopy-type.

**Remark 6.1.28.** Diagrams as in prop. 6.1.26 have been known to be characteristic of differential cohomology theories, see for instance prop. 4.57 in [Bun12], where this is referred to as "the differential cohomology diagram". Prop. 6.1.26 shows that this diagram is naturally and generally induced for every stable cohesive homotopy-type, just by the axioms of cohesion and stability.

The existence of this diagram for every stable homotopy-type makes the concepts of "cohesive" (e.g. "smooth", 6.4) and "differential" merge into a single concept for stable homotopy-types: it says that every cohesive stable homotopy-type $E$ is the differential coefficients of some differential cohomology theory whose underlying Eilenberg-Steenrod type cohomology theory is represented by the spectrum $\Pi(E)$ and whose de Rham coefficients are $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\Sigma E$.

See 1.1.3.2 for more exposition.

## 6.2 Geometrically discrete homotopy types

For completeness, and because it serves to put some concepts into a useful perspective, we record aspects of the case of *discrete* cohesion, hence of plain $\infty$-groupoids explicitly regarded as *geometrically discrete* $\infty$-groupoids.

After briefly observing the trivial construction

- 6.2.1 – Construction

we discuss some of the general abstract structures in cohesive $\infty$-toposes, 5.2, in the context of discrete cohesion.

- 6.2.2 – Geometric homotopy
- 6.2.3 – Groups
- 6.2.4 – Cohomology
- 6.2.5 – Principal bundles
- 6.2.6 – Twisted cohomology
- 6.2.7 – Representations and associated bundles
- 6.2.8 – Stabilizer groups
- 6.2.9 – Dependent linear homotopy types
- 6.2.10 – Secondary integral transforms

### 6.2.1 Construction

**Observation 6.2.1.** The terminal $\infty$-sheaf $\infty$-topos $\infty$Grpd is trivially a cohesive $\infty$-topos, where each of the defining four $\infty$-functors $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc}) : \infty Grpd \to \infty Grpd$ is an equivalence of $\infty$-categories.

**Definition 6.2.2.** In the context of cohesive $\infty$-toposes we say that $\infty$Grpd defines *discrete cohesion* and refer to its objects as *discrete $\infty$-groupoids*.

More generally, given any other cohesive $\infty$-topos

$$(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc}) : \mathbf{H} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

the inverse image Disc of the global section functor is a full and faithful $\infty$-functor and hence embeds $\infty$Grpd as a full sub-$\infty$-category of $\mathbf{H}$. We say $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is a *discrete $\infty$-groupoid* if it is in the image of Disc.

This generalizes the traditional use of the terms *discrete space* and *discrete group*:

- a *discrete space* is equivalently a 0-truncated discrete $\infty$-groupoid;
- a *discrete group* is equivalently a 0-truncated group object in discrete $\infty$-groupoids.

### 6.2.2 Geometric homotopy

We discuss geometric homotopy and path $\infty$-groupoids, 5.2.3, in the context of discrete cohesion, 6.2. Using $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ as a presentation for $\infty$Grpd this is entirely trivial, but for the equivalent presentation by $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ it becomes effectively a discussion of the classical Quillen equivalence $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \simeq \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ from the point of view of cohesive $\infty$-toposes. It may be useful to make this explicit.

By the homotopy hypothesis-theorem the $\infty$-toposes Top and $\infty$Grpd are equivalent, hence indistinguishable by general abstract constructions in $\infty$-topos theory. However, in practice it can be useful to distinguish them as two different presentations for an equivalence class of $\infty$-toposes. For that purpose consider the following

**Definition 6.2.3.** Define the quasi-categories

$$\mathrm{Top} := N(\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}})^\circ$$

and

$$\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := N(\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}})^\circ\,.$$

Here on the right we have the standard model structure on topological spaces, $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$, and the standard model structure on simplicial sets, $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$, and $N((-)^\circ)$ denotes the homotopy coherent nerve of the simplicial category given by the full sSet-subcategory of these simplicial model categories on fibrant-cofibrant objects.

For

$$(|-| \dashv \mathrm{Sing}) : \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \underset{\mathrm{Sing}}{\overset{|-|}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

the standard Quillen equivalence given by the singular simplicial complex-functor and geometric realization, write

$$(\mathbb{L}|-| \dashv \mathbb{R}\mathrm{Sing}) : \mathrm{Top} \underset{\mathbb{R}\mathrm{Sing}}{\overset{\mathbb{L}|-|}{\rightleftarrows}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

for the corresponding derived $\infty$-functors (the image under the homotopy coherent nerve of the restriction of $|-|$ and Sing to fibrant-cofibrant objects followed by functorial fibrant-cofibrant replacement) that constitute a pair of adjoint $\infty$-functors modeled as morphisms of quasi-categories.

Since this is an equivalence of $\infty$-categories either functor serves as the left adjoint and right $\infty$-adjoint and so we have

**Observation 6.2.4.** Top is exhibited as a cohesive $\infty$-topos by

$$(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc}) : \mathrm{Top} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Sing}} \\ \xleftarrow{\mathbb{R}|-|} \\ \xrightarrow{\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Sing}} \\ \xleftarrow[\mathbb{R}|-|]{} \end{array} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

In particular a presentation of the intrinsic fundamental $\infty$-groupoid is given by the familiar singular simplicial complex construction

$$\Pi(X) \simeq \mathbb{R}\mathrm{Sing}X\,.$$

Notice that the topology that enters the explicit construction of the objects in Top here does *not* show up as cohesive structure. A topological space here is a model for a *discrete* $\infty$-groupoid, the topology only serves to allow the construction of $\mathrm{Sing}X$. For discussion of $\infty$-groupoids equipped with genuine *topological cohesion* see 6.3.

### 6.2.3 Groups

Discrete $\infty$-groups may be presented by simplicial groups. See 5.1.9.2.

### 6.2.4 Cohomology

We discuss the general notion of cohomology in cohesive $\infty$-toposes, 5.1.10, in the context of discrete cohesion.

Cohomology in Top is the ordinary notion of (nonabelian) cohomology. The equivalence to $\infty$Grpd makes manifest in which way this is equivalently the *cohomology of groups* for connected, homotopy 1-types, the *cohomology of groupoids* for general 1-types and generally, of course, the cohomology of $\infty$-groups.

#### 6.2.4.1 Group cohomology

**Proposition 6.2.5.** *For $G$ a (discrete) group, $A$ a (discrete) abelian group, the group cohomology of $G$ with coefficients in the trivial $G$-module $A$ is*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{grp}}(G, A) \simeq \pi_0 \mathrm{Disc}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}^n A) .$$

The case of group cohomology with coefficients in a non-trivial module is a special case of *twisted cohomology* in Disc∞Grpd. This is discussed below in 6.2.6.

### 6.2.5 Principal bundles

We discuss the general notion of principal ∞-bundles in cohesive ∞-toposes, 5.1.11, in the context of discrete cohesion.

There is a traditional theory of *strictly* principal Kan simplicial bundles, i.e. simplicial bundles with $G$ action for which the shear map is an *isomorphism* instead of more generally a weak equivalence. A classical reference for this is [May67]. A standard modern reference is section V of [GoJa99]. We now compare this classical theory of strictly principal simplicial bundles to the theory of weakly principal simplicial bundles from 5.1.11.4.

**Definition 6.2.6.** Let $G$ be a simplicial group and $X$ a Kan simplicial set. A *strictly $G$-principal bundle* over $X$ is a morphism of simplicial sets $P \to X$ equipped with a $G$-action on $P$ over $X$ such that

1. the $G$ action is degreewise free;
2. the canonical morphism $P/G \to X$ out of the ordinary (1-categorical) quotient is an isomorphism of simplicial sets.

A morphism of stricly $G$-principal bundles over $X$ is a map $P \to P'$ respecting both the $G$-action as well as the projection to $X$.

Write s$G$Bund$(X)$ for the category of strictly $G$-principal bundles.

In [GoJa99] this is definition V3.1, V3.2.

**Lemma 6.2.7.** *Every morphism in* s$G$Bund$(X)$ *is an isomorphism.*

In [GoJa99] this is remark V3.3.

**Observation 6.2.8.** Every strictly $G$-principal bundle is evidently also a weakly $G$-principal bundle, def. 5.1.222. In fact the strictly principal $G$-bundles are precisely those weakly $G$-principal bundles for which the shear map is an isomorphism. This identification induces a full inclusion of categories

$$\mathrm{s}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) .$$

**Lemma 6.2.9.** *Every morphism of weakly principal Kan simplicial bundles is a weak equivalence on the underlying Kan complexes.*

**Proposition 6.2.10.** *For $G$ a simplicial group, the category* $\mathrm{sSet}_G$ *of $G$-actions on simplicial sets and $G$-equivariant morphisms carries the structure of a simplicial model category where the fibrations and weak equivalences are those of the underlying simplicial sets.*

This is theorem V2.3 in [GoJa99].

**Corollary 6.2.11.** *For $G$ a simplicial group and $X$ a Kan complex, the slice category* $\mathrm{sSet}_G/X$ *carries a simplicial model structure where the fibrations and weak equivalences are those of the underlying simplicial sets after forgetting the map to $X$.*

**Lemma 6.2.12.** *Let $G$ be a simplicial group and $P \to X$ a weakly $G$-principal simplicial bundle. Then the loop space $\Omega_{(P \to X)} \mathrm{Ex}^\infty N(\mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X))$ has the same homotopy-type as the derived hom space $\mathbb{R}\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{sSet}_G/X}(P, P)$.*

Proof. By theorem V2.3 of [GoJa99] and lemma 6.2.9 the free resolution $P^f$ of $P$ from corollary 5.1.240 is a cofibrant-fibrant resolution of $P$ in the slice model structure of corollary 6.2.11. Therefore the derived hom space is presented by the simplicial set of morphisms $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{sSet}_G/X}(P^f \cdot \Delta^\bullet, P^f)$ and all these morphisms are equivalences. Therefore by prop. 2.3 in [DwKa84a] this simplicial set is equivalent to the loop space of the nerve of the subcategory of $\mathrm{sSet}_G/X$ on the weak equivalences connected to $P^f$. By lemma 6.2.9 this subcategory is equivalent (isomorphic even) to the connected component of $\mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ on $P$. □

**Proposition 6.2.13.** *Under the simplicial nerve, the inclusion of observation 6.2.8 yields a morphism*

$$N\mathrm{s}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \to N\mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X) \quad \in \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

*which is*

- *for all $G$ and $X$ an isomorphism on connected components;*
- *not in general a weak equivalence.*

Proof. Let $P \to X$ be a weakly $G$-principal bundle. To see that it is connected in $\mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ to some strictly $G$-principal bundle, first observe that by corollary 5.1.240 it is connected via a morphism $P^f \to P$ to the bundle

$$P^f := \mathrm{Rec}(X \leftarrow P/_h G \xrightarrow{f} \overline{W}G)\,,$$

which has free $G$-action, but does not necessarily satisfy strict principality. Since, by theorem 5.1.234, the morphism $P/_h G \to X$ is an acyclic fibration of simplicial sets it has a section $\sigma : X \to P/_h G$ (every simplicial set is cofibrant in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$). The bundle

$$P^s := \mathrm{Rec}(X \overset{\mathrm{id}}{\leftarrow} X \overset{f\circ\sigma}{\to} \overline{W}G)$$

is strictly $G$-principal, and with the morphism

$$(P^s \to P^f) := \mathrm{Rec}\left(\begin{array}{ccccc} & & P/_h G & & \\ & \overset{\sim}{\swarrow} & \uparrow^{\sigma} & \overset{f}{\searrow} & \\ X & & & & \overline{W}G \\ & \underset{\mathrm{id}}{\nwarrow} & & \underset{f\circ\sigma}{\nearrow} & \\ & & X & & \end{array}\right)$$

we obtain (non-naturally, due to the choice of section) in total a morphism $P^s \to P^f \to P$ of weakly $G$-principal bundles from a strictly $G$-principal replacement $P^s$ to $P$.

To see that the full embedding of strictly $G$-principal bundles is also injective on connected components, notice that by lemma 6.2.12 if a weakly $G$-principal bundle $P$ with degreewise free $G$-action is connected by a zig-zag of morphisms to some other weakly $G$-principal bundle $P$, then there is already a direct morphism $P \to P'$. Since all strictly $G$-principal bundles have free action by definition, this shows that two of them that are connected in $\mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ are already connected in $\mathrm{s}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$.

To see that in general $N\mathrm{s}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ nevertheless does not have the correct homotopy-type, it is sufficient to notice that the category $\mathrm{s}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ is always a groupoid, by lemma 6.2.7. Therefore $N\mathrm{s}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ it is always a homotopy 1-type. But by theorem 5.1.238 the object $N\mathrm{w}G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$ is not an $n$-type if $G$ is not an $(n-1)$-type. □

**Corollary 6.2.14.** *For all Kan complexes $X$ and simplicial groups $G$ there is an isomorphism*

$$\pi_0 N s G\mathrm{Bund} \simeq H^1(X, G) := \pi_0 \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$$

*between the isomorphism classes of strictly $G$-principal bundles over $X$ and the first nonabelian cohomology of $X$ with coefficients in $G$.*

*But this isomorphism on cohomology does not in general lift to an equivalence on cocycle spaces.*

Proof. By prop. 6.2.13 and remark 5.1.239. □

**Remark 6.2.15.** The first statement of corollary 6.2.14 is the classical classification result for strictly principal simplicial bundles, for instance theorem V3.9 in [GoJa99].

### 6.2.6 Twisted cohomology

We discuss the notion of twisted cohomology, 5.1.13, in the context of discrete cohesion.

Specifically, we discuss here $\infty$-group cohomology for discrete $\infty$-groups with coefficients in a module according to 5.1.14.

For $G$ a (discrete) group and $A$ a (discrete) group equipped with a $G$-action, write $\mathbf{B}^n A//G$ for the $n$-groupoid which is given by the crossed complex, def. 1.2.96 of groups

$$\mathbf{B}^n A//G := [A \to 1 \to \cdots \to 1 \to G]$$

coming from the given $G$-action on $A$. There is a canonical morphism

$$\mathbf{B}^n A//G \to \mathbf{B}G\,.$$

**Proposition 6.2.16.** *We have a fiber sequence*

$$\mathbf{B}^n A \to \mathbf{B}^n A//G \to \mathbf{B}G$$

*in* Disc$\infty$Grpd.

In view of remark 5.1.246 this fiber sequence exhibits a $\mathbf{B}^n A$-fiber bundle which is associated to the universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle, 6.2.5.

In generalization of prop. 6.2.5 we have

**Proposition 6.2.17.** *The group cohomology of $G$ with coefficients in the module $A$ is naturally identified with the* id*-twisted cohomology of $\mathbf{B}G$, relative to $\mathbf{B}^n A//G$,*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{grp}}(G, A) \simeq \pi_0 \mathrm{Disc}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{[\mathrm{id}]}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}^n A//G)\,.$$

**Remark 6.2.18.** Equivalently this says that group cohomology with coefficients in nontrivial modules $A$ describes the sections of the bundle $\mathbf{B}^n A//G$.

### 6.2.7 Representations and associated bundles

We discuss canonical representations of automorphism $\infty$-groups in Disc$\infty$Grpd, following 5.1.14.

For all of the following, fix a regular uncountable cardinal $\kappa$.

**Definition 6.2.19.** Write $\mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa$ for the core (the maximal $\infty$-groupoid inside) the full sub-$\infty$-category of $\infty$Grpd on the $\kappa$-small $\infty$-groupoids, [L-Topos] def. 5.4.1.3. We regard this canonically as an object

$$\mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

**Remark 6.2.20.** We have

$$\mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa \simeq \coprod_i \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)\,,$$

where the coproduct ranges over all $\kappa$-small homotopy-types $[F_i]$ and where $\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)$ is the automorphism $\infty$-group of any representative $F_i$ of $[F_i]$.

**Lemma 6.2.21.** *For $X$ a $\kappa$-small $\infty$-groupoid, and $f : Y \to X$ a morphism in* $\infty$Grpd*, the following are equivalent*

1. *for all objects $x \in X$ the homotopy fiber $Y_x := Y \times_X \{x\}$ of $f$ is $\kappa$-small;*
2. *$Y$ is $\kappa$-small.*

Proof. The implication 1. $\Rightarrow$ 2. is stated for $\infty$-categories, and assuming that $f$ is presented by a Cartesian fibration of simplicial sets, as prop. 5.4.1.4 in [L-Topos]. But by prop. 2.4.2.4 there, every Cartesian fibration between Kan complexes is a right fibration; and by prop. 2.1.3.3 there over a Kan complex every right fibration is a Kan fibration. Finally, by the Quillen model structure every morphism of $\infty$-groupoids is presented by a Kan fibration. Therefore the condition that $f$ be presented by a Cartesian morphism is automatic in our case.

For the converse, assume that all homotopy fibers are $\kappa$-small. We may write $X$ as the $\infty$-colimit of the functor constant on the point, over itself ([L-Topos], corollary 4.4.4.9 )

$$X \simeq \varinjlim_{x\in X} \{x\}\,.$$

Since $\infty$Grpd is an $\infty$-topos, its $\infty$-colimits are preserved by $\infty$-pullback. Therefore we have an $\infty$-pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \varinjlim_{x\in X} Y_x & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & Y \\ \downarrow^{f} & & \downarrow^{f} \\ \varinjlim_{x\in X} \{x\} & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X \end{array}$$

that exhibits $Y$ as the $\infty$-colimit over $X$ of the homotopy fibers of $f$. By corollary 5.4.1.5 in [L-Topos], the $\kappa$-small $\infty$-groupoids are precisely the $\kappa$-compact objects of $\infty$Grpd. By corollary 5.3.4.15 there, $\kappa$-compact objects are closed under $\kappa$-small $\infty$-colimits. Therefore the above $\infty$-colimit exhibits $Y$ as a $\kappa$-small $\infty$-groupoid. $\square$

**Definition 6.2.22.** Write $\widehat{\mathrm{Core}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}_\kappa \to \mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa$ for the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \widehat{\mathrm{Core}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}_\kappa & \longrightarrow & Z|_{\infty\mathrm{Grpd}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \longrightarrow & \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \end{array}$$

of the universal right fibration $Z|_{\infty\mathrm{Grpd}} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, as in [L-Topos] above prop. 3.3.2.5., along the canonical map that embeds $\kappa$-small $\infty$-groupoids into all $\infty$-groupoids.

**Proposition 6.2.23.** *The morphism* $\mathrm{Core}\widehat{\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}_\kappa \to \mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa$ *is the $\kappa$-compact object-classifier, section 6.1.6 of [L-Topos], in* $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$*.*

Proof. By prop. 3.3.2.5 in [L-Topos] the universal right fibration classifies right fibrations; and for $[X] : * \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ the name of an $\infty$-groupoid $X$, the homotopy fiber

$$Z \times_{\infty\mathrm{Grpd}} \{[X]\} \simeq X$$

is equivalent to $X$. As in the proof of lemma 6.2.21, every morphism between $\infty$-groupoids is represented by a Cartesian fibration. Since moreover every morphism out of an $\infty$-groupoid into $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ factors essentially unqiquely through $\mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ it follows that $\mathrm{Core}\widehat{\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}_\kappa \to \mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa$ classifies morphisms of $\infty$-groupoids with $\kappa$-small homotopy fibers. By lemma 6.2.21 and using again that $\kappa$-compact objects in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ are $\kappa$-small $\infty$-groupoids, these are precisely the relatively $\kappa$-compact morphisms from def. 6.1.6.4 of [L-Topos]. □

**Remark 6.2.24.** By remark 6.2.20 we have that $\mathrm{Core}\widehat{\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}_\kappa \to \mathrm{Core}\,\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_\kappa$ decomposes as a coproduct of morphisms $\coprod_{[F_i]} \rho_i$ indexed by the $\kappa$-small homotopy types. According to prop. 6.2.23 the (essentially unique) homotopy fiber of $\rho_i$ is equivalent to the $\kappa$-small $\infty$-groupoid $F_i$ itself. Therefore by def. 5.1.189 we may write

$$\rho_i : F_i//\mathrm{Aut}(F_i) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)$$

and identify this with the canonical representation of $\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)$ on $F_i$, exhibited, by example 5.1.246, as the universal $F_i$-fiber bundle which is $\rho_i$-associated to the universal $\mathrm{Aut}(F_i)$-principal bundle.

In terms of this perspective we have the following classical result.

**Corollary 6.2.25.** *For $X$ a connected $\infty$-groupoid, every morphism $P \to X$ in* $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *with $\kappa$-small small homotopy fibers $F$ (over one and hence, up to equivalence, over each object $x \in X$) arises as the $F$-fiber bundle $\rho$-associated to an* $\mathrm{Aut}(F)$*-principal $\infty$-bundle, 5.1.11, given by an $\infty$-pullback of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & F//\mathrm{Aut}(F) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Aut}(F) \end{array} .$$

More discussion of discrete principal and discrete associated $\infty$-bundles is in 5.2.7 and 6.2.5.

**Example 6.2.26.** Let $G$ be a discrete group (a 1-group), let $V$ be a set, and let $\rho : G \times V \to X$ be an action of $G$ on $X$.

The action groupoid, def. 1.2.77, of this action looks like

$$V//G \simeq \left\{ v \xrightarrow{g} \rho(g)(v) \mid v \in V, g \in G \right\} .$$

The evident functor from the action groupoid down to the action groupoid of the trivial action of $G$ on the point

$$*//G \simeq \left\{ * \xrightarrow{g} * \mid g \in G \right\} .$$

is evidently a fibration, and so one immediately finds that $V$ is indeed its homotopy fiber.

Notice that, conversely, given any groupoid $\mathcal{G}$ equipped with a functor to the action groupoid of $G$ acting on the point, then its homotopy fiber need not be a set, it will in general itself be a groupoid, but then it is that groupoid which is equipped with a $G$-action.

### 6.2.8 Stabilizer groups

We discuss the general concept of stabilizer groups, 5.1.17, realized in geometrically discrete $\infty$-groupoids.

**Example 6.2.27.** Consider a discrete group $G$ acting on a set $V$. By example 6.2.26 the corresponding homotopy quotient $V//G$ looks like

$$V//G \simeq \left\{ v \xrightarrow{g} \rho(g)(v) \mid v \in V, g \in G \right\} .$$

From this it is manifest that given any point $v \in V$, then the loop space object $\Omega_v(V//G)$ (as in the abstract definition of stabilizer groups in def. 5.1.289 consists of those $g \in G$ such that $\rho(g)(v) = v$. This is of course the tradtitional definition of stabilizers.

### 6.2.9 Dependent linear homotopy types

**Example 6.2.28.** Let $\mathcal{V}$ be a closed symmetric monoidal $\infty$-category with all small $\infty$-limits and $\infty$-colimits, such as $\mathcal{V} = E\mathrm{Mod}$ for $E \in \mathrm{CRing}_\infty$. For $X$ an $\infty$-groupoid, write

$$\mathcal{V}(X) := \mathrm{Func}(X, \mathcal{V})$$

for the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-functors $X \to \mathcal{V}$ (also called $\mathcal{V}$*-local systems* on the homotopy type $X$). For $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ a morphism of $\infty$-groupoids, the pullback (precomposition) $\infty$-functor $f^* : \mathcal{V}(Y) \to \mathcal{V}(X)$ has a left and right $\infty$-adjoint $f_!$ and $f_*$, given by left and right $\infty$-Kan extension ([L-Topos] 4.3), hence constitutes an adjoint triple

$$(\sum_f \dashv f^* \dashv \prod_f) \; : \; \mathcal{V}(X) \underset{f_*}{\overset{f_!}{\underset{\longleftarrow f^* \longrightarrow}{\longrightarrow}}} \mathcal{V}(Y) \; .$$

These are Wirthmüller contexts, def. 3.2.1 and hence make

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathcal{V}(-) \\ \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Grpd}_\infty \end{array}$$

a model for linear homotopy-type theory, def. 3.2.5.

Proof. That $f_!$ and $f_*$ are given by $\infty$-Kan extension is prop. 4.3.3.7 in [L-Topos]. We need to show that $f^*$ is strong closed, hence by prop. 3.2.3 that $(f_! \dashv f^*)$ satisfies Frobenius reciprocity. To that end notice that by the very definitions 4.3.2.2 and 4.3.3.2 in [L-Topos] to which prop. 4.3.3.7 there appeals, $\infty$-Kan is given *pointwise* at $y \in Y$ given by $\infty$-colimit over the homotopy fiber $f^{-1}(y) \hookrightarrow X$:

$$(f_! A)(y) \simeq \underset{\longrightarrow x \in f^{-1}(y)}{\lim} A(x) \, .$$

(For $X$ and $Y$ just 1-groupoids and $\mathcal{V}$ locally presentable this follows, with [L-Topos] A.3.3, also from the more traditional fact that homotopy Kan extension is pointwise/strong [Ci10].) Hence for $f : X \to Y$, and for $A, B \in \mathcal{V}(Y)$ we have naturally in $x \in X$ the equivalences

$$\begin{aligned} f_!((f^* B) \otimes A) &= \underset{\longrightarrow x \in f^{-1}(y)}{\lim} (f^* B(x) \otimes A(x)) \\ &\simeq \underset{\longrightarrow x \in f^{-1}(y)}{\lim} (B(y) \otimes A(x)) \\ &\simeq B(y) \otimes \underset{\longrightarrow x \in f^{-1}(y)}{\lim} A(x) \\ &= (B \otimes f_! A)(x) \end{aligned} .$$

□

For reference notice that example 6.2.28 reduces to the following special cases.

**Example 6.2.29.** For $E = \mathbb{S}$ the sphere spectrum, then $E\mathrm{Mod}(-) = \mathbb{S}\mathrm{Mod}(-) \simeq \mathrm{Spectra}(-)$ is the theory of parameterized spectra. This was shown to be a model for linear homotopy-type theory, def. 3.2.5, in [MaSi06] and [ABGHR08] (under the translation in [ABG10a]).

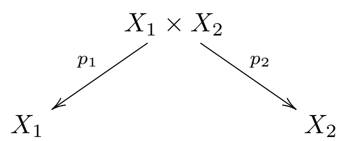
### 6.2.10 Secondary integral transforms

We discuss the realization in Disc$\infty$Grpd, via example 6.2.29, of the general abstract concept of secondary integral transforms 5.5.5.

**Example 6.2.30** (matrix calculus)**.** Let $k$ be a field, let $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Set}$ be the category of sets, and for $X \in \mathrm{Set}$ let $\mathrm{Mod}(X) := k\mathrm{Mod}(X) = \mathrm{Vect}_k(X)$ be the category of $X$-parameterized vector bundles. This is a model for linear homotopy-type theory by example 6.2.30. For $X \in \mathrm{FinSet} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Set}$ a finite set, then an $X$-dependent linear type $A \in \mathrm{Vect}_k(X)$ is an (unordered) $|X|$-tuple of vector spaces, where $|X|$ is the cardinality of $X$. The dependent sum produces the direct sum of these:

$$\sum_X A \simeq \bigoplus_{x \in X} A_x \in \mathrm{Vect}_k \,.$$

Consider then $X_1, X_2 \in \mathrm{FinSet} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Set}$ two finite sets of cardinality $n_1$ and $n_2$, respectively, and consider the projection correspondence

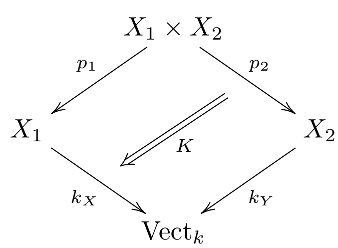



.

Here for $A \in [Y, \mathrm{Vect}_k]$ an $n_2$-tuple of vector spaces, then $(p_2)_!(p_2)^*A$ is the $n_2$-tuple whose value over $y \in X_2$ is $(A_y)^{\oplus^{n_1}} \simeq A_y \otimes k^{n_1}$. The counit $(p_2)_!(p_2)^*A \to A$ is the morphism that over each $y \in Y$ is given by forming the sum of $n_1$ vectors in $A_y$.

There is an untwisted fiberwise fundamental class on $p_2$, given by the canonical choice of identification $k^{n_1} \simeq (k^{n_1})^*$ ("regard row-vectors as column vectors"). With this choice the equivalence of prop. 5.5.16 is over $y \in Y$ the induced isomorphism $A_y \otimes k^{n_1} \simeq A_y \otimes (k^{n_1})^*$. The induced fundamental class of def. 5.5.18 is over each $y \in Y$ the diagonal $A_y \to (A_y)^{\oplus^{n_1}}$. Dually, the induced measure is over each $y \in Y$ the map $d\mu_{A_y} : \mathbb{D}(A_y^{\oplus^{n_1}}) \to \mathbb{D}(A_y)$ which is the addition operation on $n_1$ covectors. This exhibits the canonical "counting measure" on the finite set $X_1$.

An $n_1 \times n_2$-matrix $K \in \mathrm{Mat}_k(n_1, n_2)$ is equivalently a diagram of functors of the form




.

This defines a (dual) prequantum integral kernel, def. 5.5.22 between $A_1 = 1_{X_1}$ and $A_2 = 1_{X_2}$ the line bundle on $X_1$ and $X_2$, respectively, with the morphism

$$\xi \;:\; (i_2)^* 1_{X_2} = 1_{X_1 \times X_2} \longrightarrow 1_{X_1 \times X_2} = (i_1)^* 1_{X_1}$$

given over $(x, y) \in X_1 \times X_2$ by multiplication with the matrix element $K_{x,y}$.

The induced integral kernel

$$\sum_{X_1} 1_{X_1} \xleftarrow{\sum_{X_1}\epsilon} \sum_{X_1\times X_2} 1_{X_1\times X_2} \xleftarrow{\Xi} \sum_{X_1\times X_2} 1_{X_1\times X_2} \xleftarrow{\sum_{X_2}[i_2]} \sum_{X_2} 1_{X_2}$$

sends a vector

$$v = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ \vdots \\ v_{n_2} \end{bmatrix} \in \sum_{X_2} 1_{X_2} \simeq k^{n_2}$$

first via the diagonal along $X_1$ to the image under $\sum\limits_{X_1\times X_2}$ of

$$\begin{bmatrix} v_1 & v_1 & \cdots & v_1 \\ v_2 & v_2 & \cdots & v_2 \\ \vdots & & & \\ v_{n_2} & v_{n_2} & \cdots & v_{n_2} \end{bmatrix} \in 1_{X_1\times X_2}$$

then via the integral kernel itself to the image under $\sum\limits_{X_1\times X_2}$ of

$$\begin{bmatrix} K_{1,1}v_1 & K_{2,1}v_1 & \cdots & K_{n_1,1}v_1 \\ K_{1,2}v_2 & K_{2,2}v_2 & \cdots & K_{n_1,2}v_2 \\ \vdots & & & \\ K_{1,n_2}v_{n_2} & K_{2,n_2}v_{n_2} & \cdots & K_{n_1,n_2}v_{n_2} \end{bmatrix} \in 1_{X_1\times X_2}$$

and then via summation over $X_2$ to the image under $\sum\limits_{X_1}$ of

$$\begin{bmatrix} K_{1,1}v_1 + K_{1,2}v_2 + \cdots + K_{1,n_2}v_{n_2} \\ K_{2,1}v_1 + K_{2,2}v_2 + \cdots + K_{2,n_2}v_{n_2} \\ \vdots K_{n_1,1}v_1 + K_{n_1,2}v_2 + \cdots + K_{n_1,n_2}v_{n_2} \end{bmatrix} \in 1_{Y_1}\,,$$

hence to the matrix product

$$K \cdot v \in \sum_{X_1} 1_{X_1} \simeq k^{n_1}\,.$$

The previous example 6.2.30 considered linear types given by $k$-modules over sets, for $k$ a commutative ring (a field). This setup has an evident refinement to (stable) homotopy theory, where sets are refined to $\infty$-groupoids, commutative rings to $E_\infty$-rings, and modules to module spectra over these. This homotopy-theoretic refinement of linear algebra used to be advertised as "brave new algebra", especially when presented in terms of model categories of structured ring spectra. In the intrinsic formulation of $\infty$-category theory it is called "higher algebra" in [?].

The following example 6.2.31 shows how twisted Umkehr maps in generalized cohomology as in [ABG10a] and section 4.1.4 [Nui13] are an example of the general concept of secondary integral transforms in dependent linear homotopy-type theory of def. 5.5.28.

**Example 6.2.31** (pull-push in twisted generalized cohomology)**.** Let $E \in \mathrm{CRing}_\infty$ be an $E_\infty$-ring spectrum with $\infty$-category of $\infty$-modules denoted $E\mathrm{Mod}$. For $X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ write

$$E\mathrm{Mod}(X) := \mathrm{Func}(X, E\mathrm{Mod})$$

for the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-functors from $X$ to $E\mathrm{Mod}$. An object in here is sometimes known as an $X$-parameterized module spectrum, and sometimes as a *local system* of $E$-modules on $X$.

For $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ a morphism of $\infty$-groupoids, there is an induced adjoint triple

$$(\sum_f \dashv f^* \dashv \prod_f) \; : \; E\mathrm{Mod}(X) \underset{f_*}{\overset{f_!}{\underset{\longleftarrow f^* \longrightarrow}{\longrightarrow}}} E\mathrm{Mod}(Y) \;,$$

where $f_!$ and $f_*$ are left and right homotopy Kan extension along $f$, respectively. By example 6.2.28 this exhibits $E\mathrm{Mod}$ as a linear homotopy-type theory.

For $X, Y, Z \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ three homotopy types, consider a diagram of $\infty$-functors of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Z & & \\ & {}^{g}\swarrow & & \searrow^{f} & \\ X & & \overset{\xi}{\Swarrow} & & Y \\ & {}_{\alpha}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\beta} & \\ & & E\mathrm{Mod} & & \end{array} \;.$$

This induces a prequantum integral kernel, def. 5.5.22, of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & E\mathrm{Mod}(Z) & & \\ & {}^{g_*}\swarrow & & \searrow^{f_*} & \\ E\mathrm{Mod}(X) & & & & E\mathrm{Mod}(Y) \\ & {}_{(p_1)_*}\searrow & & \swarrow_{(p_2)_*} & \\ & & E\mathrm{Mod} & & \end{array}$$

with $\xi : f^*\beta \longrightarrow g^*\alpha$. Comparison with the discussion in [ABG10a] shows that $(p_1)_!\alpha \simeq E_{\bullet+\alpha}(X)$ is the $\alpha$-twisted $E$-homology spectrum of $X$, and $\mathbb{D}((p_1)_!\alpha) \simeq E^{\bullet+\alpha}(X)$ the $\alpha$-twisted $E$-cohomology spectrum. Similarly for $(Y, \beta)$.

We may decompose the above slice correspondence $\xi$ as

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & Z & & \\ & {}^{g}\swarrow & \Big\downarrow{}^{f^*\beta} & \searrow^{f} & \\ X & \overset{\xi}{\Swarrow} & & & Y \\ & {}_{\alpha}\searrow & \downarrow & \swarrow_{\beta} & \\ & & E\mathrm{Mod} & & \end{array} \;.$$

Consider then the definition for push-forward along the right leg of this diagram the way it appears as def. 4.1.24 in [Nui13]. We show that this is a special case of the general def. 5.5.28.

To that end, notice that in def. 4.1.24 in [Nui13] a choice of fundamental class is taken to be a choice of $\gamma \in E\mathrm{Mod}(Y)$ together with an equivalence

$$f_! f^* \beta \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{D}(f_! f^* \gamma)\,.$$

In the language used here this is a Wirthmüller isomorphism, prop. 5.5.16, for a choice of fiberwise fundamental class, def. 5.5.13, under the identification

$$\gamma = \mathbb{D}(\beta \otimes \tau)\,.$$

Indeed, prop. 4.1.27 in [Nui13] recovers this identification of $\tau$ for the case that $f$ comes from a proper surjective submersion of smooth manifolds; and remark 4.1.28 there observes that when such $f$ is $E$-orientable then $\gamma = d$ is the degree shift by the dimension of the fibers, as familiar from the classical Poincaré-Thom collapse map.

Then further in def. 4.1.24 in [Nui13] the corresponding secondary integral transform is taken to be the composite

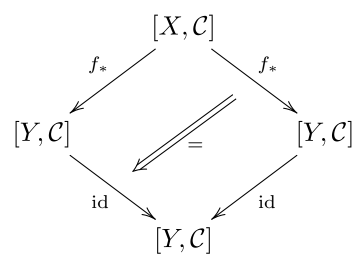
$$\begin{array}{ccccc} E^{\bullet + f^*\beta}(Z) & = & \mathbb{D}(p_! f_! f^* \beta) & & \\ & & \downarrow{\simeq} & \overset{d\mu_f}{\searrow} & \\ & & \mathbb{D}(p_! \mathbb{D}(f_! f^* \gamma)) & \xrightarrow[p_! \mathbb{D}\epsilon_\gamma]{} & \mathbb{D} p_! (\mathbb{D}\gamma) = E^{\bullet - \gamma}(Y) \end{array}$$

Comparison identifies the dashed diagonal composite morphism above indeed as the induced measure $d\mu_f$ in the sense of def. 5.5.18, as indicated. By the discussion in [Nui13] this identifies the secondary integral transform here as given by the twisted Umkehr maps in generalized cohomology due to [?]

$$\int_{i_2} \xi \, d\mu_{i_2} \; : \; E^{\bullet + \alpha}(X) \longrightarrow E^{\bullet + \beta + \tau}(Y) \,,$$

The following example spells out how the construction considered in [HoLu14] is a special case of the above.

**Example 6.2.32.** Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a stable $\infty$-category with all limits and colimits, for instance the $\infty$-category $E\mathrm{Mod}$ of $\infty$-modules over some $E_\infty$-ring, in which case the following is a special case of example 6.2.31. For $X, Y \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ two homotopy types and $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ a morphism between them, consider the prequantum integral kernel, def. 5.5.22, given by the correspondence




and by a choice of objects $C, D \in \mathrm{Func}(X, \mathcal{C})$ and a choice of a morphism

$$\xi := f_! u \; : \; f_! f^* C \longrightarrow f_! f^* D \,.$$

Suppose this $f$ is such that it carries a functorial un-twisted fundamental class, hence according to def. 5.5.18 a natural transformation

$$\mu := [f] : \mathrm{id} \longrightarrow f_! f^* \,.$$

Then according to def. 5.5.28 the dual secondary integral transformation induced by this data is the morphism

$$\mathbb{D} \int_f \xi \, d\mu_f \; : \; D \xleftarrow{\epsilon} f_! f^* D \xleftarrow{f_!(u)} f_! f^* C \xleftarrow{\mu} C \,.$$

This is the notion of integration considered in Notation 4.1.6 of [HoLu14] (almost exactly denoted there by the same symbols as here, only that we call it the *dual* integration map, following the interpretation in the examples above).

## 6.3 Topological homotopy types

We discuss here *Euclidean-topological cohesion*, modeled on Euclidean topological spaces and continuous maps between them. This subsumes the homotopy theory of simplicial topological spaces.

After discussing the construction in

- 6.3.1 – Construction

we discuss some of the general abstract structures in any cohesive ∞-topos, 5.2, realized in ETop∞Grpd.

- 6.3.2 – Stalks
- 6.3.3 – Groups
- 6.3.5 – Geometric homotopy
- 6.3.6 – $\mathbb{R}^1$-homotopy / The standard continuum
- 6.3.7 – Manifolds
- 6.3.8 – Cohomology
- 6.3.9 – Principal ∞-bundles
- 6.3.11 – Extensions, Obstructions and Twisted bundles
- 6.3.12 – Universal coverings and geometric Whitehead towers

### 6.3.1 Construction

**Definition 6.3.1.** Let $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$ be the site whose underlying category has as objects the Cartesian spaces $\mathbb{R}^n$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$ equipped with the standard Euclidean topology and as morphisms the continuous maps between them; and whose coverage is given by good open covers.

**Proposition 6.3.2.** *The site* $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$ *is an* ∞*-cohesive site (def 4.1.31).*

Proof. Clearly $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{loc}}$ has finite products, given by $\mathbb{R}^k \times \mathbb{R}^l \simeq \mathbb{R}^{k+l}$, and clearly every object has a point $* = \mathbb{R}^0 \to \mathbb{R}^n$. In fact $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}(*, \mathbb{R}^n)$ is the underlying set of the Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Let $\{U_i \to U\}$ be a good open covering family in $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$. By the very definition of *good cover* it follows that the Čech nerve $C(\coprod_i U_i \to U) \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is degreewise a coproduct of representables.

The condition $\varinjlim C(\coprod_i U_i) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \varinjlim U = *$ follows from the nerve theorem [Bors48], which asserts that $\varinjlim C(\coprod_i U_i \to U) \simeq \mathrm{Sing} U$, and using that, as a topological space, every Cartesian space is contractible.

The condition $\varprojlim C(\coprod_i U_i) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \varprojlim U = \mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{loc}}(*, U)$ is immediate. Explicitly, for $(x_{i_0} \in U_{i_0}, \cdots, x_{i_n} \in U_{i_n})$ a sequence of points in the covering patches of $U$ such that any two consecutive ones agree in $U$, then they all agree in $U$. So the morphism of simplicial sets in question has the right lifting property against all boundary inclusions $\partial \Delta[n] \to \Delta[n]$ and is therefore is a weak equivalence. □

**Definition 6.3.3.** Define

$$\mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}})$$

to be the ∞-category of ∞-sheaves on $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$.

**Proposition 6.3.4.** *The* ∞*-category* ETop∞Grpd *is a cohesive* ∞*-topos.*

Proof. This follows with prop. 6.3.2 by prop. 4.1.32. □

**Definition 6.3.5.** We say that ETop∞Grpd defines *Euclidean-topological cohesion*. An object in ETop∞Grpd we call a *Euclidean-topological* $\infty$*-groupoid*.

**Definition 6.3.6.** Write TopMfd for the category whose objects are topological manifolds that are

- finite-dimensional;
- paracompact;
- with an arbitrary set of connected components (hence not assumed to be second-countable);

and whose morphisms are continuous functions between these. Regard this as a (large) site with the standard open-cover coverage.

**Proposition 6.3.7.** *The* $\infty$*-topos* ETop∞*Grpd is equivalently that of hypercomplete* $\infty$*-sheaves ([L-Topos], section 6.5) on* TopMfd

$$\mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \hat{\mathrm{Sh}}_\infty(\mathrm{TopMfd})\,.$$

Proof. Since every topological manifold admits an cover by open balls homeomorphic to a Cartesian space, we have that $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$ is a dense sub-site of TopMfd. By theorem C.2.2.3 in [Joh02] it follows that the sheaf toposes agree

$$\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}) \simeq \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{TopMfd})\,.$$

From this it follows directly that the Joyal model structures on simplicial sheaves over both sites (see [Jard87]) are Quillen equivalent. By [L-Topos], prop 6.5.2.14, these present the hypercompletions

$$\hat{\mathrm{Sh}}_\infty(\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}) \simeq \hat{\mathrm{Sh}}_\infty(\mathrm{TopMfd})\,.$$

of the corresponding $\infty$-sheaf $\infty$-toposes. By [Hoy13] we have that Cech $\infty$-sheaves on both sides are already hypercomplete, so that

$$\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}) \simeq \hat{\mathrm{Sh}}_\infty(\mathrm{TopMfd})\,.$$

□

**Definition 6.3.8.** Let $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ be the 1-category of compactly generated and Hausdorff topological spaces and continuous functions between them.

**Proposition 6.3.9.** *The category* $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ *is cartesian closed.*

See [Stee67]. We write $[-,-] : \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}} \to \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ for the corresponding internal hom-functor.

**Definition 6.3.10.** There is an evident functor

$$j : \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}} \to \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

that sends each topological space $X$ to the 0-truncated $\infty$-sheaf (ordinary sheaf) represented by it

$$j(X) : (U \in \mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}) \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top\,cgH}}(U, X) \in \mathrm{Set} \hookrightarrow \infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

**Corollary 6.3.11.** *The functor* $j$ *exhibits* TopMfd *as a full sub-*$\infty$*-category of* ETop∞Grpd

$$j : \mathrm{TopMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

Proof. By prop. 6.3.7 this is a special case of the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma. □

**Remark 6.3.12.** While, according to prop. 6.3.7, the model categories $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ and $[\mathrm{TopMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ are both presentations of ETop∞Grpd, they lend themselves to different computations: in the former there are more fibrant objects, fewer cofibrant objects than in the latter, and vice versa.

In 4.1.2.3 we gave a general discussion concerning this point, here we amplify specific detail for the present case.

**Proposition 6.3.13.** *Let* $X \in [\mathrm{TopMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ *be an object that is* globally fibrant*,* separated *and* locally trivial*, meaning that*

1. *$X(U)$ is a non-empty Kan complex for all $U \in \mathrm{TopMfd}$;*
2. *for every covering $\{U_i \to U\}$ in TopMfd the descent morphism $X(U) \to [\mathrm{TopMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), X)$ is a full and faithful ∞-functor;*
3. *for contractible $U$ we have $\pi_0[\mathrm{TopMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), X) \simeq *$.*

*Then the restriction of $X$ along $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{TopMfd}$ is a fibrant object in the local model structure $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.*

Proof. The fibrant objects in the local model structure are precisely those that are Kan complexes over every object and for which the descent morphism is an equivalence for all covers. The first condition is given by the first assumption. The second and third assumptions imply the second condition over contractible manifolds, such as the Cartesian spaces. □

**Example 6.3.14.** Let $G$ be a topological group, regarded as the presheaf over TopMfd that it represents. Write $\bar{W}G$ for the simplicial presheaf on TopMfd given by the nerve of the topological groupoid $(G \overset{\to}{\to} *)$. (We discuss this in more detail in 6.3.3 below.)

The fibrant resolution of $\bar{W}G$ in $[\mathrm{TopMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ is (the rectification of) its stackification: the stack $G$Bund of topological $G$-principal bundles. But the canonical morphism

$$\bar{W}G \to G\mathrm{Bund}$$

is a full and faithful functor (over each object $U \in \mathrm{TopMfd}$): it includes the single object of $\bar{W}G$ as the trivial $G$-principal bundle. The automorphisms of the single object in $\bar{W}G$ over $U$ are $G$-valued continuous functions on $U$, which are precisely the automorphisms of the trivial $G$-bundle. Therefore this inclusion is full and faithful, the presheaf $\bar{W}G$ is a separated prestack.

Moreover, it is locally trivial: every Čech cocycle for a $G$-bundle over a Cartesian space is equivalent to the trivial one. Equivalently, also $\pi_0 G\mathrm{Bund}(\mathbb{R}^n) \simeq *$. Therefore $\bar{W}G$, when restricted $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$, does become a fibrant object in $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.

On the other hand, let $X \in \mathrm{TopMfd}$ be any non-contractible manifold. Since in the projective model structure on simplicial presheaves every representable is cofibrant, this is a cofibrant object in $[\mathrm{Mfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.However, it fails to be cofibrant in $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. Instead, there a cofibrant replacement is given by the Čech nerve $C(\{U_i\})$ of any good open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$.

This yields two different ways for computing the first nonabelian cohomology

$$H^1_{\mathrm{ETop}}(X, G) := \pi_0 \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$$

in ETop∞Grpd on $X$ with coefficients in $G$:

1. $\cdots \simeq \pi_0[\mathrm{Mfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\mathrm{X}, G\mathrm{Bund}) \simeq \pi_0 G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$;
2. $\cdots \simeq \pi_0[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \bar{W}G) \simeq H^1(X, G)$.

In the first case we need to construct the fibrant replacement $G$Bund. This amounts to constructing $G$-principal bundles over *all* paracompact manifolds and then evaluate on the given one, $X$, by the 2-Yoneda lemma. In the second case however we cofibrantly replace $X$ by a good open cover, and then find the Čech cocycles with coefficients in $G$ on that.

For ordinary $G$-bundles the difference between the two computations may be irrelevant in practice, because ordinary $G$-principal bundles are very well understood. However, for more general coefficient objects, for instance general topological simplicial groups $G$, the first approach requires to find the full $\infty$-sheafification to the $\infty$-sheaf of all principal $\infty$-bundles, while the second approach requires only to compute specific coycles over one specific base object. In practice the latter is often all that one needs.

We discuss a few standard techniques for constructing *cofibrant* resolutions in $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.

**Proposition 6.3.15.** *Let*

$$X \in \mathrm{TopMfd} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$$

*be a topological manifold and let $\{U_i \to X\}$ be a good open cover. Then the Čech nerve*

$$C(\{U_i\}) := \int^{[n]\in\Delta} \Delta[n] \cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_n} j(U_{i_0}) \cap \cdots \cap j(U_{i_n})$$

*(where $j : \mathrm{TopMfd} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is the Yoneda embedding) equipped with the canonical projection $C(\{U_i\}) \to X$ is a cofibrant resolution of $X$.*

Proof. The morphism is clearly a stalkwise weak equivalence. Therefore it is a weak equivalence in the local model structure by theore, 3.1.16.

Moreover, by the very definition of *good* open cover the non-empty finite intersections of the $U_i$ are themselves represented by objects in $\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}$. Therefore the Čech nerve is degreewise a coproduct of representables. Also, its degeneracies split off as a direct summand in each degree. By [Dug01] this means that it is cofibrant in the global projective model structure. But the cofibrations do not change under left Bousfield localization to the local model structure, therefore it is cofibrant also there. □

**Proposition 6.3.16.**

$$X_\bullet \in \mathrm{TopMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$$

*be a simplicial manifold, such that there is a choice $\mathcal{U}$ of good open covers $\{U_{n,i} \to X_n\}_i$ in each degree which are simplicially compatible in that they arrange into a morphism of bisimplicial presheaves*

$$C(\mathcal{U})_{\bullet,\bullet} \to X_\bullet .$$

*Then*

$$\int^{[n]\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[n] \cdot C(\mathcal{U})_{n,\bullet} \;\to\; X_\bullet ,$$

*where $\mathbf{\Delta} : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{sSet}$ is given by $\mathbf{\Delta}[n] := N(\Delta/[n])$, is a cofibrant resolution in $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.*

Proof. First consider

$$\int^{[n]\in\Delta} \Delta[n] \cdot C(\mathcal{U})_{n,\bullet} \;\to\; X_\bullet$$

with the ordinary simplex in the integrand. Over ach object $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$ the coend appearing here is isomorphic to the diagonal of the given bisimplicial set. Since the diagonal sends degreewise weak equivalences to weak equivalences, prop. 6.3.15 implies that this is a weak equivalence in the local model structure.

Let $\mathbf{\Delta} \to \Delta$ be the canonical projection. We claim that the induced morphism

$$\int^{[n]\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[n] \cdot C(\mathcal{U})_{n,\bullet} \to \int^{[n]\in\Delta} \Delta[n] \cdot C(\mathcal{U})_{n,\bullet}$$

is a global projective weak equivalence, and hence in particular also a local projective weak equivalence. This follows from the fact that

$$\int^{\Delta} (-)\cdot(-) : [\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}} \times [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}{}_{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}} \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}{}_{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$$

is a left Quillen bifunctor prop. 5.1.13. Since every object in $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}{}_{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$ is cofibrant, and since $\mathbf{\Delta} \to \Delta$ is a Reedy equivalence between Reedy cofibrant objects, the coend over the tensoring preserves this weak equivalence and produces a global injective weak equivalence which is also a global projective weak equivalence.

This shows that the morphism is question is a weak equivalence. To see that it is a cofibrant resolution use that $\mathbf{\Delta}$ is also cofibrant in $[\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ and that also

$$\int^{\Delta} (-)\cdot(-) : [\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \times [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}{}_{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{inj}} \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}{}_{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]$$

is a left Quillen bifunctor, prop. 5.1.13. By prop. 6.3.15 we have a cofibration $\emptyset \hookrightarrow C(\mathcal{U})_{\bullet,\bullet}$ in $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}{}_{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{inj}}$, which is therefore preserved by $\int^{\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}\cdot(-)$. Again using that global projective cofibrations are also local projective cofibrations, the claim follows. □

### 6.3.2 Stalks

We discuss the points of ETop∞Grpd.

**Proposition 6.3.17.** *For every $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there is a topos point*

$$p(n) : \mathrm{Set} \underset{p(n)_*}{\overset{p(n)^*}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{Mfd})$$

*as well as a corresponding ∞-topos point*

$$p(n) : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \underset{p(n)_*}{\overset{p(n)^*}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}\ ,$$

*where the inverse image $p(n)^*$ forms the stalk at the origin of $\mathbb{R}^n$:*

$$p(n)^* : X \mapsto \varinjlim_{k\in\mathbb{N}} X(D^n(1/k))\,.$$

*Here for $r \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ we denote by $D^n(r) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ the inclusion of the standard open $n$-disk of radius $r$. In particular*

$$p(0) \simeq (\Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc})\,.$$

*The collection of topos points $\{p(n)\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ exhibits the topos* Sh(Mfd) *and the ∞-topos* ETop∞Grpd *(hence the sites* CartSp *and* Mfd*) as having* enough points*, def. 3.1.13.*

*These points form a tower of retractions*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} p(0) & \rightleftarrows & p(1) & \rightleftarrows \cdots \rightleftarrows & p(n) & \rightleftarrows & \cdots \\ & \searrow & \downarrow & & \swarrow & & \\ & & p(\infty) & & & & \end{array}$$

*The inductive limit* $p(\infty) := \varinjlim_n p(n)$ *over the tower of inclusions is the topos point whose inverse image is given by*

$$p(\infty)^* X = \varinjlim_n \varinjlim_k X(D^n(1/k)) \,.$$

*This point alone forms a set of enough points: a morphism* $f : X \to Y$ *is an equivalence precisely if* $p(\infty)^* f$ *is.*

Proof. For convenience, we discuss this in terms of the 1-topos. The discussion for the $\infty$-topos is verbatim the same.

First it is clear that for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the functor $p(n)^*$ is indeed the inverse image of a geometric morphism: being given by a filtered colimit, it commutes with all colimits and with finite limits.

To see that these points are enough to detect isomorphisms of sheaves, notice the following construction. For $A \in \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{Mfd})$ and $X \in \mathrm{Mfd}$, we obtain a sheaf $\tilde{A} \in \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{Mfd}/_{\mathrm{op}} X)$ on the slice site of open embeddings into $X$ by restriction of $A$. The topos $\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{Mfd}/_{\mathrm{op}} X)$ clearly has enough points, given by the ordinary stalks at the ordinary points $x \in X$, formed as

$$p_x(n)^* \tilde{A} = \varinjlim_k \tilde{A}(D^n_x(1/k)) \,,$$

where $D^n_x(r) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \overset{\phi}{\hookrightarrow} X$ is a disk of radius $r$ around $x$ in any coordinate patch $\phi$ containing $X$. (Because if a morphism of sheaves on $\mathrm{Mfd}/_{\mathrm{op}} X$ is an isomorphism on an open disk around every point of $X$, then it is an isomorphism on the covering given by the union of all these disks, hence is an isomorphism of sheaves). Notice that by defintion of $\tilde{A}$ the above stalk is in fact independent of the point $x$ and coincides with $p(n)^*$ applied to the original $A$:

$$\cdots \simeq \varinjlim_k A(D^n(1/k)) =: p(n)^* A \,.$$

So if for a morphism $f : A \to B$ in $\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{Mfd})$ all the $p(n)^* f$ are isomorphisms, then for every $X \in \mathrm{Mfd}$ the induced morphism $\tilde{f} : \tilde{A} \to \tilde{B}$ is an isomorphism, hence is an isomorphism $\tilde{f}(X) = f(X)$ on global sections. Since this is true for all $X$, it follows that $f$ is already an isomorphism. This shows that $\{p(n)\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a set of enough points of $\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{Mfd})$.

To see that these points sit in a sequence of retractions as stated, choose a tower of inclusions

$$\mathbb{R}^0 \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^1 \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^2 \hookrightarrow \cdots \quad \in \mathrm{Mfd} \,,$$

where each morphism is isomorphic to $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^0 \overset{(\mathrm{id},0)}{\to} \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^1$.

This induces for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $r \in \mathbb{R}$ an inclusion of disks $D^n(r) \to D^{n+1}(r)$, which regards $D^n(r)$ as an equatorial plane of $D^{n+1}(r)$, and it induces a projection $D^{n+1}(r)$, which together exhibit a retraction

$$\underbrace{D^n \longrightarrow D^{n+1} \longrightarrow D^n}_{\mathrm{id}} \ .$$

All this is natural with respect to the inclusions $D^n(\frac{1}{k+1}) \to D^n(\frac{1}{k})$. Therefore we have induced morphisms

$$\underbrace{\varinjlim_k X(D^n(1/k)) \longrightarrow \varinjlim_k X(D^{n+1}(1/k)) \longrightarrow \varinjlim_k X(D^n(1/k))}_{\mathrm{id}} \ .$$

Since these are natural in $X$, they consistute natural transformations

$$\underbrace{p(n)^* \longrightarrow p(n+1)^* \longrightarrow p(n)^*}_{\mathrm{id}}$$

of inverse images, hence morphisms

$$\underset{\mathrm{id}}{p(n) \longrightarrow p(n+1) \longrightarrow p(n)}$$

of geometric morphisms.

Finally, since equivalences are stable under retract, it follows that $p(n)^* f$ is an equivalence if $p(n+1)^*$ is. Similarly, for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have a retract

$$\underset{\mathrm{id}}{p(n) \longrightarrow p(\infty) \longrightarrow p(n)}$$

seen by noticing that each $p(n)$ naturally forms a co-cone under the above tower of inclusions. So an isomorphism under $p(\infty)^*$ implies one under all the $p(n)$. □

### 6.3.3 Groups

We discuss cohesive $\infty$-group objects, def 5.1.9, realized in ETop$\infty$Grpd: *Euclidean-topological $\infty$-groups.*

Recall that by prop. 5.1.170 every $\infty$-group object in ETop$\infty$Grpd has a presentation by a presheaf of simplicial groups. Among the presentations for concrete $\infty$-groups in ETop$\infty$Grpd are therefore *simplicial topological groups.*

Write $\mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ for the category of simplicial objects in $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$, def. 6.3.8. For $X, Y \in \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$, write

$$\mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}(X,Y) := \int_{[k]\in\Delta} [X_k, Y_k] \quad \in \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$$

for the hom-object, where in the integrand of the end $[-,-]$ is the internal hom of $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$.

**Definition 6.3.18.** We say a morphism $f : X \to Y$ of simplicial topological spaces is a *global Kan fibration* if for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $0 \leq k \leq n$ the canonical morphism

$$X_n \to Y_n \ \times_{\mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}(\Lambda[n]_i, Y)} \ \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}(\Lambda[n]_i, X)$$

in $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ has a section, where $\Lambda[n]_i \in \mathrm{sSet} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ is the $i$th $n$-horn regarded as a discrete simplicial topological space.

We say a simplicial topological space $X_\bullet$ is a *(global) Kan simplicial space* if the unique morphism $X_\bullet \to *$ is a global Kan fibration, hence if for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and all $0 \leq i \leq n$ the canonical continuous function

$$X_n \to \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}(\Lambda[n]_i, X)$$

into the topological space of $i$th $n$-horns admits a section.

This global notion of topological Kan fibration is considered for instance in [BrSz89], def. 2.1, def. 6.1. In fact there a stronger condition is imposed: a Kan complex in Set automatically has the lifting property not only against all full horn inclusions but also against sub-horns; and in [BrSz89] all these fillers are required to be given by global sections. This ensures that with $X$ globally Kan also the internal hom $[Y, X] \in \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ is globally Kan, for any simplicial topological space $Y$. This is more than we need and want to impose here. For our purposes it is sufficient to observe that if $f$ is globally Kan in the sense of [BrSz89], def. 6.1, then it is so also in the above sense.

For $G$ a simplicial group, there is a standard presentation of its universal simplicial bundle by a morphism of Kan complexes traditionally denoted $WG \to \bar{W}G$. This construction has an immediate analog for simplicial topological groups. A review is in [RoSt12].

**Proposition 6.3.19.** *Let $G$ be a simplicial topological group. Then*

1. *$G$ is a globally Kan simplicial topological space;*

2. *$\bar{W}G$ is a globally Kan simplicial topological space;*

3. *$WG \to \bar{W}G$ is a global Kan fibration.*

Proof. The first and last statement appears as [BrSz89], theorem 3.8 and lemma 6.7, respectively, the second is noted in [RoSt12]. □

Let for the following $\mathrm{Top}_s \subset \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ be any small full subcategory. Under the degreewise Yoneda embedding $\mathrm{sTop}_s \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{Top}_s^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ simplicial topological spaces embed into the category of simplicial presheaves on $\mathrm{Top}_s$. We equip this with the projective model structure on simplicial presheaves $[\mathrm{Top}_s^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

**Proposition 6.3.20.** *Under this embedding a global Kan fibration, def. 6.3.18, $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathrm{sTop}_s$ maps to a fibration in $[\mathrm{Top}_s^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.*

Proof. By definition, a morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $[\mathrm{Top}_s^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ is a fibration if for all $U \in \mathrm{Top}_s$ and all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $0 \leq i \leq n$ diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda[n]_i \cdot U & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{f} \\ \Delta[n] \cdot U & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

have a lift. This is equivalent to saying that the function

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\Delta[n] \cdot U, X) \to \mathrm{Hom}(\Delta[n] \cdot U, Y) \times_{\mathrm{Hom}(\Lambda[n]_i \cdot U, Y)} \mathrm{Hom}(\Lambda[n]_i \cdot U, X)$$

is surjective. Notice that we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Hom}_{[\mathrm{Top}_s^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]}(\Delta[n] \cdot U, X) &= \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{sTop}_s}(\Delta[n] \cdot U, X) \\ &= \int_{[k] \in \Delta} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_s}(\Delta[n]_k \times U, X_k) \\ &= \int_{[k] \in \Delta} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_s}(U, [\Delta[n]_k, X_k]) \\ &= \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}}(U, \int_{[k] \in \Delta} [\Delta[n]_k, X_k]) \\ &= \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_s}(U, \mathrm{sTop}(\Delta[n], X)) \\ &= \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_s}(U, X_n) \end{aligned}$$

and analogously for the other factors in the above morphism. Therefore the lifting problem equivalently says that the function

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}}(U,\ X_n \to Y_n \times_{\mathrm{sTop}_s(\Lambda[n]_i, Y)} \mathrm{sTop}_s(\Lambda[n]_i, X)\ )$$

is surjective. But by the assumption that $f : X \to Y$ is a global Kan fibration of simplicial topological spaces, def. 6.3.18, we have a section $\sigma : Y_n \times_{\mathrm{sTop}_s(\Lambda[n]_i), Y} \mathrm{sTop}_s(\Lambda[n]_i, X) \to X_n$. Therefore $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_s}(U, \sigma)$ is a section of our function. □

In section 6.3.5 we use this in the discussion of geometric realization of simplicial topological groups.

In summary, we find that $WG \to \bar{W}G$ is a presentation of the universal $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle, 1.2.6.4. ).

**Proposition 6.3.21.** *Let $G \in \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be a group object presented in $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ by a simplicial topological group (to be denoted by the same symbol) which is degreewise a topological manifold. Then its delooping $\mathbf{B}G$, def. 5.1.152, is presented by $\bar{W}G$.*

Proof. By prop. 6.3.19 and prop. 6.3.20 the morphism $WG \to \bar{W}G$ is a fibration presentation of $* \to \mathbf{B}G$ in $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Since $\bar{W}G$ is evidently connected, and since we have an ordinary pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & WG \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \bar{W}G \end{array},$$

it follows with the discussion in 5.1.1.2.1 that this presents in ETop∞Grpd the ∞-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

that defines the delooping $\mathbf{B}G$. □

### 6.3.4 Representations

We discuss the intrinsic notion of ∞-group representations, 5.1.14, realized in the context ETop∞Grpd.

We make precise the role of *topological action groupoids*, introduced informally in 1.2.6.1.

**Proposition 6.3.22.** *Let $X$ be a toplogical manifold, and $G$ a topological group. Then the category of continuous $G$-actions on $X$ in the traditional sense is equivalent to the category of $G$-actions on $X$ in the cohesive ∞-topos* ETop∞Grpd*, according to def. 5.1.189.*

Proof. For $\rho : X \times G \to X$ a given $G$-action, define the *action groupoid*

$$X//G := (\ X \times G \underset{p_1}{\overset{\rho}{\rightrightarrows}} X\ )$$

with the evident composition operation. This comes with the evident morphism of topological groupoids

$$X//G \to *//G \simeq \mathbf{B}G\,,$$

with $\mathbf{B}G$ as in prop. 6.4.19. It is immediate that regarding this as a morphism in $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ in the canonical way, this is a fibration. Therefore, by 5.1.9, the homotopy fiber of this morphism in Smooth∞Grpds is given by the ordinary fiber of this morphism in simplicial presheaves. This is manifestly $X$.

Accordingly this construction constitutes an embedding of the traditional $G$ actions on $X$ into the category $\mathrm{Rep}_G(X)$ from def. 5.1.189. By turning this argument around, one finds that this embedding is essentially surjective. □

**Remark 6.3.23.** Let $X, \in\in$ TopMfd, $G$ a topological group, and let $\rho : X \times G \to X$ be a continuous action. Write $X//G \in$ ETop∞Grpd for the corresponding action groupoid. As a simplicial topological space the action groupoid is

$$X//G = \left( \cdots\cdots\ X \times G \times G \underset{(p_1,p_2)}{\overset{(\rho,\mathrm{id})}{\substack{\longrightarrow \\ \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id},\cdot)} \\ \longrightarrow}}} X \times G \underset{p_1}{\overset{\rho}{\rightrightarrows}} X \right)$$

### 6.3.5 Geometric homotopy

We discuss the intrinsic geometric homotopy, 5.2.3, in ETop∞Grpd.

- 6.3.5.1 – Geometric realization of topological ∞-groupoids;
- 6.3.5.2 – Fundamental path ∞-groupoids

**6.3.5.1 Geometric realization of topological ∞-groupoids** We start by recalling some facts about geometric realization of simplicial topological spaces.

**Definition 6.3.24.** For $X_\bullet \in \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ a simplicial topological space, write

- $|X_\bullet| := \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta^k_{\mathrm{Top}} \times X_k$ for its *geometric realization*;
- $\|X_\bullet\| := \int^{[k]\in\Delta_+} \Delta^k_{\mathrm{Top}} \times X_k$ for its *fat geometric realization*,

where in the second case the coend is over the subcategory $\Delta_+ \hookrightarrow \Delta$ spanned by the face maps.

See [RoSt12] for a review.

**Proposition 6.3.25.** *Ordinary geometric realization* $|-| : \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}} \to \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ *preserves pullbacks. Fat geometric realization preserves pullbacks when regarded as a functor* $\|-\| : \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}} \to \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}/\|*\|$.

**Definition 6.3.26.** We say

- a simplicial topological space $X \in \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$, def. 6.3.8, is *good* if all degeneracy maps $s_i : X_n \to X_{n+1}$ are closed Hurewicz cofibrations;
- a simplicial topological group $G$ is *well pointed* if all units $i_n : * \to G_n$ are closed Hurewicz cofibrations.

The notion of good simplicial topological spaces goes back to [Seg73]. For a review see [RoSt12].

**Proposition 6.3.27.** *For* $X \in \mathrm{sTop}_s$ *a good simplicial topological space, its ordinary geometric realization is equivalent to its homotopy colimit, when regarded as a simplicial diagram:*

$$\mathrm{sTop}_s \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{Top}_s^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{hocolim}} \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}} \,.$$

Proof. Write $\|-\|$ for the fat geometric realization. By standard facts about geometric realization of simplicial topological spaces [Seg70] we have the following zig-zag of weak homotopy equivalences

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \|X_\bullet\| & \xleftarrow{\simeq} & \|\,|\mathrm{Sing}(X_\bullet)|\,\| & & \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ |X_\bullet| & & |\,|\mathrm{Sing}(X_\bullet)|\,| \underset{\mathrm{iso}}{=\!=} |\mathrm{diagSing}(X_\bullet)_\bullet| & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & |\mathrm{hocolim}_n \mathrm{Sing} X_n| \end{array} .$$

By the Bousfield-Kan map, the object on the far right is manifestly a model for the homotopy colimit $\mathrm{hocolim}_n X_n$. □

**Proposition 6.3.28.** *For* $X \in \mathrm{TopMfd}$ *and* $\{U_i \to X\}$ *a good open cover, the Čech nerve* $C(\{U_i\}) := \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_n} U_{i_0} \times_X \cdots \times U_{i_n}$ *is cofibrant in* $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ *and the canonical projection* $C(\{U_i\}) \to X$ *is a weak equivalence.*

Proof. Since the open cover is good, the Čech nerve is degreewise a coproduct of representables, hence is a *split hypercover* in the sense of [DHS04], def. 4.13. Moreover $\coprod_i U_i \to X$ is directly seen to be a *generalized cover* in the sense used there (below prop. 3.3) By corollary A.3 there, $C(\{U_i\}) \to X$ is a weak equivalence. □

**Proposition 6.3.29.** *Let $X$ be a paracompact topological space that admits a good open cover by open balls (for instance the topological space underlying a smooth manifold). Write $i(X) \in \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ for its incarnation as a 0-truncatd Euclidean-topological $\infty$-groupoid. Then $\Pi(X) := \Pi(i(X)) \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is equivalent to the standard fundamental $\infty$-groupoid of $X$, presented by the singular simplicial complex $\mathrm{Sing}X$ : $[k] \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}}(\Delta^k, X)$*

$$\Pi(X) \simeq \mathrm{Sing}X\,.$$

*Equivalently, under geometric realization $\mathbb{L}|-| : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathrm{Top}$ we have that there is a weak homotopy equivalence*

$$X \simeq |\Pi(X)|\,.$$

Proof. By the proof of prop. 4.1.32 we have an equivalence $\Pi(-) \simeq \mathbb{L}\varinjlim$ to the derived functor of the sSet-colimit functor $\varinjlim : [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}} \to \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$.

To compute this derived functor, let $\{U_i \to X\}$ be a good open cover by open balls, hence homeomorphically by Cartesian spaces. By goodness of the cover the Čech nerve $C(\coprod_i U_i \to X) \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is degreewise a coproduct of representables, hence a split hypercover. By [DHS04] we have that in this case the canonical morphism

$$C(\coprod_i U_i \to X) \to X$$

is a cofibrant resolution of $X$ in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. Accordingly we have

$$\Pi(X) \simeq (\mathbb{L}\varinjlim)(X) \simeq \varinjlim C(\coprod_i U_i \to X)\,.$$

Using the equivalence of categories $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \simeq [\Delta^{op}, [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}]$ and that colimits in presheaf categories are computed objectwise, and finally using that the colimit of a representable functor is the point (an incarnation of the Yoneda lemma) we have that $\Pi(X)$ is presented by the Kan complex that is obtained by contracting in the Čech nerve $C(\coprod_i U_i)$ each open subset to a point.

The classical nerve theorem [Bors48] asserts that this implies the claim. □

Regarding Top itself as a cohesive $\infty$-topos by 6.2.2, the above proposition may be stated as saying that for $X$ a paracompact topological space with a good covering, we have

$$\Pi_{\mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}(X) \simeq \Pi_{\mathrm{Top}}(X)\,.$$

**Proposition 6.3.30.** *Let $X_\bullet$ be a good simplicial topological space that is degreewise paracompact and degreewise admits a good open cover, regarded naturally as an object $X_\bullet \in \mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}} \to \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.*

*We have that the intrinsic $\Pi(X_\bullet) \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ coincides under geometric realization $\mathbb{L}|-| : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{Top}$ with the ordinary geometric realization of simplicial topological spaces $|X_\bullet|_{\mathrm{Top}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}}$ from def. 6.3.25:*

$$|\Pi(X_\bullet)| \simeq |X_\bullet|\,.$$

Proof. Write $Q$ for Dugger's cofibrant replacement functor, prop. 3.1.22, on $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. On a simplicially constant simplicial presheaf $X$ it is given by

$$QX := \int^{[n]\in\Delta} \Delta[n] \cdot \left( \coprod_{U_0 \to \cdots \to U_n \to X} U_0 \right)\,,$$

where the coproduct in the integrand of the coend is over all sequences of morphisms from representables $U_i$ to $X$ as indicated. On a general simplicial presheaf $X_\bullet$ it is given by

$$QX_\bullet := \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot QX_k\,,$$

which is the simplicial presheaf that over any $\mathbb{R}^n \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ takes as value the diagonal of the bisimplicial set whose $(n,r)$-entry is $\coprod_{U_0\to\cdots\to U_n\to X_k} \mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}(\mathbb{R}^n, U_0)$. Since coends are special colimits, the colimit functor itself commutes with them and we find

$$\begin{aligned}\Pi(X_\bullet) &\simeq (\mathbb{L}\varinjlim)X_\bullet \\ &\simeq \varinjlim QX_\bullet \\ &\simeq \int^{[n]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot \varinjlim(QX_k)\,.\end{aligned}$$

By general facts about the Reedy model structure on bisimplicial sets, this coend is a homotopy colimit over the simplicial diagram $\varinjlim QX_\bullet : \Delta \to \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$

$$\cdots \simeq \mathrm{hocolim}_\Delta \varinjlim QX_\bullet\,.$$

By prop. 6.3.29 we have for each $k\in\mathbb{N}$ weak equivalences $\varinjlim QX_k \simeq (\mathbb{L}\varinjlim)X_k \simeq \mathrm{Sing}X_k$, so that

$$\begin{aligned}\cdots &\simeq \mathrm{hocolim}_\Delta \mathrm{Sing}X_\bullet \\ &\simeq \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot \mathrm{Sing}X_k\,\cdot \\ &\simeq \mathrm{diag}\,\mathrm{Sing}(X_\bullet)_\bullet\end{aligned}$$

By prop. 6.3.27 this is the homotopy colimit of the simplicial topological space $X_\bullet$, given by its geometric realization if $X_\bullet$ is proper. □

#### 6.3.5.2 Fundamental path ∞-groupoids

We discuss the general abstract notion of path ∞-groupoid, 5.2.3, realized in ETop∞Grpd.

**Proposition 6.3.31.** *Let $X$ be a paracompact topological space admitting a good open cover, canonically regarded as an object of* ETop∞Grpd*, then the path ∞-groupoid $\int(X)$ is presented by the simplicial presheaf* $\mathrm{Disc}\,\mathrm{Sing}X \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ *which is constant on the singular simplicial complex of $X$:*

$$\mathrm{Disc}\,\mathrm{Sing}X : (U,[k]) \mapsto \mathrm{Sing}X\,.$$

Proof. By definition we have $\int(X) = \mathrm{Disc}\,\Pi(X)$. By prop. 6.3.29 $\Pi(X)\in\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is presented by $\mathrm{Sing}X$. By prop. 4.1.32 the ∞-functor Disc is presented by the left derived functor of the constant presheaf functor. Since every object in $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ is cofibrant this is just the plain constant presheaf functor. □

A more natural presentation of the idea of a topological path ∞-groupoid may be one that remembers the topology on the space of $k$-dimensional paths:

Write

$$\Delta^\bullet_{\mathrm{Top}} : \Delta \longrightarrow \mathrm{TopMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

for the standard topological simplices organized as a cosimplicial topological space.

**Definition 6.3.32.** For $X$ a paracompact topological space admitting a good open cover, write $\mathbf{Sing}X \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ for the simplicial presheaf given by

$$\mathbf{Sing}X := \varinjlim [\Delta^\bullet_{\mathrm{Top}}, X] : (U, [k]) \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Top}}(U \times \Delta^k, X)\,.$$

**Proposition 6.3.33.** *Also* $\mathrm{Sing}X$ *of def. 6.3.32, is a presentation of* $\int X$.

Proof. For each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the canonical inclusion of simplicial sets

$$\mathrm{Sing}X \to \mathbf{Sing}(X)(U)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence, because $U$ is continuously contractible. Therefore the canonical inclusion of simplicial presheaves

$$\mathrm{Disc}\,\mathrm{Sing}X \to \mathbf{Sing}X$$

is a weak equivalence in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. □

**Remark 6.3.34.** Typically one is interested in mapping out of $\int(X)$. While $\mathrm{Disc}\,\mathrm{Sing}X$ is always cofibrant in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, the relevant resolutions of $\mathbf{Sing}(X)$ may be harder to determine.

Below in prop. 6.4.36 we see that the construction in def. 6.3.32 yields a presentation of $\int$ generally.

#### 6.3.5.3 Examples

We discuss some examples related to the geometric realization of topological $\infty$-groupoids.

**Proposition 6.3.35.** *Let $K$ and $G$ be topological groups whose underlying topological space is a manifold. Consider a morphism of topological groups $f : K \to G$ that is a homotopy equivalence of the underlying topological manifolds. Then*

$$\Pi\mathbf{B}f : \; \Pi(\mathbf{B}K) \longrightarrow \Pi(\mathbf{B}G)$$

*is a weak equivalence.*

Proof. By prop. 6.3.21 the delooping $\mathbf{B}G$ is presented in $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}^{\mathrm{op}}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ by $(\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}) : n \mapsto G^{\times n}$. Therefore $\Pi(K^{\times n}) \to \Pi(G^{\times n})$ is an equivalence in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. By the discussion in 5.1.9 we have that the delooping $\mathbf{B}K$ is the $\infty$-colimit

$$\mathbf{B}K \simeq \lim_{\to n} K^{\times n}$$

and similarly for $\mathbf{B}G$. The morphism of moduli stacks is the $\infty$-colimit of the component inclusions

$$\mathbf{c} \simeq \lim_{\to n} (K^{\times n} \to G^{\times n})\,.$$

Since $\Pi$ is left adjoint, it commutes with these colimits, so that $\Pi(\mathbf{c})$ is exhibited as an $\infty$-colimit over equivalences, hence as an equivalence. □

**Proposition 6.3.36.** *Let $X$ be a topological manifold, equipped with a continuous action $\rho : X \times G \to X$ of a group in* TopMfd*. Then the geometric realization of the corresponding action groupoid, def. 6.3.22, is the Borel space*

$$\Pi(X//G) \simeq |X//G| = X \times_G EG\,.$$

Proof. By remark 6.3.23 the action groupoid as an object in $\mathrm{TopMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{Top}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is

$$X//G = \left( \cdots\cdots X \times G \times G \underset{(p_1,p_2)}{\overset{(\rho,\mathrm{id})}{\underset{(\mathrm{id},\cdot)}{\rightrightarrows}}} X \times G \underset{p_1}{\overset{\rho}{\rightrightarrows}} X \right).$$

Accordingly

$$\mathbf{E}G := G//G = \left( \cdots\cdots G \times G \times G \underset{(p_1,p_2)}{\overset{(\cdot,\mathrm{id})}{\underset{(\mathrm{id},\cdot)}{\rightrightarrows}}} G \times G \underset{p_1}{\overset{\cdot}{\rightrightarrows}} X \right).$$

Therefore we have an isomorphism

$$X//G = X \times_G \mathbf{E}G \,.$$

By prop. 6.3.25 geometric realization preserves the product involved here, and, being given by a coend, it preserves the quotient involved, so that we have isomorphisms

$$|X//G| = |X \times_G \mathbf{E}G| = X \times_G EG \,.$$

□

Below in 6.3.8.3 we discuss how the cohomology of the Borel space is related to the equivariant cohomology of $X$.

### 6.3.6 $\mathbb{R}^1$-homotopy / The standard continuum

We discuss that the standard continuum real line $\mathbb{R} \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ regarded in Euclidean-topological cohesion is indeed a contiuum $\mathbb{A}^1$-line object in the general abstract sense of 5.2.3.

**Proposition 6.3.37.** *The real line* $\mathbb{R}^1 \in \mathrm{TopMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *is a geometric interval, def. 5.2.48, exhibiting the cohesion of* $\mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

Proof. Since $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$ is a site of definition for ETop∞Grpd and is both ∞-cohesive (prop. 6.3.2) and the syntactic category of a Lawvere algebraic theory, with

$$\mathbb{A}^1 = \mathbb{R}^1 \,,$$

the claim follows with prop. 5.2.51. □

**Remark 6.3.38.** The statement of prop. 6.3.37 is the central claim of the notes [Dug99], where it essentially appears stated as theorem 3.4.3.

### 6.3.7 Manifolds

We discuss the realization of the general abstract notion of manifolds in a cohesive ∞-topos in 5.2.9 realized in Euclidean-topological cohesion.

With $\mathbb{A} := \mathbb{R} \in \mathrm{TopMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ the standard line object exhibiting the cohesion of ETop∞Grpd according to prop. 6.3.37, def. 5.2.56 is equivalent to the traditional definition of topological manifolds.

### 6.3.8 Cohomology

We dicuss aspects of the intrinsic cohomology (5.1.10) in ETop∞Grpd.

**6.3.8.1 Čech cohomology** We expand on the way that the intrinsic cohomology in ETop∞Grpd is expressed in terms of traditional Čech cohomology over manifolds, further specializing the general discussion of 3.1.5.

**Proposition 6.3.39.** *For*

1. $X \in \mathrm{TopMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$
2. $A \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}} \to \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$

*with A fibrant, then the intrinsic cocycle ∞-groupoid* $\mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, A)$ *is given by the Čech hyper-cohomology cocycles on $X$ with coefficients in the simplicial presheaf $A$.*

Proof. Let $\{U_i \to X\}$ be a good open cover. By prop. 6.3.28 its Čech nerve $C(\{U_i\}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} X$ is a cofibrant replacement for $X$ (it is a split hypercover [Dug01] and hence cofibrant because the cover is good, and it is a weak equivalence because it is a *generalized cover* in the sense of [DHS04]). Since $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ is a simplicial model category, it follows that the cocycle ∞-groupoid in question is given by the Kan complex $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), A)$. One checks that its vertices are Čech cocycles as claimed, its edges are Čech homotopies, and so on. □

### 6.3.8.2 Nonabelian cohomology with constant coefficients

**Definition 6.3.40.** Let $A \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be any discrete ∞-groupoid. Write $|A| \in \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ for its geometric realization. For $X$ any topological space, the nonabelian cohomology of $X$ with coefficients in $A$ is the set of homotopy classes of maps $X \to |A|$

$$H_{\mathrm{Top}}(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathrm{Top}(X, |A|) .$$

We say $\mathrm{Top}(X, |A|)$ itself is the cocycle ∞-groupoid for $A$-valued nonabelian cohomology on $X$.

Similarly, for $X, \mathbf{A} \in \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ two Euclidean-topological ∞-groupoids, write

$$H_{\mathrm{ETop}}(X, \mathbf{A}) := \pi_0 \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{A})$$

for the intrinsic cohomology of ETop∞Grpd on $X$ with coefficients in $\mathbf{A}$.

**Proposition 6.3.41.** *Let $A \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ , write* $\mathrm{Disc}A \in \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *for the corresponding discrete topological ∞-groupoid. Let $X$ be a paracompact topological space admitting a good open cover, regarded as 0-truncated Euclidean-topological ∞-groupoid.*

*We have an isomorphism of cohomology sets*

$$H_{\mathrm{Top}}(X, A) \simeq H_{\mathrm{ETop}}(X, \mathrm{Disc}A)$$

*and in fact an equivalence of cocycle ∞-groupoids*

$$\mathrm{Top}(X, |A|) \simeq \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathrm{Disc}A) .$$

Proof. By the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-adjunction of the locally ∞-connected ∞-topos ETop∞Grpd we have

$$\mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathrm{Disc}A) \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi(X), A) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{|-|} \mathrm{Top}(|\Pi X|, |A|) .$$

From this the claim follows by prop. 6.3.29. □

#### 6.3.8.3 Equivariant cohomology

**Proposition 6.3.42.** *Given an action $\rho : X \times G \to X$ of a topological group $G$ on a topological manifold $X$, as in prop. 6.3.36, $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $K$ a discrte group, abelian if $n \geq 2$, then the $G$-equivariant cohomology, def. 5.1.176, of $X$ with coefficients in $K$ is the cohomology of the Borel space, prop. 6.3.36, with values in $K$*

$$H^n_G(X, K) \simeq H^n(X \times_G EG, K)\,.$$

Proof. The equivariant cohomology is the cohomology of the action groupoid

$$H^n_G(X, K) \simeq \pi_0 \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X//G, \mathbf{B}^n K)\,.$$

Since $K$ is assumed discrete, this is equivalently, as in prop. 6.3.41,

$$\cdots \simeq \pi_0 \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi(X//G), \mathbf{B}^n K)$$

By prop. 6.3.36 this is

$$\cdots \simeq \pi_0 \mathrm{Top}(X \times_G EG, B^n K) \simeq H^n(X \times_G EG, K)\,.$$

□

### 6.3.9 Principal bundles

We discuss principal $\infty$-bundles, 5.1.11, with topological structure and presented by topological simplicial principal bundles.

**Proposition 6.3.43.** *If $G$ is a well-pointed simplicial topological group, def. 6.3.26, then both $WG$ and $\bar{W}G$ are good simplicial topological spaces.*

Proof. For $\bar{W}G$ this is [RoSt12] prop. 19. For $WG$ this follows with their lemma 10, lemma 11, which says that $WG = \mathrm{Dec}_0 \bar{W}G$ and the observations in the proof of prop. 16 that $\mathrm{Dec}_0 X$ is good if $X$ is. □

**Proposition 6.3.44.** *For $G$ a well-pointed simplicial topological group, the geometric realization of the universal simplicial principal bundle $WG \to \bar{W}G$*

$$|WG| \to |\bar{W}G|$$

*is a fibration resolution in $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ of the point inclusion $* \to B|G|$ into the classifying space of the geometric realization of $G$.*

This is [RoSt12], prop. 14.

**Proposition 6.3.45.** *Let $X_\bullet$ be a good simplicial topological space and $G$ a well-pointed simplicial topological group. Then for every morphism*

$$\tau : X \to \bar{W}G$$

*the corresponding topological simplicial principal bundle $P$ over $X$ is itself a good simplicial topological space.*

Proof. The bundle is the pullback $P = X \times_{\bar{W}G} WG$ in $\mathrm{sTop}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & \bar{W}G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \stackrel{\tau}{\longrightarrow} & \bar{W}G \end{array}\,.$$

By assumption on $X$ and $G$ and using prop. 6.3.43 we have that $X$, $\bar{W}G$ and $WG$ are all good simplicial spaces. This means that the degeneracy maps of $P_\bullet$ are induced degreewise by morphisms between pullbacks in $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{cgH}}$ that are degreewise closed cofibrations, where one of the morphisms in each pullback is a fibration. This implies that also these degeneracy maps of $P_\bullet$ are closed cofibrations. □

**Proposition 6.3.46.** *The homotopy colimit operation*

$$\mathrm{sTop}_s \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{Top}_s^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \overset{\mathrm{hocolim}}{\to} \mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

*preserves homotopy fibers of morphisms $\tau \colon X \to \bar{W}G$ with $X$ good and $G$ well-pointed (def. 6.3.26) and globally Kan (def. 6.3.18).*

Proof. By prop. 6.3.19 and prop. 6.3.20 we have that $WG \to \bar{W}G$ is a fibration resolution of the point inclusion $* \to \bar{W}G$ in $[\mathrm{Top}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. By general properties of homotopy limits this means that the homotopy fiber of a morphism $\tau \colon X \to \bar{W}G$ is computed as the ordinary pullback $P$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \longrightarrow & WG \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{\tau} & \bar{W}G \end{array}$$

(since all objects $X$, $\bar{W}G$ and $WG$ are fibrant and at least one of the two morphisms in the pullback diagram is a fibration) and hence

$$\mathrm{hofib}(\tau) \simeq P\,.$$

By prop. 6.3.19 and prop. 6.3.45 it follows that all objects here are good simplicial topological spaces. Therefore by prop. 6.3.27 we have

$$\mathrm{hocolim} P_\bullet \simeq |P_\bullet|$$

in $\mathrm{Ho}(\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}})$. By prop. 6.3.25 we have that

$$\cdots = |X_\bullet| \times_{|\bar{W}G|} |WG|\,.$$

But prop. 6.3.44 says that this is again the presentation of a homotopy pullback/homotopy fiber by an ordinary pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} |P| & \longrightarrow & |WG| \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ |X| & \xrightarrow{\tau} & |\bar{W}G| \end{array} ,$$

because $|WG| \to |\bar{W}G|$ is again a fibration resolution of the point inclusion. Therefore

$$\mathrm{hocolim} P_\bullet \simeq \mathrm{hofib}(|\tau|)\,.$$

Finally by prop. 6.3.27 and using the assumption that $X$ and $\bar{W}G$ are both good, this is

$$\cdots \simeq \mathrm{hofib}(\mathrm{hocolim}\tau)\,.$$

In total we have shown

$$\mathrm{hocolim}(\mathrm{hofib}(\tau)) \simeq \mathrm{hofib}(\mathrm{hocolim}(\tau))\,.$$

□

We now generalize the model of *discrete* principal $\infty$-bundles by simplicial principal bundles over simplicial groups, from 6.2.4, to Euclidean-topological cohesion.

Recall from prop. 4.1.35 that over any $\infty$-cohesive site $\Pi$ preserves homotopy pullbacks over discrete objects. The following proposition says that on $\mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ it preserves also a large class of $\infty$-pullbacks over non-discrete objects.

**Theorem 6.3.47.** *Let $G$ be a well-pointed simplicial group object in* TopMfd *which degreewise admits a good open cover. Then the $\infty$-functor $\Pi : \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ preserves homotopy fibers of all morphisms of the form $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ that are presented in $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ by morphism of the form $X \to \bar{W}G$ with $X$ fibrant*

$$\Pi(\mathrm{hofib}(X \to \bar{W}G)) \simeq \mathrm{hofib}(\Pi(X \to \bar{W}G))\,.$$

Proof. By prop. 5.1.9 we may discuss the homotopy fiber in the global model structure on simplicial presheaves. Write $QX \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} X$ for the global cofibrant resolution given by $QX : [n] \mapsto \coprod_{\{U_{i_0} \to \cdots \to U_{i_n} \to X_n\}} U_{i_0}$, where the $U_{i_k}$ range over $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$ [Dug01]. This has degeneracies splitting off as direct summands, and hence is a good simplicial topological space that is degreewise in TopMfd. Consider then the pasting of two pullback diagrams of simplicial presheaves

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} P' & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & P & \longrightarrow & WG \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ QX & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X & \longrightarrow & \bar{W}G \end{array}\,.$$

Here the top left morphism is a global weak equivalence because $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ is right proper. Since the square on the right is a pullback of fibrant objects with one morphism being a fibration, $P$ is a presentation of the homotopy fiber of $X \to \bar{W}G$. Hence so is $P'$, which is moreover the pullback of a diagram of good simplicial spaces. By prop. 6.3.30 we have that on the outer diagram $\Pi$ is presented by geometric realization of simplicial topological spaces $|-|$. By prop. 6.3.44 we have a pullback in $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} |P| & \longrightarrow & |WG| \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ |QX| & \longrightarrow & |\bar{W}G| \end{array}$$

which exhibits $|P|$ as the homotopy fiber of $|QX| \to |\bar{W}G|$. But this is a model for $|\Pi(X \to \bar{W}G)|$. □

### 6.3.10 Gerbes

We discuss $\infty$-gerbes, 5.1.19, in the context of Euclidean-topological cohesion, with respect to the cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H} := \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ from def. 6.3.3.

For $X \in \mathrm{TopMfd}$ write

$$\mathcal{X} := \mathbf{H}/X$$

for the slice of $\mathbf{H}$ over $X$, as in remark 5.1.177. This is equivalently the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-sheaves on $X$ itself

$$\mathcal{X} \simeq \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)\,.$$

By remark 5.1.177 this comes with the canonical étale essential geometric morphism

$$(X_! \dashv X^* \dashv X_*) : \mathbf{H}/X \underset{X_*}{\overset{X_!}{\underset{\longleftarrow X^* -}{\longrightarrow}}} \mathbf{H}\,.$$

Any topological group $G$ is naturally an object $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H}) \subset \infty\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ and hence as an object

$$X^* G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})\,.$$

Under the identification $\mathcal{X} \simeq \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(X)$ this is the sheaf of grpups which assigns sets of continuous functions from open subsets of $X$ to $G$:

$$X^*G : (U \subset X) \mapsto C(U, G) .$$

Since the inverse image $X^*$ commutes with looping and delooping, we have

$$X^*\mathbf{B}G \simeq \mathbf{B}X^*G .$$

On the left $\mathbf{B}G$ is the abstract stack of topological $G$-principal bundles, regarded over $X$, on the right is the stack over $X$ of $X^*G$-torsors.

More generally, an arbitrary group object $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathcal{X})$ is (up to equivalence) any sheaf of groups on $X$, and $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathcal{X}$ is the corresponding stack of $G$-torsors over $X$. (A detailed discussion of these is for instance in [Br06]. )

**Definition 6.3.48.** Let $G = U(1) := \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 1$. Write $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1) \in \infty\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ for the topological *circle $n$-group*.

A $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$-$n$-gerbe we call a *circle $n$-gerbe*.

**Proposition 6.3.49.** *The automorphism $\infty$-groups, def. 5.1.155, of the circle $n$-groups, def. 6.3.48, are given by the following crossed complexes (def. 1.2.97)*

$$\mathrm{AUT}(U(1)) \simeq [U(1) \stackrel{0}{\to} \mathbb{Z}_2] ,$$

$$\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}U(1)) \simeq [U(1) \stackrel{0}{\to} U(1) \stackrel{0}{\to} \mathbb{Z}_2] .$$

*Here $\mathbb{Z}_2$ acts on the $U(1)$ by the canonical action via $\mathbb{Z}_2 \simeq \mathrm{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(U(1))$.*

*The outer automorphism $\infty$-groups, def. 5.1.336 are*

$$\mathrm{Out}(U(1)) \simeq \mathbb{Z}_2 ;$$

$$\mathrm{Out}(\mathbf{B}U(1)) \simeq [U(1) \stackrel{0}{\to} \mathbb{Z}_2] .$$

*Hence both $\infty$-groups are, of course, their own center.*

With prop. 5.1.333 it follows that

$$\pi_0 U(1)\mathrm{Gerbe}(X) \simeq H^1(X, [U(1) \stackrel{0}{\to} \mathbb{Z}_2)$$

$$\pi_0 \mathbf{B}U(1)\mathrm{Gerbe}(X) \simeq H^1(X, [U(1) \stackrel{0}{\to} U(1) \stackrel{0}{\to} \mathbb{Z}_2) .$$

Notice that this classification is different (is richer) than that of $U(1)$ *bundle gerbes* and $U(1)$ *bundle 2-gerbes*. These are really models for $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-principal 2-bundles and $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$-principal 3-bundles on $X$, and hence instead have the classification of prop. 5.1.207:

$$\pi_0 \mathbf{B}U(1)\mathrm{Bund}(X) \simeq H^1(X, [U(1) \to 1]) \simeq H^2(X, U(1)) ,$$

$$\pi_0 \mathbf{B}^2U(1)\mathrm{Bund}(X) \simeq H^1(X, [U(1) \to 1 \to 1]) \simeq H^3(X, U(1)) .$$

Alternatively, this is the classification of the $U(1)$-1-gerbes and $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-2-gerbes with trivial *band*, def. 5.1.340, in $H^1(X, \mathrm{Out}(U(1)))$ and $H^1(X, \mathrm{Out}(\mathbf{B}U(1)))$.

$$\pi_0 U(1)\mathrm{Gerbe}_{* \in H^1(X, \mathrm{Out}(U(1)))}(X) \simeq H^2(X, U(1)) ,$$

$$\pi_0 \mathbf{B}U(1)\mathrm{Gerbe}_{* \in H^1(X, \mathrm{Out}(U(1)))}(X) \simeq H^3(X, U(1)) .$$

### 6.3.11 Extensions, Obstructions and Twisted Bundles

We discuss realizations of the general abstract theory of extensions, obstructions and twisted bundles, 5.1.18, in Euclidean-topological cohesion.

**Example 6.3.50** (projective representations)**.** Let $K$ be a field, $V$ be a $K$-vector space. Write $\mathrm{GL}(V)$ for the general linear group of $V$ and $\mathrm{PGL}(V) = \mathrm{GL}(V)/K^\times$ for its projective group, where $K^\times = K - \{0\}$ is the group of units in $K$. Then the traditional short exact sequence

$$1 \to K^\times \longrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(V) \longrightarrow \mathrm{PGL}(V) \to 1$$

classified by a group 2-cocycle $[\mathbf{c}] \in H^2_{\mathrm{Grp}}(\mathrm{PGL}(V), K^\times)$ is reflected in a homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\mathbf{B}K^\times \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(V) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{PGL}(V) \stackrel{\mathbf{c}}{\longrightarrow} \mathbf{B}^2 K^\times \;.$$

Applying prop. 5.1.312 to this situation with $X = \mathbf{B}G$ the delooping of any other group reproduces the classical statement that projective representation $\rho$ of $G$ induce linear representations $\hat\rho$ of the central extension $\hat G$ of $G$ which is classified by $\mathbf{c}(\rho)$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
K^\times & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\hat G & \stackrel{\hat\rho}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL} & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow && \downarrow && \downarrow && \downarrow \\
* & \stackrel{x}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}G & \stackrel{\rho}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}\hat G & \stackrel{\mathbf{c}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}G.
\end{array}$$

with the composite $\mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}(\rho)} \mathbf{B}G$ along the bottom row.

### 6.3.12 Universal coverings and geometric Whitehead towers

We discuss geometric Whitehead towers (5.2.5) in ETop∞Grpd.

**Proposition 6.3.51.** *Let $X$ be a pointed paracompact topological space that admits a good open cover. Then its ordinary Whitehead tower $X^{(\infty)} \to \cdots X^{(2)} \to X^{(1)} \to X^{(0)} = X$ in* Top *coincides with the image under the intrinsic fundamental $\infty$-groupoid functor $|\Pi(-)|$ of its geometric Whitehead tower $* \to \cdots X^{(\mathbf{2})} \to X^{(\mathbf{1})} \to X^{(\mathbf{0})} = X$ in* ETop∞Grpd*:*

$$\begin{aligned} |\Pi(-)| : (X^{(\infty)} \to \cdots X^{(\mathbf{2})} \to X^{(\mathbf{1})} \to X^{(\mathbf{0})} = X) &\in \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \\ \mapsto (* \to \cdots X^{(2)} \to X^{(1)} \to X^{(0)} = X) &\in \mathrm{Top} \end{aligned} .$$

Proof. The geometric Whitehead tower is characterized for each $n$ by the fiber sequence

$$X^{(\mathbf{n})} \to X^{(\mathbf{n-1})} \to \mathbf{B}^n \textstyle\int_n(X) \to \int_n(X) \to \int_{(n-1)}(X)\,.$$

By the above prop. 6.3.29 we have that $\int_n(X) \simeq \mathrm{Disc}(\mathrm{Sing}X)$. Since Disc is right adjoint and hence preserves homotopy fibers this implies that $\mathbf{B}\int_n(X) \simeq \mathbf{B}^n \mathrm{Disc}\pi_n(X)$, where $\pi_n(X)$ is the ordinary $n$th homotopy group of the pointed topological space $X$.

Then by prop. 6.3.47 we have that under $|\Pi(-)|$ the space $X^{(\mathbf{n})}$ maps to the homotopy fiber of $|\Pi(X^{(\mathbf{n-1})})| \to B^n|\mathrm{Disc}\pi_n(X)| = B^n\pi_n(X)$.

By induction over $n$ this implies the claim. □

## 6.4 Smooth homotopy types

We discuss *smooth* cohesion.

After discussing the construction in

- 6.4.1 – Construction

we discuss the various general abstract structures in a cohesive $\infty$-topos, 5.2, realized in Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

- 6.4.2 – Concrete objects
- 6.4.3 – Groups
- 6.4.4 – Groupoids
- 6.4.5 – Geometric homotopy
- 6.4.6 – Cohomology
- 6.4.7 – Principal bundles
- 6.4.8 – Group representations
- 6.4.9 – Associated bundles
- 6.4.10 – Sections of associated bundles and Twisted bundles
- 6.4.11 – Reduction of structure groups
- 6.4.12 – Flat connections and local systems
- 6.4.13 – de Rham cohomology
- 6.4.14 – Exponentiated Lie algebras
- 6.4.15 – Maurer-Cartan forms and curvature characteristic forms
- 6.4.16 – Differential cohomology
- 6.4.17 – Chern-Weil homomorphism
- 6.4.18 – Holonomy
- 6.4.19 – Chern-Simons functionals
- 6.4.20 – Wess-Zumino-Witten functionals
- 6.4.21 – Prequantum geometry

### 6.4.1 Construction

**Definition 6.4.1.** Write SmoothMfd for the category whose objects are smooth manifolds that are

- finite-dimensional;
- paracompact;
- with arbitrary set of connected components;

and whose morphisms are smooth functions between these.

Notice the evident forgetful functor

$$i : \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \to \mathrm{TopMfd}$$

to the category of topological manifolds, from def. 6.3.6.

**Definition 6.4.2.** For $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$, say an open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ is a *differentiably good open cover* if each non-empty finite intersection of the $U_i$ is *diffeomorphic* to a Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$.

**Proposition 6.4.3.** *Every paracompact smooth manifold admits a differentiably good open cover.*

Proof. This is a folk theorem. A detailed proof is in the appendix of [FSS10]. □

Notice that the statement here is a bit stronger than the familiar statement about topologically good open covers, where the intersections are only required to be homeomorphic to a ball.

**Definition 6.4.4.** Regard SmoothMfd as a large site equipped with the coverage of differentiably good open covers. Write $\mathrm{SmoothCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$ for the full sub-site on Cartesian spaces.

**Proposition 6.4.5.** *Differentiably good open covers do indeed define a coverage and the Grothendieck topology generated from it is the standard open cover topology.*

Proof. For $X$ a paracompact smooth manifold, $\{U_i \to X\}$ an open cover and $f : Y \to X$ any smooth function from a paracompact manifold $Y$, the inverse images $\{f^{-1}(U_i) \to Y\}$ form an open cover of $Y$. Since $\coprod_i f^{-1}(U_1)$ is itself a paracompact smooth manifold, there is a differentiably good open cover $\{K_j \to \coprod_i U_i\}$, hence a differentiably good open cover $\{K_j \to Y\}$ such that for all $j$ there is an $i(j)$ such that we have a commuting square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K_j & \longrightarrow & U_{i(j)} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y & \xrightarrow{f} & X \end{array} \; .$$

□

**Proposition 6.4.6.** SmoothCartSp *is an $\infty$-cohesive site.*

Proof. By the same kind of argument as in prop. 6.3.2. □

**Definition 6.4.7.** The $\infty$-topos of *smooth $\infty$-groupoids* is the $\infty$-sheaf $\infty$-topos on SmoothCartSp:

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}) \,.$$

Since SmoothCartSp is similar to the site $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$ from def. 6.3.1, various properties of Smooth$\infty$Grpd are immediate analogs of the corresponding properties of ETop$\infty$Grpd from def. 6.3.3.

**Proposition 6.4.8.** Smooth$\infty$Grpd *is a cohesive $\infty$-topos.*

Proof. With prop. 6.4.6 this follows by prop. 4.1.32. □

**Proposition 6.4.9.** Smooth$\infty$Grpd *is equivalent to the hypercompletion of the $\infty$-sheaf $\infty$-topos over* SmoothMfd*:*

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \hat{\mathrm{Sh}}_\infty(\mathrm{SmoothMfd}) \,.$$

Proof. Observe that SmoothCartSp is a small dense sub-site of SmoothMfd. With this the claim follows as in prop. 6.3.7. □

**Corollary 6.4.10.** *The canonical embedding of smooth manifolds as 0-truncated objects of* Smooth∞Grpd *extends to a full and faithful ∞-functor*

$$\mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}.$$

Proof. With prop. 6.4.9 this follows from the ∞-Yoneda lemma. □

**Remark 6.4.11.** By example 3.1.25 there is an equivalence of ∞-categories

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq L_W \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}},$$

where on the right we have the simplicial localization of the category of simplicial smooth manifolds (with arbitrary set of connected components) at the stalkwise weak equivalences.

This says that every smooth ∞-groupoid has a presentation by a simplicial smooth manifold (not in general a locally Kan simplicial manifold, though) and that this identification is even homotopy-full and faithful.

Consider the canonical forgetful functor

$$i : \mathrm{SmoothCartSp} \to \mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$$

to the site of definition for the cohesive ∞-topos ETop∞Grpd of Euclidean-topological ∞-groupoids, def. 6.3.3.

**Proposition 6.4.12.** *The functor $i$ extends to an essential geometric morphism*

$$(i_! \dashv i^* \dashv i_*) : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \underset{i_*}{\overset{i_!}{\underset{\xleftarrow{\;i^*\;}}{\rightrightarrows}}} \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

*such that the ∞-Yoneda embedding is factored through the induced inclusion* $\mathrm{SmoothMfd} \overset{i}{\hookrightarrow} \mathrm{Mfd}$ *as*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{SmoothMfd} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \\ \downarrow^{i} & & \downarrow^{i_!} \\ \mathrm{Mfd} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \end{array}$$

Proof. Using the observation that $i$ preserves coverings and pullbacks along morphism in covering families, the proof follows the steps of the proof of prop. 4.2.3. □

**Corollary 6.4.13.** *The essential global section ∞-geometric morphism of* Smooth∞Grpd *factors through that of* ETop∞Grpd

$$(\Pi_{\mathrm{Smooth}} \dashv \mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{Smooth}} \dashv \Gamma_{\mathrm{Smooth}}) : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \underset{i_*}{\overset{i_!}{\underset{\xleftarrow{\;i^*\;}}{\rightrightarrows}}} \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \underset{\Gamma_{\mathrm{ETop}}}{\overset{\Pi_{\mathrm{ETop}}}{\underset{\xleftarrow{\;\mathrm{Disc}_{\mathrm{ETop}}\;}}{\rightrightarrows}}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

Proof. This follows from the essential uniqueness of the global section ∞-geometric morphism, prop 3.1.7, and of adjoint ∞-functors. □

The functor $i_!$ here is the forgetful functor that *forgets smooth structure* and only *remembers Euclidean topology-structure.*

### 6.4.2 Concrete objects

We discuss the general notion of *concrete objects* in a cohesive $\infty$-topos, 5.2.2, realized in Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

The following definition generalizes the notion of smooth manifold and has been used as a convenient context for differential geometry. It goes back to [So79] and, in a slight variant, to [Chen77]. The formulation of differential geometry in this context is carefully exposed in [Ig-Z13]. The sheaf-theoretic formulation of the definition that we state is amplified in [BaHo09].

**Definition 6.4.14.** A sheaf $X$ on SmoothCartSp is a *diffeological space* if it is a *concrete sheaf* in the sense of [Dub79]: if for every $U \in$ SmoothCartSp the canonical function

$$X(U) \simeq \mathrm{Sh}(U, X) \xrightarrow{\Gamma} \mathrm{Set}(\Gamma(U), \Gamma(X))$$

is an injection.

The following observations are due to [CaSc].

**Proposition 6.4.15.** *Write* $\mathrm{Conc}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})_{\leq 0}$ *for the full subcategory on the 0-truncated concrete objects, according to def. 5.2.8. This is equivalent to the full subcategory of* Sh(SmoothCartSp) *on the diffeological spaces:*

$$\mathrm{DiffeolSpace} \simeq \mathrm{Conc}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})_{\leq 0}\,.$$

Proof. Let $X \in \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be a sheaf. The condition for it to be a concrete object according to def. 5.2.8 is that the $(\Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc})$-unit

$$X \to \mathrm{coDisc}\Gamma X$$

is a monomorphism. Since monomorphisms of sheaves are detected objectwise this is equivalent to the statement that for all $U \in$ SmoothCartSp the morphism

$$X(U) \simeq \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(U, X) \to \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(U, \mathrm{coDisc}\Gamma X) \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Gamma U, \Gamma X)$$

is a monomorphism of sets, where in the first step we used the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma and in the last one the $(\Gamma \dashv \mathrm{coDisc})$-adjunction. This is manifestly the defining condition for concrete sheaves that define diffeological spaces. □

**Corollary 6.4.16.** *The canonical embedding* SmoothMfd $\hookrightarrow$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd *from prop. 6.4.10 factors through diffeological spaces: we have a sequence of full and faithful* $\infty$*-functors*

$$\mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{DiffeolSpace} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

**Definition 6.4.17.** Write DiffeolGrpd $\hookrightarrow$ SmoothGrpd for the full sub-$\infty$-category on those smooth $\infty$-groupoids that are represented by a groupoid object internal to diffeological spaces.

**Proposition 6.4.18.** *There is a canonical equivalence*

$$\mathrm{DiffeolGrpd} \simeq \mathrm{Conc}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})_{\leq 1}$$

*identifying diffeological groupoids with the concrete 1-truncated smooth* $\infty$*-groupoids.*

Proof. By definition, an object $X \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd is concrete precisely if there exists a 0-concrete object $U$, and an effective epimorphism $U \to X$ such that $U \times_X U$ is itself 0-concrete. By prop. 6.4.15 both $U$ and $U \times_X U$ are equivalent to diffeological spaces. Therefore the groupoid object $( U \times_X U \rightrightarrows U )$ internal to Smooth$\infty$Grpd comes from a groupoid object internal to diffeological spaces. By Giraud's axioms for $\infty$-toposes, $X$ is equivalent to (the $\infty$-colimit over) this groupoid object:

$$X \simeq \varinjlim ( U \times_X U \rightrightarrows U )\,.$$

□

### 6.4.3 Groups

We discuss some cohesive $\infty$-group objects, according to 5.1.9, in Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

Let $G \in$ SmoothMfd be a Lie group. Under the embedding SmoothMfd $\hookrightarrow$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd this is canonically identifed as a 0-truncated $\infty$-group object in Smooth$\infty$Grpd. Write $\mathbf{B}G \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd for the corresponding delooping object.

**Proposition 6.4.19.** *A fibrant presentation of the delooping object* $\mathbf{B}G$ *in the projective local model structure on simplicial presheaves* $[\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{smooth}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ *is given by the simplicial presheaf that is the nerve of the one-object Lie groupoid*

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} := (G \overset{\to}{\to} *)$$

*regarded as a simplicial manifold and canonically embedded into simplicial presheaves:*

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} : U \mapsto N(C^\infty(U, G) \overset{\to}{\to} *)\,.$$

Proof. This is essentially a special case of prop. 6.3.13. The presheaf is clearly objectwise a Kan complex, being objectwise the nerve of a groupoid. It satisfies descent along good open covers $\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^n\}$ of Cartesian spaces, because the descent $\infty$-groupoid $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}G)$ is $\cdots \simeq G\mathrm{Bund}(\mathbb{R}^n) \simeq G\mathrm{TrivBund}(\mathbb{R}^n)$: an object is a Čech 1-cocycle with coefficients in $G$, a morphism a Čech coboundary. This yields the groupoid of $G$-principal bundles over $U$, which for the Cartesian space $U$ is however equivalent to the groupoid of trivial $G$-bundles over $U$.

To show that $\mathbf{B}G$ is indeed the delooping object of $G$ it is sufficient by prop. 5.1.9 to compute the $\infty$-pullback $G \simeq * \times_{\mathbf{B}G} * \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd in the global model structure $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. This is accomplished by the ordinary pullback of the fibrant replacement diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & N(G \times G \underset{p_1}{\overset{p_1 \cdot p_2}{\rightrightarrows}} G) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{p_2} \\ * & \longrightarrow & N(G \overset{\to}{\to} *) \end{array}\,.$$

□

**Proposition 6.4.20.** *For $G$ a Lie group,* $\mathbf{B}G$ *is a 1-concrete object in* $\mathbf{H}$.

Proof. Since $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is fibrant in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ and since $G$ presents a concrete sheaf, this follows with prop. 5.2.12. □

**Definition 6.4.21.** Write equivalently

$$U(1) = S^1 = \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$$

for the *circle Lie group*, regarded as a 0-truncated $\infty$-group object in Smooth$\infty$Grpd under the embedding prop. 6.4.10.

For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the $n$-fold delooping $\mathbf{B}^n U(1) \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd we call the circle *Lie* $(n+1)$*-group*.

Write

$$U(1)[n] := [\cdots \to 0 \to C^\infty(-, U(1)) \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0] \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Ch}_{\bullet \geq 0}]$$

for the chain complex of sheaves concentrated in degree $n$ on $U(1)$. Recall the right Quillen functor $\Xi : [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{op}, \mathrm{Ch}^+]_{\mathrm{proj}} \to [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ from prop. 3.1.35.

**Proposition 6.4.22.** *The simplicial presheaf* $\Xi(U(1)[n])$ *is a fibrant representative in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ *of the circle Lie* $(n+1)$*-group* $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$.

Proof. First notice that since $U(1)[n]$ is fibrant in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Ch}_\bullet]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ we have that $\Xi U(1)[n]$ is fibrant in the global model structure $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. By prop. 5.1.9 we may compute the $\infty$-pullback that defines the loop space object in Smooth$\infty$Grpd in terms of a homotopy pullback in this global model structure.

To that end, consider the global fibration resolution of the point inclusion $* \to \Xi(U(1)[n])$ given under $\Xi$ by the morphism of chain complexes

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} [C^\infty(-,U(1)) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Id}} & C^\infty(-,U(1)) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0] \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{Id}} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\ [C^\infty(-,U(1)) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0] \end{array} .$$

The underlying morphism of chain complexes is clearly degreewise surjective, hence a projective fibration, hence its image under $\Xi$ is a projective fibration. Therefore the homotopy pullback in question is given by the ordinary pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Xi[0 \to C^\infty(-,U(1)) \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0] & \longrightarrow & \Xi[C^\infty(-,U(1)) \stackrel{\mathrm{Id}}{\to} C^\infty(-,U(1)) \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Xi[0 \to 0 \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0] & \longrightarrow & \Xi[C^\infty(-,U(1)) \to 0 \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0] \end{array} ,$$

computed in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Ch}^+]$ and then using that $\Xi$ is the right adjoint and hence preserves pullbacks. This shows that the loop object $\Omega\Xi(U(1)[n])$ is indeed presented by $\Xi(U(1)[n-1])$.

Now we discuss the fibrancy of $U(1)[n]$ in the local model structure. We need to check that for all differentiably good open covers $\{U_i \to U\}$ of a Cartesian space $U$ we have that the mophism

$$C^\infty(U, U(1))[n] \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \Xi(U(1)[n]))$$

is an equivalence of Kan complexes, where $C(\{U_i\})$ is the Čech nerve of the cover. Observe that the Kan complex on the right is that whose vertices are cocycles in degree-$n$ Čech cohomology (see [FSS10] for more on this) with coefficients in $U(1)$ and whose morphisms are coboundaries between these.

We proceed by induction on $n$. For $n = 0$ the condition is just that $C^\infty(-, U(1))$ is a sheaf, which clearly it is. For general $n$ we use that since $C(\{U_i\})$ is cofibrant, the above is the derived hom-space functor which commutes with homotopy pullbacks and hence with forming loop space objects, so that

$$\pi_1[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \Xi(U(1)[n])) \simeq \pi_0[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \Xi(U(1)[n-1]))$$

by the above result on delooping. So we find that for all $0 \leq k \leq n$ that $\pi_k[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \Xi(U(1)[n]))$ is the Čech cohomology of $U$ with coefficients in $U(1)$ in degree $n-k$. By standard facts about Čech cohomology (using the short exact sequence of abelian groups $\mathbb{Z} \to U(1) \to \mathbb{R}$ and the fact that the cohomology with coefficients in $\mathbb{R}$ vanishes in positive degree, for instance by a partition of unity argument) we have that this is given by the integral cohomology groups

$$\pi_0[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \Xi(U(1)[n])) \simeq H^{n+1}(U, \mathbb{Z})$$

for $n \geq 1$. For the contractible Cartesian space all these cohomology groups vanish.

So we find that $\Xi(U(1)[n])(U)$ and $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \Xi U(1)[n])$ both have homotopy groups concentrated in degree $n$ on $U(1)$. The above looping argument together with the fact that $U(1)$ is a sheaf also shows that the morphism in question is an isomorphism on this degree-$n$ homotopy group, hence is indeed a weak homotopy equivalence. □

Notice that in the equivalent presentation of Smooth∞Grpd by simplicial presheaves on the large site SmoothMfd the objects $\Xi(U(1)[n])$ are far from being locally fibrant. Instead, their locally fibrant replacements are given by the $n$-stacks of circle $n$-bundles.

### 6.4.4 Groupoids

We discuss aspects of the general abstract theory of *groupoid objects*, 5.1.8, realized in the context of smooth cohesion.

**6.4.4.1 Group of bisections** We discuss the general notion of groups of bisections of 5.1.8.1.2, realized in smooth cohesion.

Let

$$X = \; X_1 \rightrightarrows X_0 \; \in \mathrm{Grpd}(\mathrm{SmoothMfd}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

be a Lie groupoid, regarded canonically as smooth ∞-groupoid and equipped with the atlas given by the canonical inclusion

$$i_X : \; X_0 \twoheadrightarrow X$$

of the manifold of objcts.

**Proposition 6.4.23.** *The group of bisections* $\mathbf{BiSect}_X(X_0) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ *of this groupoid object, according to def, 5.1.131, is equivalent to the traditional diffeological group of bisections of Lie groupoid theory and the canonical morphism of def. 5.1.133.*

Proof. First observe that the hom-groupoid $\mathbf{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_X(X_0, X_0)$ is equivalently given by that of $\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathrm{SmoothMfd})_{/X}(X_0, X_0)$. This follows for instance from prop. 5.1.33, according to which we have a homotopy pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{/X}(U \times X_0, X_0) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(U \times X_0, X_0) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{H}(U \times X_0, i_X)} \\ * & \xrightarrow{\vdash i_X} & \mathbf{H}(U \times X_0, X) \end{array}$$

for each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. Here the top right morphism set is equivalent to $\mathrm{SmoothMfd}(U \times X_0, X_0)$. The bottom right morphism set is a priori given by morphisms out of the Cech nerve of a good open over of $U \times X_0$. But since the right and bottom morphism both hit elements in there which come from direct maps out of $U \times X_0$, also the gauge transformations between them are given by globally defined smooth functions $U \times X_0 \to X_1$.

With this now it remains to observe that a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U \times X_0 & \xrightarrow{\phi} & X_0 \\ & \swarrow\!\!\!\!\swarrow & \\ {}_{i_X}\searrow & & \swarrow_{i_X} \\ & X_0 & \end{array}$$

of smooth groupoids is equivalently

1. a smoothly $U$-paramaterized collection of smooth function $\phi_u : X_0 \to X_0$;
2. for each such a smooth choice of morphisms $x \to \phi(x)$ in $X_1$for all $x \in x_0$.

This is precisely the traditional description of the group of bisections of $X$. □

**6.4.4.2 Atiyah groupoids** We discuss the general notion of Atiyah groupoids, 5.1.8.1.3, realized in smooth cohesion.

Let $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Top}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ be a Lie group, and write $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ for its internal delooping, as in 6.4.3 above. Let $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be a smooth manifold. Let $P \to X$ be any $G$-principal bundle over $X$ and write $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ for the, essentially unique, morphism that modulates it (discussed in more detail in 6.4.7 below).

The following definition is traditional

**Definition 6.4.24.** The *Atiyah Lie groupoid* of the $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$ is the Lie groupoid

$$\mathrm{At}(P) := \left( P \times_G P \rightrightarrows X \right),$$

with composition defined by the evident composition of pairs of representatives. $[s_2, s_3] \circ [s_1, s_2] := [s_1, s_3]$.

**Remark 6.4.25.** Here $P \times_{U(1)} P = (P \times P)/U(1)$ is the quotient of the cartesian product of the total space of the bundle with itself by the diagonal action of $G$ on both factors. So if $(x_1, x_2) \in X \times X$ is fixed then the morphisms in $\mathrm{At}(P)_{x_1,x_2}$ with this source and target form the space $(P_{x_1} \times P_{x_2})/G$. But this is canonically isomorphic to the space of $G$-torsor homomorphisms (over the point) $P_{x_1} \to P_{x_2}$:

$$\mathrm{At}(P)_{x_1,x_2} = G\mathrm{Tor}(P_{x_1}, P_{x_2}).$$

We now discuss that this traditional construction is indeed a special case of the general discussion in 5.1.8.1.3.

**Proposition 6.4.26.** *For $P \to X$ a smooth $G$-principal bundle with modulating map $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ as above, its Atiyah groupoid in* Smooth∞Grpd *in the sense of def. 5.1.140 is canonically represented by the traditional Atiyah groupoid construction of def. 6.4.24, under the canonical embedding* LieGrpd → Smooth∞Grpd.

Proof. By prop. 5.1.70 we have that $\mathrm{im}_1(g)$ is given by the $\infty$-colimit over its Čech nerve. Since $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is 0-truncated and $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is 1-truncated, this Čech nerve is given by a 2-coskeletal simplicial smooth manifold:

$$\mathrm{im}_1(g) \simeq \varinjlim \left( \cdots \substack{\longrightarrow\\\longrightarrow\\\longrightarrow} X \underset{\mathbf{B}G}{\times} X \rightrightarrows X \right).$$

Therefore by prop. 5.1.17 this simplicial diagram, regarded under the embedding $\mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \to \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, is equivalently the 1-image of $g$. It is then sufficient to observe that

$$X \underset{\mathbf{B}G}{\times} X \simeq P \times_G P.$$

To see this, observe that (since the $\infty$-hom functor $\mathbf{H}(U, -)$ preserves homotopy limits) for every $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the $U$-plots of the object on the left are equivalently pairs of smooth functions $r, l : U \to X$ equipped with a morphism of $G$-principal bundles $l^*P \to r^*P$. By remark 6.4.25 this are equivalently the $U$-plots of $P \times_G P$. □

### 6.4.5 Geometric homotopy

We discuss the intrinsic fundamental $\infty$-groupoid construction, 5.2.3, and the induced notion of geometric realization, realized in Smooth∞Grpd.

- 6.4.5.1 – Geometric realization of simplicial smooth spaces;
- 6.4.5.2 – Co-Tensoring of smooth $\infty$-Stacks over homotopy-types of manifolds;
- 6.4.5.3 – Fundamental smooth path $\infty$-groupoids

#### 6.4.5.1 Geometric realization of simplicial smooth spaces

**Proposition 6.4.27.** *If* $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *is presented by* $X_\bullet \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, *then its image* $i_!(X) \in \mathrm{ETop}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *under the relative topological cohesion morphism, prop. 6.4.12, is presented by the underlying simplicial topological space* $X_\bullet \in \mathrm{TopMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$.

Proof. Let first $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$ be simplicially constant. Then there is a differentiably good open cover, 6.4.3, $\{U_i \to X\}$ such that the Čech nerve projection

$$\left(\int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} U_{i_0} \times_X \cdots \times_X U_{i_k}\right) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} X$$

is a cofibrant resolution in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ which is degreewise a coproduct of representables. That means that the left derived functor $\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Lan}_i$ on $X$ is computed by the application of $\mathrm{Lan}_i$ on this coend, which by the fact that this is defined to be the left Kan extension along $i$ is given degreewise by $i$, and since $i$ preserves pullbacks along covers, this is

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Lan}_i)X &\simeq \mathrm{Lan}_i\left(\int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} U_{i_0} \times_X \cdots \times_X U_{i_k}\right) \\
&= \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} \mathrm{Lan}_i(U_{i_0} \times_X \cdots \times_X U_{i_k}) \\
&\simeq \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} i(U_{i_0} \times_X \cdots \times_X U_{i_k}) \\
&\simeq \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \coprod_{i_0,\cdots,i_k} (i(U_{i_0}) \times_{i(X)} \cdots \times_{i(X)} i(U_{i_k})) \\
&\simeq i(X)
\end{aligned},$$

The last step follows from observing that we have manifestly the Čech nerve as before, but now of the underlying topological spaces of the $\{U_i\}$ and of $X$.

The claim then follows for general simplicial spaces by observing that $X_\bullet = \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot X_k \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ presents the $\infty$-colimit over $X_\bullet : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ and the left adjoint $\infty$-functor $i_!$ preserves these. □

**Corollary 6.4.28.** *If* $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *is presented by* $X_\bullet \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, *then the image of* $X$ *under the fundamental* $\infty$*-groupoid functor, 5.2.3,*

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xrightarrow{\Pi} \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \underset{\simeq}{\xrightarrow{|-|}} \mathrm{Top}$$

*is weakly homotopy equivalent to the geometric realization of (a Reedy cofibrant replacement of) the underlying simplicial topological space*

$$|\Pi(X)| \simeq |QX_\bullet|\,.$$

*In particular if* $X$ *is an ordinary smooth manifold then*

$$\Pi(X) \simeq \mathrm{Sing}X$$

*is equivalent to the standard fundamental* $\infty$*-groupoid of* $X$.

Proof. By prop. 6.4.13 the functor $\Pi$ factors as $\Pi X \simeq \Pi_{\mathrm{ETop}} i_! X$. By prop. 6.4.27 this is $\Pi_{\mathrm{Etop}}$ applied to the underlying simplicial topological space. The claim then follows with prop. 6.3.30. □

**Remark 6.4.29.** The statement of prop. 6.4.28 generalizes to non-Hausdorff smooth manifolds. This strengthening of the statement is established in [Car15, thm. 1.1].

**Corollary 6.4.30.** *The* $\infty$*-functor* $\Pi : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *preserves homotopy fibers of morphisms that are presented in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ *by morphisms of the form* $X \to \bar{W}G$ *with* $X$ *fibrant and* $G$ *a simplicial group in* SmoothMfd.

Proof. By prop. 6.4.13 the functor factors as $\Pi_{\mathrm{Smooth}} \simeq \Pi_{\mathrm{ETop}} \circ i_!$. By prop. 6.4.27 $i_!$ assigns the underlying topological spaces. If we can show that this preserves the homotopy fibers in question, then the claim follows with prop. 6.3.47. We find this as in the proof of the latter proposition, by considering the pasting diagram of simplicial presheaves

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} P' & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & P & \longrightarrow & WG \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ QX & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & X & \longrightarrow & \bar{W}G \end{array} .$$

Since the component maps of the right vertical morphisms are surjective, the degreewise pullbacks in SmoothMfd that define $P'$ are all along transversal maps, and thus the underlying objects in TopMfd are the pullbacks of the underlying topological manifolds. Therefore the degreewise forgetful functor SmoothMfd $\to$ TopMfd presents $i_!$ on the outer diagram and sends this homotopy pullback to a homotopy pullback. □

### 6.4.5.2 Co-Tensoring of smooth $\infty$-Stacks over homotopy-types of manifolds

**Example 6.4.31.** There is a natural equivalence $[\Pi(S^1), X] \cong \mathcal{L}X$ between the moduli stack of maps from the homotopy-type of the circle $S^1$ to $X$ and the *free loop space object* of $X$. Namely, the free loop space object $\mathcal{L}X$ is defined as the homotopy pullback of its diagonal map along itself

$$\mathcal{L}X := X \underset{X \times X}{\times} X ,$$

i.e., as the object defined by the homotopy pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{L}X & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \Delta_X} \\ X & \xrightarrow[\Delta_X]{} & X \times X \end{array} .$$

One then notices that $S^1$ is obtained by gluing two segments (which are contractible) along their endpoints, which amount to saying that at the level of homotopy-types we have an equivalence

$$\Pi(S^1) \simeq * \coprod_{* \coprod *} * ,$$

and uses the fact that $[-, X]$ preserves homotopy limits. Here the top $\coprod$ denotes pushout, while the bottom one denotes disjoint union (itself viewed as an instance of a pushout). One can similarly see that the $\infty$-groupoid corresponding to the 2-sphere $S^2$ can be viewed as

$$\Pi(S^2) \simeq * \coprod_{* \coprod_{* \coprod *} *} * .$$

One can iterate in an obvious way to get the higher cases.

The above example immediately generalizes from circles to arbitrary $n$-spheres.

**Definition 6.4.32.** For $X$ an object in $\mathbf{H}$ and for $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the *free $n$-sphere space object* of $X$ is

$$[\Pi(S^n), X] .$$

An $(n+1)$-sphere is obtained by gluing two $(n+1)$-disks along their common boundary, which is an $n$-sphere. Since the disks are contractible, from a homotopy-type point of view, this amount to the natural equivalence

$$\Pi(S^{n+1}) \simeq * \coprod_{\Pi(S^n)} * .$$

Applying the internal homs to $X$ to this equivalence and recalling that $[-, X]$ preserves homotopy limits, one obtains the following result.

**Proposition 6.4.33.** *For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have a natural homotopy pullback square*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [\Pi(S^{n+1}), X] & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & [\Pi(S^n), X] \end{array} .$$

Proof. We may use that for all $n$ we have

$$\Pi(S^{n+1}) \simeq * \coprod_{\Pi(S^n)} * .$$

From this the statement follows by using that $[-, X] : \mathbf{H}^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathbf{H}$ preserves homotopy limits. The above statement is standard, one can see it for instance by presenting the situation in the standard model structure on simplicial sets, there replacing one of the maps from the $n$-sphere to the point by the cofibration given by the inclusion of the $n$-phere as the boundary of the $(n+1)$-disk, and finally computing the ordinary (1-categorical) cofiber of that. □

#### 6.4.5.3 Fundamental smooth path ∞-groupoids

We discuss the general abstract notion of path ∞-groupoid, 5.2.3, realized in *Smooth*∞Grpd.

The presentation of $\int(X)$ in ETop∞Grpd, 6.3.5.2 has a direct refinement to smooth cohesion:

Write

$$\Delta^\bullet_{\mathrm{smooth}} : \Delta \longrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

for the standard smooth simplices (smooth manifolds with boundary and corners) organized as a cosimplicial smooth manifold (with boundary and corners).

**Definition 6.4.34.** For $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$ write $\mathbf{Sing}X \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ for the simplicial presheaf given by

$$\mathbf{Sing}X := \underrightarrow{\lim}[\Delta^\bullet_{\mathrm{smooth}}, X] : (U, [k]) \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{SmoothMfd}}(U \times \Delta^k, X) .$$

**Proposition 6.4.35.** *The simplicial presheaf* $\mathbf{Sing}X$ *is a presentation of* $\int(X) \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

Proof. This reduces to the argument of prop. 6.3.33 after using the Steenrod approximation theorem [Wock09] to refine continuous paths to smooth paths □

This is actually true fully generally:

**Proposition 6.4.36.** *For any* $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *there is a natural equivalence*

$$\int X \simeq \varinjlim [\Delta^\bullet_{\mathrm{smooth}}, X]\,.$$

Proof. On the level of ∞-presheaves this is [BNV13, lemma 7.5]. That the ∞-presheaves of the form $\varinjlim[\Delta^\bullet_{\mathrm{smooth}}, X]$ are in fact ∞-sheaves is shown in [Pa]. □

### 6.4.6 Cohomology

We discuss the intrinsic cohomology, 5.1.10, in Smooth∞Grpd.

- 6.4.6.1 – Cohomology with constant coefficients;
- 6.4.6.2 – Refined Lie group cohomology.

#### 6.4.6.1 Cohomology with constant coefficients

**Proposition 6.4.37.** *Let* $A \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$*, write* $\mathrm{Disc}A \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *for the corresponding discrete smooth ∞-groupoid. Let* $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \stackrel{i}{\hookrightarrow} \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *be a paracompact topological space regarded as a 0-truncated Euclidean-topological ∞-groupoid.*

*We have an isomorphism of cohomology sets*

$$H_{\mathrm{Top}}(X, A) \simeq H_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(X, \mathrm{Disc}A)$$

*and in fact an equivalence of cocycle ∞-groupoids*

$$\mathrm{Top}(X, |A|) \simeq \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathrm{Disc}A)\,.$$

*More generally, for* $X_\bullet \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{op}}$ *presenting an object* $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *we have*

$$H_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(X_\bullet, \mathrm{Disc}A) \simeq H_{\mathrm{Top}}(|X|, |A|)\,.$$

Proof. This follows from the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-adjunction and prop. 6.4.28. □

**6.4.6.2 Refined Lie group cohomology** The cohomology of a Lie group $G$ with coefficients in a Lie group $A$ was historically originally defined in terms of cocycles given by smooth functions $G^{\times n} \to A$, by naive analogy with the situation discussed in 6.2.4.1. In the language of simplicial presheaves on CartSp these are morphisms of simplicial presheaves of the form $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \to \mathbf{B}^n A$, with the notation as in 6.4.3. This is clearly not a good definition, in general, since while $\mathbf{B}^n A$ will be fibrant in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, the object $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ in general fails to be cofibrant, hence the above naive definition in general misses cocycles.

A refined definition of Lie group cohomology was proposed in [Seg70] and later independently in [Bry00]. The following theorem asserts that the definitions given there do coincide with the intrinsic cohomology of the stack $\mathbf{B}G$ in the cohesive ∞-topos Smooth∞Grpd.

**Theorem 6.4.38.** *For* $G \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *a Lie group and* $A$ *either*

1. *a discrete abelian group*
2. *the additive Lie group of real numbers* $\mathbb{R}$

*the intrinsic cohomology of $G$ in* Smooth∞Grpd *coincides with the refined Lie group cohomology of Segal [Seg70][Bry00]*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}(\mathbf{B}G, A) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{Segal}}(G, A)\,.$$

*In particular we have in general*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{Top}}(BG, \mathbb{Z})$$

*and for $G$ compact and $n \geq 1$ also*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}(\mathbf{B}G, U(1)) \simeq H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{Top}}(BG, \mathbb{Z})\,.$$

Proof. The statement about constant coefficients is a special case of prop. 6.4.37. The statement about real coefficients is a special case of a more general statement in the context of formal smooth ∞-groupoids that will be proven as prop. 6.5.45. The last statement finally follows from this using that $H^n_{\mathrm{Segal}}(G, \mathbb{R}) \simeq 0$ for positive $n$ and $G$ compact and using the fiber sequence, def. 5.1.178, induced by the short sequence $\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z} \simeq U(1)$. □

### 6.4.7 Principal bundles

We discuss principal ∞-bundles, 5.1.11, realized in smooth ∞-groupoids.

The following proposition asserts that the notion of smooth principal ∞-bundle reproduces traditional notions of smooth bundles and smooth higher bundles.

**Proposition 6.4.39.** *For $G$ a Lie group and $X \in$* SmoothMfd*, we have that*

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \simeq G\mathrm{Bund}(X)$$

*is equivalent to the groupoid of smooth principal $G$-bundles and smooth morphisms between these, as traditionally defined, where the equivalence is established by sending a morphism $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ in* Smooth∞Grpd *to the corresponding principal ∞-bundle $P \to X$ according to prop. 5.1.196.*

*For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $G = \mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$ the circle Lie $n$-group, def. 6.4.21, and $X \in$* SmoothMfd*, we have that*

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \simeq U(1)(n-1)\mathrm{BundGerb}(X)$$

*is equivalent to the $n$-groupoid of smooth $U(1)$-bundle $(n-1)$gerbes.*

Proof. Presenting Smooth∞Grpd by the local projective model structure $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ on simplicial presheaves over the site of Cartesian spaces, we have that $\mathbf{B}G$ is fibrant, by prop. 6.4.19, and that a cofibrant replacement for $X$ is given by the Čech nerve $C(\{U_i\})$ of any differentiably good open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$. The cocycle ∞-groupoid in question is then presented by the simplicial set $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}G)$ and this is readily seen to be the groupoid of Čech cocycles with coefficients in $\mathbf{B}G$ relative to the chosen cover.

This establishes that the two groupoids are equivalent. That the equivalence is indeed established by forming homotopy fibers of morphisms has been discussed in 1.2.6 (observing that by the discussion in 1.2.6.4 the ordinary pullback of the morphism $\mathbf{E}G \to \mathbf{B}G$ serves as a presentation for the homotopy pullback of $* \to \mathbf{B}G$). □

This establishes the situation for smooth nonabelian cohomology in degree 1 and smooth abelian cohomology in arbitrary degree. We turn now to a discussion of smooth nonabelian cohomology "in degree 2", the case where $G$ is a *Lie 2-group*: *$G$-principal 2-bundles.*

When $G = \mathrm{AUT}(H)$ the *automorphism 2-group* of a Lie group $H$ (see below) these structures have the same classification as smooth $H$-1-gerbes, def. 5.1.330. To start with, note the general abstract notion of smooth 2-groups:

**Definition 6.4.40.** A *smooth 2-group* is a 1-truncated group object in $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{CartSp})$. These are equivalently given by their (canonically pointed) delooping 2-groupoids $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathbf{H}$, which are precisely, up to equivalence, the connected 2-truncated objects of $\mathbf{H}$.

For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ any object, $G2\mathrm{Bund}_{\mathrm{smooth}}(X) := \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$ is the 2-groupoid of smooth $G$-principal 2-bundles on $G$.

We consider the presentation of smooth 2-groups by Lie crossed modules, def. 1.2.81, according to prop. 5.1.172. Write $[G_1 \stackrel{\delta}{\to} G_0]$ for the *2-group* which is the groupoid

$$G_0 \times G_1 \underset{p_1}{\overset{p_1(-)\cdot\delta(p_2(-))}{\rightrightarrows}} G_0$$

equipped with a strict group structure given by the semidirect product group structure on $G_0 \times G_1$ that is induced from the action $\rho$. The commutativity of the above two diagrams is precisely the condition for this to be consistent. Recall the examples of crossed modules, starting with example 1.2.86.

We discuss sufficient conditions for the delooping of a crossed module of presheaves to be fibrant in the projective model structure. Recall also the conditions from prop. 4.1.48.

**Proposition 6.4.41.** *Suppose that the smooth crossed module $(G_1 \to G_0)$ is such that the quotient $\pi_0 G = G_0/G_1$ is a smooth manifold and the projection $G_0 \to G_0/G_1$ is a submersion.*

*Then $\mathbf{B}(G_1 \to G_0)$ is fibrant in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.*

Proof. We need to show that for $\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^n\}$ a good open cover, the canonical descent morphism

$$B(C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n, G_1) \to C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n, G_0)) \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}(G_1 \to G_0))$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence. The main point to show is that, since the Kan complex on the left is connected by construction, also the Kan complx on the right is.

To that end, notice that the category CartSp equipped with the open cover topology is a *Verdier site* in the sense of section 8 of [DHS04]. By the discussion there it follows that every hypercover over $\mathbb{R}^n$ can be refined by a split hypercover, and these are cofibrant resolutions of $\mathbb{R}^n$ in both the global and the local model structure $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. Since also $C(\{U_i\}) \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is a cofibrant resolution and since $\mathbf{B}G$ is clearly fibrant in the *global* structure, it follows from the existence of the global model structure that morphisms out of $C(\{U_i\})$ into $\mathbf{B}(G_1 \to G_0)$ capture all cocycles over any hypercover over $\mathbb{R}^n$, hence that

$$\pi_0[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}(G_1 \to G_0)) \simeq H^1_{\mathrm{smooth}}(\mathbb{R}^n, (G_1 \to G_0))$$

is the standard Čech cohomology of $\mathbb{R}^n$, defined as a colimit over refinements of covers of equivalence classes of Čech cocycles.

Now by prop. 4.1 of [NW11a] (which is the smooth refinement of the statement of [BaSt09] in the continuous context) we have that under our assumptions on $(G_1 \to G_0)$ there is a topological classifying space for this smooth Čech cohomology set. Since $\mathbb{R}^n$ is topologically contractible, it follows that this is the singleton set and hence the above descent morphism is indeed an isomorphism on $\pi_0$.

Next we can argue that it is also an isomorphism on $\pi_1$, by reducing to the analogous local trivialization statement for ordinary principal bundles: a loop in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}(G_1 \to G_0))$ on the trivial cocycle is readily seen to be a $G_0//(G_0 \ltimes G_1)$-principal groupoid bundle, over the action groupoid as indicated. The underlying $G_0 \ltimes G_1$-principal bundle has a trivialization on the contractible $\mathbb{R}^n$ (by classical results or, in fact, as a special case of the previous argument), and so equivalence classes of such loops are given gy $G_0$-valued smooth functions on $\mathbb{R}^n$. The descent morphism exhibits an isomorphism on these classes.

Finally the equivalence classes of spheres on both sides are directly seen to be smooth $\ker(G_1 \to G_0)$-valued functions on both sides, identified by the descent morphism. □

**Corollary 6.4.42.** *For $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \subset \mathbf{H}$ a paracompact smooth manifold, and $(G_1 \to G_0)$ as above, we have for any good open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ that the 2-groupoid of smooth $(G_1 \to G_0)$-principal 2-bundles is*

$$(G_1 \to G_0)\mathrm{Bund}(X) := \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}(G_1)) \simeq [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}(G_1 \to G_0))$$

*and its set of connected components is naturally isomorphic to the nonabelian Čech cohomology*

$$\pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}(G_1 \to G_0)) \simeq H^1_{\mathrm{smooth}}(X, (G_1 \to G_0)) .$$

*In particular, for $G = \mathrm{AUT}(H)$, $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathbf{H}$ is the moduli 2-stack for smooth $H$-gerbes, def. 5.1.323.*

**Proposition 6.4.43.** *For $A \to \hat{G} \to G$ a central extension of Lie groups such that $\hat{G} \to G$ is a locally trivial $A$-bundle, we have a long fiber sequence in* Smooth∞Grpd *of the form*

$$A \to \hat{G} \to G \to \mathbf{B}A \to \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \to \mathbf{B}G \stackrel{\mathbf{c}}{\to} \mathbf{B}^2 A ,$$

*where the morphism $\mathbf{c}$ is presented by the span of simplicial presheaves*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}(A \to \hat{G})_c & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(A \to 1)_c & = & \mathbf{B}^2 A_c \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} & & & & \end{array}$$

*coming from crossed complexes, def. 1.2.96, as indicated.*

Proof. We need to show that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\hat{G}_{\mathrm{ch}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} & \stackrel{\mathbf{c}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}^2 A \end{array}$$

is an ∞-pullback. To that end, we notice that we have an equivalence

$$\mathbf{B}(A \to \hat{G})_c \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$$

and that the morphism of simplicial presheaves $\mathbf{B}(A \stackrel{\mathrm{id}}{\to} A)_c \to \mathbf{B}^2 A_c$ is a fibration replacement of $* \to \mathbf{B}^2 A_c$, both in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

By prop. 5.1.9 it is therefore sufficient to observe the ordinary pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}(1 \to A)_c & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(A \stackrel{\mathrm{id}}{\to} A)_c \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}(A \to \hat{G}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(A \to 1)_c \end{array} .$$

□

### 6.4.8 Group representations

We discuss the intrinsic notion of ∞-group representations, 5.1.14, realized in the context Smooth∞Grpd.

We make precise the role of *action Lie groupoids*, introduced informally in 1.2.6.1.

**Proposition 6.4.44.** *Let $X$ be a smooth manifold, and $G$ a Lie group. Then the category of smooth $G$-actions on $X$ in the traditional sense is equivalent to the category of $G$-actions on $X$ in the cohesive $\infty$-topos* Smooth$\infty$Grpd*, according to def. 5.1.189.*

Proof. For $\rho : X \times G \to X$ a given $G$-action, define the *action Lie groupoid*

$$X//G := ( X \times G \underset{p_1}{\overset{\rho}{\rightrightarrows}} X )$$

with the evident composition operation. This comes with the evident morphism of Lie groupoids

$$X//G \to *//G \simeq \mathbf{B}G \,,$$

with $\mathbf{B}G$ as in prop. 6.4.19. It is immediate that regarding this as a morphism in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ in the canonical way, this is a fibration. Therefore, by 5.1.9, the homotopy fiber of this morphism in Smooth$\infty$Grpds is given by the ordinary fiber of this morphism in simplicial presheaves. This is manifestly $X$.

Accordingly this construction constitutes an embedding of the traditional $G$ actions on $X$ into the category $\mathrm{Rep}_G(X)$ from def. 5.1.189. By turning this argument around, one finds that this embedding is essentially surjective. □

### 6.4.9 Associated bundles

We discuss aspects of the general notion of *associated $\infty$-bundles*, 5.1.12, realized in the context of smooth cohesion.

We have been discussing the $n$-stacks $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ of *circle $n$-bundles* in 6.4.16, but without any substantial change in the theory we could also use the $n$-stacks $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{C}^\times$ which are the $n$-fold delooping in $\mathbf{H}$ of the cohesive mutliplicative group of non-zero complex numbers. Under geometric realization $|-| : \mathbf{H} \longrightarrow \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ the canonical map $\mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{C}^\times$ becomes an equivalence. Nevertheless, some constructions are more naturally expressed in terms of $U(1)$-principal $n$-bundles, while other are more naturally expressed in terms of $\mathbb{C}^\times$-principal $n$-bundles (bundle $(n-1)$-gerbes). Notably the latter is naturally identified with the 2-stack $2\mathbf{Line}_{\mathbb{C}}$ of *complex line 2-bundles*.

To interpret this, we say that for $R$ a ring (or more generally an $E_\infty$-ring), a *2-vector space* over $R$ is, if it admits a 2*2-basis*, a category $A$Mod of modules over an $R$-algebra $A$ (the algebra $A$ is the given 2-basis), and that a *2-linear map* between 2-vector space is a functor $A\mathrm{Mod} \to B\mathrm{Mod}$ which is induced by tensoring with a $B$-$A$-bimodule. This identifies a 2-category $2\mathrm{Vect}_R$ of algebras, bimodules and bimodule homomorphisms which we call the 2-category of 2-vector spaces over $R$ (appendix A of [Sc08a], section 4.4. of [ScWa08], section 7 of [FHLT09]). This 2-category is naturally braided monoidal. Write then

$$2\mathrm{Line}_R \hookrightarrow 2\mathrm{Vect}_R$$

for the full sub-2-category on those objects which are invertible under this tensor product: the *2-lines* over $R$. This is necessarily a 2-groupoid, the *Picard 2-groupoid* over $R$, and with the inherited monoidal structure it is a 3-group, the *Picard 3-group* of $R$. Its homotopy groups have a familiar algebraic interpretation:

- $\pi_0(2\mathrm{Line}_R)$ is the *Brauer group* of $R$;
- $\pi_1(2\mathrm{Line}_R)$ is the ordinary *Picard group* of $R$ (of ordinary $R$-lines);
- $\pi_2(2\mathrm{Line}_R) \simeq R^\times$ is the *group of units.*

If we take the base ring $R$ to be the ring of suitable $k$-valued functions on some space $X$, then $2\mathrm{Vect}_R$ is the 2-category of $k$-2-vector spaces over that vary over $X$, hence of complex *2-vector bundles.* This construction is natural in $R$, hence in $X$, and it restricts to 2-lines and hence to *2-line bundles* over $k$. Hence there is a 2-stack $2\mathbf{Line}_k \in \mathbf{H}$ of 2-line bundles over $k$. If $k$ here is algebraically closed, such as $k = \mathbb{C}$, then there is, up to equivalence, only a single 2-line, and only a single invertible bimodule, and hence we find that $2\mathbf{Line}_k \simeq \mathbf{B}^2 k^\times$ In particular we have an equivalence

$$2\mathbf{Line}_{\mathbb{C}} \simeq \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{C}^\times .$$

Therefore the 2-stack $2\mathbf{Line}_{\mathbb{C}}$ is of interest in particular in situations where this equivalence no longer holds. This is notably so in the context of supergeometric cohesion; this is discussed below in 6.6.6.

### 6.4.10 Sections of associated bundles and twisted bundles

We discuss here aspects of the realization in smooth ∞-grouoids of the general concept of sections of associated bundles and of twisted bundles according to 5.1.13.

More examples of twisted cohomology, 5.1.13, and the corresponding twisted principal ∞-bundles, realized in Smooth∞Grpd, below in 7.1.

- 6.4.10.1 – Sections of vector bundles – twisted 0-bundles
- 6.4.10.2 – Sections of 2-bundles – twisted vector bundles and twisted K-classes

**6.4.10.1 Sections of vector bundles – twisted 0-bundles** We discuss here how traditional sections of vector bundles arise as the degenerate case of twisted $n$-bundles for $n = 0$.

So we consider coefficient ∞-bundles such as

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{C} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{C}//U(1) \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{B}U(1) \end{array} ,$$

where

- $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ is the smooth moduli stack of smooth circle bundles;
- $\mathbb{C}$ is the complex plane, regarded as a smooth manifold.

By 5.1.14 this corresponds equivalently to a representation of the Lie group $U(1)$ on $\mathbb{C}$, and this we take to be the canonical such representation. Accordingly, the above bundle is indeed the *universal complex line bundle* over the base space of the universal $U(1)$-principal bundle.

It will be meaningful and useful to think of $\mathbb{C}$ itself as a moduli ∞-stack: it is the smooth *moduli 0-stack of complex 0-vector bundles*, where, therefore, a complex 0-vector bundle on a smooth space $X$ is simply a smooth function $\in C^\infty(X, \mathbb{C})$. Accordingly, we should find that such 0-vector bundles can be twisted by a principal $U(1)$-bundle and indeed, by feeding the above coefficient ∞-bundle through the definition of twisted ∞-bundles in 5.1.18, one finds, as we discuss below, that a *twisted 0-bundle* is a smooth section of the *associated line bundle*, hence, by local triviality of the line bundle, locally a complex-valued function, but globally twisted by the twisting circle bundle.

Let $G$ be a Lie group, $V$ a vector space and $\rho : V \times G \to V$ a smooth representation of $G$ on $V$ in the traditional sense. We discuss how this is an ∞-group representation in the sense of def. 5.1.189.

**Definition 6.4.45.** Write

$$V//G := \; V \times G \underset{\rho}{\overset{p_1}{\rightrightarrows}} V$$

for the *action groupoid* of $\rho$, the weak quotient of $V$ by $G$, regarded as a smooth ∞-groupoid $V//G \in$ Smooth∞Grpd.

Notice that this is equipped with a canonical morphism $V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$ and a canonical inclusion $V \to V//G$.

**Proposition 6.4.46.** *We have a fiber sequence*

$$V \to V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$$

*in* Smooth∞Grpd*.*

Proof. One finds that in the canonical presentation by simplicial presheaves as in 6.4.3, the morphism $V//G_{\mathrm{ch}} \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is a fibration in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Therefore by prop. 5.1.9 the homotopy fiber is given by the ordinary fiber of this presentation. This ordinary fibe is $V$. □

**Remark 6.4.47.** By remark 5.1.246 we may think of the fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

as the vector bundle over the classifying stack $\mathbf{B}G$ which is $\rho$-associated to the universal $G$-principal bundle.

More formally, the next proposition shows that the $\rho$-associated bundles according to def. 5.1.246 are the ordinary associated vector bundles.

**Proposition 6.4.48.** *Let $X$ be a smooth manifold and $P \to X$ be a smooth $G$-principal bundle. If $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ is a cocycle for $P$ as in 6.4.7, then the $\rho$-associated vector bundle $P \times_G V \to X$ is equivalent to the homotopy pullback of $V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$ along $G$:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P \times_G V & \longrightarrow & V//G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} .$$

Proof. By the discussion in 6.4.7 we may present $g$ by a morphism in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array} ,$$

where $C(\{U_i\})$ is the Čech nerve of a good open cover of $X$. Since $V//G_{\mathrm{ch}} \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is a fibration in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, by prop. 5.1.9 its ordinary pullback of simplicial presheaves along $g$ presents the homotopy pullback in question. By inspection one finds that this is the Lie groupoid whose space of objects is $\coprod_i U_i \times V$ and which has a unique morphism from $(x \in U_i, \sigma_i(x) \in V)$ to $(x \in U_j, \sigma_j(x))$ if $\sigma_j(x) = \rho(g_{ij}(x))(\sigma_i(x))$.

Due to the uniqueness of morphisms, the evident projection from this Lie groupoid to the smooth manifold $P \times_G V$ which is the total space of the $V$-bundle $\rho$-accociated to $P$ is a weak equivalence in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, hence in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. So $P \times_G V$ is indeed (one representative of) the homotopy pullback in question. □

Since therefore all the information about $\rho$ is encoded in the bundle $V \hookrightarrow V//G \to \mathbf{B}G$, we may identify that bundle with the action. Accordingly we write

$$\rho : V//G \to \mathbf{B}G .$$

Regarding $\rho$ then as a universal local coefficient bundle, we obtain the corresponding twisted cohomology, 5.1.13, and twisted $\infty$-bundles, 5.1.18. We show now that the general statement of prop. 5.1.255 on twisted cohomology in terms of sections of associated $\infty$-bundles reduces for twists relative to $\rho$ to the standard notion of spaces of sections.

**Proposition 6.4.49.** *Let $P \to X$ be a $G$-principal bundle over a smooth manifold $X$. Then the $\infty$-groupoid of $P$-twisted cocycles relative to $\rho$, equivalently the $\infty$-groupoid of $P$-twisted $V$-0-bundles is equivalent to the ordinary set of sections of the vector bundle $E \to X$ which is $\rho$-associated to $P$:*

$$\Gamma_X(E) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g, \rho)\,.$$

*Here $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the morphism classifying $P$.*

Proof. The hom $\infty$-groupoid of the slice $\infty$-topos over $\mathbf{B}G$ is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g,\rho) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, V//G) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{[g]} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \end{array} .$$

Since the Čech nerve $C(\{U_i\})$ of the good cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ is a cofibrant representative of $X$ in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, and since $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ and $V//G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ from above are fibrant representatives of $\mathbf{B}G$ and $V//G$, respectively, by the properties of simplicial model categories the right vertical morphism here is presented by the morphism of Kan complexes.

$$[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), V//G_{\mathrm{ch}}) \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})\,.$$

Moreover, since this is the simplicial hom out of a cofibrant object into a fibration, the properties of simplicial model categories imply that this morphism is indeed a Kan fibration. It follows with prop. 5.1.4 that the ordinary fiber of this morphism over $[g]$ is a Kan complex that presents the twisted cocycle $\infty$-groupoid in question.

Since $V//G_{\mathrm{ch}} \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is a faithful functor of groupoids, this fiber is a set, meaning a constant simplicial set. A $V//G_{\mathrm{ch}}$-valued cocycle is a collection of smooth functions $\{\sigma_i : U_i \to V\}_i$ and smooth functions $\{g_{ij} : U_{i,j} \to G\}_{i,j}$, satisfying the condition that on all $U_{ij}$ we have $\sigma_j = \rho(g_{ij})(\sigma_i)$. This is a vertex in the fiber precisely if the second set of functions is that given by the cocycle $g$ which classifies $P$. In this case this condition is precisely that which identifies the $\{\sigma_i\}_i$ as a section of the associated vector bundle, expressed in terms of the local trivialization that corresponds to $g$.

In conclusion, this shows that $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g, \rho)$ is an $\infty$-groupoid equivalent to set of sections of the vector bundle $\rho$-associated to $P$. □

**6.4.10.2 Sections of 2-bundles – twisted vector bundles and twisted K-classes** We construct now a coefficient $\infty$-bundle of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}U & \longrightarrow & (\mathbf{B}U)//\mathbf{B}U(1) \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{dd}} \\ & & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \end{array} ,$$

where

- $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ is the smooth moduli 2-stack for smooth circle 2-bundles / bundle gerbes;

- $\mathbf{B}U = \varinjlim_n \mathbf{B}U(n)$ is the inductive $\infty$-limit over the smooth moduli stacks of smooth unitary rank-$n$ vector bundles (equivalently: $U(n)$-principal bundles).

Equivalently, this is a smooth $\infty$-action of the smooth circle 2-group $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ on the smooth $\infty$-stack $\mathbf{B}U$.

This may be thought of as the canonical 2-representation of the circle 2-group $\mathbf{B}U(1)$, def. 6.3.48, being the higher analogue to the canonical representation of the circle group $U(1)$ on the complex plane $\mathbb{C}$, discussed above in 6.4.10.1.

We show that the notion of twisted cohomology induced by this local coefficient bundle according to 5.1.13 is reduced *twisted K-theory* and that the notion of twisted $\infty$-bundles induced by it according to 5.1.18 are ordinary *twisted vector bundles* also known as *bundle gerbe modules*. (See for instance chapter 24 of [May99] for basics of K-theory that we need here, and see for instance [CBMMS02] for a discussion of twisted K-theory in terms of twisted bundles.)

This not only shows how the traditional notion of twisted K-theory is reproduced from the perspective of cohomology in an $\infty$-topos. It also refines the traditional constructions to the smooth context. Notice that there is a slight clash of terminology, as traditionally the term *smooth K-theory* is often used synonymously with *differential K-theory*. However, there is a geometric refinement in between bare (twisted) K-classes and differential (twisted) K-classes, namely smooth cocycle spaces of smooth (twisted) vector bundles and *smooth* gauge transformations between them. This is the smooth refinement of the situation that we find here, by regarding (twisted) K-theory as (twisted) cohomology internal to the $\infty$-topos Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

The construction of the traditional topological classifying space for reduced $K^0$ proceeds as follows. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let $BU(n)$ be the classifying space of the unitary group in complex dimension $n$. The inclusion of groups $U(n) \to U(n+1)$ induced by the inclusion $\mathbb{C}^n \to \mathbb{C}^{n+1}$ by extension by 0 in the, say, last coordinate gives an inductive system of topological spaces

$$* \longrightarrow \cdots BU(n) \longrightarrow BU(n+1) \longrightarrow \cdots \,.$$

**Definition 6.4.50.** Write

$$BU := \varinjlim_n BU(n)$$

for the homotopy colimit in $\mathrm{Top}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$.

Notice that by prop. 6.4.19 and prop. 6.3.30 we have, for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, a smooth refinement of $BU(n) \in \mathrm{Top} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ to a smooth moduli stack $\mathbf{B}U(n) \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. This refines the set $[X, BU(n)]$ of equivalences classes of rank-$n$ unitary vector bundles to the groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}U(n))$ of unitary bundles and smooth gauge transformations between them.

We therefore consider now similarly a smooth refinement to moduli $\infty$-stacks of the inductive limit $BU$.

**Definition 6.4.51.** Write

$$\mathbf{B}U := \varinjlim_n \mathbf{B}U(n)$$

for the $\infty$-colimit in Smooth$\infty$Grpd over the smooth moduli stacks of smooth $U(n)$-principal bundles.

**Proposition 6.4.52.** *The canonical morphism*

$$\varinjlim_n \mathbf{B}U(n) \to \mathbf{B} \varinjlim_n U(n)$$

*is an equivalence in* Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

Proof. Write $\mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{ch}} := N(\, U(n) \rightrightarrows * \,) \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ for the standard presentation of the delooping, prop. 6.4.19. Observe then that the diagram $n \mapsto \mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is cofibrant when regarded as an object of $[(\mathbb{N}, \leq), [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj,loc}}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, because, by example 5.1.12, a cotower is projectively cofibrant if it consists of monomorphisms and if the first object, and hence all objects, are cofibrant. Therefore the

$\infty$-colimit is presented by the ordinary colimit over this diagram. Since this is a filtered colimit, it commutes with finite limits of simplicial presheaves:

$$\begin{aligned}\varinjlim_n \mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{ch}} &= \varinjlim_n N(\, U(n) \rightrightarrows * \,) \\ &= N(\, \varinjlim_n U(n) \rightrightarrows * \,) \\ &= (\mathbf{B} \varinjlim_n U(n))_{\mathrm{ch}} \,.\end{aligned}$$

□

**Proposition 6.4.53.** *The smooth object* $\mathbf{B}U$ *is a smooth refinement of the topological space* $BU$ *in that it reproduces the latter under geometric realization, 6.3.5.1:*

$$|\mathbf{B}U| \simeq BU \,.$$

Proof. By prop. 6.3.29 for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$|\mathbf{B}U(n)| \simeq BU(n) \,.$$

Moreover, by the discussion at 6.3.5.1, up to the equivalence Top $\simeq$ $\infty$Grpd the geometric realization is given by applying the functor $\Pi$ : Smooth$\infty$Grpd $\to$ $\infty$Grpd. That is a left $\infty$-adjoint and hence preserves $\infty$-colimits:

$$\begin{aligned}|\mathbf{B}U| &\simeq |\varinjlim_n \mathbf{B}U(n)| \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_n |\mathbf{B}U(n)| \\ &\simeq \varinjlim_n BU(n) \\ &\simeq BU \,.\end{aligned}$$

□

**Corollary 6.4.54.** *For* $X \in$ SmoothMfd $\hookrightarrow$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd, *the intrinsic cohomology of* $X$ *with coefficients in the smooth stack* $\mathbf{B}U$ *is the reduced K-theory* $\tilde{K}(X)$*:*

$$H^1_{\mathrm{smooth}}(X, U) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}U) \simeq \tilde{K}(X) \,.$$

Proof. By prop. 6.3.39 the set $\pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}U)$ is the Čech cohomology of $X$ with coefficients in the stable unitary group $U$. By classification theory (as discussed in [RoSt12]) this is isomorphic to the set of homotopy classes of maps $\pi_0 \mathrm{Top}(X, BU)$ into the classifying space $BU$ for reduced K-theory. □

**Proposition 6.4.55.** *Let* $X$ *be a compact smooth manifold. Then*

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}U) \simeq \varinjlim_n \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}U(n))$$

*and*

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}PU) \simeq \varinjlim_n \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}PU(n)) \,.$$

Proof. That $X$ is a compact manifold means by def. 5.1.92 that it is a *representably compact object* in the site SmoothMfd. Since $X$ is in particular paracompact, prop. 5.1.98 says that it is also a *representably paracompact object* in the site, def. 5.1.97. With this the statement is given by prop. 5.1.99. □

We now discuss twisted bundles induced by the local coefficient bundles $\mathbf{dd}_n : \mathbf{B}PU(n) \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$. This is immediately generalized to general central extensions.

So let $U(1) \to \hat{G} \to G$ be any $U(1)$-central extension of a Lie group $G$ and let $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ the classifying morphism of moduli 2-stacks, according to prop. 5.1.188, sitting in the fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\hat{G} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \\ & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{c}} \\ & & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \end{array} .$$

**Proposition 6.4.56.** *Let $U(1) \to \hat{G} \to G$ be a group extension of Lie groups. Let $X \in$ SmoothMfd $\hookrightarrow$ Smooth∞Grpd be a smooth manifold with differentiably good open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$.*

1. *Relative to this data every twisting cocycle $[\alpha] \in H^2_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(X, U(1))$ is a Čech-cohomology representative given by a collection of functions*

$$\{\alpha_{ijk} : U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k \to U(1)\}$$

*satisfying on every quadruple intersection the equation*

$$\alpha_{ijk}\alpha_{ikl} = \alpha_{jkl}\alpha_{ijl} .$$

2. *In terms of this cocycle data, the twisted cohomology $H^1_{[\alpha]}(X, \hat{G})$ is given by equivalence classes of cocycles consisting of*

   (a) *collections of functions*

   $$\{g_{ij} : U_i \cap U_j \to \hat{G}\}$$

   *subject to the condition that on each triple overlap the equation*

   $$g_{ij}\dot{g}_{jk} = g_{ik} \cdot \alpha_{ijk}$$

   *holds, where on the right we are injecting $\alpha_{ijk}$ via $U(1) \to \hat{G}$ into $\hat{G}$ and then form the product there;*

   (b) *subject to the equivalence relation that identifies two such collections of cocycle data $\{g_{ij}\}$ and $\{g'_{ij}\}$ if there exists functions*

   $$\{h_i : U_i \to \hat{G}\}$$

   *and*

   $$\{\beta_{ij} : U_i \cap U_j \to \hat{U}(1)\}$$

   *such that*

   $$\beta_{ij}\beta_{jk} = \beta_{ik}$$

   *and*

   $$g'_{ij} = h_i^{-1} \cdot g_{ij} \cdot h_j \cdot \beta_{ij} .$$

Proof. We pass to the standard presentation of Smooth∞Grpd by the projective local model structure on simplicial presheaves over the site SmoothCartSp. There we compute the defining ∞-pullback by a homotopy pullback, according to remark 5.1.10.

Write $\mathbf{B}\hat{G}_{\mathrm{ch}}, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}} \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ etc. for the standard models of the abstract objects of these names by simplicial presheaves, as discussed in 6.4.3. Write accordingly $\mathbf{B}(U(1) \to \hat{G})_{\mathrm{ch}}$ for the delooping of the crossed module 2-group associated to the central extension $\hat{G} \to G$.

By prop. 5.1.188, in terms of this the characteristic class $\mathbf{c}$ is represented by the $\infty$-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}(U(1) \to \hat{G})_{\mathrm{ch}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{B}(U(1) \to 1)_{\mathrm{ch}} = \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}} \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} & & \end{array} ,$$

where the top horizontal morphism is the evident projection onto the $U(1)$-labels. Moreover, the Čech nerve of the good open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ forms a cofibrant resolution

$$\emptyset \hookrightarrow C(\{U_i\}) \overset{\simeq}{\twoheadrightarrow} X$$

and so $\alpha$ is presented by an $\infty$-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_c \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array} .$$

Using that $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ is a simplicial model category this means in conclusion that the homotopy pullback in question is given by the ordinary pullback of simplicial sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}^1_{[\alpha]}(X, \hat{G}) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\alpha} \\ [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}(U(1) \to \hat{G})_c) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}_*} & [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_c) \end{array} .$$

An object of the resulting simplicial set is then seen to be a simplicial map $g : C(\{U_i\}) \to \mathbf{B}(U(1) \to \hat{G})_c$ that assigns

$$g \;:\; \left( \begin{array}{ccccc} & & (x,j) & & \\ & \nearrow & \| & \searrow & \\ (x,i) & & \longrightarrow & & (x,k) \end{array} \right) \mapsto \left( \begin{array}{ccccc} & & * & & \\ & {}^{g_{ij}(x)}\nearrow & \Downarrow^{\alpha_{ijk}(x)} & \searrow^{g_{jk}(x)} & \\ * & & \xrightarrow[g_{ik}(x)]{} & & * \end{array} \right)$$

such that projection out along $\mathbf{B}(U(1) \to \hat{G})_c \to \mathbf{B}(U(1) \to 1)_c = \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_c$ produces $\alpha$.

Similarily for the morphisms. Writing out what these diagrams in $\mathbf{B}(U(1) \to \hat{G})_c$ mean in equations, one finds the formulas claimed above. □

### 6.4.11 Reduction of structure groups

We discuss the realization in smooth $\infty$-groupoids of the general abstract concept of reduction and extension of structure groups according to 5.1.18.

Let $G$ be a Lie group and let $K \hookrightarrow G$ be a Lie subgroup. Write

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}K \to \mathbf{B}G$$

for the induced morphism of smooth moduli stacks of smooth principal bundles, according to prop. 6.4.19.

**Observation 6.4.57.** The action groupoid $G//K$, def. 1.2.77, is 0-truncated, hence the canonical morphism to the smooth manifold quotient

$$G//K \xrightarrow{\simeq} G/K$$

is an equivalence in Smooth∞Grpd.

We have a fiber sequence of smooth stacks

$$G/K \to \mathbf{B}K \to \mathbf{B}G\,.$$

This is presented by the evident sequence of simplicial presheaves

$$G//K \to *//K \to *//G\,.$$

Proof. The equivalence follows because the action of a subgroup is free. The fiber sequence may be computed for instance with the factorization lemma, prop. 5.1.5. □

In applications, an important class of examples is the following.

**Observation 6.4.58.** For $G$ a conneced Lie group, let $K \hookrightarrow G$ be the inclusion of its maximal compact subgroup. Then $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}K \to \mathbf{B}G$ is a $\Pi$-equivalence, def. 5.2.35 (hence becomes an equivalence under geometric realization, def. 5.2.14). Therefore, while the groupoids of $K, G$-principal bundles are different and

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}K) \to \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G)$$

is not an equivalence, unless $G$ is itself already compact, it does induce an isomorphism on connected components (nonabelian cohomology sets)

$$H^1(X, K) \xrightarrow{\simeq} H^1(X, G)\,.$$

In the following discussion this difference between the classifying spaces $BG \simeq \Pi(\mathbf{B}G) \simeq \Pi(\mathbf{B}K) \simeq BK$ and their smooth refinements is crucial.

Theorem 6.3.47 in the present case says that $\Pi(G/K) \simeq *$ contractible. This recovers the classical statement that, as a topological space, $G$ is a product of its maximal compact subgroup with a contractible space.

Proof. It is a classical fact that the maximal compact subgroup inclusion $K \hookrightarrow G$ is a homotopy equivalence on the underlying topological spaces. The statement then follows by prop. 6.3.35. □

Given a subgroup inclusion $K \hookrightarrow G$ and a $G$-principal bundle $P$, a standard question is whether the structure group of $P$ may be reduced to $K$.

**Definition 6.4.59.** Let $K \hookrightarrow G$ be an inclusion of Lie groups and let $X \in$ Smooth∞Grpd be any object (for instance a smoot manifold). Let $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ be a smooth classifying morphism for a $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$.

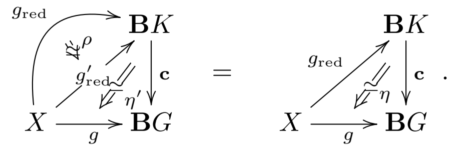
A choice of *reduction of the structure group* of $G$ along $K \hookrightarrow G$ (or *$K$-reduction* for short) is a choice of lift $g_{\mathrm{red}}$ and a choice of homotopy (gauge transformation) $\eta$ of smooth stacks in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}K \\ & {}^{g_{\mathrm{red}}}\nearrow \;\; \swArrow_{\simeq}^{\eta} & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}} \\ X & \xrightarrow[g]{} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}\,.$$

For $(g_{\mathrm{red}}, \eta)$ and $(g'_{\mathrm{red}}, \eta')$ two $K$-reductions of $P$, an *isomorphism* of $K$-reductions from the first to the second is a natural transformation of morphisms of smooth stacks

$$X \underset{g'_{\mathrm{red}}}{\overset{g_{\mathrm{red}}}{\rightrightarrows}} \!\!\Downarrow^{\rho}\; \mathbf{B}K\,,$$

hence a choice of gauge transformation between the corresponding $K$-principal bundles, such that




With the obvious notion of composition of such isomorphisms, this defines a *groupoid of $K$-reductions* of $P$.

**Remark 6.4.60.** The crucial information is in the *choice* of the smooth transformation $\eta$. Notably in the case that $K \hookrightarrow G$ is the inclusion of a maximal compact subgroup as in observation 6.4.58 the underlying reduction problem after geometric realization in the homotopy theory of topological spaces is trivial: all bundles involved in the above are equivalent. The important information in $\eta$ is about *how* they are chosen to be equivalent, and smoothly so.

Below in 7.1.3.1 we see that in the case that $P = TX$ is the tangent bundle of a manifold, $\eta$ is identified with a choice of *vielbein* or *soldering form*.

Comparison with the discussion in 5.1.13 reveals that therefore structure group reduction is a topic in *twisted nonabelian cohomology*. In particular, we may apply def. 5.2.118 to form the groupoid of all choices of reductions.

**Proposition 6.4.61.** *For $g : X \to \mathbf{B}G$ (the cocycle for) a $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$, the* groupoid of $K$-reductions *of $P$ according to def. 6.4.59 is the groupoid of $[g]$-twisted $\mathbf{c}$-structures, def. 5.2.118, hence the homotopy pullback $\mathbf{c}\mathrm{Struc}_{[g]}(X)$ in*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{c}\mathrm{Struc}_{[g]}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{g} \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}K) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(X,\mathbf{c})} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \end{array} ,$$

*where*

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}K \to \mathbf{B}G$$

*is the induced morphism of smooth moduli stacks.*

Proof. Using that $\mathbf{B}K$ and $\mathbf{B}G$ are 1-truncated objects in $\mathbf{H} := \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, by construction, one sees that the groupoid defined in def. 6.4.59 is equivalently the hom-groupoid $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}(g, \mathbf{c})$ in the slice $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}G}$. Using this, the statement is a special case of prop. 5.1.256. □

**Remark 6.4.62.** By observation 6.4.57 we may equivalently speak of $\mathbf{c}\mathrm{Struc}_g(X)$ as the *groupoid of twisted $G//K$-structures* on $X$ (where the latter is given by a corresponding groupoid-principal bundle).

If we think, according to remark 6.4.60, of a choice of $K$-reduction as a choice of *vielbein* or *soldering form*, then this says that *locally* their moduli space is the cose $G/K$ (while globally there may be a twist).

The morphism $\mathbf{c}$ as above always has a canonical differential refinement

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}} : \mathbf{B}K_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

given by prop. 1.2.114. Accordingly, we may also apply def. 5.2.119 to the case of structure group reduction.

**Definition 6.4.63.** For $K \to G$ a Lie subgroup inclusion, and for $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ (a cocycle for ) a $G$-principal bundle with connection on $X$, we say the *groupoid of $K$-reductions* of $\nabla$ is the groupoid

$\hat{\mathbf{c}}\mathrm{Struc}_{[\nabla]}(X)$ of *twisted differential* $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$*-structures*, given as the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{\mathbf{c}}\mathrm{Struc}_{[\nabla]}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\nabla} \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}K_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(X,\hat{\mathbf{c}})} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \end{array} .$$

However, here the differential refinement does not change the homotopy-type of the twisted cohomology

**Proposition 6.4.64.** *For $P$ a $G$-principal bundle with connection $\nabla$ the groupoid of $K$-reductions of $\nabla$ is equivalent to the groupoid of $K$-reductions of just $P$*

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}}\mathrm{Struc}_{[\nabla]}(X) \simeq \mathbf{c}\mathrm{Struc}_{[P]}(X) .$$

**Remark 6.4.65.** This degeneracy of notions does not hold for twisted structures controled by higher groups. That it holds in the special case of ordinary $K$-reductions is an incarnation of a classical fact in differential geometry: as we will see in 7.1.3.1 below, for reductions of tangent bundle structure it comes down to the fact that for every choice of Riemannian metric and torsion there is a unique metric-compatible connection with that torsion. Prop. 6.4.64 may be understood as stating this in the fullest generality of $G$-principal bundles for $G$ a Lie group.

### 6.4.12 Flat connections and local systems

We discuss the intrinsic notion of flat $\infty$-connections, 5.2.6, realized in Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

**Proposition 6.4.66.** *Let $X, A \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd be any two objects and write $|X| \in$ Top for the intrinsic geometric realization, def. 5.2.14. We have that the flat cohomolog in Smooth$\infty$Grpd of $X$ with coefficients in $A$ is equivalent to the ordinary cohomology in Top of $|X|$ with coefficients in underlying discrete object of $A$:*

$$H_{\mathrm{Smooth,flat}}(X, A) \simeq H(|X|, |\Gamma A|) .$$

Proof. By definition we have

$$H_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, A) \simeq H(\textstyle\int X, A) \simeq H(\mathrm{Disc}\Pi X, A) .$$

Using the (Disc) $\dashv \Gamma$-adjunction this is

$$\cdots \pi_0 \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi X, \Gamma A) .$$

Finally applying the equivalence $|\cdot| : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathrm{Top}$ this is

$$\cdots \simeq H(|\Pi X|, |\Gamma A|) .$$

The claim hence follows as in prop. 6.4.37. □

Let $G$ be a Lie group regarded as a 0-truncated $\infty$-group in Smooth$\infty$Grpd. Write $\mathfrak{g}$ for its Lie algebra. Write $\mathbf{B}G \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd for its delooping. Recall the fibrant presentation $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ from prop. 6.4.19.

**Proposition 6.4.67.** *The object $\flat\mathbf{B}G \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd has a fibrant presentation $\flat\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ given by the groupoid of Lie-algebra valued forms*

$$\flat\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} = N \left( C^\infty(-, G) \times \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}) \underset{p2}{\overset{\mathrm{ad}_{p_1}(p_2) + p_1^{-1} dp_1}{\rightrightarrows}} \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}) \right)$$

*and this is such that the canonical morphism $\flat\mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}G$ is presented by the canonical morphism of simplicial presheaves $\flat\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ which is a fibration in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

Before giving the proof, we make

**Remark 6.4.68.** This means that a $U$-parameterized family of objects of $\flat \mathbf{B} G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is given by a Lie-algebra valued 1-form $A \in \Omega^1(U) \otimes \mathfrak{g}$ whose curvature 2-form $F_A = d_{\mathrm{dR}} A + [A, \wedge A] = 0$ vanishes, and a $U$-parameterized family of morphisms $g : A \to A'$ is given by a smooth function $g \in C^\infty(U, G)$ such that $A' = \mathrm{ad}_g(A) + g^{-1} dg$, where $\mathrm{ad}_g A = g^{-1} A g$ is the adjoint action of $G$ on its Lie algebra, and where $g^{-1} dg := g^* \theta$ is the pullback of the Maurer-Cartan form on $G$ along $g$. In other words prop. 6.4.67 exhibits $\flat \mathbf{B} G$, for $G$ a Lie group, as the smooth action groupoid, hence as the homotopy quotient of the action of $G$ by gauge transformations

$$A \mapsto g^{-1} A g + g^{-1} dg \,.$$

This is the traditional incarnation of the general relation $\flat \mathbf{B} G \simeq (\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B} G)//G$ which holds for every $\infty$-group in every cohesive $\infty$-topos by remark 5.2.60.

Proof. of prop. 6.4.67. By the proof of prop. 4.1.32 we have that $\flat \mathbf{B} G$ is presented by the simplicial presheaf that is constant on the nerve of the one-object groupoid

$$G_{\mathrm{disc}} \rightrightarrows * \,,$$

for the discrete group underlying the Lie group $G$. The canonical morphism of that into $\mathbf{B} G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is however not a fibration. We claim that the canonical inclusion $N( G_{\mathrm{disc}} \rightrightarrows * ) \to \flat \mathbf{B} G_c$ factors the inclusion into $\mathbf{B} G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ by a weak equivalence followed by a global fibration.

To see the weak equivalence, notice that it is objectwise an equivalence of groupoids: it is essentially surjective since every flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form on the contractible $\mathbb{R}^n$ is of the form $g d g^{-1}$ for some function $g : \mathbb{R}^n \to G$ (let $g(x) = P \exp(\int_0^x) A$ be the parallel transport of $A$ along any path from the origin to $x$). Since the gauge transformation automorphism of the trivial $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form are precisely given by the constant $G$-valued functions, this is also objectwise a full and faithful functor. Similarly one sees that the map $\flat \mathbf{B} G_{\mathrm{ch}} \to \mathbf{B} G$ is a fibration.

Finally we need to show that $\flat \mathbf{B} G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is fibrant in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. This is implied by theorem 4.1.41. More explicitly, this can be seen by observing that this sheaf is the coefficient object that in Čech cohomology computes $G$-principal bundles with flat connection and then reasoning as above: every $G$-principal bundle with flat connection on a Cartesian space is equivalent to a trivial $G$-principal bundle whose connection is given by a globally defined $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form. Morphisms between these are precisely $G$-valued functions that act on the 1-forms by gauge transformations as in the groupoid of Lie-algebra valued forms. □

Let now $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ be the circle $(n+1)$-Lie group, def. 6.4.21. Recall the notation and model category presentations as discussed there.

**Proposition 6.4.69.** *For $n \geq 1$ a fibration presentation in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ of the canonical morphism $\flat \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ in* Smooth$\infty$Grpd *is given by the image under $\Xi : [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Ch}^+] \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ of the morphism of chain complexes*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
C^\infty(-, U(1)) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^1(-) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
C^\infty(-, U(1)) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0
\end{array} ,$$

*where at the top we have the* flat *Deligne complex.*

Proof. It is clear that the morphism of chain complexes is an objectwise surjection and hence maps to a projective fibration under $\Xi$. It remains to observe that the flat Deligne complex is a presentation of $\flat \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$:

By the proof of prop. 4.1.32 we have that $\flat = \mathrm{Disc} \circ \Gamma$ is presented in the model category on fibrant objects by first evaluating on the point and then extending back to a constant simplicial presheaf. Since $\Xi U(1)[n]$ is indeed globally fibrant, a fibrant presentation of $\flat \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ is given by the *constant* presheaf $U(1)_{\mathrm{const}}[n] : U \mapsto \Xi(U(1)[n])$.

The inclusion $U(1)_{\mathrm{const}}[n] \to U(1)[n]$ is not yet a fibration. But by a basic fact of abelian sheaf cohomology – using the Poincaré lemma – we have a global weak equivalence $U(1)_{\mathrm{const}}[n] \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} [C^\infty(-, U(1)) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \cdots \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)]$ that factors this inclusion by the above fibration. This completes the proof.

For emphasis, we repeat this argument in more detail. The factorization of $U(1)_{\mathrm{const}}[n] \to U(1)[n]$ into a weak equivalence followed by a fibration that we are looking at is over each object $\mathbb{R}^q \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ in the site given by the morphisms of chain complexes whose components are show on the following diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} U(1) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\ C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^q, U(1)) & \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}\log}{\longrightarrow} & \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^q) & \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\longrightarrow} & \Omega^2(\mathbb{R}^q) & \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\longrightarrow} & \cdots & \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\longrightarrow} & \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(\mathbb{R}^q) \\ \downarrow^{\mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\ C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^q, U(1)) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array} .$$

It is clear that this commutes. It is also clear that the lower vertical morphisms are all surjections, so the lower row exhibits a fibration of chain complexes. In order for the top row to exhibit a weak equivalence of chain complexes – a quasi-isomorphism – we need it to induce an isomorphism on all chain homology groups.

The chain homology of the top complex is evidently concentrated in degree $n$, where it is $U(1)$, as a discrete group.

The chain homology of the middle complex in degree $n$ is the kernel of the differential $d_{\mathrm{dR}}\log : C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^q, U(1)) \to \Omega^1(\mathbb{R}^q)$. This kernel manifestly consists of the constant $U(1)$-valued functions. Since $\mathbb{R}^q$ is connected, these are naturally identified with the group $U(1)$ itself. This identification is indeed what the top left vertical morphism exhibits.

The chain homology of the middle complex in degree $0 \leq k < n$ is the de Rham cohomology $H^{n-k}_{\mathrm{dR}}(\mathbb{R}^q)$. But this vanishes, since $\mathbb{R}^q$ is smoothly contractible (the Poincaré lemma).

Therefore the homology groups of the top and of the middle chain complex coincide. And by this discussion, the top vertical morphisms induce isomorphisms on these homology groups. □

We discuss presentations of $\flat \mathbf{B}G$ for $G$ more generally the Lie integration of an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ further below in 6.4.14.3.

### 6.4.13 de Rham cohomology

We discuss the intrinsic notion of de Rham cohomology in a cohesive $\infty$-topos, 5.2.10, realized in the context Smooth∞Grpd. Here it reproduces the traditional notion of de Rham cohomology with abelian and nonabelian group coefficients, as well as its equivariant and simplicial refinements.

Let $G$ be a Lie group. Write $\mathfrak{g}$ for its Lie algebra.

**Proposition 6.4.70.** *The object* $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}G \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *has a fibrant presentation in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ *by the sheaf* $\flat \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} := \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g})$ *of flat Lie algebra-valued forms*

$$\flat \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} : U \mapsto \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(U, \mathfrak{g}) .$$

Proof. By prop. 6.4.67 we have a fibration $\flat \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \to \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ given by the morphism of sheaves of groupoids

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C^\infty(-,G) & \xrightarrow{(-)^*\theta} & \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}) \\ \downarrow^{\mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow \\ C^\infty(-,G) & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array} ,$$

which models the canonical inclusion $\flat \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}G$. Therefore by prop. 5.1.4 we obtain a presentation for the defining $\infty$-pullback

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}G := * \times_{\mathbf{B}G} \flat \mathbf{B}G$$

in Smooth$\infty$Grpd by the ordinary pullback

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \simeq * \times_{\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}} \flat \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$$

in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. This is manifestly equal to $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g})$. This is fibrant in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ because it is a sheaf. □

**Remark 6.4.71.** Another equivalent way to compute the homotopy fiber in prop. 6.4.70 is to produce the fibration resolution specifically by the factorization lemma, prop. 5.1.5. This yields for the de Rham coefficients of the Lie group $G$ the presentation

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}G \simeq G/(G_{\mathrm{disc}}) ,$$

where on the right we have the quotient (of sheaves, hence in Smooth$\infty$Grpd) of the Lie group $G$ (the sheaf $C^\infty(-,G)$) by the underlying *geometrically discrete* group (the sheaf constant on the underyling set of $G$). In other words, over a $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the value of $G/(G_{\mathrm{disc}})$ is the set of equivalence classes of smooth functions $g : U \to G$, where two are regarded as equivalent if they differ by multiplication with a *constant* such function.

By the general theory this sheaf must be equivalent, hence isomorphic, to the one of prop. 6.4.70. Indeed, $G_{\mathrm{disc}}$ is the kernel of the map $(-)^*\theta : C^\infty(-,G) \longrightarrow \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g})$ which sends $g : U \to G$ to the pullback of the Maurer-Cartan form along $g$, often written $g^{-1} d_{\mathrm{dR}} g$. Moreover this map is surjective, since for $A \in \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(U,\mathfrak{g})$ any flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued form the function $P\exp(\int_{x_0}^{(-)} A) : U \to G$ that sends a point $x \in U$ to the parallel transport of $A$ along any path from any fixed basepoint $x_0 \in U$ is a preimage. Hence we have the image factorization

$$(-)^*\theta : G \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\rightarrow G/(G_{\mathrm{disc}}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}) .$$

In words this says that a flat differential Lie-algebra valued form on a Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^k$ is equivalently a smooth function from that space to $G$ "without remembering the origin of this function". What is noteworthy about this is that this second, equivalent, description, no longer refers to *differentials*.

Indeed, this second description of the de Rham coefficient object of a group object is valid for any site, in particular for instance for the Euclidean-topological cohesion of 6.3.

For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let now $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ be the circle Lie $(n+1)$-group of def. 6.4.21. Recall the notation and model category presentations from the discussion there.

**Proposition 6.4.72.** *A fibrant representative in* $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ *of the de Rham coefficient object* $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ *from def. 5.2.59 is given by the truncated ordinary de Rham complex of smooth differential forms*

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}} := \Xi[\Omega^1(-) \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^2(-) \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \cdots \to \Omega^{n-1}(-) \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)] .$$

Proof. By definition and using prop. 5.1.9 the object $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ is given by the homotopy pullback in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, Ch_{\bullet \geq 0}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ of the inclusion $U(1)_{\mathrm{const}}[n] \to U(1)[n]$ along the point inclusion $* \to U(1)[n]$. We may compute this as the ordinary pullback after passing to a resolution of this inclusion by a fibration. By prop. 6.4.69 such a fibration replacement is given by the map from the flat Deligne complex. Using this we find the ordinary pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Xi[0 \to \Omega^1(-) \to \cdots \to \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)] & \longrightarrow & \Xi[C^\infty(-, U(1)) \to \Omega^1(-) \to \cdots \to \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Xi[0 \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0] & \longrightarrow & \Xi[C^\infty(-, U(1)) \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0] \end{array} .$$

□

**Proposition 6.4.73.** *Let $X$ be a smooth manifold regarded under the embedding* SmoothMfd $\hookrightarrow$ Smooth∞Grpd. *Write $H^n_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ for the ordinary de Rham cohomology of $X$.*

*For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have isomorphisms*

$$\pi_0 \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \simeq \begin{cases} H^n_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) & |n \geq 2 \\ \Omega^1_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) & |n = 1 \\ 0 & |n = 0 \end{cases}$$

Proof. Let $\{U_i \to X\}$ be a differentiably good open cover. The Čech nerve $C(\{U_i\}) \to X$ is a cofibrant resolution of $X$ in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. Therefore we have for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \simeq [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \Xi[\Omega^1(-) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \cdots \to \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)]) .$$

The right hand is the ∞-groupoid of cocylces in the Čech hypercohomology of the truncated complex of sheaves of differential forms. A cocycle is given by a collection

$$(C_i, B_{ij}, A_{ijk}, \cdots, Z_{i_1, \cdots, i_n})$$

of differential forms, with $C_i \in \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(U_i)$, $B_{ij} \in \Omega^{n-1}(U_i \cap U_j)$, etc. , such that this collection is annihilated by the total differential $D = d_{\mathrm{dR}} \pm \delta$, where $d_{\mathrm{dR}}$ is the de Rham differential and $\delta$ the alternating sum of the pullbacks along the face maps of the Čech nerve.

It is a standard result of abelian sheaf cohomology that such cocycles represent classes in de Rham cohomology of $n \geq 2$. For $n = 1$ and $n = 0$ our truncated de Rham complex degenerates to $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}} = \Xi[\Omega^1_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)]$ and $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}} = \Xi[0]$, respectively, which obviously has the cohomology as claimed above. □

**Remark 6.4.74.** Recall from the discussion in 5.2.10 that the failure of the intrinsic de Rham cohomology of Smooth∞ to coincide with traditional de Rham cohomology in degree 0 and 1 is due to the fact that the intrinsic de Rham cohomology in degree $n$ is the home for curvature classes of circle $(n-1)$-bundles. For $n = 1$ these curvatures are not to be taken modulo exact forms. And for $n = 0$ they vanish.

**Definition 6.4.75.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, write $\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}} \in \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{CartSp}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ for the ordinary sheaf of smooth closed differential $n$-forms. By prop. 6.4.72 this has a canonical morphism

$$\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}} \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$$

into the de Rham coefficient object for $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$, given in the presentation of the latter as a simplicial presheaf according to prop. 6.4.72 by the inclusion of the simplicial presheaf that is simplicially constant on the degree-0 component.

**Proposition 6.4.76.** *The morphisms of def. 6.4.75 are differential form objects in the sense of def. 5.2.70 with respect to the standard line object* $\mathbb{R}$.

Proof. By the discussion in **??** the $\mathbb{R}^1$-manifolds are precisely the objects in the inclusion SmoothMfd $\hookrightarrow$ $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty$(SmoothMfd) $\simeq$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd. This means by def. 5.2.70 that we need to check that for each smooth manifold $\Sigma$ the morphism

$$[\Sigma, \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}] \to [\Sigma, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)]$$

is an effective epimorphism. By prop. 5.1.67 this is equivalent to the 0-truncation of the moprhism being an epimorphism in the sheaf topos Sh(CartSp). By the characterization of internal homs in turn, for this it is sufficient that for each $U \in$ CartSp the function $\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(\Sigma \times U) \to \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\Sigma \times U, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^n U(1))$ is a surjection. This is the case by prop. 6.4.73. □

We discuss the equivariant version of smooth de Rham cohomology.

**Proposition 6.4.77.** *Let $X$ be a smooth manifold equipped with a smooth action by a Lie group $G$. Write $X//G$ for the corresponding action Lie groupoid, prop. 6.4.45. Then for $n \geq 2$ we have an isomorphism*

$$\pi_0 \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X//G, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{dR},G}(X)\,,$$

*where on the right we have ordinary $G$-equivariant de Rham cohomology of $X$.*

### 6.4.14 Exponentiated Lie algebras

We discuss the intrinsic notion of exponentiated $\infty$-Lie algebras, 5.2.11, realized in Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

- 6.4.14.1 – Lie integration;
- 6.4.14.2 – Examples;
- 6.4.14.3 – Flat coefficients;
- 6.4.14.4 – de Rham coefficients;

**6.4.14.1 Lie integration** Recall the characterization of $L_\infty$-algebras, def. 1.2.150, by dual dg-algebras, prop. 1.2.152 – their *Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras*–, and the characterization of the category $L_\infty$Alg as the full subcategory

$$L_\infty \stackrel{\mathrm{CE}}{\hookrightarrow} \mathrm{dgAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}\,.$$

We describe now a presentation of the exponentiation of an $L_\infty$ algebra to a smooth $\infty$-group. The following somewhat technical definition serves to control the smooth structure on these exponentiated objects.

**Definition 6.4.78.** For $k \in \mathbb{N}$ regard the $k$-simplex $\Delta^k$ as a smooth manifold with corners in the standard way. We think of this embedded into the Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^k$ in the standard way with maximal rotation symmetry about the center of the simplex, and equip $\Delta^k$ with the metric space structure induced this way.

A smooth differential form $\omega$ on $\Delta^k$ we say has *sitting instants* along the boundary if, for every $(r < k)$-face $F$ of $\Delta^k$ there is an open neighbourhood $U_F$ of $F$ in $\Delta^k$ such that $\omega$ restricted to $U$ is constant in the directions perpendicular to the $r$-face on its value restricted to that face.

More generally, for any $U \in$ CartSp a smooth differential form $\omega$ on $U \times \Delta^k$ is said to have sitting instants if there is $0 < \epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$ such that for all points $u : * \to U$ the pullback along $(u, \mathrm{Id}) : \Delta^k \to U \times \Delta^k$ is a form with sitting instants on $\epsilon$-neighbourhoods of faces.

Smooth forms with sitting instants form a sub-dg-algebra of all smooth forms. We write $\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k)$ for this sub-dg-algebra.

We write $\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k)$ for the further sub-dg-algebra of vertical differential forms with respect to the projection $p : U \times \Delta^k \to U$, hence the coequalizer

$$\Omega^{\bullet \geq 1}(U) \underset{0}{\overset{p^*}{\rightrightarrows}} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) \; .$$

**Definition 6.4.79.** For $\mathfrak{g} \in L_\infty$ write $\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ for the simplicial presheaf defined over $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$ by

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g}) : (U, [n]) \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^n))$$

with the evident structure maps given by pullback of differential forms.

This definition of the $\infty$-groupoid associated to an $L_\infty$-algebra realized in the smooth context appears in [FSS10] and in similar form in [Roy10] as the evident generalization of the definition in Banach spaces in [Hen08] and for discrete $\infty$-groupoids in [Ge09], which in turn goes back to [Hin97].

**Proposition 6.4.80.** *The objects* $\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ *are*

1. *connected;*
2. *Kan complexes over each* $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$.

Proof. That $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_0 = *$ follows from degree-counting: $\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^0) = C^\infty(U)$ is entirely in degree 0 and $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ is in degree 0 the ground field $\mathbb{R}$.

To see that $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ has all horn-fillers over each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ observe that the standard continuous horn retracts $f : \Delta^k \to \Lambda^k_i$ are smooth away from the preimages of the $(r < k)$-faces of $\Lambda[k]^i$.

For $\omega \in \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Lambda[k]^i)$ a differential form with sitting instants on $\epsilon$-neighbourhoods, let therefore $K \subset \partial\Delta^k$ be the set of points of distance $\leq \epsilon$ from any subface. Then we have a smooth function

$$f : \Delta^k \setminus K \to \Lambda^k_i \setminus K \, .$$

The pullback $f^*\omega \in \Omega^\bullet(\Delta^k \setminus K)$ may be extended constantly back to a form with sitting instants on all of $\Delta^k$. The resulting assignment

$$(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \stackrel{A}{\to} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Lambda^k_i)) \mapsto (\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \stackrel{A}{\to} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Lambda^k_i) \stackrel{f^*}{\to} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^n))$$

provides fillers for all horns over all $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$. □

**Definition 6.4.81.** We say that the loop space object $\Omega \exp(\mathfrak{g})$ is the *smooth $\infty$-group* exponentiating $\mathfrak{g}$.

**Proposition 6.4.82.** *The objects* $\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *are geometrically contractible,*

$$\Pi \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \simeq * \, ,$$

*and hence are indeed exponentiated $\infty$-Lie algebras in the sense of def. 5.2.72.*

Proof. Observe that every simplicial presheaf $X$ is the homotopy colimit over its component presheaves $X_n \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}] \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$

$$X \simeq \mathbb{L}\underset{\to}{\lim}_n X_n \, .$$

(Use for instance the injective model structure for which $X_\bullet$ is cofibrant in the Reedy model structure $[\Delta^{op}, [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj,loc}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$ ). Therefore it is sufficient to show that in each degree $n$ the 0-truncated object $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_n$ is geometrically contractible.

To exhibit a geometric contraction, def. 5.2.16, choose for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, a smooth retraction

$$\eta_n : \Delta^n \times [0,1] \longrightarrow \Delta^n$$

of the $n$-simplex: a smooth map such that $\eta_n(-,1) = \mathrm{Id}$ and $\eta_n(-,0)$ factors through the point. We claim that this induces a diagram of presheaves

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g})_n & & \\ \downarrow^{(\mathrm{id},1)} & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}} & \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g})_n \times [0,1] & \xrightarrow{\eta_n^*} & \exp(\mathfrak{g})_n \\ \uparrow^{(\mathrm{id},0)} & & \uparrow \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g})_n & \longrightarrow & * \end{array} ,$$

where over $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the middle morphism is given by

$$\eta_n^* : (\alpha, f) \mapsto (f, \eta_n)^* \alpha \,,$$

where

- $\alpha : \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^n)$ is an element of the set $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_n(U)$,
- $f$ is an element of $[0,1](U)$;
- $(f, \eta_n)$ is the composite morphism

$$U \times \Delta^n \stackrel{(\mathrm{id},f)\times \mathrm{id}}{\longrightarrow} U \times [0,1] \times \Delta^n \stackrel{(\mathrm{id},\eta_n)}{\longrightarrow} U \times \Delta^n$$

- $(f, \eta)^* \alpha$ is the postcomposition of $\alpha$ with the image of $(f, \eta_n)$ under $\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(-)$.

Here the last item is well defined given the coequalizer definition of $\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}$ because $(f, \eta_n)$ is a morphism of bundles over $U$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} U \times \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id},f)\times \mathrm{id}} & U \times [0,1] \times \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}\times \eta_n} & U \times \Delta^n \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ U & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & U & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & U \end{array} .$$

Similarly, for $h : K \to U$ any morphism in SmoothCartSp the naturality condition for a morphism of presheaves follows from the fact that the composites of bundle morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} K \times \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{h \times \mathrm{id}} & U \times \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id},f)\times \mathrm{id}} & U \times [0,1] \times \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id},\eta_n)} & U \times \Delta^n \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K & \xrightarrow{h} & U & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & U & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & U \end{array}$$

and

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} K \times \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{((\mathrm{id}, f\circ h)\times \mathrm{id}} & K \times [0,1] \times \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}\times \eta_n} & K \times \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{h \times \mathrm{id}} & U \times \Delta^n \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ K & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & K & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & K & \xrightarrow{h} & U \end{array}$$

coincide.

Moreover, notice that the lower morphism in our diagram of presheaves indeed factors through the point as indicated, because for an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ we have that the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ is in degree 0 the ground field algebra algebra $\mathbb{R}$, so that there is a unique morphism $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^0) \simeq C^\infty(U)$ in dgAlg.

Finally, since $[0,1]$ is a contractible paracompact manifold, we have that $\Pi([0,1]) \simeq *$ by prop. 6.3.29. Therefore the above diagram of presheaves presents a geometric homotopy in Smooth∞Grpd from the identity map to a map that factors through the point. It follows by prop 5.2.17 that $\Pi(\exp(\mathfrak{g})_n) \simeq *$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. And since $\Pi$ preserves the homotopy colimit $\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \simeq \mathbb{L}\varinjlim_n \exp(\mathfrak{g})_n$ we have that $\Pi(\exp(\mathfrak{g})) \simeq *$, too. □

We may think of $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ as the smooth geometrically ∞-*simply connected Lie integration* of $\mathfrak{g}$. Notice however that $\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \in$ Smooth∞Grpd in general has nontrivial and interesting homotopy sheaves. The above statement says that its *geometric homotopy groups* vanish .

#### 6.4.14.2 Examples of exponentiated $L_\infty$-Algebras

Let $\mathfrak{g} \in L_\infty$ be an ordinary (finite dimensional) Lie algebra. Standard Lie theory provides a simply connected Lie group $G$ integrating $\mathfrak{g}$. Write $\mathbf{B}G \in$ Smooth∞Grpd for its delooping. According to prop. 6.4.19 this is presented by the simplicial presheaf $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$.

**Proposition 6.4.83.** *The operation of parallel transport $P\exp(\int -) : \Omega^1([0,1], \mathfrak{g}) \to G$ yields a weak equivalence (in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$)*

$$P\exp(\int -) : \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \simeq \mathbf{cosk}_2 \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \simeq \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} .$$

Proof. Notice that a flat smooth $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form on a contractible space $X$ is after a choice of basepoint canonically identified with a smooth function $X \to G$. The claim then follows from the observation that by the fact that $G$ is simply connected any two paths with coinciding endpoints have a continuous homotopy between them, and that for smooth paths this may be chose to be smooth, by the Steenrod approximation theorem [Wock09]. □

Let now $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 1$.

**Definition 6.4.84.** Write

$$b^{n-1}\mathbb{R} \in L_\infty$$

for the $L_\infty$-algebra whose Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra is given by a single generator in degree $n$ and vanishing differential. We call this the *line Lie $n$-algebra*.

**Observation 6.4.85.** The discrete ∞-groupoid underlying $\exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$ is given by the Kan complex that in degree $k$ has the set of closed differential $n$-forms with sitting instants on the $k$-simplex

$$\Gamma(\exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})) : [k] \mapsto \Omega^n_{\mathrm{si,cl}}(\Delta^k)$$

**Definition 6.4.86.** We write equivalently

$$\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} := \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] .$$

**Proposition 6.4.87.** *We have that $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}}$ is indeed a presentation of the smooth line $n$-group $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}$, from 6.4.21.*

*Concretely, with $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}} \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ the standard presentation given under the Dold-Kan correspondence by the chain complex of sheaves concentrated in degree $n$ on $C^\infty(-,\mathbb{R})$ the equivalence is induced by the fiber integration of differential $n$-forms over the $n$-simplex:*

$$\int_{\Delta^\bullet} : \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} .$$

Proof. First we observe that the map

$$\int_{\Delta^\bullet} : (\omega \in \Omega^n_{\mathrm{si,vert,cl}}(U \times \Delta^k)) \mapsto \int_{\Delta^k} \omega \in C^\infty(U, \mathbb{R})$$

is indeed a morphism of simplicial presheaves $\exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}}$ on. Since it goes between presheaves of abelian simplicial groups, by the Dold-Kan correspondence it is sufficient to check that we have a morphism of chain complexes of presheaves on the corresponding normalized chain complexes.

The only nontrivial degree to check is degree $n$. Let $\lambda \in \Omega^n_{\mathrm{si,vert,cl}}(\Delta^{n+1})$. The differential of the normalized chains complex sends this to the signed sum of its restrictions to the $n$-faces of the $(n+1)$-simplex. Followed by the integral over $\Delta^n$ this is the piecewise integral of $\lambda$ over the boundary of the $n$-simplex. Since $\lambda$ has sitting instants, there is $0 < \epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$ such that there are no contributions to this integral in an $\epsilon$-neighbourhood of the $(n-1)$-faces. Accordingly the integral is equivalently that over the smooth surface inscribed into the $(n+1)$-simplex. Since $\lambda$ is a closed form on the $n$-simplex, this surface integral vanishes, by the Stokes theorem. Hence $\int_{\Delta^\bullet}$ is indeed a chain map.

It remains to show that $\int_{\Delta^\bullet} : \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}}$ is an isomorphism on simplicial homotopy groups over each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$. This amounts to the statement that

- a smooth family of closed $n < k$-forms with sitting instants on the boundary of $\Delta^{k+1}$ may be extended to a smooth family of closed forms with sitting instants on $\Delta^{k+1}$
- a smooth family of closed $n$-forms with sitting instants on the boundary of $\Delta^{n+1}$ may be extended to a smooth family of closed forms with sitting instants on $\Delta^{n+1}$ precisely if their smooth family of integrals over $\partial\Delta^{n+1}$ vanishes.

To demonstrate this, we want to work with forms on the $(k+1)$-ball instead of the $(k+1)$-simplex. To achieve this, choose again $0 < \epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$ and construct the diffeomorphic image of $S^k \times [1-\epsilon, 1]$ inside the $(k+1)$-simplex as indicated by the above construction: outside an $\epsilon$-neighbourhood of the corners the image is a rectangular $\epsilon$-thickening of the faces of the simplex. Inside the $\epsilon$-neighbourhoods of the corners it bends smoothly. By the Steenrod-approximation theorem [Wock09] the diffeomorphism from this $\epsilon$-thickening of the smoothed boundary of the simplex to $S^k \times [0,1]$ extends to a smooth function from the $(k+1)$-simplex to the $(k+1)$-ball. By choosing $\epsilon$ smaller than each of the sitting instants of the given $n$-form on $\partial\Delta^k$, we have that this $n$-form vanishes on the $\epsilon$-neighbourhoods of the corners and is hence entirely determined by its restriction to the smoothed simplex, identified with the $(k+1)$-ball.

It is now sufficient to show: a smooth family of smooth $n$-forms $\omega \in \Omega^n_{\mathrm{vert,cl}}(U \times S^k)$ extends to a smooth family of closed $n$-forms $\hat{\omega} \in \Omega^n_{\mathrm{vert,cl}}(U \times B^{n+1})$ that is radially constant in a neighbourhood of the boundary for all $n < k$ and for $n = k$ precisely if its smooth family of integrals $\int_{S^n} \omega = 0 \in C^\infty(U, \mathbb{R})$ vanishes.

Notice that over the point this is a direct consequence of the de Rham theorem: all $k < n$ forms are exact on $S^k$ and $n$-forms are exact precisely if their integral vanishes. In that case there is an $(n-1)$-form $A$ with $\omega = dA$. Choosing any smoothing function $f : [0,1] \to [0,1]$ (smooth, surjective non,decreasing and constant in a neighbourhood of the boundary) we obtain a $n$-form $f \wedge A$ on $(0,1] \times S^n$, vertically constant in a neighbourhood of the ends of the interval, equal to $A$ at the top and vanishing at the bottom. Pushed forward along the canonical $(0,1] \times S^n \to D^{n+1}$ this defines a form on the $(n+1)$-ball, that we denote by the same symbol $f \wedge A$. Then the form $\hat{\omega} := d(f \wedge A)$ solves the problem.

To complete the proof we have to show that this argument does extend to smooth families of forms in that we can find suitable smooth families of the form $A$ in the above discussion. This may be accomplished for instance by invoking Hodge theory: If we equip $S^k$ with a Riemannian metric then the refined form of the Hodge theorem says that we have an equality

$$\mathrm{id} - \pi_{\mathcal{H}} = [d, d^* G]\,,$$

of operators on differential forms, where $\pi_{\mathcal{H}}$ is the orthogonal projection on harmonic forms and $G$ is the Green operator of the Hodge-Laplace operator. For $\omega$ an exact form its harmonic projection vanishes so that this gives a homotopy

$$\omega = d(d^* G \omega)\,.$$

This operation $\omega \mapsto d^* G \omega$ depends smoothly on $\omega$. $\square$

**6.4.14.3 Flat coefficients for exponentiated $L\infty$-algebras** We consider now the flat coefficient object, 5.2.6, $\flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})$ of exponentiated $L_\infty$-algebras $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$, 6.4.14.

**Definition 6.4.88.** Write $\flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{smp}}$ or equivalently $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{flat}}$ for the simplicial presheaf given by

$$\flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{smp}} : (U, [n]) \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^n)) \,.$$

**Proposition 6.4.89.** *The canonical morphism* $\flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{smp}} \to \exp(\mathfrak{g})$ *in* Smooth$\infty$Grpd *is presented in* [SmoothCartSp$^{\mathrm{op}}$, sSet] *by the composite*

$$\mathrm{const}\,\Gamma\ \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{smp}} \twoheadrightarrow \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \ \ ,$$

*where the first morphism is a weak equivalence and the second a fibration in* [SmoothCartSp$^{\mathrm{op}}$, sSet]$_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

We prove the properties of the two morphisms of prop. 6.4.89 separately in two lemmas:

**Lemma 6.4.90.** *The canonical inclusion*

$$\mathrm{const}\Gamma(\exp(\mathfrak{g})) \longrightarrow \flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{smp}}$$

*is a weak equivalence in* [CartSp$^{\mathrm{op}}$, sSet]$_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

Proof. The morphism in question is on each object $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the morphism of simplicial sets

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(\Delta^k)) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k)) \,,$$

which is given by pullback of differential forms along the projection $U \times \Delta^k \to \Delta^k$.

To show that for fixed $U$ this is a weak equivalence in the standard model structure on simplicial sets we produce objectwise a left inverse

$$F_U : \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^\bullet)) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(\Delta^\bullet))$$

and show that this is an acyclic fibration of simplicial sets. The statement then follows by the 2-out-of-3-property of weak equivalences.

We take $F_U$ to be given by evaluation at $0 : * \to U$, i.e. by postcomposition with the morphisms

$$\Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) \stackrel{\mathrm{Id} \times 0^*}{\longrightarrow} \Omega^\bullet(* \times \Delta^k) = \Omega^\bullet(\Delta^k) \,.$$

(This is, of course, not natural in $U$ and hence does not extend to a morphism of simplicial presheaves. But for our argument here it need not.) The morphism $F_U$ is an acyclic Kan fibration precisely if all diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta[n] & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Hom}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^\bullet)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{F_U} \\ \Delta[n] & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Hom}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(\Delta^\bullet)) \end{array}$$

have a lift. Using the Yoneda lemma over the simplex category and since the differential forms on the simplices have sitting instants, we may, as above, equivalently reformulate this in terms of spheres as follows: for every morphism $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(D^n)$ and morphism $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times S^{n-1})$ such that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) & \longrightarrow & \Omega^\bullet(U \times S^{n-1}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(D^n) & \longrightarrow & \Omega^\bullet(S^{n-1}) \end{array}$$

commutes, this may be factored as

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) & & \\ & \searrow & \\ & \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times D^n) & \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(U \times S^{n-1}) \\ & \downarrow & \downarrow \\ & \Omega^\bullet(D^n) & \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(S^{n-1}) \end{array} .$$

(Here the subscript "si" denotes differential forms on the disk that are radially constant in a neighbourhood of the boundary.)

This factorization we now construct. Let first $f : [0,1] \to [0,1]$ be any smoothing function, i.e. a smooth function which is surjective, non-decreasing, and constant in a neighbourhood of the boundary. Define a smooth map $U \times [0,1] \to U$ by $(u, \sigma) \mapsto u \cdot f(1-\sigma)$, where we use the multiplicative structure on the Cartesian space $U$. This function is the identity at $\sigma = 0$ and is the constant map to the origin at $\sigma = 1$. It exhibits a smooth contraction of $U$.

Pullback of differential forms along this map produces a morphism

$$\Omega^\bullet(U \times S^{n-1}) \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(U \times S^{n-1} \times [0,1])$$

which is such that a form $\omega$ is sent to a form which in a neighbourhood $(1-\epsilon, 1]$ of $1 \in [0,1]$ is constant along $(1-\epsilon, 1] \times U$ on the value $(0, \mathrm{Id}_{S^{n-1}})^* \omega$.

Let now $0 < \epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$ some value such that the given forms $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(D^k)$ are constant a distance $d \leq \epsilon$ from the boundary of the disk. Let $q : [0, \epsilon/2] \to [0,1]$ be given by multiplication by $1/(\epsilon/2)$ and $h : D^k_{1-\epsilon/2} \to D^n_1$ the injection of the $n$-disk of radius $1 - \epsilon/2$ into the unit $n$-disk.

We can then glue to the morphism

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(U \times S^{n-1}) \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(U \times [0,1] \times S^{n-1}) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{id \times q^* \times id} \Omega^\bullet(U \times [0, \epsilon/2] \times S^{n-1})$$

to the morphism

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet(D^n) \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(U \times \{1\} \times D^n) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{h^*} \Omega^\bullet(U \times \{1\} \times D^n_{1-\epsilon/2})$$

by smoothly identifying the union $[0, \epsilon/2] \times S^{n-1} \coprod_{S^{n-1}} D^n_{1-\epsilon/2}$ with $D^n$ (we glue a disk into an annulus to obtain a new disk) to obtain in total a morphism

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \longrightarrow \Omega^\bullet(U \times D^n)$$

with the desired properties: at $u = 0$ the homotopy that we constructed is constant and the above construction hence restricts the forms to radius $\leq 1 - \epsilon/2$ and then extends back to radius $\leq 1$ by the constant value that they had before. Away from 0 the homotopy in the remaining $\epsilon/2$ bit smoothly interpolates to the boundary value. □

**Lemma 6.4.91.** *The canonical morphism*

$$\flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{smp}} \longrightarrow \exp(\mathfrak{g})$$

*is a fibration in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

Proof. Over each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the morphism is induced from the morphism of dg-algebras

$$\Omega^\bullet(U) \longrightarrow C^\infty(U)$$

that discards all differential forms of non-vanishing degree.

It is sufficient to show that for

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times (D^n \times [0,1]))$$

a morphism and

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times D^n)$$

a lift of its restriction to $\sigma = 0 \in [0,1]$ we have an extension to a lift

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times (D^n \times [0,1]))\,.$$

From these lifts all the required lifts are obtained by precomposition with some evident smooth retractions.

The lifts in question are obtained from solving differential equations with boundary conditions, and exist due to the existence of solutions of first order systems of partial differential equations and the identity $d_{\mathrm{dR}}^2 = 0$. □

We have obtained now two different presentations for the flat coefficient object $\flat \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}$:

1. $\flat \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}}$ – prop. 6.4.69;
2. $\flat \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}}$ – prop. 6.4.89;

There is an evident degreewise comparison map

$$(-1)^{\bullet+1} \int_{\Delta^\bullet} : \flat \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{simp}} \longrightarrow \flat \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}}$$

that sends a closed $n$-form $\omega \in \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(U \times \Delta^k)$ to $(-1)^{k+1}$ times its fiber integration $\int_{\Delta^k} \omega$.

**Proposition 6.4.92.** *This map yields a morphism of simplicial presheaves*

$$\int : \flat \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \longrightarrow \flat \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}}$$

*which is a weak equivalence in* $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

Proof. First we check that we have a morphism of simplicial sets over each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$. Since both objects are abelian simplicial groups we may, by the Dold-Kan correspondence, check the statement for sheaves of normalized chain complexes.

Notice that the chain complex differential on the forms $\omega \in \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(U \times \Delta^k)$ on simplices sends a form to the alternating sum of its restriction to the faces of the simplex. Postcomposed with the integration map this is the operation $\omega \mapsto \int_{\partial \Delta^k} \omega$ of integration over the boundary.

Conversely, first integrating over the simplex and then applying the de Rham differential on $U$ yields

$$\begin{aligned} \omega \mapsto (-1)^{k+1} d_U \int_{\Delta^k} \omega &= -\int_{\Delta^k} d_U \omega \\ &= \int_{\Delta^k} d_{\Delta^k} \omega \quad , \\ &= \int_{\partial \Delta^k} \omega \end{aligned}$$

where we first used that $\omega$ is closed, so that $d_{\mathrm{dR}}\omega = (d_U + d_{\Delta^k})\omega = 0$, and then used Stokes' theorem. Therefore we have indeed objectwise a chain map.

By the discussion of the two objects we already know that both present the homotopy-type of $\flat\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}$. Therefore it suffices to show that the integration map is over each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ an isomorphism on the simplicial homotopy group in degree $n$.

Clearly the morphism

$$\int_{\Delta^n} : \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,cl}}(U \times \Delta^n) \longrightarrow C^\infty(U, \mathbb{R})$$

is surjective on degree $n$ homotopy groups: for $f : U \to * \to \mathbb{R}$ constant, a preimage is $f \cdot \mathrm{vol}_{\Delta^n}$, the normalized volume form of the $n$-simplex times $f$. Moreover, these preimages clearly span the whole homotopy group $\pi_n(\flat\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}) \simeq \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{disc}}$ (they are in fact the images of the weak equivalence $\mathrm{const}\Gamma\exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \to \flat\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}}$ ) and the integration map is injective on them. Therefore it is an isomorphism on the homotopy groups in degree $n$. □

#### 6.4.14.4 de Rham coefficients for exponentiated $L_\infty$-algebras

We now consider the de Rham coefficient object $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\exp(\mathfrak{g})$, 5.2.10, of exponentiated $L_\infty$-algebras $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ according to def. 6.4.79.

**Proposition 6.4.93.** *For $\mathfrak{g} \in L_\infty$ a representive in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ of the de Rham coefficient object $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ is represented by the simplicial presheaf*

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{smp}} : (U, [n]) \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^{\bullet \geq 1, \bullet}_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^n)),$$

*where the notation on the right denotes the dg-algebra of differential forms on $U \times \Delta^n$ that (apart from having sitting instants on the faces of $\Delta^n$) are along $U$ of non-vanishing degree.*

Proof. By prop. 6.4.89 we may present the defining $\infty$-pullback $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} := * \times_{\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}} \flat\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}$ in Smooth$\infty$Grpd by the ordinary pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} & \longrightarrow & \flat\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$. □

We have discussed now two different presentations for the de Rham coefficient object $\flat\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}$:

1. $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}}$ – prop. 6.4.72;
2. $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}}$ – prop 6.4.93;

There is an evident degreewise map

$$(-1)^{\bullet+1}\int_{\Delta^\bullet} : \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}}$$

that sends a closed $n$-form $\omega \in \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(U \times \Delta^k)$ to $(-1)^{k+1}$ times its fiber integration $\int_{\Delta^k}\omega$.

**Proposition 6.4.94.** *This map yields a morphism of simplicial presheaves*

$$\int : \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}}$$

*which is a weak equivalence in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.*

Proof. This morphism is the morphism on pullbacks induced from the weak equivalence of diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} * & \longrightarrow & \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & \longleftarrow & \flat \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \\ \downarrow^{=} & & \simeq \downarrow^{\int} & & \simeq \downarrow^{\int} \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}} & \longleftarrow & \flat \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{chn}} \end{array} .$$

Since both of these pullbacks are homotopy pullbacks by the above discussion, the induced morphism between the pullbacks is also a weak equivalence. □

### 6.4.15 Maurer-Cartan forms and curvature characteristic forms

We discuss the universal curvature forms, 5.2.12, in Smooth∞Grpd.

Specifically, we discuss the canonical Maurer-Cartan form on the following special cases of (presentations of) smooth ∞-groups.

- 6.4.15.1 – ordinary Lie groups:
- 6.4.15.2 – circle $n$-groups $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$;
- 6.4.15.3 – simplicial Lie groups.

Notice that, by the discussion in 3.1.6, the case of simplicial Lie groups also subsumes the case of crossed modules of Lie groups, def. 1.2.81, and generally of crossed complexes of Lie groups, def. 1.2.96.

#### 6.4.15.1 Canonical form on an ordinary Lie group

**Proposition 6.4.95.** *Let $G$ be a Lie group with Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$.*

*Under the identification*

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G) \simeq \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathfrak{g})$$

*from prop. 6.4.70, for $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$, we have that the canonical morphism*

$$\theta : G \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$$

*in Smooth∞Grpd corresponds to the ordinary Maurer-Cartan form on $G$.*

Proof. We compute the defining double ∞-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow^{\theta} & & \downarrow \\ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G & \longrightarrow & \flat \mathbf{B}G \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

in Smooth∞Grpd as a homotopy pullback in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. In prop. 6.4.70 we already modeled the lower ∞-pullback square by the ordinary pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} & \longrightarrow & \flat \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \end{array} .$$

A standard fibration replacement of the point inclusion $* \to \flat \mathbf{B}G$ is given by replacing the point by the presheaf that assigns groupoids of the form

$$
Q : U \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & A_0 = 0 & \\ {}^{g_1}\swarrow & & \searrow^{g_2} \\ A_1 & \xrightarrow{h} & A_2 \end{array} \right\},
$$

where on the right the commuting triangle is in $(\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})(U)$ and here regarded as a morphism from $(g_1, A_1)$ to $(g_2, A_2)$. And the fibration $Q \to \flat \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is given by projecting out the base of these triangles.

The pullback of this along $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \to \flat \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is over each $U$ the restriction of the groupoid $Q(U)$ to its set of objects, hence is the sheaf

$$
U \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{c} A_0 = 0 \\ \downarrow^{g} \\ g^*\theta \end{array} \right\} \simeq C^\infty(U, G) = G(U)\,,
$$

equipped with the projection

$$
t_U : G \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}
$$

given by

$$
t_U : (g : U \to G) \mapsto g^*\theta\,.
$$

Under the Yoneda lemma (over SmoothMfd) this identifies the morphism $t$ with the Maurer-Cartan form $\theta \in \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(G, \mathfrak{g})$. □

**6.4.15.2 Canonical form on the circle $n$-group** We consider now the canonical differential form on the circle Lie $(n+1)$-group, def. 6.4.21. Below in 6.4.16 this serves as the *universal curvature class* on the universal circle $n$-bundle.

**Definition 6.4.96.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, write

$$
\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff,chn}} := \mathrm{DK}\left( \begin{array}{ccccccc} & & U(1) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^1 & \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n-1} & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^n \\ & \nearrow & \oplus & \nearrow_{-\mathrm{id}} & \oplus & & \oplus & \nearrow_{(-1)^n \mathrm{id}} & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & \Omega^1 & \xrightarrow[d_{\mathrm{dR}}]{} & \Omega^2 & \longrightarrow \cdots \xrightarrow[d_{\mathrm{dR}}]{} & \Omega^n & & \end{array} \right) \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]
$$

for the simplicial presheaf which is the image under the Dold-Kan map, prop. 3.1.35, of the chain complex on the right as induicated. (Here we display morphisms between direct sums of presheaves of chain complexes by their matrix components, as usual). Write moreover

$$
\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{chn}} : \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff,chn}} \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}}
$$

for the morphism of simplicial presheaves which is the image under the Dold-Kan map, prop. 3.1.35 of the morphism of sheaves of chain complexes which in components is given by

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff,chn}} \\
\downarrow^{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{chn}}} \\
\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}}
\end{array}
:= \mathrm{DK}\left(
\begin{array}{ccccccccccc}
 & & U(1) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^1 & \to & \cdots & \to & \Omega^{n-1} & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^n \\
 & \nearrow & \oplus & \nearrow_{-\mathrm{id}} & \oplus & & & & \oplus & \nearrow_{(-1)^n \mathrm{id}} & \\
0 & \to & \Omega^1 & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^2 & \to & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^n & & \downarrow^{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow^{(-1)^n \mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow^{(-1)^n \mathrm{id}} & & & & \downarrow^{(-1)^n \mathrm{id}} & & \\
0 & \to & \Omega^1 & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^2 & \to & \cdots & \to & \Omega^n & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}
\end{array}
\right)
$$

**Proposition 6.4.97.** *The evident projection morphism*

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff,chn}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}}$$

*is a weak equivalence in* $[\mathrm{CartSp}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$*. Moreover, the span*

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff,chn}} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{chn}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}} \\
\downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\
\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}} & &
\end{array}
$$

*is a presentation in* $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ *of the universal curvature characteristic, def. 5.2.85,* $\mathrm{curv} : \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)$ *in* Smooth∞Grpd*.*

Proof. By prop. 5.1.9 we may present the defining ∞-pullback

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow^{\mathrm{curv}} & & \downarrow \\
\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1) & \longrightarrow & \flat \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
* & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)
\end{array}
$$

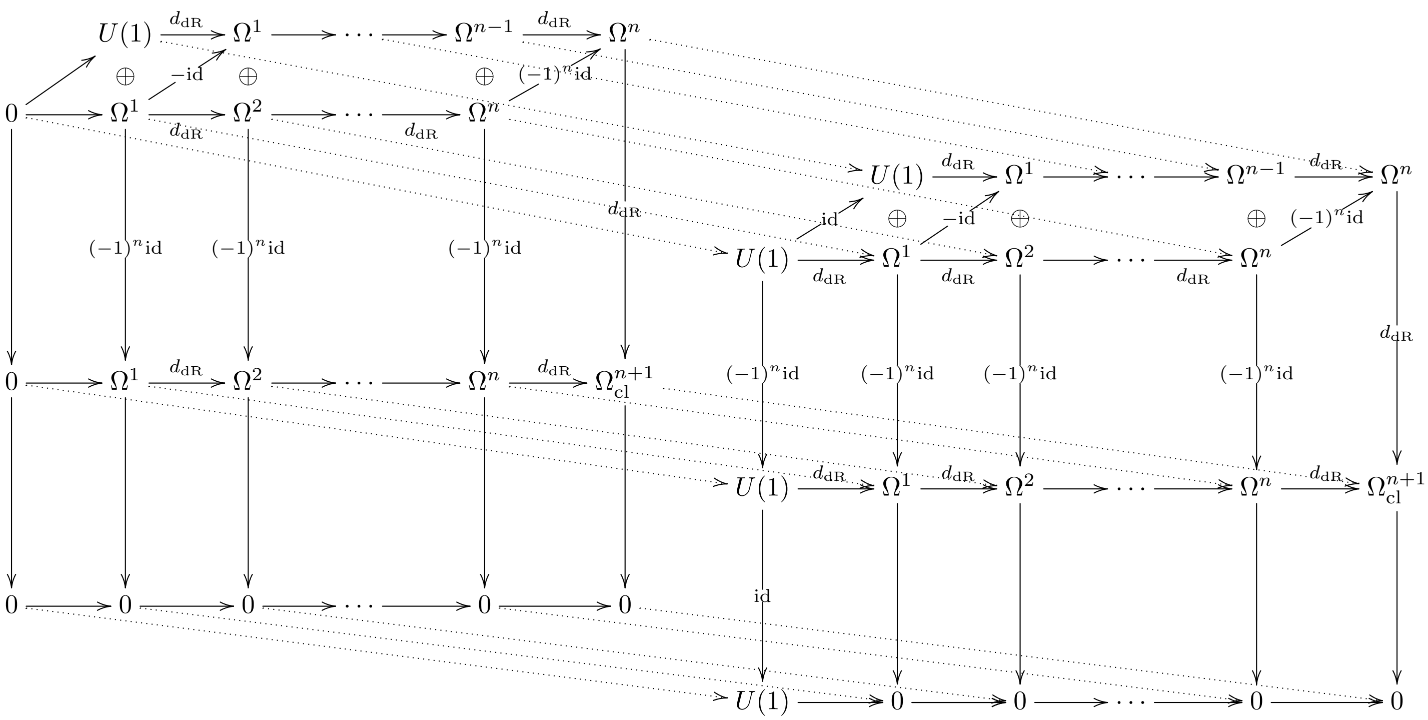
in Smooth∞Grpd by a homotopy pullback in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. We claim that there is a commuting diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
[0 \to \begin{smallmatrix} C^\infty(-,U(1)) \\ \oplus \Omega^1(-) \end{smallmatrix} \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}} - \mathrm{Id}}{\to} \begin{smallmatrix} \Omega^1(-) \\ \oplus \Omega^2(-) \end{smallmatrix} \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}} + \mathrm{Id}}{\to} \cdots \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}} + \mathrm{Id}}{\to} \Omega^n(-)] & \longrightarrow & [C^\infty(-,U(1)) \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}} + \mathrm{Id}}{\to} \begin{smallmatrix} C^\infty(-,U(1)) \\ \oplus \Omega^1(-) \end{smallmatrix} \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}} - \mathrm{Id}}{\to} \cdots \begin{smallmatrix} \Omega^{n-1}(-) \\ \oplus \Omega^n(-) \end{smallmatrix} \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}} + \mathrm{Id}}{\to} \Omega^n(-)] \\
\downarrow^{(p_2, p_2, \cdots, d_{\mathrm{dR}})} & & \downarrow^{(\mathrm{Id}, p_2, p_2, \cdots, p_2, d_{\mathrm{dR}})} \\
[0 \to \Omega^1(-) \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^2(-) \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \cdots \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)] & \longrightarrow & [C^\infty(-,U(1)) \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^1(-) \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^2(-) \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \cdots \overset{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
[0 \to 0 \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0] & \longrightarrow & [C^\infty(-,U(1)) \to 0 \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0]
\end{array}
$$

in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Ch}^+]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, where

- the objects are fibrant models for the corresponding objects in the above $\infty$-pullback diagram;
- the two right vertical morphisms are fibrations;
- the two squares are pullback squares.

This implies that under the right adjoint $\Xi$ we have a homotopy pullback as claimed. In full detail, the diagram of morphisms of sheaves that exhibits this diagram of morphisms of complexes of sheaves is



That the lower square here is a pullback is prop. 6.4.72. For the upper square the same type of reasoning applies. The main point is to find the chain complex in the top right such that it is a resolution of the point and maps by a fibration onto our model for $\flat \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$. This is the mapping cone of the identity on the Deligne complex, as indicated. The vertical morphism out of it is manifestly surjective (by the Poincaré lemma applied to each object $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$) hence this is a fibration. $\square$

In prop. 6.4.93 we had discussed an alternative equivalent presentation of de Rham coefficient objects above. We now formulate the curvature characteristic in this alternative form.

**Observation 6.4.98.** We may write the simplicial presheaf $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}}$ from prop.6.4.93 equivalently as follows

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} : (U, [k]) \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & 0 \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b^n \mathbb{R}) \end{array} \right\},$$

where on the right we have the set of commuting diagrams in dgAlg of the given form, with the vertical morphisms being the canonical projections.

**Definition 6.4.99.** Write $\mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \in \mathrm{dgAlg}$ for the Weil algebra of the line Lie $n$-algebra, defined to be free commutative dg-algebra on a single generator in degree $n$, hence the graded commutative algebra on a generator in degree $n$ and a generator in degree $(n+1)$ equipped with the differential that takes the former to the latter.

We write also $\mathrm{inn}(b^{n-1})$ for the $L_\infty$-algebra corresponding to the Weil algebra

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathrm{inn}(b^{n-1})) := \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$$

**Proposition 6.4.100.** *We have the following properties of* $\mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$

1. *There is a canonical natural isomorphism*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}), \Omega^\bullet(U)) \simeq \Omega^n(U)$$

*between dg-algebra homomorphisms* $A : \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \to \Omega^\bullet(X)$ *from the Weil algebra of* $b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$ *to the de Rham complex and degree-n differential forms, not necessarily closed.*

2. *There is a canonical dg-algebra homomorphism* $\mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \to \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$ *and the differential n-form corresponding to A factors through this morphism precisely if the curvature* $d_{\mathrm{dR}}A$ *of A vanishes.*

3. *The image under* $\exp(-)$

$$\exp(\mathrm{inn}(b^{n-1})\mathbb{R}) \to \exp(b^n\mathbb{R})$$

*of the canonical morphism* $\mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R})$ *is a fibration in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ *that presents the point inclusion* $* \to \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}$ *in* $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

**Definition 6.4.101.** Let $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ be the simplicial presheaf defined by

$$\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} : (U,[k]) \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U\times\Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} & \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U\times\Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A} & \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \end{array} \right\},$$

where on the right we have the set of commuting diagrams in dgAlg as indicated.

This means that an element of $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,smp}}(U)[k]$ is a smooth $n$-form $A$ (with sitting instants) on $U\times\Delta^k$ such that its curvature $(n+1)$-form $d_{\mathrm{dR}}A$ vanishes when restricted in all arguments to vector fields tangent to $\Delta^k$. We may write this condition as $d_{\mathrm{dR}}A \in \Omega^{\bullet\geq 1,\bullet}_{\mathrm{si}}(U\times\Delta^k)$.

**Observation 6.4.102.** There are canonical morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{smp}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} & & \end{array}$$

in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, where the vertical map is given by remembering only the top horizontal morphism in the above square diagram, and the horizontal morphism is given by forming the pasting composite

$$\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{smp}} : \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U\times\Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} & \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U\times\Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A} & \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \end{array} \right\}$$

$$\mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U\times\Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} & \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & \longleftarrow & 0 \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U\times\Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A} & \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R}) \end{array} \right\}.$$

**Proposition 6.4.103.** *This span is a presentation in* [SmoothCartSp$^{\mathrm{op}}$, sSet] *of the universal curvature characteristics* $\mathrm{curv} : \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}$*, def. 5.2.85, in* Smooth$\infty$Grpd*.*

Proof. We need to produce a fibration resolution of the point inclusion $* \to \flat\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}}$ in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ and then show that the above is the ordinary pullback of this along $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \to \flat\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}}$.

We claim that this is achieved by the morphism

$$(U,[k]) : \{\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) \leftarrow \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})\} \mapsto \{\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) \leftarrow \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R})\} .$$

Here the simplicial presheaf on the left is that which assigns the set of arbitrary $n$-forms (with sitting instants but not necessarily closed) on $U \times \Delta^k$ and the map is simply given by sending such an $n$-form $A$ to the $(n+1)$-form $d_{\mathrm{dR}}A$.

It is evident that the simplicial presheaf on the left resolves the point: since there is no condition on the forms every form on $U \times \Delta^k$ is in the image of the map of the normalized chain complex of a form on $U \times \Delta^{k+1}$: such is given by any form that is, up to a sign, equal to the given form on one $n$-face and 0 on all the other faces. Clearly such forms exist.

Moreover, this morphism is a fibration in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, for instanxce because its image under the normalized chains complex functor is a degreewise surjection, by the Poincaré lemma.

Now we observe that we have over each $(U,[k])$ a double pullback diagram in Set

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\left\{\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} & \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A} & W(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \end{array}\right\} & \to & \left\{\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow^{\mathrm{id}} \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \end{array}\right\} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\left\{\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & 0 \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R}) \end{array}\right\} & \to & \left\{\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow^{\mathrm{id}} \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R}) \end{array}\right\} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\left\{\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & 0 \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & 0 \end{array}\right\} & \to & \left\{\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & 0 \end{array}\right\}
\end{array} ,$$

hence a corresponding pullback diagram of simplicial presheaves, that we claim is a presentation for the defining double $\infty$-pullback for curv.

The bottom square is the one we already discussed for the de Rham coefficients. Since the top right vertical morphism is a fibration, also the top square is a homotopy pullback and hence exhibits the defining $\infty$-pullback for curv. □

**Corollary 6.4.104.** *The degreewise map*

$$(-1)^{\bullet+1}\int_{\Delta^\bullet} : \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,chn}}$$

*that sends an $n$-form $A \in \Omega^n(U \times \Delta^k)$ and its curvature $dA$ to $(-1)^{k+1}$ times its fiber integration $(\int_{\Delta^k} A, \int_{\Delta^k} dA)$ is a weak equivalence in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

Proof. Since under homotopy pullbacks a weak equivalence of diagrams is sent to a weak equivalence. See the analagous argument in the proof of prop. 6.4.94. □

**6.4.15.3 Canonical form on a simplicial Lie group** Above we discussed the canonical differential form on smooth $\infty$-groups $G$ for the special cases where $G$ is a Lie group and where $G$ is a circle Lie $n$-group. These are both in turn special cases of the situation where $G$ is a *simplicial Lie group*. This we discuss now.

**Proposition 6.4.105.** *For $G$ a simplicial Lie group the flat de Rham coefficient object $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$ is presented by the simplicial presheaf which in degree $k$ is given by $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}_k)$, where $\mathfrak{g}_k = \mathrm{Lie}(G_k)$ is the Lie algebra of $G_k$.*

Proof. Let

$$\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}_\bullet)//G_\bullet = \left(\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}_\bullet) \times C^\infty(-, G_\bullet) \rightrightarrows \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}_\bullet)\right)$$

be the presheaf of simplicial groupoids which in degree $k$ is the groupoid of Lie-algebra valued forms with values in $G_k$ from theorem. 1.2.114. As in the proof of prop. 6.4.70 we have that under the degreewise nerve this is a degreewise fibrant resolution of presheaves of bisimplicial sets

$$N\left(\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}_\bullet)//G_\bullet\right) \to N * //G_\bullet = NB(G_{\mathrm{disc}})_\bullet$$

of the standard presentation of the delooping of the discrete group underlying $G$. By basic properties of bisimplicial sets [GoJa99] we know that under taking the diagonal

$$\mathrm{diag} : \mathrm{sSet}^\Delta \to \mathrm{sSet}$$

the object on the right is a presentation for $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$, because (see the discussion of simplicial groups around prop. 5.1.170 )

$$\mathrm{diag}NB(G_{\mathrm{disc}})_\bullet \xrightarrow{\simeq} \bar{W}(G_{\mathrm{disc}}) \simeq \flat\mathbf{B}G\,.$$

Now observe that the morphism

$$\mathrm{diag}(N\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}_\bullet)//G_\bullet) \to \mathrm{diag}N * //G_{\mathrm{disc}}$$

is a fibration in the global model structure. This is in fact true for every morphism of the form

$$\mathrm{diag}N(S_\bullet//G_\bullet) \to \mathrm{diag} * //G_\bullet$$

for $S_\bullet//G_\bullet \to *//G_\bullet$ a simlicial action groupoid projection with $G$ a simplicial group acting on a Kan complex $S$: we have that

$$(\mathrm{diag}N(S//G))_k = S_k \times (G_k)^{\times_k}\,.$$

On the second factor the horn filling condition is simply that of the identity map $\mathrm{diag}NBG \to \mathrm{diag}NBG$ which is evidently solvable, whereas on the first factor it amounts to $S \to *$ being a Kan fibration, hence to $S$ being Kan fibrant.

But the simplicial presheaf $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}_\bullet)$ is indeed Kan fibrant: for a given $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ we may use parallel transport to (non-canonically) identify

$$\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(U, \mathfrak{g}_k) \simeq \mathrm{SmoothMfd}_*(U, G_k)\,,$$

where on the right we have smooth functions that send the origin of $U$ to the neutral element. But since $G_\bullet$ is Kan fibrant and has smooth global fillers also $\mathrm{SmoothMfd}_*(U, G_\bullet)$ is Kan fibrant.

In summary this means that the defining homotopy pullback

$$\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G := \flat\mathbf{B}G \times_{\mathbf{B}G} *$$

is presented by the ordinary pullback of simplicial presheaves

$$\mathrm{diag}N\Omega^1_{flat}(-,\mathfrak{g}_\bullet) \times \mathrm{diag}NBG_\bullet * = \Omega^1(-,\mathfrak{g}_\bullet)\,.$$

□

**Proposition 6.4.106.** *For $G$ a simplicial Lie group the canonical differential form, def. 5.2.79,*

$$\theta : G \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$$

*is presented in terms of the above presentation for $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G$ by the morphism of simplicial presheaves*

$$\theta_\bullet : G_\bullet \to \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}_\bullet)$$

*which is in degree $k$ the presheaf-incarnation of the Maurer-Cartan form of the ordinary Lie group $G_k$ as in prop. 6.4.95.*

Proof. Continuing with the strategy of the previous proof we find a fibration resolution of the point inclusion $* \to \flat\mathbf{B}G$ by applying the construction of the proof of prop. 6.4.95 degreewise and then applying $\mathrm{diag} \circ N$.

The defining homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} & \longrightarrow & \flat\mathbf{B}G \end{array}$$

for $\theta$ is this way presented by the ordinary pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G_\bullet & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{diag}N(\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}_\bullet))_{\mathrm{triv}}//G_\bullet) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{diag}N(\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}_\bullet)//G_\bullet) \end{array}$$

of simplicial presheaves, where $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}_k)$ is the set of flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued forms $A$ equipped with a gauge transformation $0 \stackrel{g}{\to} A$. As in the above proof one finds that the right vertical morphism is a fibration, hence indeed a resolution of the point inclusion. The pullback is degreewise that from the case of ordinary Lie groups and thus the result follows. □

We can now give a simplicial description of the canonical curvature form $\theta : \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \flat_{dR}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)$ that above in prop. 6.4.97 we obtained by a chain complex model:

**Example 6.4.107.** The canonical form on the circle Lie $n$-group

$$\theta : \mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$$

is presented by the simplicial map

$$\Xi(U(1)[n-1]) \to \Xi(\Omega^1_{cl}(-)[n-1])$$

which is simply the Maurer-Cartan form on $U(1)$ in degree $n$.

The equivalence to the model we obtained before is given by noticing the equivalence in hypercohomology of chain complexes of abelian sheaves

$$\Omega^1_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)[n] \simeq (\Omega^1(-) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \cdots \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-))$$

on CartSp.

### 6.4.16 Differential cohomology

We discuss the intrinsic differential cohomology, defined in 5.2.13 for any cohesive $\infty$-topos, realized in the context Smooth$\infty$Grpd, with coefficients in the circle Lie $(n+1)$-group $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$, def. 6.4.21.

We show here that the general concept reproduces the Deligne-Beilinson complex, 1.2.138, and generalizes it to a complex for equivariant differential cohomology for ordinary and twisted notions of equivariance.

- 6.4.16.1 – The $n$-groupoid of circle-principal $n$-connections;
- 6.4.16.2 – The universal moduli $n$-stack of circle-principal $n$-connections;
- 6.4.16.3 – The smooth moduli of connections over a given base
- 6.4.16.4 – Cup product in differential cohomology
- 6.4.16.5 – Equivariant circle $n$-bundles with connection;

The disucssion here proceeds in the un-stabilized cohesive $\infty$-topos Smooth$\infty$Grpd. By embedding this into its tangent cohesive $\infty$-topos $T$Smooth$\infty$Grpd, def. 6.1.17, one obtains the characteristic curvature long exact sequences discussed below from the general abstract discussion of prop. 6.1.3.2

**6.4.16.1 The smooth $n$-groupoid of circle-principal $n$-connections** Here we discuss some basic facts about differential cohomology with coefficients in the circle $n$-group, def. 6.3.48, that are independent of a notion of manifolds and global differential form objects as in 5.2.13.2. Further below in 6.4.16.2 we do consider these structures and show that $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is presented by the Deligne complex.

Here we discuss first that intrinsic differential cohomology in Smooth$\infty$Grpd has the abstract properties of traditional ordinary differential cohomology, [HoSi05], then we establish that both notions indeed coincide in cohomology. The intrinsic definition refines this ordinary differential cohomology to moduli $\infty$-stacks.

By def. 5.2.90 we are to consider the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) & \longrightarrow & H_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)) \end{array} ,$$

where the right vertical morphism picks one point in each connected component. Moreover, using prop. 6.4.72 in def. 5.2.95, we are entitled to the following bigger object.

**Definition 6.4.108.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ write $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1) \end{array}$$

in Smooth$\infty$Grpd. The cocycle $\infty$-groupoid over some $X \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd with coefficients in $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \simeq \begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}'_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) & \xrightarrow{F} & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) \\ \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}} & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)) \end{array} .$$

We call $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1))$ and its primed version the cocycle $\infty$-groupoid for *ordinary smooth differential cohomology* in degree $n$ .

**Proposition 6.4.109.** *For $n \geq 1$ and $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$, the abelian group $H'^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$ sits in the following short exact sequences of abelian groups*

- *the* curvature exact sequence

$$0 \to H^n(X, U(1)_{\mathrm{disc}}) \to H'^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, U(1)) \stackrel{F}{\to} \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(X) \to 0$$

- *the* characteristic class exact sequence

$$0 \to \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}/\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(X) \to H'^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, U(1)) \stackrel{\mathbf{c}}{\to} H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \to 0\,.$$

*Here $\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl,int}}$ denotes closed forms with integral periods.*

Proof. For the curvature exact sequence we invoke prop. 5.2.93, which yields (for $H_{\mathrm{diff}}$ as for $H'_{\mathrm{diff}}$)

$$0 \to H^n_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, U(1)) \to H'^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, U(1)) \stackrel{F}{\to} \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(X) \to 0\,.$$

The claim then follows by using prop. 6.4.66 to get $H^n_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, U(1)) \simeq H^n(X, U(1)_{\mathrm{disc}})$.

For the characteristic class exact sequence, we have with 5.2.94 for the smaller group $H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}$ (the fiber over the vanishing curvature $(n+1)$-form $F = 0$) the sequence

$$0 \to H^n_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)/\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(X) \to H'^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, U(1)) \stackrel{c}{\to} H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \to 0$$

where we used prop. 6.4.73 to identify the de Rham cohomology on the left, and the fact that $X$ is paracompact to identify the integral cohomology on the right. Since $\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(X)$ contains the exact forms (with all periods being $0 \in \mathbb{Z}$), the leftmost term is equivalently $\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)//\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(X)$. As we pass from $H_{\mathrm{diff}}$ to the bigger $H'_{\mathrm{diff}}$, we get a copy of a torsor over this group, for each closed form $F$, trivial in de Rham cohomology, to a total of

$$\coprod_{F \in \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)} \{\omega | d\omega = F\}/\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl,int}} \simeq \Omega^n(X)/\Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl,int}}(X)\,.$$

This yields the curvature exact sequence as claimed. □

If we invoke standard facts about Deligne cohomology, then prop. 6.4.109 is also implied by the following proposition, which asserts that in Smooth$\infty$Grpd the groups $H'^{\bullet}_{\mathrm{diff}}$ not only share the above abstract properties of ordinary differential cohomology, but indeed coincide with it.

**Theorem 6.4.110.** *For $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ a paracompact smooth manifold we have that the connected components of the object $\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1))$ are given by*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, U(1)) \simeq (\ \ H(X, \mathbb{Z}(n+1)^{\infty}_D)\ \ ) \times_{\Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)} H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR,int}}(X)\,.$$

*Here on the right we have the subset of Deligne cocycles that picks for each integral de Rham cohomology class of $X$ only one curvature form representative.*

*For the connected components of $\mathbf{H}'_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1))$ we get the complete ordinary Deligne cohomology of $X$ in degree $n+1$:*

$$H'^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(X, U(1)) \simeq \ \ H(X, \mathbb{Z}(n+1)^{\infty}_D)$$

Proof. Choose a differentiably good open cover, def. 6.4.2, $\{U_i \to X\}$ and let $C(\{U_i\}) \to X$ in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ be the corresponding Čech nerve projection, a cofibrant resolution of $X$.

Since the presentation of prop. 6.4.97 for the universal curvature class $\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{chn}} : \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff,chn}} \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}}$ is a global fibration and $C(\{U_i\})$ is cofibrant, also

$$[\mathrm{Cartp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}^n_{\mathrm{diff}} U(1)) \to [\mathrm{Cartp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^n U(1))$$

is a Kan fibration by the fact that $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ is an $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$-enriched model category. Therefore the homotopy pullback in question is computed as the ordinary pullback of this morphism.

By prop. 6.4.72 we can assume that the morphism $H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1})$ picks only cocycles represented by globally defined closed differential forms $F \in \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$. We see that the elements in the fiber over such a globally defined $(n+1)$-form $F$ are precisely the cocycles with values only in the upper row complex of $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff,chn}}$

$$C^\infty(-, U(1)) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^1(-) \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \cdots \stackrel{d_{\mathrm{dR}}}{\to} \Omega^n(-)\,,$$

such that $F$ is the de Rham differential of the last term. This is the Deligne-Beilinson complex, def. 1.2.138, for Deligne cohomology in degree $(n+1)$. □

In terms of def. 5.2.95 we have the object $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ – the *moduli $n$-stack of circle $n$-bundles with connection* – which presents $\mathbf{H}'_{\mathrm{diff}}(-, \mathbf{B}^n U(1))$

$$\mathbf{H}'_{\mathrm{diff}}(-, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \simeq \mathbf{H}(-, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})\,.$$

#### 6.4.16.2 The universal moduli $n$-stack of circle-principal $n$-connections

**Definition 6.4.111.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $k \leq n$ write

$$\Omega^{k \leq \bullet \leq n}_{\mathrm{cl}} := \mathrm{DK}\left( \Omega^k \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^{k+1} \longrightarrow \cdots \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^{n-1} \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}} \right)\,.$$

Write

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k,\mathrm{chn}} := \mathrm{DK}\left( U(1)\Omega^1 \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^k \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow 0 \right)$$

for the simplicial presheaf which is the image under the Dold-Kan map of the chain complex concentrated in degrees $n$ through $(n-k)$, as indicated. Notice that

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^0,\mathrm{chn}} = \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}}\,,$$

and we write

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn},\mathrm{chn}} := \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^n,\mathrm{chn}}\,.$$

**Proposition 6.4.112.** *The object* $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k} \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *is presented in* $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ *by* $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k,\mathrm{chn}}$.

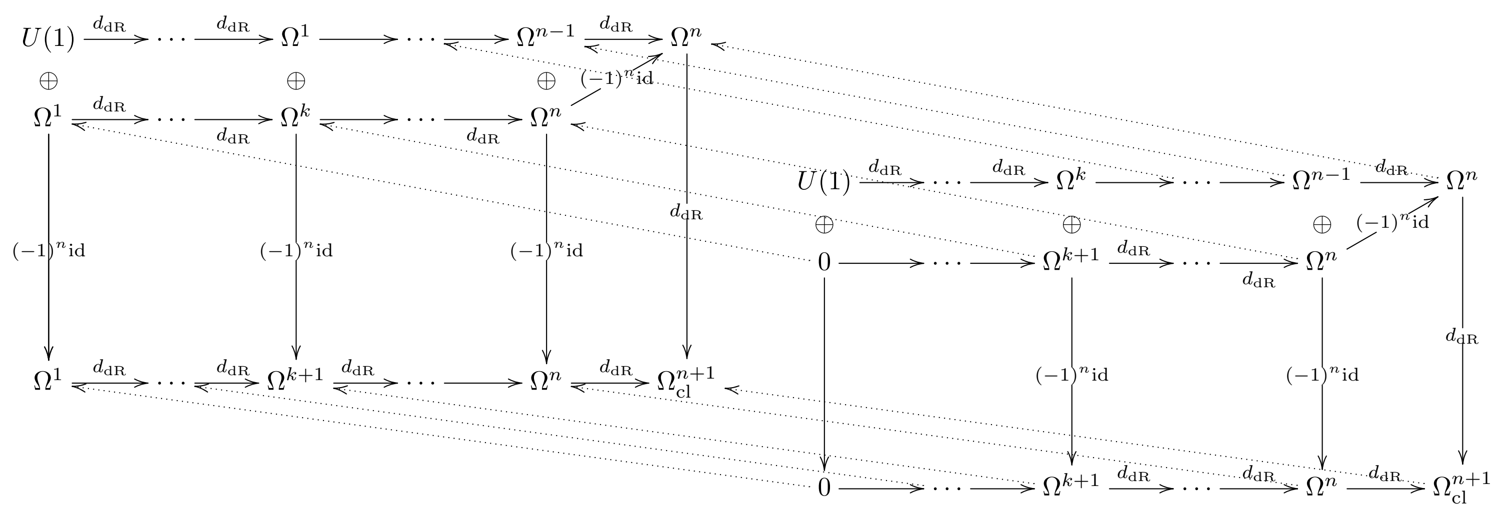
Proof. By prop. 6.4.97 the defining $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k} & \xrightarrow{F_{(-)}} & \Omega^{k \leq \bullet \leq n}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1) \end{array}$$

is presented by the homotopy pullback of presheaves of chain complexes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{diff,chn}} & \longleftarrow & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k,\mathrm{chn}} \\ \downarrow^{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{chn}}} & & \downarrow \\ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{chn}} & \longleftarrow & \Omega^{k \leq \bullet \leq n}_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array}$$

(rotated here just for readability in the following) which in components is given as follows




This shows that $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k}$ is presented by the chain complex appearing on the top right here. The canonical projection morphism from this pullback to $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k,\mathrm{chn}}$ is clearly a weak equivalence. □

**Remark 6.4.113.** In particular this means that $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is presented by the Deligne complex

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq \mathrm{DK}\left( U(1) \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^1 \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \cdots \longrightarrow \Omega^{n-1} \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^n \right)$$

The above proof of theorem 6.4.110 makes a statement not only about cohomology classes, but about the full moduli $n$-stacks:

**Proposition 6.4.114.** *The object $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \in \mathbf{H}$ from def. 6.4.108 is presented by the simplicial presheaf which is the image under the Dold-Kan map $\Xi$, def. 3.1.35, of the Deligne complex in the corresponding degree.*

*The canonical morphism $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ is similarly presented via Dold-Kan of the evident morphism of chain complexes of sheaves*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} C^\infty(-,U(1)) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}\log} & \Omega^1(-) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^n(-) \\ \downarrow^{\mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\ C^\infty(-,U(1)) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array} .$$

**Proposition 6.4.115.** *The moduli stack $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of circle bundles (i.e. circle 1-bundles) with connection is 1-concrete, def. 5.2.8.*

Proof. Observing that the presentation by the Deligne complex under the Dold-Kan map is fibrant in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ and is the concrete sheaf presented by $U(1)$ in degree 1, this follows with prop. 5.2.12. □

**6.4.16.3 The smooth moduli of connections over a given base** We discuss the *moduli stacks* of higher principal connections, over a fixed $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, following the general abstract discussion in 5.2.13.4.

For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and with $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ the universal moduli stack for circle $n$-bundles with connection, def. 6.4.96, and for $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, one may be tempted to regard the internal hom/mapping space $[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ as the moduli stack of circle $n$-bundles with connection on $X$. However, for $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ an abstract coordinate system, $U$-plots and their $k$-morphisms in $[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ are circle principal $n$-connections and their $k$-fold gauge transformations on $U \times X$, and this is not generally what one would want the $U$-plots of the moduli stack of such connections on $X$ to be. Rather, that moduli stack should have

1. as $U$-plots smoothly $U$-parameterized collections $\{\nabla_u\}$ of $n$-connections on $X$;

2. as $k$-morphisms smoothly $U$-parameterized collections $\{\phi_u\}$ of gauge transformations between them.

The first item is equivalent to: a single $n$-connection on $U \times X$ such that its local connection $n$-forms have no legs along $U$.

But the second item is different: a gauge transformation of a single $n$-connection $\nabla$ on $U \times X$ needs to respect the curvature of the connection along $U$, but a family $\{\phi_u\}$ of gauge tranformations between the restrictions $\nabla|_u$ of $\nabla$ to points of the coordinate patch $U$ need not.

In order to capture this correctly, the concretification-process that yields the moduli spaces of differential forms is to be refined to a process that concretifies the higher stack $[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ degreewise in stages.

**Definition 6.4.116.** For $n, k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $k \leq n$ write $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k}$ for the $\infty$-pullback in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n+1 \leq \bullet \leq k}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1) \end{array} .$$

By the universal property of the $\infty$-pullback, the canonical tower of morphisms

$$\Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \longrightarrow \Omega^{n+1 \leq \bullet \leq n}_{\mathrm{cl}} \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \Omega^{n+1 \leq \bullet \leq 1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)$$

induces a tower of morphisms

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^n} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-1}} \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^0} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \ .$$

**Proposition 6.4.117.** *We have*

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k} \simeq \mathrm{DK}\left( U(1) \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^1 \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^k \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} 0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow 0 \right)$$

*where the chain complex on the right is concentrated in degrees $n$ through $n-k$. Under this equivalence the canonical morphism $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{k+1}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^k}$ is equivalent to the image under* DK *to the chain map*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccccc} U(1) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^1 & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^{k+1} & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^k & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ U(1) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^1 & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^{k+1} & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array}$$

Proof. By the presentation of curv as in prop. 6.4.97. □

**Definition 6.4.118.** For $X \in \mathbf{H}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 1$, the *moduli of circle-principal n-connections* on $X$ is the iterated $\infty$-fiber product

$$(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1))\mathbf{Conn}(X) \\ := \sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^n}] \underset{\sharp_1[X,\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-1}}]}{\times} \sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-1}}] \underset{\sharp_2[X,\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-2}}]}{\times} \cdots \underset{\sharp_n[X,\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^0}]}{\times} [X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^0}],$$

of the morphisms

$$\sharp_k[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-k+1}}] \longrightarrow \sharp_k[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-k}}]$$

which are the image under $\sharp_k$, def. 5.2.6, of the image under the internal hom $[X, -]$ of the canonical projections of prop. 6.4.116, and of the morphisms

$$\sharp_{k+1}[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-k}}] \longrightarrow \sharp_k[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^{n-k}}]$$

of def. 5.2.6.

**6.4.16.3.1 Moduli of smooth principal 1-connections** We discuss the general notion of moduli of $G$-principal connections, def. 5.2.105 for the special case that $G$ is a 0-truncated group.

For $G = U(1)$ the circle group, the special case of def. 6.4.118 is the following.

**Definition 6.4.119.** For $X \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd, the *moduli of circle-principal connections* is given by the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} U(1)\mathbf{Conn}(X) & \longrightarrow & \sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}U(1)] & \simeq & [X, \mathbf{B}U(1)] \;, \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ \sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] & \xrightarrow{\sharp_1[X, U_{\mathbf{B}U(1)}]} & \sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}U(1)] & & \end{array}$$

where $U_{\mathbf{B}U(1)} : \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}U(1)$ is the canonical forgetful morphism.

Of course we have the analogous construction for $G$ any Lie group:

**Definition 6.4.120.** For $X \in$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd, the *moduli of $G$-principal connections* is given by the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} G\mathbf{Conn}(X) & \longrightarrow & \sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}G] & \simeq & [X, \mathbf{B}G] \;, \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ \sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] & \xrightarrow{\sharp_1[X, U_{\mathbf{B}G}]} & \sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}G] & & \end{array}$$

where $U_{\mathbf{B}G} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}G$ is the canonical forgetful morphism.

**Proposition 6.4.121.** *For $X \in$ SmoothMfd $\hookrightarrow$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd, the smooth groupoid $U(1)\mathbf{Conn}(X)$ of def. 6.4.119 is indeed the smooth moduli object/moduli stack of circle-principal connections on $X$; in that its $U$-plots of are smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of smooth circle-principal connections on $X$ and its morphisms of $U$-plots are smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of smooth gauge transformation between these, on $X$.*

Proof.

By the discussion of $n$-images in 5.1.4.2.2 and using arguments as for the concretification of moduli of differential forms above in 6.4.16.3, we have:

- $\sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ has as $U$-plots smoothly $U$-parameterized $U(1)$-principal connections on $X$ that have a lift to a $U(1)$-principal connection on $U \times X$, and morphisms are discretely $\Gamma(U)$-parameterized collections of gauge transformations of these connections on $X$.

- $\sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}U(1)]$ looks similarly, just without the connection information;
- $\sharp_1[X, U_{\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}]$ simply forgets the connection data on the collections of bundles-with-connection; the point to notice is that over each chart $U$ it is a fibration (i.e. an isofibration of groupoids): given a $\Gamma(U)$-parameterized collection of gauge transformations out of a smoothly $U$-parameterized collection of bundles and then a smooth choice of smooth connections on these bundles, the $\Gamma(U)$ collection of gauge transformations of course also acts on these connections;
- $\sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}U(1)] \simeq [X, \mathbf{B}U(1)]$ (because if two gauge transformations of bundles on $U \times X$ coincide on each point of $U$ as gauge tranformations on $X$, then they were already equal).

From the third item it follows that we may compute equivalently simply the pullback in the 1-category of groupoid-valued presheaves on CartSp. This means that a $U$-plot of the pullback is a smoothly $U$-parameterized collection $\{\nabla_u\}$ of $U(1)$-principal connections on $X$ which admits a lift to a $U(1)$-principal connection on $U \times X$, and that a morphism between such as a $\Gamma(U)$-parameterized collection of gauge transformations $\{\phi_u\}$ of connections, such that their underlying collection of gauge transformations of bundles is a smoothly $U$-parameterized family. But gauge transformations of 1-connections are entirely determined by the underlying gauge transformation of the underlying bundle, and so this just means that also the morphism of $U$-plots of the pullback are smoothly $U$-paramezerized collections of gauge transformations.

Consider then the functor from $U(1)\mathbf{Conn}(X)_U$ to this pullback which forgets the lift to a connection on $U \times X$. This is natural in $U$ and hence to complete the proof we need to see that for each $U$ it is an equivalence of groupoids. By the above it is clearly fully faithful, so it remains to see that it is essentially surjective, hence that every smoothly $U$-parameterized collection of connections on $X$ comes from a single connection on $X \times U$. To this end, consider a smoothly $U$-parameterized collection $\{\nabla_u\}_{u \in U}$ of $U(1)$-principal connections on $X$. Choosing a differentiably good open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ of $X$ the collection of connections is equivalently given by a collection of cocycle data

$$\{g_{ij}^u \in C^\infty(U_i \cap U_j, U(1)), A_i^u \in \Omega^1(U_i)\}_{u \in U}$$

with $A_j^u = A_i^u + d_X \mathrm{log} g_{ij}^u$ on $U_i \cap U_j$ for all $i, j$ in the index set and all $u \in U$. To see that this is the restriction of a single such cocycle datum on $\{U_i \times U \to X \times U\}$ we use the standard formula for the existence of connections on a given bundle represented by a given cocycle, but applied just to the $U$-factor. So let $\{\rho_i \in C^\infty(U_i \times U)\}$ be a partition of unity on $X \times U$ subordinate to the chosen cover and define $A_i \in \Omega^1(U_i \times U)$ by

$$A_i(u) := A_i^u + \sum_{i_0} \rho_{i_0} d_U \mathrm{log} g_{i_0 i}(u)$$

for each $u \in U$. This is clearly a lift on each patch, and it does constitute a cocycle for a connection on $X \times U$ since on each $U \times (U_i \cap U_j)$ we have:

$$\begin{aligned} A_j(u) - A_i(u) &= \sum_{i_0} \rho_{i_0} \left( A_j^u + d_U \mathrm{log} g_{i_0 j}(u) - A_i^u - d_U \mathrm{log} g_{i_0 i}(u) \right) \\ &= A_j^u - A_i^u + \sum_{i_0} \rho_{i_0} d_U \mathrm{log}(g_{i i_0}(u) g_{i_0 j}(u)) \\ &= d_X \mathrm{log} g_{ij}(u) + d_U \mathrm{log} g_{ji}(u) \\ &= d \mathrm{log} g_{ij}(u) \end{aligned} .$$

□

**Proposition 6.4.122.** *For $G \in$ Grp(Smth∞Grp) a 0-truncated group object and for $X \in$ Smth∞Grpd, we have an equivalence*

$$\Omega\left(G\mathbf{Conn}(X)\right) \simeq G$$

*in* Smooth∞Grpd*, between the loop space object of the moduli object of $G$ def. 6.4.120, and $G$ itself.*

Proof. For $X$ a smooth manifold and $G$ a Lie group, this is straightforward to check by inspection of the stack $\Omega\left(G\mathbf{Conn}(X)\right)$. Its $U$-plots are the smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of gauge transformations of the trivial $G$-principal connection on $X$. Any such is a constant $G$-valued function on $X$, hence an element of $G$, and so these form the set $C^\infty(U, G)$ of $U$-plots of $G$.

Generally, the statement follows abstractly from prop. 5.1.77. By that proposition and using that $\Omega$ commutes over $\infty$-fiber products (since both are $\infty$-limits) we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Omega\left(G\mathbf{Conn}(X)\right) &\simeq \Omega\sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \underset{\Omega\sharp_1[X,\mathbf{B}G]}{\times} \Omega[X, \mathbf{B}G] \\
&\simeq \sharp\Omega[X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \underset{\sharp\Omega[X,\mathbf{B}G]}{\times} \Omega[X, \mathbf{B}G] \\
&\simeq \sharp[X, \Omega\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \underset{\sharp[X,\Omega\mathbf{B}G]}{\times} [X, \Omega\mathbf{B}G] \\
&\simeq \sharp[X, \flat G] \underset{\sharp[X,G]}{\times} [X, G] \\
&\simeq \sharp G \underset{\sharp[X,G]}{\times} [X, G]
\end{aligned}
\quad .
$$

This last $\infty$-fiber product is one of 0-truncated object hence is the ordinary fiber products of the corresponding sheaves. The $U$-plots of the left factor are discretely $\Gamma(U)$-parameterized collections of elements of $G$, the inclusion of these into $\sharp[X, G]$ is as $\Gamma(U)$-parameterized collections of constant $G$-valued functions on $G$, and the right factor picks out among these those that are smoothly parameterized over $X \times U$, hence over $U$. This is the statement to be shown. $\square$

**6.4.16.3.2 Moduli of smooth principal 2-connections** We discuss the general notion of moduli of $G$-principal connections, def. 5.2.105 for the special case that $G$ is a 1-truncated group.

**Proposition 6.4.123.** *Given $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, the moduli 2-stack $(\mathbf{B}U(1))\mathbf{Conn}(X)$ of circle 2-bundles with connection on $X$, given by the $\infty$-limit in*

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
(\mathbf{B}U(1))\mathbf{Conn}(X) & \longrightarrow & & & [X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)] \\
\downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
& & \sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^1}] & \longrightarrow & \sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] & \longrightarrow & \sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^1}] & &
\end{array}
$$

*is equivalent to the 2-stack which assigns to any $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the 2-groupoid whose objects, morphisms, and 2-morphisms are smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of circle-principal connections and their gauge transformations on $X$.*

Proof. By a variant of the pasting law, we may compute the given $\infty$-limit as the pasting composite of three $\infty$-pullbacks:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
(\mathbf{B}U(1))\mathbf{Conn}(X) & \longrightarrow & \cdot & \longrightarrow & [X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\cdot & \longrightarrow & \sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^1}] & \longrightarrow & \sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] & \longrightarrow & \sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^1}] & &
\end{array}
\quad .
$$

Since this is a finite $\infty$-limit, we may compute it in $\infty$-presheaves over CartSp, hence as a homotopy pullback in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. For $\{U_i \to X\}_{i \in I}$ any choice of differentiable good open cover of $X$, our standard model for the mapping stacks appearing in the diagram are given by the Deligne complex, according to prop. 6.4.114. Since this takes values, under the Dold-Kan map, in strict $\infty$-groupoids, we find the $\sharp$-images by prop. 5.1.89. In this standard presentation all simplicial presheaves appearing in the diagram are fibrant and the two horizontal morphisms are fibrations. Therefore we conclude that the $\infty$-limit in question is in fact given by the pasting composite of three 1-categorical pullbacks of these presheaves of strict 2-groupoids. Using that pullbacks of presheaves of 2-groupoids are computed objectwise and degreewise, we find that the pullback presheaf is over $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ given by the following strict 2-groupoid:

- objects are smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of Deligne cocycles $\{B_i^u, A_{ij}^u, g_{ijk}^u\}_{i,j,k \in I, u \in \Gamma(U)}$ on $X$, such that there *exists* a lift to a single cocycle on $X \times U$ (this is the structure of the objects of $\sharp_1[X, \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$) and *equipped* with a choice of lift of the restricted $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^1}$-cocycle $\{0, A_{ij}^u, g_{ijk}^u\}_{u \in U}$ to a single restricted cocycle $\{0, A_{ij}, g_{ijk}\}$ on $U \times X$ (this is the structure of the objects of $\sharp_2[X, \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^1}]$);

- morphisms are smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of morphisms of cocycles on $X$ such that there exists a lift to a morphism of restricted cocycles on $X \times U$;

- 2-morphisms are smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of 2-gauge transformations, hence 2-gauge transformations on $X \times U$.

This is almost verbatim the 2-groupoid claimed in the proposition, except for the appearance of the existence and choice of lifts. We need to show that up to equivalence these drop out.

Consider therefore the canonical 2-functor from the 2-groupoid thus described to the one consisting degreewise of genuine smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of cocycles and transformations, which forgets the lift and the existence of lifts. This 2-functor is clearly natural in $U$, hence is a morphism of simplicial presheaves. It is now sufficient to show that over each $U$ this is an equivalence of 2-groupoids.

To see that this 2-functor is fully faithful, notice that by the strict abelian group structure on all objects we may restrict to considering the homotopy groups that are based at the 0-cocycle. But the automorphism groupoid of the trivial circle-principal 2-connection is that of flat circle-principal 1-connections. Hence fully faithfulness of this 2-functor amouts to the statement of prop. 6.4.121.

Therefore it remains to check essential surjectivity of the forgetful 2-functor. To this end, observe that the underlying circle-principal 2-bundles of a collection of 2-connections smoothly parameterized by a Cartesian (hence topologically contractible) space necessarily have the same class at all points $u \in U$ and so every object in the pullback 2-groupoid is equivalent to one for which $\{g_{ijk}^u\}$ is in fact independent of $u$. It is then sufficient to show that any such is in the image of the above forgetful 2-functor.

So consider a smoothly parameterized collection of Deligne cocycles on $\{U_i \to X\}_{i \in I}$ of the form $\{B_i^u, A_{ij}^u, g_{ijk}\}_{u \in U}$. Since now $g_{ijk}$ is constant on $U$, we can obtain a lift of the 1-form part simply by defining for $i, j \in I$ a 1-form $A_{ij} \in \Omega^1(U \times (U_i \cap U_j))$ by declaring that at $u \in U$ it is given by

$$A_{ij}(u) := A_{ij}^u \,.$$

Next we need to similarly find a lift $\{B_i \in \Omega^2(U \times U_i)\}_{i \in I}$. For that, choose now a partition of unity $\{\rho_i \in C^\infty(U_i)\}_i$ of $X$, subordinate to the given cover and set

$$B_i(u) := B_i^u + \sum_{i_0} \rho_{i_0} d_U A_{i_0 i}(u) \,.$$

This is clearly patchwise a lift and we check that it satisfies the cocycle condition by computing for each

$i, j \in I$, $u \in U$:

$$\begin{aligned} B_j(u) - B_i(u) &= B^u_j - B^u_i + \sum_{i_0} \rho_{i_0} d_U (A_{i_0 j} - A_{i_0 i})(u) \\ &= d_X A_{ij}(u) + \sum_{i_0} \rho_{i_0} d_U (A_{ij} - d_X \mathrm{log} g_{i_0 i j})(u)\,, \\ &= d_{U\times X} A_{ij} \end{aligned}$$

where in the second but last step we used that at each $u$ the $A^u_{ij}$ satisfy their cocycle condition and where in the last step we used again that $g_{...}$ is constant on $U$ on $X$.

So the 2-functor is also essentially surjective and this completes the proof. □

**6.4.16.4 Cup product in differential cohomology** We discuss refining the cup product from ordinary cohomology to the universal moduli stacks for differential cohomology from 6.4.16.2. The basic ideas can be found in [HoSi05]. We refine the discussion there from differential cohomology classes to higher moduli stacks of differential cocycles.

**Proposition 6.4.124.** *The cup product in integral cohomology*

$$(-) \cup (-) : H^{k+1}(-, \mathbb{Z}) \times H^{l+1}(-, \mathbb{Z}) \to H^{k+l+2}(-, \mathbb{Z})$$

*has a smooth and differential refinement to the moduli $\infty$-stacks $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, prop. 6.4.114, for circle $n$-bundles with connection*

$$(-)\hat{\cup}(-) : \mathbf{B}^k U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^l U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^{k+l+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}\,.$$

Proof. By the discussion in 6.4.16 we have that $\mathbf{B}^k U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is presented by the simplicial presheaf

$$\Xi \mathbb{Z}^\infty_D[k+1] \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}].\,,$$

which is the image of the Deligne-Beilinson complex, def. 1.2.138, under the Dold-Kan correspondence, prop. 3.1.6. A lift of the cup product to the Deligne complex is given by the *Deligne-Beilinson cup product* [Del71][Bel85]. Since the Dold-Kan functor $\Xi : [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Ch}_\bullet] \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ is right adjoint, it preserves products and hence this cup product. □

**Example 6.4.125.** Applications of this construction to higher dimensional Chern-Simons theories are discussed below in **??**.

**6.4.16.5 Equivariant circle $n$-bundles with connection** We highlight some aspects of the *equivariant* version, def. 5.1.176, of smooth differential cohomology.

**Observation 6.4.126.** Let $G$ be a Lie group acting on a smooth manifold $X$. Then the Deligne complex, def. 1.2.138, computes the correct $G$-equivariant differential cohomology on $X$ if and only if the $G$-equivariant de Rham cohomology of $X$, prop. 6.4.77, coincides with the *$G$-invariant* Rham cohomology of $X$.

Proof. By prop. 6.4.77 we have that the $G$-equivariant de Rham cohomology of $X$ is given for $n \geq 1$ by

$$H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR},G}(X) \simeq \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X//G, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R})\,.$$

Observe that $\pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X//G, \Omega^n_{\mathrm{cl}}(-))$ is set of *$G$-invariant* closed differential $n$-forms on $X$ (which are in particular equivariant, but in general do not exhaust the equivariant cocycles). By prop. 6.4.110 the Deligne complex presents the homotopy pullback of $\Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}$ along the universal curvature map on

$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$. If therefore the inclusion $\pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X//G, \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-)) \to \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X//G, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R})$ of invariant into equivariant de Rham cocycles is not surjective, then there are differential cocycles on $X//G$ not presented by the Deligne complex. □

In other words, if the $G$-invariant de Rham cocycles do not exhaust the equivariant cocycles, then $X//G$ is not *de Rham-projective*, and hence the representable variant, def. 5.2.95, of differential cohomology does not apply. The correct definition of differential cohomology in this case is the more general one from def. 5.2.90, which allows the curvature forms themselves to be in equivariant cohomology.

### 6.4.17 Chern-Weil homomorphism

We discuss the general abstract notion of Chern-Weil homomorphism, 5.2.14, realized in Smooth∞Grpd. This discussion overlaps with the discussion in the introduction in 1.2.9, 1.2.10.

Recall that for $A \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ a smooth ∞-groupoid regarded as a coefficient object for cohomology, for instance the delooping $A = \mathbf{B}G$ of an ∞-group $G$ we have general abstractly that

- a characteristic class on $A$ with coefficients in the circle Lie $n$-group, 6.4.21, is represented by a morphism
$$\mathbf{c} : A \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n U(1)\,;$$
- the (unrefined) Chern-Weil homomorphism induced from this is the differential characteristic class given by the composite
$$\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{dR}} : A \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}$$
with the universal curvature characteristic, 5.2.12, on $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)$, or rather: is the morphism on cohomology
$$H^1_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(X, G) := \pi_0 \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \overset{\pi_0((\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{dR}})_*)}{\longrightarrow} \pi_0 \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}) \simeq H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$$
induced by this.

By prop. 6.4.102 we have a presentation of the universal curvature class $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}$ by a span

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{smp}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} & & \end{array}$$

in the model structure on simplicial presheaves $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, given by maps of smooth families of differential forms. We now insert this in the above general abstract definition of the ∞-Chern-Weil homomorphism to deduce a presentation of that in terms of smooth families $L_\infty$-algebra valued differential forms.

The main step is the construction of a well-suited composite of two spans of morphisms of simplicial presheaves (of two ∞-anafunctors): we consider presentations of characteristic classes $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ in the image of the $\exp(-)$ map, def. 6.4.79, and presented by trunactions and quotients of morphisms of simplicial presheaves of the form
$$\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \overset{\exp(\mu)}{\longrightarrow} \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})\,.$$
Then, using the above, the composite differential characteristic class $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{dR}}$ is presented by the zig-zag

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{smp}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \\ & & \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)} & \mathbf{B}^n \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} & & \end{array}$$

of simplicial presheaves. In order to efficiently compute which morphism in Smooth∞Grpd this presents we need to construct, preferably naturally in the $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, a simplicial presheaf $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}}$ that fills this diagram as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu,\mathrm{cs})} & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{smp}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)} & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} & & \end{array} .$$

Given this, $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff,smp}}$ serves as a new resolution of $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ for which the composite differential characteristic class is presented by the ordinary composite of morphisms of simplicial presheaves $\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{smp}} \circ \exp(\mu, cs)$.

This object $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}}$ we shall see may be interpreted as the coefficient for *pseudo*-∞-connections with values in $\mathfrak{g}$.

There is however still room to adjust this presentation such as to yield in each cohomology class special nice cocycle representatives. This we will achieve by finding naturally a subobject $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}} \hookrightarrow \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}}$ whose inclusion is an isomorphism on connected components and restricted to which the morphism $\mathrm{curv}_{\mathrm{smp}} \circ \exp(\mu, cs)$ yields nice representatives in the de Rham hypercohomology encoded by $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}}$, namely globally defined differential forms. On this object the differential characteristic classes we will show factors naturally through the refinements to differential cohomology, and hence $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is finally identified as a presentation for the coefficient object for ∞-connections with values in $\mathfrak{g}$.

Let $\mathfrak{g} \in L_\infty \overset{\mathrm{CE}}{\hookrightarrow} \mathrm{dgAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}$ be an $L_\infty$-algebra, def. 1.2.150.

**Definition 6.4.127.** A $L_\infty$-*algebra cocycle* on $\mathfrak{g}$ in degree $n$ is a morphism

$$\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$$

to the line Lie $n$-algebra.

**Remark 6.4.128.** Dually this is equivalently a morphism of dg-algebras

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \longleftarrow \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \ : \ \mu \,,$$

which we denote by the same letter, by slight abuse of notation. Such a morphism is naturally identified with its image of the single generator of $\mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$, which is a closed element

$$\mu \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$$

in degree $n$, that we also denote by the same letter. Therefore $L_\infty$-algebra cocycles are precisely the ordinary cocycles of the corresponding Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras.

**Remark 6.4.129.** After the injection of smooth ∞-groupoids into formal smooth ∞-groupoids, discussed below in 6.5, there is an intrinsic abstract notion of cohomology of ∞-Lie algebras. Proposition 6.5.47 below asserts that the above definition is indeed a presentation of that abstract cohomological notion.

**Definition 6.4.130.** For $\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$ an $L_\infty$-cocycle as in def. 6.4.127, write

$$\exp(\mu) : \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}$$

for the morphism of smooth ∞-stacks from $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ as in def. 6.4.79 to the $n$-fold delooping, def. 5.1.152, of the additive $\mathbb{R}$, given by the composite

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \longrightarrow \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} \,,$$

where the first morphism is the one given componentwise by composition with $\mu$

$$\left(\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^n) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})\right) \mapsto \left(\Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^n) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \overset{\mu}{\leftarrow} \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})\right)$$

and where the second is the equivalence of prop. 6.4.87.

**Proposition 6.4.131.** *For $\mu$ an $L_\infty$-algebra $(n+1)$-cocycle according to def. 6.4.127, then its exponentiation* $\exp(\mu)$ *in def. 6.4.130 descends to the $(n+1)$-truncation $\mathbf{B}G := \tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{g})$, def. 5.1.47, as a cocycle with values in $\mathbf{B}^{n+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$, where $\Gamma \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is the discrete group of periods of $\mu$: we have a commuting diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)} & \exp(b^n\mathbb{R}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{B}^{n+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma) \end{array} .$$

This is proven in [FSS10].

**Remark 6.4.132.** On the one hand, under looping, def. 5.1.148, prop. 6.4.131 may be thought of as providing $n$-truncated *Lie integration of $L_\infty$-cocycles* to $\infty$-group homomorphisms

$$\Omega\mathbf{c} : G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma) .$$

In such looped form this plays a role in the construction of Wess-Zumino-Witten terms, see 6.4.20 below. On the other hand, before looping and in view of theorem 5.1.207, $\exp(\mu)$ induces a morphism that sends $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles to $\mathbf{B}^n(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$-principal $\infty$-bundles on any base space $X$:

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{c}) : \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)) .$$

Now, by prop. 6.3.39, for $X$ a smooth manifold and $\Gamma \simeq \mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$, then $\pi_0\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)) \simeq H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{Z})$ is the ordinary integral cohomology of $X$ in degree $n+1$. Hence on connected componets this morphism becomes

$$H(X, \mathbf{c}) : H^1(X, G) \longrightarrow H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{Z})$$

which is an assignment of integral cohomology classes to classes of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles over $X$. These are the integral universal characteristic classes encoded by $\exp(\mu)$. (Various examples of this are discussed below in 7.1.2.)

We next discuss the further refinement of these characteristic classes obtained by Lie integration, to a differential characteristic classes exhibiting Chern-Weil homomorphisms for principal $\infty$-bundles.

**Definition 6.4.133.** For $\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$ an $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle with $n \geq 2$, write $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$ for the $L_\infty$-algebra whose Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra is generated from the generators of $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ and one single further generator $b$ in degree $(n-1)$, with differential defined by

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}_\mu)}|_{\mathfrak{g}^*} = d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})} ,$$

and

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}_\mu)} : b \mapsto \mu ,$$

where on the right we regard $\mu$ as an element of $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$, hence of $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}_\mu)$, by observation 6.4.128.

**Remark 6.4.134.** Below in prop. 6.5.49 we show that, in the context of *formal smooth cohesion* 6.5, $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$ is indeed the extension of $\mathfrak{g}$ classified by $\mu$ in the general sense of 5.1.18.

**Definition 6.4.135.** For $\mathfrak{g} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$ an $L_\infty$-algebra, its *Weil algebra* $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \in \mathrm{dgAlg}$ is the unique representative of the free dg-algebra on the dual cochain complex underlying $\mathfrak{g}$ such that the canonical projection $\mathfrak{g}^*_\bullet[1] \oplus \mathfrak{g}^*_\bullet[2] \to \mathfrak{g}^*_\bullet[1]$ extends to a dg-algebra homomorphism

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \leftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) .$$

Since $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ is itself in $L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}^{\mathrm{op}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{dgAlg}$ we can identify it with the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra of an $L_\infty$-algebra. That we write $\mathrm{inn}(\mathfrak{g})$ or $e\mathfrak{g}$:

$$\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) =: \mathrm{CE}(e\mathfrak{g})\,.$$

In terms of this the above canonical morphism reads

$$\mathfrak{g} \to e\mathfrak{g}\,.$$

**Remark 6.4.136.** This notation reflects the fact that $e\mathfrak{g}$ may be regarded as the infinitesimal groupal model of the universal $\mathfrak{g}$-principal $\infty$-bundle.

**Proposition 6.4.137.** *For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 2$ we have a pullback in* $L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} b^{n-1}\mathbb{R} & \longrightarrow & eb^{n-1}\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & bb^{n-1}\mathbb{R} \end{array}\,.$$

Proof. Dually this is the pushout diagram of dg-algebras that is free on the short exact sequence of cochain complexes concentrated in degrees $n$ and $n+1$ as follows:

$$\left(\begin{array}{c} 0_{n+1} \\ {\scriptstyle d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{b}^{n-1}\mathbb{R})}}\uparrow \\ \langle c\rangle_n \end{array}\right) \leftarrow \left(\begin{array}{c} \langle d\rangle_{n+1} \\ {\scriptstyle d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{e}\mathfrak{b}^{n-1}\mathbb{R})}}\uparrow\simeq \\ \langle c\rangle_n \end{array}\right) \leftarrow \left(\begin{array}{c} \langle d\rangle_{n+1} \\ {\scriptstyle d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{b}\mathfrak{b}^{n-1}\mathbb{R})}}\uparrow \\ 0_n \end{array}\right)\,.$$

□

**Proposition 6.4.138.** *The $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$ from def. 6.4.133 fits into a pullback diagram in* $L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{g}_\mu & \longrightarrow & eb^{n-2}\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathfrak{g} & \xrightarrow{\mu} & bb^{n-2}\mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

*and this exhibits $\mathfrak{g}_\mu \to \mathfrak{g}$ as the homotopy fiber of $\mu$.*

Proof. The first statement follows by inspection. The second follows with [FRS13b, theorem B.0.8]. □

**Proposition 6.4.139.** *Let $\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to b^n\mathbb{R}$ be a degree-$n$ cocycle on an $L_\infty$-algebra and $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$ the $L_\infty$-algebra from def. 6.4.133.*

*We have that $\exp(\mathfrak{g}_\mu) \to \exp(\mathfrak{g})$ presents the homotopy fiber of $\exp(\mu) : \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \to \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$ in* $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$.

Since $\exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \simeq \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}$ by prop. 6.4.87, this means that $\exp(\mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ is the $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$-principal $\infty$-bundle classified by $\exp(\mu)$ in that we have an $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g}_\mu) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)} & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

in Smooth∞Grpd.

Proof. Since $\exp : L_\infty\mathrm{Alg} \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ preserves pullbacks (being given componentwise by a hom-functor) it follows from 6.4.138 that we have a pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g}_\mu) & \longrightarrow & \exp(eb^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)} & \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \end{array} .$$

The right vertical morphism is a fibration resolution of the point inclusion $* \to \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$. Hence this is a homotopy pullback in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ and the claim follows with prop. 5.1.9. □

We now come to the definition of differential refinements of exponentiated $L_\infty$-algebras.

**Definition 6.4.140.** For $\mathfrak{g} \in L_\infty$ define the simplicial presheaf $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ by

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} : (U, [k]) \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \end{array} \right\} ,$$

where on the left we have the set of commuting diagrams in dgAlg as indicated, with the vertical morphisms being the canonical projections.

**Proposition 6.4.141.** *The canonical projection*

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} \to \exp(\mathfrak{g})$$

*is a weak equivalence in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

*Moreover, for every $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle it fits into a commuting diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{diff}}} & \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{diff}} & = & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu)} & \exp(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & = & \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \end{array}$$

*for some morphism* $\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{diff}}$.

Proof. Use the contractibility of the Weil algebra. □

**Definition 6.4.142.** Let $G \in$ Smooth∞Grpd be a smooth $n$-group given by Lie integration, 6.4.14, of an $L_\infty$ algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, in that the delooping object $\mathbf{B}G$ is presented by the $(n+1)$-coskeleton simplicial presheaf $\mathbf{cosk}_{n+1}\exp(\mathfrak{g})$, def. 5.1.53.

Then for $X \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ any object and $\hat{X}$ a cofibrant resolution, we say that

$$[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\hat{X}, \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1}\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}})$$

is the Kan complex of *pseudo-$n$-connections* on $G$-principal $n$-bundles.

We discuss now subobjects that pick out genuine ∞-connections.

**Definition 6.4.143.** An *invariant polynomial* on an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is an element $\langle - \rangle \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ in the Weil algebra, such that

1. $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}\langle -, - \rangle = 0$;
2. $\langle - \rangle \in \wedge^\bullet \mathfrak{g}^*[1] \hookrightarrow W(\mathfrak{g})$;

hence such that it is a closed element built only from shifted generators of $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$.

**Proposition 6.4.144.** *For $\mathfrak{g}$ an ordinary Lie algebra, this definition of invariant polynomial is equivalent to the traditional one (for instance [AzIz95]).*

Proof. Let $\{t^a\}$ be a basis of $\mathfrak{g}^*$ and $\{r^a\}$ the corresponding basis of $\mathfrak{g}^*[1]$. Write $\{C^a{}_{bc}\}$ for the structure constants of the Lie bracket in this basis.

Then for $P = P_{(a_1,\cdots,a_k)} r^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge r^{a_k} \in \wedge^r \mathfrak{g}^*[1]$ an element in the shifted generators, the condition that its image under $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}$ is in the shifted copy is equivalent to

$$C^b_{c(a_1} P_{b,\cdots,a_k)} t^c \wedge r^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge r^{a_k} = 0\,,$$

where the parentheses around indices denotes symmetrization, so that this is equivalent to

$$\sum_i C^b_{c(a_i} P_{a_1 \cdots a_{i-1} b a_{i+1} \cdots, a_k)} = 0$$

for all choice of indices. This is the component-version of the defining invariance statement

$$\sum_i P(t_1, \cdots, t_{i-1}, [t_c, t_i], t_{i+1}, \cdots, t_k) = 0$$

for all $t_\bullet \in \mathfrak{g}$. □

**Observation 6.4.145.** For the line Lie $n$-algeba we have

$$\mathrm{inv}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \simeq \mathrm{CE}(b^n \mathbb{R})\,.$$

This allows us to identify an invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle$ of degree $n+1$ with a morphism

$$\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\langle - \rangle} \mathrm{inv}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$$

in dgAlg.

**Remark 6.4.146.** Write $\iota : \mathfrak{g} \to \mathrm{Der}_\bullet(\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}))$ for the identification of elements of $\mathfrak{g}$ with inner graded derivations of the Weil-algebra, induced by contraction. For $v \in \mathfrak{g}$ write

$$\mathcal{L}_x := [d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}, \iota_v] \in \mathrm{der}_\bullet(\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}))$$

for the induced Lie derivative. Then the fist condition on an invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle$ in def. 6.4.143 is equivalent to

$$\iota_v \langle - \rangle = 0 \quad \forall v \in \mathfrak{g}$$

and the second condition implies that

$$\mathcal{L}_v \langle - \rangle = 0 \quad \forall v \in \mathfrak{g}\,.$$

In Cartan calculus [Cart50a][Cart50b] elements satisfying these two conditions are called *basic elements* or *basic forms*. By prop. 6.4.144 on an ordinary Lie algebra the basic forms are precisely the invariant polynomials. But on a general $L_\infty$-algebra there can be non-closed basic forms. Our definition of invariant polynomials hence picks the *closed basic forms* on an $L_\infty$-algebra.

**Definition 6.4.147.** We say that an invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle$ on $\mathfrak{g}$ is *in transgression* with an $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle $\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$ if there is a morphism $\mathrm{cs} : \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \to \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ such that we have a commuting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\mu} & \mathrm{CE}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & & \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\ \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}} & \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & & \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\ \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) & \xleftarrow{\langle - \rangle} & \mathrm{inv}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) & = & \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R}) \end{array}$$

hence such that

1. $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}\mathrm{cs} = \langle - \rangle$;
2. $\mathrm{cs}|_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})} = \mu$.

We say that cs is a *Chern-Simons element* exhibiting the transgression between $\mu$ and $\langle - \rangle$.

We say that an $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle is *transgressive* if it is in transgression with some invariant polynomial.

**Observation 6.4.148.** We have

1. There is a transgressive cocycle for every invariant polynomial.
2. Any two $L_\infty$-algebra cocycles in transgression with the same invariant polynomial are cohomologous.
3. Every decomposable invariant polynomial (the wedge product of two non-vanishing invariant polynomials) transgresses to a cocycle cohomologous to 0.

Proof.

1. By the fact that the Weil algebra is free, its cochain cohomology vanishes and hence the definition property $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}\langle - \rangle = 0$ implies that there is some element $\mathrm{cs} \in W(\mathfrak{g})$ such that $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}\mathrm{cs} = \langle - \rangle$. Then the image of cs along the canonical dg-algebra homomorphism $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ is $d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})}$-closed hence is a cocycle on $\mathfrak{g}$. This is by construction in transgression with $\langle - \rangle$.
2. Let $\mathrm{cs}_1$ and $\mathrm{cs}_2$ be Chern-Simons elements for the to given $L_\infty$-algebra cocycles. Then by assumption $d_{(\mathfrak{g})}(\mathrm{cs}_1 - \mathrm{cs}_2) = 0$. By the acyclicity of $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ there is then $\lambda \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ such that $\mathrm{cs}_1 = \mathrm{cs}_2 + d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}\lambda$. Since $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ is a dg-algebra homomorphism this implies that also $\mu_1 = \mu_2 + d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})}\lambda|_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})}$.
3. Given two nontrivial invariant polynomials $\langle - \rangle_1$ and $\langle - \rangle_2$ let $\mathrm{cs}_1 \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ be any element such that $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}\mathrm{cs}_1 = \langle - \rangle_1$. Then $\mathrm{cs}_{1,2} := \mathrm{cs}_1 \wedge \langle - \rangle_2$ satisfies $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}\mathrm{cs}_{1,2} = \langle - \rangle_1 \wedge \langle - \rangle_2$. By the first observation the restriction of $\mathrm{cs}_{1,2}$ to $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ is therefore a cocycle in transgression with $\langle - \rangle_1 \wedge \langle - \rangle_2$. But by the definition of invariant polynomials the restriction of $\langle - \rangle_2$ vanishes, and hence so does that of $\mathrm{cs}_{1,2}$. The claim the follows with the second point above.

□

The following notion captures the equivalence relation induced by lifts of cocycles to Chern-Simons elements on invariant polynomials.

**Definition 6.4.149.** We say two invariant polynomials $\langle - \rangle_1, \langle - \rangle_2 \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ are *horizontally equivalent* if there exists $\omega \in \ker(\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}))$ such that

$$\langle - \rangle_1 = \langle - \rangle_2 + d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}\omega \,.$$

**Observation 6.4.150.** Every decomposable invariant polynomial is horizontally equivalent to 0.

Proof. By the argument of prop. 6.4.148, item iii): for $\langle - \rangle = \langle - \rangle_1 \wedge \langle - \rangle_2$ let $\mathrm{cs}_1$ be a Chern-Simons element for $\langle - \rangle_1$. Then $\mathrm{cs}_1 \wedge \langle - \rangle_2$ exhibits a horizontal equivalence $\langle - \rangle \sim 0$. □

**Proposition 6.4.151.** *For $\mathfrak{g}$ an $L_\infty$-algebra, $\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to b^n\mathbb{R}$ a cocycle in transgression to an invariant polynomial $\langle \rangle$ on $\mathfrak{g}$ and $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$ the corresponding shifted central extension, 6.4.133, we have that*

1. *$\langle - \rangle$ defines an invariant polynomial also on $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$, by the defining identification of generators;*
2. *but on $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$ the invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle$ is horizontally trivial.*

Proof. □

**Definition 6.4.152.** For $\mathfrak{g}$ an $L_\infty$-algebra we write $\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g})$ for the free graded algebra on horizontal equivalence classes of invariant polynomials. We regard this as a dg-algebra with trivial differential This comes with an inclusion of dg-algebras

$$\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) \to W(\mathfrak{g})$$

given by a choice of representative for each class.

**Observation 6.4.153.** The algebra $\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g})$ is generated from indecomposable invariant polynomials.

Proof. By observation 6.4.150. □

**Definition 6.4.154.** Define the simplicial presheaf $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{ChW}} \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ by the assignment

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{ChW}} : (U, [k]) \mapsto \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet(U) & \xleftarrow{\langle F_A \rangle} & \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}) \end{array} \right\},$$

where on the right we have the set of horizontal morphisms in dgAlg making commuting diagrams with the canonical vertical morphisms as indicated.

We call $\langle F_A \rangle$ the *curvature characteristic forms* of $A$.

Let

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \xrightarrow{(\exp(\mu_i, \mathrm{cs}_i))_i} & \prod_i \exp(b^{n_i - 1}\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \xrightarrow{((\mathrm{curv}_i)_{\mathrm{smp}})} & \prod_i \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n_i}_{\mathrm{smp}} \\ \downarrow \simeq & & & & \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & & & & \end{array}$$

be the presentation, as above, of the product of all differental refinements of characteristic classes on $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ induced from Lie integration of transgressive $L_\infty$-algebra cocycles.

**Proposition 6.4.155.** *We have that* $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{ChW}}$ *is the pullback in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ *of the globally defined closed forms along the curvature characteristics induced by all transgressive* $L_\infty$*-algebra cocycles:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{ChW}} & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu, cs)} & \prod_{n_i} \Omega^{n_i+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(-) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} & \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{curv}_i)_i} & \prod_i \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n_i+1}\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}} \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \\ \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & & \end{array} .$$

Proof. By prop. 6.4.103 we have that the bottom horizontal morphims sends over each $(U, [k])$ and for each $i$ an element

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A_{\mathrm{vert}}} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \xleftarrow{A} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \end{array}$$

of $\exp(\mathfrak{g})(U)_k$ to the composite

$$\left( \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) \xleftarrow{A} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{\mathrm{cs}_i} \mathrm{W}(b^{n_i-1}\mathbb{R}) \longleftarrow \mathrm{inv}(b^{n_i}\mathbb{R}) = \mathrm{CE}(b^{n_i}\mathbb{R})) \right)$$

$$= \left( \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k) \xleftarrow{\langle F_A \rangle_i} \mathrm{CE}(b^{n_i}\mathbb{R}) \right)$$

regarded as an element in $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n_i+1}_{\mathrm{smp}}(U)_k$. The right vertical morphism $\Omega^{n_i+1}(U) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n_i+1}\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{smp}}(U)$ from the constant simplicial set of closed $(n_i+1)$-forms on $U$ picks precisely those of these elements for which $\langle F_A \rangle$ is a basic form on the $U \times \Delta^k$-bundle in that it is in the image of the pullback $\Omega^\bullet(U) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times \Delta^k)$.
□

This way the abstract differential refinement recovers the notion of $\infty$-connections from Lie integration discussed before in 1.2.9.6.

### 6.4.18 Holonomy

We discuss the general notion of higher holonomy, 6.4.18, realized in smooth cohesion.

Let $n, k \in \mathbb{N}$ with $k \leq n$. For

$$\Sigma_k \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

a closed manifold equipped with an orientation, the ordinary fiber integration of differential forms

$$\int_{\Sigma_k} : \Omega^n(\Sigma_k \times U) \longrightarrow \Omega^{n-k}(U)$$

is natural in $U \in \mathrm{CartSp} \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$ and hence comes from a morphism of smooth spaces

$$\int_{\Sigma_k} : [\Sigma_k, \Omega^n] \longrightarrow \Omega^{n-k}$$

in Smooth∞Grpd. Similarly, transgression in ordinary cohomology constitutes a morphism in Smooth∞Grpd. This induces a fiber integration formula also on cocoycles in $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$. The following statement expresses this situtation in detail. This is theorem 3.1 of [GoTe00], where we observe that under the Dold-Kan correspondence it induces the following statement about smooth moduli stacks.

**Definition 6.4.156** (Planck's constant)**.** We label embeddings of abelian groups

$$\tfrac{1}{2\pi\hbar} : \mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

by

$$\hbar \in \mathbb{R} - \{0\}$$

such that the embedding sends $1 \in \mathbb{Z}$ to $\frac{1}{2\pi\hbar} \in \mathbb{R}$.

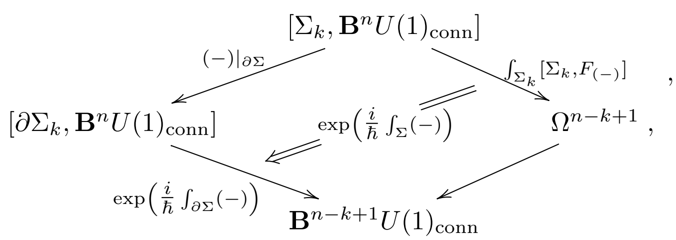
**Remark 6.4.157.** This constant $2\pi\hbar$ is what in physics is called *Planck's constant*. With this constant chosen and under the canonical identification $\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z} \simeq U(1)$ the corresponding quotient map is

$$\mathbb{R} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R} \xrightarrow{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}(-)\right)} U(1)\,.$$

**Proposition 6.4.158** (fiber integration of differential cocycles)**.** *For $\Sigma_k$ a closed oriented manifold, we have horizontal morphisms making the following diagram commute*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
[\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] & \xrightarrow{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{\Sigma_k}(-)\right)} & \mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
[\Sigma_k, \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}] & \xrightarrow{\int_{\Sigma_k}(-)} & \Omega^{n+1-k}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{L}^{n+1}_{\mathrm{tYM}})]} & & \downarrow \\
[\Sigma_k, \flat\mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)] & \xrightarrow{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{\Sigma_k}(-)\right)} & \flat\mathbf{B}^{n+1-k} U(1)\,.
\end{array}$$

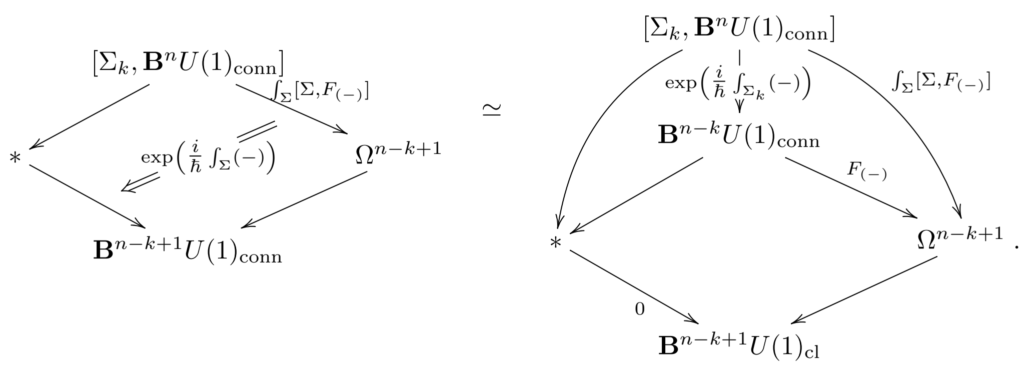
*Moreover, for $\Sigma_k$ a compact oriented manifold with boundary $\partial\Sigma_k$ of dimension $(k-1)$ we have a natural homotopy of this form:*




*which is such that when $\partial\Sigma_k = \emptyset$ then the homotopy filling this diagram coincides with the above integration map under the identification*

$$\mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq * \underset{\mathbf{B}^{n-k+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}{\times} \Omega^{n-k+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}\,;$$

*hence such that for the case of empty boundary we have*



Proof. For the first statement, we need to produce for each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$ a map

$$\mathbf{H}(U \times \Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}(U, \mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}})$$

such that this is natural in $U$. By the discussion of $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in 6.4.16.2, after a choice of good open cover $\mathcal{U}$ of $\Sigma_k$ (inducing the good cover $\mathcal{U} \times U$ of $\Sigma_k \times U$) this is given, under the Dold-Kan correspondence $\mathrm{DK}(-)$, by a chain map of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
C^n(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^n) & \xrightarrow{D} \cdots \xrightarrow{D} & C^1(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^n) & \xrightarrow{D} & Z^0(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^n) \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \int_\Sigma} & \cdots & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int_\Sigma} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int_\Sigma} \\
0 & \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow & C^1(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k}) & \xrightarrow{D} & Z^0(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k})\,.
\end{array}$$

In [GoTe00] a map $\int_\Sigma$ as above is defined and theorem 2.1 there asserts that it satisfies the equation

$$\int_\Sigma \circ D - (-1)^k \, D \circ \int_\Sigma \;=\; \int_{\partial\Sigma} \circ (-)|_{\partial\Sigma} \qquad (\star)$$

in (and this is important) the chain complex $C^\bullet(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k})$. For $\partial\Sigma_k = \emptyset$ this asserts that $\int_\Sigma$ is a chain map as needed for the above.

Next, for the more general statement in the presence of a boundary, we need to interpret formula $(\star)$ as a chain homotopy taking place in $C^\bullet(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1})$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\cdots & \xrightarrow{D} & C^1(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^n) & \xrightarrow{D} & Z^0(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^n) \\
& \swarrow{\scriptstyle \int_\Sigma} & & \swarrow{\scriptstyle \int_\Sigma} & \\
C^2(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1}) & \xrightarrow{D} & C^1(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1}) & \xrightarrow{D} & Z^0(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1})\,.
\end{array}$$

The subtlety to be taken care of now is that the equation in theorem 2.1 of [GoTe00] holds in the chain complex $C^\bullet(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k})$ instead of in $C^\bullet(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1})$ as we need it here. But the difference is only that in the latter complex the Deligne differential of an $(n-k)$-form on single patches differs from that in the former by the de Rham differential $d$ of that differential form, which is by definition absent in the former case. But by degree-counting this difference appears only in the map

$$D : C^1(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1}) \to Z^0(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1}) = \Omega^{n-k+1}(U)\,.$$

Therefore, we may absorb it by modifying the integration chain map in degree 0. To that end, notice that for $\mathcal{A} \in Z^0(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k})$ with curvature form $F_{\mathcal{A}}$, then

$$(0, \cdots, 0, \int_\Sigma (F_{\mathcal{A}})_i) = (0, \ldots, 0, (\int_{\partial\Sigma} \mathcal{A}|_{\partial\Sigma})_i - d_U(\int_\Sigma \mathcal{A})_i) \quad \in \quad Z^0(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1})\,.$$

Therefore, there is a natural chain map

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\cdots & \xrightarrow{D} & C^1(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^n) & \xrightarrow{D} & Z^0(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^n) \\
& & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathcal{A} \mapsto (\int_{\partial\Sigma} \mathcal{A}|_{\partial\Sigma})_i - d(\int_\Sigma \mathcal{A})_i} \\
\cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{n-k+1}(U) \\
& & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle =} \\
\cdots & \xrightarrow{D} & C^1(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1}) & \xrightarrow{D} & Z^0(U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1})\,,
\end{array}$$

which under DK$(-)$ presents the map denoted

$$[\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma F_{(-)}} \Omega^{n-k+1} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{n-k+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

in the above statement. This is now manifestly so that adding its negative to the right of equation $(\star)$ makes this equation define a chain homotopy in $C^\bullet(\mathcal{U} \times U, \underline{U}(1) \to \cdots \to \Omega^{n-k+1})$ of the form

$$[D, \int_\Sigma] \;:\; \int_{\partial\Sigma} (-)|_{\partial\Sigma} \;\;\Rightarrow\;\; \omega_\Sigma \,.$$

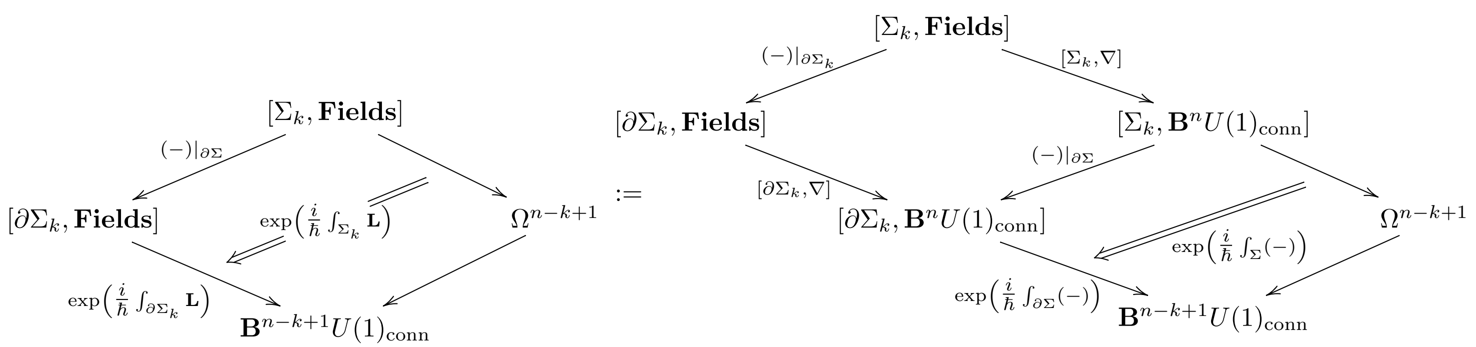
$\square$

**Remark 6.4.159.** These maps express the relative higher *holonomy* and *parallel transport* of $n$-form connections, respectively. The second statement says that the parallel transport of an $n$-connection over a $k$-dimensional manifold with boundary is a section of the $\mathbf{B}^{n-k}U(1)$-principal bundle underlying the transgression of the underlying $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)$-principal connection to the mapping space out of the boundary $\partial\Sigma_k$. The section trivializes that underlying bundle and hence identifies a globally defined connection $(n-k+1)$-form. This is the form $\omega_\Sigma$ in the above diagram.

**Definition 6.4.160.** For

$$\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

and $\Sigma_k \in$ SmoothMds $\hookrightarrow$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd an oriented smooth manifold of dimension $k \leq n$ with boundary $\partial\Sigma_k$, we say that the *transgression* $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_\Sigma \mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{CS}}\right)$ of $\mathbf{L}$ to the mapping space out of $\Sigma$ is the diagram obtained by composing the mapping space construction $[\Sigma, -] : \mathbf{H} \to \mathbf{H}$ with the fiber integration $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_\Sigma (-)\right)$ of Prop. 6.4.158:




**Example 6.4.161.** If $X \in$ SmoothMfd $\hookrightarrow$ Smooth$\infty$Grpd is a smooth manifold and $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is an $n$-connection on $X$, and for $\Sigma_n$ a closed oriented $n$-dimensional manifold, then the transgression

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}\int_\Sigma \nabla\right) \;:\; [\Sigma, X] \to U(1)$$

is the *$n$-volume holonomy* function of $\nabla$. For $n = 1$, hence $\nabla$ is a $U(1)$-principal connection, and $\Sigma = S^1$, this is the traditional notion of holonomy function of a principal connection along closed curves in $X$.

We now relate this construction to the abstract characterization of higher holonomy of def. 5.2.129

**Theorem 6.4.162.** *If* $\Sigma \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *is a closed manifold of dimension* $dim\Sigma \leq n$ *then the intrinsic integration by truncation, def. 5.2.129, takes values in*

$$\tau_{\leq n-\dim\Sigma}\mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \simeq B^{n-\dim\Sigma}U(1) \simeq K(U(1), n-\dim(\Sigma)) \qquad \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

*Moreover, in the case* $\dim\Sigma = n$*, then the morphism*

$$\exp(iS_{\mathbf{c}}(-)) : \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, A_{\mathrm{conn}}) \to U(1)$$

*is obtained from the Lagrangian* $\mathbf{L_c}$ *by forming the volume holonomy of circle* $n$*-bundles with connection (fiber integration in Deligne cohomology)*

$$S_{\mathbf{c}}(-) = \int_\Sigma L_{\mathbf{c}}(-)\,.$$

Proof. Since $dim\Sigma \leq n$ we have by prop. 6.4.73 that $H(\Sigma, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{R}) \simeq H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(\Sigma) \simeq *$. It then follows by prop. 5.2.92 that we have an equivalence

$$\mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{flat}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) =: \mathbf{H}(\textstyle\int(\Sigma), \mathbf{B}^n U(1))$$

with the flat differential cohomology on $\Sigma$, and by the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc} \dashv \Gamma)$-adjunction it follows that this is equivalently

$$\begin{aligned} \cdots &\simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi(\Sigma), \Gamma\mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \\ &\simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi(\Sigma), B^n U(1)_{\mathrm{disc}}) \end{aligned},$$

where $B^n U(1)_{\mathrm{disc}}$ is an Eilenberg-MacLane space $\cdots \simeq K(U(1), n)$. By prop. 6.4.27 we have under $|-| : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}$ a weak homotopy equivalence $|\Pi(\Sigma)| \simeq \Sigma$. Therefore the cocycle $\infty$-groupoid is that of ordinary cohomology

$$\cdots \simeq C^n(\Sigma, U(1))\,.$$

By general abstract reasoning it follows that we have for the homotopy groups an isomorphism

$$\pi_i \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \xrightarrow{\simeq} H^{n-i}(\Sigma, U(1))\,.$$

Now we invoke the universal coefficient theorem. This asserts that the morphism

$$\int_{(-)}(-) : H^{n-i}(\Sigma, U(1)) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ab}}(H_{n-i}(\Sigma, \mathbb{Z}), U(1))$$

which sends a cocycle $\omega$ in singular cohomology with coefficients in $U(1)$ to the pairing map

$$[c] \mapsto \int_{[c]} \omega$$

sits inside an exact sequence

$$0 \to \mathrm{Ext}^1(H_{n-i-1}(\Sigma, \mathbb{Z}), U(1)) \to H^{n-i}(\Sigma, U(1)) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ab}}(H_{n-i}(\Sigma, \mathbb{Z}), U(1)) \to 0\,,$$

But since $U(1)$ is an injective $\mathbb{Z}$-module we have

$$\mathrm{Ext}^1(-, U(1)) = 0\,.$$

This means that the integration/pairing map $\int_{(-)}(-)$ is an isomorphism

$$\int_{(-)}(-) : H^{n-i}(\Sigma, U(1)) \simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ab}}(H_{n-i}(\Sigma, \mathbb{Z}), U(1))\,.$$

For $i < (n - \dim\Sigma)$, the right hand is zero, so that

$$\pi_i \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) = 0 \quad \text{for } i < (n - \dim\Sigma)\,.$$

For $i = (n - \dim\Sigma)$, instead, $H_{n-i}(\Sigma, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$, since $\Sigma$ is a closed $\dim\Sigma$-manifold and so

$$\pi_{(n-\dim\Sigma)} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \simeq U(1)\,.$$

□

More generally, using fiber integration in Deligne hypercohomology as in [GoTe00], we get for compact oriented closed smooth manifolds $\Sigma$ of dimension $k$ a natural morphism

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_\sigma (-)) : [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}\,.$$

### 6.4.19 Chern-Simons functionals

We discuss the realization of the intrinsic notion of Chern-Simons functionals, 5.2.14, in Smooth∞Grpd.

The proof of theorem 6.4.162 shows that for $\dim\Sigma = n$ and $\exp(\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{L}) : A_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ an (Chern-Simons) Lagrangian, we may think of the composite

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar} S) : \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, A_{\mathrm{conn}}) \stackrel{\exp(iL)}{\longrightarrow} \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{conn}) \stackrel{\int_{[\Sigma]}(-)}{\longrightarrow} U(1)$$

as being indeed given by integrating the Lagrangian over $\Sigma$ in order to obtain the action

$$S(-) = \int_\Sigma L(-)\,.$$

We consider precise versions of this statement in 7.2.

### 6.4.20 Wess-Zumino-Witten terms

We discuss the realization of Wess-Zumino-Witten terms, 5.2.15, in Smooth∞Grpd.

Recall from the discussion there that given a group cocycle $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)$, then WZW terms are canonical once a choice of nonabelian refinement of the Hodge filtration for $\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)$ has been made. The following observes that when $\mathbf{c}$ arises by Lie integration of an $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle via prop. 6.4.131, then this induces a canonical such choice.

**Definition 6.4.163.** For $\mathfrak{g}$ an $L_\infty$-algebra, write

$$\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}) \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

for the object presented by the simplicial presheaf that is simplicially constant on the sheaf which is given by

$$\Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{g}) := \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgALg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet(U))$$

as in def. 6.4.79. Write moreover

$$\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}) \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \exp(\mathfrak{g})$$

for the morphism presented by the canonical degree-0 inclusion of the simplicial presheaf from prop. 6.4.93. Finally, given a truncation $\mathbf{B}G := \tau_{p+1}\exp(\mathfrak{g})$, def. 5.1.49, consider the composite

$$\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}) \longrightarrow \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \xrightarrow{\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}(\tau_{p+1})} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}G\ .$$

**Proposition 6.4.164.** *For $\mu : \mathfrak{g} \longrightarrow b^{p+1}\mathbb{R}$ an $L_\infty$-cocycle, def. 6.4.127, with $\Omega\mathbf{c} : G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$ its Lie integration according to prop. 6.4.131, then the construction in def. 6.4.163 provides a compatible refinement of the canonical Hodge filtration on $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$ in the sense of def. 5.2.120, in that it produces a diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}) & \stackrel{\mu}{\longrightarrow} & \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,b^{p+1}\mathbb{R}) = \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & \swarrow_{\simeq} & \downarrow \\ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}G & \underset{\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{c}}{\longrightarrow} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{p+2}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma) \end{array} .$$

Proof. By prop. 6.4.93 we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}) & \stackrel{\mu}{\longrightarrow} & \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,b^{p+1}\mathbb{R}) = \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & \swarrow_{\simeq} & \downarrow \\ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \underset{\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\exp(\mu)}{\longrightarrow} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

and by prop. 6.4.131 we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \exp(\mathfrak{g}) & \stackrel{\exp(\mu)}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow & \swarrow_{\simeq} & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}G & \stackrel{\mathbf{c}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}^{p+2}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma) \end{array} .$$

Pasting the image under $\flat_{\mathrm{dR}}$ of the latter to the former gives the diagram in question. □

**Remark 6.4.165.** Proposition 6.4.164 implies via prop. 5.2.122 that every $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle canonically induces a higher WZW term.

**Definition 6.4.166.** Given an $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle $\mu_1 : \mathfrak{g}_1 \to b^{p_1+1}\mathbb{R}$, def. 6.4.127, with $\mathfrak{g}_2 := \mu_1^* e b^{p_1}\mathbb{R}$ its homotopy fiber presented as in prop. 6.4.138, and given a second cocycle $\mu_2 : \mathfrak{g}_2 \to b^{p_2+1}\mathbb{R}$ on this homotopy fiber

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{g}_2 & \stackrel{\mu_2}{\longrightarrow} & b^{p_2+1}\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathfrak{g}_1 & \stackrel{\mu_1}{\longrightarrow} & b^{p_1+1}\mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

we say that the tuple $(\mu_1, \mu_2)$ is a pair of *consecutive* $L_\infty$-cocycles is if

1. $p_2 > p_1$;
2. the truncated Lie integrations

   $$\mathbf{c}_i : \mathbf{B}G_i \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p_i+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_i)$$

   of these cocycles via prop. 6.4.130 preserve the extension property in that

   $$G_2 \longrightarrow G_1 \stackrel{\Omega\mathbf{c}_1}{\longrightarrow} \mathbf{B}^{p_1+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_1)$$

   is again a homotopy fiber sequence.

**Remark 6.4.167.** The issue of the second clause in def. 6.4.166 is to do with the truncation degrees: the universal untruncated Lie integration $\exp(-)$ of def. 6.4.130 preserves homotopy fiber sequences, but if there are non-trivial cocycles on $\mathfrak{g}$ in between $\mu_1$ and $\mu_2$, then these will remain as nontrivial homotopy groups in the higher-degree truncation $\mathbf{B}G_2 := \tau_{p_2} \exp(\mathfrak{g}_2)$ [Hen08, theorem 6.4] but they will be truncated away in $\mathbf{B}G_1 := \tau_{p_1} \exp(\mathfrak{g}_1)$ and will hence spoil the preservation of the homotopy fibers through Lie integration.

**Proposition 6.4.168.** *Given a pair $(\mu_1, \mu_2)$ of consecutive $L_\infty$-cocycles, def. 6.4.166, then a compatibilty, in the sense of def. 5.2.124, between the two refinements $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}_1)$ and $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}_2)$ of the Hodge filtrations as given by prop. 6.4.163 is given by taking (see def. 1.2.176, def. 6.4.135)*

$$\Omega^1(-, \mathbf{B}^{p_1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)) := \Omega^1(-, b^{p_1}\mathbb{R}) = \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, eb^{p_1}\mathbb{R}) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(W(b^{p_1}\mathbb{R}), \Omega^\bullet(-))$$

*with the morphism $\Omega^1(-, b^{p_1}) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{d}} \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(-, b^{p_1})$ being the canonical one induced by the morphism $eb^{p_1}\mathbb{R} \to b^{p_1+1}\mathbb{R}$.*

Proof. The left square in def. 5.2.124 exists and is a pullback by prop. 6.4.138. That the right square in def. 5.2.124 commutes is here the statement that for every Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$ exact $p_1 + 2$-forms on $\mathbb{R}^n$ are naturally equivalent to 0 in $\mathbf{H}(U, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{p_1+2}\mathbb{R})$. This follows immediately with prop. 6.4.72. ☐

**Remark 6.4.169.** Prop. 6.4.168 says, via prop. 5.2.125, that every two consecutive $L_\infty$-algebra cocycles, def. 6.4.166,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{g}_2 & \xrightarrow{\mu_2} & b^{p_2+1}\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathfrak{g}_1 & \xrightarrow{\mu_1} & b^{p_1+1}\mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

canonically Lie integrate to two consecutive WZW terms, prop. 5.2.122, one defined on the differential extension induced by the other

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{G}_2 & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}_2}} & \mathbf{B}^{p_2+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_2)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow & & \\ \tilde{G}_1 & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}_1}]{} & \mathbf{B}^{p_1+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array} ,.$$

This is the form of a stage in the *brane bouquet* below in 8.1.2.

### 6.4.21 Prequantum geometry

We discuss the notion of cohesive prequantization, 5.2.17, realized in the model of smooth cohesion.

What is traditionally called *(geometric) prequantization* is the refinement of symplectic 2-forms to curvature 2-forms on line bundles with connection. Formally: for

$$H^2_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} \Omega^2_{\mathrm{int}}(X) \hookrightarrow \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$$

the morphism that sends a class in degree-2 differential cohomology over a smooth manifold $X$ to its curvature 2-form, geometric prequantization of some $\omega \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$ is a choice of lift $\hat{\omega} \in H^2_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$ through this morphism. One says that $\hat{\omega}$ is (the class of) a *prequantum line bundle* or *quantization line bundle* with connection for $\omega$. See for instance [WeXu91].

By the curvature exact sequence for differential cohomology, prop. 6.4.109, a lift $\hat{\omega}$ exists precisely if $\omega$ is an *integral* differential 2-form. This is called the *quantization condition* on $\omega$. If it is fulfilled, the group of possible choices of lifts is the topological (for instance singular) cohomology group $H^1(X, U(1))$. Notice that the extra non-degeneracy condition that makes a closed 2-form a symplectic form does not appear in *pre*quantization.

The concept of geometric prequantization has an evident generalization to closed forms of degree $n+1$ for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$. For $\omega \in \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$ a closed differential $(n+1)$-form on a manifold $X$, a geometric prequantization is a lift of $\omega$ through the canonical morphism

$$H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{int}}(X) \hookrightarrow \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) \ .$$

Since the elements of the higher differential cohomology group $H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$ are classes of *circle $n$-bundles with connection* (equivalently *circle bundle $(n-1)$-gerbes with connection*) on $X$, we may speak of such a lift as a *prequantum circle $n$-bundle*. Again, the lift exists precisely if $\omega$ is integral and the group of possible choices is $H^n(X, U(1))$. Higher geometric prequantization for $n = 2$ has been considered in [Rog11a]. By the discussion in 6.4.16 we may consider circle $n$-bundles with connection not just over smooth manifolds, but over any smooth $\infty$-groupoid (smooth $\infty$-stack) and hence consider, generally, geometric prequantization of higher forms on higher smooth stacks.

This section draws from [FRS13b].

- 6.4.21.1 – $n$-Plectic manifolds and their Hamiltonian vector fields
- 6.4.21.2 – Prequantization of $n$-plectic manifolds
- 6.4.21.3 – The $L_\infty$-algebra of local observables
- 6.4.21.4 – The Kostant-Souriau $L_\infty$-cocycle
- 6.4.21.5 – The Kostant-Souriau-Heisenberg $L_\infty$-extension
- 6.4.21.6 – Ordinary symplectic geometry and its pre-quantization;
- 6.4.21.7 – 2-Plectic geometry and its pre-quantization.
- 6.4.21.8 – Truncation of higher Poisson brackets and Dickey bracket on conserved currents

**6.4.21.1 $n$-Plectic manifolds and their Hamiltonian vector fields** In [BHR08] the following terminology has been introduced.

**Definition 6.4.170.** A *pre-$n$-plectic manifold* $(X, \omega)$ is a smooth manifold $X$ equipped with a closed $(n+1)$-form $\omega \in \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$. If the contraction map $\hat{\omega} \colon TX \to \Lambda^n T^*X$ is injective, then $\omega$ is called *non-degenerate* or *$n$-plectic* and $(X, \omega)$ is called an *$n$-plectic manifold*.

**Example 6.4.171.** For $n = 1$ an $n$-plectic manifold is equivalently an ordinary symplectic manifold.

**Example 6.4.172.** Let $G$ be a compact connected simple Lie group. Equipped with its canonical left invariant differential 3-form $\omega := \langle -, [-, -] \rangle$ this is a 2-plectic manifold.

**Definition 6.4.173.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be a pre-$n$-plectic manifold. If a vector field $v$ and an $(n-1)$-form $H$ are related by

$$\iota_v \omega + dH = 0$$

then we say that $v$ is a Hamiltonian field for $H$ and that $H$ is a Hamiltonian form for $v$.

**Definition 6.4.174.** We denote by

$$\mathrm{Ham}^{n-1}(X) \subseteq \mathfrak{X}(X) \oplus \Omega^{n-1}(X)$$

the subspace of pairs $(v, H)$ such that $\iota_v \omega + dH = 0$. We call this the space of *Hamiltonian pairs.* The image $\mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) \subseteq \mathfrak{X}(X)$ of the projection $\mathrm{Ham}^{n-1}(X) \to \mathfrak{X}(X)$ is called the space of *Hamiltonian vector fields* of $(X, \omega)$.

$$\Omega^{n-1}_{\mathrm{Ham}} \longrightarrow \mathcal{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) \hookrightarrow \mathcal{X}(X) \ .$$

**Remark 6.4.175.** Given a pre-$n$-plectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ We have a short exact sequence of vector spaces

$$0 \to \Omega^{n-1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) \to \mathrm{Ham}^{n-1}(X) \to \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) \to 0,$$

i.e., closed $(n-1)$-forms are Hamiltonian, with zero Hamiltonian vector field.

**Remark 6.4.176.** It is immediate from the definition that Hamilton vector fields preserve the pre-$n$-plectic form $\omega$, i.e., $\mathcal{L}_v \omega = 0$. Indeed, since $\omega$ is closed, we have $\mathcal{L}_v \omega = d\iota_v \omega = -d^2 H_v = 0$. Therefore the integration of a Hamiltonian vector field gives a diffeomorphism of $X$ preserving the pre-$n$-plectic form: a *Hamiltonian $n$-plectomorphism.*

**Lemma 6.4.177.** *The subspace $\mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X)$ is a Lie subalgebra of $\mathfrak{X}(X)$.*

**6.4.21.2 Prequantization of $n$-plectic manifolds** Let $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ be the moduli $n$-stack of $U(1)$-principal $n$-connection from prop. 6.4.112. The realization of def. 5.2.130 in the present situation is

**Definition 6.4.178.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be a pre-$n$-plectic manifold, def. 6.4.170. A *prequantization* of $(X, \omega)$ is a lift

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F} \\ X & \xrightarrow{\ \omega\ } & \Omega^{n+1}(-)_{\mathrm{cl}}. \end{array}$$

We call the triple $(X, \omega, \nabla)$ a prequantized pre-$n$-plectic manifold.

**6.4.21.3 The $L_\infty$-algebra of local observables** We consider now the Lie differentiation of the Quantomorphism $\infty$-group of a pre-quantized $n$-plectic smooth manifold.

**Definition 6.4.179.** We call the Lie $n$-algebra $L_\infty(X, \omega)$ of def. 1.3.159 the *$L_\infty$-algebra of local observables* on $(X, \omega)$.

**Remark 6.4.180.** The projection map of def. 6.4.174 uniquely extends to a morphism of $L_\infty$-algebras of the form

$$\begin{array}{c} L_\infty(X, \omega) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \pi_L} \\ \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) \end{array} ,$$

i.e., local observables of $(X, \omega)$ cover Hamiltonian vector fields. Below in 6.4.21.4 we turn to the classification of this map by an $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle.

**Example 6.4.181.** If $n = 1$ then $(X, \omega)$ is a pre-symplectic manifold and the chain complex underlying $L_\infty(X, \omega)$ is

$$\mathrm{Ham}^0(X) = \{v + H \in \mathfrak{X}(X) \oplus C^\infty(X; \mathbb{R}) \,|\, \iota_v \omega + dH = 0\},$$

and the Lie bracket is

$$[v_1 + H_1, v_2 + H_2] = [v_1, v_2] + \iota_{v_1 \wedge v_2}\omega.$$

If moreover $\omega$ is non-degenerate so that $(X, \omega)$ is symplectic, then the projection $v + H \mapsto H$ is a linear isomorphism $\mathrm{Ham}^0(X) \xrightarrow{\simeq} C^\infty(X; \mathbb{R})$. It is easy to see that under this isomorphism $L_\infty(X, \omega)$ is the underlying Lie algebra of the usual Poisson algebra of functions. See also Prop. 2.3.9 in [Br93].

**6.4.21.4 The Kostant-Souriau $L_\infty$-cocycle** We discuss the realization of the general cocycle of def. 5.2.145, classifying the quantomorphism group extension, under Lie differentiation, 6.5.2.5.

**Definition 6.4.182.** For $X$ a smooth manifold, denote by $\mathbf{B}\mathbf{H}(X, \flat\mathbf{B}^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$ the abelian Lie $(n+1)$-algebra given by the chain complex

$$\Omega^0(X) \xrightarrow{d} \Omega^1(X) \xrightarrow{d} \cdots \xrightarrow{d} \Omega^{n-1}(X) \xrightarrow{d} d\Omega^{n-1}(X),$$

with $d\Omega^{n-1}(X)$ in degree zero.

**Remark 6.4.183.** The complex of def. 6.4.182 serves as a resolution of the cocycle complex

$$\Omega^0(X) \xrightarrow{d} \Omega^1(X) \xrightarrow{d} \cdots \xrightarrow{d} \Omega^{n-1}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) \to 0\,,$$

for the de Rham cohomology of $X$ up to degree $n-1$ once delooped (i.e., shifted).

**Proposition 6.4.184.** *Let $(X, \omega)$ be a pre-$n$-plectic manifold. The multilinear maps*

$$\omega_{[1]} : v \mapsto -\iota_v\omega; \qquad \omega_{[2]} : v_1 \wedge v_2 \mapsto \iota_{v_1\wedge v_2}\omega; \qquad \cdots \qquad \omega_{[n+1]} : v_1 \wedge v_2 \wedge \cdots v_{n+1} \mapsto -(-1)^{\binom{n+1}{2}}\iota_{v_1\wedge v_2 \wedge \cdots \wedge v_{n+1}}\omega$$

*define an $L_\infty$-morphism*

$$\omega_{[\bullet]} : \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) \to \mathbf{B}\mathbf{H}(X, \flat\mathbf{B}^{n-1}\mathbb{R})\,,$$

*and hence an $L_\infty$-algebra $(n+1)$-cocycle on the Lie algebra of Hamiltonian vector fields, def. 6.4.174, with values in the abelian $(n+1)$-algebra of def. 6.4.182.*

This is due to [FRS13b, prop. 3.2.3].

**Definition 6.4.185.** The degree $(n+1)$ *higher Kostant-Souriau $L_\infty$-cocycle* associated to the pre-$n$-plectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ is the $L_\infty$-morphism

$$\omega_{[\bullet]} : \ \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbf{H}(X, \flat\mathbf{B}^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$$

given in Prop. 6.4.184.

If $\rho \colon \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X)$ is an $L_\infty$-morphism encoding an action of an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ on $(X, \omega)$ by Hamiltonian vector fields, then we call the composite $\rho^*\omega_{[\bullet]}$ the corresponding *Heisenberg $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle*. This terminology is motivated by example 6.4.186 below.

**Example 6.4.186.** Let $V$ be a vector space equipped with a skew-symmetric multilinear form $\omega : \Lambda^{n+1}V \to \mathbb{R}$. Since $V$ is an abelian Lie group, we obtain via left-translation of $\omega$ a unique closed invariant form, which we also denote as $\omega$. By identifying $V$ with left-invariant vector fields on $V$, the Poincare lemma implies that we have a canonical inclusion

$$j_V : V \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(V)$$

of $V$ regarded as an abelian Lie algebra into the Hamiltonian vector fields on $(V, \omega)$ regarded as a pre $n$-plectic manifold. Since $V$ is contractible as a topological manifold, we have, by remark 6.4.183, a quasi-isomorphism

$$\mathbf{B}\mathbf{H}(V; \flat\mathbf{B}^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{R}[n]$$

of abelian $L_\infty$-algebras, given by evaluation at 0. Under this equivalence the restriction of the $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle $\omega_{[\bullet]}$ of def. 6.4.185 along $j_V$ is an $L_\infty$-algebra map of the form

$$j_V^*\omega_{[\bullet]} : \; V \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}[n]$$

whose single component is the linear map

$$\iota_{(-)}\omega : \wedge^{n+1} V \to \mathbb{R} \,.$$

For $n = 1$ and $(V, \omega)$ an ordinary symplectic vector space the map $\iota_{(-)}\omega : V \wedge V \to \mathbb{R}$ is the traditional *Heisenberg cocycle*.

**6.4.21.5 The Kostant-Souriau-Heisenberg $L_\infty$-extension** We consider here the cohesive quantomorphism and Heinseberg group extensions from 5.2.17.5 after Lie differentiation as extensions of $L_\infty$-algebras.

**Proposition 6.4.187.** *If $(X, \omega)$ is a pre-n-plectic manifold, then the projection map $\pi_L \colon L_\infty(X, \omega) \to \mathcal{X}_{\mathrm{ham}}(X)$ (remark 6.4.180) and the higher Kostant-Souriau $L_\infty$-cocycle $\omega_{[\bullet]}$ (def. 6.4.185) form a homotopy fiber sequence of $L_\infty$-algebras, and hence fit into a homotopy pullback diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L_\infty(X,\omega) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow^{\pi_L} & & \downarrow \\ \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) & \xrightarrow{\omega_{[\bullet]}} & \mathbf{B}\mathbf{H}(X, \flat \mathbf{B}^{n-1}\mathbb{R}). \end{array}$$

This is due to [FRS13b, theorem 3.3.1].

If a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ acts on an $n$-plectic manifold by Hamiltonian vector fields, then the Kostant-Souriau $L_\infty$-extension of $\mathcal{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X)$, discussed above in 6.4.21.5, restricts to an $L_\infty$-extension of $\mathfrak{g}$. This is a generalization of Kostant's construction [Kos70] of central extensions of Lie algebras to the context of $L_\infty$-algebras. Perhaps the most famous of these central extensions is the Heisenberg Lie algebra, which is the inspiration behind the following terminology:

**Definition 6.4.188.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be a pre-$n$-plectic manifold and let $\rho : \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X)$ be a Lie algebra homomorphism encoding an action of $\mathfrak{g}$ on $X$ by Hamiltonian vector fields. The corresponding *Heisenberg $L_\infty$-algebra extension* $\mathfrak{heis}_\rho(\mathfrak{g})$ of $\mathfrak{g}$ is the extension classified by the composite $L_\infty$-morphism $\omega_{[\bullet]} \circ \rho$, i.e. the homotopy pullback on the left of

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathfrak{heis}_\rho(\mathfrak{g}) & \longrightarrow & L_\infty(X,\omega) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathfrak{g} & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) & \xrightarrow{\omega_{[\bullet]}} & \mathbf{B}\mathbf{H}(X, \flat \mathbf{B}^{n-1}\mathbb{R}) \end{array} .$$

**Remark 6.4.189.** It is natural to call an $L_\infty$-morphism with values in the $L_\infty$-algebra of observables of a pre-$n$-plectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ an '$L_\infty$ co-moment map', which generalizes the familiar notion in symplectic geometry. Hence, one could say that an action $\rho$ of a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ on a pre-$n$-plectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ via Hamiltonian vector fields naturally induces such a co-moment map from the Heisenberg $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{heis}_\rho(\mathfrak{g})$.

**6.4.21.6 Ordinary symplectic geometry and its prequantization** We discuss how the general abstract notion of higher geometric prequantization reduces to the traditional notion of geometric prequatization when interpreted in the smooth context and for $n = 1$.

The following is essentially a re-derivation of the discussion in section II.3 and II.4 of [Br93] (based on [Kos70]) from the abstract point of view of 5.2.17.

The traditional definition of Hamiltonian vector fields is the following.

**Definition 6.4.190.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be a smooth symplectic manifold. A *Hamiltonian vector field* on $X$ is a vector field $v \in \Gamma(TX)$ whose contraction with the symplectic form $\omega$ yields an exact form, hence such that

$$\exists\, h \in C^\infty(X) \;:\; \iota_v \omega = d_{\mathrm{dR}} h\,.$$

Here a choice of function $h$ is called a *Hamiltonian* for $v$.

**Proposition 6.4.191.** *Let $X$ be a smooth manifold which is simply connected, and let $\omega \in \Omega^2(X)_{\mathrm{int}}$ be an integral symplectic form on $X$. Then regarding $(X, \omega)$ as a symplectic 0-groupoid in* Smooth∞Grpd*, the general definition 5.2.150 reproduces the standard notion of Hamiltonian vector fields, def. 6.4.190 on the symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$.*

Proof. A Hamiltonian symplectomorphism is an equivalence $\phi : X \to X$ that fits into a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\;\;\phi\;\;} & X \\ & \swarrow\!\!\!\swarrow_{\alpha} & \\ {\scriptstyle \hat\omega}\searrow & & \swarrow{\scriptstyle \hat\omega} \\ & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array}$$

in Smooth∞Grpd. To compute the Lie algebra of the group of these diffeomorphisms, we need to consider smooth 1-parameter families of such and differentiate them.

Assume first that the connection 1-form in $\hat\omega$ is globally defined $A \in \Omega^1(X)$ with $dA = \omega$. Then the existence of the above diagram is equivalent to the condition

$$(\phi(t)^* A - A) = d\alpha(t)\,,$$

where $\alpha(t) \in C^\infty(X)$. Differentiating this at 0 yields the Lie derivative

$$\mathcal{L}_v A = d\alpha'\,,$$

where $v$ is the vector field of which $t \mapsto \phi(t)$ is the flow and where $\alpha' := \frac{d}{dt}\alpha$. By Cartan calculus this is equivalently

$$d_{\mathrm{dR}} \iota_v A + \iota_v d_{dR} A = d\alpha'$$

and using that $A$ is the connection on a prequantum circle bundle for $\omega$

$$\iota_v \omega + d(\underbrace{\iota_v A - \alpha'}_{h}) = 0\,.$$

This says that for $v$ to be Hamiltonian, its contraction with $\omega$ must be exact. This is precisely the definition of Hamiltonian vector fields. The corresponding Hamiltonian function is $h = \iota_v A - \alpha'$.

We now discuss the general case, where the prequantum bundle is not necessarily trivial. After a choice of cover that is compatible with the flows of vector fields, the argument proceeds by slight generalization of the previous argument.

We may assume without restriction of generality that $X$ is connected. Choose then any base point $x_0 \in X$ and let

$$P_* X := [I, X] \times_X \{x_0\}$$

be the based smooth path space of $X$, regarded as a diffeological space, def. 6.4.14, where $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ is the standard closed interval. This comes equipped with the smooth endpoint evaluation map

$$p : P_* X \to X\,.$$

Pulled back along this map, every circle bundle has a trivialization, since $P_* X$ is topologically contractible. The corresponding Čech nerve $C(P_* X \to X)$ is the simplicial presheaf that starts out as

$$\cdots \;\substack{\longrightarrow\\[-1ex] \longrightarrow\\[-1ex] \longrightarrow}\; P_* X \times_X P_* X \;\underset{p_2}{\overset{p_1}{\rightrightarrows}}\; P_* X \;\;,$$

where in first degree we have a certain smooth version of the based loop space of $X$. Any diffeomorphism $\phi = \exp(v) : X \to X$ lifts to an automorphism of the Čech nerve by letting

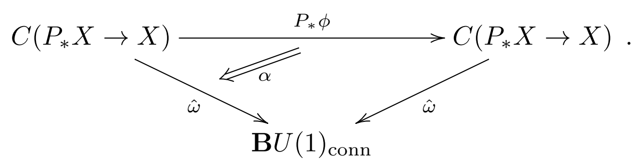
$$P_*\phi : P_*X \to P_*X$$

be given by

$$P_*\phi(\gamma) : (t \in [0,1]) \mapsto \exp(tv)(\gamma(t))$$

and similarly for $P_*\phi : P_*X \times_X P_*X \to P_*X \times_X P_*X$. If $\phi = \exp(tv)$ for $v$ a vector field on $X$, we will write $v$ also for the vector fields induced this way on the components of the Čech nerve.

With these preparations, every elements of the group in question is presented by a diagram of simplicial presheaves of the form




Here the vertical (diagonal) morphisms now exhibit Čech-Deligne cocycles with transition function

$$g \in C^\infty(P_*X \times_X P_*X)$$

and connection 1-form

$$A \in \Omega^1(P_*X)\,,$$

satisfiying

$$p_2^*A - p_1^*A = d_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathrm{log}g\,.$$

For $\phi(t) = \exp(tv)$ a 1-parameter family of diffeomorphisms, the homotopy in this diagram is a gauge transformation given by a function $\alpha(t) \in C^\infty(P_*X, U(1))$ such that

$$p_2^*\alpha(t) \cdot g \cdot p_1^*\alpha(t)^{-1} = \exp(tv)^*g$$

and

$$\exp(tv)^*A - A = d_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathrm{log}\alpha(t)\,.$$

Differentiating this at $t = 0$ and writing $\alpha' := \alpha'(0)$ as before, this yields

$$p_2^*\alpha' - p_1^*\alpha' = \mathcal{L}_v\mathrm{log}g$$

and

$$\mathcal{L}_vA = d_{\mathrm{dR}}\alpha'\,.$$

The latter formula says that on $P_*X$ $\iota_v\omega$ is exact

$$\iota_v p^*\omega + d_{\mathrm{dR}}(\iota_vA - \alpha')\,.$$

But in fact the function on the right descends down to $X$, because by the formulas above we have

$$\begin{aligned} p_2^*(\alpha' - \iota_vA) - p_1^*(\alpha' - \iota_vA) &= \mathcal{L}_v\mathrm{log}g - \iota_v(p_2^*A - p_1^*A) \\ &= 0\,. \end{aligned}.$$

Write therefore $h \in C^\infty(X)$ for the unique function such that $p^*h = \alpha' - \iota_vA$, then this satisfies

$$\iota_v\omega = dh$$

on $X$. □

**Corollary 6.4.192.** *For $\mathbb{G} = U(1) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ the smooth circle group and for $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ a connected smooth manifold, theorem 5.2.143 reproduces the traditional quantomorphism group as a $U(1)$-extension of the traditional group of Hamiltonian symplectomorphisms, as discussed for instance in [RaSch81, Vi11].*

The traditional definition of the Poisson-bracket Lie algebra associated with a symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ is the following.

**Definition 6.4.193.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be a smooth symplectic manifold. Then its *Poisson-bracket Lie algebra* is the Lie algebra whose underlying vector space is $C^\infty(X)$, the space of smooth function on $X$, and whose Lie bracket is given by

$$[h_1, h_2] := \iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1}\omega$$

for all $h_1, h_2 \in C^\infty(X)$ and for $v_1, v_2$ the corresponding Hamiltonian vector fields, def. 6.4.190.

**Proposition 6.4.194.** *The general definition of Poisson $\infty$-Lie algebra, def. 5.2.150, applied to the symplectic manifold $(X, \omega)$ regarded as a symplectic smooth 0-groupoid, reproduces the traditional definition of the Lie algebra underlying the Poisson algebra of $(X, \omega)$.*

Proof. The smooth group $\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}}(\hat{\omega})$ is manifestly a subgroup of the semidirect product group $\mathrm{Diff}(X) \ltimes C^\infty(X)$, where the group structure on the second factor is given by addition, and the action of the first factor on the second is the canonical one by pullback. Accordingly, its Lie algebra may be identified with that of pairs $(v, \alpha)$ in $\Gamma(TX) \times C^\infty(X)$ such that, with the notation as in the proof of prop. 6.4.191, $\iota_v A - \alpha$ is a Hamiltonian for $v$; and the Lie bracket is given by

$$[\,(v_1, \alpha_1)\,,\,(v_2, \alpha_2)\,] = ([v_1, v_2]\,,\,\mathcal{L}_{v_1}\alpha_2 - \mathcal{L}_{v_2}\alpha_1)\,.$$

It remains to check that with this bracket the map

$$\phi : h \mapsto \iota_v A - h$$

is a Lie algebra isomorphism from the Poisson-bracket Lie algebra, def. 6.4.193. For this notice that, from the basic property of $d_{\mathrm{dR}}$

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1}\omega &= \iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1} d_{\mathrm{dR}} A \\ &\iota_{v_1} d_{\mathrm{dR}}\iota_{v_2} A - \iota_{v_2} d_{\mathrm{dR}}\iota_{v_1} A - \iota_{[v_1,v_2]} A \\ &= 2\iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1}\omega - \iota_{[v_1,v_2]}A + \mathcal{L}_{v_2}\alpha_1 - \mathcal{L}_{v_1}\alpha_2 \end{aligned}\,.$$

Subtracting $\iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1}\omega = \iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1} d_{\mathrm{dR}} A$ on both sides yields

$$\iota_{[v_1,v_2]}A - \iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1}\omega = \mathcal{L}_{v_1}\alpha_2 - \mathcal{L}_{v_2}\alpha_1\,.$$

This gives that $\phi$ is a Lie algebra homomorphism:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi([(v_1, h_1), (v_2, h_2)]) &= \phi(([v_1, v_2], \iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1}\omega)) \\ &= ([v_1, v_2], \iota_{[v_1,v_2]}A - \iota_{v_2}\iota_{v_1}\omega)) \\ &= ([v_1, v_2], \mathcal{L}_{v_1}\alpha_2 - \mathcal{L}_{v_2}\alpha_1) \\ &= [\phi(v_1, h_1), \phi(v_2, h_2)] \end{aligned}\,.$$

□

We recover the following traditional facts from the general notions of 5.2.17.

**Remark 6.4.195.** The *Poisson-bracket group* of the symplectic manifold $(X, \hat{\omega})$ according to def. 5.2.150 is a central extension by $U(1)$ of the group of hamiltonian symplectomorphisms: we have a short exact sequence of smooth groups

$$U(1) \to \mathrm{Poisson}(X, \hat{\omega}) \to \mathrm{HamSympl}(X, \hat{\omega})\,.$$

On Lie algebras this exhibits the Poisson-bracket Lie algebra as a central extension of the Lie algebra of Hamiltonian vector fields.

$$\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{poisson}(X, \hat{\omega}) \to \mathcal{X}_{\mathrm{ham}}(X, \hat{\omega}) \,.$$

If $(X, \omega)$ is a *symplectic vector space* in that $X$ is a vector space and the symplectic differential form $\omega$ is constant with respect to (left or right) translation along $X$, then the *Heisenberg Lie algebra* is the sub Lie algebra

$$\mathfrak{heis}(X, \hat{\omega}) \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{poisson}(X, \hat{\omega})$$

on the constant and the linear functions, see remark 5.2.151.

Traditional literature knows different conventions about which Lie group to pick by default as the one integrating a Heisenberg Lie algebra (the unique simply-connected one or one of its discrete quotients). By remark 5.2.151 the inclusion

$$\mathrm{Heis}(X, \hat{\omega}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Poisson}(X, \hat{\omega})$$

picks the one where the central part is integrated to the circle group:

$$\mathrm{Heis}(X, \hat{\omega}) \simeq X \times U(1) \,.$$

If in this decomposition we write the canonical generator in

$$\mathfrak{heis}(X, \hat{\omega}) \simeq X \oplus \mathfrak{u}(1)$$

of the summand $\mathfrak{u}(1) = \mathrm{Lie}(U(1))$ as "i" then the Lie bracket on $\mathfrak{heis}(X, \hat{\omega})$ is given on any two $f, g \in X$ by

$$[f, g] = \mathrm{i}\omega(f, g) \,.$$

Specifically for the special case $X = \mathbb{R}^2$ with canonical basis vectors denoted $\hat{q}$ and $\hat{p}$, and with $\omega$ the canonical symplectic form, the only nontrivial bracket in $\mathfrak{heis}(X, \hat{\omega})$ among these generators is

$$[\hat{q}, \hat{p}]_{\mathfrak{heis}} = \mathrm{i} \,.$$

The image of this equation under the map $\mathfrak{heis}(X, \hat{\omega}) \to \mathcal{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X, \hat{\omega})$ is

$$[q, p]_{\mathcal{X}} = 0 \,,$$

where now $q, p$ denote the Hamiltonian vector fields associated with $\hat{q}$ and $\hat{p}$, respectively. The lift from the latter to the former equation is, historically, the archetypical hallmark of quantization.

**Proposition 6.4.196.** *For $(X, \omega)$ an ordinary prequantizable symplectic manifold and $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}U(1)$ any choice of prequantum bundle, def. 5.2.130, let $V := \mathbb{C}$ and let $\rho$ be the canonical representation of $U(1)$.*

*Then def. 5.2.156 reduces to the traditional definition to prequantum operators in geometric quantization (e.g. [BaWe97, p.94]).*

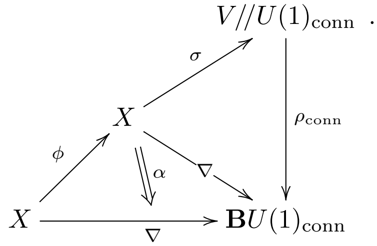
Proof. According to the discussion in 6.4.10.1 the space of sections $\Gamma_X(E)$ is that of the ordinary sections of the ordinary associated line bundle.

Notice that part of the statement there is that the standard presentation of $\rho : V//U(1) \to \mathbf{B}U(1)$ by a morphism of simplicial presheaves $V//U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}} \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}}$ is a fibration. In particular this means, as used there, that the $\infty$-groupoid of sections *up to homotopy* is presented already by the Kan complex (which here is just a set) of strict sections $\sigma$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & V//U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}} \\ & \overset{\sigma}{\nearrow} & \downarrow^{\rho} \\ C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array}$$

and it is these that directly identify with the ordinary sections of the line bundle $E \to X$.

Now, a Hamiltonian diffeomorphism in the general sense of def. 5.2.156 takes such a section $\sigma$ to the pasting composite




By the above, to identify this with a section of the line bundle in the ordinary sense, we need to find an equivalent homotopy-section whose homotopy is, however, trivial, hence a strict section which is equivalent to this as a homotopy section.

Inspection shows that there is a unique such equivalence whose underlying natural transformations has components induced by the inverse of $\alpha$. Then for $h : X \to \mathbb{C}$ a given function and $t \mapsto (\phi(t), \alpha(t))$ the family of Hamiltonian diffeomorphism associated to it by prop. 6.4.191, the proof of that proposition shows that the infinitesimal difference between the original section $\sigma$ and this new section is

$$i\nabla_{v_h}\sigma + h \cdot \sigma \,,$$

where $v_h$ is the ordinary Hamiltonian vector field induced by $h$. This is the traditional formula for the action of the prequantum operator $\hat{h}$ on prequantum states. □

#### 6.4.21.7 2-Plectic geometry and its prequantization

We consider now the general notion of higher geometric prequantization, 5.2.17, specialized to the case of closed 3-forms on smooth manifolds, canonically regarded in Smooth∞Grpd. We show that this reproduces the *2-plectic geometry* and its prequantization studied in [Rog11a].

The following two definitions are from [Rog11a], def. 3.1, prop. 3.15.

**Definition 6.4.197.** A *2-plectic structure* on a smooth manifold $X$ is a smooth closed differential 3-form $\omega \in \Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$, which is non-degenerate in that the induced morphism

$$\iota_{(-)}\omega : \Gamma(TX) \to \Omega^2(X)$$

has trivial kernel.

**Definition 6.4.198.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be a 2-plectic manifold. Then a 1-form $h \in \Omega^1(X)$ is called *Hamiltonian* if there exists a vector field $v \in \Gamma(TX)$ such that

$$d_{\mathrm{dR}} h = \iota_v \omega \,.$$

If this vector field exists, then it is unique and is called the *Hamiltonian vector field* corresponding to $\alpha$. We write $v_h$ to indicate this. We write

$$\Omega^1(X)_{\mathrm{Ham}} \hookrightarrow \Omega^1(X)$$

for the vector space of Hamiltonian 1-forms on $(X, \omega)$.

The *Lie 2-algebra of Hamiltonian vector fields* $L_\infty(X, \omega)$ is the (infinite-dimensional) $L_\infty$-algebra, def. 1.2.150, whose underlying chain complex is

$$\cdots \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow C^\infty(X) \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^1_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) \;,$$

whose non-trivial binary bracket is

$$[-,-] : (h_1, h_2) \mapsto \iota_{v_{h_2}} \iota_{v_{h_1}} \omega$$

and whose non-trivial trinary bracket is

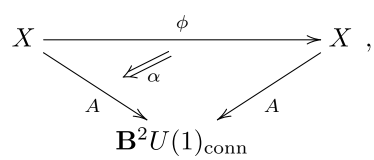
$$[-,-,-] : (h_1, h_2, h_3) \mapsto \iota_{v_{h_1}} \iota_{v_{h_2}} \iota_{v_{h_3}} \omega \,.$$

**Proposition 6.4.199.** *Let $(X, \omega)$ be a 2-plectic smooth manifold, canonically regarded in* Smooth∞Grpd. *Then for $\hat{\omega} : X \to \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ any prequantum circle 2-bundle with connection (see 6.4.16) for $\omega$, its Poisson Lie 2-algebra, def. 5.2.150, is equivalent to the Lie 2-algebra $L_\infty(X, \omega)$ from def. 6.4.198:*

$$\mathfrak{poisson}(X, \hat{\omega}) \simeq L_\infty(X, \omega) \,.$$

Proof. As in the proof of prop. 6.4.191, we first consider the case that $\omega$ is exact, so that there exists a globally defined 2-form $A \in \Omega^2(X)$ with $d_{\mathrm{dR}} A = \omega$. The general case follows from this by working on the path fibration surjective submersion, in straightforward generalization of the strategy in the proof of prop. 6.4.191.

By def. 5.2.150, an object of the smooth 2-group Poisson$(X, \hat{\omega})$ is a diagram of smooth 2-groupoids



such that map $\phi$ is a diffeomorphism. Given $\phi$, such diagrams correspond to $\alpha \in \Omega^1(X)$ such that

$$(\phi^* A - A) = d_{\mathrm{dR}} \alpha \,. \tag{6.1}$$

Morphisms in the 2-group may go between two such objects $(f) : (\phi, \alpha_1) \to (\phi, \alpha_2)$ with the same $\phi$ and are given by $f \in C^\infty(X, U(1))$ such that

$$\alpha_2 = \alpha_1 + d_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathrm{log} f \,.$$

Under the 2-group product the objects $(\phi, \alpha)$ form a genuine group with multiplication given by

$$(\phi_1, \alpha_1) \cdot (\phi_2, \alpha_2) = (\phi_2 \circ \phi_1, \alpha_1 + \phi_1^* \alpha_2) \,.$$

Similarly the group product on two morphisms $(f_1), (f_2) : (\phi, \alpha_1) \to (\phi, \alpha_2)$ is given by

$$(f_1) \cdot (f_2) = f_1 \cdot \phi^* f_2 \,.$$

Therefore this is a *strict* 2-group, def. 1.2.81, given by the subobject of the crossed module

$$C^\infty(X, U(1)) \xrightarrow{(0, d_{\mathrm{dR}} \log)} \mathrm{Diff}(X) \ltimes \Omega^1(X)$$

on those pairs of vector fields and 1-forms that satisfy (6.1). Here $\mathrm{Diff}(X) \ltimes \Omega^1(X)$ is the semidirect product group induced by the pullback action on the additive group of 1-forms, and its action on $C^\infty(X, U(1))$ is again by the pullback action of the $\mathrm{Diff}(X)$-factor.

Therefore the $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{poisson}(X, \hat{\omega})$ may be identified with the subobject of the corresponding strict Lie 2-algebra given by the differential crossed module, def. 1.2.82,

$$C^\infty(X) \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Gamma(TX) \oplus \Omega^1(X)$$

on those pairs $(v,\alpha) \in \Gamma(TX) \times \Omega^1(X)$ for which

$$\mathcal{L}_v A = d_{\mathrm{dR}}\alpha\,,$$

hence, by Cartan's formula, for which

$$h := \alpha - \iota_v A$$

is a Hamiltonian 1-form for $v$, def. 6.4.198. Here $\Gamma(TX) \oplus \Omega^1(X)$ is the semidirect product Lie algebra with bracket

$$[(v_1,\alpha_1),(v_2,\alpha_2)] = ([v_1,v_2], \mathcal{L}_{v_2}\alpha_1 - \mathcal{L}_{v_1}\alpha_2)$$

and its action on $f \in C^\infty(X)$ is by Lie derivatives of the $\Gamma(TX)$-summand:

$$[(v,\alpha),f] = -\mathcal{L}_v f\,.$$

For emphasis, we write $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{Ham},p} \subset \Gamma(TX) \oplus \Omega^1(X)$ for the vector space of pairs $(v,\alpha)$ with $\alpha - \iota_v A$ Hamiltonian. The map $\phi : (\alpha, v) \mapsto \alpha - \iota_v A$ consistutes a vector space isomorphism

$$\phi : \Omega^1_{\mathrm{Ham},p} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \Omega^1_{\mathrm{Ham}}$$

and for the moment it is useful to keep this around explicitly. So $\mathfrak{poisson}(X,\hat\omega)$ is given by the differential crossed module on the top of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C^\infty(X) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^1_{\mathrm{Ham},p}(X) \\ \downarrow^{=} & & \downarrow \\ C^\infty(X) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Gamma(TX) \oplus \Omega^1(X) \end{array}\,,$$

with brackets induced by this inclusion into the crossed module on the bottom.

It remains to check that with these brackets the chain map

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C^\infty(X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & C^\infty(X) \\ \downarrow^{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & & \downarrow^{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \\ \Omega^1(X)_{\mathrm{Ham},p} & \xrightarrow{\phi} & \Omega^1(X)_{\mathrm{Ham}} \end{array}$$

$$[-,-] \qquad\qquad ([-,-]', J)$$

is a Lie 2-algebra equivalence from the strict brackets $[-,-]$ to the brackets $([-,-]', [-,-,-]')$ of def. 6.4.198. This is a special case of this main result in [FRS13b]. ☐

**Proposition 6.4.200.** *For $\mathbb{G} = \mathbf{B}U(1) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ the smooth circle 2-group consider $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ a connected and simply connected smooth manifold. Then from prop. 5.2.13.4 and example 5.2.13.4 one obtains an equivalence of smooth group stacks*

$$U(1)\mathbf{FlatConn}(X) \simeq \mathbf{B}U(1)\,.$$

*Generally, for $n \geq 1$ and for $\mathbb{G} = \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ the smooth circle $(n+1)$-group, there is for $X$ an $n$-connected smooth manifold an equivalence of smooth $\infty$-groups*

$$(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1))\mathbf{FlatConn}(X) \simeq \mathbf{B}^n U(1)\,.$$

Proof. We use the description of $U(1)\mathbf{FlatConn}(X)$ given by prop. 5.2.13.4 and example 5.2.13.4. First notice then that on a simply connected manifold there is up to equivalence just a single flat connection, hence $U(1)\mathbf{FlatConn}(X)$ is pointed connected. Moreover, an auto-gauge transformation from that single flat connection (any one) to itself is a $U(1)$-valued function which is *constant on X*. But therefore by prop. 5.2.13.4 the $U$-plots of the first homotopy sheaf of $U(1)\mathbf{FlatConn}(X)$ are smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of constant $U(1)$-valued functions on $X$, hence are smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of elements in $U(1)$, hence are smooth $U(1)$-valued functions on $U$. These are, by definition, equivalently the $U$-plots of automorphisms of the point in $\mathbf{B}U(1)$.

The other cases work analogously. □

**Remark 6.4.201.** Therefore in the situation of prop. 6.4.200 the quantomorphism $\infty$-group is a smooth 2-group extension by the circle 2-group $\mathbf{B}U(1)$. The archetypical example of $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-extensions is the smooth *String 2-group*, def. 7.1.10. Indeed, this occurs as the Heisenberg 2-group extension of the WZW sigma-model regarded as a local 2-dimensional quantum field theory. This we turn to in 7.5.1 below.

**6.4.21.8 Truncation of higher Poisson brackets and Dickey bracket on conserved currents** We discuss truncation of the Poisson bracket $L_\infty$-algebras, def. 1.3.159, 6.4.179, to Lie 1-algebras and the relation of the result to the traditional Dickey bracket.

This section appeared in [SaSc15]. Its formulation owes a lot to Domenico Fiorenza.

For the simple special case of chain complexes of vector spaces in non-negative degree (in the homological degree conventions), 0-truncation is the functor

$$\tau_{\leq 0} : \mathrm{Ch}_\bullet \longrightarrow \mathrm{Vect}$$

which sends a chain complex $(\cdots V_2 \stackrel{\partial_1}{\to} V_1 \stackrel{\partial_0}{\to} V_0)$ to its degree-0 homology group

$$\tau_{\leq 0} V_\bullet = V_0/\mathrm{im}(\partial_0) = H_0(V_\bullet)\,.$$

**Lemma 6.4.202.** *The 0-truncation functor $\tau \leq 0$ on chain complexes induces a functor*

$$\tau_{\leq 0} \colon L_\infty\text{-alg}_{\geq 0} \to \mathrm{Lie}$$

*where $L_\infty$-alg$_{\geq 0}$ denotes the category of $L_\infty$-algebras concentrated in nonnegative degrees, with $L_\infty$-morphisms as morphisms, and* Lie *denotes the category of Lie algebras with Lie algebra morphisms. More explicitly, $\tau_{\leq 0}$ maps an $L_\infty$-algebra $(\mathfrak{g}, \mathbf{d}, \{-,-\}, \{-,-,-\}, \cdots)$ concentrated in nonpositive degrees to the Lie algebra $(H_0(\mathfrak{g}), \{-,-\})$ and an $L_\infty$-morphism $f \colon \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{h}$ to the Lie algebra morphism $H_0(f_1) \colon H_0(\mathfrak{g}) \to H_0(\mathfrak{h})$, where $f_1$ is the linear component of $f$. Moreover, the natural morphism of chain complexes $\mathfrak{g} \to \tau_{\leq 0}\mathfrak{g}$ is a natural linear and surjective $L_\infty$-morphism*

$$(\mathfrak{g}, \mathbf{d}, \{-,-\}, \{-,-,-\}, \cdots) \to (H_0(\mathfrak{g}), \{-,-\})\,. \tag{6.2}$$

Proof. Since the chain complex $\mathfrak{g}$ is concentrated in nonnegative degrees, the chain complex $\tau_{\leq 0}\mathfrak{g}$ consists of the vector space $H_0(\mathfrak{g})$ concentrated in degree zero. All the statements in the lemma then follow straightforwardly from this. □

**Remark 6.4.203.** Naturality of the linear $L_\infty$-morphism (6.2) means that for any $L_\infty$-morphism $f \colon \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{h}$ between $L_\infty$-algebras concentrated in nonnegative degree we have a commutative diagram of $L_\infty$-morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{g} & \xrightarrow{f} & \mathfrak{h} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ H_0(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{H_0(f_1)} & H_0(\mathfrak{h}) \end{array}\,.$$

**Definition 6.4.204.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be a pre-$(p+1)$-plectic manifold. Write

$$\mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega) := \tau_{\leq 0}\mathfrak{Pois}_\infty(X, \omega)$$

for the 0-truncation of $\mathfrak{Pois}_\infty(X, \omega) \simeq \mathfrak{Pois}_{\mathrm{dg}}(X, \omega)$.

Notice that using def. 1.3.159 this is the quotient $\mathfrak{Pois}_\infty(X, \omega) \to H_0\mathfrak{Pois}_\infty(X, \omega)$ by exact current $p$-forms. We now characterize this 0-truncation.

**Proposition 6.4.205.** *Let $(X, \omega)$ be a pre-$(p+1)$-plectic manifold. Then the Lie 1-algebra of currents, Def. 6.4.204, is a central extension of the Hamiltonian vector fields by the abelian Lie algebra $H^p_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ of de Rham p-forms. In other words, writing $\mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega)$ for $H_0\mathfrak{Pois}_\infty(X, \omega)$, there is a short exact sequence of Lie algebras*

$$0 \to H^p_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) \longrightarrow \mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X, \omega) \to 0\,,$$

*and $H^p_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ is central in $\mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega)$.*

Proof. From the short exact sequence of chain complexes given by Prop. **??**

$$0 \to \mathbf{H}(X, \flat\mathbf{B}^p\mathbb{R}) \to \mathfrak{Pois}_\infty(X, \omega) \to \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X, \omega) \to 0\ ,$$

we get the long exact sequence in homology

$$0 \to H^p_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) \to \mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega) \to \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X, \omega) \to 0$$

and, by Lemma 6.4.202, this is a short exact sequence of Lie algebras. The fact that $H^p_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ is central in $\mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega)$ is immediate from Equation (**??**). □

**Remark 6.4.206.** For the special case when $X$ is the jet bundle of a field bundle, when the de Rham differentials appearing everywhere are constrained to be the corresponding horizontal differentials, and under the assumption that the cohomology of this horizontal de Rham complex is concentrated in degree 0, then another $L_\infty$-stucture on the truncated de Rham complex appearing in Def. 1.3.159 has been constructed in [BFLS98]. Inspection of the construction around Theorem 7 there shows that this $L_\infty$-algebra is $L_\infty$-equivalent to its 0-truncation $\mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega)$ which under these assumptions is the Dickey algebra [D91]. Hence for all purposes of homotopy theory the algebra in [BFLS98] *is* this 0-truncation.

In order to further compare Corollary 6.4.205 to existing literature, we consider now a choice of Hamiltonian current forms for each symmetry generator:

**Proposition 6.4.207.** *Under a choice of linear splitting $J\colon v \mapsto (v, J_v)$ of the natural projection $\Omega^p_\omega(X) \to \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X, \omega)$ from def. 6.4.174, the Lie bracket on de Rham cohomology classes of currents in $\mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega)$, corollary 6.4.205, is isomorphic to*

$$\{v + [\alpha], w + [\beta]\} = [v, w] + [\mathcal{L}_v\Delta_w - \mathcal{L}_w\Delta_v - \Delta_{[v,w]}]\ .$$

Proof. The splitting induces a linear isomorphism

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X, \omega) \oplus H^p_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) &\xrightarrow{\sim} \mathfrak{Pois}(X, \omega) \\ v + [\alpha] &\mapsto (v, J_v - \alpha) \end{aligned}$$

and the Lie bracket on $\mathrm{Vect}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X, \omega) \oplus H^p_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ reads

$$\{v + [\alpha], w + [\beta]\} = [v, w] + [J_{[v,w]} - \iota_{v\wedge w}\omega]\ .$$

Since $\iota_v\omega = -\mathbf{d}J_v$, one has

$$\iota_{v\wedge w}\omega = -\iota_w\mathbf{d}J_v = -\mathcal{L}_wJ_v + \mathbf{d}\iota_wJ_v$$

and

$$\iota_{v\wedge w}\omega = -\iota_{w\wedge v}\omega = \iota_v \mathbf{d} J_w = \mathcal{L}_v J_w - \mathbf{d}\iota_v J_w \;.$$

Hence, combining, we can write

$$\iota_{v\wedge w}\omega = \frac{1}{2}(\mathcal{L}_v J_w - \mathcal{L}_w J_v) - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{d}(\iota_v J_w - \iota_w J_v)$$

and so

$$\{v + [\alpha], w + [\beta]\} = [v,w] + [J_{[v,w]} - \frac{1}{2}(\mathcal{L}_v J_w - \mathcal{L}_w J_v)] \;.$$

If, moreover, a global potential $\theta$ for the pre-$n$-plectic form $\omega$ is given, i.e., if one has a $p$-form $\theta$ with $\mathbf{d}\theta = \omega$ then, writing $J_v = i_v\theta - \Delta_v$, one finds

$$J_{[v,w]} - \frac{1}{2}(\mathcal{L}_v J_w - \mathcal{L}_w J_v) = \mathcal{L}_v \Delta_w - \mathcal{L}_w \Delta_v - \Delta_{[v,w]} + \mathbf{d}\text{-exact terms} \;.$$

Therefore, finally, we get the desired expression

$$\{v + [\alpha], w + [\beta]\} = [v,w] + [\mathcal{L}_v \Delta_w - \mathcal{L}_w \Delta_v - \Delta_{[v,w]}] \;.$$

□

**Remark 6.4.208.** We may interpret results appearing in [AGIT89, p. 8] as a shadow of Prop. 6.4.207 for the special case of super $p$-brane sigma-models (in which case the elements in $H^{d-1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ are interpreted as the brane charges). See section 1.4.4.3.

## 6.5 Formal smooth homotopy types

We discuss $\infty$-groupoids equipped with *formal smooth cohesion*, a refinement of smooth cohesion, 6.4, in which *infinitesimal* smooth spaces exist explicitly.

After discussing the construction in

- 6.5.1 – Construction

we discuss the general abstract structures in cohesive $\infty$-toposes, 5.2 and in differentially cohesive $\infty$-toposes, 5.3, realized in FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd.

- 6.5.2 – Infinitesimal neighbourhoods and Lie algebras;
- 6.5.3 – Cohomology;
- 6.5.4 – Infinitesimal path groupoid and de Rham sapces;

- 6.5.5 – Local diffeomorphism;
- 6.5.6 – Manifolds and étale groupoids;
- 6.5.7 – Infinitesimal extensions and Modules;
- 6.5.8 – Cartan geometry;
- 6.5.9 – Definite forms.

- 6.5.10 – Partial differential equations;
- 6.5.11 – Prequantum local Lagrangian field theory.

### 6.5.1 Construction

Notice that the category SmoothCartSp, def. 6.4.4, is (the syntactic category of) a finitary algebraic theory: a *Lawvere theory* (see chapter 3, volume 2 of [Borc94]).

**Definition 6.5.1.** Write

$$\mathrm{SmoothAlg} := \mathrm{Alg}(\mathrm{SmoothCartSp})$$

for the category of algebras over the algebraic theory SmoothCartSp: the category of product-preserving functors SmoothCartSp $\to$ Set.

These algebras are traditionally known as $C^\infty$*-rings* or $C^\infty$*-algebras* [KaKrMi87].

**Proposition 6.5.2.** *The map that sends a smooth manifold $X$ to the product-preserving functor*

$$C^\infty(X) : \mathbb{R}^k \mapsto \mathrm{SmoothMfd}(X, \mathbb{R}^k)$$

*extends to a full and faithful embedding*

$$\mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\mathrm{op}} .$$

**Proposition 6.5.3.** *Let $A$ be an ordinary (associative) $\mathbb{R}$-algebra that as an $\mathbb{R}$-vector space splits as $\mathbb{R} \oplus V$ with $V$ finite dimensional as an $\mathbb{R}$-vector space and nilpotent with respect to the algebra structure. There is a unique lift of $A$ through the forgetful functor* $\mathrm{SmoothAlg} \to \mathrm{Alg}_{\mathbb{R}}$.

Proof. Use Hadamard's lemma. □

**Remark 6.5.4.** In the context of synthetic differential geometry the algebras of prop. 6.5.3 are usually called *Weil algebras*. In other contexts however the underlying rings are known as *local Artin rings*, see for instance [L-Lie].

**Definition 6.5.5.** Write

$$\mathrm{InfSmoothLoc} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

for the full subcategory of the opposite of smooth algebras on those of the form of prop. 6.5.3. We call this the category of *infinitesimal smooth loci* or of *infinitesimally thickened points*.

Write

$$\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp} := \mathrm{SmoothCartSp} \ltimes \mathrm{InfSmoothLoc} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

for the full subcategory of the opposite of smooth algebras on those that are products

$$X \simeq U \times D$$

in $\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}$ of an object $U$ in the image of $\mathrm{SmoothCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}$ and an object $D$ in the image of $\mathrm{InfSmoothLoc} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}$.

Define a coverage on FormalSmoothCartSp whose covering families are precisely those of the form $\{U_i \times D \stackrel{(f_i,\mathrm{id})}{\to} U \times D\}$ for $\{U_i \stackrel{f_i}{\to} U\}$ a covering family in SmoothCartSp.

**Remark 6.5.6.** This definition appears in [Kock86], following [Dub79b]. The sheaf topos

$$\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

over this site is equivalent to the *Cahiers topos* [Dub79b] which is a model of some set of axioms of *synthetic differential geometry* (see [Law97] for the abstract idea, where also the relation to the axiomatics of cohesion is vaguely indicated). Therefore the following definition may be thought of as describing the $\infty$-*Cahiers topos* providing a higher geometry version of this model of synthetic differential smooth geometry.

**Definition 6.5.7.** The $\infty$-topos of *formal smooth $\infty$-groupoids* is

$$\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_{(\infty,1)}(\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp})\,.$$

**Proposition 6.5.8.** FormalSmooth∞Grpd *is a cohesive $\infty$-topos.*

Proof. Using that the covering families of FormalSmoothCartSp do by definition not depend on the infinitesimal smooth loci $D$ and that these each have a single point, one finds that FormalSmoothCartSp is an $\infty$-cohesive site, def. 4.1.31, by reducing to the argument as for $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{top}}$, prop. 6.3.2. The claim then follows with prop. 4.1.32. □

**Definition 6.5.9.** Write FormalSmoothMfd for the category of *formal smooth manifolds* – manifolds modeled on FormalSmoothCartSp, equipped with the induced site structure.

**Proposition 6.5.10.** *We have an equivalence of $\infty$-categories*

$$\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \hat{\mathrm{Sh}}_{(\infty,1)}(\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd})$$

*with the hypercomplete $\infty$-topos over formal smooth manifolds.*

Proof. By definition FormalSmoothCartSp is a dense sub-site of FormalSmoothMfd. The statement then follows as in prop. 6.3.7. □

Write $i : \mathrm{SmoothCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}$ for the canonical embedding.

**Proposition 6.5.11.** *The functor* $i^*$ *given by restriction along* $i$ *exhibits* FormalSmooth∞Grpd *as differential structure, def. 4.2.1, of* Smooth∞Grpd*, in that we have a quadruple of adjoint* ∞*-functors*

$$(i_! \dashv i^* \dashv i_* \dashv i^!) : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,,$$

*such that* $i_!$ *is full and faithful and preserves the terminal object.*

Proof. We observe that SmoothCartSp ↪ FormalSmoothCartSp is an infinitesimal neighbourhood of sites, according to def. 4.2.8. The claim then follows with prop. 4.2.9. □

More generally, we may consider a sequence of orders of infinitesimals.

**Definition 6.5.12.** For $k \in \mathbb{N}$, write

$$\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}_{(k)} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}$$

for the full subcategory of formal smooth Cartesian spaces, def. 6.5.5, on those objects for which the nilpotent ideal $V$ in their function algebra is nilpotent of order $k$, i.e. $V^{k+1} = 0$. Regard this as a site with the induced sub-coverage.

Write

$$\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{(k)} := \mathrm{Sh}_{(\infty,1)}(\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}_{(\mathrm{k})})\,.$$

By iterating prop. 6.5.11 we have

**Proposition 6.5.13.** *The sequence of inclusions*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & & & & & & & & \\ \shortparallel & & & & & & & & \\ \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{(0)} & \begin{array}{c}\hookrightarrow\\ \leftarrow\\ \hookrightarrow\\ \leftarrow\end{array} & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{(1)} & \begin{array}{c}\hookrightarrow\\ \leftarrow\\ \hookrightarrow\\ \leftarrow\end{array} & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{(2)} & \begin{array}{c}\hookrightarrow\\ \leftarrow\\ \hookrightarrow\\ \leftarrow\end{array} & \cdots & \begin{array}{c}\hookrightarrow\\ \leftarrow\\ \hookrightarrow\\ \leftarrow\end{array} & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_{(\infty)} \\ & & & & & & & & \shortparallel \\ & & & & & & & & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \end{array}$$

*is a sequence of orders of differential structures as in def. 4.2.7.*

### 6.5.2 Infinitesimal neighbourhoods and Lie algebras

We discuss explicit presentations for first order formal cohesive ∞-groupoids, 5.3.6, realized in FormalSmooth∞Grpd. We call these $L_\infty$*-algebroids*, subsuming the traditional notion of $L_\infty$*-algebras* [LaMa95].

In the standard presentation of FormalSmooth∞Grpd by simplicial presheaves over formal smooth manifolds these $L_\infty$-algebroids are presheaves in the image of the *monoidal Dold-Kan correspondence* [CaCo04] of semi-free differential graded algebras. This construction amounts to identifying the traditional description of Lie algebras, Lie algebroids and $L_\infty$-algebras by their Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras, def. 1.2.150, as a convenient characterization of the corresponding cosimplicial algebras whose formal dual simplicial presheaves are manifest presentations of infinitesimal smooth ∞-groupoids.

- 6.5.2.1 – Infinitesimal neighbourhoods and relative cohesion
- 6.5.2.2 – Lie Algebroids and smooth commutative dg-algebras;
- 6.5.2.3 – Infinitesimal smooth homotopy types;
- 6.5.2.4 – Lie 1-algebroids as infinitesimal simplicial presheaves
- 6.5.2.5 – Lie differentiation

#### 6.5.2.1 Infinitesimal neighbourhoods and Relative cohesion

**Definition 6.5.14.** Write

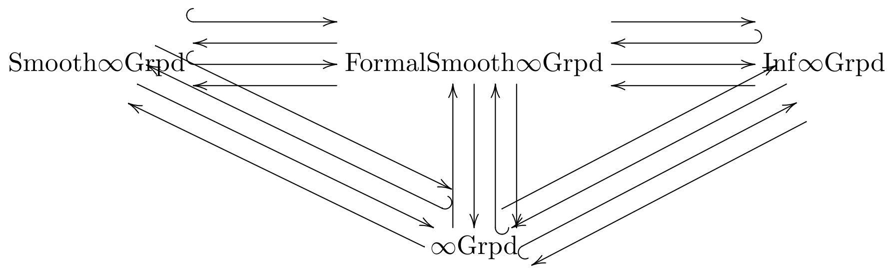
$$\mathrm{Inf}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\mathrm{InfSmoothLoc})$$

for the $\infty$-category of $\infty$-presheaves on the site of infinitesimal smooth loci of def. 6.5.5 (formal duals of Weil algebras/local Artin algebras).

**Proposition 6.5.15.** *We have an $\infty$-pushout diagram of $\infty$-toposes of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \xrightarrow{i_*} & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \\ \downarrow^{\Gamma} & & \downarrow \\ \infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Inf}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \end{array} .$$

*This exhibits* FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd *as being cohesive relative to* Inf$\infty$Grpd*, def. 5.3.62,*




Proof. By [L-Topos, prop. 6.3.2.3] $\infty$-pushouts of $\infty$-toposes are computed as $\infty$-limits of the underlying $\infty$-categories with respect to the corresponding inverse image functors. Hence we have to show that there is an $\infty$-pullback diagram of $\infty$-categories of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \xleftarrow{i^*} & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \\ \uparrow^{\mathrm{Disc}} & & \uparrow \\ \infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{Inf}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \end{array} .$$

Since inverse images preserve $\infty$-colimits in the $\infty$-topos, we may compute this kernel on generators, hence on objects in the site, under the $\infty$-Yoneda embedding. By prop. 4.1.32 and prop. 4.2.9 this reduces to the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{SmoothCartSp} & \xleftarrow{p} & \mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp} \\ \uparrow^{*} & & \uparrow \\ * & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{InfSmoothLoc} \end{array} .$$

This is an evident pullback of categories, exhibiting the infinitesimal smooth loci as the objects in the kernel of the map that forgets infinitesimal thickening. □

**Proposition 6.5.16.** *The relative cohesion* FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd $\to$ Inf$\infty$Grpd *of prop. 6.5.15 realizes the full inclusion of properly infinitesimal object, def. 5.3.47, according to the general abstract situation of prop 5.3.62.*

Proof. Since $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}}$ in def. 5.3.58 preserves $\infty$-colimits, it is sufficient to check that it agrees with the relative flat modality

$$\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathrm{Inf}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

on representables, hence on formal manifolds $X$, for which in turn it is sufficient to check that for all formal Cartesian spaces $U \times D$ we naturally have

$$\mathbf{H}(U \times D, \flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X) \simeq \mathbf{H}(D, X).$$

Since the hom-functor $\mathbf{H}(U \times D, -)$ preserves the homotopy pullback defining $\flat^{\mathrm{rel}} X$, it is sufficient to observe that the right hand here is the limit over

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{H}(U \times D, X) \\ & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(U \times D, \flat X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(U \times D, \Im X) \end{array}$$

which by adjunction is indeed equivalently the limit over

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{H}(U \times D, X) \\ & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(*, X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(U, X) \end{array} .$$

□

#### 6.5.2.2 Lie algebroids and smooth commutative dg-algebras

Recall the characterization of $L_\infty$-algebra structures in terms of dg-algebras from prop. 1.2.152.

**Definition 6.5.17.** Let

$$\mathrm{CE} : L_\infty\mathrm{Algd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{cdgAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

be the full subcategory on the opposite category of cochain dg-algebras over $\mathbb{R}$ on those dg-algebras that are

- graded-commutative;
- concentrated in non-negative degree (the differential being of degree +1 );
- in degree 0 of the form $C^\infty(X)$ for $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$ ;
- semifree: their underlying graded algebra is isomorphic to an exterior algebra on an $\mathbb{N}$-graded locally free projective $C^\infty(X)$-module;
- of finite type;

We call this the category of $L_\infty$-*algebroids* over smooth manifolds.

More in detail, an object $\mathfrak{a} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$ may be identified (non-canonically) with a pair $(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}), X)$, where

- $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$ is a smooth manifold – called the *base space* of the $L_\infty$-algebroid ;
- $\mathfrak{a}$ is the module of smooth sections of an $\mathbb{N}$-graded vector bundle of degreewise finite rank;

- $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) = (\wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X)} \mathfrak{a}^*, d_{\mathfrak{a}})$ is a semifree dg-algebra on $\mathfrak{a}^*$ – a Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra – where

$$\wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X)} \mathfrak{a}^* = C^\infty(X) \,\oplus\, \mathfrak{a}_0^* \,\oplus\, \left( (\mathfrak{a}_0^* \wedge_{C^\infty(X)} \mathfrak{a}_0^*) \oplus \mathfrak{a}_1^* \right) \,\oplus\, \cdots$$

with the $k$th summand on the right being in degree $k$.

**Definition 6.5.18.** An $L_\infty$-algebroid with base space $X = *$ the point is an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, def. 1.2.150, or rather is the pointed delooping of an $L_\infty$-algebra. We write $b\mathfrak{g}$ for $L_\infty$-algebroids over the point. They form the full subcategory

$$L_\infty \mathrm{Alg} \hookrightarrow L_\infty \mathrm{Algd}\,.$$

The following fact is standard and straightforward to check.

**Proposition 6.5.19.** *1. The full subcategory* $L_\infty\mathrm{Alg} \hookrightarrow L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$ *from def. 6.5.17 is equivalent to the traditional definition of the category of $L_\infty$-algebras and "weak morphisms" / "sh-maps" between them.*

2. *The full subcategory* $\mathrm{LieAlgd} \hookrightarrow L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$ *on the 1-truncated objects is equivalent to the traditional category of Lie algebroids (over smooth manifolds).*

3. *In particular the joint intersection* $\mathrm{LieAlg} \hookrightarrow L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$ *on the 1-truncated $L_\infty$-algebras is equivalent to the category of ordinary Lie algebras.*

We now construct an embedding of $L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$ into $\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. Below in 6.5.2.3 we show that this embedding exhibitsthe above algebraic data as a presentation of formal smooth $\infty$-groupoids which are infinitesimal objects in the abstract intrinsic sense of 6.5.2.3.

**Remark 6.5.20.** The functor

$$\Xi : \mathrm{Ch}^\bullet_+(\mathbb{R}) \to \mathrm{Vect}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\Delta}$$

of the Dold-Kan correspondence, prop. 3.1.35, from non-negatively graded cochain complexes of vector spaces to cosimplicial vector spaces is a lax monoidal functor and hence induces a functor (which we will denote by the same symbol)

$$\Xi : \mathrm{dgAlg}^+_{\mathbb{R}} \to \mathrm{Alg}^{\Delta}_{\mathbb{R}}$$

from non-negatively graded commutative cochain dg-algebras to cosimplicial commutative algebras (over $\mathbb{R}$).

**Definition 6.5.21.** Write

$$\Xi\mathrm{CE} : L_\infty\mathrm{Algd} \to (\mathrm{CAlg}^{\Delta}_{\mathbb{R}})^{\mathrm{op}}$$

for the restriction of the functor $\Xi$ from remark 6.5.20 along the defining inclusion $\mathrm{CE} : L_\infty\mathrm{Algd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{dgAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}_{\mathbb{R}}$.

There are several different ways to present $\Xi\mathrm{CE}$ explicitly in components. Below we make use of the following fact, pointed out in [CaCo04] (see the discussion around equations (26) and (49) there).

**Proposition 6.5.22.** *The functor* $\Xi\mathrm{CE}$ *from def. 6.5.21 is given as follows.*

*For* $\mathfrak{a} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$*, the underlying cosimplicial vector space of* $\Xi\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})$ *is*

$$\Xi\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) : [n] \mapsto \bigoplus_{i=0}^{n} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})_i \otimes \wedge^i \mathbb{R}^n\,.$$

*The product of the* $\mathbb{R}$*-algebra structure on this space in degree n is given on homogeneous elements* $(\omega, x), (\lambda, y) \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})_i \otimes \wedge^i \mathbb{R}^n$ *in the tensor product by*

$$(\omega, x) \cdot (\lambda, y) = (\omega \wedge \lambda, x \wedge y)\,.$$

*(Notice that* $\Xi\mathfrak{a}$ *is indeed a* commutative *cosimplicial algebra, since* $\omega$ *and* $x$ *in* $(\omega, x)$ *are by definition in the same degree.)*

*To define the cosimplicial structure, let $\{v_j\}_{j=1}^n$ be the canonical basis of $\mathbb{R}^n$ and consider and set $v_0 := 0$ to obtain a set of vectors $\{v_j\}_{j=0}^n$. Then for $\alpha : [k] \to [l]$ a morphism in the simplex category, set*

$$\alpha : v_j \mapsto v_{\alpha(j)} - v_{\alpha(0)}$$

*and extend this skew-multilinearly to a map $\alpha : \wedge^\bullet \mathbb{R}^k \to \wedge^\bullet \mathbb{R}^l$. In terms of all this the action of $\alpha$ on homogeneous elements $(\omega, x)$ in the cosimplicial algebra is defined by*

$$\alpha : (\omega, x) \mapsto (\omega, \alpha x) + (d_{\mathfrak{a}}\omega, v_{\alpha(0)} \wedge \alpha(x))$$

**Remark 6.5.23.** The commutative algebras appearing here may be understood geometrically as being algebras of functions on spaces of infinitesimal based simplices. This we discuss in more detail in 6.5.2.4 below, see prop. 6.5.33 there.

We now refine the image of $\Xi$ to cosimplicial *smooth* algebras, def. 6.5.1. Notice that there is a canonical forgetful functor

$$U : \mathrm{SmoothAlg} \to \mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}$$

from the category of smooth algebras to the category of commutative associative algebras over the real numbers.

**Proposition 6.5.24.** *There is a unique factorization of the functor $\Xi\mathrm{CE} : L_\infty\mathrm{Algd} \to (\mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}}$ from def. 6.5.21 through the forgetful functor $(\mathrm{SmoothAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}} \to (\mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}}$ such that for any $\mathfrak{a}$ over base space $X$ the degree-0 algebra of smooth functions $C^\infty(X)$ lifts to its canonical structure as a smooth algebra*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}} \\ & \overset{\Xi\mathrm{CE}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow^{U} \\ L_\infty\mathrm{Algd} & \longrightarrow & (\mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}} \end{array} .$$

Proof. Observe that for each $n$ the algebra $(\Xi\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}))_n$ is a finite nilpotent extension of $C^\infty(X)$. The claim then follows with the fact that $C^\infty : \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \to \mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$ is faithful and using Hadamard's lemma for the nilpotent part. □

**Proposition 6.5.25.** *The functor $\Xi\mathrm{CE}$ preserves limits of $L_\infty$-algebras. It preserves pullbacks of $L_\infty$-algebroids if the two morphisms in degree 0 are transveral maps of smooth manifolds.*

Proof. The functor $\Xi : \mathrm{cdgAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{+} \to \mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\Delta}$ evidently preserves colimits. This gives the first statement. The second follows by observing that the functor from smooth manifolds to the opposite of smooth algebras preserves transversal pullbacks. □

#### 6.5.2.3 Infinitesimal smooth groupoids

We discuss how the $L_\infty$-algebroids from def. 6.5.17 serve to present the intrinsically defined infinitesimal smooth $\infty$-groupoids from 5.3.6.

**Definition 6.5.26.** Write $i : L_\infty\mathrm{Algd} \to \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ for the composite $\infty$-functor

$$L_\infty\mathrm{Algd} \xrightarrow{\Xi\mathrm{CE}} (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}} \xrightarrow{j} [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \xrightarrow{PQ} ([\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{loc}})^{\circ} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} ,$$

where the first morphism is the monoidal Dold-Kan correspondence as in prop. 6.5.24, the second is degreewise the external Yoneda embedding

$$\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\mathrm{op}} \to [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}, \mathrm{Set}]\,,$$

and $PQ$ is any fibrant-cofibrant resolution functor in the local model structure on simplicial presheaves.

We discuss now that $L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$ is indeed a presentation for objects in FormalSmooth∞Grpd satisfying the abstract axioms from 5.3.6.

**Lemma 6.5.27.** *For $\mathfrak{a} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$ and $i(\mathfrak{a}) \in [\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ its image in the presentation for* FormalSmooth∞Grpd*, we have that*

$$\left(\int^{[k]\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[k]\cdot i(\mathfrak{a})_k\right) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} i(\mathfrak{a})$$

*is a cofibrant resolution, where $\mathbf{\Delta} : \Delta \to sSet$ is the* fat simplex*.*

Proof. The coend over the tensoring

$$\int^{[k]\in\Delta} (-)\cdot(-) : [\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \times [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}]_{\mathrm{inj}} \to [\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$$

for the projective and injective global model structure on functors on the simplex category and its opposite is a left Quillen bifunctor, prop. 5.1.13. We have moreover

1. The fat simplex is cofibrant in $[\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, prop. 5.1.15.
2. The object $i(\mathfrak{a})_\bullet \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}]_{\mathrm{inj}}$ is cofibrant, because every representable $\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ is cofibrant.

□

**Proposition 6.5.28.** *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be an $L_\infty$-algebra, regarded as an $L_\infty$-algebroid $b\mathfrak{g} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$ over the point by the embedding of def. 6.5.17. Then $i(b\mathfrak{g}) \in$ FormalSmooth∞Grpd is an infinitesimal object, def. 4.1.21, in that it is geometrically contractible*

$$\Pi b\mathfrak{g} \simeq *$$

*and has as underlying discrete ∞-groupoid the point*

$$\Gamma b\mathfrak{g} \simeq *\,.$$

Proof. We present now FormalSmooth∞Grpd by $[\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$. Since FormalSmoothCartSp is an ∞-cohesive site by prop. 6.5.8, we have by the proof of prop. 4.1.32 that $\Pi$ is presented by the left derived functor $\mathbb{L}\lim_\to$ of the degreewise colimit and $\Gamma$ is presented by the left derived functor of evaluation on the point.

With lemma 6.5.27 we can evaluate

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbb{L}\lim_\to) i(b\mathfrak{g}) &\simeq \lim_\to \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[k]\cdot(b\mathfrak{g})_k \\
&\simeq \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[k]\cdot \lim_\to (b\mathfrak{g})_k\,, \\
&= \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[k]\cdot *
\end{aligned}$$

because each $(b\mathfrak{g})_n \in \mathrm{InfPoint} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothCartSp}$ is an infinitesimally thickened point, hence representable and hence sent to the point by the colimit functor.

That this is equivalent to the point follows from the fact that $\emptyset \to \mathbf{\Delta}$ is an acylic cofibration in $[\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, and that

$$\int^{[k]\in\Delta} (-)\times(-) : [\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \times [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Qillen}}]_{\mathrm{inj}} \to \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$$

is a Quillen bifunctor, using that $* \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{inj}}$ is cofibrant.

Similarly, we have degreewise that

$$\mathrm{Hom}(*, (b\mathfrak{g})_n) = *$$

by the fact that an infinitesimally thickened point has a single global point. Therefore the claim for $\Gamma$ follows analogously. □

**Proposition 6.5.29.** *Let* $\mathfrak{a} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Algd} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ *be an* $L_\infty$*-algebroid, def. 6.5.17, over a smooth manifold* $X$*, regarded as a simplicial presheaf and hence as a presentation for an object in* FormalSmooth∞Grpd *according to def. 6.5.26.*

*We have an equivalence*

$$\Im(\mathfrak{a}) \simeq \Im(X)\,.$$

Proof. Let first $X = U \in \mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}$ be a representable. Then according to prop. 6.5.27 we have that

$$\hat{\mathfrak{a}} := \left(\int^{k\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[k]\cdot \mathfrak{a}_k\right) \simeq \mathfrak{a}$$

is cofibrant in $[\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{op}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Therefore, by prop. 4.2.9, we compute the derived functor

$$\begin{aligned}\Im(\mathfrak{a}) &\simeq i_* i^* \mathfrak{a}\\ &\simeq \mathbb{L}((-)\circ p)\mathbb{L}((-)\circ i)\mathfrak{a}\\ &\simeq ((-)\circ ip)\hat{\mathfrak{a}}\end{aligned}$$

with the notation as used there. In view of def. 6.5.21 we have for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$ that $\mathfrak{a}_k = X \times D$ where $D$ is an infinitesimally thickened point. Therefore $((-)\circ ip)\mathfrak{a}_k = ((-)\circ ip)X$ for all $k$ and hence $((-)\circ ip)\hat{\mathfrak{a}} \simeq \Im(X)$.

For general $X$ choose first a cofibrant resolution by a split hypercover that is degreewise a coproduct of representables (which always exists, by the cofibrant replacement theorem of [Dug01]), then pull back the above discussion to these covers. □

#### 6.5.2.4 Lie 1-algebroids as infinitesimal simplicial presheaves

We characterize Lie 1-algebroids $(E \to X, \rho, [-,-])$ as precisely those formal smooth $\infty$-groupoids that under the presentation of def. 6.5.26 are locally, on any chart $U \to X$ of their base space, given by simplicial smooth loci of the form

$$\cdots\cdots\; U \times \tilde{D}(k,2) \rightrightarrows U \times \tilde{D}(k,1) \rightrightarrows U$$

where $k = \mathrm{rank}(E)$ is the dimension of the fibers of the Lie algebroid and where $\tilde{D}(k,n)$ is the smooth locus of *infinitesimal* $k$*-simplices* based at the origin in $\mathbb{R}^n$. (These smooth loci have been highlighted in section 1.2 of [Kock10]).

The following definition may be either taken as an informal but instructive definition – in which case the next definition 6.5.31 is to be taken as the precise one – or in fact it may be already itself be taken as the fully formal and precise definition if one reads it in the internal logic of any smooth topos with line object $R$ – which for the present purpose is the *Cahiers topos* [Dub79b] Sh(FormalSmoothCartSp) with line object $R$, remark 6.5.6.

**Definition 6.5.30.** For $k, n \in \mathbb{N}$, an *infinitesimal $k$-simplex* in $R^n$ based at the origin is a collection $(\vec{\epsilon}_a \in R^n)_{a=1}^k$ of points in $R^n$, such that each is an infinitesimal neighbour of the origin

$$\forall a : \;\; \vec{\epsilon}_a \sim 0$$

and such that all are infinitesimal neighbours of each other

$$\forall a, a' : \;\; (\vec{\epsilon}_a - \vec{\epsilon}_{a'}) \sim 0 \,.$$

Write $\tilde{D}(k,n) \subset R^{k \cdot n}$ for the space of all such infinitesimal $k$-simplices in $R^n$.

Equivalently:

**Definition 6.5.31.** For $k, n \in \mathbb{N}$, the smooth algebra

$$C^\infty(\tilde{D}(k,n)) \in \mathrm{SmoothAlg}$$

is the unique lift through the forgetful functor $U : \mathrm{SmoothAlg} \to \mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}$ of the commutative $\mathbb{R}$-algebra generated from $k \times n$ many generators

$$(\epsilon_a^j)_{1 \leq j \leq n, 1 \leq a \leq k}$$

subject to the relations

$$\forall a, j, j' : \;\; \epsilon_a^j \epsilon_a^{j'} = 0$$

and

$$\forall a, a', j, j' : \;\; (\epsilon_a^j - \epsilon_{a'}^j)(\epsilon_a^{j'} - \epsilon_{a'}^{j'}) = 0 \,.$$

**Remark 6.5.32.** In the above form these relations are the manifest analogs of the conditions $\vec{\epsilon}_a \sim 0$ and $(\vec{\epsilon}_a - \vec{\epsilon}_{a'}) \sim 0$. But by multiplying out the latter set of relations and using the former, we find that jointly they are equivalent to the single set of relations

$$\forall a, a', j, j' : \;\; \epsilon_a^j \epsilon_{a'}^{j'} + \epsilon_{a'}^j \epsilon_a^{j'} = 0 \,,$$

which of course is equivalent to

$$\forall a, a', j, j' : \;\; \epsilon_a^j \epsilon_{a'}^{j'} + \epsilon_a^{j'} \epsilon_{a'}^j = 0 \,.$$

In this expression the roles of the two sets of indices is manifestly symmetric. Hence another equivalent way to state the relations is to say that

$$\forall a, a', j : \;\; \epsilon_a^j \epsilon_{a'}^j = 0$$

and

$$\forall a, a', j, j' : \;\; (\epsilon_a^j - \epsilon_a^{j'})(\epsilon_{a'}^j - \epsilon_{a'}^{j'}) = 0$$

This appears around (1.2.1) in [Kock10].

The following proposition identifies these algebras of functions on spaces of infinitesimal based simplices with the algebras that appear in the component expression of the monoidal Dold-Kan correspondence, as displayed in prop. 6.5.22.

**Proposition 6.5.33.** *For all $k, n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have a natural isomorphism of real commutative and hence of smooth algebras*

$$\phi : \; C^\infty(\tilde{D}(k,n)) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \oplus_{i=0}^n (\wedge^i \mathbb{R}^k) \otimes (\wedge^i \mathbb{R}^n) \;\; ,$$

*where on the right we have the algebras that appear degreewise in def. 6.5.21, where the product is given on homogeneous elements by*

$$(\omega, x) \cdot (\lambda, y) = (\omega \wedge \lambda, x \wedge y) \,.$$

Proof. Let $\{t_a\}$ be the canonical basis for $\mathbb{R}^k$ and $\{e^i\}$ the canonical basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$. We claim that an isomorphism is given by the assignment which on generators is

$$\phi : \epsilon^i_a \mapsto (t_a, e^i)\,.$$

To see that this defines indeed an algebra homomorphism we need to check that it respects the relations on the generators. By remark 6.5.32 for this it is sufficient to observe that for all pairs of pairs of indices we have

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(\epsilon^i_a \epsilon^{i'}_{a'}) &= (t_a \wedge t_{a'}, e^i \wedge e^{i'}) \\ &= -(t_{a'} \wedge t_a, e^i \wedge e^{i'})\,. \\ &= -\phi(\epsilon^i_{a'}\epsilon^{i'}_a)\end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark 6.5.34.** The proof of prop. 6.5.33 together with remark 6.5.32 may be interpreted as showing how the skew-linearity which is the hallmark of traditional Lie theory arises in the synthetic differential geometry of infinitesimal simplices. In the context of the tangent Lie algebroid, discussed as example 6.5.37 below, this pleasant aspect of Kock's "combinatorial differential forms" had been amplified in [BM00]. See also [Stel10].

**Proposition 6.5.35.** *For $\mathfrak{a} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$ a 1-truncated object, hence an ordinary Lie algebroid of rank $k$ over a base manifold $X$, its image under the map $i : L_\infty\mathrm{Alg} \to (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^\Delta)^{op}$, def. 6.5.26, is such that its restriction to any chart $U \to X$ is, up to isomorphism, of the form*

$$i(\mathfrak{a})|_U : [n] \mapsto U \times \tilde{D}(k,n)\,.$$

Proof. Apply prop. 6.5.33 in def. 6.5.21, using that by definition $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})$ is given by the exterior algebra on locally free $C^\infty(X)$ modules, so that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}|_U) &\simeq (\wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(U)}\Gamma(U \times \mathbb{R}^k)^*, d_{\mathfrak{a}|_U}) \\ &\simeq (C^\infty(U) \otimes \wedge^\bullet \mathbb{R}^k, d_{\mathfrak{a}|_U})\end{aligned}\,.$$

□

**Example 6.5.36** (Lie algebra as infinitesimal simplicial complex)**.** For $G$ a Lie group, consider the simplicial manifold

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} = \left( \cdots\cdots G \times G \underset{\to}{\overset{\to}{\to}} G \underset{\to}{\to} * \right) \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{fsmooth}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

which presents the internal delooping $\mathbf{B}G$ by prop. 6.3.21. Consider then the subobject (as simplicial formal manifolds)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \vdots & & \vdots \\ \tilde{D}(k,2) & \overset{i_2}{\hookrightarrow} & G \times G \\ \downarrow\downarrow\downarrow & & \downarrow\downarrow\downarrow \\ \tilde{D}(k,1) & \overset{i_1}{\hookrightarrow} & G \\ \downarrow\downarrow & & \downarrow\downarrow \\ * & \overset{i_0}{\longrightarrow} & * \\ & & \\ (\mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{ch}} & \hookrightarrow & (\mathbf{B}G)_{\mathrm{ch}} \end{array},$$

where $k = \dim(G)$, defined as follows:

1. $i_1$ includes the first order infinitesimal neighbourhood of the neutral element of $G$, hence synthetically $\{g \in G | g \sim_1 0\}$.
2. $i_2$ includes the space of pairs of points in $G$ which are first order neighbours of the neutral element and of each other: $\{(g_1, g_2) \in G \times G | g_1 \sim_1 e, g_2 \sim_1 e, g_1 \sim g_2\}$.

This is implicitly the inclusion that is used in [Kock10] in the discussion of Lie algebras in synthetic differential geometry. By the above discussion the above identifies $\tilde{D}(k,1) \simeq \mathfrak{g} = T_e(G)$ as the Lie algebra of $G$ and $\tilde{D}(k,2) \simeq \mathfrak{g} \wedge \mathfrak{g}$. Then formula 6.8.2 in [Kock10]together with theorem 6.6.1 there show how the group product on the right turns into the Lie bracket on the left.

More in detail, formula 6.8.2 in [Kock10] says that for $g_1, g_2 \sim_1 e$ and $g_1 \sim_1 g_2$ we have

$$g_1 \cdot g_2 = g_1 + g_2 + \frac{1}{2}\{g_1, g_2\} - \frac{3}{2}e \,,$$

where $\{g_1, g_2\} = g_1 g_2 g_1^{-1} g_2^{-1}$ is the group commutator. Theorem 6.6.1 in [Kock10] identifies this on the given elements infinitesimally close to $e$ with the Lie bracket on these elements.

**Example 6.5.37** (tangent Lie algebroid as infinitesimal simplicial complex)**.** For $X$ a smooth manifold and $TX$ its tangent Lie algebroid, its incarnation as a simplicial smooth locus via def. 6.5.26, prop. 6.5.35 is the simplicial complex of *infinitesimal simplices* $\{(x_0, \cdots, x_n) \in X^n | \forall i, j : x_i \sim x_j\}$ in $X$. The normalized cosimplicial function algebra of this complex is called the algebra of *combinatorial differential forms* in [Kock10]. The corresponding normalized chain dg-algebra is observed there to be isomorphic to the de Rham complex of $X$, which here is a direct consequence of the monoidal Dold-Kan correspondence. This is made explicit in [Stel10].

Notice that accordingly for $\mathfrak{g}$ any $L_\infty$-algebra, flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms are equivalently morphisms of dg-algebras

$$\Omega^\bullet(X) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) : A$$

as well as ("synthetically") morphisms

$$TX \to \mathfrak{g}$$

of simplicial objects in the Cahiers topos Sh(FormalSmoothCartSp).

#### 6.5.2.5 Lie differentiation

We discuss the realization of the abstract concepts of *Lie differentiation*, remark 5.3.59, realized in formal smooth cohesion. Here Lie differentiation is the process that sends a pointed connected formal differential homotopy-type to its infinitesimal approximation by an higher Lie algebra, an $L_\infty$-algebra. The supergeometric analog of this discussion is below in 6.6.5.

**Proposition 6.5.38.** *Write*

$$L\infty\mathrm{Alg}_{\mathrm{gen}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Inf}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}_1$$

*for the full sub-$\infty$-category on those objects which are sent by $\Gamma$ to the point. The full subcategory on these $\infty$-presheaves which send pushouts of infinitesimally thickened points to homotopy pullbacks is the $\infty$-category of $L_\infty$-algebras*

$$L\infty\mathrm{Alg} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{L}_\infty\mathrm{Alg}_{\mathrm{gen}}$$

Proof. By the central result of [L-Lie]. □

Therefore we say that

**Definition 6.5.39.** The composite $\infty$-functor

$$\mathrm{Lie} \;:\; \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}) \simeq \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}_{\geq 1} \xrightarrow{i_!^{*/}} \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}^{*/}_{\geq 1} \xrightarrow{j^*} L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}_{\mathrm{gen}}$$

is $\infty$-*Lie differentiation*.

**Remark 6.5.40.** By the Artin-Lurie representability theorem [L-Rep] a sufficient condition for the Lie differentiation $\mathrm{Lie}(\mathbf{B}G)$ of def. 6.5.39 to land in the full sub-$\infty$-category $L_\infty\mathrm{Alg} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{L}_\infty\mathrm{Alg}_{\mathrm{gen}}$ of genuine $L_\infty$-algebras, prop. 6.5.38, is that $\mathbf{B}G$ by a *geometric* $\infty$*-stack*. The development of a genuine $\infty$-Lie theory would consist of exhibiting Lie integration $\exp(-)$ as a suitable adjoint, or similar, to the restriction of $\mathrm{Lie}(-)$ to geometric $\infty$-stacks [32]

### 6.5.3 Cohomology

We discuss aspects of the intrinsic cohomology, 5.1.10, in FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd.

- 6.5.3.1 – Cohomology localization;
- 6.5.3.2 – Lie group cohomology
- 6.5.3.3 – $\infty$-Lie algebroid cohomology
- 6.5.3.4 – Infinitesimal principal $\infty$-bundles / extensions of $L_\infty$-algebroids

#### 6.5.3.1 Cohomology localization

**Observation 6.5.41.** The canonical line object of the Lawvere theory $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{smooth}}$ (the free algebra on the singleton) is the real line

$$\mathbb{A}^1_{\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}} = \mathbb{R}\,.$$

We shall write $\mathbb{R}$ also for the underlying additive group

$$\mathbb{G}_a = \mathbb{R}$$

regarded canonically as an abelian $\infty$-group object in FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ write $\mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} \in$ FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd for its $n$-fold delooping. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $X \in$ FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd write

$$H^n_{\mathrm{shdiff}}(X, \mathbb{R}) := \pi_0 \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R})$$

for the cohomology group of $X$ with coefficients in the canonical line object in degree $n$.

**Definition 6.5.42.** Write

$$\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{sdiff}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

for the cohomology localization of FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd at $\mathbb{R}$-cohomology: the full sub-$\infty$-category on the $W$-local objects with respect to the class $W$ of morphisms that induce isomorphisms in all $\mathbb{R}$-cohomology groups.

**Proposition 6.5.43.** *Let $\mathrm{Ab}^\Delta_{\mathrm{proj}}$ be the model structure on cosimplicial abelian groups, whose fibrations are the degreewise surjections and whose weak equivalences the quasi-isomorphisms under the normalized cochain functor.*

*The transferred model structure along the forgetful functor*

$$U : \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^\Delta \to \mathrm{Ab}^\Delta$$

*exists and yields a cofibrantly generated simplicial model category structure on cosimplicial smooth algebras (cosimplicial $C^\infty$-rings).*

[32] I am grateful to Joost Nuiten for discussion of this point.

See [Stel10] for an account.

**Proposition 6.5.44.** *Let $j : (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}} \to [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ be the prolonged external Yoneda embedding.*

1. *This constitutes the right adjoint of a simplicial Quillen adjunction*

$$(\mathcal{O} \dashv j) : \; (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}} \underset{j}{\overset{\mathcal{O}}{\rightleftarrows}} [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}} \;,$$

*where the left adjoint $\mathcal{O}(-) = C^{\infty}(-, \mathbb{R})$ degreewise forms the algebra of functions obtained by homming presheaves into the line object $\mathbb{R}$.*

2. *Restricted to simplicial formal smooth manifolds of finite truncation along*

$$\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}_{\mathrm{fintr}} \hookrightarrow (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}}$$

*the right derived functor of $j$ is a full and faithful $\infty$-functor that factors through the cohomology localization and thus identifies a full reflective sub-$\infty$-category*

$$(\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{op}})^{\circ}_{\mathrm{fintr}} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{sdiff}} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

3. *The intrinsic $\mathbb{R}$-cohomology of any object $X \in \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is computed by the ordinary cochain cohomology of the Moore cochain complex underlying the cosimplicial abelian group of the image of the left derived functor $(\mathbb{L}\mathcal{O})(X)$ under the Dold-Kan correspondence:*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{FormalSmooth}}(X, \mathbb{R}) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{cochain}}(N^{\bullet}(\mathbb{L}\mathcal{O})(X))\,.$$

Proof. By prop. 6.5.10 we may equivalently work over the site FormalSmoothMfd. The proof there is given in [Stel10], following [Toë06]. □

#### 6.5.3.2 Lie group cohomology

**Proposition 6.5.45.** *Let $G \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be a Lie group.*

*Then the intrinsic group cohomology in Smooth∞Grpd and in FormalSmooth∞Grpd of $G$ with coefficients in*

1. *discrete abelian groups $A$;*

2. *the additive Lie group $A = \mathbb{R}$*

*coincides with Segal's refined Lie group cohomology [Seg70], [Bry00].*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(\mathbf{B}G, A) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{FormalSmooth}}(\mathbf{B}G, A) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{Segal}}(G, A)\,.$$

Proof. For discrete coefficients this is shown in theorem 6.4.38 for $H_{\mathrm{Smooth}}$, which by the full and faithful embedding then also holds in FormalSmooth∞Grpd.

Here we demonstrate the equivalence for $A = \mathbb{R}$ by obtaining a presentation for $H^n_{\mathrm{FormalSmooth}}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbb{R})$ that coincides explicitly with a formula for Segal's cohomology observed in [Bry00].

Let therefore $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Set}$ be the standard presentation of $\mathbf{B}G \in \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ by the nerve of the Lie groupoid $(G \rightrightarrows *)$ as discussed in 6.4.3. We may write this as

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}} = \int^{[k] \in \Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot G^{\times_k}\,.$$

By prop. 6.5.44 the intrinsic $\mathbb{R}$-cohomology of $\mathbf{B}G$ is computed by the cochain cohomology of the cochain complex of the underlying simplicial abelian group of the value $(\mathbb{L}\mathcal{O})\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ of the left derived functor of $\mathcal{O}$.

In order to compute this we shall build and compare various resolutions, as in prop. 6.3.16, moving back and forth through the Quillen equivalences

$$[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, D]_{\mathrm{inj}} \underset{\mathrm{id}}{\overset{\mathrm{id}}{\rightleftarrows}} [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, D]_{\mathrm{Reedy}} \underset{\mathrm{id}}{\overset{\mathrm{id}}{\rightleftarrows}} [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, D]_{\mathrm{proj}}$$

between injective, projective and Reedy model structures on functors with values in a combinatorial model category $D$, with $D$ either $\mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}$ or with $D$ itself the injective or projective model structure on simplicial presheaves over FormalSmoothCartSp.

To begin with, let $( Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_\bullet \xrightarrow{\simeq} (G^{\times \bullet}) \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$ be a Reedy-cofibrant resolution of the simplicial presheaf $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ with respect to the projective model structure. This is in particular degreewise a weak equivalence of simplicial presheaves, hence

$$\int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot (Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_k \overset{\simeq}{\to} \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot G^{\times_k} = \mathbf{B}G_c$$

exists and is a weak equivalence in $[\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}}$, hence in $[\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$, hence in $[\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$, because

1. $\Delta \in [\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$ is cofibrant in the Reedy model structure;
2. every simplicial presheaf $X$ is Reedy cofibrant when regarded as an object $X_\bullet \in [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$;
3. the coend over the tensoring

   $$\int^{\Delta} : [\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}} \times [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}} \to [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{inj}}$$

   is a left Quillen bifunctor ([L-Topos], prop. A.2.9.26 ), hence in particular a left Quillen functor in one argument when the other argument is fixed on a cofibrant object, hence preserves weak equivalences between cofibrant objects in that case.

To make this a projective cofibrant resolution we further pull back along the Bousfield-Kan fat simplex projection $\mathbf{\Delta} \to \Delta$ with $\mathbf{\Delta} := N(\Delta/(-))$ to obtain

$$\int^{[k]\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[k]\cdot (Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_k \overset{\simeq}{\to} \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k]\cdot (Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_k \overset{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}\,,$$

which is a weak equivalence again due to the left Quillen bifunctor property of $\int^{\Delta}(-)\cdot(-)$, now applied with the second argument fixed, and the fact that $\mathbf{\Delta} \to \Delta$ is a weak equivalence between cofibrant objects in $[\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$. (This is the *Bousfield-Kan map*). Finally, that this is indeed cofibrant in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ follows from

1. the fact that the Reedy cofibrant $(Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_\bullet$ is also cofibrant in $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{inj}}$;
2. the left Quillen bifunctor property of

   $$\int^{\Delta} : [\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}_{\mathrm{Quillen}}]_{\mathrm{proj}} \times [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}]_{\mathrm{inj}} \to [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}\,;$$

3. the fact that the fat simplex is cofibrant in $[\Delta, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

The central point so far is that in order to obtain a projective cofibrant resolution of $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$ we may form a compatible degreewise projective cofibrant resolution but then need to form not just the naive diagonal $\int^{\Delta} \Delta[-] \cdot (-)$ but the fattened diagonal $\int^{\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[-] \cdot (-)$. In the remainder of the proof we observe that for computing the left derived functor of $\mathcal{O}$, the fattened diagonal is not necessary after all.

For that observe that the functor

$$[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathcal{O}] : [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}] \to [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}}]$$

preserves Reedy cofibrant objects, because the left Quillen functor $\mathcal{O}$ preserves colimits and cofibrations and hence the property that the morphisms $L_k X \to X_k$ out of latching objects $\varinjlim_{s \stackrel{+}{\to} k} X_s$ are cofibrations. Therefore we may again apply the Bousfield-Kan map after application of $\mathcal{O}$ to find that there is a weak equivalence

$$(\mathbb{L}\mathcal{O})(\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}) \simeq \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[k] \cdot \mathcal{O}((Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_k) \simeq \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \mathcal{O}((Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_k)$$

in $(\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}}$ to the object where the fat simplex is replaced back with the ordinary simplex. Therefore by prop. 6.5.44 the $\mathbb{R}$-cohomology that we are after is equivalently computed as the cochain cohomology of the image under the left adjoint

$$(N^\bullet)^{\mathrm{op}} U^{\mathrm{op}} : (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}} \to (\mathrm{Ch}^\bullet)^{\mathrm{op}}$$

(where $U : \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta} \to \mathrm{Ab}^{\Delta}$ is the forgetful functor) of

$$\int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \mathcal{O}(Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_k \in (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}} ,$$

which is

$$(N^\bullet)^{\mathrm{op}} \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot U^{\mathrm{op}}\mathcal{O}((Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_k) \in (\mathrm{Ch}^\bullet)^{\mathrm{op}} ,$$

Notice that

1. for $S_{\bullet,\bullet}$ a bisimplicial abelian group we have that the coend $\int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot S_{\bullet,k} \in (\mathrm{Ab}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}}$ is isomorphic to the diagonal simplicial abelian group and that forming diagonals of bisimplicial abelian groups sends degreewise weak equivalences to weak equivalences;

2. the Eilenberg-Zilber theorem asserts that the cochain complex of the diagonal is the total complex of the cochain bicomplex: $N^\bullet \mathrm{diag} S_{\bullet,\bullet} \simeq \mathrm{tot} C^\bullet(S_{\bullet,\bullet})$;

3. the complex $N^\bullet \mathcal{O}(Q\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}})_k)$ – being the correct derived hom-space between $G^{\times_k}$ and $\mathbb{R}$ – is related by a zig-zag of weak equivalences to $\Gamma(G^{\times_k}, I_{(k)})$, where $I_{(k)}$ is an injective resolution of the sheaf of abelian groups $\mathbb{R}$

Therefore finally we have

$$H^n_{\mathrm{FormalSmooth}}(G, \mathbb{R}) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{cochain}} \mathrm{Tot}\Gamma(G^{\times \bullet}, I^\bullet_\bullet) .$$

On the right this is manifestly $H^n_{\mathrm{Segal}}(G, \mathbb{R})$, as observed in [Bry00]. □

**Corollary 6.5.46.** *For $G$ a compact Lie group we have for $n \geq 1$ that*

$$H^n_{\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}(G, U(1)) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}}(G, U(1)) \simeq H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{Top}}(BG, \mathbb{Z}) .$$

Proof. For $G$ compact we have, by [Blan85], that $H^n_{\mathrm{Segal}}(G, \mathbb{R}) \simeq 0$. The claim then follows with prop. 6.5.45 and theorem 6.4.38 applied to the long exact sequence in cohomology induced by the short exact sequence $\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z} = U(1)$. □

**6.5.3.3 $\infty$-Lie algebroid cohomology** We discuss the intrinsic cohomology, 5.1.10, of $\infty$-Lie algebroids, 6.5.2, in FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd.

**Proposition 6.5.47.** *Let $\mathfrak{a} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$ be an $L_\infty$-algebroid. Then its intrinsic real cohomoloogy in* FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd

$$H^n(\mathfrak{a}, \mathbb{R}) := \pi_0 \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathfrak{a}, \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R})$$

*coincides with its ordinary $L_\infty$-algebroid cohomology: the cochain cohomology of its Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra*

$$H^n(\mathfrak{a}, \mathbb{R}) \simeq H^n(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}))\,.$$

Proof. By prop. 6.5.44 we have that

$$H^n(\mathfrak{a}, \mathbb{R}) \simeq H^n N^\bullet(\mathbb{L}\mathcal{O})(i(\mathfrak{a}))\,.$$

By lemma 6.5.27 this is

$$\cdots \simeq H^n N^\bullet \left( \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \mathbf{\Delta}[k] \cdot \mathcal{O}(i(\mathfrak{a})_k) \right)\,.$$

Observe that $\mathcal{O}(\mathfrak{a})_\bullet$ is cofibrant in the Reedy model structure $[\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, (\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta}_{\mathrm{proj}})^{\mathrm{op}}]_{\mathrm{Reedy}}$ relative to the opposite of the projective model structure on cosimplicial algebras: the map from the latching object in degree $n$ in $\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta})^{\mathrm{op}}$ is dually in $\mathrm{SmoothAlg} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta}$ the projection

$$\oplus_{i=0}^{n} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})_i \otimes \wedge^i \mathbb{R}^n \to \oplus_{i=0}^{n-1} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a})_i \otimes \wedge^i \mathbb{R}^n$$

hence is a surjection, hence a fibration in $\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta}_{\mathrm{proj}}$ and therefore indeed a cofibration in $(\mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\Delta}_{\mathrm{proj}})^{\mathrm{op}}$.

Therefore using the Quillen bifunctor property of the coend over the tensoring in reverse to lemma 6.5.27 the above is equivalent to

$$\cdots \simeq H^n N^\bullet \left( \int^{[k]\in\Delta} \Delta[k] \cdot \mathcal{O}(i(\mathfrak{a})_k) \right)$$

with the fat simplex replaced again by the ordinary simplex. But in brackets this is now by definition the image under the monoidal Dold-Kan correspondence of the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra

$$\cdots \simeq H^n(N^\bullet \Xi \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}))\,.$$

By the Dold-Kan correspondence we have hence

$$\cdots \simeq H^n(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}))\,.$$

□

**Remark 6.5.48.** It follows that an intrinsically defined degree-$n$ $\mathbb{R}$-cocycle on $\mathfrak{a}$ is indeed presented by a morphism in $L_\infty\mathrm{Algd}$

$$\mu : \mathfrak{a} \to b^n\mathbb{R}\,,$$

as in def. 6.4.127. Notice that if $\mathfrak{a} = b\mathfrak{g}$ is the delooping of an $L_\infty$- algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ this is equivalently a morphism of $L_\infty$-algebras

$$\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to b^{n-1}\mathbb{R}\,.$$

#### 6.5.3.4 Extensions of $L_\infty$-algebroids

We discuss the general notion of extensions of cohesive $\infty$-groups, 5.1.18, for infinitesimal objects in FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd: extensions of $L_\infty$-algebras, def. 6.5.17.

**Proposition 6.5.49.** *Let $\mu : b\mathfrak{g} \to b^{n+1}\mathbb{R}$ be an $(n+1)$-cocycle on an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$. Then under the embedding of def. 6.5.26 the $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$ of def. 6.4.133 is the extension classified by $\mu$, according to the general definition 5.1.302.*

Proof. We need to show that

$$b\mathfrak{g}_\mu \to \mathfrak{g} \xrightarrow{\mu} b^{n+1}\mathbb{R}$$

is a fiber sequence in FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd. By prop. 6.4.138 this sits in a pullback diagram of $L_\infty$-algebras (connected $L_\infty$-algebroids)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} b\mathfrak{g}_\mu & \longrightarrow & eb^n\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ b\mathfrak{g} & \xrightarrow{\mu} & b^{n+1}\mathbb{R} \end{array} .$$

By prop. 6.5.25 this pullback is preserved by the embedding into $[\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Here the right vertical morphism is found to be a fibration replacement of the point inclusion $* \to b^{n+1}\mathbb{R}$. By the discussion in 5.1.1.2.1 this identifies $b\mathfrak{g}_\mu$ as the homotopy fiber of $\mu$. □

### 6.5.4 Infinitesimal path groupoid and de Rham spaces

We discuss the intrinsic notion of infinitesimal geometric paths in objects in a $\infty$-topos of infinitesimal cohesion, 5.3.1, realized in FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd.

**Observation 6.5.50.** For $U \times D \in \mathrm{SmoothCartSp} \ltimes \mathrm{InfinSmoothLoc} = \mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ we have that

$$\Re(U \times D) \simeq U$$

is the *reduced smooth locus*: the formal dual of the smooth algebra obtained by quotienting out all nilpotent elements in the smooth algebra $C^\infty(K \times D) \simeq C^\infty(K) \otimes C^\infty(D)$.

Proof. By the model category presentation of $\Re = \mathbb{L}\mathrm{Lan}_i \circ \mathbb{R}i^*$ of the proof of prop. 6.5.11 and using that every representable is cofibrant and fibrant in the local projective model structure on simplicial presheaves we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Re(U \times D) &\simeq (\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Lan}_i)(\mathbb{R}i^*)(U \times D) \\ &\simeq (\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Lan}_i) i^*(U \times D) \\ &\simeq (\mathbb{L}\mathrm{Lan}_i) U \\ &\simeq \mathrm{Lan}_i U \\ &\simeq U \end{aligned} ,$$

where we are using again that $i$ is a full and faithful functor. □

**Corollary 6.5.51.** *For $X \in \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ a smooth locus, we have that $\Im(X)$ is the corresponding* de Rham space*, the object characterized by*

$$\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(U \times D, \Im(X)) \simeq \mathrm{SmoothAlg}^{\mathrm{op}}(U, X) .$$

Proof. By the $(\Re \dashv \Im)$-adjunction relation we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(U \times D, \Im(X)) &\simeq \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Re(U \times D), X) \\ &\simeq \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(U, X) \end{aligned}.$$

□

### 6.5.5 Local diffeomorphism

We discuss the general concept of local diffeomorphisms, 5.3.3, realized in the differential $\infty$-topos $i : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. given by prop. 6.5.11.

We will write $i : \mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{th}}$ for short.

**Proposition 6.5.52.** *A morphism $f : X \to Y$ in* FormalSmooth∞Grpd *is a* local diffeomorphism *in the general sense of def. 5.3.19 precisely if for all infinitesimall thickened points $D \in \mathrm{InfSmoothLoc} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ the canonical diagrams*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [D, X] & \xrightarrow{[D,f]} & [D, Y] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

*(given by applying the internam hom $[-,-]$ in the first argument to the unique point inclusio $* \to D$ and in the second to $f$) are $\infty$-pullbacks under $i^*$.*

Proof. The defining $\infty$-pullback diagram of def. 5.3.19 induces and is detected by $\infty$-pullback diagrams for all $U \times D \in \mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{th}}(U \times D, X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{th}}(U \times D, Y) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{th}}(U \times D, i_* i^* X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{th}}(U \times D, i_* i^* Y) \end{array}.$$

By the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma, the $(i^* \dashv i_*)$-adjunction, the definition of $i$ and the formula for the internal hom, this is equivalent to the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}(U, i^*[D, X]) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(U, i^*[D, Y]) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(U, i^* X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(U, i^* Y) \end{array}$$

being an $\infty$-pullback for all $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$. By one more application of the $\infty$-Yoneda lemma this is the statement to be proven. □

**Remark 6.5.53.** Since $i^*$ is right adjoint and hence preserves $\infty$-pullbacks, it is sufficient for a morphism $f \in \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ to be formally étale that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [D, X] & \xrightarrow{[D,f]} & [D, Y] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

is an $\infty$-pullback in FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd. In this form, when restricted to 0-truncated objects, formally étale morphisms are axiomatized in [Kock06], around p. 82, in a topos for synthetic differential geometry, such as the Cahier topos $\tau_{\leq 0}$FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd $\simeq$ Sh(CartSp) considered here.

We now discuss in more detail the special case of formally étale maps between objects that are presented by simplicial smooth manifolds.

**Proposition 6.5.54.** *Consider an object* $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *and a presentation by a simplicial smooth manifold* $X_\bullet$ *(which always exists by prop. 3.1.22) under the canonical inclusion* $X_\bullet \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \longrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. *Then* $i_! X$ *is presented by the same simplicial smooth manifold, under the canonical inclusion*

$$X_\bullet \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}] \longrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

Proof. By prop. 6.4.9 and prop. 6.5.10 we may equivalently work over the sites of all smooth manifolds and formal smooth manifolds (instead of just over Cartesian spaces and formal Cartesian spaces). Since the canonical inclusion SmoothManifold $\hookrightarrow$ FormalSmoothManifold is still an infinitesimal neighbourhood inclusion of sites, the construction of $i_!$ is still verbatim as in the proof of prop. 6.5.11. This gives the statement in question for simplicially constant simplicial manifolds.

By prop. 5.1.17, after regarding $X_\bullet$ as a simplicial presheaf, it is a specific realization of the homotopy colimit over the simplicial diagram which is $X_\bullet$ regarded as a functor $\Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow [\mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$. Since $i_!$ is left adjoint it may be taken inside this homotopy colimit, and so the general claim follows with the previous statement. □

**Proposition 6.5.55.** *Let* $f : X \to Y$ *be a morphism in* SmoothMfd*, a smooth function between finite dimensional paracompact smooth manifolds, regarded, by cor. 6.4.10, as a morphism in* Smooth$\infty$Grpd*. Then*

- *$f$ is a submersion $\Leftrightarrow$ $f$ is formally i-smooth;*
- *$f$ is a local diffeomorphism $\Leftrightarrow$ $f$ is formally i-étale;*
- *$f$ is an immersion $\Leftrightarrow$ $f$ is formally i-unramified;*

*where on the left we have the traditional notions, and on the right those of def. 5.3.16.*

Proof. By lemma 6.5.54 the canonical diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} i_! X & \xrightarrow{i_! f} & i_! Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ i_* X & \xrightarrow{i_* f} & i_* Y \end{array}$$

in FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd is presented in $[\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ by the diagram of presheaves

$$U \times D \;\mapsto\; \begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{FSmthMfd}(U \times D, X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{FSmthMfd}(U \times D, f)} & \mathrm{FSmthMfd}(U \times D, Y) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{FSmthMfd}(U, X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{FSmthMfd}(U, f)} & \mathrm{FSmthMfd}(U, Y) \end{array} ,$$

where FSmthMfd is the category of formal smooth manifolds from def. 6.5.9, $U$ is an ordinary smooth manifold and $D$ an infinitesimal smooth loci, def. 6.5.5.

Consider this first for the case that $D := \mathbb{D} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is the first order infinitesimal neighbourhood of the origin in the real line. Restricted to this case the above diagram of presheaves is that represented on SmoothMfd by the diagram of smooth manifolds

$$\begin{array}{ccc} TX & \xrightarrow{df} & TY \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array} ,$$

where on the top we have the tangent bundles of $X$ and $Y$ and the differential of $f$ mapping between them.

Since pullbacks of presheaves are computed objectwise, $f$ being formally smooth/étale/unramified implies that the canonical morphism

$$TX \to X \times_Y TY = f^*TY$$

is an epi-/iso-/mono-morphism, respectively. This by definition means that $f$ is a submersion/local diffeomorphism/immersion, respectively.

Conversely, by the inverse function theorem for differentiable functions, $f$ being a submersion means that it is locally a projection, $f$ being a local isomorphism means that it is in particular étale, and $f$ being an immersion means that it is locally an embedding, hence that the infinitesimal extension in each case extends to an extension of germs, hence in particular to an extension by infinitesimals of any order. This implies once it holds for first-order infinitesimal $D$ then also for $D$ any other infinitesimal smooth locus, (so that $[D, X]$, $[D, Y]$ are bundles of possibly higher order formal curves) the morphism

$$[D, X] \to X \times_Y [D, Y]$$

is an epi-/iso-/mono-morphism, respectively. □

### 6.5.6 Manifolds and étale groupoids

We discuss the general concept of manifolds and étale groupoids in a differential $\infty$-topos, 5.3.10, realized in $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \overset{i}{\hookrightarrow} \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

**Lemma 6.5.56.** *Let $\mathbb{R}^n \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be the $n$-dimensional Cartesian space, for $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Then any morphism into $\mathbb{R}^n$ which is both a formally étale morhism, def. 5.3.16, and a 1-monomorphisms, def. 5.1.58*

$$U \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$$

*exhibits the inclusion of its domain as an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^n$.*

Proof. Since the morphism is a monomorphism, $U$ is 0-truncated, def. 5.1.47, and its points are included as a subset of the points of $\mathbb{R}^n$. Since it is formally étale, with every point also an open neighbourhood of that point in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is contained in $U$, for otherwise not all tangent vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ would be represented by curves in $U$. □

**Corollary 6.5.57.** *A 0-truncated object $X \in \mathbf{H}$ is a $\mathbb{R}^n$-manifold in the sense of def. 5.3.88 precisely if it is an $n$-dimensional smooth manifold in the traditional sense.*

**Definition 6.5.58.** Call a simplicial smooth manifold $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}$ an *étale simplicial smooth manifold* if it is fibrant as an object of $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ and if moreover all face and degeneracy morphisms are local diffeomorphisms.

**Example 6.5.59.** The nerve of an étale Lie groupoid in the traditional sense is an étale simplicial smooth manifold, see for instance [MoPr97, Carc12].

**Proposition 6.5.60.** *Let $X \in \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be presented by by an étale simplicial manifold, def. 6.5.58, via the map*

$$X_\bullet \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \overset{i_!}{\hookrightarrow} \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

*Then every ordinary open cover*

$$\left\{ \mathbb{R}^n \hookleftarrow U_i \hookrightarrow X_0 \right\}_{i \in I}$$

*of the manifold $X_0$ by open subsets of Cartesian spaces induces a correspondence in* FormalSmooth∞Grpd

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \coprod_{i \in I} U_i & \longrightarrow & X_0 \\ & {}^{\mathrm{et}}\swarrow & & {}_{\mathrm{et}}\searrow & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{R}^n & & & & X \end{array}$$

*which exhibits $X$ as an $\mathbb{R}^n$-manifold according to def. 5.3.86.*

Proof. It is clear that the right map

$$\coprod_i U_i \longrightarrow X_0 \longrightarrow X\,,$$

is a 1-epimorphism: being the canonical atlas of $X$ as presented by $X_\bullet$ according to remark 5.1.78, further covered by $\coprod_i U_i$.

Moreover, for each $i \in I$ the maps $\mathbb{R}^n \leftarrow U_i \to X_0$ are local diffeomorphisms in the abstract sense, since they are so in the traditional sense and by prop. 6.5.55. Then with prop. 5.3.30 also $\coprod_i U_i \to X$ is a local diffeomorphism.

Hence it remains to see that $X_0 \to X$ is a local diffeomorphism. For that we need to check that $i_! X_0$ is the $\infty$-pullback $i_* X_0 \times_{i_* X} i_! X$. By prop. 5.1.9, lemma 6.5.54 and prop. 5.1.82 it is sufficient to show for the décalage replacement $\mathrm{Dec}_0 X \to X$ of the atlas, that $i_! \mathrm{Dec}_0 X$ is the ordinary pullback of simplicial presheaves $(i_* \mathrm{Dec}_0 X) \times_{i_* X} i_! X$. Since pullbacks of simplicial presheaves are computed degreewise, this is the case by prop. 6.5.55 if for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the morphism $(\mathrm{Dec}_0 X)_n \to X_n$ is an étale morphism of smooth manifolds, in the traditional sense. By prop. 5.1.81 this morphism is the face map $d_{n+1}$ of $X$. This is indeed étale by the very assumption that $X$ is an étale simplicial smooth manifold. □

### 6.5.7 Infinitesimal extension and modules

We discuss the general concept of infinitesimal extensions and modules from 5.3.5 realized in FormalSmooth∞Grpd.

**Example 6.5.61.** Consider a smooth manifold $X$ and those of its infinitesimal extensions

$$\begin{array}{c} E \\ \downarrow \\ X \end{array}$$

which are representable in that $E$ is formally dual to the smooth $C^\infty(E) = C^\infty(X) \oplus N$ for $N$ a nilpotent ideal over $C^\infty(X)$. If already $N \cdot N = 0$ then $C^\infty(E)$ is the square-0 extension of $C^\infty(X)$ induced from the module $N$.

These maps $E \to X$ are manifestly $\Im$-equivalences hence define object in $\mathrm{InfExt}(X)$ according to def. 5.3.42.

A morphism between two such objects in $\mathrm{InfExt}(X)$ is a commuting diagram of smooth algebras of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & C^\infty(X) & \\ \swarrow & & \searrow \\ C^\infty(X) \oplus N_1 & \longrightarrow & C^\infty(X) \oplus N_2 \\ \searrow & & \swarrow \\ & C^\infty(X) & \end{array}$$

where the vertical maps are the canonical inclusions and projections, respectively. For square-0 extensions this is equivalently a homomorphism of $C^\infty(X)$-modules $N_1 \longrightarrow N_2$.

In this fashion $\mathrm{Mod}(X)$ faithfully contains the ordinary category of module bundles over $X$.

**Proposition 6.5.62.** *For $C^\infty(X)$-modules $E_1$, $E_2$, the ordinary tensor product $E_1 \otimes_{C^\infty(X)} E_2$ coincides with the smash tensor product in* $\mathrm{InfExt}(X)$*, def.* **??** *under the embedding $E_i \mapsto C^\infty(X) \oplus N_i$ of example 6.5.61:*

$$C^\infty(E_1 \wedge_X E_2) \simeq C^\infty(X) \oplus (N_1 \otimes N_2)\,.$$

Proof. We have

$$\begin{aligned} C^\infty(E_1 \times_X E_2) &= (C^\infty(X) \oplus N_1) \coprod_{C^\infty(X)} (C^\infty(X) \oplus N_2) \\ &\simeq C^\infty(X) \oplus (N_1 \oplus N_2) \oplus (N_1 \otimes N_2) \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} C^\infty(E_1 \coprod_X E_2) &= (C^\infty(X) \oplus N_1) \times_{C^\infty(X)} (C^\infty(X) \oplus N_2) \\ &\simeq C^\infty(X) \oplus (N_1 \oplus N_2) \end{aligned}.$$

With this the claim follows. □

### 6.5.8 Cartan geometry

We discuss the realization of the abstract formalization of Cartan geometry, 5.3.12, implemented in Smooth∞Grpd.

A *Cartan connection* on a smooth manifold is a principal connection subject to an extra constraint that identifies a component of the connection at each point with the tangent space of the base manifold at that point. The archetypical application of this notion is to the formulation of the field theory of *gravity*, 7.1.7.1.

Consider an inclusion of Lie groups $H \hookrightarrow G$. Write $\mathfrak{h} \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{g}$ for the induced inclusion of Lie algebras.

The traditional definition of a Cartan geometry is this:

**Definition 6.5.63.** A $(H \hookrightarrow G)$-Cartan connection on a smooth manifold $X$ is

1. a $G$-principal connection $\nabla$ on $X$
2. equipped with a reduction of its structure group along $H \hookrightarrow G$

such that

- **Cartan condition:** at each point $x \in X$ and for each local trivialization around that point, the induced map
$$T_x X \xrightarrow{\nabla} \mathfrak{g} \longrightarrow \mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h}$$
is a linear isomorphism.

**Remark 6.5.64.** Depending on which model one uses for describing principal connections, def 6.5.63, translates to the following component descriptions

1. **In terms of Ehresmann connections** One equivalent realization of $G$-principal connection on a $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$ is as a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential form $A$ on $P$ which is suitably $G$-equivariant and restricts fiberwise to the Maurer-Cartan form. This description of principal connections is called *Ehresmann connection*, due to [Ehre51] (reviewed in [Marle14]). The formalization of Cartan's original semi-rigorous ideas [Cart23], and in fact the terminology "Cartan connection", is also due to [Ehre51]. In this model, def. 6.5.63 says the following [Marle14, def. 4]: a Cartan connection is a $G$-Ehresmann connection $A$ on a $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$ together with an $H$-principal bundle $Q \to X$ and a homomorphism of $H$-bundles $i : Q \to P$ such that $\imath^* A$ induces isomorphisms $i^* A_q(-) : T_q Q \simeq \mathfrak{q}$ for each point $q \in Q$.

   This version of the definition is often stated without mentioning $A$ explicitly, for instance in [Sha97, section 5.3 def. 3.1] [CaSl09, section 1.5.1]. Beware that $A$ is an Ehresmann principal connection form, while $i^* A$ is not.

2. **In terms of Cech cocycle data** Alternatively, a $G$-principal connection is equivalently a Cech 1-cocycle given by a choice of cover $\mathcal{U} := \coprod_i U_i \to X$, a choice of $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form $A$ on $\mathcal{U}$, a choice of smooth $G$-valued functions $g$ on double intersections $\mathcal{U} \times_X \mathcal{U}$ such that

   (a) $A_j = g_{ij}^{-1}(A_i + \mathbf{d}) g_{ij}$ on $U_i \cap U_j$

   (b) $g_{ij} g_{jk} = g_{ik}$ on $U_i \cap U_j \cap U_k$.

   In terms of this def. 6.5.63 says that an $(H \hookrightarrow G)$-Cartan connection is just this kind of data, but with the $G$-valued functions restricted to $H$-valued functions. and such that

   $$T_x U_i \xrightarrow{A_i} \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h}$$

   is a linear isomorphism. In this form the definition appears in [Sha97, section 5.1 def. 1.3 section 5.2] and [CaSl09, section 1.5.4]

**Definition 6.5.65.** Given an $(H \xrightarrow{i} G)$-Cartan connection $(\nabla, \nabla_X)$, def. 6.5.63, then its *torsion* is the projection of the curvature $F_\nabla$ under $\mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h}$.

Hence if $\mathcal{U} \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\to X$ is a cover of the base manifold $X$ over which the underlying $G$-principal bundle is trivialized (here $\mathcal{U}$ may be the total space of the $G$-principal bundle if one sticks with Ehresmann connections) such that the curvature $F_\nabla$ is represented by a 2-form

$$\omega \in \Omega^2(\mathcal{U}, \mathfrak{g})$$

then the 2-form $\tau$ representing the torsion is the projection of that

$$\tau := \mathrm{coim}(i_*)(\omega) \in \Omega^2(\mathcal{U}, \mathfrak{g}/\mathfrak{h})\,.$$

### 6.5.9 Definite forms

We discuss the implementation of the general abstract concept of definite forms 5.3.13 implented in FormalSmooth∞Grpd.

**6.5.9.1 $G_2$-Manifolds** Consider on $V = \mathbb{R}^7$ the associative 3-form $\phi$. This is equivalently a morphism of the form

$$\phi : \mathbb{R}^7 \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^3_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

and we might decide to use this in place of a WZW term. Then of course the stabilizer group of its restriction to the infinitesimal disk is the exceptional Lie group $G_2$

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{\mathrm{GL}(\mathbb{R}^7)}(\phi) = G_2\,.$$

First consider the following traditional phenomenon.

**Definition 6.5.66.** For $X$ a smooth 7-manifold, then a 3-form $\sigma \in \Omega^3(X)$, is *definite* if over any trivializing atlas $U \to X$ for the frame bundle we have

$$\sigma|_U = \phi_{abc} E^a \wedge E^b \wedge E^c \,,$$

where the right hand denotes the contraction of the components of the associative 3-form $\phi \in \Omega^3(\mathbb{R}^7)$ with the vielbein field $E \in \Omega^1(U, \mathbb{R}^7)$ that corresponds to the local trivialization.

**Proposition 6.5.67.** *For $X$ a smooth manifold, then a $G_2$-structure on $X$, def.* **??**, *is equivalently a definite 3-form, def. 6.5.66.*

Proof. This is immediate and standard , but we spell out the construction of the first statement for comparison with the general abstract theorems.

There exists a universal vielbein field $E_u \in \Omega^1(\mathrm{Fr}(X), \mathbb{R}^7)$ on the frame bundle, such that $E$ is the pullback of this along the given trivializing section. This means that $\phi_{abc} E^a \wedge E^b \wedge E^c \in \Omega^3(U)$ descends to/comes from a 3-form on $X$ precisely if the transition function $g : U \times_X U \to \mathrm{GL}(7)$ of the local trivialization preserves it. But via the nature of the universal vielbein this transition function relates the vielbein fields as

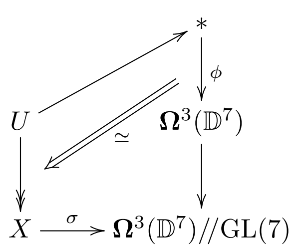
$$p_2^* E = g \cdot (p_1^* E)$$

and so it preserves the 3-form on $U$ precisely if the transition function $g$ preserves $\phi$, hence precisely if it takes values in $G_2 \hookrightarrow \mathrm{O}(7) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(7)$. □

Now we observe that this is a special case of the general theory in higher differential cohesive geometry. Let $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpds}$ be the model of higher differential cohesive geometry constructed in 6.5. By the discussion in 1.2.3, a smooth 3-form on a smooth 7-manifold $X$ is equivalently a morphism $\sigma : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^3$ in this $\mathbf{H}$.

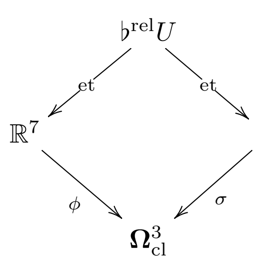
**Proposition 6.5.68.** *The 3-form $\sigma$ is definite in the traditional sense of prop. 6.5.66 precisely if $\sigma : X \to \mathbf{\Omega}^3$ is definite on $\phi$ according to def. 5.3.120.*

Proof. The key fact to observe is that a homotopy




is equivalently the choice of $E^a$ in def. 6.5.66. □

Hence we get a first order infinitesimal globalization of $\phi$ to a 7-manifold as




corresponds to torsion-free $G_2$-structure on $X$ hence to $G_2$-manifold structure on $X$.

### 6.5.10 Partial differential equations

We discuss the realization of the general abstract concept of PDEs according to section 5.3.9 in formal smooth homotopy types.

We discuss how the category $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ (theorem 1.3.12) of partial differential equations on sections of smooth bundles sits inside a homotopy theory (an $\infty$-category) $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})$ that contains complexes of sheaves over $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$, as well as PDEs on sections of stacky bundles. This is used below in 6.5.11 to construct Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbes, which constitute globally defined prequantum local Lagrangian field theories. Moreover, considering such EL $p$-gerbes on genuinely stacky bundles means to consider such prequantum local Lagrangian theories with gauge symmetries and higher gauge symmetries-of-symmetries.

**Definition 6.5.69.** Write SmoothCartSp for the category of smooth manifolds of the form $\mathbb{R}^n$, for $n \in \mathbb{N}$, regarded as a site with the standard coverage by open covers. Similarly, write FormalSmoothCartSp for the site of formal Cartesian spaces. This is the full subcategory

$$\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

of that of commutative $\mathbb{R}$-algebras on those of the form $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n) \otimes C^\infty(\mathbb{D})$, where $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the algebra of smooth functions on $\mathbb{R}^n$ for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and where $C^\infty(\mathbb{D}) \simeq \mathbb{R} \oplus V$ with $V$ nilpotent. We regard this as a site by taking the coverings to be of the form $\{U_i \times \mathbb{D} \overset{(\phi_i, \mathrm{id})}{\longrightarrow} X \times \mathbb{D}\}$, for $\{U_i \overset{\phi_i}{\longrightarrow} X\}$ an ordinary open cover.

We consider now the sheaf toposes and $\infty$-toposes over these sites (**??**).

**Definition 6.5.70.** Write

$$\mathrm{SmoothSet} := \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{SmoothCartSp})$$

for the sheaf topos over the site of smooth manifolds from def. 6.5.69. Write

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{SmoothCartSp})$$

for the homotopy theory of simplicial sheaves over this site. Similarly, write

$$\mathrm{FormalSmoothSet} := \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp})$$

and

$$\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp})$$

**Proposition 6.5.71.** *There is a system of fully faithful inclusions of categories and $\infty$-categories of spaces as follows*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
\mathrm{Set} & & \hookrightarrow & & & & \infty\mathrm{Grpd} & & \\
\downarrow & & & & & & \downarrow & & \\
\mathrm{SmoothMfd} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{SmoothMfd} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{SmoothSet} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & =: & \mathbf{H}_{\Re} \\
\downarrow^{\iota} & & & & \downarrow^{\iota_!} & & \downarrow^{\iota_!} & & \downarrow^{\iota_!} \\
\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd} & & \hookrightarrow & & \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & =: & \mathbf{H}
\end{array}$$

*Moreover, the canonical embedding of the category of smooth Cartesian spaces into that of formal smooth Cartesian spaces is coreflective, i.e. it has a right adjoint (given by forgetting the infinitesimal thickening)*

$$\mathrm{SmoothCartSp} \underset{\longleftarrow}{\overset{\iota}{\hookrightarrow}} \mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}\ .$$

*This adjoint pair induces an adjoint quadruple of functors and compatibly of ∞-functors*

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathrm{SmoothSet} & \underset{\iota^!}{\overset{\iota_!}{\underset{\iota_*}{\overset{\iota^*}{\rightleftarrows}}}} & \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet} \\
\downarrow \uparrow{\scriptstyle \tau_0} & & \downarrow \uparrow{\scriptstyle \tau_0} \\
\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \underset{\iota^!}{\overset{\iota_!}{\underset{\iota_*}{\overset{\iota^*}{\rightleftarrows}}}} & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}
\end{array}
.
$$

**Definition 6.5.72.** We write

$$(\Re \dashv \Im) := (\iota_! \circ \iota^* \dashv \iota_* \circ \iota^*) : \mathbf{H} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}$$

for the induced adjoint pair of an ∞-comonad $\Re$ and ∞-monad $\Im$ acting on $\mathbf{H}$.

**Example 6.5.73.** For $X \times \mathbb{D} \in \mathbf{H}$ represented by a formal smooth manifold, then $\Re(X \times \mathbb{D}) \simeq X$, hence $\Re$ is the operation of *reduction* of infinitesimal thickening. Accordingly, by adjointness, a space of the form $\Im X$ is characterized by the property that probing it by any formal smooth manifold is equivalent to probing it just by the underlying reduced manifold

$$\frac{U \times \mathbb{D} \longrightarrow \Im X}{U \longrightarrow X} .$$

Hence $\Im X$ may be thought of as obtained from $X$ by "identifying all infinitesimal close points". From this perspective the adjunction unit

$$\eta_\Sigma : \Sigma \longrightarrow \Im \Sigma$$

has the interpretation of sending all infinitesimal neighbours of a global point $x : * \to X$ to that global point.

**Proposition 6.5.74.** *For all* $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$*, the* $\Im$*-unit is an epimorphism*

$$\eta_\Sigma : \ \Sigma \longrightarrow\!\!\!\!\!\rightarrow \Im\Sigma \ .$$

Proof. We need to check that $\eta_\Sigma$ becomes a surjection of sets of connected components of stalk ∞-groupoids. But in fact for any simplicial presheaf representing $\Sigma$, $\eta_\Sigma$ is already an epimorphism in simplicial degree 0 over all objects in the site FormalSmoothMfd, by example 6.5.73. This implies the claim.

**Corollary 6.5.75.** *For all* $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$*, pullback along the* $\Im$*-unit*

$$(\eta_\Sigma)^* : \mathbf{H}_{/\Im\Sigma} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$$

*is a conservative functor, def.* **??**.

Proof. By using prop. 6.5.74 in prop. **??**.

**Definition 6.5.76.** For any $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$, write

$$(T^\infty_\Sigma \dashv J^\infty_\Sigma) := ((\eta_\Sigma)^* \circ (\eta_\Sigma)_! \dashv (\eta_\Sigma)^*(\eta_\Sigma)_*) : \mathbf{H}_{/\Im\Sigma} \longrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\Im\Sigma}$$

for the adjoint pair of a monad and comonad that is induced, via example **??**, from the base change adjoint triple, def. **??** along the unit $\eta_\Sigma$ of the monad $\Im$, def. 6.5.72.

**Proposition 6.5.77.** *For* $\Sigma \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$*, the comonad* $J^\infty_\Sigma$ *of def. 6.5.76 restricts to pro-finite dimensional smooth bundles along the canonical inclusion*

$$\mathrm{SmoothMfd}_{\downarrow\Sigma} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$$

*and coincides there with the jet comonad 1.3.8 of prop. 1.3.8.*

Proof. It is straightforward to analyze the action of the left adjoint $T^\infty_\Sigma : (\eta_\Sigma)^* \circ (\eta_\Sigma)_!$. One finds that this sends any open $U \hookrightarrow \Sigma$ to the infinitesimal disk bundle $T^\infty U$. By adjunction it follows that the sections $U \to J^\infty E$ over $\Sigma$ are equivalently maps $T^\infty U \to E$ over $\Sigma$. These pick over each point $\sigma \in U \hookrightarrow \Sigma$ a section of $E$ over the infinitesimal neighbourhood $\mathbb{D}_\sigma$, hence a jet at that point.

By theorem 1.3.12 this means that the coalgebras of $J^\infty_\Sigma$ whose underlying objects are in $SmoothMfd_{\downarrow\Sigma} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$ form the category of partial differential equations with free variables in $\Sigma$. In the present context it makes sense and is convenient to slightly generalize this traditional category by allowing the solution bundles to these differential equations to be not just smooth manifolds, but formal smooth manifolds.

**Proposition 6.5.78.** *For every* $\Sigma \in \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}$*, there is an equivalence of categories between the category of coalgebras, def. ?? of the jet comonad* $J^\infty_\Sigma$ *on formal smooth sets, and the slice category of formal smooth sets over* $\Sigma$*:*

$$\mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma|_{\mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}}) \simeq \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}_{/\Im\Sigma}\,.$$

Proof. Via prop. 6.5.74 this follows from comonadic descent, prop. **??**.

From this we get the following refinement of the classical situation summarized in remark 1.3.14.

**Corollary 6.5.79.** *For* $\Sigma \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}$*, there are canonical inclusions of categories*

$$\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}_{/\Im\Sigma}\,.$$

*Here:*

1. $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ *is equivalently the preimage under* $(\eta_\Sigma)^*$ *of the category of pro-finite dimensional smooth bundles over* $\Sigma$*:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}_{\downarrow\Sigma} & \underset{F}{\overset{U}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma \simeq ((\eta_\Sigma)^*)^{-1}(\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}_{\downarrow\Sigma}) \\ \big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow \\ \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}_{/\Sigma} & \underset{(\eta_\Sigma)_*}{\overset{(\eta_\Sigma)^*}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}_{/\Im\Sigma} \end{array}$$

2. *the total inclusion of the category* $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$ *of bundles and differential operators over* $\Sigma$ *is equivalently the full subcategory of* $\mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}_{/\Im\Sigma}$ *on the objects in the direct image of the base change along the counit of the jet comonad*

$$\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}_{\downarrow\Sigma} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}_{/\Sigma} \xrightarrow{(\eta_\Sigma)_*} \mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}_{/\Im\Sigma}\,.$$

Proof. By theorem 1.3.12, proposition 6.5.78 and prop. 1.3.9.

The analog of proposition 6.5.78 still holds for the full $\infty$-category

**Proposition 6.5.80.** *For any* $\Sigma \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ *there is an equivalence of* $\infty$*-categories between that of* $\infty$*-coalgebras over the jet* $\infty$*-comonad over* $\Sigma$*, and the slice over* $\Im\Sigma$*:*

$$\mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\Im\Sigma}\,.$$

Proof. Via prop. 6.5.74 this follows from $\infty$-comonadic descent, prop. **??**.

**Remark 6.5.81.** In view of theorem 1.3.12 we may think for any $\Sigma \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{H}$ of an $\infty$-coalgebra over $J^\infty_\Sigma : \mathbf{H}_\Sigma \to \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$ as a higher stacky partial differential equation with variables in $\Sigma$. Hence we also write

$$\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H}) := \mathrm{EM}(J^\infty_\Sigma)\,.$$

We connect now the traditional theory of PDEs to that of homotopy PDEs by establishing how the latter is presented by homotopy colimits of the former.

**Lemma 6.5.82.** *Let $K \in$ FormalSmoothMfd and $f : K \longrightarrow \Im\Sigma$ a morphism in* FormalSmoothSet*. Then the pullback $(\eta_\Sigma)^* K$ is still in* FormalSmoothMfd $\hookrightarrow$ FormalSmoothSet.

Proof. We may check this on a local chart $U$ of $K$. For this the pullback is $U \times \mathbb{D}^{p+1}$, where $\mathbb{D}^{p+1}$ is the formal disk in $\Sigma$.

**Definition 6.5.83.** Hence by corollary 6.5.79 there is a canonical subcategory inclusion

$$\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}/\Im\Sigma \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma\,.$$

We consider $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ as equipped with the pre-topology that makes this the inclusion of a dense subsite, hence we consider a presheaf on $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ to be a sheaf if its restriction along this site inclusion is.

**Proposition 6.5.84.** *For any $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$, a small site of definition for the $\infty$-topos $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})$ is given by the comma-category* FormalSmoothCartSp$/\Im\Sigma$ *equipped with the coverage that regards a collection of morphisms over $\Im\Sigma$ as covering if they are covering in* FormalSmoothCartSp *after forgetting the maps to $\Im\Sigma$. Similarly a large site of definition is given by the slice category* $\mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}_{/\Im\Sigma}$

$$\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H}) \simeq \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp}_{/\Im\Sigma}) \simeq \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{FormalSmoothSet}_{/\Im\Sigma})\,.$$

Proof. See the proof in the $n$Lab entry on slice $\infty$-toposes.

We now have the following homotopy theoretic version of the classical situation in remark 1.3.14.

**Proposition 6.5.85.** *We have*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathbf{H} & \xrightarrow{\;\;\Sigma^*\;\;} & \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma} & \underset{\xrightarrow{\;\;\mathrm{F}\;\;}}{\xleftarrow{\;\;\mathrm{U}\;\;}} & \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H}) \\
\uparrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} \\
\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}) & \xrightarrow{(\Sigma_!)^*\simeq(\Sigma^*)_!} & \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{FormalSmoothMfd}_{/\Sigma}) & \underset{\xrightarrow{\;\mathrm{U}^*\simeq \mathrm{F}_!\;}}{\xleftarrow{\;\;\mathrm{U}_!\;\;}} & \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)
\end{array}$$

We discuss a canonical lift of ordinary differential cohomology from $\mathbf{H}$ to $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})$. We show that the classical Euler-Lagrange complex, def. 1.3.34, is what provides a well-adapted Hodge filtration on constant real coefficients in this case.

But first recall the standard Poincaré lemma in its stacky incarnation (where DK denotes the Dold-Kan correspondence, prop. **??**).

**Definition 6.5.86.** Write

$$\flat\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R} \simeq \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\flat\mathbb{R} := \mathrm{DK}(\mathbb{R}[p+2]) \in \mathbf{H}$$

and

$$\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{dR,cl}} := \mathrm{DK}(\mathbf{\Omega}^0 \stackrel{d}{\to} \mathbf{\Omega}^1 \stackrel{d}{\to} \cdots \to \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}}) \in \mathbf{H}\,.$$

**Proposition 6.5.87** (Poincaré lemma)**.** *The canonical inclusion of chain complexes induces an equivalence*

$$\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\flat\mathbb{R} \stackrel{\simeq}{\longrightarrow} \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{dR,cl}}$$

*in* $\mathbf{H}$.

Proof. A map of sheaves of chain complexes is such an equivalence if when evaluated on any object in the site, there is a covering of that object such that when pulled back to any member of the covering, the morphism becomes a quasi-isomorphism of chain complexes. Here we may cover any manifold by a good open cover whose elements are diffeomorphic to a Cartesian space $\mathbb{R}^n$, and the traditional statement of the Poincaré lemma then gives that all closed elements in $\Omega^{\bullet\geq 1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ are exact, hence that the cohomology of $\Omega^\bullet(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is concentrated in degree 0 on $\Omega^0_{\mathrm{dR}}(\mathbb{R}^n)_{\mathrm{cl}} \simeq \mathbb{R}$, hence that the canonical inclusion of this cohomology group is a quasi-isomorphism.

The Poincaré lemma, prop. 6.5.87, induces a filtration on $\flat \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}$. In the complex-analytic case this is called the Hodge filtration, and so we will just call it that here, too.

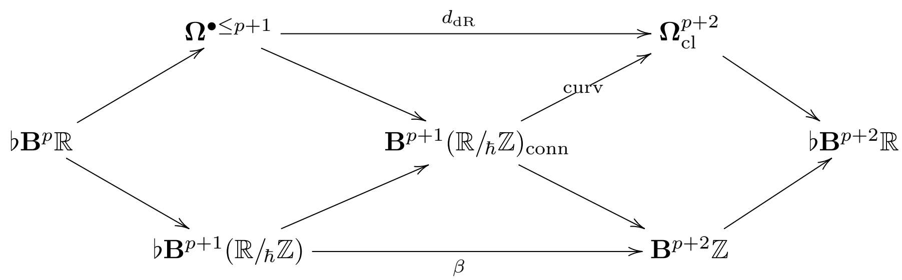
**Definition 6.5.88.** The Hodge filtration induces a morphism

$$\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} \longrightarrow \flat \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$.

This induces ordinary differential cohomology:

**Proposition 6.5.89.** *There is a homotopy exact hexagon in* $\mathrm{Stab}(\mathbf{H})$ *of the form*




*where the top right morphism is that of def. 6.5.88.*

Proof. The general structure is amplified in [BNV13]; a detailed derivation for this case of ordinary differential cohomology is in the $n$Lab entry on the Deligne complex.

Next we consider cohomology in $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})$ with coefficients in objects of $\mathbf{H}$ that are canonically lifted as follows:

**Definition 6.5.90.** Write

$$(-)_\Sigma : \mathbf{H} \xrightarrow{\Sigma^*} \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma} \xrightarrow{F} \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H}) \,.$$

**Example 6.5.91.** The object $(\mathbf{\Omega}^k)_\Sigma \in \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})$ modulates differential forms on the underlying bundles of PDEs.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{E} & \longrightarrow & (\mathbf{\Omega}^k)_\Sigma = \\ & & F(\Sigma^*(\mathbf{\Omega}^k)) \\ \hline \Sigma_!(U(\mathcal{E})) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\Omega}^k \end{array}$$

Specifically for cofree PDEs this gives the differential forms on the jet bundle:

$$(\mathbf{\Omega}^k)_\Sigma(E) \simeq \Omega^k(J^\infty(E)) \,.$$

**Remark 6.5.92.** From example 6.5.91 it follows that sending the heaxgon in prop. 6.5.89 along $(-)_\Sigma$ to $(\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_{\hbar}\mathbb{Z}))_\Sigma$ exhibits ordinary differential cohomology on the underlying bundles of PDEs , in particular on the jet bundles of cofree PDEs.

However, below in sections 6.5.11 and 6.5.11.2 we are interested in differential cocycles on jet bundles only via all their pullbacks along sections. By def. 1.3.20 and prop. 1.3.21 is is precisely only the horizontal component of differential forms which matters under these pullbacks.

This means that the standard Hodge filtration, under prolongation to PDEs, produces differential cocycles with redundant information.

We now observe that after prolonging to PDEs, there is a *different* Hodge filtration which accurately picks the non-redundant horizontal components.

**Definition 6.5.93.** By proposition 1.3.36, the functorial construction of Euler-Lagrange complexes, def. 1.3.34 constitutes a presheaf of chain complexes on $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$

$$E \mapsto \mathrm{DK}[\Omega^0_H(J^\infty E) \xrightarrow{d_H} \Omega^1_H(J^\infty E) \xrightarrow{d_H} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_H} \Omega^{p+1}_H(J^\infty E) \xrightarrow{\delta_V} \Omega^{p+1,1}_S(J^\infty E)_{\mathrm{cl}}]\,.$$

When regarded in degrees 0 to $p+2$ we denote this by

$$\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet \leq p+2}_{\mathrm{EL}_\Sigma,\mathrm{cl}} \in \mathrm{PSh}(\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma, \mathrm{Ch}_\bullet) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{DK}} \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma) \xrightarrow{i_!} \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)\,.$$

**Proposition 6.5.94** (variational Poincaré lemma)**.** *There is an equivalence*

$$(\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\flat\mathbb{R})_\Sigma \simeq \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{EL}_\Sigma,\mathrm{cl}}$$

*in* $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H}_\Re)$ *between the constant* $\mathbb{R}$*-coefficients in degree* $(p+2)$ *prolonged to homotopy PDEs via def. 6.5.90), and the Euler-Lagrange complex according to def. 6.5.93. .*

Proof. By prop.6.5.87 we may equivalently show that

$$(\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{dR},\mathrm{cl}})_\Sigma \simeq \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{EL}_\Sigma,\mathrm{cl}}\,.$$

Then by prop. 6.5.85 it is sufficient to show that

$$\mathrm{U}^*((\Sigma_!)^*(\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{dR},\mathrm{cl}})) \simeq \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{EL}_\Sigma,\mathrm{cl}}$$

in $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)$. There is an implicit $\infty$-sheafification in these expressions, by definition, but since the precomposition maps $(\Sigma_!)^* \simeq (\Sigma^*)_!$ and $\mathrm{U}^* \simeq \mathrm{F}_!$ come from left Quillen functors given by corollary **??**, they commute with the left Bousfield localization that presents this $\infty$-sheafification. Therefore it is sufficient that we prove this equivalence already at the level of $\infty$-presheaves.

Now by adjunction, the presheaf on the left evaluates on a representable $\mathrm{F}(E)$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{Hom}(\mathrm{F}(E), \mathrm{U}^*((\Sigma_!)^*(\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{dR},\mathrm{cl}}))) &\simeq \mathrm{Hom}(\mathrm{U}(\mathrm{F}(E)), (\Sigma_!)^*(\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{dR},\mathrm{cl}}))\\ &\simeq \mathrm{Hom}(\Sigma_!(\mathrm{U}(\mathrm{F}(E))), \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{dR},\mathrm{cl}})\\ &\simeq \mathrm{Hom}(J^\infty_\Sigma E, \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{dR},\mathrm{cl}})\\ &\simeq \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet\leq p+2}_{\mathrm{dR},\mathrm{cl}}(J^\infty_\Sigma E)\end{aligned}$$

With this we may reduce to classical statements about the variational bicomplex: Prop. 1.3.16 says that the functoriality of the above assignment is the same as that in prop. 1.3.36, hence the claim is now given by theorem 1.3.38.

**Definition 6.5.95.** The resolution in prop. 6.5.94 induces a morphism

$$\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_{S,\mathrm{cl}} \longrightarrow (\flat\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R})_\Sigma\,.$$

We consider the homotopy pullback of that morphism along the morphism $(\flat\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{Z})_\Sigma \to (\flat\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R})_\Sigma$ from coefficients for integral cohomology to coefficients for real cohomology.

**Definition 6.5.96.** For $p+1 \in \mathbb{N}$ write

$$\mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} \in \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma) \xrightarrow{i_!} \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma) \simeq \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})$$

for the $\infty$-stack which is the image under the Dold-Kan correspondence DK, prop. **??**, of the left Kan extension, def. **??**, along the inclusion $i : \mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma \hookrightarrow \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ (remark 1.3.14) of the Euler-Lagrane complex of def. 6.5.93, directly truncated after the horizontal $p+1$-form and with a copy of $\mathbb{Z}$ injected into the horizontal 0-forms:

$$\mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq \mathrm{DK}[\mathbb{Z} \overset{2\pi\hbar}{\hookrightarrow} \mathbf{\Omega}^0_H \xrightarrow{d_H} \mathbf{\Omega}^1_H \xrightarrow{d_H} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_H} \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_H]\,.$$

**Theorem 6.5.97.** *In* $\mathrm{Stab}(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H}_\Re))$ *there is an exact hexagon of the form*

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \mathbf{\Omega}_H^{\bullet \leq p+1} & \xrightarrow{\delta_V} & \mathbf{\Omega}_{S,\mathrm{cl}}^{p+1,1} & & \\
 & \nearrow & & \searrow \quad \nearrow^{\mathrm{curv}} & & \searrow & \\
(\flat \mathbf{B}^{p+1}\mathbb{R})_\Sigma & & & \mathbf{B}_H^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} & & & (\flat \mathbf{B}^{p+1}\mathbb{R})_\Sigma \\
 & \searrow & & \nearrow \quad \searrow & & \nearrow & \\
 & & (\flat \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z}))_\Sigma & \xrightarrow[\beta_\Sigma]{} & (\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{Z})_\Sigma & &
\end{array}
$$

*where the top right morphism is that of def. 6.5.95.*

Proof. In view of the variational Poincaré lemma, prop. 6.5.94, we obtain this hexagon in $\mathrm{Stab}(\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma))$ from the Euler-Lagrange complex in direct analogy to the corresponding hexagon for the ordinary Deligne complex, prop. 6.5.89. Sending it by the Yoneda extension $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma) \to \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})$ preserves the homotopy pushouts, hence, by stability, the full homotopy exactness.

**Remark 6.5.98.** By the universal property of homotopy fibers, the exactness of the right square in the hexagon in prop. 6.5.97 means in particular that the curving of the Euler-Lagrange $p$-gerbe is precisely the obstruction to it being flat, in that the dashed morphism in the following diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & (\flat \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z}))_\Sigma & & \\
 & \overset{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{flat}}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow & & \\
E & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}} & \mathbf{B}_H^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \mathbf{\Omega}_S^{p+1}
\end{array}
$$

exists, and then uniquely so up to a contractible space of choices of equivalences, precisely if the horizontal composite is zero.

**Proposition 6.5.99.** *There are equivalences*

$$
\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}_H^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})(\Sigma, (\flat \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z}))_\Sigma) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \flat \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z}))\,.
$$

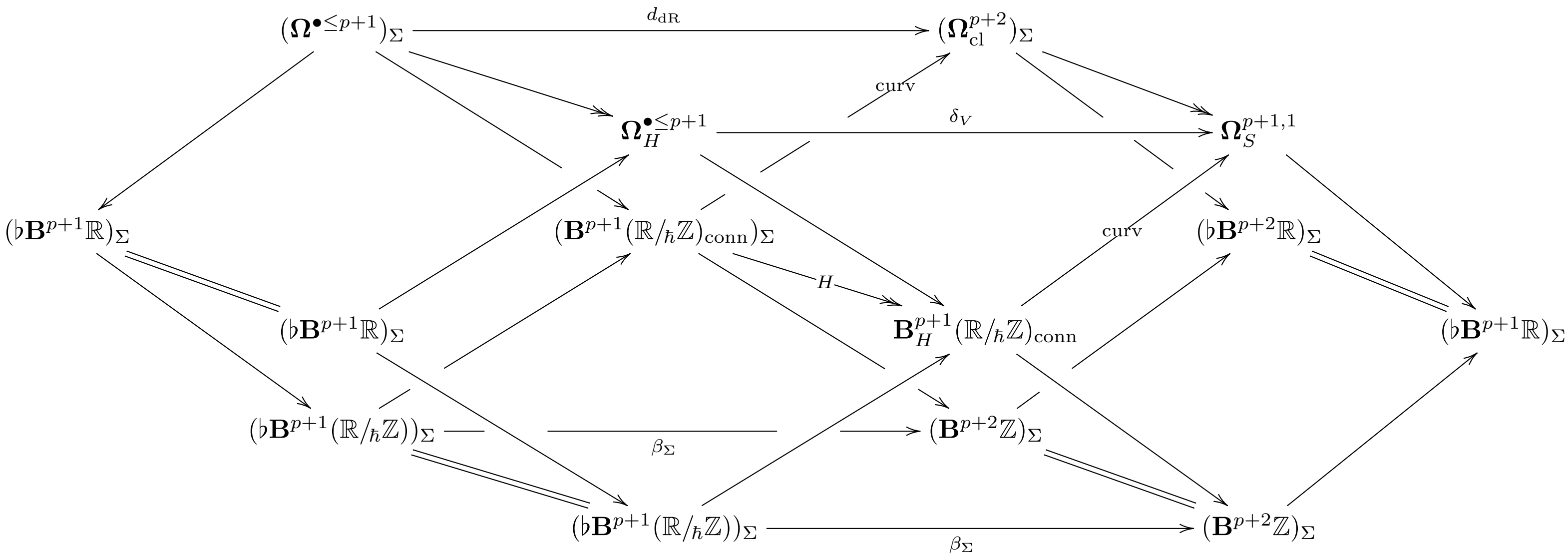
Proof. The first equivalence is obtained via remark 6.5.98 from the fact that every morphism $\Sigma \to \mathbf{\Omega}_S^{p+1,1}$ is zero. The second equivalence is the combined hom-equivalence of the adjunctions $(U \dashv F)$ and $(\Sigma_! \dashv \Sigma^*)$ in view of def. 6.5.90.

We have a canonical comparison map between ordinary differential cohomology, prop. 6.5.89, prolonged to PDEs, and the Euler-Lagrange differential cohomology of prop. 6.5.97:

**Definition 6.5.100.** By example 6.5.91, projection of differential forms on jet bundles to the horizontal and their source form part, which is natural over $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$ by prop. 1.3.36, constitutes projection operations that intertwine the de Rham differential with the variational Euler differential:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
(\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet \leq p+1})_\Sigma & \xrightarrow{(d_{\mathrm{dR}})_\Sigma} & (\mathbf{\Omega}_{\mathrm{cl}}^{p+2}) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{\Omega}_H^{\bullet \leq p+1} & \xrightarrow{\delta_V} & \mathbf{\Omega}_S^{p+1,1}
\end{array}
\,.
$$

Via the universal properties of the exactness of the hexagons in prop. 6.5.89 and prop. 6.5.97 this induces a projection of differential cohomology coefficients,




which we denote

$$H : (\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}})_\Sigma \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

### 6.5.11 Prequantum local Lagrangian field theory

This section draws from [KhaSc].

The following is the prequantum analog of def. 1.3.42.

**Definition 6.5.101.** Given $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/\Sigma}$ then

1. a *pre-quantum local Lagrangian* on $E$ is a morphism in $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma)$ of the form

$$\mathbf{L} : E \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} ,$$

2. the *Euler-Lagrange form* of such $\mathbf{L}$ is the curvature

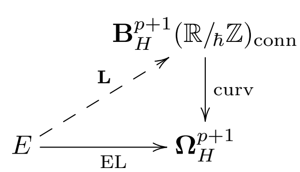
$$\mathrm{EL} := \delta_V \mathbf{L} : E \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}} \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{\delta_V} \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_S .$$

3. the *Euler-Lagrange equations* of $\mathbf{L}$ is the homotopy fiber of EL

$$\mathcal{E} := \mathrm{fib}(\mathrm{EL}) .$$

**Remark 6.5.102** (terminology)**.** We also say that the pair $(E, \mathbf{L})$ is (or defines) a *prequantum field theory.*

Given a source form $\mathrm{EL} : E \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1}_S$ we also say that a prequantum Lagrangian $\mathbf{L} : E \to \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is a *prequantization* of EL if $\delta_V \mathbf{L} \simeq \mathrm{EL}$, i.e. if $\mathbf{L}$ is a lift of EL through the curvature map:



**Proposition 6.5.103.** *For $\omega \in \Omega_S^{p+1,1}(E)$ a source form, then the partial differential equation $\mathcal{E}$ induced by it via def. 1.3.39 is equivalently the kernel in* $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H}) \simeq \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)$ *of the representing morphism* $\omega : E \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}_S^{p+1,1}$*:*

$$
\begin{array}{l}
\mathcal{E} \\
\downarrow^{\ker(\omega)} \\
E \xrightarrow{\ \omega\ } \mathbf{\Omega}_S^{p+1,1}
\end{array}
$$

Proof. Since this is a statement about a limit of 0-truncated objects in $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H}) \simeq \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)$, we may consider the question equivalently is the sheaf 1-topos $\mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)$. Now unwinding the definitions, one sees that for a representable $\mathcal{F} \in \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ to map through the kernel of $\omega$ is equivalent to it mapping through the equalizer of the differential operator $\widetilde{\omega}$ that corresponds to it under the isomorphism in prop. 1.3.26 with the 0-morphism, as in prop. 1.3.40:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{F} & & \\
\downarrow^{i} & \searrow^{0 = i^*\omega} & \\
E & \xrightarrow[\omega]{} & \mathbf{\Omega}_S^{p+1,1}
\end{array}
\quad \simeq \quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{F} & & \\
\downarrow^{i} & \searrow^{i^*\tilde{0} = i^*\tilde{\omega}} & \\
E & \underset{\widetilde{\omega}}{\overset{\tilde{0}}{\rightrightarrows}} & \wedge^{p+1}T^*\Sigma \times_\Sigma V^*E
\end{array}
$$

But since these equalized morphisms are morphism in the site $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$, and since the Yoneda embedding $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma)$ preserves limits, we may compute the fiber equivalently in $\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma$ as this equalizer. With this the statement is given by prop. 1.3.40.

**6.5.11.1 Prequantum covariant phase space** We discuss the prequantum version of of the (pre-)symplectic covariant phase space from section 1.3.1.6.2.

Since the covariant phase space consists of fields in codimension-1, hence on $p$-dimensional submanifolds $\Sigma_p \hookrightarrow \Sigma$, we produce yet another Hodge filtration of $(\flat \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R})_\Sigma$, now the one which has minimal kernel when pulled back along sections in dimension $p$.

**Definition 6.5.104.** The *Lepage complex* is the chain complex (of presheaves on $\mathrm{DiffOp}_\Sigma$)

$$
\mathbf{\Omega}^\bullet_{\mathrm{L}} := \left[
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
\cdots & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \mathbf{\Omega}_H^{p-1} & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \mathbf{\Omega}_H^{p} & \xrightarrow{d_H} & \mathbf{\Omega}_H^{p+1} & & \\
& \searrow^{d_V} & \oplus & \searrow^{d_V} & \oplus & \searrow^{d_V} & \underset{\mathrm{coim}(\mathcal{I}(d_V \oplus d_H))}{\oplus} & \searrow^{d_V} & \\
\cdots & \xrightarrow[d_H]{} & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p-2,1}_{\ker(d_V)} & \xrightarrow[d_H]{} & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p-1,1}_{\ker(d_V)} & \xrightarrow[d_H]{} & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p,1} & \xrightarrow[d_H]{} & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_{S,\ker(\delta_V)} \\
& & & & & & & \searrow_{d_V} & \oplus \\
& & & & & & & & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p,2}_{\mathrm{cl},\ker(d_V)}
\end{array}
\right],
$$

which is the total complex of the "2-term outer rim" of the augmented variational bicomplex, prop. 1.3.35.

This constitutes yet another Hodge filtration for $(\flat \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{R})_\Sigma$ and further factors the projection in def.

6.5.100

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
(\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet \leq p+1})_\Sigma & \xrightarrow{(d_{\mathrm{dR}})_\Sigma} & (\mathbf{\Omega}^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}})_\Sigma \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet \leq p+1}_L & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_{S,\ker(\delta_V)} \oplus \mathbf{\Omega}^{p,2}_{\ker(d_V)} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet \leq p+1}_H & \xrightarrow{\delta_V} & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_{S,\ker(\delta_V)}
\end{array}
.
$$

Accordingly, induced from this is the corresponding differential coefficients $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}_L(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in direct analogy to the big diagram in def. 6.5.100.

Given a globally defined local Lagrangian

$$
L : E \longrightarrow \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet \leq p+1}_H
$$

then a lift of this through the Lepage complex such that the curvatures commute

$$
\begin{array}{cccccc}
 & & \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet \leq p+1}_L & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_{S,\ker(\delta_V)} \oplus \mathbf{\Omega}^{p,2}_{\ker(d_V)} \\
 & \nearrow^{L+\theta} & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
E & \xrightarrow{L} & \mathbf{\Omega}^{\bullet \leq p+1}_H & \xrightarrow{\delta_V} & \mathbf{\Omega}^{p+1,1}_{S,\ker(\delta_V)}
\end{array}
.
$$

is a choice of $\theta$ in $dL = \mathrm{EL} + d_H\theta$ (remark 1.3.43). Indeed, the lifted curvature coefficients are precisely so as to ask for a Lepage form for $L$ of vertical degree $\leq 2$.

Now by the yoga of the big diagram in def. 6.5.100 this gives us the right "Lepage gerbes" as lifts

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
 & & \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_L(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
 & \nearrow^{\mathbf{L}+\mathbf{\Theta}} & \downarrow \\
E & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}} & \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}
\end{array}
$$

Pulling these Lepage gerbes back along sections on a codimension-1 Cauchy surface $\Sigma_p \hookrightarrow \Sigma$ (which makes the contribution of $L$ disappear and retains only the contribution of $\theta$) is precisely a prequantization for the canonical symplectic structure on the covariant phase space (even off-shell).

**Definition 6.5.105.** Given a morphism $f : X \longrightarrow Y$ in $\mathbf{H}$, we say that the formal normal bundle $N^\infty_Y X \in \mathbf{H}_{/Y}$ of $X$ in $Y$ is the formal étalification of $f$, hence the homotopy pullback in

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
N^\infty_Y X & \longrightarrow & \Im X \\
{\scriptstyle \mathrm{et} f}\downarrow & (\mathrm{pb}) & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \Im f} \\
Y & \longrightarrow & \Im Y
\end{array}
$$

**Proposition 6.5.106.** *Jet bundles are preserved by pullback along inclusions of formal normal bundles, def. 6.5.105, i.e. for $f : X \to Y$ a morphism and $E \in \mathbf{H}_{/Y}$ a bundle, then*

$$
(\mathrm{et} f)^* J^\infty_Y E \simeq J^\infty_X f^* E\,.
$$

Proof. The homotopy pullback in def. 6.5.105 induces a square of base change operations

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{H}_{/N_Y^\infty X} & \underset{(\eta^{\Im}_{N_Y^\infty X})_*}{\overset{(\eta^{\Im}_{N_Y^\infty X})^*}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathbf{H}_{/\Im N_Y^\infty X} \\
(\mathrm{et}f)_* \downarrow \uparrow (\mathrm{et}f)^* & & (\Im\mathrm{et}f)_* \downarrow \uparrow (\Im\mathrm{et}f)^* \\
\mathbf{H}_{/Y} & \underset{(\eta^{\Im}_{Y})_*}{\overset{(\eta^{\Im}_{Y})^*}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathbf{H}_{/\Im Y}
\end{array} .$$

By Beck-Chevalley this implies that

$$(\Im\mathrm{et}f)^*(\eta^{\Im}_Y)_* \simeq (\eta^{\Im}_{N_Y^\infty X})_*(\mathrm{et}f)^* .$$

Using this we find

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathrm{et}f)^* J_Y^\infty E &:= (\mathrm{et}f)^*(\eta^{\Im}_Y)^*(\eta^{\Im}_Y)_* E \\
&\simeq (\eta^{\Im}_{N_Y^\infty X})^*(\Im\mathrm{et}f)^*(\eta^{\Im}_Y)_* E \\
&\simeq (\eta^{\Im}_{N_Y^\infty X})^*(\eta^{\Im}_{N_Y^\infty X})_*(\mathrm{et}f)^* E \\
&=: J_Y^\infty (\mathrm{et}f)^* E .
\end{aligned}$$

**Definition 6.5.107.** Given a Lepage $p$-gerbe $\mathbf{\Theta} : \mathcal{E} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}_L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$, then given a codimension-1 submanifold $\Sigma_p \hookrightarrow \Sigma$ of spacetime/worldvolume, the corresponding covariant phase space is the transgression

$$\int_{\Sigma_p} [N_\Sigma^\infty \Sigma_p, \mathbf{\Theta}] \; : \; [N_\Sigma^\infty \Sigma_p, \mathcal{E}] \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

#### 6.5.11.2 Globally defined local action functionals

Assume here that $\Sigma$ is a *closed* $(p+1)$-dimensional smooth manifold.

**Proposition 6.5.108.** *The connected components of the hom-space from $\Sigma$ into the $(p+1)$-fold delooping of the discrete circle group is isomorphic to that same discrete circle group*

$$\tau_0 \mathbf{H}_{\Re}(\Sigma, \flat \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})) \simeq \flat \mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z} .$$

*Moreover, under this identification and the Poincaré lemma, prop. 6.5.87, the 0-truncation map coincides with $(p+1)$-volume holonomy of $p$-gerbes on $\Sigma$:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{H}_{\Re}(\Sigma, \flat\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})) & & \\
\downarrow \simeq & \overset{\pi_0}{\searrow} & \\
 & & \flat(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z}) \\
 & \underset{\int_\Sigma}{\nearrow} & \\
\mathbf{H}_{\Re}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}) & &
\end{array}$$

**Definition 6.5.109.** Given a prequantum local Lagrangian $\mathbf{L} : E \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}_\Sigma^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ (def. 6.5.101), and given a section $\phi : \Sigma \longrightarrow E$, then the *action function* induced by $\mathbf{L}$ at $\phi$ is

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar} S_{\mathbf{L}}(-)) : \; \Gamma_\Sigma(E) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})(\Sigma, E) \xrightarrow{(-)^*\mathbf{L}} \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}_H^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{H}_{\Re}(\Sigma, \flat\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z})) \xrightarrow{\pi_0} \flat(\mathbb{R}/\hbar\mathbb{Z}) \;,$$

where the first equivalence is as in example 1.3.15, the second equivalence is from prop. 6.5.99, and the last map is from prop. 6.5.108.

A smooth function

$$\mathbf{\Gamma}_\Sigma(E) \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z}$$

(on the diffeological space of smooth sections, def. 1.3.46) is called a (globally defined) *local action functional* if its restriction to points (forgetting the smooth structure) arises from a prequantum Lagrangian in this fashion.

#### 6.5.11.3 Sigma-models

**Definition 6.5.110.** A prequantum field theory, def. 6.5.101, $\mathbf{L} : E \to \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})$, is a *sigma model* if $E$ is in the image of $(-)_\Sigma : \mathbf{H} \longrightarrow \mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H})$, def. 6.5.90, for some $X \in \mathbf{H}$. In this case $X$ is called the *target space* of the sigma model.

**Remark 6.5.111.** By adjointness, field configurations of sigma-models are equivalently maps from $\Sigma$ to $X$:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \Sigma & \longrightarrow & (X)_\Sigma = F(\Sigma^*(X)) \\ \hline \Sigma \simeq U(\Sigma) & \longrightarrow & \Sigma^*(X) \\ \hline \Sigma \simeq \Sigma_!\Sigma & \longrightarrow & X \end{array}$$

As such, sigma-models may be thought of as describing the dynamics of trajectories of shape $\Sigma$ in $X$. In practice this arises in two guises:

1. $\Sigma$ models spacetime and $X$ is a moduli space of certain scalar fields on $\Sigma$.
2. $X$ models spacetime and $\Sigma$ models the worldvolume of a $p$-brane propagating in $X$.

**Definition 6.5.112.** A *WZW-type Lagrangian* $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ for a sigma-model, def. 6.5.110, with target space $X$ is a prequantum Lagrangian, def. 6.5.101, which is the image under

$$\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}} \stackrel{(-)_\Sigma}{\longrightarrow} \mathbf{H}_{/(\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}})_\Sigma} \stackrel{H_!}{\longrightarrow} (\mathrm{PDE}_\Sigma(\mathbf{H}))_{/\mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}}\,,$$

(where the first morphism is def. 6.5.90, the second is postcomposition with the projection from def. 6.5.100), of some principal connection $X \stackrel{\nabla}{\longrightarrow} \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}}$:

$$\left( \begin{array}{c} \Sigma \times X \\ \downarrow{}^{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} \\ \mathbf{B}^{p+1}_H(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array} \right) = H_! \circ F \circ \Sigma^* \left( \begin{array}{c} X \\ \downarrow{}^{\nabla} \\ \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/_\hbar\mathbb{Z})_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array} \right) .$$

## 6.6 Supergeometric homotopy types

We discuss $\infty$-groupoids equipped with *discrete super cohesion*, with *smooth super cohesion* and *formal super cohesion*, where "super" is in the sense of *superalgebra* and *supergeometry* (see for instance [DelMor99] for a review of traditional superalgebra and supergeometry).

After discussing the construction in

- 6.6.1 – Construction

we discuss the various general abstract structures in a cohesive $\infty$-topos, 5.2, realized in Super$\infty$Grpd and SmoothSuper$\infty$Grpd.

- 6.6.4 – $\mathbb{A}^{0|1}$-Localization and the Odd Continuum
- 6.6.5 – Infinitesimal neighbourhoods and Lie algebras
- 6.6.6 – Associated bundles
- 6.6.7 – Exponentiated $\infty$-Lie algebras

### 6.6.1 Construction

We first introduce *discrete super $\infty$-groupoids* which have super-grading but no smooth structure. This is the canonical context in which (higher) *superalgebra* takes place: an $\mathbb{R}$-module internal to super $\infty$-groupoids is externally a chain complex of *super vector spaces* and an $\mathbb{R}$-algebra internal to super $\infty$-groupoids is externally a real *superalgebra*. Then we add smooth structure by passing further to *smooth super $\infty$-groupoids*. This is the canonical context for supergeometry. Notably the traditional category of smooth supermanifolds faithfully embeds into smooth super $\infty$-groupoids. Finally we further refine to *formal super $\infty$-groupoids* where the smooth structure is refined by explicit commutative infinitesimals in addition to the super/graded infinitesimals of supergeometry. In summary, this yields a super-refinement of three cohesive structures discussed before:

| supergeometric refinement | differential geometry | discussed in section |
|---|---|---|
| Super$\infty$Grpd | Disc$\infty$Grpd | 6.2 |
| SmoothSuper$\infty$Grpd | Smooth$\infty$Grpd | 6.4 |
| FormalSuper$\infty$Grpd | FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd | 6.5 |

Accordingly, the canonical site of definition of the most inclusive of these cohesive $\infty$-toposes, which is FormalSuper$\infty$Grpd, contains objects denoted $\mathbb{R}^{p\oplus s|q}$ – *formal super Cartesian spaces* – that have three gradings:

- an ordinary dimension $p$;
- an order $s$ of their infinitesimal thickening;
- an odd super dimension $q$.

In terms of the formally dual function algebras $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{p\oplus k|l})$ on these objects, $k$ is the number of *commuting* nilpotent generators, while $q$ is the number of *graded-commuting* nilpotent generators. In this sense supergeometry may be understood as a $\mathbb{Z}_2$-graded variant of synthetic differential geometry. This is a perspective that had been explored in [Yet88] and more recently in [CaRo12].

Of course $\infty$-groupoids $X$ over this synthetic supergeometric site have furthermore their homotopy theoretic degree, their simplicial grading when modeled by simplicial presheaves

$$X : (\mathbb{R}^{p\oplus s|q}, \Delta^k) \mapsto X_k(\mathbb{R}^{p\oplus s|q}) \in \mathrm{Set}\,.$$

While for some applications it is useful to regard all these “kinds of dimension” as being on equal footing, for other applications it is useful to order them more hierarchically. Specifically the role played by supergeometry in applications is well reflected by the perspective where smooth/synthetic differential supergeometry is regarded as ordinary smooth/synthetic differential geometry but *internal* to the “bare super context”, which is the context parameterized over just the *superpoints* $\mathbb{R}^{0|q}$. This perspective on supergeometry had been proposed independently in 1984 in [Schw84], [Mol84] and [Vor84]. A review is in the appendix of [KonSch00], whose main part discusses aspects of those synthetic differential superspaces in this language.

In terms of (higher) topos theory this perspective means that passing from higher differential geometry to higher supergeometry is to change the *base* $\infty$*-topos* from that of ordinary geometrically discrete $\infty$-groupoids $\mathrm{Disc}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq L_{\mathrm{whe}}\mathrm{Top}$ to that of “super $\infty$-groupoids” $\mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grp} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\{\mathbb{R}^{0|q}\}_q)$ which still have no finite continuous/smooth geometric structure but which do have super-grading.

We find below the $\infty$-toposes for differential-, synthetic differential- and supergeometry to arrange in a diagram of geometric morphisms of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{SmoothSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{FormalSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} & \longrightarrow & \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \end{array} .$$

Here the bottom line is the differential cohesion over the base of discrete $\infty$-groupoids discussed in 6.5. The top line is the super-refinement exhibited by differential cohesion, but now over the base Super$\infty$Grpd of discrete but “super” $\infty$-groupoids. This diagram of $\infty$-toposes we present by a diagram of sites which, with the above notation for formal super Cartesian spaces, looks as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \{\mathbb{R}^{p|q}\}_{p,q} & \hookrightarrow & \{\mathbb{R}^{p\oplus s|q}\}_{p,s,q} & \longrightarrow & \{\mathbb{R}^{0|q}\}_q \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{\mathbb{R}^{p}\}_{p} & \hookrightarrow & \{\mathbb{R}^{p\oplus s}\}_{p,s} & \longrightarrow & \{*\} \end{array} .$$

### 6.6.2 Super smooth $\infty$-groupoids

**Definition 6.6.1.** Let $\mathrm{GrassmannAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}$ be the category whose objects are finite dimensional free $\mathbb{Z}_2$-graded commutative $\mathbb{R}$-algebras (Grassmann algebras). Write

$$\mathrm{SuperPoint} := \mathrm{GrassmannAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

for its opposite category. For $q \in \mathbb{N}$ we write $\mathbb{R}^{0|q} \in \mathrm{SuperPoint}$ for the object corresponding to the free $\mathbb{Z}_2$-graded commutative algebra on $q$ generators and speak of the *superpoint* of order $q$.

We think of SuperPoint as a site by equipping it with the trivial coverage.

**Definition 6.6.2.** Write

$$\mathrm{SuperSet} := \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{SuperPoint}) \simeq \mathrm{PSh}(\mathrm{SuperPoint})$$

for the topos of presheaves over SuperPoint.

**Definition 6.6.3.** Write

$$\mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{SuperPoint}) \simeq \mathrm{PSh}_\infty(\mathrm{SuperPoint})$$

for the $\infty$-topos of $\infty$-sheaves over SuperPoint. We say an object $X \in \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is a *super $\infty$-groupoid.*

**Proposition 6.6.4.** *The $\infty$-topos* Super$\infty$Grpd *is infinitesimal cohesive, def. 4.1.21 over* $\infty$Grpd.

Proof. The ordinary point in SuperPoints is both the terminal object but also the initial object, since superpoints are infinitesimally thickened points in that they only have one global actual point. Therefore the statement follows with prop. 4.1.24. □

We regard higher superalgebra and higher supergeometry as being the higher algebra and geometry *over the base ∞-topos* ([Joh02], chapter B3) Super∞Grpd instead of over the canonical base ∞-topos ∞Grpd. Except for the topos-theoretic rephrasing, this perspective has originally been suggested in [Schw84] and [Mol84].

**Proposition 6.6.5.** *The ∞-topos* Super∞Grpd *is cohesive, def. 4.1.8.*

$$\mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \underset{\mathrm{coDisc}}{\overset{\Pi}{\rightleftarrows}} \infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

Proof. The site SuperPoint is ∞-cohesive, according to def. 4.1.31. Hence the claim follows by prop. 4.1.32. □

**Proposition 6.6.6.** *The inclusion* $\mathrm{Disc} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *exhibits the collection of super ∞-groupoids as forming an infinitesimal cohesive neighbourhood, def. 4.2.1, of the discrete ∞-groupoids, 6.2.*

Proof. Observe that the point inclusion $i : \mathrm{Point} := * \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SuperPoint}$ is both left and right adjoint to the unique projection $p : \mathrm{SuperPoint} \to \mathrm{Point}$. Therefore we have even a periodic sequence of adjunctions

$$(\cdots \dashv i^* \dashv p^* \dashv i^* \dashv p^* \dashv \cdots) : \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,,$$

and $p^* \simeq \mathrm{Disc} \simeq \mathrm{coDisc}$ is full and faithful. □

**Definition 6.6.7.** Write $\mathbb{R} \in \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ for the presheaf $\mathrm{SuperPoint}^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathrm{Set} \hookrightarrow \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ given by

$$\mathbb{R} : \mathbb{R}^{0|q} \mapsto C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{0|q}) := (\Lambda_q)_{\mathrm{even}}\,,$$

which sends the order-$q$ superpoint to the underlying set of the even subalgebra of the Grassmann algebra on $q$ generators.

**Remark 6.6.8.** The object $\mathbb{R} \in \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is canonically equipped with the structure of an internal ring object. Morever, under both $\Pi$ and $\Gamma$ it maps to the ordinary real line $\mathbb{R} \in \mathrm{Set} \hookrightarrow \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ while respecting the ring structures on both sides.

The following observation is due to [Mol84].

**Proposition 6.6.9.** *The theory of ordinary (linear)* $\mathbb{R}$*-algebra internal to the 1-topos*

$$\mathrm{SuperSet} = \mathrm{Super0Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

*is equivalent to the theory of* $\mathbb{R}$*-superalgebra in* Set*.*

**Definition 6.6.10.** Write sCartSp for the full subcategory of that of supermanifolds on those that are super Cartesian spaces: $\{\mathbb{R}^{p|q}\}_{p,q\in\mathbb{N}}$. Regard this as a site by equipping it with the coverage whose covering families are of the form $\{U_i \times \mathbb{R}^{0|q} \stackrel{(p_1,\mathrm{id})}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{R}^{p|q}\}$ for $\{U_i \to \mathbb{R}^p\}$ a differentiably good open cover, def. 6.4.2.

**Remark 6.6.11.** A morphism $\mathbb{R}^{p_1|q_1} \to \mathbb{R}^{p_2|q_2}$ in $\mathrm{CartSp}_{\mathrm{super}}$ is equivalently a tuple consisting of $p_2$ even elements and $q_2$ odd elements of the superalgebra $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{p_1|q_1})$. In particular, under the restricted Yoneda embedding the line of def. 6.6.7 is $\mathbb{R} \simeq \mathbb{R}^{1|0}$.

**Definition 6.6.12.** Write

$$\mathrm{SmoothSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{sCartSp}_{\mathrm{smooth}})\,.$$

An object in this ∞-topos we call a *smooth super ∞-groupoid*.

### 6.6.3 Super formal smooth $\infty$-groupoids

**Definition 6.6.13.** Write

$$\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{CAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

for the full subcategory on those formal duals of commutative $\mathbb{R}$-algebras which are tensor products of an algebra $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$ of smooth functions on a Cartesian space of some dimension $n \in \mathbb{N}$ with an $\mathbb{R}$-algebra of the form $\mathbb{R} \oplus V$ for $V$ a finite dimensional nilpotent ideal. Write

$$\mathrm{SuperFormalSmoothCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{sCAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

for the full subcategory on those formal duals of super-commutative super-$\mathbb{R}$-algebras which are tensor products $C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^p) \otimes_{\mathbb{R}} (\mathbb{R} \oplus V) \otimes_{\mathbb{R}} \wedge^\bullet \mathbb{R}^q$ of such an even graded algebra formally dual to an object in FormalSmoothCartSp with a Grassmann algebra.

Regard both these categories as sites by equipping them with the coverage whose cover famlies are those of the form $\{U_i \times D \stackrel{(\phi_i, \mathrm{id})}{\longrightarrow} U \times D\}$ for $\{U_i \stackrel{\phi_i}{\longrightarrow} X\}$ a differentially good open cover of Cartesian spaces.

The following is immediate but conceptually important. One place where this has been stated explicitly is [CaRo12, example 3.18]

**Proposition 6.6.14.** *The canonical full inclusion of the categories of def. 6.6.13 has a left adjoint, given by projecting out the even-graded subalgebra, and a right adjoint, given by quotienting out the ideal generated by the odd-graded elements*

$$\mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp} \underoverset{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}{\hookrightarrow} \mathrm{SuperFormalSmoothCartSp}$$

**Definition 6.6.15.** Write

$$\mathrm{SuperFormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_\infty(\mathrm{SuperFormalSmoothCartSp})$$

for the hypercomplete $\infty$-topos over the site of def. 6.6.13.

**Proposition 6.6.16.** *Equipped with the (co-)monads induced by the adjoint quadruple given by Kan extension of the bireflective inclusion of sites of prop. 6.6.14*

$$\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \begin{array}{c} \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \end{array} \mathrm{SuperFormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

*and with the elastic structure on* FormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd *given by prop. 6.5.11, then* SuperFormalSmooth$\infty$Grpd, *def. 6.6.15, is solid substance, in the sense of def. 4.3.1.*

Proof. First of all SuperSmooth$\infty$Grpd is cohesive over $\infty$Grpd since SuperFormalCartSp is an $\infty$-cohesive site, def. 4.1.31, by the same argument as in the proof of prop. 6.5.8. Second, the composite inclusion of sites

$$\mathrm{SmoothCartSp} \begin{array}{c} \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \end{array} \mathrm{FormalSmoothCartSp} \begin{array}{c} \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \end{array} \mathrm{SuperFormalSmoothCartSp}$$

still exhibits an infinitesimal neighbourhood site, def. 4.2.8 so that prop. 4.2.9 gives that the induced inclusion

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \begin{array}{c} \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \end{array} \mathrm{SuperFormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

exhibits elasticity. In view of this the composite adjoints

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \begin{array}{c} \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \end{array} \mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \begin{array}{c} \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \\ \longleftarrow \\ \hookrightarrow \end{array} \mathrm{SuperFormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

lift the $(\Im \dashv \Re)$ operations of FormalSmooth∞Grpd and provides the resolution followed by further opposition expressed by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \rightrightarrows & \dashv & \rightsquigarrow \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \rightsquigarrow & \dashv & \mathrm{Rh} \\ \vee & & \vee \\ \Im & \dashv & \Re \end{array}.$$

It remains to check that $\rightsquigarrow \Im \simeq \Im$. Testing this on a representable $U \times D_s$ with $U \in$ SmoothCartSp and $D_s$ a superpoint with even infinitesimally thickened point $D$, we find by adjointness that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}(U \times D_s, \overset{\rightsquigarrow}{\Im} X) &\simeq \mathbf{H}(U \overset{\rightrightarrows}{\times} D_s, \Im X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(U \times D, \Im X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(\Re(U \times D), X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(U, X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(\Re(U \times D_s), X) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(U \times D_s, \Im X)\,, \end{aligned}$$

where we used that, by the above composite inclusion of infinitesimal neighbourhood sites, reduction $\Re$ contracts away both super as well as even-graded infinitesimal thickening. □

### 6.6.4 $\mathbb{A}^{0|1}$-Localization and the Odd Continuum

**Proposition 6.6.17.** *The odd line*

$$\mathbb{R}^{0|1} \in \mathrm{SuperCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SuperFormalSmoothCartSp} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SuperFormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

*exhibits the solidity of* SuperFormalSmooth∞Grpd*, def. 6.6.15, in the sense of def. .*

Proof. By definition 6.6.13, the objects of the site SuperFormalSmoothCartSp are of the form $\mathbb{R}^p \times D \times (\mathbb{R}^{0|1})^q$ for $p, q \in \mathbb{N}$ and for $D \in$ InfPoint an infinitesimally thickened point, hence with $\mathbb{R}^p \times D \in$ FormalSmoothCartSp. Therefore the proof of prop. 5.2.51 generalizes immediately to this situation, with the trivial reference site $*$ replaced by FormalSmoothCartSp. This shows that the left adjoint of the localization adjunction is given on representatives by contracting away the powers of the odd line:

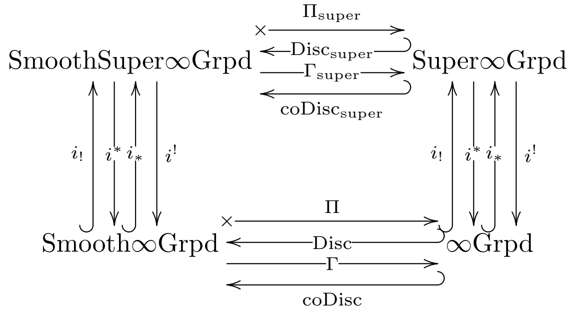
$$\mathbb{R}^p \times D \times \mathbb{R}^{0|q} \;\mapsto\; \mathbb{R}^p \times D\,.$$

This is the same action on representables as that of the third adjoint counting from the top in prop. 6.6.16, which is left Kan extension of (and hence agrees on representables with) the operation which on formal dual algebras quotients out the ideal generated by the odd part. Since both ∞-functors are left adjoints and hence preserve ∞-colimits, they are equivalent as soon as they agree on representables this way. The statement then follows by the essential uniqueness of the right adjoint. □

### 6.6.5 Infinitesimal neighbourhoods and Lie algebras

We discuss the implementation of the general discussion of infinitesimal neighbourhoods and relative cohesion, 5.3.6, in supergeometric cohesion. This proceeds directly analogous to the discussion in form formal smooth cohesion in 6.5.2.5, with the commuting infinitesimals there simply replaced by the $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$-graded commuting infinitesimals of supergeometry.

**Proposition 6.6.18.** *We have a commuting diagram of cohesive $\infty$-toposes which exhibits* Super$\infty$Grpd *as an $\infty$-pushout*




*Hence*

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmoothSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Super}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

*exhibits differential and relative cohesion on smooth super $\infty$-groupoids, def. 4.2.1, def. 5.3.62.*

Proof. By def. 6.6.10 the arguments of 6.4 apply verbatim at the stage of each fixed superpoint, and this gives the cohesion over Super$\infty$Grpd, hence the top vertical adjoint quadruple in the above. The right vertical morphisms exhibit infinitesimal cohesion by prop. 6.6.4. That the resulting diagram is an $\infty$-pushout follows now with the same argument as in the proof of prop. 6.5.15. □

For emphasis we shall refer to the objects of Super$\infty$Grp as *discrete super $\infty$-groupoids*: these refine discrete $\infty$-groupoids, 6.2 with super-cohesion and are themselves further refined by smooth super $\infty$-groupoids with smooth cohesion.

### 6.6.6 Associated bundles

We discuss aspects of the general notion of associated fiber $\infty$-bundles, 5.1.12, realized in the context of supergeometric cohesion.

In 6.4.9 above we discussed the 2-stack $2\mathbf{Line}_{\mathbb{C}}$ of smooth complex line 2-bundles. Since the $B$-field that the bosonic string is charged under has moduli in the differential refinement $\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{C}^\times_{\mathrm{conn}}$, we may hence say that it is given by 2-connections on complex *2-line bundles*. However, a careful analysis (due [DiFrMo11] and made more explicit in [Fr99]) shows that for the superstring the background $B$-field is more refined. Expressed in the language of higher stacks the statement is that it is a connection on a complex *super*-2-line bundle. Precisely, in the language of stacks for supergeometry we are to pass to the higher topos SmoothSuper$\infty$Grpd $\simeq$ $\mathrm{Sh}_\infty$(SuperMfd) on the site of smooth supermanifolds, 6.6. Internal to that the term *algebra* now means *superalgebra* and hence the 2-stack

$$2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}} \in \mathrm{SmoothSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

now has global points that are identified with complex Azumaya *super*algebras. Of these it turns out there is, up to equivalence, not just one, but two: the canonical super 2-line and its "superpartner". Moreover, there are now, up to equivalence, two different invertible 2-linear maps from each of these super-lines to itself. In summary, the homotopy sheaves of the super 2-stack of super line 2-bundles are

- $\pi_0(2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}_2$,
- $\pi_1(2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}_2$,
- $\pi_2(2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}}) \simeq \mathbb{C}^\times \in \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{SuperMfd})$.

(where in the last line we emphasize that the *homotopy sheaf* is that represented by $\mathbb{C}^\times$ as a smooth (super-)manifold). With the discussion in 5.2.3 it follows that the geometric realization of this 2-stack has homotopy groups

- $\pi_0(|2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}}|) \simeq \mathbb{Z}_2$,
- $\pi_1(|2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}}|) \simeq \mathbb{Z}_2$,
- $\pi_2(|2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}}|) \simeq 0$,
- $\pi_3(|2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}}|) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$.

These are precisely the correct coefficients for the twists of complex K-theory, witnessing the fact that the B-field background of the superstring twists the Chan-Paton bundles on the D-branes.

The braided monoidal structure of $2\mathrm{sVect}_{\mathbb{C}}$ induces on $2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}}$ the structure of a *braided 3-group*. Therefore the above general abstract definition of universal moduli for differential cocycles/higher connections produces a moduli 3-stack $\mathbf{B}(2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ which is the supergeometric refinement of the coefficient object $\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{C}^\times_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the extended Lagrangian of bosonic 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory. Therefore for $G$ a super-Lie group a super-Chern-Simons theory that induces the super-WZW action functional on $G$ is given by an extended Lagragian which is a map of higher moduli stacks of the form

$$\mathbf{L}: \ \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}(2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}})_{\mathrm{conn}} \ .$$

By the canonical inclusion $\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{C}^\times_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}(2\mathbf{sLine}_{\mathbb{C}})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ every bosonic extended Lagrangian of 3-d Chern-Simons type induces such a supergeometric theory with trivial super-grading part.

### 6.6.7 Exponentiated Lie algebras

According to prop. 6.6.9 the following definition is justified.

**Definition 6.6.19.** A *super $L_\infty$-algebra* is an $L_\infty$-algebra, def. 1.2.150, internal to the topos SuperSet, def. 6.6.2, over the ring object $\mathbb{R}$ from def. 6.6.7.

**Observation 6.6.20.** The Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$, def. 1.2.153, of a super $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is externally

- a graded-commutative algebra over $\mathbb{R}$ on generators of bigree in $(\mathbb{N}_+, \mathbb{Z}_2)$ – the *homotopical degree* $\deg_h$ and the *super degree* $\deg_s$;
- such that for any two generators $a, b$ the product satisfies
$$ab = (-1)^{\mathrm{def}_h(a)\deg_h(b) + \mathrm{def}_s(a)\deg_s(b)}\; ba\,;$$
- and equipped with a differential $d_{\mathrm{CE}}$ of bidegree $(1, \mathrm{even})$ such that $d_{\mathrm{CE}}^2 = 0$.

**Examples 6.6.21.**
- Every ordinary $L_\infty$-algebra is canonically a super $L_\infty$-algebra where all element are of even superdegree.
- Ordinary super Lie algebras are canonically identified with precisely the super Lie 1-algebras.
- For every $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there is the *super line super Lie $(n+1)$-algebra* $b^n\mathbb{R}^{0|1}$ characterized by the fact that its Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra has trivial differential and a single generator in bidegree $(n, \mathrm{odd})$.
- For $\mathfrak{g}$ any super $L_\infty$-algebra and $\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to b^n\mathbb{R}$ a cocycle, its homotopy fiber is the super $L_\infty$-algebra extension of $\mathfrak{g}$, as in def. 6.4.133.

  Below in 7.1.7.2 we discuss in detail a class of super $L_\infty$-algebras that arise by higher extensions from a super Poincaré Lie algebra.

**Observation 6.6.22.** The Lie integration

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp} \times \mathrm{SuperPoint}, \mathrm{sSet}] = [\mathrm{SuperPoint}, [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}, \mathrm{sSet}$$

of a super $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ according to 6.4.14 is a system of Lie integrated ordinary $L_\infty$-algebras

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g}) : \mathbb{R}^{0|q} \mapsto \exp((\mathfrak{g} \otimes_{\mathbb{R}} \Lambda_q)_{\mathrm{even}}),$$

where $\Lambda_q = C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{0|q})$ is the Grassmann algebra on $q$ generators.

Over each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ this is the discrete super $\infty$-groupoid given by

$$\exp(\mathfrak{g})_U : \mathbb{R}^{0|q} \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgsAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g} \otimes \Lambda_q)_{\mathrm{even}}, \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \mathbb{R}^{0|q} \times \Delta^\bullet)),$$

where on the right we have super differential forms vertical with respect to the projection $U \times \mathbb{R}^{0|q} \times \Delta^n \to U \times \mathbb{R}^{0|q}$ of supermanifolds.

Proof. The first statement holds by the proof of prop. 6.6.9. The second statement is an example of a stadard mechanism in superalgebra: Using that the category sVect of finite-dimensional super vector space is a compact closed category, we compute

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgsAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \mathbb{R}^{0|q} \times \Delta^n)) &\simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgsAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^{0|q}) \otimes \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^n)) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgsAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Lambda_q \otimes \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^n)) \\
&\subset \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ch}^\bullet(\mathrm{sVect})}(\mathfrak{g}^*[1], \Lambda_q \otimes \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^n)) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ch}^\bullet(\mathrm{sVect})}(\mathfrak{g}^*[1] \otimes (\Lambda^q)^*, \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^n)) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ch}^\bullet(\mathrm{sVect})}((\mathfrak{g} \otimes \Lambda_q)^*[1], \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(\Delta^n)) \\
&\simeq \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ch}^\bullet(\mathrm{sVect})}((\mathfrak{g} \otimes \Lambda_q)^*[1]_{\mathrm{even}}, \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^n)) \\
&\supset \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgsAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}((\mathfrak{g} \otimes_k \Lambda_q)_{\mathrm{even}}), \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^n))
\end{aligned} .$$

Here in the third step we used that the underlying dg-super-algebra of $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ is free to find the space of morphisms of dg-algebras inside that of super-vector spaces (of generators) as indicated. Since the differential on both sides is $\Lambda_q$-linear, the claim follows. □

## 6.7 Further models

There are various further models of the axioms of cohesive homotopy theory which are of interest, but which we are not discussing in detail here at the moment. The following gives brief indications with some pointers.

### 6.7.1 Complex-analytic homotopy types

We discuss $\infty$-groupoids equipped with *complex analytic cohesion*.

**Definition 6.7.1.** Write $\mathbb{C}Mfd$ for the category of complex analytic manifolds equipped with the standard Grothendieck topology of open covers.

**Definition 6.7.2.** Write

$$\mathbb{C}\mathrm{Analytic}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} := \mathrm{Sh}_{\infty}(\mathbb{C}\mathrm{Mfd})$$

for the hypercomplete $\infty$-topos over the site of complex analytic manifolds, def. 6.7.1.

**Proposition 6.7.3.** *The* $\infty$*-topos* $\mathbb{C}\mathrm{Analytic}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *of def. 6.7.2 is cohesive over* $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$*.*

Proof. The site of complex polydiscs is a dense subset of $\mathbb{C}$Mfd. Since every complex manifold may be covered by complex polydiscs, one finds that the hypercomplete localization is equivalently that at split hypercovers by polydiscs. From here on the proof proceeds verbatim as that of prop. 4.1.32. □
One finds this result also in [HoQu12].

### 6.7.2 Pointed arithmetic homotopy types

A model of differential cohesion in arithmetic geometry exists, whose differential hexagons subsume the classical fracture squares of homotopy theory and some key structures seen in the function field analogy, revolving around the Weil uniformization theorem. For discussion of this see [Sc14e].

# 7 Physics

We discuss here the formulation of key aspects of physics in the models for higher differential geometry obtained in 6. In particular we discuss aspects of local prequantum higher gauge field theory and applications in string theory [SaSc11a, FSS13a].

- 7.1 – Fields
- 7.2 – Chern-Simons field theory
- 7.3 – Wess-Zumino-Witten field theory
- 7.5 – Prequantum geometry
- 7.4 – Local boundary and defect field theory
- 7.6 – Quantization

## 7.1 Fields

We discuss various examples of *twisted* $\infty$*-bundles*, 5.1.18, and the corresponding *twisted differential structures*, 5.2.14, and interpret these examples as twisted prequantum (boundary) fields, 5.2.18.6, that may appear in in local prequantum field theory, 5.2.18, and notably in string theory [Sc12].

Most of these appear in various guises in string theory, which we survey in

- 7.1.5 – Twisted topological $c$-structures in String theory.

Below we discuss the following differential refinements and applications.

- 7.1.1 – Definition and overview
- 7.1.3 – Reduction of structure groups
  - 7.1.3.1 – Orthogonal/Riemannian structure
  - 7.1.3.2 – Type II generalized geometry
  - 7.1.3.3 – U-duality geometry / exceptional generalized geometry
- 7.1.4 –Orientifolds and higher orientifolds
- 7.1.5 – Twisted topological structures in quantum anomaly cancellation
- 7.1.6 – Tisted differential structures in quantum anomaly cancellation
  - 7.1.6.1 – Twisted differential $\mathbf{c}_1$-structures
  - 7.1.6.2 – Twisted differential spin$^c$-structures
  - 7.1.6.3 – Higher differential spin structures: string and fivebrane structures
- 7.1.7 – Supergravity
- 7.1.8 – The supergravity $C$-field

The discussion in this section draws from [FiSaScI], which in turn draws from the examples discussed in [SSS09c], [FSS12b].

### 7.1.1 Introduction and Overview

We start with an exposition and overview of the notion of twisted fields in local prequantum field theory. This section is taken from [FSS13a]. See also the lecture notes [Sc12].

While twisted higher (gauge) fields embody much of the subtle structure in string theory backgrounds, actually basic example of them secretly appear all over the place in traditional field theory. For instance the field of gravity in general relativity is a (pseudo-)Riemannian metric on spacetime, and there is no such thing as a moduli stack of (pseudo-)Riemannian metrics on the site of smooth manifolds This is nothing but the elementary fact that a (pseudo-)Riemannian metric cannot be pulled back along an arbitrary smooth morphism between manifolds, but only along local diffeomorphisms. Translated into the language of stacks, this tells us that (pseudo-)Riemannian metrics is a stack on the étale site of smooth manifolds, but not on the smooth site. [33] Yet we can still look at (pseudo-)Riemannian metrics on a smooth $n$-dimensional manifold $X$ from the perspective of the topos $\mathbf{H}$ of stacks over the smooth site, and indeed this is the more comprehensive point of view. Namely, working in $\mathbf{H}$ also means to work with all its *slice toposes* (or *over-toposes*) $\mathbf{H}/_{\mathbf{S}}$ over the various objects $\mathbf{S}$ in $\mathbf{H}$. For the field of gravity this means working in the slice $\mathbf{H}/_{\mathbf{B}GL(n;\mathbb{R})}$ over the stack $\mathbf{B}GL(n;\mathbb{R})$.

Notice that this terminology is just a concise and rigorous way of expressing a familiar fact from Riemannian geometry: endowing a smooth $n$-manifold $X$ with a pseudo-Riemannian metric of signature $(p, n-p)$ is equivalent to performing a reduction of the structure group of the tangent bundle of $X$ to $O(p, n-p)$. Indeed, one can look at the tangent bundle (or, more precisely, at the associated frame bundle) as a morphism $\tau_X : X \to \mathbf{B}GL(n;\mathbb{R})$.

**7.1.1.1 Example: Orthogonal structures.** The above reduction is then the datum of a homotopy lift of $\tau_X$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}O(p,n-p) \\ & \overset{o_X}{\nearrow} \;\; \Downarrow^{e} & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{\tau_X} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n;\mathbb{R}) \end{array},$$

where the vertical arrow

$$\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n : \; \mathbf{B}O(p,n-p) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n;\mathbb{R})$$

is induced by the inclusion of groups $O(p, n-p) \hookrightarrow GL(n;\mathbb{R})$. Such a commutative diagram is precisely a map

$$(o_X, e) : \; \tau_X \longrightarrow \mathbf{OrthStruc}_n$$

in the slice $\mathbf{H}/_{\mathbf{B}GL(n;\mathbb{R})}$. The homotopy $e$ appearing in the above diagram is precisely the *vielbein field* (frame field) which exhibits the reduction, hence which induces the Riemannian metric. So the moduli stack of Riemannian metrics in $n$ dimensions is $\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n$, not as an object of the ambient cohesive topos $\mathbf{H}$, but of the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n)}$. Indeed, a map between manifolds regarded in this slice, namely a map $(\phi, \eta) : \tau_Y \to \tau_X$, is equivalently a smooth map $\phi : Y \to X$ in $\mathbf{H}$, but equipped with an equivalence $\eta : \phi^*\tau_X \to \tau_Y$. This includes in particular the local diffeomorphisms. In this way the slicing formalism automatically knows along which kinds of maps metrics may be pulled back.

**7.1.1.2 Example: (Exceptional) generalized geometry.** If we replace in the above example the map $\mathbf{OrthStruc}_n$ with inclusions of other maximal compact subgroups, we similarly obtain the moduli stacks for *generalized* geometry (metric and B-field) as appearing in type II superstring backgrounds (see, e.g., [Hi11]), given by

$$\mathbf{typeII} : \; \mathbf{B}(O(n) \times O(n)) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}O(n,n) \quad \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}O(n,n)}$$

[33] See [Carc12] for a comprehensive treatment of the étale site of smooth manifolds and of the higher topos of higher stacks over it.

and of *exceptional generalized geometry* appearing in compactifications of 11-dimensional supergravity [Hull07], given by

$$\mathbf{ExcSugra}_n : \ \mathbf{B}K_n \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}E_{n(n)} \quad \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}E_{n(n)}},$$

where $E_{n(n)}$ is the maximally non-compact real form of the Lie group of rank $n$ with $E$-type Dynkin diagram, and $K_n \subseteq E_{n(n)}$ is a maximal compact subgroup. For instance, a manifold $X$ in type II-geometry is represented by $\tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}} : X \to \mathbf{B}O(n,n)$ in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}O(n,n)}$, which is the map modulating what is called the *generalized tangent bundle*, and a field of generalized type II gravity is a map $(o_X^{\mathrm{gen}}, e) : \tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}} \to \mathbf{typeII}$ to the moduli stack in the slice. One checks that the homotopy $e$ is now precisely what is called the *generalized vielbein field* in type II geometry. We read off the kind of maps along which such fields may be pulled back: a map $(\phi, \eta) : \tau_Y^{\mathrm{gen}} \to \tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}}$ is a *generalized* local diffeomorphism: a smooth map $\phi : Y \to X$ equipped with an equivalence of generalized tangent bundles $\eta : \phi^* \tau_X^{\mathrm{gen}} \to \tau_Y^{\mathrm{gen}}$. A directly analogous discussion applies to the exceptional generalized geometry.

Furthermore, various topological structures are generalized fields in this sense, and become fields in the more traditional sense after differential refinement.

**7.1.1.3 Example: Spin structures.** The map $\mathbf{SpinStruc} : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}$ is, when regarded as an object of $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}}$, the moduli stack of spin structures. Its differential refinement $\mathbf{SpinStruc}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is such that a domain object $\tau_X^{\nabla} \in \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{GL}_{\mathrm{conn}}}$ is given by an affine connection, and a map $(\nabla_{\mathrm{Spin}}, e) : \tau_X^{\nabla} \to \mathbf{SpinStruc}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is precisely a *Spin connection* and a Lorentz frame/vielbein which identifies $\nabla$ with the corresponding Levi-Civita connection.

This example is the first in a whole tower of *higher Spin structure* fields [SSS09a, SSS09b, SSS09c], each of which is directly related to a corresponding higher Chern-Simons theory. The next higher example in this tower is the following.

**7.1.1.4 Example: Heterotic fields.** For $n \geq 3$, let **Heterotic** be the map

$$\mathbf{Heterotic} : \ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}(n) \xrightarrow{(p, \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1)} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n; \mathbb{R}) \times \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$$

regarded as an object in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n;\mathbb{R}) \times \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)}$. Here $p$ is the morphism induced by

$$\mathrm{Spin}(n) \to O(n) \hookrightarrow GL(n; \mathbb{R})$$

while $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}(n) \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$ is the morphism of stacks underlying the first fractional Pontrjagin class, 7.1.2.8. To regard a smooth manifold $X$ as an object in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n;\mathbb{R}) \times \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)}$ means to equip it with a $U(1)$-3-bundle $\mathbf{a}_X : X \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$ in addition to the tangent bundle $\tau_X : X \to \mathbf{B}GL(n; \mathbb{R})$. A Green-Schwarz anomaly-free background field configuration in heterotic string theory is (the differential refinement of) a map $(s_X, \phi) : (\tau_X, \mathbf{a}_X) \to \mathbf{Heterotic}$, i.e., a homotopy commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\quad s_X \quad} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \\ & {\scriptstyle (\tau_X, \mathbf{a}_X)} \searrow \ \Swarrow_{\phi} \ \swarrow {\scriptstyle \mathbf{Heterotic}} & \\ & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n) \times \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) \ . & \end{array}$$

The 3-bundle $\mathbf{a}_X$ serves as a twist: when $\mathbf{a}_X$ is trivial then we are in presence of a String structure on $X$; so it is customary to refer to $(s_X, \phi)$ as to an $\mathbf{a}_X$-*twisted String structure* on $X$, in the sense of [Wa08, SSS09c]. The Green-Schwarz anomaly cancellation condition is then imposed by requiring that $\mathbf{a}_X$ (or rather its differential refinement) factors as

$$X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}SU \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}_2} \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) \ \ ,$$

where $\mathbf{c}_2(E)$ is the morphism of stacks underlying the second Chern class. Notice that this says that the extended Lagrangians of Spin- and SU-Chern-Simons theory in 3-dimensions, as discussed above, at the same time serve as the twists that control the higher background gauge field structure in heterotic supergravity backgrounds.

**7.1.1.5 Example: Dual heterotic fields.** Similarly, the morphism

$$\mathbf{DualHeterotic} : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}(n) \xrightarrow{(p, \frac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2)} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(n;\mathbb{R}) \times \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)$$

governs field configurations for the dual heterotic string. These examples, in their differentially refined version, have been discussed in [SSS09c]. The last example above is governed by the extended Lagrangian of the 7-dimensional Chern-Simons-type higher gauge field theory of String-2-connections. This has been discussed in [FSS12b].

There are many more examples of (quantum) fields modulated by objects in slices of a cohesive higher topos. To close this brief discussion, notice that the previous example has an evident analog in one lower degree: a central extension of Lie groups $A \to \hat{G} \to G$ induces a long fiber sequence

$$\underline{A} \longrightarrow \hat{G} \longrightarrow G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}A \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\hat{G} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}^2 A$$

in $\mathbf{H}$, where $\mathbf{c}$ is the group 2-cocycle that classifies the extension. If we regard this as a coefficient object in the slice $\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^2 A}$, then regarding a manifold $X$ in this slice means to equip it with an $(\mathbf{B}A)$-principal 2-bundle (an $A$-bundle gerbe) modulated by a map $\tau_X^A : X \to \mathbf{B}^2 A$; and a field $(\phi, \eta) : \tau_X^A \to \mathbf{c}$ is equivalently a $G$-principal bundle $P \to X$ equipped with an equivalence $\eta : \mathbf{c}(E) \simeq \tau_X^A$ with the 2-bundle which obstructs its lift to a $\hat{G}$-principal bundle (the "lifting gerbe"). The differential refinement of this setup similarly yields $G$-gauge fields equipped with such an equivalence. A concrete example for this is discussed below in section 1.3.4.

This special case of fields in a slice is called a *twisted (differential) $\hat{G}$-structure* in [SSS09c] In more generality, the terminology *twisted (differential)* $\mathbf{c}$*-structures* is used in [SSS09c] to denote spaces of fields of the form $\mathbf{H}/_{\mathbf{S}}(\sigma_X, \mathbf{c})$ for some slice topos $\mathbf{H}/_{\mathbf{S}}$ and some coefficient object (or "twisting object") $\mathbf{c}$; see also the exposition in [Sc12]. In fact in full generality (quantum) fields in slice toposes are equivalent to cocycles in (generalized and parameterized and possibly non-abelian and differential) *twisted cohomology.* The constructions on which the above discussion is built is given in some generality in [NSS12a].

In many examples of twisted (differential) structures/fields in slices the twist is constrained to have a certain factorization. For instance the twist of the (differential) String-structure in a heterotic background is constrained to be the (differential) second Chern-class of a (differential) $E_8 \times E_8$-cocycle; or for instance the gauging of the 1d Chern-Simons fields on a knot in a 3d Chern-Simons theory bulk is constrained to be the restriction of the bulk gauge field, as discussed in section 1.4.1.5. Another example is the twist of the Chan-Paton bundles on D-branes, discussed below in section 1.3.4, which is constrained to be the restriction of the ambient Kalb-Ramond field to the D-brane. In all these cases the fields may be thought of as being maps in the slice topos that arise from maps in the *arrow topos* $\mathbf{H}^{\Delta^1}$. A moduli stack here is a map of moduli stacks

$$\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{bulk+def}} : \mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{def}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{bulk}}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$; and a domain on which such fields may be defined is an object $\Sigma_{\mathrm{bulk}} \in \mathbf{H}$ equipped with a map (often, but not necessarily, an inclusion) $\Sigma_{\mathrm{def}} \to \Sigma_{\mathrm{bulk}}$, and a field configuration is a square of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Sigma_{\mathrm{def}} & \xrightarrow{\phi_{\mathrm{def}}} & \mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{def}} \\ \downarrow & \swArrow_{\simeq} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{Fields}} \\ \Sigma_{\mathrm{bulk}} & \xrightarrow[\phi_{\mathrm{bulk}}]{} & \mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{bulk}} \end{array}$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. If we now fix $\phi_{\mathrm{bulk}}$ then $(\phi_{\mathrm{bulk}})|_{\Sigma_{\mathrm{def}}}$ serves as the twist, in the above sense, for $\phi_{\mathrm{def}}$. If $\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{def}}$ is trivial (the point/terminal object), then such a field is a cocycle in *relative cohomology*: a cocycle $\phi_{\mathrm{bulk}}$ on $\Sigma_{\mathrm{bulk}}$ equipped with a trivialization $(\phi_{\mathrm{bulk}})|_{\Sigma_{\mathrm{def}}}$ of its restriction to $\Sigma_{\mathrm{def}}$.

The fields in Chern-Simons theory with Wilson loops displayed in section 1.4.1.5 clearly constitute an example of this phenomenon. Another example is the field content of type II string theory on a 10-dimensional spacetime $X$ with D-brane $Q \hookrightarrow X$, for which the above diagram reads

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
Q & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{PU}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\big\downarrow & \swarrow & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathbf{dd}_{\mathrm{conn}}} \\
X & \xrightarrow{B} & \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}
\end{array} ,
$$

discussed further below in section 1.3.4. In 7.1.8 we discuss how the supergravity C-field over an 11-dimensional Hořava-Witten background with 10-dimensional boundary $X \hookrightarrow Y$ is similarly a relative cocyle, with the coefficients controled, once more, by the extended Chern-Simons Lagrangian

$$
\hat{\mathbf{c}} : \mathbf{B}(E_8 \times E_8)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \ ,
$$

now regarded in $\mathbf{H}^{(\Delta^1)}$.

The following table lists some of main (classes of) examples. The left column displays a given extension of smooth $\infty$-groups, to be regarded as a bundle of coefficients with typical $\infty$-fiber shown on the far left. The middle column names the principal $\infty$-bundles, or equivalently the nonabelian cohomology classes, that are classified by the base of these extensions. These are to be thought of as twisting cocycles. The right column names the corresponding twisted $\infty$-bundles, or eqivalently the corresponding twisted cohomology classes.

| extension / ∞-bundle of coefficients | twisting ∞-bundle / twisting cohomology | twisted ∞-bundle / twisted cohomology |
|---|---|---|
| $V \to V//G \xrightarrow{\rho} \mathbf{B}G$ | $\rho$-associated $V$-$\infty$-bundle | section |
| $\mathrm{GL}(d)/O(d) \to \mathbf{B}O(d) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)$ | tangent bundle | orthogonal structure / Riemannian geometry |
| $O(d)\backslash O(d,d)/O(d) \to \mathbf{B}(O(d)\times O(d)) \to \mathbf{B}O(d,d)$ | generalized tangent bundle | generalized (type II) Riemannian geometry |
| $\mathbf{B}U(n) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{PU}(n) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{dd}} \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ | circle 2-bundle / bundle gerbe | twisted vector bundle / bundle gerbe module |
| $\mathbf{B}^2U(1) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Aut}(\mathbf{B}U(1)) \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2$ | double cover | orientifold structure / Jandl bundle gerbe |
| $\mathbf{B}^2\ker(G) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Aut}(\mathbf{B}G) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Out}(G)$ | band (*lien*) | nonabelian (Giraud-Breen) $G$-$\infty$-gerbe |
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ | circle 3-bundle / bundle 2-gerbe | twisted String 2-bundle |
| $Q \to \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{T}\times\mathbb{T}^*) \xrightarrow{\langle \mathbf{c}_1 \cup \mathbf{c}_1\rangle} \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ | circle 3-bundle / bundle 2-gerbe | twisted T-duality structure |
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Fivebrane} \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2} \mathbf{B}^7U(1)$ | circle 7-bundle | twisted Fivebrane 6-bundle |
| $\flat\mathbf{B}^nU(1) \to \mathbf{B}^nU(1) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)$ | curvature $(n+1)$-form | circle $n$-bundle with connection |

The following table lists smooth twisting ∞-bundles **c** that become *identities under geometric realization*, def. 6.3.24, (the last one on 15-coskeleta). This means that the twists are purely geometric, the underlying topological structure being untwisted.

| universal twisting ∞-bundle | twisted cohomology | relative twisted cohomology |
|---|---|---|
| $\mathbf{B}O(d) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)$ | Riemannian geometry, orthogonal structure | |
| $\mathbf{B}O(d) \times O(d) \to \mathbf{B}O(d,d)$ | type II NS-NS generalized geometry | |
| $\mathbf{B}H_n \to \mathbf{B}E_{n(n)}$ | U-duality geometry, exceptional generalized geometry | |
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{PU}(\mathcal{H}) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{dd}} \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ | twisted $U(n)$-principal bundles | Freed-Witten anomaly cancellation on $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-branes: $B$-field with twisted gauge bundles on D-branes |
| $\mathbf{B}E_8 \xrightarrow{\mathbf{2a}} \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ | twisted $\mathrm{String}(E_8)$-principal 2-bundles | M5-brane anomaly cancellation: $C$-field with twisted gauge 2-bundles on M5-branes |

The following table lists smooth twisted ∞-bundles that control various quantum anomaly cancellations in string theory.

| universal twisting ∞-bundle | twisted cohomology | relative twisted cohomology |
|---|---|---|
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{W}_3} \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ | twisted $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structure | |
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{PU}(\mathcal{H}) \times \mathrm{SO} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{dd}-\mathbf{W}_3} \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ | | general Freed-Witten anomaly cancellation: B-field with twisted gauge bundles on D-branes |
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ | twisted String-2-bundles; heterotic Green-Schwarz anomaly cancellation | |
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2} \mathbf{B}^7U(1)$ | twisted Fivebrane-7-bundles; dual heterotic Green-Schwarz anomaly cancellation | |

The following table lists twisting ∞-bundles that encode geometric structure preserving higher supersymmetry.

| universal twisting ∞-bundle | twisted cohomology | relative twisted cohomology |
|---|---|---|
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{U}(d,d) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(2d,2d)$ | generalized complex geometry | |
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU}(3) \times \mathrm{SU}(3) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(6,6)$ | $d = 6$, $N = 2$ type II compactification | |
| $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU}(7) \to \mathbf{B}E_{7(7)}$ | $d = 7$, $N = 1$ 11d sugra compactification | |

### 7.1.2 Spin-structures

For any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the Lie group $\mathrm{Spin}(n)$ is the universal simply connected cover of the special orthogonal group $\mathrm{SO}(n)$. Since $\pi_1 \mathrm{SO}(n) \simeq \mathbb{Z}_2$, it is an extension of Lie groups of the form

$$\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{Spin}(n) \to \mathrm{SO}(n) .$$

The lift of an $\mathrm{SO}(n)$-principal bundle through this extension to a $\mathrm{Spin}(n)$-principal bundle is a called a choice of *spin structure*. A classical textbook on the geometry of spin structures is [LaMi89].

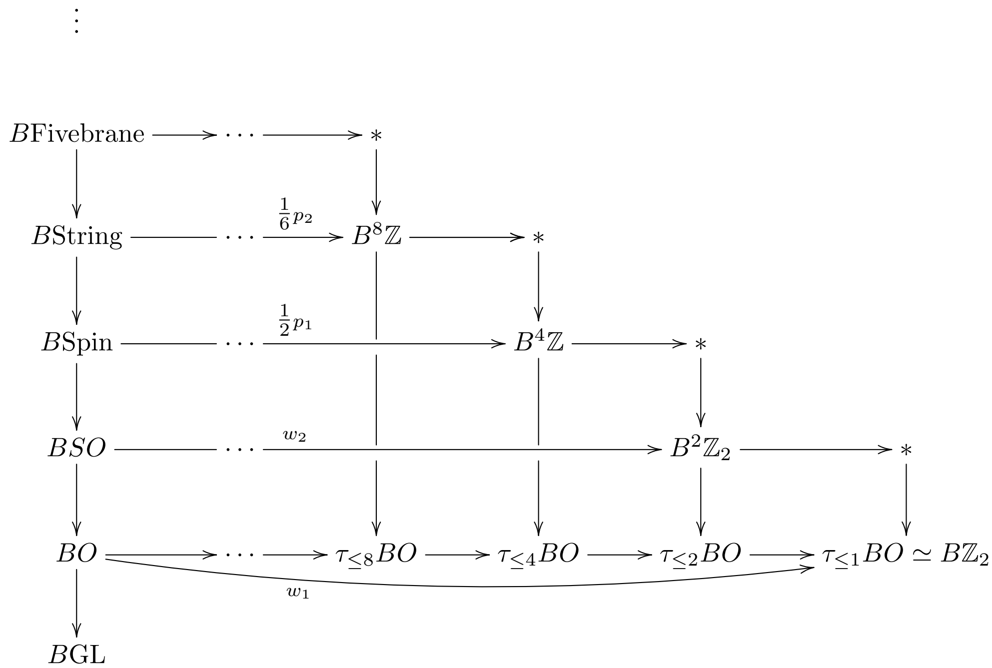
We discuss how this construction is only one step in a whole tower of analogous constructions involving smooth $n$-groups for various $n$. These are higher smooth analogs of the Spin-group and define higher analogs of smooth spin structures.

The Spin-group carries its name due to the central role that it plays in the description of the physics of quantum *spinning particles*. In 1.4.2.5 we indicated how the higher spin structures to be discussed here are similarly related to spinning quantum strings and 5-branes. More in detail, this requires *twisted* higher spin structures, which we turn to below in 5.2.14.



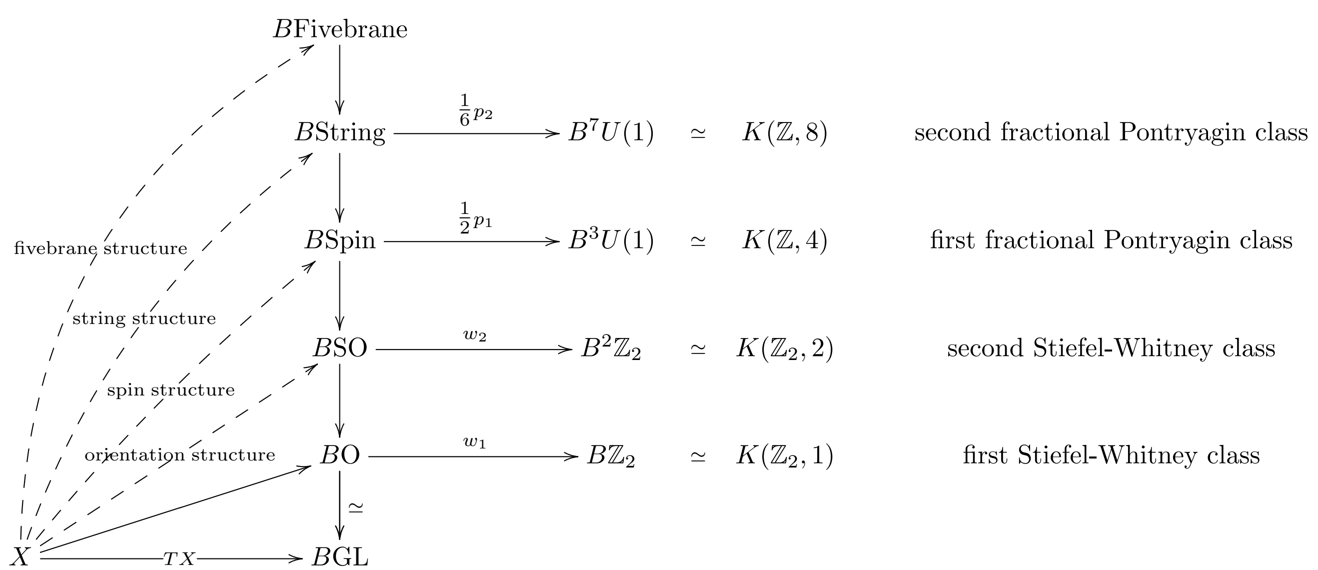
**7.1.2.1 Overview: the smooth and differential Whitehead tower of $BO$** We survey the constructions and results about the smooth and differential refinement of the Whitehead tower of $BO$, to be discussed in the following.

By definition 5.2.22 applied in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}$, the first stages of the Whitehead tower of the classifying space $BO$ of the orthogonal group, together with the corresponding obstruction classes is constructed by iterated pasting of homotopy pullbacks as in the following diagram:




Here the bottom horizontal tower is the Postnikov tower, def. 5.1.50, of $BO$ and all rectangles are homotopy pullbacks.

For $X$ a smooth manifold, there is a canonically given map $X \to B\mathrm{GL}$, which classifies the tangent bundle $TX$. The lifts of this classifying map through the above Whitehead tower correspond to structures on $X$ as indicated in the following diagram:




Here the horizontal morphisms denote representatives of universal characteristic classes, such that each sub-diagram of the shape

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\hat{G} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ BG & \xrightarrow{c} & B^n K \end{array}$$

is a fiber sequence, def. 5.1.178.

The lifting problem presented by each of these steps is exemplified in terms of a smooth manifold $X$, which comes with a canonical map $X \to B\mathrm{GL}$ that classifies the tangent bundle $TX$ of $X$.

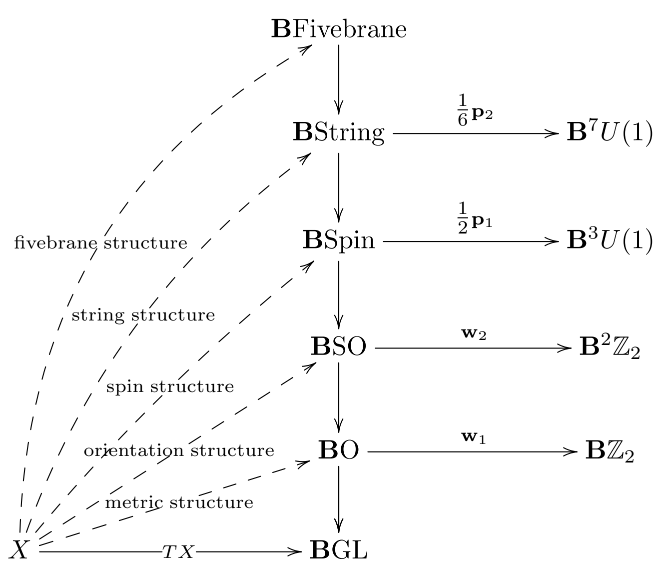
In the first step, since the $B\mathrm{O} \to B\mathrm{GL}$ is a weak equivalence in Top $\simeq \infty$Grpd, we may always factor $X \to B\mathrm{GL}$, up to homotopy, through $B\mathrm{O}$. The homotopy class of the resulting composite $X \to B\mathrm{O} \stackrel{w_1}{\to} B\mathbb{Z}_2$ is the first Stiefel-Whitney class of the manifold. The fact that $B\mathrm{SO}$ is the homotopy fiber of $w_1$ means, by the universal property of the homotopy pullback, that the further lift to a map $X \to B\mathrm{SO}$ exists precisely if the first Stiefel-Whitney class vanishes. While this is a classical fact, it is useful to make its relation to homotopy pullbacks explicit here, since this illuminates the following steps in this tower as well as all the steps in the smooth and differential refinements to follow.

Next, if the first Stiefel-Whitney class of $X$ vanishes, then any *choice* of orientation, hence any choice of lift $X \to B\mathrm{SO}$ induces the composite map $X \to B\mathrm{SO} \stackrel{w_2}{\to} B^2\mathbb{Z}_2$, whose homotopy class is the second Stiefel-Whitney class of $X$ equipped with that orientation. If that class vanishes, there exists a choice of lift $X \to B\mathrm{Spin}$, which is a choice of spin structure on $X$. The resulting composite $X \to B\mathrm{Spin} \stackrel{\frac{1}{2}p_1}{\to} B^3U(1)$ is a representative of the *first fractional Pontryagin class*. If this vanishes, there exists a choice of lift $X \to B\mathrm{String}$, which equips $X$ with a *string structure*. The induced composite $X \to B\mathrm{String} \stackrel{\frac{1}{6}p_2}{\to} B^7U(1)$ is a representative of the second fractional Pontryagin class of $X$. If that vanishes, there exists a choice of lift $X \to B\mathrm{Fivebrane}$, which is a choice of *fivebrane srructure* on $X$.

In this or slightly different terminology, this is a classical construction in homotopy theory. We show in the following that this tower has a *smooth lift* from topological spaces through the geometric realization functor, 6.4.5,

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xrightarrow{\Pi} \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xrightarrow[\simeq]{|-|} \mathrm{Top}$$

to smooth $\infty$-groupoids, of the form




Here $\mathbf{B}^nU(1)$ is the smooth circle $(n+1)$-group, def. 6.4.21, the smooth classifying $n$-stack of smooth circle

$n$-bundles. This is such that still all diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\hat{G} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{B}^n K \end{array}$$

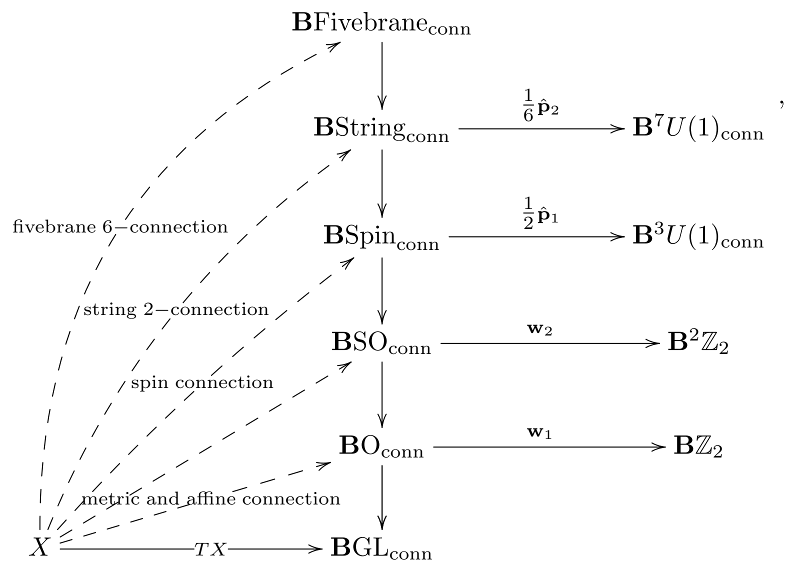
are fiber sequences, now in the cohesive $\infty$-topos Smooth$\infty$Grpd, exhibiting the smooth moduli $\infty$-stack $\mathbf{B}\hat{G}$ as the homotopy fiber of the smooth universal characteristic map $\mathbf{c}$ which is a smooth refinement of the corresponding ordinary characteristic map $c$.

The corresponding choices of lifts now are more refined than before, as they correspond to *smooth structures*. In the first step, the choice of lift from a morphism $X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}$ to a morphism $X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}$ encodes now genuine information, namely a choice of *Riemannian metric* on $X$. This is discussed in 7.1.3.1 below.

Further up, a choice of lift $X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}$ is a choice of smooth Spin-principal bundle on $X$. Next, the object denoted String is a smooth 2-group, and a lift $X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}$ is a choice of smooth String-principal 2-bundle on $X$. The object denoted Fivebrane is a smooth 6-group and a choice of lift $X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Fivebrane}$ is a choice of smooth Fivebrane-principal 6-bundle.

One consequence of the smooth refinement, which is important for the *twisted* such structures discussed below in 5.2.14, is that the spaces of choices of lifts are much more refined than those of the ordinary non-smooth case. Another consequence is that it allows us to proceed and next consider a *differential* refinement, def. 5.2.113:

we show that the above smooth Whitehead tower further lifts to a *differential Whitehead tower* of the form




where $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the moduli $n$-stack of circle $n$-bundles with connection, according to 6.4.16. Still, all diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\hat{G}_{\mathrm{conn}} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{c}}} & \mathbf{B}^n K_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array}$$

are fiber sequences in Smooth$\infty$Grpd, exhibiting the smooth moduli $\infty$-stack $\mathbf{B}\hat{G}_{\mathrm{conn}}$, def. 5.2.113, of higher $\hat{G}$-connections as the homotopy fiber of the differential refinement $\hat{\mathbf{c}}$ of the given characteristic map $c$. Choices of lifts through this tower correspond to choices of smooth higher connections on smooth higher bundles.

#### 7.1.2.2 Orienation structure

Before going to higher degree beyond the Spin-group, it is instructive to first consider a *lower* degree. The special orthogonal Lie group itself is a kind of extension of the orthogonal Lie group. To see this clearly, consider the smooth delooping $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n) \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ according to 6.4.3.

**Proposition 7.1.1.** *The canonical morphism* $\mathrm{SO}(n) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{O}(n)$ *induces a long fiber sequence in* $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *of the form*

$$\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n) \to \mathbf{B}O(n) \stackrel{\mathbf{w}_1}{\to} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2 \,,$$

*where* $\mathbf{w}_1$ *is the universal smooth first Stiefel-Whitney class from example 1.2.145.*

Proof. It is sufficient to show that the homotopy fiber of $\mathbf{w}_1$ is $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n)$. This implies the rest of the statement by prop. 5.1.179.

To see this, notice that by the discussion in 5.1.10 we are to compute the $\mathbb{Z}_2$-principal bundle over the Lie groupoid $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n)$ that is classified by the above injection. By observation 5.1.219 this is accomplished by forming a 1-categorical pullback of Lie groupoids

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{Z}_2//\mathrm{O}(n) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z}_2//\mathbb{Z}_2 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ *//\mathrm{O}(n) & \longrightarrow & *//\mathbb{Z}_2 \end{array} \,.$$

One sees that the canonical projection

$$\mathbb{Z}_2//\mathrm{O}(n) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} *//\mathrm{SO}(n)$$

is a weak equivalence (it is an essentially surjective and full and faithful functor of groupoids). □

**Definition 7.1.2.** For $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ any object equipped with a morphism $r_X : X \to \mathbf{B}O(n)$, we say a lift $o_X$ of $r$ through the above extension

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n) \\ & {}^{o_X}\nearrow & \downarrow \\ X & \stackrel{r}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}O(n) \end{array}$$

is an *orientation structure* on $(X, r_X)$.

#### 7.1.2.3 Spin structure

**Proposition 7.1.3.** *The classical sequence of Lie groups* $\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{Spin} \to \mathrm{SO}$ *induces a long fiber sequence in* $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *of the form*

$$\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{Spin} \to \mathrm{SO} \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \stackrel{\mathbf{w}_2}{\to} \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \,,$$

*where* $\mathbf{w}_2$ *is the universal smooth second Stiefel-Whitney class from example 1.2.146.*

Proof. It is sufficient to show that the homotopy fiber of $\mathbf{w}_2$ is $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}(n)$. This implies the rest of the statement by prop. 5.1.179.

To see this notice that the top morphism in the stanard anafunctor that presents $\mathbf{w}_2$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{O}(n))_{\mathrm{ch}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to 1)_{\mathrm{ch}} \qquad \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n) & & \end{array}$$

is a fibration in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. By proposition 5.1.9 this means that the homotopy fiber is given by the 1-categorical pullback of simplicial presheaves

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{O}(n))_{\mathrm{ch}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{O}(n))_{\mathrm{ch}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{w}_2} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to 1)_{\mathrm{ch}} \end{array} .$$

The canonical projection

$$\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{O}(n))_{\mathrm{ch}} \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n)_{\mathrm{ch}}$$

is seen to be a weak equivalence. □

**Definition 7.1.4.** For $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ an object equipped with orientation structure $o_X : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n)$, def. 7.1.2, we say a choice of lift $\hat{o}_X$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \\ & \nearrow^{\hat{o}_X} & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{o_X} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n) \end{array}$$

equips $(X, o_X)$ with *spin structure*.

#### 7.1.2.4 Smooth string structure and the String-2-group

The sequence of Lie groupoids

$$\cdots \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}(n) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}(n) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(n)$$

discussed in 7.1.2.2 and 7.1.2.3 is a smooth refinement of the first two steps of the *Whitehead tower* of $BO(n)$. We discuss now the next step. This is no longer presented by Lie groupoids, but by smooth 2-groupoids.

Write $\mathfrak{so}(n)$ for the special orthogonal Lie algebra in dimension $n$. We shall in the following notationally suppress the dimension and just write $\mathfrak{so}$. The simply connected Lie group integrating $\mathfrak{so}$ is the Spin-group .

**Proposition 7.1.5.** *Pulled back to* $B\mathrm{Spin}$ *the universal first Pontryagin class* $p_1 : BO \to B^4\mathbb{Z}$ *is 2 times a generator* $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ *of* $H^4(B\mathrm{Spin}, \mathbb{Z})$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}p_1} & B^4\mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\cdot 2} \\ BO & \xrightarrow{p_1} & B^4\mathbb{Z} \end{array} .$$

*We call* $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ *the* first fractional Pontryagin class *.*

This is due to [Bott58]. See [SSS09b] for a review.

**Definition 7.1.6.** Write $B\mathrm{String}$ for the homotopy fiber in $\mathrm{Top} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ of the first fractional Pontryagin class

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\mathrm{String} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}p_1} & B^4\mathbb{Z} \end{array} .$$

Its loop space is the *string group*

$$\mathrm{String} := O\langle 7\rangle := \Omega B\mathrm{String}\,.$$

This is defined up to equivalence as an $\infty$-group object, but standard methods give a presentation by a genuine topological group and often the term *string group* is implicitly reserved for such a topological group model. See also the review in [Scho10].

We now discuss smooth refinements of $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ and of String as lifts through the intrinsic geometric realization, def. 5.2.14, $\Pi : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ in Smooth∞Grpd, 6.4.

**Proposition 7.1.7.** *We have a weak equivalence*

$$\mathbf{cosk}_3(\exp(\mathfrak{so})) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_c$$

*in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$*, between the Lie integration, def. 6.4.79, of* $\mathfrak{so}$ *and the standard presentation, 6.4.3, of* $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}$*.*

Proof. By prop. 6.4.83. □

**Corollary 7.1.8.** *The image of* $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *under the fundamental* $\infty$*-groupoid/geometric realization functor* $\Pi$*, 6.3.5, is the classifying space* $B\mathrm{Spin}$ *of the topological* Spin*-group*

$$|\Pi \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}| \simeq B\mathrm{Spin}\,.$$

Proof. By prop. 6.3.30 applied to prop. 6.4.19. □

**Theorem 7.1.9.** *The image under Lie integration, prop. 6.4.131, of the canonical Lie algebra 3-cocycle*

$$\mu = \langle -, [-,-]\rangle : \mathfrak{so} \to b^2\mathbb{R}$$

*on the semisimple Lie algebra* $\mathfrak{so}$ *of the* Spin *group is a morphism in* Smooth∞Grpd *of the form*

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 := \exp(\mu) : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$$

*whose image under the fundamental* $\infty$*-groupoid* $\infty$*-functor/ geometric realization, 6.3.5,* $\Pi : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *is the ordinary fractional Pontryagin class* $\frac{1}{2}p_1 : B\mathrm{Spin} \to B^4\mathbb{Z}$ *in* Top*, and up to equivalence* $\exp(\mu)$ *is the unique lift of* $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ *from* Top *to* Smooth∞Grpd *with codomain* $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)$*. We write* $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 := \exp(\mu)$ *and call it the* smooth first fractional Pontryagin class*.*

*Moreover, the corresponding refined differential characteristic class, 6.4.17,*

$$\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 : \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{conn}}(-, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}) \to \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(-, \mathbf{B}^3U(1))\,,$$

*wich we call the* fractional Pontryagin class*, is in cohomology the corresponding ordinary refined Chern-Weil homomorphism [HoSi05]*

$$[\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1] : H^1_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(X, \mathrm{Spin}) \to H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$$

*with values in ordinary differential cohomology that corresponds to the Killing form invariant polynomial* $\langle -,-\rangle$ *on* $\mathfrak{so}$*.*

Proof. This is shown in [FSS10].

Using corollary. 7.1.7 and unwinding all the definitions and using the characterization of smooth de Rham coefficient objects, 6.4.13, and smooth differential coefficient objects, 6.4.16, one finds that the post-composition with $\exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs})_{\mathrm{diff}}$ induces on Čech cocycles precisely the operation considered in [BrMc96b], and hence the conclusion follows essentially as by the reasoning there: one reads off the 4-curvature of the circle 3-bundle assigned to a Spin bundle with connection $\nabla$ to be $\propto \langle F_\nabla \wedge F_\nabla\rangle$, with the normalization such that this is the image in de Rham cohomology of the generator of $H^4(B\mathrm{Spin}) \simeq \mathbb{Z} \simeq \langle \frac{1}{2}p_1\rangle$.

Finally that $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$ is the unique smooth lift of $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ follows from theorem 6.4.38. □

By the unique smooth refinement of the first fractional Pontryagin class, 7.1.9, we obtain a smooth refinement of the String-group, def. 7.1.6.

**Definition 7.1.10.** Write $\mathbf{B}$String for the homotopy fiber in Smooth∞Grpd of the smooth refinement of the first fractional Pontryagin class from prop. 7.1.9:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) \end{array} .$$

We say its loop space object is the *smooth string 2-group*

$$\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{smooth}} := \Omega \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} .$$

We speak of a smooth *2-group* because $\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{smooth}}$ is a categorical homotopy 1-type in Smooth∞Grpd, being an extension

$$\mathbf{B}U(1) \to \mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{smooth}} \to \mathrm{Spin}$$

of the categorical 0-type Spin by the categorical 1-type $\mathbf{B}U(1)$ in Smooth∞Grp.

**Proposition 7.1.11.** *The categorical homotopy groups of the smooth String 2-group,* $\pi_n(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \in \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{CartSp})$, *are*

$$\pi_1(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \simeq \mathrm{Spin}$$

*and*

$$\pi_2(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \simeq U(1) .$$

*All other categorical homotopy groups are trivial.*

Proof. Notice that by construction the non-trivial categorical homotopy groups of $\mathbf{B}$Spin and $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ are $\pi_1\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} = \mathrm{Spin}$ and $\pi_3\mathbf{B}^3U(1) = U(1)$, respectively. Using the long exact sequence of homotopy sheaves (use [L-Topos] remark 6.5.1.5,with $X = *$ the base point) applied to def. 7.1.10, we obtain the long exact sequence of pointed objects in Sh(CartSp)

$$\cdots \to \pi_{n+1}(\mathbf{B}^3U(1)) \to \pi_n(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \to \pi_n(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}) \to \pi_n(\mathbf{B}^3U(1)) \to \pi_{n-1}(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \to \cdots$$

this yields for $n = 0$

$$0 \to \pi_1(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \to \mathrm{Spin} \to 0$$

and for $n = 2$

$$0 \to U(1) \to \pi_2(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \to 0$$

and for $n \geq 3$

$$0 \to \pi_n(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \to 0 .$$

□

However the *geometric* homotopy-type, 5.2.3, of $\mathbf{B}$String is not bounded, in fact it coincides with that of the topological string group:

**Proposition 7.1.12.** *Under intrinsic geometric realization, 6.4.5,* $|-| : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \overset{\Pi}{\to} \infty\mathrm{Grp} \overset{|-|}{\to} \mathrm{Top}$ *the smooth string 2-group maps to the topological string group*

$$|\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{smooth}}| \simeq \mathrm{String} .$$

Proof. Since $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ has a presentation by a simplicial object in SmoothMfd, prop. 6.4.30 asserts that

$$|\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{smooth}}| \simeq \mathrm{hofib}|\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1| .$$

The claim then follows with prop. 7.1.9

$$\cdots \simeq \mathrm{hofib}\frac{1}{2}p_1$$

and def. 7.1.6

$$\cdots \simeq \mathrm{String}\,.$$

$\square$

Notice the following important subtlety:

**Proposition 7.1.13.** *There exists an infinite-dimensional Lie group* $\mathrm{String}_{1\mathrm{smooth}}$ *whose underlying topological group is a model for the String group in* Top*, def. 7.1.6.*

This is due to [NSW11], by a refinement of a construction in [Stol96].

**Remark 7.1.14.** However, $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{1\mathrm{smooth}}$ itself is not a model for def. 7.1.10, because it is an internal 1-type in Smooth∞Grpd, hence because $\pi_2\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{smooth}} = 0$. In [NSW11] a smooth 2-group with the correct internal homotopy groups based on $\mathrm{String}_{1\mathrm{smooth}}$ is given, but it is not clear yet whether or not this is a model for def. 7.1.10.

We proceed by discussing concrete presentations of the smooth string 2-group.

**Definition 7.1.15.** Write

$$\mathfrak{string} := \mathfrak{so}_\mu$$

for the $L_\infty$-algebra extension of $\mathfrak{so}$ induced by $\mu$ according to def 6.4.133.

We call this the *string Lie 2-algebra*

**Observation 7.1.16.** The indecomposable invariant polynomials on $\mathfrak{string}$ are those of $\mathfrak{so}$ except for the Killing form:

$$\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{string}) = \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{so})/(\langle -, -\rangle)\,.$$

Proof. As a special case of prop. 6.4.151. $\square$

**Proposition 7.1.17.** *The smooth ∞-groupoid that is the Lie integration, def. 6.4.79, of* $\mathfrak{so}_\mu$ *is a model for the smooth string 2-group*

$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} \simeq \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{so}_\mu)\,.$$

Notice that this statement is similar to, but different from, the statement about the untruncated exponentiated $L_\infty$-algebras in prop. 6.4.139.

Proof. By prop. 7.1.9 an explicit presentation for $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}$ is given by the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_c & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{E}\mathbf{B}^2U(1)_c \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{cosk}_3\exp(\mathfrak{so}) & \xrightarrow{\int_{\Delta^\bullet}\exp(\mu)} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_c \end{array}$$

in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, where $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)_c$ is the simplicial presheaf whose 3-cells form the space $U(1)$, and where $\mathbf{E}B^2U(1)$ is the simplicial presheaf whose 2-cells form $U(1)$ and whose 3-cells form the space of arbitrary quadruples of elements in $U(1)$. The right vertical morphism forms the oriented sum of these quadruples.

Since all objects are 3-truncated, it is sufficient to consider the pullback of the simplices in degrees 0 to 3. In degrees 0 to 1 the morphism $\mathbf{E}\mathbf{B}^2U(1) \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_c$ is the identity, hence in these degrees $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_c$ coincides with $\mathbf{cosk}_3\exp(\mathfrak{so})$. In degree 2 the pullback is the product of $\mathbf{cosk}_3(\mathfrak{so})_2$ with $U(1)$, hence the 2-cells of $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_c$ are pairs $(f, c)$ consisting of a smooth map $f : \Delta^2 \to \mathrm{Spin}$ (with sitting instants) and an elemement $c \in U(1)$. Finally a 3-cell in $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_c$ is a pair $(\sigma, \{c_i\})$ of a smooth map $\sigma : \Delta^3 \to \mathrm{Spin}$ and four labels $c_i \in U(1)$, subject to the condition that the sum of the labels is the integral of the cocycle $\mu$ over $\sigma$:

$$c_4 c_2 c_1^{-1} c_3^{-1} = \int_{\Delta^3} \sigma^* \mu(\theta) \,\mathrm{mod}\mathbb{Z} \,,$$

(with $\theta$ the Maurer-Cartan form on Spin).

The description of the cells in $\mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ is similar: a 2-cells is a pair $(f, B)$ consisting of a smooth function $f : \Delta^2 \to \mathrm{Spin}$ and a smooth 2-form $B \in \Omega^2(\Delta^2)$ (both with sitting instants), and a 3-cell is a pair consisting of a smooth function $\sigma : \Delta^3 \to \mathrm{Spin}$ and a 2-form $\hat{B} \in \Omega^2(\Delta^3)$ such that $d\hat{B} = \sigma^* \mu(\theta)$.

There is an evident morphism

$$p : \int_{\Delta^\bullet} : \mathbf{cosk}_3(\mathfrak{so}_\mu) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_c$$

that is the identity on the smooth maps from simplices into the Spin-group and which sends the 2-form labels to their integral over the 2-faces

$$p_2 : (f, B) \mapsto (f, (\int_{\Delta^2} B) \mathrm{mod}\mathbb{Z}) \,.$$

We claim that this is a weak equivalence. The first simplicial homotopy group on both sides is Spin itself (meaning: the presheaf on CartSp represented by Spin). The nontrivial simplicial homotopy group to check is the second. Since $\pi_2(\mathrm{Spin}) = 0$ every pair $(f, B)$ on $\partial\Delta^3$ is homotopic to one where $f$ is constant. It follows from prop. 6.4.87 that the homotopy classes of such pairs where also the homotopy involves a constant map $\partial\Delta^3 \times \Delta^1 \to \mathrm{Spin}$ are given by $\mathbb{R}$, being the integral of the 2-forms. But then moreover there are the non-constant homotopies in Spin from the constant 2-sphere to itself. Since $\pi_3(\mathrm{Spin}) = \mathbb{Z}$ and $\mu(\theta)$ is an integral form, this reduces the homotopy classes to $U(1) = \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$. This are the same as in $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_c$ and the integration map that sends the 2-forms to elements in $U(1)$ is an isomorphism on these homotopy classes. □

**Remark 7.1.18.** Propositions 7.1.17 and 7.1.12 together imply that the geometric realization $|\mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{so}_\mu)|$ is a model for $B$String in Top

$$|\exp(\mathfrak{so}_\mu)| \simeq B\mathrm{String}.$$

With slight differences in the technical realization of $\exp(\mathfrak{g}_m u)$ this was originally shown in [Hen08, theorem 8.4]. For the following discussion however the above perspective, realizing $\mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{so}_\mu)$ as a presentation of the homotopy fiber of the smooth first fractional Pontryagin class, def 7.1.10, is crucial.

We now discuss three equivalent but different models of the smooth String 2-group by diffeological *strict* 2-groups, hence by crossed modules of diffeological groups. See [BCSS07] for the general notion of strict Fréchet-Lie 2-groups and for discussion of one of the following models.

**Definition 7.1.19.** For $(G_1 \to G_0)$ a crossed module of diffeological groups (groups of concrete sheaves on CartSp) write

$$\Xi(G_1 \to G_0) \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$$

for the corresponding presheaf of simplicial groups.

There is an evident strictification of $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_c$ from the proof of prop 7.1.17 given by the following definition. For the notion of thin homotopy classes of paths and disks see [ScWa08].

**Definition 7.1.20.** Write

$$\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{th}}\mathrm{Spin} \to P_{\mathrm{th}}\mathrm{Spin} \,,$$

for the crossed module where

- $P_{\mathrm{th}}$Spin is the group whose elements are *thin-homotopy* classes of based smooth paths in $G$ and whose product is obtained by rigidly translating one path so that its basepoint matches the other path's endpoint and then concatenating;

- $\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{th}}$Spin is the group whose elements are equivalence classes of pairs $(d, x)$ consisting of *thin homotopy* classes of disks $d : D^2 \to G$ in $G$ with sitting instant at a chosen point on the boundary, together with an element $x \in \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$. Two such pairs are taken to be equivalent if the boundary of the disks has the same thin homotopy classes and if the labels $x$ and $x'$ differ, in $\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$, by the integral $\int_{D^3} f^*\mu(\theta)$ over any 3-ball $f : D^3 \to G$ cobounding the two disks. The product is given by translating and then *gluing* of disks at their basepoint (so that their boundary paths are being concatenated, hence multiplied in $P_{\mathrm{th}}$Spin) and adding the labels in $\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$.

  The map from $\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{th}}$Spin to $P_{\mathrm{th}}$Spin is given by sending a disk to its boundary path.

  The action of $P_{\mathrm{th}}$Spin on $\Omega_{\mathrm{th}}$Spin is given by whiskering a disk by a path and its reverse path.

**Proposition 7.1.21.** *Let*

$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_c \to \mathbf{B}\Xi(\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{th}}\mathrm{Spin} \to P_{\mathrm{th}}\mathrm{Spin})$$

*be the morphism that sends maps to* Spin *to their thin-homotopy class. This is a weak equivalence in* $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

We produce now two equivalent crossed modules that are both obtained as central extensions of path groups. This is joint with Danny Stevenson, based on results in [MuSt03].

The following proposition is standard.

**Proposition 7.1.22.** *Let $H \subset G$ be a normal subgroup of some group $G$ and lat $\hat{H} \to H$ be a central extension of groups such that the conjugation action of $G$ on $H$ lifts to an automorphism action $\alpha : G \to$* $\mathrm{Aut}(\hat{H})$ *on the central extension. Then $(\hat{H} \to G)$ with this $\alpha$ is a crossed module.*

We construct classes of examples of this type from central extensions of path groups.

**Proposition 7.1.23.** *Let $G \subset \Gamma$ be a simply connected normal Lie subgroup of a Lie group $\Gamma$. Write $PG$ for the based path group of $G$ whose elements are smooth maps $[0, 1] \to G$ starting at the neutral element and whose product is given by the pointwise product in $G$. Consider the complex with differential $d \pm \delta$ of simplicial forms on $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$. Let $(F, a, \beta)$ be a triple where*
*i. $a \in \Omega^1(G \times G)$ such that $\delta a = 0$;*
*ii. $F$ is a closed integral 2-form on $G$ such that $\delta F = da$;*
*iii. $\beta : \Gamma \to \Omega^1(G)$ such that, for all $\gamma, \gamma_1, \gamma_2 \in \Gamma$,*

- $\gamma^* F = F + d\beta_\gamma$;

- $(\gamma_1)^*\beta_{\gamma_2} - \beta_{\gamma_1\gamma_2} + \beta_{\gamma_1} = 0$;

- $a = \gamma^* a + \delta(\beta_\gamma)$;

- *for all based paths $f : [0, 1] \to G$,* $f^*\beta_\gamma = (f, \gamma^{-1})^* a + (\gamma, f\gamma^{-1})^* a$.

**1.** *Then the map $c : PG \times PG \to U(1)$ given by $c : (f, g) \mapsto c_{f,g} := \exp\left(2\pi i \int_{0,1} (f, g)^* a\right)$ is a group 2-cocycle leading to a central extension $\widehat{P}G = PG \ltimes U(1)$ with product $(\gamma_1, x_1) \cdot (\gamma_2, x_2) = (\gamma_1 \cdot \gamma_2, x_1 x_2 c_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2})$.*
**2.** *Since $G$ is simply connected every loop in $G$ bounds a disk $D$. There is a normal subgroup $N \subset \widehat{P}G$ consisting of pairs $(\gamma, x)$ with $\gamma(1) = e$ and $x = \exp(2\pi i \int_D F)$ for any disk $D$ in $G$ such that $\partial D = \gamma$.*
**3.** *Finally, $\tilde{G} := \widehat{PG}/N$ is a central extension of $G$ by $U(1)$ and the conjugation action of $\Gamma$ on $G$ lifts to $\tilde{G}$ by setting $\alpha(\gamma)(f, x) := (\alpha(\gamma)(f),\ x \exp(\in_f \beta_\gamma))$ such that* $\mathrm{Cent}(G, \Gamma, F, a, \beta) := (\tilde{G} \to \Gamma)$ *is a Lie crossed module and hence a strict Lie 2-group of the type in prop. 7.1.22.*

Proof. All statements about the central extension $\hat{G}$ can be found in [MuSt03]. It remains to check that the action $\alpha : \Gamma \to \mathrm{Aut}(\tilde{G})$ satisfies the required axioms of a crossed module, in particular the condition $\alpha(t(h))(h') = hh'h^{-1}$. For this we have to show that

$$\alpha(h(1))([f,z]) = [h,1][f,z]\left[h^{-1}, \exp(-\int_{(h,h^{-1})} a)\right] ,$$

where $h$ denotes a based path in $P\mathcal{G}$, so that $[h,1]$ represents an element of $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}$. By definition of the product in $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}$, the right hand side is equal to

$$\left[hfh^{-1}, z\exp\left(\int_{(h,f)} a + \int_{(hf,h^{-1})} a - \int_{(h,h^{-1})} a\right)\right] .$$

This is not exactly in the form we want, since the left hand side is equal to $\left[h(1)fh(1)^{-1}, z\exp(\int_f \beta_h)\right]$. Therefore, we want to replace $hfh^{-1}$ with the homotopic path $h(1)fh(1)^{-1}$. An explicit homotopy between these two paths is given by $H(s,t) = h((1-s)t+s)f(t)h((1-s)t+s)^{-1}$. Therefore, we have the equality

$$\left[hfh^{-1}, z\exp\left(\int_{(h,f)} a + \int_{(hf,h^{-1})} a - \int_{(h,h^{-1})} a\right)\right]$$
$$= \left[h(1)fh(1)^{-1}, z\exp\left(\int_{(h,f)} a + \int_{(hf,h^{-1})} a - \int_{(h,h^{-1})} a + \int H^*F\right)\right] .$$

Using the relation $\delta(F) = da$ and the fact that the pullbacks of $F$ along the maps $[0,1]\times[0,1] \to G$, $(s,t) \mapsto h((1-s)t+s)$ vanish, we see that

$$\int H^*F = \int_{(f,h(1)^{-1})} a - \int_{(f,h^{-1})} a + \int_{(h,h^{-1})} a + \int_{(h(1),fh(1)^{-1})} a - \int_{(h,fh^{-1})} a .$$

Therefore the sum of integrals

$$\int_{(h,f)} a + \int_{(hf,h^{-1})} a - \int_{(h,h^{-1})} a + \int H^*F$$

can be written as

$$\int_{(h,f)} a + \int_{(hf,h^{-1})} a - \int_{(h,h^{-1})} a + \int_{(f,h(1)^{-1})} a - \int_{(f,h^{-1})} a + \int_{(h,h^{-1})} a + \int_{(h(1),fh(1)^{-1})} a - \int_{(h,fh^{-1})} a .$$

Using the condition $\delta(a) = 0$, we see that this simplifies down to $\int_{(f,h(1)^{-1})} a + \int_{(h(1),fh(1)^{-1})} a$. Therefore, a sufficient condition to have a crossed module is the equation $f^*\beta_h = (f,h(1))^*a + (h(1),fh(1)^{-1})^*a$. □

**Proposition 7.1.24.** *Given triples $(F,a,\beta)$ and $(F',a',\beta')$ as above and given $b \in \Omega^1(G)$ such that*

$$F' = F + db , \tag{7.1}$$

$$a' = a + \delta(b) \tag{7.2}$$

*and for all $\gamma \in \Gamma$*

$$\beta_\gamma + \gamma^* b = b + \beta'_\gamma , \tag{7.3}$$

*then there is an isomorphism* $\mathrm{Cent}(G,\Gamma,F,a,\beta) \simeq \mathrm{Cent}(G,\Gamma,F',a',\beta')$ .

In [BCSS07] the following special case of this general construction was considered.

**Definition 7.1.25.** Let $G$ be a compact, simple and simply-connected Lie group with Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$. Let $\langle\cdot,\cdot\rangle$ be the Killing form invariant polynomial on $\mathfrak{g}$, normalized such that the Lie algebra 3-cocycle $\mu := \langle\cdot,[\cdot,\cdot]\rangle$ extends left invariantly to a 3-form on $G$ which is the image in deRham cohomology of one of the two generators of $H^3(G,\mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}$. Let $\Omega G$ be the based loop group of $G$ whose elements are smooth maps $\gamma : [0,1] \to G$ with $\gamma(0) = \gamma(1) = e$ and whose product is by pointwise multiplication of such maps. Define $F \in \Omega^2(\Omega G)$, $a \in \Omega^1(\Omega G \times \Omega G)$ and $\beta : \Gamma \to \Omega^1(\Omega G)$

$$\begin{aligned} F(\gamma, X, Y) &:= \int_0^{2\pi} \langle X, Y' \rangle dt \\ a(\gamma_1,\gamma_2,X_1,X_2) &:= \int_0^{2\pi} \langle X_1, \dot\gamma_2\gamma_2^{-1}\rangle dt \\ \beta(p)(\gamma, X) &:= \int_0^{2\pi} \langle p^{-1}\dot p, X\rangle dt \end{aligned}$$

This satisfies the axioms of prop. 7.1.23 and we write

$$\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{BCSS}}(G) := \Xi\mathrm{Cent}(\Omega G, PG, F, \alpha, \beta)$$

for the corresponding diffeological strict 2-group. If $G = \mathrm{Spin}$ we write just $\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{BCS}}$ for this.

There is a variant of this example, using another cocycle on loop groups that was given in [Mic87].

**Definition 7.1.26.** With all assumptions as in definition 7.1.25 define now

$$\begin{aligned} F(\gamma, X, Y) &:= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \langle \gamma^{-1}\dot\gamma, [X,Y]\rangle dt \\ a(\gamma_1,\gamma_2,X_1,X_2) &:= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \left(\langle X_1, \dot\gamma_2\gamma_2^{-1}\rangle - \langle \gamma_1^{-1}\dot\gamma_1, \gamma_2 X_2 \gamma_2^{-1}\rangle\right) dt \\ \beta(p)(\gamma, X) &:= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \langle \gamma^{-1}p^{-1}\dot p\gamma + p^{-1}\dot p, X\rangle dt \end{aligned}$$

This satisfies the axioms of proposition 7.1.23 and we write

$$\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{Mick}}(G) := \Xi\mathrm{Cent}(\Omega G, PG, F, \alpha, \beta)$$

for the corresponding 2-group. If $G = \mathrm{Spin}$ we write just $\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{Mick}}$ for this.

**Proposition 7.1.27.** *There is an isomorphism of 2-groups* $\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{BCSS}}(G) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{Mick}}(G)$ .

Proof. We show that $b \in \Omega^1(\Omega G)$ defined by $b(\gamma, X) := \frac{1}{4\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}\langle\gamma^{-1}\dot\gamma, X\rangle dt$ satisfies the conditions of prop. 7.1.24 and hence defines the desired isomorphism.

- Proof of equation 7.1: We calculate the exterior derivative $db$. To do this we first calculate the derivative $Xb(y)$: if $\gamma_t = \gamma e^{tX}$ then to first order in $t$, $\gamma_t^{-1}\dot\gamma_t$ is equal to $\gamma^{-1}\dot\gamma + t[\gamma^{-1}\dot\gamma, X] + tX'$. Therefore

$$Xb(Y) = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \left(\langle\gamma^{-1}\dot\gamma, [X,Y]\rangle + \langle X', Y\rangle\right) dt \,.$$

Hence $db$ is equal to

$$\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \left(\langle\gamma^{-1}\dot\gamma, [X,Y]\rangle + \langle X', Y\rangle + \langle\gamma^{-1}\dot c, [X,Y]\rangle - \langle Y', X\rangle - \langle\gamma^{-1}\dot\gamma, [X,Y]\rangle\right) \,,$$

which is easily seen to simplify down to

$$-\int_0^{2\pi}\langle X, Y\rangle dt + \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\langle\gamma^{-1}\dot\gamma, [X,Y]\rangle dt \,.$$

- Proof of equation 7.2: We get

$$\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\Big\{\langle\gamma_2\dot{\gamma}_2^{-1},X_2\rangle-\langle\gamma_2^{-1}\gamma_1^{-1}\dot{\gamma}_1\gamma_2,\gamma_2^{-1}X_1\gamma_2\rangle-\langle\gamma_2^{-1}\gamma_1^{-1}\dot{\gamma}_1\gamma_2,X_2\rangle \\ -\langle\gamma_2^{-1}\dot{\gamma}_2,\gamma_2^{-1}X_1\gamma_2\rangle-\langle\gamma_2^{-1}\dot{\gamma}_2,X_2\rangle+\langle\gamma_1^{-1}\dot{\gamma}_1,X_1\rangle\Big\}\,dt\ ,$$

which is equal to

$$\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\Big\{-\langle\gamma_1^{-1}\dot{\gamma}_1,\gamma_2X_2\gamma_2^{-1}\rangle-\langle\dot{\gamma}_2\gamma_2^{-1},X_1\rangle\Big\}\,dt\ ,$$

which in turn equals

$$\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\Big\{\langle X_1,\dot{\gamma}_2\gamma_2^{-1}\rangle-\langle\gamma_1^{-1}\dot{\gamma}_1,\gamma_2X_2\gamma_2^{-1}\rangle\Big\}\,dt-\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}\langle X_1,\dot{\gamma}_2\gamma_2^{-1}\rangle dt\ .$$

- Proof of equation 7.3: we get

$$\begin{aligned}
p^*b(\gamma;\gamma X) &= b(p\gamma p^{-1};p\gamma p^{-1}(pXp^{-1}))\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\langle p\gamma p^{-1}(\dot{p}\gamma p^{-1}+p\dot{\gamma}p^{-1}-p\gamma p^{-1}\dot{p}p^{-1},pXp^{-1}\rangle dt\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\langle p\gamma^{-1}p^{-1}\dot{p}\gamma p^{-1}+p\gamma^{-1}\dot{\gamma}p^{-1}-\dot{p}p^{-1},pXp^{-1}\rangle dt\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\langle\gamma^{-1}p^{-1}\dot{p}\gamma+\gamma^{-1}\dot{\gamma}-p^{-1}\dot{p},X\rangle dt\\
&= b(\gamma,\gamma X)+\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\langle\gamma^{-1}p^{-1}\dot{p}\gamma-p^{-1}\dot{p},X\rangle dt\\
&= b(\gamma,\gamma X)+\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\langle\gamma^{-1}p^{-1}\dot{p}\gamma+p^{-1}\dot{p},X\rangle dt-\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}\langle p^{-1}\dot{p},X\rangle dt
\end{aligned}$$

The three conditions in proposition 7.1.24 are satisfied and, therefore, the desired isomorphism is established.
□

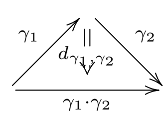
**Proposition 7.1.28.** *The strict 2-group* $\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{Mick}}$ *from definition 7.1.26 is equivalent to the model* $\Xi(\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{th}}\mathrm{Spin}\to P_{\mathrm{th}})\mathrm{Spin}$ *from def. 7.1.20.*

Proof. We define a morphism $F:\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{Mick}}\to\mathbf{B}\Xi(\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{th}}\mathrm{Spin}\to P_{\mathrm{th}})\mathrm{Spin}$. Its action on 1- and 2-morphisms is obvious: it sends parameterized paths $\gamma:[0,1]\to G=\mathrm{Spin}$. to their thin-homotopy equivalence class

$$F:\gamma\mapsto[\gamma]$$

and similarly for parameterized disks. On the $\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$-labels of these disks it acts as the identity.

The subtle part is the compositor measuring the coherent failure of this assignment to respect composition: Define the components of this compositor for any two parameterized based paths $\gamma_1,\gamma_2:[0,1]\to G$ with pointwise product $(\gamma_1\cdot\gamma_2):[0,1]\to G$ and images $[\gamma_1],[\gamma_2],[\gamma_1\cdot\gamma_2]$ in thin homotopy classes to be represented by a parameterized disk in $G$



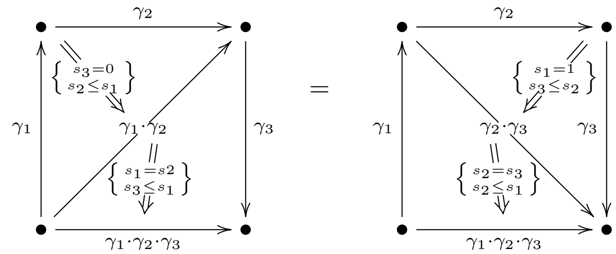
equipped with a label $x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2} \in \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$ to be determined. Notice that this triangle is a diagram in $\Xi(\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{th}}\mathrm{Spin} \to P_{\mathrm{th}})\mathrm{Spin}$, so that composition of 1-morphisms is concatenation $\gamma_1 \circ \gamma_2$ of paths. A suitable disk in $G$ is obtained via the map

$$D^2 \xrightarrow{a} [0,1]^2 \xrightarrow{(s_1,s_2)\mapsto \gamma_1(s_1)\cdot\gamma_2(s_2)} G \ ,$$

where $a$ is a smooth surjection onto the triangle $\{(s_1,s_2)|s_2 \leq s_1\} \subset [0,1]^2$ such that the lower semi-circle of $\partial D^2 = S^1$ maps to the hypotenuse of this triangle. The coherence law for this compositor for all triples of parameterized paths $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3 : [0,1] \to G$ amounts to the following: consider the map

$$D^3 \xrightarrow{a} [0,1]^3 \xrightarrow{(s_1,s_2,s_3)\mapsto \gamma_1(s_1)\cdot\gamma_2(s_2)\cdot\gamma_3(s_3)} G \ ,$$

where the map $a$ is a smooth surjection onto the tetrahedron $\{(s_3 \leq s_2 \leq s_1)\} \subset [0,1]^3$. Then the coherence condition




requires that the integral of the canonical 3-form on $G$ pulled back to the 3-ball along these maps accounts for the difference in the chosen labels of the disks involved:

$$\int_{D^3} (b \circ a)^*\mu = \int_{s_3 \leq s_2 \leq s_1} (\gamma_1 \cdot \gamma_2 \cdot \gamma_3)^*\mu = x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2} + x_{\gamma_1\cdot\gamma_2,\gamma_3} - x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2\cdot\gamma_3} - x_{\gamma_2,\gamma_3} \quad \in \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}\,.$$

(Notice that there is no further twist on the right hand side because whiskering in $\mathbf{B}\Xi(\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{th}}G \to P_{\mathrm{th}}G)$ does not affect the labels of the disks.) To solve this condition, we need a 2-form to integrate over the triangles. This is provided by the degree 2 component of the simplicial realization $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega^3(G) \times \Omega^2(G \times G)$ of the first Pontryagin form as a simplicial form on $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$:

for $\mathfrak{g}$ a semisimple Lie algebra, the image of the normalized invariant bilinear polynomial $\langle \cdot,\cdot \rangle$ under the Chern-Weil map is $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega^3(G) \times \Omega^2(G \times G)$ with

$$\mu := \langle \theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta] \rangle$$

and

$$\nu := \langle \theta_1 \wedge \bar{\theta}_2 \rangle\,,$$

where $\theta$ is the left-invariant canonical $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form on $G$ and $\bar{\theta}$ the right-invariant one.

So, define the label assigned by our compositor to the disks considered above by

$$x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2} := \int_{s_2 \leq s_1} (\gamma_1,\gamma_2)^*\nu\,.$$

To show that this assignment satisfies the above condition, use the closedness of $(\mu,\nu)$ in the complex of simplicial forms on $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{ch}}$: $\delta\mu = d\nu$ and $\delta\nu = 0$. From this one obtains

$$(\gamma_1 \cdot \gamma_2 \cdot \gamma_3)^*\mu = -d(\gamma_1 \cdot \gamma_2, \gamma_3)^*\nu = -d(\gamma_1, \gamma_2 \cdot \gamma_3)^*\nu$$

and

$$(\gamma_1, \gamma_2 \cdot \gamma_3)^*\nu = (\gamma_1 \cdot \gamma_2, \gamma_3)^*\nu + (\gamma_1,\gamma_2)^*\nu - (\gamma_2,\gamma_3)^*\nu\,.$$

Now we compute as follows: Stokes' theorem gives

$$\int\limits_{s_3\leq s_2\leq s1} (\gamma_1\cdot\gamma_2\cdot\gamma_3)^*\mu = \left( \int\limits_{s_3=0, s_2\leq s_1} + \int\limits_{s_1=s_2, s_3\leq s_1} - \int\limits_{s_1=1, s_3\leq s_2} - \int\limits_{s_2=s_3, s_2\leq s_1} \right) (\gamma_1, \gamma_2\cdot\gamma_3)^*\nu\,.$$

The first integral is manifestly equal to $x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2}$. The last integral is manifestly equal to $-x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2\cdot\gamma_3}$. For the remaining two integrals we rewrite

$$\cdots = x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2} - x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2\cdot\gamma_3} + \left( \int\limits_{s_1=s_2, s_3\leq s_1} - \int\limits_{s_1=1, s_3\leq s_2} \right) \left( (\gamma_1\cdot\gamma_2,\gamma_3)^*\nu + (\gamma_1,\gamma_2)^*\nu - (\gamma_2,\gamma_3)^*\nu \right)\,.$$

The first term in the integrand now manifestly yields $x_{\gamma_1\cdot\gamma_2,\gamma_3} - x_{\gamma_2,\gamma_3}$. The second integrand vanishes on the integration domain. The third integrand, finally, gives the same contribution under both integrals and thus drops out due to the relative sign. So in total what remains is indeed

$$\cdots = x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2} - x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2\cdot\gamma_3} + x_{\gamma_1\cdot\gamma_2,\gamma_3} - x_{\gamma_2,\gamma_3}\,.$$

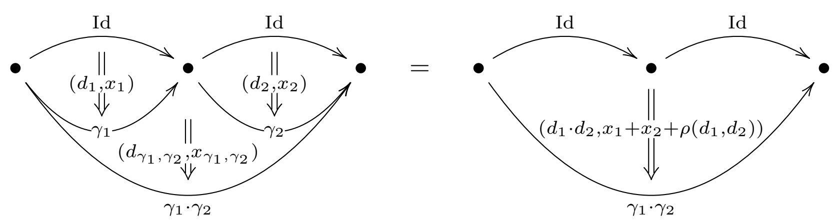
This establishes the coherence condition for the compositor.

Finally we need to show that the compositor is compatible with the horizontal composition of 2-morphisms. We consider this in two steps, first for the horizontal composition of two 2-morphisms both starting at the identity 1-morphism in $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{Mick}}(G)$ – this is the product in the loop group $\hat{\Omega}G$ centrally extended using Mickelsson's cocycle – then for the horizontal composition of an identity 2-morphism in $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{Mick}}(G)$ with a 2-morphism starting at the identity 1-morphisms – this is the action of $PG$ on $\hat{\Omega}G$. These two cases then imply the general case.

- Let $(d_1, x_1)$ and $(d_2, x_2)$ represent two 2-morphisms in $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{Mick}}$ starting at the identity 1-morphisms. So

  $$d_i : [0,1] \to \Omega G$$

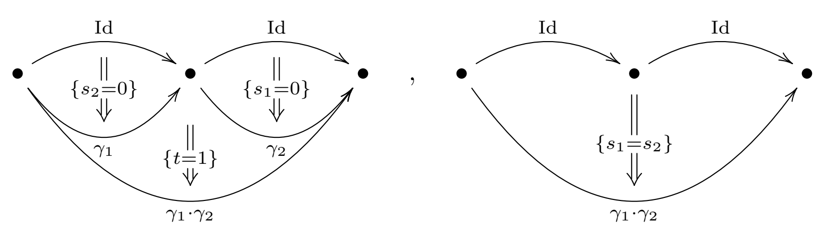
  is a based path in loops in $G$ and $x_i \in U(1)$. We need to show that

  as a pasting diagram equation in $\mathbf{B}\Xi(\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{th}}G \to P_{\mathrm{th}}G)$. Here on the left we have gluing of disks in $G$ along their boundaries and addition of their labels, while on the right we have the pointwise product from definition 7.1.26 of labeled disks as representing the product of elements $\hat{\Omega}G$.

  There is an obvious 3-ball interpolating between the disk on the left and on the right of the above equation:

  $$(\{s_2 \leq s_1\} \subset [0,1]^3) \to G$$
  $$(s_1, s_2, t) \mapsto (d_1(t, s_1)\cdot d_2(t, s_2))$$

The compositor property demands that the integral of the canonical 3-form over this ball accounts for the difference between $x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2}$ and $\rho(\gamma_1,\gamma_2)$

$$\rho(d_1,d_2) = \int_{\substack{s_2\leq s_1\\ 0\leq t\leq 1}} (d_1\cdot d_2)^*\mu + \int_{s_2\leq s_1} (\gamma_1,\gamma_2)^*\nu\,.$$

Now use again the relation between $\mu$ and $d\nu$ to rewrite this as

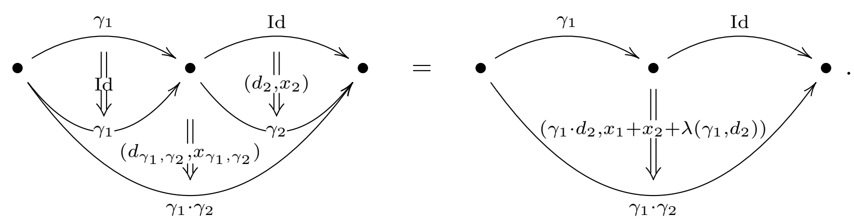
$$\cdots = \int_{\substack{s_2\leq s_1\\ 0\leq t\leq 1}} ((d_1)^*\mu + (d_2)^*\mu - d(d_1,d_2)^*\nu) + \int_{s_2\leq s_1} (\gamma_1,\gamma_2)^*\nu\,.$$

The first two integrands vanish. The third one leads to boundary integrals

$$\cdots = -\left(\int_{s_2=0} + \int_{s_1=0}\right)(d_1,d_2)^*\nu - \int_{\substack{t=1\\ s_2\leq s_1}} (d_1,d_2)^*\nu + \int_{s_2\leq s_1}(\gamma_1,\gamma_2)^*\nu + \int_{\substack{0\leq t\leq 1\\ s_1=s_2}} (d_1,d_2)^*\nu\,.$$

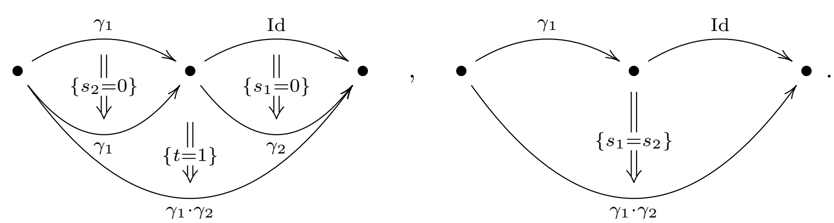
The first two integrands vanish on their integration domain. The third integral cancels with the fourth one. The remaining fifth one is indeed the 2-cocycle on $P\Omega G$ from definition 7.1.26.

- The second case is entirely analogous: for $\gamma_1$ a path and $(d_2,x_2)$ a centrally extended loop we need to show that




There is an obvious 3-ball interpolating between the disk on the left and on the right of the above equation:

$$(\{s_2\leq s_1\}\subset[0,1]^3)\to G$$
$$(s_1,s_2,t)\mapsto(\gamma_1(s_1)\cdot d_2(t,s_2))$$




The compositor property demands that the integral of the canonical 3-form over this ball accounts for the difference between $x_{\gamma_1,\gamma_2}$ and $\lambda(\gamma_1,\gamma_2)$

$$\lambda(\gamma_1,d_2) = \int_{\substack{s_2\leq s_1\\ 0\leq t\leq 1}} (d_1\cdot d_2)^*\mu + \int_{s_2\leq s_1} (\gamma_1,\gamma_2)^*\nu\,.$$

This is essentially the same computation as before, so that the result is

$$\cdots = \int_{\substack{0\leq t\leq 1\\ s_1=s_2}} (\gamma_1,d_2)^*\nu\,.$$

This is indeed the quantity from definition 7.1.26.

□

Applied to the case $G = \mathrm{Spin}$ in summary this shows that all these strict smooth 2-groups are indeed presentations of the abstractly defined smooth String 2-group from def. 7.1.10.

**Theorem 7.1.29.** *We have equivalences of smooth 2-groups*

$$\mathrm{String} \simeq \Omega \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{so}_\mu) \simeq \mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{BCSS}} \simeq \mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{Mick}} .$$

Notice that all the models on the right are degreewise diffeological and in fact Fréchet, but not degreewise finite dimensional. This means that neither of these models is a differentiable stack or Lie groupoid in the traditional sense, even though they are perfectly good models for objects in Smooth∞Grpd. Some authors found this to be a deficiency. Motivated by this it has been shown in [Scho10] that there exist finite dimensional models of the smooth String-group. Observe however the following:

1. If one allows arbitrary disjoint unions of finite dimensional manifolds, then by prop. 3.1.22 *every* object in Smooth∞Grpd has a presentation by a simplicial object that is degreewise of this form, even a presentation which is degreewise a union of just Cartesian spaces.
2. Contrary to what one might expect, it is not the degreewise finite dimensional models that seem to lend themselves most directly to differential refinements and differential geometric computations with objects in Smooth∞Grpd, but the models of the form $\mathbf{cosk}_n \exp(\mathfrak{g})$. See also the discussion in 7.1.6.3 below.

#### 7.1.2.5 Smooth fivebrane structure and the Fivebrane-6-group

We now climb up one more step in the smooth Whitehead tower of the orthogonal group, to find a smooth and differential refinement of the *Fivebrane group* [SSS09b].

**Proposition 7.1.30.** *Pulled back along $B\mathrm{String} \to BO$ the second Pontryagin class is 6 times a generator $\frac{1}{6}p_2$ of $H^8(B\mathrm{String}, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\mathrm{String} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}p_2} & B^8\mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\cdot 6} \\ B\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{p_2} & B^8\mathbb{Z} \end{array} .$$

This is due to [Bott58]. We call $\frac{1}{6}p_2$ the *second fractional Pontryagin class* .

**Definition 7.1.31.** Write $B$Fivebrane for the homotopy fiber of the second fractional Pontryagin class in $\mathrm{Top} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\mathrm{Fivebrane} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B\mathrm{String} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}p_2} & B^8\mathbb{Z} \end{array} .$$

Write

$$\mathrm{Fivebrane} := \Omega B\mathrm{Fivebrane}$$

for its loop space, the topological *fivebrane ∞-group*.

This is the next step in the topological Whitehead tower of $O$ after String, often denoted $O\langle 7\rangle$. For a discussion of its role in the physics of super-Fivebranes that gives it its name here in analogy to String = $O\langle 3\rangle$ see [SSS09b]. See also [DHH10], around remark 2.8. We now construct smooth and then differential refinements of this object.

**Theorem 7.1.32.** *The image under Lie integration, prop. 6.4.131, of the canonical Lie algebra 7-cocycle*

$$\mu_7 = \langle -, [-,-], [-,-], [-,-] \rangle : \mathfrak{so}_{\mu_3} \to b^6\mathbb{R}$$

*on the string Lie 2-algebra* $\mathfrak{so}_{\mu_3}$*, def. 7.1.15, is a morphism in* Smooth∞Grpd *of the form*

$$\tfrac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} \to \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)$$

*whose image under the fundamental ∞-groupoid ∞-functor/ geometric realization, 6.3.5,* $\Pi : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *is the ordinary second fractional Pontryagin class* $\frac{1}{6}p_2 : B\mathrm{String} \to B^8\mathbb{Z}$ *in* Top. *We call* $\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2 := \exp(\mu_7)$ *the* second smooth fractional Pontryagin class

*Moreover, the corresponding refined differential characteristic cocycle, 6.4.17,*

$$\tfrac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2 : \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{conn}}(-, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}) \to \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{diff}}(-, \mathbf{B}^7 U(1))\,,$$

*induces in cohomology the ordinary refined Chern-Weil homomorphism [HoSi05]*

$$[\tfrac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2] : H^1_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(X, \mathrm{String}) \to H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$$

*of* $\langle -,-,-,- \rangle$ *restricted to those* Spin*-principal bundles* $P$ *that have* String*-lifts*

$$[P] \in H^1_{\mathrm{smooth}}(X, \mathrm{String}) \hookrightarrow H^1_{\mathrm{smooth}}(X, \mathrm{Spin})\,.$$

Proof. This is shown in [FSS10]. The proof is analogous to that of prop. 7.1.9. □

**Definition 7.1.33.** Write **B**Fivebrane for the homotopy fiber in Smooth∞Grpd of the smooth refinement of the second fractional Pontryagin class, prop. 7.1.32:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Fivebrane} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2} & \mathbf{B}^7 U(1) \end{array} .$$

We say its loop space object is the *smooth fivebrane 6-group*

$$\mathrm{Fivebrane}_{\mathrm{smooth}} := \Omega \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Fivebrane}\,.$$

This has been considered in [SSS09c]. Similar discussion as for the smooth String 2-group applies.

#### 7.1.2.6 Higher $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structures

In 7.1.2 we saw that the classical extension

$$\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{Spin}(n) \to \mathrm{SO}(n)$$

is only the first step in a tower of *smooth* higher spin groups.

There is another classical extension of $\mathrm{SO}(n)$, not by $\mathbb{Z}_2$ but by the circle group [LaMi89]:

$$U(1) \to \mathrm{Spin}^c(n) \to \mathrm{SO}(n) \,.$$

Here we discuss higher smooth analogs of this construction.

This section draws form [FSS12b].

We find below that $\mathrm{Spin}^c$ is a special case of the following simple general notion, that turns out to be useful to identify and equip with a name.

**Definition 7.1.34.** Let $\mathbf{H}$ be an $\infty$-topos, $G \in \infty\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ an $\infty$-group object, let $A$ be an abelian group object and let

$$\mathbf{p} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^{n+1}A$$

be a characteristic map. Write $\hat{G} \to G$ for the extension classified by $\mathbf{p}$, exhibited by a fiber sequence

$$\mathbf{B}^n A \to \hat{G} \to G$$

in $\mathbf{H}$. Then for $H \in \infty\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$, any other $\infty$-group with characteristic map of the same form

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}H \to \mathbf{B}^{n+1}A$$

we write

$$\hat{G}^{\mathbf{c}} := \Omega\left(\mathbf{B}G_{\mathbf{p}} \times_{\mathbf{c}} \mathbf{B}H\right) \in \infty\mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$$

for the loop space object of the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\hat{G}^{\mathbf{c}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}H \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}} \\ \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p}} & \mathbf{B}^{n+1}A \end{array} .$$

**Remark 7.1.35.** Since the Eilenberg-MacLane object $\mathbf{B}^{n+1}A$ is tself an $\infty$-group object, by the Mayer-Vietoris fiber sequence in $\mathbf{H}$, prop. 5.1.182, the object $\mathbf{B}\hat{G}^{\mathbf{c}}$ is equivalently the homotopy fiber of the difference $(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{c})$ of the two characteristic maps

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\hat{G}^{\mathbf{c}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}G \times \mathbf{B}H & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{B}^n A \end{array} .$$

#### 7.1.2.7 $\mathrm{Spin}^c$ as a homotopy fiber product in $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$

A classical definition of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$ is the following (for instance [LaMi89]).

**Definition 7.1.36.** For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the Lie group $\mathrm{Spin}^c(n)$ is the fiber product of Lie groups

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Spin}^c(n) &:= \mathrm{Spin}(n) \times_{\mathbb{Z}_2} U(1) \\ &= (\mathrm{Spin}(n) \times U(1))/\mathbb{Z}_2 \,, \end{aligned}$$

where the quotient is by the canonical subgroup embeddings.

We observe now that in the context of Smooth∞Grpd this Lie group has the following intrinsic characterization.

**Proposition 7.1.37.** *In* Smooth∞Grpd *we have an* $\infty$*-pullback diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^c & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}U(1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}_1 \mathrm{mod} 2} \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{w}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \end{array},$$

*where the right morphism is the smooth universal first Chern class, example 1.2.142, composed with the mod-2 reduction* $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2$*, and where* $\mathbf{w}_2$ *is the smooth universal second Stiefel-Whitney class, example 1.2.146.*

Proof. By the discussion at these examples, these universal smooth classes are represented by spans of simplicial presheaves

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{ch}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}_1} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to 1)_{\mathrm{ch}} & = & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & & & \\ \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}} & & & & \end{array}$$

and

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{Spin})_{\mathrm{ch}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to 1)_{\mathrm{ch}} & = & \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z}_2)_{\mathrm{ch}} \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & & & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}_{\mathrm{ch}} & & & & \end{array}.$$

Here both horizontal morphism are fibrations in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Therefore by prop. 5.1.9 the $\infty$-pullback in question is given by the ordinary fiber product of these two morphisms. This is

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathrm{Spin} \times \mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{ch}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{ch}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \stackrel{\mathrm{mod} 2}{\to} \mathrm{Spin})_{\mathrm{ch}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to 1)_{\mathrm{ch}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{Spin})_{\mathrm{ch}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to 1)_{\mathrm{ch}} \end{array},$$

where the crossed module $(\mathbb{Z} \stackrel{\partial}{\to} \mathrm{Spin} \times \mathbb{R})$ is given by

$$\partial : n \mapsto (n \bmod 2, n)\,.$$

Since this is a monomorphism, including (over the neutral element) the fiber of a locally trivial bundle we have an equivalence

$$\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathrm{Spin} \times \mathbb{R}) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathrm{Spin} \times U(1)) \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{B}(\mathrm{Spin} \times_{\mathbb{Z}_2} U(1))$$

in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. On the right is, by def. 7.1.36, the delooping of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$. □

**Remark 7.1.38.** Therefore by def. 7.1.34 we have

$$\mathrm{Spin}^c \simeq \mathrm{Spin}^{\mathbf{c}_1 \mathrm{mod} 2}\,,$$

which is the very motivation for the notation in that definition.

**Remark 7.1.39.** From prop. 7.1.37 we obtain the following characterization of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structures in $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ over a smooth manifold expressed in terms of traditional Čech cohomology, 6.3.8.1.

For $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd}$, the fact that $\mathbf{H}(X, -)$ preserves $\infty$-limits implies from prop. 7.1.37 that we have an $\infty$-pullback of cocycle $\infty$-groupoids

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}(X, B\mathrm{Spin}^c) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}U(1)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}_1 \mathrm{mod} 2} \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{w}_2} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2) \end{array} .$$

Picking any choice of differentiably good open cover $\{U_i \to X\}$ of $X$ and using the standard presentation of the coeffcient moduli stacks appearing here by sheaves of groupoids as discussed in 6.4.3, each of the four $\infty$-groupoids appearing here is canonically identified with the groupoid (or 2-groupoid in the bottom right) of Čech cocycles and Čech coboundaries with respect to the given cover and with coefficients in the given group. Moreover, in this presentation the right vertical morphism of the above diagram is clearly a fibration, and so by prop. 5.1.4 the ordinary pullback of these groupoids is already the correct $\infty$-pullback, hence is the groupoid $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^c)$ of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structure on $X$. So we read off from the diagram and the construction in the above proof: given a Čech 1-cocycle for an SO-structure on $X$ the corresponding $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structure is a lift to a $(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R})$-valued Čech cocycle of the $\mathbb{Z}_2$-valued Čech 2-cocycle that represents the second Stiefel-Whitney class, as described in 1.2.146, through the evident projection $(\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R}) \to (\mathbb{Z}_2 \to *)$ that by example. 1.2.142 presents the universal first Chern class.

#### 7.1.2.8 Smooth $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{c}_2}$

We consider smooth 2-groups of the form $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{c}}$, according to def. 7.1.34, where $\mathbf{B}U(1) \to \mathrm{String} \to \mathrm{Spin}$ in $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is the smooth String-2-group extension of the Spin-group from def. 7.1.10.

In [Sa10c] the following notion is introduced.

**Definition 7.1.40.** Let

$$p_1^c : B\mathrm{Spin}^c \to B\mathrm{Spin} \stackrel{\frac{1}{2}p_1}{\to} K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$$

in $\mathrm{Top} \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, where the first map is induced on classifying spaces by the defining projection, def. 7.1.36, and where the second represents the fractional first Pontryagin class from prop. 7.1.5.

Then write $\mathrm{String}^c$ for the topological group, well defined up to weak homotopy equivalence, that models the loop space of the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\mathrm{String}^c & \longrightarrow & (BU(1)) \times (BU(1)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{c_1 \cup c_1} \\ B\mathrm{Spin}^c & \xrightarrow{p_1^c} & K(\mathbb{Z}, 4) \end{array}$$

in Top.

This construction, and the role it plays in [Sa10c], is evidently an example of general structure of def. 7.1.34, the notation of which is motivated from this example. We consider now smooth and differential refinements of such objects.

To that end, recall from theorem. 7.1.9 the smooth refinement of the first fractional Pontryagin class

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$$

and from def. 7.1.10 the defining fiber sequence

$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) .$$

The proof of theorem 7.1.9 rests only on the fact that Spin is a compact and simply connected simple Lie group. The same is true for the special unitary group SU and the exceptional Lie group $E_8$.

**Proposition 7.1.41.** *The first two non-vanishing homotopy groups of $E_8$ are*

$$\pi_3(E_8) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$$

*and*

$$\pi_{15}(E_8) \simeq \mathbb{Z}\,.$$

This is a classical fact[BoSa58]. It follows with the Hurewicz theorem that

$$H^4(BE_8, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}\,.$$

Therefore the generator of this group is, up to sign, a canonical characteristic class, which we write

$$[a] \in H^4(BE_8, \mathbb{Z})$$

corresponding to a characteristic map $a : BE_8 \to K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$. Hence we obtain analogously the following statements.

**Corollary 7.1.42.** *The second Chern-class*

$$c_2 : B\mathrm{SU} \to K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$$

*has an essentially unique lift through* $\Pi : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}$ *to a morphism of the form*

$$\mathbf{c}_2 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$$

*and a representative is provided by the Lie integration* $\exp(\mu_3^{\mathfrak{su}})$ *of the canonical Lie algebra 3-cocycle* $\mu_3^{\mathfrak{su}} : \mathfrak{su} \to b^2\mathbb{R}$

$$\mathbf{c}_2 \simeq \exp(\mu_3^{\mathfrak{su}})\,.$$

*Similarly the characteristic map*

$$a : BE_8 \to \mathbb{K}(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$$

*has an essentially unique lift through* $\Pi : \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \simeq \mathrm{Top}$ *to a morphism of the form*

$$\mathbf{a} : \mathbf{B}E_8 \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$$

*and a representative is provided by the Lie integration* $\exp(\mu_3^{\mathfrak{e}_8})$ *of the canonical Lie algebra 3-cocycle* $\mu_3^{\mathfrak{e}_8} : \mathfrak{e}_8 \to b^2\mathbb{R}$

$$\mathbf{a} \simeq \exp(\mu_3^{\mathfrak{e}_8})\,.$$

Therefore we are entitled to the following special case of def. 7.1.34.

**Definition 7.1.43.** The smooth 2-group

$$\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{c}_2} \in \infty\mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$$

is the loop space object of the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{c}_2} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}_2} \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) \end{array}\,.$$

Analogously, the smooth 2-group

$$\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{a}} \in \infty\mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$$

is the loop space object of the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{a}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}E_8 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{a}} \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \end{array} .$$

**Remark 7.1.44.** By prop. 5.1.182, $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{a}}$ is equivalently the homotopy fiber of the difference $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{a}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{a}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}(\mathrm{Spin} \times E_8) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{a}} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \end{array} .$$

We consider now a presentation of $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{a}}$ by Lie integration, as in 6.4.14.

**Definition 7.1.45.** Let

$$(\mathfrak{so} \otimes \mathfrak{e}_8)_{\mu_3^{\mathfrak{so}} - \mu_3^{\mathfrak{e}_8}} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$$

be the $L_\infty$-algebra extension, according to def. 6.4.133, of the tensorproduct Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so} \otimes \mathfrak{e}_8$ by the difference of the canonical 3-cocycles on the two factors.

**Proposition 7.1.46.** *The Lie integration, def. 6.4.79, of the Lie 2-algebra* $(\mathfrak{so} \otimes \mathfrak{e}_8)_{\mu_3^{\mathfrak{so}} - \mu_3^{\mathfrak{e}_8}}$ *is a presentation of* $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{a}}$*:*

$$\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{a}} \simeq \tau_2 \exp\left((\mathfrak{so} \otimes \mathfrak{e}_8)_{\mu_3^{\mathfrak{so}} - \mu_3^{\mathfrak{e}_8}}\right)$$

Proof. With remark 7.1.44 this is directly analogous to prop. 7.1.17. □

**Remark 7.1.47.** Therefore a 2-connection on a $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{a}}$-principal 2-bundle is locally given by

- an $\mathfrak{so}$-valued 1-form $\omega$;
- an $\mathfrak{e}_8$-valued 1-form $A$;
- a 2-form $B$;

such that the 3-form curvature of $B$ is, locally, the sum of the de Rham differential of $B$ with the difference of the Chern-Simons forms of $\omega$ and $A$, respectively:

$$H_3 = dB + \mathrm{cs}(\omega) - \mathrm{cs}(A) .$$

We discuss the role of such 2-connections in string theory below in 7.1.6.3.2 and 7.2.9.3.

### 7.1.3 Reduction of structure groups

**7.1.3.1 Orthogonal/Riemannian structure** For $X$ a smooth manifold, we discuss the traditional notion of *Riemannian* structure or equivalently of *orthogonal structure* on $X$ as a special case of $\mathbf{c}$-twisted cohomology for suitable $\mathbf{c}$. This perspective on ordinary Riemannian geometry proves to be a useful starting point for generalizations.

Let $X$ be a smooth manifold of dimension $d$. Its tangent bundle $TX$ is associated to an essentially canonical $\mathrm{GL}(d)$-principal bundle. We write

$$TX : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)$$

for the corresponding classifying morphism, where $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)$ is the smooth moduli stack of smooth $\mathrm{GL}(d)$-principal bundles.

Consider the defining inclusion of Lie groups

$$\mathrm{O}(d) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(d)$$

and the induced morphism of the corresponding moduli stacks

$$\mathbf{orth} : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)\,.$$

The general observation 6.4.57 here reads

**Observation 7.1.48.** The homotopy fiber of **orth** is the quotient manifold $\mathrm{GL}(d)/\mathrm{O(d)}$. We have a fiber sequence of smooth stacks

$$\mathrm{GL}(d)/\mathrm{O(d)} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{orth}} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)\ .$$

Notice that $\mathrm{O}(d) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(d)$ is a maximal compact subgroup inclusion, so that observation 6.4.58 applies.

Definition 6.4.61 now becomes

**Definition 7.1.49.** Write $\mathbf{orth}\mathrm{Struc}_{TX}$ for the groupoid of $TX$-twisted **orth**-structures on $X$, hence the homotopy pullback in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{orth}\mathrm{Struc}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & \swarrow_{\simeq} & \downarrow^{TX} \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d)) & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{H}(X,\mathbf{orth})]{} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)) \end{array} .$$

**Proposition 7.1.50.** *The groupoid* $\mathbf{orth}\mathrm{Struc}_{TX}(X)$ *is naturally identified with the groupoid of choices of vielbein fields (soldering forms) on* $TX$*.*

Proof. Let $\{U_i \to X\}$ be any good open cover of $X$ by coordinate patches $\mathbb{R}^d \simeq U_i$. Let $C(\{U_i\})$ be the corresponding Čech groupoid. There is then a canonical span of simplicial presheaves

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{TX_{\mathrm{ch}}} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)_{\mathrm{ch}} \\ \downarrow^{\simeq} & & \\ X & & \end{array} .$$

presenting $TX$. Moreover, every morphism $g : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d)$ has a presentation by a similar span $g_{\mathrm{ch}}$ with values in $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d)$.

An object in $\mathbf{orth}\mathrm{Struc}_{TX}(X)$ is

1. a cocycle $g_{\mathrm{ch}}$ for an $\mathrm{O}(d)$-principal bundle as above;

2. over each $U_i$ an element $e|_{U_i} \in C^\infty(U_i, \mathrm{GL}(d))$

such that $e$ is compatible, on double overlaps, with the left $\mathrm{O}(d)$-action by the transition functions $g_{\mathrm{ch}}$ and the right $\mathrm{GL}(d)$-action by the transitiuon functions $TX_{\mathrm{ch}}$.

A morphism $e \to e'$ in $\mathbf{orth}\mathrm{Struc}_{TX}(X)$ is a gauge transformation $g_{\mathrm{ch}} \to g'_{\mathrm{ch}}$ of $\mathrm{O}(d)$-principal bundles whose left action takes $e$ to $e'$.

From this it is clear that

$$e = \{e^a{}_\mu\}_{a,\mu \in \{1,\cdots,d\}}$$

is a choice of vielbein. □

There is an evident differential refinement of **orth**

$$\hat{\mathbf{orth}} : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,.$$

**Definition 7.1.51.** Let $\mathrm{Conn}TX \to \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)_{\mathrm{conn}})$ be the left vertical morphism in the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Conn}TX & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{TX} \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)) \end{array} ,$$

where the bottom map is the morphism that forgets the connection.

This morphism may be thought of as the inclusion of connections on the tangent bundle into the groupoid of all $\mathrm{GL}(d)$-principal connections.

**Proposition 7.1.52.** *The homotopy pullback in*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{\mathbf{orth}}\mathrm{Struc}_{TX,\mathrm{conn}}(X) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Conn}TX \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d)_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(X, \hat{\mathbf{orth}})} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \end{array}$$

*or equivalently that in*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{\mathbf{orth}}\mathrm{Struc}_{TX,\mathrm{conn}}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{TX} \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d)_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d)) \end{array}$$

*is equivalent to the set of pairs of Riemannian metrics on $X$ and correspondingly metric-compatible connections on $TX$.*

Proof. The two pullbacks are equivalent by def. 7.1.51 and the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2.

Consider the first version. As in the proof of prop. 7.1.50 an object in the groupoid has an underlying choice of vielbein $e$. This now being a morphism of bundles with connection, it related, locally on each $U_i$, the goven connection form $\Gamma$ on $TX$ with a connection form $\omega$ on the $\mathrm{O}(d)$-principal bundle, via

$$\omega^a{}_b = e^a{}_\alpha \Gamma^\alpha{}_\beta (e^{-1})^b{}_\beta + e^a{}_\alpha d_{\mathrm{dR}} (e^{-1})^b{}_\beta \,.$$

But since $\omega$ is by definition an orthogonal connection, by this isomorphism $\Gamma$ is a metric-compatible connection. □

#### 7.1.3.2 Type II NS-NS generalized geometry

The target space geometry for type II superstrings in the NS-NS sector is naturally encoded by a variant of "generalized complex geometry" with metric structure, discussed for instance in [GMPW08]. We discuss here how this *type II NS-NS generalized geometry* is a special case of twisted **c**-structures as in 7.1.3.

**Definition 7.1.53.** Consider the Lie group inclusion

$$\mathrm{O}(d) \times \mathrm{O}(d) \to \mathrm{O}(d,d)$$

of those orthogonal transformations, that preserve the positive definite part or the negative definite part of the bilinear form of signature $(d,d)$, respectively.

If $\mathrm{O}(d,d)$ is presented as the group of $2d \times 2d$-matrices that preserve the bilinear form given by the $2d \times 2d$-matrix

$$\eta := \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathrm{id}_d \\ \mathrm{id}_d & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

then this inclusion sends a pair $(A_+, A_-)$ of orthogonal $n \times n$-matrices to the matrix

$$(A_+, A_-) \mapsto \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} A_+ + A_- & A_+ - A_- \\ A_+ - A_- & A_+ + A_- \end{pmatrix} .$$

The inclusion of Lie groups induces the corresponding morphism of smooth moduli stacks of principal bundles

$$\mathbf{TypeII} : \mathbf{B}(\mathrm{O}(d) \times \mathrm{O}(d)) \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d,d) .$$

Observation 6.4.57 here becomes

**Observation 7.1.54.** There is a fiber sequence of smooth stacks

$$\mathrm{O}(d,d)/(\mathrm{O}(d) \times \mathrm{O}(d)) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}(\mathrm{O}(d) \times \mathrm{O}(d)) \xrightarrow{\mathbf{TypeII}} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d,d) \; .$$

**Definition 7.1.55.** There is a canonical embedding

$$\mathrm{GL}(d) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{O}(d,d) .$$

In the above matrix presentation this is given by sending

$$a \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & a^{-T} \end{pmatrix} ,$$

where in the bottom right corner we have the transpose of the inverse matrix of the invertble matrix $a$.

**Observation 7.1.56.** We have a homotopy pullback of smooth stacks

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{GL}(d)\backslash\backslash \mathrm{O}(d,d)//(\mathrm{O}(d) \times \mathrm{O}(d)) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}(\mathrm{O}(d) \times \mathrm{O}(d)) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d,d) \end{array} .$$

**Definition 7.1.57.** Under inclusion def. 7.1.53 the tangent bundle of a $d$-dimensional manifold $X$ defines an $\mathrm{O}(d,d)$-cocycle

$$TX \otimes T^*X : \; X \xrightarrow{TX} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}(d) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{O}(d,d) \; .$$

The vector bundle canonically associated to this composite cocycles may canonically be identified with the tensor product vector bundle $TX \otimes T^*X$, and so we will refer to this cocycle by these symbols, as indicated.

Therefore we may canonically consider the groupoid of $TX \otimes T^*X$-twisted **TypeII**-structures, according to def. 6.4.61:

**Definition 7.1.58.** Write $\mathbf{TypeII}\mathrm{Struc}_{TX\otimes T^*X}(X)$ for the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{TypeII}\mathrm{Struc}_{TX\otimes T^*X}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{TX\otimes T^*X} \\ \mathbf{H}(X,\mathbf{B}(O(d)\times O(d))) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(X,\mathbf{TypeII})} & \mathbf{H}(X,\mathbf{B}O(d,d)) \end{array} .$$

**Proposition 7.1.59.** *The groupoid $\mathbf{TypeII}\mathrm{Struc}_{TX\otimes T^*X}(X)$ is that of "generalized vielbein fields" on $X$, as considered for instance around equation (2.24) of [GMPW08] (there only locally, but the globalization is evident).*

*In particular, its set of equivalence classes is the set of type-II generalized geometry structures on $X$.*

Proof. This is directly analogous to the proof of prop. 7.1.50. □

Over a local patch $\mathbb{R}^d \simeq U_i \hookrightarrow X$, the most general such generalized vielbein (hence the most general $\mathrm{O}(d,d)$-valued function) may be parameterized as

$$E = \frac{1}{2}\begin{pmatrix} (e_+ + e_-) + (e_+^{-T} - e_-^{-T})B & (e_+^{-T} - e_-^{-T}) \\ (e_+ - e_-) - (e_+^{-T} + e_-^{-T})B & (e_+^{-T} + e_-^{-T}) \end{pmatrix},$$

where $e_+, e_- \in C^\infty(U_i, \mathrm{O}(d))$ are thought of as two ordinary vielbein fields, and where $B$ is any smooth skew-symmetric $n \times n$-matrix valued function on $\mathbb{R}^d \simeq U_i$.

By an $\mathrm{O}(d) \times \mathrm{O}(d)$-transformation this can always be brought into a form where $e_+ = e_- =: \frac{1}{2}e$ such that

$$E = \begin{pmatrix} e & 0 \\ -e^{-T}B & e^{-T} \end{pmatrix}.$$

The corresponding "generalized metric" over $U_i$ is

$$E^T E = \begin{pmatrix} e^T & Be^{-1} \\ 0 & e^{-1} \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} e & 0 \\ -e^{-T}B & e^{-T} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} g - Bg^{-1}B & Bg^{-1} \\ -g^{-1}B & g^{-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

where

$$g := e^T e$$

is the metric (over $\mathbb{R}^q \simeq U_i$ a smooth function with values in symmetric $n\times n$-matrices) given by the ordinary vielbein $e$.

**7.1.3.3 U-duality geometry / exceptional generalized geometry** The scalar and bosonic fields of 11-dimensional supergravity compactified on tori to dimension $d$ *locally* have moduli spaces identified with the quotients $E_{n(n)}/H_n$ of the split real form $E_{n(n)}$ in the E-series of exceptional Lie groups by their maximal compact subgroups $H_n$, where $n = 11 - d$. The canonical action of $E_{n(n)}$ on this coset space – or of a certain discrete subgroup $E_{n(n)}(\mathbb{Z}) \hookrightarrow E_{n(n)}$ – is called the *U-duality* global symmetry of the supergravity, or of its string UV-completion, respectively [HT94].

In [Hull07] it was pointed out that therefore the geometry of the field content of compactfied supergravity should be encoded by a *exceptional generalized geometry* which in direct analogy to the variant of *generalized complex geometry* that controls the NS-NS sector of type II strings, as discussed above in 7.1.3.2, is encoded by vielbein fields that exhibit reduction of a structure group along the inclusion $H_n \hookrightarrow E_{n(n)}$.

By the general discussion in 7.1.3, we have that all these geometries are encoded by twisted differential $\mathbf{c}$-structures, where

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}H_n \to \mathbf{B}E_{n(n)}$$

is the induced morphism of smooth moduli stacks.

### 7.1.4 Orientifolds and higher orientifolds

We discuss the notion of circle $n$-bundles with connection over double covering spaces with *orientifold* structure (see [SSW05] and [DiFrMo11] for the notion of orientifolds for 2-bundles).

**Proposition 7.1.60.** *The smooth automorphism 2-group of the circle group $U(1)$ is that corresponding to the smooth crossed module (as discussed in 3.1.6)*

$$\mathrm{AUT}(U(1)) \simeq [U(1) \to \mathbb{Z}_2]\,,$$

*where the differential $U(1) \to \mathbb{Z}_2$ is trivial and where the action of $\mathbb{Z}_2$ on $U(1)$ is given under the identification of $U(1)$ with the unit circle in the plane by reversal of the sign of the angle.*

*This is an extension of smooth $\infty$-groups, def. 5.1.302, of $\mathbb{Z}_2$ by the circle 2-group $\mathbf{B}U(1)$:*

$$\mathbf{B}U(1) \to \mathrm{AUT}(U(1)) \to \mathbb{Z}_2\,.$$

Proof. The nature of $\mathrm{AUT}(U(1))$ is clear by definition. Let $\mathbf{B}U(1) \to \mathrm{AUT}(U(1))$ be the evident inclusion. We have to show that its delooping is the homotopy fiber of $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{AUT}(U(1)) \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2$.

Passing to the presentation of Smooth$\infty$Grpd by the model structure on simplicial presheaves $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ and using prop. 5.1.9, it is sufficient to show that the simplicial presheaf $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)_c$ from 6.4.3 is equivalent to the ordinary pullback of simplicial presheaves $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{AUT}(U(1))_c \times_{\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2} \mathbf{E}\mathbb{Z}_2$ of the $\mathbb{Z}_2$-universal principal bundle, as discussed in 1.2.6.

This pullback is the 2-groupoid whose

- objects are elements of $\mathbb{Z}_2$;
- morphisms $\sigma_1 \to \sigma_2$ are labeled by $\sigma \in \mathbb{Z}_2$ such that $\sigma_2 = \sigma\sigma_1$;
- all 2-morphisms are endomorphisms, labeled by $c \in U(1)$;
- vertical composition of 2-morphisms is given by the group operation in $U(1)$,
- horizontal composition of 1-morphisms with 1-morphisms is given by the group operation in $\mathbb{Z}_2$
- horizontal composition of 1-morphisms with 2-morphisms (*whiskering*) is given by the action of $\mathbb{Z}_2$ on $U(1)$.

Over each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ this 2-groupoid has vanishing $\pi_1$, and $\pi_2 = U(1)$. The inclusion of $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ into this pullback is given by the evident inclusion of elements in $U(1)$ as endomorphisms of the neutral element in $\mathbb{Z}_2$. This is manifestly an isomorphism on $\pi_2$ and trivially an isomorphism on all other homotopy groups. Therefore it is a weak equivalenc. □

**Observation 7.1.61.** A $U(1)$-gerbe in the full sense Giraud (see [L-Topos], section 7.2.2) as opposed to a $U(1)$-bundle gerbe / circle 2-bundle is equivalent to an $\mathrm{AUT}(U(1))$-principal 2-bundle, not in general to a circle 2-bundle, which is only a special case.

More generally we have:

**Proposition 7.1.62.** *For every $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the automorphism $(n+1)$-group of $\mathbf{B}^nU(1)$ is given by the crossed complex (as discussed in 3.1.6)*

$$\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^nU(1)) \simeq [U(1) \to 0 \to \cdots \to 0 \to \mathbb{Z}_2]$$

*with $U(1)$ in degree $n+1$ and $\mathbb{Z}_2$ acting by automorphisms. This is an extension of smooth $\infty$-groups*

$$\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1) \longrightarrow \mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^nU(1)) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_2\ .$$

With slight abuse of notation we also write

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)//\mathbb{Z}_2 := \mathbf{B}\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1))\,.$$

**Definition 7.1.63.** Write

$$\mathbf{J}_n : \mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)//\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2$$

for the corresponding universal characteristic map.

**Definition 7.1.64.** For $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, a *double cover* $\hat{X} \to X$ is a $\mathbb{Z}_2$-principal bundle.

For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 1$, an *orientifold circle n-bundle (with connection)* is an $\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1))$-principal $\infty$-bundle (with $\infty$-connection) on $X$ that extends $\hat{X} \to X$ (by def. 5.1.302) with respect to the extension of $\mathbb{Z}_2$ by $\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^n U(1))$, prop. 7.1.62.

This means that relative to a cocycle $g : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}^2$ for a double cover $\hat{X}$, the structure of an orientifold circle $n$-bundle is a factorization of this cocycle as

$$g : X \xrightarrow{\hat{g}} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)) \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}^2$$

where $\hat{g}$ is the cocycle for the corresponding $\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^n U(1))$-principal $\infty$-bundle.

**Proposition 7.1.65.** *Every orientifold circle n-bundle (with connection) on X induces an ordinary circle n-bundle (with connection)* $\hat{P} \to \hat{X}$ *on the given double cover* $\hat{X}$ *such that restricted to any fiber of* $\hat{X}$ *this is equivalent to* $\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)) \to \mathbb{Z}_2$.

Proof. There is a pasting diagram of $\infty$-pullbacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
(U(1) \to \cdots \to \mathbb{Z}_2)^\rho & \longrightarrow & P & \longrightarrow & * & & \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\mathbb{Z}_2 & \longrightarrow & \hat{X} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
* & \xrightarrow{x} & X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)//\mathbb{Z}_2 & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{J}_{n-1}} & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2
\end{array}$$

□

**Proposition 7.1.66.** *Orientifold circle 2-bundles over a smooth manifold are equivalent to the* Jandl gerbes *introduced in [SSW05].*

Proof. By prop. 6.3.39 we have that $[U(1) \to \mathbb{Z}_2]$-principal $\infty$-bundles on $X$ are given by Čech cocycles relative to any good open cover of $X$ with coefficients in the sheaf of 2-groupoids $\mathbf{B}[U(1) \to \mathbb{Z}_2]$. Writing this out in components it is straightforward to check that this coincides with the data of a Jandl gerbe (with connection) over this cover. □

**Remark 7.1.67.** Orientifold circle $n$-bundles are not $\mathbb{Z}_2$-equivariant circle $n$-bundles: in the latter case the orientation reversal acts by an equivalence between the bundle and its pullback along the orientation reversal, whereas for an orientifold circle $n$-bundle the orientation reversal acts by an equivalence to the *dual* of the pulled-back bundle.

**Proposition 7.1.68.** *The geometric realization, def. 5.2.14,*

$$\tilde{R} := |\mathbf{B}[U(1) \to \mathbb{Z}_2]|$$

*of* $\mathbf{B}[U(1) \to \mathbb{Z}]$ *is the homotopy 3-type with homotopy groups*

$$\pi_0(\tilde{R}) = 0\,;$$

$$\pi_1(\tilde{R}) = \mathbb{Z}_2\,;$$

$$\pi_2(\tilde{R}) = 0\,;$$

$$\pi_3(R') = \mathbb{Z}$$

*and nontrivial action of* $\pi_1$ *on* $\pi_3$*.*

Proof. By prop. 6.4.27 and the results of 6.3.8 we have

1. specifically
   (a) $|\mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2| \simeq B\mathbb{Z}_2$;
   (b) $|\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)| \simeq B^2 U(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z}; 3)$;

   where on the right we have the ordinary classifying spaces going by these names;

2. generally geometric realization preserves fiber sequences of nice enough objects, such as those under consideration, so that we have a fiber sequence

$$K(\mathbb{Z}, 3) \to \tilde{R} \to B\mathbb{Z}_2$$

   in Top.

Since $\pi_3(K(\mathbb{Z}), 3) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$ and $\pi_1(B\mathbb{Z}_2) \simeq \mathbb{Z}_2$ and all other homotopy groups of these two spaces are trivial, the homotopy groups of $\tilde{R}$ follow by the long exact sequence of homotopy groups associated to our fiber sequence.

Finally, since the action of $\mathbb{Z}_2$ in the crossed module is nontrivial, $\pi_1(\tilde{R})$ must act notriviall on $\pi_3(\mathbb{Z})$. It can only act nontrivial in a single way, up to homotopy. □

The space

$$R := \mathbb{Z}_2 \times \tilde{R}$$

is taken to be the coefficient object for orientifold (differential) cohomology as appearing in string theory in [DiFrMo11].

The following definition gives the differential refinement of $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1))$. With slight abuse of notation we will also write

$$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)//\mathbb{Z}_2 := \mathbf{B}\mathrm{AUT}(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1))\,.$$

**Definition 7.1.69.** For $n \geq 2$ write $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}//\mathbb{Z}_2$ for the smooth $n$-stack presented by the presheaf of $n$-groupoids which is given by the presheaf of crossed complexes of groupoids

$$\Omega^n(-) \times C^\infty(-, U(1)) \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id}, d_{\mathrm{dR}}\log)} \Omega^n(-) \times \Omega^1(-) \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id}, d_{\mathrm{dR}})} \cdots \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id}, d_{\mathrm{dR}})} \Omega^n(-) \times \Omega^{n-2}(-) \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id}, d_{\mathrm{dR}})}$$

$$\xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id}, d_{\mathrm{dR}})} \Omega^n(-) \times \Omega^{n-1}(-) \times \mathbb{Z}_2 \rightrightarrows \Omega^n(-)\ ,$$

where

1. the groupoid on the right has as morphisms $(A, \sigma) : B \to B'$ between two $n$-forms $B, B'$ pairs consisting of an $(n-1)$-form $A$ and an element $\sigma \in \mathbb{Z}_2$, such that $(-1)^\sigma B' = B + dA$;

2. the bundles of groups on the left are all trivial as bundles;

3. the $\Omega^1(-) \times \mathbb{Z}_2$-action is by the $\mathbb{Z}_2$-factor only and on forms given by multiplication by $\pm 1$ and on $U(1)$-valued functions by complex conjugation (regarding $U(1)$ as the unit circle in the complex plane).

**Remark 7.1.70.** A detailed discussion of $\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}//\mathbb{Z}_2$ is in [ScWa08] and [ScWa08].

We now discuss differential cocycles with coefficients in $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}//\mathbb{Z}_2$ over $\mathbb{Z}_2$-quotient stacks / orbifolds. Let $Y$ be a smooth manifold equipped with a smooth $\mathbb{Z}_2$-action $\rho$. Write $Y//\mathbb{Z}_2$ for the corresponding global orbifold and $\rho : Y//\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2$ for its classifying morphism, hence for the morphism that fits into a fiber sequence of smooth stacks

$$Y \longrightarrow Y//\mathbb{Z}_2 \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2 \ .$$

**Definition 7.1.71.** An *n-orientifold* structure $\hat{G}_\rho$ on $(Y, \rho)$ is a *$\rho$-twisted $\hat{\mathbf{J}}_n$-structure* on $Y//\mathbb{Z}_2$, def. 5.2.118, hence a dashed morphism in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}//\mathbb{Z}_2 \\ & \overset{\hat{G}_\rho}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \hat{\mathbf{J}}_n} \\ Y//\mathbb{Z}_2 & \xrightarrow{\ \rho\ } & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2 \end{array} \ .$$

**Observation 7.1.72.** By corollary 7.1.65, an $n$-orientifold structure decomposes into an ordinary $(n+1)$-form connection $\hat{G}$ on a circle $(n+1)$-bundle over $Y$, subject to a $\mathbb{Z}_2$-twisted $\mathbb{Z}_2$-equivariance condition

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xrightarrow{\ \hat{G}\ } & \mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y//\mathbb{Z}_2 & \xrightarrow{\ \hat{G}_\rho\ } & \mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}//\mathbb{Z}_2 & \xrightarrow{\ \hat{\mathbf{J}}\ } & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{Z}_2 \end{array} \ , \qquad \hat{\mathbf{J}} \circ \hat{G}_\rho = \rho \ .$$

For $n = 1$ this reproduces, via observation 7.1.66, the *Jandl gerbes with connection* from [SSW05], hence ordinary string orientifold backgrounds, as discussed there. For $n = 2$ this reproduces background structures for membranes as discussed below in 7.1.8.7.

### 7.1.5 Twisted topological structures in quantum anomaly cancellation

We discuss here cohomological conditions arising from anomaly cancellation in string theory, for various $\sigma$-models. In each case we introduce a corresponding notion of topological *twisted structures* and interpret the anomaly cancellation condition in terms of these. This prepares the ground for the material in the following sections, where the differential refinement of these twisted structures is considered and the *differential* anomaly-free field configurations are derived from these.

- 7.1.5.1 – The type II superstring and twisted $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structures;
- 7.1.5.2 – The heterotic/type I superstring and twisted String-structures;
- 7.1.5.3 – The M2-brane and twisted $\mathrm{String}^{2a}$-structures;
- 7.1.5.4 – The NS-5-brane and twisted Fivebrane-structures;
- 7.1.5.5 – The M5-brane and twisted $\mathrm{Fivebrane}^{2a \cup 2a}$-structures

The content of this section is taken from [SSS09c].

The physics of all the cases we consider involves a manifold $X$ – the *target space* – or a submanifold $Q \hookrightarrow X$ thereof– a *D-brane* –, equipped with

- two principal bundles with their canonically associated vector bundles:
  - a Spin-principal bundle underlying the tangent bundle $TX$ (and we will write $TX$ also to denote that Spin-principal bundle),
  - and a complex vector bundle $E \to X$ – the "gauge bundle" – associated to a $SU(n)$-principal bundle or to an $E_8$-principal bundle with respect to a unitary representation of $E_8$;
- and an $n$-gerbe / circle $(n+1)$-bundle with class $H^{n+2}(X, \mathbb{Z})$ – the higher background gauge field – denoted $[H_3]$ or $[G_4]$ or similar in the following.

All these structures are equipped with a suitable notion of *connetions*, locally given by some differential-form data. The connection on the Spin-bundle encodes the field of gravity, that on the gauge bundle a Yang-Mills field and that on the $n$-gerbe a higher analog of the electromagnetic field.

The $\sigma$-model quantum field theory of a super-brane propagating in such a background (for instance the superstring, or the super 5-brane) has an effective action functional on its bosonic worldvolume fields that takes values, in general, in the fibers of the Pfaffian line bundle of a worldvolume Dirac operator, tensored with a line bundle that remembers the electric and magnetic charges of the higher gauge field. Only if this tensor product *anomaly line bundle* is trivializable is the effective bosonic action a well-defined starting point for quantization of the $\sigma$-model. Therefore the Chern-class of this line bundle over the bosonic configuration space is called the *global anomaly* of the system. Conditions on the background gauge fields that ensure that this class vanishes are called *global anomaly cancellation conditions*. These turn out to be conditions on cohomology classes that are characteristic of the above background fields. This is what we discuss now.

But moreover, the anomaly line bundle is canonicaly equipped with a *connection*, induced from the connections of the background gauge fields, hence induced from their *differential cohomology* data. The curvature 2-form of this connection over the bosonic configuration space is called the *local anomaly* of the $\sigma$-model. Conditions on the differential data of the background gauge field that canonically induce a trivialization of this 2-fom are called *local anomaly cancellation conditions*. These we consider below in section 7.1.6.3.

The phenomenon of anomaly line bundles of $\sigma$-models induced from background field differential cohomology is classical in the physics literature, if only in broad terms. A clear exposition is in [Fr00]. Only recently the special case of the heterotic string $\sigma$-model for trivial background gauge bundle has been made fully precise in [Bun09], using a certain model [Wal09] for the differential string structures that we discuss in section 7.1.6.3.

**7.1.5.1 The type II superstring and twisted** $\mathrm{Spin}^c$**-structures** The open type II string propagating on a Spin-manifold $X$ in the presence of a background $B$-field with class $[H_3] \in H^3(X, \mathbb{Z})$ and with endpoints fixed on a D-brane given by an oriented submanifold $Q \hookrightarrow X$, has a global worldsheet anomaly that vanishes if [FrWi99] and only if [EvSa06] the condition

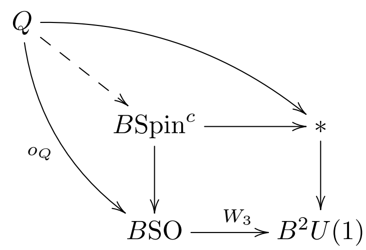
$$[W_3(Q)] + [H_3]|_Q = 0 \quad \in H^3(Q; \mathbb{Z}) , \tag{7.4}$$

holds. Here $[W_3(Q)]$ is the third integral Stiefel-Whitney class of the tangent bundle $TQ$ of the brane and $[H_3]_Q$ denotes the restriction of $[H_3]$ to $Q$.

Notice that $[W_3(Q)]$ is the obstruction to lifting the orientation structure on $Q$ to a $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structure. More precisely, in terms of homotopy theory this is formulated as follows, 7.1.2.7. There is a homotopy pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\mathrm{Spin}^c & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B\mathrm{SO} & \xrightarrow{W_3} & B^2U(1) \end{array} \tag{7.5}$$

of topological spaces, where $B\mathrm{SO}$ is the classifying space of the special orthogonal group, where $B^2U(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z},3)$ is homotopy equivalent to the Eilenberg-MacLane space that classifies degree-3 integral cohomology, and where the continuous map denoted $W_3$ is a representative of the universal class $[W_3]$ under this classification. This homotopy pullback exhibits the classifying space of the group $\mathrm{Spin}^c$ as the homotopy fiber of $W_3$. The universal property of the homotopy pullback says that the space of continuous maps $Q \to B\mathrm{Spin}^c$ is the same (is homotopy equivalent to) the space of maps $o_Q : Q \to B\mathrm{SO}$ that are equipped with a homotopy from the composite $Q \xrightarrow{o_Q} B\mathrm{SO}W_3 \longrightarrow B^3U(1)$ to the trivial cocycle $Q \to * \to B^3U(1)$. In other words, for every choice of homotopy filling the outer diagram of




there is a contractible space of choices for the dashed arrow such that everything commutes up to homotopy. Since a choice of map $o_Q : Q \to B\mathrm{SO}$ is an *orienation structure* on $Q$, and a choice of map $Q \to B\mathrm{Spin}^c$ is a $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-*structure*, this implies that $[W_3(o_Q)]$ is the obstruction to the existence of a $\mathrm{Spin}^c$structure on $Q$ (equipped with $o_Q$.

Moreover, since $Q$ is a manifold, the functor $\mathrm{Maps}(Q,-)$ that forms mapping spaces out of $Q$ preserves homotopy pullbacks. Since $\mathrm{Maps}(Q, B\mathrm{SO})$ is the *space* of orientation structures, we can refine the discussion so far by noticing that the *space of* $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-*structures on* $Q$, $\mathrm{Maps}(Q, B\mathrm{Spin}^c)$, is itself the homotopy pullback in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Maps}(Q, B\mathrm{Spin}^c) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Maps}(Q, B\mathrm{SO}) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Maps}(Q,W_3)} & \mathrm{Maps}(Q, B^2U(1)) \end{array} . \tag{7.6}$$

A variant of this characterization will be crucial for the definition of (spaces of) *twisted* such structures below.

These kinds of arguments, even though elementary in homotopy theory, are of importance for the interpretation of anomaly cancellation conditions that we consider here. Variants of these arguments (first for other topological structures, then with twists, then refined to smooth and differential structures) will appear over and over again in our discussion

So in the case that the class of the $B$-field vanishes on the D-brane, $[H_3]|_Q = 0$, hence that its representative $H_3 : Q \to K(\mathbb{Z},3)$ factors through the point, up to homotopy, condition (7.4) states that the oriented D-brane $Q$ must admit a $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structure, namely a choice of null-homotopy $\eta$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \xrightarrow{o_Q} & B\mathrm{SO} \\ & {\scriptstyle H_3|_Q \simeq *} \searrow \ \swarrow_{\eta} & \downarrow {\scriptstyle W_3} \\ & & K(\mathbb{Z},3) \end{array} . \tag{7.7}$$

(Beware that there are such homotopies filling *all* our diagrams, but only in some cases, such as here, do we want to make them explicit and given them a name.) If, generally, $[H_3]_Q$ does not necessarily vanish, then condition (7.4) still is equivalent to the existence of a homotopy $\eta$ in a diagram of the above form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q & \xrightarrow{o_Q} & B\mathrm{SO} \\ & \searrow^{H_3|_Q} \;\; \swArrow_{\eta} & \downarrow^{W_3} \\ & & K(\mathbb{Z},3) \end{array} \quad . \tag{7.8}$$

We may think of this as saying that $\eta$ still "trivializes" $W_3(o_Q)$, but not with respect to the canonical trivial cocycle, but with respect to the given reference background cocycle $H_3|_Q$ of the $B$-field. Accordingly, following [Wa08], we may say that such an $\eta$ exhibits not a Spin$^c$-structure on $Q$, but an $[H_3]_Q$-*twisted* Spin$^c$-*structure*.

For this notion to be useful, we need to say what an equivalence or homotopy between two twisted Spin$^c$-structures is, what a homotopy between such homotopies is, etc., hence what the *space* of twisted Spin$^c$-structures is. But by generalization of (7.6) we naturally have such a space.

**Definition 7.1.73.** For $X$ a manifold and $[c] \in H^3(X,\mathbb{Z})$ a degree-3 cohomology class, we say that the space $W_3\mathrm{Struc}(Q)_{[c]}$ defined as the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} W_3\mathrm{Struc}(Q)_{[H_3]|_Q} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{c} \\ \mathrm{Maps}(Q, B\mathrm{SO}) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Maps}(Q,W_3)} & \mathrm{Maps}(Q, B^2U(1)) \end{array} \quad , \tag{7.9}$$

is the *space of* $[c]$*-twisted* Spin$^c$*-structures* on $X$, where the right vertical morphism picks any representative $c : X \to B^2U(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z},3)$ of $[c]$.

In terms of this notion, the anomaly cancellation condition (7.4) is now read as encoding *existence of structure*:

**Observation 7.1.74.** On an oriented manifold $Q$, condition (7.4) precisely guarantees the existence of $[H_3]|_Q$*-twisted* $W_3$*-structure*, provided by a lift of the orientation structure $o_Q$ on $TQ$ through the left vertical morphism in def. 7.9.

This makes good sense, because that extra structure is the extra structure of the background field of the $\sigma$-model background, subjected to the condition of anomaly freedom. This we will see in more detail in the following examples, and then in section 7.1.6.3.

**7.1.5.2 The heterotic/type I superstring and twisted** String**-structures** The heterotic/type I string, propagating on a Spin-manifold $X$ and coupled to a gauge field given by a Hermitean complex vector bundle $E \to X$, has a global anomaly that vanishes if the *Green-Schwarz anomaly cancellation condition* [GrSc]

$$\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX) - \mathrm{ch}_2(E) = 0 \quad \in H^4(X;\mathbb{Z}) \,. \tag{7.10}$$

holds. Here $\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX)$ is the *first fractional Pontryagin class* of the Spin-bundle, and $\mathrm{ch}_2(E)$ is the second Chern-class of $E$.

As before, this means that at the level of cocycles a certain homotopy exists. Here it is this homotopy which is the representative of the $B$-field that the string couples to.

In detail, write $\frac{1}{2}p_1 : B\mathrm{Spin} \to B^3U(1)$ for a representative of the universal first fractional Pontryagin class, prop. 7.1.5, and similarly $\mathrm{ch}_2 : B\mathrm{SU} \to B^3U(1)$ for a representative of the universal second Chern class, where now $B^3U(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z},4)$ is equivalent to the Eilenberg-MacLane space that classifies degree-4 integral cohomology. Then if $TX : X \to B\mathrm{Spin}$ is a classifying map of the Spin-bundle and $E : X \to B\mathrm{SU}$ one of the gauge bundle, the anomaly cancellation condition above says that there is a homotopy, denoted $H_3$, in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{E} & B\mathrm{SU} \\ {\scriptstyle TX}\downarrow & \swarrow_{H_3} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{ch}_2} \\ B\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow[\frac{1}{2}p_1]{} & B^3U(1) \end{array} \,. \qquad (7.11)$$

Notice that if both $\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX)$ as well as $\mathrm{ch}_2(E)$ happen to be trivial, such a homotopy is equivalently a map $H_3 : X \to \Omega B^3U(1) \simeq B^2U(1)$. So in this special case the B-field in the background of the heterotic string is a $U(1)$-gerbe, a circle 2-bundle, as in the previous case of the type II string in section 7.1.5.1. Generally, the homotopy $H_3$ in the above diagram exhibits the B-field as a *twisted* gerbe, whose twist is the difference class $[\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX)] - [\mathrm{ch}_2(E)]$. This is essentially the perspective adopted in [Fr00].

For the general discussion of interest here it is useful to slightly shift the perspective on the twist. Recall that a *String structure*, 7.1.2.4, on the Spin bundle $TX : X \to B\mathrm{Spin}$ is a homotopy filling the outer square of

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \dashrightarrow & \\ & B\mathrm{String} & \longrightarrow & * \\ {\scriptstyle TX} & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ & B\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}p_1} & B^3U(1) \end{array} \,,$$

or, which is equivalent by the universal property of homotopy pullbacks, a choice of dashed morphism filling the interior of this square, as indicated.

Therefore, now by analogy with (7.8), we say that a $[\mathrm{ch}_2(E)]$-*twisted string structure* is a choice of homotopy $H_3$ filling the diagram (7.11).

This notion of twisted string structures was originally suggested in [Wa08]. For it to be useful, we need to say what homotopies of twisted String-structures are, homotopies between these, etc. Hence we need to say what the *space* of twisted String-structures is. This is what the following definition provides, analogous to 7.9.

**Definition 7.1.75.** For $X$ a manifold, and for $[c] \in H^4(X, \mathbb{Z})$ a degree-4 cohomology class, we say that the space of *c-twisted* String-*structures* on $X$ is the homotopy pullback $\frac{1}{2}p_1\mathrm{Struc}_{[c]}(X)$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \frac{1}{2}p_1\mathrm{Struc}_{[c]}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle c} \\ \mathrm{Maps}(X, B\mathrm{Spin}) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Maps}(X, \frac{1}{2}p_1)} & \mathrm{Maps}(X, B^3U(1)) \end{array} \,,$$

where the right vertical morphism picks a representative $c$ of $[c]$.

In terms of this then, we find

**Observation 7.1.76.** The anomaly cancellation condition (7.10) is, for a fixed gauge bundle $E$, precisely the condition that ensures a lift of the given Spin-structure to a $[\mathrm{ch}_2(E)]$-twisted String-structure on $X$, through the left vertical morphism of def. 7.1.75.

Of course the full background field content involves more than just this topological data, it also consists of local differential form data, such as a 1-form connection on the bundles $E$ and on $TX$ and a connection 2-form on the 2-bundle $H_3$. Below in section 7.1.6.3 we identify this *differential* anomaly-free field content with a *differential* twisted String-structure.

**7.1.5.3 The M2-brane and twisted** $\mathrm{String}^{2a}$**-structures** The string theory backgrounds discussed above have lifts to 11-dimensional supergravity/M-theory, where the bosonic background field content consists of just the Spin-bundle $TX$ as well as the $C$-field, which has underlying it a 2-gerbe – or *circle 3-bundle* – with class $[G_4] \in H^4(X, \mathbb{Z})$. The M2-brane that couples to these background fields has an anomaly that vanishes [Wi97a] if

$$2[G_4] = [\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX)] - 2[a(E)] \quad \in H^4(X, \mathbb{Z}) \,, \tag{7.12}$$

where $E \to X$ is an auxiliary $E_8$-principal bundle, whose class is defined by this condition.

Since $E_8$ is 15-coskeletal, this condition is equivalent to demanding that $[\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX)] \in H^4(X, \mathbb{Z})$ is further divisible by 2. In the absence of smooth or differential structure, one could therefore replace the $E_8$-bundle here by a circle 2-gerbe, hence by a $B^2U(1)$-principal bundle, and replace condition (7.12) by

$$2[G_4] = [\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX)] - 2[\mathrm{DD}_2] \,,$$

where $[\mathrm{DD}_2]$ is the canonical 4-class of this 2-gerbe (the “second Dixmier-Douady class”). While topologically this condition is equivalent, over an 11-dimensional $X$, to (7.12), the spaces of solutions of smooth refinements of these two conditions will differ, because the space of smooth gauge transformations between $E_8$ bundles is quite different from that of smooth gauge transformations between circle 2-bundles. In the Hořava-Witten reduction [HoWi96] of the 11-dimensional theory down to the heterotic string in 10 dimensions, this difference is supposed to be relevant, since the heterotic string in 10 dimensions sees the smooth $E_3$-bundle with connection.

In either case, we can understand the situation as a refinement of that described by (twisted) String-structures via a higher analogue of the passage from Spin-structures to $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structures. To that end recall prop. 7.1.37, which provides an alternative perspective on (7.5).

Due to the universal property of the homotopy pullback, this says, in particular, that a lift from an orientation structure to a $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structure is a cancelling by a Chern-class of the class obstructing a Spin-structure. In this way lifts from orientation structures to $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structures are analogous to the divisibility condition (7.12), since in both cases the obstruction to a further lift through the Whitehead tower of the orthogonal group is absorbed by a universal “unitary” class.

In order to formalize this we make the following definition.

**Definition 7.1.77.** For $G$ some topological group, and $c : BG \to K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$ a universal 4-class, we say that $\mathrm{String}^c$ is the loop group of the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\mathrm{String}^c & \longrightarrow & BG \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle c} \\ B\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}p_1} & B^3U(1) \end{array}$$

of $c$ along the first fractional Pontryagin class.

For instance for $c = \mathrm{DD}_2$ we have that a Spin-structure lifts to a $\mathrm{String}^{2\mathrm{DD}_2}$-structure precisely if $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ is further divisible by 2. Similarly, with $a : BE_8 \to B^3U(1)$ the canonical universal 4-class on $E_8$-bundles and $X$ a manifold of dimension $\dim X \leq 14$ we have that a Spin-structure on $X$ lifts to a $\mathrm{String}^{2a}$-structure precisely if $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ is further divisible by 2.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & \nearrow & B\mathrm{String}^{2a} & \longrightarrow & BE_8 \\ & & \downarrow & \searrow^{\frac{1}{4}p_1} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle 2a} \\ X & \longrightarrow & B\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}p_1} & B^3U(1) \end{array} \quad . \tag{7.13}$$

Using this we can now reformulate the anomaly cancellation condition (7.12) as follows.

**Definition 7.1.78.** For $X$ a manifold and for $[c] \in H^4(X,\mathbb{Z})$ a cohomology class, the space $(\frac{1}{2}p_1 - 2a)\mathrm{Struc}_{[c]}(X)$ of $[c]$-*twisted* String$^{2a}$-*structures* on $X$ is the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\frac{1}{2}p_1 - 2a)\mathrm{Struc}_{[c]}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{c} \\ \mathrm{Maps}(X, B\mathrm{Spin} \times E_8) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}p_1 - 2a} & \mathrm{Maps}(X, B^3U(1)) \end{array} ,$$

where the right vertical map picks a cocycle $c$ representing the class $[c]$.

In terms of this definition, we have

**Observation 7.1.79.** Condition (7.12) is precisely the condition guaranteeing a lift of the given Spin- and the given $E_8$-principal bundle to a $[G_4]$-*twisted* String$^{2a}$-*structure* along the left vertical map from def. 7.1.78.

There is a further variation of this situation, that is of interest. In the Hořava-Witten reduction of this situation in 11 dimensions down to the sitation of the heterotic string in 10 dimensions, $X$ has a boundary, $Q := \partial X \hookrightarrow X$, and there is a boundary condition on the $C$-field, saying that the restriction of its 4-class to the boundary has to vanish,

$$[G_4]|_Q = 0\,.$$

This implies that over $Q$ the anomaly-cancellation conditon (7.12) becomes

$$[\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX)]|_Q = 2[a(E)]|_Q \quad \in H^4(Q,\mathbb{Z})\,.$$

Notice that this is the Green-Schwarz anomaly cancellation condition (7.10) of the heterotic string, but refined by a further cohomological divisibility condition. The following statement says that this may equivalently be reformulated in terms of String$^{2a}$ structures.

**Proposition 7.1.80.** *For $E \to X$ a fixed $E_8$-bundle, we have an equivalence*

$$\mathrm{Maps}(X, B\mathrm{String}^{2a})|_E \simeq (\frac{1}{2}p_1)\mathrm{Struc}(X)_{[2a(E)]}$$

*between, on the right, the space of* $[2a(E)]$-*twisted* String-*structures from def. 7.1.75, and, on the left, the space of* String$^{2a}$-*structures with fixed class* $2a$, *hence the homotopy pullback* $\mathrm{Maps}(X, B\mathrm{String}^{2a}) \times_{\mathrm{Maps}(X,BE_8)} \{E\}$.

Proof. Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Maps}(X, \mathrm{String}^{2a})|_E & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{E} \\ \mathrm{Maps}(X, \mathrm{String}^{2a}) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Maps}(X, BE_8) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{Maps}(X,2a)} \\ \mathrm{Maps}(X, B\mathrm{Spin}) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Maps}(X, \frac{1}{2}p_1)} & \mathrm{Maps}(X, B^3U(1)) \end{array}$$

The top square is a homotopy pullback by definition. Since $\mathrm{Maps}(X,-)$ preserves homotopy pullbacks (for $X$ a manifold, hence a CW-complex), the bottom square is a homotopy pullback by definition 7.1.77. Therefore, by the pasting law, also the total rectangle is a homotopy pullback. With def. 7.1.75 this implies the claim. □

Therefore the boundary anomaly cancellation condition for the M2-brane has the following equivalent formulation.

**Observation 7.1.81.** For $X$ a Spin-manifold equipped with a complex vector bundle $E \to X$, condition (7.1.5.3) precisely guarantees the existence of a lift to a String$^{2a}$-structure through the left vertical map in the proof of prop. 7.1.80.

#### 7.1.5.4 The NS-5-brane and twisted Fivebrane-structures

The magnetic dual of the (heterotic) string is the NS-5-brane. Where the string is electrically charged under the $B_2$-field with class $[H_3] \in H^3(X, \mathbb{Z})$, the NS-5-brane is electrically charged under the $B_6$-field with class $[H_7] \in H^7(X, \mathbb{Z})$ [Ch81]. In the presence of a String-structure, hence when $[\frac{1}{2}p_1(TX)] = 0$, the anomaly of the 5-brane $\sigma$-model vanishes [SaSe85] [GaNi85] if the background fields satisfy

$$[\tfrac{1}{6}p_2(TX)] = 8[\mathrm{ch}_4(E)] \quad \in H^8(X, \mathbb{Z})\,, \tag{7.14}$$

where $\frac{1}{6}p_2(TX)$ is the second fractional Pontryagin class of the String-bundle $TX$.

It is clear now that a discussion entirely analogous to that of section 7.1.5.2 applies. For the untwisted case the following terminology was introduced in [SSS09b].

**Definition 7.1.82.** Write Fivebrane for the loop group of the homotopy fiber $B\mathrm{Fivebrane}$ of a representative $\frac{1}{6}p_2$ of the universal second fractional Pontryagin class

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\mathrm{Fivebrane} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B\mathrm{String} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}p_2} & B^7U(1) \end{array} .$$

In direct analogy with def. 7.1.75 we therefore have the following notion.

**Definition 7.1.83.** For $X$ a manifold and $[c] \in H^8(X, \mathbb{Z})$ a class, we say that the *space of* $[c]$*-twisted* Fivebrane-*structures* on $X$, denoted $(\frac{1}{6}p_2)\mathrm{Struc}_{[c]}(X)$, is the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\frac{1}{6}p_2)\mathrm{Struc}_{[c]}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle c} \\ \mathrm{Maps}(X, B\mathrm{String}) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Maps}(X, \frac{1}{6}p_2)} & \mathrm{Maps}(X, B^7U(1)) \end{array} ,$$

In terms of this we have

**Observation 7.1.84.** For $X$ a manifold with String-structure and with a background gauge bundle $E \to X$ fixed, condition (7.14) is precisely the condition for the existence of $[8\,\mathrm{ch}(E)]$*-twisted* Fivebrane-*structure* on $X$.

#### 7.1.5.5 The M5-brane and twisted $\mathrm{Fivebrane}^{2a\cup 2a}$-structures

The magnetic dual of the M2-brane is the M5-brane. Where the M2-brane is electrically charged under the $C_3$-field with class $[G_4] \in H^4(X, \mathbb{Z})$, the M5-brane is electrically charged under the dual $C_6$-field with class $[G_8] \in H^8(X, \mathbb{Z})$.

If $X$ admits a String-structure, then one finds a relation for the background fields analogous to (7.12) which reads

$$8[G_8] = 4[a(E)] \cup [a(E)] - [\tfrac{1}{6}p_2(TX)]\,. \tag{7.15}$$

The Fivebrane-analog of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$ is then the following.

**Definition 7.1.85.** For $G$ a topological group and $[c] \in H^8(BG, \mathbb{Z})$ a universal 8-class, we say that $\mathrm{Fivebrane}^c$ is the loop group of the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B\mathrm{Fivebrane}^c & \longrightarrow & BG \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle c} \\ B\mathrm{String} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}p_2} & B^3U(1) \end{array} .$$

In analogy with def. 7.1.78 we have a notion of twisted Fivebrane$^c$-structures.

**Definition 7.1.86.** For $X$ a manifold and for $[c] \in H^8(X,\mathbb{Z})$ a cohomology class, the space $(\frac{1}{6}p_2 - 2a \cup 2a)\mathrm{Struc}_{[c]}(X)$ of $[c]$-*twisted* Fivebrane$^{2a\cup 2a}$*-structures* on $X$ is the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\frac{1}{6}p_2 - 2a \cup 2a)\mathrm{Struc}_{[c]}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{c} \\ \mathrm{Maps}(X, B\mathrm{String} \times E_8) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}p_2 - 2a\cup 2a} & \mathrm{Maps}(X, B^7U(1)) \end{array},$$

where the right vertical map picks a cocycle $c$ representing the class $[c]$.

In terms of these notions we thus see that

**Observation 7.1.87.** Over a manifold $X$ with String-structure and with a fixed gauge bundle $E$, condition (7.15) is precisely the condition that guarantees existence of a lift to $[8G_8]$-*twisted* Fivebrane$^{2a\cup 2a}$*-structure* through the left vertical morphism in def. 7.1.86.

### 7.1.6 Twisted differential structures in quantum anomaly cancellation

We discuss now the differential refinements of the twisted topological structures from 7.1.5.

This section draws from [SSS09c].

**7.1.6.1 Twisted differential $\mathbf{c}_1$-structures** We discuss the differential refinement $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1$ of the universal first Chern class, indicated before in 1.2.10.1. The corresponding $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1$-structures are simply SU$(n)$-principal connections, but the derivation of this fact may be an instructive warmup for the examples to follow.

For any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let $\mathbf{c}_1 : \mathbf{B}U(n) \to \mathbf{B}U(1)$ in $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be the canonical representative of the universal smooth first Chern class, described in 1.2.142. In terms of the standard presentations $\mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{ch}}$, $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}} \in [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$ of its domain and codomain from prop. 6.4.19 this is given by the determinant function, which over any $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ sends

$$\det : C^\infty(U, U(n)) \to C^\infty(U, U(1))\,.$$

Write $\mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the differential refinement from prop. 1.2.114. Over a test space $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the set of objects is the set of $\mathfrak{u}(n)$-valued differential forms

$$\mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{conn}}(U)_0 = \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{u}(n))$$

and the set of morphisms is that of smooth $U(n)$-valued differential forms, acting by gauge transformations on the $\mathfrak{u}(n)$-valued 1-forms

$$\mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{conn}}(U)_1 = \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{u}(n)) \times C^\infty(U, U(n))\,.$$

**Proposition 7.1.88.** *The smooth universal first Chern class has a differential refinement*

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1 : \mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

*given on $\mathfrak{u}(n)$-valued 1-forms by taking the trace*

$$\mathrm{tr} : \mathfrak{u}(n) \to \mathfrak{u}(1)\,.$$

The existence of this refinement allows us to consider differential and twisted differential $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1$-structures.

**Lemma 7.1.89.** *There is an $\infty$-pullback diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU}(n)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}U(n)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \end{array}$$

*in* Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

Proof. We use the factorization lemma, 5.1.5, to resolve the right vertical morphism by a fibration

$$\mathbf{E}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. This gives that an object in $\mathbf{E}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ over some test space $U$ is a morphism of the form $0 \xrightarrow{g} g^{-1}d_U g$ for $g \in C^\infty(U, U(1))$, and a morphism in $\mathbf{E}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is given by a commuting diagram

$$\mathbf{E}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & 0 & \\ {}^{g_1}\swarrow & & \searrow^{g_2} \\ g_1^{-1}d_U g_1 & \xrightarrow{h} & g_2^{-1}d_U g_2 \end{array} \right\},$$

where on the right we have $h \in C^\infty(U, U(1))$ such that $hg_1 = g_2$. The morphism to $\mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is given by the evident projection onto the lower horizontal part of these triangles.

Then the ordinary 1-categorical pullback of $\mathbf{E}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ along $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1$ yields the smooth groupoid $\hat{\mathbf{c}_1}^*\mathbf{E}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ given over any test space $U$ as follows.

- objects are pairs consisting of a $\mathfrak{u}(n)$-valued 1-form $A \in \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{u}(n))$ and a smooth function $\rho \in C^\infty(U, U(1))$ such that
$$\mathrm{tr}A = \rho^{-1}d\rho\,;$$
- morphisms $g : (A_1, \rho_1) \to (A_2, \rho_2)$ are labeled by a smooth function $g \in C^\infty(U, U(n))$ such that $A_2 = g^{-1}(A_1 + d_U)g$.

Therefore there is a canonical functor

$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU}(n)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \hat{\mathbf{c}_1}^*\mathbf{E}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

induced from the defining inclusion $\mathrm{SU}(n) \to \mathrm{U}(n)$, which hits precisely the objects for which $\rho$ is the constant function on $1 \in \mathrm{U}(1)$ and which is a bijection to the morphisms between these objects, hence is full and faithful. The functor is also essentially surjective, since every 1-form of the form $h^{-1}dh$ is gauge equivalent to the identically vanishing 1-form. Therefore it is a weak equivalence in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. By prop. 5.1.9 this proves the claim. ☐

**Proposition 7.1.90.** *For $X$ a smooth manifold, we have an $\infty$-pullback of smooth groupoids*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{SU}(n)\mathrm{Bund}_\nabla(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{U}(n)\mathrm{Bund}_\nabla(X) & \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{c}}_1} & \mathrm{U}(1)\mathrm{Bund}_\nabla(X) \end{array} .$$

Proof. This follows from lemma 7.1.89 and the facts that for a Lie group $G$ we have $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \simeq G\mathrm{Bund}_\nabla(X)$ and that the hom-functor $\mathbf{H}(X, -)$ preserves $\infty$-pullbacks. ☐

**7.1.6.2 Twisted differential** spin$^c$**-structures** As opposed to the Spin-group, which is a $\mathbb{Z}_2$-extension of the special orthogonal group, the Spin$^c$-group, def. 7.1.36, is a $U(1)$-extension of SO. This means that twisted Spin$^c$-structures have interesting smooth refinements. These we discuss here.

Two standard properties of Spin$^c$ are the following (see [LaMi89]).

**Observation 7.1.91.** There is a short exact sequence

$$U(1) \to \mathrm{Spin}^c \to \mathrm{SO}$$

of Lie groups, where the first morphism is the canonical inclusion.

**Proposition 7.1.92.** *There is a fiber sequence*

$$B\mathrm{Spin}^c(n) \to B\mathrm{SO}(n) \xrightarrow{W_3} K(\mathbb{Z}, 3)$$

*of classifying spaces in* Top*, where* $W_3$ *is a representative of the universal third integral Stiefel-Whitney class.*

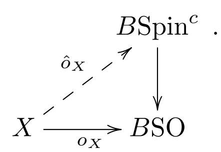
Here $W_3$ is a classical definition, but, as we will show below, the reader can think of it as being defined as the geometric realization of the smooth characteristic class $\mathbf{W}_3$ from example 1.2.148. Before turning to that, we record the notion of twisted structure induced by this fact:

**Definition 7.1.93.** For $X$ an oriented manifold of dimension $n$, a Spin$^c$*-structure* on $X$ is a trivialization

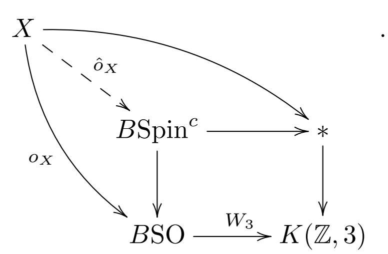
$$\eta : * \xrightarrow{\simeq} W_3(o_X)\,,$$

where $o_X : X \to B\mathrm{SO}$ is the given orientation structure.

**Observation 7.1.94.** This is equivalently a lift $\hat{o}_X$ of $o_X$:




Proof. By prop. 7.1.92 and the univsersal property of the homotopy pullback:




□

From the general reasoning of twisted cohomology, def. 5.1.260, in the language of twisted **c**-structures, def. 5.2.118, we are therefore led to consider the following.

**Definition 7.1.95.** The $\infty$-groupoid of *twisted* spin$^c$*-structures* on $X$ is $W_3\mathrm{Struc}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X)$.

**Remark 7.1.96.** It follows from the definition that twisted spin$^c$-structures over an orientation structure $o_X$, def. 7.1.2, are naturally identified with equivalences (homotopies)

$$\eta : c \xrightarrow{\simeq} W_3(o_X)\,,$$

where $c \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, B^2U(1))$ is a given twisting cocycle.

In this form twisted spin$^c$-structures have been considered in [Do06] and in [Wa08]. We now establish a smooth refinement of this situation.

**Observation 7.1.97.** There is an essentially unique lift in Smooth∞Grpd of $W_3$ through the geometric realization

$$|-|: \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xrightarrow{\Pi} \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{Top}$$

(discussed in 6.4.5) of the form

$$\mathbf{W}_3 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \to \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)\,,$$

where $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}$ is the delooping of the Lie group SO in Smooth∞Grpd and $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ that of the smooth circle 2-group, as in 6.4.3.

Proof. This is a special case of theorem 6.4.38. □

**Theorem 7.1.98.** *In* Smooth∞Grpd *we have a fiber sequence of the form*

$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^c \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{W}_3} \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)\,,$$

*which refines the sequence of prop. 7.1.92.*

We consider first a lemma.

**Lemma 7.1.99.** *A presentation of the essentially unique smooth lift of $W_3$ from observation 7.1.97, is given by the morphism of simplicial presheaves*

$$\mathbf{W}_3 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}_{\mathrm{ch}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{w}_2} \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \xrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\beta}_2} \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{ch}}\,,$$

*where the first morphism is that of example 1.2.146 and where the second morphism is the one induced from the canonical subgroup embedding.*

Proof. The bare Bockstein homomorphism is presented, by example 1.2.147, by the ∞-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\cdot 2} \mathbb{Z}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \to 1) & = & \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow \simeq & & & & \\ \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 & & & & \end{array} .$$

Accordingly we need to consider the lift of the morphism

$$\boldsymbol{\beta}_2 : \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \to \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)$$

induced form subgroup inclusion to to a comparable ∞-anafunctor. This is accomplished by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\cdot 2} \mathbb{Z}) & \xrightarrow{\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\cdot 2} \mathbb{R}) \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq \\ \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 & \xrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\beta}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2 U(1) \end{array} .$$

Since $\mathbb{R}$ is contractible, we have indeed under geometric realization, 6.3.5, an equivalence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} |\mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \stackrel{\cdot 2}{\to} \mathbb{Z})| & \xrightarrow{|\hat{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_2|} & |\mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \stackrel{\cdot 2}{\to} \mathbb{R})| \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq \\ |\mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \stackrel{\cdot 2}{\to} \mathbb{Z})| & \longrightarrow & |\mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{Z} \to 1)| \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq \\ |\mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2| & \xrightarrow{|\beta_2|} & |\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{Z}| \end{array},$$

where $|\beta_2|$ is the geometric realization of $\beta_2$, according to definition 6.3.24.

□

Proof of theorem 7.1.98. Consider the pasting diagram in Smooth∞Grpd

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^c & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}U(1) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}_1 \bmod 2} & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{w}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 & \xrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\beta}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) \end{array}.$$

The square on the right is an ∞-pullback by prop. 6.4.43. The square on the left is an ∞-pullback by proposition 7.1.37. Therefore by the pasting law 5.1.2 the total outer rectanle is an ∞-pullback. By lemma 7.1.99 the composite bottom morphism is indeed the smooth lift $\mathbf{W}_3$ from observation 7.1.97. □

Therefore we are entitled to the following smooth refinement of def. 7.1.95.

**Remark 7.1.100.** $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^c$ is the moduli stack of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-structures, or, equivalently $\mathrm{Spin}^c$-principal bundles.

**Definition 7.1.101.** For any $X \in$ Smooth∞Grpd, the 1-groupoid of smooth *twisted* $\mathrm{spin}^c$*-structures* $\mathbf{W}_3\mathrm{Struc}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X)$ is the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{W}_3\mathrm{Struc}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X) & \longrightarrow & H^3(X, \mathbb{Z}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{W}_3} & \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}^2U(1)) \end{array}.$$

We briefly discuss an application of smooth twisted $\mathrm{spin}^c$-structures in physics.

**Remark 7.1.102.** The action functional of the $\sigma$-model of the open type II superstring on a 10-dimensional target $X$ has in general an anomaly, in that it is not a function, but just a section of a possibly non-trivial line bundle over the bosonic configuration space. In [FrWi99] it was shown that in the case that the D-branes $Q \hookrightarrow X$ that the open string ends on carry a rank-1 Chan-Paton bundle, this anomaly vanishes precisely if this Chan-Paton bundle is a twisted line bundle exhibiting an equivalence $\mathbf{W}_3(\mathbf{o}_Q) \simeq H|_Q$ between the lifting gerbe of the $\mathrm{spin}^c$-structure and the restriction of the background Kalb-Ramond 2-bundle to $Q$. By the above discussion we see that this is precisely the datum of a smooth twisted $\mathrm{spin}^c$-structure on $Q$, where the Kalb-Ramond field serves as the twist. Below in 7.1.6.3.2 we shall see that the quantum anomaly cancellation for the closed *heterotic* superstring is analogously given by twisted string-structures, which follow the same general pattern of twisted $\mathbf{c}$-structures, but in one degree higher.

But in general this quantum anomaly cancellation involves twists mediated by a higher rank twisted bundle. This situation we turn to now.

**Definition 7.1.103.** For $X$ equipped with orientation structure $o_X$, def. 7.1.2, and $c \in \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^2 U(1))$ a twisting circle 2-bundle, we say that the 2-groupoid of *weakly c-twisted* spin$^c$*-structures* on $X$ is $(W_3(o_X) - c)$-twisted cohomology with respect to the morphism $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}PU \to \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)$ discussed in 6.4.10.

**Remark 7.1.104.** By the discussion in 6.4.10 in weakly twisted spin$^c$-structure the two cocycles $W_3(o_X)$ and $c$ are not equivalent, but their difference is an *n-torsion* class (for some $n$) in $H^3(X, \mathbb{Z})$ which twists a unitary rank-$n$ vector bundle on $X$

**Remark 7.1.105.** By a refinement of the discussion of [FrWi99] in [Ka99] this structure is precisely what removes the quantum anomaly from the action functional of the type II superstring on oriented D-branes that carry a rank $n$ Chan-Paton bundle. A review is in [La09].

Notice that for $i : Q \to X$ a Spin$^c$-D-brane inclusion into spacetimes $X$, the 2-groupoid of $B$-field and brane gauge field bundles is the *relative* $(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{PU} \to \mathbf{B}^2 U(1))$-cohomology on $i$, according to def. 5.1.343.

#### 7.1.6.3 Twisted differential string structures

We consider now the obstruction theory for lifts through the smooth and differential refinement, from 7.1.2, of the Whitehead tower of $O$.

**Definition 7.1.106.** For $X$ a Riemannian manifold, equipping it with

1. orientation
2. topological spin structure
3. topological string structure
4. topological fivebrane structure

means equipping it with choices of (homotopy classes of) lifts of the classifying map $TX : X \to BO$ of its tangent bundle through the respective steps of the Whitehead tower of $BO$

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & B\mathrm{Fivebrane} & & \text{fivebrane structure} \\
 & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \\
 & & B\mathrm{String} & & \text{string structure} \\
 & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \\
 & & B\mathrm{Spin} & & \text{spin structure} \\
 & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \\
 & & B\mathrm{SO} & & \text{orientation} \\
 & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \\
X & \xrightarrow{TX} & B\mathrm{O} & & \text{Riemannian structure}
\end{array} .
$$

More in detail:

1. The set (homotopy 0-type) of orientations of a Riemannian manifold is the homotopy fiber of the first Stiefel-Whitney class
$$(w_1)_* : \mathrm{Top}(X, B\mathrm{O}) \to \mathrm{Top}(X, B\mathbb{Z}_2) .$$

2. The groupoid (homotopy 1-type) of topological spin structures of an oriented manifold is the homotopy fiber of the second Stiefel-Whitney class
$$(w_2)_* : \mathrm{Top}(X, B\mathrm{SO}) \to \mathrm{Top}(X, B^2\mathbb{Z}_2) .$$

3. The 3-groupoid (homotopy 3-type) of topological string structures of a spin manifold is the homotopy fiber of the first fractional Pontryagin class

$$(\frac{1}{2}p_1)_* : \mathrm{Top}(X, B\mathrm{Spin}) \to \mathrm{Top}(X, B^4\mathbb{Z})\,,$$

4. The 7-groupoid (homotopy 7-type) of topological fivebrane structures of a string manifold is the homotopy fiber of the second fractional Pontryagin class

$$(\tfrac{1}{6}p_2)_* : \mathrm{Top}(X, B\mathrm{String}) \to \mathrm{Top}(X, B^8\mathbb{Z})\,,$$

See [SSS09b] for background and the notion of fivebrane structure. Using the results of 7.1.2 we may lift this setup from discrete $\infty$-groupoids to smooth $\infty$-groupoids and discuss the twisted cohomology, 5.1.13, relative to the smooth fractional Pontryagin classes $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$ and $\frac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2$ and their differential refinements $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1$ and $\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2$

**Definition 7.1.107.** Let $X \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be any object.

1. The 2-groupoid of *smooth string structures* on $X$ is the homotopy fiber of the lift of the first fractional Pontryagin class $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$ to $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, prop. 7.1.9:

$$\mathbf{String}(X) \to \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}) \stackrel{(\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1)}{\to} \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}^3U(1))\,.$$

2. The 6-groupoid of *smooth fivebrane stuctures* on $X$ is the homotopy fiber of the lift of the second fractional Pontryagin class $\frac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2$ to $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, prop. 7.1.32:

$$\mathbf{Fivebrane}(X) \to \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}) \stackrel{(\frac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2)}{\to} \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}^7U(1))\,.$$

More generally,

1. The 2-groupoid of *smooth twisted string sructures* on $X$ is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{String}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tw}} & H^3_{\mathrm{smooth}}(X, U(1)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin})[r] & \xrightarrow{(\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1)} & \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)) \end{array}$$

in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

2. The 6-groupoid of *smooth twisted fivebrane stuctures* on $X$ is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Fivebrane}_{\mathrm{tw}}(X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tw}} & H^7_{\mathrm{smooth}}(X, U(1)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String})[r] & \xrightarrow{(\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2)} & \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}^7U(1)) \end{array}$$

in $\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$.

Finally, with $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}_1}$ and $\frac{1}{4}\hat{\mathbf{p}_2}$ the differential characteristic classes, 5.2.14, we set

1. The 2-groupoid of *smooth twisted differential string sructures* on $X$ is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{String}_{\mathrm{tw,diff}}(X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tw}} & H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{conn})[r] & \xrightarrow{(\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1)} & \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{conn}) \end{array}$$

in $\infty$Grpd.

2. The 6-groupoid of *smooth twisted differential fivebrane stuctures* on $X$ is the $\infty$-pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Fivebrane}_{\mathrm{tw,diff}}(X) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{tw}} & H^8_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{(\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2)} & \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \end{array}$$

in $\infty$Grpd.

The image of a twisted (differential) String/Fivebrane structure under tw is its *twist*. The restriction to twists whose underlying class vanishes we also call *geometric string structures* and *geometric fivebrane structures*.

**Observation 7.1.108.** 1. These $\infty$-pullbacks are, up to equivalence, independent of the choise of the right vertical morphism, as long as this hits precisely one cocycle in each cohomology class.

2. The restriction of the $n$-groupoids of twisted structures to vanishing twist reproduces the untwisted structures.

The local $L_\infty$-algebra valued form data of differential twisted string- and fivebrane structures has been considered in [SSS09c], as we explain in 7.1.6.3.1. Differential string structures for twists with underlying trivial class (*geometric string structures*) have been considered in [Wal09] modeled on bundle 2-gerbes.

We have the following immediate consequences of the definition:

**Observation 7.1.109.** The spaces of choices of string structures extending a given spin structure $S$ are as follows

- if $[\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1(S)] \neq 0$ it is empty: $\mathrm{String}_S(X) \simeq \emptyset$;
- if $[\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1(S)] = 0$ it is $\mathrm{String}_S(X) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^2 U(1))$.

In particular the set of equivalence classes of string structures lifting $S$ is the cohomology set

$$\pi_0 \mathrm{String}_S(X) \simeq H^2_{\mathrm{Smooth}}(X, \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)) .$$

If $X$ is a smooth manifold, then this is $\simeq H^3(X, \mathbb{Z})$.

Proof. Apply the pasting law for $\infty$-pullbacks, prop. 5.1.2 on the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{String}_S(X) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{String}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{S} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}(n)) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)) \end{array} .$$

The outer diagram defines the loop space object of $\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1))$. Since $\mathbf{H}(X, -)$ commutes with forming loop space objects we have

$$\mathrm{String}_S(X) \simeq \Omega \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)) \simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)) .$$

□

Sometimes it is useful to express string structures on $X$ in terms of circle 2-bundles/bundle gerbes on the total space of the given spin bundle $P \to X$ [Redd06]:

**Proposition 7.1.110.** *A smooth string structure on $X$ over a smooth* Spin*-principal bundle $P \to X$ induces a circle 2-bundle $\hat{P}$ on $P$ which restricted to any fiber $P_x \simeq \mathrm{Spin}$ is equivalent to the String 2-group extension* String $\to$ Spin.

Proof. By prop. 5.1.312. □

**7.1.6.3.1 $L_\infty$-Čech cocycles for differential string structures** We use the presentation of the $\infty$-topos Smooth$\infty$Grpd by the local model structure on simplicial presheaves $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ to give an explicit construction of twisted differential string structures in terms of Čech-cocycles with coefficients in $L_\infty$-algebra valued differential forms. We will find a twisted version of the $\mathfrak{string}$-2-connections discussed above in 1.2.9.7.2.

We need the following fact from [FSS10].

**Proposition 7.1.111.** *The differential fractional Pontryagin class $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1$ is presented in* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ *by the top morphism of simplicial presheaves in*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{so})_{\mathrm{ChW,smp}} & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu,\mathrm{cs})} & \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}_{\mathrm{ChW,smp}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{so})_{\mathrm{diff,smp}} & \xrightarrow{\exp(\mu,\mathrm{cs})} & \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}_{\mathrm{smp}} \\
\downarrow{\simeq} & & \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_c & &
\end{array} .$$

Here the middle morphism is the direct Lie integration of the $L_\infty$-algebra cocycle, 6.4.14, while the top morphisms is its restriction to coefficients for $\infty$-connections, 6.4.17.

In order to compute the homotopy fibers of $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1$ we now find a resolution of this morphism $\exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs})$ by a fibration in $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. By the fact that this is a simplicial model category then also the hom of any cofibrant object into this morphism, computing the cocycle $\infty$-groupoids, is a fibration, and therefore, by the general natur of homotopy pullbacks, we obtain the homotopy fibers as the ordinary fibers of this fibration.

We start by considering such a factorization before differential refinement, on the underlying characteristic class $\exp(\mu)$. To that end, we replace the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{so}$ by an equivalent but bigger Lie 3-algebra (following [SSS09c]). We need the following notation:

- $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{so}$, the special orthogonal Lie algebra (the Lie algebra of the spin group);
- $b^2\mathbb{R}$, the line Lie 3-algebra, def. 6.4.84, the single generator in degee 3 of its Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra we denote $c \in CE(b^2\mathbb{R})$, $dc = 0$.
- $\langle -, - \rangle \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ is the Killing form invariant polynomial, regarded as an element of the Weil algebra of $\mathfrak{so}$;
- $\mu := \langle -, [-, -] \rangle \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$, the degree 3 Lie algebra cocycle, identified with a morphism

  $$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \leftarrow \mathrm{CE}(b^2\mathbb{R}) : \mu$$

  of Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras; and normalized such that its continuation to a 3-form on Spin is the image in de Rham cohomology of Spin of a generator of $H^3(\mathrm{Spin}, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$;

- $\mathrm{cs} \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ is a Chern-Simons element, def. 6.4.147, interpolating between the two;
- $\mathfrak{g}_\mu$, the string Lie 2-algebra, def. 7.1.15.

**Definition 7.1.112.** Let $(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ denote the $L_\infty$-algebra whose Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra is

$$\mathrm{CE}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu) = (\wedge^\bullet(\mathfrak{g}^* \oplus \langle b \rangle \oplus \langle c \rangle), d)\,,$$

with $b$ a generator in degree 2, and $c$ a generator in degree 3, and with differential defined on generators by

$$\begin{aligned} d|_{\mathfrak{g}^*} &= [-,-]^* \\ db &= -\mu + c\,. \\ dc &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

**Observation 7.1.113.** The 3-cocycle $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \stackrel{\mu}{\leftarrow} \mathrm{CE}(b^2\mathbb{R})$ factors as

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \xleftarrow{(c \mapsto \mu, b \mapsto 0)} \mathrm{CE}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}) \leftarrow \xleftarrow{(c \mapsto c)} \mathrm{CE}(CE(b^2\mathbb{R}) \ : \mu\,,$$

where the morphism on the left (which is the identity when restricted to $\mathfrak{g}^*$ and acts on the new generators as indicated) is a quasi-isomorphism.

Proof. To see that we have a quasi-isomorphism, notice that the dg-algebra is somorphic to the one with generators $\{t^a, b, c'\}$ and differentials

$$\begin{aligned} d|_{\mathfrak{g}^*} &= [-,-]^* \\ db &= c' \qquad , \\ dc' &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

where the isomorphism is given by the identity on the $t^a$s and on $b$ and by

$$c \mapsto c' + \mu\,.$$

The primed dg-algebra is the tensor product $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \otimes \mathrm{CE}(inn(b\mathbb{R}))$, where the second factor is manifestly cohomologically trivial. □

The point of introducing the resolution $(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ in the above way is that it naturally supports the obstruction theory of lifts from $\mathfrak{g}$-connections to string Lie 2-algebra 2-connections

**Observation 7.1.114.** The defining projection $\mathfrak{g}_\mu \to \mathfrak{g}$ factors through the above quasi-isomorphism $(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu) \to \mathfrak{g}$ by the canonical inclusion

$$\mathfrak{g}_\mu \to (b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)\,,$$

which dually on $CE$-algebras is given by

$$\begin{aligned} t^a &\mapsto t^a \\ b &\mapsto -b \\ c &\mapsto 0\,. \end{aligned}$$

In total we are looking at a convenient presentation of the long fiber sequence of the string Lie 2-algebra extension:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & (b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu) & \longrightarrow & b^2\mathbb{R}\ . \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \simeq} & & \\ b\mathbb{R} \longrightarrow \mathfrak{g}_\mu & \longrightarrow & \mathfrak{g} & & \end{array}$$

(The signs appearing here are just unimportant convention made in order for some of the formulas below to come out nice.)

**Proposition 7.1.115.** *The image under Lie integration of the above factorization is*

$$\exp(\mu) : \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu) \to \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}_c$$

*where the first morphism is a weak equivalence followed by a fibration in the model structure on simplicial presheaves* $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$.

Proof. To see that the left morphism is objectwise a weak homotopy equivalence, notice that a $[k]$-cell of $\exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ is identified with a pair consisting of a based smooth function $f : \Delta^k \to \mathrm{Spin}$ and a vertical 2-form $B \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^k)$, (both suitably with sitting instants perpendicular to the boundary of the simplex). Since there is no further condition on the 2-form, it can always be extended from the boundary of the $k$-simplex to the interior (for instance simply by radially rescaling it smoothly to 0). Accordingly the simplicial homotopy groups of $\exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)(U)$ are the same as those of $\exp(\mathfrak{g})(U)$. The morphism between them is the identity in $f$ and picks $B = 0$ and is hence clearly an isomorphism on homotopy groups.

We turn now to discussing that the second morphism is a fibration. The nontrivial degrees of the lifting problem

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda[k]_i & \longrightarrow & \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)(U) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta[k] & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}_c(U) \end{array}$$

are $k = 3$ and $k = 4$.

Notice that a 3-cell of $\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}_c(U)$ is a smooth function $c : U \to \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$ and that the morphism $\exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu) \to \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}_c$ sends the pair $(f, B)$ to the fiber integration $\int_{\Delta^3}(f^*\langle\theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta]\rangle + dB)$.

Given our lifting problem in degree 3, we have given a function $c : U \to \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$ and a smooth function (with sitting instants at the subfaces) $U \times \Lambda^3_i \to \mathrm{Spin}$ together with a 2-form $B$ on the horn $U \times \Lambda^3_i$.

By pullback along the standard continuous retract $\Delta^3 \to \Lambda^3_i$ which is non-smooth only where $f$ has sitting instants, we can always extend $f$ to a smooth function $f' : U \times \Delta^3 \to \mathrm{Spin}$ with the property that $\int_{\Delta^3}(f')^*\langle\theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta]\rangle = 0$. (Following the general discussion at Lie integration.)

In order to find a horn filler for the 2-form component, consider any smooth 2-form with sitting instants and non-vanishing integeral on $\Delta^2$, regarded as the missing face of the horn. By multiplying it with a suitable smooth function on $U$ we can obtain an extension $\tilde{B} \in \Omega^3_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \partial\Delta^3)$ of $B$ to all of $U \times \partial\Delta^3$ with the property that its integral over $\partial\Delta^3$ is the given $c$. By Stokes' theorem it remains to extend $\tilde{B}$ to the interior of $\Delta^3$ in any way, as long as it is smooth and has sitting instants.

To that end, we can find in a similar fashion a smooth $U$-parameterized family of closed 3-forms $C$ with sitting instants on $\Delta^3$, whose integral over $\Delta^3$ equals $c$. Since by sitting instants this 3-form vanishes in a neighbourhood of the boundary, the standard formula for the Poincare lemma applied to it produces a 2-form $B' \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^3)$ with $dB' = C$ that itself is radially constant at the boundary. By construction the difference $\tilde{B} - B'|_{\partial\Delta^3}$ has vanishing surface integral. By the argument in the proof of prop. 6.4.87 it follows that the difference extends smoothly and with sitting instants to a closed 2-form $\hat{B} \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^3)$. Therefore the sum $B' + \hat{B} \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{si,vert}}(U \times \Delta^3)$ equals $B$ when restricted to $\Lambda^k_i$ and has the property that its integral over $\Delta^3$ equals $c$. Together with our extension $f'$, this constitutes a pair that solves the lifting problem.

The extension problem in degree 4 amounts to a similar construction: by coskeletalness the condition is that for a given $c : U \to \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$ and a given vertical 2-form on $U \times \partial\Delta^3$ such that its integral equals $c$, as well as a function $f : U \times \partial\Delta^3 \to \mathrm{Spin}$, we can extend the 2-form and the functionalong $U \times \partial\Delta^3 \to U \times \Delta^3$. The latter follows from the fact that $\pi_2\mathrm{Spin} = 0$ which guarantees a continuous filler (with sitting instants), and using the Steenrod-Wockel approximation theorem [Wock09] to make this smooth. We are left with the problem of extending the 2-form, which is the same problem we discussed above after the choice of $\tilde{B}$. □

We now proceed to extend this factorization to the exponentiated differential coefficients, 6.4.17. The direct idea would be to use the evident factorization of differential $L_\infty$-cocycles of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{so}) & \leftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) & \leftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b^2\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow && \uparrow && \uparrow \\ \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{so}) & \leftarrow & \mathrm{W}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) & \leftarrow & \mathrm{W}(b^2\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow && \uparrow && \uparrow \\ \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{so}) & \leftarrow & \mathrm{inv}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) & \leftarrow & \mathrm{inv}(b^2\mathbb{R}) \end{array} .$$

For computations we shall find it convenient to consider this after a change of basis.

**Observation 7.1.116.** The Weil algebra $\mathrm{W}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ of $(b^2\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g})$ is given on the extra shifted generators $\{r^a = \sigma t^a, h = \sigma b, g = \sigma c\}$ by

$$\begin{aligned} dt^a &= C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge t^c + r^a \\ dr^a &= -C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge r^a \\ db &= -\mu + c + h \\ dh &= \sigma\mu - g \\ dc &= g \end{aligned}$$

(where $\sigma$ is the shift operator extended as a graded derivation).

**Definition 7.1.117.** Define $\tilde{\mathrm{W}}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ to be the dg-algebra with the same underlying graded algebra as $\mathrm{W}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ but with the differential modified as follows

$$\begin{aligned} dt^a &= C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge t^c + r^a \\ dr^a &= -C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge r^a \\ db &= -\mathrm{cs} + c + h \\ dh &= \langle -, - \rangle - g \\ dc &= g \end{aligned} .$$

Moreover, define $\tilde{\mathrm{inv}}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string})$ to be the dg-algebra

$$\tilde{\mathrm{inv}}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) := (\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{so}) \otimes \langle g, h \rangle)/(dh = \langle -, - \rangle - g)\,.$$

**Observation 7.1.118.** We have a commutative diagram of dg-algebras

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{so}) & \overset{\simeq}{\leftarrow} & \mathrm{CE}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) & \leftarrow & \mathrm{CE}(b^2\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow && \uparrow && \uparrow \\ \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{so}) & \overset{\simeq}{\leftarrow} & \tilde{\mathrm{W}}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) & \leftarrow & \mathrm{W}(b^2\mathbb{R}) \\ \uparrow && \uparrow && \uparrow \\ \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{so}) & \overset{\simeq}{\leftarrow} & \tilde{\mathrm{inv}}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) & \leftarrow & \mathrm{inv}(b^2\mathbb{R}) \end{array}$$

where $\tilde{W}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) \to W(\mathfrak{so})$ acts as

$$\begin{aligned} t^a &\mapsto t^a \\ r^a &\mapsto r^a \\ b &\mapsto 0 \\ c &\mapsto \mathrm{cs} \\ h &\mapsto 0 \\ g &\mapsto \langle -, - \rangle \end{aligned}$$

and we identify $W(b^2\mathbb{R}) = (\wedge^\bullet\langle c, g\rangle, dc = g)$. The left horizontal morphisms are quasi-isomorphisms, as indicated.

**Definition 7.1.119.** We write $\exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string})_{\tilde{\mathrm{ChW}}}$ for the simplicial presheaf defined as $\exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string})_{\mathrm{ChW}}$, but using $\mathrm{CE}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) \leftarrow \tilde{\mathrm{W}}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}) \leftarrow \tilde{\mathrm{inv}}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string})$ instead of the untwiddled version of these algebras.

**Proposition 7.1.120.** *Under differential Lie integration the above factorization, observation 7.1.118, maps to a factorization*

$$\exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs}) : \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{ChW}} \stackrel{\simeq}{\to} \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp((b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu))_{\tilde{\mathrm{ChW}}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{ChW,ch}}$$

*of* $\exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs})$ *in* $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$*, where the first morphism is a weak equivalence and the second a fibration.*

Proof. We discuss that the first morphism is an equivalence. Clearly it is injective on homotopy groups: if a sphere of $A$-data cannot be filled, then also adding the $(B, C)$-data does not yield a filler. So we need to check that it is also surjective on homotopy groups: any two choices of $(B, C)$-data on a sphere are homotopic: we may interpolate $B$ in any smooth way and then solve the equation $dB = -\mathrm{cs}(A) + C + H$ for the interpolation of $C$.

We now check that the second morphism is a fibration. It is itself the composite

$$\mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)_{\mathrm{ChW}} \to \exp(b^2\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{ChW}}/\mathbb{Z} \stackrel{\int_{\Delta^\bullet}}{\to} \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}_{\mathrm{ChW,ch}}\,.$$

Here the second morphism is a degreewise surjection of simplicial abelian groups, hence a degreewise surjection under the normalized chain complex functor, hence is itself already a projective fibration. Therefore it is sufficient to show that the first morphism here is a fibration.

In degree $k = 0$ to $k = 3$ the lifting problems

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda[k]_i & \longrightarrow & \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)_{\tilde{\mathrm{ChW}}}(U) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta[k] & \longrightarrow & \exp(b^2\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{ChW}}/\mathbb{Z}(U) \end{array}$$

may all be equivalently reformulated as lifting against a cylinder $D^k \hookrightarrow D^k \times [0,1]$ by using the sitting instants of all forms.

We have then a 3-form $H \in \Omega^3_{\mathrm{si}}(U \times D^{k-1} \times [0,1])$ and differential form data $(A, B, C)$ on $U \times D^{k-1}$ given. We may always extend $A$ along the cylinder direction $[0,1]$ (its vertical part is equivalently a based smooth function to Spin which we may extend constantly). $H$ has to be horizontal so is already constantly extended along the cylinder.

We can then use the kind of formula that proves the Poincaré lemma to extend $B$. Let $\Psi : (D^k \times [0,1]) \times [0,1] \to (D^k \times [0,1])$ be a smooth contraction. Then while $d(H - \mathrm{CS}(A) - C)$ may be non-vanishing, by horizonatlity of their curvature characteristic forms we still have that $\iota_{\partial_t}\Psi_t^* d(H - CS(A) - C)$ vanishes (since the contraction vanishes).

Therefore the 2-form

$$\tilde{B} := \int_{[0,1]} \iota_{\partial_t}\Psi_t^*(H - \mathrm{CS}(A) - C)$$

satisfies $d\tilde{B} = (H - CS(A) - C)$. It may however not coincide with our given $B$ at $t = 0$. But the difference $B - \tilde{B}_{t=0}$ is a closed form on the left boundary of the cylinder. We may find some closed 2-form on the other boundary such that the integral around the boundary vanishes. Then the argument from the proof of the Lie integration of the line Lie n-algebra applies and we find an extension $\lambda$ to a closed 2-form on the interior. The sum

$$\hat{B} := \tilde{B} + \lambda$$

then still satisfies $d\hat{B} = H - CS(A) - C$ and it coincides with $B$ on the left boundary.

Notice that here $\tilde{B}$ indeed has sitting instants: since $H$, $\mathrm{CS}(A)$ and $C$ have sitting instants they are constant on their value at the boundary in a neighbourhood perpendicular to the boundary, which means for these 3-forms in the degrees $\leq 3$ that they *vanish* in a neighbourhood of the boundary, hence that the above integral is towards the boundary over a vanishing integrand.

In degree 4 the nature of the lifting problem

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda[4]_i & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)(U) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta[4] & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}_{\mathrm{ChW,ch}} \end{array}$$

starts out differently, due to the presence of $\mathbf{cosk}_3$, but it then ends up amounting to the same kind of argument:

We have four functions $U \to \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}$ which we may realize as the fiber integration of a 3-form $H$ on $U \times (\partial\Delta[4] \setminus \delta_i\Delta[3])$, and we have a lift to $(A, B, C, H)$-data on $U \times (\partial\Delta[4] \setminus \delta_i(\Delta[3]))$ (the boundary of the 4-simplex minus one of its 3-simplex faces).

We observe that we can

- always extend $C$ smoothly to the remaining 3-face such that its fiber integration there reproduces the signed difference of the four given functions corresponding to the other faces (choose any smooth 3-form with sitting instants and with non-vanishing integral and rescale smoothly);
- fill the $A$-data horizonatlly due to the fact that $\pi_2(\mathrm{Spin}) = 0$.
- the $C$-form is already horizontal, hence already filled.

Moreover, by the fact that the 2-form $B$ already is defined on all of $\partial\Delta[4] \setminus \delta_i(\Delta[3])$ its fiber integral over the boundary $\partial\Delta[3]$ coincides with the fiber integral of $H - \mathrm{cs}(A) - C$ over $\partial\Delta[4] \setminus \delta_i(\Delta[3]))$. But by the fact that we have lifted $C$ and the fact that $\mu(A_{\mathrm{vert}}) = \mathrm{cs}(A)|_{\Delta^3}$ is an integral cocycle, it follows that this equals the fiber integral of $C - \mathrm{cs}(A)$ over the remaining face.

Use then as above the vertical Poincaré lemma-formula to find $\tilde{B}$ on $U \times \Delta^3$ with sitting instants that satisfies the equation $dB = H - \mathrm{cs}(A) - C$ there. Then extend the closed difference $B - \tilde{B}|_0$ to a closed smooth 2-form on $\Delta^3$. As before, the difference

$$\hat{B} := \tilde{B} + \lambda$$

is an extension of $B$ that constitutes a lift. □

**Corollary 7.1.121.** *For any $X \in \mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, for any choice of differentiaby good open cover with corresponding cofibrant presentation $\hat{X} = C(\{C_i\}) \in [\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ we have that the 2-groupoids of twisted differential string structures are presented by the ordinary fibers of the morphism of Kan complexes*

$$[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\hat{X}, \exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs})) :$$

$$[\mathrm{CartSp}^{op}, \mathrm{sSet}](\hat{X}, \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)_{\mathrm{ChW}}) \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\hat{X}, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{ChW}})\,.$$

*over any basepoints in the connected components of the Kan complex on the right, which correspond to the elements $[\hat{\mathbf{C}}_3] \in H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$ in the ordinary differential cohomology of $X$.*

Proof. Since $[\mathrm{SmoothCartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ is a simplicial model category the morphism $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\hat{X}, \exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs}))$ is a fibration because $\exp(\mu, \mathrm{cs})$ is and $\hat{X}$ is cofibrant.

It follows from the general theory of homotopy pullbacks that the ordinary pullback of simplicial presheaves

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{String}_{\mathrm{diff,tw}}(X) & \longrightarrow & H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\hat{X}, \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)_{\mathrm{ChW}}) & \longrightarrow & [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\hat{X}, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{ChW}}) \end{array}$$

is a presentation for the defining $\infty$-pullback for $\mathbf{String}_{\mathrm{diff,tw}}(X)$. □

We unwind the explicit expression for a twisted differential string structure under this equivalence. Any twisting cocycle is in the above presentation given by a Čech-Deligne-cocycle, as discussed at 6.4.16.

$$\hat{\mathbf{H}}_3 = ((H_3)_i, \cdots)$$

with local connection 3-form $(H_3)_i \in \Omega^3(U_i)$ and globally defined curvature 4-form $\mathcal{G}_4 \in \Omega^4(X)$.

**Observation 7.1.122.** A twisted differential string structure on $X$, twisted by this cocycle, is on patches $U_i$ a morphism

$$\Omega^\bullet(U_i) \leftarrow \tilde{\mathrm{W}}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$$

in dgAlg, subject to some horizontality constraints. The components of this are over each $U_i$ a collection of differential forms of the following structure

$$\left( \begin{array}{ll} F_\omega = & d\omega + \frac{1}{2}[\omega \wedge \omega] \\ H_3 = & \nabla B := dB + CS(\omega) - C_3 \\ \mathcal{G}_4 = & dC_3 \\ dF_\omega = & -[\omega \wedge F_\omega] \\ dH_3 = & \mathcal{G}_4 - \langle F_\omega \wedge F_\omega \rangle \\ d\mathcal{G}_4 = & 0 \end{array} \right)_i \xleftarrow{\begin{array}{ll} t^a & \mapsto \omega^a \\ r^a & \mapsto F^a_\omega \\ b & \mapsto B \\ c & \mapsto C_3 \\ h & \mapsto H_3 \\ g & \mapsto \mathcal{G}_4 \end{array}} \left( \begin{array}{ll} r^a = & dt^a + \frac{1}{2}C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge t^c \\ h = & db + \mathrm{cs} - c \\ g = & dc \\ dr^a = & -C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge r^a \\ dh = & \langle -, - \rangle - g \\ dg = & 0 \end{array} \right).$$

Here we are indicating on the right the generators and their relation in $\tilde{W}(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ and on the left their images and the images of the relations in $\Omega^\bullet(U_i)$. This are first the definitions of the curvatures themselves and then the Bianchi identities satisfied by these.

By prop. 6.4.155 we have that for $\mathfrak{g}$ an $L_\infty$-algebra and

$$\mathbf{B}G := \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} \exp(\mathfrak{g})$$

the delooping of the smooth Lie $n$-group obtained from it by Lie integration, def. 6.4.79 the coefficient for $\infty$-connections on $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles is

$$\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} := \mathbf{cosk}_{n+1} \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}\,.$$

**Proposition 7.1.123.** *The 2-groupoid of entirely untwisted differential string structures, def. 7.1.107, on $X$ (the twist being $0 \in H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$) is equivalent to that of principal 2-bundles with 2-connection over the string 2-group, def. 7.1.10, as discussed in 1.2.9.7.2:*

$$\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{diff,tw}=0}(X) \simeq \mathrm{String2Bund}_\nabla(X)\,.$$

Proof. By 7.1.6.3.1 we compute $\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{diff,tw}=0}(X)$ as the ordinary fiber of the morphism of simplicial presheaves

$$[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)) \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}})$$

over the identically vanishing cocycle.

In terms of the component formulas of observation 7.1.122, this amounts to restricting to those cocyles for which over each $U \times \Delta^k$ the equations

$$C = 0$$

$$G = 0$$

hold. Comparing this to the explicit formulas for $\exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$ and $\exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in 7.1.6.3.1 we see that these cocycles are exactly those that factor through the canonical inclusion

$$\mathfrak{g}_\mu \to (b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{g}_\mu)$$

from observation 7.1.114. □

**7.1.6.3.2 The Green-Schwarz mechanism in heterotic supergravity** Local differential form data as in observation 7.1.122 is known in theoretical physics in the context of the Green-Schwarz mechanism for 10-dimensional supergravity. We conclude with some comments on the meaning and application of this result (for background and references on the physics story see for instance [SSS09b]).

The standard action functionals of higher dimensional supergravity theories are generically *anomalous* in that instead of being functions on the space of field configurations, they are just sections of a line bundle over these spaces. In order to get a well defined action principle as input for a path-integral quantization to obtain the corresponding quantum field theories, one needs to prescribe in addition the data of a *quantum integrand*. This is a choice of trivialization of these line bundles, together with a choice of flat connection. For this to be possible the line bundle has to be trivializable and flat in the first place. Its failure to be tivializable – its Chern class – is called the *global anomaly*, and its failure to be flat – its curvature 2-form – is called its local anomaly.

But moreover, the line bundle in question is the tensor product of two different line bundles with connection. One is a Pfaffian line bundle induced from the fermionic degrees of freedom of the theory, the other is a line bundle induced from the higher form fields of the theory in the presence of higher *electric and magnetic charge*. The Pfaffian line bundle is fixed by the requirement of supersymmetry, but there is freedom in choosing the background higher electric and magnetic charge. Choosing these appropriately such as to ensure that the tensor product of the two anomaly line bundles produces a flat trivializable line bundle is called an *anomaly cancellation* by a *Green-Schwarz mechanism*.

Concretely, the higher gauge background field of 10-dimensional heterotic supergravity is the Kalb-Ramond field, which in the absence of *fivebrane magnetic charge* is modeled by a circle 2-bundle (bundle gerbe) with connection and curvature 3-form $H_3 \in \Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$, satisfying the higher *Maxwell equation*

$$dH_3 = 0\,.$$

Notice that we may think of a circle 2-bundle as a homotopy from the trivial circle 3-bundle to itself.

In order to cancel the relevant quantum anomaly it turns out that a magnetic background charge density is to be added to the system whose differential form representative is the difference $j_{\mathrm{mag}} := \langle F_{\nabla_{\mathrm{SU}}} \wedge F_{\nabla_{\mathrm{SU}}} \rangle - \langle F_{\nabla_{\mathrm{Spin}}} \wedge F_{\nabla_{\mathrm{Spin}}} \rangle$ between the Pontryagin forms of the Spin-tangent bundle and a given SU-gauge bundle. This modifies the above Maxwell equation locally, on a patch $U_i \subset X$ to

$$dH_i = \langle F_{A_i} \wedge F_{A_i} \rangle - \langle F_{\omega_i} \wedge F_{\omega_i} \rangle\,.$$

Comparing with prop. 7.1.122 and identifying the curvature of the twist with $\mathcal{G}_4 = \langle F_{A_i} \wedge F_{A_i} \rangle$ we see that, while such $H_i$ can no longer be the curvature 3-form of a circle 2-bundle, it can be the local 3-form component of a *twisted* circle 3-bundle that is part of the data of a twisted differential string-structure. The above differential form equation exhibits a de Rham homotopy between the two Pontryagin forms. This is the local differential aspect of the very defnition of a twisted differential string-structure: a homotopy from the Chern-Simons circle 3-bundle of the Spin-tangent bundle to a given twisting circle 3-bundle.

For many years the anomaly cancellation for the heterotic superstring was known at the level of precision used in the physics community, based on a seminal article by Killingback. Recently [Bun09] has given a rigorous proof in the special case that underlying topological class of the twisting gauge bundle is trivial. This proof used the model of twisted differential string structures with topologically tivial twist given in [Wal09]. This model is explicitly constructed in terms of bundle 2-gerbes and doees not exhibit the homotopy pullback property of def. 5.2.14 explicitly. However, the author shows that his model satisfies the abstract properties following from the universal property of the homotopy pullback.

When we take into account also gauge transformations of the gauge bundle, we should replace the homotopy pullback defining twisted differential string structurs this by the full homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{GSBackground}(X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, \mathbf{B}U) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\hat{\mathbf{c}}_2} \\ \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1} & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)) \end{array} .$$

The look of this diagram makes manifest how in this situation we are looking at the structures that homotopically cancel the differential classes $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{c}}_2$ against each other.

Since $\mathbf{H}_{dR}(X, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1))$ is abelian, we may also consider the corresponding Mayer-Vietoris sequence by realizing $\mathrm{GSBackground}(X)$ equivalently as the homotopy fiber of the difference of differential cocycles $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{c}}_2$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{GSBackground}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{conn}}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \times \mathbf{B}U) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{c}}_2} & \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X, \mathbf{B}^4 U(1)) \end{array} .$$

### 7.1.7 Classical supergravity

Action functionals of *supergravity* are extensions to super-geometry, 6.6, of the *Einstein-Hilbert action functional* that models the physics of *gravity*. While these action functionals are not themselves, generally, of higher Chern-Simons type, 5.2.14, or of higher Wess-Zumino-Witten type, 5.2.15, some of them are low-energy effective actions of *super string field theory* action functionals, that are of this type, as we discuss below in 7.2.10. Accordingly, supergravity action functionals typically exhibit rich Chern-Simons-like substructures.

A traditional introduction to the general topic can be found in [DeMo99]. A textbook that aims for a more systematic formalization is [CaDAFr91]. Below in 7.1.7.4 we observe that the discussion of supergravity there is secretly in terms of $\infty$-connections, 1.2.9.6, with values in super $L_\infty$-algebras, 6.6.7.

- 7.1.7.1 – First-order/gauge theory formulation of gravity
- 7.1.7.2 – Higher extensions of the super Poincaré Lie algebra;
- 7.1.7.4 – Supergravity fields are super $L_\infty$-connections

Much of this discussion we re-encounter when we consider super-Minkowski spacetime as a target space for higher WZW models below in 8.1.2.

**7.1.7.1 First-order/gauge theory formulation of gravity** The field theory of gravity ("general relativity") has a natural *first order formulation* where a field configuration over a given $(d+1)$-dimensional manifold $X$ is given by a $\mathfrak{iso}(d,1)$-valued Cartan connection, def. 6.5.63. The following statements briefly review this and related facts (see for instance also the review in the introduction of [Zan05]).

**Definition 7.1.124.** For $d \in \mathbb{N}$, the *Poincaré group* $\mathrm{ISO}(d,1)$ is the group of auto-isometries of the Minkowski space $\mathbb{R}^{d,1}$ equipped with its canonical pseudo-Riemannian metric $\eta$.

This is naturally a Lie group. Its Lie algebra is the *Poincaré Lie algebra* $\mathfrak{iso}(d,1)$.

We recall some standard facts about the Poincaré group.

**Observation 7.1.125.** The Poncaré group is the semidirect product

$$\mathrm{ISO}(d,1) \simeq \mathrm{O}(d,1) \ltimes \mathbb{R}^{d+1}$$

of the *Lorentz group* $\mathrm{O}(d,1)$ of *linear* auto-isometries of $\mathbb{R}^{d,1}$, and the abelian translation group in $(d+1)$ dimensions, with respect to the defining action of $\mathrm{O}(d,1)$ on $\mathbb{R}^{d,1}$. Accordingly there is a canonical embedding of Lie groups

$$O(d,1) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ISO}(d,1)$$

and the corresponding coset space is Minkowski space

$$\mathrm{ISO}(d,1)/\mathrm{O}(d,1) \simeq \mathbb{R}^{d,1}\,.,$$

Analogously the Poincaré Lie algebra is the semidirect product

$$\mathfrak{iso}(d,1) \simeq \mathfrak{so}(d,1) \ltimes \mathbb{R}^{d,1}\,,$$

Accordingly there is a canonical embedding of Lie algebras

$$\mathfrak{so}(d,1) \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{iso}(d,1)$$

and the corresponding quotient of vector spaces is Minkowski space

$$\mathfrak{iso}(d,1)/\mathfrak{so}(d,1) \simeq \mathbb{R}^{d,1}\,.$$

Minkowski space $\mathbb{R}^{d,1}$ is the local model for *Lorentzian manifolds*.

**Definition 7.1.126.** A *Lorentzian manifold* is a pseudo-Riemannian manifold $(X, g)$ such that each tangent space $(T_x X, g_x)$ for any $x \in X$ is isometric to a Minkowski space $(\mathbb{R}^{d,1}, \eta)$.

**Proposition 7.1.127.** *Equivalence classes of $(O(d,1) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{ISO}(d,1))$-valued Cartan connections, def. 6.5.63, on a smooth manifold $X$ are in canonical bijection with Lorentzian manifold structures on $X$.*

This follows from the following observations.

**Observation 7.1.128.** Locally over a patch $U \to X$ a $\mathfrak{iso}(d,1)$ connection is given by a 1-form

$$A = (E, \Omega) \in \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{iso}(d,1))$$

with a component

$$E \in \Omega^1(U, \mathbb{R}^{d+1})$$

and a component

$$\Omega \in \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{so}(d,1))\,.$$

If this comes from a $(\mathrm{O}(d,1) \to \mathrm{ISO}(d,1))$-*Cartan connection* then $E$ is non-degenerate in that for all $x \in X$ the induced linear map

$$E : T_x X \to \mathbb{R}^{d+1}$$

is a linear isomorphism. In this case $X$ is equipped with the Lorentzian metric

$$g := E^* \eta$$

and $\Omega$ is naturally identified with a compatible metric connection on $TX$. Then curvature 2-form of the connection

$$F_A = (F_\Omega, F_E) \in \Omega^2(U, \mathfrak{iso}(d,1))$$

has as components the *Riemann curvature*

$$F_\Omega = d\Omega + \frac{1}{2}[\Omega \wedge \Omega] \in \Omega^2(U, \mathfrak{so}(d,1))$$

of the metric connection, as well as the *torsion*

$$F_E = dE + [\Omega \wedge E] \in \Omega^2(U, \mathbb{R}^{d,1})\,.$$

Therefore precisely if in addition the torsion vanishes is $\Omega$ uniquely fixed to be the Levi-Civita connection on $(X, g)$.

Therefore the configuration space of gravity on a smooth manifold $X$ may be identified with the moduli space of $\mathfrak{iso}(d,1)$-valued Cartan connections on $X$. The field content of *supergravity* is obtained from this by passing from the to Poincaré Lie algebra to one of its *super Lie algeba extensions*, a *super Poincaré* Lie algebra.

There are different such extensions. All involve some spinor representation of the Lorentz Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(d,1)$ as odd-degree elements in the super Lie algebra The choice of number $N$ of irreps in this representation. But there are in general more choices, given by certain exceptional *polyvector extensions* of such super-Poincaré-Lie algebras which contain also new even-graded elements.

Below we show that these Lie superalgebra polyvector extensions , in turn, are induced from canonical *super $L_\infty$-algebra extensions* given by exceptional super Lie algebra cocycles, and that the configuration spaces of higher dimensional supergravity may be identified with moduli spaces of $\infty$-connections, 1.2.9, withvalues in a super $L_\infty$-algebra, def. 6.6.19. that arise as higher central extensions, def. 6.4.133, of a super Poincaré Lie algebra.

**7.1.7.2 $L_\infty$-extensions of the super Poincaré Lie algebra** The super-Poincaré Lie algebra is the local gauge algebra of supergravity. It inherits the cohomology of the special orthogonal or Lorentz Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(d,1)$, but crucially it exhibits a finite number of exceptional $\mathfrak{so}(d,1)$-invariant cocycles on its super-translation algebra. The super $L_\infty$-algebra extensions induced by these cocycles control the structure of higher dimensional supergravity fields as well as of super-$p$-brane $\sigma$-models that propagate in a supergravity background.

- 7.1.7.3 – The super Poincaré Lie algebra;
- 7.1.7.3.1 – M2-brane Lie 3-algebra and the M-theory Lie algebra;
- 7.1.7.3.2 – Exceptional cocycles and the brane scan.

#### 7.1.7.3 The super Poincaré Lie algebra

**Definition 7.1.129.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $S$ a spinor representation of $\mathfrak{so}(n,1)$, the corresponding *super Poincaré Lie algebra* $\mathfrak{sIso}(n,1)$ is the super Lie algebra whose Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{sIso}(10,1)$ is generated from

1. generators $\{\omega^{ab}\}$ in degree $(1,\mathrm{even})$ dual to the standard basis of $\mathfrak{so}(n,1)$,
2. generators $\{e^a\}$ in degree $(1,\mathrm{even})$
3. and generators $\{\psi^\alpha\}$ in degree $(1,\mathrm{odd})$, dual to the spinor representation $S$

with differential defined by

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\omega^a{}_b = \omega^a{}_c \wedge \omega^c{}_d$$
$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}e^a = \omega^a{}_b \wedge e^b + \frac{i}{2}\bar{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^a \psi$$
$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\psi = \frac{1}{4}\omega^{ab}\Gamma_{ab}\psi \,,$$

where $\{\Gamma^a\}$ is the corresponding representation of the Clifford algebra $\mathrm{Cl}_{n,1}$ on $S$, and here and in the following $\Gamma^{a_1 \cdots a_k}$ is shorthand for the skew-symmetrization of the matrix product $\Gamma^{a_1} \cdot \cdots \cdot \Gamma^{a_k}$ in the $k$ indices.

**7.1.7.3.1 M2-brane Lie 3-algebra and the M-theory Lie algebra** We discuss an exceptional extension of the super Poincaré Lie algebra in 11-dimensions by a super Lie 3-algebra and further by super Lie 6-algebra. We show that the corresponding automorphism $L_\infty$-algebra contains the polyvector extension called the *M-theory super Lie algebra*.

**Proposition 7.1.130.** *For $(n,1) = (10,1)$ and $S$ the canonical spinor representation, we have an exceptional super Lie algebra cohomology class in degree 4*

$$[\mu_4] \in H^{2,2}(\mathfrak{sIso}(10,1))$$

*with a representative given by*

$$\mu_4 := \frac{1}{2}\bar{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{ab}\psi \wedge e_a \wedge e_b \,.$$

This is due to [dAFr82].

**Definition 7.1.131.** The *M2-brane super Lie 3-algebra* $\mathfrak{m2brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}$ is the $b\mathbb{R}$-extension of $\mathfrak{sIso}(10,1)$ classified by $\mu_4$, according to prop. 6.4.138

$$b^2\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{m2brane}_{\mathrm{gs}} \to \mathfrak{siso}(10,1) \,.$$

In terms of its Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra this extension was first considered in [dAFr82].

**Definition 7.1.132.** The *polyvector extension* [ACDP03] of $\mathfrak{sIso}(10,1)$ – called the *M-theory Lie algebra* – is the super Lie algebra obtained by adjoining to $\mathfrak{sIso}(10,1)$ generators $\{Q_\alpha, Z^{ab}\}$ that transform as spinors with respect to the existing generators, and whose non-vanishing brackets among themselves are

$$[Q_\alpha, Q_\beta] = i(C\Gamma^a)_{\alpha\beta}P_a + (C\Gamma_{ab})Z^{ab}$$

$$[Q_\alpha, Z^{ab}] = 2i(C\Gamma^{[a})_{\alpha\beta}Q^{b]\beta}\,.$$

**Proposition 7.1.133.** *There is a nontrivial degree-7 class $[\mu_7] \in H^{5,2}(\mathfrak{m2brane}_{\mathrm{gs}})$ in the super-$L_\infty$-algebra cohomology of the M2-brane Lie 3-algebra, a cocycle representative of which is*

$$\mu_7 := -\frac{1}{2}\bar{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{a_1\cdots a_5}\psi \wedge e_{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge e_{a_5} - \frac{13}{2}\bar{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{a_1 a_2}\psi \wedge e_{a_1} \wedge e_{s_2} \wedge c_3\,,$$

*where $c_3$ is the extra generator of degree 3 in* $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{m2brane}_{\mathrm{gs}})$*.*

This is due to [dAFr82].

**Definition 7.1.134.** The *M5-brane Lie 6-algebra* $\mathfrak{m5brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}$ is the $b^5\mathbb{R}$-extension of $\mathfrak{m2brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}$ classified by $\mu_7$, according to prop. 6.4.138

$$b^5\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{m5brane}_{\mathrm{gs}} \to \mathfrak{m2brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}\,.$$

**7.1.7.3.2 Exceptional cocycles and the brane scan** The exceptional cocycles discussed above are part of a pattern which traditionally goes by the name *brane scan* [Duf87].

**Proposition 7.1.135.** *For $d, p \in \mathbb{N}$, let $\mathfrak{sIso}(d,1)$ be the super Poincaré Lie algebra, def. 7.1.129, and consider the element*

$$\bar{\psi}\Gamma_{a_0,\cdots,a_{p+1}} \wedge \psi \wedge e^{a_0} \wedge \cdots \wedge e^{a_{p+1}} \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{sIso}(d,1))$$

*in degree $p+2$ of the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra. This is closed, hence is a cocycle, for the combinations of $D := d+1$ and $p \geq 1$ precisely where there are non-empty and non-parenthesis entries in the following table.*

| | $p=1$ | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $D=11$ | | $\mathfrak{m2brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}$ | | | $(\mathfrak{m5brane}_{\mathrm{gs}})$ |
| 10 | $\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{gs}}$ | | | | $\mathfrak{ns5brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}$ |
| 9 | | | | * | |
| 8 | | | * | | |
| 7 | | * | | | |
| 6 | * | | * | | |
| 5 | | * | | | |
| 4 | * | * | | | |
| 3 | * | | | | |

The entries in the top two rows are labeled by the name of the extension of $\mathfrak{sIso}(d,1)$ that the corresponding cocycle classifies. By prop. 7.1.131 the 7-cocycle that defines $\mathfrak{m5brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}$ does not live on the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{sIso}(10,1)$, but only on its Lie 3-algebra extension $\mathfrak{m2brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}$. This is why in the context of the brane scan it does not appear in the classical literature, which does not know about higher Lie algebras.

An explicitly Lie-theoretic discussion of these cocycles is in chapter 8 of [AzIz95]. The extension

$$b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{gs}} \to \mathfrak{sIso}(9,1)$$

and its Lie integration has been considered in [Huer11].

**7.1.7.4 Supergravity fields are super $L_\infty$-connections** Among the varied literature in theoretical physics on the topic of *supergravity* the book [CaDAFr91] and the research program that it summarizes, starting with [dAFr82], stands out as an attempt to identify and make use of a systematic mathematical structure controlling the general theory. By careful comparison one can see that the notions considered in that book may be translated into notions considered here under the following dictionary

- "FDA": the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ of a super $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ (def. 6.6.19), def. 6.5.17;
- "soft group manifold": the Weil algebra $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ of $\mathfrak{g}$, def. 6.4.135
- "field configuration": $\mathfrak{g}$-valued $\infty$-connection, def. 1.2.9.6
- "field strength": curvature of $\mathfrak{g}$-valued $\infty$-connection, def. 1.2.176
- "horizontality condition": second $\infty$-Ehresmann condition, remark 1.2.185
- "cosmo-cocycle condition": characterization of $\mathfrak{g}$-Chern-Simons elements, def. 6.4.147, to first order in the curvatures;

All the super $L_\infty$-algebras $\mathfrak{g}$ appearing in [CaDAFr91] are higher shifted central extensions, in the sense of prop. 6.4.138, of the super-Poincaré Lie algebra.

#### 7.1.7.4.1 The graviton and the gravitino

**Example 7.1.136.** For $X$ a supermanifold and $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{sIso}(n,1)$ the super Poincaré Lie algebra from def. 7.1.129, $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential form data

$$A : TX \to \mathfrak{siso}(n,1)$$

consists of

1. an $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$-valued even 1-form $E \in \Omega^1(X, \mathbb{R}^{n+1})$ – the *vielbein*, identified as the propagating part of the *graviton* field;
2. an $\mathfrak{so}(n,1)$-valued even 1-form $\Omega \in \Omega^1(X, \mathfrak{so}(n,1))$ – the *spin connection*, identified as the non-propagating auxiliary part of the graviton field;
3. a spin-representaton -valued odd 1-form $\Psi \in \Omega^1(X, S)$ – identified as the *gravitino field*.

#### 7.1.7.4.2 The 11d supergravity $C_3$-field

**Example 7.1.137.** For $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{m2brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}$ the Lie 3-algebra from def. 7.1.131, a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued form

$$A : TX \to \mathfrak{sugra}_3(10,1)$$

consists in addition to the field content of a $\mathfrak{siso}(10,1)$-connection from example 7.1.136 of

- a 3-form $C_3 \in \Omega^3(X)$.

This 3-form field is the local incarnation of what is called the *supergravity $C_3$-field*. The global nature of this field is discussed in 7.1.8.

#### 7.1.7.4.3 The magnetic dual 11d supergravity $C_6$-field

**Example 7.1.138.** For $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{m5brane}_{\mathrm{gs}}$ the 11d-supergravity Lie 6-algebra, def. 7.1.134, a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued form

$$A : TX \to \mathfrak{sugra}_6(10,1)$$

consists in addition to the field content of a $\mathfrak{sugra}_3(10,1)$-connection given in remark 7.1.137 of

- a 6-form $C_6 \in \Omega^3(X)$ – the dual *supergravity C-field*.

The identification of this field content is also due to the analysis of [dAFr82].

### 7.1.8 The supergravity $C$-field

We consider a slight variant of twisted differential **c**-structures, where instead of having the twist directly in differential cohomology, it is instead first considered just in de Rham cohomology but then supplemented by a lift of the structure $\infty$-group.

We observe that when such a twist is by the sum of the first fractional Pontryagin class with the second Chern class, and when the second of these two steps is considered over the boundary of the base manifold, then the differental structures obtained this way exhibit some properties that a differential cohomological description of the *$C_3$-field* in *11-dimensional supergravity*, 7.1.7.4.2, is expected to have.

This section draws from [FSS12a] and [FSS12b].

The supergravity C-field is subject to a certain $\mathbb{Z}_2$-twist [Wi96] [Wi97a], due to a quadratic refinement of its action functional, which we review below in 7.1.8.1. A formalization of this twist in abelian differential cohomology for fixed background spin structure has been given in [HoSi05], in terms of *differential integral Wu structures*. These we review in 7.1.8.2 and refine them from $\mathbb{Z}_2$-coefficients to circle $n$-bundles. Then we present a natural moduli 3-stack of C-field configurations that refines this model to nonabelian differential cohomology, generalizing it to dynamical gravitational background fields, in 7.1.8.4. We discuss a natural boundary coupling of these fields to $E_8$-gauge fields in 7.1.8.6.

**7.1.8.1 Higher abelian Chern-Simons theories with background charge** The supergravity $C$-field is an example of a general phenomenon of higher abelian Chern-Simons QFTs in the presence of *background charge*. This phenomenon was originally noticed in [Wi96] and then made precise in [HoSi05]. The holographic dual of this phenomenon is that of self-dual higher gauge theories, which for the supergravity $C$-field is the nonabelian 2-form theory on the M5-brane [FSS12b]. We review the idea in a way that will smoothly lead over to our refinements to nonabelian higher gauge theory in section 7.1.8.

Fix some natural number $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and an oriented manifold (compact with boundary) $X$ of dimension $4k+3$. The gauge equivalence class of a $(2k+1)$-form gauge field $\hat{G}$ on $X$ is an element in the differential cohomology group $\hat{H}^{2k+2}(X)$. The cup product $\hat{G} \cup \hat{G} \in \hat{H}^{4k+4}(X)$ of this with itself has a natural higher holonomy over $X$, denoted

$$\begin{aligned} \exp(iS(-)) : \hat{H}^{2k+2}(X) &\to U(1) \\ \hat{G} &\mapsto \exp(i\int_X \hat{G} \cup \hat{G}) \,. \end{aligned}$$

This is the exponentiated action functional for bare $(4k+3)$-dimensional abelian Chern-Simons theory. For $k=0$ this reduces to ordinary 3-dimensional abelian Chern-Simons theory. Notice that, even in this case, this is a bit more subtle that Chern-Simons theory for a simply-connected gauge group $G$. In the latter case all fields can be assumed to be globally defined forms. But in the non-simply-connected case of $U(1)$, instead the fields are in general cocycles in differential cohomology. If, however, we restrict attention to fields $C$ in the inclusion $H^{2k+1}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) \hookrightarrow \hat{H}^{2k+2}(X)$, then on these the above action reduces to the familiar expression

$$\exp(iS(C)) = \exp(i\int_X C \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} C) \,.$$

Observe now that the above action functional may be regarded as a *quadratic form* on the group $\hat{H}^{2k+2}(X)$. The corresponding bilinear form is the ("secondary", since $X$ is of dimension $4k+3$ instead of $4k+4$) *intersection pairing*

$$\begin{aligned} \langle -,-\rangle : \hat{H}^{2k+2}(X) \times \hat{H}^{2k+2}(X) \to U(1) \\ (\hat{a}_1, \hat{a}_2) \mapsto \exp(i\int_X \hat{a}_1 \cup \hat{a}_2) \,. \end{aligned}$$

But note that from $\exp(iS(-))$ we do *not* obtain a *quadratic refinement* of the pairing. A quadratic refinement is, by definition, a function

$$q : \hat{H}^{2k+2}(X) \to U(1)$$

(not necessarily homogenous of degree 2 as $\exp(iS(-))$ is), for which the intersection pairing is obtained via the polarization formula

$$\langle \hat{a}_1, \hat{a}_2 \rangle = q(\hat{a}_1 + \hat{a}_2) q(\hat{a}_1)^{-1} q(\hat{a}_2)^{-1} q(0) \,.$$

If we took $q := \exp(iS(-))$, then the above formula would yield not $\langle -, - \rangle$, but the square $\langle -, - \rangle^2$, given by the exponentiation of *twice* the integral.

The observation in [Wi96] was that for the correct holographic physics, we need instead an action functional which is indeed a genuine quadratic refinement of the intersection pairing. But since the differential classes in $\hat{H}^{2k+2}(X)$ refine *integral* cohomology, we cannot in general simply divide by 2 and pass from $\exp(i \int_X \hat{G} \cup \hat{G})$ to $\exp(i \int_X \frac{1}{2} \hat{G} \cup \hat{G})$. The integrand in the latter expression does not make sense in general in differential cohomology. If one tried to write it out in the "obvious" local formulas one would find that it is a functional on fields which is not gauge invariant. The analog of this fact is familiar from nonabelian $G$-Chern-Simons theory with simply-connected $G$, where also the theory is consistent only at interger *levels*. The "level" here is nothing but the underlying integral class $G \cup G$. Therefore the only way to obtain a square root of the quadratic form $\exp(iS(-))$ is to *shift it*. Here we think of the analogy with a quadratic form

$$q : x \mapsto x^2$$

on the real numbers (a parabola in the plane). Replacing this by

$$q^\lambda : x \mapsto x^2 - \lambda x$$

for some real number $\lambda$ means keeping the shape of the form, but shifting its minimum from 0 to $\frac{1}{2}\lambda$. If we think of this as the potential term for a scalar field $x$ then its ground state is now at $x = \frac{1}{2}\lambda$. We may say that there is a *background field* or *background charge* that pushes the field out of its free equilibrium.

To lift this reasoning to our action quadratic form $\exp(iS(-))$ on differential cocycles, we need a differential class $\hat{\lambda} \in H^{2k+2}(X)$ such that for every $\hat{a} \in H^{2k+2}(X)$ the composite class

$$\hat{a} \cup \hat{a} - \hat{a} \cup \hat{\lambda} \in H^{4k+4}(X)$$

is even, hence is divisible by 2. Because then we could define a shifted action functional

$$\exp(iS^\lambda(-)) : \hat{a} \mapsto \exp\left( i \int_X \frac{1}{2} (\hat{a} \cup \hat{a} - \hat{a} \cup \hat{\lambda}) \right) ,$$

where now the fraction $\frac{1}{2}$ in the integrand does make sense. One directly sees that if this exists, then this shifted action is indeed a quadratic refinement of the intersection pairing:

$$\exp(iS^\lambda(\hat{a} + \hat{b})) \exp(iS^\lambda(\hat{a}))^{-1} \exp(iS^\lambda(\hat{b}))^{-1} \exp(iS^\lambda(0)) = \exp(i \int_X \hat{a} \cup \hat{b}) \,.$$

The condition on the existence of $\hat{\lambda}$ here means, equivalently, that the image of the underlying integral class vanishes under the map

$$(-)_{\mathbb{Z}_2} : H^{2k+2}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \to H^{2k+2}(X, \mathbb{Z}_2)$$

to $\mathbb{Z}_2$-cohomology:

$$(a)_{\mathbb{Z}_2} \cup (a)_{\mathbb{Z}_2} - (a)_{\mathbb{Z}_2} \cup (\lambda)_{\mathbb{Z}_2} = 0 \in H^{4k+4}(X, \mathbb{Z}_2) \,.$$

Precisely such a class $(\lambda)_{\mathbb{Z}_2}$ does uniquely exist on every oriented manifold. It is called the *Wu class* $\nu_{2k+2} \in H^{2k+2}(X, \mathbb{Z}_2)$, and may be *defined* by this condition. Moreover, if $X$ is a Spin-manifold, then every second Wu class, $\nu_{4k}$, has a pre-image in integral cohomology, hence $\lambda$ does exist as required above

$$(\lambda)_{\mathbb{Z}_2} = \nu_{2k+2} \,.$$

It is given by polynomials in the Pontrjagin classes of $X$ (discussed in section E.1 of [HoSi05]). For instance the degree-4 Wu class (for $k = 1$) is refined by the first fractional Pontrjagin class $\frac{1}{2}p_1$

$$(\tfrac{1}{2}p_1)_{\mathbb{Z}_2} = \nu_4 \,.$$

In the present context, this was observed in [Wi96] (see around eq. (3.3) there).

Notice that the equations of motion of the shifted action $\exp(iS^\lambda(\hat{a}))$ are no longer $\mathrm{curv}(\hat{a}) = 0$, but are now

$$\mathrm{curv}(\hat{a}) = \tfrac{1}{2}\mathrm{curv}(\hat{\lambda}) \,.$$

We therefore think of $\exp(iS^\lambda(-))$ as the exponentiated action functional for *higher dimensional abelian Chern-Simons theory with background charge* $\frac{1}{2}\lambda$.

With respect to the shifted action functional it makes sense to introduce the shifted field

$$\hat{G} := \hat{a} - \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{\lambda} \,.$$

This is simply a re-parameterization such that the Chern-Simons equations of motion again look homogenous, namely $G = 0$. In terms of this shifted field the action $\exp(iS^\lambda(\hat{a}))$ from above equivalently reads

$$\exp(iS^\lambda(\hat{G})) = \exp(i \int_X \tfrac{1}{2}(\hat{G} \cup \hat{G} - (\tfrac{1}{2}\hat{\lambda})^2)) \,.$$

For the case $k = 1$, this is the form of the action functional for the 7d Chern-Simons dual of the 2-form gauge field on the 5-brane first given as (3.6) in [Wi96]

In the language of twisted cohomological structures, def. 5.2.118, we may summarize this situation as follows: *In order for the action functional of higher abelian Chern-Simons theory to be correctly divisible, the images of the fields in $\mathbb{Z}_2$-cohomology need to form a* twisted Wu-structure*, [Sa11b].Therefore the fields themselves need to constitute a* twisted $\lambda$*-structure. For $k = 1$ this is a* twisted String-structure *[SSS09c] and explains the quantization condition on the $C$-field in 11-dimensional supergravity.*

In [HoSi05] a formalization of the above situation has been given in terms of a notion there called *differential integral Wu structures*. In the following section we explain how this follows from the notion of twisted Wu structures with the twist taken in $\mathbb{Z}_2$-coefficients. Then we refine this to a formalization to *twisted differential Wu structures* with the twist taken in smooth circle $n$-bundles.

**7.1.8.2 Differential integral Wu structures** We discuss some general aspects of smooth and differential refinements of $\mathbb{Z}_2$-valued universal characteristic classes. For the special case of *Wu classes* we show how these notions reduce to the definition of *differential integral Wu structures* given in [HoSi05]. We then construct a refinement of these structures that lifts the twist from $\mathbb{Z}_2$-valued cocycles to smooth circle $n$-bundles. This further refinement of integral Wu structures is what underlies the model for the supergravity C-field in section 7.1.8.

Recall from prop. 7.1.37 the characterization of $\mathrm{Spin}^c$ as the loop space object of the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^c & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}U(1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{c}_1 \bmod 2} \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{w}_2} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{Z}_2 \end{array} \,.$$

For general $n \in \mathbb{N}$ the analog of the first Chern class mod 2 appearing here is the higher Dixmier-Douady class mod 2

$$\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{mod}\,2} : \ \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{DD}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{mod}\,2} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}_2 \ \,.$$

Let now

$$\nu_{n+1} : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \to \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}_2$$

be a representative of the universal smooth *Wu class* in degree $n+1$, the $(\Pi \dashv \mathrm{Disc})$-adjunct of the topological universal Wu class using that $\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$ is discrete as a smooth $\infty$-groupoid, and using that $\Pi(\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}) \simeq B\mathrm{SO}$ is the ordinary classifying space, by prop. 6.3.30.

**Definition 7.1.139.** Let $\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_{n+1}}$ be the loop space object of the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_{n+1}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \boldsymbol{\nu}^{\mathrm{int}}_{n+1}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \nu_{n+1}} \\ \mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{mod}\,2} & \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}_2 \end{array} .$$

We call the left vertical morphism $\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1}$ appearing here the *universal smooth integral Wu structure* in degree $n+1$.

A morphism of stacks

$$\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1} : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_{n+1}}$$

is a choice of orientation structure on $X$ together with a choice of smooth integral Wu structure lifting the corresponding Wu class $\nu_{n+1}$.

**Example 7.1.140.** The smooth first fractional Pontrjagin class $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_2$, prop. 7.1.5, fits into a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} & & & & \\ & \overset{u}{\searrow} & & & \\ & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_4} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \\ & {\scriptstyle \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \boldsymbol{\nu}^{\mathrm{int}}_4} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \nu_4} \\ & & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{mod}\,2} & \mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{Z}_2 \end{array}$$

with curved arrows $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}$ and $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$.

In this sense we may think of $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$ as being the integral and, moreover, smooth refinement of the universal degree-4 Wu class on $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}$.

Proof. Using the defining property of $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$, this follows with the results discussed in appendix E.1 of [HoSi05]. □

**Proposition 7.1.141.** *Let $X$ be a smooth manifold equipped with orientation*

$$o_X : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO}$$

*and consider its Wu-class $[\nu_{n+1}(o_X)] \in H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{Z}_2)$*

$$\nu_{n+1}(o_X) : \; X \xrightarrow{o_X} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SO} \xrightarrow{\nu_{n+1}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}_2 \; .$$

*The $n$-groupoid $\hat{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}}_{\mathrm{mod}2}\mathrm{Struc}_{[\nu_{2k}]}(X)$ of $[\nu_{n+1}]$-twisted differential $\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{mod}2}$-structures, according to def. 5.2.118, hence the homotopy pullback*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}}_{\mathrm{mod}2}\mathrm{Struc}_{[\nu_{n+1}]}(X) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \nu_{n+1}(o_X)} \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}}_{\mathrm{mod}\,2}} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}_2) \end{array} ,$$

*categorifies the groupoid $\hat{\mathcal{H}}^{n+1}_{\nu_{n+1}}(X)$ of* differential integral Wu structures *as in def. 2.12 of [HoSi05]: its 1-truncation is equivalent to the groupoid defined there*

$$\tau_1 \hat{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}}_{\mathrm{mod}2}\mathrm{Struct}_{[\nu_{n+1}]}(X) \simeq \hat{\mathcal{H}}^{n+1}_{\nu_{n+1}}(X) \, .$$

Proof. By prop. 6.4.114, the canonical presentation of $\mathbf{DD}_{\mathrm{mod}2}$ via the Dold-Kan correspondence is given by an epimorphism of chain complexes of sheaves, hence by a fibration in $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$. Precisely, the composite

$$\hat{\mathbf{DD}}_{\mathrm{mod}\,2} : \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{DD}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{mod}\,2} \mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}_2$$

is presented by the vertical sequence of morphisms of chain complexes

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
\mathbb{Z} & \hookrightarrow & C^\infty(-,\mathbb{R}) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}\log} & \Omega^1(-) & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \Omega^n(-) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
\mathbb{Z} & \hookrightarrow & C^\infty(-,\mathbb{R}) & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
\mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
\mathbb{Z}_2 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0
\end{array}.$$

By remark 5.1.10 we may therefore compute the defining homotopy pullback for $\hat{\mathbf{DD}}_{\mathrm{mod}2}\mathrm{Struct}_{[\nu_{n+1}]}(X)$ as an ordinary fiber product of the corresponding simplicial sets of cocycles. The claim then follows by inspection. □

**Remark 7.1.142.** Explicitly, a cocycle in $\tau_1 \hat{\mathbf{DD}}_{\mathrm{mod}2}\mathrm{Struct}_{[\nu_{n+1}]}(X)$ is identified with a Čech cocycle with coefficients in the Deligne complex

$$\left( \mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow C^\infty(-,\mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}\log} \Omega^1(-) \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_{\mathrm{dR}}} \Omega^n(-) \right)$$

such that the underlying $\mathbb{Z}[n+1]$-valued cocycle modulo 2 equals the given cocycle for $\nu_{n+1}$. A coboundary between two such cocycles is a gauge equivalence class of ordinary Čech-Deligne cocycles such that their underlying $\mathbb{Z}$-cocycle vanishes modulo 2. Cocycles of this form are precisely those that arise by multiplication with 2 or arbitrary Čech-Deligne cocycles.

This is the groupoid structure discussed on p. 14 of [HoSi05], there in terms of singular instead of Čech cohomology.

We now consider another twisted differential structure, which refines these twisting integral Wu structures to *smooth* integral Wu structures, def. 7.1.139.

**Definition 7.1.143.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, write $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_{n+1}}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the homotopy pullback of smooth moduli $n$-stacks

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_{n+1}}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_{n+1}} \times \mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \xrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\nu}^{\mathrm{int}}_{n+1} - 2\mathbf{DD}} & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)
\end{array},$$

where $\boldsymbol{\nu}^{\mathrm{int}}_{n+1}$ is the universal smooth integral Wu class from def. 7.1.139, and where $2\mathbf{DD} : \mathbf{B}^n U(1) \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ is the canonical smooth refinement of the operation of multiplication by 2 on integral cohomology.

We call this the moduli $n$-stack of *smooth differential Wu-structures.*

By construction, a morphism $X \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_{n+1}}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ classifies also all possible orientation structures and smooth integral lifts of their Wu structures. In applications one typically wants to fix an integral Wu structure lifting a given Wu class. This is naturally formalized by the following construction.

**Definition 7.1.144.** For $X$ an oriented manifold, and

$$\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1} : X \to \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_{n+1}}$$

a given smooth integral Wu structure, def. 7.1.139, write $\mathbf{H}_{\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_{n+1}}_{\mathrm{conn}})$ for the $n$-groupoid of cocycles whose underlying smooth integral Wu structure is $\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1}$, hence for the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{H}_{\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_{n+1}}_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_{n+1}}_{\mathrm{conn}}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) & \xrightarrow{(\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1}, \mathrm{id})} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_{n+1}} \times \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \xrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1}} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_{n+1}}) \end{array} .$$

**Proposition 7.1.145.** *Cohomology with coefficients in $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_{n+1}}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ over a given smooth integral Wu structure coincides with the corresponding differential integral Wu structures:*

$$\hat{H}^{n+1}_{\nu_{n+1}}(X) \simeq H_{\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1}}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_{n+1}}_{\mathrm{conn}}) .$$

Proof. Let $C(\{U_i\})$ be the Čech-nerve of a good open cover of $X$. By prop. 6.4.114 the canonical presentation of $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ is a projective fibration. Since $C(\{U_i\})$ is projectively cofibrant and $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj}}$ is a simplicial model category, the morphism of Čech cocycle simplicial sets

$$[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \to [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](C(\{U_i\}), \mathbf{B}^n U(1))$$

is a Kan fibration. Hence, by remark 5.1.10, its homotopy pullback may be computed as the ordinary pullback of simplicial sets of this map. The claim then follows by inspection.

Explicitly, in this presentation a cocycle in the pullback is a pair $(a, \hat{G})$ of a cocycle $a$ for a circle $n$-bundle and a Deligne cocycle $\hat{G}$ with underlying bare cocycle $G$, such that there is an equality of degree-n Čech $U(1)$-cocycles

$$G = \boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1} - 2a .$$

A gauge transformation between two such cocycles is a pair of Čech cochains $\hat{\gamma}$, $\alpha$ such that $\gamma = 2\alpha$ (the cocycle $\boldsymbol{\nu}_{n+1}$ being held fixed). This means that the gauge transformations acting on a given $\hat{G}$ solving the above constraint are precisely the all Deligne cocychains, but multiplied by 2. This is again the explicit description of $\hat{H}_{\nu_{n+1}}(X)$ from remark 7.1.142. □

**7.1.8.3 Twisted differential String($E_8$)-structures** We discuss smooth and differential refinements of the canonical degree-4 universal characteristic class

$$a : BE_8 \to K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$$

for $E_8$ the largest of the exceptional semimple Lie algebras.

**Proposition 7.1.146.** *There exists a differential refinement of the canonical integral 4-class on $BE_8$ to the smooth moduli stack of $E_8$-connections with values in the smooth moduli 3-stack of circle 3-bundles with 3-connection*

$$\hat{\mathbf{a}} : (\mathbf{B}E_8)_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

Using the $L_\infty$-algebraic data provided in [SSS09a], this was constructed in [FSS10].

**Proposition 7.1.147.** *Under geometric realization, prop. 5.2.14, the smooth class* $\mathbf{a}$ *becomes an equivalence*

$$|\mathbf{a}| : BE_8 \simeq_{16} B^3U(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$$

*on 16-coskeleta.*

Proof. By [BoSa58] the 15-coskeleton of the topological space $E_8$ is a $K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$. By [FSS10], $\mathbf{a}$ is a smooth refinement of the generator $[a] \in H^4(BE_8, \mathbb{Z})$. By the Hurewicz theorem this is identified with $\pi_4(BE_8) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$. Hence in cohomology $\mathbf{a}$ induces an isomorphism

$$\pi_4(BE_8) \simeq [S^4, BE_8] \simeq H^1(S^4, E_8) \xrightarrow[\simeq]{|\mathbf{a}|} H^4(S^4, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq [S^4, K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)] \simeq \pi_4(S^4) \ .$$

Therefore $|\mathbf{a}|$ is a weak homotopy equivalence on 16 coskeleta. □

**7.1.8.4 The moduli 3-stack of the $C$-field** As we have reviewed above in section 7.1.8.1, the flux quantization condition for the $C$-field derived in [Wi97a] is the equation

$$[G_4] = \tfrac{1}{2}p_1 \mod 2 \quad \text{in} \quad H^4(X, \mathbb{Z}) \tag{7.16}$$

in integral cohomology, where $[G_4]$ is the cohomology class of the $C$-field itself, and $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ is the first fractional Pontrjagin class of the Spin manifold $X$. One can equivalently rewrite (7.16) as

$$[G_4] = \tfrac{1}{2}p_1 + 2a \quad \text{in} \quad H^4(X, \mathbb{Z}), \tag{7.17}$$

where $a$ is some degree 4 integral cohomology class on $X$. By the discussion in section 7.1.8.2, the correct formalization of this for *fixed* spin structure is to regard the gauge equivalence class of the C-field as a differential integral Wu class relative to the integral Wu class $\nu_4^{\text{int}} = \frac{1}{2}p_1$, example 7.1.140, of that spin structure. By prop. 7.1.145 and prop. 7.1.9, the natural refinement of this to a smooth moduli 3-stack of C-field configurations and arbitrary spin connections is the homotopy pullback of smooth 3-stacks

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_{n+1}}_{\text{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\text{conn}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\text{Spin}_{\text{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 + 2\mathbf{DD}} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) \end{array} \ .$$

Here the moduli stack in the bottom left is that of the field of gravity (spin connections) together with an auxiliary circle 3-bundle / 2-gerbe. Following the arguments in [FSS12b] (the traditional ones as well as the new ones presented there), we take this auxiliary circle 3-bundle to be the Chern-Simons circle 3-bundle of an $E_8$-principal bundle. According to prop. 7.1.146 this is formalized on smooth higher moduli stacks by further pulling back along the smooth refinement

$$\mathbf{a} : \mathbf{B}E_8 \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$$

of the canonical universal 4-class $[a] \in H^4(BE_8, \mathbb{Z})$. Therefore we are led to formalize the *$E_8$-model for the $C$-field* as follows.

**Definition 7.1.148.** The *smooth moduli 3-stack of spin connections and $C$-field configurations* in the $E_8$-model is the homotopy pullback **CField** of the moduli $n$-stack of smooth differential Wu structures

$\mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_4}_{\mathrm{conn}}$, def. 7.1.143, to spin connections and $E_8$-instanton configurations, hence the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{CField} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)^{\nu_4}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 & \xrightarrow{(u,\mathbf{a})} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_4} \times \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \end{array} , \tag{7.18}$$

where $u$ is the canonical morphism from example 7.1.140.

**Remark 7.1.149.** By the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, **CField** is equivalently given as the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{CField} & \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{G}}_4} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a}} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \end{array} . \tag{7.19}$$

Spelling out this definition, a $C$-field configuration

$$(\nabla_{\mathfrak{so}}, \nabla_{b^2\mathbb{R}}, P_{E_8}) : X \to \mathbf{CField}$$

on a smooth manifold $X$ is the datum of

1. *a principal* Spin*-bundle with* $\mathfrak{so}$*-connection* $(P_{\mathrm{Spin}}, \nabla_{\mathfrak{so}})$ *on* $X$*;*
2. *a principal* $E_8$*-bundle* $P_{E_8}$ *on* $X$*;*
3. *a* $U(1)$*-2-gerbe with connection* $(P_{\mathbf{B}^2U(1)}, \nabla_{\mathbf{B}^2U(1)})$ *on* $X$*;*
4. *a choice of equivalence of* $U(1)$*-2-gerbes between between* $P_{\mathbf{B}^2U(1)}$ *and the image of* $P_{\mathrm{Spin}} \times_X P_{E_8}$ *via* $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a}$*.*

It is useful to observe that there is the following further equivalent reformulation of this definition.

**Proposition 7.1.150.** *The moduli 3-stack* **CField** *from def. 7.1.148 is equivalently the homotopy pullback*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{CField} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 & \xrightarrow{(\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a})_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{R} \end{array} , \tag{7.20}$$

*where the bottom morphism of higher stacks is presented by the correspondence of simplicial presheaves*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times (\mathbf{B}E_8)_{\mathrm{diff}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{diff}} \times (\mathbf{B}E_8)_{\mathrm{diff}} & \xrightarrow{(\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a})_{\mathrm{diff}}} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{diff}} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow \wr & & \downarrow \wr & & \downarrow \wr & & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a}} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1) & & \end{array} . \tag{7.21}$$

*Moreover, it is equivalently the homtopy pullback*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{CField} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 & \xrightarrow{(\frac{1}{4}\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{a})_{\mathrm{dR}}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{R} \end{array} , \tag{7.22}$$

*where now the bottom morphism is the composite of the bottom morphism before, postcomposed with the morphism*

$$\tfrac{1}{2} : \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{R} \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{R}$$

*that is given, via Dold-Kan, by division of differential forms by 2.*

Proof. By the pasting law for homotopy pullbacks, prop. 5.1.2, the first homotopy pullback above may be computed as two consecutive homotopy pullbacks

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{CField} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a}} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{curv}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{R} \end{array} ,$$

which exhibits on the right the defining pullback of def. 6.4.114, and thus on the left the one from def. 7.1.148. The statement about the second homotopy pullback above follows analogously after noticing that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} & \xrightarrow{1/2} & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{R} & \xrightarrow{1/2} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{R} \end{array} . \tag{7.23}$$

is a homotopy pullback. □

It is therefore useful to introduce labels as follows.

**Definition 7.1.151.** We label the structure morphism of the above composite homotopy pullback as

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{CField} & \xrightarrow{\hat{G}_4} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{G}_4} & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow & \swarrow_{H_3}\simeq & \downarrow^{G_4} & \swarrow\simeq & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 & \xrightarrow[\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_2 + 2\mathbf{a}]{} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) & \xrightarrow[\mathrm{curv}]{} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}^4 U(1) \end{array} .$$

Here $\hat{G}_4$ sends a C-field configuration to an underlying circle 3-bundle with connection, whose curvature 4-form is $\mathcal{G}_4$.

**Remark 7.1.152.** These equivalent reformulations show two things.

1. The C-field model may be thought of as containing $E_8$-*pseudo-connections*. That is, there is a higher gauge in which a field configuration consists of an $E_8$-connection on an $E_8$-bundle – even though there is no dynamical $E_8$-gauge field in 11d supergravity – but where gauge transformations are allowed to freely shift these connections.

2. There is a precise sense in which imposing the quantization condition (7.17) on integral cohomology is equivalent to imposing the condition $[G_4]/2 = \frac{1}{4}p_1 + a$ in de Rham cohomology / real singular cohomology.

**Observation 7.1.153.** When restricted to a fixed Spin-connection, gauge equivalence classes of configurations classified by **CField** naturally form a torsor over the ordinary degree-4 differential cohomology $H^4_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$.

Proof. By the general discussion of differential integral Wu-structures in section 7.1.8.2. □

**7.1.8.5 The homotopy-type of the moduli stack** We discuss now the homotopy-type of the 3-groupoid

$$\mathbf{CField}(X) := \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{CField})$$

of C-field configurations over a given spacetime manifold $X$. In terms of gauge theory, its 0-th homotopy group is the set of *gauge equivalence classes* of field configurations, its first homotopy group is the set of *gauge-of-gauge equivalence classes* of auto-gauge transformations of a given configuration, and so on.

**Definition 7.1.154.** For $X$ a smooth manifold, let

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla_{\mathfrak{so}}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{P_{\mathrm{Spin}}} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \end{array}$$

be a fixed spin structure with fixed spin connection. The restriction of $\mathbf{CField}(X)$ to this fixed spin connection is the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{CField}(X)_{P_{\mathrm{Spin}}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{CField}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}E_8) & \xrightarrow{((P_{\mathrm{Spin}}, \nabla_{\mathfrak{so}}), \mathrm{id})} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8) \end{array} .$$

**Proposition 7.1.155.** *The gauge equivalence classes of* $\mathbf{CField}(X)_{P_{\mathrm{Spin}}}$ *naturally surjects onto the differential integral Wu structures on* $X$*, relative to* $\frac{1}{2}p_1(P_{\mathrm{Spin}}) \bmod 2$*, (example 7.1.140):*

$$\pi_0 \mathbf{CField}(X)_{P_{\mathrm{Spin}}} \twoheadrightarrow \hat{H}^{n+1}_{\frac{1}{2}p_1(P_{\mathrm{Spin}})}(X) \; .$$

*The gauge-of-gauge equivalence classes of the auto-gauge transformation of the trivial C-field configuration naturally surject onto* $H^2(X, U(1))$*:*

$$\pi_1 \mathbf{CField}(X)_{P_{\mathrm{Spin}}} \twoheadrightarrow H^2(X, U(1)) \; .$$

Proof. By def. 7.1.148 and the pasting law, prop. 5.1.2, we have a pasting diagram of homotopy pullbacks of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathbf{CField}(X)_{P_{\mathrm{Spin}}} & \twoheadrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1(P_{\mathrm{Spin}})}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_4}_{\mathrm{conn}}) & \longrightarrow & & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_4}_{\mathrm{conn}}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}E_8) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{a})} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)) & \xrightarrow{(\nabla_{\mathfrak{so}}, \mathrm{id})} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)) & \xrightarrow{(u, \mathrm{id})} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}^{\nu_4} \times \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)) \end{array} ,$$

where in the middle of the top row we identified, by def. 7.1.144, the $n$-groupoid of smooth differential Wu structures lifting the smooth Wu structure $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1(P_{\mathrm{Spin}})$.

Due to prop. 7.1.145 we are therefore reduced to showing that the top left morphism is surjective on $\pi_0$.

But the bottom left morphism is surjective on $\pi_0$, by prop. 7.1.147. Now, the morphisms surjective on $\pi_0$ are precisely the *effective epimorphisms* in $\infty$Grpd, and these are stable under pullback. Hence the first claim follows.

For the second, we use that

$$\pi_1 \mathbf{CField}(X)_{P_{\mathrm{Spin}}} \simeq \pi_0 \Omega \mathbf{CField}(X)_{P_{\mathrm{Spin}}}$$

and that forming loop space objects (being itself a homotopy pullback) commutes with homotopy pullbacks and with taking cocycles with coefficients in higher stacks, $\mathbf{H}(X, -)$.

Therefore the image of the left square in the above under $\Omega$ is the homotopy pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega \mathbf{CField}(X)_{P_{\mathrm{Spin}}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}_{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1(P_{\mathrm{Spin}})}(X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)^{\nu_4}_{\mathrm{conn}}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ C^\infty(X, E_8) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(X, \Omega \mathbf{a})} & \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^2 U()1) \end{array},$$

where in the bottom left corner we used

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}E_8) &\simeq \mathbf{H}(X, \Omega \mathbf{B}E_8) \\ &\simeq \mathbf{H}(X, E_8) \\ &\simeq C^\infty(X, E_8) \end{aligned},$$

and similarly for the bottom right corner. This identifies the bottom morphism on connected components as the morphism that sends a smooth function $X \to E_8$ to its homotopy class under the homotopy equivalence $E_8 \simeq_{15} B^2U(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z}, 3)$, which holds over the 11-dimensional $X$.

Therefore the bottom morphism is again surjective on $\pi_0$, and so is the top morphism. The claim then follows with prop. 7.1.141. □

**7.1.8.6 Boundary moduli of the C-field** We consider now $\partial X$ (a neighbourhood of) the boundary of spacetime $X$, and discuss a variant of the moduli stack $C$Field that encodes the boundary configurations of the supergravity $C$ field.

Two different kinds of boundary conditions for the $C$-field appear in the literature.

- On an M5-brane boundary, the integral class underlying the $C$-field vanishes. (For instance page 24 of [Wi96]).
- On the fixed points of a 3-bundle-*orientifold*, def. 7.1.4, for the case that $X$ has an $S^1//\mathbb{Z}_2$-orbifold factor, the $C$-field vanishes entirely. (This is considered in [HoWi95, HoWi96]. See section 3.1 of [Fal] for details.)

We construct higher moduli stacks for both of these conditions in the following. In addition to being restricted, the supergravity fields on a boundary also pick up additional degrees of freedom

- The $E_8$-principal bundle over the boundary is equipped with a connection.

We present now a sequence of natural morphisms of 3-stacks

$$C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}'} \longrightarrow C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}} \xrightarrow{\iota} C\mathrm{Field}, \qquad \iota' : C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}'} \to C\mathrm{Field}$$

into the moduli stack of bulk $C$-fields, such that $C$-field configurations on $X$ with the above behaviour over $\partial X$ correspond to the *relative cohomology*, def. 5.1.343, with coefficients in $\iota$ or $\iota'$,respectively, hence to commuting diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial X & \xrightarrow{\phi_{\mathrm{bdr}}} & C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \iota \\ X & \xrightarrow{\phi} & C\mathrm{Field} \end{array},$$

and analogously for the primed case. (This is directly analogous to the characterization of type II supergravity field configurations in the presence of $D$-branes as discussed in 7.1.6.2.)

To this end, recall the general diagram of moduli stacks from def. 5.2.113 that relates the characteristic map $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a}$ with its differential refinement $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 + 2\hat{\mathbf{a}}$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{B}(\mathrm{Spin} \times E_8) & \xrightarrow{\flat \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\flat\mathbf{a}} & \flat\mathbf{B}^3 U(1) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}(\mathrm{Spin} \times E_8)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 + 2\hat{\mathbf{a}}} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}(\mathrm{Spin} \times E_8) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a}} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)
\end{array} .$$

The defining $\infty$-pullback diagram for $C$Field factors the lower square of this diagram as follows

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathbf{B}(\mathrm{Spin} \times E_8)_{\mathrm{conn}} & & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 + 2\hat{\mathbf{a}}} & & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
& \searrow\ (\text{dashed}) & & & \\
& & C\mathrm{Field} \xrightarrow{\hat{G}_4} & & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
& & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
& & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} \times \mathbf{B}E_8 & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a}} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)
\end{array} .$$

Here the dashed morphism is the universal morphism induced from the commutativity of the previous diagram together with the pullback property of the 3-stack $C$Field. This morphism is the natural map of moduli which induces the relative cohomology that makes the $E_8$-bundle pick up a connection on the boundary.

It therefore remains to model the condition that $G_4$ or even $\hat{G}_4$ vanishes on the boundary. This condition is realized by further pulling back along the sequence

$$* \xrightarrow{0} \Omega^3(-) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

**Definition 7.1.156.** Write $C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}}$ and $C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}'}$, respectively, for the moduli 3-stacks which arise as homotopy pullbacks in the top rectangles of

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}'} & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow^{0} \\
C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}} & \longrightarrow & \Omega^3(-) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbf{B}(\mathrm{Spin} \times E_8)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 + 2\hat{\mathbf{a}}} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\downarrow & & \| \\
C\mathrm{Field} & \xrightarrow{\hat{G}_4} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}
\end{array} .$$

For $X$ a smooth manifold with boundary, we say that the 3-groupoid of *$C$-field configurations with boundary data* on $X$ is the hom $\infty$-groupoid

$$\mathbf{H}^I(\partial X \to X\ ,\ C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}} \xrightarrow{\iota} C\mathrm{Field}) ,$$

in the arrow category of the ambient ∞-topos $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grp}$, where on the right we have the composite morphism indicated by the curved arrow above, and analogously for the primed case.

**Observation 7.1.157.** The moduli 3-stack $C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{brd}}$ is equivalent to is the moduli 3-stack of twisted $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}$-2-connections whose underlying twist has trivial class. The moduli 3-stack $C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}'}$ is equivalent to the moduli 3-stack of untwisted $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}$-2-connections

$$C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}'} \simeq \mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

This is presented via Lie integration of $L_\infty$-algebras as

$$C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}'} \simeq \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp((\mathfrak{so} \oplus \mathfrak{e}_8)_{\mu_3^{\mathfrak{so}} + \mu_3^{\mathfrak{e}_8}})_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

The presentation of $C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}}$ by Lie integration is locally given by

$$\left( \begin{array}{ll} F_A = & dA + \frac{1}{2}[A \wedge A] \\ H_3 = & \nabla B := dB + \mathrm{CS}(A) - C_3 \\ \mathcal{G}_4 = & dC_3 \\ dF_A = & -[A \wedge F_A] \\ dH_3 = & \langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle - \mathcal{G}_4 \\ d\mathcal{G}_4 = & 0 \end{array} \right)_i \xleftarrow{\begin{array}{ll} t^a & \mapsto A^a \\ r^a & \mapsto F_A^a \\ b & \mapsto B \\ c & \mapsto C_3 \\ h & \mapsto H_3 \\ g & \mapsto \mathcal{G}_4 \end{array}} \left( \begin{array}{ll} r^a = & dt^a + \frac{1}{2} C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge t^c + \\ h = & db + cs - c \\ g = & dc \\ dr^a = & -C^a{}_{bc} t^b \wedge r^a \\ dh = & \langle -, - \rangle - g \\ dg = & 0 \end{array} \right),$$

where

$$\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{so} \oplus \mathfrak{e}_8$$

and hence

$$A = \omega + A_{\mathfrak{e}_8} .$$

Proof. By definition 5.2.119 and prop. 7.1.46. □

**Remark 7.1.158.** Notice that with respect to String-connections, there are two levels of twists here:

1. The $C$-field 3-form twists the $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}$-2-connections.
2. For vanishing $C$-field 3-form, a $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}$-2-connection is still a twisted String-2-connection, where the twist is now by the Chern-Simons 3-bundle with connection of the underlying $E_8$-bundle with connection.

**7.1.8.7 Hořava-Witten boundaries are membrane orientifolds** We now discuss a natural formulation of the origin of the Hořava-Witten boundary conditions [HoWi95, HoWi96] in terms of higher stacks and nonabelian differential cohomology, specifically, in terms of what we call *membrane orientifolds*. From this we obtain a corresponding refinement of the moduli 3-stack of C-field configurations which now explicitly contains the twisted $\mathbb{Z}_2$-equivariance of the Hořava-Witten background.

Recall the notion of higher orientifolds and their identification with twisted differential $\mathbf{J}_n$-structures from 7.1.4.

**Observation 7.1.159.** Let $U//\mathbb{Z}_2 \hookrightarrow Y//\mathbb{Z}_2$ be a patch on which a given $\hat{\mathbf{J}}_n$-structure has a trivial underlying integral class, such that it is equivalent to a globally defined $(n+1)$-form $C_U$ on $U$. Then the components of this this 3-form orthogonal to the $\mathbb{Z}_2$-action are *odd* under the action. In particular, if $U \hookrightarrow Y$ sits in the fixed point set of the action, then these components vanish. This is the Hořava-Witten boundary condition on the $C$-field on an 11-dimensional spacetime $Y = X \times S^1$ equipped with $\mathbb{Z}_2$-action on the circle. See for instance section 3 of [Fal] for an explicit discussion of the $\mathbb{Z}_2$ action on the C-field in this context.

We therefore have a natural construction of the moduli 3-stack of Hořava-Witten C-field configurations as follows

**Definition 7.1.160.** Let $\mathbf{CField}_J(Y)$ be the homotopy pullback in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{CField}_J(Y) & \longrightarrow & \hat{\mathbf{J}}\mathrm{Struc}_\rho(Y//\mathbb{Z}_2) \\ & & \downarrow \\ \downarrow & & \mathbf{H}(Y, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \\ & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(Y, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(Y, \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a})} & \mathbf{H}(Y, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)) \end{array} ,$$

where the top right morphism is the map $\hat{G}_\rho \mapsto \hat{G}$ from remark 7.1.72.

The objects of $\mathbf{CField}_J(Y)$ are C-field configurations on $Y$ that not only satisfy the flux quantization condition, but also the Hořava-Witten twisted equivariance condition (in fact the proper globalization of that condition from 3-forms to full differential cocycles). This is formalized by the following.

**Observation 7.1.161.** There is a canonical morphism $\mathbf{CField}_J(Y) \to \mathbf{CField}(Y)$, being the dashed morphism in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{CField}_J(Y) & \longrightarrow & \hat{\mathbf{J}}\mathrm{Struc}_\rho(Y//\mathbb{Z}_2) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{CField}(Y) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{H}(Y, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{H}(Y, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}E_8) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}(Y, \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 + 2\mathbf{a})} & \mathbf{H}(Y, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)) \end{array} ,$$

which is given by the universal property of the defining homotopy pullback of **CField**, remark 7.1.149.

A supergravity field configuration presented by a morphism $Y \to \mathbf{CField}$ into the moduli 3-stack of configurations that satisfy the flux quantization condition in addition satisfies the Hořava-Witten boundary condition if, as an element of $\mathbf{CField}(Y) := \mathbf{H}(Y, \mathbf{CField})$ it is in the image of $\mathbf{CField}_J(Y) \to \mathbf{CField}(Y)$. In fact, there may be several such pre-images. A choice of one is a choice of membrane orientifold structure.

## 7.2 Prequantum Chern-Simons field theory

We consider the realization of the general abstract $\infty$-*Chern-Simons functionals* from 5.2.14 in the context of smooth, synthetic-differential and super-cohesion. We discuss general aspects of the class of quantum field theories defined this way and then identify a list of special cases of interest. This section builds on [FRS13a] and [FS].

- 7.2.1 – Higher extended $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory
  - 7.2.1.1 – Fiber integration and extended Chern-Simons functionals
  - 7.2.1.3 – Construction from $L_\infty$-cocycles
- 7.2.2 – Higher cup-product Chern-Simons theories
- Examples
  - 7.2.3 – Volume holonomy
  - 7.2.4 – 1d Chern-Simons functionals
  - 7.2.5 – 3d Chern-Simons functionals
    - 7.2.5.1 – Ordinary Chern-Simons theory
    - 7.2.5.3 – Ordinary Dijkgraaf-Witten theory
  - 7.2.6 – 4d Chern-Simons functionals
    - 7.2.6.1 – 4d BF theory and topological Yang-Mills theory
    - 7.2.6.2 – 4d Yetter model
  - 7.2.7 – Abelian gauge coupling of branes
  - 7.2.8 – Higher abelian Chern-Simons functionals
    - 7.2.8.1 – $(4k + 3)$d $U(1)$-Chern-Simons functionals;
    - 7.2.8.2 – Higher electric coupling and higher gauge anomalies.
  - 7.2.9 – 7d Chern-Simons functionals
    - 7.2.9.1 – The cup product of a 3d CS theory with itself;
    - 7.2.9.2 – 7d CS theory on string 2-connection fields;
    - 7.2.9.3 – 7d CS theory in 11d supergravity on $\mathrm{AdS}_7$.
  - 7.2.8.2 – Higher electric coupling and higher gauge anomalies
  - 7.2.10 – Action of closed string field theory type
  - 7.2.11 – AKSZ $\sigma$-models
    - 7.2.11.4 – Ordinary Chern-Simons as AKSZ theory
    - 7.2.11.5 – Poisson $\sigma$-model
    - 7.2.11.6 – Courant $\sigma$-model
    - 7.2.11.7 – Higher abelian Chern-Simons theory in dimension $4k + 3$

### 7.2.1 $\infty$-Chern-Simons field theory

By prop. 7.1.9 the action functional of ordinary Chern-Simons theory [Fr95] for a simple Lie group $G$ may be understood as being the volume holonomy, 6.4.19, of the Chern-Simons circle 3-bundle with connection that the refined Chern-Weil homomorphism assigns to any connection on a $G$-principal bundle.

We may observe that all the ingredients of this statement have their general abstract analogs in any cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$: for any cohesive $\infty$-group $G$ and any representatative $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n A$ of a characteristic class for $G$ there is canonically the induced $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism, 5.2.14

$$L_{\mathbf{c}} : \mathbf{H}_{\mathrm{conn}}(-, \mathbf{B}G) \to \mathbf{H}^n_{\mathrm{diff}}(-)$$

that sends intrinsic $G$-connections to cocycles in intrinsic differential cohomology with coefficients in $A$. This may be thought of as the *Lagrangian* of the $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory induced by $\mathbf{c}$.

In the cohesive $\infty$-topos Smooth$\infty$Grpd of smooth $\infty$-groupoids, 6.4, we deduced in 6.4.19 a natural general abstract procedure for integration of $L_{\mathbf{c}}$ over an $n$-dimensional parameter space $\Sigma \in \mathbf{H}$ by a realization of the general abstract construction described in 5.2.14. The resulting smooth function

$$\exp(S_{\mathbf{c}}) : [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to U(1)$$

is the exponentiated action functional of $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory on the smooth $\infty$-groupoid of field configurations. It may be regarded itself as a degree-0 characteristic class on the space of field configurations. As such, its differential refinement $d\exp(S_{\mathbf{c}}) : [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}}\mathbf{B}U(1)$ is the Euler-Lagrange equation of the theory.

We show that this construction subsumes the action functional of ordinary Chern-Simons theory, of Dijkgraaf-Witten theory, of BF-theory coupled to topological Yang-Mills theory, of all versions of AKSZ theory including the Poisson sigma-model and the Courant sigma model in lowest degree, as well as of higher Chern-Simons supergravity.

**7.2.1.1 Fiber integration and extended Chern-Simons functionals** We discuss fiber integration in ordinary differential cohomology refined to smooth higher stacks and how this turns every differential characteristic maps into a tower of extended higher Chern-Simons action functionals in all codimensions.

This section draws from [FSS12c].

One of the basic properties of $\infty$-toposes is that they are *cartesian closed*. This means that:

**Fact 7.2.1.** *For every two objects $X, A \in \mathbf{H}$ – hence for every two smooth higher stacks – there is another object denoted $[X, A] \in \mathbf{H}$ that behaves like the "space of smooth maps from $X$ to $A$." in that for every further $Y \in \mathbf{H}$ there is a natural equivalence of cocycle $\infty$-groupoids of the form*

$$\mathbf{H}(X \times Y, A) \simeq \mathbf{H}(Y, [X, A])\,,$$

*saying that cocycles with coefficients in $[X, A]$ on $Y$ are naturally equivalent to $A$-cocycles on the product $X \times Y$.*

**Remark 7.2.2.** The object $[X, A]$ is in category theory known as the *internal hom* object, but in applications to physics and stacks it is often better known as the "families version" of $A$-cocycles on $Y$, in that for each smooth parameter space $U \in$ SmoothMfd, the elements of $[X, A](U)$ are "$U$-parameterized families of $A$-cocycles on $X$", namely $A$-cocycles on $X \times U$. This follows from the above characterizing formula and the Yoneda lemma:

$$[X, A](U) \xrightarrow[\text{Yoneda}]{\simeq} \mathbf{H}(U, [X, A]) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbf{H}(X \times U, A)\,.$$

Notably for $G$ a smooth $\infty$-group and $A = \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ a moduli $\infty$-stack of smooth $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles with connection the object

$$[\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \in \mathbf{H}$$

is the smooth higher moduli stack of $G$-connection *on* $\Sigma_k$. It assigns to a test manifold $U$ the $\infty$-groupoid of $U$-parameterized families of $G$-$\infty$-connections, namely of $G$-$\infty$-connections on $X \times U$. This is the smooth higher stack incarnation of the configuration space of higher $G$-gauge theory on $\Sigma_k$.

**Example 7.2.3.** In the discussion of anomaly polynomials in heterotic string theory over a 10-dimensional spacetime $X$ one encounters degree-12 differential forms $I_4 \wedge I_8$, where $I_i$ is a degree $i$ polynomial in characteristic forms. Clearly these cannot live on $X$, as every 12-form on $X$, given by an element in the hom-∞-groupoid

$$\mathbf{H}(X, \Omega^{12}(-)) \xrightarrow[\text{Yoneda}]{\simeq} \Omega^{12}(X)$$

is trivial. Instead, these differential forms are elements in the internal hom $[X, \Omega^{12}(-)]$, which means that for every choice of smooth parameter space $U$ there is a smooth 12-form on $X \times U$, such that this system of forms transforms naturally in $U$.

Below we discuss how such anomaly forms appear from morphisms of higher moduli stacks

$$\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^{11}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

for $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ the higher moduli stack of supergravity field configurations by sending the families of moduli of field configurations on spacetime $X$ to their anomaly form:

$$[X, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[X, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]} [X, \mathbf{B}^{11}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[X, \mathrm{curv}]} [X, \Omega^{12}(-)] \; .$$

We now discuss how such families of $n$-cocycles on some $X$ can be integrated over $X$ to yield $(n - \dim(X))$-cocycles. Recall from 6.4.18:

**Proposition 7.2.4.** *Let $\Sigma_k$ be a closed (= compact and without boundary) oriented smooth manifold of dimension $k$. Then for every $n \geq k$ there is a natural morphism of smooth higher stacks*

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k} (-)) : [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

*from the moduli $n$-stack of circle $n$-bundles with connection on $\Sigma_k$ to the moduli $(n-k)$-stack of smooth circle $(n-k)$-bundles with connection such that*

1. *for $k = n$ this yields a $U(1)$-valued gauge invariant smooth function*

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k} (-)) : [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to U(1) \; ,$$

*which is the* $n$-volume holonomy *of a circle $n$-connection over the "$n$-dimensional Wilson volume" $\Sigma_n$;*

2. *for $k_1, k_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ with $k_1 + k_2 \leq n$ we have*

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_{k_1}} (-)) \circ \exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_{k_2}} (-)) \simeq \exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_{k_1} \times \Sigma_{k_2}} (-)) \, .$$

Proof. Since $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is fibrant in the projective local model structure $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$ (since every circle $n$-bundle with connection on a Cartesian space is trivializable) the mapping stack $[\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ is presented for any choice of good open cover $\{U_i \to \Sigma_k\}$ by the simplicial presheaf

$$U \mapsto [\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}](\check{C}(\mathcal{U}) \times U, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \, ,$$

where $\check{C}(\mathcal{U})$ is the Čech nerve of the open cover $\{U_i \to \Sigma_k\}$. Therefore a morphism as claimed is given by natural fiber integration of Deligne hypercohomology along product bundles $\Sigma_k \times U \to U$ for closed $\Sigma_k$. This has been constructed for instance in [GoTe00]. □

**Definition 7.2.5.** Let $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ be a differential characteristic map. Then for $\Sigma_k$ a closed smooth manifold of dimension $k \leq n$, we call

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k} [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]) : \; [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_k, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]} [\Sigma_k, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_k}(-))} \mathbf{B}^{n-k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

the *off-shell prequantum $(n-k)$-bundle of extended* $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}$*-$\infty$-Chern-Simons theory.* For $n = k$ we have a *circle 0-bundle*

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_n} [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]) : \; [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_n, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]} [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_n}(-))} U(1) \;\; ,$$

which we call the *action functional* of the theory.

This construction subsumes several fundamental aspects of Chern-Simons theory:

1. gauge invariance and smoothness of the (extended) action functionals, remark 7.2.6;
2. inclusion of instanton sectors (nontrivial gauge $\infty$-bundles), remark 7.2.7;
3. level quantization, remark 7.2.8;
4. definition on non-bounding manifolds and relation to (higher) topological Yang-Mills on bounding manifolds, remark 7.2.9.

We discuss these in more detail in the following remarks, as indicated.

**Remark 7.2.6** (Gauge invariance and smoothness)**.** Since $U(1) \in \mathbf{H}$ is an ordinary manifold (after forgetting the group structure), a 0-stack with no non-trivial morphisms (no gauge transformation), the action functional $\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_n} [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}])$ takes every morphism in the moduli stack of field configurations to the identity. But these morphisms are the *gauge transformations*, and so this says that $\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_n} [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}])$ is *gauge invariant*, as befits a gauge theory action functional. To make this more explicit, notice that

$$\mathbf{H}(\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \simeq [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}](*)$$

is the evaluation of the moduli stack on the point, hence the $\infty$-groupoid of smooth families of field configurations which are trivially parameterized. Moreover

$$H^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma_n, G) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}})$$

is the set of gauge equivalent such field configurations. Then the statement that the action functional is both gauge invariant and smooth is the statement that it can be extended from $H^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma_n, G)$ (supposing that it were given there as a function $\exp(iS(-))$ by other means) via $\mathbf{H}(\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}})$ to $[\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma_n, G) & \xrightarrow{\exp(iS(-))} & U(1) \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_n}[\Sigma_n, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}])} & \\ \mathbf{H}(\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) & & \text{gauge invariance} \\ \downarrow & & \\ [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] & & \text{smoothness .} \end{array}$$

**Remark 7.2.7** (Definition on instanton sectors)**.** Ordinary 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory is often discussed for the special case only when the gauge group $G$ is connected and simply connected. This yields a drastic simplification compared to the general case; since for every Lie group the second homotopy group $\pi_2(G)$ is trivial, and since the homotopy groups of the classifying space $BG$ are those of $G$ shifted up in degree by one, this implies that $BG$ is 3-connected and hence that every continuous map $\Sigma_3 \to BG$ out of a 3-manifold is homotopic to the trivial map. This implies that every $G$-principal bundle over $\Sigma_3$ is trivializable. As a result, the moduli stack of $G$-gauge fields on $\Sigma_3$, which a priori is $[\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$, becomes in this case equivalent to just the moduli stack of trivial $G$-bundles with (non-trivial) connection on $\Sigma_3$, which is identified with the groupoid of just $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-forms on $\Sigma_3$, and gauge transformations between these, which is indeed the familiar configurations space for 3-dimensional $G$-Chern-Simons theory.

One should compare this to the case of 4-dimensional $G$-gauge theory on a 4-dimensional manifold $\Sigma_4$, such as $G$-Yang-Mills theory. By the same argument as before, in this case G-principal bundles may be nontrivial, but are classified enirely by the second Chern class (or first Pontrjagin class) $[c_2] \in H^4(\Sigma_4, \pi(G))$. In Yang-Mills theory with $G = SU(n)$, this class is known as the *instanton number* of the gauge field.

The simplest case where non-trivial classes occur already in dimension 3 is the non-simply connected gauge group $G = U(1)$, discussed in section 7.2.5.2 below. Here the moduli stack of fields $[\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ contains configurations which are not given by globally defined 1-forms, but by connections on non-trivial circle bundles. By analogy with the case of $SU(n)$-Yang-Mills theory, we will loosely refer to such field configurations as instanton field congurations, too. In this case it is the first Chern class $[c_1] \in H^2(X, \mathbb{Z})$ that measures the non-triviality of the bundle. If the first Chern-class of a $U(1)$-gauge field configurations happens to vanish, then the gauge field is again given by just a 1-form $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma_3)$, the familiar gauge potential of electromagnetism. The value of the 3d Chern-Simons action functional on such a non-instanton configuration is simply the familiar expression

$$\exp(iS(A)) = \exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_3} A \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} A)\,,$$

where on the right we have the ordinary integration of the 3-form $A \wedge dA$ over $\Sigma_3$.

In the general case, however, when the configuration in $[\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ has non-trivial first Chern class, the expression for the value of the action functional on this configuration is more complicated. If we pick a good open cover $\{U_i \to \Sigma_3\}$, then we can arrange that locally on each patch $U_i$ the gauge field is given by a 1-form $A_i$ and the contribution of the action functional over $U_i$ by $\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_3} A_i \wedge dA_i)$ as above. But in such a decomposition there are further terms to be included to get the correct action functional. This is what the construction in Prop. 7.2.5 achieves.

**Remark 7.2.8** (Level quantization)**.** Traditionally, Chern-Simons theory in 3-dimensions with gauge group a connected and simply connected group $G$ comes in a family parameterized by a *level* $k \in \mathbb{Z}$. This level is secretly the cohomology class of the differential characteristic map

$$\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

(constructed in [FSS10]) in

$$H^3_{\mathrm{smooth}}(BG, U(1)) \simeq H^4(BG, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}\,.$$

So the traditional level is a cohomological shadow of the differential characteristic map that we interpret as the off-shell prequantum $n$-bundle in full codimension $n$ (down on the point). Notice that for a general smooth $\infty$-group $G$ the cohomology group $H^{n+1}(BG, \mathbb{Z})$ need not be equivalent to $\mathbb{Z}$ and so in general the level need not be an integer. For for every smooth $\infty$-group $G$, and given a morphism of moduli stacks $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, also every integral multiple $k\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ gives an $n$-dimensional Chern-Simons theory, "at $k$-fold level". The converse is in general hard to establish: whether a given $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ can be divided by an integer. For instance for 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory division by 2 may be possible for Spin-structure. For 7-dimensional Chern-Simons theory division by 6 may be possible in the presence of String-structure [FSS12b].

**Remark 7.2.9.** Ordinary 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory is often defined on bounding 3-manifolds $\Sigma_3$ by

$$\exp(iS(\nabla)) = \exp(2\pi i k \int_{\Sigma_4} \langle F_{\widehat{\nabla}} \wedge F_{\widehat{\nabla}} \rangle) \,,$$

where $\Sigma_4$ is any 4-manifold with $\Sigma_3 = \partial \Sigma_4$ and where $\widehat{\nabla}$ is any extension of the gauge field configuration from $\Sigma_3$ to $\Sigma_4$. Similar expressions exist for higher dimensional Chern-Simons theories. If one takes these expressions to be the actual definition of Chern-Simons action functional, then one needs extra discussion for which manifolds (with desired structure) are bounding, hence which vanish in the respective cobordism ring, and, more seriously, one needs to include those which are not bounding from the discussion. For example, in type IIB string theory one encounters the cobordism group $\Omega_{11}^{\mathrm{Spin}}(K(\mathbb{Z},6))$ [Wi96], which is proven to vanish in [KS05], meaning that all the desired manifolds happen to be bounding.

We emphasize that our formula in Prop. 7.2.5 applies generally, whether or not a manifold is bounding. Moreover, it is guaranteed that *if* $\Sigma_n$ happens to be bounding after all, then the action functional is equivalently given by integrating a higher curvature invariant over a bounding $(n+1)$-dimensional manifold. At the level of differential cohomology classes $H^n_{\mathrm{conn}}(-, U(1))$ this is the well-known property (a review and further pointers are given in [HoSi05]) which is an explicit axiom in the equivalent formulation by Cheeger-Simons differential characters: a Cheeger-Simons differential character of degree $(n+1)$ is by definition a group homomorphism from closed $n$-manifolds to $U(1)$ such that whenever the $n$-manifold happens to be bounding, the value in $U(1)$ is given by the exponentiated integral of a smooth $(n+1)$-form over any bounding manifold.

With reference to such differential characters Chern-Simons action functions have been formulated for instance in [Wi96, Wi98c]. The sheaf hypercohomology classes of the Deligne complex that we are concerned with here are well known to be equivalent to these differential characters, and Čech-Deligne cohoomology has the advantage that with results such as [GoTe00] invoked in Prop. 7.2.4 above, it yields explicit formulas for the action functional on non-bounding manifolds in terms of local differential form data.

**7.2.1.2 Anomaly cancellation at the integral level** We consider here "levels" for higher Chern-Simons local prequantum field theory, hence local prequantum field theory, in the sense of 5.2.18, of dimension $n$ with $\mathbf{Phases} = B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$. We determine the necessary structure for passing the local prequantum field theory from framed cobordisms to unframed cobordisms, hence the anomaly cancellation conditions.

To that end, according to the discussion in 5.2.18.5, we are to determine the canonical $\Pi(O(n))$-$\infty$-action on $B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$ according to theorem 5.2.163.

**Proposition 7.2.10.** *For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the canonical $O$-$\infty$-action on $\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$, theorem 5.2.163, factors through $O \to \pi_0(O) = \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ and as such is given by inversion.*

Proof. By example 2.4.15 in [L-TFT] the $O(n)$-action on a connective spectrum $\Omega^\infty X$ induced via the proof of the cobordism hypothsis by regarding it as an $(\infty, n)$-category with duals is induced via the action of $O(n)$ on $n$-disks and thus on $n$-spheres by regarding $X$ as an $n$-fold loop space.

From this it is clear that $\pi_0(O) = \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ acts by inversion, hence it remains to see that that the canonical $SO$-$\infty$-action on $\mathbf{B}^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$ is trivial.

To that end notice that the canonical $SO$-action on a connective spectrum $\Omega^\infty X$ factors through the J-homomorphism, followed by precomposition (see e.g. section 5 of [1]):

$$SO \times \Omega^\infty X \xrightarrow{(J,\mathrm{id})} \Omega^\infty S^\infty \times \Omega^\infty X \xrightarrow{\text{precomp.}} \Omega^\infty X \ .$$

But by classical results, the image of the J-homomorphism in the stable homotopy groups of spheres $\pi_\bullet(\Omega^\infty S^\infty)$ is pure torsion. This means that the action map

$$\rho : \ SO \times B^{n+1} X \xrightarrow{(J,\mathrm{id})} \Omega^\infty S^\infty \times B^{n+1} X \xrightarrow{\text{precomp.}} B^{n+1} X \ .$$

factors on $\pi_{n+1}$ through a linear action map of abelian groups

$$\pi_{n+1}(\rho) : \mathrm{im}(J)_{n+1} \oplus \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}\,,$$

where $\mathrm{im}(J)_{n+1}$ is a pure torsion group. As such it must be in the kernel of this linear map to the free group $\mathbb{Z}$, and hence $\pi_{n+1}(\rho)$ is just projection onto the second summand.

We need to see that this implies that the action $\rho : SO \times B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \to B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$ itself is equivalently projection onto the second factor. To that end, first consider the homotopy fiber $F$ of $\rho$ sitting in the homotopy fiber sequence

$$F \longrightarrow SO \times B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{\rho} B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$$

and consider the corresponding long exact sequence of homotopy groups. In degree $(n+1)$ we have

$$0 \to \pi_{n+1}(F) \to \pi_{n+1}(SO) \oplus \mathbb{Z} \stackrel{(0,\mathrm{id})}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z}$$

and hence $\pi_{n+1}(F) \simeq \pi_{n+1}(SO)$. In degree $(n+2)$ we have

$$\pi_{n+1}(SO) \oplus \mathbb{Z} \stackrel{(0,\mathrm{id})}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z} \to \pi_{n+2}(F) \to \pi_{n+2}(SO) \to 0$$

and hence $\pi_{n+2}(F) \simeq \pi_{n+2}(SO)$. Finally in all other degrees $k \neq n+1$ and $k \neq n+2$ we have

$$0 \to \pi_k(F) \to \pi_k(SO) \to 0$$

and hence $\pi_k(F) \simeq \pi_k(SO)$. In conclusion, the fiber inclusion $F \to SO \times B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$ is a homotopy equivalence onto the first factor in the product. Hence we have a diagram of $\infty$-groupoids of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \Omega^\infty S^\infty & \longrightarrow & SO \times B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{\rho} & B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow{=} & & \downarrow{(\mathrm{id},\rho)} & & \downarrow{=} \\ \Omega^\infty S^\infty & \longrightarrow & SO \times B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} & \xrightarrow{p_2} & B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} \end{array}$$

where the two horizonal rows are homotopy fiber sequences. By the fiberwise characterization of homotopy pullbacks of bare $\infty$-groupoids, this implies that the square on the right is homotopy Cartesian. This in turn implies that $\rho \simeq p_2$, which means that $\rho$ is the trivial action. □

**Corollary 7.2.11.** *Homotopy fixed point structures of the canonical $O$-action on $B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$ are equivalent to degree-$(n+1)$-cocycles of the classifying space $BO$ with local $\mathbb{Z}$-coefficients twisted by the universal first Stifel-Whitney-class (1.2.145). Similarly, homotopy fixed point structures of the canonical $SO$-action on $B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$ are equivalent to ordinary integral cocycles of degree $(n+1)$ on $BSO$.*

Proof. This follows via the discussion in 5.1.14. First of all the $O$-$\infty$-action on $B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}$ of prop. 7.2.10 is equivalently encoded in a homotopy fiber sequence of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & (B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z})//O \\ & & \downarrow \;\; \nwarrow \alpha \\ & & BO \end{array}$$

and a homotopy fixed point is a section $\alpha$ as indicated. In terms of these quotient diagrams, the fact (prop. 7.2.10) that the $O$ action is induced by a $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$-action via the map projection map $O \to \pi_0(O)$ means equivalently that there is a homotopy pullback square as shown on the right here:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & (B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z})//O & \longrightarrow & (B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z})//(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}) \\ & & \downarrow \;\; \nwarrow \alpha & & \downarrow \\ & & BO & \xrightarrow{w_1} & B(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}) \end{array} \quad ,$$

where $w_1$ is the universal first Stiefel-Whitney class (1.2.145). By the universal property of the homotopy pullback, this means that a homotopy fixed point is equivalently a dashed morphism in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} BO & \overset{\alpha}{\dashrightarrow} & (B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z})//(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}) \\ & {}_{w_1}\searrow \;\Swarrow\; \swarrow & \\ & \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}) & \end{array}$$

But this are equivalently cocycles in the degree-$(n+1)$ cohomology of $BO$ with non-trivially twisted local $\mathbb{Z}$-coefficients

$$\alpha \in H^{n+1}(BO, \mathbb{Z}^t)$$

(the superscript $\mathbb{Z}^t$ denotes the essentially unique non-trivially twisted local system of $\mathbb{Z}$-coefficients). □

**Remark 7.2.12.** In [Ca99] the generators of this cohomology group under cup product are given. They are given by the Pontryagin classes and the integral Stieffel-Whitney classes (induced via the untwisted and via the twisted Bockstein from the $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$-SW classes) under cup product.

In conclusion we find the following charactrization of (un-)oriented-topological local prequantum field theories with integral phases:

**Proposition 7.2.13.** *Unoriented local prequantum field theories with integral phases*

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}//O(n)}) : \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$$

*are equivalent to diagrams in* $\mathbf{H}$ *of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(O(n)) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}//O(n)} & (B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}//(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z})) \times BSO(n) \\ & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & BO(n) & \end{array}$$

*Accordingly, oriented such field theories*

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{L}//SO(n)}) : (\mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{or}})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}$$

*are equivalent to choices of* $\mathbf{Fields} \in \mathbf{H}$ *equipped with* $SO(n)$*-*$\infty$*-action and a choice of equivariant local Lagrangian, being a map*

$$L//SO(n) : \mathbf{Fields}//SO(n) \longrightarrow B^{n+1}\mathbb{Z}\,.$$

Proof. This is a special case of 5.2.205 further simplified in view of prop. 7.2.10. □

**Example 7.2.14.** Specialization of this to the case of ordinary 3d Chern-Simons theory is discussed in 7.2.5.1.3.

#### 7.2.1.3 Construction from $L_\infty$-cocycles

We discuss the construction of $\infty$-Chern-Simons functionals from differential refinements of $L_\infty$-algebra cocycles.

This section draws from [FiSaScI].

Recall for the following the construction of the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism by Lie integration of Chern-Simons elements, 6.4.17, for $L_\infty$-algebroids, 6.5.2.

A Chern-Simons element cs witnessing the transgression from an invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle$ to a cocycle $\mu$ is equivalently a commuting diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) & \stackrel{\mu}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R}) & & \text{cocycle} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\ \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) & \stackrel{cs}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{W}(b^n\mathbb{R}) & & \text{Chern-Simons element} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\ \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{a}) & \stackrel{\langle - \rangle}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{inv}(b^n\mathbb{R}) & & \text{invariant polynomial} \end{array}$$

in $\mathrm{dgAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}$. On the other hand, an $n$-connection with values in a Lie $n$-algebroid $\mathfrak{a}$ is a span of simplicial presheaves

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{\Sigma} & \stackrel{\nabla}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{cosk}\exp(\mathfrak{a})_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ \Sigma & & \end{array}$$

with coefficients in the simplicial presheaf $\mathbf{cosk}_{n+1}\exp(\mathfrak{a})_{conn}$, def. 6.4.154, that sends $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ to the $(n+1)$-coskeleton, def. 5.1.53, of the simplicial set, which in degree $k$ is the set of commuting diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \stackrel{A_{\mathrm{vert}}}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) & & \text{transition function} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\ \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) & \stackrel{A}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) & & \text{connection forms} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\ \Omega^\bullet(U) & \stackrel{\langle F_A \rangle}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{a}) & & \text{curvature characteristic forms} \end{array} ,$$

such that the curvature forms $F_A$ of the $\infty$-Lie algebroid valued differential forms $A$ on $U \times \Delta^k$ with values in $\mathfrak{a}$ in the middle are horizontal.

If $\mu$ is an $\infty$-Lie algebroid cocycle of degree $n$, then the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism operates by sending an $\infty$-connection given by a Čech cocycle with values in simplicial sets of such commuting diagrams to the obvious pasting composite

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^k) & \stackrel{A_{\mathrm{vert}}}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}) & \stackrel{\mu}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{CE}(b^n\mathbb{R}) & : \mu(A_{\mathrm{vert}}) & \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\ \Omega^\bullet(U \times \Delta^k) & \stackrel{A}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) & \stackrel{cs}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{W}(b^n\mathbb{R}) & : \mathrm{cs}(A) & \text{Chern-Simons form} \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\ \Omega^\bullet(U) & \stackrel{\langle F_A \rangle}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{a}) & \stackrel{\langle - \rangle}{\longleftarrow} & \mathrm{inv}(b^n\mathbb{R}) & : \langle F_A \rangle & \text{curvature} \end{array} .$$

Under the map to the coskeleton the group of such cocycles for line $n$-bundle with connection is quotiented by the discrete group $\Gamma$ of periods of $\mu$, such that the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism is given by sending the $\infty$-connection $\nabla$ to

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \hat{\Sigma} & \stackrel{\nabla}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{cosk}_n\exp(\mathfrak{a})_{\mathrm{conn}} & \stackrel{\exp(\mathrm{cs})}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbf{B}^n(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ \Sigma & & & & \end{array} .$$

This presents a circle $n$-bundle with connection, 6.4.16, whose connection $n$-form is locally given by the Chern-Simons form $\mathrm{cs}(A)$. This is the Lagrangian of the $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory defined by $(\mathfrak{a}, \langle - \rangle)$ and evaluated on the given $\infty$-connection. If $\Sigma$ is a smooth manifold of dimension $n$, then the higher holonomy, 6.4.19, of this circle $n$-bundle over $\Sigma$ is the value of the Chern-Simons action. After a suitable gauge transformation this is given by the integral

$$\exp(iS(A)) = \exp(i \int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}(A))\,,$$

the value of the $\infty$-Chern-Simons action functional on the $\infty$-connection $A$.

**Proposition 7.2.15.** *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be an $L_\infty$-algebra and $\langle -, \cdots, - \rangle$ an invariant polynomial on $\mathfrak{g}$. Then the $\infty$-connections $A$ with values in $\mathfrak{g}$ that satisfy the equations of motion of the corresponding $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory are precisely those for which*

$$\langle -, F_A \wedge F_A \wedge \cdots F_A \rangle = 0\,,$$

*as a morphism $\mathfrak{g} \to \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma)$, where $F_A$ denotes the (in general inhomogeneous) curvature form of $A$.*

*In particular for binary and non-degenerate invariant polynomials the equations of motion are*

$$F_A = 0\,.$$

Proof. Let $A \in \Omega(\Sigma \times I, \mathfrak{g})$ be a 1-parameter variation of $A(t=0)$, that vanishes on the boundary $\partial\Sigma$. Here we write $t : [0,1] \to \mathbb{R}$ for the canonical coordinate on the interval.

$A(0)$ is critical if

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt}\int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}(A)\right)_{t=0} = 0$$

for all extensions $A$ of $A(0)$. Using Cartan's magic formula and the Stokes theorem the left hand expression is

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(\frac{d}{dt}\int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}(A)\right)_{t=0} &= \left(\int_\Sigma \frac{d}{dt}\mathrm{cs}(A)\right)_{t=0} \\
&= \left(\int_\Sigma d\iota_{\partial t}\mathrm{cs}(A) + \int_\Sigma \iota_{\partial_t} d\mathrm{cs}(A)\right)_{t=0} \\
&= \left(\int_\Sigma d_\Sigma(\iota_{\partial t}\mathrm{cs}(A)) + \int_\Sigma \iota_{\partial_t}\langle F_A \wedge \cdots F_A\rangle\right)_{t=0} \\
&= \left(\int_{\partial\Sigma} \iota_{\partial t}\mathrm{cs}(A) + n\int_\Sigma \langle (\frac{d}{dt}A) \wedge \cdots F_A\rangle\right)_{t=0} \\
&= \left(n\int_\Sigma \langle (\frac{d}{dt}A) \wedge \cdots F_A\rangle\right)_{t=0}
\end{aligned}.$$

Here we used that $\iota_{\partial_t} F_A = \frac{d}{dt}A$ and that by assumption this vanishes on $\partial\Sigma$. Since $\frac{d}{dt}A$ can have arbitrary values, the claim follows. □

### 7.2.2 Higher cup-product Chern-Simons theories

We discuss a class of $\infty$-Chern-Simons functionals induced from a smooth differential refinement of the *cup-product* on integral cohomology.

This section draws from [FSS12c].

**7.2.2.1 General construction** A crucial property of the Dold-Kan map, as discussed in 3.1.6, is the following.

**Proposition 7.2.16.** *Let $A, B$ and $C$ be presheaves of chain complexes concentrated in non-negative degrees, and let $\cup : A \otimes B \to C$ be a morphism of presheaves of chain complexes. Then the Dold-Kan map induces a natural morphism of simplicial preseheaves $\cup_{\mathrm{DK}} : \mathrm{DK}(A) \times \mathrm{DK}(B) \to \mathrm{DK}(C)$*

Proof. Both the categories $\mathrm{Ch}_\bullet^+$ and sAb are monoidal categories under the respective standard tensor products (on $\mathrm{Ch}_\bullet^+$ this is given by direct sums of tensor products of abelian groups with fixed total degree and on sAb by the degreewise tensor product of abelian groups), and the functor $\Gamma$ is lax monoidal with respect to these structures, i.e., for any $V, W \in \mathrm{Ch}_\bullet^+$ we have natural weak equivalences

$$\nabla_{V,W} : \Gamma(V) \otimes \Gamma(W) \to \Gamma(V \otimes W)\,.$$

These are not isomorphisms, as they would be for a *strong* monoidal functor, but they are weak equivalences. The forgetful functor $F$ is the right adjoint to the functor forming degreewise the free abelian group on a set, therefore it preserves products and hence there are natural isomorphisms

$$F(V \times W) \xrightarrow{\simeq} F(V) \times F(W)\,,$$

for all $V, W \in$ sAb. Finally, by the definition of tensor product, there are universal natural quotient maps $V, W \in$ sAb

$$p_{V,W} : V \times W \to V \otimes W\,.$$

The morphism $\cup_{\mathrm{DK}}$ is then defined as the composition indicated in the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\mathrm{DK}(A) \times \mathrm{DK}(B) & & \xrightarrow{\quad\quad\quad\cup_{\mathrm{DK}}\quad\quad\quad} & & & & \mathrm{DK}(C) \\
\| & & & & & & \| \\
F(\Gamma(A)) \times F(\Gamma(B)) & & & & & & \| \\
\downarrow \simeq & & & & & & \| \\
F(\Gamma(A) \times \Gamma(B)) & \xrightarrow{F(p)} & F(\Gamma(A) \otimes \Gamma(B)) & \xrightarrow{F(\nabla)} & F(\Gamma(A \otimes B)) & \xrightarrow{F(\Gamma(\cup))} & F(\Gamma(C))\,.
\end{array}$$

Given the presentation $\mathbf{H} \simeq L_W[\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]$, for every presheaf of chain complexes $A$ on $\mathcal{C}$ we obtain a corresponding $\infty$-stack, the $\infty$-stackification of the image of $A$ under the Dold-Kan map, which we will denote by the same symbol: $\mathrm{DK}(A) \in \mathbf{H}$.

**Definition 7.2.17.** For $A \in [\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Ab}]$ a sheaf of abelian groups, we write $A[n] \in [\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Ch}_\bullet^+]$ for the corresponding presheaf of chain complexes concentrated on $A$ in degree $n$, and

$$\mathbf{B}^n A \simeq \mathrm{DK}(A[n]) \in \mathbf{H}$$

for the corresponding $\infty$-stack.

In this case the corresponding cohomology

$$H^n(X, A) = \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, \mathbf{B}^n A)$$

is the traditional *sheaf cohomology* of $X$ with coefficients in $A$. More generally, if $A \in [\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{Ch}_\bullet^+]$ is a sheaf of chain complexes not necessarily concentrated in one degree, then

$$H^0(X, A) := \pi_0 \mathbf{H}(X, A)$$

is what traditionally is called the *sheaf hypercohomology* of $X$ with coefficients in $A$. The central coefficient object in which we are interested here is the sheaf of chain complexes called the *Deligne complex*, to which we now turn.

The *Beilinson-Deligne cup product* is an explicit presentation of the cup product in ordinary differential cohomology for the case that the latter is modeled by the Čech-Deligne cohomology.

**Definition 7.2.18.** The Beilinson-Deligne cup product is the morphism of sheaves of chain complexes

$$\cup_{\mathrm{BD}} : \mathbb{Z}[p+1]^{\infty}_{D} \otimes \mathbb{Z}[q+1]^{\infty}_{D} \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}[(p+1)+(q+1)]^{\infty}_{D},$$

given on homogeneous elements $\alpha$, $\beta$ as follows:

$$\alpha \cup_{\mathrm{BD}} \beta := \begin{cases} \alpha \wedge \beta = \alpha\beta & \text{if } \deg(\alpha) = p+1 \, . \\ \alpha \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}}\beta & \text{if } \deg(\alpha) \leq p \text{ and } \deg(\beta) = 0 \, . \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \, . \end{cases}$$

**Remark 7.2.19.** When restricted to the diagonal in the case that $p = q$, this means that the cup product sends a $p$-form $\alpha$ to the $(2p+1)$-form $\alpha \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}}\alpha$. This is of course the local Lagrangian for cup product Chern-Simons theory of $p$-forms. We discuss this case in detail in section 7.2.8.1.

The Beilinson-Deligne cup product is associative and commutative up to homotopy, so it induces an associative and commutative cup product on ordinary differential cohomology. A survey of this can be found in [Bry00] (around Prop. 1.5.8 there).

**Definition 7.2.20.** For $p, q \in \mathbb{N}$ the morphism of simplicial presheaves

$$\cup_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}^p U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^q U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^{p+q+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

is the morphism associated to the Beilinson-Deligne cup product $\cup_{\mathrm{BD}} : \mathbb{Z}[p+1]^{\infty}_{D} \otimes \mathbb{Z}[q+1]^{\infty}_{D} \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}[p+q+2]^{\infty}_{D}$ by Proposition 7.2.16.

Since the Beilinson-Deligne cup product is associative up to homotopy, this induces a well defined morphism

$$\mathbf{B}^{n_1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^{n_2} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \cdots \times \mathbf{B}^{n_{k+1}} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^{n_1+\cdots+n_{k+1}+k} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}.$$

In particular, if $n_1 = \cdots = n_{k+1} = 3$, we find

$$\left(\mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}\right)^{k+1} \to \mathbf{B}^{4k+3} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}.$$

Furthermore, we see from the explicit expression of the Beilinson-Deligne cup product that, on a local chart $U$, if the 3-form datum of a connection on a $U(1)$-3-bundle is the 3-form $C$, then the $4k+3$-form local datum for the corresponding connection on the associated $U(1)$-$(4k+3)$-bundle is

$$C \wedge \underbrace{dC \wedge \cdots \wedge dC}_{k \text{ times}} . \tag{7.24}$$

### 7.2.3 Higher differential Dixmier-Douady class and higher dimensional $U(1)$-holonomy

The *degenerate* or rather *tautological* case of extended $\infty$-Chern-Simons theories nevertheless deserves special attention, since it appears universally in all other examples: that where the extended action functional is the *identity* morphism

$$(\mathbf{DD}_n)_{\mathrm{conn}} : \ \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \ ,$$

for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Trivial as this may seem, this is the differential refinement of what is called the (higher) *universal Dixmier-Douady class* the higher universal first Chern class – of circle $n$-bundles / bundle $(n-1)$-gerbes, which on the topological classifying space $B^n U(1)$ is the weak homotopy equivalence

$$\mathrm{DD}_n : \ B^n U(1) \xrightarrow{\simeq} K(\mathbb{Z}, n+1) \ .$$

Therefore, we are entitled to consider $(\mathbf{DD}_n)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ as the extended action functional of an $n$-dimensional $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory. Over an $n$-dimensional manifold $\Sigma_n$ the moduli $n$-stack of field configurations is that of circle $n$-bundles with connection on $\Sigma_n$. In generalization to how a circle 1-bundle with connection has a *holonomy* over closed 1-dimensional manifolds, we note that a circle $n$-connection has a *$n$-volume holonomy* over the $n$-dimensional manifold $\Sigma_n$. This is the ordinary (codimension-0) action functional associated to $(\mathbf{DD}_n)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ regarded as an extended action functional:

$$\mathrm{hol} := \exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_n} [\Sigma_n, (\mathbf{DD}_n)_{\mathrm{conn}}]) : [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to U(1)\,.$$

This formulation makes it manifest that, for $G$ any smooth $\infty$-group and $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ any extended $\infty$-Chern-Simons action functional in codimension $n$, the induced action functional is indeed the $n$-volume holonomy of a family of "Chern-Simons circle $n$-connections", in that we have

$$\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_n} [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]) \simeq \mathrm{hol}_{\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}}\,.$$

This is most familiar in the case where the moduli $\infty$-stack $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is replaced with an ordinary smooth oriented manifold $X$ (of any dimension and not necessarily compact). In this case $\mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}} : X \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ modulates a circle $n$-bundle with connection $\nabla$ on this smooth manifold. Now regarding this as an extended Chern-Simons action function in codimension $n$ means to

1. take the moduli stack of fields over a given closed oriented manifold $\Sigma_n$ to be $[\Sigma_n, X]$, which is simply the space of maps between these manifolds, equipped with its natural ("diffeological") smooth structure (for instance the smooth loop space $LX$ when $n = 1$ and $\Sigma_n = S^1$);

2. take the value of the action functional on a field configuration $\phi : \Sigma_n \to X$ to be the $n$-volume holonomy of $\nabla$

$$\mathrm{hol}_{\nabla}(\phi) = \exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_n} [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]) :\ [\Sigma_n, X] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma_n, \mathbf{c}_{\mathrm{conn}}]} [\Sigma_n, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi \int_{\Sigma_n}(-))} U(1)\ .$$

Using the proof of Prop. 7.2.4 to unwind this in terms of local differential form data, this reproduces the familiar formulas for (higher) $U(1)$-holonomy.

### 7.2.4 1d Chern-Simons functionals

We discuss examples of the intrinsic notion of $\infty$-Chern-Simons action functionals, 6.4.19, over 1-dimensional base spaces.

**Example 7.2.21.** For some $n \in \mathbb{N}$ let

$$\mathrm{tr} : \mathfrak{u}(n) \to \mathfrak{u}(1) \simeq \mathbb{R}$$

be the trace function, with respect to the canonical identification of $\mathfrak{u}(n)$ with the Lie algebra of skew-Hermitean complex matrices.

This is both a 1-cocycle as well as an invariant polynomial on $\mathfrak{u}(n)$, the former corresponding to a degree-1 element in the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{u}(n))$ and the latter corresponding to an element $d_{\mathrm{W}} c \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{u}(n))$ of degree 2 in the Weil algebra. Hence $c$ is also the corresponding Chern-Simons element, def. 6.4.147. By prop. 7.1.88 this controls the universal differential first Chern class.

The corresponding Chern-Simons action functional is defined on the groupoid of $\mathfrak{u}(n)$-valued differential 1-forms on a line segment $\Sigma$ and given by

$$A \mapsto \int_{\Sigma} \mathrm{tr}(A)\,.$$

Any choice of coordinates $\Sigma \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ canonically identifies $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{u}(n))$ with a $\mathfrak{u}(n)$-valued function $\phi$. We may think of $\bar{\phi} := \int_{\Sigma} A = \int_{\Sigma} \phi dt$ as the average of this function. In terms of this the action functional is simply the trace function itself

$$\bar{\phi} \mapsto \mathrm{tr}(\bar{\phi})\,.$$

Degenerate as this case is, it is sometimes useful to regard the trace as an example of 1-dimensional Chern-Simons theory, for instance in the context of large-$N$ compactified gauge theory as discussed in [Na06].

**Example 7.2.22.** Below in 7.2.11 we discuss in detail how (derived) $L_\infty$-algebroids equipped with non-degenerate binary invariant polynomials of *grade* 0 (hence total degree 2) give rise to 1-dimensional Chern-Simons theories.

### 7.2.5 3d Chern-Simons functionals

We discuss examples of the intrinsic notion of $\infty$-Chern-Simons action functionals, 6.4.19, over 3-dimensional base spaces. This includes the archetypical example of ordinary 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory, but also its discrete analog, Dijkgraaf-Witten theory.

- 7.2.5.1 – Ordinary Chern-Simons theory;
- 7.2.5.2 – Ordinary 3d $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory and generalized $B_n$-geometry
- 7.2.5.3 – Ordinary Dijkgraaf-Witten theory.

**7.2.5.1 Ordinary Chern-Simons theory for simply connected simple gauge group** We discuss the action functional of ordinary 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory (see [Fr95] for a survey) from the point of view of intrinsic Chern-Simons action functionals in Smooth$\infty$Grpd.

- 7.2.5.1.1 – Extended Lagrangian and action functional
- 7.2.5.1.2 – Extended phase space
- 7.2.5.1.3 – Anomaly cancellation

**7.2.5.1.1 Extended Lagrangian and action functional**

**Theorem 7.2.23.** *Let $G$ be a simply connected compact simple Lie group. For*

$$[c] \in H^4(BG, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$$

*a universal characteristic class that generates the degree-4 integral cohomology of the classifying space $BG$, there is an essentially unique smooth lift $\mathbf{c}$ of the characteristic map $c$ of the form*

$$\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) \qquad \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

*on the smooth moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G$ of smooth $G$-principal bundles with values in the smooth moduli 3-stack of smooth circle 3-bundles. The differential refinement*

$$\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \qquad \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

*to the moduli stacks of the corresponding $n$-bundles with $n$-connections induces over any any closed oriented 3-dimensional smooth manifold $\Sigma$ a smooth functional*

$$\exp(iS_{\mathrm{CS}}(-)) := \exp(2\pi i \int_\Sigma [\Sigma, \mathbf{L}]) : \; [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{c}}} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_\Sigma (-))} U(1)$$

*on the moduli stack of $G$-principal connections on $\Sigma$, which on objects $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{g})$ is the exponentiated Chern-Simons action functional*

$$\exp(iS_{\mathrm{CS}}(A)) = \exp(i \int_\Sigma \langle A \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} A\rangle + \tfrac{1}{6}\langle A \wedge [A \wedge A]\rangle) \,.$$

Proof. This is theorem 7.1.9 combined with 6.4.162. □

For more computational details that go into this see also 7.2.11.4 below

**7.2.5.1.2 The extended phase spaces** Let $G$ be a connected and simply connected Lie group. We discuss the nature of the moduli of $G$-principal connections $G\mathbf{Conn}(\Sigma)$ according to 6.4.16.3 for various choices of $\Sigma$.

**Proposition 7.2.24.** *There is an equivalence*

$$\mathrm{hol} : \; G\mathbf{Conn}(S^1) \xrightarrow{\simeq} G//_{\mathrm{Ad}}G$$

*in* Smooth∞Grpd *between the moduli stack of $G$-principal connections on the circle, def. 6.4.120, and the quotient groupoid of the adjoint action of $G$ on itself. This is given by sending $G$-principal connections to their holonomy (for any chosen basepoint on the circle).*

Proof. We show that for each $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ the morphism of groupoids $\mathrm{hol}_U$ is an equivalence of groupoids.

For $f : U \to G$ a smooth function, since $G$ is connected and $U$ is topologically contractible, we may find a smooth homotopy

$$\eta : [0,1] \times U \to G$$

with $\eta(0)$ constant on the neutral element in a neighbourhood of $\{0\} \times U$ and with $\eta(1) = f$ in a neighbourhood of $\{1\} \times U$. Let then $\eta \mathbf{d}_{[0,1]} \eta^{-1} \in \Omega^1(U \times S^1, \mathfrak{g})$. This is a connection 1-form on $U \times S^1$ whose holonomy is $f$. Hence $\mathrm{hol}_U$ is essentially surjective.

Next, consider $A, A' \in \Omega^1(U \times S^1, \mathfrak{g})$ two connection 1-forms (legs along $S^1$). Observe that for each point $u \in U$ a gauge transformation $g_u : A_u \to A'_u$ is fixed already by its value at the basepoint of $S^1$ and moreover it has to satisfy

$$\mathrm{hol}(A_u) = g_u \mathrm{hol}(A'_u) g_u^{-1} \,.$$

This is because for every $t \in [0,1]$ the gauge transformation needs to satisfy the parallel transprt naturality condition

$$\begin{array}{ccc} * & \xrightarrow{g_u(t)} & * \\ {\scriptstyle \mathrm{tra}_{A_u}(0,t)}\uparrow & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{tra}_{A'_u}(0,t)} \\ * & \xrightarrow[g_u(0)]{} & * \end{array} \qquad \in *//G \,,$$

where $\mathrm{tra}_{A_u}(0,t)$ is the parallel transport of the connection $A_u$ along $[0,t]$.

This says that $\mathrm{hol}_U$ is also full and faithful. Hence it is an equivalence. □

**Remark 7.2.25.** We have a dashed lift in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & [S^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{conc}} \\ & & G\mathbf{Conn}(S^1) \\ & & {\scriptstyle \simeq}\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{hol}} \\ G & \longrightarrow & G//_{\mathrm{Ad}}G \end{array} \,,$$

where the top right morphism is the canonical projection of remark 5.2.105, and where the bottom horizontal morphism is the canonical projection map.

**Proposition 7.2.26.** *There is an equivalence*

$$G\mathbf{Conn}(*) \simeq \mathbf{B}G \,.$$

**7.2.5.1.3 Anomaly cancellation** We specialize the general discussion of 7.2.1.2 to the case of 3d Chern-Simons theory.

**Example 7.2.27** (3d prequantum Chern-Simons with integral phases)**.** Let $G$ be a simply connected compact simple Lie group, such as $G = SU(k)$ or $G = E_8$. Regard $\mathbf{B}G$ as an object of $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. We have

$$H^{n+1}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq H^{n+1}(BG, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}\,.$$

Write $c_2 : \mathbf{B}G \to B^4\mathbb{Z}$ for a representative of the generator. (For $G = SU(k)$ this is the universal second Chern class, whence the notation.)

By prop. 5.2.199 we may regard $c_2$ as a local Lagrangian with integral phases for a 3d framed-topological local prequantum field theory (a "level"):

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar} S_{c_2}) : (\mathrm{Bord}_3^{\mathrm{fr}})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_3(\mathbf{H}_{/B^4\mathbb{Z}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}\,.$$

Then by prop. 7.2.13, in order for this to extend to oriented cobordisms, we need to choose an $O(3)$-$\infty$-action on $\mathbf{B}G$. Without further assumptions, the only available such is the trivial action. For that trivial action we have

$$(\mathbf{B}G)//\Pi(SO(3)) \simeq (\mathbf{B}G) \times (BSO(3))\,.$$

Therefore an oriented-topological extension is a cohomology class on the product of classifying spaces which restricts to $c_2$ on the first factor:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\;\;c_2\;\;} & B^4\mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow_{\mathbf{L}//SO(3)} & \\ (\mathbf{B}G) \times (BSO(3)) & & \end{array}\,.$$

By the Künneth theorem and using the assumption on $G$ (which, by the Hurewicz theorem, implies that $H^{1 \leq \bullet \leq 3}(BG, \mathbb{Z}) = 0$), such extensions correspond to choices of classes $\alpha \in H^4(BSO(3), \mathbb{Z})$ and are given by

$$\mathbf{L}//SO(3) = (c_2 + \alpha) :\; (\mathbf{B}G) \times (BSO(3)) \xrightarrow{\;\;(c_2, \alpha)\;\;} (B^4\mathbb{Z}) \times (B^4\mathbb{Z}) \xrightarrow{\;+\;} B^4\mathbb{Z}\;.$$

By classical results (see e.g. [Ca99]) $H^4(BSO(3), \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$ is generated by the first Pontryagin class $p_1$. Hence we find that the possible oriented-topological extensions of the framed-topological field theory defined by $c_2$ are labeled by integers $\kappa \in \mathbb{Z}$ and are given by

$$\mathbf{L}^{\kappa}//SO(3) := (c_2 + \kappa \cdot p_1) :\; (\mathbf{B}G) \times (BSO(3)) \xrightarrow{\;\;(c_2, \kappa \cdot_1)\;\;} (B^4\mathbb{Z}) \times (B^4\mathbb{Z}) \xrightarrow{\;+\;} B^4\mathbb{Z}\;,$$

where $p_1 : BO(3) \to B^4\mathbb{Z}$ is a representative of the first Pontryagin class.

(This is reminiscent of anomaly cancellation in the traditional perturbative path integral quantization of the $c_2$-CS theory by adding a $p_1$-CS theory "counterterm", as in (2.20) of [Wi89]).

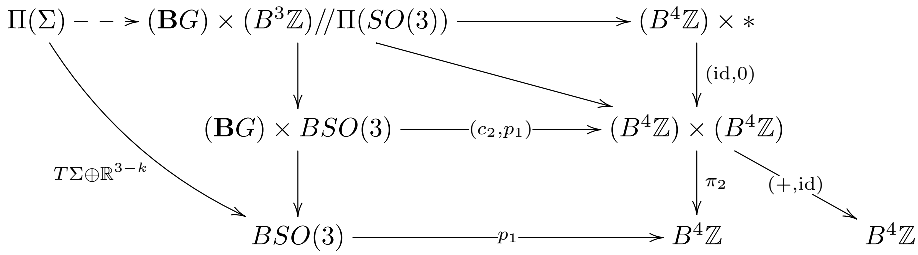
This now defines an oriented-topological field theory (setting $\kappa = 1$ for notational simplicity)

$$\exp(\tfrac{i}{\hbar} S_{(c_2+p_1)}) : (\mathrm{Bord}_3^{\mathrm{fr}})^{\sqcup} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Corr}_3(\mathbf{H}_{/B^4\mathbb{Z}})^{\otimes_{\mathrm{phased}}}\,.$$

But of course it has now this extra contribution by $p_1$. The field space extension on which this contribution is universally canceled is the homotopy fiber product

$$\mathbf{Fields}//\Pi(SO(3)) := (\mathbf{B}G) \times \big((B^3\mathbb{Z})//\Pi(SO(3))\big)$$

of $(c_1, p_1)$ with $(\mathrm{id}, 0)$, as in example 5.2.192. Consider the resulting diagram




Notice that, by prop. 7.2.10, we have

$$(B^3\mathbb{Z}) \times (BSO(3)) \simeq (B^3\mathbb{Z})//\Pi(SO(3)) .$$

Therefore by prop. 7.2.13 the diagonal in this diagram defines a local oriented-topological field theory. By example 5.2.187 and example 5.2.192, the moduli of bulk fields of this field theory are the product

$$\Sigma \mapsto \mathbf{Loc}_G(\Sigma) \times p_1\mathrm{Struc}(\Sigma)$$

of the moduli of flat $G$-connections with that of $p_1$-structures on $\Sigma$. On this we have, in codimension-1 and in generalization of example 5.2.202, a theta-line bundle

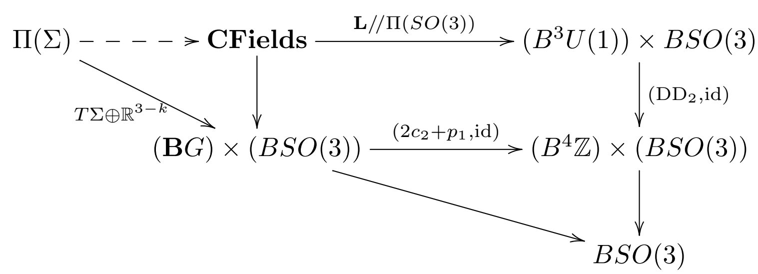
$$\mathbf{Loc}_G(\Sigma) \times p_1\mathrm{Struc}(\Sigma) \longrightarrow B^2\mathbb{Z}$$

This is again reminiscent of the traditional path integral story, where an "Atiyah 2-framing" structure [At90] on $\Sigma$ is needed to cancel a quantum anomaly, which in turn is equivalent to $p_1$-structure, see e.g. p. 6 of [Fr08].

Indeed, by theorem 5.2.203 the oriented-topological field theory defined this way is equivalently to a $p_1$-structured-topological field theory (example 5.2.167) with $G$-gauge fields. By example 5.2.177 the corresponding $p_1$-structure diffeomorphism group of a surface is a $\mathbb{Z}$-extension of the plain diffeomorphism group. It follows that the topological modular functor as in [?] of the above local topological field theory , i.e. the restriction of the local 3d TFT to surfaces and their automorphisms, gives a representation of a $\mathbb{Z}$-extended diffeomorphism group. This is precisely the structure considered for topological modular functors in the classical discussion of [Seg04] (see there around p. 46).

A variant of this:

**Example 7.2.28.** By the discussion in [FSS12a] the CS-term on the M2-brane induced from the background C-field is given by the homotopy pullback in the top right of this diagram:




Therefore as before, the top horizontal morphism here naturally defines a local oriented-topological field theory in 3-dimensions. The moduli space of fields for this now is the space of triples of a flat $G$-connection, a flat $U(1)$-3-connection and the tangent $SO$-structure such that they satisfy the "flux quantization condition" (integral Wu structure).

**7.2.5.2 Ordinary 3d $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory and generalized $B_n$-geometry** Ordinary 3-dimensional $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory on a closed oriented manifold $\Sigma_3$ contains field configurations which are given by globally defined 1-forms $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma_3)$ and on which the action functional is given by the familiar expression

$$\exp(iS(A)) = \exp(2\pi i k \int_{\Sigma_3} A \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} A)\,.$$

More generally, though, a field configuration of the theory is a connection $\nabla$ on a $U(1)$-principal bundle $P \to \Sigma_3$ and this simple formula is modified, from being the exponential of the ordinary integral of the wedge product of two differential forms, to the fiber integration in differential cohomology, Def. 7.2.4, of the differential cup-product, Def. 7.2.20:

$$\exp(iS(\nabla)) = \exp(2\pi i k \int_{\Sigma_3} \nabla \cup_{\mathrm{conn}} \nabla)\,.$$

This defines the action functional on the set $H^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma_3, U(1))$ of equivalence classes of $U(1)$-principal bundles with connection

$$\exp(iS(-)) : H^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma_3) \to U(1)\,.$$

That the action functional is gauge invariant means that it extends from a function on gauge equivalence classes to a functor on the groupoid $\mathbf{H}^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma_3, U(1))$, whose objects are actual $U(1)$-principal connections, and whose morphsims are smooth gauge transformations between these:

$$\exp(iS(-)) : \mathbf{H}^1_{\mathrm{conn}}(\Sigma_3) \to U(1)\,.$$

Finally, that the action functional depends *smoothly* on the connections means that it extends further to the moduli stack of fields to a morphism of stacks

$$\exp(iS(-)) : [\Sigma_3, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to U(1)\,.$$

The fully extended prequantum circle 3-bundle of this extended 3d Chern-Simons theory is that of the two-species theory restricted along the diagonal $\Delta : \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$. This is the homotopy fiber of the smooth cup square in these degrees.

According to [Hi12] aspects of the differential geometry of the homotopy fiber of a differential refinement of this cup square are captured by the "generalized geometry of $B_n$-type" that was suggested in [Ba11, section 2.4]. In view of the relation of the same structure to differential T-duality discussed above one is led to expect that "generalized geometry of $B_n$-type" captures aspects of the differential cohomology on fiber products of torus bundles that exhibit auto T-duality on differential K-theory. Indeed, such a relation is pointed out in [Bo11][34].

**7.2.5.3 Ordinary Dijkgraaf-Witten theory** Dijkgraaf-Witten theory (see [FrQu93] for a survey) is commonly understood as the analog of Chern-Simons theory for discrete structure groups. We show that this becomes a precise and systematic statement in Smooth∞Grpd: the Dijkgraaf-Witten action functional is that induced from applying the ∞-Chern-Simons homomorphism to a characteristic class of the form $\mathrm{Disc}BG \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$, for $\mathrm{Disc} : \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \to \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ the canonical embeedding of discrete ∞-groupoids, 6.2, into all smooth ∞-groupoids.

Let $G \in \mathrm{Grp} \to \infty\mathrm{Grpd} \stackrel{\mathrm{Disc}}{\to} \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ be a discrete group regarded as an ∞-group object in discrete ∞-groupoids and hence as a smooth ∞-groupoid with discrete smooth cohesion. Write $BG = K(G,1) \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ for its delooping in ∞Grpd and $\mathbf{B}G = \mathrm{Disc}BG$ for its delooping in Smooth∞Grpd.

We also write $\Gamma\mathbf{B}^nU(1) \simeq K(U(1), n)$. Notice that this is different from $B^nU(1) \simeq \Pi\mathbf{B}U(1)$, reflecting the fact that $U(1)$ has non-discrete smooth structure.

[34] Thanks, once more, to Alexander Kahle, for discussion of this point, at *String-Math 2012*.

**Proposition 7.2.29.** *For $G$ a discrete group, morphisms $\mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ correspond precisely to cocycles in the ordinary group cohomology of $G$ with coefficients in the discrete group underlying the circle group*

$$\pi_0 \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \simeq H^n_{\mathrm{Grp}}(G, U(1)) .$$

Proof. By the (Disc $\dashv \Gamma$)-adjunction we have

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) \simeq \infty\mathrm{Grpd}(BG, K(U(1), n)) .$$

□

**Proposition 7.2.30.** *For $G$ discrete*

- *the intrinsic de Rham cohomology of $\mathbf{B}G$ is trivial*

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\mathbf{B}G, \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^n U((1)) \simeq *;$$

- *all $G$-principal bundles have a unique flat connection*

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(X, \mathbf{B}G) \simeq \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Pi(X), \mathbf{B}G) .$$

Proof. By the (Disc $\dashv \Gamma$)-adjunction and using that $\Gamma \circ \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} K \simeq *$ for all $K$. □

It follows that for $G$ discrete

- any characteristic class $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ is a group cocycle;
- the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism coincides with postcomposition with this class

$$\mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G) \to \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)) .$$

**Proposition 7.2.31.** *For $G$ discrete and $\mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)$ any group 3-cocycle, the $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory action functional on a 3-dimensional manifold $\Sigma$*

$$\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G) \to U(1)$$

*is the action functional of Dijkgraaf-Witten theory.*

Proof. By proposition 6.4.162 the morphism is given by evaluation of the pullback of the cocycle $\alpha : BG \to B^3 U(1)$ along a given $\nabla : \Pi(\Sigma) \to BG$, on the fundamental homology class of $\Sigma$. This is the definition of the Dijkgraaf-Witten action (for instance equation (1.2) in [FrQu93]).

□

### 7.2.6 4d Chern-Simons functionals

We discuss some 4-dimensional Chern-Simons functionals

- 7.2.6.1 – 4d BF theory and topological Yang-Mills;
- 7.2.6.2 – 4d Yetter model.

**7.2.6.1 BF theory and topological Yang-Mills theory** We discuss how the action functional of nonabelian *BF-theory* [Hor89] in 4-dimensions with a "cosmological constant" and coupled to topological Yang-Mills theory is a higher Chern-Simons theory.

Let $\mathfrak{g} = (\mathfrak{g}_2 \stackrel{\partial}{\to} \mathfrak{g}_1)$ be a strict Lie 2-algebra, coming from a differential crossed module, def. 1.2.82, as indicated. Let $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ be the universal Lie integration, according to def. 6.4.79. Field configurations with values in $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ are locally Lie 2-algebra valued forms ($A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{g}_0)$) and $B \in \Omega^2(\Sigma, \mathfrak{g}_1)$ as in prop. 1.2.122.

The following observation is due to [SSS09a].

**Proposition 7.2.32.** *We have*

1. *every invariant polynomial* $\langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1} \in \mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}_1)$ *on* $\mathfrak{g}_1$ *gives rise, under the canonical inclusion* $\mathrm{inv}(\mathfrak{g}_1) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$*, not to an invariant polynomial, but to a Chern-Simons element on* $\mathfrak{g}$*, exhibiting the transgression to a trivial* $L_\infty$*-algebra cocycle;*
2. *for* $\mathfrak{g}_1$ *a semisimple Lie algebra and* $\langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1}$ *the Killing form,* $\Sigma$ *a 4-dimensional compact manifold, the corresponding Chern-Simons action functional*

$$\exp(iS_{\langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1}}) : [\Sigma, \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}] \to \mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

*on Lie 2-algebra valued forms is*

$$\Omega^\bullet(X) \xleftarrow{(A,B)} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}_2 \to \mathfrak{g}_1) \xleftarrow{(\langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1}, d_W \langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1})} \mathrm{W}(b^{n-1}\mathbb{R})$$

*the sum of the action functionals of topological Yang-Mills theory with BF-theory with cosmological constant:*

$$\mathrm{cs}_{\langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1}}(A, B) = \langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1} - 2\langle F_A \wedge \partial B \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1} + 2\langle \partial B \wedge \partial B \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1}\,,$$

*where* $F_A$ *is the ordinary curvature 2-form of* $A$*.*

Proof. For $\{t_a\}$ a basis of $\mathfrak{g}_1$ and $\{b_i\}$ a basis of $\mathfrak{g}_2$ we have

$$d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})} : \mathbf{d}t^a \mapsto d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}_1)} + \partial^a{}_i \mathbf{d}b^i\,.$$

Therefore with $\langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1} = P_{a_1 \cdots a_n} \mathbf{d}r^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \mathbf{d}t^{a_n}$ we have

$$d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})} \langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1} = n P_{a_1 \cdots a_n} \partial^{a_1}{}_i \mathbf{d}b^i \wedge \cdots \mathbf{d}t^{a_n}\,.$$

The right hand is a polynomial in the shifted generators of $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$, and hence an invariant polynomial on $\mathfrak{g}$. Therefore $\langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1}$ is a Chern-Simons element for it.

Now for $(A, B) \in \Omega^1(U \times \Delta^k, \mathfrak{g})$ an $L_\infty$-algebra-valued form, we have that the 2-form curvature is

$$F^1_{(A,B)} = F_A - \partial B\,.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{cs}_{\langle - \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1}}(A, B) &= \langle F^1_{(A,B)} \wedge F^1_{(A,B)} \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1} \\ &= \langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1} - 2\langle F_A \wedge \partial B \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1} + 2\langle \partial B \wedge \partial B \rangle_{\mathfrak{g}_1} \end{aligned}.$$

□

**7.2.6.2 4d Yetter model** The discussion of 3-dimensional Dijkgraaf-Witten theory as in 7.2.5.3 goes through verbatim for discrete groups generalized to discrete $\infty$-groups $G$, 6.2.3, and cocycles $\alpha : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ of any degree $n$. A field configurations over an $n$-dimensional manifold $\Sigma$ is a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle, 6.2.5, necessarily flat, and the induced action functional

$$\exp(iS_\alpha) : \mathbf{H}(\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G) \to U(1)$$

sends a $G$-principal $\infty$-bundle classified by a cocycle $g : \Sigma \to \mathbf{B}G$ to the canonical pairing of the singular cocycle corresponging to $\alpha(g) : \Sigma \to \mathbf{B}G \stackrel{\alpha}{\to} \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$ with the fundamental class of $\Sigma$.

For $n = 4$ such action functionals sometimes go by the name "Yetter model" [Mac00][MaPo07], in honor of [Yet93], which however did non consider a nontrivial 4-cocycle.

### 7.2.7 Abelian gauge coupling of branes

The gauge coupling term in the action of an $(n-1)$-brane charged under an abelian $n$-form background gauge field (electromagnetism, $B$-field, $C$-field, etc.) is an example of an $\infty$-Chern-Simons functional. We spell this out in a moment. Here one typically considers the target space of the $(n-1)$-brane to be a smooth manifold or at most an orbifold. The formal structure, however, allows to consider target spaces that are arbitrary smooth $\infty$-groupoids / smooth $\infty$-stacks. When generalized to this class of target spaces, the class of brane gauge coupling functionals in fact coincides with that of *all* $\infty$-Chern-Simons functionals. Conversely, every $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory in dimension $n$ may be regarded as the field theory of a "topological $(n-1)$-brane" whose target space is the higher moduli stack of field configurations of the given $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory.

For $X$ a smooth manifold, let $c \in H^{n+1}(X, \mathbb{Z})$ be a class in integral cohomology, to be called the higher *background magnetic charge*. A smooth refinement of this class to a morphism

$$\mathbf{c} : X \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)$$

is a circle $n$-bundle on $X$, whose topological class is $c$

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}} : X \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

A differential refinement of this is a choice of refinement to a circle $n$-bundle with connection $\nabla$.

Now let $\Sigma$ the compact $n$-dimensional worldvolume of an $(n-1)$-brane. Then $[\Sigma, X]$ is the diffeological space (def. 6.4.14) of smooth maps $\phi : \Sigma \to X$. The induced $\infty$-Chern-Simons functional

$$\exp(iS_{\hat{\mathbf{c}}}) : [\Sigma, X] \xrightarrow{[\hat{\mathbf{c}}, \Sigma]} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1)$$

is the ordinary $n$-volume holonomy of $\nabla$ over trajectories $\phi : \Sigma \to X$.

### 7.2.8 Higher abelian Chern-Simons functionals

We discuss higher Chern-Simons functionals on higher abelian gauge fields, notably on circle $n$-bundles with connection.

- 7.2.8.1 – $(4k+3)$d $U(1)$-Chern-Simons functionals;
- 7.2.8.2 – Higher electric coupling and higher gauge anomalies.

**7.2.8.1 $(4k+3)$d $U(1)$-Chern-Simons functionals** We discuss higher dimensional abelian Chern-Simons theories in dimension $4k+3$.

The case in dimension 3 ($k = 0$) is discussed for instance in [GuTh08]. The case in dimension 7 ($k = 1$) is the higher Chern-Simons theory whose holographic boundary theory encodes the self-dual 2-form gauge theory on the single 5-brane [Wi96]. Generally, for every $k$ the $(4k+3)$-dimensional abelian Chern-Simons theory induces a self-dual higher gauge theory holographically on its boundary, see [BeMo06].

**Definition 7.2.33.** Let $\Sigma$ be a compact manifold of dimension $4k+3$ for $k \in \mathbb{N}$. Consider the moduli stack $[\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^k U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ of circle $(2k+1)$-bundles with connection on $\Sigma$.

On this space, the action functional of higher abelian Chern-Simons theory is defined to be the composite

$$\exp(iS(-)) : \ [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^{2k+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{(-)\hat{\cup}(-)} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^{4k+3} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1) \ .$$

**Observation 7.2.34.** When restricted to differential $(2k+1)$-forms, regarded as connections on trivial circle $(2k+1)$-bundles

$$\Omega^{2k+1}(\Sigma) \hookrightarrow [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^{2k+1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$$

this action functional sends a $(2k+1)$-form $C$ to

$$\exp(iS(C)) = \exp(i \int_\Sigma C \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} C)\,.$$

From this expression one sees directly why the corresponding functional is not interesting in the remaining dimensions, because for even degree forms we have $C \wedge dC = \frac{1}{2} d(C \wedge C)$ and hence for these the above functional would be constant.

**7.2.8.2 Higher electric coupling and higher gauge anomalies** The action functional of ordinary Maxwell electromagnetism in the presence of an electric background current involves a differential cup-product term similar to that in def. 7.2.33. This has a direct generalization to higher electromagnetic fields and the corresponding higher electric currents. If, moreover, a background *magnetic* current is present, then this action functional is, in general, anomalous. The "higher gauge anomalies" in higher dimensional supergravity theories arise this way. This is discussed in [Fr00].

Here we refine this discussion from differential cohomology classes to higher moduli stacks of differential cocycles.

**Definition 7.2.35.** Let $\Sigma$ be a compact smooth manifold of dimension $d$.

By prop. 6.4.124 the universal cup product class

$$(-) \cup (-) : B^n U(1) \times B^{d-n-1} U(1) \to B^d U(1)$$

for any $0 \leq n \leq d$ has a smooth and differential refinement $\hat{\cup}$. We write

$$\exp(iS_\cup) : \; [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^{d-n-1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{(-)\hat{\cup}(-)} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1)$$

for the corresponding higher Chern-Simons action functional on the higher moduli stack of *pairs* consisting of an $n$-connection and an $(d-n-1)$-connection on $\Sigma$.

**Remark 7.2.36.** When restricted to pairs of differential forms

$$(B_1, B_2) \in \Omega^n(\Sigma) \times \Omega^{d-n-1}(\Sigma) \hookrightarrow [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^{d-n-1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$$

this functional sends

$$(B_1, B_2) \mapsto \exp(i \int_\Sigma B_1 \wedge dB_2)\,.$$

The higher Chern-Simons functional of def. 7.2.8.1 is the *diagonal* of this functional, where $B_1 = B_2$. We now consider another variant, where only $B_1$ is taken to vary, but $B_2$ is regarded as fixed.

Let $X$ be an $d$-dimensional manifold. The configuration space of higher electromagnetic fields of degree $n$ on $X$ is the moduli stack of circle $n$-bundles with connection $[X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ on $X$.

**Definition 7.2.37.** An *electric background current* on $X$ for degree $p$ electromagnetism is a circle $(d-n-1)$-bundle with connection $\hat{j}_{\mathrm{el}} : X \to \mathbf{B}^{d-n-1} U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

The *electric coupling action functional* of the higher electromagnetic field in the presence of the background electric current is

$$\exp(iS_{\mathrm{el}}) : \; [X, \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{(-)\hat{\cup}\hat{j}_{\mathrm{el}}} [X, \mathbf{B}^d U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_X} U(1)\,,$$

where the first morphism is the differentially refined cup product from prop. 6.4.124.

**Remark 7.2.38.** For the case of ordinary Maxwell theory, with $n = 1$ and $d = 4$, the electric current is a circle 2-bundle with connection. Its curvature 3-form is traditionally denoted $j_{\mathrm{el}}$. If $X$ is equipped with Lorentzian structure, then its integral over a (compact) spatial slice is the background *electric charge*. Integrality of this value, following from the nature of differential cohomology, is the *Dirac charge quantization* that makes electric charge appear in integral multiples of a fixed unit charge.

For $A \in \Omega^1(X) \to [X, \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ a globally defined connection 1-form, the above action functional is given by

$$A \mapsto \exp(i \int_X A \wedge j_{\mathrm{el}}) \,.$$

In the limiting case that the background electric charge is that carried by a charged point particle, $j_{\mathrm{el}}$ is the current which is Poincaré-dual to the trajectory $\gamma : S^1 \to X$ of the particle. In this case the above goes to

$$\cdots \to \exp(i \int_\Sigma A) \,,$$

hence the line holonomy of $A$ along the trajectory of the background charge.

(...)

### 7.2.9 7d Chern-Simons functionals

We discuss some higher Chern-Simons functionals over 7-dimensional parameter spaces.

- 7.2.9.1 – The cup product of a 3d CS theory with itself;
- 7.2.9.2 – 7d CS theory on string 2-connection fields;
- 7.2.9.3 – 7d CS theory in 11d supergravity on $\mathrm{AdS}_7$.

This section draws from [FSS12b].

**7.2.9.1 The cup product of a 3d CS theory with itself** Let $G$ be a compact and simply connected simple Lie group and consider from 7.2.5.1 the canonical differential characteristic map for the induced 3d Chern-Simons theory

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,.$$

We consider the differentially refined *cup product*, prop. 6.4.124, of this differential characteristic map with itself.

**Observation 7.2.39.** The topological degree-8 class

$$c \cup c : \; BG \xrightarrow{(c,c)} K(\mathbb{Z}, 4) \times K(\mathbb{Z}, 4) \xrightarrow{\cup} K(\mathbb{Z}, 8)$$

has a smooth and differential refinement of the form

$$\hat{\mathbf{c}} \hat{\cup} \hat{\mathbf{c}} : \; \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{c}}} \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{\hat{\cup}} \mathbf{B}^7U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \;.$$

Proof. By the discussion in 7.2.8.1. □

**Definition 7.2.40.** Let $\Sigma$ be a compact smooth manifold of dimension 7. The higher Chern-Simons functional

$$\exp(iS_{\mathrm{CS}}(-)) : \; [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{c}}\hat{\cup}\hat{\mathbf{c}}} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^7U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1)$$

defines the *cup product Chern-Simons theory* induced by $\mathbf{c}$.

**Remark 7.2.41.** For ordinary Chern-Simons theory, 7.2.5.1, the assumption that $G$ is simply connected implies that $BG$ is 3-connected, hence that every $G$-principal bundle on a 3-dimensional $\Sigma$ is trivializable, so that $G$-principal connections on $\Sigma$ can be identified with $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms on $\Sigma$. This is no longer in general the case over a 7-dimensional $\Sigma$.

**Proposition 7.2.42.** *If a field configuration $A \in [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ happens to have trivial underlying bundle, then the value of the cup product CS theory action functional is given by*

$$\exp(iS_{\mathrm{CS}}(A)) = \int_\Sigma \mathrm{CS}(A) \wedge \langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle \,,$$

*where* $\mathrm{CS}(-)$ *is the Lagrangian of ordinary Chern-Simons theory, 7.2.5.1.*

**7.2.9.2 7d CS theory on string 2-connection fields** By theorem 7.1.32 we have a canonical differential characteristic map

$$\tfrac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

from the smooth moduli 2-stack of String-2-connections, 1.2.9.7.2, with values in the smooth moduli 7-stack of circle 7-bundles (bundle 6-gerbes) with connection. This induces a 7-dimensional Chern-Simons theory.

**Definition 7.2.43.** For $\Sigma$ a compact 7-dimensional smooth manifold, define $\exp(iS_{\frac{1}{6}p_2}(-))$ to be the Chern-Simons action functional induced by the universal differential second fractional Pontryagin class, theorem 7.1.32,

$$\exp(iS_{\frac{1}{6}p_2}(-)) : \; [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1) \;\; .$$

Recall from 1.2.9.7.2 the different incarnations of the local differential form data for string 2-connections.

**Proposition 7.2.44.** *Over a 7-dimensional $\Sigma$ every field configuration $(A, B) \in [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ is a string 2-connection whose underlying* String*-principal 2-bundle is trivial.*

- *In terms of the strict $\mathfrak{string}$ Lie 2-algebra from def. 1.2.189 this is presented by a pair of nonabelian differential forms $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, P_*\mathfrak{so})$, $B \in \Omega^2(\Sigma, \hat{\Omega}_*\mathfrak{so})$. The above action functional takes this to*

$$\begin{aligned} \exp(iS_{\frac{1}{6}p_2}(A,B)) &= \int_\Sigma \mathrm{CS}_7(A(1)) \\ &= \int_\Sigma (\langle A_e \wedge dA_e \wedge dA_e \wedge dA_e \rangle + k_1 \langle A_e \wedge [A_e \wedge A_e] \wedge dA_e \wedge dA_e \rangle \\ &\quad + k_2 \langle A_e \wedge [A_e \wedge A_e] \wedge [A_e \wedge A_e] \wedge dA_e \rangle + k_3 \langle A_e \wedge [A_e \wedge A_e] \wedge [A_e \wedge A_e] \wedge [A_e \wedge A_e] \rangle) \end{aligned} ,$$

  *where $A_e \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{so})$ is the 1-form of endpoint values of $A$ in the path Lie algebra, and where the integrand is the degree-7 Chern-Simons element of the quaternary invariant polynomial on $\mathfrak{so}$.*

- *In terms of the skeletal $\mathfrak{string}$ Lie 2-algebra from def. 1.2.188 this is presented by a pair of differential forms $A \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{so})$, $B \in \Omega^2(\Sigma, \mathbb{R})$. The above action functional takes this to*

$$\exp(iS_{\frac{1}{6}p_2}(A,B)) = \int_\Sigma \mathrm{CS}_7(A)\,.$$

**7.2.9.3 7d CS theory in 11d supergravity on** $\mathrm{AdS}_7$ The two 7-dimensional Chern-Simons theories from 7.2.9.1 and 7.2.9 can be merged to a 7d theory defined on field configurations that are 2-connections with values in the String-2-group from def. 7.1.43. We define and dicuss this higher Chern-Simons theory below in 7.2.9.3.2. In 7.2.9.3.1 we argue that this 7d Chern-Simons theory plays a role in $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$-duality [AGMOO].

**7.2.9.3.1 Motivation from $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$-holography** We give here an argument that the 7-dimensional nonabelian gauge theory discussed in section 7.2.9.3.2 is the Chern-Simons part of 11-dimensional supergravity on $\mathrm{AdS}_7 \times S^4$ with 4-form flux on the $S^4$-factor and with quantum anomaly cancellation conditions taken into account. We moreover argue that this implies that the states of this 7-dimensional CS theory over a 7-dimensional manifold encode the conformal blocks of the 6-dimensional worldvolume theory of coincident M5-branes. The argument is based on the available but incomplete knowledge about AdS/CFT-duality, such as reviewed in [AGMOO], and cohomological effects in M-theory as reviewed and discussed in [Sa10a].

There are two, seemingly different, realizations of the *holographic principle* in quantum field theory. On the one hand, Chern-Simons theories in dimension $4k+3$ have spaces of states that can be identified with spaces of correlators of $(4k+2)$-dimensional conformal field theories (spaces of "conformal blocks") on their boundary. For the case $k=0$ this was discussed in [Wi89], for the case $k=1$ in [Wi96]. On the other hand, AdS/CFT duality (see [AGMOO] for a review) identifies correlators of $d$-dimensional CFTs with states of compatifications of string theory, or M-theory, on asymptotically anti-de Sitter spacetimes of dimension $d+1$ (see [Wi98a]).

In [Wi98c] it was pointed out that these two mechanisms are in fact closely related. A detailed analysis of the $\mathrm{AdS}_5/\mathrm{SYM}_4$-duality shows that the spaces of correlators of the 4-dimensional theory can be identified with the spaces of states obtained by geometric quantization just of the Chern-Simons term in the effective action of type II string theory on $\mathrm{AdS}_5$, which locally reads

$$(B_{\mathrm{NS}}, B_{\mathrm{RR}}) \mapsto N \int_{\mathrm{AdS}_5} B_{\mathrm{NS}} \wedge dB_{\mathrm{RR}} \,,$$

where $B_{\mathrm{NS}}$ is the local Neveu-Schwarz 2-form field, $B_{\mathrm{RR}}$ is the local RR 2-form field, and where $N$ is the RR 5-form flux picked up from integration over the $S^5$ factor.

As briefly indicated there, the similar form of the Chern-Simons term of 11-dimensional supergravity (M-theory) on $\mathrm{AdS}_7$ suggests that an analogous argument shows that under $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$-duality the conformal blocks of the $(2,0)$-superconformal theory are identified with the geometric quantization of a 7-dimensional Chern-Simons theory. In [Wi98c] that Chern-Simons action is taken, locally on $\mathrm{AdS}_7$, to be

$$C_3 \mapsto \int_{\mathrm{AdS}_7 \times S^4} C_3 \wedge G_4 \wedge G_4 \quad = N \int_{\mathrm{AdS}_7} C_3 \wedge dC_3 \,,$$

where now $C_3$ is the local incarnation of the supergravity $C$-field, 7.1.7.4.2, where $G_4$ is its curvature 4-form locally equal to $dC_3$, and where

$$N := \int_{S^4} G_4$$

is the $C$-field flux on the 4-spehere factor.

This is the $(4 \cdot 1 + 3 = 7)$-dimensional abelian Chern-Simons theory, 7.2.11.7, shown in [Wi96] to induce on its 6-dimensional boundary the self-dual 2-form – in the *abelian* case.

In order to generalize this to the nonabelian case of interest, we notice that there is a term missing in the above Lagrangian. The quantum anomaly cancellation in 11-dimensional supergravity is known from [DLM95](3.14) to require a corrected Lagrangian whose Chern-Simons term locally reads

$$(\omega, C_3) \mapsto \int_{\mathrm{AdS}_7 \times S^4} C_3 \wedge \left( G_4 \wedge G_4 - I_8^{\mathrm{dR}}(\omega) \right) \,,$$

where $\omega$ is the spin connection form, locally, and where $8 I_8^{\mathrm{dR}}(\omega)$ is a de Rham representative of the integral cohomology class

$$8 I_8 = \tfrac{1}{6} p_2 - 8 (\frac{1}{2} p_1) \cup (\frac{1}{2} p_1) \,, \qquad (7.25)$$

with $\frac{1}{2} p_1$ and $\frac{1}{6} p_2$ the first and second fractional Pontrjagin classes, prop. 7.1.5, prop. 7.1.30, respectively, of the given Spin bundle over 11-dimensional spacetime $X$.

This means that after passing to the effective theory on $\mathrm{AdS}_7$, this corrected Lagrangian picks up another 7-dimensional Chern-Simons term, now one depending on *nonablian* fields (with values in Spin and $E_8$). Locally this reads

$$S_{7d\mathrm{CS}} : (\omega, C_3) \mapsto N \int_{\mathrm{AdS}_7} C_3 \wedge dC_3 - \frac{N}{8} \int_{\mathrm{Ads}_7} \mathrm{CS}_{8I_8}(\omega) \quad . \tag{7.26}$$

where $\mathrm{CS}_{8I_8}(\omega)$ is a Chern-Simons form for $8I_8^{\mathrm{dR}}(\omega)$, defined locally by

$$d\mathrm{CS}_{8I_8}(\omega) = 8I_8^{\mathrm{dR}}(\omega)\,.$$

But this action functional, which is locally a functional of a 3-form and a Spin-connection, cannot globally be of this form, already because the field that looks locally like a Spin connection cannot globally be a Spin connection. To see this, notice from the discussion of the $C$-field in 7.1.8, that there is a quantization condition on the supergravity fields on the 11-dimensional $X$ [Wi97a], which in cohomology requires the identity

$$2[G_4] = \frac{1}{2}p_1 + 2a \quad \in H^4(X, \mathbb{Z})\,,$$

where on the right we have the canonical characteristic 4-class $a$, prop. 7.1.41, of an 'auxiliary' $E_8$ bundle on 11-dimensional spacetime. Moreover, we expect that when restricted to the vicinity of the asymptotic boundary of $\mathrm{AdS}_7$,

- the class of $G_4$ vanishes;
- the $E_8$-bundle becomes equipped with a connection, too (the $E_8$-field "becomes dynamical");

in analogy to what happens at the boundary for the Hořava-Witten compactification of the 11-dimensional theory [HoWi95, HoWi96], as discussed in 7.1.8.6. Since, moreover, the states of the topological TFT that we are after are obtained already from geometric quantization, 5.2.17, of the theory in the vicinity $\Sigma \times I$ of a boundary $\Sigma$, we find the field configurations of the 7-dimensional theory are to satisfy the constraint in cohomology

$$\frac{1}{2}p_1 + 2a = 0\,. \tag{7.27}$$

Imposing this condition has two effects.

1. The first is that, according to 5.2.14, what locally looks like a spin-connection is globally instead a *twisted differential String structure*, 7.1.6.3, or equivalently a *2-connection on a twisted* String-*principal 2-bundle*, where the twist is given by the class $2a$. By 1.2.6.3 the total space of such a principal 2-bundle may be identified with a (twisted) *nonabelian bundle gerbe*. Therefore the configuration space of fields of the effective 7-dimensional nonabelian Chern-Simons action above should not involve just Spin connection forms, but String-*2-connection* form data. By 1.2.9.7.2 there is a gauge in which this is locally given by nonabelian 2-form field data with values in the loop group of Spin.

2. The second effect is that on the space of twisted String-2-connections, the differential 4-form $\mathrm{tr}(F_\omega \wedge F_\omega)$, that under the Chern-Weil homomorphism represents the image of $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ in de Rham cohomology, according to 7.1.6.3.1, locally satisfies

   $$dH_3 = \langle F_\omega \wedge F_\omega \rangle - 2\langle F_A \wedge F_A \rangle\,,$$

   where $H_3$ is the 3-form curvature component of the String-2-connection, and where $F_A$ is the curvature of a connection on the $E_8$ bundle, locally given by an $\mathfrak{e}_8$-valued 1-form $A$. Therefore with the quantization condition of the $C$-field taken into account, the 7-dimensional Chern-Simons action (7.26) becomes

   $$S_{7d\mathrm{CS}} = N \int_{\mathrm{AdS}_7} \left( C_3 \wedge dC_3 - \frac{1}{8} H_3 \wedge dH_3 - \frac{1}{4}(H_3 + 2\mathrm{CS}_a(A) \wedge \mathrm{tr}(F_\omega \wedge F_\omega) + \frac{1}{8}\mathrm{CS}_{\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2}(\omega) \right)\,. \tag{7.28}$$

Here the first two terms are 7-dimensional abelian Chern-Simons actions as before, for fields that are both locally abelian three forms (but have very different global nature). The second two terms, however, are action functionals for *nonabelian* Chern-Simons theories. The third term involves the familiar Chern-Simons 3-form of the $E_8$-connection familiar from 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory

$$\mathrm{CS}_a(A) = \mathrm{tr}(A \wedge dA) + \frac{2}{3}\mathrm{tr}(A \wedge A \wedge A)\,.$$

Finally the fourth term is the Chern-Simons 7-form that is locally induced, under the Chern-Weil homomorphism, from the quartic invariant polynomial $\langle -,-,-,- \rangle : \mathfrak{so}^{\otimes 4} \to \mathbb{R}$ on the special orthogonal Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}$, in direct analogy to how standard 3-dimensional Chern-Simons theory is induced under Chern-Weil theory from the quadratic invariant polynomial (the Killing form) $\langle -,- \rangle : \mathfrak{so} \otimes \mathfrak{so} \to \mathbb{R}$:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{CS}_7(\omega) =& \langle \omega \wedge d\omega \wedge d\omega \wedge d\omega \rangle + k_1 \langle \omega \wedge [\omega \wedge \omega] \wedge d\omega \wedge d\omega \rangle \\ & + k_2 \langle \omega \wedge [\omega \wedge \omega] \wedge [\omega \wedge \omega] \wedge d\omega \rangle + k_3 \langle \omega \wedge [\omega \wedge \omega] \wedge [\omega \wedge \omega] \wedge [\omega \wedge \omega] \rangle\end{aligned}\,.$$

This line of arguments suggests that the Chern-Simons term that governs 11-dimensional supergravity on $\mathrm{AdS}_7 \times S^4$ is an action functional on fields that are twisted String-2-connections such that the action functional is locally given by (7.28). In 7.2.9.3.2 we show that a Chern-Simons theory satisfying these properties naturally arises from the differential characteristic maps discussed above in 7.2.9.1 and 7.2.9.

**7.2.9.3.2 Definition and properties** We discuss now a twisted combination of the two 7-dimensional Chern-Simons action functionals from 7.2.9.1 and 7.2.9 which naturally lives on the moduli 2-stack $C\mathrm{Field}(-)^{\mathrm{bdr}}$ of boundary $C$-field configurations from 7.1.156. We show that on $\infty$-connection field configurations whose underlying $\infty$-bundles are trivial, this functional reduces to that given in equation (7.28).

It is instructive to first consider the simple special case where the $E_8$ is trivial. In this case the boundary moduli stack $C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}'}$ from observation 7.1.157 restricts to just that of string 2-connections, $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

**Definition 7.2.45.** Write $8\hat{\mathbf{I}}_8$ for the smooth universal differential characteristic cocycle

$$8\hat{\mathbf{I}}_8 : \ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{(\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2) - 8(\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 \hat{\cup} \frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1)} \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \ ,$$

where $\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2$ is the differential second fractional Pontryagin class from theorem 7.1.32 and where $\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 \hat{\cup} \frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1$ is the differential cup product class from observation 7.2.39.

**Definition 7.2.46.** For $\Sigma$ a compact smooth manifold of dimension 7, the canonically induced action functional $\exp(iS_{8I_8}(-))$ from def. 5.2.116, on the moduli 2-stack of String-2-connections is the composite

$$\exp(iS_{8I_8}(-)) : \ [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{8\hat{\mathbf{I}}_8} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} U(1) \ .$$

We give now an explicit description of the field configurations in $[\Sigma, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ and of the value of $\exp(iS_{8I_8}(-))$ on these in terms of differential form data.

**Proposition 7.2.47.** *A field configuration in* $[\Sigma, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}}] \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ *is presented in the model category* $[\mathrm{CartSp}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{sSet}]_{\mathrm{proj,loc}}$*, 6.4, by a correspondence of simplicial presheaves*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(\{U_i\}) & \xrightarrow{\phi} & \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{so}_\mu)_{\tilde{\mathrm{conn}}} \ , \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \\ \Sigma & & \end{array}$$

*where $\mathfrak{so}_\mu$ is the skeletal String Lie 2-algebra, def. 1.2.188, and where on the right we have the adapted differential coefficient object from prop. 7.1.120; such that the projection*

$$C(\{U_i\}) \xrightarrow{\phi} \mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp(b\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{so}_\mu)_{\tilde{\text{conn}}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\text{conn}}$$

*has a class.*

*The underlying nonabelian cohomology class of such a cocycle is that of a* String*-principal 2-bundle.*

*The local connection and curvature differential form data over a patch $U_i$ is*

$$\begin{aligned} F_\omega &= d\omega + \tfrac{1}{2}[\omega \wedge \omega] \\ H_3 &= \nabla B := dB + \mathrm{CS}(\omega) \\ dF_\omega &= -[\omega \wedge F_\omega] \\ dH_3 &= \langle F_\omega \wedge F_\omega \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Without the constraint on the $C$-field this is the description of twisted String-2-connections of observation 7.1.122 where the twist is the $C$-field. The condition above picks out the untwisted case, where the $C$-field is trivialized. What remains is an untwisted String-principal 2-bundle.

The local differential form data is found from the modified Weil algebra of $(b\mathbb{R} \to (\mathfrak{so})_{\mu_{\mathfrak{so}}})$ indicated on the right of the following diagram

$$\left( \begin{aligned} F_\omega &= d\omega + \tfrac{1}{2}[\omega \wedge \omega] \\ H_3 &= \nabla B := dB + CS(\omega) - C_3 \\ \mathcal{G}_4 &= dC_3 \\ dF_\omega &= -[\omega \wedge F_\omega] \\ dH_3 &= \langle F_\omega \wedge F_\omega \rangle - \mathcal{G}_4 \\ d\mathcal{G}_4 &= 0 \end{aligned} \right)_i \xleftarrow{\begin{array}{ll} t^a_{\mathfrak{so}} & \mapsto \omega^a \\ r^a_{\mathfrak{so}} & \mapsto F_\omega \\ b & \mapsto B \\ c & \mapsto C_3 \\ h & \mapsto H_3 \\ g & \mapsto \mathcal{G}_4 \end{array}} \left( \begin{aligned} r^a_{\mathfrak{so}} &= dt^a_{\mathfrak{so}} + \tfrac{1}{2} C^a_{\mathfrak{so}\,bc} t^b_{\mathfrak{so}} \wedge t^c_{\mathfrak{so}} \\ h &= db + \mathrm{cs}_{\mathfrak{so}} - c \\ g &= dc \\ dr^a_{\mathfrak{so}} &= -C^a{}_{bc} t^b_{\mathfrak{so}} \wedge r^a_{\mathfrak{so}} \\ dh &= \langle -, - \rangle - g \\ dg &= 0 \end{aligned} \right).$$

□

**Remark 7.2.48.** While the 2-form $B$ in the presentation used in the above proof is abelian, the total collection of forms is still connection data with coefficients in the nonabelian Lie 2-algebra $\mathfrak{string}$. We explained in remark 1.2.192, that there is a choice of local gauge in which the nonabelianness of the 2-form becomes manifest. For the discussion of the above proposition, however, this gauge is not the most convenient one, and it is more convenient to exhibit the local cocycle data in the above form, which corresponds to the second gauge of remark 1.2.192.

This is an example of a general principle in higher nonabelian gauge theory ("higher gerbe theory"). Due to the higher gauge invariances, the local component presentation of a given structure does not usually manifestly exhibit the gauge-invariant information in an obvious way.

**Proposition 7.2.49.** *Let $\phi \in [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ be a field configuration which, in the presentation of prop. 7.2.47, is defined over a single patch $U = \Sigma$.*

*Then the action functional of def. 7.2.46 sends this to*

$$\exp(iS_{8I_8}(\omega, H_3)) = \exp\left(i \int_\Sigma \left(-8H_3 \wedge dH_3 + \mathrm{CS}_{\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2}(\omega)\right)\right).$$

Proof. The first term is that of the cup product theory, 7.2.9.1, after using the identity $\mathrm{tr}(F_\omega \wedge F_\omega) = dH_3$ which holds on the configuration space of String-2-connections by prop. 7.2.47. The second term is that of the $\frac{1}{6}p_2$-Chern-Simons theory from 7.2.9. □

**Remark 7.2.50.** Therefore comparison with equation (7.28) shows that the action functional $S_{8I_8}$ has all the properties that in 7.2.9.3.1 we argued that the effective 7-dimensional Chern-Simons theory inside 11-dimensional supergravity compactified on $S^4$ should have, in the following special case:

- the $C$-field flux on $S^4$ is $N = 8$;

and

- the $E_8$-field is trivial;
- the $C$-field on $\Sigma$ is trivial.

By choosing any multiple of $8\hat{\mathbf{I}}_8$ one can obtain $C$-field flux of arbitrary multiples of 8. In order to obtain $C$-field flux that is not a multiple of 8 one needs to discuss further divisibility of $8\hat{\mathbf{I}}_8$.

We discuss now a refinements of $S_{8I_8}$ that generalize away from the last two of these special conditions to obtain the full form of (7.28).

Recall from def. 7.1.156 the higher moduli stack $C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}}$ of supergravity $C$-field configurations, which by remark. 7.1.157 is the moduli 3-stack of twisted $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}$-connections. We consider now an action functional on this configuration stack.

Following remark 7.1.47 we write a corresponding field configuration, $\phi \in C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}}(\Sigma)$, whose underlying topological class is trivial as a tuple of forms

$$(\omega, A, B_2, C_3) \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{so}) \times \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{e}_8) \times \Omega^2(\Sigma) \times \Omega^3(\Sigma)$$

and set

$$H_3 := dB_2 + \mathrm{cs}(\omega) - \mathrm{cs}(A)\,.$$

Recall that by prop. 7.1.46 this object has a presentation by Lie integration as 7.1.6.3.1 as a sub-simplicial set

$$\mathbf{cosk}_3 \exp((\mathbb{R} \to \mathfrak{so} \oplus \mathfrak{e}_8)_{\mu_3^{\mathfrak{so}} - 2\mu_3^{\mathfrak{e}_8}})_{\mathrm{conn}}\,.$$

In terms of this presentation we have an evident differential characteristic class given by the Lie integration of the Chern-Simons element $\mathrm{cs}_{\frac{1}{6}p_2} - 8\mathrm{cs}_{\frac{1}{2}o_1 \cup \frac{1}{2}p_1}$.

**Definition 7.2.51.** Write $\hat{\mathbf{I}}_8$ for the smooth universal characteristic map given by the composite

$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}} \xrightarrow{\exp(\mathrm{cs}_{\frac{1}{6}p_2} - 8\mathrm{cs}_{\frac{1}{2}p_1 \cup \frac{1}{2}p_1})} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^7(\mathbb{R}/K)_{\mathrm{conn}}]\ ,$$

where the second morphism is the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism of $I_8$, according to 6.4.17, with $K \subset \mathbb{R}$ the given sublattice of periods.

Write

$$\exp(iS_{I_8}(-)) :\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{I}}_8} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^7(\mathbb{R}/K)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\int_\Sigma} \mathbb{R}/K$$

for the corresponding action functional.

Finally we obtain the refinement of the 7-dimensional Chern-Simons action (7.28) to the full higher moduli stack of boundary $C$-field configurations.

**Proposition 7.2.52.** *Let $\phi \in C\mathrm{Field}^{\mathrm{bdr}}(\Sigma))$ be a boundary $C$-field configuration according to remark. 7.1.157, whose underlying* $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}$*-principal 2-bundle is trivial, which is hence a quadruple of forms*

$$\phi = (\omega, A, B_2, C_3) \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{so}) \times \Omega^1(\Sigma, \mathfrak{e}_8) \times \Omega^2(\Sigma) \times \Omega^3(\Sigma)\,.$$

*The combination of the action functional of def. 7.2.33 and the action functional of def. 7.2.51 sends this to*

$$\exp(iS(C_3))\exp(iS_{8I_8}(\omega, A, B_2)) = \int_\Sigma C_3 \wedge dC_3 + 8\left(H_3 \wedge dH_3 + (H_3 + \mathrm{cs}(A)) \wedge \langle F_\omega \wedge F_\omega\rangle + \frac{1}{8}\mathrm{cs}_{\frac{1}{6}p_2}(\omega)\right) \mathrm{mod} K\,,$$

*where $H_3 = dB + \mathrm{cs}(\omega) - 2\mathrm{cs}(A)$.*

Proof. By the nature of the exp(−)-construction we have

$$\exp(iS_{8I_8}(\omega, A, B)) = \int_\Sigma \left( 8\mathrm{cs}(\omega) \wedge d\mathrm{cs}(\omega) + \mathrm{cs}_{\frac{1}{6}p_2}(\omega) \right) \quad .$$

Inserting here the equation for $H_3$ satisfied by the $\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}$-connections yields

$$\begin{aligned} \cdots &= \int_\Sigma \left( 8(H_3 + 2\mathrm{cs}(A) - dB) \wedge d(H_3 + 2\mathrm{cs}(A) - dB) + \mathrm{cs}_{\frac{1}{6}p_2}(\omega) \right) \\ &= \int_\Sigma \left( 8(H_3 + 2\mathrm{cs}(A)) \wedge d(H_3 + 2\mathrm{cs}(A)) + \mathrm{cs}_{\frac{1}{6}p_2}(\omega) \right) \\ &= \int_\Sigma 8 \left( H_3 \wedge dH_3 + (H_3 + 2\mathrm{cs}(A)) \wedge \langle F_\omega \wedge F_\omega \rangle + \frac{1}{8}\mathrm{cs}_{\frac{1}{6}p_2}(\omega) \right) \end{aligned} \quad .$$

□

### 7.2.10 Action of closed string field theory type

We discuss the form of ∞-Chern-Simons Lagrangians, 7.2.1, on general $L_\infty$-algebras equipped with a quadratic invariant polynomial. The resulting action functionals have the form of that of closed string field theory [Zw93].

**Proposition 7.2.53.** *Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be any $L_\infty$-algebra equipped with a quadratic invariant polynomial $\langle -, - \rangle$.*
*The ∞-Chern-Simons functional associated with this data is*

$$S : A \mapsto \int_\Sigma \left( \langle A \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} A \rangle + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{(k+1)!} \langle A \wedge [A \wedge \cdots A]_k \rangle \right) ,$$

*where*

$$[-, \cdots, -] : \mathfrak{g}^{\otimes k} \to \mathfrak{g}$$

*is the $k$-ary bracket of $\mathfrak{g}$ (prop. 1.2.152).*

Proof. There is a canonical contracting homotopy operator

$$\tau : \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$$

such that $[d_{\mathrm{W}}, \tau] = \mathrm{Id}_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})}$. Accordingly a Chern-Simons element, def. 6.4.147, for $\langle -, - \rangle$ is given by

$$\mathrm{cs} := \tau \langle -, - \rangle \, .$$

We claim that this is indeed the Lagrangian for the above action functional.

To see this, first choose a basis $\{t_a\}$ and write

$$P_{ab} := \langle t_a, t_b \rangle$$

for the components of the invariant polynomial in that basis and

$$C^a_{a_1, \cdots, a_k} := [t_{a_1}, \cdots, t_{a_k}]^a_k$$

as well as

$$C_{a_0, a_1, \cdots, a_k} := P_{a_0 a} C^a_{a_1, \cdots, a_k}$$

for the structure constant of the $k$-ary brackets.

In terms of this we need to show that

$$\mathrm{cs} = P_{ab} t^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{W}} t^b + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{(k+1)!} C_{a_0, \cdots, a_k} t^{a_0} \wedge \cdots \wedge t^{a_k} \,.$$

The computation is best understood via the free dg-algebra $F(\mathfrak{g})$ on the graded vector space $\mathfrak{g}^*$, which in the above basis we may take to be generated by elements $\{t^a, \mathbf{d}t^a\}$. There is a dg-algebra isomorphism

$$F(\mathfrak{g}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$$

given by sending $t^a \mapsto t^a$ and $\mathbf{d}t^a \mapsto d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})} + r^a$.

On $F(\mathfrak{g})$ the contracting homotopy is evidently given by the map $\frac{1}{L} h$, where $L$ is the word length operator in the above basis and $h$ the graded derivation which sends $t^a \mapsto 0$ and $\mathbf{d}t^a \mapsto t^a$. Therefore $\tau$ is given by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\tau} & \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g}) \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & \uparrow{\simeq} \\ F(\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{L}h} & F(\mathfrak{g}) \end{array} \,.$$

With this we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{cs} &:= \tau \langle -, - \rangle \\ &= \tau P_{ab} \left( d_{\mathrm{W}} t^a + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} C^a_{a_1, \cdots, a_k} t^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge t^{a_k} \right) \wedge \left( d_{\mathrm{W}} t^b + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} C^b_{b_1, \cdots, b_k} t^{b_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge t^{b_k} \right) . \\ &= P_{ab} t^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{W}} t^b + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{k!(k+1)} P_{ab} C^b{}_{b_1, \cdots, b_k} t^a \wedge t^{b_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge t^{b_k} \end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark 7.2.54.** If here $\Sigma$ is a completely odd-graded dg-manifold, such as $\Sigma = \mathbb{R}^{0|3}$, then this is the kind of action functional that appears in closed string field theory [Zw93][KaSt08]. In this case the underlying space of the (super-)$L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is the BRST complex of the closed (super-)string and $[-, \cdots, -]_k$ is the string's tree-level $(k+1)$-point function.

### 7.2.11 Non-perturbative AKSZ theory

We now consider *symplectic Lie $n$-algebroids* $\mathfrak{P}$. These carry canonical invariant polynomials $\omega$. We show that the $\infty$-Chern-Simons action functional associated to such $\omega$ is the locally the action functional of the *AKSZ $\sigma$-model quantum field theory* with target space $\mathfrak{P}$ (due to [AKSZ97], usefully reviewed in [Roy06]). Globally it is a non-perturbative refinement of the AKSZ $\sigma$-model with possibly non-trivial instanton sectors of fields.

This section is based on [FRS11].

- 7.2.11.1 – Symplectic $L_\infty$-Algebroids and Symplectic $\infty$-Groupoids;
- 7.2.11.2 – AKSZ $\sigma$-models;
- 7.2.11.3 – The AKSZ action as a Chern-Simons functional ;
- 7.2.11.4 – Ordinary Chern-Simons theory;
- 7.2.11.5 – Poisson $\sigma$-model;
- 7.2.11.6 – Courant $\sigma$-model;
- 7.2.11.7 – Higher abelian Chern-Simons theory.

**7.2.11.1 Symplectic $L_\infty$-Algebroids and Symplectic $\infty$-Groupoids** The notion of *symplectic manifold* formalizes in physics the concept of a *classical mechanical system*. The notion of *geometric quantization*, 5.2.17, of a symplectic manifold is one formalization of the general concept in physics of *quantization* of such a system to a *quantum mechanical system*.

Or rather, the notion of symplectic manifold does not quite capture the most general systems of classical mechanics. One generalization requires passage to *Poisson manifolds*. The original methods of geometric quantization become meaningless on a Poisson manifold that is not symplectic. However, a Poisson structure on a manifold $X$ is equivalent to the structure of a Poisson Lie algebroid $\mathfrak{P}$ over $X$. This is noteworthy, because the latter *is* again symplectic, as a Lie algebroid, even if the underlying Poisson manifold is not symplectic: it is a *symplectic Lie 1-algebroid*, prop. 7.2.70.

Based on related observations it was suggested, [Wei89] that a notion of *symplectic groupoid* should naturally replace that of *symplectic manifold* for the purposes of geometric quantization to yield a notion of *geometric quantization of symplectic groupoids*. Since a symplectic manifold can be regarded as a symplectic Lie 0-algebroid, prop. 7.2.70, and also as a symplectic smooth 0-groupoid this step amounts to a kind of categorification of symplectic geometry.

More or less implicitly, there has been evidence that this shift in perspective is substantial: the *deformation quantization* of a Poisson manifold famously turns out [Kon03] to be constructible in terms of correlators of the 2-dimensional TQFT called the *Poisson $\sigma$-model*, 7.2.11.5, associated with the corresponding Poisson Lie algebroid. The fact that this is 2-dimensional and not 1-dimensional, as the quantum mechanical system that it thus encodes, is a direct reflection of this categorification shift of degree.

On general abstract grounds this already suggests that it makes sense to pass via higher categorification further to symplectic Lie $n$-algebroids, def. 7.2.68, as well as to symplectic 2-groupoids, symplectic 3-groupoids, etc. up to symplectic $\infty$-groupoids, def. 7.2.75.

Formal hints for such a generalization had been noted in [Sev01] (in particular in its concluding table). More indirect – but all the more noteworthy – hints came from quantum field theory, where it was observed that a generalization of symplectic geometry to *multisymplectic geometry* [Hél11] of degree $n$ more naturally captures the description of $n$-dimensional QFT (notice that quantum mechanics may be understood as $(0+1)$-dimensional QFT). For, observe that the symplectic form on a symplectic Lie $n$-algebroid is, while always "binary", nevertheless a representative of de Rham cohomology in degree $n+2$.

There is a natural formalization of these higher symplectic structures in the context of any cohesive $\infty$-topos. Moreover, by 7.2.11.1.2 symplectic forms on $L_\infty$-algebroids have a natural interpretation in $\infty$-Lie theory: they are $L_\infty$-invariant polynomials. This means that the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism applies to them.

**Observation 7.2.55.** From the perspective of $\infty$-Lie theory, a smooth manifold $\Sigma$ equipped with a symplectic form $\omega$ is equivalently a Lie 0-algebroid equipped with a quadratic and non-degenerate *$L_\infty$-invariant polynomial* (def. 6.4.143).

This observation implies

1. a direct $\infty$-Lie theoretic analog of symplectic manifolds: *symplectic Lie $n$-algebroids* and their Lie integration to *symplectic smooth $\infty$-groupoids*
2. the existence of a canonical $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism for every symplectic Lie $n$-algebroid.

This is spelled out below in 7.2.11.1.1, 7.2.11.1.2, 7.2.11.1.3. The $\infty$-group extensions, def. 5.1.302, that are induced by the unrefined $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism, 5.2.14, on a symplectic $\infty$-groupoid are their *prequantum circle $(n+1)$-bundles*, the higher analogs of prequantum line bundles in the geometric quantization of symplectic manifolds. This we discuss in 6.4.21. Further below in 7.2.11 we show that the *refined* $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism, 5.2.14, on a symplectic $\infty$-groupoid constitutes the action functional of the corresponding *AKSZ $\sigma$-model* (discussed below in 7.2.11).

- 7.2.11.1.1 – Symplectic dg-geometry;

- 7.2.11.1.2– Symplectic $L_\infty$-algebroids;
- 7.2.11.1.3 – Symplectic smooth $\infty$-groupoids;

The parts 7.2.11.1.1 and 7.2.11.1.2 are taken from [FRS11].

**7.2.11.1.1 Symplectic dg-geometry** In 6.5 we considered a general abstract notion of infinitesimal thickenings in higher differential geometry and showed how from the point of view of $\infty$-Lie theory this leads to the notion of $L_\infty$-algebroids, def. 6.5.17. As is evident from that definition, these can also be regarded as objects in *dg-geometry* [ToVe05]. We make explicit now some basic aspects of this identification.

The following definitions formulate a simple notion of *affine smooth graded manifolds* and *affine smooth dg-manifolds*. Despite their simplicity these definitions capture in a precise sense all the relevant structure: namely the *local* smooth structure. Globalizations of these definitions can be obtained, if desired, by general abstract constructions.

**Definition 7.2.56.** The category of *affine smooth* $\mathbb{N}$*-graded manifolds* – here called *smooth graded manifolds* for short – is the full subcategory

$$\mathrm{SmoothGrMfd} \subset \mathrm{GrAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

of the opposite category of $\mathbb{N}$-graded-commutative $\mathbb{R}$-algebras on those isomorphic to Grassmann algebras of the form

$$\wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X_0)} \Gamma(V^*)\,,$$

where $X_0$ is an ordinary smooth manifold, $V \to X_0$ is an $\mathbb{N}$-graded smooth vector bundle over $X_0$ degreewise of finite rank, and $\Gamma(V^*)$ is the graded $C^\infty(X)$-module of smooth sections of the dual bundle.

For a smooth graded manifold $X \in \mathrm{SmoothGrMfd}$, we write $C^\infty(X) \in \mathrm{cdgAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}$ for its corresponding dg-algebra *of functions*.

**Remarks.**

- The full subcategory of these objects is equivalent to that of all objects isomorphic to one of this form. We may therefore use both points of view interchangeably.
- Much of the theory works just as well when $V$ is allowed to be $\mathbb{Z}$-graded. This is the case that genuinely corresponds to *derived* (instead of just higher) differential geometry. An important class of examples for this case are BV-BRST complexes which motivate much of the literature. For the purpose of this short note, we shall be content with the $\mathbb{N}$-graded case.
- For an $\mathbb{N}$-graded $C^\infty(X_0)$-module $\Gamma(V^*)$ we have

  $$\wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty} \Gamma(V^*) = C^\infty(X_0) \oplus \Gamma(V_0^*) \oplus \big(\Gamma(V_0^*) \wedge_{C^\infty(X_0)} \Gamma(V_0^*) \oplus \Gamma(V_1^*)\big) \oplus \cdots\,,$$

  with the leftmost summand in degree 0, the next one in degree 1, and so on.
- There is a canonical functor

  $$\mathrm{SmoothMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{SmthGrMfd}$$

  which identifies an ordinary smooth manifold $X$ with the smooth graded manifold whose function algebra is the ordinary algebra of smooth functions $C^\infty(X_0) := C^\infty(X)$ regarded as a graded algebra concentrated in degree 0. This functor is full and faithful and hence exhibits a full subcategory.

All the standard notions of differental geometry apply to differential graded geometry. For instance for $X \in \mathrm{SmoothGrMfd}$, there is the graded vector space $\Gamma(TX)$ of vector fields on $X$, where a vector field is identified with a graded *derivation* $v : C^\infty(X) \to C^\infty(X)$. This is naturally a graded (super) Lie algebra with super Lie bracket the graded commutator of derivations. Notice that for $v \in \Gamma(TX)$ of odd degree we have $[v, v] = v \circ v + v \circ v = 2v^2 : C^\infty(X) \to C^\infty(X)$.

**Definition 7.2.57.** The category of (affine, $\mathbb{N}$-graded) *smooth differential-graded manifolds* is the full subcategory

$$\mathrm{SmoothDgMfd} \subset \mathrm{cdgAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

of the opposite of differential graded-commutative $\mathbb{R}$-algebras on those objects whose underlying graded algebra comes from SmoothGrMfd.

This is equivalently the category whose objects are pairs $(X, v)$ consisting of a smooth graded manifold $X \in \mathrm{SmoothGrMfd}$ and a grade 1 vector field $v \in \Gamma(TX)$, such that $[v, v] = 0$, and whose morphisms $(X_1, v_1) \to (X_2, v_2)$ are morphisms $f : X_1 \to X_2$ such that $v_1 \circ f^* = f^* \circ v_2$.

**Remark 7.2.58.** The dg-algebras appearing here are special in that their degree-0 algebra is naturally not just an $\mathbb{R}$-algebra, but a *smooth algebra* (a "$C^\infty$-ring", see [Stel10] for review and discussion).

**Definition 7.2.59.** The *de Rham complex functor*

$$\Omega^\bullet(-) : \mathrm{SmoothGrMfd} \to \mathrm{cdgAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

sends a dg-manifold $X$ with $C^\infty(X) \simeq \wedge^\bullet_{C^\infty(X_0)}\Gamma(V^*)$ to the Grassmann algebra over $C^\infty(X_0)$ on the graded $C^\infty(X_0)$-module

$$\Gamma(T^*X) \oplus \Gamma(V^*) \oplus \Gamma(V^*[-1])\,,$$

where $\Gamma(T^*X)$ denotes the ordinary smooth 1-form fields on $X_0$ and where $V^*[-1]$ is $V^*$ with the grades *increased* by one. This is equipped with the differential $\mathbf{d}$ defined on generators as follows:

- $\mathbf{d}|_{C^\infty(X_0)} = d_{\mathrm{dR}}$ is the ordinary de Rham differential with values in $\Gamma(T^*X)$;
- $\mathbf{d}|_{\Gamma(V^*)} \to \Gamma(V^*[-1])$ is the degree-shift isomorphism
- and $\mathbf{d}$ vanishes on all remaining generators.

**Definition 7.2.60.** Observe that $\Omega^\bullet(-)$ evidently factors through the defining inclusion $\mathrm{SmoothDgMfd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{cdgAlg}_{\mathbb{R}}$. Write

$$\mathfrak{T}(-) : \mathrm{SmoothGrMfd} \to \mathrm{SmoothDgMfd}$$

for this factorization.

The dg-space $\mathfrak{T}X$ is often called the *shifted tangent bundle* of $X$ and denoted $T[1]X$.

**Observation 7.2.61.** For $\Sigma$ an ordinary smooth manifold and for $X$ a graded manifold corresponding to a vector bundle $V \to X_0$, there is a natural bijection

$$\mathrm{SmoothGrMfd}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, X) \simeq \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma, V)$$

where on the right we have the set of $V$-valued smooth differential forms on $\Sigma$: tuples consisting of a smooth function $\phi_0 : \Sigma \to X_0$, and for each $n > 1$ an ordinary differential $n$-form $\phi_n \in \Omega^n(\Sigma, \phi_0^* V_{n-1})$ with values in the pullback bundle of $V_{n-1}$ along $\phi_0$.

The standard Cartan calculus of differential geometry generalizes directly to graded smooth manifolds. For instance, given a vector field $v \in \Gamma(TX)$ on $X \in \mathrm{SmoothGrMfd}$, there is the *contraction derivation*

$$\iota_v : \Omega^\bullet(X) \to \Omega^\bullet(X)$$

on the de Rham complex of $X$, and hence the *Lie derivative*

$$\mathcal{L}_v := [\iota_v, \mathbf{d}] : \Omega^\bullet(X) \to \Omega^\bullet(X)\,.$$

**Definition 7.2.62.** For $X \in \mathrm{SmoothGrMfd}$ the *Euler vector field* $\epsilon \in \Gamma(TX)$ is defined over any coordinate patch $U \to X$ to be given by the formula

$$\epsilon|_U := \sum_a \deg(x^a) x^a \frac{\partial}{\partial x^a} \,,$$

where $\{x^a\}$ is a basis of generators and $\deg(x^a)$ the degree of a generator. The *grade* of a homogeneous element $\alpha$ in $\Omega^\bullet(X)$ is the unique natural number $n \in \mathbb{N}$ with

$$\mathcal{L}_\epsilon \alpha = n\alpha \,.$$

**Remarks.**

- This implies that for $x^i$ an element of grade $n$ on $U$, the 1-form $\mathbf{d}x^i$ is also of grade $n$. This is why we speak of *grade* (as in "graded manifold") instead of *degree* here.
- Since coordinate transformations on a graded manifold are grading-preserving, the Euler vector field is indeed well-defined. Note that the degree-0 coordinates do not appear in the Euler vector field.

The existence of $\epsilon$ implies the following useful statement (amplified in [Roy02]), which is a trivial variant of what in grade 0 would be the standard Poincaré lemma.

**Observation 7.2.63.** On a graded manifold, every closed differential form $\omega$ of positive grade $n$ is exact: the form

$$\lambda := \frac{1}{n} \iota_\epsilon \omega$$

satisfies

$$\mathbf{d}\lambda = \omega \,.$$

**Definition 7.2.64.** A *symplectic dg-manifold* of grade $n \in \mathbb{N}$ is a dg-manifold $(X, v)$ equipped with 2-form $\omega \in \Omega^2(X)$ which is

- non-degenerate;
- closed;

as usual for symplectic forms, and in addition

- of grade $n$;
- $v$-invariant: $\mathcal{L}_v \omega = 0$.

In a local chart $U$ with coordinates $\{x^a\}$ we may find functions $\{\omega_{ab} \in C^\infty(U)\}$ such that

$$\omega|_U = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{d}x^a \, \omega_{ab} \wedge \mathbf{d}x^b \,,$$

where summation of repeated indices is implied. We say that $U$ is a *Darboux chart* for $(X, \omega)$ if the $\omega_{ab}$ are constant.

**Observation 7.2.65.** The function algebra of a symplectic dg-manifold $(X, \omega)$ of grade $n$ is naturally equipped with a Poisson bracket

$$\{-,-\} : C^\infty(X) \otimes C^\infty(X) \to C^\infty(X)$$

which decreases grade by $n$. On a local coordinate patch $\{x^a\}$ this is given by

$$\{f, g\} = \frac{f6}{x^a 6} \omega^{ab} \frac{\partial g}{\partial x^b} \,,$$

where $\{\omega^{ab}\}$ is the inverse matrix to $\{\omega_{ab}\}$, and where the graded differentiation in the left factor is to be taken from the right, as indicated.

**Definition 7.2.66.** For $\pi \in C^\infty(X)$ and $v \in \Gamma(TX)$, we say that $\pi$ *is a Hamiltonian for* $v$, or equivalently, that $v$ *is the Hamiltonian vector field of* $\pi$ if

$$\mathbf{d}\pi = \iota_v \omega .$$

Note that the convention $(-1)^{n+1}\mathbf{d}\pi = \iota_v\omega$ is also frequently used for defining Hamiltonians in the context of graded geometry.

**Remark 7.2.67.** In a local coordinate chart $\{x^a\}$ the defining equation $\mathbf{d}\pi = \iota_v\omega$ becomes

$$\mathbf{d}x^a \frac{\partial \pi}{\partial x^a} = \omega_{ab} v^a \wedge \mathbf{d}x^b = \omega_{ab}\mathbf{d}x^a \wedge v^b ,$$

implying that

$$\omega_{ab} v^b = \frac{\partial \pi}{\partial x^a} .$$

**7.2.11.1.2 Symplectic $L_\infty$-algebroids** Here we discuss $L_\infty$-algebroids, def. 6.5.17, equipped with *symplectic structure*, which we conceive of as: equipped with de Rham cocycles that are *invariant polynomials*, def. 6.4.143.

**Definition 7.2.68.** A *symplectic Lie $n$-algebroid* $(\mathfrak{P}, \omega)$ is a Lie $n$-algebroid $\mathfrak{P}$ equipped with a quadratic non-degenerate invariant polynomial $\omega \in W(\mathfrak{P})$ of degree $n+2$.

This means that

- on each chart $U \to X$ of the base manifold $X$ of $\mathfrak{P}$, there is a basis $\{x^a\}$ for $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{a}|_U)$ such that

$$\omega = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{d}x^a\, \omega_{ab} \wedge \mathbf{d}x^b$$

  with $\{\omega_{ab} \in \mathbb{R} \hookrightarrow C^\infty(X)\}$ and $\deg(x^a) + \deg(x^b) = n$;

- the coefficient matrix $\{\omega_{ab}\}$ has an inverse;

- we have

$$d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P})}\omega = d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{P})}\omega + \mathbf{d}\omega = 0 .$$

The following observation essentially goes back to [Sev01] and [Roy02].

**Proposition 7.2.69.** *There is a full and faithful embedding of symplectic dg-manifolds of grade $n$ into symplectic Lie $n$-algebroids.*

Proof. The dg-manifold itself is identified with an $L_\infty$-algebroid by def. 6.5.17. Write $v$ for the vector field on the graded manifold which corresponds to the differential. For $\omega \in \Omega^2(X)$ a symplectic form, the conditions $\mathbf{d}\omega = 0$ and $\mathcal{L}_v\omega = 0$ imply $(\mathbf{d} + \mathcal{L}_v)\omega = 0$ and hence that under the identification $\Omega^\bullet(X) \simeq \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})$ this is an invariant polynomial on $\mathfrak{a}$.

It remains to observe that the $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{a}$ is in fact a Lie $n$-algebroid. This is implied by the fact that $\omega$ is of grade $n$ and non-degenerate: the former condition implies that it has no components in elements of grade $> n$ and the latter then implies that all such elements vanish. □

The following characterization may be taken as a definition of Poisson Lie algebroids and Courant Lie 2-algebroids.

**Proposition 7.2.70.** *Symplectic Lie $n$-algebroids are equivalently:*

- *for $n = 0$: ordinary symplectic manifolds;*

- *for $n = 1$: Poisson Lie algebroids;*

- *for $n = 2$: Courant Lie 2-algebroids.*

See [Roy02, Sev01] for more discussion.

**Proposition 7.2.71.** *Let $(\mathfrak{P}, \omega)$ be a symplectic Lie $n$-algebroid for positive $n$ in the image of the embedding of proposition 7.2.69. Then it carries the canonical $L_\infty$-algebroid cocycle*

$$\pi := \frac{1}{n+1} \iota_\epsilon \iota_v \omega \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{P})$$

*which moreover is the Hamiltonian, according to definition 7.2.66, of $d_{\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{P})}$.*

Proof. Since $\mathbf{d}\omega = \mathcal{L}_v \omega = 0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{d}\iota_\epsilon \iota_v \omega &= \mathbf{d}\iota_v \iota_\epsilon \omega \\ &= (\iota_v \mathbf{d} - \mathcal{L}_v)\iota_\epsilon \omega \\ &= \iota_v \mathcal{L}_\epsilon \omega - [\mathcal{L}_v, \iota_\epsilon]\omega \\ &= n \iota_v \omega - \iota_{[v,\epsilon]}\omega \\ &= (n+1)\iota_v \omega, \end{aligned}$$

where Cartan's formula $[\mathcal{L}_v, \iota_\epsilon] = \iota_{[v,\epsilon]}$ and the identity $[v, \epsilon] = -[\epsilon, v] = -v$ have been used. Therefore $\pi := \frac{1}{n+1}\iota_\epsilon \iota_v \omega$ satisfies the defining equation $\mathbf{d}\pi = \iota_v \omega$ from definition 7.2.66. □

**Remark 7.2.72.** On a local chart with coordinates $\{x^a\}$ we have

$$\pi\big|_U = \frac{1}{n+1} \omega_{ab} \ \deg(x^a) x^a \ \wedge v^b \, .$$

Our central observation now is the following.

**Proposition 7.2.73.** *The cocycle $\frac{1}{n}\pi$ from prop. 7.2.71 is in transgression with the invariant polynomial $\omega$. A Chern-Simons element witnessing the transgression according to def. 6.4.147 is*

$$\mathrm{cs} = \frac{1}{n} \left( \iota_\epsilon \omega + \pi \right) \, .$$

Proof. It is clear that $i^* \mathrm{cs} = \frac{1}{n}\pi$. So it remains to check that $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P})}\mathrm{cs} = \omega$. As in the proof of proposition 7.2.71, we use $\mathbf{d}\omega = \mathcal{L}_v \omega = 0$ and Cartan's identity $[\mathcal{L}_v, \iota_\epsilon] = \iota_{[v,\epsilon]} = -\iota_v$. By these, the first summand in $d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P})}(\iota_\epsilon \omega + \pi)$ is

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P})}\iota_\epsilon \omega &= (\mathbf{d} + \mathcal{L}_v)\iota_\epsilon \omega \\ &= [\mathbf{d} + \mathcal{L}_v, \iota_\epsilon]\omega \\ &= n\omega - \iota_v \omega \\ &= n\omega - \mathbf{d}\pi \end{aligned} .$$

The second summand is simply

$$d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P})}\pi = \mathbf{d}\pi$$

since $\pi$ is a cocycle. □

**Remark 7.2.74.** In a coordinate patch $\{x^a\}$ the Chern-Simons element is

$$\mathrm{cs}\big|_U = \frac{1}{n} \left( \omega_{ab} \deg(x^a) x^a \ \wedge \mathbf{d}x^b + \pi \right) \, .$$

In this formula one can substitute $\mathbf{d} = d_{\mathrm{W}} - d_{\mathrm{CE}}$, and this kind of substitution will be crucial for the proof our main statement in proposition 7.2.83 below. Since $d_{\mathrm{CE}} x^i = v^i$ and using remark 7.2.72 we find

$$\sum_a \omega_{ab} \deg(x^a) x^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{CE}} x^b = (n+1)\pi \,,$$

and hence

$$\mathrm{cs}\big|_U = \frac{1}{n}\left(\deg(x^a)\,\omega_{ab} x^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P})} x^b - n\pi\right) \,.$$

In the section 7.2.11 we show that this transgression element cs *is* the AKSZ-Lagrangian.

**7.2.11.1.3 Symplectic smooth $\infty$-groupoids** We define *symplectic smooth $\infty$-groupoids* in terms of their underlying symplectic $L_\infty$-algebroids.

Recall that for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, a *symplectic Lie $n$-algebroid* $(\mathfrak{P}, \omega)$ is (def. 7.2.68) an $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{P}$ that is equipped with a quadratic and non-degenerate $L_\infty$-invariant polynomial. Under Lie integration, def. 6.4.79, $\mathfrak{P}$ integrates to a smooth $n$-groupoid $\tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{P}) \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$. Under the $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism, 6.4.17, the invariant polynomial induces a differential form on the smooth $\infty$-groupoid, 5.2.10:

$$\omega : \tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{P}) \to \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+2}\mathbb{R}$$

representing a class $[\omega] \in H^{n+2}_{dR}(\tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{P}))$.

**Definition 7.2.75.** Write

$$\mathrm{SymplSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}/(\coprod_n \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+2}\mathbb{R})$$

for the full sub-$\infty$-category of the over-$\infty$-topos of $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ over the de Rham coefficient objects on those objects in the image of this construction.

We say an object on $\mathrm{SymplSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is a *symplectic smooth $\infty$-groupoid*.

**Remark 7.2.76.** There are evident variations of this for the ambient $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ replaced by some variant, such as $\mathrm{FormalSmooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, or $\mathrm{SmoothSuper}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, 6.6).

We now spell this out for $n = 1$. The following notion was introduced in [Wei89] in the study of geometric quantization.

**Definition 7.2.77.** A *symplectic groupoid* is a Lie groupoid $\mathcal{G}$ equipped with a differential 2-form $\omega_1 \in \Omega^2(\mathcal{G}_1)$ which is

1. a symplectic 2-form on $\mathcal{G}_1$;
2. closed as a simplicial form:

   $$\delta\omega_1 = \partial_0^* \omega_1 - \partial_1^* \omega_1 + \partial_2^* \omega_1 = 0 \,,$$

   where $\partial_i : \mathcal{G}_2 \to \mathcal{G}_1$ are the face maps in the nerve of $\mathcal{G}$.

**Example 7.2.78.** Let $(X, \omega)$ be an ordinary symplectic manifold. Then its fundamental groupoid $\Pi_1(X)$ canonically is a symplectic groupoid with $\omega_1 := \partial_1^* \omega - \partial_0^* \omega$.

**Proposition 7.2.79.** *Let $\mathfrak{P}$ be the symplectic Lie 1-algebroid (Poisson Lie algebroid), def. 7.2.68, induced by the Poisson manifold structure corresponding to $(X, \omega)$. Write*

$$\omega : \mathfrak{T}\mathfrak{P} \to \mathfrak{T} b^3 \mathbb{R}$$

*for the canonical invariant polynomial.*

*Then the corresponding $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism according to 6.4.17*

$$\exp(\omega) : \exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{diff}} \to \mathbf{B}^3_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbb{R}$$

*exhibits the symplectic groupoid from example 7.2.78.*

Proof. We start with the simple situation where $(X, \omega)$ has a global Darboux coordinate chart $\{x^i\}$. Write $\{\omega_{ij}\}$ for the components of the symplectic form in these coordinates, and $\{\omega^{ij}\}$ for the components of the inverse.

Then the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{P})$ is generated from $\{x^i\}$ in degree 0 and $\{\partial_i\}$ in degree 1, with differential given by

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}} x^i = -\omega^{ij}\partial_j$$

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\partial_i = \frac{\partial \pi^{jk}}{\partial x^i}\partial_j \wedge \partial_k = 0\,.$$

The differential in the corresponding Weil algebra is hence

$$d_{\mathrm{W}} x^i = -\omega^{ij}\partial_j + \mathbf{d}x^i$$

$$d_{\mathrm{W}}\partial_i = \mathbf{d}\partial_i\,.$$

By prop. 7.2.70, the symplectic invariant polynomial is

$$\omega = \mathbf{d}x^i \wedge \mathbf{d}\partial_i \in W(\mathfrak{P})\,.$$

Clearly it is useful to introduce a new basis of generators with

$$\partial^i := -\omega^{ij}\partial_j\,.$$

In this new basis we have a manifest isomorphism

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{P}) = \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{T}X)$$

with the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra of the tangent Lie algebroid of $X$.

Therefore the Lie integration of $\mathfrak{P}$ is the fundamental groupoid of $X$, which, since we have assumed global Darboux oordinates and hence contractible $X$, is just the pair groupoid:

$$\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P}) = \Pi_1(X) = (\ X \times X \rightrightarrows X\ )\,.$$

It remains to show that the symplectic form on $\mathfrak{P}$ makes this a symplectic groupoid.

Notice that in the new basis the invariant polynomial reads

$$\begin{aligned} \omega &= -\omega_{ij}\mathbf{d}x^i \wedge \mathbf{d}\partial^j \\ &= \mathbf{d}(\omega_{ij}\partial^i \wedge \mathbf{d}x^j) \end{aligned}.$$

The corresponding $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism, 6.4.17, that we need to compute is given by the $\infty$-anafunctor

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{diff}} & \xrightarrow{\exp(\omega)} & \exp(b^3\mathbb{R})_{\mathrm{dR}} & \xrightarrow{\int_{\Delta^\bullet}} & \flat_{dR}\mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow{\simeq} & & & & \\ \exp(\mathfrak{P}) & & & & \end{array}\ .$$

Over a test space $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ and in degree 1 an element in $\exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{diff}}$ is a pair $(X^i, \eta^i)$

$$X^i \in C^\infty(U \times \Delta^1)$$

$$\eta^i \in \Omega^1_{\mathrm{vert}}(U \times \Delta^1)$$

subject to the constraint that along $\Delta^1$ we have

$$d_{\Delta^1} X^i + \eta^i_{\Delta^1} = 0\,.$$

The vertical morphism $\exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{diff}} \to \exp(\mathfrak{P})$ has in fact a section whose image is given by those pairs for which $\eta^i$ has no leg along $U$. We therefore find the desired form on $\exp(\mathfrak{P})$ by evaluating the top morphism on pairs of this form.

Such a pair is taken by the top morphism to

$$\begin{aligned}(X^i, \eta^j) \mapsto & \int_{\Delta^1} \omega_{ij} F_{X^i} \wedge F_{\partial^j} \\ &= \int_{\Delta^1} \omega_{ij} (d_{dR} X^i + \eta^i) \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} \eta^j \in \Omega^3(U)\end{aligned} .$$

Using the above constraint and the condition that $\eta^i$ has no leg along $U$, this becomes

$$\cdots = \int_{\Delta^1} \omega_{ij} d_U X^i \wedge d_U d_{\Delta^1} X^j .$$

By the Stokes theorem the integration over $\Delta^1$ yields

$$\begin{aligned}\cdots &= \omega_{ij} d_{\mathrm{dR}} X^i \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} X^j|_0 - \omega_{ij} d_{\mathrm{dR}} X^i \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} X^j|_1 \\ &= \partial_1^* \omega - \partial_0^* \omega\end{aligned} .$$

□

**7.2.11.2 AKSZ $\sigma$-Models** The class of topological field theories known as *AKSZ $\sigma$-models*[AKSZ97] contains in dimension 3 ordinary Chern-Simons theory (see [Fr95] for a comprehensive review) as well as its Lie algebroid generalization (the *Courant $\sigma$-model* [Ike03]), and in dimension 2 the Poisson $\sigma$-model (see [CaFe00] for a review). It is therefore clear that the AKSZ construction is *some* sort of generalized Chern-Simons theory. Here we demonstrate that this statement is true also in a useful precise sense.

Our discussion proceeds from the observation that the standard Chern-Simons action functional has a systematic origin in Chern-Weil theory (see for instance [GHV73] for a classical textbook treatment and [HoSi05] for the refinement to differential cohomology that we need here):

The refined Chern-Weil homomorphism assigns to any invariant polynomial $\langle - \rangle : \mathfrak{g}^{\otimes n} \to \mathbb{R}$ on a Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ of compact type a map that sends $\mathfrak{g}$-connections $\nabla$ on a smooth manifold $X$ to cocycles $[\hat{\mathbf{p}}_{\langle - \rangle}(\nabla)] \in H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{diff}}(X)$ in *ordinary differential cohomology*. These differential cocycles refine the *curvature characteristic class* $[\langle F_\nabla \rangle] \in H^{n+1}_{dR}(X)$ in de Rham cohomology to a fully fledged *line $n$-bundle with connection*, also known as a *bundle $(n-1)$-gerbe with connection*. And just as an ordinary line bundle (a "line 1-bundle") with connection assigns holonomy to curves, so a line $n$-bundle with connection assigns holonomy $\mathrm{hol}_{\hat{\mathbf{p}}}(\Sigma)$ to $n$-dimensional trajectories $\Sigma \to X$. For the special case where $\langle - \rangle$ is the Killing form polynomial and $X = \Sigma$ with $\dim \Sigma = 3$ one finds that this volume holonomy map $\nabla \mapsto \mathrm{hol}_{\hat{\mathrm{p}}_{\langle - \rangle}(\nabla)}(\Sigma)$ is precisely the standard Chern-Simons action functional. Similarly, for $\langle - \rangle$ any higher invariant polynomial this holonomy action functional has as Lagrangian the corresponding higher Chern-Simons form. In summary, this means that Chern-Simons-type action functionals on Lie algebra-valued connections are the images of the refined Chern-Weil homomorphism.

In 5.2.14 a generalization of the Chern-Weil homomorphism to *higher* ("derived") differential geometry has been established. In this context smooth manifolds are generalized first to orbifolds, then to general Lie groupoids, to Lie 2-groupoids and finally to smooth $\infty$-groupoids (smooth $\infty$-stacks), while Lie algebras are generalized to Lie 2-algebras etc., up to $L_\infty$-algebras and more generally to Lie $n$-algebroids and finally to $L_\infty$-algebroids.

In this context one has for $\mathfrak{a}$ any $L_\infty$-algebroid a natural notion of $\mathfrak{a}$-valued $\infty$-connections on $\exp(\mathfrak{a})$-principal smooth $\infty$-bundles (where $\exp(\mathfrak{a})$ is a smooth $\infty$-groupoid obtained by Lie integration from $\mathfrak{a}$). By analyzing the abstractly defined higher Chern-Weil homomorphism in this context one finds a direct higher analog of the above situation: there is a notion of invariant polynomials $\langle - \rangle$ on an $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{a}$ and these induce maps from $\mathfrak{a}$-valued $\infty$-connections to line $n$-bundles with connections as before .

This construction drastically simplifies when one restricts attention to *trivial* $\infty$-bundles with (nontrivial) $\mathfrak{a}$-connections. Over a smooth manifold $\Sigma$ these are simply given by dg-algebra homomorphisms

$$A : \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a}) \to \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma)\,,$$

where $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})$ is the *Weil algebra* of the $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{a}$ [SSS09a], and $\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma)$ is the de Rham algebra of $\Sigma$ (which is indeed the Weil algebra of $\Sigma$ thought of as an $L_\infty$-algebroid concentrated in degree 0). Then for $\langle - \rangle \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})$ an invariant polynomial, the corresponding $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism is presented by a choice of "Chern-Simons element" $\mathrm{cs} \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})$, which exhibits the *transgression* of $\langle - \rangle$ to an $L_\infty$-cocycle (the higher analog of a cocycle in Lie algebra cohomology): the dg-morphism $A$ naturally maps the Chern-Simons element cs of $A$ to a differential form $\mathrm{cs}(A) \in \Omega^\bullet(\Sigma)$ and its integral is the corresponding $\infty$-Chern-Simons action functional $S_{\langle - \rangle}$

$$S_{\langle - \rangle} : A \mapsto \mathrm{hol}_{\hat{\mathbf{p}_{\langle - \rangle}}}(\Sigma) = \int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}_{\langle - \rangle}(A)\,.$$

Even though trivial $\infty$-bundles with $\mathfrak{a}$-connections are a very particular subcase of the general $\infty$-Chern-Weil theory, they are rich enough to contain AKSZ theory. Namely, here we show that a symplectic dg-manifold of grade $n$ – which is the geometrical datum of the target space defining an AKSZ $\sigma$-model – is naturally equivalently an $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{P}$ endowed with a quadratic and non-degenerate invariant polynomial $\omega$ of grade $n$. Moreover, under this identification the canonical Hamiltonian $\pi$ on the symplectic target dg-manifold is identified as an $L_\infty$-cocycle on $\mathfrak{P}$. Finally, the invariant polynomial $\omega$ is naturally in transgression with the cocycle $\pi$ via a Chern-Simons element $\mathrm{cs}_\omega$ that turns out to be the Lagrangian of the AKSZ $\sigma$-model:

$$\int_\Sigma L_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}(-) = \int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}_\omega(-)\,.$$

(An explicit description of $L_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}$ is given below in def. 7.2.81)

In summary this means that we find the following dictionary of concepts:

| **Chern-Weil theory** | | **AKSZ theory** |
|---|---|---|
| cocycle | $\pi$ | Hamiltonian |
| transgression element | cs | Lagrangian |
| invariant polynomial | $\omega$ | symplectic structure |

More precisely, we (explain and then) prove here the following theorem:

**Theorem 7.2.80.** *For $(\mathfrak{P}, \omega)$ an $L_\infty$-algebroid with a quadratic non-degenerate invariant polynomial, the corresponding $\infty$-Chern-Weil homomorphism*

$$\nabla \mapsto \mathrm{hol}_{\hat{\mathbf{p}_\omega}}(\Sigma)$$

*sends $\mathfrak{P}$-valued $\infty$-connections $\nabla$ to their corresponding exponentiated AKSZ action*

$$\cdots = \exp(i \int_\Sigma L_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}(\nabla))\,.$$

.

The local differential form data involved in this statement is at the focus of attention in this section here and contained in prop. 7.2.83 below.

We consider, in definition 7.2.81 below, for any symplectic dg-manifold $(X, \omega)$ a functional $S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}$ on spaces of maps $\mathfrak{T}\Sigma \to X$ of smooth graded manifolds. While only this precise definition is referred to in the remainder of the section, we begin by indicating informally the original motivation of $S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}$. The reader uncomfortable with these somewhat vague considerations can take note of def. 7.2.81 and then skip to the next section.

Generally, a *σ-model field theory* is, roughly, one

1. whose fields over a space $\Sigma$ are maps $\phi : \Sigma \to X$ to some space $X$;
2. whose action functional is, apart from a kinetic term, the transgression of some kind of cocycle on $X$ to the mapping space $\mathrm{Map}(\Sigma, X)$.

Here the terms "space", "maps" and "cocycles" are to be made precise in a suitable context. One says that $\Sigma$ is the *worldvolume*, $X$ is the *target space* and the cocycle is the *background gauge field*.

For instance, an ordinary charged particle (such as an electron) is described by a $\sigma$-model where $\Sigma = (0, t) \subset \mathbb{R}$ is the abstract *worldline*, where $X$ is a (pseudo-)Riemannian smooth manifold (for instance our spacetime), and where the background cocycle is a line bundle with connection on $X$ (a degree-2 cocycle in ordinary differential cohomology of $X$, representing a background *electromagnetic field*). Up to a kinetic term, the action functional is the holonomy of the connection over a given curve $\phi : \Sigma \to X$. A textbook discussion of these standard kinds of $\sigma$-models is, for instance, in [DeMo99].

The $\sigma$-models which we consider here are *higher* generalizations of this example, where the background gauge field is a cocycle of higher degree (a higher bundle with connection) and where the worldvolume is accordingly higher dimensional. In addition, $X$ is allowed to be not just a manifold, but an approximation to a *higher orbifold* (a smooth $\infty$-groupoid).

More precisely, here we take the category of spaces to be SmoothDgMfd from def. 7.2.57. We take target space to be a symplectic dg-manifold $(X, \omega)$ and the worldvolume to be the shifted tangent bundle $\mathfrak{T}\Sigma$ of a compact smooth manifold $\Sigma$. Following [AKSZ97], one may imagine that we can form a smooth $\mathbb{Z}$-graded mapping space $\mathrm{Maps}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, X)$ of smooth graded manifolds. On this space the canonical vector fields $v_\Sigma$ and $v_X$ naturally have commuting actions from the left and from the right, respectively, so that their sum $v_\Sigma + v_X$ equips $\mathrm{Maps}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, X)$ itself with the structure of a differential graded smooth manifold.

Next we take the "cocycle" on $X$ (to be made precise in the next section) to be the Hamiltonian $\pi$ (def. 7.2.66) of $v_X$ with respect to the symplectic structure $\omega$, according to def. 7.2.64. One wants to assume that there is a kind of Riemannian structure on $\mathfrak{T}\Sigma$ that allows us to form the transgression

$$\int_{\mathfrak{T}\Sigma} \mathrm{ev}^* \omega := p_! \mathrm{ev}^* \omega$$

by pull-push through the canonical correspondence

$$\mathrm{Maps}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, X) \xleftarrow{\;p\;} \mathrm{Maps}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, X) \times \mathfrak{T}\Sigma \xrightarrow{\;\mathrm{ev}\;} X \ .$$

When one succeeds in making this precise, one expects to find that $\int_{\mathfrak{T}\Sigma} \mathrm{ev}^* \omega$ is in turn a symplectic structure on the mapping space.

This implies that the vector field $v_\Sigma + v_X$ on mapping space has a Hamiltonian

$$\mathbf{S} \in C^\infty(\mathrm{Maps}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, X)) \,, \;\; \text{s.t. } \; \mathbf{dS} = \iota_{v_\Sigma + v_x} \int_{\mathfrak{T}\Sigma} \mathrm{ev}^* \omega \,.$$

The grade-0 component

$$S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}} := \mathbf{S}|_{\mathrm{Maps}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, X)_0}$$

constitutes a functional on the space of morphisms of graded manifolds $\phi : \mathfrak{T}\Sigma \to X$. This is the *AKSZ action functional* defining the AKSZ $\sigma$-model with target space $X$ and background field/cocycle $\omega$.

In [AKSZ97], this procedure is indicated only somewhat vaguely. The focus of attention there is on a discussion, from this perspective, of the action functionals of the 2-dimensional $\sigma$-models called the *A-model* and the *B-model*. In [Roy06] a more detailed discussion of the general construction is given, including an explicit formula for $\mathbf{S}$, and hence for $S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}$. That formula is the following:

**Definition 7.2.81.** For $(X, \omega)$ a symplectic dg-manifold of grade $n$ with global Darboux coordinates $\{x^a\}$, $\Sigma$ a smooth compact manifold of dimension $(n+1)$ and $k \in \mathbb{R}$, the *AKSZ action functional*

$$S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}} : \mathrm{SmoothGrMfd}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, X) \to \mathbb{R}$$

is

$$S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}} : \phi \mapsto \int_\Sigma \left( \frac{1}{2} \omega_{ab} \phi^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} \phi^b - \phi^* \pi \right) ,$$

where $\pi$ is the Hamiltonian for $v_X$ with respect to $\omega$ and where on the right we are interpreting fields as forms on $\Sigma$ according to prop. 7.2.61.

This formula hence defines an infinite class of $\sigma$-models depending on the target space structure $(X, \omega)$. (One can also consider arbitrary relative factors between the first and the second term, but below we shall find that the above choice is singled out). In [AKSZ97], it was already noticed that ordinary Chern-Simons theory is a special case of this for $\omega$ of grade 2, as is the Poisson $\sigma$-model for $\omega$ of grade 1 (and hence, as shown there, also the A-model and the B-model). The main example in [Roy06] spells out the general case for $\omega$ of grade 2, which is called the *Courant $\sigma$-model* there. (We review and re-derive all these examples in detail below.)

One nice aspect of this construction is that it follows immediately that the full Hamiltonian $\mathbf{S}$ on the mapping space satisfies $\{\mathbf{S}, \mathbf{S}\} = 0$. Moreover, using the standard formula for the internal hom of chain complexes, one finds that the cohomology of $(\mathrm{Maps}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, X), v_\Sigma + v_X)$ in degree 0 is the space of functions on those fields that satisfy the Euler-Lagrange equations of $S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}$. Taken together, these facts imply that $\mathbf{S}$ is a solution of the "master equation" of a BV-BRST complex for the quantum field theory defined by $S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}$. This is a crucial ingredient for the quantization of the model, and this is what the AKSZ construction is mostly used for in the literature (for instance [CaFe00]).

Here we want to focus on another nice aspect of the AKSZ-construction: it hints at a deeper reason for *why* the $\sigma$-models of this type are special. It is indeed one of the very few proposals for what a general abstract mechanism might be that picks out among the vast space of all possible local action functionals those that seem to be of relevance "in nature".

We now proceed to show that the class of action functionals $S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}$ are precisely those that higher Chern-Weil theory canonically associates to target data $(X, \omega)$. Since higher Chern-Weil theory in turn is canonically given on very general abstract grounds, this in a sense amounts to a derivation of $S_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}$ from "first principles", and it shows that a wealth of very general theory applies to these systems.

**7.2.11.3 The AKSZ action as an $\infty$-Chern-Simons functional** We now show how an $L_\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{a}$ endowed with a triple $(\pi, \mathrm{cs}, \omega)$ consisting of a Chern-Simons element transgressing an invariant polynomial $\omega$ to a cocycle $\pi$ defines an AKSZ-type $\sigma$-model action. The starting point is to take as target space the tangent Lie $\infty$-algebroid $\mathfrak{T}\mathfrak{a}$, i.e., to consider as *space of fields* of the theory the space of maps $\mathrm{Maps}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, \mathfrak{T}\mathfrak{a})$ from the worldsheet $\Sigma$ to $\mathfrak{T}\mathfrak{a}$. Dually, this is the space of morphisms of dgcas from $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})$ to $\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma)$, i.e., the space of degree 1 $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential forms on $\Sigma$ from definition 1.2.176.

**Remark 7.2.82.** As we noticed in the introduction, in the context of the AKSZ $\sigma$-model a degree 1 $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential form on $\Sigma$ should be thought of as the datum of a (notrivial) $\mathfrak{a}$-valued connection on a trivial principal $\infty$-bundle on $\Sigma$.

Now that we have defined the space of fields, we have to define the action. We have seen in definition 1.2.178 that a degree 1 $\mathfrak{a}$-valued differential form $A$ on $\Sigma$ maps the Chern-Simons element $\mathrm{cs} \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{a})$ to a differential form $\mathrm{cs}(A)$ on $\Sigma$. Integrating this differential form on $\Sigma$ will therefore give an AKSZ-type action which is naturally interpreted as an higher Chern-Simons action functional:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Maps}(\mathfrak{T}\Sigma, \mathfrak{T}\mathfrak{a}) &\to \mathbb{R} \\ A &\mapsto \int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}(A). \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 7.2.80 then reduces to showing that, when $\{\mathfrak{a}, (\pi, \mathrm{cs}, \omega)\}$ is the set of $L_\infty$-algebroid data arising from a symplectic Lie $n$-algebroid $(\mathfrak{P}, \omega)$, the AKSZ-type action dscribed above is precisely the AKSZ action for $(\mathfrak{P}, \omega)$. More precisely, this is stated as follows.

**Proposition 7.2.83.** *For $(\mathfrak{P}, \omega)$ a symplectic Lie $n$-algebroid coming by proposition 7.2.69 from a symplectic dg-manifold of positive grade $n$ with global Darboux chart, the action functional induced by the canonical Chern-Simons element*

$$\mathrm{cs} \in \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P})$$

*from proposition 7.2.73 is the AKSZ action from definition 7.2.81:*

$$\int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs} = \int_\Sigma L_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}\,.$$

*In fact the two Lagrangians differ at most by an exact term*

$$\mathrm{cs} \sim L_{\mathrm{AKSZ}}\,.$$

Proof. We have seen in remark 7.2.74 that in Darboux coordinates $\{x^a\}$ where

$$\omega = \frac{1}{2}\omega_{ab}\mathbf{d}x^a \wedge \mathbf{d}x^b$$

the Chern-Simons element from proposition 7.2.73 is given by

$$\mathrm{cs} = \frac{1}{n}\left(\deg(x^a)\,\omega_{ab}x^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P})}x^b - n\pi\right)\,.$$

This means that for $\Sigma$ an $(n+1)$-dimensional manifold and

$$\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \leftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P}) : \phi$$

a (degree 1) $\mathfrak{P}$-valued differential form on $\Sigma$ we have

$$\int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}(\phi) = \frac{1}{n}\int_\Sigma \left(\sum_{a,b}\deg(x^a)\,\omega_{ab}\phi^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^b - n\pi(\phi)\right)\quad ,$$

where we used $\phi(d_{\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P})}x^b) = d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^b$, as in remark 1.2.177. Here the asymmetry in the coefficients of the first term is only apparent. Using integration by parts on a closed $\Sigma$ we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_\Sigma \sum_{a,b}\deg(x^a)\,\omega_{ab}\phi^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^b &= \int_\Sigma \sum_{a,b}(-1)^{1+\deg(x^a)}\deg(x^a)\,\omega_{ab}(d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^a) \wedge \phi^b \\
&= \int_\Sigma \sum_{a,b}(-1)^{(1+\deg(x^a))(1+\deg(x^b))}\deg(x^a)\,\omega_{ab}\phi^b \wedge (d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^a)\,, \\
&= \int_\Sigma \sum_{a,b}\deg(x^b)\,\omega_{ab}\phi^a \wedge (d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^b)
\end{aligned}$$

where in the last step we switched the indices on $\omega$ and used that $\omega_{ab} = (-1)^{(1+\deg(x^a))(1+\deg(x^b))}\omega_{ba}$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_\Sigma \sum_{a,b}\deg(x^a)\,\omega_{ab}\phi^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^b &= \frac{1}{2}\int_\Sigma \sum_{a,b}\deg(x^a)\,\omega_{ab}\phi^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^b + \frac{1}{2}\int_\Sigma \sum_{a,b}\deg(x^b)\,\omega_{ab}\phi^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^b \\
&= \frac{n}{2}\int_\Sigma \omega_{ab}\phi^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^b\,.
\end{aligned}$$

Using this in the above expression for the action yields

$$\int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}(\phi) = \int_\Sigma \left( \frac{1}{2}\omega_{ab}\phi^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}}\phi^b - \pi(\phi) \right) ,$$

which is the formula for the action functional from definition 7.2.81. □

We now unwind the general statement of proposition 7.2.83 and its ingredients in the central examples of interest, from proposition 7.2.70: the ordinary Chern-Simons action functional, the Poisson $\sigma$-model Lagrangian, and the Courant $\sigma$-model Lagrangian. (The ordinary Chern-Simons model is the special case of the Courant $\sigma$-model for $\mathfrak{P}$ having as base manifold the point. But since it is the archetype of all models considered here, it deserves its own discussion.)

By the very content of proposition 7.2.83 there are no surprises here and the following essentially amounts to a review of the standard formulas for these examples. But it may be helpful to see our general $\infty$-Lie theoretic derivation of these formulas spelled out in concrete cases, if only to carefully track the various signs and prefactors.

**7.2.11.4 Ordinary Chern-Simons theory** Let $\mathfrak{P} = b\mathfrak{g}$ be a semisimple Lie algebra regarded as an $L_\infty$-algebroid with base space the point and let $\omega := \langle -,- \rangle \in \mathrm{W}(b\mathfrak{g})$ be its Killing form invariant polynomial. Then $(b\mathfrak{g}, \langle -,- \rangle)$ is a symplectic Lie 2-algebroid.

For $\{t^a\}$ a dual basis for $\mathfrak{g}$, being generators of grade 1 in $\mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{g})$ we have

$$d_{\mathrm{W}} t^a = -\frac{1}{2} C^a{}_{bc} t^a \wedge t^b + \mathbf{d} t^a$$

where $C^a{}_{bc} := t^a([t_b, t_c])$ and

$$\omega = \frac{1}{2} P_{ab} \mathbf{d} t^a \wedge \mathbf{d} t^b ,$$

where $P_{ab} := \langle t_a, t_b \rangle$. The Hamiltonian cocycle $\pi$ from prop. 7.2.71 is

$$\begin{aligned} \pi &= \frac{1}{2+1} \iota_v \iota_\epsilon \omega \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \iota_v P_{ab} t^a \wedge \mathbf{d} t^b \\ &= -\tfrac{1}{6} P_{ab} C^b_{cd} t^a \wedge t^c \wedge t^d \\ &=: -\tfrac{1}{6} C_{abc} t^a \wedge t^b \wedge t^c . \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the Chern-Simons element from prop. 7.2.73 is found to be

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{cs} &= \frac{1}{2} \left( P_{ab} t^a \wedge \mathbf{d} t^b - \tfrac{1}{6} C_{abc} t^a \wedge t^b \wedge t^c \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( P_{ab} t^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{W}} t^b + \frac{1}{3} C_{abc} t^a \wedge t^b \wedge t^c \right) . \end{aligned}$$

This is indeed, up to an overall factor 1/2, the familiar standard choice of Chern-Simons element on a Lie algebra. To see this more explicitly, notice that evaluated on a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued connection form

$$\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \leftarrow \mathrm{W}(b\mathfrak{g}) : A$$

this is

$$2\mathrm{cs}(A) = \langle A \wedge F_A \rangle - \tfrac{1}{6} \langle A \wedge [A, A] \rangle = \langle A \wedge d_{dR} A \rangle + \frac{1}{3} \langle A \wedge [A, A] \rangle .$$

If $\mathfrak{g}$ is a matrix Lie algebra then the Killing form is proportional to the trace of the matrix product: $\langle t_a, t_b \rangle = \mathrm{tr}(t_a t_b)$. In this case we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle A \wedge [A, A] \rangle &= A^a \wedge A^b \wedge A^c \,\mathrm{tr}(t_a(t_b t_c - t_c t_b)) \\ &= 2A^a \wedge A^b \wedge A^c \,\mathrm{tr}(t_a t_b t_c) \\ &= 2\,\mathrm{tr}(A \wedge A \wedge A)\end{aligned}$$

and hence

$$2\mathrm{cs}(A) = \mathrm{tr}\left(A \wedge F_A - \frac{1}{3} A \wedge A \wedge A\right) = \mathrm{tr}\left(A \wedge d_{dR} A + \frac{2}{3} A \wedge A \wedge A\right) .$$

**7.2.11.5 Poisson $\sigma$-model** Let $(M, \{-,-\})$ be a Poisson manifold and let $\mathfrak{P}$ be the corresponding Poisson Lie algebroid. This is a symplectic Lie 1-algebroid. Over a chart for the shifted cotangent bundle $T^*[-1]X$ with coordinates $\{x^i\}$ of degree 0 and $\{\partial_i\}$ of degree 1, respectively, we have

$$d_{\mathrm{W}} x^i = -\pi^{ij} \partial_j + \mathbf{d} x^i ;$$

where $\pi^{ij} := \{x^i, x^j\}$ and

$$\omega = \mathbf{d} x^i \wedge \mathbf{d} \partial_i \,.$$

The Hamiltonian cocycle from prop. 7.2.71 is

$$\pi = \frac{1}{2} \iota_v \iota_\epsilon \omega = -\frac{1}{2} \pi^{ij} \partial_i \wedge \partial_j$$

and the Chern-Simons element from prop. 7.2.73 is

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{cs} &= \iota_\epsilon \omega + \pi \\ &= \partial_i \wedge \mathbf{d} x^i - \frac{1}{2} \pi^{ij} \partial_i \wedge \partial_j\end{aligned} .$$

In terms of $d_{\mathrm{W}}$ instead of $\mathbf{d}$ this is

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{cs} &= \partial_i \wedge d_{\mathrm{W}} x^i - \pi \\ &= \partial_i \wedge d_{\mathrm{W}} x^i + \frac{1}{2} \pi^{ij} \partial_i \partial_j \,.\end{aligned}$$

So for $\Sigma$ a 2-manifold and

$$\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \leftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P}) : (X, \eta)$$

a Poisson-Lie algebroid valued differential form on $\Sigma$ – which in components is a function $X : \Sigma \to M$ and a 1-form $\eta \in \Omega^1(\Sigma, X^* T^* M)$ – the corresponding AKSZ action is

$$\int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}(X, \eta) = \int_\Sigma \eta \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} X + \frac{1}{2} \pi^{ij}(X) \eta_i \wedge \eta_j \,.$$

This is the Lagrangian of the Poisson $\sigma$-model [CaFe00].

**7.2.11.6 Courant $\sigma$-model** A Courant algebroid is a symplectic Lie 2-algebroid. By the previous example this is a higher analog of a Poisson manifold. Expressed in components in the language of ordinary differential geometry, a Courant algebroid is a vector bundle $E$ over a manifold $M_0$, equipped with: a non-degenerate bilinear form $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ on the fibers, a bilinear bracket $[\cdot, \cdot]$ on sections $\Gamma(E)$, and a bundle map (called the anchor) $\rho \colon E \to TM$, satisfying several compatibility conditions. The bracket $[\cdot, \cdot]$ may be required to be skew-symmetric (Def. 2.3.2 in [Roy02]), in which case it gives rise to a Lie 2-algebra structure, or, alternatively, it may be required to satisfy a Jacobi-like identity (Def. 2.6.1 in [Roy02]), in which case it gives a Leibniz algebra structure.

It was shown in [Roy02] that Courant algebroids $E \to M_0$ in this component form are in 1-1 correspondance with (non-negatively graded) grade 2 symplectic dg-manifolds $(M, v)$. Via this correspondance, $M$ is obtained as a particular symplectic submanifold of $T^*[2]E[1]$ equipped with its canonical symplectic structure.

Let $(M, v)$ be a Courant algebroid as above. In Darboux coordinates, the symplectic structure is

$$\omega = \mathbf{d}p_i \wedge \mathbf{d}q^i + \frac{1}{2} g_{ab} \mathbf{d}\xi^a \wedge \mathbf{d}\xi^b,$$

with

$$\deg q^i = 0, \ \ \deg \xi^a = 1, \ \ \deg p_i = 2,$$

and $g_{ab}$ are constants. The Chevalley-Eilenberg differential corresponds to the vector field:

$$v = P^i_a \xi^a \frac{\partial}{\partial q^i} + g^{ab}\big(P^i_b p_i - \frac{1}{2} T_{bcd}\xi^c\xi^d\big)\frac{\partial}{\partial \xi^a} + \left(-\frac{\partial P^j_a}{\partial q^i}\xi^a p_j + \tfrac{1}{6}\frac{\partial T_{abc}}{\partial q^i}\xi^a\xi^b\xi^c\right)\frac{\partial}{\partial p_i}.$$

Here $P^i_a = P^i_a(q)$ and $T_{abc} = T_{abc}(q)$ are particular degree zero functions encoding the Courant algebroid structure. Hence, the differential on the Weil algebra is:

$$\begin{aligned} d_W q^i &= P^i_a \xi^a + \mathbf{d}q^i \\ d_W \xi^a &= g^{ab}\big(P^i_b p_i - \frac{1}{2} T_{bcd}\xi^c\xi^d\big) + \mathbf{d}\xi^a \\ d_W p_i &= -\frac{\partial P^j_a}{\partial q^i}\xi^a p_j + \tfrac{1}{6}\frac{\partial T_{abc}}{\partial q^i}\xi^a\xi^b\xi^c + \mathbf{d}p_i. \end{aligned}$$

Following remark. 7.2.72, we construct the corresponding Hamiltonian cocycle from prop. 7.2.71:

$$\begin{aligned} \pi &= \frac{1}{n+1}\omega_{ab} \deg(x^a) x^a \wedge v^b \\ &= \frac{1}{3}\big(2p_i \wedge v(q^i) + g_{ab}\xi^a \wedge v(\xi^b)\big) \\ &= \frac{1}{3}\big(2p_i P^i_a \xi^a + \xi^a P^i_a p_i - \frac{1}{2} T_{abc}\xi^a\xi^b\xi^c\big) \\ &= P^i_a \xi^a p_i - \tfrac{1}{6} T_{abc}\xi^a\xi^b\xi^c. \end{aligned}$$

The Chern-Simons element from prop. 7.2.73 is:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{cs} &= \frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{ab} \deg(x^a)\,\omega_{ab} x^a \wedge d_W x^b - 2\pi\right) \\ &= p_i d_W q^i + \frac{1}{2} g_{ab}\xi^a d_W \xi^b - \pi \\ &= p_i d_W q^i + \frac{1}{2} g_{ab}\xi^a d_W \xi^b - P^i_a \xi^a p_i + \tfrac{1}{6} T_{abc}\xi^a\xi^b\xi^c. \end{aligned}$$

So for a map

$$\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \leftarrow \mathrm{W}(\mathfrak{P}) : (X, A, F)$$

where $\Sigma$ is a closed 3-manifold, we have

$$\int_\Sigma \mathrm{cs}(X, A, F) = \int_\Sigma F_i \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} X^i + \frac{1}{2} g_{ab} A^a \wedge d_{\mathrm{dR}} A^b - P^i_a A^a \wedge F_i + \tfrac{1}{6} T_{abc} A^a \wedge A^b \wedge A^c.$$

This is the AKSZ action for the Courant algebroid $\sigma$-model from [Ike03] [Roy02][Roy06].

**7.2.11.7 Higher abelian Chern-Simons theory in $d = 4k + 3$** We discuss higher abelian Chern-Simons theory, 7.2.8.1, from the point of view of AKSZ theory.

For $k \in \mathbb{N}$, let $\mathfrak{a}$ be the delooping of the line Lie $2k$-algebra, def. 6.4.84: $\mathfrak{a} = b^{2k+1}\mathbb{R}$. By observation 6.4.145 there is, up to scale, a unique binary invariant polynomial on $b^{2k+1}\mathbb{R}$, and this is the wedge product of the unique generating unary invariant polynomial $\gamma$ in degree $2k + 2$ with itself:

$$\omega := \gamma \wedge \gamma \in \mathrm{W}(b^{4k+4}\mathbb{R}) .$$

This invariant polynomial is clearly non-degenerate: for $c$ the canonical generator of $\mathrm{CE}(b^{2k+1}\mathbb{R})$ we have

$$\omega = \mathbf{d}c \wedge \mathbf{d}c .$$

Therefore $(b^{2k+1}\mathbb{R}, \omega)$ induces an $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory of AKSZ $\sigma$-model type in dimension $n+1 = 4k+3$. (On the other hand, on $b^{2k}\mathbb{R}$ there is only the 0 binary invariant polynomial, so that no AKSZ-$\sigma$-models are induced from $b^{2k}\mathbb{R}$.)

The Hamiltonian cocycle from prop. 7.2.71 vanishes

$$\pi = 0$$

because the differential $d_{\mathrm{CE}(b^{2k+1}\mathbb{R})}$ is trivial. The Chern-Simons element from prop. 7.2.73 is

$$\mathrm{cs} = c \wedge \mathbf{d}c .$$

A field configuration, def. 1.2.176, of this $\sigma$-model over a $(2k + 3)$-dimensional manifold

$$\Omega^\bullet(\Sigma) \leftarrow \mathrm{W}(b^{2k+1}) : C$$

is simply a $(2k + 1)$-form. The AKSZ action functional in this case is

$$S_{AKSZ} : C \mapsto \int_\Sigma C \wedge d_{dR} C .$$

The simplicity of this discussion is deceptive. It results from the fact that here we are looking at $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory for universal Lie integrations and for topologically trivial $\infty$-bundles. More generally the $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory for $\mathfrak{a} = b^{2k+1}\mathbb{R}$ is nontrivial and rich, as discussed in 7.2.8.1. Its configuration space is that of *circle $(2k+1)$-bundles with connection* (6.4.16) on $\Sigma$, classified by ordinary differential cohomology in degree $2k + 2$, and the action functional is given by the fiber integration in differential cohomology to the point over the Beilinson-Deligne cup product, which is locally given by the above formula, but contains global twists.

## 7.3 Prequantum Wess-Zumino-Witten field theory

We discuss examples of higher WZW functionals, def. 5.2.15.

This section draws from [FSS13b].

- 7.3.1 – Introduction: Traditional WZW and the need for higher WZW
- 7.3.2 – Lie $n$-algebraic formulation
- 7.3.3 – Metaplectic pre-quantization
- 7.3.4 – The Green-Schwarz anomaly in heterotic supergravity
- 7.3.5 – Boundary conditions and branes

### 7.3.1 Introduction: Traditional WZW and the need for higher WZW

For $G$ be a simple Lie group, write $\mathfrak{g}$ for its semisimple Lie algebra. The Killing form invariant polynomial $\langle -, - \rangle : \mathrm{Sym}^2\mathfrak{g} \to \mathbb{R}$ induces the canonical Lie algebra 3-cocycle

$$\mu := \langle -, [-, -] \rangle : \mathrm{Alt}^3(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathbb{R}$$

which by left-translation along the group defines the canonical closed and left-invariant 3-form

$$\langle \theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta] \rangle \in \Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl,L}}(G)\,,$$

where $\theta \in \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(G, \mathfrak{g})$ is the canonical *Maurer-Cartan form* on $G$. What is called the *Wess-Zumino-Witten sigma-model* induced by this data (see for instance [Ga00] for a decent review) is the prequantum field theory given by an action functional, which to a smooth map $\Sigma_2 \to G$ out of a closed oriented smooth 2-manifold assigns the product of the standard exponentiated kinetic action with an exponentiated "surface holonomy" of a 2-form connection whose curvature 3-form is $\langle \theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta] \rangle$.

In the special case that $\phi : \Sigma_2 \to G$ happens to factor through a contractible open subset $U$ of $G$ – notably in the *perturbative expansion* about maps constant on a point – the Poincaré lemma implies that one can find a potential 2-form $B \in \Omega^2(U)$ with $dB = \langle \theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta] \rangle|_U$ and with this perturbative perspective understood one may take the action functional to be simply of the naive form that is often considered in the literature:

$$\exp(iS_{\mathrm{WZW}}) := \exp\left(i \int_{\Sigma^2} \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}\right) \;:\; \phi \mapsto \exp\left(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_2} \phi^* B\right).$$

There are plenty of hints and some known examples which point to the fact that this construction of the standard WZW model is just one in a large class of examples of higher dimensional boundary local (pre-)quantum field theories, 5.2.18, which generalize traditional WZW theory in two ways:

1. the cocycle $\mu$ is allowed to be of arbitrary degree;
2. the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is allowed to be a (super-)*Lie $n$-algebra* for $n \geq 1$ ($L_\infty$-algebra).

One famous class of examples of the first point are the Green-Schwarz type action functionals for the super $p$-branes of string/M-theory [AETW87]. These are the higher dimensional analog of the action functional for the superstring that was first given in [GrSch84] and then recognized as a super WZW-model in [?], induced from an exceptional 3-cocycle on super-Minkowski spacetime of bosonic dimension 10, regarded a super-translation Lie algebra. Thess higher dimensional Green-Schwarz type $\sigma$-model action functionals are accordingly induced by higher exceptional super-Lie algebra cocycles on super-Minkowski spacetime, regarded as a super-translation Lie algebra. Remarkably, while ordinary Minkowski spacetime is cohomologically fairly uninteresting, super-Minkowski spacetime has a finite number of *exceptional* super-cohomology classes. The higher dimensional WZW models induced by the corresponding higher exceptional cocycles account precisely for the $\sigma$-models of those super-$p$-branes in string/M-theory which are pure $\sigma$-models, in that they do not carry (higher) gauge fields ("tensor multiplets") on their worldvolume, a fact known as "the old brane scan" [AETW87]. This includes, for instance, the heterotic superstring and the M2-brane, but excludes the D-branes and the M5-brane.

However, as we discuss below in section 8.1.2, this restriction to pure $\sigma$-model branes without "tensor multiplet" fields on their worldvolume is due to the restriction to ordinary super Lie algebras, hence to super Lie $n$-algebras for just $n = 1$. If one allows genuinely higher WZW models which are given by higher cocycles on Lie $n$-algebras for higher $n$, then *all* the fbranes of string/M-theory are described by higher WZW $\sigma$-models. This is an incarnation of the general fact that in higher differential geometry, the distinction between $\sigma$-models and (higher) gauge theory disappears, as (higher) gauge theories are equivalently $\sigma$-models whose target space is a smooth higher moduli *stack*, infinitesimally approximated by a Lie $n$-algebra for higher $n$.

This general phenomenon is particularly interesting for the M5-brane (see for instance the Introduction of [FSS12b] for plenty of pointers to the literature on this). According to the higher Chern-Simons-theoretic formulation of $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$ in [Wi96], the 6-dimensional $(2,0)$-superconformal worldvolume theory of the M5-brane is related to the 7-dimensional Chern-Simons term in 11-dimensional supergravity compactified on a 4-sphere in direct analogy to the famous relation of 2d WZW theory to the 3d-Chern-Simons theory controled by the cocycle $\mu$ (see [Ga00] for a review). In 7.2.9 and 7.1.8 we have discussed the bosonic nonabelian (quantum corrected) component of this 7d Chern-Simons theory as a higher gauge local prequantum field theory; the discussion here provides the fermionic terms and the formalization of the 6d WZW-type theory induced from a (flat) 7-dimensional Chern-Simons theory.

Up to the last section in this paper we discuss general aspects and examples of higher WZW-type sigma-models in the rational/perturbative approximation, where only the curvature $n$-form matters while its lift to a genuine cocycle in differential cohomology is ignored. However, in order to define already the traditional WZW action functional in a sensible way on *all* maps to $G$, one needs a more global description of the WZW term $\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$. Since [Ga88, FrWi99], this is understood to be a circle 2-connection/bundle gerbe/Deligne 3-cocycle whose curvature 3-form is $\langle \theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta] \rangle$, hence a *higher prequantization* [FRS13a] of the curvature 3-form, which we write as a lift of maps of smooth higher stacks

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}}{\nearrow} & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle H_{(-)}} \\ G & \xrightarrow[\langle \theta \wedge [\theta \wedge \theta] \rangle]{} & \Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} ,$$

where $\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ denotes the smooth 2-stack of smooth circle 2-connections. Then for $\phi : \Sigma_2 \to G$ a smooth map from a closed oriented 2-manifold to $G$, the globally defined value of the action functional is the corresponding *surface holonomy* expressed as the composite

$$\exp(iS_{\mathrm{WZW}}) \;:=\; \exp\left(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_2} [(-), \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}]\right) \;:\; [\Sigma, G] \xrightarrow{[\Sigma, \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}]} [\Sigma, \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{\Sigma_2})(-)} U(1) \;,$$

of the functorial mapping stack construction followed by a stacky refinement of fiber integration in differential cohomology, 6.4.18.

Recall that by the discussion in 5.2.15 we have a general universal construction of such non-perturbative refinements of all the local higher WZW terms considered here, and that these are in precise sense boundary local prequantum field theories, 5.2.18.6, for flat higher Chern-Simons type local prequantum field theories (which is in line with the Chern-Simons theoretic holography in [Wi96]). Therefore we know in principle how to quantize them non-perturbatively in generalized cohomology, discussed below in 7.6.

### 7.3.2 Lie $n$-algebraic formulation of perturbative higher WZW

We start with the traditional WZW model and show how in this example we may usefully reformulate its rationalized/perturbative aspects in terms of Lie $n$-algebraic structures. Then we naturally and seamlessly generalize to a definition of higher WZW-type $\sigma$-models.

We briefly recall the notion of $L_\infty$-algebra valued differential forms/connections from to establish notation in the present context. All the actual $L_\infty$-homotopy theory that we need can be found discussed or referenced in [FRS13b]. Just for simplicity of exposition and since it is sufficient for the present discussion, here we take all $L_\infty$-algebras to be of finite type, hence degreewise finite dimensional; see [Pr10] for the general discussion in terms of pro-objects.

A (super-)*Lie $n$-algebra*, def. 6.6.19, is a (super-)$L_\infty$-algebra concentrated in the lowest $n$ degrees. Given a (super-)$L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, we write $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ for its *Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra*; which is a $(\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}_2)$-graded commutative dg-algebra with the property that the underlying graded super-algebra is the free graded commutative super-algebra on the dual graded super vector space $\mathfrak{g}[1]^*$. These are the dg-algebras which in parts of the supergravity literature are referred to as "FDA"s, a term introduced in [Ni83] and then picked up in [dAFR80, dAFr82, CaDAFr91] and followups. Precisely all the (super-)dg-algebras of this *semi-free* form arise as Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras of (super-)$L_\infty$-algebras this way, and a homomorphism of $L_\infty$-algebras $f : \mathfrak{g} \to \mathfrak{h}$ is equivalently a homomorphism of dg-algebras of the form $f^* : \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{h}) \to \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$. See [FRS13b] for a review in the context of the higher prequantum geometry of relevance here and for further pointers to the literature on $L_\infty$-algebras and their homotopy theory.

**Definition 7.3.1.** For $\mathfrak{g}$ a Lie $n$-algebra, and $X$ a smooth manifold, a *flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential form* on $X$ (of total degree 1, with $\mathfrak{g}$ regarded as cohomologically graded) is equivalently a morphism of dg-algebras $A^* : \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}) \to \Omega^\bullet_{\mathrm{dR}}(X)$ to the de Rham complex. Dually we write this as[35] $A : X \to \mathfrak{g}$. These differential forms naturally pull back along maps of smooth manifolds, and we write $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g})$ for the sheaf, on smooth manifolds, of flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms of total degree 1.

Notice that, in general, these forms of total degree 1 involve differential forms of higher degree with coefficients in higher degree elements of the $L_\infty$-algebra:

**Example 7.3.2.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ write $\mathbb{R}[n]$ for the abelian Lie $n$-algebra concentrated on $\mathbb{R}$ in degree $-n$. Its Chevalley Eilenberg algebra is the dg-algebra which is genuinely free on a single generator in degree $n+1$. A flat $\mathbb{R}[n]$-valued differential form is equivalently just an ordinary closed differential $(n+1)$-form

$$\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-, \mathbb{R}[n]) \simeq \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} .$$

**Definition 7.3.3.** A $(p+2)$-*cocycle* $\mu$ on a Lie $n$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is a degree $p+2$ closed element in the corresponding Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mu \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$.

**Remark 7.3.4.** A $(p+2)$-cocycle on $\mathfrak{g}$ is equivalently a map of dg-algebras $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}[p+1]) \to \mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ and hence, equivalently, a map of $L_\infty$-algebras of the form $\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to \mathbb{R}[p+1]$. So, if $\{t_a\}$ is a basis for the graded vector space underlying $\mathfrak{g}$, then the differential $d_{\mathrm{CE}}$ is given in components by

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, t^a = \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} C^a{}_{a_1 \cdots a_i} t^{a_1} \wedge \cdots t^{a_i} ,$$

where $\{C^a{}_{a_1 \cdots a_i}\}$ are the structure constants of the $i$-ary bracket of $\mathfrak{g}$. Consequently, a degree $p+2$ cocycle is a degree $(p+2)$-element

$$\mu = \sum_i \mu_{a_1 \ldots a_i} t^{a_1} \wedge \cdots t^{a_i}$$

such that $d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, \mu = 0$.

[35] The reader familiar with $L_\infty$-algebr*oids* should take this as shorthand for the $L_\infty$-algebroid homomorphism from the tangent Lie algebroid of $X$ to the delooping of the $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$.

**Example 7.3.5.** For $\{t_a\}$ a basis as above and $\omega \in \Omega^1_{\text{flat}}(X, \mathfrak{g})$ a $\mathfrak{g}$-valued 1-form on $X$, the pullback of the cocycle is the closed differential $(p+2)$-form which in components reads

$$\mu(\omega) = \sum_i \mu_{a_1 \cdots a_i} \omega^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge \omega^{a_i} \,,$$

where $\omega^a = \omega(t^a)$.

**Remark 7.3.6.** Composition $\omega \mapsto ( X \xrightarrow{\omega} \mathfrak{g} \xrightarrow{\mu} \mathbb{R}[p+1] )$ of $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms $\omega$ with an $L_\infty$-cocycle $\mu$ yields a homomorphism of sheaves

$$\Omega^1_{\text{flat}}(-, \mu) : \; \Omega_{\text{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}) \longrightarrow \Omega^{p+2}_{\text{cl}} \;.$$

This is the sheaf incarnation of $\mu$ regarded as a universal differential form on the space of all flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms.

**Example 7.3.7.** By the Yoneda lemma, for $X$ a smooth manifold, morphisms[36] $X \to \Omega^1_{\text{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g})$ are equivalently just flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms on $X$. Specifically, for $G$ an ordinary Lie group, its Maurer-Cartan form is equivalently a map

$$\theta : \; G \longrightarrow \Omega^1_{\text{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}) \;.$$

Therefore, given a field configuration $\phi : \Sigma_2 \to G$ of the traditional WZW model, postcomposition with $\theta$ turns this into

$$\phi^*\theta : \; \Sigma \xrightarrow{\;\phi\;} G \xrightarrow{\;\theta\;} \Omega^1_{\text{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}) \;.$$

Here if $\mathfrak{g}$ is represented as a matrix Lie algebra then this is the popular expression $\phi^*\theta = \phi^{-1} d\phi$

**Definition 7.3.8.** Given an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ equipped with a cocycle $\mu : \mathfrak{g} \to \mathbb{R}[p+1]$ of degree $p+2$, a *perturbative σ-model datum* for $(\mathfrak{g}, \mu)$ is a triple consisting of

- a space $X$;
- equipped with a flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential form $\theta_{\text{global}} : X \to \Omega^1_{\text{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g})$ (a "global Maurer-Cartan form");
- and equipped with a factorization $\mathcal{L}_{\text{WZW}}$ through $d_{\text{dR}}$ of $\mu(\theta_{\text{global}})$, as expressed in the following diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{\theta_{\text{global}}} & \Omega_{\text{flat}}(-, \mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\;\;\mu\;\;} & \Omega^{p+2}_{\text{cl}} \\ & {}_{\mathcal{L}_{\text{WZW}}}\searrow & & \nearrow_{d_{\text{dR}}} & \\ & & \Omega^{p+1} & & \end{array} \;.$$

The *action functional* associated with this data is the functional

$$S_{\text{WZW}} : \; [\Sigma, X] \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

given by

$$\phi \mapsto \int_\Sigma \mathcal{L}_{\text{WZW}}(\phi) \,,$$

where the integrand is the differential form

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{WZW}}(\phi) : \; \Sigma \xrightarrow{\;\phi\;} X \xrightarrow{\;\mathcal{L}_{\text{WZW}}\;} \Omega^{p+1}_{\text{cl}} \;.$$

[36]of sheaves, by thinking of $X$ as the sheaf $C^\infty(-, X)$.

**Remark 7.3.9.** Here $X$ actually need not be a (super-)manifold but may be a smooth higher (super-) stack, 6.6.

**Remark 7.3.10.** The notation $\theta_{\mathrm{global}}$ serves to stress the fact that we are considering globally defined one-forms on $X$ as opposed to cocycles in hypercohomology, which is where the higher Maurer-Cartan forms on *higher* (super-)Lie groups take values, due to presence of nontrivial higher gauge transformations. See 5.2.15.

**Remark 7.3.11.** The diagram in Def. 7.3.8 manifestly captures a local description, when $X$ is a contractible manifold. An immediate global version is captured by the following diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \Sigma & \xrightarrow{\eta} & X & \xrightarrow{\theta_{\mathrm{global}}} & \Omega_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}) & \xrightarrow{\quad\mu\quad} & \Omega^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ & & & \searrow^{\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} & & \nearrow_{F_{(-)}} & \\ & & & & \mathbf{B}^{p+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & & \end{array} ,$$

where $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the stack of $U(1)$-$(p+1)$-bundles with connections, and $F_{(-)}$ is the curvature morphism; see, for instance, [FSS10]. This globalization is what one sees, for example, in the ordinary WZW model.

Finally, we notice for discussion in the examples one aspect of the higher symmetries of such perturbative higher WZW models:

**Definition 7.3.12.** Given a (super-) $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, its *graded Lie algebra of infinitesimal automorphisms* is the Lie algebra whose elements are graded derivations $v \in \mathrm{Der}(\mathrm{Sym}^\bullet \mathfrak{g}[1]^*)$ on the graded algebra underlying its Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$, acting as the corresponding Lie derivatives.

### 7.3.3 Metaplectic pre-quantization

**Definition 7.3.13.** Let $(V = \mathbb{R}^{2n}, \omega = \mathbf{d}q_i \wedge \mathbf{d}p^i)$ be the standard symplectic vector space and consider the canonical prequantum bundle over it, i.e. the trivial line bundle equipped with the globally defined connection form $A = -p_i \mathbf{d}q^i$ . Write

$$\nabla_0 : \mathbb{R}^{2n} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

for the morphism that modulates this bundle.

We may regard $\nabla_0$ as a degree-1 WZW term. (Conversely, all WZW terms may be thought of as higher analogs of prequantum bundles.) We discuss now how an infinitesimally integrable definite globalization, def. 5.3.123, of $\nabla_0$ over a smooth manifold $X$ is equivalently a symplectic structure on $X$ equipped with a metaplectic prequantization in the sense of [RoRw89].

**Definition 7.3.14.** Let $(V,\omega)$ be a symplectic vector space. Write $\mathrm{ASp}(V,\omega) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{HamSympl}(V,\omega)$ for those affine transformations on $V$ which are symplectomorphisms of $(V,\omega)$ regarded as a symplectic manifold. The restriction of the full quantomorphism group of the symplectic manifold $(V,\omega)$ to $\mathrm{ASp}(V,\omega)$ is known as the *extended affine symplectic group* of the *extended inhomogeneous symplectic group* $\mathrm{ESp}(V,\omega)$.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{Heis}(V,\omega) & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{ESp}(V,\omega) & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{QuantMorph}(V,\omega) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{ASp}(V,\omega) & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{HamSympl}(V,\Omega) \end{array}$$

**Proposition 7.3.15.** *The pullback* $\mathrm{ESp}(V,\omega)$ *in def. 7.3.14 is the subgroup generated by Hamiltonians which are degree-2 polynomials in the* $(q_i, p^i)$*. The subgroup generated*

- *by the homogeneous degree-1 polynomials is* $V$*;*
- *by the possibly inhomogenous degree-1 polynomials is the Heisenberg group* $\mathrm{Heis}_V(V,\omega)$*;*
- *by the homogeneous quadratic Hamiltonians is the metaplectic group* $\mathrm{Mp}(V,\omega)$*;*
- *by the polynomials concentrated in degree 2 and 0 is the group* $\mathrm{Mp}^c(V,\omega)$*.*

*Hence* $\mathrm{ESp}(V,\omega)$ *is the semidirect product*

$$\mathrm{ESp}(V,\omega) \simeq \mathrm{Heis}(V,\omega) \rtimes \mathrm{Mp}(V,\omega)\,.$$

*The further restriction to linear symplectomorphisms is* $\mathrm{Mp}^c := \mathrm{Mp}(V,\omega) \underset{\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}}{\times} U(1)$ *(see [FoHe79]).*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\mathrm{Heis}(V,\omega) & \hookrightarrow & & & \mathrm{Heis}(V,\omega) \rtimes \mathrm{Mp}(V,\omega) & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{QuantMorph}(V,\omega) \\
\downarrow & & \mathrm{Mp}^c(V,\omega) & \nearrow & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
V & \hookrightarrow & \downarrow & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{ASp}(V,\omega) & \hookrightarrow & \mathrm{HamSympl}(V,\Omega) \\
& & \mathrm{Sp}(V,\omega) & \nearrow & & &
\end{array}$$

This is essentially [RoSa96, prop. 10.1] in view of [RoSa96, theorem 8.5].

Let $\mathbb{D}^V_{(2)} \hookrightarrow V$ be the *second-order* infinitesimal disk, def. 5.3.50, in $V$ and write

$$\mathbf{L}^{\mathrm{inf}}_{\mathrm{WZW}} : \mathbb{D}^V_{(2)} \to V \xrightarrow{\nabla_0} \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

for the restriction of the standard prequantum line bundle, def. 7.3.13 to this infinitesimal disk.

**Proposition 7.3.16.** *The quantomorphism group of* $\mathbf{L}^{\mathrm{inf}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$*, def. 5.2.138, is*

$$\mathbf{QuantMorph}(\mathbf{L}^{\mathrm{inf}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}) \simeq \mathrm{Mp}^c\,.$$

Proof. By prop. 6.4.191 the general abstract definition 5.2.138 here indeed comes out as the restriction of the traditional quantomorphism group to the degree-2 infinitesimal disk. This being degree-2 infinitesimal means precisely that the Hamiltonians corresponding to the quantomorphisms are degree-2 polynomials in the canonical coordinates and momenta. Hence the claim follows by prop. 7.3.15. □

**Corollary 7.3.17.** *Obstruction to a degree-2 infinitesimally integrable definite globalization, def. 5.3.120, of the standard prequantum bundle* $\nabla_0$*, def. 7.3.13, is an* $\mathrm{Mp}^c$*-structure. .*

In traditional metaplectic quantization one furthermore equips the line bundle given by an $\mathrm{Mp}^c$-structure with a connection whose curvature is the given symplectic form. From the point of view of cor. 7.3.17 this choice is canonical: under the equivalence of prop. 7.3.16 and in view of prop. 5.2.140, $\mathrm{Mp}^c$ is the stabilizer group of the infinitesimal local model for the fixed connection $\nabla_0$, def. 7.3.13. Hence given an integrable $\mathrm{Mp}^c$-structure on $X$, the underlying symplectic manifold structure provides an atlas by Darboux charts $U_i = \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ and the choice of $\nabla_0$ is a choice of connection 1-form on each such chart. The $\mathrm{Mp}^c$-structure in turn provides precisely the transition functions to glue these 1-forms to a global connection, which is the definite globalization of $\nabla_0$ to $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

### 7.3.4 The Green-Schwarz anomaly in heterotic supergravity

Let $G$ be a compact simple and simply connected Lie group such as Spin or $E_8$, and let $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}^{\mathrm{Spin}}$ be the canonical WZW term, the "WZW gerbe".

By the discussion in 7.5.1:

**Proposition 7.3.18.** *The Heisenberg 2-group of* $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}^{\mathrm{Spin}}$ *is the smooth String 2-group, def. 7.1.10*

$$\mathrm{Heis}(\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}^{\mathrm{Spin}}) \simeq \mathrm{String}\,.$$

**Corollary 7.3.19.** *The obstruction to a parameterized extension of* $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}^{\mathrm{Spin}}$ *over a* Spin*-principal bundle is a String-structure.*

Proof. Use prop. 7.3.18 in theorem 5.3.118. □

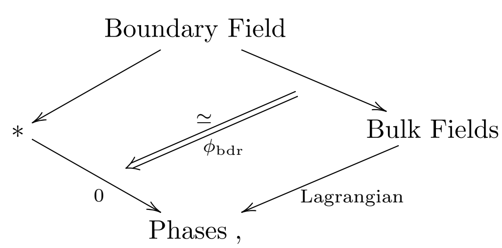
**Remark 7.3.20.** We may choose $G$ to be the product Spin $\times E_8$ of semisimple compact Lie groups, with the WZW term being the difference of their canonical WZW gerbes. Then the obstruction in prop. 7.3.19 is precisely $\frac{1}{2}p_1 - c_2$, hence is the Green-Schwarz anomaly of the heterotic string.

This had previously been argued in [DiSh07] and has been amplified in [And07].

### 7.3.5 Boundary conditions and brane intersection laws

In the context of fully extended (i.e. local) topological prequantum field theories, 5.2.18 one has the following general notion of boundary condition, see 5.2.18.6.

**Definition 7.3.21.** A *prequantum boundary condition for an open brane* (hence a "background brane" on which the given brane may end) is given by boundary gauge trivializations $\phi_{\mathrm{bdr}}$ of the Lagrangian restricted to the boundary fields, hence by diagrams of the form

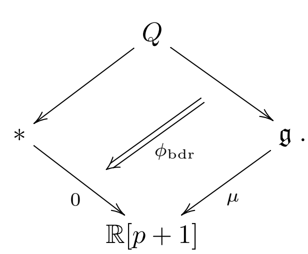



where "Phases" denotes generally the space where the Lagrangian takes values.

Specializing this general principle to our current situation, we have the following

**Definition 7.3.22.** A *boundary condition* for a rational $\sigma$-model datum, $(X, \mathfrak{g}, \mu)$ of Def. 7.3.8, is

1. an $L_\infty$-algebra $Q$ and a homomorphism $Q \longrightarrow \mathfrak{g}$,
2. equipped with a homotopy $\phi_{\mathrm{brd}}$ of $L_\infty$-algebras morphisms



**Remark 7.3.23** (Background branes)**.** Since $\mathfrak{g}$ is to be thought of as the *spacetime target* for a $\sigma$-model, we are to think of $Q \to \mathfrak{g}$ in Def. 7.3.22 as a *background brane* "inside" spacetime. For instance, as demonstrated below in Section 8.1.2, it may be a D-brane in 10-dimensional super-Minkowski space on which the open superstring ends, or it may be the M5-brane in 11-dimensional super-Minowski spacetime on which the open M2-brane ends. To say then that the $p$-brane described by the $\sigma$-model may end on this background brane $Q$ means to consider worldvolume manifolds $\Sigma_n$ with boundaries $\partial\Sigma_{p+1} \hookrightarrow \Sigma_{p+1}$ and *boundary field configurations* $(\phi, \phi|_\partial)$ making the left square in the following diagram commute:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
\partial\Sigma_{p+1} & \xrightarrow{\ \phi|_{\partial\Sigma}\ } & Q & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & \swarrow\!\!\!\swarrow{\scriptstyle \phi_{\mathrm{bdr}}} & \downarrow \\
\Sigma_{p+1} & \xrightarrow{\ \phi\ } & \mathfrak{g} & \xrightarrow[\ \mu\ ]{} & \mathbb{R}[p+1]\,.
\end{array}
$$

The commutativity of the diagram on the left encodes precisely that the boundary of the $p$-brane is to sit inside the background brane $Q$. But now – by the defining universal property of the homotopy pullback of super $L_\infty$-algebras – this means, equivalently, that the background brane embedding map $Q \to \mathfrak{g}$ factors through the *homotopy fiber* of the cocycle $\mu$. If we denote this homotopy fiber by $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$, then we have an essentially unique factorization as follows

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\partial\Sigma_{p+1} & \xrightarrow{\ \phi|_{\partial\Sigma}\ } & Q & \dashrightarrow & \widehat{\mathfrak{g}} & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \swarrow\!\!\!\swarrow{\scriptstyle \phi^{\mathrm{univ.}}_{\mathrm{bdr}}} & \downarrow \\
\Sigma_{p+1} & \xrightarrow{\ \phi\ } & \mathfrak{g} & = & \mathfrak{g} & \xrightarrow[\ \mu\ ]{} & \mathbb{R}[p+1]\,,
\end{array}
$$

where now $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}} \to \mathfrak{g}$ is the *homotopy fiber* $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$ of the cocycle $\mu$. Notice that here in homotopy theory *all* diagrams appearing are understood to be filled by homotopies/gauge transformations, but only if we want to label them explicitly do we display them.

The crucial implication to emphasize is that what used to be regarded as a background brane $Q$ on which the $\sigma$-model brane $\Sigma_n$ may end is itself characterized by a $\sigma$-model map $Q \to \widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$, not to the original target space $\mathfrak{g}$, but to the *extended target space* $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$. In the class of examples discussed below in Section 8.1.2, this extended target space is precisely the *extended superspace* in the sense of [CdAIP99].

**Remark 7.3.24.** The $L_\infty$-algebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}} \to \mathfrak{g}$ is the *extension* of $\mathfrak{g}$ classified by the cocycle $\mu$, in generalization to the traditional extension of Lie algebras classified by 2-cocycles. If $\mu$ is an $(n_2+1)$-cocycle on an $n_1$-Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ for $n_1 \leq n_2$, then the extended $L_\infty$-algebra $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$ is an Lie $n_2$-algebra. See [FRS13b] for more details on this.

**Proposition 7.3.25.** *The Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra* $\mathrm{CE}(\widehat{\mathfrak{g}})$ *of the extension* $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$ *of* $\mathfrak{g}$ *by a cocycle* $\mu$ *admits, up to equivalence, a very simple description; namely, it is the differential graded algebra obtained from* $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$ *by adding a single generator* $c_n$ *in degree* $n$ *subject to the relation*

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}(\widehat{\mathfrak{g}})}\, c_n = \mu\,.$$

*Here we are viewing* $\mu$ *as a degree* $n+1$ *element in* $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g})$*, and hence also in* $\mathrm{CE}(\widehat{\mathfrak{g}})$*.*

Proof. First observe that we have a commuting diagram of (super-)dg-algebras of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathrm{CE}\left(\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}\right) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}\left(\left(\mathbb{R} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathbb{R}\right)[n-1]\right) \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\mathrm{CE}\left(\mathfrak{g}\right) & \longleftarrow & \mathrm{CE}\left(\mathbb{R}[n]\right)
\end{array}
\,.
$$

Here the top left dg-algebra is the dg-algebra of the above statement, the top morphism is the one that sends the unique degree-$(n+1)$-generator to $\mu$ and the unique degree-$n$ generator to $c_n$, the vertical morphisms are the evident inclusions, and the bottom morphism is the given cocycle. Consider the dual diagram of $L_\infty$-algebras

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \widehat{\mathfrak{g}} & \longrightarrow & (\mathbb{R} \stackrel{\mathrm{id}}{\to} \mathbb{R})[n-1] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathfrak{g} & \stackrel{\mu}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbb{R}[n] \end{array} .$$

Then observe that the underlying graded vector spaces here form a pullback diagram of linear maps (the linear components of the $L_\infty$-morphisms). From this the statement follows directly with the recognition theorem for $L_\infty$-homotopy fibers, theorem 3.1.13 in [FRS13b]. □

**Remark 7.3.26.** The construction appearing in Prop. 7.3.25 is of course well familiar in the "FDA"-technique in the supergravity literature [CaDAFr91], and we recall famous examples below in Section 8.1.2. The point to highlight here is that this construction has a universal $L_\infty$-homotopy-theoretic meaning, in the way described above.

The crucial consequence of this discussion is the following:

**Remark 7.3.27.** If the extension $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$ itself carries a cocycle $\mu_Q : \widehat{\mathfrak{g}} \to \mathbb{R}[n]$ and we are able to find a local potential/Lagrangian $\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ for the closed $(n+1)$-form $\mu_Q$ (which by 5.2.15 is always the case), then this exhibits the background brane $Q$ itself as a rational WZW $\sigma$-model, now propagating not on the original "target spacetime" $\mathfrak{g}$ but on the "extended spacetime" $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$.

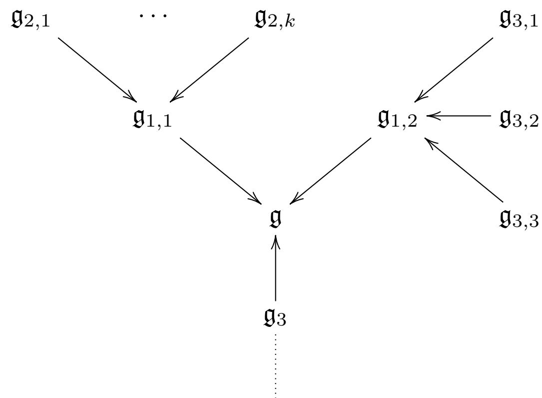
**Remark 7.3.28.** Iterating this process gives rise to a tower of extensions and cocycles

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \vdots & & \\ \widehat{\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}} & \stackrel{\mu_3}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbb{R}[n_3] \\ \downarrow & & \\ \widehat{\mathfrak{g}} & \stackrel{\mu_2}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbb{R}[n_2] \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathfrak{g} & \stackrel{\mu_1}{\longrightarrow} & \mathbb{R}[n_1] \end{array} ,$$

which is like a Whitehead tower in rational homotopy theory, only that the cocycles in each degree here are not required to be the lowest-degree nontrivial ones. In fact, the actual rational Whitehead tower is an example of this. In the language of Sullivan's formulation of rational homotopy theory this says that $\mathfrak{g}_n$ is exhibited by a sequence of cell attachments as a *relative Sullivan algebra* relative to $\mathfrak{g}$.

Since this is an important concept for the present purpose, we give it a name:

**Definition 7.3.29.** Given an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, the *brane bouquet of* $\mathfrak{g}$ is the rooted tree consisting of, iteratively, all possible equivalence classes of nontrivial $\mathbb{R}[\bullet]$ extensions (corresponding to equivalence classes of nontrivial $\mathbb{R}[\bullet]$-cocycles) starting with $\mathfrak{g}$ as the root.




This *brane bouquet* construction in $L_\infty$-homotopy theory that we introduced serves to organize and formalize the following two physical heuristics.

**Remark 7.3.30** (Brane intersection laws)**.** By the discussion above in Remark 7.3.23, each piece of a brane bouquet of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{g}_2 & \xrightarrow{\mu_2} & \mathbb{R}[n_2] \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathfrak{g}_1 & \xrightarrow{\mu_1} & \mathbb{R}[n_1] \end{array}$$

may be thought of as encoding a *brane intersection law*, meaning that the WZW $\sigma$-model brane corresponding to $(\mathfrak{g}_1, \mu_1)$ can end on the WZW $\sigma$-model brane corresponding to $(\mathfrak{g}_2, \mu_2)$. Therefore, the brane bouquet of some $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ lists all the possible $\sigma$-model branes and all their intersection laws in the "target spacetime" $\mathfrak{g}$.

**Remark 7.3.31** (Brane condensates)**.** To see how to think of the extensions $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$ as "extended spacetimes", observe that by Prop. 7.3.25 and Def. 7.3.1 a $\sigma$-model on the extension $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$ of $\mathfrak{g}$ which is classified by a $(p+2)$-cocycle $\mu$ is equivalently a $\sigma$-model on $\mathfrak{g}$ together with an $p$-form higher gauge field on its worldvolume, one whose curvature $(p+1)$-form satisfies a twisted Bianchi identity controled by $\mu$. The examples discussed below in Section 8.1.2 show that this $p$-form field ("tensor field" in the brane literature) is that which is "sourced" by the charged boundaries of the original $\sigma$-model branes on $\mathfrak{g}$. For instance for superstrings ending on D-branes it is the Chan-Paton gauge field sourced by the endpoints of the open string, and for M2-branes ending on M5-branes it is the latter's B-field which is sourced by the self-dual strings at the boundary of the M2-brane. In conclusion, this means that we may think of the extension $\widehat{\mathfrak{g}}$ as being the original spacetime $\mathfrak{g}$ but *filled with a condensate* of branes whose $\sigma$-model is induced by $\mu$.

## 7.4 Prequantum boundary and defect field theory

We now discuss examples and applications of the general mechanism of higher local prequantum boundary and defect field theory, 5.2.18. Our main interest here is the hierarchy of boundary and defect structures relating higher Chern-Simons-type field theories to higher Wess-Zumino-Witten type field theories.

We start in section

- 7.4.1 – *Vacuum defects from spontaneous symmetry breaking*

with discussion of how the general abstract theory in Section 5.2.18 of correspondence spaces in higher homotopy-types nicely captures the traditional notions in physics phenomenology of *spontaneous symmetry breaking vacuum defects* called *cosmic monopoles*, *cosmic strings* and *cosmic domain walls*, including the traditional rules by which these may end on each other. This discussion uses a minimum of mathematical sophistication (just some homotopy pullbacks) but may serve to nicely illustrate the interpretation of the abstract formalism in actual realistic physics. Readers not interested in this interpretation may want to skip this section.

Our main example here is then

- 7.4.2 – *Higher Chern-Simons local prequantum field theory*

where we observe that in the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ of smooth stacks there is a canonical tower of topological higher local prequantum field theories whose cascade of higher codimension defects naturally induce higher Chern-Simons type prequantum field theories and their associated theories.

### 7.4.1 Vacuum defects from spontaneous symmetry breaking

In particle physics phenomenology and cosmology, there is a traditional notion of *defects in the vacuum structure* of gauge field theories which exhibit spontaneous symmetry breaking, such as in the Higgs mechanism. A review of these ideas is in [ViSh94]. A discussion of how such vacuum defects due to symmetry breaking may end on each other, and hence form a network of defects of varying codimension, is in [PrVi92]. Here we briefly review the mechanism indicated in the latter article and then show how it is neatly formalized within the general notion of defect field theories as in Section 5.2.18.8. This is intended to serve as an illustration of the physical interpretation of the abstract notion of defects in field theories and of their formalization by correspondences, particularly. Readers not interested in physics phenomenology may want to skip this section.

Consider an inclusion of topological groups $H \hookrightarrow G$. Here we are to think of $G$ as the gauge group (more mathematically precise: structure group) of a gauge theory and of $H \hookrightarrow G$ as the subgroup that is preserved by any one of its degenerate vacua (for instance in a Higgs mechanism), hence the gauge group that remains after spontaneous symmetry breaking. In this case the quotient space (coset space) $G/H$ is the moduli space of vacuum configurations, so that a vacuum configuration up to continuous deformations on a spacetime $\Sigma$ is given by the homotopy class of a map from $\Sigma$ to $G/H$.

Traditionally a *codimension-k defect in the vacuum structure* of a theory with such spontaneous symmetry breaking is a spacetime locally of the form $\mathbb{R}^n - (D^k \times \mathbb{R}^{n-k})$ with a vacuum classified locally by a the homotopy class of a map

$$S^{k-1} \simeq \mathbb{R}^n - (D^k \times \mathbb{R}^{n-k}) \to G/H\,,$$

hence by an element of the $(k-1)$-st homotopy group of $G/H$. If this element is non-trivial, one says that the vacuum has a *codimension-k defect.* Specifically in an $(n = 4)$-dimensional spacetime $\Sigma$

- for $k = 1$ this is called a *domain wall*;
- for $k = 2$ this is called a *cosmic string*;
- for $k = 3$ this is called a *monopole.*

Next consider a sequence of inclusions of topological groups

$$H_2 \hookrightarrow H_1 \hookrightarrow H_0 = G\,.$$

Along the above lines this is now to be thought of as describing the breaking of a symmetry group $G = H_0$ first to $H_1$ at some energy scale $E_1$, and then a further breaking down to $H_2$ at some lower energy scale $E_2$. So at the high energy scale the moduli space of vacuum structures is $G/H_1 = H_0/H_1$ as before. But at the low energy scale the moduli space of vacuum structures is now $H_1/H_2$. If there is a vacuum defect at low energy, classified by a map $S^{k-1} \to H_1/H_2$, then if it is “heated up” or rather if it “tunnels” by a quantum fluctuation through the energy barrier, it becomes instead a defect classified by a map to $H_0/H_2$, namely by the composite

$$S^{k-1} \to H_1/H_2 \to H_0/H_2 \,.$$

Here the map on the right is the fiber inclusion of the $H_1$-associated $H_1/H_2$-fiber bundle

$$H_1/H_2 \to H_0/H_2 \to H_0/H_1$$

naturally induced by the sequence of broken symmetry groups. The heated defect may be unstable, hence given by a trivial element in the $(k-1)$-st homotopy group of $H_0/H_2$, even if the former is not, in which case one says that the original defect is *metastable*. In terms of diagrams, metastability of the low energy defect means precisely that its classifying map $S^{k-1} \to H_1/H_2$ extends to a homotopy commutative diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^{k-1} & \longrightarrow & H_1/H_2 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ D^k & \longrightarrow & H_0/H_2 \end{array} \;,$$

where the left vertical arrow is the boundary inclusion $S^{k-1} \hookrightarrow D^k$. Now according to [PrVi92], the decay of a metastable low-energy vacuum defect of codimension-$k$ leads to the formation of a stable high-energy defect of codimension-$(k+1)$ at its decaying boundary. For instance a metastable cosmic string defect in the low energy vacuum structure is supposed to be able to end (decay) on a cosmic monopole defect in the high energy vacuum structure.

We now turn to a formalization of this story. By Def. 5.2.221, the discussion in [PrVi92] shows that the transition from metastable codimension-$k$ defects in the low energy vacuum structure to stable high-energy $(k+1)$-defects should be represented by a correspondence of the form

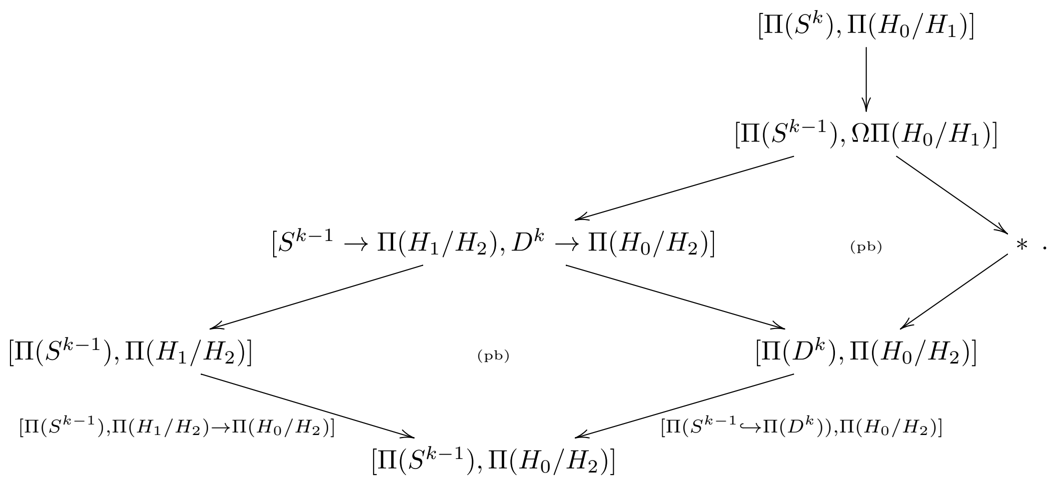
$$[\Pi(S^{k-1}), \textstyle\int(H_1/H_2)] \longleftarrow [\Pi(S^k), \textstyle\int(H_0/H_1)] \longrightarrow * \;,$$

exhibiting the high energy defects as boundary data for the low energy defects.

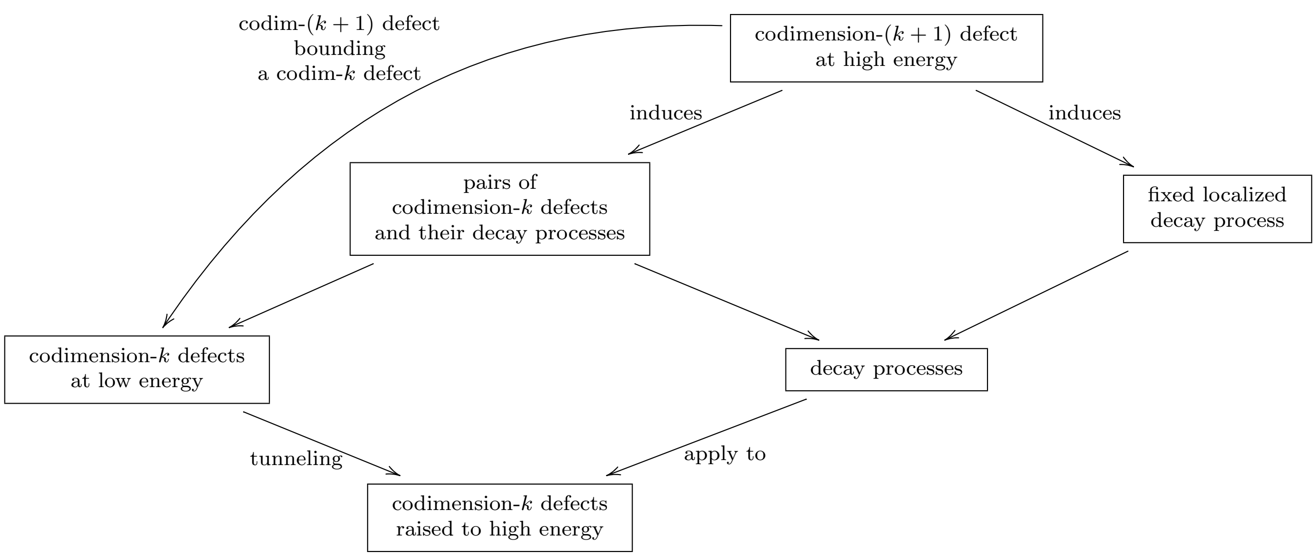
To see how to obtain this in line with the phenomenological story, observe that the heating/tunneling process as well as the decay process of the heated defects are naturally represented by the maps on the left and the right of the following diagram, respectively:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & & & * \\ & & & \swarrow^{D^k \to H_0/H_2} & \\ [\Pi(S^{k-1}), \textstyle\int(H_1/H_2)] & & & & [\Pi((D^k), \textstyle\int(H_0/H_2)] \\ & \searrow_{H_1/H_2 \to H_0/H_2} & & \swarrow_{S^{k-1} \hookrightarrow D^k} & \\ & & [\Pi(S^{k-1}), \textstyle\int(H_0/H_2)] & & \end{array} \;.$$

The left map sends a low energy defect to its high energy version, the right map sends a high energy decay process to the field configuration which is decaying. For a specific spatially localized defect process $D^k \to H_0/H_2$ we are to pick one point in the space of defect processes, which is what the top right map reflects. Therefore, the moduli space of decay processes of metastable low energy defects is precisely the homotopy fiber product of these two maps, namely the space of pairs consisting of a low energy defect and a localized decay process of its heated version (up to a pertinent gauge transformation that identifies the heated defect with the field configuration which decays). By the above fiber sequence of quotient spaces one finds that this homotopy pullback is $[\Pi(S^{k-1}, \Omega\Pi(H_0/H_1))]$. Hence, in conclusion, we find the desired correspondence as the top part of the following homotopy pullback diagram



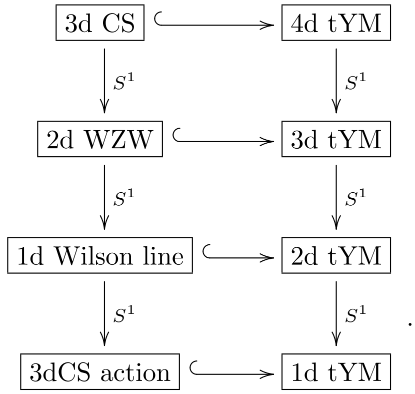

In summary, this diagram encodes the phenomenological story of the decay of metastable defects as follows:



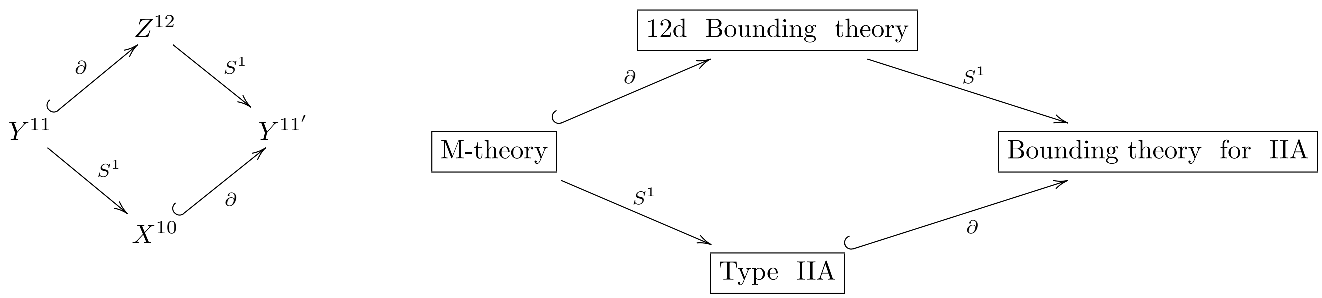

### 7.4.2 Higher Chern-Simons local prequantum boundary field theory

We now turn to the class of those local prequantum field theories which deserve to be termed of *Chern-Simons type*. We show that these arise rather canonically as the boundary data for the canonical differential cohomological structure of Prop. 7.4.1 which is exhibited by every cohesive $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$.

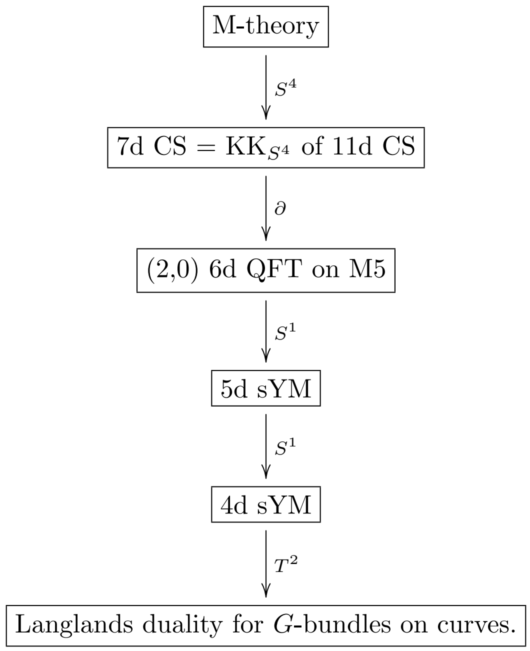
**7.4.2.1 Survey: towers of boundaries, corners, ... and of circle reductions** We discuss in the following towers/hierarchies of iterated defects of increasing codimension of a universal topological Yang-Mills theory. Most of these defects, however, are best recognized after "gluing their endpoints" after which they equivalently become circle-reductions/transgression to loop space of the original theory. Restricted to the archetypical case of 3d Chern-Simons theory, the following discussion essentially goes through the following diagram:




This is a pattern of iterated higher codimension corners and iterated circle reductions which had long been emphasized by Hisham Sati to govern the grand structure of hierarchies of theories inside string/M-theory [Sa10, Sa11a, Sa12]. For instance there should be a tower of this kind which instead of 3d Chern-Simons theory has 11-dimensional supergravity, or “M-theory” as follows:




From this descent further such towers in string/M-theory, and for each one can have various extensions deeper in dimensions, via both dimensional reductions and boundaries. For instance, Edward Witten has been exploring a system of reductions [Wi11] which in (small) parts involves a system roughly as follows




The second entry from the top indicates the 7-dimensional Chern-Simons theory/term arising from the Kaluza-Klein reduction on the 4-sphere of the corresponding term in eleven dimensions [FSS12b], this we discuss below in 7.2.9.3. The next is the 6-dimensional boundary field theory of this, whose Green-Schwarz contribution we discuss in 8.1.2.

**7.4.2.2** $d = n+1$**: Universal topological Yang-Mills theory** We consider a simple theory where fields are closed differential forms and the Lagrangian being the integral of that form. We start with the abelian but higher case and later we get nonabelian theories by introducing boundaries.

First recall from the following system of higher differential moduli stacks.

**Proposition 7.4.1.** *For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we have a pasting diagram of homotopy pullback squares in $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow[\text{connection}]{\text{forget (non-flat)}} & \mathbf{B}^n U(1) & \longrightarrow & * \\
\downarrow^{\mathrm{curv}} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} & \xrightarrow{\text{inclusion}} & \flat_{\mathrm{dR}} \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1) & \xrightarrow{FA} & \flat \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1) \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\text{forget flat connection}} \\
 & & * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)
\end{array} ,$$

*where $FA$ is the map that takes a flat curvature form and interprets it as a connection on the trivial bundle of one higher degree.*

As a special case of Prop. 5.2.198 we have:

**Proposition 7.4.2.** *For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the morphism*

$$\exp(i S_{\mathrm{tYM}}) \colon \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \longrightarrow \flat \mathbf{B}^{n+1} U(1)$$

*in prop. 7.4.1, regarded as an object*

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c} \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ \downarrow^{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathrm{tYM}}\right)} \\ \flat \mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1) \end{array} \right] \in \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\flat\mathbf{B}^n U(1)})^{\otimes} ,$$

*is fully dualizable, with dual* $\exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathrm{tYM}}\right)$.

**Definition 7.4.3.** For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we call the local prequantum field theory defined by the fully dualizable object $S_{\mathrm{tYM}}$ of Prop. 7.4.2 the *universal topological Yang-Mills* local prequantum field theory

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathrm{tYM}}\right) : \mathrm{Bord}^{\otimes}_{n+1} \to \mathrm{Corr}_{n+1}(\mathbf{H}_{/\flat\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)})^{\otimes} .$$

This terminology is justified below in Remark 7.4.7. We will encounter this theory again in later sections.

**7.4.2.3** $d = n + 0$**: Higher Chern-Simons field theories** We discuss now the boundary conditions of the universal topological Yang-Mills local prequanutm field theory

**Remark 7.4.4.** The universal boundary condition for $S_{\mathrm{tYM}}$ according to Def. 5.2.216 is given by the top rectangle in Prop. 7.4.1, naturally regarded as a correspondence in the slice:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow^{F_{(-)}} & \\ * & & & & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow_{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathrm{tYM}}\right)} & \\ & & \flat\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1) & & \end{array} .$$

So by Prop. 5.2.217 there is a natural equivalence of $\infty$-categories

$$\mathrm{Bdr}\left(\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathrm{tYM}}\right)\right) \simeq \mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}}$$

between the $\infty$-category of boundary conditions for the universal topological Yang-Mills theory in dimension $(n+1)$ and the slice $\infty$-topos of $\mathbf{H}$ over the moduli stack of $U(1)$-$n$-connections.

**Corollary 7.4.5.** *The* $(\infty, 1)$*-category of boundary conditions for the universal topological Yang-Mills local prequantum field theory* $S_{\mathrm{tYM}}$ *are equivalently* $\infty$-Chern-Simons local prequantum field theories *[FSS13a]: moduli stacks* $\mathbf{Fields}_{\partial} \in \mathbf{H}$ *equipped with a prequantum n-bundle [FRS13a]*

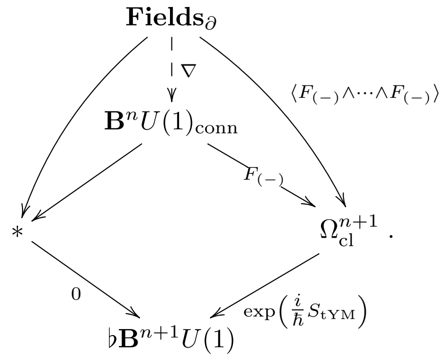
$$\nabla_{\mathrm{CS}} : \mathbf{Fields}_{\partial} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

*The automorphism* $\infty$*-group of a given boundary condition for* $S_{\mathrm{tYM}}$ *is hence equivalently the* quantomorphism $\infty$*-group of the corresponding Chern-Simons theory [FRS13a].*

Proof. This is just a special case of Prop. 5.2.217. Explicitly, by the universal property of the homotopy pullback in $\mathbf{H}$, given any boundary condition for $S_{\mathrm{tYM}}$, hence by Remark 5.2.214 a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathbf{Fields}_{\partial} & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow^{\langle F_{(-)} \wedge \cdots \wedge F_{(-)} \rangle} & \\ * & & \swArrow_{\nabla} & & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\ & \searrow_{0} & & \swarrow_{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathrm{tYM}}\right)} & \\ & & \flat\mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1) & & \end{array} ,$$

this is equivalent to the dashed morphism in the diagram




□

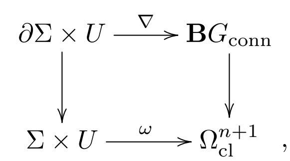
**Remark 7.4.6.** Observe that while the space of phases of the bulk field theory is $\flat \mathbf{B}^{n+1}U(1)$, we may now regard $\mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ as the space of spaces of the boundary field theory.

In order to interpret this, notice the following.

**Remark 7.4.7.** For the special case that $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial$ is a moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of $G$-principal $\infty$-connections for some $\infty$-group $G$, we may think of the morphism

$$\langle F_{(-)} \wedge \cdots F_{(-)} \rangle : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

as encoding an *invariant polynomial* $\langle -, \cdots, - \rangle$ on (the $\infty$-Lie algebra of) $G$ [FSS10]. By extrapolation from this case we may also speak of invariant polynomials if $\mathbf{Fields}|_{\partial\Sigma}$ is of more general form, in which case we have invariant polynomials on *smooth $\infty$-groupoids*. Restricting to the group-al case just for definiteness, notice that a boundary field configuration, which by Prop. 5.2.211 is given by




forces the closed $(n+1)$-form $\omega$ of the bulk theory to become the $\infty$-Chern-Weil form of a $G$-principal $\infty$-connection with respect to the invariant polynomial $\langle -, \cdots, - \rangle$ at the boundary:

$$\omega|_{\partial\Sigma} = \langle F_\nabla \wedge \cdots \wedge F_\nabla \rangle \, .$$

For $G$ an ordinary Lie group, this is known as the *Lagrangian for topological $G$-Yang-Mills theory.* More generally, for $G$ any smooth $\infty$-group, we may hence think of this as the Lagrangian of a topological $\infty$-Yang-Mills theory.

Specifically for the *universal* boundary condition $\mathbf{Fields}_\partial = \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of Remark 7.4.4 we find a field theory which assigns $U(1)$-$n$-connections $\nabla$ to $n$-dimensional manifolds $\Sigma_n$ and closed $(n+1)$-forms $\omega$ on $(n+1)$-dimensional manifolds $\Sigma_{n+1}$, such that whenever the latter bounds the former, the exponentiated integral of $\omega$ equals the *$n$-volume holonomy* of $\nabla$. This is just the relation between circle $n$-connections and their curvatures which is captured by the axioms of *Cheeger-Simons differential characters*. Hence it makes sense to call the higher topological Yang-Mills theory which is induced from the universal boundary condition the *Cheeger-Simons theory* in the given dimension.

However, Corollary 7.4.5 says more: the universality of the Cheeger-Simons theory as a boundary condition for topological Yang-Mills theory means that a consistent such boundary condition is necessarily not just an invariant polynomial, but is a lift of that from de Rham cocycles to differential cohomology. This means that it is a *refined ∞-Chern-Weil homomorphism* in the sense of [FSS10] of the invariant polynomial in the sense of [FRS13a]. Equivalently it is a *higher prequantum field theory*. In either case a lift $\nabla$ in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow[\langle F_{(-)} \wedge \cdots \wedge F_{(-)} \rangle]{} & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} .$$

**Example 7.4.8.** For the canonical binary invariant polynomial $\langle -, - \rangle$ on a simply connected semisimple Lie group $G$ such as Spin or SU (the *Killing form*) a consistent boundary condition, as in Remark 7.4.7, is provided by the differential refinement of the first fractional Pontrjagin class $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ and of the second Chern class $c_2$, respectively, that have been constructed in [FSS10]:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\frac{1}{2}\widehat{\mathbf{p}_1}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow[\langle F_{(-)} \wedge F_{(-)} \rangle]{} & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} , \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\widehat{\mathbf{c}}_2}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow[\langle F_{(-)} \wedge F_{(-)} \rangle]{} & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} .$$

Furthermore, for the canonical quaternary invariant polynomial on the smooth String-2-group (see appendix of [FSS12b] for a review) a consistent boundary condition as in Remark 7.4.7 is provided by the differential refinement of the second fractional Pontrjagin class $\frac{1}{6}p_2$ that has also been constructed in[FSS10]:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\frac{1}{6}\widehat{\mathbf{p}}_2}{\nearrow} & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow[\langle F_{(-)} \wedge F_{(-)} \wedge F_{(-)} \wedge F_{(-)} \rangle]{} & \Omega^8_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} .$$

This describes a 7-dimensional Chern-Simons theory of nonabelian 2-form connections [FSS12b].

**7.4.2.4** $d = n - 1$**: Topological Chern-Simons boundaries** We now consider codimension-2 corners of the universal topological Yang-Mills theory, hence codimension-1 boundaries of higher Chern-Simons theories. These turn out to be related to Wess-Zumino-Witten like theories. Further below in Section 7.3 we discuss that a natural differential variant of this type of theories also arises as ∞-Chern-Simons theories themselves.

For characterizing the data assigned by a field theory to such corners, we will need to consider the generalization of the following traditional situation.

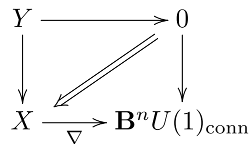
**Example 7.4.9.** For $(X, \omega)$ a symplectic manifold, $\omega \in \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}(X)$, a submanifold $Y \to X$ is *isotropic* if $\omega|_Y = 0$, and *Lagrangian* if in addition $\dim(X) = 2\dim(Y)$. If $(X, \omega)$ is equipped with a *prequantum bundle*, namely a lift $\nabla$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} \\ X & \xrightarrow[\omega]{} & \Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} ,$$

then we may ask not only for a trivialization of the symplectic form $\omega$ but even of the connection $\nabla$ on $Y$: $\nabla|_Y \simeq 0$. If this exists, then traditionally $Y$ is called a *Bohr-Sommerfeld leaf* of $(X, \nabla)$, at least when $Y$ is one leaf of a foliation of $X$ by Lagrangian submanifolds.

Hence we set generally:

**Definition 7.4.10.** Given a space $X \in \mathbf{H}$ and a connection $\nabla : X \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, a *Bohr-Sommerfeld isotropic space* of $(X, \nabla)$ is a diagram of the form




in $\mathbf{H}$.

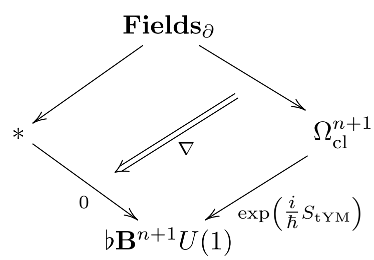
**Remark 7.4.11.** The *universal* Bohr-Sommerfeld isotropic space over $(X, \nabla)$ is the homotopy fiber $\mathrm{fib}(\nabla) \to X$ of $\nabla$. In a sense this is the "maximal" Bohr-Sommerfeld isotropic space over $(X, \nabla)$, as every other one factors through this, essentially uniquely. Below we see that these are equivalently the universal codimension-2 corners of higher Chern-Simons theory. While the property of being "isotropic and maximally so" is reminiscent of Lagrangian submanifolds, it seems unclear what the notion of Lagrangian submanifold should refine to generally in higher prequantum geometry, if anything.

**Proposition 7.4.12.** *A corner, Def. 5.2.218, for the universal topological Yang-Mills theory, Def. 7.4.3, from a non-trivial to a trivial boundary condition, hence a boundary condition for an $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory, Corollary 5.2.185, $\nabla : \mathbf{Fields}_\partial \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, is equivalently a* Bohr-Sommerfeld isotropic space *of boundary fields, Def. 7.4.10, namely a map*

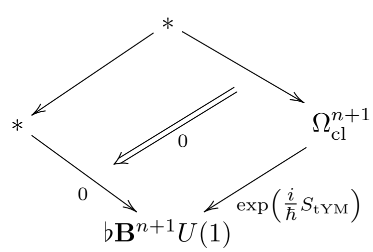
$$\mathbf{Fields}_{\partial\partial} \to \mathbf{Fields}_\partial$$

*such that $F_{\nabla|_{\partial^2}} = 0$ and equipped with a homotopy $\nabla|_{\mathbf{Fields}_{\partial\partial}} \simeq 0$.*

Proof. The boundary condition for $\nabla$ is a correspondence-of-correspondences from

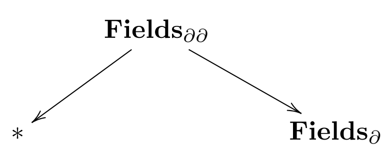



to




.

The tip of this correspondence-of-correspondences is a correspondence of the form




,

hence is just a map as on the right. The correspondence-of-correspondences is then filled with a second order homotopy between $\nabla$, regarded as a homotopy, and the 0-homotopy. Unwinding what this means in view of def. 6.4.111, one sees that this homotopy is given by a Čech-Deligne cochain $(\cdots, A^{\nabla_{\mathrm{bdr}}}, 0, 0)$ such that

$$D(\cdots, A^{\nabla_{\mathrm{bdr}}}, 0, 0) = (\cdots, A^{\nabla}, 0)|_{\partial\partial},$$

where

$$D(\cdots, A^{\nabla}, 0) = (0, 0, \cdots, 0, \omega)|_{\partial}.$$

□

**Example 7.4.13** (Topological boundary for 3d Chern-Simons theory)**.** This is in accord with what is proposed as the data on codimension-1 defects for ordinary Chern-Simons theory on p. 11 of [KaSa10a]. They propose (somewhat implicitly in their text) that the boundary connection should be such that $U$-component of $\langle F_\nabla \wedge F_\nabla \rangle$ vanishes at each point of $\Sigma$. But for us the fields are $A : \Pi(\Sigma) \times U \to \mathbf{B}G_{conn}$, hence are flat along $\Sigma$, hence that component vanishes anyway. As a result, the proposal in [KaSa10a] essentially comes down to asking that boundary fields $\nabla$ are the maximal solution to trivializing $\langle F_\nabla \wedge F_\nabla \rangle$. If we refine this statement from de Rham cocycles to differential cohomology, we arrive at the above picture.

**Remark 7.4.14.** Chern-Simons theory is famously related to Wess-Zumino-Witten theory in codimension-1. However, WZW theory is not directly a "topological boundary" of Chern-Simons theory. Below in Section 7.4.2.6 we show that (the topological sector of) pre-quantum WZW theory is a codimension-1 *defect* from $\exp(iS_{\mathrm{CS}})$ to itself, via $\exp(iS_{\mathrm{tYM}})$.

**Remark 7.4.15.** So the *universal* boundary condition for $\infty$-Chern-Simons local prequantum field theory $\nabla : \mathbf{Fields} \to \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ (regarded itself as a boundary condition for its topological Yang-Mills theory) is the homotopy fiber of $\nabla$.

**Example 7.4.16.** Let $\mathfrak{P}$ be Poisson Lie algebroid and $\nabla : \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P}) \to \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ the prequantum 2-bundle of the corresponding 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons prequantum field theory. A maximally isotropic sub-Lie algebroid $\mathfrak{C} \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{P}$ is identified in [CaFe03] with a D-brane for the theory. See [FRS13a] (...)

Further developing Example 7.4.8, we have by [FSS10] the following.

**Example 7.4.17.** The universal boundary condition for ordinary Spin Chern-Simons theory regarded as a local prequantum field theory $\frac{1}{2}\widehat{\mathbf{p}}_1 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the moduli stack of String-2-connections

$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\widehat{\mathbf{p}}_1} \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

The universal boundary condition for 7-dimensional String-Chern-Simons local prequantum field theory [FSS12b] $\frac{1}{6}\widehat{\mathbf{p}}_2 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is the moduli stack of Fivebrane-6-connections

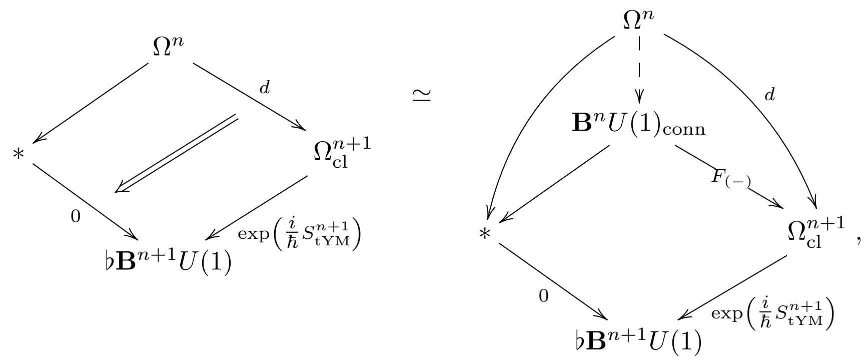
$$\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Fivebrane}_{\mathrm{conn}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}} \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}\widehat{\mathbf{p}}_2} \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

**Examples 7.4.18.** A rich variant of this class of examples of topological prequantum boundary conditions turns out to be the intersection laws of Green-Schwarz type super $p$-branes. We discuss this in details in Section 8.1.2 below.

**7.4.2.5** $d = n - k$**: Holonomy defects** The higher parallel transport of an $n$-connection over a $k$-dimensional manifold with boundary takes values in sections of the transgression of the $n$-bundle to an $(n - k + 1)$-bundle over the boundary. Here we discuss this construction at the level of moduli stacks and then observe that it is naturally interpreted in terms of defects for higher topological Yang-Mills/higher

Chern-Simons theory. The Wess-Zumino-Witten defects and the Wilson line/surface defects in the following sections 7.4.2.6 and 7.4.2.7 build on this class of examples.

First observe that a particularly simple boundary condition for topological Yang-Mills theory is to take the connection to be trivial on the boundary via the following




which corresponds to the inclusion

$$\Omega^n \hookrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

of globally defined differential $n$-forms regarded as connections on trivial $n$-bundles.

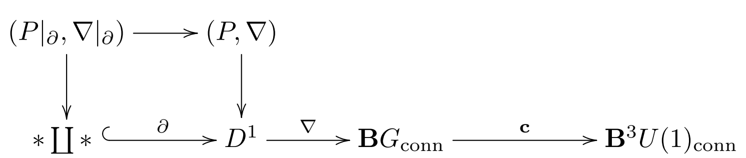
**7.4.2.6** $d = n - 1$: **Wess-Zumino-Witten field theories** We now consider codimension-1 defects for higher Chern-Simons theories, hence codimension-2 corners for topological Yang-Mills theory.

**Remark 7.4.19.** In [FuRuSc] 2-dimensional (rational) conformal field theories (CFTs) of WZW type have been constructed and classified by assigning to a punctured marked surface $\Sigma$ a CFT $n$-point function which is induced by applying the Reshetikhin-Turaev 3d TQFT functor (hence local quantum Chern-Simons theory) to a 3-d cobordism cobounding the "double" of the marked surface. In the case that $\Sigma$ is orientable and without boundary, this is the 3d cylinder $\Sigma \times [-1, 1]$ over $\Sigma$. In the language of extended QFTs with defects this construction of a 2d theory from a 3d theory may be formulated as a realization of 2d WZW theory as a codimension-1 defect in 3d Chern-Simons theory. The two chiral halves of the WZW theory correspond to the two "phases" of the 3d theory which are separated by the defect $\Sigma$. This perspective of [FuRuSc] has later been amplified in [KaSa10b].

Now let

$$\exp(iS_{\mathrm{CS}}) = \mathbf{c} : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

be a Chern-Simons prequantum field theory. We have a $G$-principal bundle with connection $(P, \nabla)$ over the 1-disk $D^1$, i.e the interval, whose boundary is the 0-sphere, i.e. composed of two points, schematically indicated in the following diagram



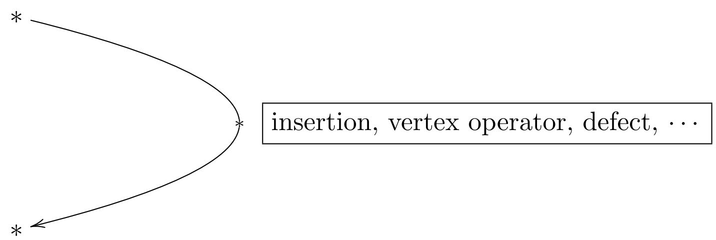

**Definition 7.4.20.** The *Wess-Zumino-Witten defect* is the morphism

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathrm{CS}} \circ p_1 - iS_{\mathrm{CS}} \circ p_2\right) \longrightarrow \exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S_{\mathrm{tYM}}\right)$$

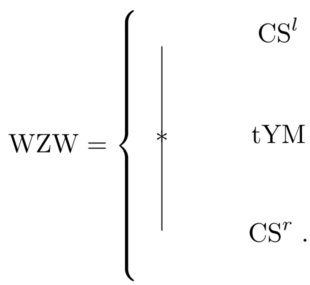
in $\mathrm{Corr}(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}})$ given in $\mathbf{H}$ by the the transgression, Def. 6.4.160, of the Chern-Simons connection over the 1-disk

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & [D^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] & & \\
 & \swarrow^{(-)|_{\partial D^1}} & & \searrow & \\
[S^0, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \simeq & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \times \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} & \Swarrow^{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{D^1}[D^1, \mathbf{c}]\right)} & & \Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl}} \, . \\
 & \searrow_{\mathbf{c}\circ p_1 - \mathbf{c}\circ p_2} & & \swarrow & \\
 & & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & &
\end{array}
$$

**Remark 7.4.21.** This is a codimension-1 defect of $S^3_{\mathrm{tYM}}$ according to Def. 5.2.221. It may be visualized as a 1-dimensional "cap"




for a single copy of the CS-theory, whose 0-dimensional tip carries a tYM-theory. Here a closed 3-form is what is responsible for the defect, hence the name "defect field". By duality we may straighten this structure and visualize it schematically as

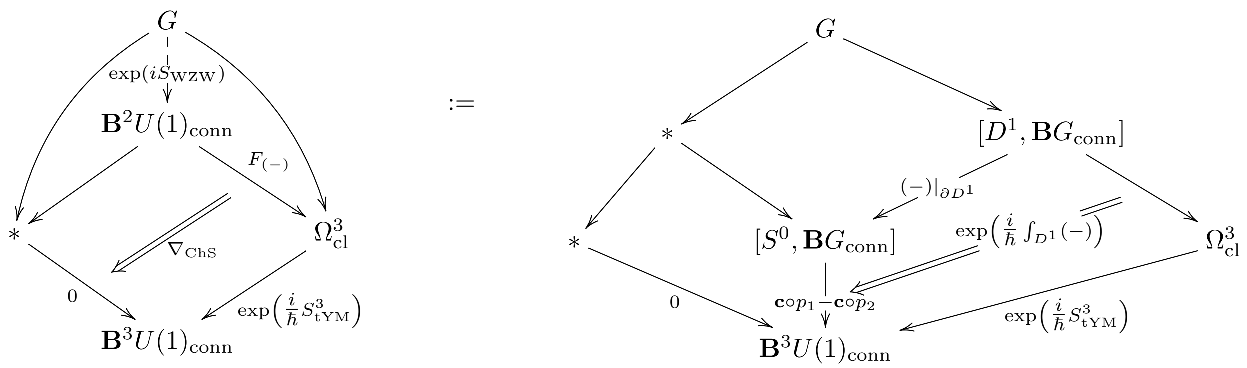



This defect becomes a plain boundary for the tYM-theory when the left end is attached to a boundary that couples the left with the right part of the CS-theory:

**Definition 7.4.22.** The *Wess-Zumino-Witten codimension-2* corner in 4d topological Yang-Mills theory is the boundary

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{I} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{I} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbb{I} & \underset{S^3_{\mathrm{tYM}}}{\longrightarrow} & S^4_{\mathrm{tYM}}
\end{array}
$$

of the boundary 3d tYM theory given as a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$ by the composite




Here the bottom right square is that of Def. 7.4.20, the bottom left square is filled with the evident equivalence, and the map $G \to [S^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ in the top square is given by resolving the simply connected Lie group $G$ by its based path space $P_*G$, regarded as a diffeological space. Then each path uniquely arises as the parallel transport of a $G$-principal connection on the interval and two paths with the same endpoint have a unique gauge transformation relating them.

**Remark 7.4.23.** It is important to highlight that $G$ here is the differential concretification of the pullback in the middle, as discussed in [FRS13a].

**Proposition 7.4.24.** *The morphism*

$$\exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar} S_{\mathrm{WZW}}\right) : G \to \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

*from Def. 7.4.22 is the WZW-2-connection (the "WZW gerbe"/"WZW B-field").*

Proof. This follows along the lines of the discussion in [FSS13a], where it was found that the composite

$$G \longrightarrow [S^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[S^1, \mathbf{c}]} [S^1, \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_{S^1}(-)\right)} \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

is the (topological part of) the localized WZW action. □

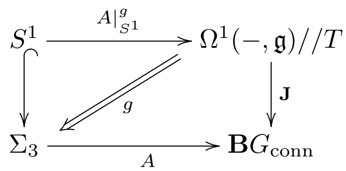
**7.4.2.7** $d = n - 2$**: Wilson loop/Wilson surface field theories** In 1.4.1.5 ([FSS13a]) a description of how Wilson loop line defects in 3d Chern-Simons theory is given by the following data. Let $\lambda \in \mathfrak{g}$ be a regular weight, corresponding via Borel-Weil-Bott to the irreducible representation which labels the Wilson loop. Then the stabilizer subgroup $G_\lambda \hookrightarrow G$ of $\lambda$ under the adjoint action is a maximal torus $G_\lambda \simeq T \hookrightarrow G$ and $G/G_\lambda \simeq \mathcal{O}_\lambda$ is the coadjoint orbit. Integrality of $\lambda$ means that pairing with $\lambda$ constitutes a morphism of moduli stacks of the form

$$S_W : \ \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g})//T \xrightarrow{\langle \lambda, - \rangle} \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \ .$$

This is the local Lagrangian/the prequantum bundle of the Wilson loop theory in that there is a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathcal{O}_\lambda & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{fib}(\mathbf{J})} & \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g})//T & \xrightarrow{\langle \lambda, - \rangle} & \mathbf{B}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathbf{J}} & & \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}} & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \ , \end{array}$$

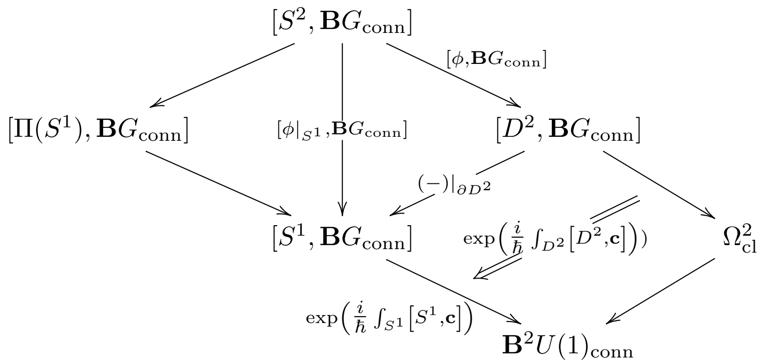
whose top composite is the Kirillov prequantum bundle on the coadjoint orbit and which is such that a Chern-Simons + Wilson loop field configuration $(A, g)$ is a diagram



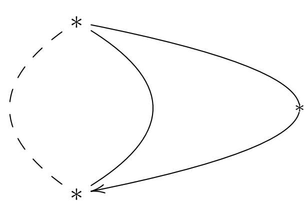

and the corresponding action functional is the product of $\langle \lambda, - \rangle$ transgressed over $S^1$ and $\mathbf{c}$ transgressed over $\Sigma_3$.

We now interpret this formally as a codimension-2 defect of Chern-Simons theory analogous to the WZW defect, hence as a codimension-3 structure in the ambient tYM theory.

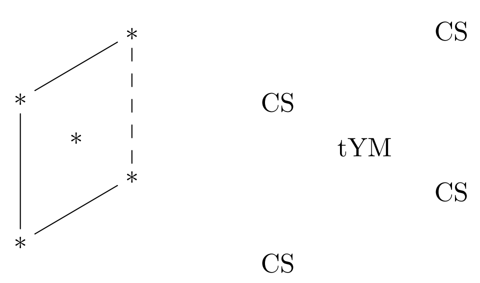
**Definition 7.4.25.** Let $\phi : D^2 \to S^2$ be a smooth function which on the interior of $S^2$ is a diffeomorphism on $S^2 - \{*\}$. The *universal Wilson line/Wilson surface defect* is, as a diagram in $\mathbf{H}$, the transgression diagram, Def. 6.4.160




**Remark 7.4.26.** This is a codimension-2 defect according to Def. 5.2.221. It may be visualized as a 2-dimensional CS theory cap




with a tYM-theory sitting at the very tip. By duality there is the corresponding straightened picture



We now define a defect that factors through the universal Wilson defect of Def. 7.4.25 and reproduces the traditional Wilson line action functional. To that end, let $\nabla_{S^2} : S^2 \to \mathbf{B}T_{\mathrm{conn}}$ be a $T$-principal connection on the 2-sphere, where $T$ is the maximal torus of $G$. We may identify the integral of its curvature 2-form over the sphere with the weight $\lambda$,

$$\lambda = \int_{S^2} F_{\nabla_{S^2}} \ .$$

Then consider the morphism

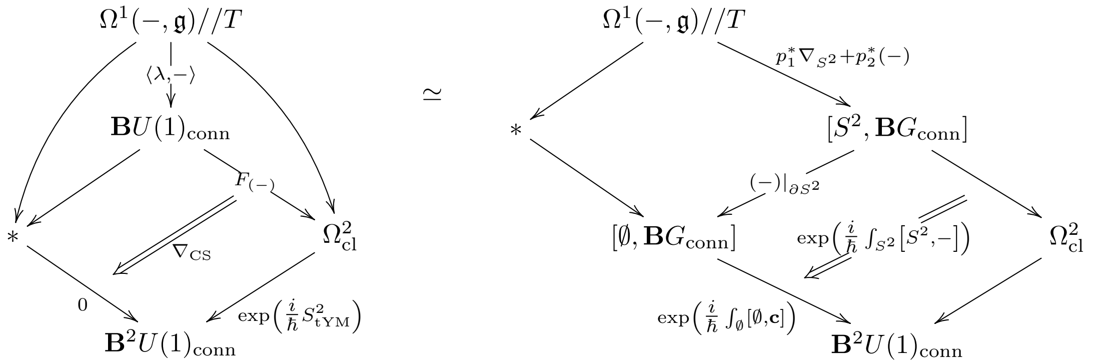
$$p_1^* \nabla_{S^1} + p_2^*(-) : \ \Omega^1(-, \mathfrak{g})//T \longrightarrow [S^2, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}]$$

in $\mathbf{H}$ which over a test manifold $U \in \mathrm{CartSp}$ sends a connection 1-form $A \in \Omega^1(U, \mathfrak{g})$ to

$$p_1^* \nabla_{S^2} + p_2^* A \in \mathbf{H}(S^2 \times U, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}) \, .$$

This is indeed a homomorphism since $T$ is abelian.

**Proposition 7.4.27.** *We have the following*



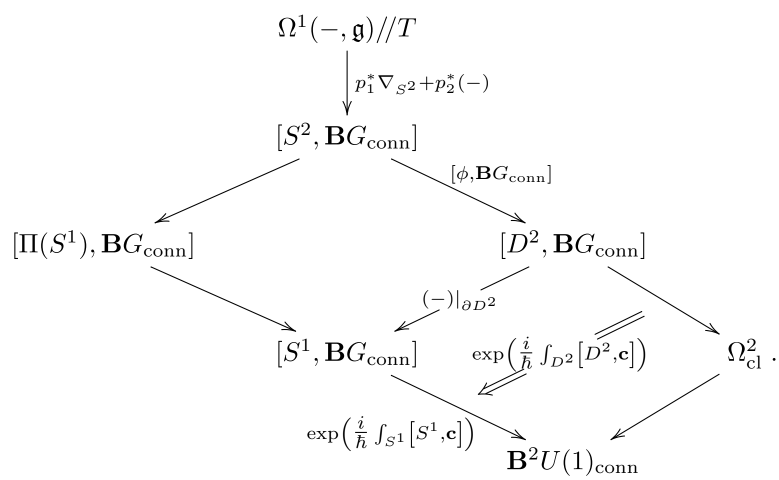

Proof. By construction and since $T$ is abelian, the component of the Chern-Simons form of $p_1^* \nabla_{S^2} + p_2^* A$ with two legs along $S^2$ is proportional to $\langle F_{\nabla_{S^2}} \wedge A \rangle$. Hence its fiber integral over $S^2 \times U \to U$ is

$$\int_{S^2} \langle F_{\nabla_{S^2}} \wedge A \rangle = \langle \lambda, A \rangle \, .$$

□

Therefore in conclusion we find that we can axiomatize Wilson loops in 3d Chern-Simons theory be the following defect structure.

**Definition 7.4.28.** The *Wilson line defect* is



## 7.5 Prequantum geometry

We discuss here the application of cohesive higher prequantum geometry, 5.2.17, to the natural action functionals that we consider in 7.2 and 7.3.

This section draws from [FRS13a].

Since in higher prequantum theory local Lagrangians are "fully de-transgressed" to higher prequantum bundles, conversely every example induces its corresponding transgressions. In the following we always start with a higher extended Chern-Simons-type theory and consider then its first transgression. As in the discussion in [FSS13a] this first transgression is the higher prequantum bundle of the topological sector of a higher extended Wess-Zumino-Witten type theory. In this way our examples appear at least in pairs as shown in the following table:

| | Higher CS-type theory | higher WZW-type theory |
|---|---|---|
| 7.5.1 | 3d $G$-Chern-Simons theory | 2d WZW-model on $G$ |
| 7.5.2 | $\infty$-CS theory from $L_\infty$-integration | |
| 7.5.3 | 2d Poisson Chern-Simons theory | 1d quantum mechanics |
| 7.5.4 | 7d String-Chern-Simons theory | 6d theory related to M5-brane |

### 7.5.1 Higher prequantum 2d WZW model and the smooth string 2-group

In 5.2.17 we remarked that an old motivation for what we call higher prequantum geometry here is the desire to "de-transgress" the traditional construction of positive energy loop group representations of simply connected compact Lie groups $G$ by, in our terminology, regarding the canonical $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-2-bundle on $G$ (the "WZW gerbe") as a prequantum 2-bundle. Here we discuss how prequantum 2-states for the WZW sigma-model provide at least a partial answer to this question. Then we analyze the quantomorphism 2-group of this model.

For $G$ a connected and simply connected compact Lie group such as $G = \mathrm{Spin}(n)$ for $n \geq 3$ or $G = \mathrm{SU}(n)$, the first nontrivial cohomology class of the classifying space $BG$ is in degree 4: $H^4(BG, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$. For $\mathrm{Spin}(n)$ the generator here is known as the *first fractional Pontryagin class* $\frac{1}{2}p_1$, while for $\mathrm{SU}(n)$ it is the second Chern class $c_2$. In [FSS10] was constructed a smooth and differential lift of this class to the $\infty$-topos $\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$, namely a diagram of smooth higher moduli stacks of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccc|c|ccc}
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \nabla_{\mathrm{CS}} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\hat{\mathbf{c}}_2} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle u_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle u_{\mathbf{B}^2U(1)}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle u_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU}}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle u_{\mathbf{B}^2U(1)}} \\
\mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1) & \nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}} & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{SU} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{c}_2} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \int} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int} \\
B\mathrm{Spin} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{2}p_1} & K(\mathbb{Z},4) & \int \nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}} & B\mathrm{SU} & \xrightarrow{c_2} & K(\mathbb{Z},4)
\end{array}
$$

Here $\int$ is the geometric realization map, and $u_{(-)}$ is the forgetful map from the higher moduli stacks of higher principal connections to that of higher principal bundles of def. 6.4.108.

In 7.2.5 we discuss that this 3-connection on the smooth moduli stack of $G$-principal connections – which for unspecified $G$ we now denote by $\nabla$ – is the full de-transgression of the (off-shell) prequantum 1-bundle of $G$-Chern-Simons theory, hence is the localized incarnation of 3d $G$-Chern-Simons theory in higher prequantum theory. In particular it is a $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$-prequantization, according to def. 6.4.108, of the Killing form invariant polynomial $\langle -, - \rangle$ of $G$, which is a differential 4-form (hence a *pre-3-plectic form* in the sense of def. 1.3.139) on the moduli stack of fields:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla_{\mathrm{CS}}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow^{F_{(-)}} \\ \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow[\langle F_{(-)}, F_{(-)}\rangle]{} & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} .$$

This 3-connection on the moduli stack of $G$-principal connections does not descend to the moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G$ of just $G$-principal bundles; it does however descend [Wal08] as a "3-connection without top-degree forms" as in def. 6.4.96:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \\ & \overset{\nabla^2_{\mathrm{CS}}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow^{\mathbf{B}^2F_{(-)}} \\ \mathbf{B}G & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^2\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} .$$

Therefore over the universal moduli stack of Chern-Simons fields $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ we canonically have a higher quantomorphism groupoid $\mathrm{At}(\nabla_{\mathrm{CS}})_\bullet$ as in 5.2.17.5, while over the univeral moduli stack of just the "instanton sectors" of fields we have just a Courant 3-groupoid $\mathrm{At}(\nabla^2_{\mathrm{CS}})_\bullet$ as in 5.2.17.6. This kind of phenomenon we re-encounter below in 7.5.3.

By the above and following [CJMSW05], the transgression of $\nabla_{\mathrm{CS}}$ to maps out of the circle $S^1$ is found to be the "WZW gerbe", the canonical circle 2-bundle with connection $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ on the Lie group $G$ itself. We may obtain this either as the fiber integration of $\nabla_{\mathrm{CS}}$ restricted along the inclusion of $G$ as the constant $\mathfrak{g}$-connection on the circle

$$\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}} : G \longrightarrow [S^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{[S^1, \nabla_{\mathrm{CS}}]} [S^1, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}] \xrightarrow{\exp(2\pi i \int_{S^1}(-))} \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

or equivalently we obtain it as the looping of $\nabla^2_{\mathrm{CS}}$:

$$\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}} : G \simeq \Omega\mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\Omega\nabla^2_{\mathrm{CS}}} \Omega\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \simeq \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

This $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ is the background gauge field of the 2d Wess-Zumino-Witten sigma-model, the "Kalb-Ramon B-field" under which the string propagating on $G$ is charged. We now regard this as the $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-prequantization (def. 6.4.108) of the canonical 3-form $\langle -, [-,-]\rangle$ on $G$ (a 2-plectic form):

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow^{F_{(-)}} \\ G & \xrightarrow[\langle -,[-,-]\rangle]{} & \Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} .$$

By example 1.2.95 the prequantum 2-states of the prequantum 2-bundle $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ are twisted unitary bundles with connection (twisted K-cocycles, after stabilization): the *Chan-Paton gauge fields.* More explicitly, with the notation as introduced there, a prequantum 2-state $\Psi$ of the WZW model supported over a D-brane submanifold $Q \hookrightarrow G$ is a map $\Psi : \nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}|_Q \to \mathbf{dd}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ in the slice over $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, hence a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Q & & \xrightarrow{\Psi} & & \coprod_n (\mathbf{B}U(n)/\!/\mathbf{B}U(1))_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\ G & \longrightarrow & [S^1, \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}] & \xrightarrow[\exp(\int_{S^1}[S^1,\nabla])]{} & \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow^{\mathrm{conc.}} & & \\ G/\!/_{\mathrm{ad}}G & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & G\mathbf{Conn}(S)^1 & & \end{array} .$$

Here we have added at the bottom the map to the differential concretification of the transgressed moduli stack of fields, according to example 6.4.16.3.1. As indicated, this exhibits $G$ as fibered over its homotopy quotient by its adjoint action. The D-brane inclusion $Q \to G$ in the diagram is the homotopy fiber over a full point of $G//_{\mathrm{ad}}G$ precisely if it is a conjugacy class of $G$, hence a "symmetric D-brane" for the WZW model. In summary this means that this single diagram exhibiting WZW prequantum-2-states as slice maps encodes all the WZW D-brane data as discussed in the literature [AlSc04]. In particular, in [FSS13a] we showed that the transgression of these prequantum 2-states $\Psi$ to prequantum 1-states over the loop group $LG$ naturally encodes the anomaly cancellation of the open bosonic string in the presence of D-branes (the Kapustin-part of the Freed-Witten-Kapustin quantum anomaly cancellation).

We may now study the quantomorphism 2-group of $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$, def. 5.2.138, on these 2-states, hence, in the language of twisted cohomology, the 2-group of twist automorphisms. First, one sees that by inspection that this is the action that integrates and globalizes the D-brane gauge transformations which are familiar from the string theory literature, where the local connection 1-form $A$ on the twisted bundle is shifted and the local connection 2-form on the prequantum bundle transforms as

$$A \mapsto A + \lambda\,, \quad B \mapsto B + d\lambda\,.$$

In order to analyze the quantomorphism 2-group here in more detail, notice that since the 2-plectic form $\langle -, [-,-]\rangle \in \Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl}}(G)$ is a left invariant form (by definition), the left action of $G$ on itself is Hamiltonian, in the sense of def. 5.2.141, and so we have the corresponding Heisenberg 2-group $\mathbf{Heis}(G, \nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}})$ of def. 5.2.141 inside the quantomorphism 2-group. By theorem 5.2.143 this is a 2-group extension of $G$ of the form

$$U(1)\mathbf{FlatConn}(G) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Heis}(\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}) \longrightarrow G\ .$$

Since $G$ is connected and simply connected, there is by prop. 6.4.200 an equivalence of smooth 2-groups $U(1)\mathbf{FlatConn}(G) \simeq \mathbf{B}U(1)$ and so the WZW Heisenberg 2-group is in fact a smooth circle 2-group extension

$$\mathbf{B}U(1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{Heis}(\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}) \longrightarrow G$$

classified by a cocycle $\mathbf{B}(\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}} \circ (-)) : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$. If $G$ is compact and simply connected, then, by the discussion in 6.4.6.2, $\pi_0\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{B}G, \mathbf{B}^3U(1)) \simeq H^4(BG, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$. This integer is the *level*, the cocycle corresponding to the generator $\pm 1$ is $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$ for $G = \mathrm{Spin}$ and $\mathbf{c}_2$ for $G = SU$. The corresponding extension is the String 2-group extension, def. 7.1.10

$$\mathbf{B}U(1) \longrightarrow \mathrm{String}_G \longrightarrow G\ .$$

Accordingly, under Lie differentiation, one finds, that the Heisenberg Lie 2-algebra extension of theorem 5.2.17.5 combined with def. 5.2.17.5 is the *string Lie 2-algebra* extension

$$\mathbf{B}\mathbb{R} \longrightarrow \underset{\underset{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathfrak{g}}}{\simeq}}{\mathfrak{Heis}_{\langle -,[-,-]\rangle}(\mathfrak{g})} \longrightarrow \mathfrak{g}\ .$$

More in detail, using the results of 6.4.21.5:

**Example 7.5.1.** Let $G$ be a (connected) compact simple Lie group, regarded as a 2-plectic manifold with its canonical 3-form $\omega := \langle -, [-,-]\rangle$ as in example 6.4.172. The infinitesimal generators of the action of $G$ on itself by right translation are the left invariant vector fields $\mathfrak{g}$, which are Hamiltonian. We have $H^1_{\mathrm{dR}}(G) \cong H^1_{\mathrm{CE}}(\mathfrak{g}, \mathbb{R}) = 0$, and therefore a weak equivalence:

$$\mathbf{BH}(G, \flat\mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{R}[2]$$

given by the evaluation at the identity element of $G$. The resulting composite cocycle

$$\langle -, [-,-]\rangle : \; \mathfrak{g} \xrightarrow{\rho} \mathfrak{X}_{\mathrm{Ham}}(X) \xrightarrow{\omega[\bullet]} \mathbb{R}[2]$$

is exactly the 3-cocycle which classifies the String Lie-2-algebra, namely just $\langle -, [-,-]\rangle$ regarded as a Lie algebra 3-cocycle. The String Lie 2-algebra, def. 7.1.15, is the homotopy fiber of this cocycle, in that we have a homotopy pullback square of $L_\infty$-algebras

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{string}_{\mathfrak{g}} & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathfrak{g} & \xrightarrow{\langle -,[-,-]\rangle} & \mathbb{R}[2] \end{array} .$$

Hence the String Lie 2-algebra is the Heisenberg Lie 2-algebra of the 2-plectic manifold $(G, \langle -, [-,-]\rangle)$ with its canonical $\mathfrak{g}$-action $\rho$:

$$\mathfrak{heis}_\rho(\mathfrak{g}) \simeq \mathfrak{string}_{\mathfrak{g}} .$$

The relationship between $\mathfrak{string}_{\mathfrak{g}}$ and $L_\infty(G,\omega)$ was first explored in [BaRo09].

**Remark 7.5.2.** By the obstruction theorem 5.1.321 this means that given a $G$-principal bundle

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & P \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & X & \xrightarrow{g} & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} ,$$

then a lift of the modulating map $g$ through the String 2-group extension is precisely the structure needed to construct a circle 2-connection $\nabla_{\mathrm{glob}}$ on the total space $P$ such that it restricts on each fiber to the WZW-2-connection

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} G & \longrightarrow & P & \xrightarrow{\nabla_{\mathrm{glob}}} & \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & & \downarrow & & \\ & & X & \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_G \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}G \end{array} ,$$

with the composite $G \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ labeled $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ and the composite $X \to \mathbf{B}G$ labeled $g$.

At the level of the induced action functionals, essentially this was observed [DiSh07]. If $G = \mathrm{Spin} \times (E_8 \times E_8)$ or similar, and if $g$ is modulates the tangent bundle of $X$ and a gauge bundle, then the obstruction to such a lift is, by 7.1.2, the combination of $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ and $c_2$, by the discussion in 7.1.2. One may interpret the bundle of WZW models on $P$ as the internal degrees of freedom of a heteric string on spacetime $X$ and recovers a (another) geometric interpretation of the Green-Schwarz anomaly, 7.1.2.

### 7.5.2 Higher prequantum $n$d Chern-Simons-type theories and $L_\infty$-algebra cohomology

The construction of the higher prequantum bundle $\nabla_{\mathrm{CS}}$ for Chern-Simons field theory in 7.5.1 above follows a general procedure – which might be called *differential Lie integration of $L_\infty$-cocycles* - that produces a whole class of examples of natural higher prequantum geometries: namely those *extended higher Chern-Simons-type field theories* which are encoded by an $L_\infty$-invariant polynomial on an $L_\infty$-algebra, in generalization of how ordinary $G$-Chern-Simons theory for a simply connected simple Lie group $G$ is all encoded by the Killing form invariant polynomial (and as opposed to for instance to the cup product higher $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theories. Since also the following two examples in 7.5.3 and 7.5.4 are naturally obtained this way, we here briefly recall this construction, due to [FSS10], with an eye towards its interpretation in higher prequantum geometry.

Given an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g} \in L_\infty$, there is a natural notion of sheaves of (flat) $\mathfrak{g}$-valued smooth differential forms

$$\Omega_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}) \hookrightarrow \Omega(-,\mathfrak{g}) \in \mathrm{Sh}(\mathrm{SmoothMfd})\,,$$

and this is functorial in $\mathfrak{g}$ (for the correct ("weak") homomorphisms of $L_\infty$-algebras). Therefore there is a functor – denoted $\exp(-)$ in [FSS10] – which assigns to an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ the presheaf of Kan complexes that over a test manifold $U$ has as set of $k$-cells the set of those smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms on the $k$-simplex $\Delta^k$ which are sufficiently well behaved towards the boundary of the simplex (have "sitting instants"). Under the presentation $L_{\mathrm{lhe}}[\mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}] \simeq \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ of the $\infty$-topos of smooth $\infty$-groupoids this yields a Lie integration construction from $L_\infty$-algebras to smooth $\infty$-groupoids. (So far this is the fairly immediate stacky and smooth refinement of a standard construction in rational homotopy theory and deformation theory, see the references in [FSS10] for a list of predecessors of this construction.)

In higher analogy to ordinary Lie integration, one finds that $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$ is the "geometrically $\infty$-connected" Lie integration of $\mathfrak{g}$: the geometric realization $\int \exp(\mathfrak{g})$, of $\exp(\mathfrak{g}) \in L_{\mathrm{lhe}}[\mathrm{SmoothMfd}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathrm{KanCplx}] \simeq \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ is always contractible. For instance for $\mathfrak{g} = \mathbb{R}[-n+1] = \mathbf{B}^{n-1}\mathbb{R}$ the abelian $L_\infty$-algebra concentrated on $\mathbb{R}$ in the $n$th degree, we have

$$\exp(\mathbb{R}[-n+1]) \simeq \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$$

and it follows that $\int \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R} \simeq B^n\mathbb{R} \simeq *$. Geometrically non-$\infty$-connected Lie integrations of $\mathfrak{g}$ arise notably as truncations of the $\infty$-stack $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$, 5.1.3. For instance for $\mathfrak{g}_1$ an ordinary Lie algebra, then the 1-truncation of the $\infty$-stack $\exp(\mathfrak{g}_1)$ to a stack of 1-groupoids reproduces (the internal delooping of) the simply connected Lie group $G$ corresponding to $\mathfrak{g}$ by ordinary Lie theory:

$$\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{g}_1) \simeq \mathbf{B}G \quad \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

Similarly for $\mathfrak{string} \in L_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$ the string Lie 2-algebra, def. 1.2.188, the 2-truncation of its universal Lie integration to a stack of 2-groupoids reproduces the moduli stack of String-principal 2-bundles:

$$\tau_2 \exp(\mathfrak{string}) \simeq \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} \quad \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}\,.$$

Now the simple observation that yields the analgous Lie integration of $L_\infty$-cocycles is that a degree-$n$ $L_\infty$-cocycle $\mu$ on an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is equivalently a map of $L_\infty$-algebras of the form

$$\mu : \mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g} \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}\,;$$

and since $\exp(-)$ is a functor, every such cocycle immediately integrates to a morphism

$$\exp(\mu) : \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathbf{B}^n\mathbb{R}$$

in Smooth$\infty$Grpd, hence to a universal cocycle on the smooth moduli $\infty$-stack $\exp(\mathfrak{g})$. Moreover, this cocycle descends to the $n$-truncation of its domain as a $\mathbb{R}/\Gamma$ cocycle on the resulting moduli $n$-stack

$$\exp(\mu) : \tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{g}) \to \mathbf{B}^n(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)\,,$$

where $\Gamma \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is the period lattice of the cocycle $\mu$.

For instance for

$$\langle -, [-,-]\rangle : \mathbf{B}\mathfrak{g}_1 \to \mathbf{B}^3\mathbb{R}$$

the canonical 3-cocycle on a semisimple Lie algebra (where $\langle -,-\rangle$ is the Killing form invariant polynomial as before), its period group is $\pi_3(G) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$ of the simply connected Lie group $G$ integrating $\mathfrak{g}_1$, and hence the Lie integration of the 3-cocycle yields a map of smooth $\infty$-stacks of the form

$$\exp(\langle -, [-,-]\rangle) : \; \mathbf{B}G \xrightarrow{\simeq} \tau_3 \exp(\mathfrak{g}_1) \qquad \mathbf{B}^3(\mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z}) = \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)\;\;,$$

where we use that for the connected and simply connected Lie group $G$ not only the 1-truncation but also still the 3-truncation of $\exp(\mathfrak{g}_1)$ gives the delooping stack: $\tau_3 \exp(\mathfrak{g}_1) \simeq \tau_2 \exp(\mathfrak{g}_1) \simeq \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{g}_1) \simeq \mathbf{B}G$.

Indeed, this is what yields the refinement of the generator $c : BG \to K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$ to smooth cohomology, which we used above in 7.5.1, for instance for $\mathfrak{g}_1 = \mathfrak{so}$ the Lie algebra of the Spin group, the Lie integration of its canonical Lie 3-cocycle

$$\exp(\langle -, [-,-]\rangle_{\mathfrak{so}}) \simeq \tfrac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1$$

yields the smooth refinement of the first fractional universal Pontryagin class.

This is shown in [FSS10] by further refining the $\exp(-)$-construction to one that yields not just moduli $\infty$-stacks of $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles, but yields their differential refinements. The key to this construction is the observation that an invariant polynomial $\langle -, \cdots, - \rangle$ on a Lie algebra and more generally on an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ yields a *globally* defined (hence invariant) differential form on the moduli $\infty$-stack $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$:

$$\langle F_{(-)}, \cdots, F_{(-)} \rangle : \mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \,.$$

In components this is simply given, as the notation is supposed to indicate, by sending a $G$-principal connection $\nabla$ first to its $\mathfrak{g}$-valued curvature form $F_\nabla$ and then evaluating that in the invariant polynomial. In fact this property is part of the *definition* of $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ for the non-braided $\infty$-groups $G$. This we think of as a higher analog of Chern-Weil theory in higher differential geometry. We may also usefully think of the invariant polynomial $\langle F_{(-)}, \cdots, F_{(-)} \rangle$ as being a pre $n$-plectic form on the moduli stack $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$, in evident generalization of the terminiology for smooth manifolds in def. 1.3.139.

Using this, there is a differential refinement $\exp(-)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of the $\exp(-)$-construction, which lifts this pre-$n$-plectic form to differential cohomology and hence provides its pre-quantization, according to def. 6.4.108:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^n(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{conn}}}{\nearrow} & \downarrow^{F_{(-)}} \\ \tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\langle F_{(-)} \wedge \cdots F_{(-)} \rangle} & \Omega^{n+1}_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} .$$

Here the higher stack $\exp(-)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ assigns to a test manifold $U$ smoothly $U$-parameterized collections of simplicial $L_\infty$-Ehresmann connections: the $k$-cells of $\exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ are $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms $A$ on $U \times \Delta^k$ (now not necessarily flat) satisfying an $L_\infty$-analog of the two conditions on a traditional Ehresmann connection 1-form: restricted to the fiber (hence the simplex) the $L_\infty$-form datum becomes flat, and moreover the curvature invariants $\langle F_A \wedge \cdots \wedge F_A \rangle$ obtained by evaluating the $L_\infty$-curvature forms in all $L_\infty$-invariant polynomials descends down the simplex bundle $U \times \Delta^k \to U$.

For example the differential refinement of the prequantum 3-bundle of 3d $G$-Chern-Simons theory $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p}_1 \simeq \tau_3 \exp(\langle -, [-,-]\rangle)$ obtained this way is the universal Chern-Simons 3-connection

$$\exp(\langle -, [-,-]\rangle_{\mathfrak{so}})_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_1 : \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Spin}_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$$

whose transgression to codimension 0 is the standard Chern-Simons action functional, as discussed above in 7.5.1. Analgously, the differential Lie integration of the next cocycle, the canonical 7-cocycle, but now regarded as a cocycle on $\mathfrak{string}$, yields a prequantum 7-bundle on the moduli stack of String-principal 2-connections:

$$\exp(\langle -, [-,-], [-,-], [-,-]\rangle_{\mathfrak{so}})_{\mathrm{conn}} \simeq \tfrac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2 \;:\; \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,.$$

This defines a 7-dimensional nonabelian Chern-Simons theory, which we come to below in 7.5.4.

In conclusion this means that $L_\infty$-algebra cohomology is a direct source of higher smooth $(\mathbf{B}^{n-1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma))$-prequantum geometries on higher differential moduli stacks. For $\mu$ any degree-$n$ $L_\infty$-cocycle on an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, differential Lie integration yields the higher prequantum bundle

$$\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{conn}} : \tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^n(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma) \,.$$

Moreover, these are by construction higher prequantum bundles for higher Chern-Simons-type higher gauge theories in that their transgression to codimension 0

$$\exp\left(\int_{\Sigma_n} [\Sigma_n, \exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{conn}}]\right) : \ [\Sigma_n, \tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{g})_{\mathrm{conn}}] \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}/\Gamma$$

is an action functional on the stack of $\mathfrak{g}$-gauge fields $A$ on a given closed oriented manifold $\Sigma_n$ which is locally given by the integral of a Chern-Simons $(n-1)$-form $\mathrm{CS}_\mu(A)$ (with respect to the corresponding $L_\infty$-invariant polynomial) and globally given by a higher-gauge consistent globalization of such integrals.

All of this discussion generalizes verbatim from $L_\infty$-algebras to $L_\infty$*-algebroids*, too. In [FRS11] it was observed that therefore all the perturbative field theories known as *AKSZ sigma-models* have a Lie integration to what here we call higher prequantum bundles for higher Chern-Simons type field theories: these are precisely the cases as above where $\mu$ transgresses to a binary invariant polynomial $\langle -, - \rangle$ on the $L_\infty$-algebroid which non-degenerate. In the next section 7.5.3 we consider one low-dimensional example in this family and observe that its higher geometric prequantum and quantum theory has secretly been studied in some detail already – but in 1-geometric disguise.

For higher Chern-Simons action functionals $\exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ as above, one finds that their variational differential at a field configuration $A$ given by globally defined differential form data is proportional to

$$\delta \exp\left(\int_{\Sigma_{n-1}} [\Sigma_n, \exp(\mu)_{\mathrm{conn}}]\right) \ \propto \ \int_{\Sigma} \langle F_A \wedge \ldots F_A \wedge \delta A \rangle \,.$$

Therefore the Euler-Lagrange equations of motion of the corresponding $n$-dimensional Chern-Simons theory assert that

$$\langle F_A \wedge \cdots F_A, - \rangle = 0 \,.$$

(Notice that in general $F_A$ is an inhomogenous differential form, so that this equation in general consists of several independent components.) In particular, if the invariant polynomial is binary, hence of the form $\langle -, - \rangle$, and furthermore non-degenerate (this is precisely the case in which the general $\infty$-Chern-Simons theory reproduces the AKSZ $\sigma$-models), then the above equations of motion reduce to

$$F_A = 0$$

and hence assert that the critical/on-shell field configurations are precisely those $L_\infty$-algbroid valued connections which are flat.

In this case the higher moduli stack $\tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{g})$, which in general is the moduli stack of instanton/charge-sectors underlying the topologically nontrivial $\mathfrak{g}$-connections, acquires also a different interpretation. By the above discussion, its $(n-1)$-cells are equivalently flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued connections on the $(n-1)$-disks and its $n$-cells implement gauge equivalences between such data. But since the equations of motion $F_A = 0$ are first order differential equations, flat connections on $D^{n-1}$ bijectively correspond to critical field configuration on the cylinder $D^{n-1} \times [-T, T]$. Therefore the collection of $(n-1)$-cells of $\tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{g})$ is the higher/extended *covariant phase space* for "open genus-0 $(n-1)$-branes" in the model. Moreover, the $n$-cells between these $(n-1)$-cells implement the gauge transformations on such initial value data and hence $\tau_n \exp(\mathfrak{g})$ is, in codimension 1, the higher/extended *reduced phase space* of the model in codimension 1. For $n = 2$ this perspective was amplified in [CaFe00], we turn to this special case below in 7.5.3).

As an example, from this perspective the construction of the WZW-gerbe by looping as discussed above in 7.5.2 is equivalently the construction of the on-shell prequantum 2-bundle in codimension 2 for "Dirichlet boundary conditions" for the open Chern-Simons membrane. Namely $\mathbf{B}G$ is now the extended reduced phase space, and so the extended phase space of membranes stretching between the unique point is the homotopy fiber product of the two point inclusions $Q_0 \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}G \longleftarrow Q_1$, with $Q_0, Q_1 = *$, hence is $\Omega \mathbf{B}G \simeq G$.

Since the on-shell prequantum 2-bundle $\nabla^1_{\mathrm{CS}}$ trivializes over these inclusions, as exhibited by diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q_i & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\nabla_{\mathrm{CS}^2}} & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}^2} \end{array} ,$$

the on-shell prequantum 3-bundle $\nabla^2_{\mathrm{CS}}$ extends to a diagram of relative cocylces of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Q_0 & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}G & \xrightarrow{\nabla^2_{\mathrm{CS}}} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ Q_1 & \longrightarrow & * \end{array} ,$$

hence, under forming homotopy fiber products, to the WZW-2-connection $\Omega\nabla^2_{\mathrm{CS}} : G \to \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ on the extended phase space $G$.

In the next section we see another example of this phenomenon.

#### 7.5.3 Higher prequantum 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons theory and quantum mechanics

We consider here the boundary prequantum theory of the non-perturbative 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons theory and indicate how its quantization yields the quantization of the corresponding Poisson manifold, regarded as a boundary condition. More on this quantization is below in 7.6.2.1.

A non-degenerate and binary invariant polynomial which induces a pre-2-plectic structure on the moduli stack of a higher Chern-Simons type theory

$$\omega := \langle F_{(-)} F_{(-)} \rangle : \ \tau_2 \exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

exists precisely on Poisson Lie algebroids $\mathfrak{P}$, induced from Poisson manifolds $(X, \pi)$. The differential Lie integration method described above yields a $(\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma))$-prequantization

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \overset{\nabla_P}{\nearrow} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F_{(-)}} \\ \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow[\omega]{} & \Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} .$$

The action functional of this higher prequantum field theory over a closed oriented 2-dimensional smooth manifold $\Sigma_2$ is, again by [FSS12c, FRS11], the transgression of the higher prequantum bundle to codimension 0

$$\exp\left(\int_{\Sigma_2} [\Sigma_2, \nabla_P]\right) : \ [\Sigma_2, \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{conn}}] \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}/\Gamma \ .$$

We observe now that two complementary sectors of this higher prequantum 2d Poisson Chern-Simons field theory $\nabla_P$ lead a separate life of their own in the literature: on the one hand the sector where the bundle structures and hence the nontrivial "instanton sectors" of the field configurations are ignored and only the globally defined connection differential form data is retained; and on the other hand the complementary sector where only these bundle structures/ instanton sectors are considered and the connection data is ignored:

1. The restriction of the action functional $\exp(\int_{\Sigma_2}[\Sigma_2, \nabla_P])$ to the linearized theory – hence along the canonical inclusion $\Omega(\Sigma, \mathfrak{P}) \hookrightarrow [\Sigma_2, \exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{conn}}]$ of globally defined $\mathfrak{P}$-valued forms into all $\exp(\mathfrak{P})$-principal connections – is the action functional of the *Poisson sigma-model.*

2. The restriction of the moduli stack of fields $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{conn}}$ to just $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})$ obtained by forgetting the differential refinement (the connection data) und just remembering the underlying $\exp(\mathfrak{P})$-principal bundles, yields what is known as the *symplectic groupoid* of $\mathfrak{P}$.

   Precisely: while the prequantum 2-bundle $\nabla_P$ does not descend along the forgetful map $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})_{\mathrm{conN}} \to \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})$ from moduli of $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})$-principal connections to their underlying $\tau_1(\exp(\mathfrak{P}))$-principal bundles, its version $\nabla^1_P$ "without curving", given by def. 6.4.96, does descend (this is as for 3d Chern-Simons theory discussed above in 7.5.1) and so does hence its curvature $\omega^1$, which has coefficients in $\mathbf{B}\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$ instead of $\Omega^3_{\mathrm{cl}}$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & \mathbf{B}\left(\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}}\right) \\ & \nearrow^{\nabla^1_P} & \downarrow^{\mathbf{B}F_{(-)}} \\ \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P}) & \xrightarrow{\omega^1} & \mathbf{B}\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}} \end{array} .$$

   If here the smooth groupoid $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P}) \in \mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ happens to have a presentation by a Lie groupoid under the canonical inclusion of Lie groupoids into smooth $\infty$-groupoids (this is an integrability condition on $\mathfrak{P}$) then equipped with the de Rham hypercohomology 3-cocycle $\omega^1$ it is called in the literature a *pre-quasi-symplectic groupoid* [LX03]. If moreover the de Rham hypercohomology 3-cocycle $\omega^1$ – which in general is given by 3-form data and 2-form data on a Čech simplicial presheaf that resolves $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})$ – happens to be represented by just a globally defined 2-form on the manifold of morphisms of the Lie groupoid (which is then necessarily closed and "multiplicative"), then this local data is called a (pre-)*symplectic groupoid*, see [Ha06] for a review and further pointers to the literature.

So in the case that the descended (pre-)2-plectic form $\omega^1 : \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P}) \to \mathbf{B}\Omega^2_{\mathrm{cl}}$ of the higher prequantum 2d Poisson Chern-Simons theory is represented by a multiplicative symplectic 2-form on the manifold of morphisms of the Lie groupoid $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})$, then one is faced with a situation that looks like ordinary symplectic geometry subject to a kind of equivariance condition. This is the perspective from which symplectic groupoids were originally introduced and from which they are mostly studied in the literature (with the exception at least of [LX03], where the higher geometric nature of the setup is made explict): as a means to re-code Poisson geometry in terms of ordinary symplectic geometry. The goal of finding a sensible geometric quantization of symplectic groupoids (and hence in some sense of Poisson manifolds, this we come back to below) was finally achieved in [Ha06].

In order to further understand the conceptual role of the prequantum 2-bundle $\nabla^1_{\mathfrak{P}}$, notice that by the discussion in 7.5.2, following [CaFe00], we may think of the symplectic groupoid $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})$ as the extended reduced phase space of the open string Poisson-Chern-Simons theory. More precisely, if $\mathfrak{C}_1, \mathfrak{C}_1 \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{P}$ are two sub-Lie algebroids, then the homotopy fiber product $\mathbf{Phase}_{\mathfrak{C}_0,\mathfrak{C}_1}$ in

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathbf{Phase}_{\mathfrak{C}_0,\mathfrak{C}_1} & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{C}_0) & & & & \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{C}_1) \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\ & & \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P}) & & \end{array}$$

should be the ordinary reduced phase space of open strings that stretch between $\mathfrak{C}_0$ and $\mathfrak{C}_1$, regarded as D-branes. Unwinding the definitions shows that this is precisely what is shown in [CaFe03]: for $\mathfrak{C}_0, \mathfrak{C}_1 \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{P}$

two Lagrangian sub-Lie algebroids (hence over coisotropic submanifolds of $X$) the homotopy fiber product stack $\mathbf{Phase}_{\mathfrak{C}_0,\mathfrak{C}_1}$ is the symplectic reduction of the open $\mathfrak{C}_0$-$\mathfrak{C}_1$-string phase space.

Notice that the condition that $\mathfrak{C}_i \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{P}$ be Lagrangian sub-Lie algebroids means that restricted to them the prequantum 2-bundle becomes flat, hence that we have commuting squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{C}_i) & \longrightarrow & \flat \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P}) & \xrightarrow{\nabla^1_P} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \end{array} .$$

If the inclusions are even such $\nabla^1_P$ entirely trivializes over them, hence that we have diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{C}_i) & \xrightarrow{\nabla_{\mathfrak{C}_i}} & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P}) & \xrightarrow{\nabla^1_P} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \end{array} ,$$

then under forming homotopy fiber products the prequantum 2-bundle $\nabla^1_P$ induces a prequantum 1-bundle on the open string phase space by the D-brane-relative looping of the on-shell prequantum 2-bundle:

$$\nabla_{\mathfrak{C}_0} \underset{\nabla^1_P}{\times} \nabla_{\mathfrak{C}_1} : \mathbf{Phase}_{\mathfrak{C}_0,\mathfrak{C}_1)} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}} .$$

We now review the steps in the geometric quantization of the symplectic groupoid due to [Ha06] – hence the full geometric quantization of the prequantization $\nabla^1_P$ – while discussing along the way the natural re-interpretation of the steps involved from the point of view of the higher geometric prequantum theory of 2d Poisson Chern-Simons theory.

Consider therefore $\nabla^1_P$, as above, as the $(\mathbf{B}U(1))$-prequantum 2-bundle of 2d Poisson Chern-Simons theory according to def. 6.4.108. If we have a genuine symplectic groupoid instead of a pre-quasi-symplectic groupoid then it makes sense ask for this prequantization to be presented by a Čech-Deligne 3-cocycle on $\tau_1 \exp(\mathfrak{P})$ which is given just by a multiplicative circle-bundle with connection on the space of morphisms of the symplectic groupoid, and otherwise trivial local data on the space of objects. While this is unlikely to be the most general higher prequantization of the 2d Poisson Chern-Simons theory, this is the choice that admits to think of the situation as if it were a setup in traditional symplectic geometry equipped with an equivariance- or "multiplicativity"-constraint, as opposed to a setup in higher 2-plectic geometry. (Such a "multiplicative circle bundle" on the space of morphisms of a Lie groupoid is just like the transition bundle that appears in the definition of a bundle gerbe, only that here the underlying groupoid is not a Čech groupoid resolving a plain manifold, but is, in general, a genuine non-trivial Lie groupoid.)

Such a multiplicative prequantum bundle is the traditional notion of prequantization of a symplectic groupoid and is also considered in [Ha06]. The central construction there is that of the convolution $C^*$-algebra $\mathcal{A}(\nabla^1)_{\mathrm{pq}}$ of sections of the multiplicative prequantum bundle on the space of morphisms of the symplectic groupoid, and its subalgebra

$$\mathcal{A}(\nabla^1_P)_{\mathrm{q}} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{A}(\nabla^1_P)_{\mathrm{pq}}$$

of polarized sections, once a suitable kind of polarization has been chosen. Observe then that convolution algebras of sections of transition bundles of bundle gerbes have a natural interpretation in the higher geometry of the corresponding higher prequantum bundle $\nabla^1$: by [TXL04] and section 5 of [CJM02] these are the algebras whose modules are the unitary bundles which are twisted by $\nabla^1$: the "bundle gerbe modules".

By 5.1.13 and by the discussion above in 7.5.1, $\nabla^1_P$-twisted unitary bundles are equivalently the (pre-)quantum 2-states of $\nabla^1_P$ regarded as a prequantum 2-bundle. These hence form a category $\mathcal{A}(\nabla^1_P)_q\mathrm{Mod}$

of modules, and such categories of modules are naturally interpreted, by the discussion in the appendix of [Sc08a] as *2-modules* with *2-basis* the linear category $\mathbf{B}\mathcal{A}(\nabla^1_P)_q$:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{quantum 2-states of} \\ \text{higher prequantum 2d Poisson Chern-Simons theory} \end{array} \right\} \simeq \mathcal{A}(\nabla^1_P)_q\mathrm{Mod} \in 2\mathrm{Mod}\,.$$

This resolves what might be a conceptual puzzlement concerning the construction in [Ha06] in view of the usual story of geometric quantization: ordinarily geometric quantization directly produces the space of states of a theory, while it requires more work to obtain the algebra of quantum observables acting on that. In [Ha06] it superficially seems to be the other way around, an algebra drops out as a direct result of the quantization procedure. However, from the point of view of higher prequantum geometry this algebra *is* (a 2-basis for) the 2-space of 2-states; and indeed obtaining the *2-algebra* or *higher quantum operators* which would act on these 2-states does require more work (and has not been discussed yet).

Of course [Ha06] amplifies a different perspective on the central result obtained there: that $\mathcal{A}(\nabla^1_P)_q$ is also a *strict $C^*$-deformation quantization* of the Poisson manifold that corresponds to the Poisson Lie algebroid $\mathfrak{P}$! From the point of view of higher prequantum theory this says that the higher-geometric quantized 2d Poisson Chern-Simons theory has a 2-space of quantum 2-states in codimension 2 that encodes the correlators (commutators) of a 1-dimensional quantum mechanical system. In other words, we see that the construction in [Ha06] is implicitly a "holographic" (strict deformation-)quantization of a Poisson manifold by directly higher-geometric quantizing instead a 2-dimensional QFT.

Notice that this statement is an analogue in $C^*$-deformation quantization to the seminal result on *formal* deformation quantization of Poisson manifolds: The general formula that Kontsevich had given for the formal deformation quantization of a Poisson manifold was found by Cattaneo-Felder to be the point-particle limit of the 3-point function of the corresponding 2d Poisson sigma-model [CaFe00]. A similar result is discussed in [GK08]. There the 2d A-model (which is a special case of the Poisson sigma-model) is shown to holographically encode the quantization of its target space symplectic manifold regarded as a 1d quantum field theory.

In summary, the following table indicates how the "holographic" formal deformation quantization of Poisson manifolds by Kontsevich-Cattaneo-Felder is analogous to the "holographic" strict deformation quantization of Poisson manifolds by [Ha06], when reinterpreted in higher prequantum theory as discussed above.

| | perturbative formal algebraic quantization | non-perturbative geometric quantization |
|---|---|---|
| quantization of Poisson manifold | formal deformation quantization | strict $C^*$-deformation quantization |
| "holographically" related 2d field theory | Poisson sigma-model | 2d Poisson Chern-Simons theory |
| moduli stack of fields of the 2d field theory | Poisson Lie algebroid | symplectic groupoid |
| quantization of holographically related 2d field theory | perturbative quantization of Poisson sigma-model | higher geometric quantization of 2d Poisson Chern-Simons theory |
| 1d observable algebra is holographically identified with... | point-particle limit of 3-point function | basis for 2-space of quantum 2-states |

More details on this higher geometric interpretation of traditional symplectic groupoid quantization are discussed below in 7.6.

### 7.5.4 Higher prequantum 6d WZW-type models and the smooth fivebrane-6-group

We close the overview of examples by providing a brief outlook on higher dimensional examples in general, and on certain higher prequantum field theories in dimensions seven and six in particular.

To appreciate the following pattern, recall that in 7.5.1 above we discussed how the universal $G$-Chern-Simons ($\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$)-principal connection $\nabla_{\mathrm{CS}}$ over $\mathbf{B}G_{\mathrm{conn}}$ transgresses to the Wess-Zumino-Witten $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-principal connection $\nabla_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ on $G$ itself. At the level of the underlying principal $\infty$-bundles $\nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}}$ and $\nabla^0_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ this relation holds very generally:

for $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathbf{H})$ any $\infty$-group, and $A \in \mathrm{Grp}_{n+1}(\mathbf{H})$ any sufficiently highly deloopable $\infty$-group (def. 5.1.156) in any $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$, consider a class in smooth $\infty$-group cohomology, 5.1.14,

$$c \in H^{n+1}_{\mathrm{grp}}(G, A) = H^{n+1}(\mathbf{B}G, A)\,,$$

hence a universal characteristic class for $G$-principal $\infty$-bundles, represented by a smooth cocycle

$$\nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}} : \mathbf{B}G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{n+1}A\ .$$

Along the above lines we may think of the corresponding $\mathbf{B}^nA$-principal $\infty$-bundle over $\mathbf{B}G$ as a *universal $\infty$-Chern-Simons bundle*. By example 5.1.18 this is the delooped $\infty$-group extension which is classified by $\nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}}$ regarded as an $\infty$-group cocycle. The looping of this cocycle exists

$$\nabla^0_{\mathrm{WZW}} := \Omega\nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}} : G \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^nA\ .$$

and modulates a $\mathbf{B}^{n-1}A$-principal bundle over the $\infty$-group $G$ itself: the $\infty$-group extension itself that is classified by $\nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}}$ according to example 5.1.18. This is the corresponding WZW $\infty$-bundle.

For example, for the case that $G \in \mathrm{Grp}(\mathrm{Smooth}\infty\mathrm{Grpd})$ is a compact Lie group and $A = U(1)$ is the smooth circle group, then by example 6.4.6.2 there is an essentially unique refinement of every integral cohomology class $k \in H^4(BG, \mathbb{Z})$ to such a smooth cocycle $\nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}} : \mathbf{B}G \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$. This $k$ is the *level* of $G$-Chern-Simons theory and $\nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}}$ modulates the corresponding higher prequantum bundle of 3d $G$-Chern-Simons theory as in 7.5.1 above. Moreover, the looping $\nabla^0_{\mathrm{WZW}} \simeq \Omega\nabla^0_{\mathrm{CS}}$ modulates the "WZW gerbe", as discussed there.

Now restrict attention to the next higher example of such pairs of higher Chern-Simons/higher WZW bundles, as seen by the tower of examples induced by the smooth Whitehead tower of $\mathbf{B}O$, 7.1.2.1: the universal Chern-Simons 7-bundle on the smooth String-2 group and the corresponding Wess-Zumino-Witten 6-bundle on String itself.

To motivate this as part of a theory of physics, first consider a simpler example of a 7-dimensional Chern-Simons type theory, namely the cup-product $U(1)$-Chern-Simons theory in 7 dimensions, for which the "holographic" relation to an interesting 6d theory is fairly well understood. This is the theory whose de-transgression is given by the higher prequantum 7-bundle on the universal moduli 3-stack $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$-principal connections that is modulated by the smooth and differential refinement of the cup product $\cup$ in ordinary differential cohomology:

$$\begin{array}{ccc|c} \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{(-)\hat{\cup}(-)} & \mathbf{B}^7U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \nabla_{7\mathrm{AbCS}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle u_{\mathbf{B}^3U(1)}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle u_{\mathbf{B}^7U(1)}} & \\ \mathbf{B}^3U(1) & \xrightarrow{(-)\cup(-)} & \mathbf{B}^7U(1) & \nabla^0_{7\mathrm{AbCS}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int} & \\ K(\mathbb{Z}_4) & \xrightarrow{(-)\cup(-)} & K(\mathbb{Z}_8) & \int\nabla^0_{7\mathrm{AbCS}} \end{array}\ .$$

(Or rather, the theory to consider for the full holographic relation is a quadratic refinement of this cup pairing. The higher geometric refinement of this we discuss in 7.1.8, but in the present discussion we will suppress this, for simplicity).

While precise and reliable statements are getting scarce as one proceeds with the physics literature into the study of these systems, the following four seminal physics articles seem to represent the present understanding of the story by which this 7d theory is related to a 6d theory in higher generalization of how 3d Chern-Simons theory is related to the 2d WZW model.

1. In [Wi96] it was argued that the space of states that the (ordinary) geometric quantization of $\nabla_{7\mathrm{AbCS}}$ assigns to a closed 6d manifold $\Sigma$ is naturally identified with the space of conformal blocks of a self-dual 2-form higher gauge theory on $\Sigma$. Moreover, this 6d theory is part of the worldvolume theory of a single M5-brane and the above 7d Chern-Simons theory is the abelian Chern-Simons sector of the 11-dimensional supergravity Lagrangian compactified to a 7-manifold whose boundary is the 6d M5-brane worldvolume.

2. Then in [Mald97] a more general relation between the 6d theory and 11-dimensional supergravity compactified on a 4-sphere to an asymptotically anti-de Sitter space was argued for. This is what is today called $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$-duality, a sibling of the $\mathrm{AdS}_5/\mathrm{CFT}_4$-duality which has received a large amount of attention since then.

3. As a kind of synthesis of the previous two items, in [Wi98c] it is argued for both $\mathrm{AdS}_5/\mathrm{CFT}_4$ and $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$ the conformal blocks on the CFT-side are obtained already by keeping on the supergravity side *only* the Chern-Simons terms inside the full supergravity action.

4. At the same time it is known that the abelian Chern-Simons term in the 11-dimensional supergravity action relevant for $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$ is not in general just the abelian Chern-Simons term $\nabla_{7\mathrm{AbCS}}$ considered in the above references: more accurately it receives Green-Schwarz-type quantum corrections that make it a *nonabelian* Chern-Simons term [DLM95].

In [FSS12b] we observed that these items together, taken at face value, imply that more generally it must be the quantum-corrected nonabelian 7d Chern-Simons Lagrangian inside 11-dimensional supergravity which is relevant for the holographic description of the 2-form sector of the 6d worldvolume theory of M5-branes. (See [Fr12b] for comments on this 6d theory as an extended QFT related to extended 7d Chern-Simons theory.) Moreover, in 7.1.8 we observe that the natural lift of the "flux quantization condition" [Wi96] – which is an *equation* between cohomology classes of fields in 11d-supergravity – to moduli stacks of fields (hence to higher prequantum geometry) is given by the corresponding *homotopy pullback* of these moduli fields, as usual in homotopy theory. We showed that this homotopy pullback is the smooth moduli 2-stack $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}^{\mathbf{2a}}_{\mathrm{conn}}$ of twisted String-principal 2-connections, unifying the Spin-connection (the field of gravity) and the 3-form $C$-field into a single higher gauge field in higher prequantum geometry.

The nonabelian 7-dimensional Chern-Simons-type Lagrangian on String-2-connections obtained this way in [FSS12b] is the sum of some cup product terms and one indecomposable term. Moreover, the refinement specifically of the indecomposable term to higher prequantum geometry is the stacky and differential refinement $\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2$ of the universal fractional second Pontryagin class $\frac{1}{2}p_2$, which was constructed in [FSS10] as reviewed in 7.5.2 above:

$$\begin{array}{ccc|c} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}\hat{\mathbf{p}}_2} & \mathbf{B}^7U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \nabla_{7\mathrm{CS}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle u_{\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle p_{\mathbf{B}^7U(1)}} & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}\mathbf{p}_2} & \mathbf{B}^7U(1) & \nabla^0_{7\mathrm{CS}} \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \int} & \\ BO\langle 8\rangle & \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{6}p_2} & K(\mathbb{Z},8) & \int\nabla^0_{7\mathrm{CS}} \end{array} .$$

Quite independently of whatever role this extended 7d Chern-Simons theory has as a sector in $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$ duality, this is the natural next example in higher prequantum theory after that of 3d Spin-Chern-Simons theory.

In [FSS10] it was shown that the prequantum 7-bundle of this nonabelian 7d Chern-Simons theory over the moduli stack of its instanton sectors, hence over $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{String}$, is the delooping of a smooth refinement of the

*Fivebrane group*, 7.1.5.4, to the smooth Fivebrane 6-group, 7.1.2.5:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathrm{Fivebrane} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathrm{String} & \xrightarrow{\nabla^0_{7\mathrm{CS}}} & \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)\,. \end{array}$$

Moreover, by the above general discussion this induces a WZW-type 6-bundle over the smooth String 2-group itself, whose total space is the Fivebrane group itself

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Fivebrane} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathrm{String} & \xrightarrow{\nabla^0_{6\mathrm{WZW}}} & \mathbf{B}^6 U(1) \end{array} .$$

Therefore, in view of the discussion in 7.5.1, it is natural to expect a 6-dimensional higher analog of traditional 2d WZW theory whose underlying higher prequantum 6-bundle is $\nabla_{6\mathrm{WZW}}$. However, the lift of this discussion from just instanton sectors to the full moduli stack of fields is more subtle than in the 3d/2d case and deserves a separate discussion elsewhere. (This is ongoing joint work with Hisham Sati.)

## 7.6 Quantization

Above in 5.2.18 we discussed how local Lagrangian topological prequantum field theory with boundaries and defects is axiomatized in terms of local action functionals/higher prequantum bundles $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S\right)$ on moduli stacks **Fields** corresponding to diagrams of symmetric monoidal $(\infty, n)$-categories of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{sing}\otimes} & \xrightarrow{\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S\right)} & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H}_{/\mathbf{Phases}})^{\otimes} \\ & \searrow^{\mathbf{Fields}} & \downarrow \\ & & \mathrm{Corr}_n(\mathbf{H})^{\otimes} \end{array},$$

where $\mathbf{H}$ is the ambient cohesive $\infty$-topos.

By folk lore, a prequantum field theory with action functional $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S\right)$ on **Fields** is supposed to induce a genuine quantum field theory given by a monoidal functor to some *E-linear* $(\infty, n)$-category $E\mathrm{Mod}_n$ (for some ground ring $E$) by a process that integrates the contributions of $\exp\left(\frac{i}{S}(\phi)\right) \in$ **Phases** over all $\phi \in$ **Fields** as $E$-modules, after a specified embedding **Phases** $\hookrightarrow E\mathrm{Mod}$. This *path integral* [FeHi65, Zi04] is traditionally denoted by the symbols on the left of

$$\int\limits_{\phi \in \mathbf{Fields}} \exp\left(\tfrac{i}{\hbar}S(\phi)\right) D\phi \; : \; \mathrm{Bord}_n^{\mathrm{sing}\otimes} \longrightarrow E\mathrm{Mod}_n^{\otimes},$$

where $D\phi$ is meant to suggest an integration measure on **Fields**.

We now indicate how the discussion in 5.5 serves to naturally and usefully make formal sense of this inside the tangent cohesive $\infty$-topos $T\mathbf{H}$, 6.1 by fiber integration in twisted stable cohomology, 6.1.3.1. Then we indicate how in examples this general process reproduces traditional geometric quantization, **??**, as the boundary quantum field theory of the non-perturbative local prequantum 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons theory of 7.5.3. We also indicate how higher analogs of this serve to quantize higher WZW-type $p$-brane $\sigma$-models as in 7.3 as boundary theories of the higher prequantum Chern-Simons theories in 7.2.

The material outlined here is due to [Nui13, Sc14a, Sc13c].

- 7.6.1 – Cohomological quantization of correspondences in a cohesive slice
- 7.6.2 – The quantum particle at the boundary of the string
- 7.6.3 – The quantum string at the boundary of the membrane

### 7.6.1 Cohomological quantization of correspondences in a cohesive slice

To begin the discussion at the absolute fundamentals, notice that the two hallmarks of quantum theory are (e.g. [Di87])

1. the superposition principle
2. quantum interference .

These say that 1. quantum phases may be additively combined such that 2. there are relations that make combinations sum to zero. This informal statement is formally captured by the passage from the circle group $U(1)$ of phases in which action functionals $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S\right)$ traditionally take values, as discussed in 5.2.18.1.1, first to the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[U(1)]$, which is the universal context for adding phases, and then second to the quotient ring defined by the relations that regard addition of phases inside the complex numbers:

$$U(1) \xhookrightarrow{\text{superposition}} \mathbb{Z}[U(1)] \xrightarrow{\text{interference}} \mathbb{C} \; .$$

What is supposed to be integrated by the path integral is the thus linearized action functional $\rho \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar} S\right)$.

Observe now that the free group ring construction $\mathbb{Z}[-]$ is the left adjoint in an adjunction

$$\mathrm{CRing} \underset{\mathrm{GL}_1}{\overset{\mathbb{Z}[-]}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{AbGrp}$$

between commutative rings and abelian groups, whose right adjoint is the functor that sends a ring to its group of units. The corresponding adjunct of the map interference $\circ$ superposition above is the group homomorphims

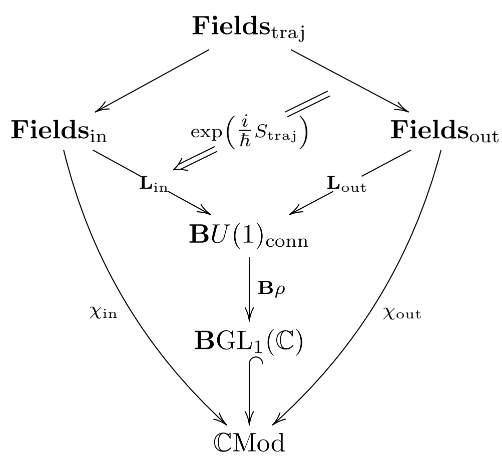
$$\rho : U(1) \longrightarrow \mathrm{GL}_1(\mathbb{C}) \,,$$

which canonically embeds $U(1)$ into the group of units of the complex numbers. Being a Lie group homomorphism, this deloops to a morphism of moduli stacks

$$\mathbf{B}\rho : \ \mathbf{B}U(1) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}GL_1(\mathbb{C}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{C}\mathbf{Line} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{C}\mathbf{Mod} \ ,$$

where on the right we observe that $\mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_1(\mathbb{C})$ is equivalently the moduli stack of smooth complex line bundles which sits inside the moduli stack of smooth complex vector bundles.

Using this, we can canonically turn a action functional as in 5.2.18.1.1 into the corresponding integral kernel,




regarded as a gauge transformation between an incoming prequantum bundle $\chi_{\mathrm{in}}$ and an outgoing prequantum bundle $\chi_{\mathrm{out}}$. Write then $\mathbb{C}^{\chi_{\mathrm{in}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{in}})$ and $\mathbb{C}^{\chi_{\mathrm{out}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{out}})$ for the space of sections of these prequantum line bundles, then the path integral over $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar} S_{\mathrm{traj}}\right)$ is supposed to produce a linear map

$$\mathbb{C}^{\chi_{\mathrm{in}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{in}}) \longrightarrow \mathbb{C}^{\chi_{\mathrm{out}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{out}}) \,,$$

which would be the *quantum propagator* that takes incoming quantum states/wave functions to outgoing quantum states.

This storty is quantum *mechanics*, hence 1-dimensional quantum field theory. By the discussion of higher dimensional local prequantum field theory in 5.2.18, for an $n$-dimensional local prequantum field theory the local action functional in full codimension is given by a Lagrangian $\mathbf{L}$ which is a map of the form

$$\mathbf{L} : \mathbf{Fields} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^n U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} \,.$$

By direct analogy with the above discussion, we are therefore led to consider the following linearization of such local Lagrangians.

First observe, based on [ABG10a], that the above adjunction $(\mathbb{Z}[-] \dashv \mathrm{GL}_1)$ generalizes to an $\infty$-adjunction between $E_\infty$-rings in the $\infty$-topos $\mathbf{H}$ (see [L-Alg]) and abelian $\infty$-group objects in $\mathbf{H}$, def. 5.1.157:

$$\mathrm{CRing}(\mathbf{H}) \underset{\mathrm{GL}_1}{\overset{\mathbb{S}[-]}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathrm{AbGrp}(\mathbf{H}) \ .$$

Therefore for an $n$-dimensional field theory we are to look for a quotient $E_\infty$-ring $E$ of the $\infty$-group $E_\infty$-ring $\mathbb{S}[\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1)]$ on the circle $n$-group (def. 6.4.21)

$$\mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1) \xhookrightarrow{\text{superposition}} \mathbb{S}[\mathbf{B}U(1)] \xrightarrow{\text{interference}} \mathbf{E}\,.$$

For instance for $n = 2$ there is a natural choice of quotient: by a smooth refinement of Snaith's theorem [Sn79] we can take[37]

$$\mathbf{KU} := \mathbb{S}[\mathbf{B}U(1)][\beta^{-1}]$$

to be the localization of the smooth group $\infty$-ring of the circle 2-group at the smooth Hopf bundle Bott element. Since these are $\infty$-colimit constructions, they are preserved by geometric realization, 6.4.5 and Snaith's theorem then says that this is the traditional complex K-theory spectrum

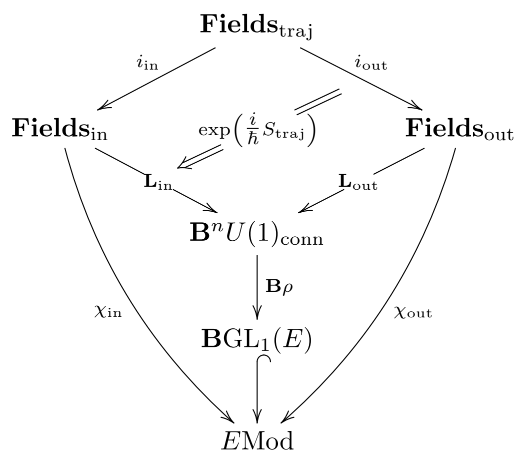
$$\Pi(\mathbf{KU}) \simeq \mathbb{S}[K(\mathbb{Z},2)][\beta^{-1}] \simeq \mathrm{KU}\,.$$

We learn from this that 2-dimensional local pre-quantum field theory should have a natural quantization in K-theory, and indeed it does, as we describe in 7.6.2 below.

In this fashion, for suitable choices of *higher superposition principles*

$$\rho : \mathbf{B}^{n-1}U(1) \longrightarrow \mathrm{GL}_1(E)$$

we may $E$-linearize local action functionals to higher integral kernels given by pasting composites of the form




Notice that such a diagram is a correspondence in $\mathbf{H}$ whose correspondence space $\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{traj}}$ is equipped with a cocycle in $(\chi_{\mathrm{in}}, \chi_{\mathrm{out}})$-twisted bivariant $E$-cohomology theory. This is the broad structure of representatives of *pure motives* (see e.g. [Su08]), here generalized to cohesive higher moduli stacks and twisted bivariant generalized cohomology.

Forming the $E$-modules of sections of these higher prequantum $E$-line bundles precisely means forming $\chi$-twisted $E$-cohomology spectra as in 6.1.3.1. Then a correspondence as above yields a co-correspondence of $E$-module spectra of the form

$$E^{\chi_{\mathrm{in}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{in}}) \xrightarrow{i_{\mathrm{in}}^*} E^{i_{\mathrm{in}}^*\chi_{\mathrm{in}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{traj}}) \simeq E^{i_{\mathrm{out}}^*\chi_{\mathrm{out}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{traj}}) \xleftarrow{i_{\mathrm{out}}^*} (\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{out}})E^{\chi_{\mathrm{out}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{out}})\,.$$

Now *integration* in this context means to dualize the morphism on the right (with respect to the tensor monoidal structure on $E$Mod) and to choose an equivalence of the $E$-modules with their (fiberwise) duals, this is the choice of *orientation in twisted $E$-cohomology.* The obstructions for such an orienation to exist by itself and moreover to exist in a consistent way that is compatible composition of correspondence (as

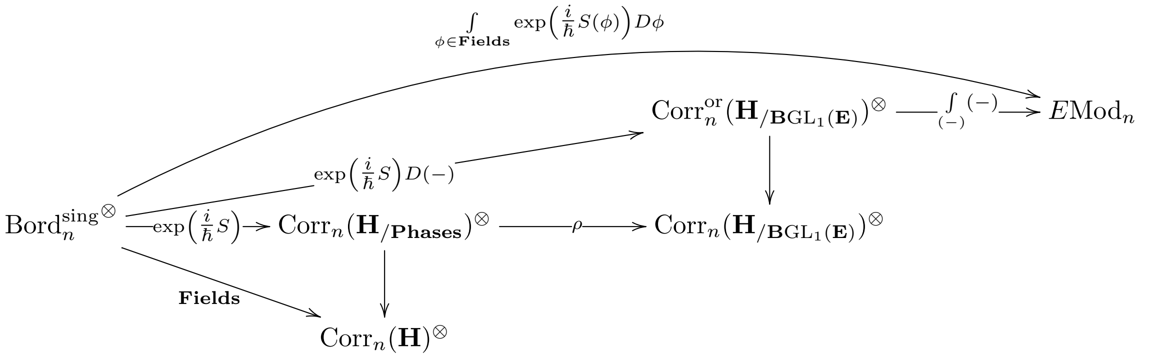
[37] I am grateful to Thomas Nikolaus for discussion of this point.

indicated in [FHT07]) are the *quantum anomalies*. If the orientation exists and has been consistently chosen, then we can form the *twisted Umkehr map* [ABG10b] $(i_{\mathrm{out}})_!$, see [Nui13] for a review. This finally turns the above integral kernel into the *higher quantum propagator*

$$E^{\chi_{\mathrm{in}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{in}}) \xrightarrow{(i_{\mathrm{out}})_! \circ i_{\mathrm{in}}^*} E^{\chi_{\mathrm{out}}}(\mathbf{Fields}_{\mathrm{out}}) \; .$$

In our first example in 7.6.2 below, in the case of $n = 2$ with $E = \mathrm{KU}$ as above, this cohomological quantization is presented over moduli stacks which are Lie groupoids by the KK-theoretic constructions in [BMRS07], via [TXL04]. In [Mah13] it is shown that this indeed canonically maps into noncommutative motives (see e.g [BGT10]).

In summary, the quantization of pre-quantum correspondences in the slice of a cohesive $\infty$-topos via fiber integration in twisted stable cohomology corresponds to lifts of the original pre-quantum field theory as shown in the following diagram:




Here

- **Fields** is the higher moduli stack of pre-quantum fields;
- $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar} S\right)$ is the specified local action functional on **Fields**, defining the given pre-quantum field theory;
- $\rho$ is the chosen higher superposition principle, linearizing in $E$-cohomology;
- $\exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar} S\right) D(-)$ is a lift of the local action functional to consistently twisted $E$-oriented correspondences, hence is a choice of *cohomological path integral measure* on **Fields**;
- $\int_{\phi \in \mathbf{Fields}} \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar} S(\phi)\right) D(\phi)$ is the composition of the latter the previous item with the pull-push operation, this is the cohomological realization of the *path integral*.

This quantization process is particularly interesting for the boundary prequantum field theories discussed in 5.2.18.6, where it yields quantization of *geometric* (non-topological) field theories as the "holographic" boundaries of topological field theories in one dimension higher.

| **linear homotopy-type theory** | **twisted generalized cohomology** | **quantum theory** |
|---|---|---|
| linear homotopy-type | (module-)spectrum | state space |
| multiplicative conjunction | smash product of spectra | composite system |
| dependent linear type | module spectrum bundle | |
| Frobenius reciprocity | six operation yoga<br>in Wirthmüller context | linearity of integrals |
| dual type (linear negation) | Spanier-Whitehead duality | dual state space |
| invertible type | twist | prequantum line bundle,<br>quantum anomaly |
| dependent sum | generalized homology spectrum | space of compactly supported<br>quantum states<br>"bra" |
| dual of dependent sum | generalized cohomology spectrum | space of quantum states<br>"ket" |
| linear implication | bivariant cohomology | quantum operators |
| exponential modality | Goodwillie exponential | Fock space |
| dependent sum<br>over finite homotopy type | Thom spectrum | |
| dualizable dependent sum<br>over finite homotopy type | Atiyah duality between<br>Thom spectrum and<br>suspension spectrum | |
| (twisted) self-dual type | Poincaré duality | inner product (Hilbert) space |
| dependent sum coinciding<br>with dependent product | ambidexterity, semiadditivity | system of<br>inner product state spaces |
| dependent sum coinciding<br>with dependent product<br>up to invertible type | Wirthmüller isomorphism<br>(twisted ambidexterity) | anomalous system<br>of inner product state spaces |
| $(\sum_f \dashv f^*)$-counit | pushforward<br>in generalized homology | |
| (twisted-)self-duality-induced<br>dagger of this counit | (twisted-)Umkehr map,<br>fiber integration | quantum superposition<br>and interference |
| linear polynomial functor | primary integral transform | propagator in cobounding<br>$\mathrm{TQFT}_{d+1}$ |
| correspondence<br>with linear implication | motive | prequantized Lagrangian correspondence,<br>action functional |
| composite of this linear implication<br>with unit and daggered counit | secondary integral transform | cohomological path integral,<br>motivic transfer |
| trace | Euler characteristic | partition function |

| special case | **linear homotopy-type theory** | **higher linear algebra**<br>viz.<br>**generalized cohomology theory** |
|---|---|---|
| | $E \in \mathrm{CRing}_\infty$ | ground ring |
| | $X \in \infty\mathrm{Grpd}$ | base homotopy type (base space) |
| | $\tau : X \longrightarrow \mathrm{Pic}(E)$ | twist |
| | $\widehat{\tau} := \tau^* \widehat{\mathrm{Pic}}(E) \in \mathrm{Mod}(X)$ | $E$-line bundle |
| canonical twist on moduli<br>for stable vector bundles | $J^E : \mathbb{Z} \times BO \xrightarrow{J} \mathrm{Pic}(\mathbb{S}) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Pic}(\mathbb{S} \to E)} \mathrm{Pic}(E)$ | J-homomorphism |
| | $\sum\limits_X \widehat{\tau} \simeq E_{\bullet+\tau}(X)$ | spectrum of<br>$\tau$-twisted $E$-homology cycles |
| trivial twist | $\sum\limits_X 1_X \simeq E_\bullet(X) = E \wedge \Sigma^\infty_+ X$ | suspension spectrum |
| $X \xrightarrow{\xi} \mathbb{Z} \times BO$ modulating<br>stable vector bundle | $\sum\limits_X \widehat{J^E \circ \xi} = E \wedge X^\xi$ | Thom spectrum |
| canonical twist on $X := BO\langle n\rangle$<br>$J^E_{BO\langle n\rangle} : BO\langle n\rangle \to BO \xrightarrow{J^E} \mathrm{Pic}(E)$ | $\sum\limits_{BO\langle n\rangle} \widehat{J^E_{BO\langle n\rangle}} \simeq MO\langle n\rangle$ | universal<br>Thom spectrum |
| low $n$ | $n = 0$: $MO$<br>$n = 1$: $M\mathrm{SO}$<br>$n = 2$: $M\mathrm{Spin}$<br>$n = 4$: $M\mathrm{String}$ | Riemannian-<br>oriented-<br>spin-<br>string-<br>} cobordism spectrum |
| | $\mathbb{D}$ | Spanier-Whitehead duality |
| | $\mathbb{D}\sum\limits_X \widehat{\tau} = E^{\bullet+\tau}(X)$ | spectrum of<br>$\tau$-twisted $E$-cohomology cocycles |
| $X$ compact smooth manifold<br>with tangent bundle $TX$<br>and stable normal bundle $NX = -TX$ | $\mathbb{D}(E \wedge \Sigma^\infty_+ X) \simeq E_{\bullet+NX}(X)$ | Atiyah-Whitehead duality |
| | $\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{f} & X \\ & \swArrow_o & \\ {}_{\tau_Z}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\tau_X} \\ & \mathrm{Pic}(E) & \end{array}$ | fiberwise $E$-orientation<br>of $\tau_Z$ relative to $\tau_X$ |
| to the point | $\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \longrightarrow & * \\ & \swArrow_o & \\ {}_{\tau_Z}\searrow & & \swarrow_{0} \\ & \mathrm{Pic}(E) & \end{array}$ | $\tau_Z$-twisted $E$-orientation of $Z$ |
| vanishing twist on domain | $\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{f} & X \\ & \swArrow_o & \\ {}_{0}\searrow & & \swarrow_{\tau_X} \\ & \mathrm{Pic}(E) & \end{array}$ | $E$-orientation of $f$ |
| fiberwise fundamental class with twist $\tau$ | $f_! f^* \widehat{\tau_X} \simeq \mathbb{D} f_! f^* \mathbb{D}(\widehat{\tau_X} \otimes \widehat{\tau})$ | fiberwise twisted Poincaré duality |

### 7.6.2 The quantum particle at the boundary of the string

We indicate how traditional geometric quantization of symplectic manifolds (e.g. [Br93]) arises as the motivic quantization of the canonical boundary field theory to the non-perturbative 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons field theory of 7.5.3. Then we observe that the same process more generally yields a notion of geometric quantization of Poisson manifolds. Given a compact Lie group $G$ we find a pre-quantum defect between two Poisson-Chern-Simons boundary field theories whose cohomological quantization yields Kirillov's orbit method in the K-theoretic incarnation given by Freed-Hopkins-Teleman.

**7.6.2.1 Holographic geometric quantization of Poisson manifolds** Given a Poisson manifold $(X, \pi)$, by the general construction of 7.2.11, as described in 7.5.3, there is a 2d Chern-Simons field theory induced by it, whose moduli stack of instanton sector of fields is the *symplectic groupoid* $\mathrm{SymplGrpd}(X, \pi)$, on which the local action functional induces a $\mathbf{B}U(1)$-principal 2-bundle

$$\chi : \mathrm{SymplGrpd}(X, \pi) \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)\,.$$

Now one observes that this is such that it trivializes when restricted along the canonical inclusion $X \longrightarrow \mathrm{SymplGrpd}(X, \pi)$ (which is the canonical atlas, def. 5.1.66). By the discussion in 5.2.18.6 this induces a boundary field theory for the 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons theory, exhibited by the correspondence

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & X & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow^{i} & \\ * & & \overset{\xi}{\Longleftarrow} & & \mathrm{SymplGrpd}(X,\pi) \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow_{\chi} & \\ & & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) & & \end{array}\,.$$

Here the trivialization $\xi$ is a *prequantum bundle* on the Poisson manifold $X$.

Now since this is a correspondence with higher phases in $\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)$, by the above discussion this situation is naturally quantized in twisted complex $K$-theory

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & X & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow^{i} & \\ * & & \overset{\xi}{\Longleftarrow} & & \mathrm{SymplGrpd}(X,\pi) \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow_{\chi} & \\ & & \mathbf{B}^2U(1) & & \\ & & \downarrow^{\rho} & & \\ & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_1(\mathrm{KU}) & & \end{array}\,.$$

If the morphism $i : X \longrightarrow \mathrm{SymplGrpd}(X, \pi)$ can be and is equipped with an orientation in $\chi$-twisted K-theory (which usually involves in particular that we assume that $X$ is compact), then pull-push yields a map of KU-module spectra of the form

$$i_! \xi : \mathrm{KU} \longrightarrow \mathrm{KU}^{\chi}(\mathrm{SymplGrpd}(\mathrm{X}, \pi))\,.$$

This is equivalently an element in the twisted K-cohomology of the symplectic groupoid

$$i_! \xi \in \mathrm{KU}^{\chi}(\mathrm{SymplGrpd}(\mathrm{X}, \pi))$$

and this is to be regarded as the quantization of the Poisson manifold $(X, \pi)$.

Notice that the symplectic groupoid $\mathrm{SymplGrpd}(X, \pi)$ is a resolution of the space of symplectic leaves of $(X, \pi)$. Therefore a class in $\mathrm{KU}^{\chi}(\mathrm{SymplGrpd(X}, \pi))$ may be thought of as providing one (virtual) vector space for each symplectic leaf, to be thought of as the space of quantum states. Specifically, when $(X, \pi) = (X, \omega^{-1})$ happens to be a symplectic manifold, then $\mathrm{SymplGrpd}(X, \pi) \simeq *$ (as smooth stacks) and so the above yields an element of the K-theory of the point. One checks that this coincides with the K-theoretic description of traditional geometric quantization.

If there is a compact group $G$ of Hamiltonians acting on $(X, \omega^{-1})$ by Hamiltonian actions, then by the discussion in 1.3.2.11, 5.2.17.5 we obtain a $G$-equivariant version of this situation exhibited by a correspondence of quotient stacks

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & X//G & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ *//G & & \Swarrow_{\xi} & & *//G \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\ & & \mathbf{B}^2 U(1) & & \\ & & \downarrow^{\rho} & & \\ & & \mathbf{B}\mathrm{GL}_1(\mathrm{KU}) & & \end{array} .$$

This now has a cohomological quantization if the $G$-action preserves the choice of K-orientation. If that comes from a Kähler polarization then this is the familiar condition on quantizability of prequantum operators. Now the pull-push quantization acts as

$$i_! : \; K(X//G) \simeq K_G(X) \longrightarrow K_G(*) \simeq K(*//G) \simeq \mathrm{Rep}(G)$$

and refines $i_!\chi$ to a cocycle in $G$-equivariant K-theory. This is represented by the Hilbert space of quantum states equipped with its $G$-action by quantum observables. See section 5.2.1 in [Nui13].

Notice that this cohomological/geometric quantization of Poisson manifolds as the 1d boundary field theory of the non-perturbative 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons theory is conceptually analogous to the perturbative formal deformation quantization of Poisson manifolds given in [Kon03], which in [CaFe99] was found to be induced by the perturbative Poisson sigma-model. Another similar holographic quantization of 1d mechanics by a 2d string sigma-model was given in [GK08].

More generally, regard the dual vector space $\mathfrak{g}^*$ of the Lie algebra of $G$ as a Poisson manifold with its Lie-Poisson structure. The corresponding symplectic groupoid is the adjoint action groupoid

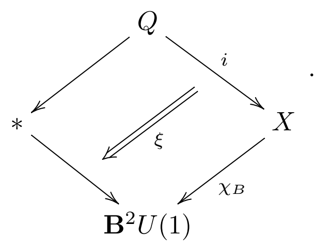
$$\mathrm{SymplGrpd}(\mathfrak{g}^*, [-,-]) \simeq \mathfrak{g}^*//G \, .$$

Then for $O_\lambda$ any regular coadjoint orbit, we get the following correspondence of correspondences in $\mathbf{H}$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} * & \longleftarrow & * & \longrightarrow & * & & \text{trivial theory} \; . \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\ O_\lambda//G & \longleftarrow & O_\lambda & \hookrightarrow & \mathfrak{g}^* & & \text{boundary} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ *//G & \longleftarrow & O_\lambda//G & \longrightarrow & \mathfrak{g}^*//G & & \text{2dCS} \\ & & & & & & \\ \text{2dCS} & & \text{defect} & & \text{2dCS} & & \end{array}$$

Here on the left we have the symplectic manifold $O_\lambda$ regarded as a $G$-equivariant boundary field theory of its 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons theory as just discussed. On the right we have the Poisson manifold $\mathfrak{g}^*$ regarded as the boundary of its 2d Poisson-Chern-Simons theory as above. The whole diagram is equipped with maps down to $\mathbf{B}^2U(1)$ as in prop. 5.2.219, which we will not display here. As such the diagram exhibits a defect at which these two boundary conditions meet. The quantization of the left boundary theory yields a space of states realized as an element in the representation ring of $G$, which is the K-theoretic formulation of Kirillov's orbit method. The quantization of the defect yields a quantum operator which produces such representations from prequantum bundles over $\mathfrak{g}^*$. Analysis of the details shows that this defect operator is effectively the "inverse universal orbit method" of theorem 1.28 in [FHT05]. See 1.4.1.5 above for discussion of the orbit method and its physical interpretation. See section 5.2.2 of [Nui13] for more details on this defect quantization.

**7.6.2.2 D-brane charge** While by the above the endpoints of the Poisson-Chern-Simons string serve to exhibit every possible mechanical system, we can also consider endpoints of the (topological sector) of the type II superstring. This is the $\sigma$-model on a target manifold $X$ equipped with a background B-field whose instanton sector we denote by $\chi_B : X \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2U(1)$. A boundary condition for this which is given by a submanifold $Q \hookrightarrow X$ is precisely a choice of trivialization $\xi$ of $\chi_B$ on that submanifold




This $\xi$ now plays the role of the Chan-Paton gauge field on the *D-brane Q*. The cohomological quantization of this correspondence in K-theory as above exists if $Q \hookrightarrow X$ is $\chi$-twisted K-orientable, which is precisely the Freed-Witten anomaly cancellation condition, see 1.4.3. In this case the quantization yields the class

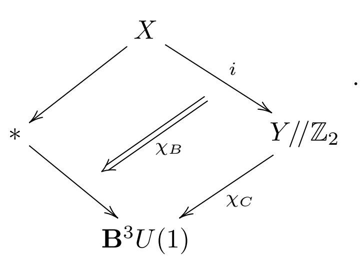
$$i_!\xi \in K^{\chi_B}(X)$$

in the B-field twisted K-theory of spacetime. This is what is known as the *D-brane charge* of $(Q, \xi)$ [BMRS07]. See section 5.2.4 of [Nui13] for more details.

### 7.6.3 The quantum string at the boundary of the membrane

We consider the above holographic quantization of the particle at the boundary of the string in one dimension higher, and indicate the cohomological quantization of the string at the boundary of the membrane.

To that end, let $\chi_C : Y//\mathbb{Z}_2 \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^3U(1)$ be (the 3-bundle underlying) the supergravity $C$-field on an 11-dimensional Hořava-Witten spacetime, as discussed above in 7.1.8. By the discussion there, this class is of the form $\frac{1}{2}p_1 + 2a$ and on the higher orientifold plane 10-dimensional boundary $X \hookrightarrow Y$ this class trivializes. By the discussion in 7.1.6.3 the choice of trivialization $\chi_B$ is the twisted B-field of the heterotic string theory on $X$, representing a $2a$-twisted string structure.

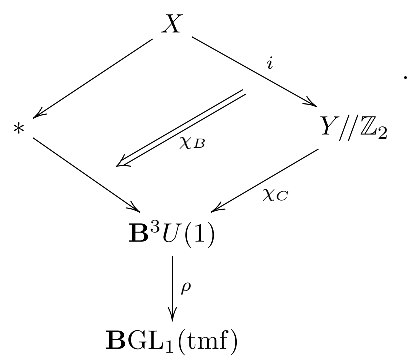


Now since $\chi_C$ is the background field for the topological sector of the M2-brane, 1.4.4.2, by the general discussion of 5.2.18.6 we see that this diagram exhibits a boundary condition for the M2-brane ending on the O9-plane $X$. This boundary string of the M2 on the O9 is the heterotic string. By comparison with 7.6.2 we see that therefore the cohomological quantization of this correspondence should yield the partition function of the string.

To see this, notice that by the general discussion in 7.6.1 we are to choose a higher superposition principle by finding an $E_\infty$-ring $E$ such that there is a natural higher group homomorphism

$$\mathbf{B}^2 U(1) \longrightarrow \int \mathbf{B}^2 U(1) \simeq K(\mathbb{Z}, 3) \longrightarrow \mathrm{GL}_1(E)\,.$$

There is one famous such choice [ABG10a], namely $E = \mathrm{tmf}$, the "universal elliptic cohomology theory".




A cohomological quantization of this exists now if we have an orientation in twisted tmf, hence by twisted string structures.[38] If it exists, push-forward in tmf yields [AHR10] the (twisted [CHZ10]) *Witten genus*. By the seminal result of [Wi87] this is the partition function of the heterotic string.

By analogy with 7.6.2.2 we may also regard this push-forward in tmf as the "O9-plane charge". An analogous story should apply to the cohomological quantization of the M2-brane ending not on the O9-plane, but on the M5-brane, by 8.1.2.2. In this case the result of the quantization would be an M5-brane charge in tmf, induced not by the heterotic, but by the self-dual string on the M5. That this is the case is the statement of [Sa10a, proposal 6.13].

[38] This point in [ABG10a] was originally amplified by Hisham Sati in work that led to the discussion in 7.1.5.2 above.

# 8 Nature

With a general theory of local prequantum field theory 5.2.18 and its realization in suitable models in 6 in hand, we here discuss exceptional realizations that are induced from the presence of special objects singled out by the theory. We end up finding, from these first principles, 11-dimensional supergravity with M-theory corrections included.

The fact that the term *M-theory* eventually became attached to a grandiose conjecture [Wi98c] tends to overshadow that it was originally coined as "non-committed" shorthand [**?**, p. 2] for *membrane theory* [Duff99], directly modeled [Duff95] on the well established term "string theory": "M stands for magic, mystery, or membrane, according to taste" [Wi95].

Here *membrane theory* refers to the concrete study of super-membrane sigma-models on 11-dimensional supergravity spacetimes [BeSeTo87]. It is noteworthy that the latter is a rich topic in itself about which a lot is understood in precise mathematical detail. Seminal mathematical results here include [AtWi01, HoSi05]. Hence close mathematical analysis of M-theory-the-concrete is fruitful in itself, and is plausibly a way to make progress on M-theory-the-grandiose.

Traditional wisdom has it that the technical problem with membrane theory – and that is the reason for the choice of less committed terminology – is that membrane sigma-models are understood only classically, not in the quantum version that is expected to be relevant for the M-theory-in-the-grandiose-sense.

But actually a little more is true: membrane sigma models – and also the 5-brane sigma models induced by them – are understood in *pre-quantum theory*, in the precise sense in which this term is used in the Kostant-Souriau formalization of quantization via *geometric quantization* 5.2.17, . This is a substantial distinction: we show in 8.1.2, based on the general construction of higher WZW terms in 6.4.20, how to refine the brane sigma-models further to *higher/local* pre-quantum theory in the sense of 5.2.18, 7.3. In this refined formulation membrane theory already sees a wealth of subtle effects, such as notably the properly globalized BPS groups of brane charges, 8.2.3, in generalized twisted differential cohomology [**?**]. This goes considerably beyond what classical membrane theory sees.

- 8.1 – Spacetime
- 8.2 – Gravity

## 8.1 Spacetime

By prop. 6.3.37 and prop. 6.6.17 there are two objects singled out in SuperFormalSmooth∞Grpd.

| real line $\mathbb{R} = \mathbb{R}^{1\vert 0}$ | odd line/superpoint $\mathbb{R}^{0\vert 1}$ |
|---|---|
| $\int \simeq \mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{R}^1}$ | $Rh \simeq \mathrm{loc}_{\mathbb{R}^{0\vert 1}}$ |

We now discuss how from universal constructions beginning with just these two objects, there arises super-Minkowski spacetime, its extensions by super $p$-brane condensates, and then the equations of motion and BPS charge algebras of supergravity.

- 8.1.1 – Minkowski spacetime and Lorentzian geometry
- 8.1.2 – Fundamental super $p$-branes

### 8.1.1 Minkowski spacetime and Lorentzian geometry

We discuss super-Minkowski spacetimes and the action on them by the Spin double cover of the Lorentz groups arising as supergroup extensions of superpoints.

Both $\mathbb{R}$ and $\mathbb{R}^{0|1}$ carry canonical abelian group structure. We consider now group 2-cocycles, def. 5.1.285, of the superpoints $\mathbb{R}^{0|q}$ with coefficients in powers $\mathbb{R}^p$ of the real line, hence morphisms in SuperFormalSmooth∞Grpd of the form

$$\mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}^{0|q} \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{R}^{p|0}\,.$$

Since the groups are geometrically contractible, we may equivalently consider the corresponding Lie algebra cocycles (observing that in this case the stacky cohomology evidently agrees with the naive smooth group cohomology, and then using the van Est isomorphism [vEs53, theorem 14.1]).

For $q \in \mathbb{N}$, the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras of these super-Lie algebra, according to prop. 1.2.152, are the graded superalgebras

$$\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{0|q}) = \left(\mathrm{Sym}^\bullet\langle \psi^1, \cdots, \psi^q\rangle, d_{\mathrm{CE}} = 0\right)$$

on $q$ generators $\psi^i$ in bidegree $(1, \mathrm{odd}) \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ and with vanishing CE-differential. Notice that due to this bidegree, these elements *commute* with each other:

$$\psi^{i_1} \wedge \psi^{i_2} = +\psi^{i_2} \wedge \psi^{i_1} .$$

**Proposition 8.1.1.** *The super Lie algebra cohomology of* $\mathbb{R}^{0|1}$ *in degree 2 is*

$$H^2(\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{0|1})) \simeq \mathbb{R}$$

*represented by the 2-cocycle*

$$\psi \wedge \psi \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{0|1}) .$$

*The super Lie algebra extension of* $\mathbb{R}^{0|1}$ *classified by the 2-coycle of prop. 8.1.1 is the* $N = 1$ *super translation Lie algebra in one dimension* $\mathbb{R}^{1|1}$*, the* $N = 1$ superline

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}^{1|1} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}^{0|1} & \xrightarrow{\psi_1 \wedge \psi_1} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

**Proposition 8.1.2.** *The super Lie algebra cohomology of* $\mathbb{R}^{0|2}$ *in degree 2 is*

$$H^2(\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{0|2})) \simeq \mathbb{R}^3$$

*represented by the three 2-cocycles*

$$\psi^1 \wedge \psi^1, \;\; \psi^1 \wedge \psi^2, \;\; \psi^2 \wedge \psi^2 \;\in \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{0|2}) .$$

*The super Lie algebra extension of* $\mathbb{R}^{0|2}$ *classified by any non-degenerate sum of these three cocycles is isomorphic to 3-dimensional* $N = 1$ *super-Minkowski spacetime (1.4.4.1)*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}^{2,1|2} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}^{0|2} & \xrightarrow{\psi^1\wedge\psi^1 \oplus \psi^1\wedge\psi^2 \oplus \psi^2\wedge\psi^2} & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{R}^3 \end{array}$$

Proof. Write $e^+, e^-, e^y \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{3|\mathbf{2}})$ for the three generators in bidegree $(1, \mathrm{even})$, which by definition of Lie algebra extension satisfy

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, e^+ = \psi^1 \wedge \psi^1$$
$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, e^- = \psi^2 \wedge \psi^2$$
$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, e^y = 2\psi^1 \wedge \psi^2 .$$

This may be directly compared with the expressions for the spin bilinear pairing of real spinors in 2+1 dimensions as for instance highlighted in [BaH09]. □

**Proposition 8.1.3.** *The super Lie algebra cohomology of* $\mathbb{R}^{2,1|2}$ *in degree 3 is*

$$H^3(\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{2,1|2})) \simeq \mathbb{R}$$

*represented by*

$$\psi^1 \wedge \psi^1 \wedge e^- + \psi^2 \wedge \psi^2 \wedge e^+ - \psi^1 \wedge \psi^2 \wedge e^y \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{2,1|2}) .$$

Proof. Via prop. 8.1.2 this is for instance [Br10a, lemma 3.1]. □

**Remark 8.1.4.** In proving prop. 8.1.2 we have used only inspection of the intrinsic cohomology of $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}^{0|2}$, no a priori information about Lorentzian geometry. But now by prop. 6.4.164 the 3-cocycle of prop. 8.1.3 Lie integrates to a WZW term, and by def. 5.3.133 we are led to consider Cartan geometries locally modeled on $\mathbb{R}^{2,1|N=1}$ whose structure group reduces to the joint stabilizer of the Lie bracket on $\mathbb{R}^{2,1|\mathbf{2}}$ and of the 3-cocycle that it carries.

This turns out to make the Lorentz group appear by itself:[39]

**Proposition 8.1.5.** *Given the* $N = 1$ *super-Minkowski spacetime in dimension* $d =$ 3,4, 6 *or* 10 *(as in 1.4.4.1), then the joint stabilizer group of the super Lie bracket of* $\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N=1}$ *and of its super Lie algebra 3-cocycle of the old brane scan, 1.4.4.2, is the spin double cover of the Lorentz group*

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{\mathrm{GL}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|2})}([-,-],\mu_1) \simeq \mathrm{Spin}(d-1,1) .$$

Proof. It is clear that the Spin-group fixes the cocycle, and by the special nature of real spin representations it also preserves the bracket (this is part of the Jacobi identity of the super-Poincaré Lie algebra $\mathfrak{Iso}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N=1})$). Therefore it remains to be seen that the Spin group already exhausts the stabilizer group of bracket and cocycle. For that observe (as highlighted in [BaH09]) that the cocycle is expressed in terms of the spinor bilinear pairing $[-,-]$ and the Minkowski metric $\eta$ as

$$\mu_1(\psi,\phi,v) = \eta([\psi,\phi],v)$$

and that the spinor bilinear pairing is surjective. This implies that if $g \in \mathrm{GL}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N=1})$ preserves both the bracket and the cocycle for all arguments,

$$\eta([g(\psi),g(\phi)],g(v)) = \eta(g([\psi,\phi]),g(v)) = \eta([\psi,\phi],v) ,$$

then, with $w = [\psi,\phi]$ and every $w$ arising in this form, it preserves the Minkowski metric for all $w, v$:

$$\eta(g(w),g(v)) = \eta(w,v) .$$

This means that on the even elements the stabilizer has to act as a Lorentz transformation. From this and by inspection of the spinor bilinear pairing as presented in [BaH09] it follows that to stabilize the spinor pairing the action on the odd elements has to be by a Spin-representation. □
There are however two inequivalent such Spin-representations, traditionally denoted $\mathbf{2}$ and $\overline{\mathbf{2}}$ and hence two inequivalent embeddings

$$\mathrm{Stab}_{\mathrm{GL}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N=1})}([-,-],\mu_1) \simeq \mathrm{Spin}(d-1,1) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{GL}(\mathbb{R}^{2,1|2}) .$$

[39] The argument for the proof of prop. 8.1.5 was kindly provided by John Huerta.

Consider then the fiber product

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}^{2,1|4} & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & \\ \mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}^{2,1|2} & & & & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{R}^{2,1|2} \\ & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\ & & \mathbf{B}^2\mathbb{R}^3 & & \end{array}$$

regarded as equipped with the Spin-action via $\mathbf{2} + \overline{\mathbf{2}}$.

**Proposition 8.1.6.** *The* $\mathrm{Spin}(2,1)$*-invariant cohomology of* $\mathbb{R}^{2,1|\mathbf{2}+\overline{\mathbf{2}}}$ *in degree 2 is*

$$H^2(\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{2,1|\mathbf{2}+\overline{\mathbf{2}}}))^{\mathrm{Spin}(2,1)} \simeq \mathbb{R}$$

*and the extension by a representing cocycle is equivalent to 4-dimensional super-Minkowski spacetime*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{R}^{3,1|\mathbf{4}} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbb{R}^{2,1|\mathbf{2}+\overline{\mathbf{2}}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}\mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

Proof. By inspection of the explicit formulas in [**?**, p.13]. □

### 8.1.2 Fundamental super $p$-branes

We now discuss higher rational/perturbative WZW models on super-Minkowski spacetime regarded as the super-translation Lie algebra over itself, as well as on the *extended superspaces* which arise as exceptional super Lie $n$-algebra extensions of the super-translation Lie algebra. This is the local description of super $p$-brane $\sigma$-models propagating on a supergravity background spacetime, 7.1.7.

We show then that by the brane intersection laws of Remark 7.3.30 this reproduces precisely the super $p$-brane content of string/M-theory including the $p$-branes with tensor multiplet fields, notably including the D-branes and the M5-brane. The discussion is based on the work initiated in [dAFr82] and further developed in articles including [CdAIP99]. The point here is to show that this "FDA"-technology is naturally and usefully reformulated in terms of super-$L_\infty$-homotopy theory, and that this serves to clarify and illuminate various points that have not been seen, and are indeed hard to see, via the "FDA"-perspective.

Next we consider refinement of the old brane scan 1.4.4.2, brough about by passing from super Lie algebras to the homotopy theory of super $L_\infty$-algebras, the full *brane bouquet* def. 8.1.18. We follow notation as in 1.4.4.1.

- 8.1.2.1 – The type II superstring
- 8.1.2.2 – The M2/M5-brane
- 8.1.2.3 – The complete brane bouquet of string/M-theory

**8.1.2.1 The type II superstring** We discuss the cocycles that define the type II superstring as a super-WZW model. This section draws from [FSS13b]

**8.1.2.1.1 Type IIA superstring ending on D-branes and the D0-brane condensate** We consider the branes in type IIA string theory and point out how their $L_\infty$-homotopy theoretic formulation serves to provide a formal statement and proof of the folklore relation between type IIA string theory with a D0-brane condensate and M-theory.

Write $N = (1,1) = \mathbf{16} + \mathbf{16}'$ for the Dirac representation of Spin(9,1) given by two 16-dimensional real irreducible representations of opposite chirality. We write $\{\Gamma^a\}_{a=1,\cdots,10}$ for the corresponding representation of the Clifford algebra and $\Gamma^{11} := \Gamma^1\Gamma^2\cdots\Gamma^{10}$ for the chirality operator. Finally write $\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)}$ for the corresponding super-translation Lie algebra, the super-Minkowski spacetime of type IIA string theory.

**Definition 8.1.7.** The type IIA 3-cocycle is

$$\mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIA}}} := \overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^a\Gamma^{11}\psi \wedge e^a \quad : \quad \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}[2] \ .$$

The type IIA superstring super Lie 2-algebra is the corresponding super $L_\infty$-extension

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIA}} \\ \downarrow \\ \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)} \xrightarrow{\ \mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIA}}}\ } \mathbb{R}[2] \ . \end{array}$$

Its Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra is that of $\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)}$ with one generator $F$ in degree $(2, \mathrm{even})$ adjoined and with its differential being

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, F = \mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIA}}} = \overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^a\Gamma^{11}\psi \wedge e^a.$$

This dg-algebra appears as equation (6.3) in [CdAIP99]. It can also be deduced from op.cit. that the IIA string Lie 2-algebra of Def. 8.1.7 carries exceptional cocycles of degrees $p+2 \in \{2,4,6,8,10\}$ of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_{\mathfrak{d}p\mathfrak{brane}} &:= C \wedge e^F \\ &:= \sum_{k=0}^{(p+2)/2} c_k^p \left(e^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge e^{a_{p-2k}}\right) \wedge \left(\overline{\psi}\Gamma^{a_1}\cdots\Gamma^{a_{p-2k}}\Gamma^{11}\psi\right) \underbrace{F \wedge \cdots \wedge F}_{k \text{ factors}} , \end{aligned} \tag{8.1}$$

where $\{c_k^p \in \mathbb{R}\}$ are some coefficients, and where $C$ denotes the inhomogeneous element of $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)})$ defined by the second line. For each $p \in \{0,2,4,6,8\}$ there is, up to a global rescaling, a unique choice of the coefficients $c_k^p$ that make this a cocycle. This is shown on p. 19 of [CdAIP99].

**Remark 8.1.8.** Here the identification with physics terminology is as follows

- $F$ is the field strength of the *Chan-Paton gauge field* on the D-brane, a "tensor field" that happens to be a "vector field";
- $C = \sum_p k^p \overline{\psi} \underbrace{e \wedge \cdots \wedge e}_{p \text{ factors}} \psi$ is the *RR-field.*

It is interesting to notice the special nature of the cocoycle for the D0-brane:

**Remark 8.1.9.** According to (8.1) for $p = 0$, the cocycle defining the D0-brane as a higher WZW $\sigma$-model is just

$$\mu_{\mathfrak{d}0\mathfrak{brane}} = \overline{\psi}\Gamma^{11}\psi \ .$$

Since this independent of the generator $F$, it restricts to a cocycle on just $\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)}$ itself.

Concerning this, we highlight the following fact, which is mathematically elementary but physically noteworthy (see also Section 2.1 of [CdAIP99]), as it has conceptual consequences for arriving at M-theory starting from type IIA string theory.

**Proposition 8.1.10.** *The extension of 10-dimensional type IIA super-Minkowski spacetime* $\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)}$ *by the D0-brane cocycle as in Remark 8.1.9 is the 11-dimensional super-Minkowski spacetime of 11-dimensional supergravity/M-theory:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{R}^{11;N=1} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)} & \xrightarrow{\mu_{\mathfrak{d0brane}}} & \mathbb{R}[1] \,. \end{array}$$

Proof. By Prop. 7.3.25 the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra of the extension classified by $\mu_{\mathfrak{d0brane}}$ is that of $\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)}$ with one new generator $e^{11}$ in degree $(1, \mathrm{even})$ adjoined and with its differential defined to be

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, e^{11} = \mu_{\mathfrak{d0brane}} = \overline{\psi}\Gamma^{11}\psi \,.$$

An elementary basic fact of Spin representation theory says that the $N = 1$-representation of the Spin group $\mathrm{Spin}(10, 1)$ in odd dimensions is the $N = (1, 1)$-representation of the even dimensional Spin group $\mathrm{Spin}(9, 1)$ regarded as a representation of the Clifford algebra $\{\Gamma^a\}_{a=1}^{10}$ with $\Gamma^{11}$ adjoined as in Def. 8.1.7. Using this, the above extended CE-algebra is exactly that of $\mathbb{R}^{11;N=1}$ . □

**Remark 8.1.11.** In view of Remark 7.3.31 the content of Prop. 8.1.10 translates to heuristic physics language as: *A condensate of D0-branes turns the 10-dimensional type IIA super-spacetime into the 11-dimensional spacetime of 11d-supergravity/M-theory.* Alternatively: *The condensation of D0-branes makes an 11th dimension of spacetime appear.*

In this form the statement is along the lines of the standard folklore relation between type IIA string theory and M-theory, which says that type IIA with $N$ D0-branes in it is M-theory compactified on a circle whose radius scales with $N$; see for instance [BFSS96, Po99]. See also [Ko11] for similar remarks motivated from phenomena in 2-dimensional boundary conformal field theory. Here in the formalization via higher WZW $\sigma$-models a version of this statement becomes a theorem, Prop. 8.1.10.

**Remark 8.1.12.** The mechanism of remark 8.1.11 appears at several places in the brane bouquet. First of all, since by Prop. 8.1 the D0-brane cocycle is a summand in each type IIA D-brane cocycle, it follows via the above translation from $L_\infty$-homotopy theory to physics language that: *Any type IIA D-brane condensate extends 10-dimensional type IIA super-spacetime to 11-dimensional super-spacetime.* If we lift attention again from the special case of D-branes of type IIA string theory to general higher WZW-type $\sigma$-models, then this mechanism is seen to generalize: the 10-dimensional super-Minkowski spacetime itself is an extension of the *super-point* by 10-cocycles (one for each dimension):

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)} & & \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbb{R}^{0;N=(1,1)} & \xrightarrow{\sum_{a=1}^{10} \overline{(-)}\Gamma^a(-)} & \mathbb{R}[1] \,. \end{array}$$

Here the cocycle describes 10 different 0-brane $\sigma$-models, each propagating on the super-point as their target super-spacetime. Again, by remark 7.3.31, this mathematical fact is a formalization and proof of what in physics language is the statement that *Spacetime itself emerges from the abstract dynamics of 0-branes.* This is close to another famous folklore statement about string theory. In our context it is a theorem.

**8.1.2.1.2 Type IIB superstring ending on D-branes and S-duality** We consider the branes in type IIB string theory as examples of higher WZW-type $\sigma$-model field theories and observe how their $L_\infty$-homotopy theoretic formulation serves to provide a formal statement of the prequantum S-duality equivalence between F-strings and D-strings and their unification as $(p,q)$-string bound states.

Write $N = (2,0) = \mathbf{16}+\mathbf{16}$ for the direct sum representation of Spin(9, 1) given by two 16-dimensional real irreducible representations of the same chirality. We write $\{\Gamma^a\}_{a=1,\cdots,10}$ for the corresponding representation of the Clifford algebra on one copy of $\mathbf{16}$ and $\Gamma^a \otimes \sigma^i$ for the linear maps on their direct sum representation that act as the $i$th Pauli matrix on $\mathbb{C}^2$ with components $\Gamma^a$, under the canonical identification $\mathbf{16} \oplus \mathbf{16} \simeq \mathbf{16} \otimes \mathbb{C}^2$. Finally write $\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)}$ for the corresponding super-translation Lie algebra, the super-Minkowski spacetime of type IIB string theory.

There is a cocycle $\mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}}} \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)})$ given by

$$\mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}}} = \overline{\psi} \wedge (\Gamma^a \otimes \sigma^3)\psi \wedge e^a \,.$$

The corresponding WZW $\sigma$-model is the Green-Schwarz formulation of the fundamental type IIB string. Of course we could use in this formula any of the $\sigma^i$, but one fixed such choice we are to call the type IIB string. That the other choices are equivalent is the statement of *S-duality*, to which we come in a moment. The corresponding $L_\infty$-algebra extension, hence by Remark 7.3.31 the IIB spacetime "with string condensate" is the homotopy fiber

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}} \\ \downarrow \\ \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)} \xrightarrow{\mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}}}} \mathbb{R}[2] \,. \end{array}$$

As for type IIA, its Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}})$ is that of $\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)}$ with one generator $F$ in degree $(2, \mathrm{even})$ adjoined. The differential of that is now given by

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, F &= \mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}}} \\ &= \overline{\psi} \wedge (\Gamma^a \otimes \sigma^3)\psi \wedge e_a \,. \end{aligned}$$

Now this Lie 2-algebra itself carries exceptional cocycles of degree $(p+2)$ for $p \in \{1,3,5,7,9\}$ of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_{\mathfrak{d}p\mathfrak{brane}} &:= C \wedge e^F \\ &:= \sum_{k=0}^{(p+2)/2+1} c_k^p \,(e^{a_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge e^{a_{p-2k}}) \wedge \left(\overline{\psi} \wedge (\Gamma^{a_1} \cdots \Gamma^{a_{p-2k}} \otimes \sigma^{1/2})\psi\right) \underbrace{F \wedge \cdots \wedge F}_{k \text{ factors}} \,, \end{aligned} \tag{8.2}$$

where on the right the notation $\sigma^{1/2}$ is to mean that $\sigma^1$ appears in summands with an odd number of generators "$e$", and $\sigma^2$ in the other summands. The corresponding WZW models are those of the type IIB D-branes.

**Remark 8.1.13.** According to expression (8.2) the cocycle of the D1-brane is of the form

$$\mu_{\mathfrak{d}1brane} = \overline{\psi} \wedge (\Gamma^a \otimes \sigma^1) \wedge e^a \,,$$

which is the same form as that of $\mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}}}$ itself, only that $\sigma^3$ is replaced by $\sigma^1$. In fact since this is the D-brane cocycle which is independent of the new generator $F$, it restricts to a cocycle on just $\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)}$ itself. So the cocycle for the "F-string" in type IIB is on the same footing as that of the "D-string". Both differ only by a "rotation" in an internal space.

**Remark 8.1.14.** There is a circle worth of $L_\infty$-automorphisms

$$S(\alpha) : \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)} \to \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)} \,,$$

hence a group homomorphism

$$U(1) \to \mathrm{Aut}(\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)}) ,$$

given dually on Chevalley-Eilenberg algebras by

$$\begin{aligned} e^a &\mapsto e^a \\ \psi &\mapsto \exp(\alpha\sigma^2)\psi . \end{aligned}$$

This mixes the cocycles for the F-string and for the D-string in that for a quarter rotation it turns one into the other

$$S(\pi/4)^*(\mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIA}}}) = \mu_{\mathfrak{d1brane}} ,$$

and for a rotation by a general angle it produces a corresponding superposition of both. In particular, we can form *bound states* of $F$-strings and D1-branes by adding these cocycles

$$\mu_{(p,q)\mathfrak{string}} = p\,\mu_{\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}}} + q\,\mu_{\mathfrak{d1brane}} \quad \in \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)}) .$$

These define the $(p,q)$-string bound states as WZW-type $\sigma$-models.

**8.1.2.2 The M2/M5-brane cocycle** We discuss here the single M5-brane as a higher WZW-type $\sigma$-model.

This section draws from [FSS13b, FSS15].

- 8.1.2.2.1 – As a cocycle with values in the trivial module
- 8.1.2.2.2 – As a twisted cocycle
- 8.1.2.2.3 – Integration to differential cohomology and differential cohomotopy
- 8.1.2.2.4 – Extension to the frame bundle

**8.1.2.2.1 As a cocycle with values in the trivial module** Write $N = 1 = \mathbf{32}$ for the irreducible real representation of Spin(10, 1). Write $\{\Gamma^a\}_{a=1}^{11}$ for the corresponding representation of the Clifford algebra. Finally write $\mathbb{R}^{11;N=1}$ for the corresponding super-translation Lie algebra. According to the old brane scan in section 1.4.4.2, the exceptional Lorentz-invariant cocycle for the M2-brane is

$$\mu_{\mathfrak{m2brane}} = \overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{ab}\psi \wedge e^a \wedge e^b .$$

The Green-Schwarz action functional for the M2-brane is the $\sigma$-model defined by this cocycle

$$\mathbb{R}^{11;N} \xrightarrow{\mu_{\mathfrak{m2brane}}} \mathbb{R}[3] .$$

By the $L_\infty$-theoretic brane intersection law of Remark 7.3.30, for the M2-brane to end on another kind of brane, that other WZW model is to have the extended spacetime $\mu_{\mathfrak{m2brane}}$ (the original spacetime including a condensate of M2s) as its target space. By Prop. 7.3.25, the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra of the M2-brane algebra is obtained from that of the super-Poincaré Lie algebra by adding one more generator $c_3$ with $\deg(c_3) = (3, \mathrm{even})$ with differential defined by

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\mathrm{CE}}\, c_3 &:= \mu_{\mathfrak{m2brane}} \\ &= \overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{ab}\psi \wedge e^a \wedge e^b \end{aligned} .$$

We can then define an extended spacetime Maurer-Cartan form $\hat{\theta}$ in $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(\mathbb{R}^{11;N}, \mathfrak{m2brane})$, extending the canonical Maurer-Cartan form $\theta$ in $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(\mathbb{R}^{11;N}, \mathbb{R}^{d;N})$, by picking any 3-form $C_3 \in \Omega^3(\mathbb{R}^{11;N})$ such that $d_{\mathrm{dR}} C_3 = \overline{\psi}\Gamma^{ab} \wedge \psi \wedge e^a \wedge e^b$.

Next, for every $(n+1)$ cocycle on $\mathfrak{m2brane}$ we get an $n$-dimensional WZW model defined on $\mathbb{R}^{11;N}$ this way. In particular, the next one we meet is the M5-brane cocycle. Indeed, there is the degree-7 cocycle

$$\mu_7 = \overline{\psi}\Gamma^{a_1\cdots a_5}\psi e^{a_1} \wedge \cdots e^{a_5} + C_3 \wedge \overline{\psi}\Gamma^{ab}\psi \wedge e^a \wedge e^b \;:\; \mathfrak{m2brane} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}[6]$$

that was first observed in [dAFr82], then rediscovered several times, for instance in [Sez96], in [BLNPST97] and in [CdAIP99]. Here we identify it as an $L_\infty$ 7-cocycle on the $\mathfrak{m2brane}$ super Lie 3-algebra. The $L_\infty$-extension of $\mathfrak{m2brane}$ associated with the 7-cocycle is a super Lie 6-algebra that we call $\mathfrak{m5brane}$.

It follows from this, with remark 7.3.30, that the M2-brane may end on a M5-brane whose WZW term $\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ locally satisfies

$$d\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}} = \mu_7 = \overline{\psi}\Gamma^{a_1\cdots a_5}\psi e^{a_1} \wedge \cdots e^{a_5} + C_3 \wedge \overline{\psi}\Gamma^{ab}\psi \wedge e^a \wedge e^b$$

This is precisely what in [BLNPST97] is argued to be the action functional of the M5-brane (here displayed in the absence of the bosonic contribution of the C-field). However, in order to get the expected structure of gauge transformations, we need to go further. Namely, while the above local expression for the action functional appears to be correct on the nose, its gauge transformations are not as expected for the M5: for the M5-brane worldvolume theory the 2-form with curvature $C_3$ is supposed to be a genuine higher 2-form gauge field on the worldvolume, directly analogous to the Neveu-Schwarz B-field of 10-dimensional supergravity spacetime; see [FSS12b]. As such, it is to have gauge transformations parameterized by 1-forms. But in the above formulation fields are maps $\Sigma_6 \to \mathbb{R}^{11;N}$ into spacetime itself, and as such have no gauge transformations at all. We can fix this by finding a better space $\hat{X}$. In fact we should take that to be $\mathfrak{m2brane}$ itself. As indicated above, this is an extension

$$\mathbb{R}[2] \longrightarrow \mathfrak{m2brane} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{11;N} \quad ,$$

and, hence, a twisted product of spacetime with $\mathbb{R}[2]$, the infinitesimal version of the moduli space of 2-form connections. This is the infinitesimal approximation to the WZW construction in 5.2.15.

**Remark 8.1.15.** By $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$ duality and by [Wi96] the M5-brane is supposed to be the 6-dimensional WZW model which is holographically related to the 7-dimensional Chern-Simons term inside 11-dimensional supergravity compactified on a 4-sphere in analogy to how the traditional 2d WZW model is the holographic dual of ordinary 3d Chern-Simons theory. By our discussion here that 7d Chern-Simons theory ought to be the one given by the 7-cocycle. Indeed, we observe that this 7-cocycle does appear in the compactification according to D'Auria-Fre [dAFr82]. Back in that article these authors worked locally and discarded precisely this term as a global derivative, but in fact it is a topological term as befits a Chern-Simons term and may *not* be discarded globally. This connects the discussion here to the holographic $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$-description of the *single* M5-brane. Now a coincident $N$-tuple of M5-branes is supposed to be determined by a semisimple Lie algebra and nonabelian higher gauge field data. Since $\mathrm{AdS}_7/\mathrm{CFT}_6$ is still supposed to apply, we are to consider the *nonabelian* contributions to the 7-dimensional Chern-Simons term in 11d sugra compactified to $\mathrm{AdS}_7$. These follow from the 11-dimensional anomaly cancellation and charge quantization. Putting this together as discussed in 7.2.9 yields the corresponding 7d Chern-Simons theory. Among other terms it is controled by the canonical 7-cocycle $\mu_7^{\mathfrak{so}}$ on the semisimple Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}$. Since this extends evidently to a cocycle also on the super Poincaré Lie algebra, we may just add it to the bispinorial cocycle that defines the single M5, to get

$$\mathbb{R}^{11;N=1} \times \mathfrak{so}(10,1) \xrightarrow{\overline{\psi}e^5\psi + \langle \omega\wedge[\omega\wedge\omega]\wedge[\omega\wedge\omega]\wedge[\omega\wedge\omega]\rangle} \mathbb{R}[6] \; .$$

By the general theory indicated here this defines a 6-dimensional WZW model. By the discussion in 7.2.9 and 7.1.8 it satisfies all the conditions imposed by holography. It is to be expected that this is part of the description of the nonabelian M5-brane.

Finally it is interesting to consider the symmetries of the M5-brane higher WZW model obtained this way.

**Definition 8.1.16.** The *polyvector extension* [ACDP03] of $\mathfrak{sIso}(10,1)$ – called the *M-theory Lie algebra* [Sez96] – is the super Lie algebra obtained by adjoining to $\mathfrak{sIso}(10,1)$ generators $\{Q_\alpha, Z^{ab}\}$ that transform as spinors with respect to the existing generators, and whose non-vanishing brackets among themselves are

$$\begin{aligned} [Q_\alpha, Q_\beta] &= i(C\Gamma^a)_{\alpha\beta} P_a + (C\Gamma_{ab}) Z^{ab} \,, \\ \left[Q_\alpha, Z^{ab}\right] &= 2i(C\Gamma^{[a})_{\alpha\beta} Q^{b]\beta} \,. \end{aligned}$$

**8.1.2.2.2 As a twisted cocycle** We discuss now how the M5-brane cocycle from 8.1.2.2.1 descends back down to super-Minkowski spacetime as a twisted cocycle in the sense of the general discussion in 5.1.13.

In view of the discussion in 6.5.2 we may think of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathfrak{m2brane} & \xrightarrow{h_3\wedge\mu_4+\frac{1}{15}\mu_7} & \mathbb{R}[6] & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}} & & \xrightarrow{\mu_4} & & \mathbb{R}[3] \,. \end{array} \tag{8.3}$$

as describing at an infinitesimal level a geometric situation. The geometric picture is that of a (homotopy) principal bundle $P \to B$ over a base $B$, classified by a morphism $B \to BG$ for some gauge group $G$, together with a morphism $\varphi\colon P \to M$ defined over the total space of the bundle and with values in some $G$-space $M$. As soon as $\varphi$ is equivariant with respect to the (homotopy) gauge group $G$ action over the total space $P$ of the bundle, the morphism $\varphi$ induces by passing to quotients a morphism $\tilde{\varphi}\colon B \to M/G$, whose homotopy class can be interpreted as an element in the twisted cohomology of $B$ with coefficients in $M/G$. Notice how saying that $M/G$ is a quotient of $M$ by a $G$ action is equivalent to say that $M/G$ fits into a homotopy fiber sequence of the form $M \to M/G \to BG$, and that the $G$-equivariance of $\varphi$ is equivalent to saying that $\tilde{\varphi}$ is a morphism over $BG$. Therefore, in the infinitesimal situation of diagram (8.3), we are faced with the problem of deciding whether the cocycle $h_3 \wedge \mu_4 + \frac{1}{15}\mu_7\colon \mathfrak{m2brane} \to \mathbb{R}[6]$ is equivariant with respect to the natural infinitesimal homotopy action of $\mathbb{R}[2]$ on $\mathfrak{m2brane}$ and for a suitable infinitesimal homotopy action of $\mathbb{R}[2]$ on $\mathbb{R}[6]$. As we are going to show, there is indeed such a canonical action. We now identify the desired higher algebra: the Lie 7- algebra $\mathfrak{s}^4$ is defined by $\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{s}^4) = \mathbb{R}[g_4, g_7]$ with $g_k$ in degree $k$ and with the differential defined by

$$dg_4 = 0 \quad , \quad dg_7 = g_4 \wedge g_4 \,.$$

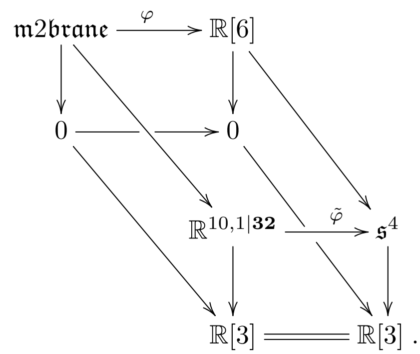
Indeed, this algebra satisfies the required property. Namely, the Lie 7-algebra $\mathfrak{s}^4$ has a natural structure of infinitesimal $\mathbb{R}[2]$-quotient of $\mathbb{R}[6]$, i.e., there exists a natural homotopy fiber sequence of $L_\infty$-algebras

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{R}[6] & \longrightarrow & \mathfrak{s}^4 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle p} \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{R}[3] \,. \end{array} \tag{8.4}$$

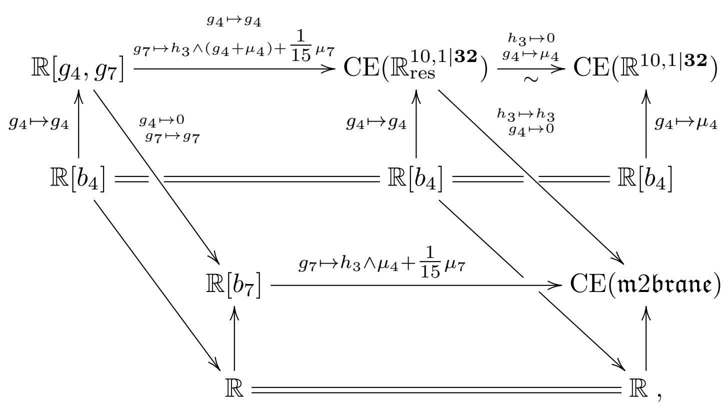
This can be seen by noticing that in the dual semifree differential (bi)-graded algebra picture we have the evident pushout

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{R}[g_4, g_7] & \xrightarrow{\substack{g_4 \mapsto 0 \\ g_7 \mapsto g_7}} & \mathbb{R}[g_7] \\ {\scriptstyle g_4 \mapsto g_4}\uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \mathbb{R}[g_4] & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{R} \,. \end{array}$$

That this indeed corresponds to a homotopy fiber sequence of $L_\infty$-algebras can be seen by the argument in [FRS13b, theorem 3.1.13]. Notice how we have implicitly used the fact that $\mathbb{R}[3]$ is a delooping of $\mathbb{R}[2]$ and hence serves as the infinitesimal classifying space for infinitesimal $\mathbb{R}[2]$-bundles. With the geometric picture described at the beginning of this section in mind, we want now to exhibit an $L_\infty$-algebra morphism $\tilde{\varphi}\colon \mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}} \to \mathfrak{s}^4$ over $\mathbb{R}[3]$, inducing the 6-cocycle $\varphi = h_3 \wedge \mu_4 + \frac{1}{15}\mu_7$ by passing to the homotopy fibers. In other words, we want to realize a homotopy commutative diagram of $L_\infty$-algebras of the form




Passing to the dual picture, we see that this is realized by the commutative diagram of differential (bi-)graded semifree commutative algebras




where $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}_{\mathrm{res}})$ is the semifree algebra obtained by adding to $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}})$ two generators $h_3$ and $g_4$, in degree 3 and 4 respectively, with differential

$$dh_3 := g_4 - \mu_4; \qquad dg_4 = 0\,.$$

This is manifestly homotopy equivalent to $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}})$: the morphism from $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}_{\mathrm{res}})$ to $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}})$ given on the additional generators by

$$h_3 \mapsto 0\,, \quad g_4 \mapsto \mu_4$$

is a homotopy inverse to the inclusion $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}) \hookrightarrow \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}_{\mathrm{res}})$. We can think of the $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}_{\mathrm{res}}$ as a *resolution* of the super-Minkowski space $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}$: from the point of view of homotopy theory of $L_\infty$-algebras, $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}_{\mathrm{res}}$ and $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}$ are *the same* space. Similarly, the commutative square on the top right of the diagram shows that from the point of view of the homotopy theory of $L_\infty$-algebras, $g_4 \mapsto \mu_4$ and $g_4 \mapsto g_4$ are the the same 3-cocycle.

The only nontrivial check in the above diagram is the compatibility of the morphism $\mathbb{R}[g_4, g_7] \to \mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}_{\mathrm{res}})$ with the differentials on the generator $g_7$ of $\mathbb{R}[g_4, g_7]$. One has

$$g_7 \overset{d}{\mapsto} g_4 \wedge g_4 \mapsto g_4 \wedge g_4$$

and

$$g_7 \to h_3 \wedge (g_4 + \mu_4) + \tfrac{1}{15}\mu_7 \overset{d}{\mapsto} (g_4 - \mu_4) \wedge (g_4 + \mu_4) + \mu_4 \wedge \mu_4 = g_4 \wedge g_4.$$

As mentioned at the beginning of this section, the morphism $g_4 \mapsto g_4$; $g_7 \mapsto h_3 \wedge (g_4 + \mu_4) + \frac{1}{15}\mu_7$ defines an element in the $\mathbb{R}[2]$-twisted $L_\infty$-algebra cohomology of the super-Minkowski space $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}_{\mathrm{res}}$, corresponding to the 6-cocycle $h_3 \wedge \mu_4 + \frac{1}{15}\mu_7$ on $\mathfrak{m2brane}$. Upon passing from $L_\infty$-cocycles to their WZW terms, this is to refine into a statement about twisted differential cohomology, i.e., to a morphism of

**8.1.2.2.3 Integration to differential cohomology and differential cohomotopy** The main result of the previous section can be summarized as follows: the homotopy pullback diagram (8.3) translates to a lift

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}} & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\varphi}} & \mathfrak{s}^4 \\ & {\scriptstyle \mu_4}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & \mathbb{R}[3] & \end{array}$$

of $\mu_4$, realizing $\varphi = h_3 \wedge \mu_4 + \frac{1}{15}\mu_7$ as a twisted cocycle on $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}$. Reinterpreting this in terms of WZW Lagrangians, this says that the homotopy pullback diagram (**??**) translates to a lift

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathrm{M5}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} & S^4_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & {\scriptstyle \mathbf{L}^{\mathrm{M2}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array}$$

of $\mathbf{L}^{\mathrm{M2}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$, realizing the M5-brane WZW Lagrangian $\mathbf{L}^{\mathrm{M5}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ as a morphism from the super-spacetime $X$ to a suitable stack of fields $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}}$. We now exhibit a construction of the stack $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}}$ and provide a geometric interpretation of it, which consequently leads to interpret the M5-brane WZW Lagrangian as an element in differential cohomotopy.

More precisely, what we want to show is that the stack $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}}$ may be taken to be a differential refinement of the rational homotopy type $\int(S^4)$ of the 4-sphere $S^4$ and that the morphism $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is a differential refinement of the classifying map $S^4 \to K(\mathbb{Z};4)$ for the generator of the fourth cohomology group of $S^4$. Following [Hen08, FSS10], recall that the Sullivan construction integrates an $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ to an $\infty$-groupoid (a simplicial space which satisfies Kan's condition on horn fillers) $\flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})$ defined by

$$\flat \exp(\mathfrak{g}) : [k] \mapsto \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(\Delta^k, \mathfrak{g}),$$

where

$$\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(X, \mathfrak{g}) := \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{dgAlg}}(\mathrm{CE}(\mathfrak{g}), \Omega^\bullet(M))$$

is the set of flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued differential forms on a given manifold $M$. Then one says that the $L_\infty$-algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is a Sullivan model for the rational homotopy type of a space $X$ if one has an equivalence of simplicial spaces $\int(X) \otimes \mathbb{R} \simeq \flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})$. As a remarkable example, the Lie 7-algebra $\mathfrak{s}^4$ is a Sullivan model for the rational homotopy type of the 4-sphere $S^4$, see [**?**]. Moreover, the fiber sequence of higher Lie algebras (8.4) is a shadow of the Sullivan model for the rational homotopy type of the Hopf fibration $S^7 \to S^4 \to BSU(2)$.

Refining the Sullivan construction, one then defines the (higher) stack $\flat$-$\mathfrak{g}$-conn of flat $\mathfrak{g}$-connection, as the stack locally given by

$$\flat\text{-}\mathfrak{g}\text{-conn} \colon (U, [k]) \mapsto \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(U \times \Delta^k; \mathfrak{g})$$

on a smooth (super-)manifold $U$ diffeomorphic to $\mathbb{R}^{m|n}$ for some $m|n$. The stack $\flat$-$\mathfrak{g}$-conn is to be thought of as resolution of the locally constant stack $\flat \exp(\mathfrak{g})$, directly generalizing the de Rham resolution of the sheaf of constant real valued functions [?]. It has the advantage that the canonical inclusion of 0-simplices exhibits then a natural morphism of stacks

$$\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathfrak{g}) \to \flat\text{-}\mathfrak{g}\text{-conn}\,.$$

This morphism simply says that a globally defined flat $\mathfrak{g}$-valued form on a smooth (super-)manifold $X$ is in particular a flat $\mathfrak{g}$-connection on $X$ whose underlying bundle is in the trivial topological sector.

Let us work out in detail the two examples that will be relevant to the construction of $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}}$. If $\mathfrak{g} = \mathbb{R}[p+1]$, then $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-,\mathbb{R}[p+1])$ is nothing but the sheaf $\Omega^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}}$ of closed $(p+2)$-forms, while by the Poincaré lemma flat $\mathbb{R}[p+1]$-connections are equivalently Čech $(p+2)$-cocycles with coefficients in the sheaf $\flat\underline{\mathbb{R}}$ of locally constant $\mathbb{R}$-valued functions. In other words, we have a natural equivalence of $(p+2)$-stacks $\flat\text{-}\mathbb{R}[p+1]\text{-conn} \cong \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\flat\underline{\mathbb{R}}$ and the morphism of stacks

$$\Omega^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} \to \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\flat\underline{\mathbb{R}}$$

is induced at the level of chain complexes by the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \Omega^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\Omega^0 & \xrightarrow{d} & \Omega^1 & \xrightarrow{d} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{d} & \Omega^{p+1} & \xrightarrow{d} & \Omega^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\flat\underline{\mathbb{R}} & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0
\end{array}$$

Passing to cohomology, this is nothing but the canonical morphism $\Omega^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}}(X) \to H^{p+2}_{\mathrm{dR}}(X) \cong H^{p+2}(X;\mathbb{R})$, for any smooth manifold $X$. The inclusion of $\mathbb{Z}$ in $\mathbb{R}$ induces a morphism of sheaves $\mathbb{Z} \to \underline{\mathbb{R}}$ and so a morphism of stacks $\mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\flat\underline{\mathbb{R}}$. We may therefore pull this morphism back along the morphism $\Omega^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} \to \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\underline{\mathbb{R}}$. What one gets is the stack $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, i.e., one has a homotopy pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{B}^{p+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\mathbb{Z} \\
{\scriptstyle F}\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\Omega^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^{p+2}\flat\underline{\mathbb{R}}\,,
\end{array} \tag{8.5}$$

where the morphism $F$ is the *curvature*. See [FSS10] for details on this homotopy pullback description of $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$.

The second example relevant to our discussion is the following. The sheaf $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-;\mathfrak{s}^4)$ is the sheaf whose sections over a smooth (super-)manifold $M$ are the pairs $(\omega_4,\omega_7)$ where $\omega_4$ is a closed 4-form on $M$ and $\omega_7$ is a 7-form on $M$ such that $d\omega_7 = \omega_4 \wedge \omega_4$. By naturality of the Sullivan construction, the 3-cocycle $\mathfrak{s}^4 \to \mathbb{R}[3]$ induces a homotopy commutative diagram of stacks

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-;\mathfrak{s}^4) & \longrightarrow & \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-;\mathbb{R}[4]) & = & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} \\
\downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
\flat\text{-}\mathfrak{s}^4\text{-conn} & \longrightarrow & \flat\text{-}\mathbb{R}[3]\text{-conn} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \mathbf{B}^4\flat\underline{\mathbb{R}}
\end{array}$$

The top horizontal arrow in this diagram is simply the projection $(\omega_4,\omega_7) \mapsto \omega_4$. The kernel of this map consists of closed 7-forms. We therefore have a fiber sequence

$$\Omega^7_{\mathrm{cl}} \to \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-;\mathfrak{s}^4) \to \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}}$$

which can be read as a differential forms version of the Hopf fibration $S^7 \to S^4 \to BSU(2) \stackrel{c_2}{\to} K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$. The bottom horizontal morphism in the above diagram is the $\mathbb{R}$-localization of the classifying map $S^4 \to K(\mathbb{Z}; 4)$ for the generator of $H^4(S^4; \mathbb{Z})$, i.e., we have a homotopy commutative diagram of smooth stacks

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \int(S^4) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{Z} \\ {\scriptstyle -\otimes\mathbb{R}}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle -\otimes\mathbb{R}} \\ \flat\text{-}\mathfrak{s}^4\text{-conn} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^4\flat\underline{\mathbb{R}}\,. \end{array}$$

We can now define the stack $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}}$ by analogy with the homotopy pullback definition (8.5) of the stack $\mathbf{B}^{p+1}U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ Namely, looking at the homotopy type $\int(S^4)$ of $S^4$ as a locally constant geometrically discrete stack, the $\mathbb{R}$-localization map $\int(S^4) \to \int(S^4) \otimes \mathbb{R}$ is promoted to a morphism of stacks $\int(S^4) \to \flat\text{-}\mathfrak{s}^4\text{-conn}$, which we can pull back along $\Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-; \mathfrak{s}^4) \to \flat\text{-}\mathfrak{s}^4\text{-conn}$. The stack $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is then defined as this pullback. By the univeral property of the homotopy pullback we therefore get a canonical morphism $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ fitting into a homotopy commutative diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} S^4_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \int(S^4) & & \\ \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\ \Omega^1_{\mathrm{flat}}(-;\mathfrak{s}^4) & \longrightarrow & \flat\text{-}\mathfrak{s}^4\text{-conn} & & \\ & \searrow & \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{Z} \\ & & \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow \\ & & \Omega^4_{\mathrm{cl}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^4\flat\underline{\mathbb{R}}\,. \end{array}$$

Since the stack $\mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{Z}$ is the locally constant geometrically discrete stack defined by the homotopy type $K(\mathbb{Z}, 4)$, the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^4_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \int(S^4) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^4\mathbb{Z} \end{array}$$

in the above homotopy commutative diagram precisely exhibits $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}}$ as a differential refinement of the homotopy type of $S^4$ in analogy to how $\mathbf{B}^3U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is a differential refinement of the homotopy type $K(\mathbb{Z}; 4)$.

Since the theory of higher homotopy groups of a topological space $X$ is essentially the theory of homotopy classes of maps from spheres to $X$, the theory of homotopy classes of maps from $X$ to spheres is also known as *cohomotopy*. With this terminology, an element in the nonabelian cohomology of $X$ with coefficients in (unstabilized) spheres is called a cohomotopy class for $X$, while a map $f\colon X \to S^k$ representing it can be thought of as a cohomotopy cocycle. This way, one thinks of the M5 WZW Lagrangian $\tilde{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathrm{M5}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ as a cocycle in "differential cohomotopy" for the super-spacetime $X$. This has been suggested before in [**?**, section 2.5].

To conclude this section, notice that a more "conservative" choice of integrated coefficients, i.e., of a target stack for the M5-brane WZW Lagrangian to takes values into, is the following.[40] The cup product in integral cohomology gives rise to a morphism of stacks

$$\cup^2 \colon \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{diag}} \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \times \mathbf{B}^3U(1) \xrightarrow{\cup} \mathbf{B}^7U(1)\,,$$

[40] Thanks to Thomas Nikolaus for discussion.

and so we have a long fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}^6 U(1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^6 U(1)//\mathbf{B}^2 U(1) & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) & \xrightarrow{\cup^2} & \mathbf{B}^7 U(1) \end{array} ,$$

where $\mathbf{B}^6 U(1)//\mathbf{B}^2 U(1)$ is *by definition* the homotopy fiber of $\cup^2 \colon \mathbf{B}^3 U(1) \to \mathbf{B}^7 U(1)$. This construction can be refined by adding connections to the picture simply by replacing the cup product in integral cohomology with the cup product in Deligne cohomology, prop. 6.4.124. This way one gets the long fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{B}^6 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & (\mathbf{B}^6 U(1)//\mathbf{B}^2 U(1))_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ * & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \xrightarrow{\cup^2} & \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{B}^6 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}) \end{array} ,$$

where $(\mathbf{B}^6 U(1)/\mathbf{B}^2 U(1))_{\mathrm{conn}}$ is defined by the homotopy fiber poduct on the right. On curvature forms this homotopy fiber product imposes again the condition $dG_7 = G_4 \wedge G_4$, so we have found a geometric way of imposing this constraint that does not involve the more sophisticated stack $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}}$. One could then define the M5-brane WZW term to be a lift

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\widehat{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathrm{M5}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} & (\mathbf{B}^6 U(1)/\mathbf{B}^2 U(1))_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & {}_{\mathbf{L}^{\mathrm{M2}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}}\searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & \end{array}$$

of $\mathbf{L}^{\mathrm{M2}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$. These would actually be a strictly less general solution than the one provided by the stack $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}}$. Namely, for dimensional reasons the image of the canonical map $S^4_{\mathrm{conn}} \to \mathbf{B}^2 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}}$ under $\cup^2$ has a trivializing homotopy, and so the universal property of the homotopy fiber induces a factorization of $\widehat{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathrm{M5}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$ through $\tilde{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathrm{M5}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \overset{\widehat{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathrm{M5}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}}{\frown\!\frown\!\frown\!\frown\!\rightarrow} & & \\ X & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathrm{M5}}_{\mathrm{WZW}}} & S^4_{\mathrm{conn}} & \longrightarrow & (\mathbf{B}^6 U(1)/\mathbf{B}^2 U(1))_{\mathrm{conn}} \\ & \searrow & \downarrow & \swarrow & \\ & & \mathbf{B}^3 U(1)_{\mathrm{conn}} & & \end{array} .$$

**8.1.2.2.4 Extension to the frame bundle** So far we considered the cocycles $\mu_{p+2}$ and the as cocycles on the (extended) super-Minkowski spacetime. In fact, since the cocycles $\mu_{p+2}$ are Lorentz-invariant they extend to cocycles on the super-Poincaré (super-)Lie algebra along the inclusion

$$\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}} \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{iso}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}) .$$

In terms of semifree algebras, the super-Poincaré Lie algebra is obtained by adding to $\mathrm{CE}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}})$ the additional 'rotational' generators $\{\omega^a{}_b\}$ corresponding to the Lorentz Lie algebra, with differentials

$$d\psi = \tfrac{1}{4}\omega_{ab} \wedge \Gamma^{ab}\psi \quad , \quad de^a = \omega^a{}_b \wedge e^b + \overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^a \psi \quad , \quad d\omega^a{}_b = \omega^a{}_c \wedge \omega^c{}_b \; .$$

The inclusion $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}} \hookrightarrow \mathfrak{iso}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}})$ is given, in the dual semifree algebras picture, by mapping to zero the added generators $\omega^a{}_b$. Therefore, we see that there are possibly more general cocycles on the super-Poincaré

Lie algebra which restrict to a given cocycle on on super-Minkowski space. In particular, we see that if $\lambda_3(\omega)$ and $\lambda_7(\omega)$ are a Lorentz 3-cocycle and a Lorentz 7-cocycle (i.e., closed polynomials of degree 3 and 7 in the variables $\omega^a{}_b$ , respectively), then $(h_3 + \omega^{\wedge 3}) \wedge (g_4 + \mu_4) + \frac{1}{15}\mu_7 + \omega^{\wedge 7}$ is a $\mathfrak{s}^4$-valued 7-cocycle on the super-Poincaré Lie algebra inducing the 7-cocycle $h_3 \wedge (g_4 + \mu_4) + \frac{1}{15}\mu_7$ on $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}$. Up to normalization, the only such Lorentz cocycles are the traces $\lambda_3(\omega) = \mathrm{tr}(\omega^{\wedge 3})$ and $\lambda_7(\omega) = \mathrm{tr}(\omega^{\wedge 7})$ of the third and the seventh wedge power of the matrix-valued form $\omega$, respectively. This way we obtain the 2-parameter family of 7-cocycles

$$\mathfrak{iso}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}) \xrightarrow{(h_3+\alpha \mathrm{tr}(\omega^{\wedge 3}))\wedge(g_4+\mu_4)+\frac{1}{15}\mu_7+\beta \mathrm{tr}(\omega^{\wedge 7})} \mathfrak{s}^4$$

lifting $h_3 \wedge (g_4 + \mu_4) + \frac{1}{15}\mu_7$.

Due to the isomorphism $\mathfrak{iso}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}) \simeq \mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}} \ltimes \mathfrak{so}(10,1)$, a natural choice of globalization of these cocycles is over the (Spin-)frame bundle $\mathrm{Fr}(X) \to X$ of super-spacetime $X$, where $\mathrm{tr}(\omega^{\wedge 3})$ is globalized as a parameterized WZW term over the Spin-fibers of the frame bundle. According to [**?**] this is a parameterized WZW term as considered in [DiSh07], whose existence trvializes the class $\frac{1}{2}p_1$ of the frame bundle. Once such a trivialization is given, $\mathrm{tr}(\omega^{\wedge 7})$ globalizes to a parametrized degree-7 WZW term related to the calss $p_2$. This can be viewed as a Fivebrane version [**?**] of the String setting discussed in [DiSh07].

**8.1.2.3 The complete brane bouquet of string/M-theory** We have discussed various higher super Lie $n$-algebras of super-spacetime. Here we now sum up, list all the relevant extensions and fit them into the full brane bouquet. To state the brane bouquet, we first need names for all the branches that it has

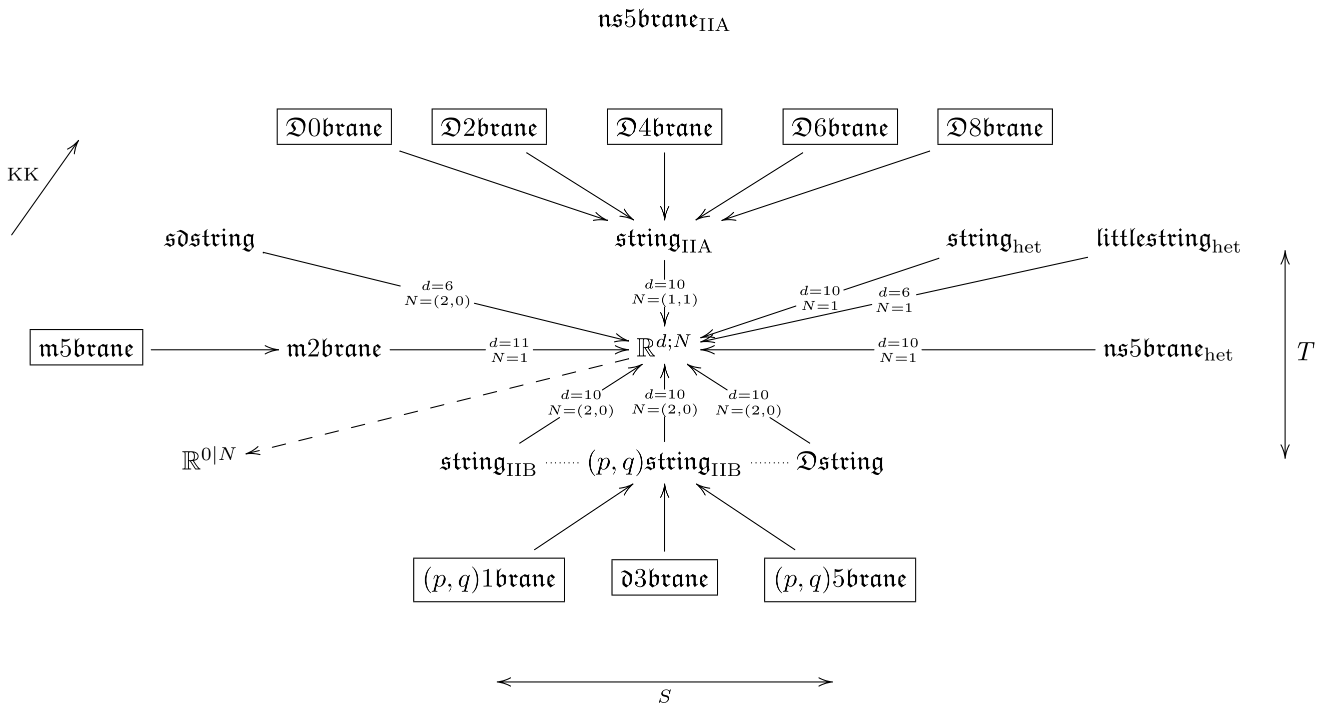
**Definition 8.1.17.** The *refined brane scan* is the following collection of values of triples $(d, p, N)$.

| $D$ = | $p = 0$ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 11 | | | (1) $\mathfrak{m2brane}$ | | | (1) $\mathfrak{m5brane}$ | | | | |
| 10 | (1,1)<br>$\mathfrak{D0brane}$ | (1,0) $\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{het}}$<br>(1,1) $\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIA}}$<br>(2,0) $\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}}$<br>(2,0) $\mathfrak{D1brane}$ | (1,1)<br>$\mathfrak{D2brane}$ | (2,0)<br>$\mathfrak{D3brane}$ | (1,1)<br>$\mathfrak{D4brane}$ | (1,0) $\mathfrak{ns5brane}_{\mathrm{het}}$<br>(1,1) $\mathfrak{ns5brane}_{\mathrm{IIA}}$<br>(2,0) $\mathfrak{ns5brane}_{\mathrm{IIB}}$<br>(2,0) $\mathfrak{D5brane}$ | (1,1)<br>$\mathfrak{D6brane}$ | (2,0)<br>$\mathfrak{D7brane}$ | (1,1)<br>$\mathfrak{D8brane}$ | (2,0)<br>$\mathfrak{D9brane}$ |
| 9 | | | | | (1) | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | (1) | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | (1) | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | (2,0) $\mathfrak{sdstring}$ | | (2,0) | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | (1) | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | (1) | (1) | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | (1) | | | | | | | | |

The entries of this table denote super-$L_\infty$-algebras that organize themselves as nodes in the brane bouquet according to the following proposition.

**Proposition 8.1.18** (The brane bouquet)**.** *There exists a system of higher super-Lie-n-algebra extensions of the super-translation Lie algebra $\mathbb{R}^{d;N}$ for $(d = 11, N = 1)$, $(d = 10, N = (1,1))$, for $(d = 10, N = (2,0))$*

*and for $(d = 6, N = (2,0))$, which is jointly given by the following diagram in* $\mathrm{sLie}_\infty\mathrm{Alg}$




*where*

- *An object in this diagram is precisely a super-Lie-$(p+1)$-algebra extension of the super translation algebra $\mathbb{R}^{d;N}$, with $(d,p,N)$ as given by the entries of the same name in the refined brane scan, def. 8.1.17;*
- *every morphism is a super-Lie $(p+1)$-algebra extension by an exceptional $\mathbb{R}$-valued $\mathfrak{o}(d)$-invariant super-$L_\infty$-cocycle of degree $p+2$ on the domain of the morphism;*
- *the unboxed morphisms are hence super Lie $(p+1)$-algebra extensions of $\mathbb{R}^{d;N}$ by a super Lie algebra $(p+2)$-cocycle, hence are homotopy fibers of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} p\mathfrak{brane} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{R}^{d;N} & \xrightarrow{\text{some cocycle}} & \mathbb{R}[p+1] \end{array} ,$$

- *and the boxed super-$L_\infty$-algebras are super Lie $(p+1)$-algebra extensions of genuine super-$L_\infty$-algebras (which are not plain super Lie algebras), again by $\mathbb{R}$-cocycles*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} p_2\mathfrak{brane} & \longrightarrow & * \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ p_1\mathfrak{brane} & \xrightarrow{\text{some cocycle}} & \mathbb{R}[p_2+1] \end{array} .$$

Proof. Using prop. 7.3.25 and the dictionary that we have established above between the language used in the physics literature ("FDA"s) and super-$L_\infty$-algebra homotopy theory, this is a translation of the following results that can be found scattered in the literature (some of which were discussed in the previous sections).

- All $N = 1$-extensions of $\mathbb{R}^{d;N=1}$ are those corresponding to the "old brane scan" [AETW87]. Specifically the cocycle which classifies the super Lie 3-algebra extension $\mathfrak{m2brane} \to \mathbb{R}^{11;1}$ had been found earlier in the context of supergravity around equation (3.12) of [dAFr82]. These authors also explicitly write down the "FDA" that then in [SSS09a] was recognized as the Chevalley-Eilenberg algebra of the super Lie 3-algebra $\mathfrak{m2brane}$ (there called the "supergravity Lie 3-algebra"). Later all these cocycles appear in the systematic classification of super Lie algebra cohomology in [Br10a, Br10b, Br13].

- The 7-cocycle classifying the super-Lie-6-algebra extension $\mathfrak{m5brane} \to \mathfrak{m2brane}$ together with that extension itself can be traced back, in FDA-language, to (3.26) in [dAFr82]. This is maybe still the only previous reference that makes explicit the Lie 6-algebra extension (as an "FDA"), but the corresponding 7-cocycle itself has later been rediscovered several times, more or less explicitly. For instance it appears as equations (6) and (9) in [BLNPST97]. A systematic discussion is in section 8 of [CdAIP99].

- The extension $\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIA}} \to \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(1,1)}$ by a super Lie algebra 3-coycle and the cocycles for the further higher extensions $\mathfrak{D}(2n)\mathfrak{brane} \to \mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIA}}$ can be traced back to section 6 of [CdAIP99].

- The extension $\mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIB}} \to \mathbb{R}^{10;N=(2,0)}$ by a super Lie algebra 2-coycle and the cocycles for the further higher extensions $\mathfrak{D}(2n+1)\mathfrak{brane} \to \mathfrak{string}_{\mathrm{IIA}}$, as well as the extension $\mathfrak{ns5brane}_{\mathrm{IIB}} \to \mathfrak{Dstring}$ follow from section 2 of [Sak99].

□

**Remark 8.1.19.** The look of the brane bouquet, Prop. 8.1.18, is reminiscent of the famous cartoon that displays the conjectured coupling limits of string/M-theory, e.g. figure 4 in [?], or fig. 1 in [Po99]. Contrary to that cartoon, the brane bouquet is a theorem. Of course that cartoon alludes to more details of the nature of string/M-theory than we are currently discussing here, but all the more should it be worthwhile to have a formalism that makes precise at least the basic structure, so as to be able to proceed from solid foundations.

## 8.2 Gravity

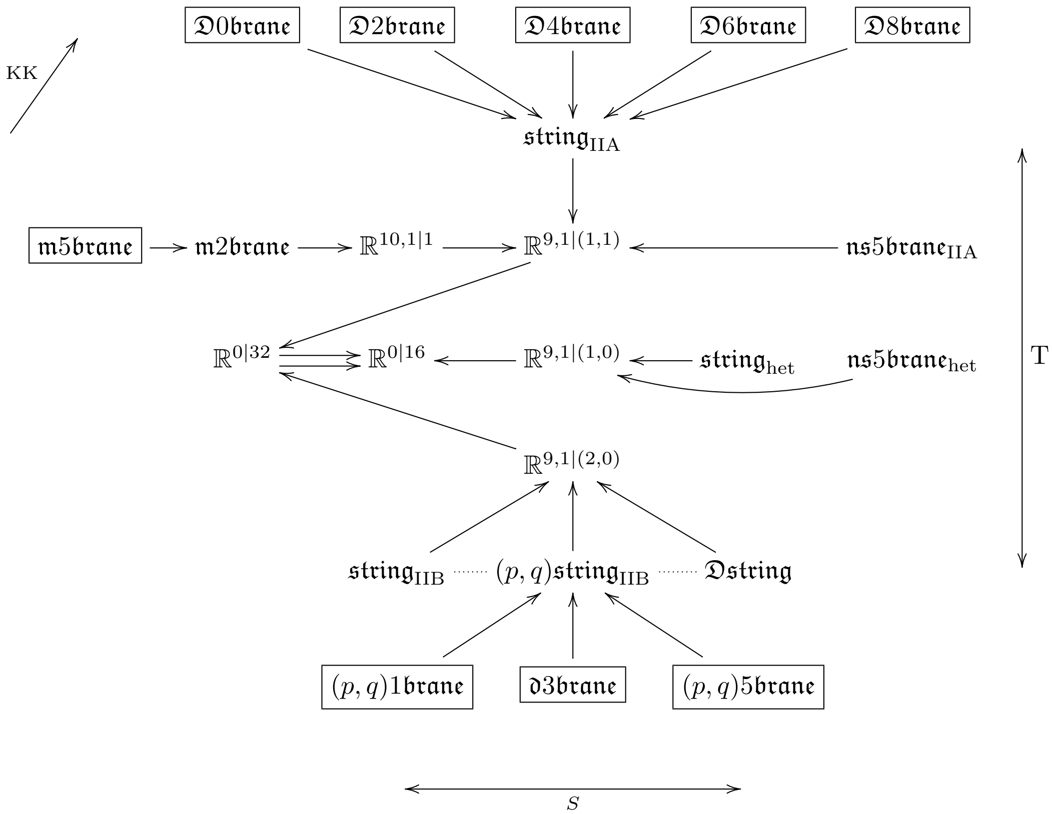
We discuss how 11-dimensional supergravity arises from applying the general theory of Cartan geometry 5.3.12, definite WZW terms 5.3.13, generalized geometry 5.3.14 and higher isometries 5.3.15 to the local model geometries found in the M2/M5-brane branch 8.1.2.2 of the brane bouquet 8.1.2.3.

- 8.2.1 – 11-Dimensional supergravity
- 8.2.2 – The M2-WZW term and the exceptional tangent bundle
- 8.2.3 – M2/M5-brane BPS charges

### 8.2.1 11-Dimensional supergravity

We discuss how the equations of motion for bosonic solutions of 11-dimensional supergravity arise from Cartan geometry 5.3.12 applied to the M2/M5-brane branch 8.1.2.2 of the brane bouquet 8.1.2.3.

Above in 8.1.1 we started with the superpoints $\mathbb{R}^{0|N}$ given by the solidity of the general supergeometric substance, and then by iteratively finding cocycles and the extensions they induce, we saw in 8.1.2 a bouquet of extended super-Minkowski spacetimes emerge:




According to prop. 6.4.164, every intermediate item in this bouquet induces a WZW term $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}} : V \longrightarrow \mathbf{B}^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)_{\mathrm{conn}}$, prop. 5.2.122, being part of the Lagrangian of the corresponding $p$-brane sigma model with target $V$; and by prop. 6.4.168 for every edge between two items the corresponding two WZW terms are compatible, which by prop. 5.2.125 means that the second is defined on the differential refinement $\tilde{\hat{V}}$ of the extended super-Minkowski spacetime $\hat{V} \to V$ induced by the first

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\tilde{\hat{V}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}_1}} & \mathbf{B}^{p_2+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_2)_{\mathrm{conn}} \\
\downarrow & & \\
V & \xrightarrow[\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}_1}]{} & \mathbf{B}^{p_1+1}(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma_1)_{\mathrm{conn}}
\end{array}
$$

Def. 5.3.133 shows how to globalize this data from super-Minkowski spacetimes $V$ to more general spaces locally modeled on $V$, namely to $V$-manifolds, def. 5.3.88, equipped with first-order integrable $G$-structure $\mathbf{g}$, def. 5.3.104, def. 5.3.111, where, by remark 5.3.135,

$$
G = \mathbf{Heis}_{\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(\mathbb{D}^V)}(\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}^{\mathbb{D}^V})
$$

is the homotopy stabilizer group prop. 5.2.140, def. 5.2.141, of the linearized WZW term with respect to the super Lie $n$-algebra automorphisms of the respective super-Minkowski spacetime.

**Theorem 8.2.1.** *Applied to the extremal stage*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{m2brane} & \xrightarrow{\mu_{\mathfrak{m5brane}}} & b^5\mathbb{R} \\ \downarrow & & \\ \mathbb{R}^{10,1|1} & \xrightarrow[\mu_{\mathfrak{m2brane}}]{} & b^2\mathbb{R} \end{array}$$

*of the bouquet, such geometries* $(X, \mathbf{g}, \mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}_1}, \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}_2}})$*, when* $X$ *is constrained to have finite categorical homotopy groups (def. 5.1.100, remark 5.1.103) are equivalently*

1. *11-dimensional* $N = 1$ *super-orbifolds* $X$ *equipped with graviton, gravitino and 4-form flux fields which satisfy the equations of motion of 11-dimensional vaccuum supergravity (i.e. for vanishing gravitino field strength);*
2. *and equipped with a consistent global choice of WZW term potentials for the super 4-form and the super 7-form which are implied by these equation of motion, hence with global WZW terms that make the M2-brane sigma model as well as the M5-brane sigma model be globally well defined on* $X$*.*

*Moreover,the higher group of symmetries of any given such* $(X, \mathbf{g}, \mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}_1}, \mathbf{L}_{\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}_2}})$ *has as its lowest Postnikov stage a supergroup whose super-Lie algebra is an extension of the M-theory algebra of the super-spacetime* $X$*, extending its super-isometry group by BPS brane charges.*

Before proving this, consider two lemmas.

**Lemma 8.2.2.** *The group* $\mathbf{Heis}_{\mathbf{Aut}_{\mathrm{Grp}}(\mathbb{D}^V)}(\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}}^{\mathbb{D}^V})$ *is a* $\mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)$*-extension of the spin double cover* $\mathrm{Spin}(10,1)$ *of the Lorentz group of linear isometries of 11-dimensional Minkowski spacetime.*

Proof. By prop. 8.1.5 the 0-truncation of the group is $\mathrm{Spin}(10,1)$, and by theorem 5.2.143, and using that super-Minkowskip spacetime is geometrically contractible, $\int \mathbb{R}^{10,1|1} \simeq *$, the full group is an extension of that by

$$\mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)\mathbf{FlatConn}(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|1}) \simeq \mathbf{B}^2(\mathbb{R}/\Gamma)\,.$$

□

**Lemma 8.2.3.** *The condition on an* $\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N}$*-manifold to have* $\mathrm{Spin}(d-1,1)$*-structure which is first order integrable in the sense of def.5.3.111 is equivalent to the super-vielbein* $(E^a, \Psi^\alpha)$ *which exhibits the* $\mathrm{Spin}(d-1,1)$*-structure having vanishing super-torsion. This in turn is equivalent to the ordinary torsion to have components* $(T^a, T^\alpha)_{a,\alpha}$ *of the form*

$$T^a = \tfrac{i}{2}\overline{\psi}\Gamma^a\Psi$$
$$T^\alpha = 0\,.$$

Proof. By prop. 5.3.94 the choice of framing on $\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N}$ (with respect to which def. 5.3.111 demands first order integrability) is that obtained via left translation with respect to the supergroup structure of $\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N}$. This is the framing of vanishing super-torsion. □

To amplify this important point:

**Example 8.2.4.** With $(x^a, \theta^\alpha)$ the canonical coordinates on $\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N}$, the canonical basis of left-invariant 1-forms is

$$E^\alpha := \mathbf{d}\theta^\alpha$$
$$E^a := \mathbf{d}x^a + \tfrac{i}{2}\Gamma^a{}_{\alpha\beta}\theta^\alpha\mathbf{d}\theta^\beta\,.$$

This defines the left-invariant orthogonal structure, according to example 5.3.106. Observe that, due to the second summand in the definition of $E^a$, this basis has torsion

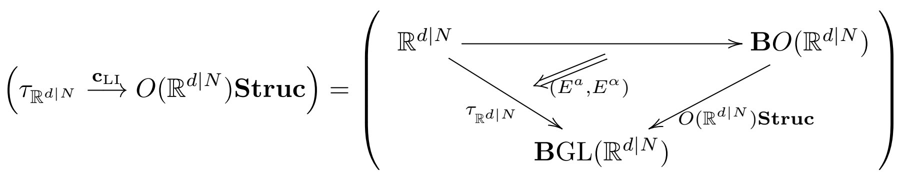
$$\begin{aligned}\tau^a &= \mathbf{d}E^a + \omega^a{}_b \wedge E^b \\ &= \mathbf{d}E^a \\ &= \tfrac{i}{2}\Gamma^a{}_{\alpha\beta} E^\alpha \wedge E^\beta .\end{aligned}$$

Hence we canonically have a nontrivial background $O(\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N})$-structure $\mathbf{c}_{\mathbb{R}^{d-1,1|N}}$ in the sense of def. 5.3.109. This perspective has been highlighted in [Lo90].

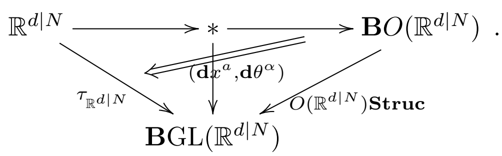
To further amplify this, there is of course a $\mathrm{GL}(\mathbb{R}^{d|N})$-valued function on $\mathbb{R}^{d|N}$ which takes the torsion-free but non-left-invariant frame $(\mathbf{d}x^a, \mathbf{d}\theta^\alpha)$ to the torsion-full but left-invariant $(E^a, E^\alpha)$

$$\begin{pmatrix} E^a \\ E^\alpha \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{id} & (\tfrac{i}{2}\Gamma^a{}_{\alpha\beta}\theta^\alpha)_{a\beta} \\ 0 & \mathrm{id} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{d}x^a \\ \mathbf{d}\theta^\alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

thereby exhibiting $(E^a, E^\alpha)$ as indeed being a frame, namely indeed defining a homotopy




but it is not the one induced by the above coordinate presentation




Proof. (of theorem 8.2.1) By corollary 6.5.57, the assumption that $X$ is an $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|1}$-manifold in the sense of def. 5.3.88 means that it is a super-étale stack modeled on $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|1}$, hence a super-orbifold if its categorical homotopy groups are assumed to be finite. By prop. 5.4.4 this means that the underlying bosonic spacetime is an 11-dimensional orbifold.

By the discussion in 6.4.11 and 7.1.3.1, lemma 8.2.2 implies that the given $G$-structure is in degree-0 a super-vielbein field, hence a graviton field and gravitino field.

By [CaLe94, Ho97], for $d = 11$ and $N = 1$ the first equation on the supervielbein in lemma 8.2.3 is already equivalent to the full equations of motion of supergravity if one understands that the 4-form flux is the one given by the definite globalization of $\mu_{\mathfrak{m2brane}}$ via the given vielbein. (The second equation in lemma 8.2.3 is by definition the vanishing of the gravitino field strength, see e.g. [dAFr82, p. 131 (31/40)].)

By prop. 5.3.120 this 4-form equals the curvature 4-form of the given $\mathbf{L}_{\mathrm{WZW}_1}$, hence this is indeed a globalization of the M2-brane WZW term over $X$.

With this, the statement about the BPS algebras follows with prop. 1.4.4. □

**Remark 8.2.5.** It is the remarkable result of [CaLe94, Ho97] that makes this work for 11-dimensional supergravity. Previous to [CaLe94] it was well known [GHMNT85, ShTa87, BeSeTo87, CGNSW96], [AFFFTT99, section 3.1] that the equations of motion of 11-dimensional supergravity imply the torsion constraint and the definite globalization of the WZW curvature, and similar implications do hold for the lower dimensional supergravity theories, but for 11-dimensional supergravity the implication also holds the other way round. This super-miracle together with the fact that first order integrability with respect to left-invariant $G$-structure happens to have a natural synthetic formalization in cohesive homotopy theory is at the heart of theorem 8.2.1.

Regarding the evident question of whether there is also a synthetic formalization of the equations of motion of lower dimensional supergravity theories, it may be noteworthy that the key result of [dAFr82, CaDAFr91], phrased in homotopy-theoretic language as explained in [FSS13b], says that the equations of motion of theories of supergravity are generally equivalent to

1. the Bianchi identities for a super-$L_\infty$-Cartan connection modeled on an extended super-Minkowski spacetimes;

2. a kind of super-holomorphicity called *rheonomy* [CaDAFr91, section III.3.3.] (equivalent [AFFFTT99, below (3.12)] to what elsewhere is called just "superspace constraints").

Regarding the fields of supergravity as super-$L_\infty$-connections as in [FSS13b], then the Bianchi identities are automatic and the rheonomy constraint simply says that the spinorial components of all curvature forms must be linear combinations (for some prescribed constant coefficients determined by the flavor of supergravity) of the curvature components without spinorial indices. This is already remarkable in its mathematical efficiency. While one may easily say this in components, at the moment we do not know how to phrase this constraint synthetically in cohesive homotopy theory.

**Remark 8.2.6.** The restriction in theorem 8.2.1 to vacuum solutions, i.e. to vanishing gravitino field strength, is not worrisome. All M-theory model building for fundamental particle physics is based on such vacuum solutions on suitable orbifolds [Ach99, **?**], see [ElKaZh14] for the state of the art and for further pointers to further literature.

### 8.2.2 The M2-WZW term and the exceptional tangent bundle

Above we found 11-dimensional supergravity together with the classical anomaly cancellation of the M2-brane sigma model by requiring the WZW term of the M2-brane to be definite on one fixed referece WZW term.

This is however more restrictive than necessary, and here we discuss the situation more generally. What is strictly required to be a definite globalization of a single reference term is only the 4-curvature of the M2-WZW term, and this condition alone, when imposed integrably to first infinitesimal order, already implies bosonic solutions to the equations of motion of 11-dimensional supergravity. Subject to this condition, the WZW term itself however may vary more generally.

It is a famous fact [BeSeTo87] that

- a) the equations of motion of 11-dimensional supergravity imply that the bilinear fermionic component $G_4^{\psi\psi}$ of the super-4-form flux on 11-dimesnional spacetime $X$ is a *definite form* (in terminology borrowed from that of $G_2$-manifolds), which in each tangent space is $\mathrm{Spin}(10,1)$-equivalent to the left-invariant super 4-form $\overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{a_1 a_2} \wedge \psi \wedge e_a \wedge e_b$ on super-Minkowski spacetime $\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}$.

- b) $G_4^{\theta\theta}$ is the curvature 4-form of the $\kappa$-symmetry WZW term for the M2-brane sigma-model with target space the give 11d superspacetime.

What has arguably found less attention is that the definition of the M2-brane sigma model with target space a curved superspacetime $X$ is not complete with just this 4-form curvature: the higher WZW term in the M2-brane action functional is locally a choice of form potential $C_3$ for $G_4^{\psi\psi}$, and globally it is the 3-connection of a 3-bundle (2-gerbe) whose local connection 3-forms are given by these choices of $C_3$. (Such a 3-bundle with 3-connection is a higher pre-quantization of $G_4^{\psi\psi}$ regarded as a pre-3-plectic form.) One place in the physics literature where the need of this extra information is at least mentioned is [Wi86, page 17].

A systematic study of 11d-supergravity with these pre-quantum corrections coming from the M2 and the M5-brane sigma-models included is in [?], with lecture notes in [?]. For the moment here we will focus just on the space of local choices, and stay within the realm of traditional differential geometry. We will see that the space of local choices is naturally parameterized by splittings of the 11d exceptional generalized tangent bundle, hence by exceptional generalized metrics.

It is useful to state the problem of parameterizing spaces of form potentials for left-invariant closed forms in generality, to separate its general structure from the intricacies of its application to M2-branes WZW terms. In generality it looks as follows.

**8.2.2.1 Atiyah sequence for $(p+1)$-form connections** Consider a germ of a Lie group $G$ (hence a "local Lie group" where we consider working on arbitray small contractible neighbourhoods of the neutral element of an actual Lie group and ignore the global topology of the group). Consider furthermore a closed an left-invariant differential $(p+2)$-form

$$\omega \in \Omega^{p+2}_{\mathrm{cl,li}}(G)\,.$$

Since we are working just locally on a germ, by the Poincaré lemma $\omega$ is guaranteed to have a potential

$$A \in \Omega^{p+1}(G)$$

in that

$$dA = \omega$$

where of course $A$ may not be left-invariant itself, unless $\omega$ comes from a trivial Lie algebra cocycle. But we may force that to happen after passing to an extension:

Assume that there is an extension of (germs of) Lie groups

$$p : \hat{G} \longrightarrow G$$

with the property that pulled back along this extension, $\omega$ does become left-invariantly trivial, i.e. such that there is a left invariant potential form

$$\hat{A} \in \Omega^{p+1}_{\mathrm{li}}(\hat{G})$$

such that

$$d\hat{A} = p^*\omega\,.$$

If this may be found, then (at least part of) the space of potentials for $\omega$ down on $G$ has a neat parameterization as follows.

Every splitting

$$\sigma : G \longrightarrow \hat{G}$$

of the bundle underlying the extension (i.e. a section of the underlying map of (germs of) smooth manifolds, not required to respect the group structure) gives rise to a potential for $\omega$, namely the pullback $\sigma^*\hat{A}$ of the left-invariant "reference potential" which we assumed to exist on $\hat{G}$:

$$\begin{aligned} d(\sigma^*\hat{A}) &= \sigma^*(d\hat{A}) \\ &= \sigma^*(p^*\omega) \\ &= (p\circ\sigma)^*\omega\,. \\ &= \mathrm{id}^*\omega \\ &= \omega \end{aligned}$$

Notice that by the left-invariance of $\hat{A}$, two sections $\sigma$ that differ by an action of $\hat{G}$ on itself give rise to the same potential form: For every element $\hat{g} \in \hat{G}$ write $L_{\hat{g}} : \hat{G} \longrightarrow \hat{G}$ for the action on $\hat{G}$ given by left-multiplication. Then

$$\begin{aligned} (L_{\hat{g}}\circ\sigma)^*\hat{A} &\simeq \sigma^*(L_{\hat{g}}^*\hat{A}) \\ &\simeq \sigma^*\hat{A} \end{aligned}\,.$$

This means that the parameterization of potential forms which we found is really the quotient space $\Gamma_G(\hat{G})/\hat{G}$. But this has a nice re-interpretation: this is equivalently the space of *pointed* sections of $p$ (those that send the neutral element of $G$ to the neutral element of $\hat{G}$).

This is useful, because it implies that as we restrict further from germs to infinitesimal neighbourhoods, hence to Lie algebras, then the space of sections becomes the space of *linear* splittings of the Lie algebra extension $\hat{\mathfrak{g}} \longrightarrow \mathfrak{g}$:

$$0 \longrightarrow \ker(p_*) \longrightarrow \hat{\mathfrak{g}} \underset{p_*}{\overset{\sigma_*}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathfrak{g} \longrightarrow 0\ .$$

This is a very familiar situation. An example of this at the level of Lie algebroids is the Atiyah sequence of a principal bundle, whose fiberwise linear splittings correspond to choices of connection 1-forms. Here we see something analogous for connection $(p+1)$-forms.

Notice that on the level of Lie algebras $\hat{A}$ is identified with an element of the Chevalley-Eilenberg dg-algebra $\mathrm{CE}(\hat{\mathfrak{g}})$ such that $d_{\mathrm{d_{CE}}}\hat{A} = (p_*)^*\omega$.

**8.2.2.2 Atiyah sequence for the M2-brane WZW term** We may now specify the above general discussion to the case of the M2-brane WZW term.

In this case we have from 8.1.2

- $\mathfrak{g} := \mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}$;
- $\omega := \overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{a_1 a_2}\overline{\psi} \wedge e_{a_1} \wedge e_{a_2}$

and so the question is if there exists a suitable super Lie algebra extension $p_* : \hat{\mathfrak{g}} \longrightarrow \mathfrak{g}$ and an element $\hat{A} \in \mathrm{CE}(\hat{\mathfrak{g}})$ such that

$$d_{\mathrm{CE}}\hat{A} = (p_*)^*\overline{\psi} \wedge \Gamma^{a_1 a_2}\overline{\psi} \wedge e_{a_1} \wedge e_{a_2}\ .$$

If so, then all pullbacks of $\hat{A}$ along linear splittings of $p_*$ are possible WZW terms for the M2-brane.

This problem has been solved (even if not presented from the perspective used here) in [dAFr82, section 6] and more comprehensively in [**?**].

These authors find [dAFr82, (6.2)] [**?**, (11)-(13)] that there exists (at least) a 1-parameter class of solutions to this problem given by super Lie algebras $\widehat{\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}}$ which are generically fermionic extensions of the M-theory super Lie algebra [To95, Hull97], and hence whose bosonic body is generically:

$$\widehat{\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}}_{\mathrm{bos}} \simeq_{\mathrm{lin}} \mathbb{R}^{10,1} \oplus \wedge^2(\mathbb{R}^{10,1})^* \oplus \wedge^5(\mathbb{R}^{10,1})^*$$

(except for one value of the parameter, at which the $\wedge^5$-summand disappears). Following [Hull97] we may equivalently express this in terms of purely spatial components by applying Hodge duality to obtain

$$\widehat{\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}}_{\mathrm{bos}} \simeq_{\mathrm{lin}} \mathbb{R}^{10,1} \oplus \underbrace{\wedge^2(\mathbb{R}^{10})^*}_{\text{M2-brane}} \oplus \underbrace{\wedge^9\ \mathbb{R}^{10}}_{\text{M9-brane}} \oplus \underbrace{\wedge^5(\mathbb{R}^{10})^*}_{\text{M5-brane}} \oplus \underbrace{\wedge^6\ \mathbb{R}^{10}}_{\text{KK-monopole}}\ .$$

Notice that for the description of Kaluza-Klein compactifications of 11-dimensional supergravity down to 4 dimenions one will consider linear splittings of this extension which factor through the inclusion of the bosonic subspace that is induced by the inclusion $\mathbb{R}^7 \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{3,1} \oplus \mathbb{R}^7 \simeq \mathbb{R}^{10,1}$. (Such linear splittings will encode 3-form fields all whose form components are in the 7-dimensional fiber space, we come to this in 8.2.2.3 below.) That subspace is

$$\mathbb{R}^7 \oplus \wedge^2(\mathbb{R})^7 \oplus \wedge^5(\mathbb{R}^7)^* \oplus \wedge^6\mathbb{R}^7 \ \hookrightarrow\ \widehat{\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}}_{\mathrm{bos}}\ .$$

This is precisely what has been proposed as the typical fiber of the *exceptional tangent bundle* for 11-dimensional supergravity compactified on 7-dimensional fibers [Hull07, section 4.4][**?**, section 2.2]

Moreover, these authors find [dAFr82, (6.1)] [**?**, (28)] a Chevalley-Eilenberg 3-forms $\hat{C} \in \mathrm{CE}(\widehat{\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}}})$ that trivialize the M2-brane 4-cocycle on this extension. It is given for

$$s \in \mathbb{R} - \{0\}$$

by [dAFr82, (6.1)] [**?**, (28)]

$$\hat{C}(s) := \alpha_{\mathrm{LP}}(s) \underbrace{B^{a_1 b_1} \wedge e_{a_1} \wedge e_{a_2}}_{\hat{C}_{\mathrm{LP}}} + \alpha_{\mathrm{CS}}(s) \underbrace{B^{a_1}{}_{a_2} \wedge B^{a_2}{}_{a_3} \wedge B^{a_3}{}_{a_1}}_{\hat{C}_{\mathrm{CS}}} + \cdots ,$$

where $\{B^{a_1 a_2}\}$ is a basis for the left-invariant 1-forms on the summands $\wedge^2(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}})^*$, and where we show only the terms generated by $\{e_a\}$ and $\{B^{a_1 a_2}\}$.

According to [**?**, (30)] we have

- for $s = -3$ then $\alpha_{\mathrm{CS}}(-3) = 0$ and with it the second term above vanishes
- for $s \to 0$ then the bosonic part of $s\hat{C}(s)$ goes to $\hat{C}_{\mathrm{CS}}$

We observe below in section 8.2.2.3 that $\hat{C}_{\mathrm{LP}}$ akin to a Liouville-Poincaré form on a cotangent bundle, while $\hat{C}_{\mathrm{CS}}$ is akin to a Chern-Simons form.

It is maybe noteworthy that in the limit $s \to 0$ the M-theory super Lie algebra here becomes a limiting case of $\mathfrak{osp}(1|32)$ [FIO15].

$$e^a := dx^a + \theta \Gamma^a d\theta$$
$$\psi^\alpha = d\theta^\alpha$$

#### 8.2.2.3 The M2-Liouville-Poincaré form and 3-form shift symmetry

**Proposition 8.2.7.** *Given a bosonic 3-form $C \in \wedge^3(\mathbb{R}^{10,1|\mathbf{32}})^*$ then the linear splitting*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{R}^{10,1} &\xrightarrow{\sigma_*^C} \mathbb{R}^{10,1} \oplus \wedge^2(\mathbb{R}^{10,1})^* \\ v &\longmapsto (v, \iota_v C) \end{aligned}$$

*has the property that*

$$(\sigma_*^C)^* \hat{C}_{\mathrm{LP}} = C \,.$$

**Corollary 8.2.8.** *For $s = -3$ then*

$$(\sigma_*^C)^* \hat{C}(-3) = C \,.$$

*In particular, the map from linear splittings to bosonic 3-forms is surjective.*

**Remark 8.2.9.** The formula for the splitting in prop.8.2.7 is coincides with the formula that the literature on exceptional generalized geometry postulates to encode the 3-form degrees of freedom [Hull07, (4.2)] [**?**, (B.23)].

**8.2.2.4 Gauge fields and Chern-Simons forms** On the other hand, consider which section would parameterize $C$ via pullback if only the second summand $\hat{C}_{\mathrm{CS}}$ were present in $\hat{C}$, hence the case $s \to 0$. This would most naturally be understood by using the Lorentz metric to make the linear identification

$$\wedge^2(\mathbb{R}^{10,1})^* \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathfrak{so}(10,1) \,.$$

Notice that this matches the role that $B^a{}_b$ plays in the super Lie algebra $\hat{\mathfrak{g}}$, where it acts on fermions via action with $B_{ab}\Gamma^{ab}$ on the spin representation, i.e. via the matrix representation of $\mathfrak{so}(10,1)$ on the fermions.

With such an identification, then a linear splitting is an $\mathfrak{so}(10,1)$-valued linear 1-form $A$, and the 3-form that it parameterizes is

$$(\sigma_*^A)^* \hat{C}_{\mathrm{CS}} = \langle A \wedge [A, A] \rangle \,,$$

where $\langle -,- \rangle$ is the invariant bilinear (Killing) form. This is of course the Chern-Simons form for the linear 1-form $A$ regarded as a constant differential 1-form.

Hence we see that for generic value of the parameter $s$ in the possible choices of $\hat{C}$, the 3-form potentials that are parameterized by linear splittings as above are naturally interpreted as having a component proportional to the Chern-Simons form of a nonabelian gauge field.

Now I don't see at the moment how this is more than a curiosity, but it seems suggestive of the following expectations

- such a Chern-Simons component is what one expects to see appear in heterotic Hořava-Witten "compactifications" of the setup;
- in the context of gauged supergravity it is part of the R-symmetry that is being gauged, and from the 11-dimensional perspective that R-symmetry is an isometry of the compactification space, hence is locally a Lorentz transformation;
- the interpretation of the splitting as a 1-form with values in bivectors is also the natural interpretation in the context of Kaluza-Klein reduction of the on fibers with 2-cycles by which the 3-form $C$ is fiber integrated to a space of 1-forms $A^i := \int_{\Sigma^i} C$. For this case, too, it is folklore that the $\{A^o\}$, which a priori are abelian, become gauged under a nonabelian group.

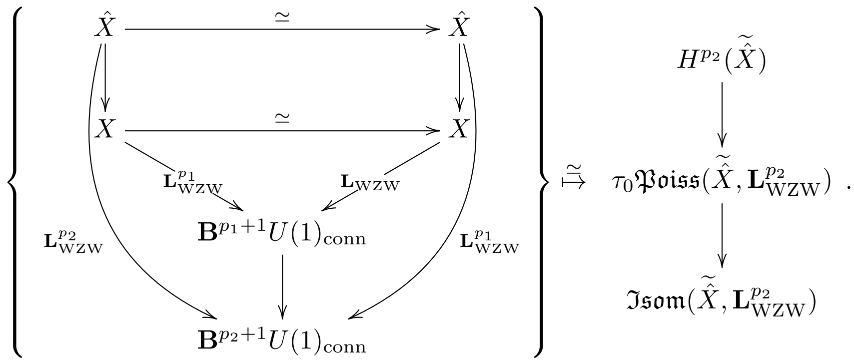
### 8.2.3 M2/M5 BPS charges

These are the supersymmetry extensions induced by a single brane species, as considered originally in [AGIT89]. But the "type II algebra" and the "M-theory algebra" [To95, Hull97] are supposed to arise from considering not just strings and membranes, but also the branes on which these may end, namely the D-branes and the M5-brane, respectively. Notably the M-theory supersymmetry algebra is given on the fermionic generators in traditional local component notation as [To95, **?**]

$$\{Q_\alpha, Q_\beta\} = (C\Gamma^M)_{\alpha\beta} P_M + (C\Gamma_{MN})_{\alpha\beta} Z_2^{MN} + (C\Gamma_{MNPQR})_{\alpha\beta} Z_5^{MNPQR} \,, \tag{8.6}$$

where $C$ is the charge conjugation matrix and $\Gamma$ are the Dirac matrices. The three terms on the right hand side correspond to the graviton momentum 1-form charge, the membrane 2-form charge and the fivebrane 5-form charge. Notice again that this traditional expression applies only locally, on patches of spacetime diffeomorphic to super-Minkowski spacetime.

Now the proper global analysis of [AGIT89, p.8] and of prop. 1.4.4 only ever produces extensions by charges of a single brane species with no (higher) gauge fields on its worldvolume. But in 5.2.15, 8.1.2 we found that the WZW-type sigma models for super $p_2$-branes with (higher) gauge fields on the their worldvolume and on which super $p_1$-branes may end, are globally defined not on target superspacetime $X$ itself, but on the total space $\widetilde{\hat{X}}$ of a super $p_1$-stack extension $\widetilde{\hat{X}} \to X$ of superspacetime, which itself is a differential refinement of the $p_1$-gerbe $\hat{X}$ that underlies the WZW term of the $p_1$-branes. Moreover, in [FRS13a] we showed that the higher Heisenberg-Kostant-Souriau extensions of remark **??** generalizes to such higher stacky base spaces. Schematically this follows now the following picture, the full details are in [?, ?]:




(All 2-cells on the left are filled by homotopies of higher stacks. We suppress them just notationally just for convenience and readability.)

Here the differential refinement $\widetilde{\hat{X}}$ of $\hat{X}$ is what makes a sigma-model field $\Sigma_{p_2} \longrightarrow \widetilde{\hat{X}}$ be a pair consisting of an ordinary map to target spacetime $\Sigma_{p_2} \longrightarrow X$ together with a twisted $p_1$-form gauge field on $\Sigma_6$. This is the global model for super $p$-branes with tensor multiplet higher gauge fields on their worldvolume.

While this is necessary for the full picture, the isometry group and the cohomology of $\widetilde{\hat{X}}$ is hard to compute. There is however a canonical forgetful map $\widetilde{\hat{X}} \to \hat{X}$ to the geometric realization of this differential stack (regarded itself as a locally constant stack, see [?] for details). By combining results of [?] and [Pa], one finds that in the case at hand $\hat{X}$ is the homotopy type of the $K(\mathbb{Z}, p_1+1)$-fiber bundle over spacetime $X$ that is classified by the integral class of the background field of the $p_1$-brane. We now compute the cohomology of that geometric realization. In a full discussion one will have to pull the result of the following computation back along the above map to $\widetilde{\hat{X}}$, and kernel and cokernel of this pullback map potentially yield yet further corrections to the brane charges.

We specialize to the case $p_1 = 2$ and $p_2 = 5$ corresponding to M5-branes propagating in an M2-brane condensate [FSS13b]. First, consider the cohomology of the fiber $K(\mathbb{Z}, 3)$. At the integral level, this is known but has a complicated structure. We will instead consider the corresponding rational cohomology, which is much more accessible. Indeed, it directly follows from the Hurewicz theorem and the universal coefficient theorem that

$$H^k(K(\mathbb{Z},3);\mathbb{Q}) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Q} & \text{for } k = 0, 3 \,, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \,. \end{cases}$$

Given the homotopy fiber sequence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K(\mathbb{Z},3) & \longrightarrow & \hat{X} \\ & & \downarrow \\ & & X \end{array}$$

the cohomology Serre spectral sequence takes the form

$$E_2^{p,q} = H^p(X); H^q(K(\mathbb{Z},3)) \Rightarrow H^{p+q}(\hat{X}) \,.$$

From the cohomology of the fiber determined above, we see that $q$ has to be either 0 or 3 in order to contribute. The relevant differential $d_r : E_2^{p,q} \to E_2^{p+r,q-r+1}$ is then $d_4$, which raises the cohomology degree by 4.

Hence the brane charge extension of the 11-dimensional superisometries is, rationally, by $H^5(\hat{X})$, and by the Serre spectral sequence this is the middle cohomology of

$$H^1(X) \xrightarrow{(0,d_4)} H^2(X) \oplus H^5(X) \xrightarrow{(d_4,0)} H^6(X) \,, \tag{8.7}$$

where $d_4 = [G_4] \cup (-)$ is the cup product with the degree-4 class of the C-field. For torsion C-fields this vanishes rationally and hence one arrives at the conclusion that the M-theory super Lie algebra extension is by brane charges in $H^2(X) \oplus H^5(X)$, agreeing with the result of the argument in [ST97]. For non-torsion C-fields or else when considered not just rationally, then there are corrections to this statement by the kernel and cokernel of $d_4$. Notice that these corrections are directly analogous to the correction by kernel and cokernel of a $d_3$ differential in an Atiyah-Hiruebruch spectral sequence, which appear when refining D-brane charges from ordinary cohomology to twisted K-theory [MMS01, (3.2), (3.6)]. That 5-brane charges should be in a degree-4 twisted cohomology theory this way has been suggested earlier in [Sa10a, section 8] and has been discussed further in 8.1.2.2.

## References


[AbCo04] S. Abramsky, B. Coecke *A categorical semantics of quantum protocols*, Proceedings of the 19th IEEE conference on Logic in Computer Science (LiCS'04). IEEE Computer Science Press (2004) quantph/0402130, expanded version: *Categorical quantum mechanics*, in *Handbook of Quantum Logic and Quantum Structures vol II*, Elsevier (2008) arXiv:0808.1023

[AbDu05] S. Abramsky, R. Duncan, *A Categorical Quantum Logic*, Mathematical Structures in Computer Science (2006) quant-ph/0512114

[AHS02] S. Abramsky, E. Haghverdi, P. Scott, *Geometry of Interaction and Linear Combinatory Algebras.* MSCS, vol. 12(5), 2002, 625-665, CUP (2002)

[Ach99] B. Acharya, *M theory, Joyce Orbifolds and Super Yang-Mills*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. 3 (1999) 227-248 arXiv:hep-th/9812205

[Ach02] B. Acharya, *M Theory, $G_2$-manifolds and Four Dimensional Physics*, Classical and Quantum Gravity Volume 19 Number 22, 2002 `http://users.ictp.it/~pub_off/lectures/lns013/Acharya/Acharya_Final.pdf`

[AETW87] A. Achucarro, J. M. Evans, P. , and D. L. Wiltshire, *Super p-branes*, Phys. Lett. **B 198** (1987), 441–446.

[AR94] J. Adámek, J.Rosický, *Locally presentable and accessible categories*, Cambridge University Press, (1994)

[AFFFTT99] G. Dall'Agata, D. Fabbri, C. Fraser, P. Fré, P. Termonia, M.Trigiante, *The* $Osp(8|4)$ *singleton action from the supermembrane*, Nucl.Phys.B542:157-194,1999 hep-th/9807115

[AGMOO] O. Aharony, S. Gubser, J. Maldacena, H. Ooguri, Y. Oz, *Large N Field Theories, String Theory and Gravity*, Phys.Rept.323:183-386,2000, arXiv:hep-th/9905111

[AlSc04] A. Alekseev, V. Schomerus, *D-branes in the WZW model*, Phys. Rev. D60:061901 (1999) arXiv:hep-th/9812193

[ACDP03] D. Alekseevsky, V. Cortés, C. Devchand, A. Van Proeyen, *Polyvector Super-Poincaré Algebras*, Commun.Math.Phys. 253 (2004) 385-422, arXiv:hep-th/0311107

[AKSZ97] M. Alexandrov, M. Kontsevich, A. Schwarz, O. Zaboronsky, *The geometry of the master equation and topological quantum field theory*, Int. J. Modern Phys. A 12(7):14051429, (1997)

[And89] I. M. Anderson, *The variational bicomplex*, (unpublished book draft, 1989) `http://math.uni.lu/~jubin/seminar/bicomplex.pdf`

[AnDu80] I. M. Anderson, T. Duchamp *On the existence of global variational principles*, American Journal of Mathematics 102 (1980), 781–868 10.2307/2374195

[And07] M. Ando, *Equivariant elliptic cohomology and the Fibered WZW models of Distler and Sharpe*, talk notes 2007 `http://www.math.ucsb.edu/~drm/GTPseminar/notes/20071026-ando/20071026-malmendier.pdf`

[ABG10a] M. Ando, A. Blumberg, D. Gepner, *Twists of $K$-theory and $TMF$*, (2010) arXiv:1002.3004

[ABG10b] M. Ando, A. Blumberg, D. Gepner, *Twists of K-theory and TMF*, in Robert S. Doran, Greg Friedman, Jonathan Rosenberg, *Superstrings, Geometry, Topology, and $C^*$-algebras*, Proceedings of Symposia in Pure Mathematics vol 81, American Mathematical Society arXiv:0712.2817

[ABGHR08] M. Ando, A. Blumberg, D. Gepner, M. Hopkins, C. Rezk, *Units of ring spectra and Thom spectra*, Journal of Topology, arXiv:0810.4535

[ABGHR13] M. Ando, A. Blumberg, D.Gepner, M. Hopkins, C. Rezk, *An $\infty$-categorical approach to R-line bundles, R-module Thom spectra, and twisted R-homology*, Journal of Topology (2013) jtt035 arXiv:1403.4325

[AHR10] M. Ando, M. Hopkins, C. Rezk, *Multiplicative orientations of KO-theory and the spectrum of topological modular forms*, 2010
`http://www.math.uiuc.edu/~mando/papers/koandtmf.pdf`

[An04] I. Androulidakis, *Classification of extensions of principal bundles and transitive Lie groupoids with prescribed kernel and cokernel*, J. Math. Phys. 45, 3995 (2004)

[Ar89] V. Arnold, *Mathematical methods of classical mechanics*, Graduate Texts in Mathematics (1989)

[ArMa66] M. Artin, B. Mazur, *On the van Kampen theorem*, Topology 5 (1966) 179189

[ArMa69] M. Artin, B. Mazur, *étale homotopy*, Lecture Notes in Mathmatics No. 100, Springer-Verlag, Berlin (1969)

[At57] M. Atiyah, *Complex analytic connections in fibre bundles*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 85 (1957)

[At89] M. Atiyah, *Topological quantum field theories*, Pub. Math. de l'IHÉS **68** (1989), 175–186.

[At90] M. Atiyah, *On Framings of 3-manifolds*, Topology, Vol. 29, No. 1 (1990) 1-7

[AtWi01] M. Atiyah, E. Witten *M-Theory dynamics on a manifold of $G_2$-holonomy*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. 6 (2001) arXiv:hep-th/0107177

[Aw10] S. Awodey, *Type theory and homotopy*, in *Epistemology versus Ontology*, Springer Netherlands, (2012) 183-201, arXiv:1010.1810

[AzTo89] J. Azcárraga, P. Townsend, *Superspace geometry and the classification of supersymmetric extended objects*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **62**, (1989), 2579–2582.

[AzIz95] J. A. de Azcárraga, J. Izquierdo, *Lie Groups, Lie Algebras, Cohomology and Some Applications in Physics*, Cambridge monographs of mathematical physics (1995)

[AGIT89] J. A. de Azcárraga, J. Gauntlett, J. Izquierdo, P. Townsend, *Topological extensions of the supersymmetry algebra for extended objects*, Phys. Rev. Lett. 63 (1989), inspirehep.net/record/26393

[BCSS07] J. Baez, A. Crans, U. Schreiber, D. Stevenson, *From loop groups to 2-groups*, *Homology, Homotopy Appl.*, 9(2):101–135, 2007 arXiv:0504123

[BaDo95] J. Baez, J. Dolan, *Higher dimensional algebra and Topological Quantum Field Theory*, J.Math.Phys. 36 (1995) 6073-6105

[BaHo09] J. Baez and A. Hoffnung *Convenient categories of smooth spaces*, Transactions of the AMS

[BHR08] J. Baez, A. Hoffnung, C. Rogers, *Categorified symplectic geometry and the classical string*, Comm. Math. Phys. **293** (2010), 701–715 arXiv:0808.0246

[BaH09] J. Baez, J. Huerta, *Division algebras and supersymmetry I*, in R. Doran, G. Friedman, J. Rosenberg (eds.), it Superstrings, Geometry, Topology, and $C^*$-algebras, Proc. Symp. Pure Math. 81, AMS, Providence, 2010, pp. 65-80 arXiv:0909.0551

[BaH10] J. Baez, J. Huerta, *Division Algebras and Supersymmetry II*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. **15** (2011), no. 5, 1373–1410, arXiv:1003.3436

[BaRo09] J. Baez, C. Rogers, *Categorified symplectic geometry and the string Lie 2-algebra*, Homology Homotopy Appl. 12 (2010), 221-236, arXiv:0901.4721

[BaSt09] J. Baez, M. Stay, *Physics, topology, logic and computation: a Rosetta stone*, in B. Coecke (ed.) *New Structures for Physics*, Lecture Notes in Physics 813, Springer, Berlin, 2011, pp. 95-174 arxiv.org/abs/0903.0340

[BaSt09] J. Baez, D. Stevenson. *The classifying space of a topological 2-group* in *Algebraic topology*, volume 4 of *Abel Symp.*, pages 1–31. Springer, Berlin, (2009)

[BBS78] A. P. Balachandran, S. Borchardt, and A. Stern, *Lagrangian and Hamiltonian descriptions of Yang-Mills particles*, Phys. Rev. **D 17** (1978), 3247–3256.

[BLNPST97] I. Bandos, K. Lechner, A. Nurmagambetov, P. Pasti, D. Sorokin, M. Tonin, *Covariant action for the super-fivebrane of M-theory*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **78** (1997), 4332, arXiv:hep-th/9701149

[BFSS96] T. Banks, W. Fischler, S. H. Shenker, and L. Susskind, *M theory as a matrix model: A conjecture*, Phys. Rev. **D55** (1997), 5112–5128, arXiv:hep-th/9610043

[Ba11] D. Baraglia, *Leibniz algebroids, twistings and exceptional generalized geometry*, J. Geom. Phys. **62** (2012), 903–934, arXiv:1101.0856

[Bar97] A. G. Barber, *Linear Type Theories, Semantics and Action Calculi*, 1997, `http://www.lfcs.inf.ed.ac.uk/reports/97/ECS-LFCS-97-371/`

[BaWe97] S. Bates, A. Weinstein, *Lectures on the geometry of quantization*, American Mathematical Society 1997, `http://www.math.berkeley.edu/~alanw/GofQ.pdf`

[Be02] C. Beasley, *Localization for Wilson loops in Chern-Simons theory*, in J. Andersen et al. (eds.), *Chern-Simons Gauge Theory: 20 Years After*, AMS/IP Studies in Adv. Math., Vol. 50, AMS, Providence, RI, 2011, arXiv:0911.2687

[BFLS98] G. Barnich, R. Fulp, T. Lada, J. Stasheff, *The sh Lie structure of Poisson brackets in field theory*, Commun. Math. Phys. **191** (1998), 585–601, arXiv:hep-th/9702176

[Bel85] A. Beilinson, *Notes on absolute Hodge cohomology*, Applications of algebraic K-theory to algebraic geometry and number theory, Part I, II, Contemp. Math., 55, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, (1986)

[BeDr04] A. Beilinson, V. Drinfeld, *Chiral algebras*, Americal Mathematical Society (2004)

[BeMo06] D. Belov, G. Moore, *Holographic action for the self-dual field*, arXiv:hep-th/0605038

[BDS13] M. Benini, C. Dappiaggi, A. Schenkel, *Quantized Abelian principal connections on Lorentzian manifolds*, Communications in Mathematical Physics (2013), arXiv:1303.2515

[Be95] P. N. Benton, *A mixed linear and non-linear logic; proofs, terms and models*, in *Proceedings of Computer Science Logic 94*, vol. 933 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science. Verlag, June 1995. ncatlab.org/nlab/files/BentonLinearLogic.pdf

[BBHdP92] P. N. Benton, G. M. Bierman, J. M. E. Hyland, and V. de Paiva. *Term assignment for intuitonistic linear logic* Technial Report 262, Computer Laboratory, University of Cambridge, August 1992.

[BBdP93] P. N. Benton, G. M. Bierman, and V. de Paiva, *Computational types from a logical perspective*, J. Funct. Program, 8(2):177193, 1993.

[vdBMo13] B. van den Berg, I. Moerdijk, *W-types in Homotopy Type Theory*, arXiv:1307.2765

[Be10] J. Bergner, *Models for $(\infty, n)$-Categories and the Cobordism Hypothesis*, in H. Sati, U. Schreiber (eds.) *Mathematical Foundations of Quantum Field Theory and Perturbative String Theory*, Proceedings of Symposia in Pure Mathematics, volume 83 AMS (2011), arXiv:1011.0110

[Be08a] J. Bergner, *Adding inverses to diagrams encoding algebraic structures*, Homology, Homotopy and Applications 10 (2008), no. 2, 149-174

[Be08b] J. Bergner, *Adding inverses to diagrams II: Invertible homotopy theories are spaces*, Homology, Homotopy and Applications, Vol. 10 (2008), No. 2, 175-193.

[BeSeTo86] E. Bergshoeff, E.Sezgin, P. Townsend, *Superstring actions in $D = 3, 4, 6, 10$ curved superspace*, Phys.Lett., B169, 191, (1986)

[BeSeTo87] E. Bergshoeff, E. Sezgin, P. Townsend, *Supermembranes and eleven dimensional supergravity*, Phys.Lett. B189 (1987) 75-78, also in [Duff99] 69-72
streaming.ictp.trieste.it/preprints/P/87/010.pdf

[Bi95] G. Bierman, *On Intuitionistic Linear Logic*, PhD thesis, Computing Laboratory, University of Cambridge, 1995 research.microsoft.com/ gmb/papers/thesis.pdf

[BvN36] G. Birkhoff, J. von Neumann, *The logic of quantum mechanics*, Annals of Mathematics, 37: 823-843 (1936)

[Blan85] P. Blanc, *Cohomologie différentiable et changement de groupes* Astérisque vol. 124-125 (1985), pp. 113-130

[BlCh12] M. Blomgren, W. Chacholski, *On the classification of fibrations*,
arXiv:1206.4443

[BGT10] A. Blumberg, D. Gepner, G. Tabuada, *A universal characterization of higher algebraic K-theory*, Geometry and Topology 17 (2013) 733838, arXiv:1001.2282

[BPS94] R. Blute, P. Panangaden, R. A. G. Seely, *Fock Space: A Model of Linear Exponential Types* (1994) ncatlab.org/nlab/files/BPSLinear.pdf

[Bon14] S. Bongers, *Geometric quantization of symplectic and Poisson manifolds*, MSc thesis, Utrecht, January 2014,
ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/master+thesis+Bongers

[BoWa58] W. M. Boothby, H. C. Wang, *On contact manifolds*, Ann. of Math. (2) 68 (1958) 721734

[Borc94] F. Borceux, *Handbook of categorical algebra*, Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications, Cambridge University Press (1994)

[Bors48] K. Borsuk, *On the imbedding of systems of compacta in simplicial complexes Fund. Math* 35, (1948) 217-234

[BoTo82] R. Bott, L. Tu, *Differential forms in algebraic topology*, Graduate Texts in Mathematics 82, Springer 1982

[Bo11] P. Bouwknegt, *Algebroids and generalizations of geometry*, talk at *String-Math 2011*,
`http://www.math.upenn.edu/StringMath2011/notes/Bouwknegt_StringMath2011_talk.pdf`

[Bott58] R. Bott, *The space of loops on a Lie group*, Michigan Math. J., 5:3561, (1958)

[BoSa58] R. Bott, H. Samelson, *Application of the theory of Morse to symmetric spaces*, Amer. J. Math., 80 (1958), 964-1029.

[Br10a] F. Brandt, *Supersymmetry algebra cohomology II: Primitive elements in 2 and 3 dimensions*, J. Math. Phys. **51** (2010) 112303, arXiv:1004.2978

[Br10b] F. Brandt, *Supersymmetry algebra cohomology III: Primitive elements in four and five dimensions*, J. Math. Phys. **52** (2011), 052301, arXiv:1005.2102

[Br13] F. Brandt, *Supersymmetry algebra cohomology IV: Primitive elements in all dimensions from $D = 4$ to $D = 11$*, J. Math. Phys. **54** (2013), 052302, arXiv:1303.6211

[Br90] L. Breen, *Bitorseurs et cohomologie non abélienne*, In *Grothendieck Festschrift*, pages 401-476 (1990)

[Br94] L. Breen, *On the classification of 2-gerbes and 2-stacks*, Astérisque 225 (1994)

[Br06] L. Breen, *Notes on 1- and 2-gerbes*, in J. Baez, P. May (eds.), *Towards higher categories*, Springer (2010) arXiv:math/0611317

[BM00] L. Breen, W. Messing, *Combinatorial differential forms*, Laboratoire analyse, geometrie et applications, Unite mixte de recherche, Institut Galilee, Université Paris 13, C.N.R.S. (2000) arXiv:math/0005087

[BMRS07] J. Brodzki, V. Mathai, J. Rosenberg, R. Szabo, *Noncommutative correspondences, duality and D-branes in bivariant K-theory*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys.13 : 497-552,2009, arXiv.0708.2648

[Br73] K. Brown, *Abstract Homotopy Theory and Generalized Sheaf Cohomology*, Transactions of the American Mathematical Society, Vol. 186 (1973), 419-458 ncatlab.org/nlab/files/BrownAbstractHomotopyTheory.pdf

[BrHiSi11] R. Brown, P. Higgins, R. Sivera, Nonabelian Algebraic Topology *Tracts in Mathematics* 15, European Mathematical Society (2011),

[BrSz89] E. Brown and R. Szczarba, Continuous cohomology and real homotopy-type, *Transactions of the AMS*, volume 311, number 1, (1989)

[Br93] J.-L. Brylinski, *Loop spaces, Characteristic Classes and Geometric Quantization*, *Birkhäuser* (1993)

[Bry00] J.-L. Brylinski, *Differentiable Cohomology of Gauge Groups*, arXiv:math/0011069

[BrMc93] J.-L. Brylinski and D. McLaughlin, A geometric construction of the first Pontryagin class, In *Quantum topology*, volume 3 of *Ser. Knots Everything*, pages 209–220. World Sci. Publ., River Edge, NJ, 1993.

[BrMc94] J.-L. Brylinski and D. McLaughlin, The geometry of degree-four characteristic classes and of line bundles on loop spaces. I, *Duke Math. J.*, 75(3):603–638, 1994.

[BrMc96a] J.-L. Brylinski and D. McLaughlin, The geometry of degree-4 characteristic classes and of line bundles on loop spaces. II. *Duke Math. J.*, 83(1):105–139, 1996.

[BrMc96b] J.-L. Brylinski and D. A. McLaughlin, Čech cocycles for characteristic classes, *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 178(1):225–236, 1996.

[BFG] M. Bullejos,; E. Faro, ; M. A. García-Muñoz, *Homotopy colimits and cohomology with local coefficients*, Cahiers, 44 no. 1 (2003), p. 63-80

[BFGM] M. Bullejos, E. Faro, M.A. García-Muñoz, *Postnikov Invariants of Crossed Complexes*, Journal of Algebra, Volume 285, Issue 1, (2005) arXiv:math/0409339

[Bun09] U. Bunke, *String structures and trivialisations of a Pfaffian line bundle*, Communications in Mathematical Physics, 2011, Volume 307, Issue 3, pp 675-712 arXiv:0909.0846

[Bun12] U. Bunke, *Differential cohomology* arXiv:1208.3961

[BNV13] U. Bunke, T. Nikolaus, M. Völkl, *Differential cohomology as sheaves of spectra*, Journal of Homotopy and Related Structures, October 2014, arxiv:1311.3188

[BuSc10] U. Bunke, T. Schick, *Differential K-theory. A Survey*, (2010) in *Global Differential Geometry* Springer Proceedings in Mathematics Volume 17, 2012, pp 303-357 arXiv:1011.6663

[But06] J. Butterfield, *On symmetry and conserved quantities in classical mechanics*, in *Physical Theory and its Interpretation*, The Western Ontario Series in Philosophy of Science Volume 72, 2006, pp 43-100 (2006)
`http://ncatlab.org/nlab/files/ButterfieldNoether.pdf`

[Bu14] J. Butterfield, *The Role of Mathematics in the Foundations of Physics*, talk at G. Catren (org.) *Philosophy of Mechanics: Mathematical Foundations*, Paris-Diderot, Feb. 2014, phil.physico-math.gie.im/static/slides/2014-02-12-Paris_Butterfield.pdf

[Ca99] M. Cadek, *The cohomology of $BO(n)$ with twisted integer coefficients*, J. Math. Kyoto Univ. 39 (1999), no. 2, 277286 euclid.1250517912

[CaSm07] A. Callister, D.Smith, *Topological BPS charges in 10 and 11-dimensional supergravity*, Phys. Rev. D78:065042,2008 arXiv:0712.3235

[CaLe94] A. Candiello, K. Lechner, *Duality in Supergravity Theories*, Nucl.Phys. B412 (1994) 479-501 arXiv:hep-th/9309143

[CaSl09] A. Čap, J. Slovák, *Parabolic geometries I – Background and General Theory*, Mathematical Surveys and Monographs Volume 154, AMS 2009

[Car15] D. Carchedi, *On The Homotopy Type of Higher Orbifolds and Haefliger Classifying Spaces*, Advances of Mathematics, Volume 294, 2016, Pages 756-818 arXiv:1504.02394

[CaRo12] D. Carchedi, D. Roytenberg, *On theories of superalgebras of differentiable functions*, Theory and Applications of Categories, Vol. 28, 2013, No. 30, pp 1022-1098. arXiv:1211.6134

[CaSc] D. Carchedi, U. Schreiber *Concrete $\infty$-stacks*

[CJKP97] A. Carboni, G. Janelidze, G. M. Kelly, R. Paré, *On localization and stabilization for factorization systems*, Applied categorical structures 5, 1-58 (1997)

[Carc12] D. Carchedi, *Étale Stacks as Prolongations*, arXiv:1212.2282

[CBMMS02] A. Carey, P. Bouwknegt, V. Mathai, M. Murray, D. Stevenson, *Twisted K-theory and K-theory of bundle gerbes and* , *Commun Math Phys*, 228 (2002) 17-49, arXiv:hep-th/0106194

[CJM02] A. Carey, S. Johnson, M. Murray, *Holonomy on D-Branes*, J. Geom. Phys. 52 (2004) 186-216, arXiv:hep-th/0204199

[CJMSW05] A. Carey, S. Johnson, M. Murray, D. Stevenson, B.-L. Wang, *Bundle gerbes for Chern-Simons and Wess-Zumino-Witten theories*, Commun.Math.Phys. 259 (2005) 577-613 arXiv:0410013

[Cart23] É. Cartan *Sur les variétés à connexion affine et la théorie de la relativité généralisée (première partie)* Annales scientifiques de lÉcole Normale Supérieure, Sér. 3, 40 (1923), p. 325-412 `http://www.numdam.org/item?id=ASENS_1923_3_40__325_0`

[Cart50a] H. Cartan, *Cohomologie reélle d'un espace fibré principal différentielle (i)*. In *Séminaire Henri Cartan;1949/50*, CBRM, (1950) [Cart50b] H. Cartan, *Cohomologie reélle d'un espace fibré principal différentielle II.* in *Séminaire Henri Cartan*; 1949/50 CBRM (1950)

[CaDAFr91] L. Castellani, R. D'Auria, P. Fré, *Supergravity and Superstrings – A geometric perspective*, World Scientific (1991)

[CaCo04] J. Castiglioni, G. Cortiñas, *Cosimplicial versus DG-rings: a version of the Dold-Kan correspondence*, J. Pure Appl. Algebra 191 (2004), no. 1-2, 119–142, arXiv:math/0306289

[CaFe99] A. Cattaneo, G. Felder, *A path integral approach to the Kontsevich quantization formula*, Commun. Math. Phys. 212, 591611 (2000), arXiv:math/9902090 and *Poisson sigma models and deformation quantization*, Mod. Phys. Lett. A 16, 179190 (2001), arXiv:hep-th/0102208

[CaFe00] A. Cattaneo, G. Felder, *Poisson sigma models and symplectic groupoids*, in *Quantization of singular symplectic quotients*, Progr. Math., vol. 198 Birkhäuser, Basel (2001)

[CaFe03] A. Cattaneo, G. Felder, *Coisotropic submanifolds in Poisson geometry and branes in the Poisson sigma model*, Lett. Math. Phys. 69 (2004) 157-175, arXiv:math/0309180

[CMR12] A. Cattaneo, P. Mnev, N. Reshetikhin, *Classical BV theories on manifolds with boundary*, Communications in Mathematical Physics December 2014, Volume 332, Issue 2, pp 535-603 arXiv:1201.0290

[CMR12b] A. Cattaneo, P. Mnev, N. Reshetikhin, *Classical and quantum Lagrangian field theories with boundary*, arXiv:1207.0239

[CGNSW96] M. Cederwall, A. von Gussich, B. Nilsson, P. Sundell, A. Westerberg, *The Dirichlet Super-p-Branes in Ten-Dimensional Type IIA and IIB Supergravity*, Nucl.Phys. B490 (1997) 179-201 hep-th/9611159

[CeRe05] A. Cegarra, J. Remedios, *The relationship between the diagonal and the bar constructions on a bisimplicial set*, Topology and its applications, vol 153, number 1 (2005)

[CRV] C. Centazzo, J. Rosický, E. Vitale, *A characterization of locally $\mathbb{D}$-presentable categories* `http://perso.uclouvain.be/enrico.vitale/ClaudiaJiri.pdf`

[Ch81] A. Chamseddine, *Interacting supergravity in ten-dimensions: the role of the six-index gauge field*, Phys. Rev. **D24** (1981) 3065.

[Chen77] K.-T. Chen *Iterated path integrals*, *Bull. AMS* 83, (1977), 831879.

[CGLW11] X. Chen, Z.-C. Gu, Z.-X. Liu, X.-G. Wen, *Symmetry protected topological orders and the group cohomology of their symmetry group*, Phys. Rev. B 87, 155114 (2013) arXiv:1106.4772 also: Science 338, 1604-1606 (2012)

[CHZ10] Q. Chen, F. Han, W. Zhang, *Generalized Witten Genus and Vanishing Theorems*, J. Differential Geom. Volume 88, Number 1 (2011), 1-39 arXiv:1003.2325

[Cher52] S.-s. Chern, *Differential geometry of fiber bundles*, In *Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians, Cambridge, Mass., 1950, vol. 2*, pages 397–411, Providence, R. I., 1952. Amer. Math. Soc.

[ChSi74] , S.-s. Chern, J. Simons, *Characteristic forms and geometric invariants*, Annals of Mathematics, Second Series, Vol. 99, No. 1 (1974)

[CdAIP99] C. Chryssomalakos, J. A. de Azcárraga, J. M. Izquierdo, J. C. Peŕez Bueno, *The geometry of branes and extended superspaces*, Nucl. Phys. **B 567**(2000), 293–330, arXiv:hep-th/9904137

[Ci10] D.-C. Cisinski, *Invariance de la K-Théorie par équivalences dérivées*, Journal of K-theory 6 (2010)

[CiSh13] D.-C. Cisinski, M. Shulman, *Characterizations of locally presentable $(\infty, 1)$-categories*, `http://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/locally+cartesian+closed+(infinity,1)-category#Presentations`

[ClDy11] P. Clairambault, P. Dybjer, *The Biequivalence of Locally Cartesian Closed Categories and Martin-Löf Type Theories*, Lecture Notes in Comput. Sci. 6690, Springer 2011, arXiv:1112.3456

[Coe12] B. Coecke, *The logic of quantum mechanics - Take II*, talk notes, Oxford 2013, arXiv:1204.3458

[Col11] B. Collier, *Infinitesimal Symmetries of Dixmier-Douady Gerbes*, arXiv:1108.1525

[Cor04] L. Corry, *David Hilbert and the axiomatization of physics: From Grundlagen der Geometrie to Grundlagen der Physik*, Archimedes: New Studies in the History and Philosophy of Science and Technology 10, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht 2004

[Cor06] L. Corry, *On the origins of Hilbert's sixth problem: physics and the empiricist approach to axiomatization*, Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematics in Madrid 2006

[CrWi87] C. Crnković, E. Witten, *Covariant Description of Canonical Formalism in Geometrical Theories*, in *Three Hundred Years of Gravitation*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1987, pp. 676-684.

[Cro75] G. D. Crown, *On some orthomodular posets of vector bundles* Journ. of Natural Sci. and Math., 15(1-2):1125, 1975.

[dAFR80] R. D'Auria, P. Fré, and T. Regge, *Graded Lie algebra, cohomology and supergravity*, Riv. Nuovo Cimento **3** (1980), 1–37.

[dAFr82] R. D'Auria, P- Fré, *Geometric supergravity in $D = 11$ and its hidden supergroup*, Nuclear Physics B, 201 (1982)

[DKR11] A. Davydov, L. Kong, I. Runkel, *Field theories with defects and the centre functor*, in H. Sati, U. Schreiber (eds.) *Mathematical Foundations of Quantum Field Theory and Perturbative String Theory*, Proceedings of Symposia in Pure Mathematics, volume 83 AMS (2011), arXiv:1107.0495

[Del71] P. Deligne, *Théorie de Hodge II*, IHES Pub. Math. no 40 (1971), 5-57

[DeMo99] P. Deligne, P. Etingof, D. Freed, L. Jeffrey, D. Kazhdan, J. Morgan, D. Morrison, E. Witten, *Quantum Fields and Strings – A course for mathematicians* (2 volumes) AMS (1999), www.math.ias.edu/qft

[DelMor99] P. Deligne, J. Morgan *Notes on supersymmetry (following Joseph Bernstein)*, in [DeMo99] vol. 1, from p. 41.

[D91] L. Dickey, *Soliton equations and Hamiltonian systems*, Advanced Series in Mathematical Physics, Vol. 12, World Scientific (1991).

[Di31] P.A.M. Dirac *Quantized Singularities in the Electromagnetic Field*, Proceedings of the Royal Society, A133 (1931) pp 6072.

[Di87] P. A. M. Dirac, *The principles of quantum mechanics*, International series of monographs on physics, Oxford University Press, 1987

[DiFrMo11] J. Distler, D. Freed, G. Moore, *Orientifold precis* in: H. Sati, U. Schreiber (eds.), *Mathematical Foundations of Quantum Field and perturbative String Theory* Proceedings of Symposia in Pure Mathematics, AMS (2011)

[DiSh07] J. Distler, E. Sharpe, *Heterotic compactifications with principal bundles for general groups and general levels*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. 14:335-398, 2010, arXiv:hep-th/0701244

[Do06] C. Douglas, *On the Twisted K-Homology of Simple Lie Groups*, Topology, Volume 45, Issue 6, November 2006, Pages 955-988, arXiv:math/0402082

[DHH10] C. Douglas, A. Henriques, M. Hill, *Homological Obstructions to String Orientations*, It. Math Res Notices (2010)

[Dub79] E. Dubuc, *Concrete quasitopoi*, Lecture Notes in Math. 753 (1979), 239254

[Dub79b] E. Dubuc, *Sur les modeles de la géometrie différentielle synthetique*, Cahiers de Topologie et Géométrie Différentielle Catégoriques, 20 no. 3 (1979), p. 231-279

[Dub00] E. Dubuc, *Axiomatic étale maps and a theorem of spectrum*, Journal of pure and applied Algebra 149 (2000)

[Duf87] M. Duff, *Supermembranes: the first fifteen weeks* CERN-TH.4797/87 (1987) `http://ccdb4fs.kek.jp/cgi-bin/img/allpdf?198708425`

[Duff95] M. Duff, *M-Theory (the Theory Formerly Known as Strings)*, Int. J. Mod. Phys. A11 (1996) 5623-5642 arXiv:hep-th/9608117

[Duff99] M. Duff, *The World in Eleven Dimensions: Supergravity, Supermembranes and M-theory*, IoP 1999

[Duf08] M. Duff, *Near-horizon brane-scan revived*, Nucl. Phys. **B 810** (2009), 193–209, arXiv:0804.3675

[DLM95] M. Duff, J. Liu, R. Minasian, *Eleven-dimensional origin of string-string duality: A One loop test*, Nucl. Phys. **B452** (1995) 261-282, arXiv:hep-th/9506126

[Dug99] D. Dugger, *Sheaves and homotopy theory* (1999) `http://pages.uoregon.edu/ddugger/cech.html`

[Dug01] D. Dugger, *Universal homotopy theories*, Adv. Math., 164(1):144–176 (2001)

[DHS04] D. Dugger, S. Hollander, D. Isaksen. *Hypercovers and simplicial presheaves*, Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc., 136(1):9–51, 2004.

[Du06] R. Duncan, *Types for quantum mechanics*, 2006 homepages.ulb.ac.be/ rduncan/papers/rduncan-thesis.pdf

[Dus75] J. Duskin, *Simplicial methods and the interpretation of "triple" cohomology* Mem. Amer. Math. Soc., 3, number 163, Amer. Math. Soc. (1975)

[DwKa80a] W. Dwyer, D. Kan *Calculating simplicial localizations*, J. Pure Appl. Algebra 18 (1980)

[DwKa80b] W. Dwyer, D. Kan *Function complexes in homotopical algebra*, Topology vol 19 (1980)

[DwKa84a] W. Dwyer, D. Kan, *A classification theorem for diagrams of simplicial sets*, Topology 23 (1984), 139-155.

[DwKa84b] W. Dwyer, D. Kan. *An obstruction theory for diagrams of simplicial sets*, *Nederl. Akad. Wetensch. Indag. Math.*, 46(2):139–146, 1984.

[DyRo80] E. Dyer, J. Roitberg, *Note on sequence of Mayer-Vietoris type*, Proceedings of the AMS, volume 80, number 4 (1980) www.ams.org/journals/proc/1980-080-04/S0002-9939-1980-0587950-8/S0002-9939-1980-0587950-8.pdf

[EMRV98] A. Echeverria-Enriquez, M. Munoz-Lecanda, N. Roman-Roy, C. Victoria-Monge, *Mathematical Foundations of Geometric Quantization*, Extracta Math. 13 (1998) 135-238 arXiv:math-ph/9904008

[EckHi64] B. Eckmann, P. Hilton, *Unions and intersections in homotopy theory*, Comment. Math. Helv. 3 (1964),2 93-307,

[Ehre51] C. Ehresmann. *Les connexions infinitésimales dans un espace fibré différentiable*, in *Colloque de topologie (espaces fibrés)*, Bruxelles, (1950) pages 29–55. Georges Thone, Liège, (1951)

[EM53] S. Eilenberg, S. Mac Lane, *On the groups* $H(\Pi, n)$*, I*, Ann. of Math. (2) 58, (1953) 55106.

[ElKaZh14] S. Ellis, G. Kane, B. Zheng, *Superpartners at LHC and Future Colliders: Predictions from Constrained Compactified M-Theory* arXiv:1408.1961

[EM07] A. Elmendorf, M. Mandell, *Permutative categories, multicategories, and algebraic K-theory*, Algebraic & Geometric Topology 9 (2009) 2391-2441, arXiv:0710.0082

[vEs53] W. van Est, *Group cohomology and Lie algebra cohomology in Lie groups. I, II*, Nederl. Akad. Wetensch. Proc. Ser. A. 56, Indagationes Math. 15, (1953). 484492, 493504.

[Et03] J. Etnyre, *Introductory lectures on contact geometry* Proc. Sympos. Pure Math. 71 (2003), 81-107.

[EvSa06] J. Evslin and H. Sati, *Can D-branes wrap nonrepresentable cycles?*, J. High Energy Phys. **0610** (2006), 050, arXiv:hep-th/0607045

[Fal] A. Falkowski, *Five dimensional locally supersymmetric theories with branes*, Master Thesis, Warsaw `http://www.fuw.edu.pl/~afalkows/Work/Files/msct.ps.gz`

[FIO15] J.J. Fernandez, J.M. Izquierdo, M.A. del Olmo *Contractions from* $osp(1|32 \oplus osp(1|32)$ *to the M-theory superalgebra extended by additional fermionic generators*, Nuclear Physics B Volume 897, August 2015, Pages 8797 arXiv:1504.05946

[FPW11] M. Ferraris, M. Palese, E. Winterroth *Local variational problems and conservation laws*, Differential Geometry and its Applications 29 (2011), S80-S85 doi:10.1016/j.difgeo.2011.04.011

[FeHi65] R. Feynman,A. Hibbs, *Quantum Mechanics and Path Integrals*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1965.

[Fe85] R. Feynman, *QED: The Strange Theory of Light and Matter*, Princeton University Press, 1985

[FRS11] D. Fiorenza, C. L. Rogers, U. Schreiber, *A higher Chern-Weil derivation of AKSZ sigma-models*, International Journal of Geometric Methods in Modern Physics, Vol. 10, No. 1 (2013), arXiv:1108.4378

[FRS13a] D. Fiorenza, C. L. Rogers, U. Schreiber, *Higher geometric prequantum theory*, arXiv:1304.0236

[FRS13b] D. Fiorenza, C. L. Rogers, U. Schreiber, $L_\infty$*-algebras of local observables from higher prequantum bundles*, Homology, Homotopy and Applications, Volume 16 (2014) Number 2, p. 107142 arXiv:1304.6292

[FS] D. Fiorenza, U. Schreiber, $\infty$*-Chern-Simons theory*, `http://ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/infinity-Chern-Simons+theory`

[FiSaScI] D. Fiorenza, H. Sati, U. Schreiber, *Twisted differential* **c***-structures*

[FSS12a] D. Fiorenza, H. Sati, U. Schreiber, *The* $E_8$*-moduli 3-stack of the C-field*, Communications in Mathematical Physics, Volume 333, Issue 1 (2015), Page 117-151, arXiv:1202.2455

[FSS12b] D. Fiorenza, H. Sati, U. Schreiber, *Multiple M5-branes, String 2-connections, and 7d nonabelian Chern-Simons theory*, Advances in Theoretical and Mathematical Physics Volume 18, Number 2 (2014) p. 229321 arXiv:1201.5277

[FSS12c] D. Fiorenza, H. Sati, U. Schreiber, *Extended higher cup-product Chern-Simons theories*, Journal of Geometry and Physics, Volume 74, pages 130-163 (2013) arXiv:1207.5449

[FSS13a] D. Fiorenza, H. Sati, U. Schreiber, *A higher stacky perspective on Chern-Simons theory*, in Damien Calaque et al. (eds.) *Mathematical Aspects of Quantum Field Theories* Springer 2014, arXiv:1301.2580

[FSS13b] D. Fiorenza, H. Sati, U. Schreiber, *Super Lie n-algebra extensions, higher WZW models and super p-branes with tensor multiplet fields*, International Journal of Geometric Methods in Modern Physics Volume 12, Issue 02 (2015) 1550018 arXiv:1308.5264

[FSS15] D. Fiorenza, H. Sati, U. Schreiber, *The WZW term of the M5-brane and differential cohomotopy*, Journal of Mathematical Physics, October 2015 arXiv:1506.07557

[FP89] R. Floreanini, R. Percacci, *Higher dimensional abelian Chern-Simons theory*, Phys. Lett. **B 224** (1989), 291–294.

[Fre86] D. Freed, *Determinants, torsion, and strings*, Comm. Math. Phys. Volume 107, Number 3 (1986), 483-513. euclid.cmp/1104116145

[Fr95] D. Freed, *Classical Chern-Simons theory Part I*, Adv. Math., 113 (1995), 237–303
and
*Classical Chern-Simons theory, part II*, Houston J. Math., 28 (2002), pp. 293–310 and *Remarks on Chern-Simons theory*, Bulletin (New Series) of the AMS, Volume 46, Number 2, (2009)

[Fr99] D. Freed, *Five lectures on supersymmetry*, American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1999.

[Fr00] D. Freed, Dirac charge quantization and generalized differential cohomology, In *Surveys in differential geometry*, Surv. Differ. Geom., VII, pages 129–194. Int. Press, Somerville, MA (2000) arXiv:hep-th/0011220

[Fr08] D. Freed, *Remarks on Chern-Simons Theory*, arXiv:0808.2507

[Fr12a] D. Freed, *Twisted K-theory and orientifolds*, lecture at *K-Theory and Quantum Fields*, Erwin Schrödinger institute (June 2012)

[Fr12b] D. Freed, *4-3-2 8-7-6*, talk at *Aspects of Topology*, Oxford, Dec 2012,
`https://people.maths.ox.ac.uk/tillmann/ASPECTSfreed.pdf`

[FrHo00] D. Freed, M. Hopkins *On Ramond-Ramond fields and K-theory*, Journal of High Energy Physics 0005 (2000) 044

[FHT05] D. Freed, M. Hopkins, C. Teleman, Loop Groups and Twisted K-Theory II, J. Amer. Math. Soc. 26 (2013), 595-644, arXiv:math/0511232

[FHT07] D. Freed, M. Hopkins, C. Teleman, *Consistent Orientation of Moduli Spaces*, arXiv:0711.1909

[FHLT09] D. Freed, M. Hopkins, J. , C. Teleman, *Topological quantum field theories from compact Lie groups*, in *A Celebration of the Mathematical Legacy of Raoul Bott*, AMS, (2010) arXiv:0905.0731

[FrMo06] D. Freed, G. Moore, *Setting the quantum integrand of M-theory*, Communications in mathematical physics, Volume 263, Number 1 (2006)

[FrQu93] D. Freed, F. Quinn, *Chern-Simons Theory with Finite Gauge Group*, Commun. Math. Phys. 156:435-472, 1993

[FSS10] D. Fiorenza, U. Schreiber, J. Stasheff. *Čech-cocycles for differential characteristic classes*, Advances in Theoretical and Mathematical Physics, Volume 16 Issue 1 (2012) arXiv:1011.4735

[Fl60] S. Flügge, *Principles of Classical Mechanics and Field Theory*, Encyclopedia of Physics III/I, Springer 1960

[FoHe79] M. Forger, H. Hess, *Universal metaplectic structures and geometric quantization*, Comm. Math. Phys. Volume 64, Number 3 (1979), 269-278 projecteuclid.org/euclid.cmp/1103904723

[FoRo05] M. Forger, S. Romero, *Covariant Poisson Brackets in Geometric Field Theory*, Commun. Math. Phys. 256 (2005) 375-410, arXiv:math-ph/0408008

[Fra] T. Frankel, *The Geometry of Physics – An introduction*, Cambridge University Press,

[FrWi99] D. Freed, E. Witten, *Anomalies in String Theory with D-Branes*, Asian J. Math. **3** (1999) 819, arXiv:hep-th/9905111

[FuRuSc] J. Fuchs, I. Runkel, C. Schweigert, *TFT construction of RCFT correlators I – V*, arXiv:hep-th/0204148, arXiv:hep-th/0306164, arXiv:hep-th/0403157, arXiv:hep-th/0412290, arXiv:hep-th/0503194

[Gaj97] P. Gajer. Geometry of Deligne cohomology. *Invent. Math.*, 127(1):155–207 (1997)

[Gam10] N. Gambino, *Weighted limits in simplicial homotopy theory*, Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra vol 214 (7) (2010) `http://www.crm.es/Publications/08/Pr790.pdf`

[GS07] R. Garner, M. Shulman, *Enriched categories as a free cocompletion*, arXiv:1301.3191

[GaNi85] S. Gates, Jr., H. Nishino, *New $D = 10$, $N = 1$ supergravity coupled to Yang-Mills supermultiplet and anomaly cancellations*, Phys. Lett. **B157** (1985) 157

[Ga88] K. Gawedzki, *Topological actions in two-dimensional quantum field theories*, Nonperturbative quantum field theory (Cargese, 1987), 101141, NATO Adv. Sci. Inst. Ser. B Phys., 185, Plenum, New York, 1988.

[Ga00] K. Gawedzki, *Conformal field theory: a case study*, in Y. Nutku, C. Saclioglu, T. Turgut (eds.) *Frontier in Physics* 102, Perseus Publishing (2000) arXiv:hep-th/9904145

K. Gawedzki, N. Reis, *WZW branes and gerbes*, Rev.Math.Phys. 14 (2002) 1281-1334, arXiv:hep-th/0205233

K. Gawedzki, *Abelian and non-Abelian branes in WZW models and gerbes*, Commun.Math.Phys. 258 (2005) 23-73, arXiv:hep-th/0406072

[Ge09] E. Getzler. Lie theory for nilpotent $L_\infty$-algebras. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 170(1):271–301, (2009)

[GGK02] V. Ginzburg, V. Guillemin, Y. Karshon, *Moment maps, cobordisms, and Hamiltonian group actions* AMS (2002)

[Gir87] J.-Y. Girard, *Linear logic*, Theoretical Computer Science 50:1, 1987 `http://iml.univ-mrs.fr/~girard/linear.pdf`

[Gol81] R. Goldblatt, *Grothendieck topology as geometric modality*, Mathematical Logic Quarterly, Volume 27, Issue 31-35, pages 495529, (1981)

[Go03] T. Goodwillie, *Calculus III: Taylor Series*, Geom. Topol. 7(2003) 645-711 arXiv:math/0310481

[GoTe00] K. Komi, Y. Terashima, *A fiber integration formula for the Smooth Deligne Cohomology*, International Mathematics Research Notices, No 13 (2000)

[GrSch84] M. Green, J. Schwarz, *Covariant description of superstrings*, Phys. Lett. **B136** (1984), 367–370.

[GHV73] W. Greub, S. Halperin, R. Vanstone, *Connections, Curvature, and Cohomology*, Academic Press (1973)

[Gr81] A. Grothendieck *Pursuing stacks*, 1983, thescrivener.github.io/PursuingStacks/

[Gir71] J. Giraud *Cohomologie non-abélienne*, Springer (1971)

[GoJa99] P. Goerss, J. Jardine, *Simplicial homotopy theory*, volume 174 of *Progress in Mathematics*. Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel (1999)

[GMPW08] M. Graña, R. Minasian, M. Petrini, D. Waldram, *T-duality, Generalized Geometry and Non-Geometric Backgrounds*, JHEP 0904:075, (2009) arXiv:0807.4527

[GrSc] M. Green, J. Schwarz, *Anomaly cancellation in supersymmetric $D = 10$ gauge theory and superstring theory*, Phys. Lett. **B149** (1984) 117.

[Gr92] D. Gross, *Gauge theory – Past, present, and future?*, Chines Journal of Physics, Vol. 30, No 7, 1992

[GHMNT85] M. Grisaru, P. Howe, L. Mezincescu, B. Nilsson, P. Townsend, *$N = 2$-Superstring in a supergravity background*, Physics Letters Volume 162B, number 1,2,3 (1985)

[Gr13] F. Gruber, *Topology in dynamical Lattice QCD simulations*, PhD thesis 2013, epub.uni-regensburg.de/27631/

[GuTh08] E. Guadagnini, F. Thuillier, *Deligne-Beilinson cohomology and abelian links invariants*, Sigma 4 (2008), 078, 30, arXiv:0801.1445

[GK08] S. Gukov, E. Witten, *Branes and Quantization*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. 13 (2009) 1-73, arXiv:0809.0305

[Ha06] E. Hawkins, *A groupoid approach to quantization*, J. Symplectic Geom. Volume 6, Number 1 (2008), 61-125. arXiv:math.SG/0612363

[Hau14] R. Haugseng, *Iterated spans and "classical" topological field theories*, arXiv:1409.0837

[He1841] G. Hegel, *Wissenschaft der Logik*, Duncker und Humboldt, Berlin 1841

[Hél11] F. Hélein, *Multisymplectic formalism and the covariant phase*, (2011), arXiv:1106.2086

[HHél02] F. Hélein, *Hamiltonian formalisms for multidimensional calculus of variations and perturbation theory*, contribution to *Conference on Noncompact Variational Problems and General Relativity* in Honor of H. Brezis and F.E. Browder, Oct. 2001, arXiv:math-ph/0212036

[HeSh10] S. Hellerman, E. Sharpe, *Sums over topological sectors and quantization of Fayet-Iliopoulos parameters*, arXiv:1012.5999

[HenMez85] M. Henneaux, L. Mezincescu, *A Sigma Model Interpretation of Green-Schwarz Covariant Superstring Action*, Phys.Lett. B152 (1985) 340, inspirehep.net/record/15922

[HeTe92] M. Henneaux, C. Teitelboim, *Quantization of gauge systems* Princeton University Press, 1992

[Hen08] A. Henriques, *Integrating $L_\infty$-algebras* Compos. Math., 144(4) (2008), arXiv:math/0603563

[Hess10] K. Hess, *A general framework for homotopic descent and codescent*, arXiv:1001.1556

[HeJa09] C. Heunen, B. Jacobs, *Quantum Logic in Dagger Kernel Categories*, Order, Volume 27, Issue 2 (2010), pp 177-212, arXiv:0902.2355

[Hin97] V. Hinich, *Descent of Deligne groupoids*, Internat. Math. Res. Notices, (5):223–239, 1997.

[Hin] V. Hinich, *Differential coalgebras as formal stacks*

[Hi11] N. Hitchin, *Lectures on generalized geometry*, in *Geometry of special holonomy and related topics*, 79–124, Surv. Differ. Geom. **16**, Int. Press, Somerville, MA, 2011.

[Hi12] N. Hitchin, *Generalized Geometry of Type $B_n$*, talk at *String-Math 2012*, http://www.hcm.uni-bonn.de/events/eventpages/2012/string-math-2012/

[Hi1900] D. Hilbert, *Mathematical Problems*, Bulletin of the American Mathematical Society, vol. 8, no. 10 (1902), pp. 437-479.
Earlier publications (in the original German) appeared in
Göttinger Nachrichten, 1900, pp. 253-297,
and
Archiv der Mathematik und Physik, 3dser., vol. 1 (1901), pp. 44-63, 213-237.

[H] P. Hirschhorn, *Overcategories and undercategories of model categories* http://www-math.mit.edu/~psh/undercat.pdf

['tHo76] G. 't Hooft, *Symmetry Breaking through Bell-Jackiw Anomalies* Phys. Rev. Lett. 37 (1976) http://www.staff.science.uu.nl/~hooft101/gthpub/symm_br_bell_jackiw.pdf

[Ho11] M. Hopkins, *Differential cohomology for general cohomology theories and one physical motivation*, talk at Simons Center Workshop on Differential Cohomology (2011) scgp.stonybrook.edu/archives/851

[HoQu12] M. Hopkins, G. Quick, *Hodge filtered complex bordism*, arXiv:1212.2173

[HoLu14] M. Hopkins, J. Lurie, *Ambidexterity in $K(n)$-Local Stable Homotopy Theory*, http://www.math.harvard.edu/~lurie/papers/Ambidexterity.pdf

[HoSi05] M. Hopkins, I. Singer. *Quadratic functions in geometry, topology, and M-theory*, J. Differential Geom., 70(3):329–452, (2005) arXiv:math/0211216

[HoWi95] P. Horava, E. Witten, *Heterotic and Type I string dynamics from eleven dimensions*, Nucl. Phys. B460 (1996) 506, arXiv:hep-th/9510209

[HoWi96] P. Horava and E. Witten, *Eleven-dimensional supergravity on a manifold with boundary*, Nucl. Phys. **B475** (1996) 94-114, arXiv:hep-th/9603142

[Hö71] L. Hörmander, *Fourier Integral Operators I.*, Acta Math. 127 (1971)

[Hor89] G. Horowitz, *Exactly soluble diffeomorphism invariant theories*, Commun. Math. Phys. 125, 417-437 (1989)

[Hove99] M. Hovey. *Model categories*, Mathematical Surveys and Monographs, volume 63 American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, (1999)

[Ho97] P. Howe, *Weyl Superspace*, Physics Letters B Volume 415, Issue 2, 11 December 1997, Pages 149155 arXiv:hep-th/9707184

[Hoy13] M. Hoyois, MathOverflow comment: mathoverflow.net/a/131032/381

[Huer11] J. Huerta, *Supersymmetry, Division Algberas, and Higher Gauge Theory*, PhD thesis (2011)

[Hull97] C. Hull, *Gravitational duality, branes and charges*, Nucl. Phys. **B509** (1998) 216–251, arXiv:hep-th/9705162

[Hull07] C. Hull, *Generalised Geometry for M-Theory* JHEP 0707:079 (2007) arXiv:hep-th/0701203

[HT94] C. Hull, P. Townsend, *Unity of Superstring Dualities*, Nucl. Phys. B438 : 109-137 (1995) arXiv:hep-th/9410167

[Hus94] D. Husemöller, *Fiber bundles*, Springer (1994)

[HydP93] M. Hyland, V. de Paiva, *Full Intuitionistic Linear Logic* (extended abstract). Annals of Pure and Applied Logic, 64(3), pp.273-291, 1993. www.cs.bham.ac.uk/ vdp/publications/fill.pdf

[Ig-Z13] P. Iglesias-Zemmour, *Diffeology*, Mathematical Surveys and Monographs, AMS (2013) `http://www.umpa.ens-lyon.fr/~iglesias/Site/The+Book.html`

[Ike03] N. Ikeda, *Chern-Simons Gauge Theory coupled with BF Theory*, Int. J. Mod. Phys. A18 (2003) 2689-2702, arXiv:hep-th/0203043

[Il72] L. Illusie, *Complexe cotangent et déformations, I*, SLNM **229** Springer-Verlag (1972)

[Il72] L. Illusie, Complexe cotangent et déformations, II, SLNM **283**, Springer-Verlag (1972)

[Jard87] J.F. Jardine, *Simplicial presheaves*, Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra, 47 (1987), 35-87

[Ja96] J.F. Jardine, *Boolean localization, in practice* Doc. Math. 1 (1996), 245-275.

[JaLu04] J.F. Jardine, Z. Luo, Higher order principal bundles, K-theory 0681 (2004)

[Joh02] P. Johnstone. *Sketches of an Elephant: A Topos Theory Compendium*, Oxford Logic Guides, volume 43,44, Clarendon Press, 2002.

[JohMo89] P. Johnstone, I. Moerdijk, *Local maps of toposes*, Proc. London Math. Soc. s3-58(2) (1989)

[Jo02] A. Joyal, *Quasi-categories and Kan complexes*, *Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra* 175 (2002), 207-222.

[Jo08a] A. Joyal, *Theory of quasi-categories and its applications*, lectures at *Simplicial Methods in Higher Categories*, Barcelona, 2008, `http://mat.uab.cat/~kock/crm/hocat/advanced-course/Quadern45-2.pdf`

[Jo08b] A. Joyal, *Notes on Logoi*, 2008 `http://www.math.uchicago.edu/~may/IMA/JOYAL/Joyal.pdf`

[JoyMo94] A. Joyal, I. Moerdijk, *A completeness theorem for open maps*, Annals of Pure and Applied Logic **70**, Issue 1, (1994), p. 51-86

[KaKrMi87] G. Kainz, G. Kriegl, P. Michor, *$C^\infty$-from the functional analytic point of view* Journal of pure and applied algebra, 46 (1987)

[KaVa10] A. Kahle, A. Valentino, *T-duality and differential K-theory*, arXiv:0912.2516

[KaSt08] H. Kajiura, J. Stasheff, *Homotopy algebra of openclosed strings* , Geometry and Topology Monographs 13 (2008) 229259, arXiv:hep-th/0606283

[KLV12] C. Kapulkin, P. LeFanu Lumsdaine, V. Voevodsky, *The Simplicial Model of Univalent Foundations*, arXiv:1211.2851

[Ka99] A. Kapustin, *D-branes in a topologically nontrivial B-field*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. 4, no. 1, pp. 127154 (2000), arXiv:hep-th/9909089

[KaSa10a] A. Kapustin and N. Saulina, *Topological boundary conditions in abelian Chern-Simons theory*, Nucl. Phys. **B845** (2011), 393–435, arXiv:1008.0654

[KaSa10b] A. Kapustin and N. Saulina, *Surface operators in 3d Topological Field Theory and 2d Rational Conformal Field Theory*, in: U. Schreiber, H. Sati (eds.), *Mathematical Foundations of Quantum Field and Perturbative String Theory*, Proc. Symp. Pure Math., vol. 83, AMS (2011) arXiv:1012.0911

[Ka10] A. Kapustin, *Topological Field Theory, Higher Categories, and Their Applications*, Proceedings of ICM 2010, arXiv:1004.2307

[Ke82] M. Kelly, *Basic Concepts of Enriched Category Theory*, Cambridge University Press, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, 64, 1982, Republished in: *Reprints in Theory and Applications of Categories*, No. 10 (2005) pp. 1-136

[Kh14] I. Khavkine, *Covariant phase space, constraints, gauge and the Peierls formula*, International Journal of Modern Physics A 29 (2014), 1430009 doi:10.1142/s0217751x14300099 arXiv:1402.1282

[Kh16] I. Khavkine, *The sharp Noether theorem*

[KhaSc] I. Khavkine, U. Schreiber, *Lie $n$-algebras of higher Noether corrents*

[Kir04] A. Kirillov, *Lectures on the orbit method*, Graduate studies in mathematics, volume 64, American Math. Soc. (2004)

[Kil89] Killingback, *World-sheet anomalies and loop geometry*, Nuclear Physics B Volume 288, 1987, Pages 578-588

[Klein1872] F. Klein, *Vergleichende Betrachtungen über neuere geometrische Forschungen* (1872) translation by M. W. Haskell, *A comparative review of recent researches in geometry*, Bull. New York Math. Soc. 2, (1892-1893), 215-249.

[Kob97] S. Kobayashi, *Monad as modality*, Theoretical Computer Science, Volume 175, Issue 1, 30 (1997), Pages 2974

[Kock80] A. Kock, *Formal manifolds and synthetic theory of jet bundles* Cahiers de Top. et Géom. Diff. Catégor. (1980) Volume: 21, Issue: 3 `http://www.numdam.org/item?id=CTGDC_1980__21_3_227_0`

[Kock86] A. Kock, *Convenient vector spaces embed into the Cahiers topos*, Cahiers de Topologie et Géométrie Différentielle Catégoriques, tome 27 no. 1 (1986), p. 3-17
Corrigendum and addenda in A. Kock, G. Reyes, Cahiers de Topologie et Géométrie Différentielle Catégoriques, tome 28, no. 2 (1987), p 99-110,
`http://www.numdam.org/item?id=CTGDC_1987__28_2_99_0`

[Kock06] A. Kock, *Synthetic Differential Geometry* Cambridge University Press, London Math. Society Lecture Notes Series No. 333 (2006) home.imf.au.dk/kock/sdg99.pdf

[Kock10] A. Kock, *Synthetic Geometry of Manifolds*, Cambridge Tracts in Mathematics, 180 (2010) home.imf.au.dk/kock/SGM-final.pdf

[KoMiSl93] I. Kolář, P. Michor, J. Slovák, *Natural operations in differential geometry*, 1993 www.emis.de/monographs/KSM/kmsbookh.pdf

[KonSch00] A. Konechny, A. Schwarz, *On $(k \oplus l|q)$-dimensional supermanifolds*, in J. Wess and V. Akulov (eds.) *Supersymmetry and Quantum Field Theory* (D. Volkov memorial volume) Lecture Notes in Physics, 509 Springer-Verlag (1998) arXiv:hep-th/9706003
also published as: *Theory of $(k \oplus q|l)$-dimensional supermanifolds*, Sel. math., New ser. 6 (2000) 471 - 486

[Ko12] J. Kock, *Data types with symmetries and polynomial functors over groupoids*, CRM Preprint No. 825 arxiv.org/abs/1210.0828

[Ko11] L. Kong, *Conformal field theory and a new geometry*, in H. Sati, U. Schreiber (eds.), *Mathematical Foundations of Quantum Field and Perturbative String Theory*, Proc. Symp. in Pure Math. vol 83, AMS, 2011, arXiv:1107.3649

[Kon03] M. Kontsevich, *Deformation quantization of Poisson manifolds*, Lett. Math. Phys. 66 (2003), no. 3, 157216, arXiv:q-alg/9709040

[Kos70] B. Kostant, *Quantization and unitary representations*, in *Lectures in modern analysis and applications III*, Lecture Notes in Math. 170 (1970), Springer Verlag, 87208

[Ko75] B. Kostant, *On the definition of quantization*, in *Géométrie Symplectique et Physique Mathématique*, Colloques Intern. CNRS, vol. 237, Paris (1975) 187210

[KrVe98] J. Krasilśhchik, A. Verbovetsky, *Homological Methods in Equations of Mathematical Physics* math/9808130

[KS05] I. Kriz and H. Sati, *Type IIB string theory, S-duality and generalized cohomology*, Nucl. Phys. **B715** (2005) 639–664, arXiv:hep-th/0410293

[Kuper05] G. Kuperberg, *A concise introduction to quantum probability, quantum mechanics, and quantum computation*, 2005 www.math.ucdavis.edu/ greg/intro-2005.pdf

[LaMa95] T. Lada, M. Markl. *Strongly homotopy Lie algebras*, Comm. in Algebra, pages 2147–2161, 1995. arXiv:hep-th/9406095

[LaFa12] U. Dal Lago, C. Faggian, *On Multiplicative Linear Logic, Modality and Quantum Circuits*, EPTCS 95, 2012, pp. 55-66, arxiv.org/abs/1210.0613

[La09] K. Laine, *Geometric and topological aspects of Type IIB D-branes* , Master thesis, (2009)

[Lam68] J. Lambek, *Deductive systems and categories*, Mathematical Systems Theory 2 (1968), 287-318. and *Deductive systems and categories II*, Lecture Notes in Math. 86, Springer-Verlag (1969), 76-122.

[Lam81] J. Lambek, *The Influence of Heraclitus on Modern Mathematics*, in J. Agassi, R. Cohen *Scientific Philosophy Today: Essays in Honor of Mario Bunge*, , 11121. Boston: D. Reidel Publishing Co.

[LX03] C. Laurent-Gengoux, P. Xu, *Quantization of pre-quasi-symplectic groupoids and their Hamiltonian spaces* in *The Breadth of Symplectic and Poisson Geometry*, Progress in Mathematics, 2005, Volume 232, 423-454 arXiv:math/0311154

[LaMi89] H. Lawson. M.-L. Michelson, *Spin Geometry*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, (1989)

[Law65] W. Lawvere, *An elementary theory of the category of sets*, Proceedings of the National Academy of Science of the U.S.A 52, 1506-1511 (1965), reprinted in Reprints in Theory and Applications of Categories, No. 11 (2005) pp. 1-35,

[Law67] W. Lawvere, *Categorical dynamics*, lecture in Chicago, 1967,
`http://www.mat.uc.pt/~ct2011/abstracts/lawvere_w.pdf`

[Law69] W. Lawvere, *Adjointness in foundations*, Dialectica, 23 (1969), republished in Reprints in Theory and Applications of Categories, No. 16 (2006), pp 1-16,
www.tac.mta.ca/tac/reprints/articles/16/tr16abs.html

[Law70a] W. Lawvere, *Quantifiers and sheaves*, Actes, Congrès intern, math., Tome 1, 1970
www.mathunion.org/ICM/ICM1970.1/Main/icm1970.1.0329.0334.ocr.pdf

[Law70b] W. Lawvere, *Equality in hyperdoctrines and comprehension schema as an adjoint functor* in A. Heller, (ed.), *Proc. New York Symp. on Applications of Categorical Algebra*, pp. 114. AMS, 1970.
ncatlab.org/nlab/files/LawvereComprehension.pdf

[Law86] W. Lawvere, Introduction to *Categories in Continuum Physics*, Lectures given at a Workshop held at SUNY, Buffalo 1982. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 1174. 1986

[Law91] W. Lawvere, *Some Thoughts on the Future of Category Theory* in A. Carboni et. al. (eds.) *Category Theory*, Proceedings of the International Conference held in Como, Lecture Notes in Mathematics 1488, Springer (1991),
ncatlab.org/nlab/show/Some+Thoughts+on+the+Future+of+Category+Theory

[Law94] W. Lawvere, *Cohesive Toposes and Cantor's "lauter Einsen"*, Philosophia Mathematica (3) Vol. 2 (1994), pp. 5-15. ncatlab.org/nlab/files/LawvereCohesiveToposes.pdf

[Law97] W. Lawvere, *Toposes of laws of motion*, talk in Montreal, 1997
`http://www.acsu.buffalo.edu/~wlawvere/ToposMotion.pdf`

[Law98] W. Lawvere, *Outline of synthetic differential geometry*, lecture in Buffalo, 1998, `http://ncatlab.org/nlab/files/LawvereSDGOutline.pdf`

[Law06] W. Lawvere, *Adjointness in foundations*, Reprints in Theory and Applications of Categories, No. 16, 2006, pp. 116.

[Law07] W. Lawvere, *Axiomatic cohesion*, Theory and Applications of Categories, Vol. 19, No. 3, (2007) pp. 4149.,
`http://www.tac.mta.ca/tac/volumes/19/3/19-03abs.html`

[Len85] H. Lenstra, *Galois theory for schemes*, Mathematisch Instituut Universiteit van Amstrerdam,
`http://websites.math.leidenuniv.nl/algebra/GSchemes.pdf`

[LiSh15] D. Licata, M.Shulman, *Adjoint logic with a 2-category of modes*, in Logical Foundations of Computer Science, Volume 9537 of the series Lecture Notes in Computer Science pp 219-235 (2015)
dlicata.web.wesleyan.edu/pubs/ls15adjoint/ls15adjoint.pdf
dlicata.web.wesleyan.edu/pubs/ls15adjoint/ls15adjoint-lfcs-slides.pdf

[Lo90] J. Lott, *The Geometry of Supergravity Torsion Constraints*, Comm. Math. Phys. 133 (1990), 563615, (exposition in arXiv:0108125)

[L-Topos] J. Lurie, *Higher topos theory*, Annals of Mathematics Studies, volume 170, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, (2009), arXiv:0608040

[L-Cat] J. Lurie, $(\infty, 2)$-*Categories and the GoodwillieCalculus*, arXiv:0905.0462

[L-TFT] J. Lurie, *On the classification of topological field theories*, Current Developments in Mathematics, Volume 2008 (2009), 129-280 arXiv:0905.0465

[L-Alg] J. Lurie, *Higher algebra*, (2011)
`http://www.math.harvard.edu/~lurie/papers/higheralgebra.pdf`

[L-Geo] J. Lurie, *Structured Spaces*, (2009) arXiv:0905.0459

[L-DGeo] J. Lurie, *Notes on crystals and algebraic $\mathcal{D}$-modules*,
`http://www.math.harvard.edu/~gaitsgde/grad_2009/SeminarNotes/Nov17-19(Crystals).pdf`

[L-Lie] J. Lurie, *Formal moduli problems*,
`http://www.math.harvard.edu/~lurie/papers/DAG-X.pdf`

[L-Rep] J. Lurie, *Representability theorems*, `http://www.math.harvard.edu/~lurie/papers/DAG-XIV.pdf`

[LuWa14] P. LeFanu Lumsdaine, M. Warren, *Coherence via local universes*, ncatlab.org/nlab/files/LumsdaineWarren2013.pdf

[Mac87] K. Mackenzie, *Lie groupoids and Lie algebroids in differential geometry*, London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series, 124. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1987. xvi+327

[Mac88] K. Mackenzie, *On extensions of principal bundles*, Annals of Global Analysis and Geometry Volume 6, Number 2 (1988)

[Mac00] M. Mackaay, *Spherical 2-categories and 4-manifold invariants*, Adv. Math. 153 (2000), no. 2, 353390. arXiv:math/9805030

[Marle14] C-M. Marle, *The works of Charles Ehresmann on connections: from Cartan connections to connections on fibre bundles* arXiv:1401.8272

[MacMoe92] S. MacLane, I. Moerdijk, *Sheaves in Geometry and Logic*, New York, 1992

[Mah13] S. Mahanta, *Higher nonunital Quillen $K'$-theory, KK-dualities and applications to topological T-dualities* J. Geom. Phys., 61 (5), 875-889, 2011
S. Mahanta, *KK-equivalences and topological T-dualities*, talk at Münster, October 2013, wwwmath.uni-muenster.de/u/snigdhayan.mahanta/papers/KKTD.pdf

[Mald97] J. Maldacena *The Large N Limit of Superconformal Field Theories and Supergravity*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. 2:231-252 (1998), arXiv:hep-th/9711200

[MMS01] J. Maldacena, G. Moore, N. Seiberg, *D-Brane instantons and K-theory charges*, JHEP **0111** (2001) 062, arXiv:hep-th/0108100

[ML74] P. Martin-Löf, *An intuitionistic theory of types*, in H. E. Rose, J. C. Shepherdson (eds.), *Logic Colloquium* (1973), North-Holland, 1974,
http://citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/summary?doi=10.1.1.131.926

[MaPo07] J. Martins, T. Porter, *On Yetter's invariants and an extension of the Dijkgraaf-Witten invariant to categorical groups*, Theory and Applications of Categories, Vol. 18, (2007), No. 4, pp 118-150.

[Marv86] M. Marvan, *A note on the category of partial differential equations*, in *Differential geometry and its applications*, Proceedings of the Conference August 24-30, 1986, Brno ncatlab.org/nlab/files/MarvanJetComonad.pdf

[Marv86] M. Marvan, *On Zero-Curvature Representations of Partial Differential Equations*, (1993) citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/summary?doi=10.1.1.45.5631

[May67] P. May, *Simplicial objects in algebraic topology*, University of Chicago Press (1967)

[May99] P. May, *A concise course in algebraic topology*, University of Chicago Press (1999),
http://www.math.uchicago.edu/~may/CONCISE/ConciseRevised.pdf

[May05] H. Fausk, P. May, *Isomorphisms between left and right adjoints*, Theory and Applications of Categories, Vol. 11, 2003, No. 4, pp 107-131, http://www.math.uiuc.edu/K-theory/0573/

[MaSi06] P. May, J. Sigurdsson, *Parametrized Homotopy Theory*, MAS Mathematical Surveys and Monographs, vol. 132 (2006)
http://www.math.uchicago.edu/ may/EXTHEORY/MaySig.pdf

[Me05] E. Meinrenken *On the quantization of conjugacy classes*, Enseign. Math. (2) 55 (2009), no. 1-2, 33-75, arXiv:0707.3963

A. Carey, B.-L. Wang, *Fusion of symmetric D-branes and Verlinde rings* Commun.Math.Phys. 277:577-625 (2008) arXiv:math-ph/0505040

[Mel06] P.-A. Melliès , *Functorial boxes in string diagrams*, Proceedings of *Computer Science and Logic* 2006 www.pps.univ-paris-diderot.fr/ mellies/papers/functorial-boxes.pdf

[Mel08] P.-A. Melliès, N. Tabareau, *Linear continuation and duality* (2008) hal.inria.fr/docs/00/33/91/56/PDF/linear-control.pdf
P.-A. Melliès, *The parametric continuation monad*, Mathematical Structures in Computer Science, Festschrift in honor of Corrado Böhm for his 90th birthday (2013) ncatlab.org/nlab/files/MelliesContinuation.pdf

[Mel09] P.-A. Melliès , *Categorial Semantics of Linear Logic*, in *Interactive models of computation and program behaviour*, Panoramas et synthèses 27, 2009 `http://www.pps.univ-paris-diderot.fr/~mellies/papers/panorama.pdf`

[Mend02] M. Mendler, *On the Logical Content of Computational Type Theory* on P. Callaghan, Z. Luo, J. McKinna (eds.), *Types for Proofs and Programs*, Springer 2002 (LNCS 2277), ncatlab.org/nlab/files/MendlerComputationalTypeTheory.pdf

[1] L. Menichi, *Batalin-Vilkovisky algebras and the J-homomorphism*, Topology and its Applications Volume 156, Issue 2, 1 December 2008, Pages 365374 arXiv:0707.3103

[Mic87] J. Mickelsson, *Kac-Moody groups, topology of the Dirac determinant bundle, and fermionization*, Commun. Math. Phys. **110** (1987), no. 2, 173-183

[MoMr03] , I. Moerdijk, J. Mrčun, *Introduction to foliations and Lie groupoids*, Cambridge (2003)

[MoPr97] I. Moerdijk, D. Pronk, *Orbifolds, sheaves and groupoids*, K-theory 12 (1997),
I. Moerdijk, *Orbifolds as Groupoids: an Introduction*, arXiv:math/0203100

[MoVe00] I. Moerdijk, J. Vermeulen, *Relative compactness conditions for toposes*, AMS (2000), igitur-archive.library.uu.nl/math/2001-0702-142944/1039.pdf

[Mog91] E. Moggi, *Notions of computation and monads*, Information and Computation, 93(1), 1991, www.disi.unige.it/person/MoggiE/ftp/ic91.pdf

[Mol84] V. Molotkov. *Infinite-dimensional* $\mathbb{Z}_2^k$*-supermanifolds*, ICTP preprints, IC/84/183 (1984)

[Mur96] M. K. Murray *Bundle Gerbes* J. London Math. Soc. (2) **54** (1996) no. 2, 403–416.

[MuSi03] M. Murray, M. Singer, *Gerbes, Clifford modules and the index theorem*, Annals of Global Analysis and Geometry, Volume 26, Number 4, 355-367, arXiv:math/0302096

[MuSt03] M. Murray, D. Stevenson, *Higgs fields, bundle gerbes and string structures*, Commun. Math. Phys. **243** (2003) 541-555,

[Na06] V.P. Nair, *The Matrix Chern-Simons One-form as a Universal Chern-Simons Theory*, Nucl.Phys.B750:289-320 (2006)

[Ni83] P. van Nieuwenhuizen, *Free graded differential superalgebras*, Lect. Notes in Phys. **180**, 228–245, Springer-Verlag, (1983).

[NSW11] T. Nikolaus, C. Sachse, C. Wockel, *A smooth model for the String group*, Int. Math. Res. Not. IMRN 16 (2013) 3678-3721 arXiv:1104.4288

[NSS12a] T. Nikolaus, U. Schreiber, D. Stevenson, *Principal* $\infty$*-bundles – General theory*, Journal of Homotopy and Related Structures (2014), arXiv:1207.0248

[NSS12b] T. Nikolaus, U. Schreiber, D. Stevenson, *Principal* $\infty$*-bundles – Presentations*, Journal of Homotopy and Related Structures (2014), arXiv:1207.0249

[NSS12c] T. Nikolaus, U. Schreiber, D. Stevenson, *Principal* $\infty$*-bundles – Examples and applications*

[NW11a] T. Nikolaus, K. Waldorf, *Four equivalent versions of non-abelian gerbes*, Pacific J. Math., 264-2 (2013), 355-420, arXiv:1103.4815

[NW11b] T. Nikolaus, K. Waldorf, *Lifting Problems and Transgression for Non-Abelian Gerbes*, Adv. Math. 242 (2013) 50-79 arXiv:1112.4702

[Nil81] B. Nilsson, *Simple 10-dimensional supergravity in superspace*, Nuclear Physics B188 (1981) 176-192

[nLab:tangent cohesion] $n$Lab, *tangent cohesive* $(\infty, 1)$*-topos*,
`http://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/tangent+cohesive+(infinity,1)-topos`

[Nui13] J. Nuiten, *Cohomological quantization of local prequantum boundary field theory*, MSc thesis, Utrecht, August 2013
ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/master+thesis+Nuiten

[Ol93] P. J. Olver, *Applications of Lie groups to differential equations*, vol. 107 of Graduate Texts in Mathematics, Springer (1993)

[Pa61] R. Palais, *On the existence of slices for actions of non-compact Lie groups*, Annals of Mathematics, vol. 73, no 2 (1961),
`http://vmm.math.uci.edu/ExistenceOfSlices.pdf`

[PaSh05] T. Pantev, E. Sharpe, *String compactifications on Calabi-Yau stacks*, Nucl.Phys. B733 (2006) 233-296, arXiv:hep-th/0502044

[Paug11] F. Paugam, *Homotopical Poisson reduction of gauge theories*, in H. Sati, U. Schreiber (eds.), *Mathematical foundations of quantum field theory and perturbative string theory*, Proceedings of Symposia in Pure Mathematics, AMS (2011), arXiv:1106.4955

[Pa] D. Pavlov et al. *Concordance theory for homotopy sheaves*

[Po99] J. Polchinksi, *M-theory and the light cone*, Prog. Theor. Phys. Suppl. **134** (1999), 158–170, arXiv:hep-th/9903165

[Po01] J. Polchinski, *String theory*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, (2001).

[PoWa05] P. Polesello, I. Waschkies, *Higher monodromy*, *Homology, Homotopy and Applications*, Vol. 7(2005), No. 1, pp. 109-150

[Pol08] A. Polishchuk, *Kernel algebras and generalized Fourier-Mukai transforms*, arXiv:0810.1542

[PoSh12] K. Ponto, M. Shulman, *Duality and traces for indexed monoidal categories*, Theory and Applications of Categories, Vol. 26, 2012, No. 23, pp 582-659, arXiv:1211.1555

[Pr92] V. Pratt, *Linear logic for generalized quantum mechanics*, in Proc. of *Workshop on Physics and Computation* (PhysComp92). boole.stanford.edu/pub/ql.pdf

[Por] T. Porter *The crossed menagerie*, `http://ncatlab.org/timporter/files/menagerie10.pdf`

[PrVi92] J. Preskill and A. Vilenkin, *Decay of metastable topological defects*, Phys. Rev. **D47** (1993), 2324–2342, arXiv:hep-ph/9209210

[Pr10] J. Pridham, *Unifying derived deformation theories*, Adv. Math. **224** (2010), no.3, 772–826, arXiv:0705.0344

[RaSch81] T. Ratiu, R. Schmid, *The differentiable structure of three remarkable diffeomorphism groups*, Math. Z. 177, 81-100 (1981)

[Redd06] C. Redden, Canonical metric connections associated to string structures PhD Thesis (2006) https://www.math.sunysb.edu/~redden/Thesis.pdf

[Re05] C. Rezk, *Toposes and homotopy toposes*, lectures at UIUC (2005) http://www.math.uiuc.edu/~rezk/homotopy-topos-sketch.pdf

[RiVe13] E. Riehl, D. Verity, *Homotopy coherent adjunctions and the formal theory of monads*, arXiv:1310.8279

[RSS15] E. Rijke, M. Shulman, B. Spitters, *Modalities in homotopy type theory* In preparation

[RiTr99] A. Riotto, M. Trodden, *Recent Progress in Baryogenesis*, Ann.Rev.Nucl.Part.Sci.49:35-75,1999 arXiv:hep-ph/9901362

[RoSa96] J. Robbin, D. Salamon, *Feynman path integrals on phase space and the metaplectic representation* Math. Z. 221 (1996), no. 2, 307-335, also in D Salamon (ed.), *Symplectic Geometry*, LMS Lecture Note series 192 (1993)

[RoRw89] P. L. Robinson, J. Rawnsley, *The metaplectic representation,* $\mathrm{Mp}^c$*-structures and geometric quantization*, 1989

[RoKo04] A. Rosenberg, M. Kontsevich, , *Noncommutative spaces*, (2004) MPI-2004-35

[RoSc08] D. Roberts, U. Schreiber, *The inner automorphism 3-group of a strict 2-group* Journal of Homotopy and Related Structures, vol. 3(1), 2008, arXiv:0708.1741

[RoSt12] D. Roberts, D. Stevenson, *Simplicial principal bundles in parametrized spaces* (2012) arXiv:1203.2460
D. Stevenson, *Classifying theory for simplicial parametrized groups*
(2012) arXiv:1203.2461

[RoSa96] J. Robbin, D. Salamon, *Feynman path integrals on phase space and the metaplectic representation* Math. Z. 221 (1996), no. 2, 307-335, also in D Salamon (ed.), *Symplectic Geometry*, LMS Lecture Note series 192 (1993)

[Rog10] C. Rogers, $L_\infty$*-algebras from multisymplectic geometry*, Lett. Math. Phys. **100** (2012), 29–50, arXiv:1005.2230.

[Rog11a] C. L. Rogers, *Higher symplectic geometry*, PhD thesis (2011) arXiv:1106.4068

[Rog11b] C. L. Rogers, *Higher geometric quantization*, talk at Higher Structures in Göttingen (2011), http://www.crcg.de/wiki/Higher_geometric_quantization

[Rom05] N. Román-Roy, *Multisymplectic Lagrangian and Hamiltonian Formalisms of Classical Field Theories*, SIGMA 5 (2009), 100, arXiv:math-ph/0506022

[Ros89] J. Rosenberg, *Continuous-trace algebras from the bundle theoretic point of view.* J. Austral. Math. Soc. Ser. A 47 (1989), no. 3, 368-381.

[Roy02] D. Roytenberg, *On the structure of graded symplectic supermanifolds and Courant algebroids*, in *Quantization, Poisson Brackets and Beyond*, Theodore Voronov (ed.), *Contemp. Math.*, Vol. 315, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2002, arXiv:math/0203110

[Roy06] D. Roytenberg, AKSZ-BV Formalism and Courant Algebroid-induced Topological Field Theories, *Lett.Math.Phys.*79:143-159 (2007) arXiv:hep-th/0608150

[Roy10] D. Roytenberg, *Differential graded manifolds and associated stacks*, http://sites.google.com/site/dmitryroytenberg/unpublished/dg-stacks-overview.pdf

[Sak99] M. Sakaguchi, *IIB-Branes and new spacetime superalgebras*, JHEP **0004** (2000), 019, arXiv:hep-th/9909143

[Sak67] A. Sakharov, *Violation of CP invariance, C asymmetry, and baryon asymmetry of the universe.* Journal of Experimental and Theoretical Physics 5: 2427. 1967, republished as A. D. Sakharov (1991). *Violation of CP invariance, C asymmetry, and baryon asymmetry of the universe.* Soviet Physics Uspekhi 34 (5): 392393.

[SaSe85] A. Salam, E. Sezgin, *Anomaly freedom in chiral supergravities*, Phys. Scripta **32** (1985) 283.

[Sa10a] H. Sati, *Geometric and topological structures related to M-branes*, Proc. Symp. Pure Math. 81 (2010), 181-236 arXiv:1001.5020

[Sa10b] H. Sati, *Geometric and topological structures related to M-branes II, Twisted* String- *and* $\mathrm{String}^c$-*structures*, J. Australian Math. Soc. 90 (2011), 93-10, arXiv:1007.5419

[Sa10c] H. Sati, *Geometric and topological structures related to M-branes III, Twisted higher structures*, Int. J. Geom. Meth. Mod. Phys. 8 (2011), 1097-1116, arXiv:1008.1755

[Sa10] H. Sati, *Duality and cohomology in M-theory with boundary*, J. Geom. Phys. **62** (2012), 1284–1297, arXiv:1012.4495

[Sa11a] H. Sati, *Corners in M-theory*, J. Phys. **A 44** (2011), 255402, arXiv:1101.2793

[Sa11b] H. Sati, *Twisted topological structures related to M-branes II: Twisted Wu and* $Wu^c$ *structures* , arXiv:1109.4461

[Sa12] H. Sati, *M-theory with framed corners and tertiary index invariants*, SIGMA 10 (2014), 024, arXiv:1203.4179

[SaSc11a] H. Sati, U. Schreiber (eds.), *Mathematical foundations of quantum field theory and perturbative string theory*, Proceedings of Symposia in Pure Mathematics, AMS (2011) ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Mathematical+Foundations+of+Quantum+Field+and+Perturbative+String+Theory

[SaSc11b] H. Sati, U. Schreiber, *Survey of mathematical foundations of QFT and perturbative string theory*, in H. Sati, U. Schreiber (eds.) *Mathematical Foundations of Quantum Field Theory and Perturbative String Theory*, Proceedings of Symposia in Pure Mathematics, volume 83 AMS (2011), arXiv:1109.0955

[SaSc15] H. Sati, U. Schreiber, *Lie n-Algebras of BPS charges*, arXiv:1507.08692

[SSSS08] H. Sati, U. Schreiber, Z. Škoda, and D. Stevenson, *Twisted differential nonabelian cohomology*, `http://ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Twisted+Differential+Nonabelian+Cohomology`

[SSS09a] H. Sati, U. Schreiber, J. Stasheff, $L_\infty$*-connections*, In *Recent developments in QFT*, Birkhäuser (2009), arXiv:0801.3480

[SSS09b] H. Sati, U. Schreiber, J. Stasheff, *Fivebrane structures*, Rev. Math. Phys., 21(10):1197–1240 (2009)

[SSS09c] H. Sati, U. Schreiber, J. Stasheff, *Twisted differential string- and fivebrane structures*, Commun. Math. Phys. 315 (2012), 169-213, arXiv:0910.4001

[ScSh98] T. Schaefer, E. Shuryak, *Instantons in QCD*, Rev. Mod. Phys.70:323-426,1998 arXiv:hep-ph/9610451

[Scho10] C. Schommer-Pries, *Central extensions of smooth 2-groups and a finite-dimensional string 2-group*, Geometry & Topology 15 (2011) 609-676 arXiv:0911.2483

[Sc07] U. Schreiber, *Quantum 2-States: Sections of 2-vector bundles*, talk at *Higher categories and their applications*, Fields institute (2007),
http://ncatlab.org/nlab/files/Schreiber2States.pdf

[Sc08a] U. Schreiber, *AQFT from n-functorial QFT*, Commun. Math. Phys. **291** (2009), 357–401, arXiv:0806.1079

[Sc08b] U. Schreiber, *Nonabelian cocycles and their quantum symmetries*, 2008
ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Nonabelian+cocycles+and+their+quantum+symmetries

[Sc09] U. Schreiber, *Background fields in twisted differential nonabelian cohomology*, talk at Oberwolfach Workshop *Strings, Fields, Topology* (2009),
http://ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Background+fields+in+twisted+differential+nonabelian+cohomology,
Oberwolfach Report No. 28/2009,
https://www.mfo.de/document/0924/OWR_2009_28.pdf

[Sc11] U. Schreiber, *Derived critical loci*, Seminar notes, Utrecht 2011
http://http://ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/derived+critical+locus

[Sc12] U. Schreiber, *Twisted smooth cohomology in string theory*, Lectures at *ESI Program on K-Theory and Quantum Fields* (May 2012),
http://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/twisted+smooth+cohomology+in+string+theory

[Sc13a] U. Schreiber, *The geometry of physics* Lecture notes
http://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/geometry+of+physics

[Sc13b] U. Schreiber et. al., *Local prequantum field theory*,
http://ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Local+prequantum+field+theory

[Sc13c] U. Schreiber, *Motivic quantization of local prequantum field theory* talk at GAP XI *Higher Geometry and Quantum Field Theory*, Pittsburgh, August 2013,
http://ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Motivic+quantization+of+local+prequantum+field+theory

[Sc13d] U. Schreiber, *Synthetic quantum field theory*, talks 2013,
http://ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Synthetic+Quantum+Field+Theory

[Sch13e] U. Schreiber, *Classical field theory via cohesive homotopy-types*, Proceedings of the Conference on Type Theory, Homotopy Theory and Univalent Foundations 2013 arXiv:1311.1172

[Sc14a] U. Schreiber, *Quantization via linear homotopy-types*, Proceedings of Philosophy of Mechanics: Mathematical Foundations, Workshop Feb 12-14, 2014 arXiv:1402.7041

[Sc14b] U. Schreiber, *Differential generalized cohomology in Cohesive homotopy-type theory*, talk at IHP trimester on Semantics of proofs and certified mathematics, Workshop 1: Formalization of Mathematics, Institut Henri Poincar, Paris, 5-9 May 2014, ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/IHP14

[Sc14c] U. Schreiber, *Differential cohomology is cohesive homotopy theory*, talk at *Higher structures along the Lower Rhine*, June 2014
ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Differential+cohomology+is+Cohesive+homotopy+theory

[Sc14d] U. Schreiber, *What, and for what is Higher geometric quantization?* talks at *Workshop on Higher Gauge Theory and Higher Quantization, Edinburgh, 25-26 June 2014* and *Symmetries and correspondences in number theory, geometry, algebra, physics: intra-disciplinary trends, Oxford, July 5-8 2014*,
ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/What,+and+for+what+is+Higher+geometric+quantization

[Sc14e] U. Schreiber, *Differential cohesion and idelic structure*, talk at *CUNY workshop on differential cohomologies.* New York, August 14, ncatlab.org/nlab/show/differential+cohesion+and+idelic+structure

[Sc14f] U. Schreiber, *Higher field bundles for gauge fields*, talk at *Operator and geometric analysis on quantum theory*, Levico Terme (Trento), Italy 15-19 September 2014 ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Higher+field+bundles+for+gauge+fields

[Sc15a] U. Schreiber, *Modern Physics formalized in Modal Homotopy Type Theory*, talk at at the workshop: J. Ladyman, S. Presnell (org.) *Applying Homotopy Type Theory to physics*, Bristol, 7-8 April 2015, ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Modern+Physics+formalized+in+Modal+Homotopy+Type+Theory

[Sc15b] U. Schreiber, *Some thoughts on the future of modal homotopy type theory* talk at German Mathematical Society Meeting, Hamburg 2015 ncatlab.org/schreiber/show/Some+thoughts+on+the+future+of+modal+homotopy+type+theory

[SSW05] U. Schreiber, C. Schweigert, K. Waldorf, *Unoriented WZW models and Holonomy of Bundle Gerbes*, Communications in Mathematical Physics, Volume 274, Issue 1 (2007), arXiv:0512283

[ScSh12] U. Schreiber, M. Shulman *Quantum gauge field theory in Cohesive homotopy-type theory*, arXiv:1408.0054 in R. Duncan, P. Panangaden (eds.) Proceedings of the 9th workshop on *Quantum Physics and Logic*, Brussels, October 2012, arXiv:1407.8427

[ScWa07] U. Schreiber, K. Waldorf, *Parallel transport and functors*, J. Hom. Relat. Struct., 4, 187-244 (2009), arXiv:0705.0452

[ScWa08] U. Schreiber, K. Waldorf, *Smooth 2-functors and differential forms*, Homology, Homotopy and Applications 13(1), 143-203 (2011) arXiv:0802.0663

[ScWa08] U. Schreiber, K. Waldorf, *Connections on nonabelian gerbes and their holonomy*, Theory and Applications of Categories, Vol. 28, 2013, No. 17, pp 476-540, arXiv:0808.1923

[ScSk10] U. Schreiber and Z. Škoda, *Categorified symmetries*, in B. Dragovich, Z. Rakić (eds), *Proceedings of the 5th Summer School of Modern Mathematical Physics*, SFIN, XXII Series A: Conferences, No A1, (2009), 397-424, arXiv:1004.2472

[Schw84] A. Schwarz, *On the definition of superspace* Teoret. Mat. Fiz., Volume 60, Number 1 (1984)

[ScWa] C. Schweigert, K. Waldorf, *Gerbes and Lie Groups*, in *Developments and Trends in Infinite-Dimensional Lie Theory*, Progress in Mathematics Volume 288, 2011, pp 339-364 arXiv:0710.5467

[Se12] G. Seal, *Tensors, monads and actions*, arXiv:1205.0101

[See83] R. A. G. Seely, *Hyperdoctrines, natural deduction, and the Beck condition*, Zeitschrift fr math. Logik und Grundlagen der Math., Band 29, 505-542 (1983) www.math.mcgill.ca/ rags/ZML/ZML.PDF

[See84] R. A. G. Seely, *Locally cartesian closed categories and type theory*, Math. Proc. Camb. Phil. Soc. (1984) 95, www.math.mcgill.ca/rags/LCCC/LCCC.pdf

[See89] R. A. G. Seely, *Linear logic, $*$-autonomous categories and cofree coalgebras*, Contemporary Mathematics 92, 1989, ncatlab.org/nlab/files/SeelyLinearLogic.pdf

[Sel07] P. Selinger, *Dagger compact closed categories and completely positive maps*, in *Proceedings of the 3rd International Workshop on Quantum Programming Languages* (QPL 2005), ENTCS 170 (2007), 139163 www.mscs.dal.ca/ selinger/papers/dagger.pdf

[Sel10] P. Selinger, *Autonomous categories in which $A \simeq A^*$* (2010) ncatlab.org/nlab/files/SelingerSelfDual.pdf

[Seg70] G. Segal, *Cohomology of topological groups*, Symposia Mathematica, Vol IV (1970) p. 377

[Seg73] G. Segal, *Configuration-Spaces and Iterated Loop-Spaces*, Inventiones math. 21, 213-221 (1973)

[Seg04] G. Segal, *The definition of conformal field theory*, Topology, geometry and quantum field theory London Math. Soc. Lecture Note Ser., 308, Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, (2004), 421-577 people.maths.ox.ac.uk/segalg/0521540496txt.pdf

[Sev01] P. Ševera, *Some title containing the words "homotopy" and "symplectic", e.g. this one*, arXiv:math/0105080

[Sez96] E. Sezgin, *The M-algebra*, Phys. Lett. **B 392** (1997), 323–331, arXiv:hep-th/9609086

[ShTa87] J. Shapiro, C. Taylor, *Superspace supergravity from the superstring*, Physics letter B volume 186, number 1, 1987 ccdb5fs.kek.jp/cgi-bin/img/allpdf?198609078

[Sha97] R. Sharpe, *Differential Geometry Cartan's Generalization of Klein's Erlagen program* Springer (1997)

[Shu07] M. Shulman, *Parametrized spaces model locally constant homotopy sheaves*, Topology and its Applications Volume 155, Issue 5, 15 (2008)

[Shul08] M. Shulman *Framed bicategories and monoidal fibrations*, Theory and Applications of Categories, Vol. 20, 2008, No. 18, pp 650-738 www.tac.mta.ca/tac/volumes/20/18/20-18abs.html

[Shu11] M. Shulman, *Axiomatic cohesion in HoTT*, 2011 homotopytypetheory.org/2011/11/02/axiomatic-cohesion-in-hott/

[Shul12a] M. Shulman *Univalence for inverse diagrams and homotopy canonicity* arxiv.org/abs/1203.3253

[Shul12b] M. Shulman, *Higher modalities*, talk at UF-IAS-2012, October 2012 uf-ias-2012.wikispaces.com/file/view/modalitt.pdf

[Shul12c] M. Shulman, *Enriched indexed categories*, arXiv:1212.3914

[Shul13] M. Shulman, *The univalence axiom for elegant Reedy presheaves*, to appear in Homology, Homotopy and Applications, arXiv:1307.6248

[Shul14] M. Shulman, *Model of type theory in an* $(\infty, 1)$*-topos*, homotopytypetheory/show/model+of+type+theory+in+an+(infinity,1)-topos

[Shul15a] M. Shulman. *Univalence for inverse EI diagrams*, arXiv:1508.02410

[Shul15] M. Shulman *Brouwer's fixed-point theorem in real-cohesive homotopy type theory*, arXiv:1509.07584

[ShLu12] M. Shulman, P. LeFanu Lumsdaine, *Semantics for higher inductive types*, uf-ias-2012.wikispaces.com/file/view/semantics.pdf/410646692/semantics.pdf

[Shu16b] M. Shulman, *Categorical logic from a categorical point of view*, AARMS Summer School 2016 mikeshulman.github.io/catlog/catlog.pdf

[Shul01] E. Shuryak, *Nonperturbative QCD and Quark-Gluon Plasma*, Trieste 2001 `http://users.ictp.it/~pub_off/lectures/lns010/Shuryak/Shuryak.pdf`

[SiTe] C. Simpson, C. Teleman *de Rham theorem for* $\infty$*-stacks* `http://math.berkeley.edu/~teleman/math/simpson.pdf`

[Sl05] S. Slavnov, *From proof-nets to bordisms: the geometric meaning of multiplicative connectives*, Journal Mathematical Structures in Computer Science archive Volume 15 Issue 6 (2005) Pages 1151 - 1178

[Sn79] V. Snaith, *Algebraic Cobordism and K-theory*, Mem. Amer. Math. Soc. no 221 (1979)

[ST97] D. Sorokin, P. Townsend, *M-theory superalgebra from the M-5-brane*, Phys. Lett. **B412** (1997) 265–273, arXiv:hep-th/9708003

[So70] J.-M. Souriau, *Structure des systemes dynamiques* Dunod, Paris (1970)

[So74] J.-M. Souriau, *Modéle de particule á spin dans le champ électromagnétique et gravitationnel*, Annales de lI.H.P. Physique théorique, 20 no. 4 (1974), p. 315-364 `http://www.numdam.org/item?id=AIHPA_1974__20_4_315_0`

[So79] J. Souriau, *Groupes différentiels*, in *Differential Geometrical Methods in Mathematical Physics* (Proc. Conf., Aix-en-Provence/Salamanca, 1979), Lecture Notes in Math. 836, Springer, Berlin, 1980, pp. 91128.

[So97] J.-M. Souriau, *Structure of dynamical systems - A symplectic view of physics*, Birkhäuser (1997)

[SpRi12] B. Spitters, E. Rijke, *Orthogonal factorization systems in homotopy-type theory*,
Univalent Foundations Seminar, IAS, January 2012
uf-ias-2012.wikispaces.com/file/view/images.pdf/401765624/images.pdf

[Sp08] D. Spivak, *Derived smooth manifolds*, PhD thesis (2008)

[St08] A. Stacey, *Comparative Smootheology*, Theory and Applications of Categories, Vol. 25, 2011, No. 4, pp 64-117, arXiv:0802.2225

[St63a] J. Stasheff, *A classification theorem for fiber spaces*, Topology 2 (1963) 239-246

[Sta63b] J. Stasheff, *Homotopy associative H-spaces I, II*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 108 (1963), 275312

[Stee67] N. Steenrod, A convenient category of topological spaces *Michigan Math. J.* 14 (1967) 133152

[Ste64] S. Sternberg, *Lectures on differential geometry*, Prentice-Hall (1964)

[Stel10] H. Stel, $\infty$-Stacks and their function algebras, master thesis (2010)
`http://nlab.mathforge.org/schreiber/show/master+thesis+Stel`

[Ste64] S. Sternberg, *Lectures on differential geometry*, Prentice-Hall (1964)

[St01] D. Stevenson, *Bundle 2-gerbes*, PhD thesis, arXiv:math/0106018

[St11] D. Stevenson, *Décalage and Kan's simplicial loop group functor*, arXiv:1112.0474

[Stol96] S. Stolz, A conjecture concerning positive Ricci curvature and the Witten genus Math. Ann. 304(4):785-800 (1996)

[Stre04] R. Street, Categorical and combinatorial aspects of descent theory *Applied categorical structures* 12: 537-576, Kluwer (2004)

[Su08] R. Sujatha, *Motives from a categorical point of view*, Lecture notes (2008)
`http://www.math.tifr.res.in/~sujatha/ihes.pdf`

[Su77] D. Sullivan *Infinitesimal computations in topology*, Publications Mathématiques de l'IHÉS, 47 (1977)

[Toë00] B. Toën, *Toward a Galoisian interpretation of homotopy theory*, arXiv:math/0007157

[Toë06] B. Toën, *Affine stacks* (*Champs affines*), Selecta mathematica (2006) vol. 12, no1, pp. 39-134

[ToVe02] B. Toën, G. Vezzosi, *Segal topoi and stacks over Segal categories*, Proceedings of the Program *Stacks, Intersection theory and Non-abelian Hodge Theory*, MSRI, Berkeley, (2002), arXiv:math/0212330

[ToVe05] B. Toën, G. Vezzosi, *HAG II, Geometric stacks and applications*, Memoirs of the AMS (2005)

[Top01] F. Toppan, *On anomalies in classical mechanical systems*, Journal of Nonlinear Mathematical Physics Volume 8, Number 3 (2001), 518-533

[To95] P. Townsend, *p-Brane democracy*, in Particles, Strings and Cosmology, eds. J. Bagger, G. Domokos, A Falk and S. Kovesi-Domokos , pp.271-285, World Scientific, 1996, arXiv:hep-th/9507048

[TXL04] J.-L. Tu, P. Xu, C. Laurent-Gengoux, *Twisted K-theory of differentiable stacks*, Ann. sc. de l'ENS (2004) Volume: 37, Issue: 6, page 841-910, arXiv:math/0306138

[UFP13] Univalent Foundations Project, *Homotopy Type Theory Univalent Foundations of Mathematics*, Institute for Advaced Study, Princeton 2013,
homotopytypetheory.org/book

[VW95] C. Vafa, E. Witten, *A one-loop test of string duality*, Nucl. Phys. **B447** (1995) 261-270, arXiv:hep-th/9505053

[Ve79] G. Veneziano, Nucl. Phys. B 159 (1979) 213

[Veri09] D. Verity, Relating descent notions, *Australian Category Seminar* at Macquarie University on Wednesday 27th of May 2009 `http://ncatlab.org/nlab/files/VerityDescent.pdf`

[Vi07] J.Vicary, *A categorical framework for the quantum harmonic oscillator*, International Journal of Theoretical Physics December 2008, Volume 47, Issue 12, pp 3408-3447 arXiv:0706.0711

[ViSh94] A. Vilenkin and E. Shellard, *Cosmic strings and other topological defects*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1994.

[Vi11] C. Vizman, *Abelian extensions via prequantization*, Ann. of Global Analysis and Geometry, 39 (2011) 361-386, arXiv:0910.3906

[Vor84] A. Voronov, *Maps of supermanifolds*, Teoret. Mat. Fiz., 60(1):4348 (1984)

[Wal08] K. Waldorf, *Multiplicative Bundle Gerbes with Connection*, Differential Geom. Appl. 28(3), 313-340 (2010) arXiv:0804.4835

[Wal09] K. Waldorf, *String connections and Chern-Simons theory*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 365 (2013), 4393-4432 arXiv:0906.0117

[Wa08] B.-L. Wang, *Geometric cycles, index theory and twisted K-homology*, J. Noncommut. Geom. 2 (2008), no. 4, 497552, arXiv:0710.1625

[We11] M. Wendt, *Classifying spaces and fibrations of simplicial sheaves*, J. Homotopy Relat. Struct. 6(1), 2011, pp. 1–38. (2010), arXiv:1009.2930

[We71] A. Weinstein, *Symplectic manifolds and their lagrangian submanifolds*, Advances in Math. 6 (1971)

[We83] A. Weinstein, *Lectures on Symplectic Manifolds*, volume 29 of CBMS Regional Conf. Series in Math. Amer. Math. Soc., 1983. third printing.

[Wei89] A. Weinstein, *Symplectic groupoids, geometric quantization, and irrational rotation algebras* in *Symplectic geometry, groupoids, and integrable systems* Berkeley, (1989), 281290, Springer, New York, (1991) [WeXu91] A. Weinstein, P. Xu, *Extensions of symplectic groupoids and quantization*, Journal fr die reine und angewandte Mathematik (1991) Volume 417

[Wi79] E. Witten Nucl. Phys. B 156 (1979) 269

[Wi86] E. Witten, *Twistor-like transform in ten dimensions*, Nuclear Physics B266 (1986)

[Wi87] E. Witten *Elliptic Genera And Quantum Field Theory*, Commun.Math.Phys. 109 525 (1987) `http://projecteuclid.org/euclid.cmp/1104117076`

[Wi89] E. Witten, *Chern-Simons theory and the Jones polynomial*, Commun. Math. Phys. 121 (3) (1989)

[Wi95] E. Witten, *Five-branes And M-Theory On An Orbifold*, Nucl. Phys. B 463:383-397,1996 arXiv:hep-th/9512219

[Wi96] E. Witten, *Five-brane effective action in M-Theory*, J. Geom. Phys. 22 (1997), no. 2, arXiv:hep-th/9610234

[Wi97a] E. Witten, *On Flux Quantization In M-Theory And The Effective Action*, J.Geom.Phys.22:1-13 (1997), arXiv:hep-th/9609122

[Wi98a] E. Witten, *Anti-de Sitter space and holography*, *Advances in Theoretical and Mathematical Physics* 2: 253291, (1998), arXiv:hep-th/9802150

[Wi98b] E. Witten, *Magic, Mystery, and Matrix*, Notices of the American Mathematical Society, volume 45, number 9 (1998) www.ams.org/notices/199809/witten.pdf

[Wi98c] E. Witten, *AdS/CFT Correspondence And Topological Field Theory*, JHEP 9812:012,1998, arXiv:hep-th/9812012

[Wi04] E. Witten, *Conformal Field Theory In Four And Six Dimensions* U. Tillmann (ed.), *Topology, geometry and quantum field theory* LMS Lecture Note Series (2004), arXiv:0712.0157

[SvWi06] P. Svrcek, E. Witten, *Axions In String Theory*, JHEP 0606:051,2006 arXiv:hep-th/0605206

[Wi09] E. Witten, *Geometric Langlands From Six Dimensions*, arXiv:0905.2720

[Wi11] E. Witten, *Fivebranes and knots*, arXiv:1101.3216

[Wock09] C. Wockel, *A generalization of Steenrod's approximation theorem* Arch. Math. (Brno), 45(2):95–104, (2009)

[Yet88] D. Yetter, *Models for synthetic supergeometry*, Cahiers de Topologie et Géométrie Différentielle Catégoriques,, 29, 2 (1988)

[Yet93] D. Yetter, *TQFTs from homotopy 2-types*, Journal of Knot Theory and its Ramifications 2 (1993), 113-123.

[Zam10] M. Zambon, *$L_\infty$-algebras and higher analogues of Dirac structures and Courant algebroids* Journal of Symplectic Geometry, Vol. 10, no. 4 (2012), pp. 563-599. arXiv:1003.1004

[Zan05] M. Bañados, R. Troncoso, J. Zanelli, *Higher dimensional Chern-Simons supergravity* Phys. Rev. D 54, 26052611 (1996), arXiv:gr-qc/9601003
and
J. Zanelli, *Lecture notes on Chern-Simons (super-)gravities* (2005), arXiv:hep-th/0502193

[Zan08] J. Zanelli, *Uses of Chern-Simons actions*, AIP Conf. Proc. **1031** (2008) 115–129, arXiv.0805.1778

[Zi04] J. Zinn-Justin, *Path Integrals in Quantum Mechanics* Oxford University Press (2004)

[Zu87] G. J. Zuckerman, *Action Principles and Global Geometry*, in S. T. Yau (ed.), *Mathematical Aspects of String Theory*, World Scientific, Singapore, 1987, pp. 259-284
ncatlab.org/nlab/files/ZuckermanVariation.pdf

[Zw93] B. Zwiebach, *Closed string field theory: Quantum action and the B-V master equation*, Nucl.Phys. B390 (1993) 33. arXiv:hep-th/9206084

# Index